



SEATTLE CITY COUNCIL

Transportation and Utilities Committee

Agenda

Wednesday, May 5, 2021

9:30 AM

Remote Meeting. Call 253-215-8782; Meeting ID: 586 416 9164; or
Seattle Channel online.

Alex Pedersen, Chair
Dan Strauss, Vice-Chair
M. Lorena González, Member
Lisa Herbold, Member
Tammy J. Morales, Member
Debora Juarez, Alternate

Chair Info: 206-684-8804; Alex.Pedersen@seattle.gov

[Watch Council Meetings Live](#) [View Past Council Meetings](#)

Council Chamber Listen Line: 206-684-8566

For accessibility information and for accommodation requests, please call
206-684-8888 (TTY Relay 7-1-1), email CouncilAgenda@Seattle.gov, or visit
<http://seattle.gov/cityclerk/accommodations>.



SEATTLE CITY COUNCIL
Transportation and Utilities Committee
Agenda
May 5, 2021 - 9:30 AM

Meeting Location:

Remote Meeting. Call 253-215-8782; Meeting ID: 586 416 9164; or Seattle Channel online.

Committee Website:

<http://www.seattle.gov/council/committees/transportation-and-utilities>

This meeting also constitutes a meeting of the City Council, provided that the meeting shall be conducted as a committee meeting under the Council Rules and Procedures, and Council action shall be limited to committee business.

In-person attendance is currently prohibited per Washington State Governor's Proclamation 20-28.15, until the COVID-19 State of Emergency is terminated or Proclamation 20-28 is rescinded by the Governor or State legislature. Meeting participation is limited to access by telephone conference line and online by the Seattle Channel.

Register online to speak during the Public Comment period at the 9:30 a.m. Transportation and Utilities Committee meeting at <http://www.seattle.gov/council/committees/public-comment>.

Online registration to speak at the Transportation and Utilities Committee meeting will begin two hours before the 9:30 a.m. meeting start time, and registration will end at the conclusion of the Public Comment during the meeting. Speakers must be registered in order to be recognized by the Chair.

Submit written comments to Councilmember Pedersen at Alex.Pedersen@seattle.gov.

Sign-up to provide Public Comment at the Meeting at <http://www.seattle.gov/council/committees/public-comment>

Watch live streaming video of the meeting at <http://www.seattle.gov/council/watch-council-live>

Listen to the meeting by calling the Council Chamber Listen Line at 253-215-8782 Meeting ID: 586 416 9164

One Tap Mobile No. US: +12532158782,,5864169164#

Please Note: Times listed are estimated

A. Call To Order

B. Approval of the Agenda

C. Public Comment

D. Items of Business

1. [CB 120044](#) **AN ORDINANCE relating to the Stormwater Code Update; amending Chapters 22.800, 22.801, 22.803, 22.805, and 22.807 of the Seattle Municipal Code.**

Supporting

Documents:

[Summary and Fiscal Note](#)

[Summary Ex A – Directors’ Report and Recommendation](#)

[Summary Ex B – Environmentally Critical Areas : Best Available Science Review](#)

[Summary Ex C - Draft Stormwater Manual \(Draft Director's Rule\)](#)

[Summary Ex D - Ecology Letter on Draft Stormwater Code and Manual](#)

[Summary Ex E - Drainage System Requirements Director's Rule](#)

[Central Staff Memo](#)

[Presentation](#)

Briefing, Discussion, and Possible Vote

Presenters: Mami Hara, General Manager, Sherell Ehlers, Kevin Burrell and Andrew Lee, Seattle Public Utilities; Brian Goodnight, Council Central Staff

2. [Res 32000](#) **A RESOLUTION relating to Seattle Public Utilities; adopting a 2021-2026 Strategic Business Plan for Seattle Public Utilities; and endorsing a three-year rate path and a subsequent, three-year rate forecast to support the Strategic Business Plan Update.**

Attachments: [Att 1 - 2021-2026 Strategic Business Plan](#)

Supporting

Documents:

[Summary and Fiscal Note](#)

[Summary Ex A – Fiscal Health Memo to CBO](#)

[Seattle Public Utilities Presentation](#)

[Customer Review Panel Presentation](#)

[Central Staff Memo](#)

[Central Staff Presentation](#)

Briefing, Discussion, and Possible Vote

Presenter: Brian Goodnight, Council Central Staff

3. [CB 120045](#) **AN ORDINANCE relating to the City Light Department; declaring certain real property rights to be surplus to the needs of City Light; and authorizing the General Manager and Chief Executive Officer of City Light to execute an easement agreement with King County, allowing the temporary use of a portion of City Light property to resolve the encroachment of an existing structure located on the west side of Boeing Field within the Northeast Quarter of Section 29 Township 24 Range 4 and the Southeast Quarter of Section 29 Township 24 Range 4.**

Attachments: [Att 1 - Temporary Easement Agreement](#)

Supporting

Documents:

[Summary and Fiscal Note](#)

[Summary Att 1 – King County Easement Area Presentation](#)

Briefing, Discussion, and Possible Vote

Presenters: Tom DeBoer, Bill Deveraux, Tim Croll, and Maura Brueger, Seattle City Light; Eric McConaghy, Council Central Staff

4. [CB 120042](#) **AN ORDINANCE amending Ordinance 126237, which adopted the 2021 Budget, including the 2021-2026 Capital Improvement Program (CIP); changing appropriations within the Transportation Benefit District Fund; revising project allocations for certain projects in the 2021-2026 CIP; and lifting a proviso.**

Supporting

Documents:

[Summary and Fiscal Note](#)

[Summary Ex A - Spend Plan for \\$20 VLF Effective in 2021](#)

[Summary Ex B – Sidewalk Safety Repair CIP Page](#)

[Summary Ex C – Vision Zero CIP Page](#)

[Summary Ex D – SDOT ADA Program CIP Page](#)

[Summary Ex E – Structures Major Maintenance CIP Page](#)

[Central Staff Memo](#)

[Updated Proposed Amendment 1](#)

Briefing, Discussion, and Possible Vote

Presenter: Calvin Chow, Council Central Staff

5. [CB 120062](#) **AN ORDINANCE** relating to the Madison Bus Rapid Transit (BRT) - RapidRide G Line project; authorizing the Director of the Seattle Department of Transportation (SDOT) to acquire, accept, and record, on behalf of The City of Seattle, a signal pole and trolley wire easement from Seattle University, a Washington non-profit corporation, situated in a portion of Lots 1 through 6, Mile's Addition to the City of Seattle, together with a portion of vacated East Spring Street, vacated 11th Avenue, and vacated Madison Court, and an easement for public sidewalk from Casita Grande LLC, a Washington limited liability company, situated in a portion of Block 6, Addition to the City of Seattle, as laid off by D.T. Denny, Guardian of the Estate of J.H. Nagle (Commonly known as Nagle's Addition to the City of Seattle); designating the easements for transportation purposes, placing the easements under the jurisdiction of SDOT; and ratifying and confirming certain prior acts.

Attachments: [Att 1 - Recorded Signal Pole and Trolley Wire Easement](#)
[Att 2 - Recorded Easement for Public Sidewalk](#)

Supporting

Documents: [Summary and Fiscal Note](#)
[Summary Ex A - Vicinity Map](#)
[Summary Ex B - Project Area](#)
[Central Staff Memo](#)
[Presentation](#)

Briefing, Discussion, and Possible Vote

Presenters for Agenda Items 5 and 6: Eric Tweit and Gretchen Haydel, Seattle Department of Transportation; Calvin Chow, Council Central Staff

6. [CB 120063](#) **AN ORDINANCE** relating to grant funds from the United States Department of Transportation for the construction of the Madison BRT-RapidRide G Line project; authorizing the Director of the Seattle Department of Transportation to accept specified grants and execute related agreements for and on behalf of the City; and ratifying and confirming certain prior acts.

Supporting

Documents: [Summary and Fiscal Note](#)

[Central Staff Memo](#)

[Presentation](#)

Briefing, Discussion, and Possible Vote

7. [CB 120053](#) **AN ORDINANCE** relating to surveillance technology implementation; authorizing approval of uses and accepting the 2020 surveillance impact report and 2020 executive overview for the Seattle Police Department's use of Forward Looking Infrared Real-Time Video.

Attachments: [Att 1 – SIR: Forward Looking Infrared Real-Time Video \(FLIR\)](#)

[Att 2 – Executive Overview: Forward Looking Infrared Real-Time Video](#)

Supporting

Documents: [Summary and Fiscal Note](#)

[Central Staff Memo \(5/5/21\)](#)

[Seattle IT Presentation](#)

[Central Staff Presentation](#)

Briefing and Discussion

Presenters for Agenda Items 7 - 9: Ginger Armbruster and Omari Stringer, Seattle Information Technology Department; Paul McDonagh, Seattle Police Department; Lise Kaye, Council Central Staff

8. [CB 120054](#) **AN ORDINANCE relating to surveillance technology implementation; authorizing approval of uses and accepting the 2020 surveillance impact report and 2020 executive overview for the Seattle Police Department’s use of Situational Awareness Cameras Without Recording.**

Attachments: [Att 1 - SIR: Situational Awareness Cameras](#)
 [Att 2 - Executive Overview: Situational Awareness Cameras](#)

Supporting Documents: [Summary and Fiscal Note](#)
 [Central Staff Memo \(5/5/21\)](#)
 [Seattle IT Presentation](#)
 [Central Staff Presentation](#)

Briefing and Discussion

9. [CB 120055](#) **AN ORDINANCE relating to surveillance technology implementation; authorizing approval of uses and accepting the 2020 surveillance impact report and 2020 executive overview for the Seattle Police Department’s use of Video Recording Systems.**

Attachments: [Att 1 – SIR: Video Recording Systems](#)
 [Att 2 – Executive Overview: Video Recording Systems](#)

Supporting Documents: [Summary and Fiscal Note](#)
 [Central Staff Memo \(5/5/21\)](#)
 [Seattle IT Presentation](#)
 [Central Staff Presentation](#)

Briefing and Discussion

E. Adjournment



Legislation Text

File #: CB 120044, **Version:** 1

CITY OF SEATTLE

ORDINANCE _____

COUNCIL BILL _____

AN ORDINANCE relating to the Stormwater Code Update; amending Chapters 22.800, 22.801, 22.803, 22.805, and 22.807 of the Seattle Municipal Code.

WHEREAS, The City of Seattle is committed to protecting local creeks and lakes, the Duwamish River and Puget Sound; and

WHEREAS, Seattle Public Utilities fosters healthy people, environment, and economy by partnering with the community to equitably manage water and waste resources for today and for future generations; and

WHEREAS, The City of Seattle uses stormwater regulations to protect people, property, and the environment from damage related to stormwater runoff, for the purposes stated in Section 22.800.020 of the Seattle Municipal Code; and

WHEREAS, The City of Seattle is subject to the 2019-2024 Phase I Municipal Stormwater Permit (National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System and State Waste Discharge General Permit for Discharges from Large and Medium Municipal Separate Storm Sewer Systems) issued July 1, 2019 (“MS4 Permit”), by the State of Washington Department of Ecology (“Ecology”) in compliance with the federal Clean Water Act and state law, as effective August 1, 2019; and

WHEREAS, the MS4 Permit requires the City’s Stormwater Code and associated technical manual include minimum requirements, thresholds, definitions, and other specified requirements, limitations and criteria, determined by Ecology to be equivalent to Appendix 1 of the MS4 Permit for new development, redevelopment, and construction, and that maintenance and source control must be as

least as protective as or functionally equivalent to Ecology's Stormwater Management Manual for Western Washington, 2019 edition; and

WHEREAS, the MS4 Permit also requires the City evaluate and, if necessary, revise the Stormwater Code to incorporate low impact development principles and best management practices; and

WHEREAS, this ordinance, to be known as the 2021 Stormwater Code Update, contains amendments to comply with the MS4 Permit and other amendments not required to comply with the MS4 Permit, to further the purposes of the Stormwater Code; and

WHEREAS, the City is in the final stages of securing Ecology's approval of certain Seattle Stormwater Manual provisions that were drafted to meet MS4 Permit obligations, and the approved provisions will be adopted during 2021 by joint Directors' Rule of Seattle Public Utilities and the Seattle Department of Construction and Inspections; and

WHEREAS, Ecology has reviewed the City's proposed revisions to the Stormwater Code that were drafted in response to the City's MS4 Permit obligations and that required Ecology approval, and Ecology has found that those provisions, together with final approved Seattle Stormwater Manual revisions, will meet the regulatory requirements of the MS4 Permit; and

WHEREAS, Chapter 22.800 of the Seattle Municipal Code was established, and Chapter 22.805 of the Seattle Municipal Code was added, by Ordinance 123105, which repealed and re-enacted, relocated, and amended the text of Chapters 22.800, 22.801, 22.802, and 22.808 of the Seattle Municipal Code, previously amended by Ordinances 122738, 122055, 121276, 119965, 118396, 117852, 117789, 117697, and 117432 and adopted by Ordinance 116425; and

WHEREAS, Sections 22.800.040, 22.805.050, and 22.805.060 of the Seattle Municipal Code were amended by Ordinance 124758; and

WHEREAS, Chapters 22.800, 22.801, 22.802, 22.803, 22.805, 22.807, and 22.808 of the Seattle Municipal Code were amended by Ordinance 124872; and

WHEREAS, Section 22.801.030 of the Seattle Municipal Code was amended by Ordinance 126278; and

WHEREAS, in developing stormwater regulations that protect the functions and values of critical areas,

including those in the Shoreline District, the City has included the best available science; NOW

THEREFORE,

BE IT ORDAINED BY THE CITY OF SEATTLE AS FOLLOWS:

Section 1. Chapter 22.800 of the Seattle Municipal Code, last amended by Ordinance 124919, is amended as follows:

Chapter 22.800 TITLE, PURPOSE, SCOPE AND AUTHORITY

* * *

22.800.040 Exemptions, Adjustments, and Exceptions

A. Exemptions

1. The following land uses are exempt from the provisions of this subtitle:

a. Commercial agriculture, including only those activities conducted on lands defined in RCW 84.34.020 (2), and production of crops or livestock for wholesale trade; and

b. Forest practices regulated under Title 222 Washington Administrative Code, except for Class IV general forest practices, as defined in WAC 222-16-050, that are conversions from timber land to other uses.

2. The following land disturbing activities are not required to comply with the specific minimum requirements listed below.

a. Maintenance, repair, or installation of underground or overhead utility facilities, such as, but not limited to, pipes, conduits and vaults, and that includes replacing the ground surface with in-kind material or materials with similar runoff characteristics are not required to comply with Section 22.805.070 (Minimum Requirements for On-site Stormwater Management), Section 22.805.080 (Minimum Requirements for Flow Control), or Section 22.805.090 (Minimum Requirements for Treatment), except as modified as follows:

~~((1) Installation of a new or replacement of an existing public drainage system, public combined sewer, or public sanitary sewer in the public right-of-way shall comply with Section 22.805.060 (Minimum Requirements for Roadway Projects) when these activities are implemented as publicly bid capital improvement projects funded by Seattle Public Utilities; and~~

2)) 1) Installation of underground or overhead utility facilities that are integral with and contiguous to a road-related project shall comply with Section 22.805.060 (Minimum Requirements for Roadway Projects).

b. Pavement maintenance practices limited to the following activities are not required to comply with Section 22.805.060 (Minimum Requirements for Roadway Projects), Section 22.805.070 (Minimum Requirements for On-site Stormwater Management, Section 22.805.080 (Minimum Requirements for Flow Control), or Section 22.805.090 (Minimum Requirements for Treatment):

- 1) Pothole and square cut patching;
- 2) Overlaying existing asphalt or concrete or brick pavement with asphalt or concrete without expanding the area of coverage;
- 3) Shoulder grading;
- 4) Reshaping or regrading drainage ditches;
- 5) Crack sealing; and
- 6) Vegetation maintenance.

c. Land disturbing activity that includes replacing the ground surface with in-kind material or with materials having equivalent runoff characteristics and is associated solely with soil remediation or tank removal for the purpose of removing contaminants and pollutants and not associated with other development is not required to comply with subsections 22.805.050.A and 22.805.060.A (Soil Amendment), Section 22.805.070 (Minimum Requirements for On-site Stormwater Management), or Section 22.805.080 (Minimum Requirements for Flow Control). Projects that include any development in addition to soil remediation or tank removal replaced with in-kind material or with materials having equivalent runoff characteristics are not exempt.

d. Drainage control facilities that are part of a public retrofit project installed to meet Appendix 12 to the City's municipal stormwater NPDES permit or for combined sewer control, or other voluntary retrofit project, are not required to comply with Section 22.805.070 (Minimum Requirements for On-site Stormwater Management), Section 22.805.080 (Minimum Requirements for Flow Control), or Section 22.805.090 (Minimum Requirements for Treatment). This exemption does not include land disturbing activities or hard surfaces that are not integral to or are in addition to the drainage control facilities described above, or installation of drainage control facilities that are otherwise required to meet this subtitle.

3. Sites that produce no runoff as determined by a licensed civil engineer using a continuous runoff model approved by the Director are not required to comply with Section 22.805.080 (Minimum Requirements for Flow Control).

4. When a portion of the site being developed discharges only to the public combined sewer, and that portion is not required to ~~((comply with the provision of subsection 22.805.020.I (Install Source Control BMPs) unless))~~ implement source controls pursuant to Section 22.803.040 for specified activities, the Director has the authority, to the extent allowed by law, to issue an order under Chapter 22.808 requiring the responsible party to undertake source controls, if the Director determines that these activities pose a hazard to public health, safety or welfare; endanger any property; adversely affect the safety and operation of ((city)) City right-of-way, utilities, or other property owned or maintained by the City; or adversely affect the functions and values of an environmentally critical area or buffer.

5. Residential activities are not required to comply with the provision of subsection 22.805.020.I (Install Source Control BMPs) unless the Director determines that these activities pose a hazard to public health, safety or welfare; endanger any property; adversely affect the safety and operation of ((city)) City right-of-way, utilities, or other property owned or maintained by the City; or adversely affect the functions and values of an environmentally critical area or buffer.

6. With respect to all state highway right-of-way under Washington State Department of Transportation (WSDOT) control within the jurisdiction of ~~((the))~~ The City of Seattle, WSDOT shall use the current, approved Highway Runoff Manual (HRM) for its existing and new facilities and rights-of-way, as addressed in WAC 173-270-030(1) and (2). Exceptions to this exemption, where more stringent stormwater management requirements apply, are addressed in WAC 173-270-030(3)(b) and (c).

a. When a state highway is located in the jurisdiction of a local government that is required by Ecology to use more stringent standards to protect the quality of receiving waters, WSDOT shall comply with the same standards to promote uniform stormwater management.

b. WSDOT shall comply with standards identified in watershed action plans for WSDOT rights-of-way, to the extent required by state law.

c. Other instances where more stringent local stormwater standards apply are projects subject to tribal government standards or to the stormwater management-related permit conditions imposed under Chapter 25.09 to protect environmentally critical areas and their buffers (under the Growth Management Act), an NPDES permit, or shoreline master programs (under the Shoreline Management Act). In addition, WSDOT shall comply with local jurisdiction stormwater standards when WSDOT elects, and is granted permission, to discharge stormwater runoff into a municipality's drainage system or combined sewer system.

B. Adjustments

1. The Director may approve a request for adjustments to the requirements of this subtitle when the Director finds

that:

- a. The adjustment provides substantially equivalent environmental protection; and
- b. The objectives of safety, function, environmental protection, and facility maintenance are met, based on

sound engineering practices.

2. During construction, the Director may require, or the applicant may request, that the construction of drainage control facilities and associated project designs be adjusted if physical conditions are discovered on the site that are inconsistent with the assumptions upon which the approval was based, including but not limited to unexpected soil and/or water conditions, weather generated problems, or changes in the design of the improved areas.

3. A request by the applicant for adjustments shall be submitted to the Director for approval prior to implementation. The request shall be in writing and shall provide facts substantiating the requirements of subsection 22.800.040.B.1 and, if made during construction, the factors in subsection 22.800.040.B.2. Any such modifications made during the construction of drainage control facilities shall be recorded on the final approved drainage control plan, a revised copy of which shall be filed by the Director.

C. Exceptions

1. The Director may approve a request for an exception to the requirements of this subtitle when the applicant demonstrates that the exception will not increase risks in the vicinity and/or downstream of the property to public health, safety and welfare, or to water quality, or to public and private property, and:

- a. The requirement would cause a severe and unexpected financial hardship that outweighs the requirement's benefits, and the criteria for an adjustment cannot be met; or
- b. The requirement would cause harm or a significant threat of harm to public health, safety and welfare, the environment, or public and private property, and the criteria for an adjustment cannot be met; or
- c. The requirement is not technically feasible, and the criteria for an adjustment cannot be met; or
- d. An emergency situation exists that necessitates approval of the exception.

2. An exception shall only be granted to the extent necessary to provide relief from the economic hardship, to alleviate the harm or threat of harm, to the degree that compliance with the requirement becomes technically feasible, or to perform the emergency work that the Director determines exists.

3. An applicant is not entitled to an exception, whether or not the criteria allowing approval of an exception are met.

4. The Director may require an applicant to provide additional information at the applicant's expense, including, but not limited to, an engineer's report or analysis.

5. When an exception is granted, the Director may impose new or additional requirements to offset or mitigate harm that may be caused by granting the exception, or that would have been prevented if the exception had not been granted.

6. Public notice of an application for an exception and of the Director's decision on the application shall be provided in the manner prescribed for Type II land use decisions, as set forth in Chapter 23.76.

7. The Director's decision shall be in writing with written findings of fact. Decisions approving an exception based on severe and unexpected economic hardship shall address all the factors in subsection 22.800.040.C.8.

8. An application for an exception on the grounds of severe and unexpected financial hardship must describe, at a minimum, all of the following:

- a. The current, pre-project use of the site; and
- b. How application of the requirement(s) for which an exception is being requested restricts the proposed use of the site compared to the restrictions that existed prior to the adoption of this current subtitle; and
- c. The possible remaining uses of the site if the exception were not granted; and
- d. The uses of the site that would have been allowed prior to the adoption of this subtitle; and
- e. A comparison of the estimated amount and percentage of value loss as a result of the requirements versus the estimated amount and percentage of value loss as a result of requirements that existed prior to adoption of the requirements of this subtitle; and
- f. The feasibility of the owner or developer to alter the project to apply the requirements of this subtitle.

9. In addition to rights under Chapter 3.02, any person aggrieved by a Director's decision on an application for an exception may appeal to the Hearing Examiner's Office by filing an appeal, with the applicable filing fee, as set forth in Section 23.76.022. However, appeals of a Notice of Violation, Director's order, or invoice issued pursuant to this subtitle shall follow the required procedure established in Chapter 22.808.

10. The Hearing Examiner shall affirm the Director's determination on the exception unless the examiner finds the determination is clearly erroneous based on substantial evidence. The applicant for the exception shall have the burden of proof on all issues related to justifying the exception.

11. The Director shall keep a record, including the Director's written findings of fact, on all approved requests for exceptions.

* * *

22.800.070 Minimum Requirements for City Agency Projects

A. Compliance. City agencies shall comply with all the requirements of this subtitle except as specified below:

1. City agencies are not required to obtain permits and approvals under this subtitle, other than inspections as set out in subsection B of this Section 22.800.070 and review and approval when applying roadway project infeasibility as provided in subsection 22.805.060.E, for work performed within a public right-of-way or for work performed for the operation and maintenance of park lands under the control or jurisdiction of the Department of Parks and Recreation. Where the work occurs in a public right-of-way, it shall also comply with Title 15, Street and Sidewalk Use, including the applicable requirements to obtain permits or approvals.

2. A City agency project, as defined in Section 22.801.170, that is not required to obtain permit(s) and approval(s) pursuant to subsection 22.800.070.A.1 and meets all of the conditions set forth below, is not required to comply with the amendments to 22.800.020 through 22.808.110 that take effect on ~~((January 1, 2016))~~ July 1, 2021, except the amendments to this subsection 22.800.070.A.2.

a. The project begins land disturbing activities within ~~((18 months))~~ five years of the effective date of this subtitle, and;

b. The project complies with the Stormwater Code that was made effective ~~((November 30, 2009))~~ January 1, 2016, by Ordinance ~~((123105))~~ 124872 which requires compliance with Directors' Rules ~~((15-2012/DWW 201.1 and 16-2012/DWW 201.2))~~ SDCI 17-2017/SPU DWW 200 effective ~~((March 1, 2013, as amended by Ordinance 124758))~~ January 1, 2016; and

c. The project meets one or more of the following criteria:

1) Project funding was appropriated as identified in Ordinance ~~((124648))~~ 126237 titled, "An ordinance adopting a budget, including a capital improvement program and position modifications, for the City of Seattle for ~~((2015))~~ 2021"; or

2) Project received or will receive voter approval of financing before ~~((January 1, 2015))~~ January 1, 2021; or

3) Project received or will receive funds based on grant application(s) submitted before ~~((January 1, 2015))~~ January 1, 2021.

B. Inspection

1. When the City conducts projects for which review and approval are required under Chapter 22.807 (Drainage Control Review and Application Requirements) the work shall be inspected by the City agency conducting the project or supervising the contract for the project. The inspector for the City agency shall be responsible for ascertaining that the drainage control is done in

a manner consistent with the requirements of this subtitle.

2. A City agency need not provide an inspector from its own agency provided either:

- a. The work is inspected by an appropriate inspector from another City agency; or
- b. The work is inspected by an appropriate inspector hired for that purpose by a City agency; or
- c. The work is inspected by the licensed civil or geotechnical engineer who prepared the plans and

specifications for the work; or

- d. A permit or approval is obtained from the Director of SDCI, and the work is inspected by the Director.

C. Certification of Compliance. City agencies shall meet the same standards as non-City projects, except as provided in subsection 22.800.070.A, and shall certify that each individual project meets those standards.

* * *

22.800.080 Authority

A. For projects not conducted in the public right-of-way, the Director of SDCI has authority regarding the provisions of this subtitle pertaining to grading, review of drainage control plans, and review of construction stormwater control plans, and has inspection and enforcement authority pertaining to temporary erosion and sediment control measures.

B. The Director of SPU has authority regarding all other provisions of this subtitle pertaining to drainage water, drainage, and erosion control, including inspection and enforcement authority. The Director of SPU may delegate authority to the Director of SDCI or the Director of SDOT regarding the provisions of this subtitle pertaining to review of drainage control plans, inspection of drainage control facilities, review of construction stormwater control plans, and inspection and enforcement authority pertaining to temporary erosion and sediment control measures for projects conducted in the public right-of-way.

C. The Directors of SDCI, SDOT, and SPU are authorized to take actions necessary to implement the provisions and purposes of this Subtitle VIII in their respective spheres of authority to the extent allowed by law, including, but not limited to, the following: promulgating and amending rules and regulations, pursuant to the Administrative Code, Chapter 3.02; establishing and conducting inspection programs; establishing and conducting or, as set forth in Section 22.802.040, requiring responsible parties to conduct monitoring programs, which may include sampling of discharges to or from drainage control facilities, the public drainage system, or receiving waters; taking enforcement action; abating nuisances; promulgating guidance and policy documents; and reviewing and approving, conditioning, or disapproving required submittals and applications for approvals and permits. The Directors are authorized to exercise their authority under this Subtitle VIII in a manner consistent with their legal obligations as determined by the courts or by statute.

D. The Director of SPU is authorized to develop, review, or approve drainage basin plans for managing receiving waters, drainage water, and erosion within individual basins. A drainage basin plan may, when approved by the Director of SPU, be used to modify requirements of this subtitle, provided the level of protection for human health, safety and welfare, the environment, and public or private property will equal or exceed that which would otherwise be achieved. A drainage basin plan that modifies the minimum requirements of this subtitle at a drainage basin level subject to the municipal stormwater NPDES Permit must be reviewed and approved by Ecology and adopted by City ordinance.

E. The Director of SPU is authorized, to the extent allowed by law, to develop, review, or approve an Integrated Drainage Plan as an equivalent means of complying with the requirements of this subtitle, in which the developer of a project voluntarily enters into an agreement with the Director of SPU to implement an Integrated Drainage Plan that is specific to one or more sites where best management practices are employed such that the cumulative effect on the discharge from the site(s) to the same receiving water is the same or better than that which would be achieved by a less integrated, site-by-site implementation of best management practices.

F. ~~((The))~~ For projects that do not discharge to the combined sewer system, the Director of SPU is authorized, to the extent allowed by law, to enter into an agreement with the developer ~~((of a project for the developer))~~ to allow a project's flow control, water quality treatment, on-site stormwater management, or wetland protection requirements to be met at an alternative location if the following conditions are met, or if another scenario is approved by Ecology:

1. The developer enters the agreement voluntarily to contribute funds toward the construction of, or to construct, one or more drainage control facilities ((that)) at an alternative location to mitigate the impacts to the same receiving water that have been identified as a consequence of the ((proposed development.)) project; and

2. The alternative location is for an equivalent area in terms of flow and pollution characteristics when compared with the project, as determined by the Director; and

a. The site of the project has greater than or equal to 35 percent existing hard surface coverage and the project discharges to:

1) A Listed Creek and the equivalent area is in-basin, which means that the equivalent area is on the same site as the project, the project is located within contributing area to the equivalent area, or the equivalent area discharges from the public drainage system to the receiving water at the same point as (or upstream of) the point where the project area discharges from the public drainage system to the same receiving water; or

2) A receiving water other than a Listed Creek and the equivalent area discharges to the same receiving water as the project.

G. ~~((The))~~ For projects that discharge to the combined sewer system, the Director of SPU is authorized, to the extent allowed by law, to enter into an agreement with the developer ~~((of a project for the developer))~~ to allow a project's flow control or on-site stormwater management requirements to be met at an alternative location if the developer enters the agreement voluntarily to contribute funds towards the construction of, or to construct, one or more drainage control facilities at an alternative location, determined by the Director, to mitigate the impacts ~~((to the same receiving water))~~ that have been identified as a consequence of the ~~((proposed development))~~ project.

H. If the Director of SPU determines that a discharge from a site, real property, or drainage control facility, directly or indirectly to a public drainage system, a private drainage system, or a receiving water within or contiguous to Seattle city limits, has exceeded, exceeds, or will exceed water quality standards at the point of assessment, or has caused or contributed, is causing or contributing, or will cause or contribute, to a prohibited discharge or a known or likely violation of water quality standards in the receiving water or a known or likely violation of the City's municipal stormwater NPDES permit, and cannot be adequately addressed by the required best management practices, then the Director of SPU has the authority, to the extent allowed by law, to issue an order under Chapter 22.808 requiring the responsible party to undertake more stringent or additional best management practices. These best management practices may include additional source control or structural best management practices or other actions necessary to cease the exceedance, the prohibited discharge, or causing or contributing to the known or likely violation of water quality standards in the receiving water or the known or likely violation of the City's municipal stormwater NPDES permit. Structural best management practices may include but shall not be limited to: drainage control facilities, structural source controls, treatment facilities, constructed facilities such as enclosures, covering and/or berming of container storage areas, and revised drainage systems. For existing discharges as opposed to new projects, the Director may allow 12 months to install a new flow control facility, structural source control, or treatment facility after the Director notifies the responsible party in writing of the Director's determination pursuant to this subsection 22.800.080.H and of the flow control facility, structural source control, or treatment facility that must be installed.

I. Unless an adjustment pursuant to subsection 22.800.040.B or an exception pursuant to subsection 22.800.040.C is approved by the Director, an owner or occupant who is required to connect, or who chooses to connect, to a public drainage system shall be required to extend the public drainage system if a public drainage system is not accessible within an abutting public area across the full frontage of the site.

J. The Director of SDCI or the Director of SPU has the authority, to the extent allowed by law, to require ~~((sites))~~ projects with any addition or replacement ~~((of less than 5,000 square feet))~~ of hard surface or ~~((with less than one acre of))~~ land disturbing activity to comply with the more stringent requirements set forth in ~~((Section 22.805.080 or Section 22.805.090))~~ Chapter 22.805

when necessary to accomplish the purposes of this subtitle. In making this determination, the Director of SDCI or the Director of SPU may consider, but is not limited to, the following attributes of the site: location within an Environmentally Critical Area; proximity and tributary to an Environmentally Critical Area; and proximity and tributary to an area with known erosion or flooding problems.

* * *

22.800.100 Transition to Revised Stormwater Code

A. Any building or grading permit issued prior to June 30, 2020, ((a)) (1) which was not considered, either in the initial application process or in a renewal process, under the version of the Stormwater Code in effect on or after January 1, 2016, and ~~((b))~~ (2) pursuant to which construction has not started by June 30, 2020, shall expire on June 30, 2020.

B. Any building or grading permit (1) which was considered under a version of the Stormwater Code in effect on or after January 1, 2016, but before July 1, 2021, and (2) pursuant to which construction has not started by July 1, 2026, shall expire on July 1, 2026.

~~((B))~~ C. Any master use permit issued prior to June 30, 2020, for a project not requiring a building permit ~~((a))~~ (1) which was not considered, either in the initial application process or in a renewal process, under the version of the Stormwater Code in effect on or after January 1, 2016, and ~~((b))~~ (2) pursuant to which construction has not started by June 30, 2020, shall expire on June 30, 2020.

D. Any master use permit for a project not requiring a building permit (1) which was considered under a version of the Stormwater Code in effect on or after January 1, 2016, but before July 1, 2021, and (2) pursuant to which construction has not started by July 1, 2026, shall expire on July 1, 2026.

~~((C))~~ E. Neither Section 23.22.028, Section 23.22.064, Section 23.24.050, RCW 58.17.033, nor RCW 58.17.170 shall require any permit application submitted on or after January 1, 2016, to be considered under a version of the Stormwater Code in effect prior to January 1, 2016, or require any permit application submitted on or after July 1, 2021 to be considered under a version of the Stormwater Code in effect prior to July 1, 2021. For purposes of this subsection ~~((22.800.100.C))~~ 22.800.100.E, “permit application” means an application for any permit required for construction within a plat or short plat or for construction of facilities and improvements for a plat or short plat, including, but not limited to, master use, building and grading permits.

~~((D))~~ F. Neither Section 23.22.028 nor Section 23.22.064 shall authorize starting construction, after June 30, 2020, of facilities or improvements for any plat without compliance with the version of the Stormwater Code in effect on or after January 1, 2016, or authorize starting construction, after July 1, 2026, of facilities or improvements for any plat without compliance with the version of the Stormwater Code in effect on or after July 1, 2021.

((E)) G. For purposes of this section, “starting construction” or “started construction” means the site work associated with and directly related to the approved project has begun. For example: grading the project site to final grade or utility installation such as water, sewer, drainage, gas, or electrical infrastructure installed to serve the project and associated with the application. Simply clearing the project site or installing conduit does not constitute the start of construction.

Section 2. Chapter 22.801 of the Seattle Municipal Code, last amended by Ordinance 126278, is amended as follows:

Chapter 22.801 DEFINITIONS

* * *

22.801.020 “A”

“Agency” means any governmental entity or its subdivision.

“Agency, City” means “City agency” as defined in Section 25.09.520.

“Approved” means approved by the Director.

“Aquatic life use” means “aquatic life use” as defined in WAC 173-201A-200. For the purposes of this subtitle, at minimum the following water bodies are designated for aquatic life use: small lakes, creeks, and ((freshwater)) fresh designated receiving waters.

“Arterial” means “arterial” as defined in Section 11.14.035.

22.801.030 “B”

“Basic treatment facility” means a drainage control facility designed to reduce concentrations of total suspended solids in drainage water.

“Basic treatment receiving water” means:

1. All marine waters, including Puget Sound;
2. Lake Union;
3. Lake Washington;
4. Ship Canal and bays between Lake Washington and Puget Sound; and
5. Duwamish River.

“Best management practice” (BMP) means a schedule of activities, prohibitions of practices, operational and maintenance procedures, structural facilities, or managerial practice or device that, when used singly or in combination, prevents, reduces, or treats contamination of drainage water, prevents or reduces soil erosion, or prevents or reduces other adverse effects of drainage water.

When the Directors develop rules and/or manuals prescribing BMPs for particular purposes, whether or not those rules and/or

manuals are adopted by ordinance, BMPs (~~(prescribed)~~) specified in the rules and/or manuals shall be the BMPs required for compliance with this subtitle.

“Building permit” means a document issued by the Seattle Department of Construction and Inspections authorizing construction or other specified activity in accordance with the Seattle Building Code or the Seattle Residential Code.

22.801.040 “C”

“Capacity-constrained system” means a drainage system or public combined sewer that the Director of SPU has determined to have inadequate capacity to carry existing and anticipated loads, or a drainage system that includes ditches or culverts.

“Certified Erosion and Sediment Control Lead” (CESCL) means an individual who has current certification through an approved erosion and sediment control training program that meets the minimum training standards established by Ecology.

“Civil engineer, licensed” means a person who is licensed by the State of Washington to practice civil engineering.

“City agency” means “City agency” as defined in Section 25.09.520.

“Combined sewer.” See “public combined sewer.”

“Combined sewer basin” or “public combined sewer basin” means the area tributary to a public combined sewer feature, including, but not limited to, a combined sewer overflow outfall, trunk line connection, pump station, or regulator.

“Compaction” means the densification, settlement, or packing of earth material or fill in such a way that permeability is reduced by mechanical means.

“Construction Stormwater Control Plan” means a document that explains and illustrates the measures to be taken on the construction site to (~~control~~) prevent erosion and discharge of sediment and other pollutants on a construction project.

“Containment area” means the area designated for conducting pollution-generating activities for the purposes of implementing source controls or designing and installing source controls or treatment facilities.

“Contaminate” means the addition of sediment, any other pollutant or waste, or any illicit or prohibited discharge.

“Creek” means a (~~(Type 2-5)~~) Type S, F, Np or Ns water as defined in WAC 222-16-031, or as defined in WAC 222-16-030 after state water type maps are adopted, and is used synonymously with “stream.”

22.801.050 “D”

“Damages” means monetary compensation for harm, loss, costs, or expenses incurred by the City, including, but not limited, to the following: costs of abating or correcting violations of this subtitle; fines or penalties the City incurs as a result of a violation of this subtitle; and costs to repair or clean the public drainage system or public combined sewer as a result of a violation. For the purposes of this subtitle, damages do not include compensation to any person other than the City.

“Designated receiving waters” means the Duwamish River, Puget Sound, Lake Washington, Lake Union, Elliott Bay, Portage Bay, Union Bay, the Lake Washington Ship Canal, and other receiving waters determined by the Director of SPU and approved by Ecology as having sufficient capacity to receive discharges of drainage water such that a site discharging to the designated receiving water is not required to implement flow control.

“Detention” means temporary storage of drainage water for the purpose of controlling the drainage discharge rate.

“Development” means the following activities:

1. Class IV-general forest practices that are conversions from timberland to other uses;

2. land disturbing activity; ((or))

3. the addition or replacement of hard surfaces;

4. expansion of a building footprint or addition or replacement of a structure;

5. structural development, including construction, installation, or expansion of a building or other structure;

6. seeking approval of a building permit, other construction permit, grading permit, or master use permit that involves any of the foregoing activities; and

7. seeking approval of subdivision, short plat, unit lot subdivision, or binding site plans, as defined and applied in chapter 58.17 RCW, or other master use permit.

Development is a type of project.

“Director” means the Director of the Department authorized to take a particular action, and the Director’s designees, who may be employees of that department or another City department.

“Director of SDCI” means the Director of the Seattle Department of Construction and Inspections or the designee of the Director of the Seattle Department of Construction and Inspections, who may be employees of that department or another City department.

“Director of SDOT” means the Director of Seattle Department of Transportation of The City of Seattle or the designee of the Director of Seattle Department of Transportation, who may be employees of that department or another City department.

“Director of SPU” means the ~~((Director))~~ General Manager and Chief Executive Officer of Seattle Public Utilities of The City of Seattle or the designee of the ~~((Director))~~ General Manager and Chief Executive Officer of Seattle Public Utilities, who may be employees of that department or another City department.

“Discharge point” means the location from which drainage water from a site is released.

“Discharge rate” means the rate at which drainage water is released from a site. The discharge rate is expressed as volume

per unit of time, such as cubic feet per second.

“Drainage basin” means the geographic and hydrologic tributary area or subunit of a watershed through which drainage water is collected, regulated, transported, and discharged to receiving waters.

“Drainage basin plan” means a plan to manage the quality and quantity of drainage water in a watershed or a drainage basin, including watershed action plans.

“Drainage control” means the management of drainage water. Drainage control is accomplished through one or more of the following: collecting, conveying, and discharging drainage water; controlling the discharge rate from a site; controlling the flow duration from a site; controlling the quantity from a site; and separating, treating or preventing the introduction of pollutants.

“Drainage control facility” means any facility, including best management practices, installed or constructed for the purpose of controlling the discharge rate, flow duration, quantity, and/or quality of drainage water.

“Drainage control plan” means a plan for collecting, controlling, transporting and disposing of drainage water falling upon, entering, flowing within, and exiting the site, including designs for drainage control facilities.

“Drainage system” means a system intended to collect, convey and control release of only drainage water. The system may be either publicly or privately owned or operated, and the system may serve public or private property. It includes components such as pipes, ditches, culverts, curbs, gutters, and drainage control facilities. Drainage systems are not receiving waters.

“Drainage water” means stormwater and all other discharges that are permissible pursuant to subsection 22.802.030.A.

22.801.060 “E”

“Earth material” means any rock, gravel, natural soil, fill, or re-sedimented soil, or any combination thereof, but does not include any solid waste as defined by RCW 70.95.

“Ecology” means the Washington State Department of Ecology.

“Effective ((~~impervious~~)) hard surface” means those ((~~impervious~~)) hard surfaces that are connected via sheet flow or discrete conveyance to a drainage system.

“Enhanced treatment facility” means a drainage control facility designed to reduce concentrations of dissolved metals in drainage water.

“Environmentally critical area” (ECA) means an area designated in Section ((~~25.09.020~~)) 25.09.012.

“EPA” means the United States Environmental Protection Agency.

“Erodible or leachable materials” means wastes, chemicals, or other substances which, when exposed to rainfall, measurably alter the physical or chemical characteristics of the drainage water. Examples include: erodible soils that are stockpiled; leachable

materials that are stockpiled; uncovered process wastes; manure; fertilizers; oily substances; ashes, kiln dust; and garbage dumpster leakage.

“Erosion” means the wearing away of the ground surface as a result of mass wasting or of the movement of wind, water, ice, or other geological agents, including such processes as gravitational creep. Erosion also means the detachment and movement of soil or rock fragments by water, wind, ice, or gravity.

“Excavation” means the mechanical removal of earth material.

“Exception” means relief from a requirement of this subtitle to a specific project.

“Existing grade” means “existing grade” as defined in Section 22.170.050.

* * *

22.801.130 “L”

“Land disturbing activity” means any activity that results in a change in the existing soil cover, both vegetative and nonvegetative, or the existing topography. Land disturbing activities include, but are not limited to, clearing, grading, filling, excavation, or addition of new or the replacement of hard surface. Compaction, excluding hot asphalt mix, that is associated with stabilization of structures and road construction is also considered a land disturbing activity. Vegetation maintenance practices, including landscape maintenance and gardening, are not considered land disturbing activities. Stormwater facility maintenance is not considered land disturbing activity if conducted according to established standards and procedures.

“Large project” means a project including:

1. ~~((5,000))~~ Five thousand square feet or more of new plus replaced hard surface;
2. ~~((one))~~ One acre or more of land disturbing activity;
3. ~~((conversion))~~ Conversion of 3/4 acres or more of vegetation to lawn or landscaped area; or
4. ~~((conversion))~~ Conversion of 2.5 acres or more of native vegetation to pasture.

“Listed creeks” means Blue Ridge Creek, Broadview Creek, Discovery Park Creek, Durham Creek, Frink Creek, Golden Gardens Creek, Kiwanis Ravine/Wolfe Creek, Licton Springs Creek, Madrona Park Creek, Mee-Kwa-Mooks Creek, Mount Baker Park Creek, Puget Creek, Riverview Creek, Schmitz Creek, Taylor Creek, and Washington Park Creek.

22.801.140 “M”

“Master use permit” means a ~~((document issued by SDCI giving permission for development or use of land or street right-of-way in accordance with Chapter 23.76))~~ “master use permit” as defined in subsection 23.84A.025.

“Maximum extent feasible” means the requirement is to be fully implemented, constrained only by the physical limitations

of the site, practical considerations of engineering design, and reasonable considerations of financial costs.

“Municipal stormwater NPDES permit” means the permit issued to the City under the federal Clean Water Act for public drainage systems within the City limits.

22.801.150 “N”

“Native vegetation” means “native vegetation” as defined in Section 25.09.520.

“New hard surface” means a surface that is: changed from a pervious surface to a hard surface (e.g., converting lawn to permeable pavement, resurfacing by upgrading from dirt to gravel, a bituminous surface treatment (“chip seal”), asphalt, concrete, or a hard surface structure); or upgraded from gravel to chip seal, asphalt, concrete, or a hard surface structure; or from a hard surface to a hard surface structure. Note that if asphalt or concrete has been overlaid by a chip seal, the existing condition should be considered as asphalt or concrete.

“New impervious surface” means a surface that is: changed from a pervious surface to an impervious surface (e.g., resurfacing by upgrading from dirt to gravel, a bituminous surface treatment (“chip seal”), asphalt, concrete or an impervious structure); or upgraded from gravel to chip seal, asphalt, concrete, or an impervious structure; or from a impervious surface to an impervious structure. Note that if asphalt or concrete has been overlaid by a chip seal, the existing condition should be considered as asphalt or concrete.

“Non-listed creeks” means any creek not identified in the definition of “Listed creeks” in Section 22.801.130.

“NPDES” means National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System, the national program for controlling discharges under the federal Clean Water Act.

“NPDES permit” means an authorization, license or equivalent control document issued by the EPA or Ecology to implement the requirements of the NPDES program.

“Nutrient-critical receiving water” means a surface water or water segment that is determined to be impaired due to phosphorus contributed by stormwater, as ~~((prescribed))~~ specified in rules promulgated by the Director of SPU which shall be based on consideration of waterbodies reported by Ecology, and approved by EPA, under Category 5 (impaired) under Section 303(d) of the Clean Water Act for total phosphorus through Ecology’s Water Quality Assessment.

* * *

22.801.170 “P”

“Parcel-based project” means any project that is not a roadway project, single-family residential project, sidewalk project, or trail project. The boundary of the public right-of-way shall form the boundary between the parcel and roadway portions of a project.

“Person” means an individual, receiver, administrator, executor, assignee, trustee in bankruptcy, trust estate, firm, partnership, joint venture, club, company, joint stock company, business trust, municipal corporation, the State of Washington, political subdivision or agency of the State of Washington, public authority or other public body, corporation, limited liability company, association, society or any group of individuals acting as a unit, whether mutual, cooperative, fraternal, nonprofit or otherwise, and the United States or any instrumentality thereof.

“Pervious surface” means a surface that is not impervious. See also ((;)) “impervious surface.” ((;))

“Phosphorus treatment facility” means a drainage control facility designed to reduce concentrations of phosphorus in drainage water.

“Plan” means a graphic or schematic representation, with accompanying notes, schedules, specifications and other related documents, or a document consisting of checklists, steps, actions, schedules, or other contents that has been prepared pursuant to this subtitle, such as a site plan, drainage control plan, construction stormwater control plan, stormwater pollution prevention plan, or integrated drainage plan.

“Pollution-generating activity” means any activity that is regulated by the joint ((SPU/DPD)) SPU/SDCI Directors’ Rule titled “Seattle Stormwater Manual” at “Volume 4 - Source Control” or any activity with similar impacts on drainage water. These activities include, but are not limited to: cleaning and washing activities; transfer of liquid or solid material; production and application activities; dust, soil, and sediment control; commercial animal care and handling; log sorting and handling; boat building, mooring, maintenance, and repair; logging and tree removal; mining and quarrying of sand, gravel, rock, peat, clay, and other materials; cleaning and maintenance of swimming pool and spas; deicing and anti-icing operations for airports and streets; maintenance and management of roof and building drains at manufacturing and commercial buildings; maintenance and operation of railroad yards; maintenance of public and utility corridors and facilities; and maintenance of roadside ditches.

“Pollution-generating hard surface” means those hard surfaces considered to be a significant source of pollutants in drainage water. See definition of pollution-generating impervious surface in this Section 22.801.170 for surfaces that are considered significant sources of pollutants in drainage water. In addition, permeable pavement subject to vehicular use or other pollutants as described in the definition for pollution-generating impervious surfaces is a pollution-generating hard surface.

“Pollution-generating impervious surface” means those impervious surfaces considered to be a significant source of pollutants in drainage water. Such surfaces include those that are subject to any of the following: vehicular use; ((ertain)) industrial activities; ((or)) storage of erodible or leachable materials, wastes, or chemicals, and ((which)) that receive direct rainfall or the run-on or blow-in of rainfall. ((;)) Such surfaces also include roofs subject to venting of significant sources of pollutants ((;)) and metal

roofs unless coated with an inert, non-leachable material (e.g., baked-on enamel coating).

A surface, whether paved or not, shall be considered subject to vehicular use if it is regularly used by motor vehicles. The following are considered regularly ((-)) used surfaces: roads; unvegetated road shoulders; bike lanes within the traveled lane of a roadway; driveways; parking lots; unfenced fire lanes; vehicular equipment storage yards; rail lines and railways; and airport runways.

The following are not considered regularly ((-)) used by motor vehicles: sidewalks and trails not subject to drainage from roads for motor vehicles; paved bicycle pathways separated from and not subject to drainage from roads for motor vehicles; fenced fire lanes; and infrequently used maintenance access roads with recurring routine vehicle use of no more than once per day.

“Pollution-generating pervious surface” means any ((~~non-impervious~~)) pervious surface subject to any of the following: vehicular use; ((-)) industrial activities; ((~~-or~~)) storage of erodible or leachable materials, wastes, or chemicals, and that ((~~receives~~)) receive direct rainfall or run-on or blow-in of rainfall; ((-)) use of pesticides and fertilizers; ((-)) or loss of soil. Typical pollution-generating pervious surfaces include lawns, landscaped areas, golf courses, parks, cemeteries, and sports fields (natural and artificial turf).

“Pre-developed condition” means the vegetation and soil conditions that are used to determine the allowable post-development discharge peak flow rates and flow durations, such as pasture or forest.

“Private drainage system” means a drainage system that is not a public drainage system.

“Project” means ((~~the addition or replacement of hard surface or the undertaking of land disturbing activity on a site~~)) any proposed action to alter or develop a site. Development is a type of project.

“Project site” means that portion of a property, properties, or rights-of-way subject to ((~~addition or replacement of hard surface or the undertaking of land disturbing activity~~)) land disturbing activities, new hard surfaces, or replaced hard surfaces.

“Public combined sewer” means a publicly owned and maintained system which carries drainage water and wastewater and flows to a publicly owned treatment works.

“Public drainage system” means a drainage system owned or operated by ((~~the~~)) The City of Seattle.

“Public place” means and includes streets, avenues, ways, boulevards, drives, places, alleys, sidewalks, and planting (parking) strips, squares, triangles and right-of-way for public use and the space above or beneath its surface, whether or not opened or improved.

“Public sanitary sewer” means the sanitary sewer that is owned or operated by ((~~the~~)) The City of Seattle.

“Public storm drain” means the part of a public drainage system that is wholly or partially piped, owned or operated by a

City agency and designed to carry only drainage water.

22.801.190 “R”

“Real property” means “real property” as defined in Chapter 3.110.

“Receiving water” means the surface water, such as a creek, stream, river, lake, wetland or marine water, or groundwater, receiving drainage water. Drainage systems and public combined sewers are not receiving waters.

“Repeat violation” means a prior violation of this subtitle within the preceding five years that became a final order or decision of the Director or a court. The violation does not need to be the same nor occur on one site to be considered repeat.

“Replaced hard surface” or “replacement of hard surface” means, for structures, the removal down to the foundation and replacement (~~((of hard surfaces down to the foundation))~~) and, for other hard surfaces, the removal down to existing subgrade or base course and replacement.

“Replaced impervious surface” or “replacement of impervious surface” means, for structures, the removal down to the foundation and replacement (~~((of impervious surfaces down to the foundation))~~) and, for other impervious surfaces, the removal down to existing subgrade or base course and replacement.

“Responsible party” means all of the following persons:

1. Owners, operators, and occupants of property; and
2. Any person causing or contributing to a violation of the provisions of this subtitle.

“Right-of-way” means “right-of-way” as defined in Section 23.84A.032.

“Roadway” means “roadway” as defined in Section 23.84A.032.

“Roadway project” means a project located in the public right-of-way that involves the creation of a new or replacement of an existing roadway or alley. The boundary of the public right-of-way shall form the boundary between the parcel and roadway portions of a project.

“Runoff” means the portion of rainfall or other precipitation that becomes surface flow and interflow.

22.801.200 “S”

“Sanitary sewer” means a system that conveys wastewater and is not designed to convey drainage water.

“SDCI” means the Seattle Department of Construction and Inspections.

“SDOT” means the Seattle Department of Transportation.

“Service drain” means “service drain” as defined in Section 21.16.030.

“Side sewer” means “side sewer” as defined in Section 21.16.030.

“Sidewalk” means “sidewalk” as defined in Section 23.84A.036.

“Sidewalk project” means a project for the creation of a new sidewalk or replacement of an existing sidewalk, including any associated planting strip, apron, curb ramp, curb, or gutter, and necessary roadway grading and repair. If the total new plus replaced hard surface in the roadway exceeds 10,000 square feet, the entire project is a roadway project.

“Single-family residential project” means a project that constructs one Single-family Dwelling Unit as defined in subsection 23.84A.032, ((pursuant to Section 23.44.006.A)) and any associated accessory dwelling unit located in land classified as being Single-family Residential 9,600 (SF 9600), Single-family Residential 7,200 (SF 7200), or Single-family Residential 5,000 (SF 5000) pursuant to Section 23.30.010, and the total new plus replaced hard surface is less than ~~((10,000))~~ 5,000 square feet. ~~((, and the total new plus replaced pollution-generating hard surface is less than 5,000 square feet.))~~

“Site” means the ~~((lot or parcel, or portion of street, highway or other right-of-way, or contiguous combination thereof, where development is proposed or performed))~~ area defined by the legal boundaries of a parcel or parcels of land subject to development. For roadway projects, the length of the project site and the right-of-way boundaries define the site.

“Slope” means an inclined ground surface.

“Small lakes” means Bitter Lake, Green Lake and Haller Lake.

“Small project” means a project with:

1. Less than 5,000 square feet of new and replaced hard surface; and
2. Less than one acre of land disturbing activities.

“SMC” means the Seattle Municipal Code.

“Soil” means naturally deposited non-rock earth materials.

“Solid waste” means “solid waste” as defined in Section 21.36.016.

“Source controls” means structures or operations that prevent contaminants from coming in contact with drainage water through physical separation or careful management of activities that are known sources of pollution.

“SPU” means Seattle Public Utilities.

“Standard design” is a design pre-approved by the Director for drainage and erosion control available for use at a site with pre-defined characteristics.

“Standard Plans and Specifications” means the City of Seattle Standard Plans and Specifications for Road, Bridge, and Municipal Construction in effect on the date of permit application.

“Storm drain” means both public storm drain and service drain.

“Stormwater” means runoff during and following precipitation and snowmelt events, including surface runoff, drainage and interflow.

“Stream” means a ((Type 2-5)) Type S, F, Np or Ns water as defined in WAC 222-16-031, or as defined in WAC 222-16-030 after state water type maps are adopted, and is used synonymously with “creek.”

* * *

Section 3. Chapter 22.803 of the Seattle Municipal Code, last amended by Ordinance 124872, is amended as follows:

Chapter 22.803 MINIMUM REQUIREMENTS FOR ALL DISCHARGES AND ALL REAL PROPERTY

* * *

22.803.020 Minimum Requirements for All Discharges and Real Property

A. Requirement to provide documentation and to map infrastructure. The owner is required to make plans, procedures, and schedules required by this subtitle available to the Director when requested. When requested to aid in applying the Stormwater Code, the owner must provide to the Director a complete map of all drainage, side sewer, and plumbing infrastructure on the property.

B. Requirement to report spills, releases, or dumping. A responsible party is required to, at the earliest possible time, but in any case within 24 hours of discovery, report to the Director of SPU a spill, release, dumping, or other situation that has contributed or is likely to contribute pollutants to a public drainage system, a private drainage system, or a receiving water. This reporting requirement is in addition to, and not instead of, any other reporting requirements under federal, state or local laws.

C. Requirements to maintain facilities. All treatment facilities, flow control facilities, drainage control facilities, and drainage systems shall be maintained as ((prescribed)) specified in rules promulgated by the Director in order for these facilities and systems to be kept in continuous working order.

D. Requirements for disposal of waste from maintenance activities. Disposal of waste from maintenance of drainage control facilities shall be conducted in accordance with federal, state and local regulations, including the Minimum Functional Standards for Solid Waste Handling, Chapter 173-304 WAC, guidelines for disposal of waste materials, and, where appropriate, Dangerous Waste Regulations, Chapter 173-303 WAC.

E. Requirements to maintain records of installation and maintenance activities. When a drainage control facility is installed, the party having the facility installed shall make records of the installation and shall identify the party (or parties) responsible for maintenance and operations. The parties shall retain a continuous record of all maintenance and repair activities, and shall retain the records for at least ten years. If a transfer of ownership occurs, these records of installation, repair, and maintenance shall be transferred to the new property owner. These records shall be made available to the Director of SPU during inspection of the facility

and at other reasonable times upon request of the Director of SPU.

22.803.030 Minimum Requirements for Source Controls for All Real Property

For all discharges, responsible parties shall implement and maintain source controls to prevent or minimize pollutants from leaving a site or property. Source controls that are required for all real property include, but are not limited to, the following, as further described in rules promulgated by the Director:

A. Eliminate Illicit ~~((or Prohibited))~~ Connections and Illicit Discharges. It is the responsibility of the property owner or other responsible party to ensure that all plumbing connections are properly made and that only connections conveying stormwater or permissible discharges pursuant to Section 22.802.030 are connected to the drainage system. When requested to aid in applying the Stormwater Code, the owner must provide to the Director a complete map of all stormwater and plumbing infrastructure on the property.

B. Perform Routine Maintenance ~~((of Drainage System))~~. All drainage system components, including, but not limited to, catch basins, flow control facilities, treatment facilities, on-site BMPs, and unimproved drainage pathways shall be kept in continuous working order.

C. Dispose of Fluids and Wastes Properly. Solid and liquid wastes must be disposed of in a manner that minimizes the risk of contaminating stormwater.

D. Proper Storage of Solid Wastes. Solid wastes must be stored in a manner that minimizes the risk of contaminating stormwater.

E. Spill Prevention and Cleanup. All property owners having the potential to spill pollutants shall take measures to prevent spills of pollutants and to properly clean up spills that might occur.

F. Provide Oversight and Training for Staff. For businesses and public entities, annually train all employees responsible for the operation, maintenance, or inspection of BMPs, assign oversight responsibilities, and maintain records.

G. ~~((Site))~~ Property Maintenance. For businesses and public entities, locate pollution-generating activities away from stormwater pathways where feasible and engage in proper site maintenance to prevent pollutant transport off site, including but not limited to sweeping paved areas and inspecting loading, unloading, storage and parking areas.

H. Rooftop Dog Runs. Dog runs located on private property on rooftops or above-grade plazas must prevent stormwater from the dog run from discharging directly or indirectly to a public drainage system, private drainage system, or receiving water body.

22.803.040 Minimum Requirements for Source Controls For Businesses and Public Entities for Specific Activities

A. For all discharges, source controls shall be implemented, to extent allowed by law, by businesses and public entities for

the following specific pollution-generating activities as specified in the joint SPU/SDCI Directors' Rule titled "Seattle Stormwater Manual" at "Volume 4 - Source Control," to the extent necessary to prevent prohibited discharges as described in subsection 22.802.020.A through subsection 22.802.020.D, and to prevent contaminants from coming in contact with drainage water or being discharged to the drainage system, public combined sewer, or directly into receiving waters:

1. Fueling at dedicated stations, for new or substantially altered fueling stations.
2. Mobile fueling of vehicles and heavy equipment.
3. In-water and over-water fueling.
4. Maintenance and repair of vehicles and equipment.
5. Concrete and asphalt mixing and production.
6. Concrete pouring, concrete/asphalt cutting, and asphalt application.
7. Recycling, wrecking yard, and scrap yard operations.
8. Storage of liquids in aboveground tanks.

Source controls include, but are not limited to, segregating or isolating wastes to prevent contact with drainage water; enclosing, covering, or containing the activity to prevent contact with drainage water; developing and implementing inspection and maintenance programs; sweeping; and taking management actions such as training employees on pollution prevention.

B. For all discharges except those that drain only to the public combined sewer, source controls shall be implemented, to the extent allowed by law, by businesses and public entities for specific pollution-generating activities as specified in the joint ((SPU/DPD)) SPU/SDCI Directors' Rule titled "Seattle Stormwater Manual" at "Volume 4 - Source Control," to the extent necessary to prevent prohibited discharges as described in subsection 22.802.020.A through subsection 22.802.020.C, and to prevent contaminants from coming in contact with drainage water or being discharged to the drainage system or directly into receiving waters. Source controls include, but are not limited to, segregating or isolating wastes to prevent contact with drainage water; enclosing, covering, or containing the activity to prevent contact with drainage water; developing and implementing inspection and maintenance programs; sweeping; and taking management actions such as training employees on pollution prevention.

Section 4. Chapter 22.805 of the Seattle Municipal Code, last amended by Ordinance 124919, is amended as follows:

Chapter 22.805 MINIMUM REQUIREMENTS FOR ALL PROJECTS

22.805.010 General

- A. All projects are required to comply with this chapter, even where drainage control review is not required.
- B. Closely related projects shall be considered as one project for purposes of applying the Stormwater Code, including but

not limited to determining whether the thresholds for applicability of particular Stormwater Code minimum requirements are met. The Director shall determine whether two or more projects are closely related as specified in the joint SPU/SDCI Directors' Rule titled "Seattle Stormwater Manual" at "Volume 1 - Project Minimum Requirements."

C. When an application requires preliminary drainage review according to subsection 22.807.020.A, applications for building permits, grading permits, and other construction permits on the site receiving preliminary drainage review shall comply with the provisions of the approved preliminary drainage control plan.

D. In the case of a subdivision under Chapter 23.22 and short plat under Chapter 23.24, unless an adjustment pursuant to subsection 22.800.040.B is approved by the Director, for the purposes of applying the thresholds in Chapter 22.805, the hard surface coverage is the maximum lot coverage allowed per Subtitle III of Title 23, Land Use Code, plus required and proposed pedestrian and vehicular access and amenities, including driveways, walkways, plazas, and patios identified on the preliminary drainage control plan and associated preliminary site plan.

E. Construction of drainage control facilities and drainage systems for plats

1. In the case of a subdivision under Chapter 23.22, drainage control facilities or drainage systems that are identified on the associated preliminary drainage control plan or the approved preliminary plat and will serve multiple proposed lots, parcels, tracts, or rights-of-way shall be constructed prior to approval of the final plat unless a bond is provided according to subsection 23.22.070.C. If a bond is provided in lieu of construction prior to approval of the final plat, the construction permit for the facilities or systems must be issued prior to issuance of any building permit for any other construction within the subdivision and construction of the facilities or systems shall be completed and final inspection approved prior to final inspection approval of any building permit for any other construction within the subdivision and prior to occupancy of any buildings, but in no event later than two years after final plat approval.

2. In the case of a short plat under Chapter 23.24 with shared drainage control facilities or drainage systems that are identified on the preliminary drainage control plan and will serve multiple proposed lots, parcels, tracts, or rights-of-way, the following shall occur:

a. The construction permit for the shared facilities or systems shall be issued prior to issuance of any building permit for any other construction within the lots, parcels, tracts, or rights-of-way served by the shared facilities or systems;
and

b. Construction of the shared facilities or systems shall be completed and final inspection approved prior to final inspection approval of any building permit for any other construction within the lots, parcels, tracts, or rights-of-way served by

the shared facilities, and prior to occupancy of any buildings on these lots, parcels, or tracts.

((B)) E. No discharge from a site, real property, or drainage facility, directly or indirectly to a public drainage system, private drainage system, or a receiving water within or contiguous to Seattle city limits, may cause or contribute to a prohibited discharge or a known or likely violation of water quality standards in the receiving water or a known or likely violation of the City's municipal stormwater NPDES permit.

((C)) G. Every permit issued to implement this subtitle shall contain a performance standard requiring that no discharge from a site, real property, or drainage facility, directly or indirectly to a public drainage system, private drainage system, or a receiving water within or contiguous to Seattle city limits, cause or contribute to a prohibited discharge or a known or likely violation of water quality standards in the receiving water or a known or likely violation of the City's municipal stormwater NPDES permit.

22.805.020 Minimum requirements for all projects

A. Minimum Requirements for Maintaining Natural Drainage Patterns. For all projects, natural drainage patterns shall be maintained and discharges shall occur at the natural location to the maximum extent feasible and consistent with subsection 22.805.020.B. Drainage water discharged from the site shall not cause a significant adverse impact to receiving waters or down-gradient properties. Drainage water retained or infiltrated on the site shall not cause significant adverse impact to up-gradient or down-gradient properties.

B. Minimum Requirements for Discharge Point. The discharge point for drainage water from each site shall be selected using criteria that shall include, but not be limited to, preservation of natural drainage patterns and whether the capacity of the drainage system is adequate for the flow rate and volume. For those projects meeting the drainage review threshold, the proposed discharge point shall be identified in the drainage control plan required by this subtitle, for review and approval or disapproval by the Director.

C. Minimum Requirements for Flood-prone Areas. On sites within flood-prone areas, responsible parties are required to employ procedures to minimize the potential for flooding on the site and to minimize the potential for the project to increase the risk of floods on adjacent or nearby properties. Flood control measures shall include those set forth in other titles of the Seattle Municipal Code and rules promulgated thereunder, including, but not limited to, Chapter 23.60 (Shoreline District), Chapter 25.06 (Floodplain Development) and Chapter 25.09 (Environmentally Critical Areas) of the Seattle Municipal Code.

D. Minimum Requirements for Construction ((Site)) Stormwater Pollution Prevention ((Control)) Plan. Temporary and permanent construction controls shall be used to accomplish the following minimum requirements. All projects are required to meet each of the elements below or document why an element is not applicable. Additional controls may be required by the Director when minimum controls are not sufficient to prevent erosion or transport of sediment or other pollutants from the site.

1. Mark Clearing Limits and Environmentally Critical Areas. Within the boundaries of the project site and prior to beginning land disturbing activities, including clearing and grading, clearly mark all clearing limits, easements, setbacks, all environmentally critical areas and their buffers, and all trees and drainage courses that are to be preserved within the construction area.

2. Retain Top Layer. Within the boundaries of the project site, the duff layer, topsoil, and native vegetation, if there is any, shall be retained in an undisturbed state to the maximum extent feasible. If it is not feasible to retain the top layer in place, it should be stockpiled on-site, covered to prevent erosion, and replaced immediately upon completion of the land disturbing activities to the maximum extent feasible.

3. Establish Construction Access. Limit construction vehicle access, whenever possible, to one route. Stabilize access points and minimize tracking sediment onto public roads. Promptly remove any sediment tracked off site.

4. Protect Downstream Properties and Receiving Waters. Protect properties and receiving waters downstream from the development sites from erosion due to increases in the volume, velocity, and peak flow rate of drainage water from the project site. If it is necessary to construct flow control facilities to meet this requirement, these facilities shall be functioning prior to implementation of other land disturbing activity. If permanent infiltration facilities are used to control flows during construction, these facilities shall be protected from siltation during the construction phase of the project.

5. Prevent Erosion and Sediment Transport from the Site. Pass all drainage water from disturbed areas through a sediment trap, sediment pond, or other appropriate sediment removal BMP before the water leaves the site or prior to discharge to an infiltration facility. Sediment controls intended to trap sediment on site shall be constructed as one of the first steps in grading and shall be functional before other land disturbing activities take place. BMPs intended to trap sedimentation shall be located in a manner to avoid interference with the movement of juvenile salmonids attempting to enter off-channel areas or drainages. Provide and maintain natural buffers around surface waters, direct stormwater to vegetated areas to increase sediment removal and maximize stormwater infiltration where feasible.

6. Prevent Erosion and Sediment Transport from the Site by Vehicles. Whenever construction vehicle access routes intersect paved roads, the transport of sediment onto the paved road shall be minimized. If sediment is transported onto a paved road surface, the roads shall be cleaned thoroughly at the end of each day. Sediment shall be removed from paved roads by shoveling or sweeping and shall be transported to a controlled sediment disposal area. If sediment is tracked off site, roads shall be cleaned thoroughly at the end of each day, or at least twice daily during wet weather. Street washing is allowed only after sediment is removed, and street wash wastewater shall be prevented from entering the drainage system and receiving waters.

7. Stabilize Soils. Prevent on-site erosion by stabilizing all exposed and unworked soils, including stock piles and earthen structures such as dams, dikes, and diversions. From October 1 to April 30, no soils shall remain exposed and unworked for more than two days. From May 1 to September 30, no soils shall remain exposed for more than seven days. Soils shall be stabilized at the end of the shift before a holiday or weekend if needed based on the weather forecast. Soil stockpiles shall be stabilized from erosion, protected with sediment trapping measures, and be located away from storm drain inlets, waterways, and drainage channels. Before the completion of the project, permanently stabilize all exposed soils that have been disturbed during construction.

8. Protect Slopes. Erosion from slopes shall be minimized. Cut and fill slopes shall be designed and constructed in a manner that will minimize erosion. Off-site stormwater run-on or groundwater shall be diverted away from slopes and undisturbed areas with interceptor dikes, pipes, and/or swales. Pipe slope drains or protected channels shall be constructed at the top of slopes to collect drainage and prevent erosion. Excavated material shall be placed on the uphill side of trenches, consistent with safety and space considerations. Check dams shall be placed at regular intervals within constructed channels that are cut down a slope.

9. Protect Storm Drains. Prevent sediment from entering all storm drains, including ditches that receive drainage water from the project. Storm drain inlet protection devices shall be cleaned or removed and replaced as recommended by the product manufacturer, or more frequently if required to prevent failure of the device or flooding. Storm drain inlets made operable during construction shall be protected so that drainage water does not enter the drainage system without first being filtered or treated to remove sediments. Storm drain inlet protection devices shall be removed at the conclusion of the project. When manufactured storm drain inlet protection devices are not feasible, inlets and catch basins must be cleaned as necessary to prevent sediment from entering the drainage control system.

10. Stabilize Channels and Outlets. All temporary on-site drainage systems shall be designed, constructed, and stabilized to prevent erosion. Stabilization shall be provided at the outlets of all drainage systems that is adequate to prevent erosion of outlets, adjacent stream banks, slopes, and downstream reaches.

11. Control Pollutants. Measures shall be taken to control potential pollutants and shall include, but not be limited to, the following measures:

a. All pollutants, including sediment, waste materials, and demolition debris, that occur ~~((onsite))~~ on site shall be handled and disposed of in a manner that does not cause contamination of drainage water and pursuant to all applicable disposal laws.

b. Containment, cover, and protection from vandalism shall be provided for all chemicals, liquid products, petroleum products, and other materials that have the potential to pose a threat to human health or the environment.

c. On-site fueling tanks shall include secondary containment.

d. Maintenance, fueling, and repair of heavy equipment and vehicles involving oil changes, hydraulic system drain down, solvent and de-greasing cleaning operations, fuel tank drain down and removal, and other activities which may result in discharge or spillage of pollutants to the ground or into drainage water runoff shall be conducted using spill prevention and control measures.

e. Contaminated soils shall be removed and surfaces shall be cleaned immediately following any discharge or spill incident.

f. Wheel wash or tire bath wastewater shall be discharged to a separate on-site treatment system that prevents discharge to surface water, (~~(such as closed-loop recirculation or upland application,)~~) or to the sanitary sewer or combined sewer system with approval of the Director of SPU. Temporary discharges or connections to the public sanitary and combined sewers shall be made in accordance with Chapter 21.16 (Side Sewer Code).

g. Application of fertilizers and pesticides shall be conducted in a manner and at application rates that will not result in loss of chemical to drainage water. Manufacturers' label requirements for application rates and procedures shall be followed.

h. BMPs shall be used to prevent or treat contamination of drainage water by pH-modifying sources. These sources include, but are not limited to, recycled concrete stockpiles, bulk cement, cement kiln dust, fly ash, new concrete washing and curing waters, waste streams generated from concrete grinding and sawing, exposed aggregate processes, and concrete pumping and mixer washout waters. Construction site operators may be required to adjust the pH of drainage water if necessary to prevent a violation of water quality standards.

i. Construction site operators must obtain written approval from Ecology prior to using chemical treatment other than carbon dioxide (CO₂) (~~(or)~~) dry ice, or food grade vinegar, to adjust pH.

j. Uncontaminated water from water-only based shaft drilling for construction of building, road, and bridge foundations may be infiltrated provided the wastewater is managed in a way that prevents discharge to surface waters. Prior to infiltration, water from water-only based shaft drilling that comes into contact with curing concrete must be neutralized until pH is in the range of 6.5 to 8.5 (su).

k. Train all employees on proper BMPs for preventing illicit discharges, including spills.

12. Control Dewatering. When dewatering devices discharge on site, to a public drainage system, or to the public combined sewer, dewatering devices shall discharge into a sediment trap, sediment pond, gently sloping vegetated area of sufficient

length to remove sediment contamination, or other sediment removal BMP. Foundation, vault, and trench dewatering waters must be discharged into a controlled drainage system prior to discharge to a sediment trap or sediment pond. Clean, non-turbid dewatering water, such as well-point groundwater, that is discharged to systems tributary to state surface waters must not cause erosion or flooding. Highly turbid or contaminated dewatering water shall be handled separately from drainage water. For any project with an excavation depth of 12 feet or more below the existing grade and for all large projects, dewatering flows must be determined and it must be verified that there is sufficient capacity in the public drainage system and public combined sewer prior to discharging.

13. Maintain BMPs. All temporary and permanent erosion and sediment control BMPs shall be maintained and repaired as needed to assure continued performance of their intended function. All temporary erosion and sediment controls shall be removed within five days after final site stabilization is achieved or after the temporary controls are no longer needed, whichever is later. Trapped sediment shall be removed or stabilized on site. Disturbed soil areas resulting from removal shall be permanently stabilized.

14. Inspect BMPs. BMPs shall be periodically inspected. For projects with 5,000 square feet or more of new plus replaced hard surface or 7,000 square feet or more of land disturbing activity, site inspections shall be conducted by a Certified Erosion and Sediment Control Lead who shall be identified prior to construction and shall be present on-site or on-call at all times.

15. Execute Construction Stormwater Control Plan. Construction site operators shall maintain, update, and implement their Construction Stormwater Control Plan. Construction site operators shall modify their Construction Stormwater Control Plan to maintain compliance whenever there is a change in design, construction, operation, or maintenance at the site that has, or could have, a significant effect on the discharge of pollutants to waters of the state.

16. Minimize Open Trenches. In the construction of underground utility lines, where feasible, no more than 150 feet of trench shall be opened at one time, unless soil is replaced within the same working day, and where consistent with safety and space considerations, excavated material shall be placed on the uphill side of trenches. Trench dewatering devices shall discharge into a sediment trap or sediment pond.

17. Phase the Project. Development projects shall be phased to the maximum extent feasible in order to minimize the amount of land disturbing activity occurring at the same time and shall take into account seasonal work limitations.

18. Install Flow Control and Water Quality Facilities. Development projects required to comply with Section 22.805.080 (Minimum Requirements for Flow Control) or Section 22.805.090 (Minimum Requirements for Treatment) shall install permanent flow control and water quality facilities to prevent erosion or transport of sediment or other pollutants from the site during construction.

19. Protect Stormwater BMPs

a. Protect all stormwater BMPs from sedimentation through installation and maintenance of erosion and sediment control BMPs. Restore the BMPs to their fully functioning condition if they accumulate sediment during construction.

Restoring the stormwater BMP must include removal of sediment and any sediment-laden stormwater BMP soils, and replacing the removed soils with soils meeting the design specification.

b. Prevent compacting on-site BMPs by excluding construction equipment and foot traffic. Protect completed lawn and landscaped areas from compaction due to construction equipment.

c. Control erosion and avoid introducing sediment from surrounding land uses onto permeable pavements. Do not allow muddy construction equipment on the base material or pavement. Do not allow sediment-laden runoff onto permeable pavements or base materials.

d. Permeable pavements fouled with sediments or no longer passing an initial infiltration test must be cleaned until infiltrating per design or replaced.

e. Keep all heavy equipment off existing soils under on-site BMPs that have been excavated to final grade, to retain the infiltration rate of the soils.

* * *

I. Install Source Control BMPs. Source control BMPs shall be installed for discharges, properties, and by businesses and public entities for specific pollution-generating activities as specified in Chapter 22.803 and in the joint ((SPU/DPD)) SPU/SDCI Directors' Rule titled "Seattle Stormwater Manual" at "Volume 4 - Source Control," to the extent necessary to prevent prohibited discharges as described in Section 22.802.020 and to prevent contaminants from coming in contact with drainage water. This requirement applies to the pollution-generating activities that are stationary or occur in one primary location and to the portion of the site being developed. Examples of installed source controls include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. A roof, awning, or cover erected over the pollution-generating activity area;
2. Ground surface treatment in the pollution-generating activity area to prevent interaction with, or breakdown of, materials used in conjunction with the pollution-generating activity;
3. Containment of drainage from the pollution-generating activity to a closed sump or tank. Contents of such a sump or tank must be pumped or hauled by a waste handler, or treated prior to discharge to a public drainage system; ((-))
4. Construct a berm or dike to enclose or contain the pollution-generating activities;
5. Direct drainage from containment area of pollution-generating activity to a closed sump or tank for settling and

appropriate disposal, or treat prior to discharging to a public drainage system;

6. Pave, treat, or cover the containment area of pollution-generating activities with materials that will not interact with or break down in the presence of other materials used in conjunction with the pollution-generating activity; and

7. Prevent precipitation from flowing or being blown onto containment areas of pollution-generating activities.

* * *

L. Extension of the Public Drainage System for Projects Not Constructed in the Public Right-of-Way. For projects not constructed in the public right-of-way, extension of the piped public drainage system across the full extent of the parcel boundary in the abutting public place shall be required for any of the following:

1. All projects where the Director has determined an extension is required considering, but not limited to, the following attributes of the project:

a. Poses a hazard to public health, safety, or welfare;

b. Endangers any property;

c. Adversely affects the safety and operation of public right-of-way, utilities, or other property owned or maintained by the City;

d. Adversely affects the functions and values of an environmentally critical area or buffer;

e. Adversely affects an area with known erosion or flooding problems; or

f. Adversely affects receiving waters, any properties, or right-of-way.

2. All projects with 5,000 square feet or more of new plus replaced hard surface, unless:

a. The piped public drainage system is already accessible within an abutting public place to each existing, proposed, or adjusted parcel; or

b. The project is otherwise not required to extend by rules promulgated by the Director.

M. Extension of the Public Drainage System for Projects Constructed in the Public Right-of-Way. For projects constructed in the public right-of-way, extension of the piped public drainage system across the full extent of the site shall be required for any of the following:

1. All projects where the Director has determined an extension is required considering, but not limited to, the following attributes of the project:

a. Poses a hazard to public health, safety, or welfare;

b. Endangers any property;

c. Adversely affects the safety and operation of City right-of-way, utilities, or other property owned or maintained by the City;

d. Adversely affects the functions and values of an environmentally critical area or buffer;

e. Adversely affects an area with known erosion or flooding problems; or

f. Adversely affects receiving waters, any properties, or right-of-way.

2. The project's total new plus replaced hard surface is 50 percent or more of the existing hard surfaces within the project limits. The project limits are defined by the length of the project and the width of the right-of-way. If a project encompasses more than one intersection, the project limits are further defined by one intersection to the other and blocks may vary in length, unless:

a. The piped public drainage system is already accessible within the site across the full extent of the site; or

b. The project is otherwise not required to extend by rules promulgated by the Director.

N. Public Drainage System Requirements. Public drainage systems shall be constructed in accordance with the City's Standard Plans and Specifications, SPU's Design Standards and Guidelines, and as specified in rules promulgated by the Director of SPU.

22.805.030 Minimum Requirements for Single-Family Residential Projects

A. Soil Amendment. Retain and protect undisturbed soil in areas not being developed, and prior to completion of the project, amend all new, replaced, and disturbed topsoil (including construction lay-down areas) with organic matter to the extent required by and in compliance with the rules promulgated by the Director.

B. On-site Stormwater Management. Single-family residential projects shall meet the Minimum Requirements for On-site Stormwater Management contained in Section 22.805.070, to the extent allowed by law, if:

1. For a project on a lot most recently created, adjusted, altered, or otherwise amended by a plat or other lawful document recorded with the King County Recorder on or after January 1, 2016, and where that document either created the lot or (~~reduced~~) altered the size of the lot, either the total new plus replaced hard surface is 750 square feet or more or land disturbing activity is 7,000 square feet or more; or

2. For any other project, either the total new plus replaced hard surface is 1,500 square feet or the land disturbing activity is 7,000 square feet or more.

* * *

22.805.050 Minimum Requirements for Parcel-Based Projects

A. Soil Amendment. Retain and protect undisturbed soil in areas not being developed, and prior to completion of the project, amend all new, replaced, and disturbed topsoil (including construction lay-down areas) with organic matter to the extent required by and in compliance with the rules promulgated by the Director.

B. On-site Stormwater Management. Parcel-based projects shall meet the Minimum Requirements for On-site Stormwater Management contained in Section 22.805.070, to the extent allowed by law, if:

1. For a project on a lot most recently created, adjusted, altered, or otherwise amended by a plat or other lawful document recorded with the King County Recorder on or after January 1, 2016, and where that document either created the lot or (~~reduced~~) altered the size of the lot, either the total new plus replaced hard surface is 750 square feet or more or land disturbing activity is 7,000 square feet or more; or

2. For any other project, either the total new plus replaced hard surface is 1,500 square feet or more or the land disturbing activity is 7,000 square feet or more.

C. Flow Control. Parcel-based projects shall meet the minimum requirements for flow control contained in Section 22.805.080, to the extent allowed by law, as prescribed below.

1. Discharges to Wetlands. Parcel-based projects discharging into a wetland, or to the drainage basin of a wetland, shall:

a. Comply with Section 22.805.020 (Minimum requirements for all projects), including, but not limited to subsection 22.805.020.E (Protect Wetlands).

b. (~~comply~~) Comply with the minimum requirements for wetland protection contained in subsection 22.805.080.B.1 (Wetland Protection Standards) if:

(~~a.~~) 1) The total new plus replaced hard surface is 5,000 square feet or more; or

(~~b.~~) 2) The project converts 3/4 acres or more of vegetation to lawn or landscaped areas, and from the project there is a surface discharge into a natural or (~~man-made~~) constructed conveyance system from the site; or

(~~c.~~) 3) The project converts 2.5 acres or more of native vegetation to pasture and from the project there is a surface discharge into a natural or (~~man-made~~) constructed conveyance system from the site.

2. Discharges to Listed Creek Basins. Parcel-based projects discharging into Blue Ridge Creek, Broadview Creek, Discovery Park Creek, Durham Creek, Frink Creek, Golden Gardens Creek, Kiwanis Ravine/Wolfe Creek, Licton Springs Creek, Madrona Park Creek, Mee-Kwa-Mooks Creek, Mount Baker Park Creek, Puget Creek, Riverview Creek, Schmitz Creek, Taylor Creek, or Washington Park Creek, or to the drainage basin of such creek, shall:

a. Comply with subsection 22.805.080.B.2 (Pre-developed Forested Standard) if the existing hard surface coverage is less than 35 percent and one or more of the following apply:

1) The project adds 5,000 square feet or more of new hard surface and the total new plus replaced hard surface is 10,000 square feet or more; or

2) The project converts 3/4 acres or more of vegetation to lawn or landscaped areas, and from the project there is a surface discharge into a natural or ~~((man-made))~~ constructed conveyance system from the site; or

3) The project converts 2.5 acres or more of native vegetation to pasture, and from the project there is a surface discharge into a natural or ~~((man-made))~~ constructed conveyance system from the site; or

4) The project adds 5,000 square feet or more of new hard surface and, through a combination of effective hard surfaces and converted pervious surfaces, causes a ~~((0.1))~~ 0.15 cubic feet per second increase in the 100-year recurrence interval flow frequency as estimated using a continuous model approved by the Director.

b. Comply with subsection 22.805.080.B.3 (Pre-developed Pasture Standard) if the criteria in subsection 22.805.050.C.2.a do not apply and one or more apply:

1) ~~((the))~~ The total new plus replaced hard surface is ~~((2,000))~~ 5,000 square feet or more; ~~((:))~~ or

2) The project converts 3/4 acres or more of vegetation to lawn or landscaped areas, and from the project there is a surface discharge into a natural or constructed conveyance system from the site; or

3) The project converts 2.5 acres or more of native vegetation to pasture, and from the project there is a surface discharge into a natural or constructed conveyance system from the site.

3. Discharges to Non-listed Creek Basins. Parcel-based projects discharging into a creek not listed in subsection 22.805.050.C.2, or to the drainage basin of such creek, shall:

a. Comply with subsection 22.805.080.B.2 (Pre-developed Forested Standard) if the existing land cover is forested and one or more of the following apply:

1) The project adds 5,000 square feet or more of new hard surface and the total new plus replaced hard surface is 10,000 square feet or more; or

2) The project converts 3/4 acres or more of vegetation to lawn or landscaped areas, and from the project there is a surface discharge into a natural or ~~((man-made))~~ constructed conveyance system from the site; or

3) The project converts 2.5 acres or more of native vegetation to pasture, and from the project there is a surface discharge into a natural or ~~((man-made))~~ constructed conveyance system from the site; or

4) The project adds 5,000 square feet or more of new hard surface and, through a combination of effective (~~(impervious)~~) hard surfaces and converted pervious surfaces, causes a (~~(0.1)~~) 0.15 cubic feet per second increase in the 100-year recurrence interval flow frequency as estimated using a continuous model approved by the Director.

b. Comply with subsection 22.805.080.B.3 (Pre-developed Pasture Standard) if the criteria in subsection 22.805.050.C.3.a do not apply and one or more of the following apply:

1) (~~(the)~~) The total new plus replaced hard surface is (~~(2,000)~~) 5,000 square feet or more; (~~(-)~~) or

2) The project converts 3/4 acres or more of vegetation to lawn or landscaped areas, and from the project there is a surface discharge into a natural or constructed conveyance system from the site; or

3) The project converts 2.5 acres or more of native vegetation to pasture, and from the project there is a surface discharge into a natural or constructed conveyance system from the site.

4. Discharges to Small Lake Basins. Parcel-based projects discharging into Bitter Lake, Green Lake, or Haller Lake, or to the drainage basin of such lake, shall comply with subsection (~~(22.805.080.B.4)~~) 22.805.080.B.5 (Peak Control Standard) if the total new plus replaced hard surface is 2,000 square feet or more.

5. Discharges to Public Combined Sewer. Unless the Director of SPU has determined that the public combined sewer has sufficient capacity to carry existing and anticipated loads, parcel-based projects discharging into the public combined sewer or its basin shall comply with subsection (~~(22.805.080.B.4)~~) 22.805.080.B.5 (Peak Control Standard) if the total new plus replaced hard surface is (~~(10,000)~~) 5,000 square feet or more.

6. Discharges to a Capacity-constrained System. In addition to applicable minimum requirements for flow control in subsection 22.805.050.C.1 through subsection 22.805.050.C.5, parcel-based projects discharging into a capacity-constrained system or its basin shall also comply with subsection (~~(22.805.080.B.4)~~) 22.805.080.B.5 (Peak Control Standard) if the total new plus replaced hard surface is 2,000 square feet or more unless the downstream system only includes ditches or culverts and the system has been determined to have sufficient capacity as specified in subsection 22.805.020.H (Ensure Sufficient Capacity).

7. Discharges from Groundwater. In addition to applicable minimum requirements for flow control in subsection 22.805.050.C.1 through subsection 22.805.050.C.6, parcel-based projects that will permanently discharge groundwater to a public drainage system or to a public combined sewer shall also comply with subsection (~~(22.805.080.B.4)~~) 22.805.080.B.5 (Peak Control Standard) if the total new plus replaced hard surface is 2,000 square feet or more.

D. Treatment. Parcel-based projects not discharging to the public combined sewer shall comply with the minimum requirements for treatment contained in Section 22.805.090 for flows from the total new plus replaced pollution-generating hard

surface and the new plus replaced pollution-generating pervious surface, to the extent allowed by law, if:

1. The total new plus replaced pollution-generating hard surface is 5,000 square feet or more; or
2. The total new plus replaced pollution-generating pervious surfaces is 3/4 acres or more, and from the project

there is a surface discharge in a natural or ~~((man-made))~~ constructed conveyance system from the site.

22.805.060 Minimum Requirements for Roadway Projects

A. Soil Amendment. Retain and protect undisturbed soil in areas not being developed, and prior to completion of the project, amend all new, replaced, and disturbed topsoil (including construction lay-down areas) with organic matter to the extent required by and in compliance with the rules promulgated by the Director.

B. On-Site Stormwater Management. All roadway projects with 2,000 square feet or more of new plus replaced hard surface or 7,000 square feet or more of land disturbing activity shall meet the Minimum Requirements for On-site Stormwater Management contained in Section 22.805.070, to the extent allowed by law, except as provided in subsection 22.805.060.E.

C. Flow Control. Roadway projects shall meet the minimum requirements for flow control contained in Section 22.805.080, to the extent allowed by law, as prescribed below, except as provided in subsection 22.805.060.E.

1. Discharges to Wetlands. Roadway projects discharging into a wetland or to the drainage basin of a wetland, shall:

a. Comply with Section 22.805.020 (Minimum requirements for all projects), including, but not limited to subsection 22.805.020.E (Protect Wetlands).

b. ~~((comply))~~ Comply with the minimum requirements for wetland protection contained in subsection 22.805.080.B.1 (Wetland Protection Standards) if the existing hard surface coverage is less than 35 percent and one or more of the following apply:

~~((a-))~~ 1) The total new plus replaced hard surface is 5,000 square feet or more; or

~~((b-))~~ 2) The project converts 3/4 acres or more of vegetation to lawn or landscaped areas, and from the project there is a surface discharge into a natural or ~~((man-made))~~ constructed conveyance system from the site; or

~~((c-))~~ 3) The project converts 2.5 acres or more of native vegetation to pasture and from the project there is a surface discharge into a natural or ~~((man-made))~~ constructed conveyance system from the site.

c. Comply with the minimum requirements for wetland protection contained in subsection 22.805.080.B.1 (Wetland Protection Standards) if the existing hard surface coverage is greater than or equal to 35 percent and one or more of the following apply:

1) The total new hard surface is 10,000 square feet or more; or

2) The project converts 3/4 acres or more of vegetation to lawn or landscaped areas, and from the project there is a surface discharge into a natural or constructed conveyance system from the site; or

3) The project converts 2.5 acres or more of native vegetation to pasture and from the project there is a surface discharge into a natural or constructed conveyance system from the site.

2. Discharges to Listed Creek Basins. Roadway projects discharging into Blue Ridge Creek, Broadview Creek, Discovery Park Creek, Durham Creek, Frink Creek, Golden Gardens Creek, Kiwanis Ravine/Wolfe Creek, Licton Springs Creek, Madrona Park Creek, Mee-Kwa-Mooks Creek, Mount Baker Park Creek, Puget Creek, Riverview Creek, Schmitz Creek, Taylor Creek, or Washington Park Creek, or to the drainage basin of such creek, shall:

a. Comply with subsection 22.805.080.B.2 (Pre-developed Forested Standard) if the existing hard surface coverage is less than 35 percent and one or more of the following apply:

1) The project adds 5,000 square feet or more of new hard surface and the total new plus replaced hard surface is 10,000 square feet or more; or

2) The project converts 3/4 acres or more of vegetation to lawn or landscaped areas, and from the project there is a surface discharge into a natural or ~~((man-made))~~ constructed conveyance system from the site; or

3) The project converts 2.5 acres or more of native vegetation to pasture, and from the project there is a surface discharge into a natural or ~~((man-made))~~ constructed conveyance system from the site; or

4) The project adds 5,000 square feet or more of new hard surface and, through a combination of effective hard surfaces and converted pervious surfaces, causes a ~~((0.1))~~ 0.15 cubic feet per second increase in the 100-year recurrence interval flow frequency as estimated using a continuous model approved by the Director.

b. Comply with subsection ~~((22.805.080.B.3 (Pre-developed Pasture Standard)))~~ 22.805.080.B.4 (Existing Condition Standard) if the criteria in subsection 22.805.060.C.2.a do not apply and the total new ~~((plus replaced))~~ hard surface is 10,000 square feet or more, ~~((-))~~ and:

1) If the new hard surface adds 50 percent or more to the existing hard surfaces within the project limits, comply with subsection 22.805.080.B.4 (Existing Condition Standard) for the flows from the total new plus replaced hard surfaces. The project limits are defined by the length of the project and the width of the right-of-way; or

2) If the new hard surface adds less than 50 percent to the existing hard surfaces within the project limits, comply with subsection 22.805.080.B.4 (Existing Condition Standard) for the flows from the total new hard surfaces. The project limits are defined by the length of the project and the width of the right-of-way.

3. Discharges to Non-listed Creek Basins. Roadway projects discharging into a creek not listed in subsection 22.805.060.C.2, or to the drainage basin of such creek, shall:

a. Comply with subsection 22.805.080.B.2 (Pre-developed Forested Standard) if the existing land cover is forested and one or more of the following apply:

1) The project adds 5,000 square feet or more of new hard surface and the total new plus replaced hard surface is 10,000 square feet or more; or

2) The project converts 3/4 acres or more of vegetation to lawn or landscaped areas, and from the project there is a surface discharge into a natural or ~~((man-made))~~ constructed conveyance system from the site; or

3) The project converts 2.5 acres or more of native vegetation to pasture, and from the project there is a surface discharge into a natural or ~~((man-made))~~ constructed conveyance system from the site; or

4) The project adds 5,000 square feet or more of new hard surface and, through a combination of effective hard surfaces and converted pervious surfaces, causes a ~~((0.1))~~ 0.15 cubic feet per second increase in the 100-year recurrence interval flow frequency as estimated using a continuous model approved by the Director.

b. Comply with subsection ~~((22.805.080.B.3 (Pre-developed Pasture Standard)))~~ 22.805.080.B.4 (Existing Condition Standard) if the criteria in subsection 22.805.060.C.3.a do not apply and the total new ~~((plus replaced))~~ hard surface is 10,000 square feet or more, ~~((=))~~ and:

1) If the new hard surface adds 50 percent or more to the existing hard surfaces within the project limits, comply with subsection 22.805.080.B.4 (Existing Condition Standard) for the flows from the total new plus replaced hard surfaces. The project limits are defined by the length of the project and the width of the right-of-way; or

2) If the new hard surface adds less than 50 percent to the existing hard surfaces within the project limits, comply with subsection 22.805.080.B.4 (Existing Condition Standard) for the flows from the total new hard surfaces. The project limits are defined by the length of the project and the width of the right-of-way.

4. Discharges to Small Lake Basins. ~~((Projects))~~ Roadway projects discharging into Bitter Lake, Green Lake, or Haller Lake, or to the drainage basin of such lake, shall comply with subsection 22.805.080.B.4 ~~((Peak Control Standard)))~~ (Existing Condition Standard) if the total new ~~((plus replaced))~~ hard surface is 10,000 square feet or more, ~~((=))~~ and:

a. If the new hard surface adds 50 percent or more to the existing hard surfaces within the project limits, comply with subsection 22.805.080.B.4 (Existing Condition Standard) for the flows from the total new plus replaced hard surfaces. The project limits are defined by the length of the project and the width of the right-of-way; or

b. If the new hard surface adds less than 50 percent to the existing hard surfaces within the project limits, comply with subsection 22.805.080.B.4 (Existing Condition Standard) for the flows from the total new hard surfaces. The project limits are defined by the length of the project and the width of the right-of-way.

~~((5. Discharges to Public Combined Sewer. Unless the Director of SPU has determined that the public combined sewer has sufficient capacity to carry existing and anticipated loads, roadway projects discharging into the public combined sewer or its basin shall comply with subsection 22.805.080.B.4 (Peak Control Standard) if the total new plus replaced hard surface is 10,000 square feet or more.~~

6) 5. Discharges to a Capacity-constrained System. In addition to applicable minimum requirements for flow control in subsection 22.805.060.C.1 through subsection ((22.805.060.C.5)) 22.805.060.C.4, roadway projects discharging into a capacity-constrained system or its basin shall also comply with subsection 22.805.080.B.4 ((Peak Control Standard)) (Existing Condition Standard) if the total new ((plus replaced)) hard surface is 10,000 square feet or more unless the downstream system only includes ditches or culverts and has been determined to have sufficient capacity as specified in 22.805.020.H (Ensure Sufficient Capacity).

~~((7. Discharges from Groundwater. In addition to applicable minimum requirements for flow control in subsection 22.805.060.C.1 through subsection 22.805.060.C.6, roadway projects that will permanently discharge groundwater to a public drainage system or to a public combined sewer shall also comply with subsection 22.805.080.B.4 (Peak Control Standard) if the total new plus replaced hard surface is 10,000 square feet or more.))~~

D. Treatment. Roadway projects not discharging to the public combined sewer shall, to the extent allowed by law, except as provided in subsection 22.805.060.E:

1. If the site has less than 35 percent existing hard surface coverage, and the project's total new plus replaced pollution-generating hard surface is 5,000 square feet or more, comply with the minimum requirements for treatment contained in Section 22.805.090 for flows from the total new plus replaced pollution-generating hard surface and new plus replaced pollution-generating pervious surface; and

2. If the site has greater than or equal to 35 percent existing ((impervious)) hard surface coverage and the project's total new pollution-generating hard surface is 5,000 square feet or more, and

a. If the new pollution-generating hard surface adds 50 percent or more to the existing hard surfaces within the project limits, comply with the minimum requirements for treatment contained in Section 22.805.090 for flows from the total new plus replaced pollution-generating hard surface and new plus replaced pollution-generating pervious surface. The project limits are

defined by the length of the project and the width of the right-of-way; or

b. If the new pollution-generating hard surface adds less than 50 percent to the existing hard surfaces within the project limits, comply with the minimum requirements for treatment contained in Section 22.805.090 for flows from the total new pollution-generating hard surface and new pollution-generating pervious surface. The project limits are defined by the length of the project and the width of the right-of-way; and

3. If the total new plus replaced pollution-generating pervious surfaces is 3/4 acres or more, and from the project there is a surface discharge in a natural or ~~((man-made))~~ constructed conveyance system from the site, comply with the minimum requirements for treatment contained in Section 22.805.090 for flows from the total new plus replaced pollution-generating pervious surface and the new plus replaced pollution-generating hard surface.

E. For a roadway project that adds less than 50 percent to the existing hard surface within the project limits on a site having greater than 35 percent existing hard surface coverage, the requirements of subsections 22.805.060.B, 22.805.060.C and 22.805.060.D to install drainage control facilities are modified based on infeasibility to the degree that ~~((a))~~ (1) complete installation would require that an existing major publicly or privately ~~((-))~~ owned infrastructure or utility element be relocated, or ~~((b))~~ (2) the drainage control facility cannot be built and operated to discharge stormwater from the site under gravity flow conditions while meeting the applicable engineering standards. Compliance with subsections 22.805.060.B, 22.805.060.C and 22.805.060.D is required to the degree that the project can avoid the infeasibility described in this subsection 22.805.060.E. Standard drainage ~~((control))~~ review and approval shall be required whenever this subsection is used, whether or not Section 22.800.070 applies.

1. The following are considered existing major infrastructure or utility elements:

- a. Gravity flow pipe greater than or equal to 24 inches in diameter or gravity flow pipe which cannot be relocated to discharge under gravity flow conditions;
- b. High-pressure gas pipe;
- c. Pressure gas pipe greater than 8 inches in diameter;
- d. Any other pressure pipe greater than 12 inches in diameter (e.g., water or steam);
- e. Duct banks, vaults, or handholes, for underground electrical, fiber optic, or telecommunication services;
- f. Bridge, building, or tunnel structural foundations; and
- g. Foundations for walls greater than 6 feet in height or 15 feet in length.

22.805.070 Minimum Requirements for ~~((On-Site))~~ On-site Stormwater Management

A. Applicability. The requirements of this subsection 22.805.070 apply as required in Section 22.805.030 to Section

22.805.060.

B. Requirements. On-site stormwater management shall be installed to the extent allowed by law and maintained in compliance with the rules promulgated by the Director to receive flows from that portion of the site being developed and shall:

1. Comply with either:

- a. Subsection 22.805.070.C (On-site Performance Standard); or
- b. Subsection 22.805.070.D (On-site Lists).

C. On-site Performance Standard:

1. If the existing hard surface coverage is less than 35 percent and the project discharges to a listed creek, or to the drainage basin of such creek:

a. The post-development discharge durations shall match the discharge durations of a pre-developed forested condition for the range of pre-developed discharge rates from 8 percent of the 2-year peak flow to 50 percent of the 2-year peak flow.

2. For all other projects:

a. The post-development discharge durations shall match the discharge durations of a pre-developed pasture condition for the range of pre-developed discharge rates between the 1 percent and 10 percent exceedance values.

D. On-site Lists:

1. For each project surface, follow the appropriate project table in subsection 22.805.070.D.2 to subsection 22.805.070.D.5 to evaluate on-site BMPs shown for that type of surface, by category. The project tables apply to roofs and other hard (non-roof) surfaces. All on-site BMPs used must comply with the rules promulgated by the Director. For each surface, consider all of the applicable on-site BMPs in the first category. Use any that is considered feasible. If none is feasible for that surface, move on to each successive category and repeat the selection process as necessary. Once one on-site BMP is used for a surface, no other on-site BMP is necessary for that surface. If no BMP in the appropriate categories is feasible, then no further evaluation is required for that surface under this subsection 22.805.070.D.1. Feasibility shall be determined by evaluation against:

a. Design criteria, minimum size, limitations, and infeasibility criteria identified for each BMP in this subsection and the rules promulgated by the Director; and

b. Competing Needs: Subsection 22.805.070.D (On-site Lists) can be superseded or reduced by the Director if the installation of the BMPs is in conflict with:

- 1) Any of the following federal or state laws, rules, and standards, as may be amended or

superseded: Historic Preservation and Archaeology Laws identified in subsection 22.805.070.E (Historic Preservation and Archaeology Laws), Federal Superfund or Washington State Model Toxics Control Act, Federal Aviation Administration requirements for airports, the Americans with Disabilities Act, and related rules and standards; or

2) Special zoning district design criteria adopted and being implemented pursuant to a community planning process. Special zoning districts include, for example, historic and preservation districts, pedestrian zone overlays, station area overlays, special review districts, multifamily residential zones, urban centers and urban villages, and master planned communities. Specific criteria in these areas include, but are not limited to, minimum Floor Area Ratio standards; zero lot line development; usable open space requirements; minimum sidewalk width and required bicycle facilities; alley, loading, and access requirements; pitched roof standards; and street-level development standards for modulation and projections; or

3) Public health and safety standards; or

4) Transportation regulations to maintain the option for future expansion or multi-modal use of public rights-of-way; or

5) Chapter 15.43 (Tree and Vegetation Management in Public Places); Chapter 25.09 (Regulations for Environmentally Critical Areas); Chapter 25.11 (Tree Protection); and Chapter 23.60A (Standards for Vegetation in the Shoreline Master Plan).

2. For single-family residential projects, Table A for 22.805.070 applies.

Table A for 22.805.070 On-site List for Single-family Residential Projects		
Category	BMPs	All Discharge Locations
1	Full Dispersion	R, S
	Infiltration Trenches	R, S ^d
	((Dry Wells)) <u>Drywells</u>	R, S ^d
2	Rain Gardens ^a	R, S
	Infiltrating Bioretention	R, S
	Rainwater Harvesting-Category 2 ^b	X ^b
	Permeable Pavement Facilities	R, S
	Permeable Pavement Surfaces	S
	Sidewalk/Trail Compost-Amended	S
3	Sheet Flow Dispersion	R, S
	Concentrated Flow Dispersion	S
	Splashblock Downspout Dispersion	R
	Trench Downspout Dispersion	R
	((Non-infiltrating Bioretention))	((R, S))

	((Vegetated Roofs))	((X))
4	Non-infiltrating Bioretention	R, S
	Rainwater Harvesting-Category 4	X ^e
	Vegetated Roofs	X
((4)) 5	Single-family Residential Cisterns	R
	Perforated Stub-out Connections	R
	((Newly Planted)) Trees	S

Note that subsection 22.805.070.D.1 requires consideration of all on-site BMPs in a category for feasibility before moving on to each successive category as necessary. Within a category, BMPs may be considered in any order. Key to Table A for 22.805.070 R = Evaluation is required for all roof runoff from Single-family residential projects. S = Evaluation is required for all other hard (non-roof) surfaces of Single-family residential projects, unless otherwise noted below. X = Evaluation is not required but is allowed. ^a Installation is only allowed for projects with less than 5,000 square feet of hard surface infiltrating on the project site. ^b Category 2 rainwater harvesting shall be sized to meet the on-site performance standard, subsection 22.805.070.C. ^c Category 4 rainwater harvesting shall be sized to reduce the runoff volume by 25 percent or more on an annual average basis. ^d Evaluation of other hard (non-roof) surfaces is not required but is allowed.

3. For trail and sidewalk projects, Table B for 22.805.070 applies.

Table B for 22.805.070 On-site List for Trail and Sidewalk Projects				
Category	BMPs	Projects Discharging to a Receiving Water Designated by Section 22.801.050, or its Basin	Projects Discharging to a Public Combined Sewer or Capacity-Constrained System or its Basin	Projects Discharging to a Designated Receiving Water, or its Basin
1	Full Dispersion	S	S	S
2	Rain Gardens	S	S	X
	Permeable Pavement Facilities	X	X ^a	X ^{a, b}
	Permeable Pavement Surfaces	S	S ^a	X ^{a, b}

	<u>Sidewalk/Trail</u>	<u>S</u>	<u>S</u>	<u>X</u>
	<u>Compost-Amended Strip</u>			
3	Sheet Flow Dispersion	S	S	S
	Concentrated Flow Dispersion	S	S	S
4	<u>Trees</u>	<u>S</u>	<u>S</u>	<u>S</u>

Note that subsection 22.805.070.D.1 requires consideration of all on-site BMPs in a category for feasibility before moving on to each successive category as necessary. Within a category, BMPs may be considered in any order. Key to Table B for 22.805.070 S = Evaluation is required for all surfaces of trail or sidewalk projects. X = Evaluation is not required for trail or sidewalk projects. ^a Minimum permeable pavement area allowed in right-of-way is 2,000 square feet of pavement within the project site. ^b Installation is not allowed in the right-of-way if new plus replaced pollution-generating hard surface area is less than 2,000 square feet of pavement within the project site. ^c Does not include any project discharging to a receiving water not designated by Section 22.801.050, or its basin, even if the project discharges to a capacity-constrained system or its basin.

4. For parcel-based projects, Table C for 22.805.070 applies.

Table C for 22.805.070 On-site List for Parcel-based Projects			
Category	BMPs	Projects Discharging to Water Not Designated by 22.801.050, Public Comb or Capacity-constrained its Basin	Projects Discharging to a Designated Receiving Water or its Basin
1	Full Dispersion	R, S	R, S
	Infiltration Trenches	R, S ^g	R, S ^g
	((Dry Wells)) <u>Drywells</u>	R, S ^g	R, S ^g
2	Rain Gardens	R ^a , S ^a	R ^a , S ^a
	Infiltrating Bioretention	R, S	R, S
	Rainwater Harvesting -Category 2 Sizing	((R^b)) <u>X^e</u>	X ^e

	Permeable Pavement Facilities	R, S	R, S
	Permeable Pavement Surfaces	S	S
	<u>Sidewalk/Trail Compost-Amended Strip</u>	<u>S</u>	<u>S</u>
3	Sheet Flow Dispersion	R, S	R, S
	Concentrated Flow Dispersion	S	S
	Splashblock Downspout Dispersion	R	R
	Trench Downspout Dispersion	R	R
	((Non-infiltrating Bioretention))	((R, S))	((R, S))
	((Vegetated Roofs))	((R^e))	((X))
4	Non-infiltrating Bioretention	R ^d , S ^d	R ^d , S ^d
	<u>Rainwater Harvesting-Category 4 Sizing</u>	<u>R^{b, f}</u>	<u>X^f</u>
	<u>Vegetated Roofs</u>	<u>R^e</u>	<u>X</u>
((4)) <u>5</u>	Perforated Stub-out Connections	R	R
	((Newly Planted)) Trees	S	S

Note that subsection 22.805.070.D.1 requires consideration of all on-site BMPs in a category for feasibility before moving on to each successive category as necessary. Within a category, BMPs may be considered in any order. Key to Table C for 22.805.070 R = Evaluation is required for all roof runoff from parcel-based projects. S = Evaluation is required for all other hard (non-roof) surfaces of parcel-based projects, unless otherwise noted below. X = Evaluation is not required but is allowed. ^a ~~((Installation is only allowed for projects not required))~~ Rain gardens cannot be used to meet Section 22.805.080 (Minimum Requirements for Flow Control) or Section 22.805.090 (Minimum Requirements for Treatment) ((and with less than)) or for areas of 5,000 square feet or more ((of)) hard surface infiltrating on the project site. ^b Evaluation is not required for projects with less than ~~((10,000))~~ 20,000 square feet of new plus replaced rooftop surface. ^c Evaluation is not required for projects with less than 5,000 square feet of new plus replaced rooftop surface. ^d Water quality treatment BMPs sized to meet Section 22.805.090 (Minimum Requirements for Treatment) may be installed in lieu of non-infiltrating bioretention unless the project discharges to a public combined sewer basin. ^e Category 2 rainwater harvesting shall be sized to meet the on-site performance standard, subsection 22.805.070.C. ^f Category 4 rainwater harvesting shall be sized to reduce the runoff volume by 25 percent or more on an annual average basis. ^g Evaluation of other hard (non-roof) surfaces is not required but is allowed.

5. For roadway projects, Table D for 22.805.070 applies.

Table D for 22.805.070 On-site List for Roadway Projects

Category	BMPs	Projects Discharging to a Receiving Water Not Designated by Section 22.801.050, its Basin	Projects Discharging to a Public Combined Sewer or Capacity-constrained System, its Basin	Projects Discharging to a Designated Receiving Water or its Basin
1	Full Dispersion	S	S	S
2	Rain Gardens	S ^a	S ^a	S ^a
	Infiltrating Bioretention	S	S ^b	S ^{b, c}
	Permeable Pavement Facilities	X ^d	X ^{e, f}	X ^{c, e, f}
	Permeable Pavement Surfaces	S ^d	S ^{e, f}	((S)) X ^{c, e, f}
	Sidewalk/Trail Compost-Amended Strip	S ^e	S ^e	S ^e
3	Sheet Flow Dispersion	S	S	S
	Concentrated Flow Dispersion	S	S	S
4	Trees	S	S	S

Note that subsection 22.805.070.D.1 requires consideration of all on-site BMPs in a category for feasibility before moving on to each successive category as necessary. Within a category, BMPs may be considered in any order. Key to Table D for 22.805.070 S = Evaluation is required for all surfaces of Roadway Projects. X = Evaluation is not required for Roadway Projects, but is allowed. ^a (~~Installation is only allowed for projects not required~~) Rain gardens cannot be used to meet Section 22.805.080 (Minimum Requirements for Flow Control) or Section 22.805.090 (Minimum Requirements for Treatment) (~~and with less than~~) or for areas of 5,000 square feet or more ((~~of~~)) hard surface infiltrating on the project site. ^b Minimum bioretention cell size top area in right-of-way is 500 square feet (including pre-settling area). Evaluation is only required and installation only allowed when contributing area is sufficient to warrant minimum bioretention cell size in right-of-way. ^c Evaluation is not required, and installation is not allowed, if new plus replaced pollution-generating hard surface is less than 2,000 square feet. ^d Evaluation of roadway surfaces is not required, and installation is not allowed, if roadway is an arterial street/collector. ^e Evaluation of roadway surfaces, including alleys, is not required and installation is not allowed. ^f Minimum permeable pavement area allowed in right-of-way is 2,000 square feet of pavement within the project site. ^g Does not include any project discharging to a receiving water not designated by Section 22.801.050, or its basin, even if the project discharges to a capacity-constrained system or its basin.

E. Historic Preservation and Archaeology Laws. For use with subsection 22.805.070.D.1.b.1:

1. Federal Laws on Historic Preservation:

- a. 16 U.S.C. 470, et seq. (National Historic Preservation Act);
- b. 36 CFR Part 60 (National Register of Historic Places);
- c. 36 CFR Part 61 (Procedures for State, Tribal, and Local Government Historic

Preservation Programs);

- d. 36 CFR Part 63 (Determinations of Eligibility for Inclusion in the National Register of Historic Places);
- e. 36 CFR Part 65 (National Historic Landmarks Program);
- f. 36 CFR Part 68 (The Secretary of the Interior’s Standards for the Treatment of Historic Properties);
- g. Section 106 of National Historic Preservation Act;
- h. Secretary of the Interior’s Standards and Guidelines for Professional Qualifications Standards;
- i. Executive Order 11593 (Protection and Enhancement of the Cultural Environment);
- and
- j. Executive Order 13006 (Locating Federal Facilities in Historic Properties).

2. Washington State Laws on Historic Preservation:

- a. Archaeological and Cultural Resources (Executive Order 05-05);
- b. Advisory Council on Historic Preservation (WAC 25-12);
- c. Washington State Historic Building Code (RCW 19.27.120);
- d. Heritage Barn Program (RCW 27.34.400);
- e. State Historical Societies - Historic Preservation (RCW 27.34); and
- f. Abandoned and Historic Cemeteries and Historic Graves (RCW 68.60).

3. Federal Laws on Archaeology:

- a. 16 U.S.C. 470aa, et seq. (Archaeological Resources Protection Act of 1979);
- b. 16 U.S.C. 469 (Archaeological and Historic Preservation Act of 1974);
- c. 25 U.S.C. 3001, et seq. (Native American Graves Protection and Repatriation Act);
- and
- d. 16 U.S.C. 470, et seq. (National Historic Preservation Act).

4. Washington State Laws on Archaeology:

- a. Archaeological and Cultural Resources (Executive Order 05-05);
- b. Registration of Historic Archaeological Resources on State-Owned Aquatic Lands (WAC 25-46);
- c. Archaeological Excavation and Removal Permit (WAC 25-48);
- d. Indian Graves and Records (RCW 27.44);
- e. Archaeological Sites and Resources (RCW 27.53);
- f. Archaeological Site Public Disclosure Exemption (RCW 42.56.300);
- g. Abandoned and Historic Cemeteries and Historic Graves (RCW 68.60); and
- h. Archaeological Activities on State-owned Aquatic Lands-Agreements, Leases, or Other Conveyances (RCW 79.105.600).

5. City of Seattle Laws on Historic Preservation as listed below and historic districts that have been or may be designated by ordinance:

- a. Chapter 23.66 (Pioneer Square and International Special Review Districts);
- b. Chapter 25.12 (Landmarks Preservation);
- c. Chapter 25.16 (Ballard Avenue Landmark District);
- d. Chapter 25.20 (Columbia City Landmark District);
- e. Chapter 25.21 (Fort Lawton Landmark District);
- f. Chapter 25.22 (Harvard-Belmont Landmark District);
- g. Chapter 25.24 (Pike Place Market Historical District); and
- h. Chapter 25.32 (Table of Historical Landmarks).

22.805.080 Minimum Requirements for Flow Control

A. Applicability. The requirements of this subsection apply to the extent required in Section 22.805.050 to Section 22.805.060.

B. Requirements. Flow control facilities shall be installed to the extent allowed by law and maintained pursuant to rules promulgated by the Director to receive flows from that portion of the site being developed. Post-development discharge determination must include flows from dewatering activities. All projects shall use on-site BMPs identified in Section 22.805.070.D to the maximum extent feasible to meet the minimum requirements. Flow control facilities that receive flows from less than that portion of the site being developed may be installed if the total new plus replaced impervious surface is less than 10,000 square feet, the project site uses only on-site BMPs to meet the requirement, and the on-site BMPs (~~provides~~) provide substantially equivalent environmental protection as facilities not using on-site BMPs that receive flows from all of the portion of the site being developed.

1. Wetland Protection Standards. Protect the functions and values of wetlands and their buffers from all projects discharging stormwater directly or indirectly to them. The hydrologic conditions, vegetative community, and substrate characteristics of the wetlands shall be protected, and impacts caused by changes in water flows and pollutants shall be prevented. The introduction of sediment, heat and other pollutants and contaminants into wetlands shall be minimized through the selection, design, installation, and maintenance of temporary and permanent controls.

Before authorizing new discharges to a wetland, alternative discharge locations shall be evaluated and infiltration options outside the wetland shall be maximized unless doing so will adversely impact the functions and values of the affected wetlands. If one or more of the flow control requirements contained in subsections 22.805.080.B.2 through 22.805.080.B.4 also applies to the project, an analysis shall be conducted to ensure that the functions and values of the affected wetland are protected before implementing these flow control requirements.

Notwithstanding any provision in this subtitle, no net loss of wetland functions or values shall result from actions regulated by this subtitle.

Refer to the *Washington State Wetland Rating System for Western Washington: 2014 Update* (Hruby, 2014) to determine the category, characteristics, and habitat score of the wetland. Wetland classification shall be determined by a wetland professional per rules promulgated under subsection 25.09.330.C (Regulations for Environmentally Critical Areas).

a. Comply with subsection 22.805.080.B.1.c (Wetland Protection Standard-Method 1: Monitoring and Wetland Stage Modeling) if the following applies:

- 1) The project discharges to a Category I or II depressional or riverine impounding wetland; and
- 2) The project owner has legal access to the entire wetland for purposes of conducting monitoring

in the wetland.

b. Comply with subsection 22.805.080.B.1.d (Wetland Protection Standard-Method 2: Site Discharge

Modeling) if the criteria in subsection 22.805.080.B.1.a do not apply and one or more of the following applies (or applicability is unknown):

1) The wetland is Class I or II and does not meet the requirements of subsection 22.805.080.B.1.a.

2) The wetland is Class III or IV and:

a) Has a habitat score greater than 5;

b) Is interdunal and has special characteristics;

c) Provides habitat for rare, threatened, endangered, or sensitive species; or

d) Contains breeding population of any native amphibian. Per Ecology's guidance,

wetlands with permanent or seasonal ponding or inundation are assumed to have breeding population of native amphibian.

c. Wetland Protection Standard-Method 1: Monitoring and Wetland Stage Modeling. Comply with I-C.4, Wetland Hydroperiod Protection, presented in Appendix I-C of Ecology's *Stormwater Management Manual for Western Washington* (Ecology 2019).

Projects triggering Method 1 shall refer to I-C-5, Wetland Hydroperiod Data Collection and Evaluation Procedures, presented in Appendix I-C of Ecology's *Stormwater Management Manual for Western Washington* (Ecology 2019) for additional guidance.

d. Wetland Protection Standard-Method 2: Site Discharge Modeling. The total volume of stormwater discharging from the site into a wetland shall not be more than:

1) ~~((during a single precipitation event))~~ On a daily basis, 20 percent higher or lower than the pre-project volume, and

2) ~~((on))~~ On a monthly basis, 15 percent higher or lower than the pre-project volume.

~~((Before authorizing new discharges to a wetland, alternative discharge locations shall be evaluated and infiltration options outside the wetland shall be maximized unless doing so will adversely impact the functions and values of the affected wetlands. If one or more of the flow control requirements contained in 22.805.080.B.2 through 22.805.080.B.4 also apply to the project, an analysis shall be conducted to ensure that the functions and values of the affected wetland are protected before implementing these flow control requirements.))~~

Projects triggering ~~((this requirement))~~ Method 2 shall refer to ~~((Guide Sheets #1 through #3))~~ I-C-5, Wetland Hydroperiod Data Collection and Evaluation Procedures, presented in Appendix ~~((I-D))~~ I-C of Ecology's *Stormwater Management Manual for Western Washington* (Ecology ~~((2014))~~ 2019) for additional guidance. ~~((Notwithstanding any provision in~~

~~this subtitle, no net loss of wetland functions or values shall result from actions regulated by this subtitle.))~~

2. Pre-developed Forested Standard. The post-development discharge durations shall match the discharge durations of a pre-developed forested condition for the range of pre-developed discharge rates from 50 percent of the 2-year peak flow to the 50-year peak flow.

3. Pre-developed Pasture Standard. The post-development discharge durations shall match the discharge durations of a pre-developed pasture condition for the range of pre-developed discharge rates from 50 percent of the 2-year peak flow to the 2-year peak flow.

4. Existing Condition Standard.

a. The post-development discharge durations shall be limited as follows:

1) Match the discharge durations of the existing land cover condition for the range of discharge rates from 50 percent of the 2-year peak flow to the 25-year peak flow; and

2) For discharges to a creek or a creek drainage basin or to a small lake or a small lake basin, also match the discharge durations of the existing land cover condition for the range of discharge rates from 50 percent of the 2-year peak flow to the 50-year peak flow.

~~((4))~~ 5. Peak Control Standard. ~~((The post-development peak flow with a 4 percent annual probability (25-year recurrence flow) shall not exceed 0.4 cubic feet per second per acre. Additionally, the peak flow with a 50 percent annual probability (recurrence flow) shall not exceed 0.15 cubic feet per second per acre.))~~

a. The post-development release rates shall be limited as follows:

1) The peak flow with a 50 percent annual probability (2-year recurrence flow) shall not exceed 0.07 cubic feet per second per acre;

2) The peak flow with a 20 percent annual probability (5-year recurrence flow) shall not exceed 0.10 cubic feet per second per acre; and

3) The peak flow with a 4 percent annual probability (25-year recurrence flow) shall not exceed 0.40 cubic feet per second per acre.

C. Inspection and Maintenance Schedule. Temporary and permanent flow control facilities shall be inspected and maintained according to rules promulgated by the Director to keep these facilities in continuous working order.

22.805.090 Minimum Requirements for Treatment

A. Applicability. The requirements of this subsection apply to the extent required in Section 22.805.050 to Section

22.805.060.

B. Requirements. Water quality treatment facilities shall be installed to the extent allowed by law and maintained pursuant to rules promulgated by the Director to treat flows from the pollution-generating pervious and (~~(impervious)~~) hard surfaces on the site being developed. When stormwater flows from other areas, including non-pollution generating surfaces (e.g., roofs), dewatering activities, and off-site areas, cannot be separated or bypassed, treatment BMPs shall be designed for the entire area draining to the treatment facility. All projects shall use on-site BMPs identified in Section 22.805.070.D to the maximum extent feasible to meet the minimum requirements. For pollution-generating pervious surfaces other than artificial turf, a landscape management plan developed according to rules promulgated by the Director may be utilized in lieu of installing water quality treatment facilities.

1. Runoff Volume. Stormwater treatment facilities shall be designed based on the stormwater runoff volume from the contributing area or a peak flow rate as follows:

a. The daily runoff volume at or below which 91 percent of the total runoff volume for the simulation period occurs, as determined using an approved continuous model. It is calculated as follows:

1) Rank the daily runoff volumes from highest to lowest.

2) Sum all the daily volumes and multiply by 0.09.

3) Sequentially sum daily runoff volumes, starting with the highest value, until the total equals 9 percent of the total runoff volume. The last daily value added to the sum is defined as the water quality design volume.

b. Different design flow rates are required depending on whether a treatment facility will be located upstream or downstream of a detention facility:

1) For facilities located upstream of detention or when detention is not required, the design flow rate is the flow rate at or below which 91 percent of the total runoff volume for the simulation period is treated, as determined using an approved continuous runoff model.

2) For facilities located downstream of detention, the design flow rate (~~(is the release rate)~~) shall be the full 2-year release rate, as determined using an approved continuous runoff model.

c. Infiltration facilities designed for water quality treatment must infiltrate 91 percent of the total runoff volume as determined using an approved continuous runoff model. To prevent the onset of anaerobic conditions, an infiltration facility designed for water quality treatment purposes must be designed to drain the water quality design treatment volume (the 91st percentile, 24-hour volume) within 48 hours.

2. Basic Treatment. A basic treatment facility shall be required for all projects. The requirements of subsection

22.805.090.B.3 (Oil Control Treatment), subsection 22.805.090.B.4 (Phosphorus Treatment), and subsection 22.805.090.B.5 (Enhanced Treatment) are in addition to this basic treatment requirement.

3. Oil Control Treatment. An oil control treatment facility shall be required for high-use sites, as defined in this subtitle.

4. Phosphorus Treatment. A phosphorus treatment facility shall be required for projects discharging into nutrient-critical receiving waters.

5. Enhanced Treatment. ~~((An))~~ Unless a project discharges to a basic treatment receiving water (subsection 22.801.030 “B”), an enhanced treatment facility for reducing concentrations of dissolved metals shall be required for projects that discharge, directly or through conveyance systems, to fresh waters designated for aquatic life use or having an existing aquatic life use, or that use infiltration strictly for flow control (not treatment) and discharge within one-quarter mile of fresh waters designated for aquatic life use or having an existing aquatic life use, if the project meets one of the following criteria:

a. For a parcel-based project, the ~~((site))~~ project is ~~((an))~~ industrial, is commercial, or ~~((multi-family project))~~ proposes four or more dwelling units.

b. For a roadway project, the site is either:

1) A fully controlled or a partially controlled limited access highway with Annual Average Daily Traffic counts of 15,000 or more; or

2) Any other road with an Annual Average Daily Traffic count of 7,500 or greater.

6. Discharges to Groundwater. Direct discharge of untreated drainage water from pollution-generating hard surfaces to groundwater is prohibited.

C. Inspection and Maintenance Schedule. Temporary and permanent treatment facilities shall be inspected and maintained according to rules promulgated by the Director to keep these facilities in continuous working order.

Section 5. Chapter 22.807 of the Seattle Municipal Code, last amended by Ordinance 125248, is amended as follows:

Chapter 22.807 DRAINAGE CONTROL REVIEW AND APPLICATION REQUIREMENTS

* * *

22.807.020 Drainage control review and application requirements

A. Thresholds for Drainage Control Review. Drainage control review and approval ~~((shall be))~~ as described in subsection 22.807.020.B is required for any of the following:

1. Preliminary drainage review and approval is required for applications for the following approvals:

a. Subdivisions (Chapter 23.22);

b. Short plats (Chapter 23.24);

c. Unit lot subdivisions (Sections 23.22.062 and 23.24.045);

d. Lot boundary adjustments (Chapter 23.28); or

e. Master use permits that would allow development that includes 750 square feet or more of new plus replaced hard surface or 5,000 square feet of land disturbing activity where the Director has determined that a preliminary drainage review is required considering, but not limited, to the following attributes of the site:

1) Location within an environmentally critical area or buffer;

2) Proximity and tributary to an environmentally critical area or buffer; and

3) Proximity and tributary to an area with adequacy, erosion, water quality, or flooding problems.

~~(1)~~ 2. ~~Standard drainage ((control)) review and approval ((shall be))~~ is required for the following:

a. ~~((Any))~~ Applications other than those listed in subsection 22.807.020.A.1 that include any land disturbing activity encompassing an area of ((750)) 5,000 square feet or more, including demolition permits;

b. Applications for ~~((either))~~ a ~~((master use permit or))~~ building permit or other construction permit that ((includes the cumulative addition)) authorizes the construction or installation of 750 square feet or more of ~~((land disturbing activity and/or))~~ new ~~((and))~~ plus replaced ((impervious)) hard surface;

c. Applications for which a grading permit or approval is required pursuant to Chapter 22.170;

d. Applications for street use permits for the cumulative addition of 750 square feet or more of new ~~((and))~~ plus replaced ((impervious)) hard surface and land disturbing activity;

e. City public works projects or construction contracts, including contracts for day labor and other public works purchasing agreements, for the cumulative addition of 750 square feet or more of new ~~((and))~~ plus replaced ((impervious)) hard surface and/or land disturbing activity to the site, except for projects in a City-owned right-of-way and except for work performed for the operation and maintenance of park lands under the control or jurisdiction of the Department of Parks and Recreation;

f. ~~((Permit))~~ Applications for approvals and contracts that include any new or replaced ~~((impervious))~~ hard surface or any land disturbing activity on a site deemed a potentially hazardous location, as specified in Section 22.800.050 (Potentially Hazardous Locations);

g. ~~((Permit))~~ Applications for approvals that include any new ~~((impervious))~~ hard surface in a Category I peat settlement-prone area delineated pursuant to Section 25.09.012;

h. Whenever an exception to a requirement set forth in this Subtitle VIII or in a rule promulgated under this Subtitle VIII is desired, whether or not review and approval would otherwise be required, including, but not limited to, alteration of natural drainage patterns or the obstruction of watercourses; ~~((or))~~

i. Whenever roadway project infeasibility pursuant to subsection 22.805.060.E is applied, whether or not review and approval would otherwise be required; ~~((or))~~ or

j. Applications for approvals for activities or projects for:

1. Fueling at dedicated stations, for new or substantially altered fueling stations.

2. In-water and over-water fueling.

3. Maintenance and repair of vehicles and equipment.

4. Concrete and asphalt mixing and production.

5. Recycling, wrecking yard, and scrap yard operations.

6. Storage of liquids in aboveground tanks.

7. Other projects that the Director determines pose a hazard to public health, safety, or welfare;

endanger any property; adversely affect the safety and operation of City right-of-way, utilities, or other property owned or maintained by the City; or adversely affect the functions and values of an environmentally critical area or buffer.

~~((2))~~ 3. ((Large project)) Comprehensive drainage ((control)) review and approval ((shall be)) is required for ((projects)) applications other than those listed in subsection 22.807.020.A.1 that include:

a. ~~((5,000))~~ Five thousand square feet or more of new plus replaced hard surface;

b. ~~((1))~~ One acre or more of land disturbing activity;

c. Conversion of 3/4 acres or more of vegetation to lawn or landscaped area; or

d. Conversion of 2.5 acres or more of native vegetation to pasture.

B. For purposes of applying the thresholds in subsection 22.807.020.A, all closely related projects as determined according to subsection 22.805.010.B shall be counted towards the threshold.

~~((3))~~ C. The City may, by interagency agreement signed by the Directors of SPU and SDCI, waive the drainage and erosion control permit and document requirements for property owned by public entities, when discharges for the property do not enter the public drainage system or the public combined sewer system. Whether or not the public entities are required to obtain permits or submit documents, such entities are subject to the substantive requirements of this subtitle. ~~((, unless exceptions are granted as set forth in Section 22.800.040.))~~

~~(B)~~ D. Submittal Requirements for Drainage Control Review and Approval

1. Information Required for Preliminary Drainage Review. The following information shall be submitted to the Director for all projects for which preliminary drainage review is required:

a. Preliminary Site Plan. A site plan as set forth in rules promulgated by the Director.

b. Preliminary Drainage Control Plan. A drainage control plan that identifies all new and replaced hard surfaces, new and replaced pollution-generating hard surfaces, drainage control facilities, and best management practices for each lot, parcel, and tract of land within the project.

1) The preliminary drainage control plan shall include all drainage control facilities required to meet the minimum requirements for flow control (Section 22.805.080), water quality treatment (Section 22.805.090), and on-site stormwater management (Section 22.805.070), as well as all other best management practices to ensure drainage adequacy.

2) The preliminary drainage control plan shall be prepared by a licensed civil engineer in accordance with standards adopted by the Director, for projects that include any one or more of the following:

a. Five thousand square feet or more of new plus replaced hard surface;

b. One acre or more of land disturbing activity;

c. Conversion of 3/4 acres or more of vegetation to lawn or landscaped area;

d. Conversion of 2.5 acres or more of native vegetation to pasture; or

e. No accessible off-site discharge point.

c. Submittals identified by rule. Additional information shall be submitted to the Director to comply with the requirements of this subtitle and rules promulgated hereunder and to accomplish the purposes of this subtitle.

~~((4))~~ 2. Information Required for Standard Drainage (~~(Control)~~) Review. The following information shall be submitted to the Director for all projects for which standard drainage (~~(control)~~) review is required.

a. Site Plan. A site plan shall be submitted to the Director.

b. Standard Drainage Control Plan. A drainage control plan shall be submitted to the Director. Standard designs for drainage control facilities as set forth in rules promulgated by the Director may be used. For a project with no accessible off-site discharge point or that includes development conducted in or near a receiving water requiring a Hydraulic Project Approval (WAC 220-660), the drainage control plan shall be prepared by a licensed civil engineer in accordance with standards adopted by the Director.

c. Construction Stormwater Control Plan. A construction stormwater control plan demonstrating controls

sufficient to determine compliance with subsection 22.805.020.D shall be submitted. The Director may approve a checklist in place of a plan, pursuant to rules promulgated by the Director.

d. Memorandum of Drainage Control. The owner(s) of the site shall sign a “memorandum of drainage control” that has been prepared by the Director of SPU. Completion of the memorandum shall be a condition precedent to issuance of any permit or approval for which a drainage control plan is required. The applicant shall file the memorandum of drainage control with the King County Recorder’s Office so as to become part of the King County real property records. The applicant shall give the Director of SPU proof of filing of the memorandum. The memorandum shall not be required when the drainage control facility will be owned and operated by the City. A memorandum of drainage control shall include:

- 1) The legal description of the site;
- 2) A summary of the terms of the drainage control plan, including any known limitations of the drainage control facilities, and an agreement by the owners to implement those terms;
- 3) An agreement that the owner(s) shall inform future purchasers and other successors and assignees of the existence of the drainage control facilities and other elements of the drainage control plan, the limitations of the drainage control facilities, and of the requirements for continued inspection and maintenance of the drainage control facilities;
- 4) The side sewer permit number and the date and name of the permit or approval for which the drainage control plan is required;
- 5) Permission for the City to enter the property for inspection, monitoring, correction, and abatement purposes;
- 6) An acknowledgment by the owner(s) that the City is not responsible for the adequacy or performance of the drainage control plan, and a waiver of any and all claims against the City for any harm, loss, or damage related to the plan, or to drainage or erosion on the property, except for claims arising from the City’s sole negligence; and
- 7) The owner(s)’ signatures acknowledged by a notary public.

e. Submittals identified by rule. Additional information shall be submitted to the Director to comply with the requirements of this subtitle and rules promulgated hereunder and to accomplish the purposes of this subtitle.

((2)) 3. Information Required for ((Large Project)) Comprehensive Drainage ((Control)) Review. In addition to the submittal requirements for standard drainage ((control)) review, the following information is required to be submitted to the Director for ((large)) projects for which comprehensive drainage review is required:

- a. Comprehensive Drainage Control Plan. A comprehensive drainage control plan, in lieu of a standard

drainage control plan, to comply with the requirements of this subtitle and rules promulgated hereunder and to accomplish the purposes of this subtitle shall be submitted with the permit application. It shall be prepared by a licensed civil engineer in accordance with standards adopted by the Director.

b. Inspection and Maintenance Schedule. A schedule shall be submitted that provides for inspection of temporary and permanent flow control facilities, treatment facilities, and source controls to comply with Section 22.805.070 (Minimum Requirements for On-site Stormwater Management), Section 22.805.080 (Minimum Requirements for Flow Control) and Section 22.805.090 (Minimum Requirements for Treatment).

c. Construction Stormwater Control Plan. A construction stormwater control plan prepared in accordance with subsection 22.805.020.D shall be submitted.

((3)) 4. Applications for drainage control review and approval shall be prepared and submitted in accordance with provisions of this subsection, with Chapter 21.16 (Side Sewer Code), and with associated rules and regulations adopted jointly by the Directors of SDCI and SPU.

((4)) 5. The Director may require additional information necessary to adequately evaluate applications for compliance with the requirements and purposes of this subtitle and other laws and regulations, including, but not limited to, Chapter 25.09 (Regulations for Environmentally Critical Areas) and Chapter 23.60A. The Director may also require appropriate information about adjoining properties that may be related to, or affected by, the drainage control proposal in order to evaluate effects on the adjacent property. This additional information may be required as a precondition for permit application review and approval.

((E)) E. Authority to Review. The Director may approve those plans that comply with the provisions of this Subtitle VIII and rules promulgated hereunder, and may place conditions upon the approval in order to assure compliance with the provisions of this subtitle. Submission of the required drainage control application information shall be a condition precedent to the processing of any of the above-listed permits. Approval of drainage control shall be a condition precedent to issuance of any of the above-listed permits. The Director may review and inspect activities subject to this Subtitle VIII and may require compliance regardless of whether review or approval is specifically required by this subsection 22.807.020.C. The Director may disapprove plans that do not comply with the provisions of this Subtitle VIII and rules promulgated hereunder. Disapproved plans shall be returned to the applicant, who may correct and resubmit the plans.

22.807.090 Maintenance and Inspection

A. Responsibility for Maintenance and Inspection. The owner and other responsible parties shall maintain drainage control facilities, source controls, and other facilities and implement landscape management plans required by this subtitle and by rules

adopted hereunder to keep these facilities in continuous working order. The owner and other responsible parties shall inspect permanent drainage control facilities, temporary drainage control facilities, and other temporary best management practices or facilities on a schedule consistent with this subtitle and sufficient for the facilities to function at design capacity. The Director may require the responsible party to conduct more frequent inspections and/or maintenance when necessary to ensure functioning at design capacity. The owner(s) shall inform future purchasers and other successors and assignees to the property of the existence of the drainage control facilities and the elements of the drainage control plan, the limitations of the drainage control facilities, and the requirements for continued inspection and maintenance of the drainage control facilities and for implementation of a landscape management plan, if applicable.

* * *

Section 6. This ordinance shall take effect on July 1, 2021.

Passed by the City Council the _____ day of _____, 2021, and signed by me in open session in authentication of its passage this _____ day of _____, 2021.

President _____ of the City Council

Approved / returned unsigned / vetoed this _____ day of _____, 2021.

Jenny A. Durkan, Mayor

Filed by me this _____ day of _____, 2021.

Monica Martinez Simmons, City Clerk

(Seal)

SUMMARY and FISCAL NOTE*

Department:	Dept. Contact/Phone:	CBO Contact/Phone:
SPU	Sherell Ehlers/6-4576	Akshay Iyengar /4-0716
SDCI	Ede Courtenay/3-9679	
SDOT	Mike Cawrse/3-9963	
Parks	Scott Stevens/5-0865	
SCL	Gary Lockwood/4-3293	
FAS	John Sheldon/4-5494	

** Note that the Summary and Fiscal Note describes the version of the bill or resolution as introduced; final legislation including amendments may not be fully described.*

1. BILL SUMMARY

Legislation Title: AN ORDINANCE relating to the Stormwater Code Update; amending Chapters 22.800, 22.801, 22.803, 22.805, and 22.807 of the Seattle Municipal Code.

Summary and background of the Legislation: The purpose of the City of Seattle’s Stormwater Code is to protect life, property, public health, and the environment from the adverse impacts of urban stormwater runoff. Adverse impacts can include flooding, water pollution, landslides, and erosion. This Stormwater Code revision includes various additions and revisions to the Stormwater Code and associated Directors’ Rule (Stormwater Manual). In addition, a new Director’s Rule is proposed in association with this legislation related to public mainline extensions and drainage requirements in the public right-of-way.

The Stormwater Code and associated joint Seattle Public Utilities/Seattle Department of Construction and Inspections (SPU/SDCI) Directors’ Rules (Stormwater Manual) are being revised to comply with the City’s 2019-2024 Phase I Municipal Stormwater Permit (MS4 Permit) which was effective on August 1, 2019. The MS4 Permit requires the Stormwater Code and associated Stormwater Manual include minimum requirements, thresholds, definitions, and other specified requirements, limitations and criteria be equivalent to the MS4 Permit for new development, redevelopment and construction. In addition, maintenance provisions must be at least as protective of facility function as, and source control provisions must be functionally equivalent to, Ecology’s Stormwater Management Manual for Western Washington.

SPU, SDCI, and other City departments with input from external stakeholders are updating the Stormwater Code to: 1) incorporate new Ecology requirements; 2) incorporate policy changes; and 3) improve usability. All updates to the Stormwater Code must occur at one time with an effective date of July 1, 2021.

2. CAPITAL IMPROVEMENT PROGRAM

Does this legislation create, fund, or amend a CIP Project? ___ Yes X No

Project Name:	Project I.D.:	Project Location:	Start Date:	End Date:	Total Project Cost Through 2023:

3. SUMMARY OF FINANCIAL IMPLICATIONS

Does this legislation amend the Adopted Budget? ___ Yes X No

Does the legislation have other financial impacts to The City of Seattle that are not reflected in the above, including direct or indirect, short-term or long-term costs?

Yes. Adoption of the proposed 2021 Stormwater Code Update affect costs associated with development of various Stormwater Code implementation tools (e.g., checklists and review forms, client assistance memos/Tips, submittal templates, etc.), as well as project capital and operations and maintenance costs. Additional details on specific cost impacts by department are outlined below.

General. This legislation does not appropriate funds. However, the 2021 Stormwater Code Update will impact costs and work requirements in several departments. The following department-specific notes are provided for illustrative purposes. Any budget or staffing adjustments will be addressed through the budget process by each department as needed.

Note 1: SPU

1. Future Capital.

There would be a relatively small decrease in SPU capital costs for some projects due to some retrofit and utility projects being exempt from flow control and water quality requirements. At this time, sufficient information to accurately project long-term cost decreases does not exist. However, those reductions are anticipated to be relatively small.

2. Future Operation & Maintenance

SPU typically takes ownership and assumes all operation and maintenance responsibilities for subsurface drainage structures installed in the public right-of-way, including flow control and water quality facilities. As a result of the 2021 Stormwater Code Update, fewer flow control facilities will be installed due to the retrofit/utility project exemption and due to decreased flow control requirements for roadway projects. However, more water quality facilities are expected to will be installed in the right-of-way due to an increase in mainline extensions through separation and the resulting need to provide water quality treatment. SPU would avoid the associated increase in O&M costs that would have been associated with flow control facilities but have an increase in O&M costs associated with water quality facilities. Sufficient

information to accurately project long-term impacts does not currently exist but a minimal net decrease in costs is anticipated.

An increase in SPU Development Services Office staff may be required in the long-term due to enhanced implementation of the ensure sufficient capacity requirement in the Stormwater Code.

Note 2: SDCI

As part of the 2022 budget process, SDCI will request an additional \$338,583 in ongoing appropriations to fund a 1.0 FTE Civil Engineering Specialist (CES), Sr. (\$159,598) and a 1.0 FTE Site Development Inspector (\$143,985). The Site Development Inspector will require a vehicle (\$35,000).

SDCI Site Review Impacts

1. Preliminary Drainage Review and plat conditioning coordination with SDCI Land Use.
2. Establishment and the subsequent administration of a drainage facility acceptance testing special inspection procedure. Addition drainage review associated with new drainage facility acceptance testing procedures, amounting to 0.1 additional FTE CES, Sr,
3. The complexity of flow control requirements is increasing with one revised standard and one new standard, amounting to 0.1 additional FTE CES, Sr,
4. Source Control will now apply in Combined System areas, increasing the number of complex reviews in this otherwise straightforward basin classification.
5. Two new drainage facility best management practices. Will require training and coordination to incorporate it into our process and ongoing review, amounting to 0.2 additional FTE CES, Sr.
6. Increase in the number of drainage reviews associated with grading permits because of the review threshold adjustment that has been made to align the Grading Code with the Stormwater Code, amounting to 0.25 additional FTE CES, Sr.
7. Conducting landscape management review in lieu of water quality will be complex and require interdepartmental coordination not currently needed, amounting to 0.1 additional FTE CES, Sr 0.1 FTE.

SDCI Site Inspection

8. Enhanced curb inspection protocol, infiltration facility acceptance testing, and detention vault and pipe inspection requirements have been significantly increased, amounting to 1.0 FTE additional Site Inspector.

Note 3: SDOT

Based on the current draft of the 2021 City of Seattle Stormwater Code (SWC) and the draft Public Drainage System Requirements Director's Rule (DR), SDOT analyzed its planned Capital Improvement Program (CIP) as well as maintenance and operations

functions for the next four years. An analysis of four years was chosen as it corresponds to the conclusion of the Move Seattle Levy in 2025.

For forecasting beyond the Move Seattle Levy, a separate study was undertaken to evaluate the complete Stormwater Code compliance cost for Capital Projects for the duration of the Move Seattle Levy. This study summed the estimated cost applying the 2016 Stormwater Code for projects 2016 to 2025, and summed the estimated cost applying the SWC for projects 2016 to 2025. The analysis concluded roughly an equal cost (approximately \$10M) whether applying the 2016 Stormwater Code or the SWC. No financial impact to future long-term transportation levy packages is expected, if similar project types, geographic distribution, and delivery goals are sought.

The analysis below indicates SDOT costs may decrease slightly in 2021 to 2025 due to the proposed changes.

Capital Project Construction Cost Analysis

2021 SWC – Flow Control Treatment (FC) Water Quality Treatment (WQ) and On-Site Stormwater Management (OSM) Changes

The proposed SWC will make the following changes:

- 1) Revise the Flow Control Standard for Roadway Projects from Pasture Standard to “Existing Condition Standard” for creek basins.
- 2) Revise the Flow Control Standard for Roadway Project from Peak Control Standard to “Existing Condition Standard” for small lakes, capacity-constrained systems, and discharges from groundwater.
- 3) Adopt the definition of gravel surface to be considered new and not replaced for any conversion of gravel to pavement, increasing the possibility of Roadway Projects requiring WQ.
- 4) Remove the Flow Control requirements for Roadway Projects in the public combined systems in Combined Sewer Overflow (CSO) basins.
- 5) Add Street Trees to the list of OSM Best Management Practices (BMPs).

SDOT is anticipating the changes in construction costs to the Arterial Asphalt and Concrete (AAC), Transit Plus Multi-Modal Corridor (TPMMC), Safe Routes to School (SRTS), Pedestrian Master Plan (PMP), and Sidewalk Programs, described in Table 1 below. The numbers below represent costs for projects, within programs, that meet the classification of Large Projects, and have sufficient work to trigger the noted requirements. Additionally, projects are assumed to have been originally budgeted based on the 2016 Stormwater Code and the Flow Control cost below reflect the previous requirements and the change to the new requirements.

Table 1 - Overall Flow Control Treatment & OSM Cost Changes Resulting from 2021 SWC by Year

Year	Programs ¹	Funding Source	FC Cost Change	OSM Cost Change	Overall Cost Change
2021	SRTS, Sidewalks, PMP	Move Seattle Levy (MSL)	-\$799,000	\$0	-\$799,000

2022	SRTS, Sidewalks, PMP, AAC, TPMMC	MSL, AAC, PSRC/FHWA ²	-\$1,315,000	+\$150,000	-\$1,165,000
2023	SRTS, Sidewalks, PMP	MSL	\$0	\$0	\$0
2024	SRTS, Sidewalks, PMP, AAC	MSL, AAC, PSRC/FHWA	-\$264,000	+\$150,000	-\$114,000
				Total	-\$2,078,000

¹See Attachment 1 for a detailed list of projects and sites

²PSRC – Puget Sound Regional Council

FHWA – Federal Highway Administration

2021 SWC & DR Conveyance Requirements Changes

The currently proposed SWC will formalize the following requirements:

- 1) Ensure sufficient capacity (ESC) of downstream system including erosion and capacity analysis and mitigation requirements.
- 2) Public Storm Drain (PSD) extensions for full pavement reconstruction projects where formal drainage system does not exist, or a PSD connection exists in CSO Basins. This also will result in the requirement to provide Water Quality Treatment in previous CSO Basins.
- 3) Public Drainage System extensions to convey collection points required upstream of curb ramps.
- 4) Replacement of existing culvert system, where roadway or sidewalk work is performed immediately above ground.

Based on the current four-year CIP, SDOT is anticipating the change in construction costs to the AAC, TPMMC, SRTS, and Sidewalk Programs, described in Table 2 below.

Table 2 - Overall Cost Change Resulting from SWC & DR Conveyance Changes by Year

Year	Programs	Funding Source	ESC Cost ¹	PSD Cost ²	WQ Treatment Cost ³	Culvert Replacement Cost	Overall Cost Change
2021	SRTS, Sidewalks, PMP	Move Seattle Levy (MSL)	+\$700,000	\$0	\$0	+\$120,000	+\$820,000
2022	SRTS, Sidewalks, PMP, AAC, TPMMC	MSL, AAC, PSRC/FH WA	+\$565,000	\$0	\$0	+\$40,000	+\$605,000
2023	SRTS, Sidewalks, PMP	MSL	+\$87,000	\$0	\$0	\$0	+\$87,000
2024	SRTS, Sidewalks, PMP, AAC	MSL, AAC, PSRC/FH WA	+\$199,000	\$0	\$0	\$0	+\$199,000
					Total		+\$1,711,000

¹Assumes 1% costs for Roadway projects in CSOs and 20% costs for Sidewalk projects – assumes combination of hard and soft costs

²Includes extensions only.

Overall Capital Project Anticipated Change

The overall goal of the Code and DR is to shift the priority of the work being done by SDOT for the purpose of stormwater benefit away from Flow Control and to conveyance improvements, and to balance the level of investments being made. Table 3 below presents the combination of the cost change anticipated as a result of the Code and the DR by year. Table 4 describes the overall cost change by program.

Table 3 - Overall Cost Change by Year

Year	FC & OSM Overall Cost Change	Conveyance, Culvert Replacement, and ESC Overall Cost Change	Overall Cost Change
2021	-\$799,000	+\$820,000	+\$21,000
2022	-\$1,165,000	+\$605,000	-\$560,000
2023	\$0	+\$87,000	+\$87,000
2024	-\$114,000	+\$199,000	+\$85,000
		Total	-\$367,000

Table 4 - Overall Cost Change by Program

Program	FC & OSM Overall Cost Change	Conveyance, Culvert Replacement, and ESC Overall Cost Change	Overall Cost Change
SRTS, PMP, Sidewalks	-\$1,249,000	+\$1,259,000	+\$10,000
TPMMC	-\$945,000	+\$330,000	-\$615,000
AAC	+\$116,000	+\$122,000	+\$238,000
		Total	-\$367,000

In summary, the Code is anticipated to decrease the construction cost of SDOT CIP projects by \$367,000. Largely, this minimal net cost impact is due to the Roosevelt High Capacity Transit project being vested under the 2016 SWC requirements and not the 2021 SWC, which would have required a significant investment for PSD extensions and Water Quality Treatment facilities to comply with the Ensure Sufficient Capacity requirement.

Further project-specific analysis is needed to confirm existing culvert replacements, ESC mitigation requirements, and PSD extensions as part of SRTS, Sidewalk, and PMP funded projects. In addition, street tree costs will be a function of available space, and actual costs will not be accurately estimated until 30% level of design can be reached.

Operations & Maintenance, and General Fund Cost Analysis

Increased Asset Maintenance

Trees will be added to the list of Onsite Stormwater Management (OSM) Best Management Practices (BMPs) for Sidewalk/Trail and Roadway projects for the 2021 SWC, and will include existing as well as newly planted trees. This change is anticipated to increase SDOT asset maintenance costs by requiring the maintenance of new and existing right-of-way (ROW) Street Trees to comply with Stormwater Code OSM requirements. When the 2021 SWC is applied to AAC maintenance projects proposed for construction between 2022 and 2025, an average of 50 new Street Trees would be planted each year, and an additional 100 existing Street Trees would be maintained and protected

each year. Because SDOT would be responsible for those Street Trees, this will increase SDOT's asset maintenance costs by an average of \$90,500 per year. With the maintenance workload increasing each year as the Street Trees are planted, additional staff could be needed to meet the increasing maintenance responsibilities.

Internal Training

Training for SDOT staff will be required in 2021 to implement the 2021 SWC Update. These trainings would be required for up to 334 staff across five SDOT divisions, including Capital Projects, Street Use, Project Development, Roadway Structures, Pavement Engineering/ROW Crew Construction, and ROW Maintenance/Urban Forestry. Funding may be needed to ensure SDOT staff adequately understands the Stormwater Code requirements.

Legal and Consent Decree Obligations

The City of Seattle has an obligation under a consent decree implemented in the terms of *Reynoldson v. City of Seattle* to deliver Citizen Requested Curb Ramps (CSR). There is an established number of ramps that SDOT is committed to building each year, and there is currently a finite budget to accomplish this work.

Due to uncertainty regarding locations, extent of work, and existing drainage infrastructure, the impact of this legislation to the CSR program is not possible to determine. However, should project sites require additional substantial costs to meet the SWC requirements, additional funding will be needed.

Note 4: Parks (SPR)

1. Future Capital (estimated 6-year capital impact: ~\$0.5M)

As a result of the 2021 Stormwater Code Update, SPR may see cost increases on a wide variety of project types including: accessibility projects, play area renovations, construction of new facilities, pathways and sidewalks, athletic fields, park irrigation and drainage, dog off-leash areas, and beaches and shoreline structures (piers, floats, etc.).

These projects may be affected by the clarified definitions of "pollution-generating hard surface" in the 2021 Stormwater Code update to include permeable pavement subject to vehicular use and "pollution-generating impervious surface" to include maintenance access roads with a recurring use greater than one routine vehicle access per day. The revised definitions may have impact on SPR renovations and designs of parks. To adequately service solid waste receptacles and comfort stations, SPR grounds crew regularly drive on park sidewalks to maintain cleanliness in parks. Certain parks are undergoing renovation to become accessible and compliant with the American Disabilities Act, and the inclusion of these former sidewalks and trails into the calculations of hard and impervious surfaces may result in additional stormwater management required during renovation.

SPR will evaluate associated cost impacts on a project by project basis and endeavor to manage higher costs within existing capital appropriation to the extent possible. However, the amount per project is dependent on the type of capital improvement and

actual costs will not be known until projects go into design. That said, SPR estimates that the 2021 Stormwater Code update may increase project costs by ~\$75,000, for a six year total estimated impact of approximately \$500,000. Depending on how the code updates ultimately impact capital projects, SPR may submit a funding request as part of a future budget process.

2. *Future Operation & Maintenance (estimated 6-year O&M impact: ~\$2.6M)*

As a result of the 2021 Stormwater Code Update, additional staff time will be needed to address new requirements in the code referencing Volume 4 on source control. At this time, there is not sufficient information to accurately project long-term costs. SPR is currently evaluating how to best meet any future staffing need and will, if deemed necessary, submit a funding request as part a future budget process. Examples of source control changes that may have ongoing budget impact include the following:

- **Labelling storm drain inlets on SPR property:** SPR estimates that there are approximately 1,000 storm drain inlets in paved areas that discharge to receiving waters without treatment on SPR property. SPR's infrastructure includes many types of drain covers, located throughout the parks. A high level estimate of this work is approximately \$170K assuming 1,000 storm drain inlets are labeled requiring 2 hours of staff time per drain or 2,000 hours with labels estimated at \$12 each.
- **Goose waste management:** The Department of Ecology has a new BMP for goose waste management. Goose waste will need to be shoveled or swept for pickup into the trash. It cannot be blown, swept or washed into waterways and the storm system. Goose waste is prevalent at several parks and this will increase the need for maintenance hours at several parks such as Lake Union Park, Gas Works, Green Lake, Matthews Beach, Seward Park and sites along Lake Washington Boulevard, the Fremont Canal, among others. A high level estimate of this additional work is approximately \$250K annually assuming about 10 parks with large geese populations needing an additional 10 hours of work per week per park or 5,200 hours a year.
- **Dock washing:** The Department of Ecology's new requirements for dock washing include scooping and sweeping debris from docks and not allowing debris to enter surface water. SPR has approximately 70 docks, piers and floats throughout the park system. A high level estimate of this additional work is about \$160K annually assuming additional maintenance of about 70 docks, piers, and floats needing an assumed 4 hours per month per structure, or about 3,360 hours per year.

Note 5: City Light (SCL)

Labelling storm drain inlets on Seattle City light property – Seattle City Light has 100 catch basins in the separated and combined systems around the MS4 which will require placarding in accordance with the new requirement. City Light has a variety of structure lids and unpaved areas which will require additional modifications to apply placards. We

anticipate \$1,500 in placard costs and \$16,000.00 (200 employee hours) to complete this requirement.

Note 6: Finance and Administrative Services (FAS)

Labelling storm drain inlets on FAS property – FAS has approximately 150 catch basins in the separated and combined systems around the MS4. We anticipate \$2,000.00 in placard costs and \$25,000 (165 employee hours) to complete this requirement for total of \$27,000.

Is there financial cost or other impacts of *not* implementing the legislation?

Yes. The possible cost implication of not implementing are primarily the risk of non-compliance with the City’s MS4 Permit, based on the federal Clean Water Act and state law. Any person who violates the Clean Water Act is subject to maximum criminal penalties of \$25,000 per day, one year imprisonment, or both, for negligent violations and maximum criminal penalties of \$50,000 per day, or three years imprisonment, or both for knowing violations – with fines increased for repeat violations. Additionally, violating the City’s MS4 Permit presents a risk of more than \$56,000 in civil penalties per violation, per day, enforceable via a third-party (citizen) lawsuit or EPA action under the Clean Water Act.

3.a. Appropriations

— This legislation adds, changes, or deletes appropriations.

Appropriations Notes:

Additional training for SPU, SDCI, SDOT, and Parks staff will be required in 2021 to prepare for the implementation of the 2021 Stormwater Code Update. It is unlikely that these departments will need additional appropriations in 2021. However, if additional appropriations are needed to prepare for the change in code, the affected department will bring forward a supplemental budget request prior to the end of 2021.

SDCI anticipates additional staffing requirements as a result of the code update. (See Summary notes under Summary of financial Implications above.) As part of the 2022 budget process, SDCI will request an additional \$338,583 in ongoing appropriations to fund a 1.0 FTE Civil Engineering Specialist (CES), Sr. (\$159,598) and a 1.0 FTE Site Development Inspector (\$143,985). The Site Development Inspector will require a vehicle (\$35,000). As required under the SDCI-SPU SLA, SPU will reimburse SDCI for the portion of the work carried out by the new staff related to side sewer permitting and authorized overhead activities.

3.b. Revenues/Reimbursements

— This legislation adds, changes, or deletes revenues or reimbursements.

Revenue/Reimbursement Notes:

This legislation does not revise budgeted revenue. As a result of the stormwater code update, SDCI anticipates increased hours spent on site inspections for side sewer permits (see Appropriations notes above). The payments by permit applicants are transferred to SPU as side sewer permitting revenues.

Any projected revisions to 2021 SPU endorsed revenues due to these increased site inspection charges will be addressed through the budget process. As part of the 2022 budget process, SPU may request up to an additional \$179,000 (N000 General Expense) to fund this additional work.

3.c. Positions

Position Notes:

This legislation does not authorize the addition of positions. The proposed 2021 Stormwater Code Update will not result in any increase to SPU positions. SDCI anticipates position requests related to the code update for 1 additional FTE CES, Sr. and 1 additional FTE SDCI Site Development Inspector as further described in the notes to the Appropriations section of this Fiscal Note. These positions will be requested during the 2022 budget process.

4. OTHER IMPLICATIONS

a. Does this legislation affect any departments besides the originating department?

Yes. The primary departments that will be impacted by this legislation include SPU, SDCI, SDOT, Parks, SCL, and FAS. This legislation applies city-wide and includes revisions to minimum requirements related to flow control, on-site stormwater management, and development projects. The effect of this legislation on other departments will vary to the degree departments engage in ongoing activities to which source control measures apply, or to the degree that each department is involved in capital projects.

b. Is a public hearing required for this legislation?

Yes.

Below is a summary of the public engagement activities conducted in developing this Stormwater Code Update.

Public Engagement on Stormwater Code Update Process

Date	Meeting or Listserv Announcement
October 3, 2019	External Code and Manual Users Early Input Stakeholder Meeting
March 2, 2020	SDCI Stormwater Code Listserv: "Updating the City's Stormwater Regulations"
March 3, 2020	SDCI Building Connections Newsletter: "Updated Seattle Stormwater Code Regulations"
March 9, 2020	DSO Subscribers Listserv: "Updating the City's Stormwater Regulations"
April 1, 2020	SDCI Building Connections Newsletter: "Updating the City's Stormwater Regulations"
April 1, 2020	SDCI Stormwater Code Listserv: "Updating the City's Stormwater Regulations – Public Comment Period Now Open"
April 1, 2020	DSO Listserv: "Updating the City's Stormwater Regulations – Public Comment Period Now Live"
April 16, 2020	SDCI Listserv: "Updating the City's Stormwater Regulations - Public Presentation Updates - Public Comment Period Now Open"
April 27, 2020	SDCI Listserv: "Updating the City's Stormwater Regulations - Online Public Presentation this Wed. April 29!"

Date	Meeting or Listserv Announcement
April 29, 2020	Public Meeting: Stormwater Code & Manual Updates (Virtual)
May 4, 2020	SDCI Listserv: "Updating the City's Stormwater Regulations - Online Public Presentation this Wed. May 6!"
May 6, 2020	Public Meeting: Stormwater Code & Manual Updates (Virtual)
May 13, 2020	SDCI Listserv: "Updating the City's Stormwater Regulations - Phase 1 Public Comment Period Ending May 16"
June 9, 2020	SDCI Building Connections Newsletter: "What's Happening with the Stormwater Code Update?"
June 17, 2020	Master Builders Association Permitting Meeting
September 1, 2020	Master Builders Association Permitting Meeting
September 30, 2020	SDCI Building Connections Newsletter: "What's Happening with the Stormwater Code Update?"
October 5, 2020	DSO Listserv: "What's Happening with the Stormwater Code Update"
October 21, 2020	Master Builders Association Permitting Meeting
November 2, 2020	SDCI Building Connections Newsletter: "Stormwater Code Update – Public Review Period Open / Upcoming Public Meetings"
November 2, 2020	SDCI Listserv: "Announcement of the draft 2021 stormwater code public review period and upcoming public meeting."
November 2, 2020	DSO Listserv: "Stormwater Code Update – Public Review Period Open/Upcoming Public Meetings"
November 10, 2020	SDCI Listserv: "Stormwater Code Update - Public Meeting Reminder - Thursday, November 12 at 3:15 p.m."
November 10, 2020	DSO Listserv: "Stormwater Code Update – Public Meeting Reminder – This Thursday, November 12 th at 3:15"
November 12, 2020	Public Meeting: Stormwater Code (Virtual)
November 18, 2020	SDCI List Serv: "Stormwater Code Updates - The Public Review Period Ends Friday, November 20"
November 18, 2020	Master Builders Association Permitting Meeting
December 10, 2020	SDCI List Serv: "Stormwater Code Update - SEPA Checklist, Determination of Non-Significance and Comment Period"
December 10, 2020	DSO List Serv: "Final Public Review Period for Draft Stormwater Code/Manual Starting Today"
December 20, 2020	Master Builders Association Permitting Meeting
January 5, 2021	SDCI Building Connections Newsletter: "Customer Alert - Final Public Review Period for Draft Stormwater Code/Manual Approaching"
January 6, 2021	SDCI List Serv: "Stormwater Code Update - The Draft 2021 Stormwater Code and Manual will be posted soon for the Final Public Review/Comment Period"
January 6, 2021	DSO List Serv: "Final Public Review Period for Draft Stormwater Code/Manual Approaching"
January 11, 2021	SDCI List Serv: "Stormwater Code Update - The Draft 2021 Stormwater Code and Manual has been posted for the Final Public Review/Comment Period"
January 11, 2021	DSO List Serv: "Final Public Review Period for Draft Stormwater Code/Manual Starting Today"
January 20, 2021	Master Builders Association Permitting Meeting
January 27, 2021	SDCI List Serv: "Stormwater Code Update - Public Meeting Reminder"

Date	Meeting or Listserv Announcement
January 28, 2021	Public Meeting: Stormwater Code & Manual Updates and new Public Drainage System Director's Rule (Virtual)

c. Does this legislation require landlords or sellers of real property to provide information regarding the property to a buyer or tenant?

No.

d. Is publication of notice with *The Daily Journal of Commerce* and/or *The Seattle Times* required for this legislation?

Yes. Publication of notice of the Council public hearing will be made in *The Daily Journal of Commerce* and in the City's Land Use Information Bulletin (LUIB). Environmental review under the State Environmental Policy Act (SEPA) is also required for this legislation, and publication of notice of the environmental determination was made in *The Daily Journal of Commerce*, in *The Seattle Times*, and in the City's Land Use Information Bulletin on December 10, 2021, when amendments to the Stormwater Code legislation were first proposed.

e. Does this legislation affect a piece of property?

No. The proposal is a non-project legislative action with no specific site. As Stormwater Code requirements are city-wide, specific projects affected by the proposal may occur anywhere within Seattle's city limits.

f. Please describe any perceived implication for the principles of the Race and Social Justice Initiative. Does this legislation impact vulnerable or historically disadvantaged communities? What is the Language Access plan for any communications to the public?

There is no perceived implication for the principles of the Race and Social Justice Initiative. This legislation does not impact vulnerable or historically disadvantaged communities.

g. If this legislation includes a new initiative or a major programmatic expansion: What are the specific long-term and measurable goal(s) of the program? How will this legislation help achieve the program's desired goal(s).

This legislation does not include a new initiative or a major programmatic expansion.

List attachments/exhibits below:

Summary Exhibit A – Directors' Report and Recommendation

Summary Exhibit B – Environmentally Critical Areas: Best Available Science Review
 (under separate cover)

Summary Exhibit C – Draft Stormwater Manual (Draft Director's Rule)

Summary Exhibit D – Ecology Letter on the Draft Stormwater Code and Draft Stormwater Manual

Summary Exhibit E – Draft Public Drainage System Requirements Director's Rule

Exhibit A

Directors’ Report and Recommendation
February 8, 2021

Introduction

The purpose of the City of Seattle’s Stormwater Code (Chapters 22.800 – 22.808 SMC) is to protect life, property, public health, and the environment from the adverse impacts of urban stormwater runoff. Adverse impacts can include flooding, water pollution, landslides, and erosion. The Stormwater Code was substantially updated in 2009 and revised in 2015 and 2016. This revision, the “2021 Stormwater Code Update,” includes various additions and revisions to the City’s Stormwater Code and associated Directors’ Rule (Stormwater Manual). In addition, a new Director’s Rule is proposed in association with new Stormwater Code language related to public mainline extensions and drainage requirements in the public right-of-way.

The Stormwater Code and associated joint Seattle Public Utilities/Seattle Department of Construction and Inspections (SPU/SDCI) Directors’ Rules (Stormwater Manual) are being revised in order to comply with the requirements of the City’s coverage under the 2019-2024 Phase I Municipal Stormwater Permit (MS4 Permit, Ecology 2019). The Permit was issued by the Washington State Department of Ecology (Ecology) under both the National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System (NPDES) program established by the federal Clean Water Act and the State of Washington Water Pollution Control Law. The Permit was issued on July 1, 2019, and became effective on August 1, 2019. The MS4 Permit requires that the City’s Stormwater Code and associated Stormwater Manual (to be contained in the Directors’ Rule) include minimum requirements, thresholds, definitions, and other specified requirements, limitations and criteria, determined by Ecology to be equivalent to Appendix 1 of the MS4 Permit for new development, redevelopment and construction. In addition, maintenance provisions must be at least as protective of facility function as, and source control provisions must be functionally equivalent to, Ecology’s Stormwater Management Manual for Western Washington (SWMMWW, Ecology 2019).

SPU – in close collaboration with SDCI, other City departments, and external stakeholders – is in the process of updating the Stormwater Code to 1) incorporate new Ecology requirements, 2) incorporate policy changes, and 3) improve usability. All updates to the Stormwater Code must occur at one time with an effective date of July 1, 2021.

This Directors’ Report, for the “2021 Stormwater Code Update,” is submitted jointly by the Directors of SPU and SDCI. It answers frequently asked questions about Seattle’s Stormwater Code, provides regulatory context, summarizes significant proposed modifications and rationale, and provides recommendations regarding the proposed legislation.

Exhibit A

Frequently Asked Questions

Why do we have a Stormwater Code? Rain water running off of urban land surfaces can cause flooding, landslides, erosion, and other hazards. It can also carry pollutants into creeks, lakes, bays and other receiving waters. Stormwater regulations are needed to protect people, property, and the environment from damage that can be caused by stormwater runoff. Seattle’s stormwater Code and regulations are also written to satisfy the City’s obligation to comply with the 2019-2024 Phase I Municipal Stormwater Permit, as modified (the MS4 Permit), under which coverage is issued to the City by Ecology.

What is in Seattle’s Stormwater Code? Seattle’s Stormwater Code includes:

- A description of the purpose, scope, applicability, exemptions, adjustments, exceptions, authorities, and compliance requirements
- Definitions of key terms
- Prohibitions of certain discharges and conditions for permissible discharges
- Minimum requirements for all discharges and all real property, designed to reduce the introduction of pollutants into stormwater runoff as close to the source as possible
- Minimum requirements for all projects regarding stormwater pollution prevention during construction and grading activities
- Minimum requirements for all projects regarding on-site stormwater management, flow control, and water quality treatment facilities
- Drainage control review and application requirements
- Requirements to maintain stormwater facilities
- Procedures for enforcing the Stormwater Code.

Why are we updating the Stormwater Code? The Stormwater Code is being updated to comply with the City’s obligations under the MS4 Permit, to incorporate policy changes, and to improve usability.

Who is responsible for updating the Stormwater Code? It is an SPU-led project being conducted in close collaboration with SDCI, the Seattle Department of Transportation (SDOT), other City departments, and internal and external stakeholders.

What are the major changes in the revised Stormwater Code? The “Significant Modifications” section of this Exhibit provides details on the primary proposed modifications to the Stormwater Code. Of the proposed modifications outlined in that section, the four most significant involve: 1) Exemptions for certain land-disturbing activities and authority for alternative stormwater code compliance (#1 & #2 in Significant Modifications section); 2) revisions to the effective date of the Stormwater Code relative to project application dates and construction dates to meet the City’s MS4 Permit obligations (#3); 3) additions, revisions, and deleting of various terminology (#4); 4) changes to source control requirements for certain activities (#5 & #6); 5) changes to the minimum requirements that apply to all development projects to meet the City’s MS4 Permit obligations and account for Seattle’s unique development patterns and infrastructure (#7 - #14); and 6) additions and revisions to submittal and drainage review requirements (#15 & #16).

Exhibit A

What has been the extent of public participation? Beginning in October 2019, a series of in-person and online public meetings have been conducted to inform interested stakeholders about proposed updates to the Stormwater Code and solicit input on proposed updates. These meetings included representatives from the development community, environmental advocacy groups, and engineering and consulting firms. Additionally, announcements have been sent to interested stakeholders through the SDCI Stormwater Code list serv and the SPU DSO Subscribers list serv, and articles have been included in SDCI’s Building Connection Newsletter. There has also been information shared at Master Builders Association meetings. The dates and content of the public meetings, list serv announcements, the Building Connection newsletter, and meetings are shown below.

Public Engagement on Stormwater Code Update Process

Date	Meeting or Listserv Announcement
October 3, 2019	External Code and Manual Users Early Input Stakeholder Meeting
March 2, 2020	SDCI Stormwater Code Listserv: “Updating the City’s Stormwater Regulations”
March 3, 2020	SDCI Building Connections Newsletter: “Updated Seattle Stormwater Code Regulations”
March 9, 2020	DSO Subscribers Listserv: “Updating the City’s Stormwater Regulations”
April 1, 2020	SDCI Building Connections Newsletter: “Updating the City’s Stormwater Regulations”
April 1, 2020	SDCI Stormwater Code Listserv: “Updating the City’s Stormwater Regulations – Public Comment Period Now Open
April 1, 2020	DSO Listserv: “Updating the City’s Stormwater Regulations – Public Comment Period Now Live”
April 16, 2020	SDCI Listserv: “Updating the City’s Stormwater Regulations - Public Presentation Updates - Public Comment Period Now Open”
April 27, 2020	SDCI Listserv: “Updating the City’s Stormwater Regulations - Online Public Presentation this Wed. April 29!”
April 29, 2020	Public Meeting: Stormwater Code & Manual Updates (Virtual)
May 4, 2020	SDCI Listserv: “Updating the City’s Stormwater Regulations - Online Public Presentation this Wed. May 6!”
May 6, 2020	Public Meeting: Stormwater Code & Manual Updates (Virtual)
May 13, 2020	SDCI Listserv: “Updating the City’s Stormwater Regulations - Phase 1 Public Comment Period Ending May 16
June 9, 2020	SDCI Building Connections Newsletter: “What’s Happening with the Stormwater Code Update?”
June 17, 2020	Master Builders Association Permitting Meeting
September 1, 2020	Master Builders Association Permitting Meeting
September 30, 2020	SDCI Building Connections Newsletter: “What’s Happening with the Stormwater Code Update?”
October 5, 2020	DSO Listserv: “What’s Happening with the Stormwater Code Update”
October 21, 2020	Master Builders Association Permitting Meeting
November 2, 2020	SDCI Building Connections Newsletter: “Stormwater Code Update – Public Review Period Open / Upcoming Public Meetings”

Exhibit A

November 2, 2020	SDCI Listserv: “Announcement of the draft 2021 stormwater code public review period and upcoming public meeting.”
November 2, 2020	DSO Listserv: “Stormwater Code Update – Public Review Period Open/Upcoming Public Meetings”
November 10, 2020	SDCI Listserv: “Stormwater Code Update - Public Meeting Reminder - Thursday, November 12 at 3:15 p.m.”
November 10, 2020	DSO Listserv: “Stormwater Code Update – Public Meeting Reminder – This Thursday, November 12 th at 3:15”
November 12, 2020	Public Meeting: Stormwater Code (Virtual)
November 18, 2020	SDCI List Serv: “Stormwater Code Updates - The Public Review Period Ends Friday, November 20”
November 18, 2020	Master Builders Association Permitting Meeting
December 10, 2020	SDCI List Serv: “Stormwater Code Update - SEPA Checklist, Determination of Non-Significance and Comment Period”
December 10, 2020	DSO List Serv: “Final Public Review Period for Draft Stormwater Code/Manual Starting Today”
December 20, 2020	Master Builders Association Permitting Meeting
January 5, 2021	SDCI Building Connections Newsletter: “Customer Alert - Final Public Review Period for Draft Stormwater Code/Manual Approaching”
January 6, 2021	SDCI List Serv: “Stormwater Code Update - The Draft 2021 Stormwater Code and Manual will be posted soon for the Final Public Review/Comment Period”
January 6, 2021	DSO List Serv: “Final Public Review Period for Draft Stormwater Code/Manual Approaching”
January 11, 2021	SDCI List Serv: “Stormwater Code Update - The Draft 2021 Stormwater Code and Manual has been posted for the Final Public Review/Comment Period”
January 11, 2021	DSO List Serv: “Final Public Review Period for Draft Stormwater Code/Manual Starting Today”
January 20, 2021	Master Builders Association Permitting Meeting
January 27, 2021	SDCI List Serv: “Stormwater Code Update - Public Meeting Reminder”
January 28, 2021	Public Meeting: Stormwater Code & Manual Updates and new Public Drainage System Director’s Rule (Virtual)

Exhibit A

Regulatory Context

NPDES Municipal Stormwater Permit (MS4 Permit). Seattle’s Stormwater Code and associated Stormwater Manual (to be contained in the Directors’ Rule) are now being revised in order to comply with the MS4 Permit, as well as to incorporate policy changes and improve usability. After the updated Stormwater Code and Stormwater Manual are adopted, it is anticipated that Ecology will modify the current MS4 Permit to include Ecology’s determination that Seattle’s updated Stormwater Code and Stormwater Manual meet relevant MS4 Permit requirements and achieves equivalency. The MS4 Permit authorizes the City to discharge municipal stormwater to waters of the State of Washington from municipal separate storm sewers that it owns or operates. Discharges covered under the MS4 Permit, as required by paragraph 402(p)(3) of the Clean Water Act, must effectively prohibit non-stormwater discharges into storm sewers that discharge to surface waters. Per the Clean Water Act, permittees must apply controls to reduce the discharge of pollutants to the maximum extent practicable. Ecology also took action through the issuance of the MS4 Permit, as authorized by Revised Code of Washington (RCW) Chapter 90.48, particularly RCW 90.48.162, to control impacts of stormwater discharges to waters of Washington State, including ground waters, unless the discharges are authorized by another regulatory program. (Ecology 2018)

The MS4 Permit requires that the City’s Stormwater Code and associated Stormwater Manual include minimum requirements, thresholds, definitions, and other specified requirements, limitations and criteria, determined by Ecology to be equivalent to Appendix 1 of the MS4 Permit for new development, redevelopment and construction. Ecology has reviewed the City’s proposed revisions to the Stormwater Code and associated Stormwater Manual that require Ecology approval, and Ecology has made a preliminary determination that the revisions meet the regulatory requirements of the MS4 Permit. The City is in the final stages of Ecology review to secure Ecology’s final approval. It is anticipated that Ecology’s final approval will require very limited, if any, changes. Any changes to the Stormwater Code, including any made through the City’s legislative process, that could affect Ecology’s equivalency determination will be reviewed by Ecology.

Seattle Stormwater Code and Stormwater Manual. The City of Seattle’s Stormwater Code (Chapters 22.800-22.808 SMC) contains requirements designed to protect life, property, public health, and the environment from the adverse impacts of urban stormwater runoff. Adverse impacts can include flooding, pollution, landslides, erosion, and other potential hazards. The Stormwater Code applies to:

- All drainage and erosion control, whether or not a permit is required
- All land disturbing activities, whether or not a permit is required
- All discharges directly or indirectly to a public drainage system or (proposed) a public combined sewer
- All discharges directly or indirectly into receiving waters within or contiguous to Seattle city limits
- All new and existing land uses
- All real property.

Exhibit A

To support the implementation of the Stormwater Code, the Director of SPU and the Director of SDCI issue joint Directors’ Rule (Seattle’s Stormwater Manual), which clarify or interpret the Stormwater Code by specifying methods, details, and general guidelines as authorized by the Code. The 2021 Seattle Stormwater Manual will consist of the following sections:

- Volume 1 – Project Minimum Requirements (pursuant to the Stormwater Code Minimum Requirements)
- Volume 2 – Construction Stormwater Control
- Volume 3 – Project Stormwater Control
- Volume 4 – Source Control
- Volume 5 – Enforcement
- Appendices.

Seattle Stormwater Code and Public Drainage System Director’s Rule. The City of Seattle’s Stormwater Code (Chapter 22.805 SMC) addresses:

- Minimum Requirements for all Projects, specifically
 - Minimum Requirements for Discharge Point
 - Ensure Sufficient Capacity
 - Extension of the Public Drainage System:
 - For projects not constructed in the public right-of-way
 - For projects constructed in the public right-of-way
 - Requirements for projects conducted in public right of way.

To support the implementation of these portions of the Stormwater Code, the Director of SPU is issuing a new Director’s Rule (Public Drainage System Director’s Rule), that relates directly to the Stormwater Code and clarifies or interprets it by specifying methods, details, and general guidelines as authorized by the Code. The Public Drainage System Director’s Rule will consist of the sections noted above.

Best Available Science – When the City updated its Environmentally Critical Areas (ECA) ordinance, it presented a detailed review of the best available science regarding wetlands, fish and wildlife conservation areas, geologic hazard areas, flood-prone areas, abandoned landfills, and critical aquifer recharge areas in its report Environmental Critical Areas: Best Available Science Review (Seattle 2005). As part of the 2009 Stormwater Code Update, the City prepared a document describing the best available science specific to urban stormwater runoff management (Seattle 2009). This document was updated during the 2016 Stormwater Code update (Seattle 2015). The document has been updated for this proposed legislation and is included as part of the Bill Summary and Fiscal Note for this legislation, as Exhibit B.

Significant Modifications

Exhibit A

The proposed modifications to the Stormwater Code will affect administration, source control, development, and construction site stormwater pollution prevention control. The major modifications being proposed to the Stormwater Code are summarized below by Chapter.

Chapter 22.800 - Title, Scope, and Authority

1. Added exemptions: land disturbing activities that are not required to comply with certain requirements (22.800.040.A.2.c and d):
 - a. “c” Adds new language that exempts “land disturbing activity that includes replacing the ground surface with in-kind material or materials with equivalent runoff characteristics and is associated solely with soil remediation or tank removal for the purpose of removing contaminants and pollutants and not associated with other development.” Language was also added clarifying the limits of this exemption, noting that projects “that include any development in addition to soil remediation or tank removal replaced with in-kind material or materials with equivalent runoff characteristics are not exempt.”
 - b. Similarly, 22.800.040.A.2.d includes new language that exempts “drainage control facilities that are part of a public retrofit project...or other voluntary retrofit project” from certain minimum requirements. However, the new language also clarifies that these new exemptions only apply to the retrofit project elements and “do not include land disturbing activities or hard surfaces that are not integral to or are in addition to the drainage control facilities described above, or installation of drainage control facilities that are otherwise required to meet this subtitle.”

The intent of these changes is to simplify the process for these types of improvement projects, which by their nature are designed to minimize pollution and/or improve water quality conditions.

2. Clarified Authority (22.800.080.F) regarding the option for a developer to manage flow control, water quality treatment, on-site stormwater management, or wetlands protection requirements at an alternative location (i.e., off site) or by contributing funds. The revisions are focused on clarifying the specific conditions that must be met to allow compliance using an alternative location and the logistics of this compliance approach. The revisions are proposed primarily to comply with updated Ecology requirements presented in the City’s MS4 Permit, and also to clarify for easier use.
3. Revised language regarding the applicability of Stormwater Code revisions in relation to project permit application and construction dates (22.800.100), in association with the Code’s effective date of July 1, 2021. The 2021 Stormwater Code Update will apply to permit applications submitted on or after July 1, 2021. In addition, for projects considered under the current Stormwater Code before amendment, if construction has not started by July 1, 2026, the permit expires and the 2021 Stormwater Code will apply. These revisions are made for consistency with the City’s MS4 Permit requirements (which apply to areas that discharge to the City’s municipal stormwater system) and affects both building and master use permits (including subdivisions).

Exhibit A

Chapter 22.801 – Definitions

4. Added, revised, and deleted terms: In the 2021 Stormwater Code Update, new terms have been added to this Chapter, the definitions for other terms have been materially modified, and the definitions for terms have been deleted. The items below outline the most notable terms that are proposed to be added or materially modified. These proposed definition changes are necessary to clarify certain Stormwater Code provisions, to implement revised minimum requirements, and to meet the provisions of the City’s MS4 Permit. A complete list of proposed definition changes is in the draft Stormwater Code (Attachment C).
 - a. Changes made to be equivalent with the City’s MS4 Permit (unless otherwise noted):
 - i. Added definition for “Basic treatment receiving water” to match existing Manual language (which is already in alignment with the City’s MS4 Permit).
 - ii. Modified definition of “Creek” to match Washington Administrative Code (WAC) stream typing. Similarly, modified “Stream” definition to match updated “Creek” definition (refers to Type S, F, Np or Ns water).
 - iii. Modified “Development” definition.
 - iv. Added “New hard surface” definition.
 - v. Added “New impervious surface” definition.
 - vi. Modified “Pollution-generating pervious surface” definition.
 - vii. Modified “Pollution-generating impervious surface” definition, including adding “rail lines, railways, and rail yards” as pollution-generating based on Ecology’s response to MS4 Permit comments.
 - viii. Modified “Project” definition.
 - ix. Modified “Project site” definition.
 - x. Modified “Replaced hard surface” definition” and “Replaced impervious surface” definitions.
 - xi. Modified “Site” definition.
 - b. Changes made to implement existing or new City policies or clarify intent:
 - i. Added curbs and gutters to listed example components of a “Drainage system” as they are used to convey stormwater in addition to distinguishing between the roadway and non-roadway sections of the right-of-way.
 - ii. Modified “Single-family residential project” definition by adding “associated accessory dwelling unit”. Also modified threshold from 10,000 sf to 5,000 sf total new plus replaced hard surface and removed reference to pollution generating hard surface threshold since no longer applicable. Modified threshold to simplify code, avoid confusion with other project types, and to acknowledge that minimizing impervious surfaces by design meets “Low Impact Development” principles, which is a requirement of the City’s MS4 Permit. All projects with greater than 5,000 sf of new plus replaced hard

Exhibit A

surfaces are considered “Parcel-based projects” and are additionally subject to flow control and water quality treatment, which Single-family residential projects are not.

Chapter 22.803 – Minimum Requirements for All Discharges and All Real Property

5. Added new BMP for Source Controls for All Real Property (22.803.030): The proposed revisions include source control BMPs for rooftop dog runs, stating: “Rooftop Dog Runs. Dog runs located on private property on rooftops or above-grade plazas must prevent stormwater from the dog run from discharging directly or indirectly to a public drainage system, private drainage system, or receiving water body.”
6. Added new minimum requirements for Source Controls for Businesses and Public Entities for Specific Activities (22.803.040): The proposed revisions include source control BMPs for certain pollution-generating activities to prevent contaminants from coming into contact with drainage water, public combined sewer, or receiving waters. Such activities include: Fueling; vehicle/equipment repair / maintenance; concrete/asphalt handling/production; recycling/scrap yard operations; aboveground liquid tank storage.

Chapter 22.805 – Minimum Requirements for Projects

7. The proposed revisions include several added general requirements to clarify the applicability of the minimum requirements (22.805.010.B, C, and D): Specifically,
 - a. 22.805.010.B was added to clarify that “Closely related projects shall be considered as one project for purposes of applying the Stormwater Code...” This aligns with how the City applies SEPA categorical exemptions and Design Review to development proposals. When separate development proposals are closely related, they are evaluated as one proposal for purposes of applying Stormwater Code thresholds.
 - b. 22.805.010.C was added to clarify that “When an application requires preliminary drainage review... applications for building permits, grading permits, and other construction permits on the site receiving preliminary drainage review shall comply with the provisions of the approved preliminary drainage control plan.” This change was added to align with the new category and submittal requirements for Preliminary Drainage Review (22.807.020.A.1), summarized further under subsection 22.807.020 below.
 - c. 22.805.010.D was added to clarify the required timing of construction of stormwater facilities that will serve multiple proposed lots, parcels, or tracts to mitigate impacts prior to installation of hard surfaces associated with the development.
8. Added two new sections to the Minimum Requirements for All Projects (22.805.020) related to extension of the public drainage system: For projects not constructed in the public right-of-way, new section 22.805.020.L – Extension of the Public Drainage System outlines specific conditions when “extension of the piped public drainage system across the full extent of the parcel boundary shall be required.” Similarly, for projects that are constructed in the public right-of-way, new section 22.805.020.M – Extension of the Public Drainage System outlines when “extension of the piped public drainage system across the full extent of the site shall be required.” Current extension requirements are located in “Authority” 22.800.080, but these sections are added to be more transparent regarding project requirement to extend the public

Exhibit A

drainage system by adding to “Minimum Requirements for All Projects” section of the code. Additional details regarding conveyance requirements in the right of way will be addressed in a new Public Drainage System Requirements Director’s Rule.

9. Added a new section to the Minimum Requirements for all Projects (22.805.020.N) stating that the public drainage system shall be constructed in accordance with the City’s Standard Plans and Specifications, and other rules promulgated by the Director of SPU. The Stormwater Code was previously silent on this requirement.
10. Revised Minimum Requirements for Parcel-based Projects (22.805.050):
 - a. Added reference to 22.805.020.E (Protect Wetlands) to require Parcel-based Projects to comply with minimum requirements for wetland protection. This change was made for consistency with the City’s MS4 Permit.
 - b. Updated the flow-related portion of the thresholds presented in 22.805.050.C.2.a.4 (for compliance with the Pre-Developed Forested Standard) from 0.1 cubic feet per second (cfs) to 0.15 cfs. This change was made for consistency with the City’s MS4 Permit.
 - c. Revised the flow control standard for Parcel-based Projects discharging to small lake basins (Bitter Lake, Green Lake, or Haller Lake, or to the drainage basin of such lake) from the Peak Standard to the “Existing Condition Standard” which aligns with the City’s MS4 Permit requirements for these areas in Seattle.
 - d. The following project thresholds were revised for Parcel-based projects. The intent of these changes is to further simplify the code by shifting most of the thresholds to be at 5,000 sf of new plus replaced hard surface:
 - i. Revised the threshold for Parcel-based Projects required to meet the Pasture Standard in creek basins from 2,000 sf to 5,000 sf of new plus replaced hard surfaces.
 - ii. Revised the threshold for Parcel-based Projects required to meet the Peak Standard in small lake basins from 2,000 sf to 5,000 sf of new plus replaced hard surfaces.
 - iii. Revised the threshold for Parcel-based Projects required to meet the Peak Standard in public combined sewer basins from 10,000 sf to 5,000 sf of new plus replaced hard surfaces.
11. Revised Minimum Requirements for Roadway Projects (22.805.050): Several code changes are proposed affecting how stormwater is managed in the right of way. For items “c” through “f” below, the combined changes reflect a shift in City objectives regarding stormwater management in the right of way. Specifically, the proposed code changes aim to more effectively use ratepayer and taxpayer funding to manage stormwater impacts of roadway projects by 1) allowing SPU to focus on managing environmental impacts in creeks and combined sewer areas (i.e., environmental flow control needs are better addressed through SPU programs than through by Stormwater Code requirements applied to individual roadway projects), and 2) allowing SDOT to shift priorities to focus more on managing stormwater conveyance issues in the right of way.

Exhibit A

- a. Added reference to 22.805.020.E (Protect Wetlands) to require Roadway Projects to comply with minimum requirements for wetland protection. Also added requirements and thresholds related to compliance with the minimum requirements for wetland protection contained in subsection 22.805.080.B.1 (Wetland Protection Standards). This change was made for consistency with the City’s MS4 Permit as well the shift in objectives noted above.
 - b. Updated the flow-related portion of the thresholds presented in 22.805.050.C.2.a.4 (for compliance with the Pre-Developed Forested Standard) from 0.1 cubic feet per second (cfs) to 0.15 cfs. This change was made for consistency with the City’s MS4 Permit.
 - c. Revised the flow control standard for Roadway Projects discharging to creek basins from the Pasture Standard to the “Existing Condition Standard”.
 - d. Revised the threshold trigger from “new plus replaced hard surface” to “new hard surface” for certain Roadway Project scenarios most applicable in the City.
 - e. Revised the flow control standard for Roadway Projects discharging to small lake basins (Bitter Lake, Green Lake, or Haller Lake, or to the drainage basin of such lake), capacity-constrained systems, and discharges from groundwater from the Peak Standard to the “Existing Condition Standard”.
 - f. Removed flow control requirements for Roadway Projects in the public combined sewer.
12. Revised Minimum Requirements for On-Site Stormwater Management (22.805.070): Most of the updates to this section are focused on minor changes to the On-site Stormwater Management Lists (22.805.070.D) designed to expand the On-site Stormwater Management toolbox options and/or clarify the choices of BMPs that are available to meet the On-site Stormwater Management requirements. Notable revisions include:
- a. Added clarification that tables apply to roofs and other hard surfaces.
 - b. Added that Infiltration Trenches and Drywells can be used for non-roof hard surfaces, but evaluation is not required (applies to Single-family Residential Projects and Parcel-based Projects).
 - c. Moved Non-infiltrating Bioretention and Vegetated Roofs to Category 4 (shifted former Category 4 BMPs to Category 5) (applies to Single-family Residential Projects and Parcel- based Projects).
 - d. Clarified that water quality treatment BMPs can be used in lieu of non-infiltrating bioretention unless a combined sewer basin.
 - e. Added new Category 2 BMP – Sidewalk / Trail Compost Amended Strip (applies to all On-site Lists). This new BMP provides a relatively simple and effective BMP specific to narrow sidewalk and trail projects common in the City. Note that this BMP is not applicable to Roadway or other pollution-generating surfaces.
 - f. Added trees to a new Category 4 (applies to Trail and Sidewalk Projects and Roadway Projects).

Exhibit A

- g. Added Rainwater Harvesting to Category 4 for SFR and Parcel-based Projects.
- h. Added footnotes outlining the Rainwater Harvesting sizing requirements under Category 2 and Category 4 applications. Specifically, Category 2 rainwater harvesting shall be sized to meet the on-site performance standard (22.805.070.C) whereas Category 4 rainwater harvesting shall be sized to reduce the runoff volume by 25 percent or more on an annual average basis. Change based on public feedback regarding feasibility and sizing of rainwater harvesting.
- i. Revised footnotes for Parcel-based and Roadway Projects to clarify that rain gardens cannot be used to meet requirements for areas of 5,000 sf or more.

13. Revised Minimum Requirements for Flow Control (22.805.080):

- a. 22.805.080.B.1 (Wetland Protection Standards) was substantially modified to reflect updated guidance developed by the Department of Ecology (and as required by the City’s MS4 Permit). The changes outline requirements for new discharges to a wetland, wetland classifications (based on state requirements), and applicable wetland protection standards and methods to achieve those standards. These changes were for consistency with the City’s MS4 Permit.
- b. Add a new “Existing Conditions Standard” (22.805.080.B.4) based on matching post-development stormwater discharge durations to those of the existing (i.e., pre-project) land cover conditions. As noted previously, this new standard applies to Parcel-based Projects discharging to small lake basins, as well as most Roadway Projects.
- c. Revised the technical requirements of the Peak Control Standard (22.805.080.B.5) to better reflect the downstream impacts of peak flows from a typical project, and therefore to optimize flow control designs based on smaller storm events.

14. Revised Minimum Requirements for Treatment (22.805.090):

- a. Added the option for pollution generating pervious areas (PGPS) to develop a landscape management plan (LMP) as an alternative to providing water quality treatment for PGPS. In most cases, a LMP would be the preferred and most effective method for minimizing water quality pollution from PGPS. New guidelines for developing an LMP are also provided in the Manual, and each individual LMP must be approved by the City.
- b. Clarified that Enhanced Treatment requirements (22.805.090.B.5) do not apply to projects discharging to a basic treatment receiving water (22.801.030 “B”). This change is for consistency with the City’s MS4 Permit.
- c. Added that Enhanced Treatment (22.805.090.B.5) is required for parcel-based projects that propose four or more dwelling units. This change is for consistency with the City’s MS4 Permit.

Chapter 22.807 – Drainage Control Review and Application Requirements

15. Revised Drainage control review and application requirements (22.807.020):

- a. Added a new category and submittal requirements for “Preliminary Drainage Review.” (22.807.020.A.1) to facilitate drainage review being adequately performed

Exhibit A

during the Master Use Permit process. Specifically, “Preliminary drainage review and approval is required for applications for the following approvals:

- i. Subdivisions
 - ii. Short plats
 - iii. Unit lot subdivisions
 - iv. Lot boundary adjustments
 - v. Master use permits that would allow development that includes 750 square feet or more of new plus replaced hard surface or 5,000 square feet of land disturbing activity where the Director has determined that a preliminary drainage review is required considering, but not limited, to the following attributes of the site: 1) Location within an environmentally critical area or buffer; 2) Proximity and tributary to an environmentally critical area or buffer; and 3) Proximity and tributary to an area with adequacy, erosion, water quality, or flooding problems.”
- b. Updated the thresholds and terminology for “Standard Drainage Review” (22.807.020.A.1). These revisions were made to align with the new “Preliminary Drainage Review” category described above and to reflect general changes in terminology throughout the Stormwater Code and Manual (and MS4 Permit). In addition, the requirement for Standard Drainage Review and Approval was revised to include specific activities and projects such as new or substantially-altered fueling stations; in-water and over-water fueling; maintenance and repair of vehicles and equipment; concrete and asphalt mixing and production; recycling, wrecking yard, and scrap yard operations; and storage of liquids in aboveground tanks (also reflected in 22.803.040.A “Minimum Requirements for Source Controls For Businesses and Public Entities for Specific Activities”).
 - c. Added the requirement that drainage control review thresholds also be applied to “closely related projects.” Specifically: “For purposes of applying the thresholds in this subtitle, all closely related projects as determined according to subsection 22.805.010.B shall be counted toward the threshold.”
 - d. Added a requirement that the drainage control plan for any project that “includes development conducted in or near a receiving water requiring a Hydraulic Project Approval (WAC 220-660)” shall be prepared by a licensed civil engineer.

16. Revised Maintenance and Inspection requirements (22.807.090):

- a. Revised the “Responsibility for Maintenance and Inspection” requirements to include the maintenance of “management plans.” Similarly, when informing future purchasers and other successors and assignees to the property, language was added to require the owners to inform purchasers regarding “the implementation of a landscape management plan, if one exists.” This language was added to reflect the addition of landscape management plans as an option to meet water quality treatment requirements for PGPS as outlined previously.

Exhibit A

Conclusion & Recommendation

All the proposed 2021 modifications to the Stormwater Code are either equivalent or unrelated to Ecology requirements in the MS4 Permit and have been developed in consideration of the best available science.

The Director of SPU and the Director of SDCI recommend that the “2021 Revision to Stormwater Code” modifications be adopted.

References

- Ecology, Washington State Department of, 2019. Phase I Municipal Stormwater Permit: National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System and State Waste Discharge General Permit for discharges from Large and Medium Municipal Separate Storm Sewer Systems. Permit issued on July 1, 2019, effective on August 1, 2019.
- Ecology, Washington State Department of, 2019. Stormwater Management Manual for Western Washington. July 2019.
- Ecology, Washington State Department of, 2018. Fact Sheet: Phase I Municipal Stormwater Permit: National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System and State Waste Discharge General Permit for discharges from Large and Medium Municipal Separate Storm Sewer Systems. Fact Sheet dated August 15, 2018.
- Seattle, 2005. Environmentally Critical Areas Code Update: Best Available Science Review. Department of Planning and Development. August 2005.
- Seattle, 2009. Environmentally Critical Areas: Best Available Science Review (Supplemental Report): Stormwater Code & Grading Code Revisions. Seattle Public Utilities. June 2009. (This is Attachment 1 to Seattle City Clerk File 310134.)
- Seattle. 2015. Environmentally Critical Areas – Best Available Science Review (Supplemental Report). Exhibit B to the SPU 2015 Stormwater Code Bill Summary and Fiscal Note. February 12, 2015.
- WSDOT, 2019. Washington Department of Transportation (WSDOT) Highway Runoff Manual. April, 2019.

Environmentally Critical Areas: Best Available Science Review
February 2021

INTRODUCTION

Purpose of Report

The purpose of this report is to provide a compilation and review of selected literature that is representative of the best available science regarding urban stormwater management. It has been prepared for the proposed revisions to the City of Seattle (City) Stormwater Code (Seattle Municipal Code [SMC] 22.800 – 22.808). It is intended to fulfill the provisions of Revised Code of Washington (RCW) 36.70A.172, which requires that cities and counties “include the best available science in developing policies and development regulations to protect the functions and values of critical areas” and the Washington Administrative Code (WAC) 365-195-900 through WAC 365-195-925, which contain rules designed to assist cities and counties in identifying and including the best available science in adopted policies and regulations.

Scope of Report

The Stormwater Code and associated joint Seattle Public Utilities/Department of Planning and Development (SPU/DPD) Directors’ Rules are being revised in order to comply with the requirements of the City’s coverage under the 2019-2024 Phase I Municipal Stormwater Permit (MS4 Permit, Ecology 2019a), as well as to incorporate related City policy changes and to improve usability. The MS4 Permit was issued by the Washington State Department of Ecology (Ecology) under both the National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System (NPDES) program established by the federal Clean Water Act and the State of Washington Water Pollution Control Law. The MS4 Permit was issued on July 1, 2019 and became effective on August 1, 2019. The MS4 Permit requires that the City’s Stormwater Code and associated Stormwater Manual (to be contained in the Directors’ Rule) include minimum requirements, thresholds, definitions, and other specified requirements, limitations, and criteria, determined by Ecology to be equivalent to Appendix 1 of the MS4 Permit for new development, redevelopment, and construction. In addition, maintenance provisions must be at least as protective of facility function as, and source control provisions must be functionally equivalent to, Ecology’s Stormwater Management Manual for Western Washington (SWMMWW, Ecology 2019b).

The MS4 Permit requirements (and the proposed 2021 Stormwater Code Updates) follow a set of previous MS4 Permit requirements that became effective in January 2015 (Ecology 2014a). The technical basis for the 2016 Stormwater Code update was well established, and the associated best available science documentation was thorough. Most is still applicable. As such, a substantial portion of this document repeats and incorporates information presented in the 2015 Best Available Science Review (Supplemental Report) (Seattle 2015). This February 2021 update to the 2015 Best Available Science Review (Supplemental Report) refers to additional literature on the general impacts of stormwater management, as well as selected information related to particularly notable 2021 Stormwater Code Update elements.

This document also supplements the City’s Environmentally Critical Areas: Best Available Science Reviews (Seattle 2005, Seattle 2007, Seattle 2013a), which present detailed reviews of

the best available science regarding wetlands, fish and wildlife conservation areas, geologic hazard areas, flood-prone areas, abandoned landfills, and critical aquifer recharge areas.

Overview of Report

This report provides a summary of the impacts of urban stormwater runoff on receiving waters relating to changes in flow rates and volumes, and water quality. It then presents a review of selected scientific literature related to urban stormwater management, focusing on BMPs related to stormwater runoff flow control and water quality treatment. It includes literature regarding wetland protection, flow control in creek basins, low impact development, stormwater quality treatment facilities, and construction site stormwater pollution prevention.

This report is not intended to present an exhaustive review of the scientific literature on the subject of urban stormwater runoff management. Creating such an all-inclusive compilation would result in a multi-volume document that would duplicate existing resources. Readers interested in more comprehensive compilations regarding the science of managing urban stormwater runoff should consider: Ecology (2014b), Minton (2002), Sheldon (2005), Washington State University/Puget Sound Partnership (WSU and PSP 2012), Shaver et al. (2007), National Research Council (2009), and Puget Sound Partnership (2010), among many others.

EFFECTS OF URBAN STORMWATER

Impacts of Urban Stormwater Runoff on Flow

Prior to Euro-American settlement, the landscape tree canopy, other vegetative cover, and forest duff layer limited damaging high stormwater runoff flows through interception, evapotranspiration, and absorption of rainfall. As the human population increased and commerce grew in Seattle, the overall nature of the landscape was changed. Trees were logged, land was cleared, buildings and roadways were built, and the soil was compacted. The overall impact of these changes resulted in:

- Increased flow rates of stormwater runoff
- Increased volumes of stormwater runoff
- Decreased time for stormwater runoff to reach a downstream receiving water
- Greater in-stream flow velocities.
- Reduced groundwater recharge
- Increased frequency and duration of high stream flows and wetland inundation during and after wet weather
- Reduced stream flows and wetland water levels during the dry season.

Schueler (1987) provides an illustrative graph showing the relationship between pre-developed stream flow rates and post-development stream flow rates, which is provided below in Figure 1.

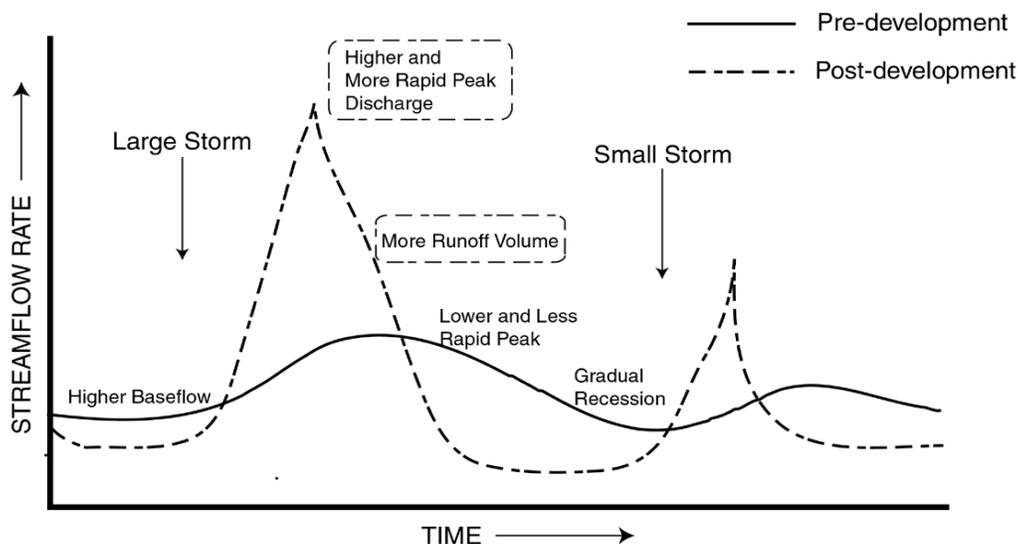


Figure 1. Changes in Hydrology after Development (Schueler 1987)

The relationship between changes in effective imperviousness and the quality of streams is well documented (see, for example, Dunn and Leopold 1978, Booth and Jackson 1997, Arnold and Gibbons 1996, McMahon and Cuffney 2000, USGS 2009). High stream flows, caused by increases in imperviousness in a catchment, can result in channel erosion and stream bank instability. Booth and Jackson (1997) showed that increased flows can occur even when the catchment has undergone relatively small changes in the percent of effective imperviousness. For example, Figure 2 illustrates how runoff from a 2-year storm in an urban catchment with approximately 10 percent impervious surface is equal to the runoff from a 10-year storm in a forested catchment (ibid).

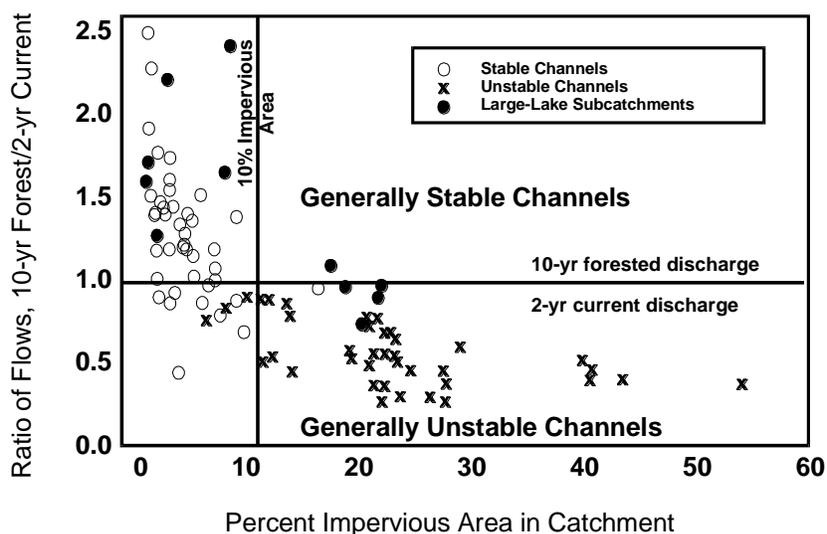


Figure 2. Channel Stability and Land Use: Hylebos, East Lake Sammamish, and Issaquah Basins (Booth and Jackson 1997)

The changes in hydrologic regime associated with urban stormwater runoff can also significantly impact aquatic life. When a stream changes its physical configuration and substrate due to increased flows, habitats are altered. Significant and detectable changes in the biological community of Puget Sound lowland streams have been observed early in the urbanization process. This is due to a combination of changes in flow conditions, as well as water quality conditions (discussed further in the next section). May (1996) and May et al. (1997) reported observable biological changes in the 5-10 percent total impervious area range of a watershed (Figure 3). Using the Benthic Index of Biotic Integrity (B-IBI) developed by Karr (1991) and Kleindl (1995), May et al. (1997) evaluated the relationship between B-IBI and the extent of watershed urbanization as estimated by the percentage of total impervious area (Figure 3). Also shown in Figure 3 is the correlation between the abundance ratio of juvenile Coho salmon to cutthroat trout (Lucchetti and Fuerstenberg 1993) and the extent of urbanization.

The biological communities in wetlands are also severely impacted and altered by the hydrological changes. Relatively small changes in the natural water elevation fluctuations can cause significant shifts in vegetative and animal species composition (Reinelt and Taylor 2000, Azous and Horner 2001).

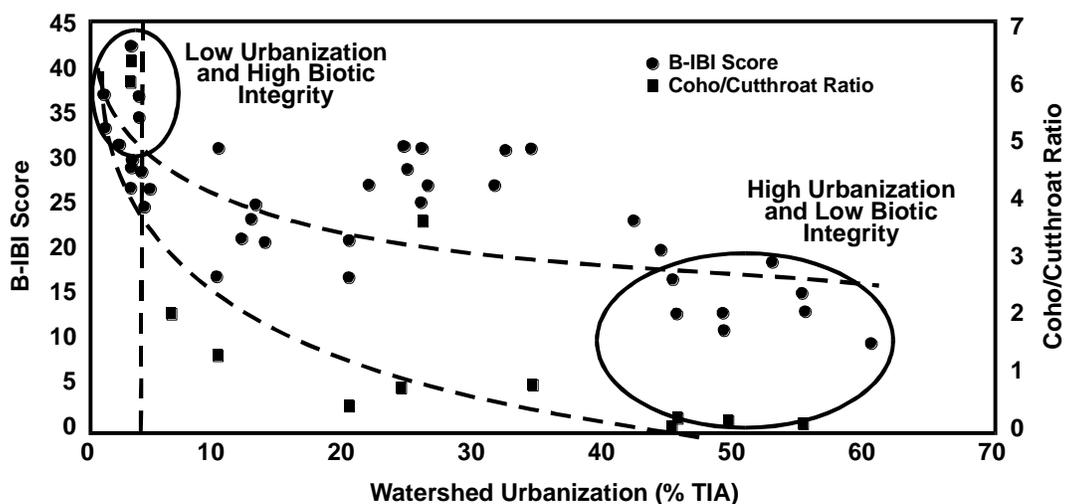


Figure 3. Relationship between Basin Development and Biologic Integrity in Puget Sound Lowland Streams (May et al., 1997)

Impacts of Urban Stormwater Runoff on Water Quality

Stormwater runoff and associated contaminants from developed areas have been identified as one of the leading threats to aquatic life supported by the Puget Sound ecosystem. Reducing surface water runoff pollutant loading and runoff from the built environment is a key priority action for the restoration of Puget Sound (Puget Sound Partnership 2010). Stormwater runoff from developed areas can contain pollutants that can contaminate surface, marine, and groundwaters (Ecology 2011a). The type of pollutant depends on the nature of activities in those

areas as follows:

- **Roads:** Runoff from roads is typically contaminated with pollutants from vehicles. Oil, grease, polynuclear aromatic hydrocarbons (PAHs), lead, zinc, copper, cadmium, sediments (soil particles), associated nutrients, and road salts are all typical pollutants present in road runoff (Zawlocki et al. 1981, Mar et. al. 1982, Davis et al. 2001). Vehicles are the primary source of most of these pollutants. Most oil and grease come from vehicle leakage, while PAH's are primarily from vehicle exhaust. Lead is most commonly associated with wear of metallic parts, wheel balance weights (wearing and falling from wheels), and battery leakage due to car accidents. The primarily source of zinc is wear from tires, and copper primarily comes from brake pad wear. A highly toxic chemical (6PPD) associated with rubber tire residue is also associated with roadway runoff and may be linked to the acute mortality of adult migrating salmon (Tian et al 2020).
- **Commercial/Industrial areas:** Runoff from commercial and industrial areas typically can contain heavy metals, sediments, and a broad range of man-made organic pollutants including phthalates, PAHs, and other petroleum-based hydrocarbons (National Research Council 2009). Vehicles and pavement sealants are two common sources of pollutants from these areas. Other sources depend on the types of operations that are present on the property.
- **Residential areas:** Runoff from residential areas can include the same road-based pollutants outlined above, as well as herbicides, pesticides, surfactants, nutrients (from fertilizers), bacteria and viruses (from animal waste, Engstrom 2004), as well as sediment from dirt and gravel driveways. These contaminants can be entrained in stormwater runoff directly, or can reach downstream surface water bodies and marine environments via shallow groundwater flows. In addition, curtain and foundation drains often discharge to municipal systems and can contribute pollutants to surface water bodies. Zinc strips and other zinc based products are commonly used in residential areas to prevent and treat moss, and can add additional zinc to runoff from residential areas. Bleach and detergents are also commonly used for moss treatment. Most detergents contain phosphorus, which can contribute to eutrophication of surface water bodies (because productivity in fresh water bodies is typically phosphorus limited). Other pollutants from residential areas include insecticides, copper from copper roofs, zinc from composite roofs, and deicers.
- **Construction sites:** Runoff from construction sites can include sediments and other suspended material, which can increase turbidity or cloudiness in downstream receiving waters and can be deposited over the natural sediments of the receiving water and affect streams and wetlands (Barrett et al. 1995, Ecology 2014b, Horner et al. 2002a). The City has also given attention to concerns associated with construction demolition activities and the potential for heavy metals contamination and dust fall. Jacobs et al. (2013) found that “lead dust suppression is feasible and important in single-family housing demolition where distances between houses are smaller and community exposures are higher.” Though they also indicate that additional research is needed to determine the likelihood of potential for stormwater contamination. Several agencies and groups provide guidance on control of pollution from demolition activities, including East Baltimore Development’s 2006 *Operations Protocol for Salvage, Deconstruction, Demolition and Site Preparation Activities* (EBDI 2006).

Stormwater pollutants resulting from development can be dissolved in the water column or can be attached to particulates that settle in streambeds, lakes, wetlands, or marine estuaries. The toxic pollutants in the water column can have both immediate and long-term lethal impacts (Baldwin et al. 2003; Hansen et al. 2002). In addition, development can increase water temperatures by heating stormwater runoff as it passes over exposed surfaces, before being discharged to receiving waters (Foulquier et al. 2009). A rise in water temperature can have direct lethal effects on aquatic organisms by reducing the available dissolved oxygen and potentially causing algae blooms that further reduce water clarity and the amount of dissolved oxygen in the water (McCullough et al. 2001).

STORMWATER FLOW CONTROL AND WATER QUALITY TREATMENT

Overview

Stormwater runoff is widely recognized in the scientific literature as an agent for physical, chemical, and biological degradation (Booth et al. 2006), and stormwater research is an ongoing, evolving field of study. Consider, for example, how the best available science regarding flow control performance standards for stormwater discharges into creeks in western Washington has changed over the past three decades. Early flow control requirements were based solely on limiting the post-development *peak flow rates* to below a set value – a value independent of the pre-developed condition (King County 1979). Booth (1990) advocated a different post-development peak flow rate standard that was linked to a percentage of the pre-development peak flow rate. Soon thereafter, and as a result of research indicating that peak flow control alone was insufficient to mitigate stormwater impacts to creeks, a post-development flow control standard based on a pre-development *flow-duration standard* was proposed (Booth 1991). Less than 10 years later, additional research indicated that this proposed flow-duration standard was not achieving all the objectives for protecting creeks from channel incision and sediment transport, owing to overall disruption of the natural hydrologic regime (Booth and Jackson 1997). More recently, low impact development (LID) techniques have been promoted as the preferred means for managing urban stormwater runoff and mimicking pre-development flow regimes (Booth 2007, Horner 2007, Holz 2007, NRDC 2006, Ecology 2014b), with an emphasis on mitigating the impacts of small and less-frequent storm events. Thus, in the space of roughly 30 years of research and assessment, four different types of flow control requirements have been presented in the scientific and professional literature as representative of the best available science for urban runoff management for flow control for creek basins in western Washington alone.

The sections that follow provide a review of selected citations that address two critical aspects of urban stormwater runoff management: flow control and water quality treatment. Flow control is important to mitigate the impacts of urban development on changes in hydrologic regime in wetlands and creek basins. Water quality treatment focuses on 1) permanent/constructed stormwater treatment facilities designed to remove chemical contaminants from runoff, and 2) operational BMPs to reduce stormwater contamination and minimize the transport of sediment to receiving waters from construction sites and grading activities. Note that although specific constructed facilities described below are included under one of the two categories of flow control or water quality treatment, many facilities (such as those involving infiltration) often serve a dual role, providing both flow control and water quality treatment, depending on how

these facilities are designed (Ecology 2014b, Ecology 2019b).

Flow Control

The following sections build on the information presented previously to elaborate on the aspects of stormwater runoff impacts and mitigation measures related to flow control. Information is discussed relating to wetland and creek protection, followed by an expanded discussion on low impact development (LID) and LID BMPs related to flow control.

Wetland Protection

The following information is derived from a report prepared by Sheldon et al. (2005), which provides a comprehensive summary and synthesis of the literature relevant to the science and management of wetlands in the state of Washington.

Urbanization is recognized as both increasing and decreasing the flows that reach down-gradient aquatic systems such as wetlands. Greater volumes of water are generated more quickly while smaller, long-duration flows that would occur under less developed conditions are reduced or perhaps eliminated. Research has shown that collecting stormwater through modern storm drains, culverts, and catchments results in the rapid transport of large volumes of stormwater runoff into rivers, lakes, and wetlands at much faster rates and higher volumes than under predevelopment conditions (Dunn and Leopold 1978, Booth 1991, May 1996). Although some of the research has focused on the effects of urbanization on streams, the findings on changes in flow volumes, rates, and frequency apply equally to wetlands that receive storm drainage. Streams and wetlands are “intimately interconnected in the watersheds of western Washington” (Booth 1991).

Changes to hydrologic conditions can negatively impact the ecology of a wetland. Reinelt and Taylor (2000) used water level fluctuations as a primary factor in evaluating wetland hydroperiod. “Water level fluctuation is perhaps the best single indicator of wetland hydrology, because it integrates nearly all hydrologic factors.” Increases in impervious surface coverage reduce infiltration, thereby reducing interflow (shallow, subsurface flow) and base flow, which may influence the hydroperiod of down-gradient wetlands if they are fed by that shallow subsurface flow. Similarly, reductions in watershed infiltration correspond to increases in surface water runoff, which also impact the hydroperiod of downstream wetlands. These increased water level fluctuations have been associated with declines in the biotic diversity of wetlands (Reinelt et al. 1998, Azous and Horner 2001). Likewise, although many hydric soils (i.e., wetland soils) may be anaerobic, changing the length of time the soils are inundated results in changes in wetland soil chemistry, which in turn can influence the survival of vegetation and microbes in the soil that were adapted to shorter periods of inundation (Thom et al. 2001). The wetland protection standards outlined in the MS4 Permit and SWMMWW aim to minimize these fluctuations in hydroperiod through control of the changes in the volume of stormwater runoff delivered to a wetland pre- and post-project development.

The *Washington State Wetland Rating System for Western Washington* (Hruby 2014) provided an updated wetland rating system to provide a more accurate rating of functions and values.

Flow Control in Creek Basins

As noted previously, a growing body of research confirms that urbanization alters the hydrologic

regime (Dunne and Leopold 1978, Schueler 1987, Booth and Jackson 1997, Ecology 2014b). These alterations result in higher volumes of stormwater runoff, delivered at higher flow rates for longer durations than under pre-development conditions (Booth 1991, May 1996). Research by Konrad and Booth (2002) in the Puget Sound lowlands showed statistically significant correlations between urbanization in a watershed and altered creek hydrologic regimes. Even small changes in watershed imperviousness can have measurable influences on flows in a creek system (Azous and Horner 2001). Booth (1991) concluded that urbanization could cause peak flow rates to increase by up to five-fold for a given storm event. These altered hydrologic regimes adversely impact creek systems through channel erosion and incision (May 1996, May et al. 1997). These effects are spread across a wide range of storm event sizes, with smaller and more frequent events often having the greatest cumulative effect on creek morphology.

Stormwater flow control BMPs are designed to reduce the volume, flow rate, and timing of stormwater flows released from developed sites. Some facilities function by storing stormwater and controlling the release rates so that post-development hydrology more closely resembles pre-development hydrology. Other facilities use infiltration, evapotranspiration, and stormwater reuse in an attempt to better mimic natural hydrologic regimes.

Flow Control Performance Standards to Protect Creeks

The term *flow control performance standard* is used to represent the combination of flow rates, volumes, and durations that are allowed to be discharged from a site. Per the MS4 Permit, these standards must be met for projects that exceed certain regulatory thresholds, most generally based on the amount of new and replaced impervious surfaces, but which can also be dependent on the type of project, size of project, area disturbed, and the drainage basin in which the project is located. Flow control performance standards are intended to reduce the impacts of changes in hydrologic regime on creek systems caused by changes in land cover, impacts that can include: erosion, sedimentation, instability, flooding, and other damage to the streambank and riparian corridor.

The Stormwater Management Manual for the Puget Sound Basin (Ecology 1992) required the use of a single-rainfall-event hydrologic model to calculate pre-development and post-development runoff, and associated flow control performance standards. The following post-development peak flow rate conditions, based on selected storm statistics, were required if stormwater infiltration was not feasible on site:

- 100-year/24-hour storm – post-development peak flow rate could not exceed the pre-development peak flow rate
- 10-year/24-hour storm – post-development peak flow rate could not exceed the pre-development peak flow rate
- 2-year/24-hour storm – post-development peak flow rate could not exceed the 50 percent of pre-development peak flow rate.

The intent of the “50 percent of the pre-development peak flow rate” component of the standard was to prevent stream channel destabilization by controlling sediment transport, based on research by Sidle (1988) and Booth (1990). (The other two standards were focused more on flooding and property protection.) While this flow control approach provided more environmental protection than having no standards, it is now widely acknowledged to have some

fundamental flaws in achieving its intent, among them:

- It assumed that flow statistics correlated to rainfall statistics. That is, the X-year peak flow was assumed to correlate to the X-year, 24-hour peak rainfall depth. The results of continuous simulation models, which use many years of rainfall data rather than individual 24-hour events, show that this assumption is not always valid.
- It assumed that controlling the peak flow from a storm (i.e., preventing the peak flow from exceeding some standard), would prevent channel instability. This is not true, since the peak flow standards do not address the increase in total runoff volume that occurs with urbanization, which translates into an increase in total time that elevated storm flow rates will work on the channel to transport sediment.
- It did not address alteration of the pre-development hydrologic regime related to total rainfall infiltration, evapotranspiration, and inter-storm runoff.

Booth (1991) discussed the shortcomings of single-event model and a peak flow detention standards, and proposed using a “flow duration control” standard. Rather than limiting only the peak flow rate, a flow duration control standard limits the total amount of time over a relatively long period (e.g., months) during which the flow rate could exceed selected flow rates of concern. Designing a project site to meet a flow duration control standard requires a continuous simulation hydrologic model.

Six years later, Booth and Jackson (1997) discussed the shortcomings of flow duration control standards. Among these is the premise that for all streams there is a flow rate below which no sediment transport occurs, and that a flow rate below this index rate would not cause channel incision regardless of the flow duration. Booth and Jackson (1997) state that “For gravel-bed stream channels, this threshold discharge is real and can be determined on a site-specific or generic basis. In sand-bedded channel, however, the threshold of sediment motion occurs at impracticably low discharges, and so increases in the net transport of bed material virtually unavoidable in such systems.”

In 1998, King County promulgated a stormwater technical manual and associated regulations that used flow duration control standards to mitigate impacts from stormwater flow, specifically intended to reduce impacts related to transport of sediment and stream channel erosion (Booth 1991, King County 1998). To implement this performance standard, King County developed a continuous modeling tool, the King County Runoff Time Series (KCRTS) program, which was based on the Hydrological Simulation Program-Fortran (HSPF) model developed by the US Geological Survey (USGS). Ecology followed suit in 2001, incorporating a flow duration control standard into the minimum requirements flow control contained in the Stormwater Management Manual (Ecology 2001) and the subsequent iterations of the SWMMWW (Ecology 2005, Ecology 2014b). Based in part on results of in-depth investigations performed by King County on the Juanita Creek watershed (O’Brien 2014), the 2014 version of the SWMMWW has reinforced the emphasis on both flow duration and small/frequent storm events by including an added *Low Impact Development Performance Standard* requiring that stormwater discharges match developed discharge durations to pre-developed durations for the range of pre-developed discharge rates from 8 percent of the 2-year peak flow to 50 percent of the 2-year peak flow. This captures an expanded range of storm events, including storms below (i.e., smaller and more frequent than) those targeted by the flow control duration standard in the previous (2005)

SWMMWW.

The recommended parameters were updated due to the smaller project sites typical within the City of Seattle. The parameters are within the range of possible values cited in *EPA Basins Technical Note 6 Estimating Hydrology and Hydraulic Parameter for HSPF* (EPA 2000). Reports also consulted includes *Characterization and Simulation of Rainfall-Runoff Relations for Headwater Basins in Western King and Snohomish Counties, Washington* (Dinicola 1990) and *Validation of a Numerical Modeling method for Simulating Rainfall-Runoff Relations for Headwater Basins in Western King and Snohomish Counties, Washington* (Dinicola 2001).

Low Impact Development, Green Stormwater Infrastructure, and Flow Control

The term *low impact development* (LID) refers to a range stormwater management measures that are intended to limit impacts of development on hydrologic regime. Ecology (2014a) defines LID as follows:

A stormwater and land use management strategy that strives to mimic pre-disturbance hydrologic processes of infiltration, filtration, storage, evaporation, and transpiration by emphasizing conservation, use of on-site natural features, site planning, and distributed stormwater management practices that are integrated into a project design.

Green stormwater infrastructure (GSI) is the term Seattle generally uses to describe LID approaches in the city. Complicating things somewhat, Ecology uses the term *On-site Stormwater Management* as a “synonym” for LID in the MS4 Permit (Ecology 2014a) when referring to required LID management practices on development sites. As such, Seattle has decided to use the term on-site stormwater management in the 2016 Stormwater Code Update and 2021 Stormwater Code Update in reference to the suite of BMPs required to meet the applicable elements of the MS4 Permit. For clarity, general discussions in this document about LID/GSI approaches and benefits use the term LID or GSI. The term on-site stormwater management will only be used to refer to discussions specific to the MS4 Permit requirements and associated 2016 Stormwater Code Update.

As with LID, one of the key components of GSI in the City of Seattle is trying to replicate as much as feasible the natural hydrologic function by slowing and/or reducing the volume and rate of stormwater runoff through small, distributed runoff management controls and other best practices close to where precipitation lands. By meeting this objective, GSI reduces the capacity, flow, and volumetric demand on the City's stormwater and sanitary systems. GSI also helps provide resiliency and climate adaptation, as a long-term solution to managing the impacts of precipitation and stormwater runoff. According to the US EPA, as communities develop and climate patterns shift, existing stormwater conveyance and treatment infrastructure needs are expected to grow (US EPA 2014). While grey stormwater infrastructure is largely designed to move urban stormwater away from the built environment, GSI reduces (and often treats) stormwater runoff at or near its source (often while providing other environmental, social, and economic benefits).

Over roughly the past decade, an increasing body of literature has promoted LID as a preferred means for addressing urban stormwater runoff in the Puget Sound region (Booth 2007, Horner 2006, Horner 2007, and Holz 2007). Moreover, as part of the municipal appeals of the 2007 MS4 Permits, the Washington State Pollution Control Board (PCHB) concluded in the Phase I MS4

Permit decision that “...based on the great weight of testimony, reference documents, and technical manuals, that low impact development represents AKART [all known, available and reasonable methods of prevention, control and treatment] and is necessary to reduce pollutants in our state's waters to the maximum extent practicable, the federal standard...” (PCHB 2008). The Low Impact Development Technical Guidance Manual for Puget Sound (WSU and PSP 2012) – first published in 2005 and substantially updated in 2012 – contains extensive LID-specific information on site assessment; site planning and layout; vegetation and soil protection; reforestation; site preparation, construction, and inspection; and integrated management practices tailored to the Puget Sound region. It also contains information on hydrologic modeling for LID flow control measures. Much of this information is also contained in the updated version of Ecology’s SWMMWW (Ecology 2019b). Ecology has also developed a guidance document focused on the unique operation and maintenance requirements of LID facilities (Ecology 2013a). Likewise, Seattle has been and remains at the forefront of GSI studies and implementation, and plays an integral role in defining and evaluating the best available science as it relates to LID and GSI in the region. In particular, the City has funded several recent studies focused on evaluating and monitoring bioretention facilities, as well as green roofs (Seattle 2014, WSU 2014, Seattle 2012a). Pertinent outcomes from these studies are discussed further in subsequent sections.

Nationwide, the emphasis on LID has been equally persistent and growing. Similar to the term LID and GSI, *green infrastructure* is the term used by US EPA to refer to the use of “vegetation, soils, and natural processes to manage water and create healthier urban environments. At the scale of a neighborhood or site, green infrastructure refers to stormwater management systems that mimic nature by soaking up and storing water” (US EPA 2015). (The definitions of LID, GSI, and green infrastructure are essentially the same, and used by various agencies and groups nationwide interchangeably.) The amount of literature, technical documentation, guidance manuals, design tools, monitoring information, and educational material focused on LID and green infrastructure is substantial. As such, it is beyond the scope of this document to catalog the full extent of LID resources that are available and the current state of the science for this rapidly evolving technology. Rather, the following sections summarize elements most pertinent to the 2016 Stormwater Code Update and 2021 Stormwater Code Update. Extensive additional information and resources on LID can be found at the US EPA’s green infrastructure website: <water.epa.gov/infrastructure/greeninfrastructure> and Seattle’s GSI website: <www.seattle.gov/util/EnvironmentConservation/Projects/GreenStormwaterInfrastructure/index.htm>. The Low Impact Development Technical Guidance Manual for Puget Sound (WSU and PSP 2012) is also one of the most current and comprehensive sources of additional detailed information and references related to LID in the Puget Sound region.

Applications of Green Stormwater Infrastructure

Green stormwater infrastructure can be an important component of stormwater management strategies, as they may be effective at reducing stormwater discharge volumes and rates of flow through infiltration, evapotranspiration, and capture and reuse. The following sections describe the common applications of GSI.

Creek systems. Proper implementation of GSI measures in creek systems has provided stream erosion protection and preservation, water quality treatment, and watershed habitat improvements (NRDC 2006, ASCE *In Press*). National data is supported locally. University of

Washington monitoring of creek watershed projects showed significant reductions of stormwater volumes, rates, and pollutant loads due in part to the use of GSI (Horner and Chapman 2007). In case studies in the City of Seattle, the 110th Street Cascade and SEA Street projects recorded a runoff volume reduction of 50-98 percent and a peak flow reduction of at least 60 percent. The 110th Street Cascade was monitored for 235 precipitation events, and 79 percent of these events produced no discharge from the bioretention facility (Horner and Chapman, 2007). Monitoring of a typical block of bioretention with underdrain at the High Point redevelopment (till soils) within the Longfellow Creek watershed (December 29, 2006 through September 30, 2007) concluded that the test bioretention cell “treated all runoff from storm events with precipitation totals below the 6-month, 24-hour and 2 year, 24-hour design storms for water quality treatment and flow control, respectively” (Herrera 2009a). The City continues to collect and monitor GSI performance.

CSO reduction. The flow control benefits that are observed in creek systems are also critical in combined sewer systems – with an emphasis on providing volume reduction in wet weather flow conditions to reduce combined sewer overflows (CSOs). In some situations, GSI can be used instead of, or in conjunction with, grey infrastructure depending on the costs and level of control required within a CSO basin. By preventing the rainfall runoff that is generated from impervious sites from quickly entering the piped conveyance system, GSI has been shown to reduce the volume of flow that is conveyed to the treatment plants, thereby reducing both CSOs and general treatment loads during storm events (Dearmont et al. 1998, NRDC 2006, US EPA 2012, ASCE *In Press*).

Local monitoring (September 2012 through April 2013) of a CSO reduction project in the Ballard neighborhood showed significant stormwater runoff volume reduction and delay. Bioretention cells without an underdrain functioned as well as or better than they were designed for by capturing and infiltrating events in excess of a 1-year recurrence interval (over 95 percent of the volume that would otherwise enter the combined system). Even a bioretention cell retrofitted with an underdrain also exceeded design expectations and was found to provide significant volume reduction (approximately 50 percent in 2012-2013, and up to 89 percent average annual volume loss in 2013-2014) during most storms with variability occurring depending on the season, storm patterns, and antecedent moisture conditions (Hutchinson and Atchison 2014).

National studies conducted in North Carolina and Maryland found that six different bioretention cells with underdrains each reduced runoff volume by 20-50 percent, in addition to delaying and reducing peak flows (Li et al. 2009). A modeling effort by the San Francisco Public Utilities Commission found that their 30-year plan for GSI implementation – including green roofs, street trees, bioretention, and permeable pavement – could reduce annual CSO amounts by 200-400 million gallons, equating to a 14-27 percent volume reduction in CSO events (US EPA 2014).

Pipe capacity/flooding. Benefits to other piped conveyance systems can also be realized through GSI implementation. Depending on the causes of piped capacity limitations for a particular system, GSI approaches may be used in conjunction with traditional grey infrastructure improvements and capacity management strategies to help reduce the rate of runoff delivered to piped conveyance systems. Locally, modeling of GSI within the Pipers Creek conveyance network found GSI facilities sized to achieve the City’s peak flow control goal (reducing the 2-year event to pre-developed pasture conditions) reduced the 10-year peak stormwater runoff rate

by 36 percent and the 50-year peak rate by 15 percent (Scheller 2014). Nationally, the Milwaukee Metropolitan Sewerage District reported in their 2020 Facilities Plan that GSI could reduce the 100-year storm peak runoff rates by 22 percent, and the peak for smaller storms could be reduced even further (Sands and Chapman 2011).

Some municipalities have also observed a reduction in flood risk with the implementation of GSI (CNT 2013, US EPA 2014). A study in the southeastern United States found that although GSI does not have a large impact on flooding during very large events (e.g., a 100-year event), smaller events such as the 5-year event can be noticeably mitigated through the use of GSI (Medina et al. 2011). The study also found that targeting a GSI capture volume of 1.2 inches of rainfall, the cost of damage from a 5-year event was reduced from \$13 million to \$8 million average annualized losses.

Types of On-Site Stormwater Management Practices

The following on-site stormwater management BMPs are included in various requirements of the 2016 Stormwater Code Update and 2021 Stormwater Code Update. Note that all of the below facilities are already included in the existing Stormwater Code and are required as part of the City’s MS4 Permit obligations (Ecology 2019a).

As mentioned previously (and referenced in this report), there is ongoing research and resultant technical information dedicated to the design, performance, and monitoring of LID facilities in order to ensure that the best available science is incorporated into local guidance and requirements. There have been dozens of ongoing LID monitoring and assessment projects in the Puget Sound region alone (notable results, where available, are discussed herein). Moreover, the PCHB decision referenced previously (PCHB 2008) clearly established LID as constituting AKART. Notably, soon after that decision, Ecology acted on the LID-based portions of the PCHB’s decision by forming committees of LID experts from across the region to assist in developing LID portions of the next round of MS4 Permit requirements. Among other items, Ecology (with the assistance of these LID Committees) evaluated various site conditions and LID BMPs with the goal of establishing a system that derived the most benefit from a LID BMP. Focusing on the site and subdivision level, Ecology prepared a list of LID BMPs and sought input from the LID Committees on the question of which of the listed BMPs were AKART (O’Brien 2014). These discussions ultimately led to the on-site stormwater management requirements of the 2016 Stormwater Code and 2021 Stormwater Code Update.

As such, the intent of this section is not to document the absolute state of the science of on-site stormwater management BMP design and performance but to briefly highlight some of the region’s history and science associated with those BMPs included in the 2016 Stormwater Code Update and 2021 Stormwater Code Update. For additional detailed information on any of the following BMPs, the Low Impact Development Technical Guidance Manual for Puget Sound (WSU and PSP 2012) is an excellent resource.

Last, in addition to flow control benefits, several of these BMPs also provide significant water quality treatment benefits. Therefore, information pertaining to both flow control and water quality treatment may be presented below, rather than repeating information about a given BMP in both the flow control and water quality treatment sections of this report.

Bioretention

The term *bioretention* is used to describe various designs using soil and plant complexes to manage stormwater runoff. The healthy soil structure and vegetation associated with bioretention facilities promote infiltration, storage, slow release, and treatment of stormwater runoff to more closely mimic natural conditions. In practice, bioretention facilities are also commonly referred to as “rain gardens.” (In the 2016 Stormwater Code Update and 2021 Stormwater Code, the terms bioretention and rain gardens have distinct differences that carry associated design and regulatory requirements for new and redevelopment projects specifically.) Bioretention can provide flow control via detention, attenuation, and losses due to infiltration, interception, and evapotranspiration. Treatment can be provided through sedimentation, filtration, adsorption, and phytoremediation. Early hydrologic performance of a bioinfiltration system in Maryland is discussed by Davis et al. (1998). Early design information was provided by Prince George’s County (1999 and 2002), with a multitude of agencies and groups (including Seattle) developing their own variations on bioretention design since that time.

In the late 1990s, the City constructed its first bioretention facility in a street right-of-way. The system consisted of a roadside swale filled with organically amended soil, in which a perforated drain was installed above the trench bottom so that some water would be retained before the drain was engaged. Water could also be held in the amended soil. The underlying soil was mostly glacial till but there was some sand as well. Approximately 2.3 acres of road and residential development drained to the swale. During the period between January 2000 and January 2001, the system retained all of the dry-season runoff and 98 percent of the wet-season runoff, and was capable of fully attenuating approximately 0.75 inches of rainfall on the catchment area (Horner et al. 2002b). Since that time, dozens of rain gardens and bioretention facilities have been installed on City and private property. Of the on-site stormwater management BMPs presented in the 2016 Stormwater Code Update, bioretention facilities probably receive the most attention in the Puget Sound region with regards to design variations and performance monitoring. The City has performed monitoring on several of these installations, most notably on two facilities from the Ballard Roadside Raingardens project (Seattle 2014). Monitoring of both facilities included continuous flow monitoring for one year, and controlled flow tests in the fall and spring. Monitoring of the bioretention facility on 30th Avenue NW showed that it more than met the design goal of removing the contributing area runoff for up to approximately a 1-year storm event, and that it captured all of the runoff for up to the 15-year storm event. It was also determined that the infiltration rates of the native soil at the 30th Avenue NW facility were higher than assumed during the facility design. The second bioretention facility monitored as part of the study was installed as part of one of the retrofitted blocks along 28th Avenue NW. After the original installation, the facility did not drain as designed and had to be retrofitted with an underdrain to meet the drawdown requirements. Monitoring was performed to determine what change in performance occurred due to the installation of the underdrain. The monitoring results demonstrated that significant flow control and volume reduction benefits were still provided by this system, even though it had an underdrain. The facility reduced peak flow rates by an average of 80 to 90 percent of approximately a 1-year storm event, and delayed discharge to the combined sewer system for 54 percent of the inflow volume. The facility also infiltrated the remaining 46 percent of the inflow volume, more than was originally expected for the retrofitted facility. The City is also tracking or involved in several regional bioretention studies. For example, Kitsap County et al. (2014) has

been leading efforts to evaluate the performance of various compositions of bioretention soil media. Among other results, the studies have found that some (but not all) soil mixes may be leaching dissolved copper (Kitsap County et al. 2014). The studies are ongoing and are investigating which soil mixes are best for use in Washington State. As part of a closely related effort, the City is working with the Washington State University (WSU) LID research facility to evaluate the water quality treatment performance of the City Of Seattle bioretention soil media (BSM). The study (WSU 2014) consists of monitoring of four individual bioretention “mesocosms” (to provide replicate samples) built with the City of Seattle BSM. The study routed natural stormwater and synthetic stormwater (i.e., dosed influent) through the mesocosms and collecting samples of the effluent to evaluate water quality. The results were consistent with other studies around the region, showing higher percentages of pollutant removal with higher influent pollutant concentrations (typical of commercial, industrial areas), but evidence of export of some pollutants (e.g., TSS, dissolved copper, and phosphorus) with lower influent pollutant concentrations (more typical of residential areas). The export of TSS and dissolved copper appeared to decrease over time, but phosphorus release remained mostly steady during the course of the study. McIntyre et al. (In Press) also found bioretention facilities to be very effective at treating polluted runoff from roadway areas, with significant reductions in roadway runoff toxicity when the runoff is filtered through a bioretention facility.

Permeable pavement

Permeable pavement is a paving system which allows rainfall to percolate into an underlying aggregate storage reservoir, where stormwater is stored and infiltrated to the underlying subgrade or removed by a supplemental outlet/overflow system. The primary factors controlling the use of permeable pavement as an infiltration system are the long-term hydraulic capacity of the paving material, and the infiltration capacity of the underlying soil. Permeable pavement has been used for stormwater management worldwide for decades, though the technology has only gradually taken hold regionally. Booth and Leavitt (1999) documented the pollution removal capability and hydraulic performance of four types of permeable pavement in comparison to standard asphalt pavement at a municipal building parking lot in Renton, Washington. The test site was constructed in 1996 and data were gathered in the year following. The native soil at the site was deep and very permeable sand, such that overall infiltration capacity of the pavement/soil system was limited by the pavement. Booth and Leavitt observed no surface runoff from the permeable pavement. Brattebo and Booth (2003) reevaluated the hydraulic performance at the same pavement system during fifteen storms in the winter of 2001-2002. Virtually all water infiltrated for every observed storm; the most significant surface runoff event occurred during a 4.75-inch/72-hour storm, in which only 0.16 inches of surface runoff was generated from one type of pavement.

In the years since these early installations, permeable pavement (like bioretention) has become the focus of many additional design and performance studies. While the state of the science continues to evolve, some of the most significant findings can be found in the Low Impact Development Technical Guidance Manual for Puget Sound (WSU and PSP 2012).

Acceptable run-on ratios from several other jurisdictions’ stormwater guidance manuals were reviewed, including from the City of San Francisco, CA; City of San Antonio, TX; City of Vancouver, BC; City of Portland, OR; City of Gresham, OR; City of Omaha, NE, City of Denver, CO and City of Tacoma, WA as well as *Permeable Pavement* (ASCE 2015).

Rainwater Harvesting

Rainwater harvesting is the capture and storage of rainwater for subsequent use. Runoff from non-pollution generating surfaces may be routed to cisterns for storage and beneficial nonpotable uses, such as irrigation, toilet flushing, and cold water laundry. Like other flow control BMPs, rainwater harvesting can be used to achieve reductions in peak flows, flow durations, and runoff volumes, and can be a particularly effective practice for projects where infiltration is not permitted or desired. The flow control performance of rainwater harvesting is a function of contributing area, storage volume, and rainwater use rate. While the City accepts rainwater harvesting systems with indoor water use for compliance with the flow control standards of the 2021 Stormwater Code, the indoor use of harvested water is regulated by WAC 51-56-1628.4.

Rainwater harvesting has been around for centuries, and (unlike bioretention and permeable pavement for example) is not subject to as frequent or numerous research studies. Depending on whether the design is for potable or non-potable uses, additional information can be obtained from various engineering or Department of Health documentation. For information most pertinent to the Puget Sound region, consult the Low Impact Development Technical Guidance Manual for Puget Sound (WSU and PSP 2012).

A technical memorandum (Herrera 2020) was prepared to evaluate allowing Rainwater Harvesting for Single-Family Residential and Parcel-based projects under Category 2 and 4 of the On-site list. Rainwater Harvesting is allowed under Category 2 if it is sized to meet the On-site performance criteria, similar to other Category 2 BMPs. The memorandum discusses the performance criteria that were evaluated for it to be used as a Category 4 BMP before settling on the criteria that Rainwater Harvesting must reduce the rooftop runoff volume by 25 percent on an average annual basis and that the volume reduction must exceed that for a Vegetated Roof.

Vegetated Roofs

Vegetated roofs are areas of living vegetation installed on top of buildings, or other above grade impervious surfaces. Vegetated roofs are also known as ecoroofs, green roofs, and roof gardens. Used in Europe for decades, vegetated roofs have received significant attention in the US in the past decade or so as the focus on LID approaches (and green building in general) has increased.

As such, similar to bioretention and permeable pavement, extensive research has been dedicated to the design and performance of vegetated roof systems regionally, and nationwide, particularly over the past decade. For example, in one of the preliminary studies in Philadelphia, runoff monitoring was conducted for a nine-month period at a pilot-scale vegetated roof with a thickness of less than three inches (US EPA 2000). In this period there were 44 inches of rain and less than 16 inches of runoff. Similarly, in Portland, Oregon, monitoring of four storms (two in March 2001, and two in August 2001) at a full-scale commercial building vegetated roof showed between a three-fold and nine-fold reduction in per-storm runoff volume (Portland 2001). More recently, the City of Seattle has performed in-depth vegetated roof monitoring through a dedicated Green Roof Performance Study (Seattle 2012a). The study evaluated a range of vegetated roofing designs over five different site locations. Results indicated a reduction peak flow rates (relative to conventional roofs) ranging from 53 percent to 15 percent. The percentage reductions in rainfall volume ranged from near zero during the wetter seasons, but as high as 70 percent or greater during the dryer seasons.

Trees

Trees provide stormwater flow control via interception, transpiration, and increased infiltration. Additional environmental benefits include improved air quality, reduced heat island effect, pollutant removal, and habitat preservation or formation, although benefits can vary with seasonality (Xiao et al. 1998). Trees are a landscape amenity with flow control benefits that can be applied in most settings. The 2016 Stormwater Code Update and 2021 Stormwater Code Update includes flow control credits for retaining or planting trees on a development site, with higher credit applied when trees are proximate to impervious surfaces. The degree of flow control provided by a tree depends on the tree type (i.e., evergreen or deciduous), canopy area, and proximity to impervious surfaces. A report summarizing the results of a literature review on the effects of trees on stormwater runoff and recommendations regarding flow control credits is provided in Herrera (2008).

Dispersion

Downspout dispersion BMPs are splash blocks or gravel-filled trenches that serve to spread roof runoff over vegetated pervious areas. Dispersion attenuates peak flows by slowing entry of the runoff into the conveyance system, allows for some infiltration, and provides some water quality benefits. Although downspout dispersion in general has been used in Seattle for decades, to meet the specific design requirements of the MS4 Permit, downspout dispersion BMPs generally require large areas of vegetated ground cover and may not be feasible in most urban settings. Likewise, little performance monitoring data have been generated specific to downspout dispersion BMP performance, particularly in urban settings. Nonetheless, downspout dispersion is included as one of Ecology’s required on-site stormwater management BMPs, so it is included in this discussion.

Infiltration

Infiltration, where appropriate, is the City’s preferred method for stormwater management because it most directly attempts to restore the pre-development flow regime. Many on-site stormwater management BMPs discussed previously use infiltration as a primary or secondary mode of stormwater control. In addition, several types of non-vegetated systems are designed primarily for stormwater infiltration including infiltration trenches, vaults, basins, or drain fields. Given the significant role of infiltration processes in LID, on-site stormwater management, and stormwater flow control in general, this subsection presents a brief overview of infiltration considerations.

Massman (2003) performed full-scale “flood tests” conducted at four infiltration facilities in western Washington. Lateral flow along the sides of the ponds could be significant. Saturated hydraulic conductivity values estimated from measuring air conductivity and from regression equations derived from grain size parameters were compared to full-scale infiltration rates for 15 sites in western Washington. The estimated values for saturated hydraulic conductivity were up to two orders-of-magnitude larger than the full-scale infiltration rates for some sites and were two orders-of-magnitude smaller at others. These results show that long-term infiltration rates cannot be reliably estimated on the basis of soil properties alone; information related to the hydraulic gradient is also important.

Aside from the reduced area available for infiltration due to the construction of impervious surfaces, development typically results in the compaction or removal of the upper soil layers,

which reduces the overall infiltration capacity of the remaining soil (Booth et al. 2002, Chollak and Rosenfeld 1997, Kosti et al. 1995). This effect also significantly reduces the ability of the soil to remove dissolved metals (Minton 2005). Other factors that may limit the long-term performance of these systems are clogging due to sediment input, or biological fouling, as described by Warner et al. (1994).

Given the significant role of infiltration in stormwater management, and the relative complexity of soil and general geologic conditions in Washington, Ecology has dedicated extensive time and energy to understanding and safeguarding infiltration facility designs. The 2014 SWMMWW (Ecology 2014b) includes extensive detail on the requirements for evaluating project area soil conditions and infiltration potential prior to designing and installing infiltration facilities. Seattle has generally followed these requirements, with modification as needed to accommodate local conditions and challenges. Due to the geologic and topographic conditions in Seattle, not all sites are suitable for stormwater infiltration. The City may limit the use of infiltration practices in some areas due to topography and potential landslide hazards. In addition, many locations in Seattle have soils that are underlain by hydraulically-restrictive materials. These relatively impervious layers may limit or preclude infiltration causing perched groundwater conditions during the wet season.

*A memorandum Recommendations for Infiltration Acceptance Testing During Construction for Select Infiltration BMPs (Gibson and Martin 2018) provided information that informed the development of the infiltration acceptance testing guidelines. Studies related to modeling for hydraulic conductivity near saturation were reviewed (van Genuchten 1980, Schaap and van Genuchten 2005).*Soil Amendment

Naturally occurring (i.e., undisturbed) soil and vegetation provide important stormwater management functions, including: water infiltration; nutrient, sediment, and pollutant adsorption; sediment and pollutant biofiltration; water interflow storage and transmission; and pollutant decomposition. These soils can also provide indirect benefit by providing a suitable growing medium for healthy plants and microbes, which themselves also provide important stormwater benefits. All of these functions are largely lost when development removes native soil and vegetation and replaces it with imported soil and sod with minimal depth. Not only are important stormwater management functions lost, but such altered landscapes themselves can easily become pollution-generating pervious surfaces. Pollutants can include pesticides, fertilizers, and other landscaping and household/industrial chemicals; pet wastes; and roadside litter.

Studies by Chollak and Rosenfeld (1997) developed guidelines for amending soils with compost in landscaping practices. Kosti et al. (1995) measured surface runoff and subsurface runoff from seven test plots of glacial till soil containing differing amounts of compost. During storm events from December 1994 to June 1995, two plots containing compost generated only 53 percent and 70 percent of the total runoff volume generated by a control plot with no compost. In addition to flow control benefits, amended soils in urban lawns can also have the benefits of reduced fertilizer requirements and reduced dry-season irrigation requirements (US EPA 1997). The MS4 Permit includes requirements for using soil amendment for disturbed areas, and the 2014 SWMMWW and a supplemental document produced by Soils for Salmon (Guidelines and Resources for Implementing Soil Quality and Depth BMP T5.13 in WDOE Stormwater Management Manual for Western Washington, Soils for Salmon 2012) include the latest guidelines for soil amendment in western Washington.

Sidewalk/Trail Compost-Amended Strips

Sidewalk/Trail Compost-Amended Strip is a new BMP focused on managing sheet flow from sidewalk and trail surfaces (Seattle Public Utilities 2020).

Water Quality Treatment

Urban stormwater runoff collects and conveys pollutants to receiving waters. Between 1978 and 1983, the Nationwide Urban Runoff Program gathered runoff pollution data from 2,300 storms from 28 project sites across the nation (US EPA 1983). The results from this large-scale study helped to initially quantify the nature and extent of stormwater pollution and influenced subsequent regulations requiring treatment of stormwater runoff from sites with pollution generating surfaces. Ongoing monitoring, analysis, and assessments have provided additional information regarding the nature of pollutants in stormwater. Chandler (1995, 1999) conducted an analysis of urban stormwater runoff event mean concentrations from 70 sites collected by eleven municipalities located in inland urban areas of western Washington and Oregon. Maestre and Pitt (2005) developed a database containing approximately 3,765 events from 360 sites in 65 communities throughout the US. Clark et al. (2007) provide a comprehensive literature review of urban wet weather flow literature for the eleven years from 1996 through 2006 that includes stormwater discharge water quality characterization.

Recent assessments of toxic contaminant in Washington State determined that the bulk of toxic chemicals that enter Puget Sound marine waters have done so through runoff from land surfaces (Ecology 2007b, Ecology 2011a, Ecology 2014c, Ecology 2015). Of particular note, during 2010, Ecology conducted a study to identify the primary sources of toxic chemicals in the Puget Sound basin and estimate annual releases of those chemicals (Ecology 2011a). Fourteen chemicals and chemical groups of concern were addressed, and the quantities of chemicals released annually from numerous sources were estimated. The study identified petroleum and zinc as two of the most significant chemicals of concern, with both chemicals released at a rate greater than 1,000 metric tons (t) per year. Lead, polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons (PAHs), copper, and triclopyr were identified as additional chemicals of concern, released at rates greater than 100 t/year (ibid). Similarly, as part of the previous MS4 Permit requirements, stormwater and storm sediment discharge data were collected by Phase I MS4 permittees between 2007 and 2013 (Ecology 2015). The permittees collected storm-event data under a prescribed monitoring program that represented multiple land uses, storm characteristics, and seasons. Working from the combined analysis of 44,800 data records representing 597 storm events, up to 85 parameters were analyzed in the stormwater samples. Results indicated that metals, hydrocarbons, phthalates, total nitrogen and phosphorus, pentachlorophenol, and PCBs were detected more frequently and at higher concentrations from commercial and industrial areas than from residential areas. Residential areas exported stormwater with the highest dissolved nutrient concentrations (Ecology 2015).

Ecology also recently determined that artificial turf fields are to be considered a pollution generating pervious surface in western Washington (Ecology 2014a). Ecology indicated that their decision to list artificial turf fields as pollution generating was based primarily on two studies identified by King County (personal communication Rachel McCrea, July 2013). Those studies (Connecticut DEP 2010, Moretto 2007) suggest that dissolved metals and organics could

leach from the underflow from these types of artificial turf fields. However, further review of those studies and supplemental analyses of turf fields (Herrera 2010) raises questions about the pollutant generating potential of those surfaces. An additional study (Herrera 2019) found that drainage from crumb rubber infill playfields yields high water quality that does not need treatment prior to discharging into a surface water body, regardless of whether it is a new crumb rubber field or an old crumb rubber field. However, the study did not evaluate the recently discovered toxicant found in tires, 6PPD-quinone (Tian et al 2020). Additionally, as part of the study (Herrera 2019), it was determined that poor water quality of drainage from the tested cork infill playfield was likely due to contamination. Additional testing of drainage exclusively from a cork playfield with new base materials would be needed to accurately characterize pollutant concentrations and determine treatment requirements.

Additional information on BMPs designed to reduce water quality pollution from permanent and temporary (construction) sites is discussed below.

Types of Stormwater Quality Treatment Best Management Practices

Pollutants in stormwater can be reduced through source control activities, regulations prohibiting certain types of discharges, programmatic actions aimed at eliminating illegal dumping and illicit connections, and permanent water quality treatment BMPs designed to remove pollutants contained in stormwater runoff (Ecology 2014b, Ecology 2006, Ecology 2014a). This section focuses on permanent (constructed) water quality treatment BMPs, with a brief discussion at the end of this section on developments in pollutant source control related to street sweeping activities.

Common pollutants of concern targeted by water quality treatment BMPs include sand, silt, and other suspended solids; metals such as copper, lead, and zinc; nutrients (e.g., nitrogen and phosphorous); certain bacteria and viruses; and organics such as petroleum hydrocarbons and pesticides. Methods of pollutant removal include sedimentation/settling, filtration, plant uptake, ion exchange, adsorption, and bacterial decomposition. Floatable pollutants such as oil, debris, and scum can be removed with separator structures. Minton (2002, 2005) provides a thorough discussion of treatment mechanisms and their application in stormwater treatment. The American Society of Civil Engineers (ASCE) and the United States Environmental Protection Agency jointly prepared (and continue to manage) an extensive “International Stormwater BMP Database” of stormwater treatment system performance data (ASCE/US EPA 1996). The International Stormwater BMP Database is a primary resource for further information on the water quality treatment BMPs discussed below (<www.bmpdatabase.org>).

Infiltration and Bioinfiltration

Infiltration not only provides the flow control benefits discussed previously, but also can be a very effective pollutant removal mechanism. Infiltration and bio-infiltration systems remove pollutants primarily via physical filtration as stormwater passes through the underlying soil, but also via chemical adsorption and precipitation reactions. Biological uptake by plants may also occur in bioinfiltration. In addition, some pollutants such as nutrients may also be utilized by microbes present in the soil. A wide range of vegetated and non-vegetated BMPs utilize infiltration as a portion of their treatment designs. Following is a brief summary of a subset of the extensive infiltration performance studies available. The International Stormwater BMP Database contains extensive additional information for individual BMP types (ASCE/US EPA

1996).

A study of several stormwater infiltration system designs in Pierce County, Washington, showed that infiltration of stormwater through a biofiltration swale underlain by six inches of imported topsoil reduced total copper concentrations by 47 percent, total lead concentrations by 79 percent, and total zinc concentration by 50 percent (Tacoma-Pierce County Health Department/Pierce County Public Works Department 1995). Nineteen storm events were monitored over four years in the study. In contrast to these results, the study also found elevated concentrations of these metals in groundwater under infiltration systems that discharged directly to the gravelly native soils without any other treatment. These results together demonstrate the importance of properly absorptive soil or treatment medium, but also the efficacy of a relatively shallow layer of such soil in removing metals. Hathhorn and Yonge (1996) investigated the potential for groundwater pollution from stormwater infiltration systems using bench-scale systems containing soils found in Washington State and organic soil amendments. They found that copper and zinc tended to be removed by association with organic material, while adsorption onto soil minerals due to cation exchange was the dominant removal mechanism for cadmium and lead. Extensive reviews of the potential for and confirmation of groundwater contamination are provided in Minton (2002) and Pitt (1996).

As referenced previously regarding permeable pavement flow control performance, Booth and Leavitt (1999) also documented the pollution removal capability of infiltration below four types of commercially available permeable pavement systems in comparison to standard asphalt pavement at a municipal building parking lot in Renton, Washington. Total copper and total zinc concentrations in the sampled infiltrate were significantly lower than corresponding concentrations in runoff from the asphalt. Motor oil was detected in 89 percent of the samples from the asphalt runoff, but not in any water sample infiltrated through the permeable pavement. Brattebo and Booth (2003) reevaluated pollution removal at the same pavement system during nine storms in the winter of 2001-2002. Again, infiltration had a dramatic effect on water quality. Toxic concentrations of copper and zinc were present in 97 percent of the asphalt runoff samples, and in 14 percent of the infiltrate samples. A comparison of the data from the two studies showed that zinc concentrations increased with statistical significance in the later study for both permeable pavement and asphalt, whereas copper concentrations in infiltrate from two kinds of permeable pavement were significantly decreased in the later study (Brattebo and Booth 2003). While Ecology does not currently give water quality treatment credit for stormwater passing through a standard permeable pavement design (i.e., additional treatment design elements must be incorporated into the subgrade material), this and other research has shown that permeable pavement has considerable pollutant removal capabilities for common roadway pollutants such as metals and petroleum (Dierkes et al. 2001, Pratt et al. 1999, Clauson and Gilbert 2003).

Though infiltration can be a very reliable water quality treatment approach, the design and construction must also be carefully scrutinized to ensure appropriate water quality treatment is achieved and maintained. Studies of conventional infiltration trenches in Maryland indicate that up to half of newly constructed (5-years old or less) facilities failed to operate as designed do to clogging or inflow problems (Galli 1992). The study found that lifespan can be increased by proper design of pretreatment systems, use of a sand layer rather than filter fabric at the bottom of the trench, and rototilling the trench bottom to preserve infiltration rates. Other studies in the mid-Atlantic region indicate that infiltration basins also have high failure rates within five years of construction due to clogging (Maryland Department of Environment 1991, Maryland

Department of Environment 1986). Facility performance can be increased by constructing facilities with adequate pretreatment, shallow water depths, bypass systems for large storms, careful geotechnical investigations, sand surfacing for the trench bottom, and installation of underdrains (Schueler 1994).

As was noted previously, of the on-site stormwater management BMPs presented in the 2016 Stormwater Code Update, bioretention facilities probably receive the most attention with regards to design variations and performance monitoring. Bioretention BMPs have been demonstrated to provide considerable reduction in stormwater pollutants through infiltration and bioinfiltration, though there have been concerns with the impacts of various imported bioretention soil mixes and the effect they have on pollutant removal and or release from these BMPs, particularly dissolved metals (Ecology 2013b, Kitsap County et al. 2014, WSU 2014). Several recent and ongoing studies have been designed to evaluate and optimize the pollutant removal effectiveness of bioretention facilities, and the City is actively involved in those studies and/or tracking the outcomes as they become available.

Sand Filtration

Sand filtration is a water treatment technology that has been applied to stormwater for decades. A typical sand filtration facility consists of a pretreatment system, flow spreaders, a sand bed, and underdrain piping (Ecology 2014b). A sand filter vault is similar to an open sand filter except that the sand layer and underdrains are installed below-grade in a vault that consists of presettling and sand filtration cells. A linear sand filter is a long, shallow, two-celled and rectangular vault, with the first cell designed for settling coarse particles and the second cell containing the sand bed (Ecology 2014b). Useful references regarding sand filtration include: Austin (1990), Horner and Horner (1995), Bell et al. (1995), California Department of Transportation (2004), and Minton (2005). These studies show that sand filters can be designed to remove total suspended solids (TSS), metals, biochemical oxygen demand (BOD), petroleum, total nitrogen, and phosphorous.

Minton (2002) cites various studies showing the pollution removal effectiveness of sand coated with iron oxide and sand mixed with iron wool or calcitic lime. Wanielista and Cassagnol (1981) demonstrated that various amended sand media reduced BOD and TSS concentrations in detention pond effluent, and that some nitrogen removal took place in the filters as well. Stormwater filtration using peat mixed with sand is effective at removing metals (Clark et al. 1998). Severe clogging in a sapric peat/sand filter in Minnesota demonstrated the importance of using hemic or fibric peat (Tomasek et al. 1987). These hydraulic problems can be avoided by using commercially available peat pellets.

Basic sand filters are expected to achieve average pollutant removals of 80 percent TSS at influent Event Mean Concentrations of 300 mg/L (King County 1998, Chang 2000). Basic sand filters are also expected to reduce oil and grease to below 10 mg/L daily average and 15 mg/L at any time, with no ongoing or recurring visible sheen in the discharge (Ecology 2014b). Large sand filters are expected to remove at least 50 percent of the total phosphorous compounds (as total phosphorus) by collecting and treating 95 percent of the runoff volume (ASCE and WEF 1998). Pretreatment is necessary to reduce velocities to the sand filter and remove debris, floatables, large particulate matter, and oils. An underground filter should be considered in areas subject to freezing conditions (Urbonas 1999).

Wetpool Facilities – Wet ponds, Wet vaults, Combined Detention and Wetpool Facilities

Water quality facilities built as wetpool facilities – facilities that contain a permanent pool of water – include wet ponds, wet vaults, and combined detention and wetpool facilities. The primary design factor that determines a wetpool’s treatment efficiency is the volume of the wetpool. The larger the wetpool volume, the greater the potential for pollutant removal (Ecology 2014b). These facilities provide runoff treatment by allowing settling of particulates during quiescent conditions (sedimentation) and, for above-ground facilities, by biological uptake and vegetative filtration. A wet pond is a constructed stormwater pond that retains a permanent pool of water at least during the wet season. A wet vault is an underground structure similar in appearance to a detention vault, except that a wet vault has a permanent pool of water that dissipates energy and improves the settling of particulate pollutants. A combined detention and wetpool facility has the appearance and design features of a detention facility, but contains a permanent pool of water to also perform water quality treatment functions. Because the wet vault is underground, it lacks any biological pollutant removal mechanisms, such as algae uptake, that would be present in surface wet ponds.

Studies of pollution removal in wetpool facilities in the Puget Sound region include King County (1995), Comings (1998), and Kulzer (1989). Other useful studies include Driscoll (1986), Gain (1996), Kantrowitz and Woodham (1995), Lawrence et al. (1996), Stanley (1996), Walker (1987), Whipple (1979), and Wu et al. (1996). These studies show that wetpool facilities can remove total suspended solids, total nitrogen, metals, and phosphorous. However, some of the studies showed a net release of some of these pollutants. Wetpools can also remove dissolved pollutants, although their long-term performance in this respect is problematic particularly with respect to dissolved phosphorus (Minton 2004, 2005). Minton (2002) discusses the difficulties in designing appropriate sampling strategies to comparing data from different treatment system evaluation studies. Wetpool facilities can pose a particular problem since they often have a storage volume greater than the influent volume from many storms, so samples of influent and effluent from a single storm do not represent batch treatment of a single test volume of water. A detailed discussion of performance and design elements on wetpool facilities is provided by Minton (2005).

A Florida study of the migration of soluble metals through sediments accumulated in the bottom of highway-runoff wet ponds showed that most of the metals are retained in the top 15-25 centimeters, and that removal of accumulated bottom sediments approximately every 25 years would be sufficient to minimize the potential of groundwater contamination (Yousef and Yu 1992). However, this study did not indicate the native soil type or sediment size distribution, which would affect the results. Most modern wet ponds are designed with an impermeable base layer to prevent any infiltration of stormwater through the bottom sediments.

Stormwater Treatment Wetlands

Water quality treatment in wetlands is achieved through sedimentation, filtration, soil adsorption, chemical precipitation, biological uptake by plants, and microbial transformation of nutrients. Wetland hydroperiod is the primary driver of these processes because hydrology is the most important factor for sustaining wetland processes and plant communities (Mitsch and Gosselink 1986). Hydroperiod of a wetland includes the water depth, flow, and duration and frequency of flooding. The hydroperiod affects species composition and richness, primary productivity, organic accumulation, and nutrient cycling.

Wetlands constructed for water quality treatment generally provide high quality treatment similar to the effectiveness of bioretention and infiltration, however with a lower risks of impact to groundwater quality. Although stormwater treatment wetlands typically require large amounts of surface area and are not common in urban areas. Constructed stormwater treatment wetland designs that incorporate long residence times and low velocities are typically the most effective at treating stormwater. Kadlec and Knight (1996) give the following expected pollutant removal performance (listed with constituent concentration) for parking lot runoff treated by constructed stormwater treatment wetlands:

- TSS: 88 – 98 percent (2-10 mg/L)
- Fecal coliform: 60-90 percent (20-500 colonies/100 mL)
- Total zinc: 25 to 95 percent
- Total phosphorus: 89-95 percent (0.02-0.05 mg/L).

The processes that occur in wetlands make them particularly capable of significant metals removal (Kadlec and Knight 1996). These metals removal processes include:

- Binding to soils, sediment, particulates, and soluble organics
- Precipitation as insoluble salts, principally sulfides and oxyhydroxides
- Uptake by plants, including algae and bacteria.

Wetland studies indicate that stormwater treatment wetlands are effective at removing between 21 percent and 95 percent of copper (by mass), with a median of 73 percent for all studies (Feijtel et al. 1989, Hendry et al. 1979, Schiffer 1989, Harper et al. 1986, Sinicrope et al. 1992, Noller et al. 1994, Gladden et al. 2002, Walker and Hurl 2002). Similarly, these studies also show wetlands can be very effective at removal of zinc, with documented removal rates of 33 percent to 96 percent (by mass), with a median of 79 percent for all studies.

Hydrocarbons in wetlands are removed through volatilization, photochemical oxidation, sedimentation, sorption, and biological (microbial) degradation (Kadlec and Knight 1996). Most studies on hydrocarbon removal focused on biological and chemical oxygen demand for municipal waste, but studies do indicate that wetlands are also effective for hydrocarbon removal (Litchfield and Schatz 1989, Litchfield 1993, Tang and Lu 1993, Knight et al. 1994, Fountalakis et al. 2009, Terzakis et al. 2008). Nonetheless, specific values are not presented in this report because of limited applicability to stormwater runoff.

Media Filtration

Media filtration systems typically consist of a vault or catch basin housing a material through which stormwater passed. The performance of a media filtration facility depends on many factors, including the type of media (e.g., diatomaceous earth, leaf compost, perlite, sand, Zeolite, etc.) and the physical properties of the granular media, including size, size distribution, sphericity, porosity, density, and hardness (Minton 2005). Leif (1999) and CSF Treatment Systems (1994) demonstrated that filtration using mature processed leaf compost effectively removed TSS and total metals. Phosphorous concentrations were higher in the effluent than in the influent in the tests by Leif (1999), probably due to degradation of vegetative material washed onto the filter and bird manure deposited on the filter bed. Since compost serves as a

cation exchange medium, one would expect metals removal by adsorption, but not removal of phosphorous or nitrate, which are anions. Minton (2002) cited various studies showing the effectiveness of zeolite minerals as a filtration medium to remove metals by cation exchange and phosphorous by anion exchange in cases where the zeolites were amended to improve anion exchange capability. Minton (*ibid.*) also cited the studies on the use of activated alumina, cationic and anionic polymers, synthetic resins, and other media.

There are several proprietary cartridge-based media filters that have been approved for various levels of treatment in Washington by Ecology (see also the Proprietary and Emerging Technologies section below). These systems typically utilize a proprietary media to achieve targeted water quality treatment results. The list of available and approved technologies changes regularly, so designers are encouraged to visit Ecology’s emerging technologies website for current information: <www.ecy.wa.gov/programs/wq/stormwater/newtech/technologies.html>.

Ecology’s SWMMWW (2014b) also provides guidance for design and construction of media filter drains (previously known as ecology embankments). The media filter drain consists of a roadside embankment constructed with a wedge of media (aggregate, perlite, dolomite, and gypsum) that dispersed runoff must pass through before entering an underdrain system. Studies conducted by the Washington State Department of Transportation (WSDOT) indicated that media filter drains can remove greater than 80 percent of influent TSS, greater than 50 percent of total phosphorus, and approximately 50 percent of dissolved copper and zinc (Herrera 2006, Herrera 2009b).

Biofiltration Swales

Basic biofiltration swales typically have a trapezoidal or parabolic shaped cross-section and are commonly designed to be an in-line treatment facility. These facilities are designed to remove low concentrations of pollutants such as TSS, heavy metals, nutrients, and petroleum hydrocarbons (Ecology 2014b). A wet biofiltration swale is a variation of a basic biofiltration swale and used where the longitudinal slope is slight, water tables are high, or continuous low base flow is likely to result in saturated soil conditions. Vegetation specifically adapted to saturated soil conditions is needed, which in turn requires modification of several of the design parameters for the basic biofiltration swale (Ecology 2014b). A continuous inflow biofiltration swale is used in situations where water enters a biofiltration swale continuously along the side slope rather than discretely at the head. This type of facility requires an increased swale length to achieve an equivalent average residence time (*ibid.*).

The performance of biofiltration swales is highly variable (Ecology 2014b, Minton 2005). Local biofiltration studies include Goldberg et al. (1993), King County (1995), and Horner (1988). These studies generally showed that TSS and total metals are removed in biofiltration swales, with phosphorous removal possible to a more variable degree. Field inspection of thirty-nine biofiltration swales in King County found only nine to be in “good” condition; that is, having relatively complete and uniform vegetation cover (King County 1995). While unvegetated systems that contain standing water may remove pollutants through settling under low flow conditions, sediment would likely be resuspended in these systems during higher flows (*ibid.*). Flow-through grass swales function as treatment devices if vegetation remains sufficiently erect to reduce the shear stresses in the channel, thereby reducing its capacity to carry sediment (Carollo et al. 2002).

Non-Infiltrating Bioretention

Typical minimum non-infiltration bioretention planter box widths were reviewed from other jurisdictions in the Pacific Northwest (Clean Water Services 2016, Gresham 2007).

Filter Strips

Filter strips are vegetated treatment systems (typically grass) which are designed to remove low concentrations and quantities of total suspended solids (TSS), heavy metals, petroleum hydrocarbons, and/or nutrients from stormwater by means of sedimentation, filtration, soil sorption, and/or plant uptake. They are typically configured as linear strips that receive dispersed sheet flow from roads or other surfaces. Contaminated stormwater is distributed as sheet flow across the inlet width (Ecology 2014b).

Newberry and Yonge (1996) found that a vegetated strip removed significant amounts of TSS and metals from simulated stormwater. WSDOT developed a compost amended vegetated filter strip (CAVFS) and found that the system infiltrated more water than a standard roadside embankment. However, the effluent concentrations were not lower in the CAVFS system compared with the unimproved control (Herrera 2009c). In a separate study, WSDOT monitored the performance of unimproved filter strips along Interstate 5 (Herrera 2009d). They found that even 42-year old embankments that were not designed for stormwater treatment removed 94, 83, and 71 percent of influent TSS, total zinc, and total copper, respectively.

Oil Control Facilities

Oil control facilities are designed to remove oil and other water-insoluble hydrocarbons and settleable solids from stormwater runoff. These facilities typically consist of three bays: forebay; separator section; and the after bay. The American Petroleum Institute (API) separator, also called a baffle type separator, contains two baffles. The sludge retaining baffle rises from the floor of the oil/water separator chamber and settled solids are trapped behind this baffle. The oil retaining baffle descends from the top of the chamber and extends at least 50 percent below the depth of the oil/water volume. The floating oil and other hydrocarbons are trapped behind this baffle as the relatively cleaner water flows under and exits the facility (American Petroleum Institute 1990, Ecology 2014b). The coalescing plate separator consists of a series of parallel and inclined plates that provide quiescent conditions for settling and a depth separation to trap oils at the surface (Ecology 2014b).

Proprietary and Emerging Technologies

Proprietary stormwater treatment technologies increasingly are being used to treat stormwater, especially in highly urbanized areas where there is limited space for traditional facilities. The performance of these facilities depends on many factors including but not limited to: sizing, maintenance frequency, installation location, treatment mechanism, treatment media, inlet pollutant concentrations, rainfall intensity, and seasonality. Ecology, in concert with stormwater professionals from the Puget Sound region, developed a protocol for evaluating emerging treatment systems – Technology Assessment Protocol Ecology (TAPE, Ecology 2011b) – and publishes an extensive list of approved technologies (and their technical evaluation study results) on the Ecology website at: <www.ecy.wa.gov/programs/wq/stormwater/newtech/index.html>. Through this process, Ecology approves BMPs and technologies that can be used for several types of water quality treatment, including pretreatment, oil treatment, basic treatment, enhanced

treatment, phosphorus treatment, and treatment at construction sites.

The evaluation process requires rigorous field testing of the new stormwater treatment technologies, after which the vendor submits a technology evaluation report (TER) to Ecology for review and approval. Under the technology assessment process, Ecology assigns “Use Level Designations” to emerging technologies based on the results of the evaluation. These designations are described below (Ecology 2014b).

- **GULD – General Use Level Designation.** A General Use Level Designation (GULD) assigned to technologies for which the performance monitoring demonstrates with a sufficient degree of confidence, that the technology is expected to achieve Ecology’s performance goals. Use is subject to conditions documented in a use level designation letter prepared by Ecology.
- **CULD – Conditional Use Level Designation.** A Conditional Use Level Designation (CULD) is assigned to technologies that have considerable performance data not collected per the TAPE protocol. Ecology will allow the use of technologies that receive a CULD for a specified time, during which performance monitoring must be conducted and a TER submitted to Ecology. Units that are in place do not have to be removed after the specified time period. Use is subject to conditions documented in a use level designation letter prepared by Ecology.
- **PULD – Pilot Use Level Designation.** A Pilot Use Level Designation (PULD) is assigned to new technologies that have limited performance monitoring data or that only have laboratory performance data. The PULD allows limited use of the technology to allow performance monitoring to be conducted. PULD technologies may be installed provided that the vendor and/or developer agree to conduct performance monitoring per the TAPE protocol at all installations. Use is subject to conditions documented in a use level designation letter prepared by Ecology.

In addition, Seattle recently evaluated several catch basin storm filters and found good performance when not clogged; however clogging was a concern at many of the installations in the city (Seattle 2012b, 2013b). National studies and evaluations of the performance of stormwater treatment technologies are also found on the International Stormwater BMP Database (<www.bmpdatabase.org>).

Street Sweeping and Water Quality

Street sweeping with high-efficiency or regenerative air sweepers can be an effective means of removing pollutants from roadways before they become entrained in stormwater runoff. The effectiveness of street sweeping depends on many factors including but not limited to: type of sweeper, sweeping frequency, pavement condition, pollutant build-up, parking restrictions, and season. Studies of street sweeping effectiveness in the Puget Sound region include Seattle Public Utilities (SPU) and Herrera (2009), Seattle (2012c), and Kurahashi & Associates (1997). Other useful studies include Bannerman (2008), Depree (2008), Eisenberg et al (2007), Florida Department of Environmental Protection (2004), Kalinosky et al. (2012), Law et al. (2008), Nevada Tahoe Conservation District (2011), Pitt (1979, 1985, 2013), Sansalone (2011), Selbig et al. (2007), URS (2010, 2011), Weston Solutions (2010), and Zarriello et al. (2002).

Types of Construction and Grading Site Best Management Practices

Soil erosion from construction sites and grading activities has long been identified as a significant source of sediment and other suspended solids in runoff in many parts of the United States (Ellis 1936, Hagman et al. 1980, Yorke and Herb 1976, Becker et al. 1974) and the primary stormwater pollutant at a construction site remains sediment (US EPA 2007). Sediment from construction and grading sites with poor stormwater control can harm aquatic environments, adjacent properties, public and private roadways, and drainage systems. Numerous studies at large sites (greater than five acres) have shown that the amount of sediment transported by stormwater runoff is significantly greater from sites with no erosion control practices than from sites with erosion controls (US EPA 1999; Owens et al. 2000). Similarly, results of a USGS/Dane County Land Conservation study (Owens et al. 2000) indicate that small sites can also be significant sources of sediment. Sediment loads in stormwater runoff from two monitored construction sites were 10 times greater than that which is typical from rural and urban land uses in Wisconsin. Total and suspended solids concentration data indicate the active construction phase produced concentrations that were orders of magnitude higher than pre- and post-construction periods.

The best way to minimize erosion during land-disturbing and other construction activities is to employ BMPs that keep the soil in place through existing vegetation, erosion control blankets, or other methods. These BMPs help prevent the soil from becoming dislodged during rain events (Ecology 2014b). Erosion and sediment control BMPs can be grouped according to three broad categories:

1. **Cover practices** – temporary or permanent cover that are designed to stabilize disturbed areas
2. **Erosion control practices** – physical measures that are designed and constructed to prevent erosion at the project site
3. **Sediment control practices** – temporary measures designed to prevent eroded soils from leaving the project site by trapping them in a depression, filter, or other barrier.

Ecology has developed a training program to design and inspect erosion and sediment control BMPs to assure they are reducing erosion and sedimentation from construction sites, including all sites subject to NPDES requirements (sites generally over one acre in size). BMPs must be inspected by a Certified Erosion and Sediment Control Lead (CESCL).

In addition to sediment, construction sites can also be sources of other pollutants, such as phosphorus, petroleum products, and products that can affect pH. Source control practices designed for construction sites can reduce the use of these potential pollutants and/or prevent them from contaminating stormwater (Ecology 2010). Pollutants other than sediment are primarily controlled using good housekeeping practices (such as maintaining vehicles and checking them regularly for leaks, keeping a spill kit on site, controlling concrete washout onsite) and other operational methods to reduce both the risks of pollutants contacting stormwater and the risks and impacts of accidental spills. For example, work can be phased to minimize the amount of soil that is exposed and subject to erosion at any given time. In Washington State it is practical to follow different procedures in the wet season when rain is frequent than in the dry season. West of the Cascade Mountains, Ecology defines the wet season as October 1 to April 30 and the dry season as May 1 to September 30. Extensive information on

stormwater BMPs for construction sites can be found in the SWMMWW (Ecology 2014b).

Several documents were reviewed to update mass loading ratios for proprietary water quality treatment technologies. These include *Stormwater Management StormFilter (StormFilter) with Perlite Media* (Contech Engineered Solutions LLC, 2016), *Oldcastle PerkFilter System with SPC Media* (Oldcastle Infrastructure, 2017), *Filtterra Bioretention System* (Contech Engineered Solutions, 2020), *BayFilter Enhanced Media Cartridge* (BaySaver Technologies, LLC), *BioPod Biofilter with StormMix Media* (Oldcastle Infrastructure, 2018), *Kraken Membrane Filtration System* (Bio Clean Environmental Services, Inc., 2016).

Sea Level Rise and Climate Change

Projected sea level rise was assessed using Projected Sea Level Rise for Washington State- a 2018 Assessment (Miller et al 2018 and Mayhew 2020). The *Colorado-New Mexico Regional Extreme Precipitation Study Summary Report Volume VI Considering Climate Change in the Estimation of Extreme Precipitation for Dam Safety* (Colorado Division of Water Resources, 2018) and *Assessment of 2-Hour, 6-Hour and 48-Hour precipitation Time Series for Non-Stationarity and Implications of Assessing Spillway Adequacy for Dams in Washington State* (Schaefer, 2019) were reviewed to assess the potential for changes in precipitation-frequency due to climate change.

REFERENCES¹

- American Petroleum Institute. 1990. “Design and Operation of Oil-Water Separators” Publication 421. February 1990.
- Arnold, C.L. and G.J. Gibbons. 1996. Impervious surface coverage: the emergence of a key environmental indicator. *American Planners Association Journal* 62:243-258.
- ASCE. In Press. Seattle Public Utilities Case Study. In *Case Studies of LID Implementation in CSO Programs - Committee Report*. David Sample, Editor. American Society of Civil Engineers Press. Reston, VA.
- ASCE. 2015. Permeable Pavement. Bethany Eisenberg, Kelly Collins Lindow and David R. Smith, Editors. American Society of Civil Engineers and Environmental & Water Resources Institute.
- ASCE/US EPA. 1996. International Stormwater Best Management Practices (BMP) Database. <<http://www.bmpdatabase.org>> (assessed July 3, 2015).
- ASCE and WEF. 1998. Urban Runoff Quality Management, WEF Manual of Practice No. 23. American Society of Civil Engineers (ASCE) and Water Environment Foundation (WEF).
- Austin, City of. 1990. Removal efficiencies of stormwater control structures; final report. Environmental Resource Management Division. Austin, TX.
- Azous, A.L. and R.R. Horner (eds.). 2001. *Wetlands and Urbanization: Implications for the Future*. New York: Lewis Publishers.
- Baldwin, D.H., J.F. Sandahl, J.S. Labenia, and N.L. Scholz. 2003. Sublethal Effects of Copper on Coho Salmon: Impacts on Nonoverlapping Receptor Pathways in the Peripheral Olfactory Nervous System. *Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry* 22(10):2266-2274.
- Bannerman, R. 2008. Reducing the Uncertainty in the Calculations of Street Cleaner Performance for Wisconsin Municipalities.
- Barrett, M.E. 2005. BMP Performance Comparisons: Examples from the International Stormwater BMP Database. In: *World Water Congress 2005, May 15, 2005, Anchorage, Alaska*.
- BaySaver Technologies, LLC. 2017. BayFilter Enhanced Media Cartridge. December 2017.
- Becker, B.C., Nawrocki, M.A., and Sitek, G.M. 1974. An executive summary of three EPA demonstration programs in erosion and sediment control: Washington, D.C., US Environmental Protection Agency Report EPA-660/2-74-073
- Bell, W., L. Stokes, L.J. Gavan, and T.N. Nguyen. 1995. Assessment of the pollutant removal efficiencies of Delaware sand filter BMPs. Department of Transportation and Environmental Services, Alexandria, VA.

¹ References that were available in digital format have been provided to Council as pdf files. Other references are either very large documents (e.g., textbooks or sections of textbooks) or documents that are not available for electronic distribution without a fee. Digital or hard copies of any references not included as pdfs can be provided upon request.

- Bio Clean Environmental Services, Inc. 2016. Kraken Membrane Filtration System. February 2016 with April 2016 Addendum.
- Booth, D.B. 1990. Stream-channel incision following drainage-basin urbanization. *Water Resources Bulletin*, American Water Resources Association, 26(3):407-417.
- Booth, D.B. 1991. Urbanization and the natural drainage system – impacts, solutions, and prognoses. *Northwest Environmental Journal*, Institute for Environmental Studies, 7(1):93-118.
- Booth, D.B. 2007. Deposition upon oral examination of Derek Booth, Ph.D., Volume I and Volume II. Puget Soundkeeper Alliance, et al. vs. State of Washington, et al. Cause No. 07-021, et al. taken December 6, 2007 (Volume I) and December 7, 2007 (Volume II). Seattle, WA.
- Booth, D.B. and C. Rhett Jackson. 1997. Urbanization of aquatic systems: degradation thresholds, stormwater detention, and the limits of mitigation. *Journal American Water Resources Association*, 35(5):1077-1090.
- Booth, D.B. and J. Leavitt. 1999. Field evaluation of permeable pavement systems for improved stormwater management. *J. Am. Planning Assoc.*, 65(3):314-325.
- Booth, D.B., D. Hartley, and R. Jackson. 2002. Forest cover, impervious-surface area, and the mitigation of stormwater impacts. *Journal American Water Resources Association*, 38(3):835-845
- Booth, D.B., B. Visitacion, and A.C. Steinemann. 2006. Damages and Costs of Stormwater Runoff in the Puget Sound Region. Report. The Water Center, Department of Civil and Environmental Engineering, University of Washington. August 30, 2006. Seattle, WA.
- Brattebo, B.O., and D. Booth. 2003. Long-term stormwater quantity and quality performance of permeable pavement systems. *Water Research No. 37*. 2003.
- CSF Treatment Systems. 1994. Three-year Performance Summary - 185th Avenue. Portland, OR.
- California Department of Transportation. 2004. BMP Retrofit Pilot Program, Final Report, CTSW-RT-01- 050.
- Carollo, F. G., V. Ferro, and D. Termini. 2002. Flow Velocity measurements in vegetated channels. *Journal of Hydraulic Engineering*, Volume 127, No. 7. p. 664.
- Center for Neighborhood Technology (CNT). Green Infrastructure Demonstration Projects, United Church of Rogers Park. 2013. <http://www.cnt.org/water/projects/green-infrastructure/demonstration-projects/>
- Chandler, R.D. 1995. Improving Urban Stormwater Runoff Monitoring Practices, Dissertation submitted in partial fulfillment of the requirements for the degree of Doctor of Philosophy, University of Washington, Seattle, Washington.
- Chandler, R.D. 1999. “The Case Against Representative Stormwater Runoff Monitoring. Proceedings of the 26th Annual Water Resources Planning and Management Conference held in Tempe, Arizona, June 6-9, 1999

- Chang, George C. 2000. “Review of Stormwater Manual – Sand Filtration Basins for Department of Ecology, State of Washington.” November 5, 2000.
- Chollak, T. and P Rosenfeld. 1997. Guidelines for landscaping with compost-amended soils. Chollak Services. Seattle, WA.
- Clark, S.E., R. Pitt, P. Brown, and R. Field. 1998. Treatment by filtration of stormwater runoff prior to groundwater recharge. Presentation at WEFTEC 1998, Orlando, Florida. Sponsored by the Water Environment Federation.
- Clark, S.E., R. Pitt, S. Burian, R. Field, E. Fan, J. Heaney, and L. Wright. 2007. Annotated Bibliography of Urban Wet Weather Flow Literature from 1996 through 2006. September 10, 2007.
- Clauson, J.C., and J.K. Gilbert. 2003. Annual report: Jordan Cove urban water section 319 national monitoring program project. Storrs-Mansfield, CT: University of Connecticut, College of Agriculture and Natural Resources.
- Clean Water Services. 2016. Low Impact Development Approaches Handbook. Tualatin Basin Natural Resources Coordinating Committee. Hillsboro, OR. 2016.
- Colorado Division of Water Resources. Colorado-New Mexico Regional Extreme Precipitation Study Summary Report Volume VI Considering Climate Change in the Estimation of Extreme Precipitation for Dam Safety. November 30, 2018.
- Comings, K.J., D.B. Booth, and R. Horner. 1998. Stormwater pollutant removal by two wet ponds in Bellevue, WA. Department of Civil and Environmental Engineering, University of Washington. Seattle, WA.
- Connecticut Department of Environmental Protection. 2010. Artificial Turf Study: Leachate and Stormwater Characteristics, Final Report. July 2010.
- Contech Engineered Solutions LLC. 2016. Stormwater Management StormFilter (StormFilter) with Perlite Media. November 2016.
- Contech Engineered Solutions LLC. 2020. Filterra Bioretention Systems. October 2020.
- Davis, A.P., M. Shokouhian, H. Sharma, and C. Minami. 1998. Optimization of bioretention design for water quality and hydrologic characteristics, final report. Project No. 01-4-31032. University of Maryland. College Park, MD.
- Davis, A.P., M. Shokouhian, H. Sharma, and C. Minami. 2001. Laboratory study of biological retention (bioretention) for urban storm water management. *Water Environment Research*, 73(1):5-14.
- Dearmont, D., McCarl, B.A., and D.A. Tolman. (1998). Costs of Water Treatment due to Diminished Water Quality: A Case Study in Texas. *34 Water Resources Research* 4, 849-53.
- Denver. 2016. Ultra-Urban Green Infrastructure Guidelines. City and County of Denver, CO. March 1, 2016.

- Depree, C. 2008. Contaminant characterisation and toxicity of road sweepings and catchpit sediments: Towards more sustainable reuse options. Land Transport NZ Research Report 345. Hamilton, New Zealand.
- Dierkes, C., Kuhlmann, L., Kandasamy, J., and Angelis, G. 2001. Pollution retention capacity and maintenance of permeable pavements. Global solutions for urban drainage, Proceedings of the Ninth International Conference on Urban Drainage. September, 2002. Portland, OR.
- Dinicola, R. S. 1990. Characterization and Simulation of Rainfall-Runoff Relations for Headwater Basins in Western King and Shonomish Counties, Washington. U.S. Geological Survey. Water-Resources Investigations Report 89-4052.
- Dinicola, R.S. 2001. Validation of a Numerical Modeling Method for Simulating Rainfall-Runoff Relations for Headwater Basins in Western King and Shonomish Counties, Washington. U.S. Department of Interiors. U.S. Geological Survey. Water Supply Paper 2495.
- Driscoll, E. D. 1986. Detention and retention controls for urban runoff. Urban Runoff Quality – Impact and Quality Enhancement Technology, B. Urbonas, and L. A. Roesner, ed., ASCE, 381-393.
- Dunne, T. and L.B. Leopold. 1978. Water in Environmental Planning. New York: W.H. Freeman and Company.
- EBDI. 2006. East Baltimore Development, Inc. 2006 Operations Protocol for Salvage, Deconstruction, Demolition and Site Preparation Activities. April 2006.
- Ecology. 1992. Stormwater Management Manual for the Puget Sound Basin: The Technical Manual. Washington State Department of Ecology Publication 91-75. February 1992.
- Ecology. 2001. Stormwater Management Manual for Western Washington. Olympia, WA.
- Ecology. 2005. Stormwater Management Manual for Western Washington. Washington State Department of Ecology.
- Ecology. 2006. Washington State Department of Ecology, Fact Sheet: Phase I Municipal Stormwater Permit: National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System and State Waste Discharge General Permit for discharges from Large and Medium Municipal Separate Storm Sewer Systems. Permit Issued January 17, 2007. Permit modification issued June 17, 2009. Fact Sheet dated March 22, 2006.
- Ecology. 2007a. Washington State Department of Ecology Phase I Municipal Stormwater Permit: National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System and State Waste Discharge General Permit for discharges from Large and Medium Municipal Separate Storm Sewer Systems. Permit Issued January 17, 2007. Permit modification issued June 17, 2009.
- Ecology. 2007b. Phase I: Initial Estimate of Toxic Chemical Loadings to Puget Sound. Washington State Department of Ecology Publication Number 07-10-079. October 2007.
- Ecology. 2010. Fact Sheet for Construction Stormwater General Permit. Washington State Department of Ecology. July 21, 2010.

- Ecology. 2011a. Control of Toxic Chemicals in Puget Sound – Phase 3: Primary Sources of Selected Toxic Chemicals and Quantities Released in the Puget Sound Basin. Washington State Department of Ecology. Publication No. 11-03-024. November, 2011.
- Ecology. 2011b. Technical Guidance Manual for Evaluating Emerging Stormwater Treatment Technologies Technology Assessment Protocol – Ecology (TAPE). Washington State Department of Ecology. August 2011 revision of Publication no. 02-10-037. Publication no. 11-10-061.
- Ecology. 2013a. Washington State Department of Ecology, Guidance Document – Western Washington Low Impact Development (LID) Operation and Maintenance (O&M). Prepared by Herrera Environmental Consultants and the Washington Stormwater Center. July, 2013.
- Ecology. 2013b. Washington State Department of Ecology - Focus on Bioretention Monitoring. Publication Number: 13-10-017. March, 2013.
- Ecology. 2014a. Washington State Department of Ecology Phase I Municipal Stormwater Permit: National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System and State Waste Discharge General Permit for discharges from Large and Medium Municipal Separate Storm Sewer Systems. Permit Issued August 1, 2012. Permit modification issued December 17, 2014.
- Ecology. 2014b. Stormwater Management Manual for Western Washington. Washington State Department of Ecology. December 2014.
- Ecology. 2014c. Roofing Materials Assessment: Investigation of Toxic Chemicals in Roof Runoff from Constructed Panels in 2013 and 2014. Washington State Department of Ecology Publication No. 14-03-033. September 2014.
- Ecology. 2015. Western Washington NPDES Phase I Stormwater Permit, Final S8.D Data Characterization 2009-2013. Washington State Department of Ecology Publication No. 15-03-001. February, 2015.
- Ecology. 2019a. Washington State Department of Ecology Phase I Municipal Stormwater Permit: National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System and State Waste Discharge General Permit for discharges from Large and Medium Municipal Separate Storm Sewer Systems. Permit Issued July 1, 2019. Effective Date: August 1, 2019.
- Ecology. 2019b. Stormwater Management Manual for Western Washington. Washington State Department of Ecology. July 2019.
- EPA. 2000. EPA Basins Technical Note 6 Estimating Hydrology and Hydraulic Parameters for HSPF. EPA-823-R00-012. July 2000.
- Eisenberg, Olivieri and Associates, Inc. 2007. Pollutant Load Removal From Street Sweeping Best Management Practices: Development of Typical Concentration Values for Pollutants of Concern in Contra Costa County, CA. Prepared for Contra Costa Clean Water Program. May, 2007.
- Ellis, M.M. 1936. Erosion silt as a factor in aquatic environments. Ecology. 17:29-42.

- Engstrom, A. 2004. Characterizing Water Quality of Urban Stormwater Runoff: Interactions of Heavy Metals and Solids in Seattle Residential Catchments. M.S. Thesis, University of Washington, Department of Civil and Environmental Engineering, Seattle, Washington, 117 pp.
- Feijtel, T.S., R.D. Delaune, and W.H. Patrick, Jr. 1989. Seasonal pore water dynamics in marshes of Barataria Basin, Louisiana. *Soil Sci. Soc. Am. J.* 52:59-67.
- Florida Department of Environmental Protection. 2004. Guidance for the Management of Street Sweepings, Catch Basin Sediments and Stormwater System Sediments. May 2014. Tallahassee, FL.
- Foulquier, A., F. Malard, S. Barraud, and J. Gibert. 2009. Thermal Influence of Urban Groundwater Recharge from Stormwater Infiltration Basins. *Hydrological Processes* 23(12):1701-1713.
- Fountoulakis, M.S., S. Terzakis, N. Kalogerakis, and T. Manios. 2009. Removal of polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons and linear alkylbenzene sulfonates from domestic wastewater in pilot constructed wetlands and a gravel filter. *Ecological Engineering*. Volume 35, Issue 12, pp. 1702-1709.
- Gain, S. W. 1996. The effects of flow-path modification on water-quality constituent retention in an urban stormwater detention pond and wetland system, Orlando, Florida. USGS, Water-Resources Investigations Report 95-4297, Tallahassee, Florida.
- Galli, F.J. 1992. Preliminary Analysis of the Performance and Longevity of Urban BMPs installed in Prince George County, Maryland. Prepared for the Department of Environmental Resources. Prince George's County, Maryland.
- Gibson and Martin. 2018. Claire Gibson, Clarity Engineering LLC and Richard Martin Richard, Martin Groundwater LLC emailed memorandum to Shanti Colwell and Eric Dripps, Seattle Public Utilities. Recommendations for Infiltration Acceptance Testing During Constructoin for Select Infiltration BMPs. September 14, 2018.
- Gladden, J.B., W.L. Specht, and E.A. Nelson. 2002. Comparison of Constructed Wetland Mesocosms Designed for Treatment of Copper-contaminated Wastewater. Westinghouse Savannah River Company (Contract no. DE-AC09-96SR18500 with the US Department of Energy).
- Goldberg, J.S. 1993. Dayton Avenue Swale Biofiltration Study. City of Seattle Engineering Department. Seattle, WA.
- Gresham. 2007. Green Development Practices for Stormwater Management. An Implementation Guide for Development Projects in the Pleasant Valley and Springwater Plan Districts. City of Gresham, OR. Department of Environmental Services & Community Development Department. July 2007
- Gresham. 2018. Stormwater Management Manual An Implementation Guide for Development Projects. City of Gresham, OR. October 2018.
- Hagman, B.B., Konrad, J.G., and Madison, F.W. 1980. Methods for controlling erosion and sedimentation from residential construction activities, in National Conference on Urban Erosion and Sediment Control—Institutions and Technology, October 10-12, 1979, St.

- Paul, Minnesota: US Environmental Protection Agency Report EPA-905/9-80-002, January, 1980. p. 99–105.
- Hansen, J.A., P.G. Welsh, J. Lipton, and D. Cacela. 2002. Effects of Copper Exposure on Growth and Survival of Juvenile Bull Trout. *Transactions of the American Fisheries Society* 131(4):690-697.
- Harper, H.H., B.M. Fries, D.M. Baker, and M.P. Wanielsta. 1986. Stormwater Treatment by Natural Systems. Florida Department of Environmental Regulation Report 84-026.
- Hathorn, W.E. and D.R. Yonge. 1996. The assessment of groundwater pollution potential resulting from stormwater infiltration BMPs. Final Technical Report, Research Project T9902. Washington State Department of Transportation / US Department of Transportation.
- Hendrey, G.R., J. Clinton, K. Blumer, and K. Lewin. 1979. Lowland Recharge Project Operations, Physical, Chemical, and Biological Changes 1975-1978. Final Report to the Town of Brookhaven. Brookhaven National Laboratory, Brookhaven NY.
- Herrera. 2006. Technology Evaluation and Engineering Report: WSDOT Ecology Embankment. Prepared for Washington Department of Transportation, by Herrera Environmental Consultants, Inc., Seattle, Washington.
- Herrera. 2008. Effects of Trees on Stormwater Runoff. Prepared by Herrera Environmental Consultants. Prepared for Seattle Public Utilities. February 2008.
- Herrera, 2009a. Water Year 2008 Data Report - High Point Phase I Block-Scale Monitoring. Prepared by Herrera Environmental Consultants for Seattle Public Utilities. April 2009.
- Herrera. 2009b. Data Report 2006-2008: WSDOT Stormwater Management Program BMP Monitoring - SR 18 MP 18.51 Ecology Embankment. Prepared for Washington State Department of Transportation, by Herrera Environmental Consultants, Inc., Seattle, Washington.
- Herrera. 2009c. Final Project Report: Compost-Amended Vegetated Filter Strip Performance Monitoring Study. Prepared for Washington State Department of Transportation, by Herrera Environmental Consultants, Inc., Seattle, Washington.
- Herrera. 2009d. 2007-2008 Wet Season Report: WSDOT Stormwater Management Program Unimproved Embankment Monitoring, Herrera Environmental Consultants, Inc., Seattle, Washington.
- Herrera. 2010. Woodland Park synthetic turf field stormwater drainage study. Prepared by Herrera Environmental Consultants for Seattle Public Utilities. June 2010.
- Herrera. 2019. Environmental Monitoring Report Bobby Morris Playfield Renovation Pilot Program. Prepared by Herrera Environmental Consultants for Seattle Parks and Recreation. December 6, 2019.
- Herrera. 2020. Rebecca Dugopolski and Neil Schaner, Herrera Environmental Consultants emailed memorandum to Sherell Ehlers and Mary Weber, Seattle Public Utilities. Rational for Proposed Edits to Rainwater Harvesting BMP On-site Approach Sizing. September 11, 2020.
- Holz, T.W. 2007. Deposition upon oral examination of Thomas

- Holz. Puget Soundkeeper Alliance, et al. vs. State of Washington, et al. Cause No. 07-021, et al. taken December 13, 2007. Seattle, WA.
- Horner, R.R. 1988. Biofiltration systems for storm runoff water quality control. Prepared for the Washington State Dept. of Ecology. Seattle, WA.
- Horner, R.R. 2006. Initial Investigation of the Feasibility and Benefits of Low-Impact Site Design Practices (“LID”) for Ventura County. Report. Submitted to California Regional Water Quality Control Board, Los Angeles Region, by Natural Resources Defense Council in letter commenting on draft municipal regional stormwater permit. December 2006. Los Angeles, CA.
- Horner, R.R. 2007. Initial Investigation of the Feasibility and Benefits of Low-Impact Site Design Practices (“LID”) for the San Francisco Bay Area. Report. Submitted to California Regional Water Quality Control Board, San Francisco Bay Region, by Natural Resources Defense Council in letter commenting on draft municipal regional stormwater permit. July 12, 2007. Oakland, CA.
- Horner, R.R., and C.R. Horner. 1995. Design, Construction, and Evaluation of a Sand Filter Stormwater Treatment System, Part II. Performance Monitoring. Report to Alaska Marine Lines, Seattle, WA.
- Horner, R.R., C. May, E. Livingston, D. Blaha, M. Scoggins, J. Tims, and J. Maxted. 2002a. Structural and non-structural BMPs for Protecting streams. Proceedings of the Seventh Biennial Stormwater Research and Watershed Management Conference. Southwest Florida Water Management District. p. 185-203. May 22-23, 2002. <http://www.swfwmd.state.fl.us/documents/> (assessed June 17, 2008) Brooksville, FL.
- Horner, R.R., L. Heungkook, and S.J. Burges. 2002b. Hydrologic monitoring of the Seattle ultra-urban stormwater management projects. Water Resource Technical Series Report No. 170. Department of Civil and Environmental Engineering, University of Washington. Seattle, WA.
- Horner, R.R. and C. Chapman. 2007. NW 110th Street Natural Drainage System Performance Monitoring, with Summary of Viewlands and 2nd Avenue NW SEA Streets Monitoring. Report. Prepared for Seattle Public Utilities. Department of Civil and Environmental Engineering, University of Washington. September 2007. Seattle, WA.
- Hruby, Thomas. 2014. Washington State Wetland Rating System for Western Washington. SEA Program, Washington State Department of Ecology Publication No. 14-06-029. October 2014 – Effective January 2015.
- Hutchinson, Doug, and Dustin Atchison. 2014. Ballard Rain Gardens: The Other Side of the Story. Presentation at 2014 StormCon Conference, Portland, OR. August 3-7, 2014.
- Jacobs, D.E., Cali, S., Welch, A., Catalin, B., Dixon, S.L., Evens, A., Mucha, A.P., Vahl, N., Erdal, S., and J. Bartlett. 2013. Lead and Other Heavy Metals in Dust Fall from Single-Family Housing Demolition. Public Health Reports, Volume 128, November-December 2013.
- Kadlec, Robert H. and Robert L. Knight. 1996. Treatment Wetlands. CRC Press, Incorporated. Boca Raton, Florida.

- Kalinosky, P., L. Baker, S. Hobbie, and C. Buyarske. 2012. Quantifying Nutrient Load Recovery through Targeted, Intensive Street Sweeping. Powerpoint presentation. Water Resources Conference Oct 17, 2012.
- Kantrowitz, I. H. and W.M. Woodham. 1995. Efficiency of a stormwater-detention pond in reducing loads of chemical and physical constituents in urban streamflow, Pinellas County, Florida. USGS, Water-Resources Investigations Report 94-4217, Tallahassee, Florida.
- Karr, J.R. 1991. Biological Integrity: A long-neglected aspect of water resource management. *Ecological Applications*, 1(1):66-84.
- King County. 1998. Surface Water Design Manual. Seattle, WA.
- King County. 1995. Evaluation of water quality ponds and swales. King County Surface Water Management. Seattle, WA.
- King County. 1979. Storm Drainage Control—Requirements and Guidelines. Department of Public Works, Division of Hydraulics. Seattle, WA.
- Kitsap County, City of Redmond, Department of Ecology, and Herrera. 2014. Results from Current Research on Pollutant Export from Bioretention Systems and Next Steps. Proceedings of the 2014 Washington State Municipal Stormwater Conference, November 5/6 2014. Puyallup, WA.
- Kleindl, W. 1995. A benthic index of biotic integrity for Puget Sound lowland streams, Washington, USA. Master's Thesis, University of Washington. Seattle, WA.
- Knight, R.L., R.W. Ruble, R.H. Kadlec, and S.C. Reed. 1994. Wetlands for wastewater treatment performance database. In G.A. Moshiri (ed.), *Constructed wetlands for water quality improvement*. Lewis Publishers, Boca Raton, Florida.
- Konrad, C.P. and D.B. Booth. 2002. Hydrologic trends associated with urban development for selected streams in the Puget Sound Basin, western Washington. US Geological Survey, Water Resources Investigation Report 02-4040.
- Kosti, K.F., S.J. Burges, and B.W. Jensen. 1995. Hydrologic response of residential-scale lawns on till containing various amounts of compost amendment. Water Resources Series Technical Report No. 147. Dept. of Civil Engineering, University of Washington. Seattle, WA.
- Kulzer, L. 1989. Considerations for the Use of Wet Ponds for Water Quality Enhancement. Municipality of Metropolitan Seattle. Seattle, WA.
- Kurahashi & Associates, Inc. 1997. Port of Seattle - Stormwater Treatment BMP Evaluation. Prepared for Port of Seattle, Pier 66. Prepared by Kurahashi & Associates, in association with AGI Technologies.
- Law, N., L. DiBlasi, and U. Ghosh. 2008. Deriving Reliable Pollutant Removal Rates for Municipal Street Sweeping and Storm Drain Cleanout Programs in the Chesapeake Bay Basin. Center for Watershed Protection. September 2008.
- Lawrence, A.I., J.J. Marsalek, B. Ellis, and B. Urbonas. 1996. Stormwater detention and BMPs. *Journal of Hydraulic Research*, 34:799-813.

- Leif, B. 1999. Compost stormwater filter evaluation. Snohomish County Public Works, Surface Water Management Division. Everett, WA.
- Litchfield, D.K. 1993. Constructed Wetlands for Wastewater Treatment at Amoco Oli Company's Madan, North Dakota Refinery. Pp.485-488. in: G.A. Moshiri (Ed.), Constructed Wetlands for Water Quality Improvement. Lewis Publishers. Boca Raton, Florida.
- Litchfield, D.K. and D.D. Schatz. 1989. Constructed Wetlands for Wastewater Treatment at Amoco Oil Company's Madan, North Dakota Refinery. Chapter 18, pp. 233-237, in D.A. Hammer (Ed). Constructed Wetlands for Wastewater Treatment: Municipal, Industrial, and Agricultural. Lewis Publishers, Chelsea, Michigan.
- Li, H., Sharkey, L., Hunt, W., and A. Davis. 2009. Mitigation of Impervious Surface Hydrology Using Bioretention in North Carolina and Maryland. Journal of Hydrologic Engineering.
- Lucchetti, G. and R. Fuerstenberg. 1993. Relative fish use in urban and non-urban streams. Proceedings of the Conference on Wild Salmon, Vancouver, BC.
- Maestre, A, and R. Pitt. 2005. The National Stormwater Quality Database, Version 1.1: A Compilation and Analysis of NPDES Stormwater Monitoring Information. University of Alabama, Tuscaloosa, AL, and Center for Watershed Protection, Ellicott City, MY. September 4, 2005.
- Mar, B.W., R.R. Horner, J.F. Ferguson, D.E. Spyridakis, E.B. Welch. 1982. Summary – Highway Runoff Water Quality Study, 1977 – 1982. WA RD 39.16. September 1982.
- Maryland Department of Environment. 1986. Stormwater Management Infiltration Practices in Maryland: A Departmental Summary. Sediment and Stormwater Administration.
- Maryland Department of Environment. 1991. Stormwater Management Infiltration Practices in Maryland: A Second Survey. Sediment and Stormwater Administration.
- Massman, J.W. 2003. Implementation of infiltration ponds research. Final Research Report, Research Project Agreement No. Y8265. Washington State Department of Transportation.
- May, C.W. 1996. Assessment of cumulative effects of urbanization on small streams in the Puget Sound lowland ecoregion: Implications for salmonid resource management. Ph.D. dissertation, Department of Civil Engineering, University of Washington. Seattle, WA.
- May, C. W., R. R. Horner, J. R. Karr, B. W. Mar & E. B. Welch. 1997. Effects of urbanization on small streams in the Puget Sound Lowland ecoregion. Watersh. protect. Techn. 2: 483–494.
- McCrea, Rachel. Washington Department of Ecology Municipal Stormwater Specialist, NWRO. Personal communication July 2013.
- McCullough, M.C., Spalding, S., and D. Sturdevant. 2001. Summary of Technical Literature Examining the Physiological Effects of Temperature on Salmonids. EPA-910-D-01-005, U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Washington, DC.

- McIntyre, J.K., Davis, J.W., Hinman, C., Macneale, K.H., Anulacion, N.L., and J.D. Stark. In Press. Soil bioretention protects juvenile salmon and their prey from the toxic impacts of urban stormwater runoff. *Chemosphere*. In Press.
- McMahon, G. and T.F. Cuffney. 2000. Quantifying urban intensity in drainage basins for assessing stream ecological conditions. *Journal of American Water Resources Association* 36:1247-1262.
- Medina, D., Monfils, J., and Z. Baccala. 2011. Green Infrastructure Benefits for Floodplain Management: A Case Study. *Stormwater*. November 2011.
- Miller, I.M., Morgan, H., Mauger, G., Newton, T., Weldon, R., Schmidt, D., Welch, M., Grossman, E. 2018. Projected Sea Level Rise for Washington State – A 2018 Assessment. A collaboration of Washington Sea Grant, University of Washington Climate Impacts Group, University of Oregon, University of Washington, and US Geological Survey. Prepared for the Washington Coastal Resilience Project.
- Minton, G.R. 2004. Short Course - Stormwater Treatment – How It Works. Shoreline, WA.
- Minton, G.R. 2005. Stormwater Treatment: Biological, Chemical & Engineering Principles. Resource Planning Associates. Sheridan Books, Inc., Seattle, WA.
- Mitsch, W. and J. Gosselink. 1986. *Wetlands*. Van Nostrand Reinhold.
- Moretto, Robert. 2007. Environmental and health evaluation of the use of elastomer granulates (virgin and from used tyres) as filling in third generation artificial turf. EEDEMS as coordinator for ALIAPUR (tyre recycler) and Fieldturf Tarkett (artificial turf manufacturer/installer), and ADEME (Environmental French Agency).
- National Research Council. 2009. *Urban Stormwater Management in the United States*. The National Academies Press, Washington DC.
- Natural Resources Defense Council. 2006. *Rooftops to Rivers, Green Strategies for Controlling Stormwater and Combined Sewer Overflows*.
<http://www.nrdc.org/water/pollution/rooftops/rooftops.pdf>
- Newberry, G.P. and D.R. Yonge. 1996. The retardation of heavy metals in stormwater runoff by highway grass strips. Washington State Department of Transportation / US Department of Transportation.
- Nevada Tahoe Conservation District. 2011. Effectiveness of Street Sweeping in Incline Village, NV. December, 2011.
- Noller, B.N., P.H. Woods, and B.J. Ross. 1994. Case studies of wetland filtration of mine waste water in constructed and naturally occurring systems in Northern Australia. *Water Sci. Tech.* 29:257-266.
- O'Brien. 2014. Oral testimony as recorded in Pollution Control Hearings Board, State of Washington – Findings of Fact, Conclusions of Law, and Order. PCHB No. 12-093c, PCHB No. 12-097c.
- Oldcastle Infrastructure. 2017. Oldcastle PerkFilter System with ZPC Media. May 2017.

- Oldcastle Infrastructure. 2018. BioPod Biofilter with StormMix Media. May 2018 with November 2018 Addendum.
- Omaha. 2014. Omaha Regional Stormwater Design Manual Rev. 6. Chapter 8. City of Omaha, NE.
- Owens, David W., P. Jopke, D.W. Hall, J. Balousek, and R. Roa. 2000. Soil Erosion from Two Small Construction Sites, Dane County, Wisconsin. USGS Fact Sheet FS-109-00. August 2000. Middleton, WI.
- Pitt, R. 1979. Demonstration of Nonpoint Pollution Abatement through Improved Street Cleaning Practice. EPA 600/2-79-161.
- Pitt, R. 1985. Characterizing and Controlling Urban Runoff through Street and Sewerage Cleaning. US Environmental Protection Agency, Storm and Combined Sewer Program, Risk Reduction Engineering Laboratory, Cincinnati, Ohio. EPA/600/S2-85/038. PB 85-186500.
- Pitt, R.E. 1996. Groundwater contamination from stormwater infiltration. Ann Arbor Press, Boca Raton, Florida.
- Pitt, R. 2013. The Role of Street Cleaning in Stormwater Management: Using WinSLAMM v10 to Meet Urban Stormwater Management Goals. New Jersey Department of Environmental Protection. PowerPoint presentation. January 24-25, 2013
- Pollution Control Hearings Board (State of Washington). 2008. Order on Dispositive Motions (Phase I Municipal Stormwater Permits). PCHB No. 07-021 et.seq. April, 2008.
- Portland. 2001. Ecoroof monitoring information. Bureau of Environmental Services. Portland, OR.
- Portland. 2016. Stormwater Management Manual. City of Portland, OR. August 19, 2016
- Pratt, C.J., Newmann, A.P., and P.C. Bond. 1999. Mineral oil bio-degradation within a permeable pavement: Long term observations. *Water Science and Technology*, 39, 103-109.
- Prince George's County Dept. of Environmental Resources, 1999. Low-impact development design strategies: an integrated design approach. Prince George's County, MD.
- Prince George's County Dept. of Environmental Resources. 2002. Low impact development (LID) integrated management practices guidebook. Prince George's County, MD.
- Puget Sound Partnership. 2010. 2009 State of the Sound Report. Olympia, Washington.
- Reinelt, L.E., R.R. Horner, and A. Azous. 1998. Impacts of urbanization on palustrine (depressional freshwater) wetlands research and management in the Puget Sound region. *Urban Ecosystems* 2:219-236.
- Reinelt, L.E. and B.L. Taylor. 2000. "Effects of Watershed Development on Hydrology" in *Wetlands and Urbanization: Implications for the Future*. New York: Lewis Publishers. Azous, A.L. and R.R. Horner (eds.).
- Sands, K., and T. Chapman. 2011. Why Green Infrastructure and I/I Control Go Hand in Hand. *Water World*. Volume 27, Issue 2.

- Sansalone, J., Berretta, C., and S. Raje. 2011. Quantifying Nutrient Loads Associated with Urban Particulate Matter (PM) and Biogenic/Litter Recovery Through Current MS4 Source Control and Maintenance Practices (Maintenance Matters!). University of Florida. May 2011.
- San Antonio. 2016. Storm Water Design Criteria Manual. City of San Antonio, TX. January 2016.
- San Francisco. 2016. San Francisco Stormwater Management Requirements and Design Guidelines. City of San Francisco, CA. May 2016
- Schaap, M.G. and M. Th. Van Genuchten. 2005. A Modified Maulem-van Benuchten Formulation for Improved Description of the Hydraulic Conductivity Near Saturation. Vadose Zone Journal. Published by Soil Science Society of America.
- Scheller, Jerry. 2014. Piper’s Creek GSI BMP Performance Modeling Technical Memo. September 2014.
- Schaefer, MG. 2019. Assessment of 2-Hour, 6-Hour and 48-Hour Precipitation Time-Series for Non-Stationarity and Implications for Assessing Spillway Adequacy for Dams in Washington State. Prepared for Washington State Department of Ecology Dam Safety Program. MGS Engineering Consultants. October 25, 2019
- Schiffer, D.M. 1989. Water Quality Variability in a Central Florida Wetland Receiving Highway Runoff, Water: Laws and Management Conference, American Water Resources Association, September 1989, Tampa, Florida.
- Schueler, T.R. 1987. Controlling Urban Runoff: A Practical Manual for Planning and Designing Urban BMPs. Metropolitan Washington Council of Governments, Washington, D.C.
- Schueler, T.R. 1994. The importance of imperviousness. Watershed Protection Techniques 1(3)100-111.
- Seattle. 2005. Environmentally Critical Areas: Best Available Science Review. Department of Planning and Development. August 2005.
- Seattle. 2007. Environmentally Critical Areas Code Update: Best Available Science Review for Peat Settlement-prone Areas. Seattle Department of Planning and Development. August 2007.
- Seattle. 2012a. Green Roof Performance Study, Final Report. Prepared by Cardno TEC for Seattle Public Utilities. June 2012.
- Seattle. 2012b. Catchbasin StormFilter Performance Evaluation Report. March 2012.
- Seattle. 2012c. Program Effectiveness Report: Street Sweeping for Water Quality. Seattle Public Utilities. March 2012.
- Seattle. 2013a. Environmentally Critical Areas Code Update: Best Available Science Review for Fish and Wildlife Habitat Conservation Areas. Seattle Department of Planning and Development. December 2013.
- Seattle. 2013c. StormFilter Hydrologic Performance and Sizing Study. June 2013.

- Seattle. 2014. Ballard Roadside Raingardens. Phase 1 Hydrologic Monitoring Report, September 2012 through May 2013. January, 2014.
- Seattle. 2015. Environmentally Critical Areas – Best Available Science Review (Supplemental Report). Exhibit B to the SPU 2015 Stormwater Code Bill Summary and Fiscal Note. February 12, 2015.
- Seattle. 2020. Enclosure 4 - Sidewalk/Trail Compost-Amended Strip BMP Background and Technical Memorandum. October 23, 2020.
- Seattle and Herrera. 2009. Seattle Street Sweeping Pilot Study - Monitoring Report. Prepared by Herrera Environmental Consultants for Seattle Public Utilities. April, 2009.
- Selbig, W., and R. Bannerman. 2007. Evaluation of street sweeping as a stormwater-quality-management tool in three residential basins in Madison, Wisconsin: US Geological Survey Scientific Investigations Report 2007–5156.
- Shaver, E., R.R. Horner, J. Skupien, C. May and G. Ridley. 2007. Fundamentals of Urban Runoff Management: Technical and Institutional Issues. Second Ed. North American Lake Management Society. Madison, WI.
- Sheldon, D., T. Hruby, P. Johnson, K. Harper, A. McMillan, T. Granger, S. Stanley, and E. Stockdale. 2005. Wetlands in Washington State - Volume 1: A Synthesis of the Science. Washington State Department of Ecology. Publication #05-06-006. Olympia, WA.
- Sidle, R.C. 1988. Bedload transport regime of a small forest stream. *Water Resources Research* 24(2):207-218.
- Sinicrope, T.L., R. Langis, R.M. Gersberg, M.J. Busnardo, and J.B. Zedler. 1992. Metal removal by wetland mesocosms subjected to different hydroperiods. *Ecol. Eng.* 1:309-322.
- Soils for Salmon. 2012. Guidelines and Resources for Implementing Soil Quality and Depth BMP T5.13 in WDOE Stormwater Management Manual for Western Washington.
- Stanley, D. W. 1996. Pollutant removal by a stormwater dry detention pond. *Water Environment Research*, 68:1076.
- Tacoma. 2016. Stormwater Management Manual. City of Tacoma, WA. July 2016.
- Tacoma-Pierce County Health Department/Pierce County Public Works Department. 1995. Pilot evaluation, subsurface stormwater disposal facilities, final report.
- Tang, S-y. and X-w. Lu. 1993. The use of *Eichhornia crassipes* to cleanse oil refinery wastewater in China. *Ecol. Eng.*, 2:243-251.
- Terzakis S., M.S. Fountoulakis, I. Georgaki, D. Albantakis, I. Sabathianakis, A.D. Karathanasisz, N. Kalogerakis, and T. Manios. 2008. Constructed wetlands treating highway runoff in the central Mediterranean region. *Chemosphere* Vol. 72:2, Pp. 141-149.
- Thom, R.M., A.B. Borde, K.O. Richter, and L.F. Hibler. 2001. Influence of urbanization on ecological processes in wetlands. *Water Science and Application* 2: 5-16.
- Tian, Z., H. Zhao, K. T. Peter, M. Gonzalez, J. Wetzel, C. Wu, X. Hu, J. Prat., E. Mudrock, R. Hettinger, A. E. Cortina, R.G. Biswas, F. V. C. Kock, R. Soong, A. Jenne, B. Du, F. Hou, H. He, R. Lundeen, A. Gilbreath, R. Sutton, N. L. Scholz, J. W. Davis, M. C. Dodd, A.

- Simpson, J.K. McIntyre, E. P. Kokoziej. 2020. A ubiquitous tire rubber-derived chemical induces acute mortality in coho salmon. *Science*. December 3, 2020.
- Tomasek, M.D., G.E. Johnson, and P.J. Mulloy. 1987. Operational problems with a soil filtration system for treating stormwater. *Lake and Reservoir Management: Volume III, Issue 1*.
- United States Geological Survey. 2009. Effects of Urbanization on Stream Ecosystems. <http://water.usgs.gov/nawqa/urban/html/publications.html> (assessed May 15, 2009)
- Urbonas, Ben. 1999. Design of a Sand Filter for Stormwater Quality Enhancement. *Water Environment Research*, Vol. 71, No. 1 (Jan – Feb 1999), pp 102-113.
- URS, 2010. Targeted Aggressive Street Sweeping Pilot Program Phase III Median Sweeping Study. Prepared for City of San Diego. Doc ID# CSD-RT-10-URS19-02. August, 2010.
- URS, 2011. Targeted Aggressive Street Sweeping Pilot Program Phase IV Speed Efficiency Study. Prepared for City of Sand Diego. Doc ID# CSD-RT-11-URS28-02. May, 2011.
- US EPA. 1983. Results of the nationwide urban runoff program. PB84-185552. Washington, D.C.
- US EPA. 1997. Innovative Uses of Compost: Erosion Control, Turf Remediation, and Landscaping. US EPA Fact Sheet EPA 530-F-97-043.
- US EPA. 1999. National Pollution Discharge Elimination System – Storm Water Phase II, Federal Register, Vol. 64, No. 235, December 9, 1999, Rules and Regulations.
- US EPA. 2000. Vegetated roof cover, Philadelphia, Pennsylvania. EPA 841-B-00-005D. Washington, D.C.
- US EPA. 2007. Developing Your Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plan: A Guide for Construction Sites. EPA 833-R-060-04. Washington, D.C.
- US EPA. 2012. Green Infrastructure Permitting and Enforcement Series: Factsheet 2. Combined Sewer Overflows. EPA-832-F-12-013. Washington, D.C. 2012.
- US EPA. 2014. Improving Community Resiliency with Green Infrastructure. EPA-830-F-14-001. Washington, D.C. 2014.
- US EPA. 2015. What is Green Infrastructure? US EPA Green Infrastructure website, accessed July 2, 2015 at: <http://water.epa.gov/infrastructure/greeninfrastructure/>
- Van Genuchten, M. Th. 1980. A Closed-form Equation for Predicting the Hydraulic Conductivity of Unsaturated Soils. *Soil Sci. Soc. Am. J.* 44:892-898.
- Vancouver. 2016. Best Management Practice ToolKit Volume II. Vancouver, BC. March 2016.
- Walker, W. W. Jr. 1987. Phosphorus removal by urban runoff detention basins. *Lake Reservoir Management*, 3:314-328.
- Walker, D.J. and S. Hurl. 2002. The reduction of heavy metals in a stormwater wetland. *Ecol. Eng.* 18:407-414.
- Wanielista, M.P. and C.L. Cassagnol. 1981. Detention with effluent filtration for stormwater management. Published in *Urban Stormwater Quality, Management, and Planning*, Ben Chieyen, ed., 1982. Water Resources Publications, Littleton, CO.

- Warner, J.W. T.K. Gates, R. Namvargolian, P. Miller, and G. Comes. 1994. Sediment and microbial fouling of experimental groundwater recharge trenches. *Journal of Contaminant Hydrology*, 15:321-344.
- Weston Solutions. 2010. City of San Diego Targeted Aggressive Street Sweeping Pilot Effectiveness Assessment Final Report. Prepared for City of San Diego. June 2010
- Whipple, W. Jr. 1979. Dual-purpose detention basins. *Journal of the Water Resources Planning and Management Division, ASCE*, 105:402-423.
- WSU. 2014. Bioretention Facility Testing, Final Report. Memorandum of Agreement No. DA2009-39. Prepared for Seattle Public Utilities. March, 2014.
- WSU and PSP. 2012. Washington State University and Puget Sound Partnership – Low Impact Development Technical Guidance Manual for Puget Sound. Olympia, WA.
- Wu, J. S., R.E. Holman, and J.R. Dorney. 1996. Systematic evaluation of pollutant removal by urban wet detention ponds. *Journal of Environmental Engineering*, 122:983-988.
- Xiao, Q., E.G. McPherson, J.R. Simpson, and S.L. Uston. 1998. Rainfall Interception by Sacramento's Urban Forest. *Journal of Arboriculture* 24(4): 235-244.
- Yorke, T.H., and Herb, W.J. 1976. Urban-area sediment yield effects of construction site conditions and sediment control methods, *Proceedings of the Third Federal Inter-Agency Sedimentation Conference, 1976, Denver, Colorado, March 22-25, 1976: Water Resources Council, Sedimentation Committee*, p. 2-52 through 2-64
- Yousef, Y. and L. Yu. 1992. Potential contamination of groundwater from Cu, Pb, and Zn in wet detention ponds receiving highway runoff. *J. Environ. Science. Health*, A27(4):1033-1044.
- Zarriello, P., R. Berault, and P. Weisel. 2002. Potential Effects of Structural Controls and Street Sweeping on Stormwater Loads to the Lower Charles River, Massachusetts. US Geological Survey Water-Resources Investigations Report 02-4220.
- Zawlocki, K.R., Ferguson, J.F., and Mar, B.W. 1981. A survey of trace organics in highway runoff in Seattle, Washington. M.S.E. Thesis. Department of Civil Engineering, University of Washington.

ABBREVIATIONS

AKART.....	All known, available and reasonable methods of prevention, control and treatment
API.....	American Petroleum Institute
ASCE.....	American Society of Civil Engineers
B-IBI.....	Benthic-Index of Biotic Integrity
BMPs.....	Best Management Practices
BOD.....	Biochemical Oxygen Demand
City.....	City of Seattle
ECA.....	Environmentally Critical Areas
Ecology.....	Washington State Department of Ecology
GSI.....	Green Stormwater Infrastructure
HCI.....	Habitat Comparison Index
HSPF.....	Hydrological Simulation Program-Fortran
KCRTS.....	King County Runoff Time Series
LID.....	Low Impact Development
mg/L.....	Milligrams per liter
MS4.....	Municipal Separate Storm Sewer System
NPDES.....	National Pollutant Discharge Elimination Program
PAHs.....	Polynuclear Aromatic Hydrocarbons
RCW.....	Revised Code of Washington
RSMP.....	Regional Stormwater Monitoring Program
SMC.....	Seattle Municipal Code
TSS.....	Total Suspended Solids/Sediment
USGS.....	United States Geological Survey
WAC.....	Washington Administrative Code
WSDOT.....	Washington State Department of Transportation
WWHM.....	Western Washington Hydrologic Model

MARCH 2021
PUBLIC REVIEW DRAFT

SEATTLE STORMWATER MANUAL -
VOLUMES 1 Through 5
and
APPENDICES A Through I

CITY OF SEATTLE
SEATTLE PUBLIC UTILITIES
DEPARTMENT OF CONSTRUCTION AND INSPECTION

March 22, 2021

Note:

Some pages in this document have been purposely skipped or blank pages inserted so that this document will print correctly when duplexed.

SDCI	Director's Rule 10-2021
SPU	Director's Rule DWW-200

Applicant: Department of Construction & Inspections Seattle Public Utilities	Page: # of ###	Supersedes: SDCI: 17-2017 SPU: DWW-200 (2017)
	Publication: TBD	Effective: 07/01/2021
Subject: Stormwater Manual Volume 1 of 5	Code and Section Reference: SMC 22.800-22.808	
	Type of Rule: Code interpretation	
	Ordinance Authority: SMC 3.06.040, 3.32.020	
Index: Title 22.800 Stormwater Code	Approved: _____ Nathan Torgelson, Director, SDCI	Date: _____
	Approved: _____ Mami Hara, General Manager/CEO, SPU	Date: _____

PUBLIC REVIEW DRAFT
VOLUME 1 —
PROJECT MINIMUM REQUIREMENTS

CITY OF SEATTLE
SEATTLE PUBLIC UTILITIES
DEPARTMENT OF CONSTRUCTION AND INSPECTION

March 2021

Note:

Some pages in this document have been purposely skipped or blank pages inserted so that this document will print correctly when duplexed.

Table of Contents

CHAPTER 1 - Introduction	1-1
1.1. Purpose of This Manual (Volumes 1 through 5 and Appendices)	1-1
1.2. How to Use this Manual (Volumes 1 through 5 and Appendices)	1-2
1.3. Purpose of Volume 1.....	1-3
1.4. How to Use this Volume.....	1-3
CHAPTER 2 - Determining Minimum Requirements	2-1
2.1. Step 1 - Define the Boundaries of the Project Site	2-1
2.1.1. Definitions.....	2-2
2.1.2. Closely Related Projects	2-2
2.2. Step 2 - Identify the Type of Project	2-3
2.2.1. Single-Family Residential Project.....	2-4
2.2.2. Sidewalk Project	2-5
2.2.3. Trail Project	2-7
2.2.4. Roadway Project	2-8
2.2.5. Parcel-Based Project	2-10
2.2.6. Certain Land-Disturbing Activities	2-11
2.2.7. WSDOT Project	2-12
2.2.8. Special Circumstances Projects	2-12
2.3. Step 3 - Identify the Receiving Water and Downstream Conveyance.....	2-12
2.4. Step 4 - Perform Site Assessment and Planning	2-16
2.5. Step 5 - Calculate Land-Disturbing Activity and New Plus Replaced Hard Surface	2-16
2.6. Step 6 - Calculate New Plus Replaced Pollution Generating Surface.....	2-17
2.7. Step 7 - Determine Which Minimum Requirements Apply.....	2-17
CHAPTER 3 - Minimum Requirements for All Projects.....	3-1
3.1. Maintaining Natural Drainage Patterns	3-1
3.2. Discharge Point.....	3-1
3.2.1. Approved Point of Discharge.....	3-1
3.2.2. Conveyance Systems to Point of Discharge.....	3-2
3.3. Flood-Prone Areas	3-2
3.4. Construction Site Stormwater Pollution Prevention Control.....	3-2
3.5. Protect Wetlands.....	3-4
3.6. Protect Streams and Creeks	3-5
3.7. Protect Shorelines	3-5
3.8. Ensure Sufficient Capacity.....	3-5
3.9. Install Source Control BMPs.....	3-5
3.10. Do Not Obstruct Watercourses	3-6
3.11. Comply with Side Sewer Code.....	3-6
3.12. Extension of Public Drainage System.....	3-7

3.12.1. Projects Not Constructed in the Right-of-Way	3-7
3.12.2. Projects Constructed in the Right-of-Way	3-8
3.13. Public Drainage System Requirements	3-8
3.14. Maintenance and Inspection	3-8
CHAPTER 4 - Minimum Requirements Based on Project Type	4-1
4.1. Single-Family Residential Projects	4-3
4.2. Trail and Sidewalk Projects	4-3
4.3. Roadway Projects	4-4
4.3.1. Soil Amendment	4-4
4.3.2. On-site Stormwater Management	4-4
4.3.3. Flow Control	4-4
4.3.4. Water Quality Treatment	4-12
4.4. Parcel-Based Projects	4-14
4.4.1. Soil Amendment	4-14
4.4.2. On-site Stormwater Management	4-14
4.4.3. Flow Control	4-18
4.4.4. Water Quality Treatment	4-22
4.5. Reduced Requirements for Certain Land-Disturbing Activities	4-22
4.5.1. Utility Projects	4-22
4.5.2. Pavement Maintenance Projects	4-23
4.5.3. Remediation Projects	4-23
4.5.4. Retrofit Projects	4-23
4.6. WSDOT Projects	4-25
4.7. Special Circumstances	4-26
CHAPTER 5 - Minimum Requirement Standards	5-1
5.1. Soil Amendment	5-1
5.2. On-site Stormwater Management	5-1
5.2.1. On-site Performance Standard	5-3
5.2.2. On-site Lists	5-3
5.3. Flow Control	5-9
5.3.1. Wetland Protection Standard	5-10
5.3.2. Pre-Developed Forested Standard	5-11
5.3.3. Pre-Developed Pasture Standard	5-12
5.3.4. Existing Condition Standard	5-12
5.3.5. Peak Control Standard	5-12
5.4. Water Quality Treatment	5-12
5.4.1. General Water Quality Treatment Requirements	5-14
5.4.2. Water Quality Treatment Standards	5-15
CHAPTER 6 - Alternative Compliance	6-1
CHAPTER 7 - Site Assessment and Planning	7-1
7.1. Identifying Key Project Components	7-1
7.2. Project Boundaries and Structures	7-1
7.3. Soil Condition Assessment	7-2

7.4. Environmentally Critical Areas (ECAs) 7-2

7.5. Dewatering..... 7-2

7.6. Topography 7-3

7.7. Site Assessment 7-3

7.8. Landscaping Principles 7-4

 7.8.1. Principle 1: Minimize Bare Soil Areas..... 7-5

 7.8.2. Principle 2: Reduce Water Demand 7-5

 7.8.3. Principle 3: Reduce Turf Area and Manage Remaining Turf to
 Reduce Pollutant Impact 7-6

 7.8.4. Principle 4: Select Plants with Sustainability in Mind..... 7-6

 7.8.5. Principle 5: Reduce or Eliminate Fertilizer, Pesticide, Herbicide,
 and Fungicide Use and Where, Required, Manage Application
 Wisely 7-7

7.9. Site Design Considerations 7-8

CHAPTER 8 - Drainage Control Review and Application Requirements 8-1

 8.1. Preliminary Drainage Review 8-1

 8.2. Standard Drainage Review 8-2

 8.3. Comprehensive Drainage Review 8-6

 8.4. Additional Documentation 8-7

Tables

Table A for 22.805.070.	On-site List for Single-Family Residential Projects.	5-5
Table B for 22.805.070.	On-site List for Trail and Sidewalk Projects.	5-6
Table C for 22.805.070.	On-site List for Parcel-Based Projects.	5-7
Table D for 22.805.070.	On-site List for Roadway Projects.	5-8

Figures

Figure 2.1.	Single-Family Residential Project Site Definition.	2-5
Figure 2.2.	Sidewalk-only Project Site Definition.	2-6
Figure 2.3.	Trail Project Definition.	2-7
Figure 2.4.	Roadway Project Site Definition.	2-9
Figure 2.5.	Parcel-Based Project Site Definition.	2-11
Figure 2.X.	Creek Basins.	2-14
Figure 2.6.	Public Combined Sewer Basins.	2-15
Figure 2.7.	North End Designated Receiving Water Drainage Areas.	2-15
Figure 2.8.	South End Designated Receiving Water Drainage Areas.	2-15
Figure 4.1A.	Project Minimum Requirements for Roadway Projects.	4-6
Figure 4.1B.	Project Minimum Requirements for Roadway Projects (continued).	4-7
Figure 4.1C.	Project Minimum Requirements for Roadway Projects (continued).	4-8
Figure 4.2A.	Project Minimum Requirements for Parcel-Based Projects.	4-15
Figure 4.2B.	Project Minimum Requirements for Parcel-Based Projects (continued).	4-16
Figure 4.2C.	Project Minimum Requirements for Parcel-Based Projects (continued).	4-17

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

The City of Seattle gratefully acknowledges the valuable time, comments, and expertise provided by the people listed below who contributed to the 2021 Seattle Stormwater Manual.

City of Seattle Core Team

<u>Name</u>	<u>Affiliation</u>	<u>Role</u>
Sherell Ehlers	SPU	Code Update Lead, Program Manager
Jonathan Brown	SPU	Project Manager
Ingrid Wertz	SPU	Project Manager
Shanti Colwell	SPU	Core Team
Kevin Burrell	SPU	Core Team
Lan Chau	SPU	Core Team
Liz Anderson	SPU	Core Team
Karen Iwasaki	SPU	Core Team
Mary Weber	SPU	Volume 3 Co-Lead, Core Team
Matthew Bateman	SDCI	Volume 1 Lead, Core Team
Ede Courtenay	SDCI	Core Team
Jean Lee	Parks	Core Team
Scott Stevens	Parks	Core Team
Michael Cawrse	SDOT	Core Team
Nick Shrope	SDOT	Core Team
Theresa Wagner	Law	Core Team
Cris Horbelt	SPU	Volume 2 Lead
Kevin Buckley	SPU	Volume 4 Lead
Michael Jeffers	SPU	Volume 4 Team
Erik Lust	SPU	Volume 4 Team
Valerie Monsey	SDCI	Volume 4 Team
Dean Huber	SPU	Technical Support
Melissa Ivancevich	SPU	Technical Support
Brent Robinson	SPU	Technical Support
Miles Mayhew	SPU	Technical Support
Tai Ovbiebo	SPU	Modeling Support
Justin Twenter	SPU	Modeling Support
Michelle Lange	SPU	Technical Support
Edward Lombana	SPU	Technical Support
Aziz Alfi	SPU	Technical Support
Art Richardson	SDCI	Technical Support
Roger Moore	SDCI	Technical Support
Eric Dripps	SDCI	Technical Support
Rob McIntosh	SDCI	Technical Support
Moon Callison	SDCI	Communication Support
Wendy Shark	SDCI	Communication Support

<u>Name</u>	<u>Affiliation</u>	<u>Role</u>
Jeff Weber	Law	Advisory Support
Andrew Eberly	Law	Advisory Support
William Foster	Law	Advisory Support

Consultant Team

<u>Name</u>	<u>Affiliation</u>	<u>Role</u>
Rebecca Dugopolski	Herrera Environmental Consultants	Project Manager
Alice Lancaster	Herrera Environmental Consultants	Senior Technical Advisor
Neil Schaner	Herrera Environmental Consultants	Modeling Lead
Katie Wingrove	Herrera Environmental Consultants	Technical Support
Kate Forester	Herrera Environmental Consultants	Technical Support
Meghan Mullen	Herrera Environmental Consultants	Modeling Support
John Lenth	Herrera Environmental Consultants	Senior Technical Advisor
Craig Doberstein	CPD Solutions	Senior Technical Advisor
Gretchen Muller	Cascadia Consulting Group	Public Outreach Lead
Claire Gibson	Clarity Engineering	Technical Support
Richard Martin	Richard Martin Groundwater	Technical Support
Kristen Matsumura	Lotus Water	Implementation Tools Support
Robin Kirschbaum	RKI	Technical Support
Bruce Barker	MGS Engineering Consultants	Modeling Support
Christine Sophos	CMS Writing and Editing Services	Technical Editor
Lisa Skutecki	Brown and Caldwell	National Advisory Team
Chad Praul	Environmental Incentives	National Advisory Team
Franco Montalto	eDesign Dynamics	National Advisory Team
Eric Zickler	Lotus Water	National Advisory Team

Ecology Reviewers

<u>Name</u>	<u>Affiliation</u>
Colleen Griffith	Department of Ecology
Doug Howie	Department of Ecology

External Stakeholders that provided comments on the Code and/or Manual

<u>Name</u>	<u>Affiliation</u>
Heather Bray, Ted Dimof, Mireille Fogang	BRH
Tim Gabelein	Davido Consulting Group
Jenifer Clapham, Puja Shaw	KPF
David Sand, Lily Siu	MKA
Matthew Wood	Site Workshop
Dan Gariepy	Tetra Tech

Additional External Stakeholders that participated in the October 2019 Workshop

<u>Name</u>	<u>Affiliation</u>
David Tran	Helsell Fetterman
Cheyenne Thompson	DCG
Kory Swabb	Jacobs
Scott Meurn	KPFF
Brian Ward	HDR
Bailey Cook, Ken Wiersema	Coughlin Porter Lundeen
Lolly Kunkler	MIGISvR
John J Weed, Christian Nichols, Toby Coenen	PACE
John Erickson	WSP

CHAPTER 1 – INTRODUCTION

1.1. Purpose of This Manual (Volumes 1 through 5 and Appendices)

In addition to meeting the specific stormwater needs of the City of Seattle (City), the Stormwater Code meets certain requirements that apply to the City from the ~~2019-2024~~~~2013-2018~~ Phase I National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System and State Waste Discharge General Permit for Discharges from Large and Medium Municipal Separate Storm Sewer Systems, ~~modified~~ effective ~~August 1, 2019~~~~January 16, 2015~~ (referred to as the Phase I NPDES Municipal Stormwater Permit). Coverage under the general permit is issued to the City by the Washington State Department of Ecology (Ecology) pursuant to the federal Clean Water Act and state law. One of the conditions of this permit requires the City to adopt and make effective a local program to prevent and control the impacts of stormwater runoff from new development, redevelopment and construction activities. This is accomplished, in large measure, through the Seattle Stormwater Code and its associated Directors' Rule (this Manual) which Ecology has determined to meet the requirements contained in the Phase I NPDES Municipal Stormwater Permit, with reference to the *Stormwater Management Manual for Western Washington* (Ecology ~~2019~~~~2014~~).

The City's Stormwater Code is contained in the Seattle Municipal Code (SMC), Chapters 22.800 through 22.808. The Stormwater Code contains regulatory requirements that provide for and promote the health, safety, and welfare of the general public. The provisions of the Stormwater Code are designed to accomplish the following:

1. To protect, to the greatest extent practicable, life, property and the environment from loss, injury, and damage by pollution, erosion, flooding, landslides, strong ground motion, soil liquefaction, accelerated soil creep, settlement and subsidence, and other potential hazards, whether from natural causes or from human activity.
2. To protect the public interest in drainage and related functions of drainage basins, watercourses, and shoreline areas.
3. To protect receiving waters from pollution, mechanical damage, excessive flows and other conditions that will increase the rate of downcutting, stream bank erosion, and/or the degree of turbidity, siltation, and other forms of pollution, or which will reduce their low flows or low levels to levels which degrade the environment, reduce recharging of groundwater, or endanger aquatic and benthic life within these receiving waters and receiving waters of the state.
4. To meet the requirements of state and federal law and the City's municipal stormwater NPDES permit.
5. To protect the functions and values of environmentally critical areas as required under the state's Growth Management Act and Shoreline Management Act.
6. To protect the public drainage system from loss, injury, and damage by pollution, erosion, flooding, landslides, strong ground motion, soil liquefaction, accelerated soil

creep, settlement and subsidence, and other potential hazards, whether from natural causes or from human activity.

7. To fulfill the responsibilities of the City as trustee of the environment for future generations.

To support implementation of the Stormwater Code, the Director of Seattle Public Utilities (SPU) and the Director of the Seattle Department of Construction and Inspection (SDCI) promulgate rules that provide specific technical requirements, criteria, guidelines, and additional information. This Directors' Rule consists of a five-volume City Stormwater Manual and nine appendices.

~~At the time of publication of this rule, legislation was transmitted by the Mayor to the City Council that would abolish the Department of Planning and Development (DPD) and establish the SDCI. The purpose of SDCI is to administer City ordinances that regulate building construction, the use of land, and housing, and is anticipated to be effective January 4, 2016.~~

1.2. How to Use this Manual (Volumes 1 through 5 and Appendices)

The City's Stormwater Manual includes the following five volumes:

- *Volume 1: Project Minimum Requirements* provides information regarding how to apply the minimum requirements contained in the Stormwater Code. It also provides site assessment and planning steps and requirements for drainage control review submittals.
- *Volume 2: Construction Stormwater Control* contains temporary erosion and sediment control technical requirements, which are required to prevent contaminants from leaving the project site during construction.
- *Volume 3: Project Stormwater Control* presents approved methods, criteria, and details for analysis and design of on-site stormwater management, flow control, and water quality treatment best management practices (BMPs).
- *Volume 4: Source Control* provides information to individuals, businesses, and public agencies in Seattle to implement BMPs for controlling pollutants at their source and preventing contamination of stormwater runoff.
- *Volume 5: Enforcement* provides standards, guidelines, and requirements for enforcing the Stormwater Code.

The City's Stormwater Manual includes the following nine appendices:

- *Appendix A: Definitions* provides terminology for all five volumes of the Stormwater Manual.
- *Appendix B: ~~Additional Submittal Requirements~~ ~~Background Information on Chemical Treatment~~ provides supplemental information for ~~Volume 2 (Construction Stormwater Control)~~.*
- *Appendix C: On-site Stormwater Management Infeasibility Criteria* provides a list of criteria to be evaluated for on-site stormwater management.

- *Appendix D: Subsurface Investigation and Infiltration Testing for Infiltration BMPs* describes subsurface report requirements, geotechnical explorations, four infiltration testing methods (Simple Test, Small Pilot Infiltration Test (PIT), Large PIT, and Deep Infiltration Test), infiltration rate correction factors, groundwater monitoring, and groundwater mounding analysis.
- *Appendix E: Additional Design Requirements and Plant Lists* includes additional design requirements for flow control structures, flow splitters, flow spreaders, level spreaders, pipe slope drains, outlet protection, facility liners, and geotextiles. *Appendix E* also includes plant lists for biofiltration swales, sand filters, and wet ponds.
- *Appendix F: Hydrologic Analysis and Design* includes descriptions of acceptable methods for estimating the quantity and hydrologic characteristics of stormwater runoff, and the assumptions and data requirements of these methods.
- *Appendix G: Stormwater Control Operations and Maintenance Requirements* contains maintenance requirements for typical stormwater BMPs and components.
- *Appendix H: Financial Feasibility Documentation for Vegetated Roofs and Rainwater Harvesting* provides additional guidance on the required documentation to prove financial infeasibility of vegetated roofs or rainwater harvesting.
- *Appendix I: [Landscape Management Plans and Integrated Pest Management Plans](#)* provides supplemental information for [Volume 1 \(Project Minimum Requirements\)](#) and Volume 4 (Source Control).

1.3. Purpose of Volume 1

Volume 1 – Project Minimum Requirements describes and contains minimum requirements for all types of land development and redevelopment. It also provides site assessment and planning steps and drainage control review requirements.

1.4. How to Use this Volume

- *Chapter 1* outlines the purpose and content of the Stormwater Manual and this volume.
- *Chapter 2* outlines steps to determine a project's minimum requirements.
- *Chapter 3* describes the minimum requirements for all projects.
- *Chapter 4* describes the minimum requirements for specific project types.
- *Chapter 5* describes the minimum standards for on-site stormwater management, flow control, and water quality treatment.
- *Chapter 6* describes the options for alternative compliance.
- *Chapter 7* summarizes site assessment and planning steps and key project components.
- *Chapter 8* summarizes the [preliminary](#), [standard](#), and comprehensive drainage review minimum submittal requirements.

CHAPTER 2 – DETERMINING MINIMUM REQUIREMENTS

~~Per the Stormwater Code (SMC, Section 22.801.170), “project” means “the addition or replacement of hard surface or the undertaking of land-disturbing activity on a site.” A hard surface is defined as an impervious surface, a permeable pavement, or a vegetated roof.~~

There are seven basic steps used to determine which minimum requirements for on-site stormwater management, flow control, and water quality treatment apply to a project:

- Step 1 – Define the boundaries of the project site
- Step 2 – Identify the type of project
- Step 3 – Identify the receiving water and downstream conveyance
- Step 4 – Perform site assessment and planning
- Step 5 – Calculate new plus replaced hard surface and native vegetation conversion
- Step 6 – Calculate new plus replaced pollution generating surface
- Step 7 – Determine which minimum requirements apply

Note that these seven steps are focused on determining applicable minimum requirements for on-site stormwater management, flow control, and water quality treatment specifically. These seven steps are described in further detail below.

In addition to determining the applicable minimum requirements, all projects shall also review and comply with all other Stormwater Code requirements, in particular the Minimum Requirements for All Discharges and All Real Property (SMC, Section 22.803) and the Minimum Requirements for All Projects (SMC, Section 22.805).

2.1. Step 1 – Define the Boundaries of the Project Site

The boundaries of the project site shall ~~include all development activities as defined by SMC, Section 22.801.050. contain the discharge point, all land-disturbing activities, and all new and replaced hard surfaces.~~ The boundary of the public right-of-way typically forms the boundary between project types if more than one project type exists. The project site may also include contiguous areas that are subject to the addition or replacement of hard surface or the undertaking of land-disturbing activity. In the case of a subdivision or short plat, the boundary of the project site is the full area included in the subdivision or short plat.

2.1.1. Definitions

Stormwater Code Language	References
<p>SMC, Section 22.801.050 – “Development” means the following activities:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Class IV-general forest practices that are conversions from timberland to other uses; 2. land disturbing activity; ((or)) 3. timber harvest or logging operations; 4. expansion of building footprint and/or for foundation structures; 5. structural development, including construction, installation, or expansion of a building or other structure; 6. seeking approval of a building permit, other construction permit, grading permit, or master use permit that includes any of the foregoing activities; and 7. seeking approval of subdivision, short plat, unit lot subdivision, or binding site plans, as defined and applied in chapter 58.17 RCW, and other master use permit. <p>Development is a type of project.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • None provided
<p>SMC, Section 22.801.090 – “Hard surface” means an impervious surface, a permeable pavement, or a vegetated roof.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • None provided
<p>SMC, Section 22.801.170 – “Project” means any proposed action to alter or develop a site. Development is a type of project.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • None provided
<p>SMC, Section 22.801.170 – “Project site” means that portion of a property, properties, or rights-of-way, subject to land-disturbing activities, new hard surfaces or replaced hard surfaces.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • None provided

Defining project boundaries will help identify the project type(s) in Step 2.

2.1.2. Closely Related Projects

<p>SMC, Section 22.805.010 – Closely related projects shall be considered as one project for purposes of the stormwater code, but not limited to determining whether the thresholds for applicability of particular stormwater code minimum requirements are met.</p>	<p>Refer to proposed Stormwater Code (Ch. 22.800-22.808) during public review</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • None provided <p>Final code language to be added to final manual</p>
---	--

The Director shall determine whether two or more projects are closely related by applying the following criteria:

1. Two or more projects under review at the same time are treated as a single project if any of the following are true:
 - a. Any feature physically spans the property lines between lots, such as shared structures, shared driveways, shared pedestrian access (including easements to rights-of-way), shared drainage and utility designs, foundation footings, or retaining walls
 - b. A shared driveway accesses a parking area(s) for more than one project, regardless of whether the parking is required

3. [Trail project](#)
4. [Roadway project](#)
5. [Parcel-based project](#)
6. [Certain land-disturbing activities](#)
7. [Washington State Department of Transportation \(WSDOT\) project](#)
8. [Special circumstances project](#)

Each project type is described in the following subsections ([Section 2.2.1](#) through [2.2.8](#)).

2.2.1. Single-Family Residential Project

A single-family residential (SFR) project (Figure 2.1) is defined in ~~the Stormwater Code (SMC, Section 22.801.200)~~, as:

~~A project that constructs one single-family dwelling unit located in land classified as being Single family Residential 9,600 (SF 9600), Single family Residential 7,200 (SF 7200), or Single family Residential 5,000 (SF 5000) pursuant to SMC, Section 23.30.010,~~

~~The total new plus replaced hard surface is less than 10,000 square feet, and~~

~~The total new plus replaced pollution-generating hard surface (PGHS) is less than 5,000 square feet.~~

Stormwater Code Language	References
<p>SMC, Section 22.801.200 – “Single-family residential project” means a project that constructs one single-family dwelling unit as defined in SMC, Section 23.30.010 and located on a lot containing a single-family residential unit located in land classified as Single family Residential 9,600 (SF 9600), Single family Residential 7,200 (SF 7200), or Single family Residential 5,000 (SF 5000) pursuant to SMC, Section 23.30.010, and the total new plus replaced hard surface is less than 10,000 square feet, and the total new plus replaced pollution-generating hard surface (PGHS) is less than 5,000 square feet.</p>	<p>• Figure 2.1</p>

*Refer to proposed Stormwater Code (Ch. 22.800-22.808) during public review
Final code language to be added to final manual*

Note: ~~that~~ Projects with 10,000-5,000 square feet or more of new plus replaced hard surface, or more than 5,000 square feet of PGHS, are considered parcel-based projects.

Also, single-family residential projects shall comply with any associated master use permit requirements (e.g., requirements for subdivisions, short plats, unit lot subdivisions), as applicable. For example, if a subdivision required Flow Control Standards, all Single-family projects must meet the requirements of the same Flow Control Standard. Depending on the design in the approved preliminary drainage control plan, this may be achieved by a shared facility that may be constructed prior to the construction of the improvements for the Single-family residential project or by individual facilities that may be required to be constructed with the Single-family residential project. All short plats and subdivisions are considered parcel-based projects ([Section 2.2.5](#)), regardless of the land use zoning.

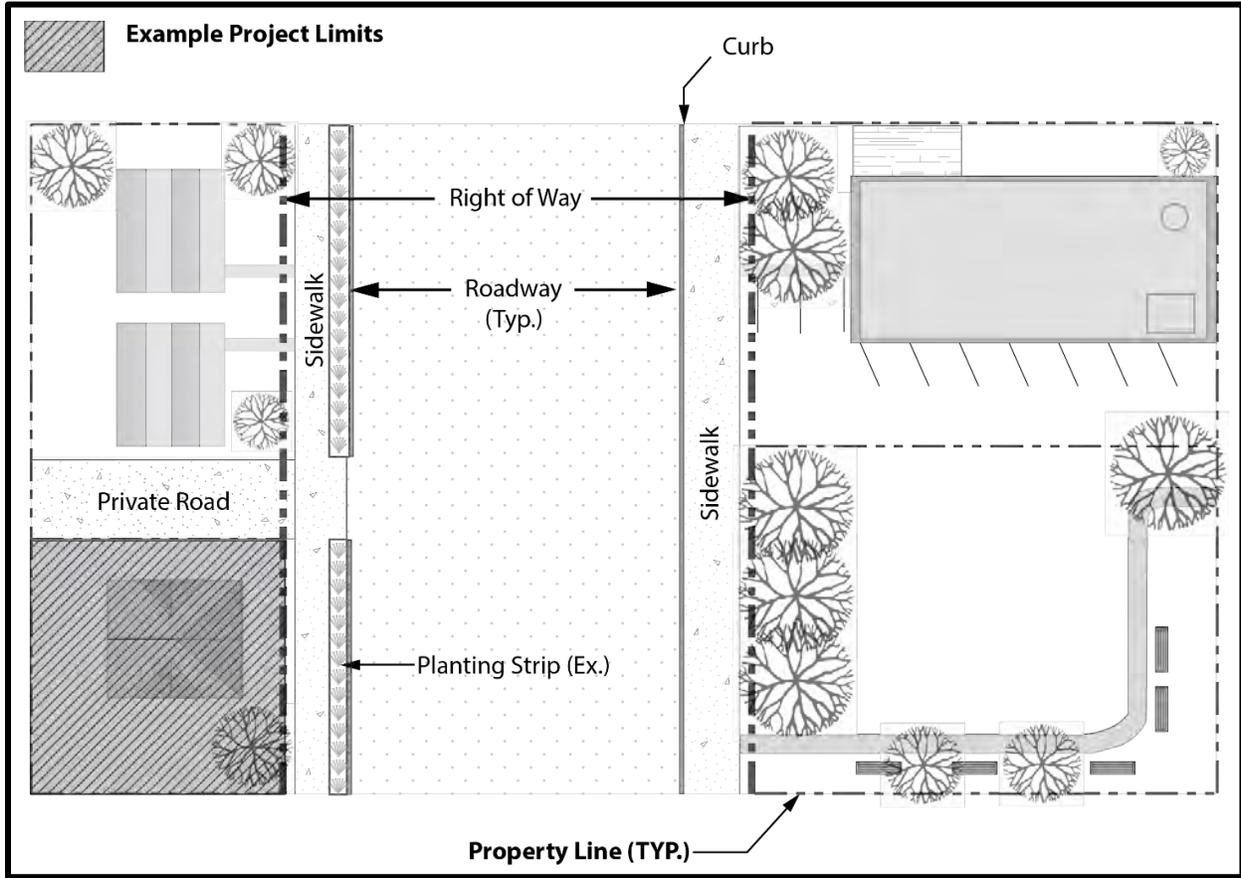


Figure 2.1. Single-Family Residential Project Site Definition.

2.2.2. Sidewalk Project

A sidewalk project (Figure 2.2) is defined in as a project for the creation of a new sidewalk or replacement of an existing sidewalk, including any associated planting strip, apron, curb ramp, curb, or gutter, and necessary roadway grading and repair. If the total new plus replaced hard surface in the roadway exceeds 10,000 square feet, the entire project is a roadway project (SMC, Section 22.801.200).

Stormwater Code Language	References
<p><u>Refer to proposed Stormwater Code (Ch. 22.800-22.808) during public review</u> <u>Final code language to be added to final manual</u></p>	<p>Figure 2.2</p>

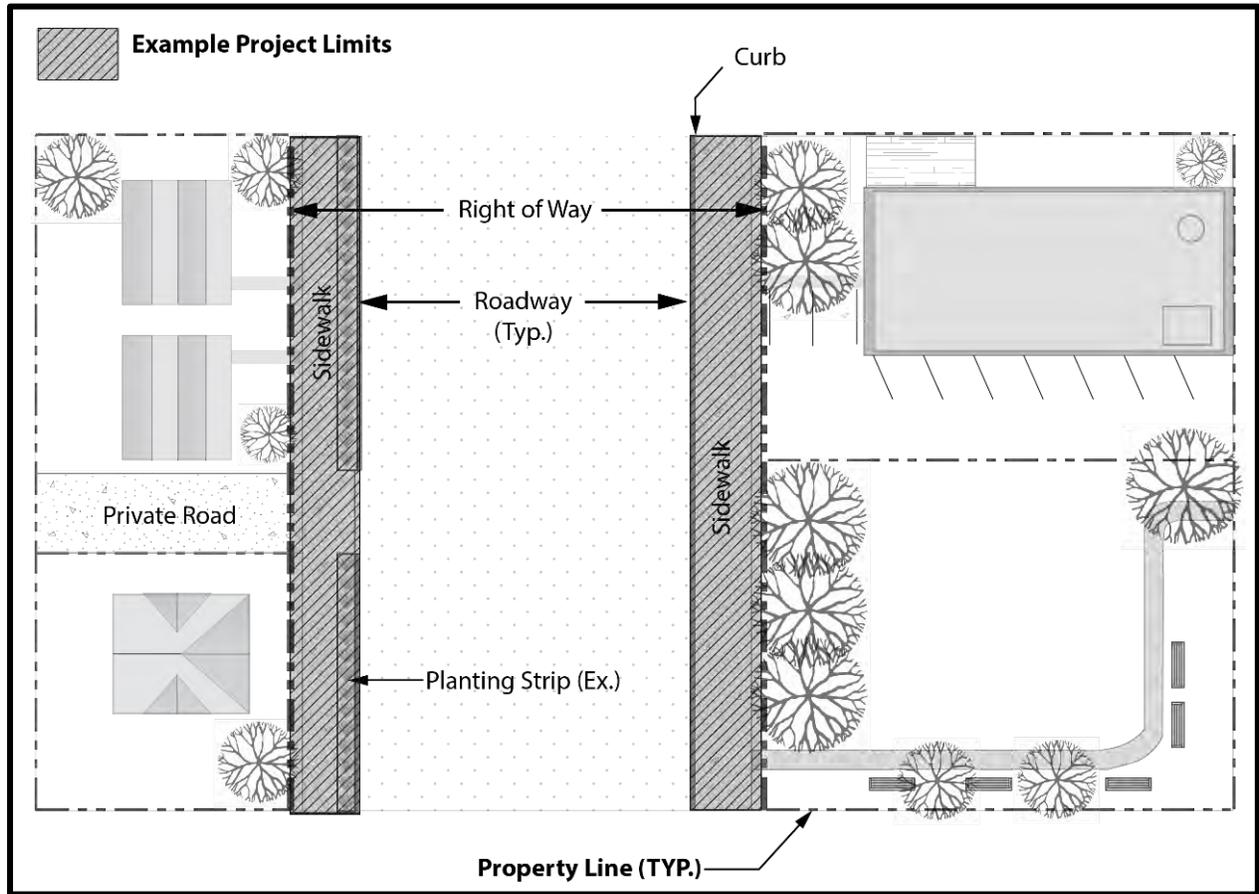


Figure 2.2. Sidewalk-only Project Site Definition.

2.2.3. Trail Project

A trail project (Figure 2.3) is defined in as a project for the creation of a new trail or replacement of an existing trail, which does not contain PGHS (SMC, Section 22.801.210).

Refer to proposed Stormwater Code (Ch. 22.800-22.808) during public review
Final code language to be added to final manual

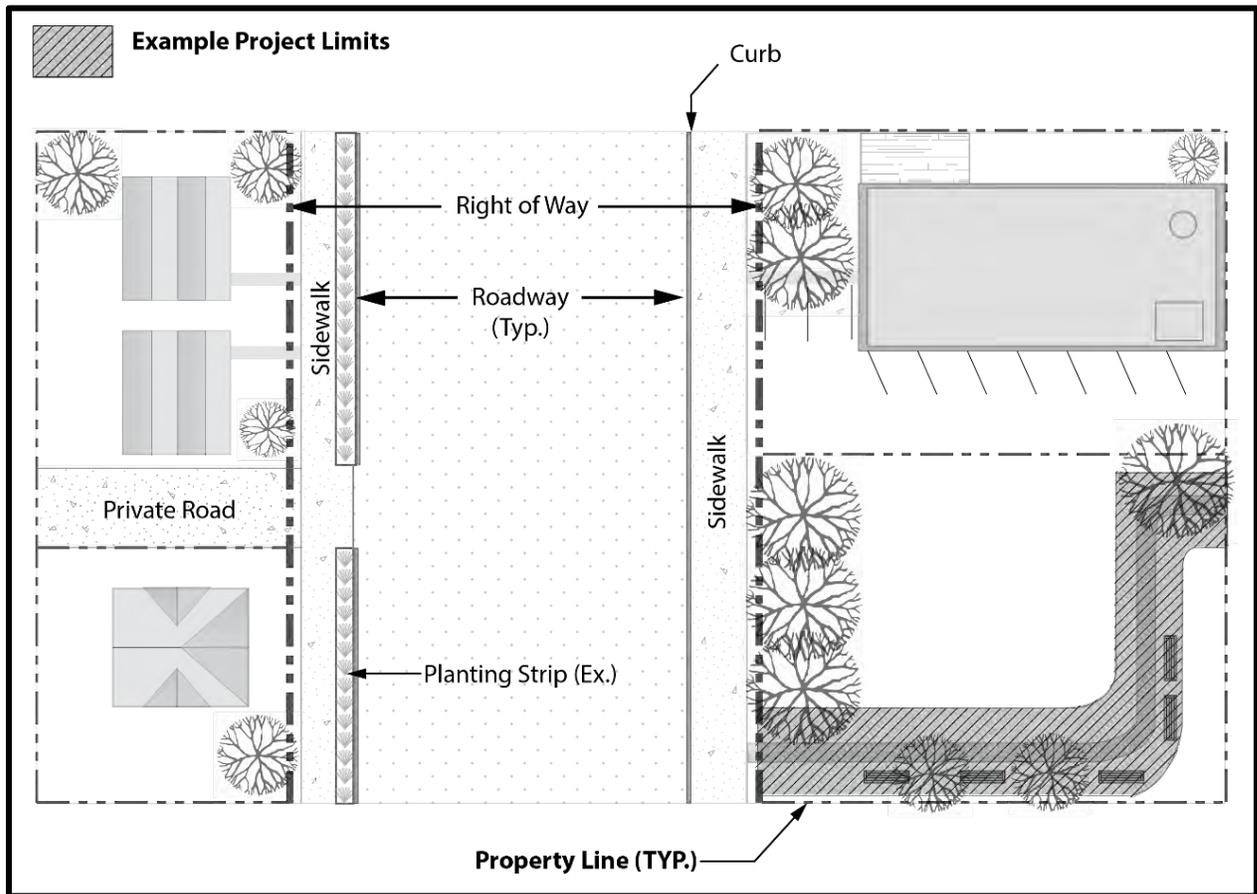


Figure 2.3. Trail Project Definition.

2.2.4. Roadway Project

A roadway project (Figure 2.4) is defined ~~in as a project located in the public right-of-way that involves the creation of a new or replacement of an existing roadway or alley. The boundary of the public right-of-way shall form the boundary between the parcel and roadway portions of a project (SMC, Section 22.801.190). A roadway project can also include other improvements located in the public right-of-way.~~

<p><i>Refer to proposed Stormwater Code (Ch. 22.800-22.808) during public review</i></p>	<p><i>Final code language to be added to final manual</i></p>
--	---

Typically, the boundary of the public right-of-way forms the boundary between the parcel and roadway portions of a project, but special circumstances may exist (Refer to [Section 4.7](#)).

Projects that do not meet the definition of a roadway project (i.e., projects that include any development in addition to the creation of a new or replacement of an existing roadway or alley), are parcel-based projects (SMC. Section 22.801.200). As an example, portions of projects that include building development and associated hard surfaces (e.g., parking lot) located in the public right-of-way are considered parcel-based projects.

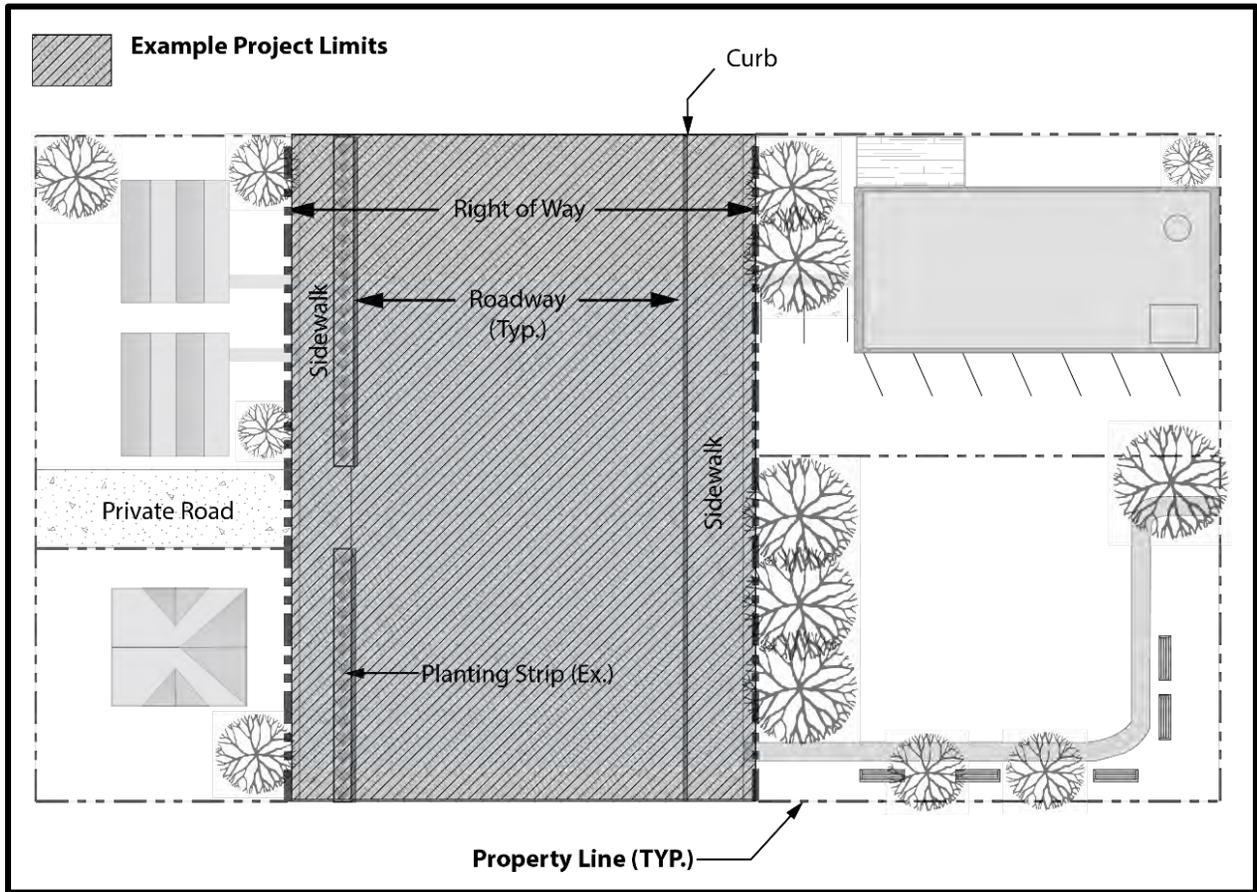


Figure 2.4. Roadway Project Site Definition.

2.2.5. Parcel-Based Project

A parcel-based project (Figure 2.5) is defined in means any project that is not a single-family residential project, roadway project, sidewalk project, or trail project. The boundary of the public right-of-way shall form the boundary between the parcel and roadway portions of a project (SMC, Section 22.801.170).

Stormwater Code Language	References
<p><i>Refer to proposed Stormwater Code (Ch. 22.800-22.808) during public review</i></p> <p><i>Final code language to be added to final manual</i></p>	<p>SMC, Section 22.801.170 Figure 2.5</p>

Examples of parcel-based projects include, but are not limited to, commercial developments and multi-family/multifamily developments, apartments, carriage houses, cottage housing development, rowhouse developments, townhouse development, institutions, industrial buildings and sites, parking lots, parks and playgrounds, commercial use development, public facilities, live-work units, manufacturing facilities, storage facilities, transportation facilities, utility use facilities, subdivisions, and short plats.

In addition, the following specific pollution-generating activities or projects are considered parcel-based projects and require drainage review. Specifically, source control BMPs shall be implemented as specified in Volume 4, to the extent necessary to prevent prohibited discharges and to prevent contaminants from coming in contact with drainage water or being discharged to the drainage system, public combined sewer, or directly into receiving waters.

Stormwater Code Language	References
<p>SMC, Section 22.807.020.A.2.j – Applications or approvals for activities or projects for:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> In-Street Dedicated Stations for new or substantially altered fueling stations. In-Water Oil or Grease (Water Fuel). Maintenance and Repair of Vehicles and Equipment. Concrete and Asphalt Mixing and Production. Recycling, Wrecking Yard, and Scrap Yard Operations. Storage of Liquids in Above-ground Tanks. Other on-site activities that could be hazardous to public health, safety, or property, or that could affect the safety and operation of City right-of-way utilities, or other property owned or maintained by the City; or adversely affect the functions and values of an environmentally critical area or buffer. <p><i>Refer to proposed Stormwater Code (Ch. 22.800-22.808) during public review</i></p> <p><i>Final code language to be added to final manual</i></p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> None provided

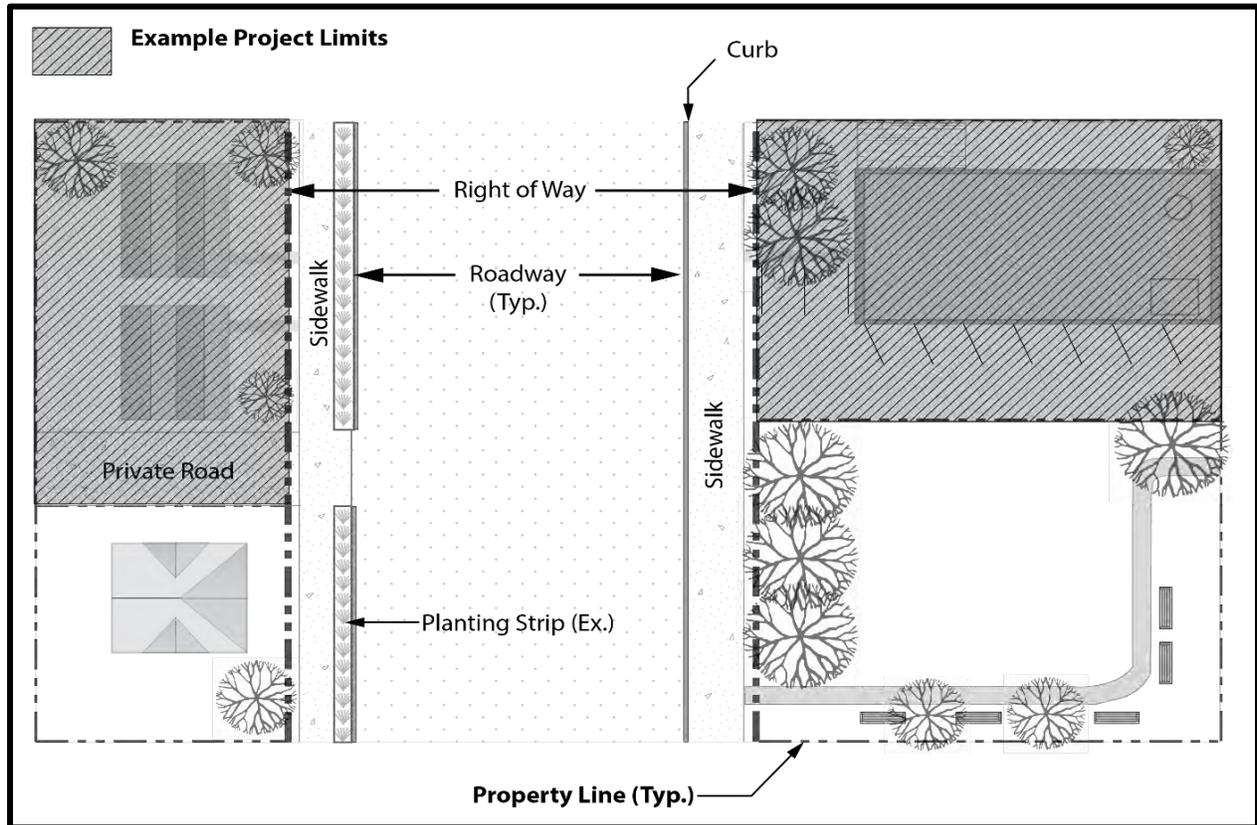


Figure 2.5. Parcel-Based Project Site Definition.

2.2.6. Certain Land-Disturbing Activities

Certain land-disturbing activities, including some utility and pavement maintenance projects, are not required to comply with some of the minimum requirements (refer to Section 4.5). For the purposes of this Manual, a utility project (land disturbing activity not required to comply with requirements as stated in SMC, Section 22.800.040.A.2 unless otherwise noted below) includes maintenance, repair, or installation of underground or overhead utility facilities, such as, but not limited to, pipes, conduits, and vaults, and that includes replacing the ground surface with in-kind material or materials with similar runoff characteristics.

Installation of a new or replacement of an existing public drainage system, public combined sewer, or public sanitary sewer in the public right-of-way shall comply with Section 22.805.060 (Minimum Requirements for Roadway Projects) when these activities are implemented as publicly bid capital improvement projects funded by Seattle Public Utilities,

For the purposes of this Manual, a pavement maintenance project (land disturbing activity not required to comply with requirements as stated in SMC, Section 22.800.040.A.2) is limited to the following maintenance activities:

- Pothole and square cut patching
- Overlaying existing asphalt, concrete, or brick pavement with asphalt or concrete without expanding the area of coverage

- ~~Shoulder grading~~
- ~~Reshaping or regrading drainage ditches~~
- ~~Crack sealing~~
- ~~Vegetation maintenance~~

2.2.7. WSDOT Project

For the purposes of this Manual, a ~~Washington State Department of Transportation (WSDOT)~~ project (which shall manage stormwater as stated in SMC, Section 22.800.040.A.6) includes WSDOT roadway projects within state rights-of-way under WSDOT control within the jurisdiction of the City.

2.2.8. Special Circumstances Projects

Special circumstances projects do not closely fit a defined project type or have complicating elements (e.g., discharge to multiple drainage basins with differing requirements) and require a case-by-case review (refer to Section 4.74-8).

2.3. Step 3 – Identify the Receiving Water and Downstream Conveyance

For minimum requirement purposes, runoff leaving the project site is classified based on the type of receiving water and system into which the project site discharges. The project proponent shall ~~determine~~ identify the receiving water or point of discharge for the stormwater runoff from the project site (e.g., wetland, lake, creek, salt water, or combined sewer) for review and approval or disapproval by the Director. Refer to Section 3.2 and Section 3.12.

The minimum requirements vary considerably by type of receiving water and downstream conveyance; therefore, it is very important to determine and specify the receiving water and type of downstream conveyance. Note: there may be multiple downstream receiving waters (e.g., a creek that flows into a small lake). In this case, the minimum requirements for all downstream receiving waters shall apply.

Portions of watersheds near the City limits discharge to adjacent jurisdictions. In these cases, the more stringent requirements between the Seattle Stormwater Code and Manual and the receiving jurisdiction's requirements will be applied for determining stormwater mitigation requirements (e.g., discharges to nutrient-critical receiving waters). Refer to the Phase I and Phase II Municipal Stormwater Permits for enforceable documents that are functionally equivalent to Ecology's requirements.

Seattle has a complicated system due to historical annexations, major sewer and drainage projects, and other complexities. Therefore, prior to proceeding with project design, confirm your project discharge location through the City's Preliminary Application Report (PAR) process to determine your project requirements. To determine Stormwater Code project requirements for projects that are not required to go through the PAR process, contact the

[Drainage Review Team at sidesewerinfo@seattle.gov](mailto:sidesewerinfo@seattle.gov) for projects conducted on private property or SPU_PlanReview@Seattle.gov for projects conducted in the right-of-way.

An overview of the types of receiving waters and systems in Seattle is provided below:

- **Wetlands:** designated under SMC, Section 25.09.020. [Discharges are to the wetland or the associated drainage basin.](#)
- **Creek Basins:** include stream basins throughout Seattle ~~(designated under SMC 801.040 – “C”)~~, generally referred to as “creek basins.” Discharges are to the creek or the associated drainage basin ~~(example: SMC, Section 22.805.050.C.2)~~. [Creeks in piped systems are considered creeks.](#)
- **Public Combined Sewer:** ~~a publicly owned and maintained system that carries drainage water and wastewater to a publicly owned treatment works (SMC, Section 22.801.170) (Figure 2.8)~~. Discharges are to the public combined sewer or its associated basin.
- **Small Lake Basins:** ~~in Seattle these include Bitter Lake, Green Lake, and Haller Lake (designated under SMC 22.801.200 – “S”)~~. Discharges are to the small lake or the associated drainage basin.
- **Designated Receiving Waters:** ~~includes the Duwamish River, Puget Sound, Lake Washington, Lake Union, Elliott Bay, Portage Bay, Union Bay, the Lake Washington Ship Canal, and other receiving waters determined by the Director of Seattle Public Utilities (SPU) and approved by Ecology as having sufficient capacity to receive drainage discharges (Figures 2.9 and 2.10)~~. Discharges are to the designated receiving water or its associated drainage basin.
- **Capacity-constrained System:** Capacity constraints in any downstream conveyance can modify the flow control requirements for discharges. [This includes discharges directly to the capacity-constrained system or its associated upstream basin. All ditch and culvert systems are capacity constrained. In addition, at the time of publication, the following areas have been determined by the Director to be capacity-constrained:](#)
 - [Densmore Basin](#)
 - [Portions of the Pike/Pine Corridor](#)
 - [South Park \(including both separated storm and combined sewers\)](#)

[A map showing which drainage systems and combined sewers are determined to be capacity constrained by the Director is available on the SPU Development Services Office \(DSO\) Water and Sewer Map at the following link:](#)
https://gisrevprxy.seattle.gov/wab_ext/DSOResearch_Ext/

Stormwater Code Language	References
<p><u>SMC, Section 22.801.040 – “Creek” means a Type S, F, Np or Ns water as defined in WAC 222-16-031, or as defined in WAC 222-16-030 after state water type maps are adopted, and is used synonymously with stream.</u></p> <p><u>SMC, Section 22.801.130 – “Listed Creek Basins” include Blue Ridge Creek, Broadview Creek, Discovery Park Creek, Durham Creek, Frink Creek, Golden Gardens Creek, Kiwanis Ravine/Wolfe Creek, Licton Springs Creek, Madrona Park Creek, Mee-Kwa-Mooks Creek, Mount Baker Park Creek, Puget Creek, Riverview Creek, Schmitz Creek, Taylor Creek, or West Seattle Park Creek.</u></p> <p><u>SMC, Section 22.801.130 – “Non-Listed Creek” means a creek that is not identified in the definition of “Listed Creek” in 22.801.130.</u></p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Figure 2.X
<p><u>SMC, Section 22.801.130 – “Flow Control” means a publicly owned and maintained system that carries drainage water and wastewater to a publicly owned treatment works.</u></p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Figure 2.6
<p><u>SMC, Section 22.801.020 – “Small Inlet” means Bitter Lake, Green Lake, and Haller Lake.</u></p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Figure 2.7 and Figure 2.8
<p><u>SMC, Section 22.801.020 – “Sufficient Capacity” means the Duwamish River, Puget Sound, Lake Washington, Lake Union, Elliott Bay, Portage Bay, Union Bay, the Lake Washington Ship Canal, and other receiving waters determined by the Director of SPU and approved by Ecology as having sufficient capacity to receive discharges of drainage water such that a site discharging to the designated receiving water is not required to implement flow control.</u></p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Figure 2.7 and Figure 2.8
<p><u>SMC, Section 22.801.040 – “Capacity-constrained system” means a drainage system or a public combined sewer that the Director of SPU has determined to have inadequate capacity to carry existing and anticipated loads, or a drainage system that includes ditches and culverts.</u></p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • None provided

A Capacity-constrained System is a drainage system or a public combined sewer that the Director of SPU has determined to have inadequate capacity to carry existing and anticipated loads, or a drainage system that includes ditches and culverts. Discharges are to the capacity-constrained system or its associated basin.

Figure is currently in the process of being updated for the 2021 Seattle Stormwater Manual and is not included as part of this Review Draft

Figure 2.X. Creek Basins.

Figure is currently in the process of being updated for the 2021 Seattle Stormwater Manual and is not included as part of this Review Draft

Figure 2.6. Public Combined Sewer Basins.

Figure is currently in the process of being updated for the 2021 Seattle Stormwater Manual and is not included as part of this Review Draft

Figure 2.7. North End Designated Receiving Water Drainage Areas.

Figure is currently in the process of being updated for the 2021 Seattle Stormwater Manual and is not included as part of this Review Draft

Figure 2.8. South End Designated Receiving Water Drainage Areas.

2.4. Step 4 – Perform Site Assessment and Planning

After the applicable minimum requirements have been identified, each project shall evaluate project design considerations and perform a site assessment as outlined in *Chapter 7*. The goal of the site assessment and planning step is to identify any additional issues that shall be addressed in association with stormwater management requirements. This step shall be completed before selecting on-site stormwater management, flow control, and/or treatment BMPs.

Site-specific factors to consider may include, but are not limited to:

- Site boundaries and structures
- [Site topography and dispersion feasibility \(refer to Volume 3, Section 3.1\)](#)
- [Soil conditions and infiltration capacity \(refer to Volume 3, Section 3.2\)](#)
- Critical area issues (e.g., flood plains, landslide prone areas, and site contamination)
- [Groundwater elevations](#)
- [Special circumstances \(e.g., discharge to multiple drainage basins with differing requirements\) \(refer to Section 4.7\)](#)

Project proponents need to evaluate all the applicable code requirements and conduct a full site assessment to characterize site opportunities and constraints before choosing and designing stormwater strategies (refer to *Chapter 7*). Once the site conditions are known and the applicable minimum requirements have been identified, proceed to *Volume 3, Chapters 3, 4, and 5* to begin the BMP selection and design process.

2.5. Step 5 – Calculate Land-Disturbing Activity and New Plus Replaced Hard Surface

The thresholds triggering specific Minimum Requirements for Flow Control are based on the amount of the project's new plus replaced hard surface, converted native and nonnative vegetation, and land-disturbing activity. Hard surface means an impervious surface, a permeable pavement, or a vegetated roof.

Note that open, uncovered retention or detention facilities shall not be considered as [hard impervious](#) surfaces for the purposes of determining whether the minimum requirement thresholds are exceeded. However, these facilities shall be considered [hard impervious](#) surfaces for the purposes of stormwater facility sizing.

Areas with underdrains designed to remove stormwater from the subgrade (e.g., playfields, athletic fields, rail yards) shall be considered as [hard impervious](#) surfaces for the purposes of determining whether the minimum requirement thresholds are exceeded. [All areas that are connected to the underdrains and surrounding underdrain aggregate with free-draining subbase material or drainage layer, such as a sand or gravel layer or a manufactured drainage mat, shall be counted as hard surface area, regardless of the distance of the surface from the underdrain or spacing of underdrains. Natural lawn or turf areas that do not have a free-draining sand or gravel layer or other type of drainage layer connected to the underdrain or](#)

[underdrain aggregate are considered to be hard surface areas if there are multiple rows of underdrains that are spaced closer than 25 feet apart.](#) Refer to SMC, Section 22.801 and *Appendix A* for detailed definitions of these key terms.

The amount of native vegetation that is removed and replaced with lawn, landscaping, and pasture groundcover shall also be calculated.

New plus replaced hard surface areas and converted native vegetation shall be quantified separately for work within, and outside, the right-of-way.

2.6. Step 6 – Calculate New Plus Replaced Pollution Generating Surface

The thresholds triggering specific Minimum Requirements for Treatment are based on the total amount of the project's new plus replaced pollution-generating hard surface (PGHS) and new plus replaced pollution-generating pervious surface (PGPS). PGHS and PGPS include areas that are considered to be a significant source of pollutants in stormwater runoff. Examples of PGHS include areas subject to vehicular use (including permeable pavement); certain industrial activities; outdoor storage of erodible or leachable materials, wastes, or chemicals. Examples of PGPS include lawns, landscaping areas, golf courses, parks, cemeteries, and sports fields (natural and artificial turf). Metal roofs are considered a PGHS unless coated with an inert, non-leachable material (e.g., baked-on enamel coating). Refer to SMC, Section 22.801 and *Appendix A* for detailed definitions of these key terms.

New plus replaced PGHS and PGPS shall be quantified separately for work within and outside the right-of-way.

2.7. Step 7 – Determine Which Minimum Requirements Apply

An overview of the minimum requirements applicable to all project types is included in *Chapter 3*. In addition, an overview of the minimum requirements specific to each project type is included in *Chapter 4*.

Based on the information obtained from Step 1 through Step 6, the applicable minimum requirements for specific project types can be determined for:

- Soil amendment (*Section 5.1*)
- On-site stormwater management (*Section 5.2*)
- Flow control (*Section 5.3*)
- Water quality treatment (*Section 5.4*)

[Note: Other projects that do not trigger the minimum requirements for on-site stormwater management, flow control, and/or water quality \(e.g., retrofit projects\) are encouraged but not required to follow the technical requirements in this manual as guidance on methods and standards that may help protect water resources.](#)

In addition, certain locations in the City may be subject to additional or modified requirements based on other Director’s Rules, Policies, and Tips, such as:

- SPU Director’s Rule DWW-210-~~XXX~~ – Public Drainage System Requirements
- SPU Director’s Rule DWW-430.1 – Flow Control Requirements for Projects in Identified Public Combined Sewer Basins (SODO/Downtown Waterfront)
- SPU Director’s Rule DWW-420.1 – Yesler Terrace Community Director’s Rule: Allowable Stormwater, Groundwater, and Sewer Release Rates to the Combined Sewer System and Infiltration Zones
- SDCI Tip 505 – High Point Impervious Surface Calculation
- SDCI Director’s Rule 12-2008 – Infiltration Facilities in Peat Settlement-Prone Areas

Note: the ECA code requires Water Quality and Flow Control in some locations where it is not required per this Manual.

CHAPTER 3 – MINIMUM REQUIREMENTS FOR ALL PROJECTS

All projects are required to comply with the minimum requirements listed in SMC, Section 22.805, even when drainage control review is not required. The specifics of the minimum requirements applicable to all projects, as per SMC, Section 22.805.020 are summarized in the following subsections.

Excerpts from the Stormwater Code (in *italics*) are presented below in the first column in each section. The second column in each section provides applicable references for further information on how to meet the requirement.

Note that this section summarizes but does not replace or alter Stormwater Code requirements.

3.1. Maintaining Natural Drainage Patterns

Stormwater Code Language	References
<p><i>SMC 22.805.020.A – For all projects, natural drainage patterns shall be maintained and discharges shall occur at the natural location to the</i></p> <p><i>Refer to proposed Stormwater Code (Ch. 22.800-22.808) during public review</i></p> <p><i>Final code language to be added to final manual</i></p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Volume 1, Section 3.2 (SMC, Section 22.805.020.B) – Minimum Requirements for Discharge Point • Volume 3, Section 3.3 – BMP Selection for On-site Stormwater Management • Volume 3, Section 3.4 – BMP Selection for Flow Control

3.2. Discharge Point

3.2.1. Approved Point of Discharge

All projects shall convey stormwater flow to an approved point of discharge and include overflows for all stormwater BMPs.

Stormwater Code Language	References
<p><i>SMC 22.805.020.B – The discharge point for drainage water from each site shall be identified in the drainage control plan required by this subtitle, for review and approval or disapproval by the Director.</i></p> <p><i>Refer to proposed Stormwater Code (Ch. 22.800-22.808) during public review</i></p> <p><i>Final code language to be added to final manual</i></p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Volume 3, Section 4.3.2 – Approved Point of Discharge

A project’s approved point of discharge as determined by the Director, in order of priority, includes:

1. Surface waters
2. Public storm drain pipes
3. Ditch and culvert system
4. Public combined sewer pipes
5. Infiltration on site

Extension of the piped public drainage system may be required even if a ditch and culvert system or a public combined sewer abuts a project (refer to Section 3.12 and the Public Drainage System Requirements Director’s Rule (SPU Director’s Rule DWW-210XX)).

Note: Stormwater and groundwater shall not be conveyed to or enter a sanitary sewer (SMC, Section 21.16.220) including those systems that were considered a formerly combined system.

Refer to SPU’s Water & Sewer Map for “Permitted Use” in determining if a system is classified as a public sanitary sewer: https://gisrevprxy.seattle.gov/wab_ext/DSOResearch_Ext/

3.2.2. Conveyance Systems to Point of Discharge

The types of conveyance systems to the approved point of discharge, in order of priority, includes:

1. Direct pipe connections
2. Ditch and culvert system
3. Gutter or street flow line
4. Surface dispersal

3.2.3.3. Flood-Prone Areas

Stormwater Code Language	References
<p><i>SMC 22.805.020.C – On sites within flood-prone areas, responsible parties are required to employ procedures to minimize the potential for flooding to the project and surrounding areas. Flood-prone areas include those set forth in the definitions of the Seattle Municipal Code and rule 22.808 at (Shoreline District), Chapter 25.06 (Floodplain Development), and Chapter 25.09 (Environmentally Critical Areas) of the Seattle Municipal Code.</i></p> <p><i>Refer to proposed Stormwater Code (Ch. 22.800-22.808) during public review</i></p> <p><i>Final code language to be added to final manual</i></p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • SMC, Chapter 23.60 – Shoreline Master Program • SMC, Chapter 25.06 – Floodplain Development • SMC, Chapter 25.09 – Environmentally Critical Areas

3.3.3.4. Construction Site Stormwater Pollution Prevention Control

There are 19 elements required for construction site stormwater pollution prevention control (SMC, Section 22.805.020.D).

These 19 elements include:

1. ~~Mark Clearing Limits and Environmentally Critical Areas~~
2. ~~Retain Top Layer~~
3. ~~Establish Construction Access~~
4. ~~Protect Downstream Properties and Receiving Waters~~
5. ~~Prevent Erosion and Sediment Transport from the Site~~
6. ~~Prevent Erosion and Sediment Transport from the Site by Vehicles~~
7. ~~Stabilize Soils~~
8. ~~Protect Slopes~~
9. ~~Protect Storm Drains~~
10. ~~Stabilize Channels and Outlets~~
11. ~~Control Pollutants~~
12. ~~Control Dewatering~~
13. ~~Maintain BMPs~~
14. ~~Inspect BMPs~~
15. ~~Execute Construction Stormwater and Erosion Control Plan~~
16. ~~Minimize Open Trenches~~
17. ~~Phase the Project~~
18. ~~Install Flow Control and Water Quality Facilities~~
19. ~~Protect Stormwater BMPs~~

Stormwater Code Language	References
<p>SMC 22.805.020.D – Minimum Requirements for Construction Site Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plan. Temporary and permanent construction controls shall be used to accomplish [the 19 construction site stormwater pollution prevention control requirements outlined in SMC 22.805.020.D and Volume 2, Construction Stormwater Control]. All projects are required to meet each of the elements below or document why an element is not applicable. Refer to proposed Stormwater Code (Ch. 22.800-22.808) during public review</p> <p>Final code language to be added to final manual</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Maximize Clearing Limits to Minimize Open Areas 2. Reduce Turbidity 3. Establish Construction Erosion Control 4. Protect Downstream Properties and Receiving Waters 5. Prevent Erosion and Sediment Transport from the Site 6. Prevent Stormwater Pollution 7. Stabilize Soils 8. Protect Slopes 9. Protect Storm Drains 10. Stabilize Channels and Outlets 11. Control Pollutants 12. Control Dewatering 13. Maintain BMPs 14. Inspect BMPs 15. Execute Construction Stormwater Control and Soil Management Plan 16. Minimize Open Trenches 17. Phase the Project 18. Install Flow Control and Water Quality Facilities 19. Protect Stormwater BMPs 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Volume 2, Chapter 3 – Selecting Construction Stormwater Controls

3.4.3.5. Protect Wetlands

Stormwater Code Language	References
<p>SMC 22.805.020.E – Protect Wetlands. All projects discharging into a wetland shall prevent impacts to wetlands that would result in a net loss of functions or values. Refer to proposed Stormwater Code (Ch. 22.800-22.808) during public review</p> <p>Final code language to be added to final manual</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • SMC, Chapter 25.09 – Environmentally Critical Areas - Guide sheets 1 through 3 in the SWMMW Volume I, Appendix C (February 2012-2014)

3.5.3.6. Protect Streams and Creeks

Stormwater Code Language	References
<p><i>Refer to proposed Stormwater Code (Ch. 22.800-22.808) during public review</i> <i>Final code language to be added to final manual</i></p>	<p>• Volume 3, Section 173-26-020(11) – Definitions – “Document of Record”</p>

3.6.3.7. Protect Shorelines

Stormwater Code Language	References
<p><i>Refer to proposed Stormwater Code (Ch. 22.800-22.808) during public review</i> <i>Final code language to be added to final manual</i></p>	<p>• WAC Chapter 173-26 – Stormwater Master Program • WAC Section 173-26-020(11) – Definitions – “Document of Record”</p>

3.7.3.8. Ensure Sufficient Capacity

Stormwater Code Language	References
<p><i>Refer to proposed Stormwater Code (Ch. 22.800-22.808) during public review</i> <i>Final code language to be added to final manual</i></p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Volume 3, Section 4.3 – Conveyance General Design Requirements • Appendix F – Hydrologic Analysis and Design • CAM 1180 – Design Guidelines for Public Storm Drain Facilities

3.8.3.9. Install Source Control BMPs

Stormwater Code Language	References
<p><i>Refer to proposed Stormwater Code (Ch. 22.800-22.808) during public review</i> <i>Final code language to be added to final manual</i></p>	<p>• Volume 4 – Source Control</p>

Stormwater Code Language	References
<p>activities that are stationary or occur in one primary location and to the portion of the site being developed. Examples of installed source controls include, but are not limited to, the following:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. A roof, awning, or cover erected over the pollution-generating activity area; 2. Ground surface treatment in the pollution-generating activity area to prevent interaction with, or breakdown of, materials used in conjunction with the pollution-generating activity; 3. Construct a closed sump or tank for settling and appropriate disposal, or treat prior to discharging to a public drainage system; or pumped or hauled by a waste handler, or treated prior to discharge to a public drainage system; 4. Construct a berm or dike to enclose or contain the pollution-generating activities; 5. Direct drainage from containment area of pollution-generating activity to a closed sump or tank for settling and appropriate disposal, or treat prior to discharging to a public drainage system; 6. Pave, treat, or cover the containment area of pollution-generating activities with materials that will not interact with or break down in the presence of other materials used in conjunction with the pollution-generating activity; and 7. Prevent precipitation from flowing or being blown onto containment areas of pollution-generating activities. 	<p>Refer to proposed Stormwater Code (Ch. 22.800-22.808) during public review Final code language to be added to final manual</p>

3.9-3.10. Do Not Obstruct Watercourses

Stormwater Code Language	References
<p>SMC 22.805.020.J – Water courses</p>	<p>Refer to proposed Stormwater Code (Ch. 22.800-22.808) during public review Final code language to be added to final manual</p> <p>SMC Chapter 22.808 – Stormwater Code Enforcement</p>

3.10-3.11. Comply with Side Sewer Code

A side sewer permit is required for any repair, replacement or alteration of the sewer or drainage system. Any change to the point of discharge must be approved. A change of use that introduces contaminants or process water to the drainage system, public combined sewer, or public sanitary sewer must also be approved and may require pretreatment. For information on side sewer permits, contact the [Seattle Department of Construction and Inspection \(SDCI\)](#) Drainage and Sewer Review Desk, at (206) 684-5362 or sidesewerinfo@seattle.gov. For information on King County discharge requirements, contact the Industrial Waste Program at (206) 477-5300 or Info.KCIW@kingcounty.gov.

Stormwater Code Language	References
<p>SMC 22.805.020.K – Sewer systems, whether public or private</p>	<p>Refer to proposed Stormwater Code (Ch. 22.800-22.808) during public review Final code language to be added to final manual</p> <p>SMC Chapter 22.808 – Stormwater Code Enforcement</p> <p>SMC Chapter 22.16 – Side Sewer Code</p>

Stormwater Code Language	References
<p>installation specifications and permit requirements of SPU and SDCI for side sewer and drainage systems.</p> <p>2. Side sewer permits and inspections shall be required for operated drainage systems provided for in Chapter 22.800-22.808.</p> <p>When the work is not constructed according to the plans approved by the Director, the work is not constructed according to the Rules promulgated under Title 21, and SPU and SDCI design and installation specifications, then the Director may issue a stop work order under Chapter 22.808 and require modifications as provided for in this subtitle and Chapter 21.16.</p>	<p>Refer to proposed Stormwater Code (Ch. 22.800-22.808) during public review</p> <p>Final code language to be added to final manual</p>

3.12. Extension of Public Drainage System

3.12.1. Projects Not Constructed in the Right-of-Way

Stormwater Code Language	References
<p><u>SMC 22.805.020.L – Extension of Public Storm System for Projects Not Constructed in the Public Right-of-Way. For projects not constructed in the public right-of-way, extension of the piped public drainage system across the full extent of the parcel boundary in the abutting public place shall be required for any of the following:</u></p> <p><u>1. All projects where the Director has determined an extension is required considering, but not limited to, the following attributes of the project:</u></p> <p>Refer to proposed Stormwater Code (Ch. 22.800-22.808) during public review</p> <p>Final code language to be added to final manual</p> <p><u>a. Adversely affects the functions and values of an environmentally critical area or buffer;</u></p> <p><u>b. Adversely affects an area with known erosion or flooding</u></p> <p><u>c. Adversely impacts receiving waters, any properties, or</u></p> <p><u>2. All projects with 5,000 square feet or more of new plus replaced hard surface, unless:</u></p> <p><u>a. The piped public drainage system is already accessible within an abutting public place to each existing, proposed, or adjusted parcel; or</u></p> <p><u>b. The project is otherwise not required to extend by rules promulgated by the Director.</u></p>	<p><u>None provided</u></p>

Refer to Public Drainage System Requirements Director’s Rule DWW-210 for rules related to extension of the public drainage system.

3.12.2. Projects Constructed in the Right-of-Way

Stormwater Code Language	References
<p><i>SMC 22.805.020.L – Extension of Public Storm System: for Projects Constructed in the Public Right-of-Way. For projects constructed in the public right-of-way, extension of the piped public drainage system across the full extent of the site shall be required for any of the following:</i></p> <p><i>1. All projects where the Director has determined an extension is required considering, but not limited to, the following attributes of the project:</i></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <i>a. Poses a hazard to public health, safety or welfare;</i> <i>b. Endangers any property;</i> <i>c. Adversely impacts receiving waters, any properties, or right-of-way;</i> <i>d. Adversely impacts the environment;</i> <i>e. Adversely affects an area with known erosion or flooding problems; or</i> <i>f. Adversely impacts receiving waters, any properties, or right-of-way.</i> <p><i>2. The project's total new plus replaced hard surface is 50 percent or more of the existing hard surface within the project limits are defined by the length of the project and the width of the right-of-way. If a project encompasses more than one intersection, the project limits are further defined by one intersection to the other and blocks may vary in length, unless:</i></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <i>a. The piped public drainage system is already accessible within the site across the full extent of the site; or</i> <i>b. The project is otherwise not required to extend by rules promulgated by the Director.</i> 	<p><u>None provided</u></p>

Refer to proposed Stormwater Code (Ch. 22.800-22.808) during public review
Final code language to be added to final manual

Refer to Public Drainage System Requirements Director's Rule DWW-210xxx for rules related to extension of the public drainage system.

3.13. Public Drainage System Requirements

<p><i>SMC 22.800.020.N – Extension of Storm Drainage System Public Drainage System Requirements. Public drainage systems shall be constructed in accordance with the City's Standard Plans and Specifications, SPU's Design Standards and Specifications, and the rules promulgated by the Director of SPU.</i></p>	<p><u>None provided</u></p>
---	-----------------------------

Refer to proposed Stormwater Code (Ch. 22.800-22.808) during public review
Final code language to be added to final manual

Refer to Public Drainage System Requirements Director's Rule DWW-210xxx for rules related to public drainage system requirements.

3.11.3.14. Maintenance and Inspection

Projects that construct on-site stormwater management, flow control, and water quality treatment BMPs shall comply with the maintenance and inspection requirements specified in SMC, Section 22.807.090.

Stormwater Code Language	References
<p>SMC 22.807.090 –</p> <p>A. <i>Responsibility for Maintenance and Inspection. The owner and other responsible parties shall maintain drainage control facilities, source controls, and other facilities and implement landscape management plans required by this subtitle and by rules adopted hereunder to keep these facilities in continuous working order. The owner and other responsible parties shall inspect permanent drainage control facilities, temporary drainage control facilities, and other temporary best management practices or facilities on a schedule consistent with this subtitle and sufficient for the facilities to function at design capacity. The Director may require the responsible party to conduct more frequent inspections and/or maintenance when</i></p> <p><u>Refer to proposed Stormwater Code (Ch. 22.800-22.808) during public review</u></p> <p>Final code language to be added to final manual</p> <p>B. <i>Inspection by City. The Director or SPC may establish inspection programs to enforce compliance with the requirements of this subtitle and accomplishment of its purposes. Inspection programs may be established on any reasonable basis, including, but not limited to: routine inspections; random inspections; inspections based upon complaints or other notice of possible violations; inspection of drainage basins or areas identified as higher than typical sources of sediment or other contaminants or pollutants; inspections of businesses or industries of a type associated with higher than usual discharges of contaminants or pollutants or with discharges of a type more likely than the typical discharge to cause violations of state or federal water or sediment quality standards or the City's NPDES stormwater permit; and joint inspections with other agencies inspecting under environmental or safety laws. Inspections may include, but are not limited to: reviewing maintenance and repair records; sampling discharges, surface water, groundwater, and material or water in drainage control facilities; and evaluating the condition of drainage control facilities and other best management practices.</i></p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>Appendix G – Stormwater Control Operations and Maintenance Requirements</i>

CHAPTER 4 – MINIMUM REQUIREMENTS BASED ON PROJECT TYPE

In addition to the minimum requirements for all projects presented in *Chapter 3*, additional requirements apply based upon project type and are summarized in this chapter. Project types are defined in *Chapter 2, Step 2*.

Excerpts from the Stormwater Code (in italics) are presented in the first column in each section. The second column in each section provides applicable references.

Flow charts are included in the roadway and parcel-based project sections (*Sections 4.3 and 4.4*) to summarize the key minimum requirements. Utility and pavement maintenance project types are exempt from certain minimum requirements (refer to *Sections 4.5 and 4.6* for additional information). This chapter also includes a short section on WSDOT projects (*Section 4.64-7*) and special circumstances (*Section 4.74-8*), applicable when a project does not fit into the other project type categories.

The key minimum requirements include the following:

- Soil Amendment
- On-site Stormwater Management
- Wetland Protection Standard
- Pre-developed Forested Standard
- Pre-developed Pasture Standard
- Peak Control Standard
- Basic Treatment
- Oil Treatment
- Phosphorus Treatment
- Enhanced Treatment

The standards are described in more detail in *Chapter 5*. For each project type, the minimum requirements are a function of the following factors (refer to *Chapter 2*):

- The receiving water and/or type of downstream conveyance
- The amount of new plus replaced hard surface (Note: permeable pavement, vegetated roof systems, and areas with underdrains count toward determining this threshold.)
- The amount of converted native vegetation
- The amount of new plus replaced pollution-generating hard surface (PGHS)
- The amount of new plus replaced pollution-generating pervious surface (PGPS)

In addition, certain locations in the City may be subject to additional or modified requirements based on additional Director’s Rules, Policies, other Codes (e.g., ECA Code) or past agreements. For example, such areas include parts of the SODO and Downtown waterfront areas, the Yesler Terrace Development, the High Point Re-development, Peat Settlement Prone ECAs. Refer to Step 7 (Section 2.7) for more information.

4.1. Single-Family Residential Projects

The applicable code language and references for single-family residential projects are summarized below. Note that single-family residential projects are not required to install flow control or water quality treatment BMPs since the project type, by definition, does not trigger the minimum requirements for flow control or water quality treatment unless they are requirements of the master use permit associated with the single-family project as described in Section 2.2.1.

Stormwater Code Language	References
<p>SMC 22.805.030 –</p> <p>A. Soil Amendment. Retain and protect undisturbed soil in areas not being developed, and prior to completion of the project, amend all new, replaced, and disturbed topsoil (including construction lay-down areas) with organic matter to the extent required by and in compliance with the rules promulgated by the Director.</p> <p>B. On-site Stormwater Management. Single-family residential projects shall meet the Minimum Requirements for On-site Stormwater Management contained in Section 22.805.070, to the extent allowed by law.</p> <p>1. For a project that is created, altered, or otherwise amended by a plat or other lawful authority after January 1, 2016, and where that document either created the lot or altered the size of the lot, either the total new plus replaced hard surface is 750 square feet or more or land disturbing activity is 7,000 square feet or more; or</p> <p>2. For any other project, either the total new plus replaced hard surface is 1,500 square feet or the land disturbing activity is 7,000 square feet or more.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Volume 1, Section 5.1 (SMC, Section 22.805.030) – Soil Amendment • Volume 1, Section 5.2 (SMC, Section 22.805.070) – On-site Stormwater Management • Volume 3, Section 3.3 – BMP Selection for On-Site Stormwater Management

*Refer to proposed Stormwater Code (Ch. 22.800-22.808) during public review
Final code language to be added to final manual*

4.2. Trail and Sidewalk Projects

The applicable code language and references for trail and sidewalk projects are summarized below. Note that trail and sidewalk projects are not required to install flow control or water quality treatment BMPs if the project meets the definition of a trail or sidewalk project.

Stormwater Code Language	References
<p>SMC 22.805.040 –</p> <p>A. Soil Amendment. Retain and protect undisturbed soil in areas not being developed, and prior to completion of the project, amend all new, replaced, and disturbed topsoil (including construction lay-down areas) with organic matter to the extent required by and in compliance with the rules promulgated by the Director.</p> <p>B. On-site Stormwater Management. Trail and sidewalk projects shall meet the Minimum Requirements for On-site Stormwater Management contained in Section 22.805.070, to the extent allowed by law.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Volume 1, Section 5.1 (SMC, Section 22.805.040)– Soil Amendment • Volume 1, Section 5.2 (SMC, Section 22.805.070)– On-site Stormwater Management • Volume 3, Section 3.3 – BMP Selection for On-Site Stormwater Management

*Refer to proposed Stormwater Code (Ch. 22.800-22.808) during public review
Final code language to be added to final manual*

4.3. Roadway Projects

Roadway projects shall meet the minimum requirements for soil amendment (SMC, Section 22.805.060.A), on-site stormwater management (SMC, Section 22.805.020.F), flow control (SMC, Section 22.805.080) and water quality treatment (SMC, Section 22.805.090) when applicable. Key minimum requirements for roadway projects are summarized in Figures 4.1a through 4.1c. In addition to meeting a forested, pasture, or wetland protection standard, projects discharging to a capacity-constrained system will also be required to meet the peak control standard.

4.3.1. Soil Amendment

Stormwater Code Language	References
Refer to proposed Stormwater Code (Ch. 22.800-22.808) during public review	Volume 1, Section 2.2 (SMC, Section 22.805.060.A) – Soil Amendment
Final code language to be added to final manual	

4.3.2. On-site Stormwater Management

Stormwater Code Language	References
Refer to proposed Stormwater Code (Ch. 22.800-22.808) during public review	Volume 1, Section 2.2 (SMC, Section 22.805.020.F) – On-Site Stormwater Management
Final code language to be added to final manual	Volume 3, Section 3.3 – BMP Section 10- On-site Stormwater Management

4.3.3. Flow Control

4.3.3.1. Roadway Projects Discharging to Wetlands – Flow Control

Stormwater Code Language	References
Refer to proposed Stormwater Code (Ch. 22.800-22.808) during public review	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> SMC, Section 22.805.080.B.1 – Wetland Protection Standard Volume 1, Section 3.5 (SMC, Section 22.805.020.E) – Protect Wetlands
Final code language to be added to final manual	SWMM17W Volume I, Appendix CD (Ecology 20192014)

<p>3. <i>The project converts 2.5 acres or more of native vegetation to pasture and from the project there is a surface discharge into a natural or constructed conveyance system from the site.</i></p> <p>c. <i>Comply with the minimum requirements for wetland protection contained in subsection 22.805.080.B.1 (Wetland Protection Standards) if the existing hard surface coverage is greater than or equal to 35 percent and one or more of the following apply:</i></p> <p>1. <i>The total new hard surface is 10,000 square feet or more; or</i></p> <p>2. <i>The project converts 3/4 acres or more of vegetation to lawn or landscaped areas, and from the project there is a surface discharge into a natural or constructed conveyance system from the site; or</i></p> <p>3. <i>The project converts 2.5 acres or more of native vegetation to pasture and from the project there is a surface discharge into a natural or constructed conveyance system from the site.</i></p>	
--	--

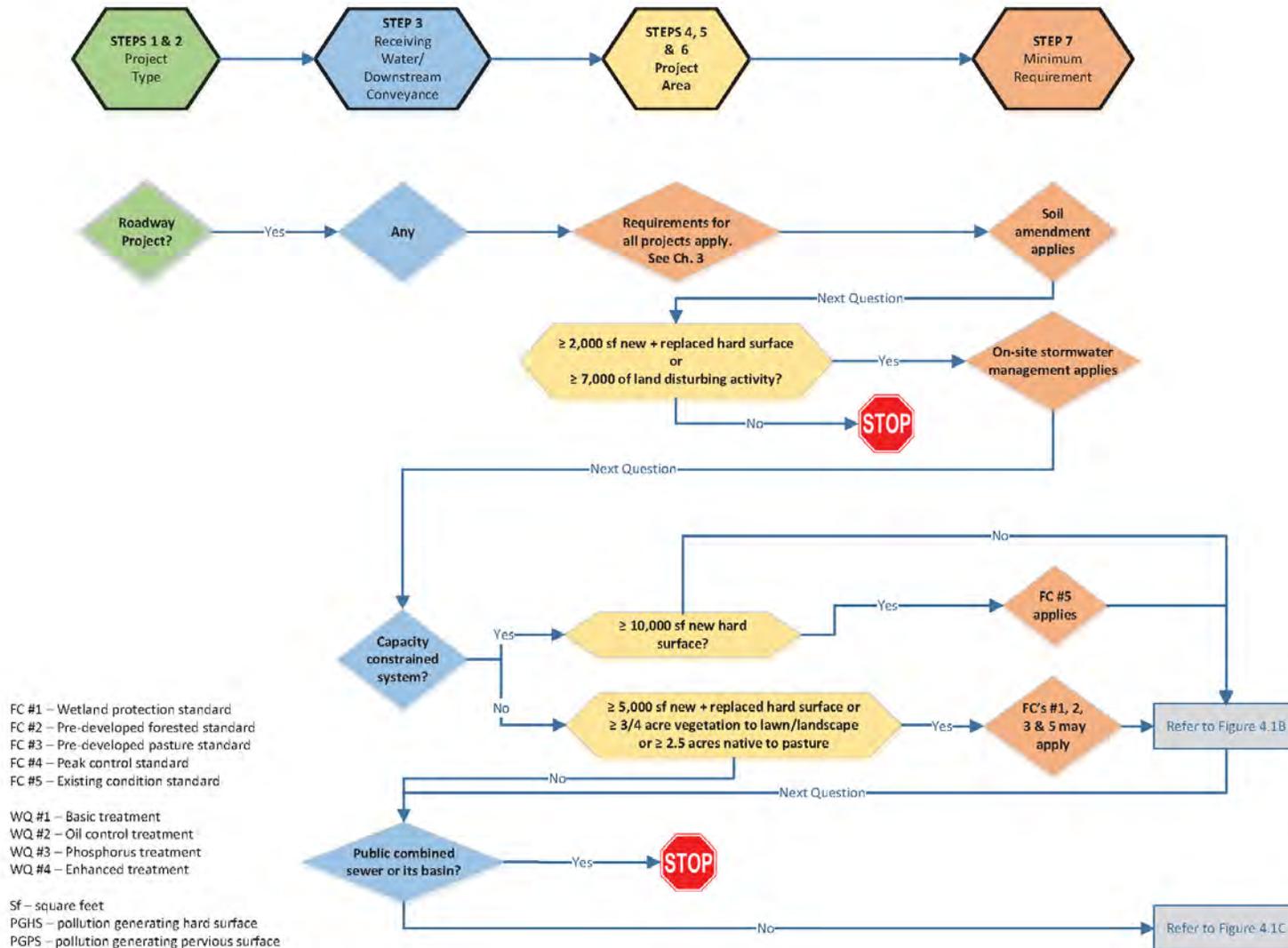


Figure 4.1A. Project Minimum Requirements Overview Flow Chart for Roadway Projects.

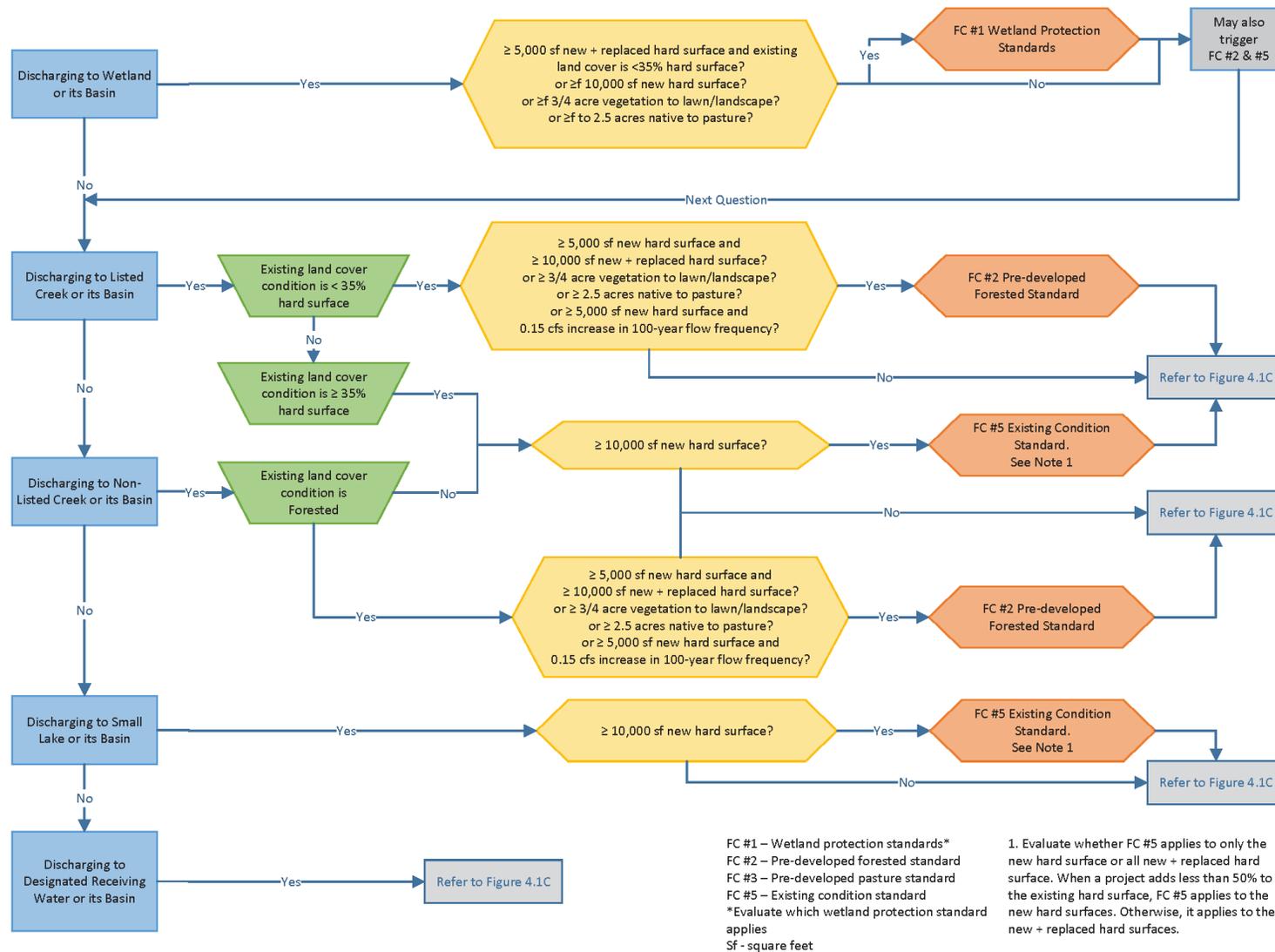


Figure 4.1B. Flow Control Project Minimum Requirements for Roadway Projects (continued).

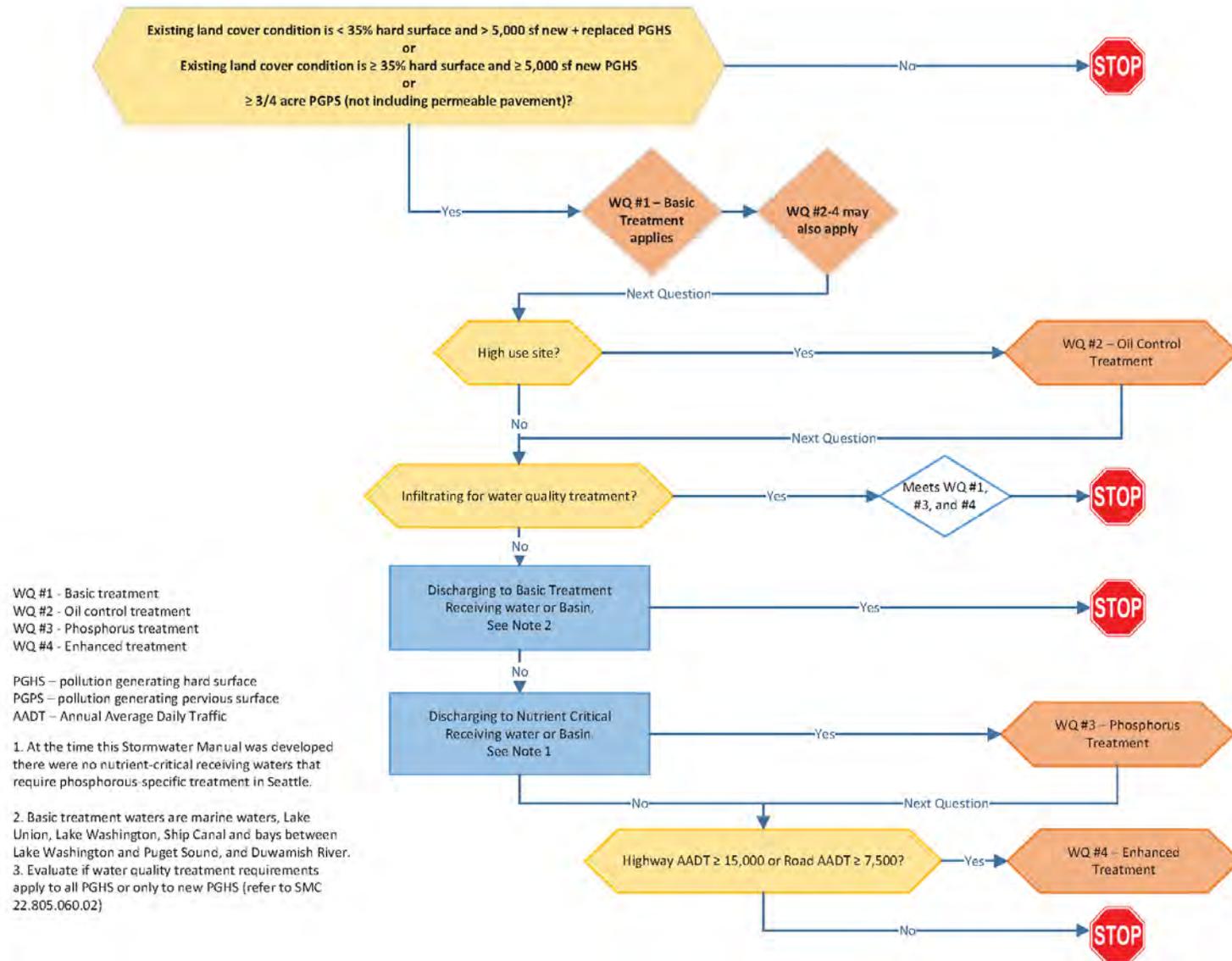


Figure 4.1C. [Project Water Quality Treatment](#) Minimum Requirements for Roadway Projects [\(continued\)](#).

4.3.3.2. Roadway Projects Discharging to Listed Creek Basins – Flow Control

Stormwater Code Language	References
<p>SMC 22.805.060.C.2 – Roadway projects discharging into Blue Ridge Creek, Broadview Creek, Discovery Park Creek, Durham Creek, Frink Creek, Golden Gardens Creek, Kiwanis Ravine/Wolfe Creek, Licton Springs Creek, Madrona Park Creek, Mee-Kwa-Mooks Creek, Mount Baker Park Creek, Puget Creek, Riverview Creek, Schmitz Creek, Taylor Creek, or Washington Park Creek, or to the drainage basin of such creek, shall:</p> <p><u>Refer to proposed Stormwater Code (Ch. 22.800-22.808) during public review</u></p> <p><u>Final code language to be added to final manual</u></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The project converts 3/4 acres or more of vegetation to a surface discharge into a natural or constructed conveyance system from the site; or 2. The project converts 3/4 acres or more of vegetation to a surface discharge into a natural or constructed conveyance system from the site; or 3. The project converts 2.5 acres or more of native vegetation to pasture, and from the project there is a surface discharge into a natural or constructed conveyance system from the site; or 4. The project adds 5,000 square feet or more of new hard surface and, through a combination of effective hard surfaces and converted pervious surfaces, causes a 0.15 cubic feet per second increase in the 100-year recurrence interval flow frequency as estimated using a continuous model approved by the Director. <p>b. Comply with subsection 22.805.080.B.4 (Existing Condition Standard) if the criteria in subsection 22.805.060.C.2.a do not apply and the total new hard surface is 10,000 square feet or more, and:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. If the new hard surface adds 50 percent or more to the existing hard surfaces within the project limits, comply with subsection 22.805.080.B.4 (Existing Condition Standard) for the flows from the total new plus replaced hard surfaces. The project limits are defined by the length of the project and the width of the right-of-way; or 2. If the new hard surface adds less than 50 percent to the existing hard surfaces within the project limits, comply with subsection 22.805.080.B.4 (Existing Condition Standard) for the flows from the total new hard surfaces. The project limits are defined by the length of the project and the width of the right-of-way. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● SMC, Section 22.805.080.B.2 – Pre-developed Forested Standard ● SMC, Section 22.805.080.B.3 – Pre-developed Pasture Standard ● Volume 3, Section 3.4 – BMP Selection for Flow Control ● Volume 3, Section 4.1 – Sizing Approach

4.3.3.3. Roadway Projects Discharging to Non-listed Creek Basins – Flow Control

Stormwater Code Language	References
<p><i>SMC 22.805.060.C.3 – Roadway projects discharging into a creek not listed in subsection 22.805.060.C.2, or to the drainage basin of such creek, shall:</i></p> <p><u>Refer to proposed Stormwater Code (Ch. 22.800-22.808) during public review</u></p> <p><u>Final code language to be added to final manual</u></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. <i>The project converts 10,000 square feet or more of new hard surface to pervious surface; or</i> 2. <i>The project converts 3/4 acres or more of vegetation to pervious surface and causes a surface discharge into a natural or constructed conveyance system from the site; or</i> 3. <i>The project converts 2.5 acres or more of native vegetation to pasture, and from the project there is a surface discharge into a natural or constructed conveyance system from the site; or</i> 4. <i>The project adds 5,000 square feet or more of new hard surface and, through a combination of effective hard surfaces and converted pervious surfaces, causes a 0.15 cubic feet per second increase in the 100-year recurrence interval flow frequency as estimated using a continuous model approved by the Director.</i> <p><i>b. Comply with subsection 22.805.080.B.4 (Existing Condition Standard) if the criteria in subsection 22.805.060.C.3.a do not apply and the total new hard surface is 10,000 square feet or more, and:</i></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. <i>If the new hard surface adds 50 percent or more to the existing hard surfaces within the project limits, comply with subsection 22.805.080.B.4 (Existing Condition Standard) for the flows from the total new plus replaced hard surfaces. The project limits are defined by the length of the project and the width of the right-of-way; or</i> 2. <i>If the new hard surface adds less than 50 percent to the existing hard surfaces within the project limits, comply with subsection 22.805.080.B.4 (Existing Condition Standard) for the flows from the total new hard surfaces. The project limits are defined by the length of the project and the width of the right-of-way.</i> 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● SMC, Section 22.805.080.B.2 – Pre-developed Forested Standard ● SMC, Section 22.805.080.B.3 – Pre-developed Pasture Standard ● <i>Volume 3, Section 3.4 – BMP Selection for Flow Control</i> ● <i>Volume 3, Section 4.1 – Sizing Approach</i>

4.3.3.4. Roadway Projects Discharging to Small Lake Basins – Flow Control

Stormwater Code Language	References
<p><i>SMC 22.805.060.C.4 – Roadway projects discharging into Bitter Lake, Green Lake, or Haller Lake, or to the drainage basin of such lake, shall comply with subsection 22.805.080.B.4 (Existing Condition Standard) if the total new plus replaced hard surface is 10,000 square feet or more.</i></p> <p>Refer to proposed Stormwater Code (Ch. 22.800-22.808) during public review</p> <p>Final code language to be added to final manual</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • SMC, Section 22.805.080.B.4 – Peak Control Standard • Volume 3, Section 3.4 – BMP Selection for Flow Control • Volume 3, Section 4.1 – Sizing Approach

4.3.3.5. Roadway Projects Discharging to Public Combined Sewer – Flow Control

At the time this Manual was developed, there was one public combined sewer basin that was determined to have sufficient capacity to carry existing and anticipated loads. Roadway projects are not required to provide peak flow control in this basin. Refer to the SDCI website to determine which basins are included in this category (<http://www.seattle.gov/dpd/codesrules/codes/stormwater/>).

Stormwater Code Language	References
<p><i>SMC 22.805.060.C.5 – Unless the Director of SPU has determined that the public combined sewer has sufficient capacity to carry existing and anticipated loads, roadway projects discharging into the public combined sewer or its basin shall comply with subsection 22.805.080.B.4 (Peak Control Standard) if the total new plus replaced hard surface is 10,000 square feet or more.</i></p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • SMC, Section 22.805.080.B.4 – Peak Control Standard • Figure 2.6 – Public Combined Sewer Basins • Volume 3, Section 3.4 – BMP Selection for Flow Control • Volume 3, Section 4.1 – Sizing Approach

4.3.3.6.4.3.3.5. Roadway Projects Discharging to a Capacity-constrained System – Flow Control

Stormwater Code Language	References
<p><i>SMC 22.805.060.C.5 – In addition to applicable minimum requirements for flow control in subsection 22.805.080.C.1 through subsection 22.805.080.C.4, roadway projects discharging to a capacity-constrained system or its basin shall comply with subsection 22.805.080.B.4 (Existing Condition Standard) if the total new plus replaced hard surface is 10,000 square feet or more. This subsection only includes ditches or culverts and has been determined to have</i></p> <p>Refer to proposed Stormwater Code (Ch. 22.800-22.808) during public review</p> <p>Final code language to be added to final manual</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • SMC, Section 22.805.060.C.1 – Discharges to Wetlands • SMC, Section 22.805.060.C.2 – Discharges to Listed Creek Basins • SMC, Section 22.805.060.C.3 – Discharges to Non-Listed Creek Basins

<p><i>limits, comply with the minimum requirements for treatment contained in Section 22.805.090 for flows from the total new pollution-generating hard surface and new pollution-generating pervious surface.</i></p>	
<p><u><i>Refer to proposed Stormwater Code (Ch. 22.800-22.808) during public review</i></u></p>	
<p><i>and</i></p>	
<p><u><i>Final code language to be added to final manual</i></u></p>	
<p><i>If the total new plus replaced pollution-generating pervious surface discharge in a natural or constructed conveyance system from the site, comply with the minimum requirements for treatment contained in Section 22.805.090 for flows from the total new plus replaced pollution-generating pervious surface and the new plus replaced pollution-generating hard surface.</i></p>	

4.4. Parcel-Based Projects

Parcel-based projects shall meet the minimum requirements for soil amendment (SMC, Section 22.805.050.A), on-site stormwater management (SMC, Section 22.805.070), flow control (SMC, Section 22.805.080) and water quality treatment (SMC, Section 22.805.090), when applicable. Key minimum requirements for parcel-based projects are summarized in Figures 4.2a through 4.2c. In addition to meeting a forested, pasture, or wetland protection standard, projects discharging to a capacity-constrained system will also be required to meet the peak control standard.

4.4.1. Soil Amendment

Stormwater Code Language	References
<p><i>Refer to proposed Stormwater Code (Ch. 22.800-22.808) during public review</i></p> <p><i>Final code language to be added to final manual</i></p>	<p>Volume 1, Section 5.2 (SMC, Section 22.805.050.A) – Soil Amendment</p>

4.4.2. On-site Stormwater Management

Stormwater Code Language	References
<p>SMC 22.805.050 –</p> <p><i>Refer to proposed Stormwater Code (Ch. 22.800-22.808) during public review</i></p> <p><i>Final code language to be added to final manual</i></p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Volume 1, Section 5.2 (SMC, Section 22.805.070) – On-site Stormwater Management Volume 2, Section 4.3.9 – BMP Application for On-site Stormwater Management

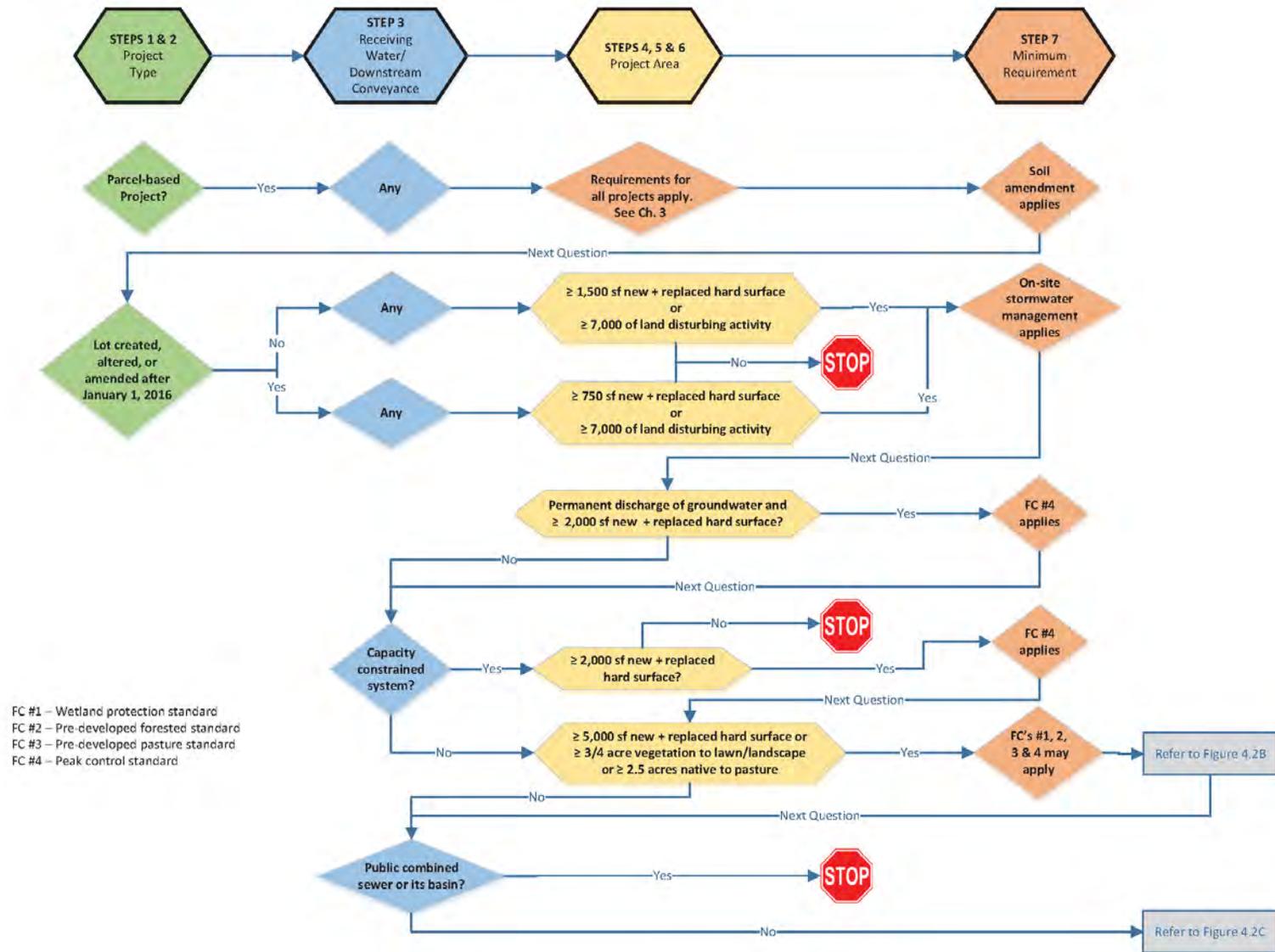


Figure 4.2A. Project Minimum Requirements Overview Flow Chart for Parcel-Based Projects.

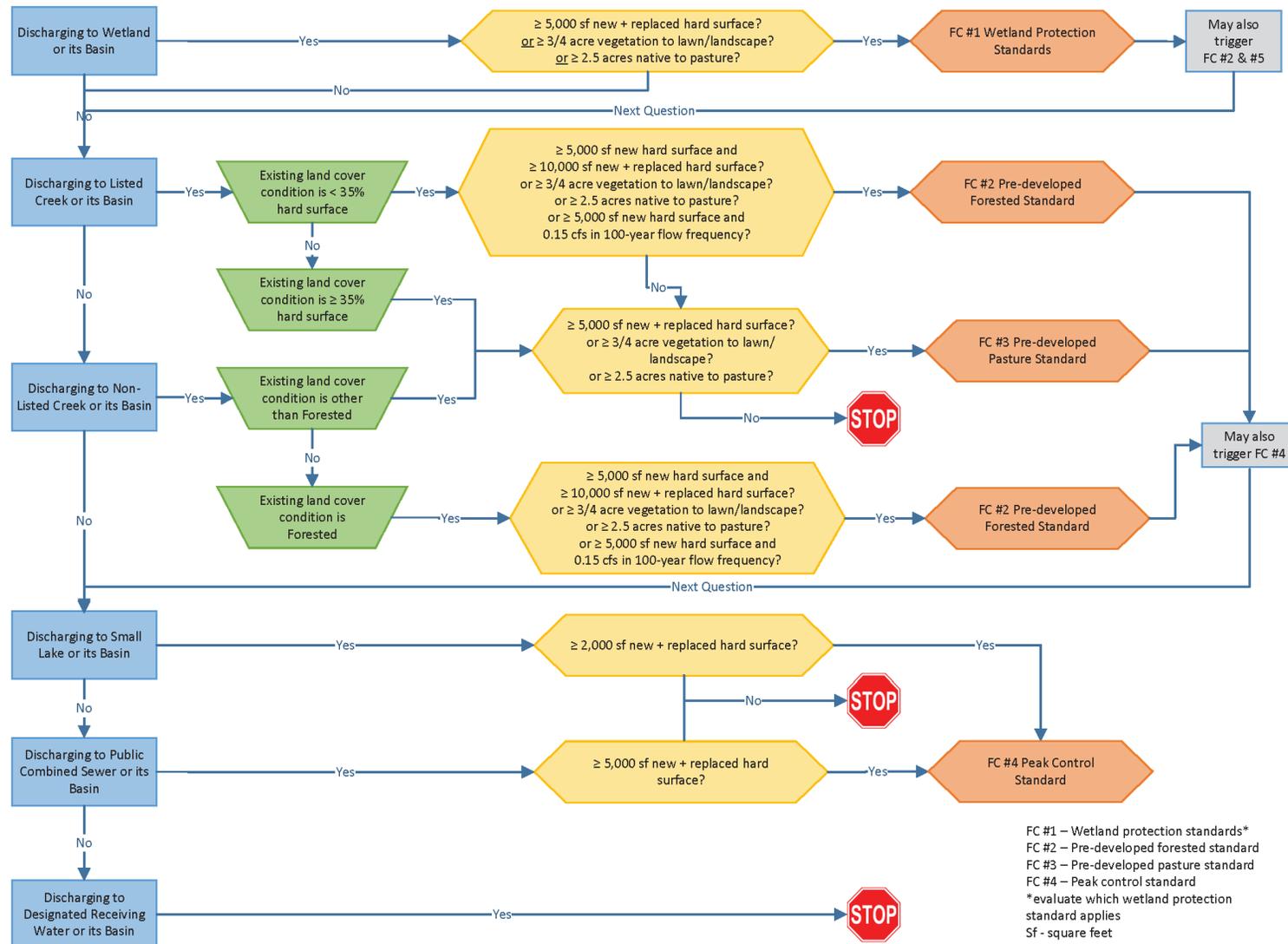


Figure 4.2B. Flow Control Project Minimum Requirements for Parcel-Based Projects (continued).

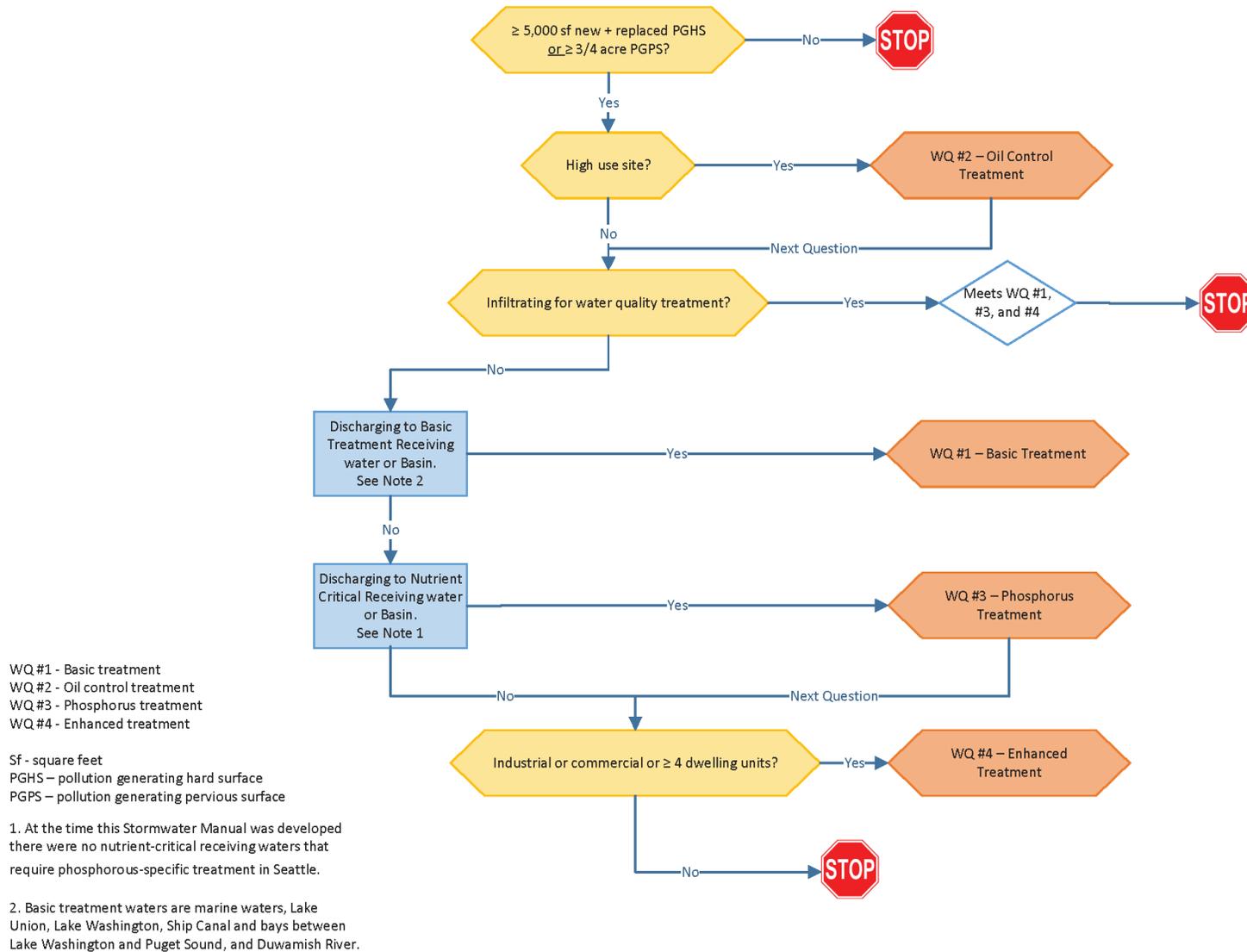


Figure 4.2C. [Water Quality Treatment Project](#) Minimum Requirements for Parcel-Based Projects [\(continued\)](#).

4.4.3. Flow Control

4.4.3.1. Parcel-Based Projects Discharging to Wetlands – Flow Control

Stormwater Code Language	References
<p>SMC 22.805.050.C.1 – Parcel-based projects discharging into a wetland, or to the drainage basin of a wetland, shall:</p> <p><u>Refer to proposed Stormwater Code (Ch. 22.800-22.808) during public review</u></p> <p><u>Final code language to be added to final manual</u></p> <p>a. Comply with Section 22.805.080 (Minimum requirements for all projects discharging into a wetland, or to the drainage basin of a wetland, shall:)</p> <p>b. Comply with Section 22.805.080 (Minimum requirements for all projects discharging into a wetland, or to the drainage basin of a wetland, shall:)</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> The total new plus replaced hard surface is 5,000 square feet or more; or The project converts 3.0 acres or more of native vegetation to lawn or landscaped areas, and from the project there is a surface discharge into a natural or constructed conveyance system from the site; or The project converts 2.5 acres or more of native vegetation to pasture, and from the project there is a surface discharge into a natural or constructed conveyance system from the site. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Volume 1, Section 5.3.1 (SMC, Section 22.805.080.B.1) – Wetland Protection Standard Volume 1, Section 3.5 – Protect Wetlands Guide sheets 1 through 3 in the SWMMWW Volume I, Appendix I-CD (Ecology 20192014)

4.4.3.2. Parcel-Based Projects Discharging to Listed Creek Basins – Flow Control

Stormwater Code Language	References
<p>SMC 22.805.050.C.2 – Parcel-based projects discharging into Blue Ridge Creek, Broadview Creek, Discovery Park Creek, Durham Creek, Frink Creek, Golden Gardens Creek, Kiwanis Ravine/Wolfe Creek, Licton Springs Creek, Madrona Park Creek, Mee-Kwa-Mooks Creek, Mount Baker Park Creek, Puget Creek, Riverview Creek, Schmitz Creek, Taylor Creek, or Washington Park Creek, or to the drainage basin of such creek, shall:</p> <p><u>Refer to proposed Stormwater Code (Ch. 22.800-22.808) during public review</u></p> <p><u>Final code language to be added to final manual</u></p> <p>a. Comply with Section 22.805.080 (Minimum requirements for all projects discharging into a wetland, or to the drainage basin of a wetland, shall:)</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> The project adds 5,000 square feet or more of new hard surface and the total new plus replaced hard surface is 10,000 square feet or more; or The project converts 3.0 acres or more of native vegetation to lawn or landscaped areas, and from the project there is a surface discharge into a natural or constructed conveyance system from the site; or The project converts 2.5 acres or more of native vegetation to pasture, and from the project there is a surface discharge into a natural or constructed conveyance system from the site; or The project adds 5,000 square feet or more of new hard surface and, through a combination of effective hard surfaces and converted pervious surfaces, causes a 0.15 cubic feet per second increase in the 100-year recurrence interval flow frequency as estimated using a continuous model approved by the Director. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Volume 1, Section 5.3.2 (SMC, Section 22.805.080.B.2) – Pre-developed Forested Standard Volume 1, Section 5.3.3 (SMC, Section 22.805.080.B.3) – Pre-developed Pasture Standard Volume 3, Section 3.4 – BMP Selection for Flow Control Volume 3, Section 4.1 – Sizing Approach

Stormwater Code Language	References
<p>b. Comply with subsection 22.805.080.B.3 (Pre-developed Pasture Standard) if the criteria in subsection 22.805.050.C.2.a do not apply and one or more apply:</p> <p><u>Refer to proposed Stormwater Code (Ch. 22.800-22.808) during public review</u></p> <p>2. The project converts 2.5 acres or more of native vegetation to pasture, and from the project there is a surface discharge into a natural or constructed conveyance system from the site; or</p> <p>3. The project converts 2.5 acres or more of native vegetation to pasture, and from the project there is a surface discharge into a natural or constructed conveyance system from the site.</p>	

4.4.3.3. Parcel-Based Projects Discharging to Non-listed Creek Basins – Flow Control

Stormwater Code Language	References
<p>SMC 22.805.050.C.3 – Parcel-based projects discharging into a creek not listed in subsection 22.805.050.C.2, or to the drainage basin of such creek, shall:</p> <p>a. Comply with subsection 22.805.080.B.2 (Pre-developed Forested Standard) if the existing land cover is forested and one or more of the following apply:</p> <p><u>Refer to proposed Stormwater Code (Ch. 22.800-22.808) during public review</u></p> <p><u>Final code language to be added to final manual</u></p> <p>1. The project adds 5,000 square feet or more of new hard surface and, through a combination of effective hard surfaces and converted pervious surfaces, causes a 0.15 cubic feet per second increase in the 100 year recurrence interval flow frequency as estimated using a continuous model approved by the Director.</p> <p>2. The project converts 2.5 acres or more of native vegetation to pasture, and from the project there is a surface discharge into a natural or constructed conveyance system from the site; or</p> <p>3. The project converts 2.5 acres or more of native vegetation to pasture, and from the project there is a surface discharge into a natural or constructed conveyance system from the site; or</p> <p>4. The project adds 5,000 square feet or more of new hard surface and, through a combination of effective hard surfaces and converted pervious surfaces, causes a 0.15 cubic feet per second increase in the 100 year recurrence interval flow frequency as estimated using a continuous model approved by the Director.</p> <p>b. Comply with subsection 22.805.080.B.3 (Pre-developed Pasture Standard) if the criteria in subsection 22.805.050.C.3.a do not apply and one or more of the following apply:</p> <p>1. The total new plus replaced hard surface is 5,000 square feet or more; or</p> <p>2. The project converts 3/4 acres or more of vegetation to lawn or landscaped areas, and from the project there is a surface discharge into a natural or constructed conveyance system from the site; or</p> <p>3. The project converts 2.5 acres or more of native vegetation to pasture, and from the project there is a surface discharge</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Volume 1, Section 5.3.2 (SMC, Section 22.805.080.B.2) – Pre-developed Forested Standard • Volume 1, Section 5.3.3 (SMC, Section 22.805.080.B.3) – Pre-developed Pasture Standard • Volume 3, Section 3.4 – BMP Selection for Flow Control • Volume 3, Section 4.1 – Sizing Approach

Stormwater Code Language	References
<i>into a natural or constructed conveyance system from the site.</i>	

4.4.3.4. Parcel-Based Projects Discharging to Small Lake Basins – Flow Control

Stormwater Code Language	References
SMC 22.805.050.C.4 – Parcel-based projects discharging into Bitter Lake, Green Lake, or Haller Lake, or to the drainage basin of such lake, shall comply with the requirements of this section if the total new plus replacement discharge exceeds 5,000 gallons per day. <i>Refer to proposed Stormwater Code (Ch. 22.800-22.808) during public review</i> <i>Final code language to be added to final manual</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Volume 1, Section 5.3.54 (SMC, Section 22.805.080 B.4) – Peak Control Standard Volume 3, Section 3.4 – BMP Selection for Flow Control Volume 3, Section 4.1 – Sizing Approach

4.4.3.5. Parcel-Based Projects Discharging to Public Combined Sewer – Flow Control

At the time this Manual was developed, there was one public combined sewer basin that was determined to have sufficient capacity to carry existing and anticipated loads. Parcel-based projects are not required to provide peak flow control in this basin. Refer to the SDCI website to determine which basins are included in this category ([www.seattle.gov/sdci/codes/codes-we-enforce-\(a-z\)/stormwater-code](http://www.seattle.gov/sdci/codes/codes-we-enforce-(a-z)/stormwater-code) www.seattle.gov/dpd/codesrules/codes/stormwater).

Stormwater Code Language	References
SMC 22.805.050.C.5 – Unless the Director of SPU has determined that the public combined sewer has sufficient capacity to carry existing and anticipated loads, parcel-based projects discharging to a public combined sewer or its basin shall comply with the requirements of this section (Peak Control Standard) if the total new plus replacement discharge exceeds 5,000 gallons per day. <i>Refer to proposed Stormwater Code (Ch. 22.800-22.808) during public review</i> <i>Final code language to be added to final manual</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Volume 1, Section 5.3.54 (SMC, Section 22.805.080 B.4) – Peak Control Standard Volume 3, Section 3.4 – BMP Selection for Flow Control Volume 3, Section 4.1 – Sizing Approach

4.4.3.6. Parcel-Based Projects Discharging to a Capacity-constrained System – Flow Control

Stormwater Code Language	References
SMC 22.805.050.C.6 – Discharges to a Capacity-constrained System. In addition to applicable minimum requirements for flow control in subsection 22.805.050.C.1 through subsection 22.805.050.C.5, parcel-based projects discharging to a capacity-constrained system shall also comply with the requirements of this section (Peak Control Standard) if the total new plus replacement discharge exceeds 5,000 gallons per day or more, unless the project is a public utility project and the system has been determined to have sufficient capacity as specified in subsection 22.805.020.H (Ensure Sufficient Capacity). SMC 22.801.040 – “Capacity-constrained system” means a drainage system or public combined sewer that the Director of SPU has <i>Refer to proposed Stormwater Code (Ch. 22.800-22.808) during public review</i> <i>Final code language to be added to final manual</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Volume 1, Section 4.4.3.1 (SMC, Section 22.805.050.C.1) – Discharges to Wetlands Volume 1, Section 4.4.3.2 (SMC, Section 22.805.050.C.2) – Discharges to Listed Creek Basins Volume 1, Section 4.4.3.3 (SMC, Section 22.805.050.C.3) – Discharges to Non-listed Creek Basins

Stormwater Code Language	References
<p><i>determined to have inadequate capacity to carry existing and anticipated loads, or a drainage system that includes ditches or culverts.</i></p> <p>Refer to proposed Stormwater Code (Ch. 22.800-22.808) during public review</p> <p>Final code language to be added to final manual</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Volume 1, Section 4.4.3.4 (SMC, Section 22.805.050.C.4) – Discharges to Small Lake Basins • Volume 1, Section 4.4.3.5 (SMC, Section 22.805.050.C.5) – Discharges to Public Combined Sewer • Volume 1, Section 5.3.54 (SMC, Section 22.805.080.B.54) – Peak Control Standard • Volume 3, Section 3.4 – BMP Selection for Flow Control • Volume 3, Section 4.1 – Sizing Approach

4.4.3.7. Parcel-Based Projects Discharging Groundwater - Flow Control

Stormwater Code Language	References
<p><i>SMC 22.805.050.C.7 – In addition to applicable minimum requirements for discharge to public combined sewer shall also comply with subsection 22.805.080.B.4 (Peak Control Standard) for projects that will permanently discharge groundwater to a public combined sewer.</i></p> <p>Refer to proposed Stormwater Code (Ch. 22.800-22.808) during public review</p> <p>Final code language to be added to final manual</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • SMC, Section 22.805.050.C.7 – Discharges from Groundwater

Note: If the total estimated groundwater discharge rate from the project site during the wet season is less than 0.007 cfs/acre (i.e., 10 percent of the allowable 2-year discharge rate for the Peak Flow Control Standard), then the groundwater discharge is considered to be de minimis and will not trigger Peak Flow Control Standard. However, if the Peak Flow Control Standard is triggered by another condition, the estimated groundwater discharge rate must be considered in the sizing of the Flow Control BMPs. Estimates of groundwater discharge must be made by a licensed geotechnical engineer or hydrogeologist. If the subsurface drainage for a project (e.g., footing drains, wall drains) extends into a zone containing groundwater, perched or otherwise, evaluation of groundwater discharge is required.

4.4.4. Water Quality Treatment

Stormwater Code Language	References
<p><i>SMC 22.805.050.D – Treatment. Parcel-based projects not discharging to the public combined sewer shall comply with the minimum requirements for treatment contained in Section 22.805.090 for flows from the total new plus replaced pollution-generating hard surface and the new plus replaced pollution-generating pervious surfaces.</i></p> <p>Refer to proposed Stormwater Code (Ch. 22.800-22.808) during public review</p> <p>Final code language to be added to final manual</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> The total new plus replaced pollution-generating hard surface is 5,000 square feet or more; or The total new plus replaced pollution-generating pervious surfaces is 3/4 acres or more, and from the project there is a surface discharge in a natural or constructed conveyance system from the site. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> SMC, Section 22.805.090 – Minimum Requirements for Treatment Volume 1, Section 5.4 (SMC, Section 22.805.090) – Water Quality Treatment Volume 3, Section 3.5 – BMP Selection for Water Quality Treatment Volume 3, Section 4.1 – Sizing Approach

4.5. Reduced Requirements for Certain Land-Disturbing Activities

Certain land-disturbing activities are not required to comply with some of the minimum requirements. These activities are summarized below for utility projects ([Section 4.5.1](#)), pavement maintenance projects ([Section 4.5.2](#)), remediation projects ([Section 4.5.3](#)), and retrofit projects ([Section 4.5.4](#)).

4.5.1. Utility Projects

Applicable utility projects are described in SMC, Section 22.800.040.A.2.a. Note that the installation of side sewers, service drains, and underdrains require a Side Sewer Permit per SMC, Section 21.16.070 (Permit And Fee Required For Connection And Repairs).

Installation of a new fuel tank is not considered a utility project. Projects that include fuel dispensing equipment, installation of underdrains for groundwater collection, parking or driveway areas for utility maintenance or operation, buildings for utility maintenance or operation, or pavement replacement or repair beyond the extent required for the utility maintenance, repair or installation are not considered to be utility projects.

Stormwater Code Language	References
<p><i>SMC 22.800.040.A.2.a – Maintenance, repair, or installation of underground or overhead utility facilities, such as, but not limited to, pipes, conduits and vaults, and that includes replacing the ground surface with in-kind material or materials with similar runoff characteristics are not required to comply with Section 22.805.070 (Minimum Requirements for Overhead Utility Facilities).</i></p> <p>Refer to proposed Stormwater Code (Ch. 22.800-22.808) during public review</p> <p>Final code language to be added to final manual</p> <p>21. The installation, repair, or replacement of utility facilities shall be integral with and contiguous to a road-related project shall comply with Section 22.805.060 (Minimum Requirements for Roadway Projects).</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> None provided Volume 1, Chapter 5 (SMC, Section 22.805.020) – Minimum Requirements for All Projects

4.5.2. Pavement Maintenance Projects

Applicable pavement maintenance projects are described in SMC, Section [22.800.040.A.2.b.](#)

Stormwater Code Language	References
<p>SMC 22.800.040.A.2.b – Pavement maintenance practices limited to the following activities are not required to comply with Section 22.805.060 (Minimum Requirements for Roadway Projects), Section 22.805.070 (Minimum Requirements for On-site Stormwater Management), Section 22.805.080 (Minimum Requirements for Flow Control), or Section 22.805.090 (Minimum Requirements for Treatment). Projects that include any development in addition to the following activities are not exempt:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Pot-hole and square-cut patching; 2. Overlaying existing asphalt or concrete or brick pavement with asphalt or concrete without expanding the area of coverage; 3. Shoulder grading; 4. Reshaping or regrading drainage ditches; 5. Crack sealing; and 6. Vegetation maintenance. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • None provided

Refer to proposed Stormwater Code (Ch. 22.800-22.808) during public review
Final code language to be added to final manual

4.5.3. Remediation Projects

Applicable remediation projects are described in SMC, Section [22.800.040.A.2.c.](#)

Stormwater Code Language	References
<p>SMC 22.800.040.A.2.c – Land disturbing activity that includes replacing the surface with in-kind material having equivalent runoff characteristics and is associated solely with soil remediation or tank removal for the purpose of hazardous waste clean-up or is associated with other development is not required to comply with subsections 22.805.070, 22.805.080, or 22.805.090. Projects that include any development in addition to soil remediation or tank removal replaced with in-kind material or with materials having equivalent runoff characteristics are not exempt.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • None provided

Refer to proposed Stormwater Code (Ch. 22.800-22.808) during public review
Final code language to be added to final manual

4.5.4. Retrofit Projects

Applicable retrofit projects are described in SMC, Section [22.800.040.A.2.d.](#)

Stormwater Code Language	References
<p>SMC 22.800.040.A.2.d – Drainage control facilities that are part of a public retrofit project installed to meet Appendix 12 of the City’s municipal stormwater NPDES permit or for combined sewer control, or other water quality requirements, are not required to comply with Section 22.805.070 (Minimum Requirements for On-site Stormwater Management), Section 22.805.080 (Minimum Requirements for Flow Control), or Section 22.805.090 (Minimum Requirements for Treatment). This exemption does not include land disturbing activities or hard surfaces that are not integral to or are in addition to the drainage control facilities</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • None provided

Refer to proposed Stormwater Code (Ch. 22.800-22.808) during public review
Final code language to be added to final manual

<i>described above, or installation of drainage control facilities that are otherwise required to meet this subtitle.</i>	
---	--

Examples of projects that meet the criteria for retrofit projects include projects whose sole purpose is to reduce runoff, improve water quality, reduce flooding, reduce sanitary sewer overflows (SSOs), or combined sewer overflows (CSOs) and are not otherwise installed as a requirement of meeting the requirements of SMC, Section 22.805. Qualifying project types that address stormwater runoff include:

1. Installation of flow control facilities (e.g., detention tanks, pump stations)
2. Installation of water quality treatment facilities (e.g., water quality treatment pond)
3. Installation of green stormwater infrastructure (e.g., natural drainage systems, bioretention cells)
4. Retrofit of existing drainage and wastewater infrastructure
5. Restoration of riparian buffer
6. Restoration of forest cover
7. Floodplain reconnection project
8. Removal of impervious or hard surfaces
9. Other actions to address stormwater runoff and water quality treatment

4.6. WSDOT Projects

Applicable WSDOT projects are described in SMC, Section 22.800.040.A.6.

Stormwater Code Language	References
<p><i>SMC 22.800.040.A.6 – With respect to all state highway right-of-way under Washington State Department of Transportation (WSDOT) control within the jurisdiction of The City of Seattle, WSDOT shall use the current, approved Highway Runoff Manual (HRM) for its existing and new facilities and rights-of-way, as addressed in WAC 173-270-030(1) and (2). Exceptions to this exemption, where more stringent stormwater management standards apply, shall be:</i></p> <p><u>Refer to proposed Stormwater Code (Ch. 22.800-22.808) during public review</u></p> <p><i>a. Where a local government has adopted more stringent standards to protect the quality of receiving waters, WSDOT shall comply with the same standards to promote uniform stormwater management.</i></p> <p><u>Final code language to be added to final manual</u></p> <p><i>b. Final code language to be added to final manual</i></p> <p><i>c. Other instances where more stringent local stormwater standards apply are projects subject to tribal government standards or to the stormwater management-related permit conditions imposed under Chapter 25.09 to protect environmentally critical areas and their buffers (under the Growth Management Act), an NPDES permit, or shoreline master programs (under the Shoreline Management Act). In addition, WSDOT shall comply with local jurisdiction stormwater standards when WSDOT elects, and is granted permission, to discharge stormwater runoff into a municipality's drainage system or combined sewer system.</i></p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● <i>Volume 1, Section 4.3 (SMC, Section 22.805.060) – Minimum Requirements for Roadway Projects</i> ● <i>WSDOT Highway Runoff Manual</i> ● <i>WAC, Sections 173-270-030(1) and (2) – Best Management Practices – Approved Manual Required and Amendments to Manual</i> ● <i>WAC, Sections 173-270-030(3)(b) and (c) – More Stringent Standards</i> ● <i>SMC, Chapter 25.09 – Environmentally Critical Areas</i>

4.6.4.7. Special Circumstances

Some projects do not closely fit defined project types or have complicating elements. and, therefore, These projects require a case-by-case review (no review of special circumstances sets a precedent) to determine the applicable minimum requirements. These projects shall first go through a pre-permit review process to assist the proponent in identifying the specific minimum requirements to be applied. Project requirements will be based on requirements for roadway projects (refer to Section 4.3) or parcel-based projects (refer to Section 4.4) or a combination, in addition to minimum requirements for all projects (refer to Chapter 3).

The following list is not comprehensive, but gives the proponent an indication of the complexity of the special circumstances. Examples of special circumstances projects include:

- Bridges or tunnels
- Construction over water
- Closed-contour basins
- Draining into more than one basin with conflicting requirements
- Multiple blocks or a subdivision
- Railroads
- Rail stations in public right-of-way
- Work performed in more than one jurisdiction

Projects that propose to develop multiple blocks or a subdivision have the potential for greater impacts to the existing drainage system or public combined sewer. These projects may be required to conduct a more comprehensive downstream analysis examining a larger range of flow and discharge conditions to demonstrate that the project meets the requirement to ensure sufficient capacity (SMC, Section 22.805.020H) and will not cause a significant adverse impact to receiving waters or up-gradient or down-gradient properties (SMC, Section 22.805.020A).

Similarly, projects that discharge to closed-contour basins may be required to demonstrate the project will not cause a significant adverse impact to down-gradient properties (SMC, Section 22.805.020H) and increase either the frequency or severity of flooding, including for peak flows with a 1 percent annual probability.

Projects that discharge to multiple drainage basins will be analyzed separately by drainage basin. To determine which minimum requirements apply and which part of the drainage system or public combined sewer will be analyzed to ensure sufficient capacity, the proponent shall prepare exhibits showing the land disturbing activity anticipated for each receiving water and drainage basin and downstream drainage system. Refer to Section 2.3.

The Director of SPU may determine that subbasins within the public combined sewer system or designated receiving waters are sufficiently distinct and separated to be analyzed independently and as separate areas. Discharges to each of the small lake basins will be analyzed independently and are considered separate areas.

Discharges to each creek basin will be analyzed independently and are considered separate areas. In addition, discharges to distinct branches of a creek, or where the two points discharge to a single creek branch are more than 1/4 mile apart, will be analyzed independently and are considered separate areas.

If a project requires compliance with the Peak Control Standard and either the Pre-Developed Forested or Pre-Developed Pasture Standard apply, the facility shall be sized to meet both standards unless otherwise allowed using the Pre-sized Approach (refer to *Volume 3, Section 4.1.2*).

CHAPTER 5 – MINIMUM REQUIREMENT STANDARDS

This chapter summarizes the standards related to the following minimum requirements:

- Soil amendment (*Section 5.1*)
- On-site stormwater management (*Section 5.2*)
- Flow control (*Section 5.3*)
- Water quality treatment (*Section 5.4*)

Excerpts from the Stormwater Code (in italics) are presented below in the first column in the code reference box in each section. The second column in the code reference box in each section provides applicable references.

5.1. Soil Amendment

Projects triggering this minimum requirement shall retain and protect undisturbed soil in areas not being developed and, prior to completion of the project, amend all new, replaced, and disturbed topsoil with organic matter. This requirement applies to the four primary project types (single-family residential, trail and sidewalk, parcel-based, and roadway projects). General soil amendment requirements included in SMC, Section 22.805.030, Section 22.805.040, Section 22.805.050, and Section 22.805.060 are summarized below.

Stormwater Code Language	References
<p><i>Refer to proposed Stormwater Code (Ch. 22.800-22.808) during public review</i></p> <p><i>Final code language to be added to final manual</i></p>	<p>• Volume 3, Section 51 – Soil Amendment BMP</p>

5.2. On-site Stormwater Management

Projects triggering this minimum requirement shall evaluate on-site stormwater management to meet the applicable design requirements for the specific project type and discharge location. On-site stormwater management includes BMPs that can be used to meet flow control and water quality treatment requirements. General on-site stormwater management requirements included in SMC, Section 22.805.070 are summarized below. Refer to *Section 5.2.1* and *5.2.2* for the On-site Performance Standard and the On-site List Approach.

Stormwater Code Language	References
<p><i>SMC, Section 22.805.070 –</i></p> <p><i>A. Applicability. The requirements of this subsection 22.805.070 apply as required in Section 22.805.030 to Section 22.805.060.</i></p> <p><i>B. Requirements. On-site stormwater management shall be installed to the extent allowed by law and maintained in</i></p> <p><i>1. Comply with</i></p> <p><i>b. Subsection 22.805.070.D (On-site Lists).</i></p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● <i>Volume 1, Section 4.1 – Single Family Residential Projects</i> ● <i>Volume 1, Section 4.2 – Trail and Sidewalk Projects</i> ● <i>Volume 1, Section 4.3.2 – On-site Stormwater Management for Roadway Projects</i> ● <i>Volume 1, Section 4.4.2 – On-site Stormwater Management for Parcel-Based Projects</i> ● <i>Volume 1, Section 5.2.1 (SMC, Section 22.805.070.C) – On-site Performance Standard</i> ● <i>Volume 1, Section 5.2.2 (SMC, Section 22.805.070.D) – On-site Lists</i> ● <i>Volume 3, Section 3.3 – BMP Selection for On-site Stormwater Management</i> ● <i>Volume 3, Section 4.1 – Sizing Approach</i> ● <i>Volume 3, Section 5.1 – Soil Amendment BMP</i> ● <i>Volume 3, Section 5.2 – Tree Planting and Retention</i> ● <i>Appendix C – On-site Stormwater Management Infeasibility Criteria</i>

Refer to proposed Stormwater Code (Ch. 22.800-22.808) during public review. Final code language to be added to final manual

Projects triggering this minimum requirement shall evaluate on-site stormwater management to meet the applicable design requirements for the given project type, size, and discharge location as summarized in *Chapter 2*. Two approaches that can be used for evaluating Minimum Requirements for On-site Stormwater Management include the following:

- On-site Performance Standard per *Section 5.2.1*, or
- On-site Lists per *Section 5.2.2*.

5.2.1. On-site Performance Standard

Stormwater Code Language	References
<p>SMC 22.805.070.C –</p> <p>1. If the existing hard surface coverage is less than 35 percent and</p> <p><u>Refer to proposed Stormwater Code (Ch. 22.800-22.808) during public review</u></p> <p>2. For all other projects:</p> <p><u>Final code language to be added to final manual</u></p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Volume 3, Section 3.3.2 – On-site Performance Standard Approach • Volume 3, Section 4.1.3 – Modeling Approach • Appendix F – Hydrologic Analysis and Design

5.2.2. On-site Lists

Stormwater Code Language	References
<p>SMC 22.805.070.D –</p> <p>1. For each project surface, follow the appropriate project table in subsection 22.805.070.D.2 to subsection 22.805.070.D.5 to evaluate on-site BMPs shown for that type of surface, by category. The project tables apply to roofs and other hard (non-roof) surfaces. All on-site BMPs used must comply with the rules promulgated by the Director. For each surface, consider all of the</p> <p><u>Refer to proposed Stormwater Code (Ch. 22.800-22.808) during public review</u></p> <p><u>Final code language to be added to final manual</u></p> <p>a. Design criteria, minimum size, limitations, and infeasibility criteria shall comply with the rules promulgated by the Director; and</p> <p>b. Competing Needs: Subsection 22.805.070.D (On-site Lists) can be superseded or reduced by the Director if the installation of the BMPs is in conflict with:</p> <p>1) Any of the following federal or state laws, rules, and standards, as may be amended or superseded: Historic Preservation and Archaeology Laws identified in subsection 22.805.070.E (Historic Preservation and Archaeology Laws), Federal Superfund or Washington State Model Toxics Control Act, Federal Aviation Administration requirements for airports, the Americans with Disabilities Act, and related rules and standards; or</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Volume 3, Section 3.3.1 – On-site List Approach • Volume 3, Section 4.1.1 – On-site List Approach • Appendix C – On-site Stormwater Management Infeasibility Criteria

Stormwater Code Language	References
<p>2) <i>Special zoning district design criteria adopted and being implemented pursuant to a community planning process. Special zoning districts include, for example, historic and preservation districts, pedestrian zone overlays, station</i></p> <p><u>Refer to proposed Stormwater Code (Ch. 22.800-22.808) during public review</u></p> <p><u>Final code language to be added to final manual</u></p> <p>3) <i>Public health and safety standards; or</i></p> <p>4) <i>Transportation regulations to maintain the option for future expansion or multi-modal use of public rights-of-way; or</i></p> <p>5) <i>Chapter 15.43 (Tree and Vegetation Management in Public Places); Chapter 25.09 (Regulations for Environmentally Critical Areas); Chapter 25.11 (Tree Protection); and Chapter 23.60A (Standards for Vegetation in the Shoreline Master Plan).</i></p> <p>2. <i>For single-family residential projects, Table A for 22.805.070 applies.</i></p> <p>3. <i>For trail and sidewalk projects, Table B for 22.805.070 applies.</i></p> <p>4. <i>For parcel-based projects, Table C for 22.805.070 applies.</i></p> <p>5. <i>For roadway projects, Table D for 22.805.070 applies.</i></p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● <i>Volume 3, Section 3.3.1 – On-site List Approach</i> ● <i>Volume 3, Section 4.1.1 – On-site List Approach</i> ● <i>Appendix C – On-site Stormwater Management Infeasibility Criteria</i>

5.2.2.1. Single-Family Residential Projects

Table A for 22.805.070. On-site List for Single-Family Residential Projects.

Category	BMPs	All Discharge Locations
1	Full Dispersion	R, S
	Infiltration Trenches	R, S ^d
	Drywells	R, S ^d
2	Rain Gardens ^a	R, S
	Infiltrating Bioretention	R, S
	Rainwater Harvesting – Category 2 Sizing	X ^b
	Permeable Pavement Facilities	R, S
	Permeable Pavement Surfaces	S
3	Full Dispersion	R, S
	Trench Downspout Dispersion	S
	Trench Downspout Dispersion	R
4	Non-infiltrating Bioretention	R, S
	Rainwater Harvesting – Category 4 Sizing	X ^c
	Vegetated Roofs	X
5	Single-family Residential Cisterns	R
	Perforated Stub-out Connections	R
	Trees	S

Refer to proposed Stormwater Code (Ch. 22.800-22.808) during public review
Final code language to be added to final manual

Note that subsection 22.805.070.D.1 requires consideration of all on-site BMPs in a category for feasibility before moving on to each successive category as necessary. Within a category, BMPs may be considered in any order.

BMPs – Best Management Practices

R = Evaluation is required for all roof runoff from Single-family residential projects.

S = Evaluation is required for all other hard (non-roof) surfaces of Single-family residential projects, unless otherwise noted below .

X = Evaluation is not required but is allowed.

^a Installation is only allowed for projects with less than 5,000 square feet of hard surface infiltrating on the project site.

^b Category 2 rainwater harvesting shall be sized to meet the on-site performance standard, subsection 22.805.070.C.

^c Category 4 rainwater harvesting shall be sized to reduce the runoff volume by 25 percent or more on an annual average basis.

^d Evaluation of other hard (non-roof) surfaces is not required but is allowed.

5.2.2.2. Trail and Sidewalk Projects

Table B for 22.805.070. On-site List for Trail and Sidewalk Projects.

Category	BMPs	Projects Discharging to a Receiving Water Not Designated by Section 22.801.050, or its Basin [creek, small lake basin, or wetland]	Projects Discharging to a Public Combined Sewer or Capacity Constrained System, ^c or its Basin	Projects Discharging to a Designated Receiving Water, or its Basin
1	Full Dispersion	S	S	S
2	Rain Gardens	S	S	X
	Permeable Pavement	S	S	X ^{a,b}
	Sidewalk/Trail Compost	S	S	S
3	Sheet Flow Dispersion	S	S	S
	Concentrated Flow Dispersion	S	S	S
4	Trees	S	S	S

Refer to proposed Stormwater Code (Ch. 22.800-22.808) during public review
Final code language to be added to final manual

Note that subsection 22.805.070.D.1 requires consideration of all on-site BMPs in a category for feasibility before moving on to each successive category as necessary. Within a category, BMPs may be considered in any order.

BMPs – Best Management Practices

S = Evaluation is required for all surfaces of trail or sidewalk projects.

X = Evaluation is not required for trail or sidewalk projects.

^a Minimum permeable pavement area allowed in right-of-way is 2,000 square feet of pavement within the project site.

^b Installation is not allowed in the right-of-way if new plus replaced pollution-generating hard surface area is less than 2,000 square feet of pavement within the project site.

^c Does not include any project discharging to a receiving water not designated by Section 22.801.050 (e.g., wetlands, creeks, and small lakes), or its basin, even if the project discharges to a capacity-constrained system or its basin.

5.2.2.3. Parcel-Based Projects

Table C for 22.805.070. On-site List for Parcel-Based Projects.

Category	BMPs	Projects Discharging to a Receiving Water Not Designated by Section 22.801.050 [creek, small lake basin, or wetland], a Public Combined Sewer or Capacity Constrained System, or its Basin	Projects Discharging to a Designated Receiving Water or its Basin
1	Full Dispersion	R, S	R, S
	Infiltration Trenches	R, S ^g	R, S ^g
	Drywells	R, S ^g	R, S ^g
2	Rain Gardens	R ^a , S ^a	R ^a , S ^a
	Infiltrating Bioretention	R, S	R, S
	Rainwater Harvesting – Category 2 Sizing	X ^e	X ^e
	Permeable Pavement Facilities	R, S	R, S
	Permeable Pavement Surfaces	S	S
	Sidewalk/Trail Compost-Amended Strip	S	S
4	Non-infiltrating Bioretention	R ^d , S ^d	R ^d , S ^d
	Rainwater Harvesting – Category 4 Sizing	R ^{b,f}	X ^f
	Vegetated Roofs	R ^c	X
5	Perforated Stub-out Connections	R	R
	Trees	S	S

Refer to proposed Stormwater Code (Ch. 22.800-22.808) during public review
Final code language to be added to final manual

Note that subsection 22.805.070.D.1 requires consideration of all on-site BMPs in a category for feasibility before moving on to each successive category as necessary. Within a category, BMPs may be considered in any order.

BMPs – Best Management Practices

R = Evaluation is required for roof runoff from parcel-based projects, unless otherwise noted below.

S = Evaluation is required for all other hard (non-roof) surfaces of parcel-based projects, unless otherwise noted below.

X = Evaluation is not required but is allowed.

^a Rain gardens cannot be used to meet Section 22.805.080 (Minimum Requirements for Flow Control) or Section 22.805.090 (Minimum Requirements for Treatment) or for areas of 5,000 square feet or more of hard surface infiltrating on the project site.

^b Evaluation is not required for projects with less than 20,000 square feet of new plus replaced rooftop surface.

^c Evaluation is not required for projects with less than 5,000 square feet of new plus replaced rooftop surface.

^d Water quality treatment BMPs sized to meet Section 22.805.090 (Minimum Requirements for Treatment) may be installed in lieu of non-infiltrating bioretention unless the project discharges to a public combined sewer basin.

^e Category 2 rainwater harvesting shall be sized to meet the on-site performance standard, subsection 22.805.070.C.

^f Category 4 rainwater harvesting shall be sized to reduce the runoff volume by 25 percent or more on an annual average basis.

^g Evaluation of other hard (non-roof) surfaces is not required but is allowed.

5.2.2.4. Roadway Projects

Table D for 22.805.070. On-site List for Roadway Projects.

Category	BMPs	Projects Discharging to a Receiving Water Not Designated by Section 22.801.050, or its Basin [creek, small lake basin, or wetland]	Projects Discharging to a Public Combined Sewer or Capacity Constrained System, ⁹ or its Basin	Projects Discharging to a Designated Receiving Water Basin
1	Full Dispersion	S	S	S
2	Rain Gardens	S ^a	S ^a	S ^a
<i>Refer to proposed Stormwater Code (Ch. 22.800-22.808) during public review</i>				
	Permeable Pavement	S ^c	S ^c	X ^{c, e, f}
<i>Final code language to be added to final manual</i>				
3	Sheet Flow Dispersion	S	S	S
	Concentrated Flow Dispersion	S	S	S
4	Trees	S	S	S

Note that subsection 22.805.070.D.1 requires consideration of all on-site BMPs in a category for feasibility before moving on to each successive category as necessary. Within a category, BMPs may be considered in any order.

BMPs – Best Management Practices

PGIS – Pollution generating impervious surface

S = Evaluation is required for all surfaces of Roadway Projects.

X = Evaluation is not required for Roadway Projects, but is allowed.

^a Rain gardens cannot be used to meet Section 22.805.080 (Minimum Requirements for Flow Control) or Section 22.805.090 (Minimum Requirements for Treatment) or for areas of 5,000 square feet or more of hard surface infiltrating on the project site.

^b Minimum bioretention cell size top area in right-of-way is 500 square feet (including pre-settling area). Evaluation is only required and installation only allowed when contributing area is sufficient to warrant minimum bioretention cell size in right-of-way.

^c Evaluation is not required, and installation is not allowed, if new plus replaced pollution-generating hard surface is less than 2,000 square feet.

^d Evaluation of roadway surfaces is not required, and installation is not allowed, if roadway is an arterial street/collector.

^e Evaluation of roadway surfaces, including alleys, is not required and installation is not allowed.

^f Minimum permeable pavement area allowed in right-of-way is 2,000 sf of pavement within the project site.

⁹ **Does not** include any project discharging to a receiving water not designated by Section 22.801.050 (e.g., wetlands, creeks, and small lakes), or its basin, even if the project discharges to a capacity-constrained system or its basin.

- Flow control BMPs are not required if the site fully infiltrates all flows, as determined by a licensed civil engineer using an approved continuous runoff model for the 158-year simulation period (refer to *Appendix F*).

Excerpts from the Stormwater Code (in italics) are presented below in the first column in each section. The second column in each section provides applicable references.

5.3.1. Wetland Protection Standard

Stormwater Code Language	References
<p><i>SMC 22.805.080.B.1 – Wetland Protection Standards. Protect the functions and values of wetlands and their buffers from all projects discharging stormwater directly or indirectly to them. The hydrologic conditions, vegetative community, and substrate characteristics of the wetland shall be preserved. Discharges shall be controlled to prevent flows and discharge temperatures that exceed the natural regime. Sediment, heat and other pollutants shall be minimized through the maintenance of temporary and permanent controls.</i></p> <p><i>Before authorizing new discharges to a wetland, alternative discharge locations shall be evaluated and infiltration options outside the wetland shall be maximized. Discharges shall be controlled to protect the functions and values of the wetland. If flow control requirements contained in 22.805.080.B.2 through 22.805.080.B.4 also apply to the project, an analysis shall be conducted to ensure that the functions and values of the affected wetland are protected before implementing these flow control requirements. .</i></p> <p><i>Notwithstanding any provision in this subtitle, no net loss of wetland functions of values shall result from actions regulated by this subtitle.</i></p> <p><i>Refer to the Washington State Wetland Rating System for Western Washington: 2014 Update (Hruby, 2014) to determine the category, characteristics, and habitat score of the wetland. Wetland classification shall be determined by a wetland professional per rules promulgated under subsection 25.09.330.C (Regulations for Environmentally Critical Areas).</i></p> <p><i>a. Comply with subsection 22.805.080.B.1.c (Wetland Protection Standard—Method 1: Monitoring and Wetland Stage Modeling) if the following applies:</i></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <i>1) The project discharges to a Category I or II depressional or riverine impounding wetland; and</i> <i>2) The project owner has legal access to the entire wetland for purposes of conducting monitoring in the wetland.</i> <p><i>b. Comply with subsection 22.805.080.B.1.d (Wetland Protection Standard—Method 2: Site Discharge Modeling) if the criteria in subsection 22.805.080.B.1.a do not apply and one or more of the following applies (or applicability is unknown):</i></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <i>1) The wetland is Class I or II and does not meet the requirements of subsection 22.805.080.B.1.a.</i> <i>2) The wetland is Class III or IV and:</i> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <i>a) Has a habitat score greater than 5;</i> 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • SMC, Section 22.805.080.B.2 – Pre-developed Forested Standard • SMC, Section 22.805.080.B.3 – Pre-developed Pasture Standard • SMC, Section 22.805.080.B.54 – Peak Control Standard • Volume 1, Section 3.7 – Protect Wetlands • Guide sheets 1 through 3 in the SWMMWW Volume I, Appendix I-CD (Ecology 20192014)

Stormwater Code Language	References
<p>b) Is interdunal and has special characteristics; c) Provides habitat for rare, threatened, endangered, or sensitive species; or d) Contains breeding population of any native</p> <p><u>Refer to proposed Stormwater Code (Ch. 22.800-22.808) during public review</u></p> <p>c. Wetland Protection Standard—Method 1: Monitoring and Wetland Stage Modeling. Comply with I-C.4, Wetland Hydroperiod Protection, presented in Appendix I-C of Ecology’s Stormwater Management Manual for Western Washington (Ecology 2019). Projects triggering Method 1 shall refer to I-C-5, Wetland Hydroperiod Data Collection and Evaluation Procedures, presented in Appendix I-C of Ecology’s Stormwater Management Manual for Western Washington (Ecology 2019) for additional guidance.</p> <p>d. Wetland Protection Standard—Method 2: Site Discharge Modeling. The total volume of stormwater discharging from the site into a wetland shall not be more than:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1) On a daily basis, 20 percent higher or lower than the pre-project volume, and 2) On a monthly basis, 15 percent higher or lower than the pre-project volume. <p>Projects triggering Method 2 shall refer to I-C-5, Wetland Hydroperiod Data Collection and Evaluation Procedures, presented in Appendix I-C of Ecology’s Stormwater Management Manual for Western Washington (Ecology 2019) for additional guidance.</p>	

5.3.2. Pre-Developed Forested Standard

Stormwater Code Language	References
<p><u>Refer to proposed Stormwater Code (Ch. 22.800-22.808) during public review</u></p> <p><u>Final code language to be added to final manual</u></p>	<p>Volume 3, Section 3.4 – BMP Selection for Flow Control Volume 3, Section 4.1 – Sizing Approach Appendix I, Hydrologic Analysis and Design</p>

5.3.3. Pre-Developed Pasture Standard

Stormwater Code Language	References
<p><i>SMC 22.805.080.B.3 – The post-development discharge durations shall match the discharge durations of the existing land cover for the range of pre-developed discharge durations from 50 percent of the 2-year peak flow to the 2-year peak flow.</i></p> <p>Refer to proposed Stormwater Code (Ch. 22.800-22.808) during public review</p> <p>Final code language to be added to final manual</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Volume 3, Section 3.4 – BMP Selection for Flow Control Volume 3, Section 4.1 – Sizing Approach Appendix I – Hydrologic Analysis and Design

5.3.4. Existing Condition Standard

Stormwater Code Language	References
<p><i>SMC 22.805.080.B.4</i></p> <p><i>a. The post-development discharge durations shall be limited as follows:</i></p> <p><i>1) Match the discharge durations of the existing land cover for the range of pre-developed discharge durations from 50 percent of the 2-year peak flow to the 2-year peak flow.</i></p> <p><i>2) For discharge durations of a small lake or a small lake basin, also match the discharge durations of the existing land cover for the range of discharge rates from 50 percent of the 2-year peak flow to the 50-year peak flow.</i></p> <p>Refer to proposed Stormwater Code (Ch. 22.800-22.808) during public review</p> <p>Final code language to be added to final manual</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Volume 3, Section 3.4 – BMP Selection for Flow Control Volume 3, Section 4.1 – Sizing Approach Appendix I – Hydrologic Analysis and Design

Existing conditions means the conditions of drainage, vegetation, and impervious cover at the time of analysis.

5.3.5. Peak Control Standard

Stormwater Code Language	References
<p><i>SMC 22.805.080.B.5</i></p> <p><i>a. The post-development release rates shall be limited as follows:</i></p> <p><i>1) The peak flow with a 50 percent annual probability (2-year recurrence flow) shall not exceed 0.07 cubic feet per second per acre.</i></p> <p><i>2) The peak flow with a 10 percent annual probability (10-year recurrence flow) shall not exceed 0.10 cubic feet per second per acre.</i></p> <p><i>3) The peak flow with a 4 percent annual probability (25-year recurrence flow) shall not exceed 0.40 cubic feet per second per acre.</i></p> <p>Refer to proposed Stormwater Code (Ch. 22.800-22.808) during public review</p> <p>Final code language to be added to final manual</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Volume 3, Section 3.4 – BMP Selection for Flow Control Volume 3, Section 4.1 – Sizing Approach Appendix I – Hydrologic Analysis and Design

5.4. Water Quality Treatment

Projects triggering this minimum requirement based on the amount of pollution generating surface shall install water quality treatment BMPs, which typically remove pollutants through a combination of gravity settling, filtration, biological uptake, and soil adsorption. General

water quality treatment requirements included in SMC, Section 22.805.090 are summarized below.

Note:

- Projects with 35 percent or greater existing hard surface may manage a smaller portion of the project’s new and replaced hard surface area to meet water quality treatment requirements if only On-site BMPs are employed. Specifically, if water quality treatment is required and only On-site BMPs are used, the hard surface area requiring management may be reduced by up to 2,000 square feet if On-site BMPs are utilized to the maximum extent feasible.
- [An approved landscape management plan \(LMP\) can be used as an alternative to the requirement to formally treat \(with a water quality treatment BMP\) the runoff from pollution generating pervious surfaces subject to water quality treatment. A LMP is a City approved plan for defining the layout and long-term maintenance of landscaping features to minimize the use of pesticides and fertilizers, and reduce the discharge of suspended solids and other pollutants. Runoff from an impervious area that is routed to a pervious area is not included in a LMP and must be addressed separately through applying Minimum Requirements #5, #6, and/or #7. LMPs do not apply to artificial turf fields. LMPs are required to be updated if the layout of landscaping features will be substantially modified or if specific maintenance approaches will be altered from the approved LMP. Refer to Appendix I for LMP submittal requirements.](#)
- Refer to *Volume 3, Section 4.4* for applicable presettling and pretreatment requirements.

Stormwater Code Language	References
<p>SMC, Section 22.805.090 –</p> <p>A. Applicability. The requirements of this subsection apply to the extent required in Section 22.805.050 to Section 22.805.060.</p> <p>B. Requirements. Water quality treatment facilities shall be installed to <i>Refer to proposed Stormwater Code (Ch. 22.800-22.808) during public review</i></p> <p><i>Final code language to be added to final manual</i></p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Volume 1, Section 4.3.4 – Treatment Requirements for Roadway Projects • Volume 1, Section 4.4.4 – Treatment Requirements for Parcel-Based Projects • Volume 1, Section 5.4.1.1 – Runoff Treatment Volume • Volume 1, Section 5.4.1.2 – Runoff Treatment Rates • Volume 1, Section 5.4.1.3 – Infiltration Treatment Requirements • Volume 3, Section 4.4 – Presettling and Pretreatment Requirements

Water quality treatment BMPs shall be designed based on the stormwater runoff volume from the contributing area or a peak flow rate as outlined in the following subsections.

5.4.1. General Water Quality Treatment Requirements

5.4.1.1. Runoff Treatment Volume

The water quality design treatment volume is determined as follows:

Stormwater Code Language	References
<p>SMC, Section 22.805.090.B.1.a – The daily runoff volume at or below which 91 percent of the annual runoff volume occurs, as determined using an approved continuous runoff model.</p> <p><i>Refer to proposed Stormwater Code (Ch. 22.800-22.808) during public review</i></p> <p><i>Final code language to be added to final manual</i></p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Volume 1, Section 5.4.1.3 – Infiltration Treatment Requirements • Volume 3, Section 4.1 – Sizing Approach • Appendix F – Hydrologic Analysis and Design

5.4.1.2. Runoff Treatment Rates

Stormwater Code Language	References
<p>SMC, Section 22.805.090.B.1.b – Different design flow rates are required depending on whether a treatment facility will be located upstream or downstream of a detention facility:</p> <p><i>Refer to proposed Stormwater Code (Ch. 22.800-22.808) during public review</i></p> <p><i>Final code language to be added to final manual</i></p> <p>2) For facilities located downstream of detention, the design flow rate shall be the full 2-year release rate, as determined using an approved continuous runoff model.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Volume 3, Section 4.1 – Sizing Approach • Appendix F – Hydrologic Analysis and Design

5.4.1.3. Infiltration Treatment Requirements

Stormwater Code Language	References
<p>SMC, Section 22.805.090.B.1.c – Infiltration facilities designed for water quality treatment must infiltrate 91 percent of the total runoff volume as determined using an approved continuous runoff model.</p> <p><i>Refer to proposed Stormwater Code (Ch. 22.800-22.808) during public review</i></p> <p><i>Final code language to be added to final manual</i></p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Volume 1, Section 5.4.1.1 – Runoff Treatment Volume • Volume 3, Section 4.1 – Sizing Approach • Volume 3, Section 4.4 – Pretreating and Pretreatment Requirements • Appendix F – Hydrologic Analysis and Design

Note that the “91st percentile, 24-hour volume” referenced above represents the upper limit of the range of daily volumes that accounts for 91 percent of the entire runoff volume over a multi-decade period of record.

5.4.2. Water Quality Treatment Standards

Projects triggering this minimum requirement shall install water quality treatment BMPs for the given project type, size, and discharge location as summarized in *Chapter 2*. Refer to *Section 5.4.2.1* through *5.4.2.4* for oil, phosphorus, enhanced, and basic water quality treatment standards.

When triggered, water quality treatment BMPs shall be installed to treat flows from the pollution-generating hard surface (PGHS) and pollution-generating pervious surface (PGPS) on the site being developed. When stormwater flows from other areas, including non-PGHS (e.g., roofs), dewatering activities, and flows that cannot be separated or bypassed, water quality treatment BMPs shall be sized for the combined total flow. *Direct discharge of untreated drainage water to groundwater is prohibited (SMC, Section 22.805.090.B.6).*

<i>Refer to proposed Stormwater Code (Ch. 22.800-22.808) during public review</i>	<i>Final code language to be added to final manual</i>
---	--

Excerpts from the Stormwater Code (in italics) are presented below in the first column in each section. The second column in each section provides applicable references.

5.4.2.1. Oil Control Treatment

Oil control treatment applies to projects that include “high-use sites” or have NPDES permits that require application of oil control. Oil control treatment is in addition to other water quality treatment requirements (i.e., phosphorus, enhanced, or basic). The petroleum storage and transfer criterion is intended to address regular transfer operations such as gasoline service stations.

The project proponent shall develop an Average Daily Traffic (ADT estimate for approval by the City (<http://data-seattlecitygis.opendata.arcgis.com/search?tags=transportation> www.seattle.gov/transportation/tfdmaps.htm). In addition to the typical sites outlined in the definition for high-use site, the City may also require oil control treatment to be used on other sites that have the potential to generate high concentrations of oil or with oil handling activity.

Stormwater Code Language	References
<i>SMC, Section 22.805.090.B.3 – An oil control treatment facility shall be required for high-use sites, as defined in this subtitle.</i> <i>SMC, Section 22.801.090 – High-use sites shall be those that generate high concentrations of oil due to high traffic volume or that frequently store, transfer, or use oil.</i> 1. An area of a commercial or industrial site subject to an expected average daily traffic (ADT) count equal to or greater than 100 vehicles per 1,000 square feet of gross building area;	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Volume 3, Section 3.5 – BMP Selection for Water Quality Treatment

<p>2. An area of a commercial or industrial site subject to petroleum storage and transfer in excess of 1,500 gallons per year, not including routinely delivered heating oil.</p> <p>4. A road intersection with a seasonal ADT count of 25,000 vehicles or more on the main roadway and 15,000 vehicles or more on any intersecting roadway, excluding projects proposing primarily pedestrian or bicycle use improvements.</p>	<p>Refer to proposed Stormwater Code (Ch. 22.800-22.808) during public review</p> <p>Final code language to be added to final manual</p>
---	--

5.4.2.2. Phosphorus Treatment

The requirement to provide phosphorus treatment is determined by the discharge location of the project. Phosphorus treatment is required for projects discharging stormwater to or infiltrating within 1/4 mile of a nutrient-critical receiving water or a tributary to that water. [If the soil suitability criteria for infiltrating BMPs are met \(refer to Volume 3, Section 4.5.2\) and pre-settling is provided \(refer to Volume 3, Section 4.4\), then it is assumed that the phosphorus treatment performance goal is met.](#)

At the time this Manual was developed, there were no nutrient-critical receiving water segments determined to be impaired due to phosphorus contributed by stormwater. In the future, the City may designate a waterbody as a nutrient-critical receiving water as defined by the SMC, Section 22.801.150. Refer to the SDCI website to determine if any nutrient-critical receiving waters have been designated ([www.seattle.gov/sdci/codes/codes-we-enforce-\(a-z\)/stormwater-code](http://www.seattle.gov/sdci/codes/codes-we-enforce-(a-z)/stormwater-code)www.seattle.gov/dpd/codesrules/codes/stormwater).

Stormwater Code Language	References
<p>Refer to proposed Stormwater Code (Ch. 22.800-22.808) during public review</p> <p>Final code language to be added to final manual</p>	<p>• Volume 3, Section 4.5.2 • Section 4.4 for Water Quality Treatment • Volume 3, Section 4.4 • Pretreatment</p>

Project sites subject to the phosphorus treatment requirement could also be subject to the oil treatment and enhanced treatment requirements (Section 5.4.2.1 and Section 5.4.2.3).

5.4.2.3. Enhanced Treatment

The requirement to provide enhanced treatment is determined by the discharge location of the project and activities occurring on the project site. [If the soil suitability criteria for infiltrating BMPs are met \(refer to Volume 3, Section 4.5.2\) and pre-settling is provided \(refer to Volume 3, Section 4.4\), then it is assumed that the enhanced treatment performance goal is met.](#)

Stormwater Code Language	References
<p><i>SMC, Section 22.805.090.B.5 – Enhanced Treatment. Unless a project discharges to a basic treatment receiving water (subsection 22.801.030 “B”), an enhanced treatment facility for reducing concentrations of dissolved metals shall be required for projects that discharge, directly or through conveyance systems, to fresh waters designated for aquatic life use or having an existing aquatic life use, or that use infiltration strictly for flow control (not treatment) and discharge within one-quarter mile of fresh water use, if the project meets the following criteria:</i></p> <p><i>a. For a parcel-based project, the site is either:</i></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <i>1. A fully controlled or a partially controlled limited access highway with Annual Average Daily Traffic counts of 15,000 or more; or</i> <i>2. Any other road with an Annual Average Daily Traffic count of 7,500 or greater.</i> 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>Volume 3, Section 3.5 – BMP Selection for Water Quality Treatment</i> • <i>Volume 3, Section 4.4.3.2 – Pretreatment</i>

Refer to proposed Stormwater Code (Ch. 22.800-22.808) during public review

Final code language to be added to final manual

Note: Sites not considered residential, industrial, or road-related are considered commercial for the purposes of applying enhanced treatment requirements. Examples include transit facilities, parks, and schools.

Sites that discharge directly (or, indirectly through a drainage system) to a Basic Treatment Receiving Water (Section 5.4.2.4) are not subject to enhanced treatment requirements. Likewise, any portion of a project site that is identified as subject to basic treatment requirements only (Section 5.4.2.4) are not subject to enhanced treatment requirements.

Project sites subject to the enhanced treatment requirement could also be subject to the oil control treatment requirement (Section 5.4.2.1), and phosphorus treatment requirement if discharging to a nutrient-critical receiving water (Section 5.4.2.2).

5.4.2.4. Basic Treatment

Projects triggering water quality treatment shall install, at a minimum, a BMP facility that meets the basic treatment requirements. The requirements for oil control treatment (which may also be required if the project includes “high-use sites,” refer to Section 5.4.2.1), phosphorus treatment, and enhanced treatment are in addition to the basic treatment requirement. If the soil suitability criteria for infiltrating BMPs are met (refer to Volume 3, Section 4.5.2) and pre-settling is provided (refer to Volume 3, Section 4.4), then it is assumed that the basic treatment performance goal is met. Areas that must provide phosphorus treatment or enhanced treatment do NOT have to provide additional basic treatment BMPs to meet the basic treatment performance goal.

Basic treatment is required in the following circumstances:

- Project sites that discharge stormwater to the ground (i.e., via infiltration) UNLESS:
 - The soil suitability criteria for infiltration treatment are met (refer to *Volume 3, Section 4.5.2*) and pre-settling is provided (refer to *Volume 3, Section 4.4*), or

- The project site uses infiltration strictly for flow control – not treatment—~~and the discharge is within 1/4 mile of a nutrient critical receiving water (refer to Section 5.4.2.2),~~ or
- The project site is required to provide enhanced treatment (refer to Section 5.4.2.3).
- Single-family residential projects not otherwise required to provide phosphorus control (Section 5.4.2.2) as designated by EPA, Ecology, or the City.
- Project sites discharging directly (or indirectly through a drainage system) to the following Basic Treatment Receiving Waters:
 - All marine waters, including Puget Sound
 - Lake Union
 - Lake Washington
 - Ship Canal and bays between Lake Washington and Puget Sound
 - Duwamish River
- Project sites that drain to fresh waters, or to waters tributary to fresh waters, that are not designated for aquatic life use and that do not have an existing aquatic life use. As provided in Chapter 173-201A WAC, all surface waters of the state, including but not limited to wetlands, in or near the City are to be protected for designated aquatic life use. For the purposes of the Stormwater Code and this Manual, the City of Seattle interprets “fresh waters designated for aquatic life use” to include at minimum fresh water wetlands as well as small lakes, creeks, and freshwater designated receiving waters.
- Landscaped areas of industrial, commercial, and ~~multi-family-multifamily~~ project sites.
- ~~Parking lots of industrial and commercial project sites, dedicated solely to parking of employees’ private vehicles that do not involve any other pollution-generating activities (e.g., industrial activities; customer parking; storage of erodible or leachable material, wastes, or chemicals; vehicle maintenance).~~

Stormwater Code Language	References
<p><i>SMC, Section 22.805.090.B.2 – A basic treatment facility shall be required to provide treatment of stormwater runoff (Control Treatment), subsection 22.805.090.B.4 – Phosphorus Treatment, in addition to this basic treatment requirement.</i></p> <p>Refer to proposed Stormwater Code (Ch. 22.800-22.808) during public review.</p> <p>Final code language to be added to final manual</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Section 5.4.1 (SMC, Section 22.805.090.B.3) – Control Treatment • Section 5.4.2 (SMC, Section 22.805.090.B.4) – Phosphorus Treatment • Section 5.4.3 (SMC, Section 22.805.090.B.5) – Enhanced Treatment • Volume 3, Section 3.5 – BMP Selection for Water Quality Treatment • Volume 3, Section 4.1 – Sizing Approach • Appendix F – Hydrologic Analysis and Design

Note that in addition to basic treatment, oil control treatment may also be required if the project includes “high use sites.” Refer Section 5.4.2.1.

CHAPTER 6 – ALTERNATIVE COMPLIANCE

[Alternative compliance in creek basins applies only within the city of Seattle.](#)

Stormwater Code Language	References
<p>SMC 22.800.080 – Authority</p> <p>E. The Director of SPU is authorized, to the extent allowed by law, to develop, review, or approve an Integrated Drainage Plan as an equivalent means of complying with the requirements of this subtitle, in which the developer of a project voluntarily enters into an agreement with the Director of SPU to implement an Integrated Drainage Plan that is specific to one or more sites where best management practices are employed such that the cumulative effect on the discharge from the site(s) to the same receiving water body is not greater than the discharge from the site(s) to the same receiving water body as the project. (SMC 22.800.080.E)</p> <p><u>Refer to proposed Stormwater Code (Ch. 22.800-22.808) during public review</u></p> <p>F. For projects that require a sewer system, the Director of SPU is authorized, to the extent allowed by law, to enter into an agreement with the developer to allow a project's flow control, water quality treatment, on-site stormwater management, or other measures to be implemented at an alternative location if the following conditions are met, or if an alternative location is identified in the project's stormwater management plan:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The developer enters the agreement voluntarily to contribute funds toward the construction of, or to construct, one or more drainage control facilities at an alternative location to mitigate the impacts to the same receiving water that have been identified as a consequence of the project; and 2. The alternative location is for an equivalent area in terms of flow and pollution characteristics when compared with the project, as determined by the Director; and <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. The site of the project has greater than or equal to 35 percent existing hard surface coverage and the project discharges to: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1) A Listed Creek and the equivalent area is in-basin, which means that the equivalent area is on the same site as the project, the project is located within contributing area to the equivalent area, or the equivalent area discharges from the public drainage system to the receiving water at the same point as (or upstream of) the point where the project area discharges from the public drainage system to the same receiving water; or 2) A receiving water other than a Listed Creek and the equivalent area discharges to the same receiving water as the project. (SMC 22.800.080.F) <p><u>Final code language to be added to final manual</u></p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Not applicable

Stormwater Code Language	References
<p>G. For projects that discharge to the combined sewer system, the Director of SPU is authorized, to the extent allowed by law, to</p> <p><u>Refer to proposed Stormwater Code (Ch. 22.800-22.808) during public review</u></p> <p>Final code language to be added to final manual</p> <p>be met at an alternative location, determined by the Director, to mitigate the impacts that have been identified as a consequence of the project. (SMC 22.800.080.G)</p>	

When the consequences of the proposed development are from new [impervious-hard](#) surfaces, the mitigation should be provided at the same time as completion of the new surfaces. When the consequences of the proposed development are from replaced [impervious-hard](#) surfaces, there should be a construction plan and schedule that ensure the stormwater control BMP(s) mitigating the impacts are constructed within 5 years of the original development, which may be required by state law.

CHAPTER 7 – SITE ASSESSMENT AND PLANNING

To help evaluate minimum requirements and start the process for selecting on-site stormwater management, flow control, and water quality treatment [best management practices](#) (BMPs), each project shall assess and evaluate existing and post-development site conditions. This chapter describes typical site information and design considerations to be identified early in the project development process. The goal of site assessment and planning is to identify any additional stormwater management issues that shall be addressed before selecting on-site stormwater management, flow control, and/or water quality treatment BMPs. Additional information on drainage control reviews and required plan submittals is included in *Chapter 8*.

7.1. Identifying Key Project Components

Chapter 3 presents steps for determining the applicable on-site stormwater management, flow control, and water quality treatment requirements. The following sections provide additional guidance on key project components that can significantly influence the project design and approach, and should be considered as part of the site assessment and planning step.

7.2. Project Boundaries and Structures

Project boundaries, nearby structures, and other related issues can directly affect [designs for stormwater management designs](#). The following shall be addressed before selecting a stormwater BMP:

- Project Boundaries: The project boundaries typically define the limits of disturbance and can affect the thresholds and applicable minimum requirements. Project boundaries generally coincide with the right-of-way and/or property line, [but may include multiple properties. Refer to Section 2.1.](#)
- Setbacks: Property lines, existing and proposed structures, and adjacent right-of-way boundaries shall be identified and considered to evaluate project impacts on adjacent properties.
- Location of Buildings: All existing and proposed buildings shall be identified, including all existing and proposed temporary and permanent structures ([e.g., such as](#) retaining walls) and [hard-impervious](#) surfaces ([e.g.,](#) driveways [and,](#) patios, [etc.](#)). Structures on neighboring properties can also affect stormwater BMP selection.
- Foundations and Footing Drains: The type of proposed foundations and footing drains, including location and extent, shall be determined, to include the following:
 - Conventional spread footings
 - Pile shaft
 - Basement

- Footing drains and their associated point of discharge, where applicable
- Water-tight foundation without footing drains
- Elevation of groundwater table in relation to the footings and basement

7.3. Soil Condition Assessment

The soil type and land cover types on the project [site](#) shall be evaluated to assess the infiltration capacity of the site and the applicability of various stormwater BMPs. General requirements for [determining](#) infiltration feasibility, site characterization, and infiltration rate [determination](#) are presented in *Volume 3, Sections 3.2 and 4.5.2* and *Appendix D*.

7.4. Environmentally Critical Areas (ECAs)

Additional regulatory requirements are placed upon projects that are within or near ECAs, pursuant to SMC, Chapter 25.09. Depending upon the type of ECA, additional requirements or limitations regarding stormwater management may apply.

[The following information is needed to assess the impacts on and risks posed to wetlands and to determine the necessary protection level:](#)

- [Size, boundary, and characteristics of the proposed project site, wetland contributing drainage area, and the wetland and its buffer](#)
- [Wetland type, category, and habitat score \(based on the Wetland Protection Guidelines in the Stormwater Management Manual for Western Washington \(SWMMWW\) Volume I, Appendix I-C \[Ecology 2019\]\)](#)
- [Presence of rare, endangered, threatened, or sensitive species](#)
- [Presence of breeding populations of native amphibian species](#)
- [Legal access to the wetland](#)

7.5. Dewatering

It is important to have early estimations of the groundwater discharge from the project site. The site's proximity to receiving waters, or its location in areas where there may be perched, static, tidally influenced, or hydraulically connected groundwater can have significant impacts on how the project is designed and which other minimum requirements apply. Refer to the Minimum Requirements for Flow Control (*Section 5.3*) and the Minimum Requirements to Ensure Sufficient Capacity (*Section 3.8*).

If temporary dewatering [will](#) occur, a Side Sewer Permit for Temporary Dewatering (SSPTD) and a Discharge Authorization Letter from King County Industrial Waste may be required prior to commencing dewatering at the site. The SSPTD [permit](#) may require compliance with a separate Temporary Dewatering Plan, water quality treatment, flow control requirements, and [also require](#) compliance monitoring.

7.6. Topography

Because topography will influence how and where stormwater BMPs are incorporated onto the site, the existing and proposed topography shall be considered. Important features to assess include the following:

- Key terrain features, such as closed depressions and grade breaks
- Natural drainage courses, such as swales, ditches, rills, and gullies
- Flow entering and exiting the property
- Roadway grades and elevations

7.7. Site Assessment

The following information shall be evaluated as part of the site assessment:

- **Topography:** Topography within 500 feet of the site ([geographic information system \[GIS\]](#)) topographic data may be used
- **Steep Slope or Landslide-Prone Areas:** Location of steep slope areas or landslide-prone areas within 500 feet of the site
- **Septic Systems and Drain Fields:** Location of septic systems and drain fields in the vicinity of the site
- **Underground Storage Tanks, Aboveground Storage Tanks, Residential Heating Oil Tanks:** Location of underground storage tanks, above ground storage tanks, or residential heating oil tanks in the vicinity of the site
- **Contaminated Sites and Landfills:** Location of contaminated sites and abandoned landfills within 100 feet of the site

For roadway projects or parcel-based projects with runoff from 5,000 square feet or more of impervious area ~~to infiltrated on the site~~, the following information shall also be evaluated:

- **Site Geology:** Local site geology, including soil or rock units likely to be encountered, the groundwater regime, and geologic history of the site
- **Water Supply Wells:** Location of water supply wells within 500 feet of the site
- **Contaminated Sites and Landfills:** Location of contaminated sites and abandoned landfills within 500 feet of the site
- **Groundwater Protection Areas:** Location of groundwater protection areas and/or 1-, 5-, and 10-year time of travel zones for municipal well protection areas
- **Anticipated Site Use:** ~~Anticipated site use (Street/highway, residential, commercial, high-use site that may affect the water quality of stormwater runoff)~~

For projects proposing to use deep infiltration BMPs, the following information shall also be reviewed and mapped:

- Regional geologic mapping
- Publicly available geotechnical exploration data

- Steep slope and landslide-prone areas within a quarter mile (1,320 feet) of proposed [location of the deep infiltration BMP](#)

Sources of data to evaluate site suitability include, but are not limited to, City of Seattle Department of Construction and Inspection ([SDCI](#)) Critical Area maps, Washington Department of Natural Resources ([DNR](#)) Subsurface GIS, Flood Hazard maps, and other mapping information available from the City of Seattle (including Seattle Public Utilities [[SPU](#)] and the Seattle Department of Transportation [[SDOT](#)]), King County, and consultant reports for other public agencies. Any of the above information identified as part of the review shall be shown on a map relative to the proposed infiltration location(s).

Using the site assessment information, evaluate the site for infiltration suitability based on the limitations and setbacks provided in *Volume 3, Section 3.2 and Appendix D, Section D-2.2.4*. Based on this evaluation, identify all portions of the site where infiltration may be feasible. Additionally, for [underground injection control \(UIC\) wells](#), setback and site restrictions shall be in accordance with the UIC [requirements in Volume I of the SWMMWW Guidance Manual](#) (Ecology 2019). [UIC wells are regulated by the Washington State Department of Ecology \(Ecology\) under federal and state laws and must comply with all federal and state requirements.](#)

7.8. [Landscaping Principles](#)

Before designing the site and stormwater infrastructure, consider the following:

- Maintain and use natural drainage patterns
- Preserve and use natural features and resources, including trees
- [Preserve native vegetation \(refer to BMP T5.40, Preserving Native Vegetation, in Volume V of the SWMMWW \[Ecology 2019\]\)](#)
- Create a multifunctional landscape using the natural site hydrology as a framework for site design
- Confine and phase construction activities to minimize disturbed areas, and [minimize impacts onto ECAs environmentally critical areas](#) and their associated buffers
- Plant new trees in proximity to ground-level impervious surfaces for on-site stormwater management and/or flow control credit
- Minimize or prevent compaction and protect soils

[Soil type, slope, exposure, depth to groundwater, and the suite of plants chosen for the site will all influence the proposed landscape management approach. However, there are five basic principles that must be considered for all sites to be successful in controlling the export of soil or organic matter, fertilizers, and pesticides in stormwater runoff:](#)

- [Minimize bare soil areas](#)
- [Reduce water demand](#)
- [Reduce extent of turf area—manage remaining turf to reduce pollutant impact](#)
- [Select plants with sustainability in mind](#)

- Reduce or eliminate fertilizers, pesticides, herbicides, and fungicides and, where required, manage application wisely

Each of the five basic principles is expanded upon in the following subsections. The recommendations discussed for each principle are intended as a framework for a variety of site situations, from individual homes to large parks and golf courses. The specific application of each of these principles will vary from site to site depending on the type of landscaping (e.g., grass lawn, planter bed, or athletic field) that is being managed.

7.8.1. Principle 1: Minimize Bare Soil Areas

Bare soil areas are one source of solids that can be mobilized and carried downstream by rainfall. Minimizing bare soil areas makes it less likely that solid particles will be dislodged by rainfall. Landscapes can be managed to minimize bare soil using one or more of the following:

- Establish dense plantings of pest-resistant groundcover to shade out weeds. Some easy-care recommendations are rock rose (*Cistus sp.*), snowberry (*Symphoricarpos alba*), salal (*Gaultheria shallon*) and kinnickinick (*Arctostaphylos uva-ursi*).
- If bare soil areas are required, as in planting beds or ball diamonds, surround the bare area with an area of grass or groundcover to filter out solids that may be picked up by stormwater runoff.
 - The denser the grass or groundcover, the more effective it will be in capturing solids in runoff.
 - The filtering area should be as level as possible, minimizing low spots, where runoff can concentrate and create channels.
 - In general, filtering areas should be about one-fourth as long (along the flowpath) as the area contributing flow, assuming that the slopes are gentle (less than 10 percent). For flat, level areas without dips, this length can be reduced.
- Promptly repair bare patches in lawns or groundcovers that could contribute solids to stormwater runoff.
- Do not place bark or loose mulch on slopes where it can be carried to storm drains or receiving waters.

7.8.2. Principle 2: Reduce Water Demand

Reducing the need for irrigation reduces the potential movement of pollutants, conserves water, and saves money.

- Use drought-tolerant or native vegetation.
- Install underground irrigation systems timed to water at night or drip irrigation systems. Systems with automatic leak detection capability will reduce inadvertent runoff due to a break in the system.
- Increase the organic content of soils to improve its water-retention capability.
- Terrace sloped areas to improve water retention.

7.8.3. Principle 3: Reduce Turf Area and Manage Remaining Turf to Reduce Pollutant Impact

Turf requires care to look attractive. In addition to mowing, turf areas typically require water, fertilizer, and weed and disease control. However, some practices can reduce or minimize the amount of chemical controls needed.

- Amend soil with organic matter per *Volume 3, Section 5.1*.
- Decide whether all lawn area needs the same level of upkeep: let some areas have a less formal look, if possible, and reduce or eliminate fertilizer and pesticide use in those areas. Apply fertilizer only if the need is indicated by soil testing, and apply it at rates recommended by a soil testing laboratory for current conditions.
- Rely on irrigation and lawn aeration as the primary tools for maintaining healthy turf.
- Remove thatch each year to increase water penetration to grass roots and reduce runoff.
- In shady areas, plant groundcovers rather than grass. Turf grasses usually need at least partial sun to remain vigorous.

7.8.4. Principle 4: Select Plants with Sustainability in Mind

Plants differ in their ability to cope with different soils, rainfall conditions, pests, diseases, and microclimates. Techniques that can be used to create landscapes requiring less intervention include the use of resilient plant species, the selection of plants with adaptations for particular environments, and the creation of optimal microenvironments. Less watering and a reduced need for pesticide and fertilizer application means less potential for pollutants to leave the site.

- Select disease-resistant plants.
- Select drought-resistant groundcovers, shrubs, and trees in areas with poor soil or little shading.
- Group plants in clusters with tree, shrub, and groundcover layers to create a better micro-environment and to supply organic matter back to the soil.
- Include plants in the landscape that are important for beneficial insects such as parasitic wasps. If beneficial insects have nothing to sustain them, they will not stick around to control pests when you need them.
- Use dense plantings or close spacing to shade out weeds rather than herbicides.
- On steep slopes or erosion-prone areas, use plants with fibrous roots including, but not limited to, the following:
 - Ornamental grasses and lawn grasses
 - Dwarf rose (*Rosa gymnocarpa*) – native
 - Nootka rose (*Rosa nutkana*) – native
 - Rock rose (*Cistus* sp.)
 - Rugosa rose (*Rosa rugosa*)

- [Evergreen huckleberry – native](#)
- [Salal \(*Gaultheria shallon*\) – native](#)
- [Salmonberry \(*Rubus spectabilis*\) – native](#)
- [Snowberry \(*Symphoricarpos alba* or *Symphoricarpos mollis*\) – native](#)
- [Sword fern \(*Polystichum munitum*\) – native](#)
- [Use wetland plants in areas with seeps or a high groundwater table.](#)
- [Consider sourcing native plants from more southern latitudes that may be more genetically apt to thrive better under future climate conditions than plants sourced in Puget Sound.](#)
- [Attend to installation details. Write enforceable planting specifications that include details such as soil preparation, plant spacing, plant condition and size, planting depth, transplant handling and irrigation. During installation, inspect the planting to prevent the use of shortcuts such as blowing the soil mixture around root balls rather than digging the roots into amended native soils. Where possible, specify and install bare-root plants for improved adaptation to native soils.](#)

7.8.5. *Principle 5: Reduce or Eliminate Fertilizer, Pesticide, Herbicide, and Fungicide Use and Where, Required, Manage Application Wisely*

[Use of fertilizers, pesticides, and herbicides should be reduced or eliminated to the maximum extent feasible. However, if the landscape plants and turf simply will not survive without fertilization and some amount of pest management, an Integrated Pest Management plan or landscape management plan \(refer to *Appendix I*\) must address when and how these actions will be taken so that the impact on water quality will be reduced.](#)

- [Keep plants healthy by building healthy soil using composted organic material. Healthy plants can better resist diseases and insect pests.](#)
- [Tailor fertilizer formulation to lawn needs. Apply fertilizer only if the need is indicated by soil testing, and apply it at rates recommended by a soil testing laboratory for current conditions. Adjust the fertilizer application rate and timing of applications to avoid carry-off in stormwater runoff.](#)
- [Reduce the phosphorus \(P\) concentration in fertilizers when possible by using a low phosphorus formulation or formulations containing only nitrogen or potassium.](#)
- [Use an Integrated Pest Management approach to control pests \(see *Appendix I*\). Include non-chemical control options as a first-defense against pests.](#)
- [Encourage a diverse insect community in your landscape: Beneficial insects can help control pests, especially pests of trees and shrubs.](#)
- [Target pesticide application to the specific pest of concern. Avoid pesticide “mixes” targeting generic problems \(such as weed and feed\) unless you actually need each of the formulations for a current problem.](#)
- [Apply pesticides only during the life-stage when the pest is vulnerable.](#)

- Use fungicides very sparingly; they disrupt the base of aquatic food webs. If you need to use fungicides, spray formulations with faster break-down times.
- Tolerate some weeds.

7.9. Site Design Considerations

To manage stormwater effectively and efficiently, site design for both the construction phase and the post-development condition should ~~coincide~~be done in unison with the design and layout of the stormwater infrastructure. Efforts should be made, as required and encouraged by local development codes, to conserve natural areas, retain native vegetation, reduce impervious surfaces, and integrate stormwater controls into the existing site layout to the maximum extent feasible. With careful planning, these efforts will not only help achieve the minimum requirements contained in the Stormwater Code, but can also reduce impacts from development projects and ~~reduce~~ the costs of water quality treatment and flow control.

Before designing the site and stormwater infrastructure, consider the following:

- Stormwater:
 - Identify the approved point of discharge and conveyance system flowpath~~flow path~~, both pipe and topographically
 - Manage stormwater runoff (quantity and quality) as close to the point of origin as possible
 - Minimize the required quantity of stormwater collection and conveyance systems ~~required~~
 - Use simple, nonstructural methods for stormwater management
 - Use dispersion, infiltration, rainwater harvesting, and alternative surface BMPs where feasible
- Impervious and Pervious Surfaces:
 - Fit development to the terrain to minimize land disturbance
 - For sites with varied soil types, locate impervious areas over less permeable soil (e.g., till). Minimize development over more porous soils. Use areas of porous soils ~~for~~by locating bioretention and permeable pavement ~~over them~~.
 - Cluster buildings together
 - Minimize impervious surfaces (e.g., buildings and, sidewalks)
 - Minimize pollution-generating hard surfaces (PGHS) (e.g., areas subject to vehicular use such as driveways and parking strips)
 - Minimize pollution-generating pervious surfaces (PGPS)

CHAPTER 8 – DRAINAGE CONTROL REVIEW AND APPLICATION REQUIREMENTS

Most construction and land use projects in Seattle require a permit from [the Seattle Department of Construction and Inspection \(SDCI\)](#) and/or [the Seattle Department of Transportation \(SDOT\)](#). There are two levels of Drainage Control Review types include required for construction permits: [Preliminary Drainage Review](#), Standard Drainage Review, and ~~and~~ Comprehensive Drainage Review. The type of Drainage Control Review required is based on the [project type and the proposed](#) total amount of new plus replaced hard surface and the total amount of land-disturbing activity.

Forms and submittal documents for projects not conducted in the right-of-way (typically on private property) can be found on the SDCI website ([www.seattle.gov/sdci/codes/codes-we-enforce-\(a-z\)/stormwater-codewww.seattle.gov/dpd/codesrules/codes/stormwater](http://www.seattle.gov/sdci/codes/codes-we-enforce-(a-z)/stormwater-codewww.seattle.gov/dpd/codesrules/codes/stormwater)).

Forms and submittal documents for projects conducted in the right-of-way can be found on SDOT’s website (www.seattle.gov/transportation/permits-and-services/permits/street-improvement-permitswww.seattle.gov/transportation/stuse_sip.htm).

The City also has resources available at the SDCI Applicant Services Center, including SDCI staff available to answer questions, and relevant “Tips” with detailed information for construction projects. Visit the SDCI Applicant Services Center ~~on the 20th floor of the Seattle Municipal Tower 700 Fifth Avenue, Seattle, Washington 98124~~, or the website (www.seattle.gov/sdciwww.seattle.gov/dpd).

[Refer to Section 4.9](#) for additional information regarding complex projects.

8.1. Preliminary Drainage Review

Preliminary Drainage Review is required for Master Use Permits (MUPs) summarized below.

Stormwater Code Language	References
<p>SMC 22.807.020.A – Thresholds for Drainage Control Review</p> <p>1. Preliminary drainage review and approval is required for applications for the following approvals:</p> <p>a. Subdivisions (Chapter 22.32); b. Short plats (Chapter 22.44); c. Until lot subdivisions (SMC 22.807.020.A); d. Out boundary adjustments (Chapter 22.38); e. Master use permits that would allow development that includes 750 square feet or more of new plus replaced hard surface or 5,000 square feet of land disturbing activity where the Director has determined that a preliminary drainage review is required considering, but not limited, to the following attributes of the site:</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • None provided

Refer to proposed Stormwater Code (Ch. 22.800-22.808) during public review
Final code language to be added to final manual

- | | |
|---|--|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 1) Location within an environmentally critical area or buffer; 2) Proximity and tributary to an environmentally critical area or buffer; and 3) Proximity and tributary to an area with adequacy, erosion, water quality, or flooding problems. | |
|---|--|

The submittals required for Preliminary Drainage Review shall include the following, at a minimum. Refer to [Appendix B](#) for additional requirements for specific types of MUPs:

- [Preliminary Drainage Control Plan*](#). The required elements for a Preliminary Drainage Control Plan are the same as for a Drainage Control Plan for Standard or Comprehensive Review with the following differences:
 - [On-site Stormwater Management BMPs for proposed lots/parcels where the future development is unknown shall show conceptual BMPs.](#)
 - [Tables for estimated new and replaced hard surface area for each proposed lot, parcel, tract, etc.](#)
- [Preliminary Site Plan \(elements can be incorporated within Drainage Control Plan\)*](#). The required elements for a Preliminary Site Plan are the same as for a Site Plan for Standard or Comprehensive Review with the following differences:
 - [Details](#)
- [Preliminary On-site stormwater management documentation*](#)
- [Preliminary Drainage Report or Flow Control and Water Quality Documentation*](#)
 - [Tables for estimated hard surface coverage, etc.](#)
 - [*All submittals for Preliminary Drainage Review shall be identified as "Preliminary." Preliminary Drainage Review approval does not permit construction. Standard or Comprehensive Drainage Review approval will be required for all associated construction permits.](#)

Note: Refer to [Appendix B](#) for instances when some of the listed items may be deferred to the construction permits rather than being submitted with the MUP application.

8.2. Standard Drainage Review

Standard Drainage Review generally applies to projects that involve 750 square feet or more, but less than 1 acre, of land-disturbing activity, and less than 5,000 square feet of new plus replaced hard surface.

For a project with no offsite discharge point as determined by the Director ([refer to Volume 3, Section 4.3.2](#)) or includes development conducted in or near a receiving water requiring a Hydraulic Project Approval (WAC 220-660), the drainage control plan shall be prepared by a licensed engineer ([SMC 22.807.020.B.2.b](#)) (~~refer to Volume 3, Section 4.3.2~~).

Stormwater Code Language	References
SMC 22.807.020.A – Thresholds for Drainage Control Review 2. Standard drainage review and approval is required for the following:	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● None provided

<p><i>a. Applications other than those listed in subsection 22.807.020.A.1 that include any land disturbing activity encompassing an area of 5,000 square feet or more, including demolition permits;</i></p> <p><i>b. Applications for a building permit or other construction permit that authorizes the construction or installation of 750 square feet or more of</i></p> <p><i>c. Applications for a building permit that authorizes the construction or installation of 750 square feet or more of</i></p> <p><i>d. Applications for a building permit that authorizes the cumulative addition of 750 square feet or more of new plus replaced hard surface and land disturbing activity;</i></p> <p><i>e. City public works projects or construction contracts, including contracts for land clearing, site preparation, and other earthmoving activities, for the cumulative addition of 750 square feet or more of new plus replaced hard surface and/or land disturbing activity on a site, except for projects in a City-owned right-of-way and except for work performed for the operation and maintenance of park lands under the control or jurisdiction of the Department of Parks and Recreation;</i></p> <p><i>f. Applications for approvals and contracts that include any new or replaced hard surface or any land disturbing activity on a site deemed a potentially hazardous location, as specified in Section 22.800.050 (Potentially Hazardous Locations);</i></p> <p><i>g. Applications for approvals that include any new hard surface in a Category I peat settlement-prone area delineated pursuant to Section 25.09.012;</i></p> <p><i>h. Whenever an exception to a requirement set forth in this Subtitle VIII or in a rule promulgated under this Subtitle VIII is desired, whether or not review and approval would otherwise be required, including, but not limited to, alteration of natural drainage patterns or the obstruction of watercourses;</i></p> <p><i>i. Whenever roadway project infeasibility pursuant to subsection 22.805.060.E is applied, whether or not review and approval would otherwise be required or</i></p> <p><i>j. Applications for approvals for activities or projects for:</i></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <i>1. Fueling at dedicated stations, for new or substantially altered fueling stations.</i> <i>2. In-water and over-water fueling.</i> <i>3. Maintenance and repair of vehicles and equipment.</i> <i>4. Concrete and asphalt mixing and production.</i> <i>5. Recycling, wrecking yard, and scrap yard operations.</i> <i>6. Storage of liquids in aboveground tanks.</i> <i>7. Other projects that the Director determines pose a hazard to public health, safety or welfare; endanger any property; adversely affect the safety and operation of City right-of-way, utilities, or other property owned or maintained by the City; or adversely affect the functions and values of an environmentally critical area or buffer.</i> 	<p style="text-align: center;"> <u>Refer to proposed Stormwater Code (Ch. 22.800-22.808) during public review.</u> <u>Final code language to be added to final manual</u> </p>
---	---

The submittals required for Standard Drainage Review shall include the following, at a minimum:

- ~~Construction Stormwater Control and Soil Management Plan~~ (refer to *Volume 2—~~Construction Stormwater Control~~*) including a dewatering plan if groundwater dewatering will occur.
- ~~Post Construction Soil Management Plan~~ (refer to and *Volume 3, Section 5.1*)
- Standard Drainage Control Plan
 - Site and drainage control summary
 - Existing drainage infrastructure
 - Location of drainage discharge from the site
 - Drainage collection and conveyance measures (e.g., inlets, catch basins, maintenance holes, downspouts, drain lines, subgrade drainage, pumps, etc.)
 - Identification of uphill run-on areas (i.e., areas that may contribute stormwater runoff onto the project site)
 - On-site Stormwater Management BMPs and hard surface identification (refer to see On-site Stormwater Management documentation below)
 - Flow Control BMPs
 - Water Quality Treatment BMPs
 - Source Control BMPs
 - Identification of the which of the following standards are met with each BMP using the following abbreviations:
 - On-site Stormwater Management (OSM)
 - Flow Control (FC)
 - Water Quality (WQ)
 - Source Control (SC)
 - Maintenance instructions
- Site Plan (elements can be incorporated within Drainage Control Plan)
 - Address of project and permit number
 - Creeks, streams, shorelines and any other Environmentally Critical Areas (ECAs) or their buffers
 - Areas to be protected
 - Names, widths, and improvement types of adjacent streets and alleys
 - Type, location, and dimension of curbs, sidewalks, and street trees
 - All other trees at least 6 inches in diameter or larger measured 4.5 feet above the ground
 - Location of all existing and proposed driveways, parking areas, and other paved areas and hard surfaces
 - Size and shape of current and proposed buildings (including overhangs) and all other structures (retaining walls, etc.)
 - Entrances

- Building identifiers (for sites with more than one building)
- [Existing grades/ground elevations including contours, flow lines and/or slope arrows, and tops and bottoms of slopes, and retaining walls, etc.](#)
- [Proposed grades/ground elevations including contours, spot elevations, flow lines and/or slope arrows, tops and bottoms of slopes, and retaining walls, etc., with enough information to identify drainage patterns.](#)
- [Existing and proposed retaining walls](#)
- Existing and proposed below grade and above grade utilities and infrastructure
- Property line dimensions
- Existing and proposed easements
- Setbacks
- On-site stormwater management documentation:
 - Hard surface identification (e.g., roofs, driveways, sidewalks, patios)
 - On-site Stormwater Management BMP selection and sizing (refer to *Volume 3, Section 3.3*, and *Chapter 5*)
 - Documentation of On-site Stormwater Management BMPs determined to be infeasible (refer to *Appendix C*)
 - Where dispersion is not feasible, documentation demonstrating infeasibility (refer to *Volume 3, Section 3.1*)
 - Where infiltration is not feasible, documentation demonstrating infeasibility (refer to *Volume 3, Section 3.2*)
 - Subsurface investigation, infiltration test results, or groundwater analysis, as required per *Volume 3, Sections 3.2* and *5.4.1*, and *Appendix D*
- Flow control documentation, if triggered. Required documentation may include:
 - Flow control BMP selection and sizing (refer to *Volume 3, Section 3.4*, and *Chapter 5*)
 - Details of any flow control device assembly, including orifice and weir sizing and elevations, if used
 - Modeling documentation (refer to *Appendix F*)
 - [Subsurface investigation, infiltration test results, or groundwater analysis as required per *Volume 3, Sections 3.2* and *5.4.1*, and *Appendix D*](#)
- Memorandum of Drainage Control for projects not located in the right-of-way including, at a minimum (SMC, Section 22.807.020.B.1.d):
 - The legal description of the site
 - A summary of the terms and limitations of the drainage control plan
 - [Identify all stormwater BMPs specific to the project \(e.g., catch basins, permeable pavement surfaces, detention pipes, biofiltration swales, wash pads\).](#)

- An agreement to inform future purchasers/successors/assignees of the existence, limitations, and inspection and maintenance requirements of the stormwater ~~control~~ BMPs
- [Landscape management plan \(if applicable\)](#)
- The side sewer permit number, date, and name
- Permission for the City to enter the property for inspection, monitoring, correction, and abatement purposes
- Acknowledgment by the owner(s) that the City is not responsible for the adequacy or performance of the drainage control plan, and a waiver of any and all claims against the City for any harm, loss, or damage related to the plan, or to drainage or erosion on the property, except for claims arising from the City's sole negligence
- The owner(s)' signatures acknowledged by a notary public
- Operations and maintenance (O&M) plan for stormwater BMPs or include reference to the O&M requirements in *Appendix G* on the Drainage Control Plan

8.3. Comprehensive Drainage Review ~~for Large Projects~~

Stormwater Code Language	References
<p>SMC 22.807.020.A – Thresholds for Drainage Control Review</p> <p>3. The Comprehensive Drainage Review Plan shall be required for applications other than those listed in section 22.807.020.A.1 that include:</p> <p>a. Five thousand (5,000) square feet or more of new plus replaced hard surface;</p> <p>b. One acre or more of land disturbing activity;</p> <p>c. Conversion of 3/4 acres or more of vegetation to lawn or landscaped area; or</p> <p>d. Conversion of 2.5 acres or more of native vegetation to pasture.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● None provided

Refer to proposed Stormwater Code (Ch. 22.800-22.808) during public review

Final code language to be added to final manual

~~Comprehensive Drainage Review Plan is required for projects involving 5,000 square feet or more of new plus replaced hard surface or 1 acre or more of land disturbing activity, shall be prepared by a licensed engineer.~~

In addition to the requirements of the Standard Drainage Review, the following information is required for the Comprehensive Drainage Review:

- ~~Comprehensive~~ [A Drainage Control Plan Report](#) including, ~~at a minimum consisting of:~~
 - [Comprehensive Drainage Control Construction Drawing including all elements of a Standard Drainage Control Plan.](#)
 - [A Comprehensive Construction Stormwater Control and Soil Management Plan narrative, supporting calculations, and supporting documents including the Checklist to Select Large Project Construction BMPs \(refer to Table 1b in Volume 2, Chapter 3.](#)
 - [A Comprehensive Drainage Control Report including, but not limited to \(see Appendix B for other required elements and recommended format\):](#)

- A narrative detailing the proposed project, summary of minimum requirements, and proposed stormwater management
- Narrative of existing conditions including drainage basins, existing surface types, soil conditions, groundwater conditions, Environmentally Critical Areas (ECAs), and known contamination
- [Dispersion feasibility analysis and documentation \(refer to *Volume 3, Section 3.1*\)](#)
- [Infiltration feasibility analysis and documentation \(refer to *Volume 3, Section 3.2*\)](#)
- [On-site stormwater management documentation and supporting calculations \(if triggered\). Refer to *Section 8.2*.](#)
- [Flow control documentation and supporting calculations \(if triggered\). Refer to *Section 8.2*.](#)
- [Water quality documentation and supporting calculations \(if triggered\)](#)
- [Landscape management plan \(if applicable\). Refer to *Appendix I*.](#)
- [Source control documentation and calculations \(if required\)](#)
- Drainage basin maps
- Inspection and O&M requirements and schedule [for stormwater BMPs and for any applicable landscape management plans](#)

8.4. Additional Documentation

Additional information may be required by the Director based on project specifics (e.g., infeasibility evaluation, existing conditions) to allow adequate evaluation of a project for compliance with the requirements and purpose of the Stormwater Code and other laws and regulations.

Such information includes, but is not limited to:

- Soils analysis
- Geotechnical report
- Survey of existing native vegetation cover (SMC, Section 25.11.050)
- Topographic/boundary survey (SMC, Section 25.09.330)
- Environmental assessment for potentially contaminated sites
- [Downstream analysis](#)
- [Upstream analysis](#)
- [Basin analysis](#)
- [Landscape management plan \(See *Appendix I* for submittal requirements\)](#)
- [Closed contour analysis](#)

This page intentionally left blank

SDCI	Director's Rule 10-2021
SPU	Director's Rule DWW-200

Applicant: Department of Construction & Inspections Seattle Public Utilities	Page: # of ###	Supersedes: SDCI: 17-2017 SPU: DWW-200 (2017)
	Publication: TBD	Effective: 07/01/2021
Subject: Stormwater Manual Volume 2 of 5	Code and Section Reference: SMC 22.800-22.808	
	Type of Rule: Code interpretation	
	Ordinance Authority: SMC 3.06.040, 3.32.020	
Index: Title 22.800 Stormwater Code	Approved: _____ Nathan Torgelson, Director, SDCI	Date: _____
	Approved: _____ Mami Hara, General Manager/CEO, SPU	Date: _____

PUBLIC REVIEW DRAFT
VOLUME 2 —
CONSTRUCTION STORMWATER CONTROL

CITY OF SEATTLE
SEATTLE PUBLIC UTILITIES
DEPARTMENT OF CONSTRUCTION AND INSPECTIONS

March 2021

Note:

Some pages in this document have been purposely skipped or blank pages inserted so that this document will print correctly when duplexed.

Table of Contents

CHAPTER 1 - Introduction.....	1-1
1.1. What is the Purpose of this Volume?.....	1-1
1.2. How Does this Volume Apply to Construction?.....	1-1
1.2.1. City of Seattle Requirements.....	1-1
1.2.2. How to Use This Volume.....	1-2
1.3. What is Considered “Compliance”?.....	1-2
1.3.1. Surface Water Quality.....	1-2
1.3.2. Groundwater Quality.....	1-3
1.3.3. Downstream Infrastructure and Resources.....	1-3
1.4. What is Considered “Out of Compliance”?.....	1-4
1.5. Purpose of Construction Stormwater Best Management Practices (BMPs).....	1-5
CHAPTER 2 - Construction Stormwater Control and Soil Management Plan.....	2-1
2.1. Small Project Construction Stormwater Control and Soil Management Plan.....	2-1
2.2. Large Project Construction Stormwater Control and Soil Management Plan.....	2-3
2.3. Certified Erosion and Sediment Control Lead.....	2-3
2.3.1. Description.....	2-3
2.3.2. Purpose.....	2-3
2.3.3. Conditions Where Practice Applies.....	2-3
2.3.4. Certification Criteria.....	2-4
2.3.5. Duties and Responsibilities.....	2-4
CHAPTER 3 - Selecting Construction Stormwater Controls.....	3-1
CHAPTER 4 - Standards and Specifications for Construction Erosion and Sedimentation Control.....	4-1
4.1. Cover Practices.....	4-2
4.1.1. Temporary Cover Practices.....	4-2
4.1.1.1. BMP E1.10: Temporary Seeding.....	4-3
4.1.1.2. BMP E1.15: Mulching, Matting, and Compost Blankets.....	4-6
4.1.1.3. BMP E1.20: Clear Plastic Covering.....	4-11
4.1.2. Permanent Cover Practices.....	4-13
4.1.2.1. BMP E1.30: Preserving Natural Vegetation.....	4-14
4.1.2.2. BMP E1.35: Buffer Zones.....	4-17
4.1.2.3. BMP E1.40: Permanent Seeding and Planting.....	4-19
4.1.2.4. BMP E1.45: Sodding.....	4-22
4.1.2.5. BMP E1.50: High-Visibility Fence.....	4-24
4.2. Erosion Control Practices.....	4-25
4.2.1. Temporary Erosion Control BMPs.....	4-25
4.2.1.1. BMP E2.10: Stabilized Construction Access.....	4-27
4.2.1.2. BMP E2.15: Tire Wash.....	4-30
4.2.1.3. BMP E2.20: Construction Road Stabilization.....	4-32

4.2.1.4.	BMP E2.35: Check Dams.....	4-34
4.2.1.5.	BMP E2.40: Triangular Silt Dike (TSD).....	4-37
4.2.1.6.	BMP E2.45: Dust Control.....	4-39
4.2.2.	Permanent Erosion Control BMPs.....	4-41
4.2.3.	Temporary or Permanent Erosion Control BMPs.....	4-42
4.2.3.1.	BMP E2.70: Subsurface Drains.....	4-43
4.2.3.2.	BMP E2.80: Earth Dike and Drainage Swale.....	4-45
4.3.	Sediment Control Practices.....	4-48
4.3.1.	BMP E3.10: Filter Fence.....	4-49
4.3.2.	BMP E3.20: Gravel Filter Berm.....	4-53
4.3.3.	BMP E3.25: Inlet Protection.....	4-54
4.3.4.	BMP E3.30: Vegetated Strip.....	4-59
4.3.5.	BMP E3.35: Straw Wattles, Compost Socks, and Compost Berms.....	4-60
4.3.6.	BMP E3.40: Sediment Trap.....	4-64
4.3.7.	BMP E3.50: Portable Sediment Tank.....	4-67
4.3.8.	BMP E3.60: Construction Stormwater Filtration.....	4-69
4.3.9.	BMP E3.65: Cleaning Inlets and Catch Basins.....	4-72
4.3.10.	BMP E3.70: Street Sweeping and Vacuuming.....	4-74
CHAPTER 5 – Source Control Practices for Construction Pollutants Other than Sediment....		5-1
5.1.	Source Control Practices.....	5-1
5.1.1.	BMP C1.15: Material Delivery, Storage, and Containment.....	5-3
5.1.2.	BMP C1.20: Use of Chemicals During Construction.....	5-5
5.1.3.	BMP C1.25: Demolition of Buildings.....	5-7
5.1.4.	BMP C1.30: Building Repair, Remodeling, and Construction.....	5-8
5.1.5.	BMP C1.35: Sawcutting and Paving Pollution Prevention.....	5-10
5.1.6.	BMP C1.40: Temporary Dewatering.....	5-12
5.1.7.	BMP C1.45: Solid Waste Handling and Disposal.....	5-17
5.1.8.	BMP C1.50: Disposal of Asbestos and Polychlorinated Biphenyls (PCBs).....	5-21
5.1.9.	BMP C1.55: Airborne Debris Curtain.....	5-22
5.1.10.	BMP C1.56: Concrete Handling.....	5-24
5.1.11.	BMP C1.58: Concrete Washout Area.....	5-28
5.1.12.	BMP C1.59: High pH Neutralization Using CO ₂	5-33

Tables

Table 1a.	Checklist to Select Small Project Construction BMPs.....	3-2
Table 1b.	Checklist to Select Large Project Construction BMPs.....	3-11
Table 2.	Temporary Erosion Control Seeding Mixture.....	4-5
Table 3.	Guide to Mulch Materials, Rates and Uses.....	4-7
Table 4.	Permanent Seeding Mixture.....	4-20

Table 5.	Design Criteria for Earth Dike.	4-47
Table 6.	Design Criteria for Drainage Swale.	4-47
Table 7.	Geotextile Standards.....	4-51
Table 8.	Vegetated Strip Implementation Criteria.	4-59
Table 9.	Handling, Hauling, and Destination Requirements for Targeted Materials. ...	5-19

Figures

Figure 1.	Hydroseeding Method.	4-3
Figure 2a.	Mat Installation on Slope.	4-9
Figure 2b.	Mat Installation on a Channel.....	4-10
Figure 3.	Stockpile Covered with Plastic Sheeting.	4-11
Figure 4.	Preserving Vegetation.	4-14
Figure 5.	Vegetated Buffer Zone.....	4-17
Figure 6.	Stabilized Construction Access.	4-27
Figure 7.	Stabilized Construction Access.	4-28
Figure 8.	Tire Wash Details.	4-31
Figure 9.	Check Dams.	4-35
Figure 10.	Triangular Silt Dike Cut Section.	4-37
Figure 11.	Using a Water Truck for Dust Control.	4-39
Figure 12.	Earth Dike and Drainage Swale.	4-45
Figure 13.	Filter Fence Installed on a Slope.	4-49
Figure 14.	Filter Fence Details.	4-52
Figure 15.	Block and Gravel Curb Inlet Protection.	4-55
Figure 16.	Curb and Gutter Barrier.	4-56
Figure 17.	Straw Wattles or Compost Sock for Inlet Protection.....	4-60
Figure 18.	Straw Wattle Details.....	4-62
Figure 19.	Cross Section of Sediment Trap and Outlet.....	4-66
Figure 20.	Concrete Washout Facility.....	5-30
Figure 21.	Prefabricated Concrete Washout Container with Ramp.....	5-31

CHAPTER 1 – INTRODUCTION

1.1. What is the Purpose of this Volume?

This volume is designed to help businesses, individuals, responsible parties, and public agencies in Seattle implement best management practices (BMPs) at project sites to:

- Prevent impacts to the public drainage system or public combined sewer and downstream resources
- Stop pollutants from contaminating stormwater

Uncontrolled stormwater can threaten downstream resources, such as public storm drains, real property, and natural habitat. It can also pollute our public drainage system or public combined sewer and receiving waters (e.g., creeks, streams, rivers, lakes, and Puget Sound). The resulting impacts can pose serious risks to the health, safety, and welfare of humans and the environment.

1.2. How Does this Volume Apply to Construction?

This volume applies to all construction projects in Seattle, defined in the Seattle Municipal Code (SMC), Chapter 22.801.170 as the addition or replacement of hard surface or the undertaking of land-disturbing activity.

The construction stormwater BMPs and requirements in this volume have been integrated from many programs and regulations, including the provisions of the:

- Federal Clean Water Act
- Federal Coastal Zone Management Act
- City of Seattle Phase I NPDES Municipal Stormwater Permit
- Puget Sound Partnership Action Agenda
- Washington State Department of Ecology (Ecology) Construction Stormwater General Permit
- City of Seattle Stormwater Code

1.2.1. *City of Seattle Requirements*

Under current City law, the responsible party is liable for water quality problems and impacts to downstream resources caused by construction work. Many construction projects with land disturbance require a permit from the Seattle Department of Construction and Inspections (SDCI) and most projects that occur in the street right-of-way require a permit from Seattle Department of Transportation (SDOT). Regardless of whether or not a permit is required, all construction stormwater must be controlled to prevent negative impacts.

If you are planning a construction project and need information concerning the applicable stormwater requirements, the first step is reviewing *Volume 1 – Project Minimum Requirements* and the applicable elements of the Stormwater Code. Code sections to refer to include, but are not limited to, SMC 22.805.020 (particularly subsection D), SMC 22.807.020 (for requirements related to drainage control review), and the definitions in SMC 22.801.

1.2.2. *How to Use This Volume*

- *Chapter 1* (this chapter) outlines the purpose and content of this volume.
- *Chapter 2* provides Construction Stormwater ~~and Erosion~~ Control [and Soil Management](#) Plan requirements.
- *Chapter 3* provides an explanation for BMP selection based on project category and required BMPs.
- *Chapters 4 and 5* provide the standards and specifications for the BMPs contained in this volume.

Several appendices also support the information contained in this manual. These appendices include:

- *Appendix A* – Definitions
- ~~*Appendix B* – Background Information on Chemical Treatment~~
- *Appendix E* – Additional Design Requirements and Plant Lists
- *Appendix F* – Hydrologic Analysis and Design

1.3. What is Considered “Compliance”?

The City expects that the selection and implementation of appropriate BMPs outlined in this volume, and other applicable manuals, will result in compliance with the Stormwater Code’s minimum requirements for project site stormwater pollution prevention control. If compliance is not achieved, additional measures must be implemented.

Proper implementation and maintenance of appropriate BMPs is critical to control any adverse water quality or downstream resource impacts from construction activity.

1.3.1. *Surface Water Quality*

Pollutants that might be expected in the discharge from project sites include, but are not limited to, sediment, pH, and petroleum products. The public drainage system or public combined sewer and/or receiving waters can be contaminated by direct discharges of these pollutants, or from stormwater discharges that have become contaminated by direct contact with the pollutants or pollutants absorbed into sediment.

Soil erosion, sheet erosion, or downstream channel erosion can cause turbid (muddy) stormwater when the sediment contacts rainwater; this is the most common and visible form of construction stormwater pollution. The resulting high turbidity can adversely impact receiving waters if not properly controlled using the BMPs contained in this volume.

The sources of other commonly encountered pollutants include materials and chemicals used during day-to-day construction activities, such as concrete pouring, paving, truck and heavy equipment operation, and maintenance activities. Low and high acidity and petroleum products can adversely impact the public drainage system or public combined sewer and/or receiving waters in more than one way. One direct impact is reduced water quality by introducing pollutants; another impact is decreased function of the public drainage system or public combined sewer by fouling and spreading pollutants in the pipe network.

Ecology's Water Quality Standards for Surface Waters of the State of Washington are provided in the Washington Administrative Code (WAC) Chapter 173-201A. Contractors and other responsible parties must be familiar with the current water quality standards, particularly those targeting typical construction-related pollutants. For more information on surface water quality standards and specific criteria, [contact Ecology at \(425\) 649-7000 or visit refer to Ecology's website \(https://ecology.wa.gov/Water-Shorelines/Water-quality/Water-quality-standards/Criteria](https://ecology.wa.gov/Water-Shorelines/Water-quality/Water-quality-standards/Criteria)[www.ecy.wa.gov/programs/wq/swqs/new-rule.html](https://ecology.wa.gov/programs/wq/swqs/new-rule.html)).

It is illegal to discharge dirty water to the drainage system; however, the activity may be permitted for disposal in the sanitary sewer if approved by the City and King County.

If sanitary sewer disposal is not available or not allowed, the contaminated water must be treated or transferred to a holding tank, where it must be picked up for offsite disposal.

1.3.2. Groundwater Quality

The Ecology groundwater quality standards are created for protection of groundwater from contamination. The primary water quality consideration for stormwater discharges to groundwater from project sites is the control of contaminants other than sedimentation.

For more information on groundwater quality standards, [contact Ecology at \(425\) 649-7000 or visit refer to Ecology's website \(https://ecology.wa.gov/Water-Shorelines/Water-quality/Groundwater/Groundwater-quality-standards](https://ecology.wa.gov/Water-Shorelines/Water-quality/Groundwater/Groundwater-quality-standards)[www.ecy.wa.gov/programs/wq/grndwtr/index.html](https://ecology.wa.gov/programs/wq/grndwtr/index.html)).

1.3.3. Downstream Infrastructure and Resources

The public drainage system or public combined sewer, real property, and natural habitat can be adversely impacted when an uncontrolled discharge leaves a project site. Common negative impacts can include soil erosion, flooding, habitat degradation, and/or subsequent destructive after-effects due to increases in the stormwater volume, velocity, and peak flow rate.

The Stormwater Code and this volume may require construction of temporary stormwater retention, detention, or infiltration facilities to protect downstream resources. It is important to note that these facilities must be functioning prior to implementation of land-disturbing activity. If a permanent facility is used to control flows during construction, refer to *Volume 3* for design guidelines and criteria. *Volume 3* also provides design criteria to protect permanent infiltration facilities from siltation during the construction phase of the project. [For most parcel-based projects, the temporary BMPs to be implemented from this volume](#)

[should be sized to accommodate a storm with a 2-year or a 10-year recurrence interval \(refer to specific BMPs for additional guidance regarding sizing\).](#)

Additional impacts to downstream infrastructure and resources can occur from dewatering activities as well. Projects which are required to comply with the Minimum Requirements for Flow Control must include the dewatering discharge volume as part of the total release rate allowed from the site.

1.4. What is Considered “Out of Compliance”?

The Stormwater Code outlines compliance requirements for construction stormwater pollution prevention. If the required BMPs being implemented do not effectively address erosion issues or the discharge of pollutants, additional BMPs may be required.

Violations are enforceable under the City’s Stormwater Code SMC 22.808.030 and *Volume 5 – Enforcement* of this manual.

Examples of when a project would be considered out of compliance with the Stormwater Code include:

- A discharge leaves the project site that causes or contributes to a prohibited discharge, or a known or likely violation of water quality standards in the receiving water, or violates the Phase I NPDES Municipal Stormwater General Permit (SMC, Chapter 22.805.010).
- A project that has not received all required permits and discharges to the public drainage system or public combined sewer.
- A discharge of oil or other deleterious substances leaves the project site and enters the public combined sewer, public drainage system, or receiving waters.
- Sediment is tracked off the project site.
- A project site does not have a Construction Stormwater ~~and Erosion~~ Control ~~and Soil Management~~ Plan.

This is not a comprehensive list of out of compliance events. If there is a question about compliance, visit the SDCI Applicant Services Center on the 20th floor of the Seattle Municipal Tower, 700 Fifth Avenue, Seattle, Washington 98124, or the [City’s](#) website (www.seattle.gov/sdci~~www.seattle.gov/dpd/~~).

1.5. Purpose of Construction Stormwater Best Management Practices (BMPs)

Construction stormwater BMPs are measures implemented to protect the public drainage system, public combined sewer system, and receiving waters from pollution and impacts to downstream resources during land-disturbing and other construction activities (refer to SMC, Chapter 22.801.030). For example:

- Construction activities such as clearing, grading, excavation, and stockpiling disturb established vegetation, trees, and stable soils.
- Concrete, asphalt, treated timber, and other construction materials involve chemicals and contaminants that must be retained on the project site.
- Construction activities can increase the volume and/or peak flow rate of discharges leaving the site. The discharges can increase sediment, erosion and pollution in receiving waters.
- Construction equipment introduces the potential for spills involving oil, gasoline, or other petroleum products.

In general, construction BMPs help to prevent pollution from leaving the project site, eliminate ponding and/or flooding in the public right-of-way, and minimize impacts to the public drainage system or public combined sewer. These measures fall into two general categories—erosion and sedimentation control and control of pollutants other than sediment.

Erosion and sediment control BMPs can be grouped according to three methods of controlling erosion and sediment.

- Cover practices: temporary or permanent cover designed to stabilize disturbed areas.
- Erosion control practices: physical measures designed and constructed to prevent erosion of project site soils.
- Sediment control practices: prevent eroded soils from leaving the project site by trapping them in a depression, filter, or other barrier.

Pollutants other than sediment are primarily controlled using good “housekeeping” practices and other methods outlined in this volume to reduce the risk of pollutant contact with stormwater or direct discharge to receiving waters.

Refer to *Volume 4 – Source Control*. This volume should be reviewed to ensure that all requirements are being met for each project.

CHAPTER 2 – CONSTRUCTION STORMWATER AND EROSION CONTROL AND SOIL MANAGEMENT PLAN

The Construction Stormwater ~~and Erosion~~ Control and Soil Management Plan applies best management practices (BMPs) that fall within the 19 elements of water quality, air quality, and downstream resource protection and are required by the Stormwater Code (SMC, Chapter 22.805.020.D). These 19 elements (refer to *Volume 1*) cover general water and air quality protection strategies, including:

- Limiting project site impacts
- Protecting the public drainage system, combined and sanitary sewers, and downstream receiving waters
- Preventing erosion and sedimentation
- Managing activities and sources

Project designers must review the applicable elements of SMC 22.805.020.D and ensure the specific requirements under each of the 19 elements in the code are fully addressed by the project site stormwater pollution prevention controls.

2.1. Small Project Construction Stormwater and Erosion Control and Soil Management Plan

For Small Projects (i.e., 5,000 square feet or less of new plus replaced hard surface, or less than 1 acre of land-disturbing activity) the applicant must submit a Construction Stormwater ~~and Erosion~~ Control Plan and ~~Post-Construction~~ Soil Management Plan that demonstrates how the project will cover the required elements by using BMPs contained in this volume.

The first step after reviewing the Stormwater Code requirements is to refer to *Chapter 3*, Table 1a, Checklist to Select Small Project Construction BMPs. Small Projects are required to implement BMPs as dictated by site conditions. If a required element is not applicable, the reason must be justified briefly on the checklist and in detail in the plan narrative.

The next step is to prepare the Small Project Construction Stormwater Control and ~~Erosion~~ Soil Management Control Plan narrative section that describes the project and selected BMPs.

The narrative, and subsequently prepared plan, must include:

- The name, address, and phone number of the owner or contact person
- A north arrow, lot number and plat, address, date, and street name fronting structure
- A description of all existing and proposed structures on the project site
- Construction clearing limits

- The location and size of all streams, swales, and drainage channels on or within 25 feet of the project site that may be impacted by or affect the drainage of the project site to be developed
- A description of all existing stormwater pipes and their diameters and approximate lengths
- The direction and location of stormwater runoff entering and exiting the project site from all adjacent properties (this may be done with topographic contour lines)
- “Point of discharge” labels for all discharges of stormwater, wastewater, etc. that leave the site or will be infiltrated on site
- The types of systems, including On-Site BMPs, that will be used to convey runoff away from the proposed structures, if applicable
- The steps that will be taken to retain native vegetation and minimize hard surfaces to the maximum extent feasible
- The types of wastewater that may be generated during the work and the types of collection or conveyance systems used to manage the waste, including disposal options
- Location(s) where stormwater discharges or is collected from the project site, including individual (point) flow and sheet flow (i.e., overland flow)
- A description of how construction will be phased so that only those areas actively being worked are uncovered
- The construction entrance(s) and egress, as applicable
- Stockpile and excavation locations

Once the narrative has been completed, the plan sheet should be completed. The plan sheet is not required to be prepared by a civil engineer; however, it is required to graphically show the information provided in the narrative, including how BMPs will be implemented.

~~To assist in meeting the plan sheet requirements, SDCI offers a prescriptive plan sheet, which contains illustrations of some of the most effective BMPs required for Small Projects. It is called the “Construction Stormwater Control and Soil Amendment Standard Plan” (CSC/SA Plan) and provides a quick way for the applicant to document erosion control methods, integrate stormwater controls with building plans, and provides a clear field guide for both the applicant and the City. Refer to Chapters 4 and 5 for details on how to implement the BMPs during construction.~~

The [Construction Stormwater Control and Soil Management Plan](#) ~~CSC/SA~~ can be obtained from the [Seattle Department of Construction and Inspections \(SDCI\) Public Resources Center on the 20th floor of the Seattle Municipal Tower, 700 Fifth Avenue, Seattle, Washington 98124, or the web page site](#), which has both pdf and CAD formats ([www.seattle.gov/sdci/codes/codes-we-enforce-\(a-z\)/stormwater-codewww.seattle.gov/dpd/codesrules/codes/stormwater/default.htm](http://www.seattle.gov/sdci/codes/codes-we-enforce-(a-z)/stormwater-codewww.seattle.gov/dpd/codesrules/codes/stormwater/default.htm)).

The applicant is responsible for modifying the Construction Stormwater [Control](#) and [Erosion Control](#) [Soil Management](#) Plan whenever directed to by the Inspector, or when there is a change in design, construction, operation, or maintenance at the project site that has, or could have, a significant effect on the discharge of pollutants.

2.2. Large Project Construction Stormwater ~~and Erosion~~ Control ~~and Soil Management~~ Plan

For Large Projects (i.e., over 5,000 square feet of new plus replaced hard surface, or 1 acre and greater of land-disturbing activity), the applicant must submit a Large Project Construction Stormwater ~~and Erosion~~ Control ~~and Soil Management~~ Plan, including narrative and plan sheet(s), that demonstrate how the project will cover the 19 elements by using BMPs contained in this volume.

The first step is to refer to *Chapter 3*, Table 1b, Checklist to Select Large Project Construction BMPs. Large Projects are required to implement BMPs from all 19 elements. If a required element is not applicable, the reason must be justified briefly on the checklist and in detail in the plan narrative. The next step is to prepare the Large Project Construction Stormwater ~~and Erosion~~ Control ~~and Soil Management~~ Plan narrative section and plan sheets that describe the project and selected BMPs. The Large Project Construction Stormwater ~~and Erosion~~ Control ~~and Soil Management~~ Plan includes the same narrative and plan details required for the Small Project Construction Stormwater ~~and Erosion~~ Control ~~and Soil Management~~ Plan (*Section 2.1*) plus additional narrative and plan sheet(s), as applicable.

The Large Project Construction Stormwater ~~and Erosion~~ Control ~~and Soil Management~~ Plan must be prepared by a qualified professional. When the plan includes engineering calculations, it must be stamped and signed by an engineer licensed in the State of Washington.

2.3. Certified Erosion and Sediment Control Lead

2.3.1. Description

A project representative who is a Certified Erosion and Sediment Control Lead (CESCL). The project proponent designates at least one person as the responsible representative in charge of erosion and sediment control and water quality protection. The designated person shall be the CESCL.

2.3.2. Purpose

The purpose of a designated CESCL is to ensure compliance with all city, county, state, and federal erosion and sediment control and water quality requirements.

2.3.3. Conditions Where Practice Applies

A CESCL should be designated and made available on Large Projects. The CESCL must perform all duties and take on all responsibilities listed in this BMP.

2.3.4. *Certification Criteria*

The training and administrative requirements for a responsible person to be designated as the CESCL are listed below. The CESCL should:

- Have a current certificate proving attendance in an erosion and sediment control (ESC) training course that meets the minimum ESC training and certification requirements established by the Washington State Department of Ecology (Ecology). Ecology maintains a list of ESC training and certification providers on its website (<https://ecology.wa.gov/Regulations-Permits/Permits-certifications/Certified-erosion-sediment-control-www.ecy.wa.gov/programs/wq/stormwater/>).

OR

Be a Certified Professional in Erosion and Sediment Control (CPESC) or have a special inspection by the City; for additional information on the CPESC certification, ~~go to~~ refer to the EnvironCert International, Inc., website (www.envirocertintl.org/cpesc/www.cpesc.net/).

- Certification must remain valid for 3 years.
- The CESCL should have authority to act on behalf of the contractor or developer and should be available, on call, 24 hours per day throughout the period of construction.
- The name, telephone number, fax number, and address of the designated CESCL must be recorded in the Large Project Construction Stormwater ~~and Erosion~~ Control and Soil Management Plan.
- A CESCL may provide inspection and compliance services for multiple construction projects in the same geographic region.

2.3.5. *Duties and Responsibilities*

The duties and responsibilities of the CESCL should include, but are not limited to the following:

- Maintain all applicable documentation, permits, and plans on site at all times.
- Direct BMP installation, inspection, maintenance, modification, and removal.
- Update all project drawings and plans with changes made.
- Keep daily logs and inspection reports. Inspection reports should include:
 - Inspection date/time.
 - Weather information: general conditions during inspection and approximate amount of precipitation since the last inspection.
 - A summary or list of all BMPs implemented, including observations of all erosion/sediment control structures or practices. The following should be noted:
 - Locations of BMPs inspected
 - Locations of BMPs that need maintenance
 - Locations of BMPs that failed to operate as designed or intended

- Locations of where additional or different BMPs are required
- Duties relating to temporary dewatering (BMP C1.40)
- Visual monitoring results, including a description of discharged stormwater. The presence of suspended sediment, turbid water, discoloration, and oil sheen should be noted, as applicable.
- Any water quality monitoring performed during inspection
- General comments and notes, including a brief description of any BMP repairs, maintenance or installations made as a result of the inspection
- Facilitate, participate in, and take corrective actions resulting from inspections performed by outside agencies or the owner.

The CESCL is responsible for modifying the Construction Stormwater ~~and Erosion~~ Control and Soil Management Plan whenever there is a change in design, construction, operation, or maintenance at the project site that has, or could have, a significant effect on the discharge of pollutants, or when directed to by the Inspector.

CHAPTER 3 – SELECTING CONSTRUCTION STORMWATER CONTROLS

Projects must implement [best management practices \(BMPs\)](#) from the 19 elements of general water quality and downstream resource protection strategies listed in [SMC, Chapter 22.805.020.D Section 2.1](#). Refer to [Section 2.1](#) and [Section 2.2](#) for a discussion of Small and Large Project Construction Stormwater ~~and Erosion Control~~ [and Soil Management Plans](#), including the level of detail required for submittals.

Tables 1a and 1b present each of the 19 elements and required or recommended BMPs for Small and Large Project plans, respectively. Required BMPs must be implemented throughout construction. If a required element is not applicable, the reason must be justified briefly on the checklist and in detail in the plan narrative. The recommended BMPs are intended to provide further guidance for minimizing potential stormwater pollution resulting from activities. Using these additional BMPs is encouraged. BMPs referenced as “Ecology BMPs” can be found in Volume II of the [Washington State Department of Ecology \(Ecology\) Stormwater Management Manual for Western Washington \(SWMMWW\)](#), [2019](#)~~2012~~ edition, ~~revised in 2014~~.

Refer to Table 1a or 1b and/or the pre-application report (PAR) prepared by the City to identify the appropriate required and recommended BMPs for your project. The Small Project Construction Stormwater ~~and Erosion Control~~ [and Soil Management Plan](#) and the Large Project Construction Stormwater ~~and Erosion Control~~ [and Soil Management Plan](#) should document each selected BMP and its implementation, maintenance, and inspection requirements.

Note: The City may require additional measures beyond what are shown on the approved plan depending on Stormwater Code requirements, construction sequencing, and actual site conditions.

Table 1a. Checklist to Select Small Project Construction BMPs.

Element Number	Required Element	Project Name: _____	
		Small Project ^a (check selection)	If not applicable, describe why in the space below.
1	Mark Clearing Limits and Environmentally Critical Areas	Recommended ^b BMPs: <input type="checkbox"/> E1.30 Preserving Natural Vegetation (refer to <i>Section 4.1.2.1</i>) <input type="checkbox"/> E1.35 Buffer Zones (refer to <i>Section 4.1.2.2</i>) <input type="checkbox"/> E1.50 High-Visibility Fencing (refer to <i>Section 4.2.5</i>)	
2	Retain Top Layer	Required BMP: Within the boundaries of the project site, retain the duff layer, top soil, and native vegetation, if there is any, in an undisturbed state to the maximum extent feasible. If it is not feasible to retain the top layer in place, stockpile on site, cover to prevent erosion, and replace immediately upon completion of ground disturbing activities to the maximum extent feasible.	
3	Establish Construction Access	Required BMP: <input type="checkbox"/> E2.10 Stabilization Construction Entrance Access (refer to <i>Section 4.2.1.1</i>) Recommended BMPs: <input type="checkbox"/> E2.15 Tire Wash (refer to <i>Section 4.2.1.2</i>) <input type="checkbox"/> E2.20 Construction Road Stabilization (refer to <i>Section 4.2.1.3</i>)	
4	Protect Downstream Properties and Receiving Waters	Recommended BMP: <input type="checkbox"/> Ecology BMP C241 Temporary Sediment Pond (or Basin)	

Table 1a (continued). Checklist to Select Small Project Construction BMPs.

Element Number	Required Element	Project Name: _____	
		Small Project ^a (check selection)	If not applicable, describe why in the space below.
5	Prevent Erosion and Sediment Transport from the Site	Required BMPs – one or more of the following: <input type="checkbox"/> E3.10 Filter Fence (refer to <i>Section 4.3.1</i>) <input type="checkbox"/> E3.20 Gravel Filter Berm (refer to <i>Section 4.3.2</i>) <input type="checkbox"/> E3.30 Vegetated Strip (refer to <i>Section 4.3.4</i>) <input type="checkbox"/> E3.35 Straw Wattles, Compost Socks, and Compost Berms (refer to <i>Section 4.3.5</i>) <input type="checkbox"/> E3.40 Sediment Trap (refer to <i>Section 4.3.6</i>) <input type="checkbox"/> E3.50 Portable Sediment Tank (refer to <i>Section 4.3.7</i>) <input type="checkbox"/> E3.60 Construction Stormwater Filtration (refer to <i>Section 4.3.8</i>) <input type="checkbox"/> Ecology BMP C231 Brush Barrier <input type="checkbox"/> Ecology BMP C241 Temporary Sediment Pond (or Basin) <input type="checkbox"/> Ecology BMP C250 Construction Stormwater Chemical Treatment	
6	Prevent Erosion and Sediment Transport From the Site by Vehicles	Required BMPs – one or more of the following: <input type="checkbox"/> E3.65 Cleaning Inlets and Catch Basins (refer to <i>Section 4.3.9</i>) <input type="checkbox"/> E3.70 Street Sweeping and Vacuuming (refer to <i>Section 4.3.10</i>)	
7	Stabilize Soils	Required BMPs for all exposed soils and stockpiles – one or more of the following: <input type="checkbox"/> E1.10 Temporary Seeding (refer to <i>Section 4.1.1.1</i>) <input type="checkbox"/> E1.15 Mulching, Matting, and Compost Blankets (refer to <i>Section 4.1.1.2</i>) <input type="checkbox"/> E1.20 Clear Plastic Covering (refer to <i>Section 4.1.1.3</i>) <input type="checkbox"/> E1.40 Permanent Seeding and Planting (refer to <i>Section 4.1.2.1</i>) <input type="checkbox"/> E1.45 Sodding (refer to <i>Section 4.1.2.4</i>) <input type="checkbox"/> E2.45 Dust Control (refer to <i>Section 4.2.1.6</i>) <input type="checkbox"/> Ecology BMP C126 Polyacrylamide for Soil Erosion Protection <input type="checkbox"/> Ecology BMP C130 Surface Roughening <input type="checkbox"/> Ecology BMP C131 Gradient Terracing	

Table 1a (continued). Checklist to Select Small Project Construction BMPs.

Element Number	Required Element	Project Name: _____	
		Small Project ^a (check selection)	If not applicable, describe why in the space below.
8	Protect Slopes (refer to the Environmentally Critical Area ordinance [SMC 25.09.180] for additional requirements and development standards for steep slopes)	Required BMPs – one or more of the following: <input type="checkbox"/> Level Spreader (refer to <i>Appendix E</i>) <input type="checkbox"/> E2.35 Check Dams (refer to <i>Section 4.2.1.4</i>) <input type="checkbox"/> E2.40 Triangular Silt Dike (Geotextile-encased Check Dam) (refer to <i>Section 4.2.1.5</i>) <input type="checkbox"/> Pipe Slope Drains (refer to <i>Appendix E</i>) <input type="checkbox"/> E2.70 Subsurface Drains (refer to <i>Section 4.2.3.1</i>) <input type="checkbox"/> E2.80 Earth Dike and Drainage Swale (refer to <i>Section 4.2.3.2</i>) <input type="checkbox"/> Ecology BMP C201 Grass-lined Channels <input type="checkbox"/> Ecology BMP C130 Surface Roughening <input type="checkbox"/> Ecology BMP C131 Gradient Terracing	
9	Protect Storm Drains	Required BMPs: <input type="checkbox"/> E3.25 Storm Drain Inlet Protection (refer to <i>Section 4.3.3</i>) <input type="checkbox"/> E3.65 Cleaning Inlets and Catch Basins (refer to <i>Section 4.3.9</i>) <input type="checkbox"/> E3.70 Street Sweeping and Vacuuming (refer to <i>Section 4.3.10</i>)	
10	Stabilize Channels and Outlets	Recommended BMPs: <input type="checkbox"/> Level Spreader (refer to <i>Appendix E</i>) <input type="checkbox"/> E2.35 Check Dams (refer to <i>Section 4.2.1.4</i>) <input type="checkbox"/> E2.80 Earth Dike and Swale (refer to <i>Section 4.2.3.2</i>) <input type="checkbox"/> Outlet Protection (refer to <i>Appendix E</i>) <input type="checkbox"/> Ecology BMP C201 Grass-lined Channels <input type="checkbox"/> Ecology BMP C202 Channel Lining <input type="checkbox"/> Ecology BMP C203 Water Bars	

Table 1a (continued). Checklist to Select Small Project Construction BMPs.

Element Number	Required Element	Project Name: _____	
		Small Project ^a (check selection)	If not applicable, describe why in the space below.
11	Control Pollutants (also refer to Volume 4 — Source Control)	Required BMPs: <input type="checkbox"/> C1.15 Material Delivery, Storage, and Containment (refer to Section 5.1.1) <input type="checkbox"/> C1.20 Use of Chemicals During Construction (refer to Section 5.1.2) <input type="checkbox"/> C1.25 Demolition of Buildings (refer to Section 5.1.3) <input type="checkbox"/> C1.30 Building Repair, Remodeling, and Construction (refer to Section 5.1.4) <input type="checkbox"/> C1.35 Sawcutting and Surfacing Pollution Prevention (refer to Section 5.1.5) <input type="checkbox"/> C1.45 Solid Waste Handling and Disposal (refer to Section 5.1.7) <input type="checkbox"/> C1.50 Disposal of Asbestos and Polychlorinated Biphenyls (PCBs) (refer to Section 5.1.8) <input type="checkbox"/> C1.55 Airborne Debris Curtain (refer to Section 5.1.9) <input type="checkbox"/> C1.56 Concrete Handling and Disposal (refer to Section 5.1.10) <input type="checkbox"/> C1.58 Concrete Washout Area (refer to Section 5.1.11)	
12	Control Dewatering	Recommended BMP: <input type="checkbox"/> C1.40 Temporary Dewatering (refer to Section 5.1.6)	
13	Maintain BMPs	Required BMP: <input type="checkbox"/> Maintain and repair all temporary and permanent erosion and sediment control BMPs as needed to assure continued performance of their intended function.	
14	Inspect BMPs	Required BMP: <input type="checkbox"/> Inspect, maintain, and repair all BMPs as needed to assure continued performance of their intended function.	

Table 1a (continued). Checklist to Select Small Project Construction BMPs.

Element Number	Required Element	Project Name: _____	
		Small Project ^a (check selection)	If not applicable, describe why in the space below.
15	Execute Construction Stormwater and Erosion Control and Soil Management Plan	<p>Required BMPs:</p> <p>Implement and maintain an updated Construction Stormwater and Erosion Control and Soil Management Plan, beginning with initial land disturbance.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Retain the Small Project Construction Stormwater and Erosion Control and Soil Management Plan on site or within reasonable access to the site. Modify the plan as needed.</p> <p>Coordination with Utilities, Contractors, and Others</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> The primary project proponent should evaluate, with input from utilities and other contractors, the stormwater management requirements for the entire project, including the utilities, when preparing the Small Project Construction Stormwater and Erosion Control and Soil Management Plan.</p> <p>Project Close-out:</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Remove all temporary erosion and sediment control BMPs within 5 business days after final site stabilization is achieved, or after they are no longer needed—whichever is later.</p>	
16	Minimize Open Trenches	<p>Required BMP:</p> <p>In the construction of underground utility lines, where feasible, no more than one hundred fifty (150) feet of trench should be opened at one time, unless soil is replaced within the same working day. Where consistent with safety and space considerations, place excavated material on the uphill side of trenches. Trench dewatering devices should discharge into a sediment trap or sediment pond.</p>	

Table 1a (continued). Checklist to Select Small Project Construction BMPs.

Element Number	Required Element	Project Name: _____	
		Small Project ^a (check selection)	If not applicable, describe why in the space below.
17	Phase the Project	Required BMPs: Construction Phasing <input type="checkbox"/> Phase development projects where feasible in order to prevent soil erosion and, to the maximum extent practicable, the transport of sediment from the site during construction. Seasonal Work Limitations <input type="checkbox"/> From October 31 through April 1, clearing, grading, and other soil disturbing activities will be subject to additional limitations.	
18	Install Flow Control and Water Quality Facilities	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Refer to <i>Volume 1</i> for applicable minimum requirements and <i>Volume 3</i> for BMP design. 	
19	Protect Stormwater BMPs	General: Protect all stormwater BMPs from sedimentation through installation and maintenance of erosion and sediment control BMPs. Restore the BMPs to their fully functioning condition if they accumulate sediment during construction. Restoring the stormwater BMP must	

<p>19</p>	<p>Protect Stormwater BMPs (continued)</p>	<p>include removal of sediment and any sediment-laden soils, and replacing the removed soils with soils meeting the design specification.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <input type="checkbox"/> The approved plan sheets provide construction sequencing that protects the infiltration facility during construction. <p>Sediment Control: Protect infiltration BMPs from sedimentation that can clog the facility and reduce infiltration capacity.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <input type="checkbox"/> Minimize site disturbance at the location of the infiltration BMPs and in up-gradient areas. <input type="checkbox"/> Do not use infiltration BMPs as sediment control facilities. <input type="checkbox"/> Direct all drainage away from the facility location after initial rough grading. <input type="checkbox"/> Flow can be directed away from the facility with temporary diversion swales or other approved protection. <input type="checkbox"/> Do not construct infiltration BMPs until all contributing drainage areas are stabilized with appropriate erosion and sediment control BMPs and to the satisfaction of the engineer. <input type="checkbox"/> Inspect and maintain erosion and sediment control practices on a regular basis. If deposition of sediment occurs in the infiltration area, remove material and scarify the surface to a minimum depth of 3 inches. <input type="checkbox"/> Control erosion and avoid introducing sediment from surrounding land uses onto permeable pavements. Do not allow muddy construction equipment on the base material or pavement. Do not allow sediment-laden runoff onto permeable pavements or base materials. <input type="checkbox"/> Permeable pavement fouled with sediments or no longer passing an initial infiltration test must be cleaned until infiltrating per design or replaced. <p>Compaction Prevention: Soil compaction can lead to a reduction of infiltration rates and facility failure; accordingly, minimizing compaction of the base and sidewalls of the infiltration area is critical.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <input type="checkbox"/> Before the development site is graded, rope/fence the area of the infiltration BMP to restrict access and flag to prevent soil compaction by heavy equipment and foot traffic. <input type="checkbox"/> Perform excavation with machinery operating adjacent to the infiltration BMP and do not allow heavy equipment with narrow tracks, narrow tires, or large lugged, high pressure tires on the bottom of the infiltration BMP footprint. 	
-----------	--	--	--

Table 1a (continued). Checklist to Select Small Project Construction BMPs.

Element Number	Required Element	Project Name: _____	
		Small Project ^a (check selection)	If not applicable, describe why in the space below.
		<input type="checkbox"/> Protect established completed lawn and landscaped areas from compaction due to construction equipment. <input type="checkbox"/> Do not excavate during wet or saturated conditions.	

^a A small project is defined as one with less than 5,000 square feet of new plus replaced hard surface, and less than 1 acre of land-disturbing activity.

^b Recommended BMPs provide further guidance for minimizing potential stormwater pollution resulting from activities.

Construction Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plan Checklist

Project Number: _____

Review Date: _____

Onsite Inspection Review Date: _____

Construction SWPPP Reviewer: _____

Table 1b. Checklist to Select Large Project Construction BMPs.

Element Number	Required Element	Project Name: _____	
		Large Project ^a (check selection)	If not applicable, describe why in the space below.
1	Mark Clearing Limits and Environmentally Critical Areas	Required BMPs: <input type="checkbox"/> E1.30 Preserving Natural Vegetation (refer to <i>Section 4.1.2.1</i>) <input type="checkbox"/> E1.35 Buffer Zones (refer to <i>Section 4.1.2.2</i>) <input type="checkbox"/> E1.50 High-Visibility Fencing (refer to <i>Section 4.1.2.5</i>)	
2	Retain Top Layer	Required BMP: Within the boundaries of the project site, retain the duff layer, top soil, and native vegetation, if there is any, in an undisturbed state to the maximum extent feasible. If it is not feasible to retain the top layer in place, stockpile on site, cover to prevent erosion, and replace immediately upon completion of the ground disturbing activities to the maximum extent feasible.	
3	Establish Construction Access	Required BMPs: <input type="checkbox"/> E2.10 Stabilized Construction Entrance Access (refer to <i>Section 4.2.1.1</i>) <input type="checkbox"/> E2.15 Tire Wash (refer to <i>Section 4.2.1.2</i>) <input type="checkbox"/> E2.20 Construction Road Stabilization (refer to <i>Section 4.2.1.3</i>)	
4	Protect Downstream Properties and Receiving Waters	Required BMP for contributing area of 3 acres or greater: <input type="checkbox"/> Ecology BMP C241 Temporary Sediment Pond (Temporary Basin)	

Table 1b (continued). Checklist to Select Large Project Construction BMPs.

Element Number	Required Element	Project Name: _____	
		Large Project ^a (check selection)	If not applicable, describe why in the space below.
5	Prevent Erosion and Sediment Transport from the Site	Required BMPs: <input type="checkbox"/> E3.10 Filter Fence (refer to <i>Section 4.3.1</i>) <input type="checkbox"/> Ecology BMP C231 Brush Barrier <input type="checkbox"/> E3.20 Gravel Filter Berm (refer to <i>Section 4.3.2</i>) AND <input type="checkbox"/> E3.40 Sediment Trap (refer to <i>Section 4.3.6</i>) OR <input type="checkbox"/> Ecology BMP C241 Temporary Sediment Pond (Temporary Basin) OR <input type="checkbox"/> E3.50 Portable Sediment Tank (refer to <i>Section 4.3.7</i>) Additional recommended BMPs: <input type="checkbox"/> E3.30 Vegetated Strip (refer to <i>Section 4.3.4</i>) <input type="checkbox"/> E3.35 Straw Wattles, Compost Socks, and Compost Berms (refer to <i>Section 4.3.5</i>) <input type="checkbox"/> E3.60 Construction Stormwater Filtration (refer to <i>Section 4.3.8</i>) <input type="checkbox"/> Ecology BMP C250 Construction Stormwater Chemical Treatment	
6	Prevent Erosion and Sediment Transport From the Site by Vehicles	Required BMPs: <input type="checkbox"/> E3.65 Cleaning Inlets and Catch Basins (refer to <i>Section 4.3.9</i>) <input type="checkbox"/> E3.70 Street Sweeping and Vacuuming (refer to <i>Section 4.3.10</i>)	

Table 1b (continued). Checklist to Select Large Project Construction BMPs.

Element Number	Required Element	Project Name: _____	
		Large Project ^a (check selection)	If not applicable, describe why in the space below.
7	Stabilize Soils	Required BMPs for all exposed soils and stockpiles – one or more of the following: <input type="checkbox"/> E1.10 Temporary Seeding (refer to <i>Section 4.1.1.1</i>) <input type="checkbox"/> E1.15 Mulching, Matting, and Compost Blankets (refer to <i>Section 4.1.1.2</i>) <input type="checkbox"/> E1.20 Clear Plastic Covering (refer to <i>Section 4.1.1.3</i>) <input type="checkbox"/> E1.40 Permanent Seeding and Planting (refer to <i>Section 4.1.2.3</i>) <input type="checkbox"/> E1.45 Sodding (refer to <i>Section 4.1.2.4</i>) <input type="checkbox"/> E2.45 Dust Control (refer to <i>Section 4.2.1.6</i>) <input type="checkbox"/> Ecology BMP C130 Surface Roughening <input type="checkbox"/> Ecology BMP C131 Gradient Terracing <input type="checkbox"/> Ecology BMP C126 Polyacrylamide for Soil Erosion Protection	
8	Protect Slopes (refer to the Environmentally Critical Areas ordinance [SMC 25.09.180] for additional requirements and development standards for steep slopes)	Required BMPs – one or more of the following: <input type="checkbox"/> Level Spreader (refer to <i>Appendix E</i>) <input type="checkbox"/> E2.35 Check Dams (refer to <i>Section 4.2.1.4</i>) <input type="checkbox"/> E2.40 Triangular Silt Dike (Geotextile-encased Check Dam) (refer to <i>Section 4.2.1.5</i>) <input type="checkbox"/> Pipe Slope Drains (refer to <i>Appendix E</i>) <input type="checkbox"/> E2.70 Subsurface Drains (refer to <i>Section 4.2.3.1</i>) <input type="checkbox"/> E2.80 Earth Dike and Drainage Swale (refer to <i>Section 4.2.3.2</i>) <input type="checkbox"/> Ecology BMP C130 Surface Roughening <input type="checkbox"/> Ecology BMP C131 Gradient Terracing <input type="checkbox"/> Ecology BMP C201 Grass-lined Channels	
9	Protect Storm Drains	Required BMPs: <input type="checkbox"/> E3.25 Storm Drain Inlet Protection (refer to <i>Section 4.3.3</i>) <input type="checkbox"/> E3.65 Cleaning Inlets and Catch Basins (refer to <i>Section 4.3.9</i>) <input type="checkbox"/> E3.70 Street Sweeping and Vacuuming (refer to <i>Section 4.3.10</i>)	

Table 1b (continued). Checklist to Select Large Project Construction BMPs.

Element Number	Required Element	Project Name: _____	
		Large Project ^a (check selection)	If not applicable, describe why in the space below.
10	Stabilize Channels and Outlets	Required BMPs – one or more of the following: <input type="checkbox"/> Level Spreader (refer to <i>Appendix E</i>) <input type="checkbox"/> E2.35 Check Dams (refer to <i>Section 4.2.1.4</i>) <input type="checkbox"/> E2.80 Earth Dike and Drainage Swale (refer to <i>Section 4.2.3.2</i>) <input type="checkbox"/> Outlet Protection (refer to <i>Appendix E</i>) <input type="checkbox"/> Ecology BMP C201 Grass-lined Channels <input type="checkbox"/> Ecology BMP C202 Riprap Channel Lining <input type="checkbox"/> Ecology BMP C203 Water Bars	
11	Control Pollutants (also refer to <i>Volume 4 – Source Control</i>)	Required BMPs: <input type="checkbox"/> C1.15 Material Delivery, Storage, and Containment (refer to <i>Section 5.1.1</i>) <input type="checkbox"/> C1.20 Use of Chemicals During Construction (refer to <i>Section 5.1.2</i>) <input type="checkbox"/> C1.25 Demolition of Buildings (refer to <i>Section 5.1.3</i>) <input type="checkbox"/> C1.30 Building Repair, Remodeling, and Construction (refer to <i>Section 5.1.4</i>) <input type="checkbox"/> C1.35 Sawcutting and Surfacing Pollution Prevention (refer to <i>Section 5.1.5</i>) <input type="checkbox"/> C1.45 Solid Waste Handling and Disposal (refer to <i>Section 5.1.7</i>) <input type="checkbox"/> C1.50 Disposal of Asbestos and Polychlorinated Biphenyls (PCBs) (refer to <i>Section 5.1.8</i>) <input type="checkbox"/> C1.55 Airborne Debris Curtain (refer to <i>Section 5.1.9</i>) <input type="checkbox"/> C1.56 Concrete Handling and Disposal (refer to <i>Section 5.1.10</i>) <input type="checkbox"/> C1.58 Concrete Washout Area (refer to <i>Section 5.1.11</i>) <input type="checkbox"/> C1.59 High pH Neutralization Using CO ₂ (refer to <i>Section 5.1.1244</i>)	
12	Control Dewatering	Required BMP: <input type="checkbox"/> C1.40 Temporary Dewatering (refer to <i>Section 5.1.6</i>)	

Table 1b (continued). Checklist to Select Large Project Construction BMPs.

Element Number	Required Element	Project Name: _____	
		Large Project ^a (check selection)	If not applicable, describe why in the space below.
13	Maintain BMPs	Required BMP: <input type="checkbox"/> Maintain and repair all temporary and permanent erosion and sediment control BMPs as needed to assure continued performance of their intended function.	
14	Inspect BMPs	Required BMP: <input type="checkbox"/> Inspect, maintain, and repair all BMPs as needed to assure continued performance of their intended function. <input type="checkbox"/> Certified Erosion and Sediment Control Lead (refer to <i>Section 2.3</i>): For projects over one (1) acre; inspections should be conducted by the Certified Erosion and Sediment Control Lead identified in the Large Project Construction Stormwater and Erosion Control and Soil Management Plan.	
15	Execute Construction Stormwater and Erosion Control and Soil Management Plan	Required BMPs: Implement and maintain an updated Construction Stormwater and Erosion Control and Soil Management Plan beginning with initial land disturbance. <input type="checkbox"/> Retain the Large Project Construction Stormwater and Erosion Control and Soil Management Plan on site or within reasonable access to the site. Modify the plan as needed. Coordination with Utilities, Contractors, and Others <input type="checkbox"/> The primary project proponent should evaluate, with input from utilities and other contractors, the stormwater management requirements for the entire project, including the utilities, when preparing the Small Project Construction Stormwater and Erosion Control and Soil Management Plan. Project Close-out <input type="checkbox"/> Remove all temporary erosion and sediment control BMPs within 5 business days after final site stabilization is achieved, or after they are no longer needed, whichever is later.	

Table 1b (continued). Checklist to Select Large Project Construction BMPs.

Element Number	Required Element	Project Name: _____	
		Large Project ^a (check selection)	If not applicable, describe why in the space below.
16	Minimize Open Trenches	<p>Required BMP:</p> <p>In the construction of underground utility lines, where feasible, no more than one hundred and fifty (150) feet of trench should be opened at one time, unless soil is replaced within the same working day. Where consistent with safety and space considerations, place excavated material on the uphill side of trenches. Trench dewatering devices should discharge into a sediment trap or sediment pond.</p>	
17	Phase the Project	<p>Required BMPs:</p> <p>Construction Phasing</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Phase development projects where feasible in order to prevent soil erosion and, to the maximum extent practicable, the transport of sediment from the site during construction.</p> <p>Seasonal Work Limitations</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> From October 31 through April 1, clearing, grading, and other soil disturbing activities will be subject to additional limitations.</p>	
18	Install Permanent Flow Control and Water Quality Facilities	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Refer to <i>Volume 1</i> for applicable minimum requirements and <i>Volume 3</i> for BMP design. 	
19	Protect Stormwater BMPs	<p>General: Protect all stormwater BMPs from sedimentation through installation and maintenance of erosion and sediment control BMPs. Restore the BMPs to their fully functioning condition if they accumulate sediment during construction. Restoring the stormwater BMP must include removal of sediment and any sediment-laden soils, and replacing the removed soils with soils meeting the design specification.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> The approved plan sheets provide construction sequencing that protects the infiltration facility during construction.</p> <p>Sediment Control: Protect infiltration BMPs from sedimentation that can clog the facility and reduce infiltration capacity.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Minimize site disturbance at the location of the infiltration BMPs and in up-gradient areas.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Do not use infiltration BMPs as sediment control facilities.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Direct all drainage away from the facility location after initial rough grading.</p>	

Table 1b (continued). Checklist to Select Large Project Construction BMPs.

Element Number	Required Element	Project Name: _____	
		Large Project ^a (check selection)	If not applicable, describe why in the space below.
19	Protect Stormwater BMPs (continued)	<input type="checkbox"/> Flow can be directed away from the facility with temporary diversion swales or other approved protection. <input type="checkbox"/> Do not construct infiltration BMPs until all contributing drainage areas are stabilized with appropriate erosion and sediment control BMPs and to the satisfaction of the engineer. <input type="checkbox"/> Inspect and maintain erosion and sediment control practices on a regular basis. If deposition of sediment occurs in the infiltration area, remove material and scarify the surface to a minimum depth of 3 inches. <input type="checkbox"/> Control erosion and avoid introducing sediment from surrounding land uses onto permeable pavements. Do not allow muddy construction equipment on the base material or pavement. Do not allow sediment-laden runoff onto permeable pavements or base materials. <input type="checkbox"/> Permeable pavement fouled with sediments or no longer passing an initial infiltration test must be cleaned until infiltrating per design or replaced. Compaction Prevention: Soil compaction can lead to a reduction of infiltration rates and facility failure; accordingly, minimizing compaction of the base and sidewalls of the infiltration area is critical. <input type="checkbox"/> Before the development site is graded, rope/fence the area of the infiltration BMP to restrict access and flag to prevent soil compaction by heavy equipment and foot traffic. <input type="checkbox"/> Perform excavation with machinery operating adjacent to the infiltration BMP and do not allow heavy equipment with narrow tracks, narrow tires, or large lugged, high pressure tires on the bottom of the infiltration BMP footprint. <input type="checkbox"/> Protect established completed lawn and landscaped areas from compaction due to construction equipment. <input type="checkbox"/> Do not excavate during wet or saturated conditions.	

^a A large project is one with greater than or equal to 5,000 square feet of new plus replaced hard surface, or greater than or equal to 1 acre of land-disturbing activity.

^b Recommended BMPs provide further guidance for minimizing potential stormwater pollution resulting from activities.

Construction Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plan Checklist

Project Number: _____

Review Date: _____

Onsite Inspection Review Date: _____

Construction SWPPP Reviewer: _____

CHAPTER 4 – STANDARDS AND SPECIFICATIONS FOR CONSTRUCTION EROSION AND SEDIMENTATION CONTROL

This chapter contains the standards and specifications for erosion and sediment control practices that form the backbone of erosion and sediment control planning in [the City of Seattle \(City\)](#). These [best management practices \(BMPs\)](#) are grouped according to their method of controlling erosion and sedimentation at project sites:

- Cover Practices (*Section 4.1*)
- Erosion Control Practices (*Section 4.2*)
- Sediment Control Practices (*Section 4.3*)

Refer to these sections for a list of BMPs in each category.

All temporary erosion and sediment control BMPs must be removed within 5 business days after final site stabilization is achieved, or after they are no longer needed, whichever is later. In either case, trapped sediment must be removed or stabilized on site and the disturbed areas permanently stabilized.

The standards and specifications for each BMP have been divided into six sections to facilitate the selection process and implementation:

1. Definition
2. Purpose
3. Conditions Where Practice Applies
4. Planning Considerations
5. Design Criteria
6. Maintenance

Note that “Conditions Where Practice Applies” always refers to site conditions. As site conditions change, BMPs must be changed to remain in compliance with the Stormwater Code.

4.1. Cover Practices

The cover BMPs for erosion and sedimentation control can be divided into two categories:

1. Temporary cover practices, such as temporary seeding and clear plastic covering (refer to *Section 4.1.1*)
2. Permanent cover practices, such as sodding and planting (refer to *Section 4.1.2*)

The requirements for maintaining permanent BMPs are included with each description; however, all temporary and permanent erosion and sediment control practices should be maintained and repaired as needed to assure continued performance of their intended function.

4.1.1. Temporary Cover Practices

Temporary cover BMPs are implemented to provide a cover to soils exposed during the life of the project. Soil stockpiles must be stabilized from erosion; protected with sediment trapping measures; and where possible, located away from storm drain inlets, waterways, and drainage channels. From October 1 to April 30, no soils should remain exposed and unworked for more than 2 days. From May 1 to September 30, no soils should remain exposed and unworked for more than 7 days.

More than one BMP may be required for effective protection of steeper slopes or where the soils are more erodible.

The standards and specifications for temporary cover BMPs are described in the sections below and include:

- BMP E1.10: Temporary Seeding (*Section 4.1.1.1*)
- BMP E1.15: Mulching, Matting, and Compost Blankets (*Section 4.1.1.2*)
- BMP E1.20: Clear Plastic Covering (*Section 4.1.1.3*)
- Polyacrylamide for soil erosion protection (refer to [Washington State Department of Ecology](#) [Ecology] BMP C126)

4.1.1.1. *BMP E1.10: Temporary Seeding*

Description

The establishment of temporary vegetative cover on disturbed areas by seeding with appropriate rapidly growing annual plants.

Purpose

To provide temporary soil stabilization by planting grasses and legumes to areas that would remain bare for more than 7 days where permanent cover is not necessary or appropriate (Figure 1).



Figure 1. Hydroseeding Method.

Conditions Where Practice Applies

- Permanent structures are to be installed, or extensive re-grading will occur prior to the establishment of permanent vegetation
- Areas which will not be subjected to heavy wear by construction traffic
- Areas sloping up to 15 percent for 100 feet or less (where temporary seeding is the only BMP used)

Planning Considerations

Sheet erosion, caused by the impact of rain on bare soil, is the source of most fine particles in sediment. To reduce this sediment load in runoff, the soil surface itself should be protected.

The most efficient and economical means of controlling sheet and rill erosion is to establish vegetative cover. Annual plants that sprout rapidly and survive for only one growing season are suitable for establishing temporary vegetative cover. Temporary seeding is effective when combined with construction phasing so that bare areas of the site are minimized at all times.

Temporary seeding may prevent costly maintenance operations on other erosion control systems. For example, sediment basin cleanouts will be reduced if the drainage area of a basin is seeded where grading and construction are not taking place. Perimeter dikes will be more effective if not choked with sediment.

Temporary seeding is essential to preserve the integrity of earthen structures used to control sediment, such as dikes, diversions, and the banks and dams of sediment basins.

Proper seedbed preparation and the use of quality seed are important in this practice just as in permanent seeding. Failure to carefully follow sound agronomic recommendations will often result in an inadequate stand of vegetation that provides little or no erosion control.

Design Criteria

- **Time of Seeding:** Seeding should preferably be done between April 1 and June 30, and September 1 through October 31. If seeding is done in the months of July and August, irrigation will be required until 75 percent grass cover is established. If seeding is done between October 1 and March 31, mulch immediately after seeding.
- **Site Preparation:** Before seeding, install needed surface runoff control measures such as gradient terraces, earth dike/drainage swales, level spreaders, and sediment basins.
- **Seedbed Preparation:** The seedbed should be firm with a fairly fine surface. All soil should be roughened no matter what the slope. If compaction is required for engineering purposes, slopes must be track walked before seeding. Perform all cultivating operations across or at right angles to the slope. A minimum of 2 to 4 inches of tilled topsoil is required.
- **Fertilization:** Apply fertilizers as per suppliers and/or Natural Resources Conservation Service (NRCS) recommendations, or apply a 10:4:6 ratio of nitrogen-phosphorus-potassium (N-P-K) fertilizer at a rate of 90 pounds per acre. Developments adjacent to receiving waters must use non-phosphorus fertilizer.
- **Seeding:** Seeding mixtures will vary depending on the exact location, soil type, slope, etc. Information on mixes may be obtained from local suppliers, the Washington State Department of Transportation, or the NRCS. The seed mix in Table 2 is supplied as guidance. Hydroseed applications should include a minimum of 1,500 pounds per acre of mulch with 3 percent tackifier.
- **Mulching:** Mulch is required for seeding. Mulch can be applied on top of the seed or simultaneously by hydroseeding. Refer to BMP 1.15 Mulching, Matting, and Compost Blankets for more information on mulching.
- **Tackifier:** Apply a tackifier with a tracer to indicate where the seeding has been applied.

Table 2. Temporary Erosion Control Seeding Mixture.^a

Name	Proportion by Weight
Turf-type perennial rye (blend of 3 approved varieties) ^b	50 percent
Creeping red fescue ^b	20 percent
Chewings fescue ^b	20 percent
Hard fescue	10 percent

^a Hydroseeding applications with approved seed-mulch-fertilizer mixtures may also be used. Mixture must be no less than 98 percent pure and have a minimum germination rate of 90 percent.

^b Refer to City of Seattle Standard Specification 9-14.2(1) for approved varieties.

Maintenance

- Seeding should be supplied with adequate moisture. Supply water as needed, especially in abnormally hot or dry weather or on adverse sites. Water application rates should be controlled to prevent runoff.
- Re-seed areas which fail to establish at least 80 percent vegetative cover as soon as such areas are identified. If re-seeding is ineffective, use an alternate method, such as sodding, mulching, or nets/mats.
- If vegetative cover is inadequate to prevent rill erosion, apply other BMPs.

4.1.1.2. *BMP E1.15: Mulching, Matting, and Compost Blankets*

Description

Application of plant residues or other suitable materials to the soil surface.

Purpose

To provide immediate protection to exposed soils during the period of short construction delays or over winter months through the application of plant residues, or other suitable materials, to exposed soil areas.

Mulches also enhance plant establishment by conserving moisture and moderating soil temperatures. Mulch helps hold fertilizer, seed, and topsoil in place in the presence of wind, rain, and runoff and maintains moisture near the soil surface.

Conditions Where Practice Applies

- Areas that cannot be seeded because of the season, or are otherwise unfavorable for plant growth
- Areas that have been seeded as specified in Temporary Seeding (BMP E1.10)
- In an area of greater than 25 percent slope, mulching should immediately follow seeding.

Planning Considerations

Mulches are applied to the soil surface to conserve a desirable soil property or to promote plant growth. Surface mulch is one of the most effective means of controlling runoff and erosion on disturbed land (refer to Table 3 for a comparison of pollutant loading reductions for various mulches).

Mulches can increase the infiltration rate of the soil, reduce soil moisture loss by evaporation, prevent crusting and sealing of the soil surface, modify soil temperatures, and provide a suitable microclimate for seed germination.

Organic mulch materials, such as compost, straw, wood chips, bark, and wood fiber, have been found to be the most effective. Compost has the advantage of being reusable by tilling it in to meet the City's soil amendment requirement at the end of the project. A variety of nets and mats have been developed for erosion control in recent years, and these are also used as mulches, particularly in critical areas such as waterways. They may be used to hold other mulches to the soil surface.

The choice of materials for mulching will be based on the type of soil to be protected, site conditions, season, and economics. It is especially important to mulch liberally in mid-summer and prior to winter, and on cut slopes and southern slope exposures.

Table 3. Guide to Mulch Materials, Rates and Uses.

Mulch Material	Quality Standards	Application Depth	Remarks^a
Gravel, slag or crushed rock	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Washed ● 0.75 to 1.5 inch size 	3 inches	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Excellent mulch for short slopes and around woody plants and ornamentals. ● Use where subject to foot traffic. Approximately 2,000 pounds per cubic yard.
Straw	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Air dried ● Free from unwanted seeds and coarse material 	Minimum 2 inches	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Use for immediate protection. Hand application generally requires greater thickness than blown straw. ● Thickness of straw may be reduced by half when used in conjunction with seeding. ● Most common and widely used mulching material. Can be used in critical erosion areas.
Wood fiber cellulose (partially digested wood fibers)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Should not contain growth-inhibiting factors 	Minimum 2 inches	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● If used on critical areas, double normal application rate. ● Apply with a hydro-mulcher with seed and tackifier. No tie-down required. ● Fibers should be less than 0.75-inch; packaged in 100-pound bags. ● Recycled cellulose may contain polychlorinated biphenyls (PCBs); products should be evaluated for PCBs prior to use.
Compost blanket, mulch, and compost	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● No visible water or dust during handling 	Minimum 2 inches	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Excellent mulch for protecting final grades until landscaping. ● Can be directly seeded or tilled into soil as an amendment. ● A 3-inch layer provides superior protection.
Chipped site vegetation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Average size should be several inches ● Gradations from fines to 6 inches 	Minimum 2 inches	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Cost-effective way to dispose of clear and grubbing debris. ● Should not be used on slopes above 10 percent. Not recommended within 200 feet of receiving waters.
Wood-based mulch	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● No visible water or dust during handling ● Must be purchased from supplier with Solid Waste Handling Permit (unless exempt) 	Minimum 2 inches	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Often called hog (or hogged) fuel or wood straw, and is useful organic matter. ● Typically does not provide any weed seed control. ● Prevent introduction of weed plants or seeds with application.

^a All mulches will provide some degree of (1) erosion control, (2) moisture conservation, (3) weed control, and (4) reduction of soil crusting.

Compost Blankets

Compost for use as a mulch layer (i.e., a compost blanket) should meet the definition of “composted materials,” including contaminant limits, in WAC 173-350-220. Coarsely screened compost (1-inch minus screen) provides superior protection in higher rainfall and on steeper slopes, and may be tilled in later for tree and shrub planting areas. A finer compost (1/2- or 5/8-inch minus screen) may be preferred where it will be tilled in later before planting lawn areas. A 2-inch-thick compost blanket is usually sufficient, but 3 inches provides superior protection.

Compost blankets are a preferred cover practice because they:

- Provide superior ground contact compared to rolled mats
- Are more effective at filtering both sediment and pollutants such as oil
- May be seeded when placed and promote superior seed germination
- Can be reused as compost at the end of the project by tilling it in to meet the City's Soil Amendment BMP (*Volume 3*)

Chemical Mulches and Soil Binders

The use of synthetic, spray-on materials (except tacking agents used with hydroseeding) is not recommended because they can create impervious surfaces and, possibly, adverse effects on water quality. Research shows that they can cause more erosion than bare exposed soil when used.

Nets and Mats

Used alone, netting does not retain soil moisture or modify soil temperature. It stabilizes the soil surface while grasses are being established, and is useful in grassed drainage channels and on slopes. Light netting may also be used to hold other mulches in place. Its relatively high cost makes it most suitable for small sites.

The most critical part of installing nets and mats is obtaining firm, continuous contact between material and soil. Without such contact, the material is useless and erosion occurs. It is important to use an adequate number of staples and to roll the material after laying it to ensure soil is protected.

Design Criteria

- Site Preparation – Same as Temporary Seeding (BMP E1.10)
- Mulch Materials, Application Rates, and Specifications – refer to Table 3
- Erosion nets and mats may be used on level areas, on slopes (Figure 2a) up to 25 percent, and in channels (Figure 2b). Where soil is highly erodible, nets should only be used in connection with organic mulch such as straw and wood fiber. Jute nets should be heavy, uniform cloth woven of single jute yarn, which if 36 to 48 inches wide should weigh an average of 1.2 pounds per linear yard. It must be so applied that it is in complete contact with the soil. Netting should be securely anchored to the soil

with No. 11 gauge wire staples at least 6 inches long, and overlap 2 inches across and 6 inches down.

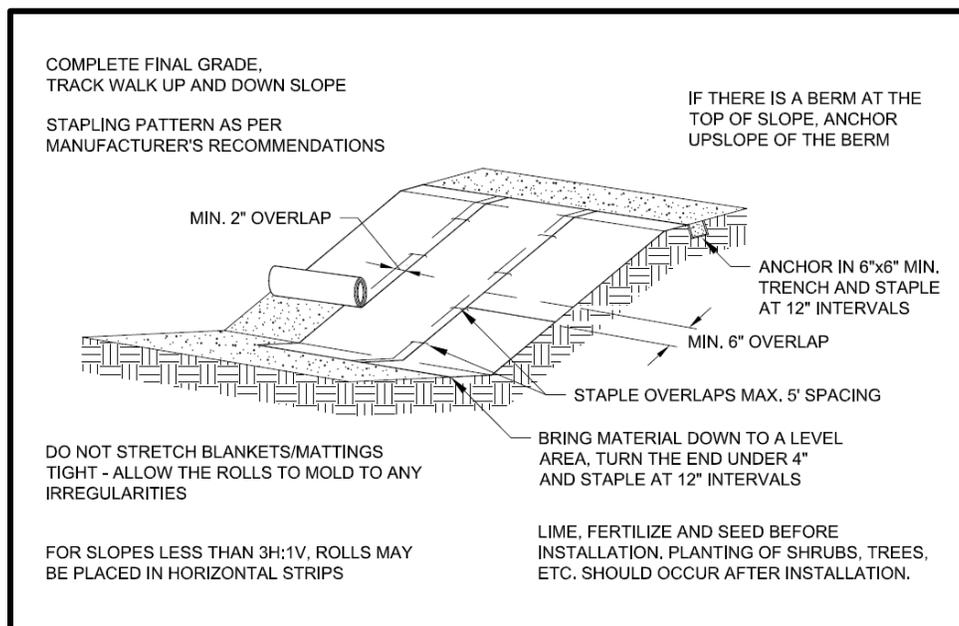


Figure 2a. Mat Installation on Slope.

- To install mats on slopes:
 - First complete the final grade and track walk up and down the slope. Install hydromulch with seed and fertilizer.
 - Dig a small trench, approximately 6 inches wide by 6 inches deep, along the top of the slope.
 - Install the leading edge of the mat into the small trench and staple approximately every 12 inches (metal, U-shaped, and a minimum of 6 inches long). Longer staples should be used in sandy soils. Biodegradable stakes are also available.
 - Roll the mat slowly down the slope as the installer walks backwards, with the mat resting against the installer's legs.
 - Install staples as the mat is unrolled. Do not allow the mat to roll down the slope unattended. Do not allow anyone to walk on the mat after it is in place. If the mat is not long enough to cover the entire slope length, the trailing edge of the upper mat should overlap the leading edge of the lower mat and be stapled.
 - On steeper slopes, this overlap should be installed in a small trench, stapled, and covered with soil.
- Excelsior blankets are considered protective mulches and may be used alone on erodible soils and during all times of year.

Maintenance

Mulched areas should be checked periodically, especially following severe storms. Damaged areas of mulch or tie-down material should be repaired.

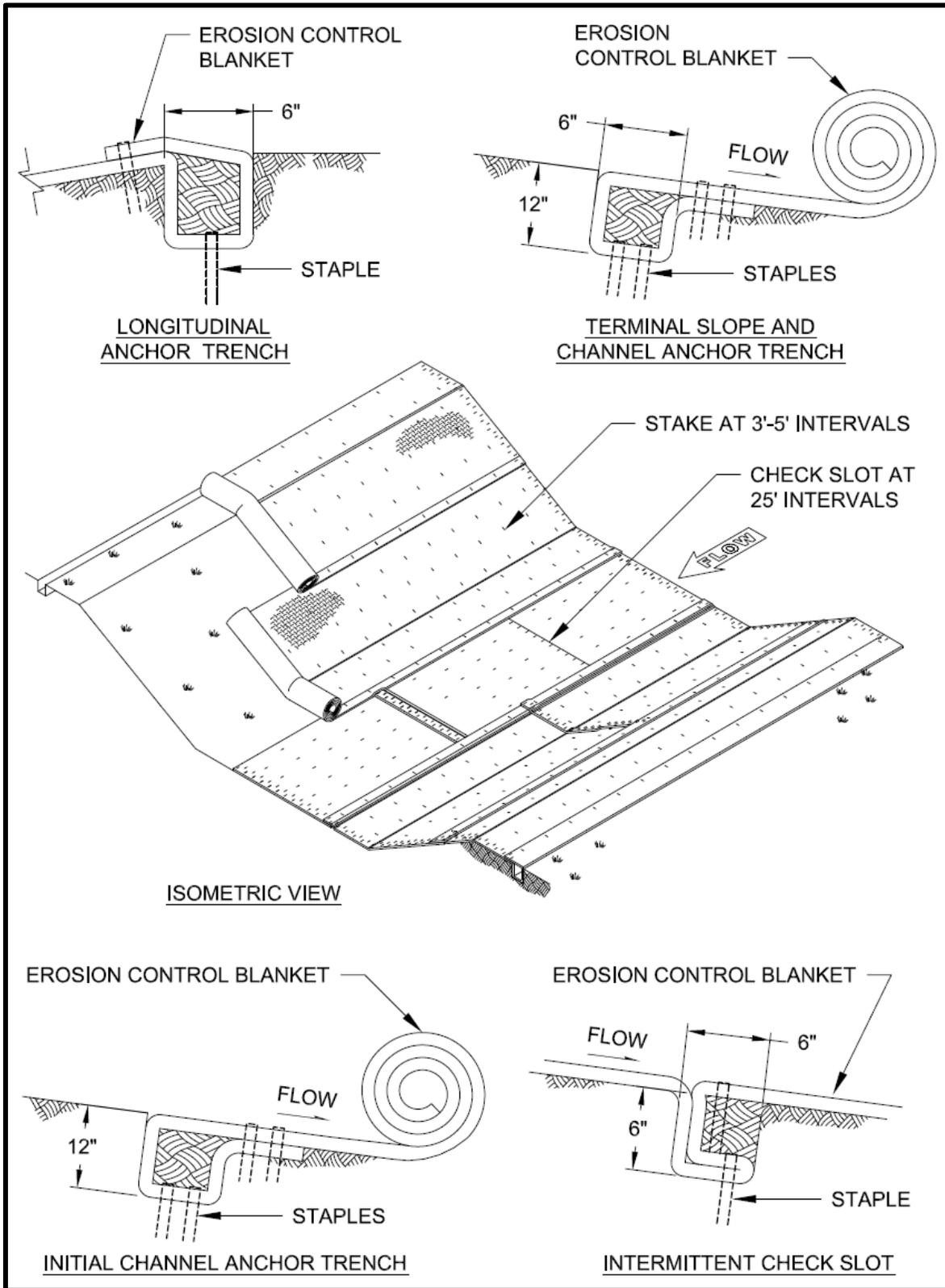


Figure 2b. Mat Installation on a Channel.

4.1.1.3. *BMP E1.20: Clear Plastic Covering*

Description

The covering with clear plastic sheeting of bare areas that need immediate protection from erosion.

Purpose

To provide immediate temporary erosion protection to slopes and disturbed areas that cannot be covered by mulching, to provide protection to plantings during winter, or to cover stockpiles. Clear plastic also is used to protect disturbed areas that must be covered during short periods of inactivity to meet November 1 through March 31 cover requirements. Because of many disadvantages, clear plastic covering is the least preferred cover practice (Figure 3).

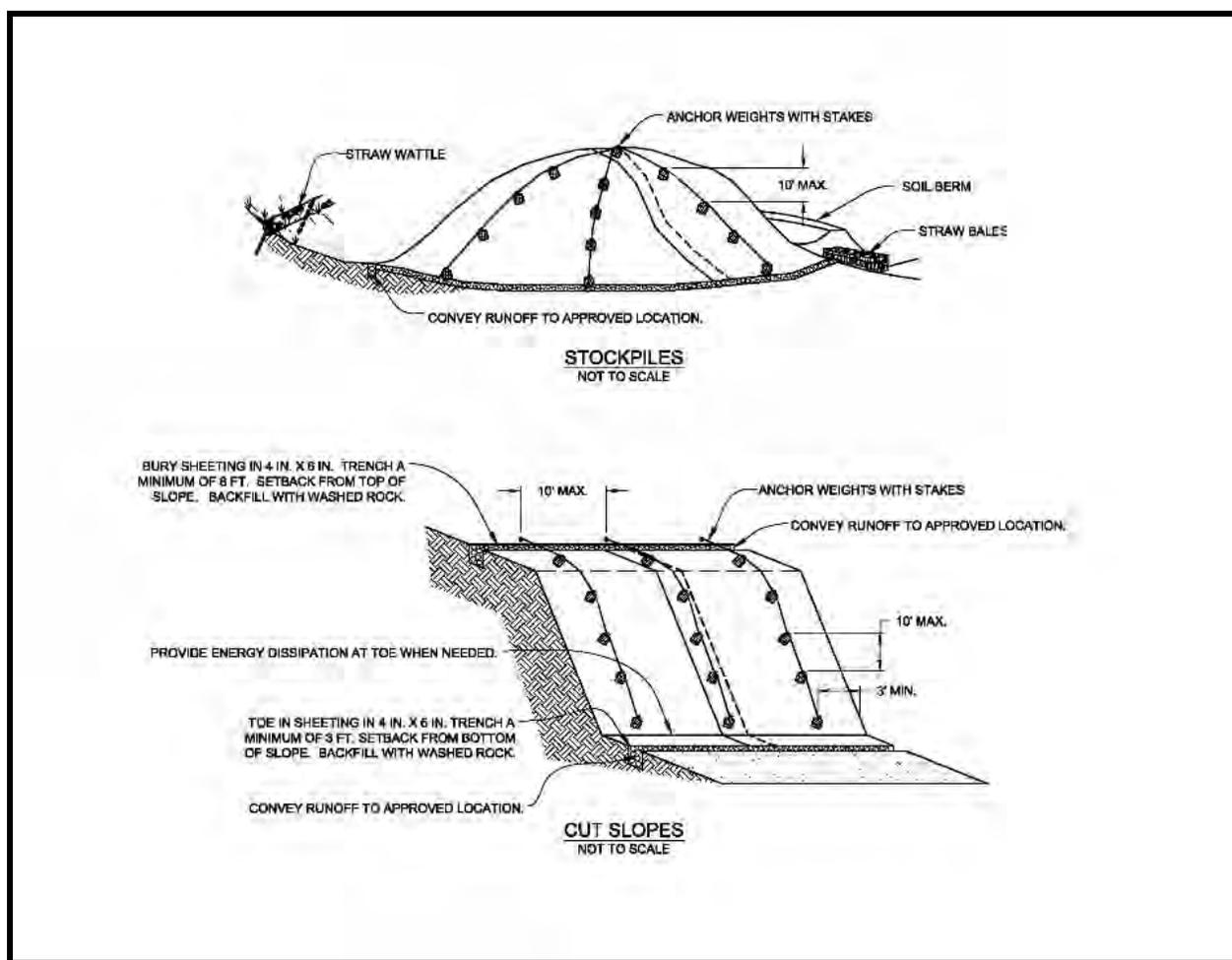


Figure 3. Stockpile Covered with Plastic Sheeting.

Conditions Where Practice Applies

- Disturbed areas that require immediate erosion protection for less than 30 days
- Areas seeded during the time period from November 1 to March 31

Planning Considerations

Plantings at this time require clear plastic covering for germination and protection from heavy rains.

Design Criteria

- Clear plastic sheeting should have a minimum thickness of 6 mil and should meet the requirements of the City of Seattle Standard Specifications Section 9-14.5.
- Place plastic into a small (12-inch wide by 6-inch deep) slot trench at the top of the slope and backfill with soil to keep water from flowing underneath.
- Install covering and maintain tightly in place by using sandbags or tires on ropes with a maximum 10 foot grid spacing in all directions. Tape or weigh down all seams full length with at least a 1- to 2-foot overlap of all seams. Then roll, stake or tie all seams.
- Immediately install covering on areas seeded from November 1 to March 1, and keep covering in place until vegetation is firmly established.
- When the covering is used on unseeded slopes, leave in place until the next seeding period.
- Toe in sheeting at the top of the slope to prevent surface flow beneath the plastic. If erosion at the toe of a slope is likely, install a gravel berm, riprap, or other suitable protection at the toe of the slope in order to reduce the velocity of runoff.
- Remove sheeting as soon as is possible once vegetation is well grown to prevent burning the vegetation through the plastic sheeting, which acts as a greenhouse.
- [Install drainage at the toe of the covered slope to collect and route runoff to the approved discharge point, if needed.](#)

Maintenance

Check regularly for rips and places where the plastic may be dislodged. Contact between the plastic and the ground should always be maintained. Any air bubbles found should be removed immediately or the plastic may rip during the next windy period. Re-anchor or replace the plastic as necessary.

4.1.2. *Permanent Cover Practices*

Permanent cover BMPs are implemented both during and upon completion of construction activities. Permanent cover reduces erosion wherever practicable and can be achieved primarily by limiting site disturbance during construction. For example, by preserving existing conifers approximately 50 percent of all rain that falls onto the trees will be retained during a storm. Up to 20 to 30 percent of this rain may never reach the ground but is taken up by the tree or lost to evaporation. Another benefit of permanent cover is that rain held in permanent vegetation (plantings, grass, trees) can be released slowly into the ground after a rain event.

Note: Equipment access and soil compaction is not allowed in areas where permanent cover is established.

The City requires that all new, replaced, and disturbed topsoil is amended prior to completion of the project. Refer to *Volume 3 – Project Stormwater Control* for guidance on soil amendment BMP requirements.

The standards and specifications for permanent cover BMPs are described below, and include:

- BMP E1.30: Preserving Natural Vegetation (*Section 4.1.2.1*)
- BMP E1.35: Buffer Zones (*Section 4.1.2.2*)
- BMP E1.40: Permanent Seeding and Planting (*Section 4.1.2.3*)
- BMP E1.45: Sodding (*Section 4.1.2.4*)
- BMP E1.50: High-Visibility Fence (*Section 4.1.2.5*)

4.1.2.1. BMP E1.30: Preserving Natural Vegetation

Description

Phase construction activities to minimize exposed soils and consequent erosion by clearing only where construction will occur.

Purpose

To reduce erosion by preserving natural vegetation wherever practicable (Figure 4).

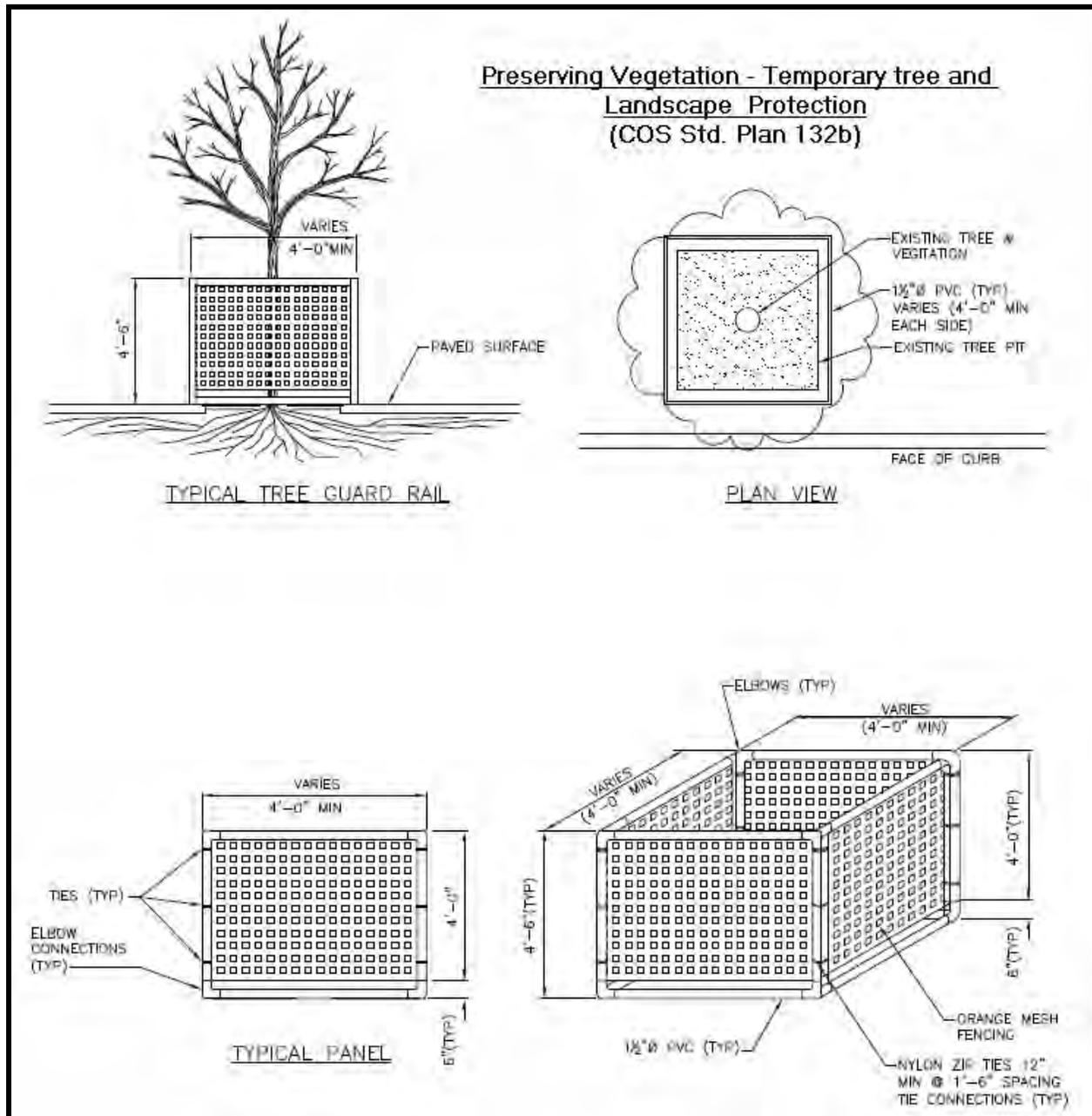


Figure 4. Preserving Vegetation.

Conditions Where Practice Applies

Natural vegetation should be preserved everywhere, and must be preserved with certain Environmentally Critical Areas (ECAs) pursuant to SMC, Chapter 25.09. Natural vegetation should be preserved especially on steep slopes, near perennial and intermittent watercourses or swales, and on building sites in wooded areas.

Planning Considerations

Refer to SMC, Section 25.09 Trees and Vegetation and SMC, Section 25.11 Tree Protection for additional requirements for vegetation and tree protection and requirements within ECAs.

[The Seattle Department of Transportation \(SDOT's\), Urban Forestry section, has additional information regarding vegetation protection on the City's website: \(www.seattle.gov/transportation/projects-and-programs/programs/trees-and-landscaping-program\).](http://www.seattle.gov/transportation/projects-and-programs/programs/trees-and-landscaping-program)

Design Criteria

It can be worthwhile to preserve natural vegetation both in the form of vegetated communities of trees and related understory plants, and in the form of individual trees retained along with the soil that supports them. The preservation of individual trees can be particularly challenging given the typical use of heavy construction equipment on site. Clear field marking is essential to guard against incidental impacts to the soil and or to the trunk, branches, and roots of the tree itself.

Design considerations include:

- Establish a monetary value for the tree or vegetated area and post this in some visible manner on protective fencing to help ensure care on the part of the site contractors. Monetary value is typically established by a professional in the tree care, landscape, and/or nursery industry. This professional should have value assessment experience in accordance with the 9th Edition of the "Guide for Plant Appraisal" (Council of Tree and Landscape Appraisers 2000). An aspect of appraisal includes application of local standards to help ensure the protection of plants that are desirable native or non-native species.
- Prior to beginning land-disturbing activities, including clearing and grading, clearly mark all clearing limits, critical areas, and their buffers. Clearly flag and provide a rigid (chain link or similar) fence to protect areas around trees and vegetated areas to be retained. Where protection of all surfaces within the drip line of the tree or vegetated area is not possible, consult a tree care professional with credentials in urban forestry, landscape architecture, or a related field to develop an appropriate plan. The plan should apply the requirements defined in City of Seattle Standard Plans 132, 133, and 134.
- The duff layer, native top soil, and natural vegetation should be retained in an undisturbed state to the maximum degree practicable.
- Trees and other plants need protection from three types of impacts:

- Construction Equipment: Impacts can occur above or below the ground level. Damage results from scarring, cutting of roots, and compaction of the soil. Roping or fencing a buffer zone around plants to be saved can prevent such injuries.
- Grade Change: Any grade change impacting areas within the drip line of an existing tree should be reviewed and approved by a tree care professional with local construction experience. Local experience is needed to ensure familiarity with the tree species and local conditions associated with soil, drainage, and pests or disease that may be factors. Where appropriate, systems may be designed utilizing structural or engineered soil mixes and/or "rootways" to ensure the circulation of air to roots impacted by fill.
- Excavation: Excavation within the drip line of trees commonly requires exploratory work utilizing hand equipment including the use of an air spade to fracture soil and reveal root locations without damage. Identifying the location of existing roots allows construction to occur within areas where roots are expected with minimal damage to critical root systems.
- For trees required to be preserved, any activities within the drip line requires oversight by a certified arborist or professional. For specific information about preserving mature trees and/or large plants, refer to references listed on the [Seattle Department of Construction and Inspections \(SDCI\) Tree and Landscaping Guidance and Requirements web page](http://www.seattle.gov/sdci/codes/codes-we-enforce-(a-z)/tree-protection-codes) ([www.seattle.gov/sdci/codes/codes-we-enforce-\(a-z\)/tree-protection-codes](http://www.seattle.gov/sdci/codes/codes-we-enforce-(a-z)/tree-protection-codes) www.seattle.gov/dpd/codesrules/codes/treeprotection/default.htm).
- In all situations involving vegetation preservation, it is fundamentally important to involve a qualified tree and/or vegetation care professional to assess the specific site issues. The above guidelines are designed to capture the major common issues associated with vegetation preservation; however, each site will be unique and would benefit from the input of a dedicated professional.

Maintenance

Inspect tree and protection areas regularly to make sure fencing has not been removed. If the fencing has been damaged, repair or replace immediately. If tree roots have been exposed or injured, "prune" cleanly with an appropriate pruning saw or loppers directly above the damaged roots and recover with native soils (with arborist oversight). Mechanical treatment of sap flowing trees (i.e., fir, hemlock, pine, soft maples) is not advised as sap forms a natural healing barrier.

4.1.2.2. *BMP E1.35: Buffer Zones*

Description

An undisturbed area or strip of natural vegetation or an established suitable planting that will provide a living filter to reduce soil erosion and [stormwater](#) runoff velocities.

Purpose

~~Natural~~ Buffer zones are used along streams and other receiving waters that need protection from erosion and sedimentation (Figure 5).



Figure 5. Vegetated Buffer Zone.

Conditions Where Practice Applies

~~Contractors can use v~~Vegetative buffer zone ~~BMPs can be used~~ to protect natural swales, and ~~they can~~ incorporated them into the natural landscaping of an area. ~~Do not use c~~Critical area buffer zones ~~should not be used~~ as sediment treatment areas; these areas should remain completely undisturbed.

Planning Considerations

The City's ECA regulations require undisturbed vegetative buffer zones from wetlands (SMC, Section 25.09.160), steep slope areas (SMC, Section 25.09.180), and fish and wildlife habitat conservation areas (SMC, Section 25.09.200). Refer to the appropriate code section(s) for site-specific requirements.

Design Criteria

- Preserve natural vegetation or plantings in clumps, blocks, or strips. This is generally the easiest and most successful method.
- Leave all critical areas in a naturally vegetative condition.
- Fence clearing limits and keep all equipment and construction debris out of the natural vegetation.
- Keep all excavations outside of critical areas and the drip line of trees and shrubs.
- Do not push debris or extra soil into the buffer zone area because it will cause damage from burying and smothering.

Maintenance

Inspect the area frequently to make sure flagging remains in place and the area remains undisturbed.

4.1.2.3. *BMP E1.40: Permanent Seeding and Planting*

Description

The establishment of perennial vegetative cover on disturbed areas.

Purpose

- To establish permanent vegetation (i.e., grasses, legumes, trees, and shrubs) as rapidly as possible to prevent soil erosion by wind or water, and to improve wildlife habitat and site aesthetics.
- To provide pollutant filtration (biofiltration) in vegetation-lined channels and to establish constructed wetlands as required.

Conditions Where Practice Applies

- Graded, final graded, or cleared areas where permanent vegetative cover is needed to stabilize the soil
- Areas that will not be brought to final grade for 1 year or more
- Vegetation-lined channels
- Retention or detention ponds as required

Planning Considerations

Vegetation controls erosion by reducing the velocity and the volume of overland flow and protecting the bare soil surface from raindrop impact.

Land that has been disturbed requires vegetative cover. The most common and economical means of establishing this cover is by seeding grasses and legumes.

Advantages of seeding over other means of establishing plants include the small initial establishment cost, the wide variety of grasses and legumes available, low labor requirement, and ease of establishment in difficult areas.

Disadvantages that must be dealt with are the potential for erosion during the establishment stage, a need to reseed areas that fail to establish, limited periods during the year suitable for seeding, and a need for water and appropriate climatic conditions during germination.

Consider the microclimate(s) within the development area. Low areas may have frost pockets and require hardier vegetation since cold air tends to sink and flow towards low spots. South-facing slopes may be more difficult to re-vegetate because they tend to be sunnier and drier.

There are so many variables in plant growth that an end product cannot be guaranteed. Much can be done in the planning stages to increase the chances for successful seeding. Selection of the right plant materials for the site, good seedbed preparation, timing, and conscientious maintenance are important. Whenever possible, native species of plants should be used for landscaping. These plants are already adapted to the locale, and survivability should be higher than with exotic species.

Native species are also less likely to require irrigation. Irrigation can require extensive maintenance, is not cost-effective, and is not an ecologically sound practice.

Design Criteria

- Vegetation cannot be expected to supply an erosion control cover and prevent slippage on a soil that is not stable due to its texture, structure, water movement, or excessive slope.
- Seeding should be done immediately after final shaping, except during the period of November 1 through March 1, when the site should be protected by mulching or plastic covering until the next seeding period. Seeding completed between July 1 and August 30 will require irrigation until 75 percent grass cover is established.
- Permanent vegetation may be in the form of grass-type growth by seeding or sodding, or it may be trees or shrubs, or a combination of these. Establishing this cover may require the use of supplemental materials, such as mulch or jute netting (refer to BMP E1.15).
- Site Preparation: Install temporary surface runoff control measures prior to seeding or planting to protect the surface from erosion until the vegetation is established. Temporary measures include gradient terraces, berms, dikes, level spreaders, drainage channels, and sediment basins.
- Soil Amendments: Soil amendments should be used to achieve organic matter and permeability performance defined in engineered soil/landscape systems. Compost used should meet City of Seattle Standard Specifications 9-14.4(5) or 9-14.4(9). Refer to *Volume 3 – Project Stormwater Control, Section 5.1* for additional requirements regarding soil amendments.
- Seeding Grasses and Legumes: Prepare seedbed. If infertile or coarse textured subsoil will be exposed during land shaping, it is best to stockpile topsoil and re-spread it over the finished slope at a minimum 2- to 6-inch depth and roll it to provide a firm seedbed. If construction fills have left soil exposed with a loose, rough, or irregular surface, smooth with blade and roll. If cuts or construction equipment have left a tightly compacted surface, break with chisel plow or other suitable implement. Perform all cultivating operations across or at right angles to the slope (contoured), such as with cat tracks on the final pass. The seedbed should be firm with a fairly fine surface. All soil should be roughened before seeding. If compaction is required for engineering purposes, slopes must be track walked before seeding.
- Seeding: Apply an appropriate mixture to the prepared seedbed at a rate of 120 pounds/acre. The erosion seeding mixture for application is presented in Table 4.

Table 4. Permanent Seeding Mixture.^a

Name	Percent by Weight
Turf-type perennial rye ^b	50 percent
Creeping red fescue ^b	20 percent
Chewings fescue ^b	20 percent
Hard fescue	10 percent

Notes:

^a Hydroseeding applications with approved seed-mulch-fertilizer mixtures may also be used. Mixture must be no less than 98 percent pure and have a minimum germination rate of 90 percent.

^b Refer to City of Seattle Standard Specification 9-14.2(1) for approved varieties.

- Cover the seed with topsoil or mulch no deeper than 1/2 inch. It is better to work topsoil into the upper soil layer rather than spread a layer of it directly onto the top of the native soil.
- “Hydroseeding” applications with approved seed-mulch-fertilizer mixtures may also be used. Hydroseed applications should include a minimum of 1,500 pounds per acre of mulch with 3 percent tackifier.
- Mulch is always required for seeding. Mulch can be applied on top of the seed or simultaneously by hydroseeding.
- Seeding and planting should be supplied with adequate moisture. Supply water as needed. Water application rates should be controlled to prevent runoff.
- Re-seed and re-plant any areas which fail to establish at least 80 percent cover or experience erosion.
- Control erosion in areas with other BMPs, such as mulching, netting, or matting as necessary to prevent soil loss.
- Wetlands Seed Mixtures: For newly created wetlands, a wetlands specialist should design plantings to provide the best chance of success. Refer to *Volume 3 – Project Stormwater Control* for more information on constructed wetlands.
- Noxious weeds such as reed canary grass (*Phalaris arundinacea*) or purple loosestrife (*Lythrum salicaria*) are not allowed.
- Tree and Shrub Planting: Besides their erosion and sediment control values, trees and shrubs also provide natural beauty and wildlife benefits. When used for the latter, they are usually more effective when planted in clumps or blocks. These procedures should be followed:
 - Trees and shrubs will do best in topsoil. If no topsoil is available, they can be established in subsoil with proper amendment. If trees and shrubs are to be planted in subsoil, particular attention should be paid to amending the soil with generous amounts of organic matter. Mulches should also be used.
 - Good quality planting stock should be used. Normally 1- to 2-year-old deciduous seedlings, and 3- to 4-year-old coniferous transplants, when properly produced and handled are adequate. Stock should be kept cool and moist from time of receipt and planted as soon as possible.
 - Competing vegetation, if significant, should be pulled out of the area where the plant or plants are to be placed.

Maintenance

Inspect seeded areas for failure, make necessary repairs, and re-seed areas with less than 80 percent cover immediately. Conduct a follow-up survey after 1 year and replace failed plants where necessary.

- If vegetative cover is inadequate to prevent rill erosion, apply other BMPs, assuming vegetation was successful.
- If a stand has less than 40 percent cover, re-evaluate choice of plant materials and quantities of lime and fertilizer. Re-establish the stand following recommendations for seedbed preparation and seeding, omitting lime and fertilizer in the absence of soil test results. If the season prevents re-sowing, mulch or jute netting is an effective temporary cover.

4.1.2.4. *BMP E1.45: Sodding*

Description

Stabilizing fine-graded disturbed areas by establishing permanent grass stands with sod.

Purpose

To establish permanent turf for immediate erosion protection or to stabilize drainage channels where concentrated overland flow will occur.

Conditions Where Practice Applies

- Disturbed areas which require immediate vegetative cover
- Drainage channels carrying intermittent flow, where immediate stabilization or aesthetics are factors, and other locations particularly suited to stabilization with sod

Planning Considerations

Sod can initially be more costly than seeding, but the advantages often justify the increased initial costs. Sod provides immediate erosion control and a green surface; however, it must be protected from disturbance while it takes root. Sod is preferable to seed due to the following:

- Reduced failure as compared to seed and the lack of weeds
- Can be established nearly year round
- Immediate protection of the drainage channel after application

Design Criteria

- Shape and smooth the surface to final grade in accordance with the approved grading plan. Over excavate the swale 4 to 6 inches below design elevation to allow room for placing soil amendment and sod.
- Soil amendments should be used to achieve organic matter and permeability performance defined in engineered soil/landscape systems. Compost used should meet City of Seattle Standard Specifications 9-14.4(5) or 9-14.4(9) for Grade A quality compost. Refer to *Volume 3, Section 5.1* for additional requirements regarding soil amendments.
- Add lime to reach a soil pH value of 6.5 (based on soil tests).
- Fertilize according to a soil test or in the absence of a test use available nitrogen, phosphorus and potash as prescribed for permanent seeding. Use fertilizers that are not highly soluble.
- Work lime and fertilizer into the soil 1 to 2 inches deep and smooth the surface.
- Lay strips of sod beginning at the lowest area to be sodded and perpendicular to the direction of water flow. Wedge strips securely in place. Square the ends of each strip to provide for a close, tight fit. Stagger joints at least 12 inches. Staple the upstream edge of each sod strip if installed on slopes steeper than 18 percent.

- Roll the sodded area and irrigate.
- When sodding is carried out in alternating strips, or other patterns, seed the areas between the sod immediately after sodding.
- Sod should be free of weeds and be of uniform thickness (approximately 1 inch) and should have a dense root mat for mechanical strength.

Maintenance

Inspect sodded areas regularly, especially after large storm events. Re-tack, re-sod, or re-seed and protect with a net or mat as necessary.

4.1.2.5. *BMP E1.50: High-Visibility Fence*

Description

Limit access to portions of site not undergoing construction.

Purpose

Fencing is intended to:

- Restrict clearing to approved limits
- Prevent disturbance of sensitive areas, their buffers, and other areas required to be left undisturbed
- Limit construction traffic to designated construction entrances, exits, or internal roads
- Protect areas where marking with survey tape may not provide adequate protection

Conditions Where Practice Applies

To establish clearing limits, plastic, fabric, or metal fence may be used:

- At the boundary of sensitive areas, their buffers, and other areas required to be left uncleared
- As necessary to control vehicle access to and on the site

Design Criteria

- High-visibility plastic fence should be composed of a high-density polyethylene material and should be at least four feet in height. Posts for the fencing should be steel or wood and placed every 6 feet on center (maximum) or as needed to ensure rigidity. The fencing should be fastened to the post every six inches with a polyethylene tie. On long continuous lengths of fencing, a tension wire or rope should be used as a top stringer to prevent sagging between posts. The fence color should be high-visibility orange. The fence tensile strength should be 360 lbs/ft using the ASTM D4595 testing method.
- If appropriate, install fabric [filtersi#](#) fence in accordance with BMP E3.10 to act as a high-visibility fence. [FilterSi#](#) fence should be at least 3 feet high and must be highly visible to meet the requirements of this BMP.
- Metal fences must be designed and installed according to the manufacturer's specifications.
- Metal fences should be at least 3 feet high and must be highly visible.
- Fences should not be wired or stapled to trees.

Maintenance

If the fence has been damaged or visibility reduced, it should be repaired or replaced immediately and visibility restored.

4.2. Erosion Control Practices

Naturally occurring (undisturbed) soil and vegetation provide important stormwater management functions, including:

- Water infiltration
- Nutrient, sediment, and pollutant adsorption
- Sediment and pollutant biofiltration
- Water interflow storage and transmission
- Pollutant decomposition

These functions are largely lost when construction practices erode away native soil and vegetation.

This section presents BMPs that temporarily and permanently address erosion, including measures for project site stabilization, slope protection, and drainage channel protection. The BMPs in this section have been divided into three basic groups based on these characteristics:

1. Temporary erosion control practices, such as road stabilization, check dams, and dust control (beginning at *Section 4.2.1*)
2. Permanent erosion control practices, such as gradient terraces and [riprap](#) channel lining (refer to Ecology's *Stormwater Management Manual for Western Washington [SWMMWW]*)
3. Temporary or permanent erosion control practices, such as subsurface drains, earth dikes and drainage swales, and outlet protection (beginning at *Section 4.2.3*)

The requirements for maintaining permanent erosion control BMPs are included with each description; however, all temporary and permanent erosion and sediment control practices should be maintained and repaired as needed to assure continued performance of their intended function.

The City requires that all new, replaced, and disturbed topsoil is amended prior to completion of the project. Refer to *Volume 3 – Project Stormwater Control* for guidance on soil amendment requirements.

Permanent erosion control BMPs may need to be designed by an engineer and may have additional criteria for flow and water quality treatment requirements. Variations or alterations to the minimum BMP requirements typically require an engineer's approval. Refer to *Volume 1* for thresholds and standards.

4.2.1. Temporary Erosion Control BMPs

Although temporary erosion control BMPs are emphasized in this section, they may be combined with permanent control facilities to provide protection of downstream properties during construction. Temporary facilities provide siltation control, but downstream erosion

protection must also be provided. Refer to *Volume 3 – Project Stormwater Control* for flow control requirements.

Temporary cover BMPs are described in the sections below and include:

- BMP E2.10: Stabilized Construction [Entrance Access](#) (*Section 4.2.1.1*)
- BMP E2.15: Tire Wash (*Section 4.2.1.2*)
- BMP E2.20: Construction Road Stabilization (*Section 4.2.1.3*)
- BMP E2.35: Check Dams (*Section 4.2.1.4*)
- BMP E2.40: Triangular Silt Dike (Geotextile-encased Check Dam) (*Section 4.2.1.5*)
- BMP E2.45: Dust Control (*Section 4.2.1.6*)
- Level Spreader – refer to *Appendix E*
- Water Bars – refer to Ecology BMP C203

4.2.1.1. *BMP E2.10: Stabilized Construction [Entrance Access](#)*

Description

A temporary rock-stabilized pad located at all points of vehicular ingress and egress on a construction project or site.

Purpose

To reduce the amount of mud, dirt, rocks, etc. transported onto public roads by motor vehicles or runoff by constructing a stabilized pad of rock spalls at entrances [to and exits to and from](#) project sites and washing of tires during egress (Figure 6 and Figure 7).



Figure 6. Stabilized Construction [Entrance Access](#).



Figure 7. Stabilized Construction [Entrance Access](#).

Conditions Where Practice Applies

Whenever traffic leaves a project site and moves onto a public road or other paved area. Also refer to BMP E3.70 Street Sweeping and Vacuuming.

Planning Considerations

Construction entrances [and exits](#) provide an area where mud can be removed from vehicle tires before they enter a public road. Construction entrances [and exits](#) should be used in conjunction with the stabilization of construction roads to reduce the amount of mud picked up by vehicles. Construction vehicle access and exit should be limited to one route, if possible.

It is important to note that this BMP will only be effective if sediment control is used throughout the rest of the project site.

Design Criteria

- A geotextile should be placed under the spalls to prevent fine sediment from pumping up into the rock pad. The geotextile should meet the standards presented in City of Seattle Standard Specification 9-37.
- Material should be quarry spalls (where feasible), 4 ~~inches~~ to 8 inches in size. Do not use crushed concrete, [recycled concrete](#), cement, or calcium chloride for construction [entrance-access](#) stabilization, because these products raise pH levels in stormwater runoff.

[Alternative materials to quarry spalls may be used with increased offsite inspections. For an alternative specification used by the Washington State Department of Transportation \(WSDOT\), refer to BMP C105 Stabilized Construction Access in Volume II of the SWMMWW.](#)

- The rock pad should be at least 12 inches thick and 100 feet in length for sites more than 1 acre; and may be reduced to the maximum practicable size when the size or configuration of the site does not allow the full 100-foot length.
- The access width should be the full width of the vehicle ingress and egress area.
- Additional rock should be added periodically to maintain proper function of the pad.
- Fencing should be installed as necessary to restrict traffic to the construction [entrance-access](#).
- Whenever possible, the [access point entrance](#) should be constructed on level ground with a firm, compacted subgrade. This can substantially increase the effectiveness of the pad and reduce the need for maintenance.

Maintenance

- If the [entrance-access point](#) is not preventing sediment from being tracked onto pavement, then alternative measures are required to keep the streets free of sediment. This may include an increase in the dimensions of the entrance, or the installation of a tire wash (BMP E2.15). Until the entrance is functioning properly, street sweeping may be required.
- Maintain the [entrance-access point](#) in a condition that will prevent tracking or flow of mud onto public rights-of-way. This may require periodic top dressing with 2-inch rock, as conditions demand, and repair and/or cleanout of any structures used to trap sediment. Thoroughly clean all materials spilled, dropped, washed, or tracked from vehicles onto roadways at the end of each day, or more frequently during wet weather.
- Remove any sediment that is tracked onto pavement by shoveling or street sweeping. Remove or stabilize onsite sediment collected by sweeping.
- Street washing is allowed only after sediment is removed in accordance with the above bullet. Do not allow street washwater to enter the public drainage system or systems tributary to waters of the state. All street washwater must be collected and discharged either back onto the site or into the sanitary sewer (if permitted).
- Immediately remove any quarry spalls loosened from the pad that end up on the roadway or sidewalk.

4.2.1.2. *BMP E2.15: Tire Wash*

Description

A system that uses water to wash motor vehicle tires located at points of egress from a project site.

Purpose

A tire wash is used to remove mud, dirt, rocks, etc. from tires and under carriages, and to prevent sediment from being transported onto public roads.

Conditions Where Practice Applies

When a stabilized construction [entrance-access or exit](#) (refer to BMP E2.10) is not preventing sediment from being tracked onto pavement.

Planning Considerations

If approval by King County for wastewater discharge to the sanitary or combined sewer is not obtained, process wastewater can be collected and taken off site to an approved location. Indicate the ultimate discharge point or collection point on the Construction Stormwater [and Erosion Control and Soil Management](#) Plan sheet that clearly identifies the location(s) of stormwater discharges.

Tire washes provide an area where mud can be removed from vehicle tires before they enter a public road. Tire washes and construction [entrances-access points](#) should be used in conjunction with the stabilization of construction roads to reduce the amount of mud picked up by vehicles.

It is important to note that this BMP will only be effective if sediment control is used throughout the rest of the project site.

Design Criteria

- Suggested details are shown in Figure 8. A minimum of 6 inches of asphalt treated base (ATB) over crushed base material or 8 inches over a good subgrade is recommended to pave the tire wash.
- Use a low clearance truck to test the tire wash before paving. Either a belly dump or lowboy will work well to test clearance.
- Keep the water level from 12 to 14 inches deep to avoid damage to truck hubs and filling the truck tongues with water.
- Midpoint spray nozzles are only needed in extremely muddy conditions.
- Tire wash systems should be designed with a small change in grade—6 to 12 inches for a 10-foot wide pond—to allow sediment to flow to the low side of the pond to help prevent re-suspension of sediment. A drain pipe with a 2- to 3-foot riser should be installed on the low side of the pond to allow for easy cleaning and refilling. Polymers may be used to promote coagulation and flocculation in a closed-loop system. Refer to Ecology BMP C126 for additional information on polyacrylamide (PAM) polymers.

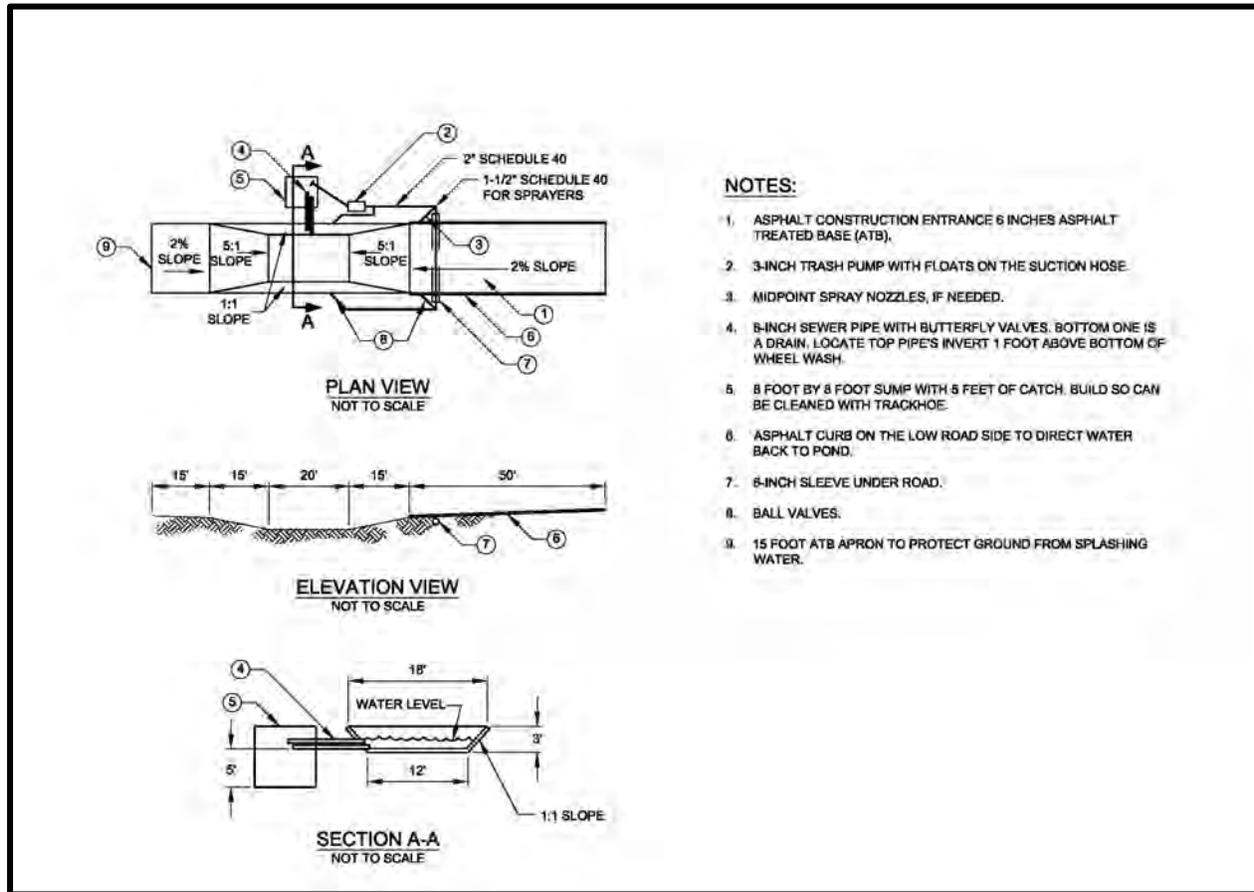


Figure 8. Tire Wash Details.

Maintenance

- The washwater should be changed a minimum of once per day. On large earthwork jobs where more than 10 to 20 trucks per hour are expected, the washwater will need to be changed more often.
- Wheel wash or tire bath wastewater should be discharged to a separate onsite treatment system, that prevents discharge to receiving waters such as closed-loop recirculation or upland land application, or to the sanitary sewer with prior approval by King County.

4.2.1.3. *BMP E2.20: Construction Road Stabilization*

Description

The temporary stabilization with rock on access roads, subdivision roads, parking areas, and other onsite vehicle transportation routes immediately after grading.

Purpose

- To reduce erosion of temporary road beds by construction traffic during wet weather
- To reduce the erosion and therefore re-grading of permanent road beds between the time of initial grading and final stabilization
- To minimize the amount of dirt tracked off site by vehicular traffic

Conditions Where Practice Applies

Wherever rock-base roads or parking areas are constructed, whether permanent or temporary, for use by construction traffic.

Planning Considerations

Areas graded for construction vehicle transport and parking purposes are especially susceptible to erosion. The exposed soil surface is continually disturbed, leaving no opportunity for vegetative stabilization. Such areas also tend to collect and transport runoff waters along their surfaces. During wet weather, they often become muddy quagmires that generate significant quantities of sediment that may pollute nearby streams or be transported off site on the wheels of construction vehicles. Dirt roads can become so unstable during wet weather that they are virtually unusable.

Immediate stabilization of such areas with rock may cost money at the outset, but it may actually save money in the long run by increasing the usefulness of the road during wet weather.

Permanent roads and parking areas should be paved as soon as possible after grading. As an alternative, the early application of rock may solve potential erosion and stability problems and eliminate later re-grading costs. Some of the rock will also probably remain in place for use as part of the final base course of the road.

Design Criteria

- Immediately after grading or the completion of utility installation within the right-of-way, apply a 6-inch course of 2- to 4-inch crushed rock, gravel base, or crushed surfacing base course. A 4-inch course of asphalt treated base (ATB) may be used in lieu of the crushed rock.
- Temporary roads should not exceed 15 percent, should minimize cuts in existing slopes, and be carefully graded to drain transversely. Provide drainage swales to carry flow to a sediment control BMP (*Section 4.3*).
- Protect installed inlets to prevent sediment-laden water entering the drain sewer system (refer to BMP E3.25).

- Maintain undisturbed buffer areas at all stream crossings.
- Seed, mulch, and/or cover areas adjacent to culvert crossings and steep slopes.
- Use dust control when necessary (refer to BMP E2.45).
- If the stabilized construction [entrance access](#) does not adequately reduce the amount of tracked material, install one or more tire wash BMPs (refer to BMP E2.15).
- Install fencing to limit the access of vehicles to only those roads and parking areas that are stabilized.

Maintenance

- Inspect stabilized areas regularly, especially after large storm events. Add crushed rock if necessary and re-stabilize any areas found to be eroding.

4.2.1.4. *BMP E2.35: Check Dams*

Description

Small dams constructed across a swale or drainage ditch.

Purpose

To reduce the effective slope of the channel and, therefore, the velocity of concentrated flows; reduce erosion of the swale or ditch; and slow water velocity to allow retention of sediments.

Conditions Where Practice Applies

Where temporary channels or permanent channels are not yet vegetated, or [riprap](#) channel lining is infeasible and, therefore, velocity checks are required. Check dams should be placed at regular intervals within constructed channels that are cut down a slope.

Planning Considerations

The City's ECA regulations require protection for high flow refuge habitat for overwintering juvenile salmonids and emergent salmonid fry. Check dams cannot be placed below the expected backwater from any of these areas during specific times of the year. Refer to SMC 25.09 for site-specific requirements.

No check dams may be placed in streams (unless approved by the State Departments of Fisheries or Wildlife as appropriate). Other permits may also be necessary.

Check dams can be constructed of either rock or gravel filled sandbags. If rock check dams are used in grass-lined channels that will be mowed, care should be taken to remove all the rock from the channel when the dam is removed. This should include any rock that has washed downstream.

Design Criteria

- Check dams can be constructed of rock or pea-gravel filled bags. Where high velocity flow is not a concern, compost socks may be used. If necessary, compost socks may be stacked.
- Place check dams should perpendicular to the flow of water.
- The dam should form a triangle when viewed from the side. This prevents undercutting as water flows over the face of the dam rather than falling directly onto the ditch bottom.
- Before installing check dams, impound and bypass upstream flow away from the work area. Options for bypassing include pumps, siphons, or temporary channels.
- Check dams in association with sumps work more effectively at slowing flow and retaining sediment than just a check dam alone. Provide a deep sump immediately upstream of the check dam.

- In some cases, if carefully located and designed, check dams can remain as permanent installations with very minor re-grading. They may be left as either spillways—in which case accumulated sediment would be graded and seeded—or as check dams to prevent further sediment from leaving the site.
- Keep the maximum spacing between the dams such that the toe of the upstream dam is at the same elevation as the top of the downstream dam (Figure 9).

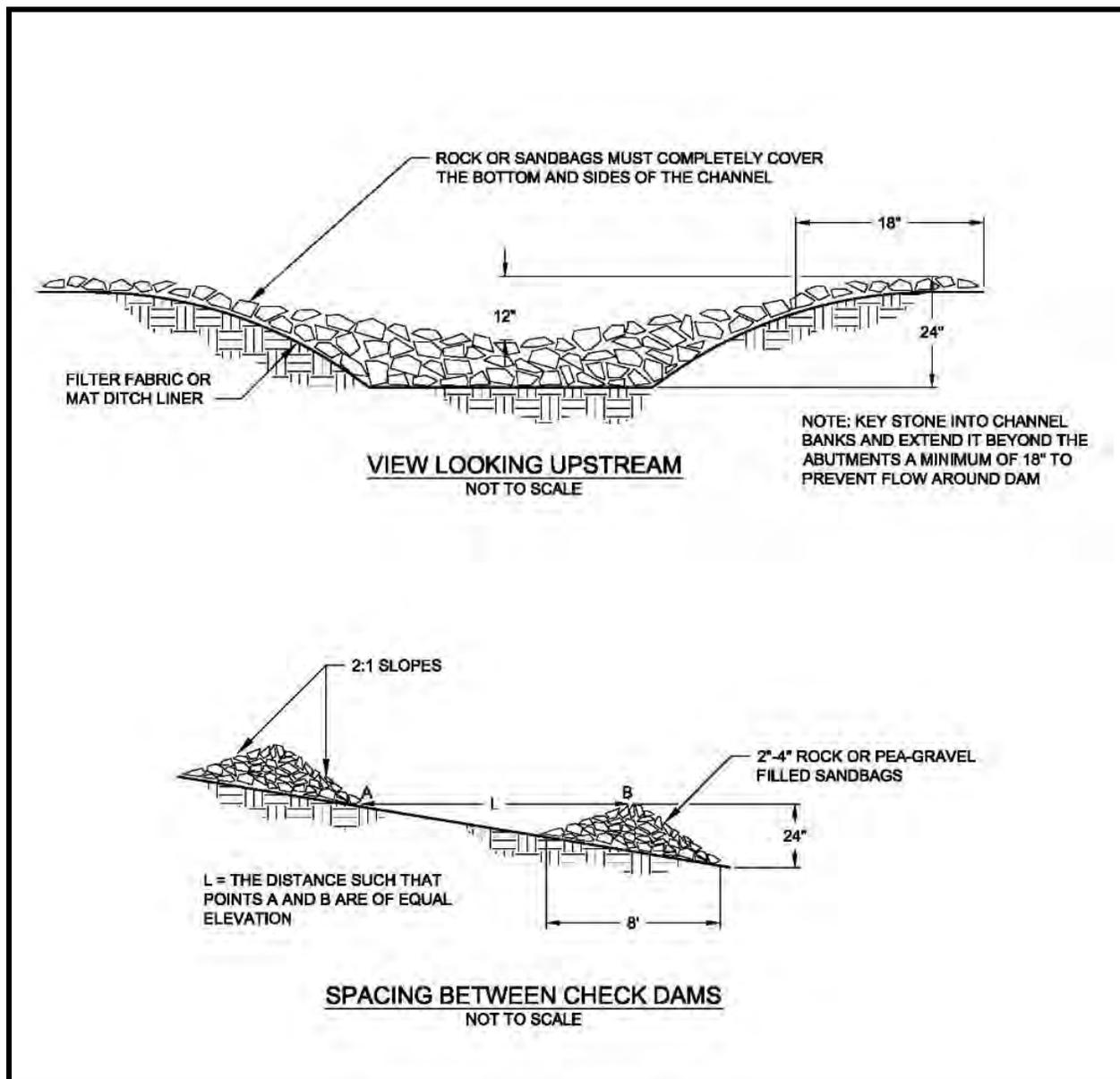


Figure 9. Check Dams.

- Keep the maximum height at 2 feet at the center of the dam.
- Keep the center of the check dam at least 12 inches lower than the outer edges at natural ground elevation.
- Keep the side slopes of the check dam at 2H:1V or flatter.
- Key the rock into the ditch banks and extend it beyond the abutments a minimum of 18 inches to avoid washouts from overflow around the dam.
- Rock check dams should be constructed of appropriately sized rock. The rock used must be large enough to stay in place given the expected design flow through the channel. Place the rock by hand or by mechanical placement (no dumping of rock to form dam) to achieve complete coverage of the ditch or swale and to ensure that the center of the dam is lower than the edges.
- Use filter fabric foundation under a rock or sand bag check dam. This is not necessary if a mat ditch liner is used. A piece of organic or synthetic mat cut to fit will also work for this purpose.
- In the case of grass-lined ditches and swales, remove check dams when the grass has matured sufficiently to protect the ditch or swale, unless the slope of the swale is greater than 4 percent. Immediately after dam removal, seed and mulch the area beneath the check dams.
- Ensure that channel appurtenances, such as culvert entrances below check dams, are not subject to damage or blockage from displaced rocks.

Maintenance

- Monitor check dams for performance and sediment accumulation during and after each runoff producing rainfall. Remove sediment when it reaches one-half the sump depth.
- If significant erosion occurs between dams, install a protective riprap liner in that portion of the channel.

4.2.1.5. *BMP E2.40: Triangular Silt Dike (~~TSD Geotextile-encased Check Dam~~)*

Description

A triangular dike made of urethane foam sewn into a woven geosynthetic fabric.

Purpose

~~Triangular silt dikes (TSDs)~~ may be used as check dams, for perimeter protection, for temporary soil stockpile protection, for drop inlet protection, or as a temporary earth dike (Figure 10).

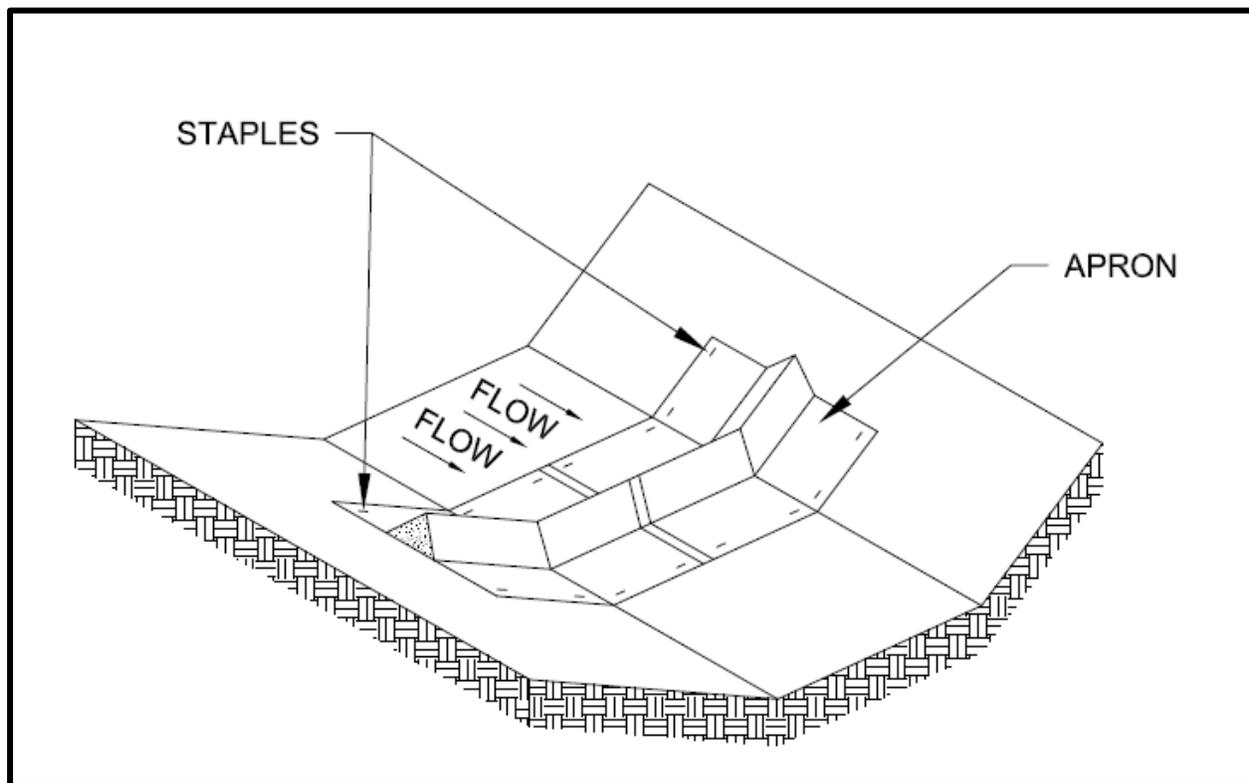


Figure 10. Triangular Silt Dike Cut Section.

Conditions Where Practice Applies

- May be used as temporary check dams in ditches of any dimension
- May be used on soil or pavement with adhesive or staples
- ~~Triangular silt dikes TSDs~~ have been used to build temporary:
 - Sediment ponds
 - Diversion ditches
 - Concrete washout facilities
 - Curbing
 - Water bars
 - Level spreaders
 - Berms

Planning Considerations

- When used as check dams:
 - ~~TSDs~~Check dams should be located and installed as soon as construction will allow.
 - ~~TSDs~~Check dams should be placed perpendicular to the flow of water.
 - Anticipate submergence and deposition above the ~~TSD~~triangular silt dam and erosion from high flows around the edges of the dam.

Design Criteria

This BMP is typically made of urethane foam sewn into a woven geosynthetic fabric. It is triangular, 10 inches to 14 inches high in the center, with a 20- to 28-inch base. A 2-foot apron extends beyond both sides of the triangle along its standard section of 7 feet. A sleeve at one end allows attachment of additional sections as needed.

- Install with ends curved up to prevent water from flowing around the ends.
- The fabric flaps and check dam units are attached to the ground with wire staples. Wire staples should be No. 11 gauge wire and should be 200 millimeters (mm) to 300 mm in length.
- When multiple units are installed, the sleeve of fabric at the end of the unit should overlap the abutting unit and be stapled.
- When used as check dams, secure the leading edge with rocks, sandbags, or a small key slot and staples.

Maintenance

- ~~Inspect~~Monitor ~~triangular silt dams~~TSDs for performance and sediment accumulation during and after each ~~runoff-producing~~rainfall that produces runoff. Remove sediment when it reaches one-half the height of the ~~TSD~~dam.
- In the case of grass-lined ditches and swales, remove check dams and accumulated sediment when the grass has matured sufficiently to protect the ditch or swale, unless the slope of the swale is greater than 4 percent. Seed and mulch the area beneath the check dams immediately after dam removal.
- Immediately repair any damage or any undercutting of the ~~dam~~TSD.

4.2.1.6. *BMP E2.45: Dust Control*

Description

Reducing surface and air movement of dust during land-disturbing, demolition, and construction activities.

Purpose

To prevent surface and air movement of dust from exposed soil surfaces onto roadways, adjoining properties and into drainage channels and receiving waters (Figure 11).



Figure 11. Using a Water Truck for Dust Control.

Conditions Where Practice Applies

In areas (including roadways) subject to surface and air movement of dust where on and offsite damage is likely to occur if preventive measures are not taken.

Planning Considerations

Research at project sites has established an average dust emission rate of 1.2 tons/acre/month for active construction.

Construction activities inevitably result in the exposure and disturbance of soil. Fugitive dust is emitted both during the activities (i.e., excavation, demolition, vehicle traffic, human activity) and as a result of wind erosion over the exposed earth surfaces. Large quantities of dust are typically generated by “heavy” construction activities, such as road and street construction and subdivision, commercial and industrial development, which involve disturbance of significant areas of soil surface. Earthmoving activities are the major source, but traffic and general disturbance of the soil also generate significant dust emissions.

In planning for dust control, remember that the less soil is exposed at any one time, the less potential there will be for dust generation. Therefore, phasing a project and utilizing temporary stabilization practices upon the completion of grading can significantly reduce dust emissions. Also, limit traffic that will be on areas off the site roadways.

Design Criteria

- Minimize the period of soil exposure through use of temporary ground cover and other temporary stabilization practices (refer to Seeding and Mulching, BMPs E1.10 and E1.15, respectively).
- Construct natural or artificial windbreaks or windscreens. These may be designed as enclosures for small dust sources.
- Sprinkle the site with water until surface is wet. Repeat as needed. To prevent carryout of mud onto street, refer to Stabilized Construction [Entrance Access](#) (BMP E2.10) and Tire Wash (BMP E2.15).
- Spray exposed soil areas with approved dust palliative. Oil should not be used for dust suppression. Refer to [Ecology BMP C250 Appendix B](#) for information on chemical treatment.
- Building demolition should use sufficient water, such as from a hydrant or water truck(s), to thoroughly wet buildings and debris for dust suppression and control for water runoff from the site. Repeat as needed. To prevent carryout of mud onto the street, refer to Stabilized Construction [Entrance Access](#) (BMP E2.10) and Tire Wash (BMP E2.15).

Maintenance

Re-spray area as necessary to keep dust to a minimum.

4.2.2. *Permanent Erosion Control BMPs*

Permanent erosion control BMPs are implemented both during and upon completion of construction activities. Permanent erosion control reduces erosion wherever practicable and can be achieved primarily by minimizing erosion by installing permanent stabilizing structures and/or materials to new construction or existing sites. For example, by adding gradient terraces to an existing or newly constructed slope, erosion will be significantly reduced by creating a set of ridges and channels that intercept runoff and direct it to a controlled outlet. The benefit is that rill and gully formation will be minimized and toe of slope erosion will decrease as a result. Another benefit of permanent erosion control is that some of the following BMPs include using vegetation which may be incorporated into permanent cover BMPs described in *Section 4.1.2*.

Permanent erosion control BMPs should be designed by an engineer and may have additional criteria for flow control and water quality treatment requirements. Refer to *Volume 3 – Project Stormwater Control*.

The standards and specifications for permanent erosion control BMPs include:

- [Riprap](#) Channel Lining – refer to Ecology BMP C202
- Gradient Terracing – refer to Ecology BMP C131

4.2.3. Temporary or Permanent Erosion Control BMPs

There is a subset of erosion control BMPs that may be used as temporary controls during construction, then remain as a permanent erosion control measure. For example, an earth dike and drainage swale would provide siltation control during construction, and remain as permanent protection of downstream properties after construction.

Temporary measures that may also remain as a permanent erosion control are typically implemented during construction activities.

The BMPs in this section include:

- BMP E2.70: Subsurface Drains (*Section 4.2.3.1*)
- BMP E2.80: Earth Dike and Drainage Swale (*Section 4.2.3.2*)
- Outlet Protection – refer to *Appendix E*
- Pipe Slope Drains – refer to *Appendix E*
- Surface Roughening – refer to Ecology BMP C130
- Grass-lined Channels – refer to Ecology BMP C201

The requirements for maintaining permanent BMPs are included with each description; however, all temporary and permanent erosion and sediment control practices should be maintained and repaired as needed to assure continued performance of their intended function.

4.2.3.1. *BMP E2.70: Subsurface Drains*

Description

A perforated conduit such as a pipe, tubing, or tile installed beneath the ground to intercept and convey groundwater.

Purpose

To provide a dewatering mechanism for draining excessively wet, sloping soils—usually consisting of an underground-perforated pipe that will intercept and convey groundwater.

Conditions When Practice Applies

Wherever excessive water must be removed from the soil. The soil must be deep and permeable enough to allow an effective system to be installed. This standard does not apply to subsurface drains for building foundations or deep excavations.

Planning Considerations

Subsurface drainage systems are of two types: relief drains and interceptor drains. Relief drains are used either to lower the water table in order to improve the growth of vegetation, or to remove ponded water. They are installed along a slope and drain in the direction of the slope. They can be installed in a gridiron pattern, a herringbone pattern, or a random pattern.

Interceptor drains are used to remove water as it seeps down a slope to prevent the soil from becoming saturated and subject to slippage. They are installed across a slope and drain to the side of the slope. They usually consist of a single pipe or series of single pipes instead of a patterned layout.

Design Criteria

- Temporary measures that may also remain as a permanent erosion control are typically implemented during construction activities. The depth of an interceptor drain is determined primarily by the depth to which the water table is to be lowered or the depth to a confining layer. For practical reasons, the maximum depth is usually limited to 6 feet, with a minimum cover of 2 feet to protect the conduit.
- The soil should have depth and sufficient permeability to permit installation of an effective drainage system at a depth of 2 to 6 feet.
- An adequate outlet for the drainage system must be available either by gravity or by pumping.
- The quantity and quality of discharge needs to consider the ultimate receiving water (additional detention and/or treatment may be required).
- The capacity of an interceptor drain is determined by calculating the maximum rate of groundwater flow to be intercepted. Therefore, it is good practice to make completed subsurface investigations, including hydraulic conductivity of the soil, before designing a subsurface drainage system.

- Subsurface drains are sized for the required capacity without pressure flow. The minimum diameter for a subsurface drain is 4 inches.
- The minimum velocity required to prevent silting is 1.4 feet per second (ft/sec). Grade the line to achieve at least this velocity. The maximum allowable velocity using a sand-gravel filter or envelope is 9 feet per second.
- Use filter material and fabric around all drains for proper bedding and filtration of fine materials. Envelopes and filters should surround the drain to a minimum of 3-inch thickness.
- Install the outlet of the subsurface drain such that it empties into a sediment trap or pond. If free of sediment, it can empty into a receiving water, swale, or stable vegetated area adequately protected from erosion and undermining.
- The strength and durability of the pipe must meet the requirements of the site in accordance with the manufacturer's specifications.
- Secure an animal guard to the outlet end of the pipe to keep out rodents.
- Use outlet pipe of corrugated metal, cast iron, or heavy-duty plastic without perforations and at least 10 feet long. Do not use an envelope or filter material around the outlet pipe, and bury at least two-thirds of the pipe length.
- When outlet velocities exceed those allowable for the receiving water, provide outlet protection.

Construction Specifications

- Construct the trench on a continuous grade with no reverse grades or low spots.
- Stabilize soft or yielding soils under the drain with gravel or other suitable material.
- Do not use deformed, warped, or otherwise unsuitable pipe.
- Place filter material as specified with at least 3 inches of material on all sides of the pipe.
- Backfill immediately after placement of the pipe. Do not allow sections of pipe to remain uncovered overnight or during a rainstorm. Place backfill material in the trench in such a manner that the drain pipe is not displaced or damaged.

Maintenance

- Periodically check subsurface drains to ensure that they are free-flowing and not clogged with sediment.
- Keep the outlet clean and free of debris.
- Keep surface inlets open and free of sediment and other debris.
- Trees located too close to a subsurface drain often clog the system with their roots. If a drain becomes clogged, relocate the drain to minimize this problem. As a last resort, the trees may need to be removed. Tree removal may require prior approval by SDCI and SDOT.
- Where heavy vehicles cross drains, check the line to ensure that it is not crushed.

4.2.3.2. BMP E2.80: Earth Dike and Drainage Swale

Description

A ridge of compacted soil or a swale with vegetative lining located at the top or base of a sloping disturbed area.

Purpose

To intercept stormwater runoff from drainage areas above unprotected slopes and direct it to a stabilized outlet.

Conditions Where Practice Applies

Wherever the volume and velocity of runoff from exposed or disturbed slopes must be reduced. When an earth dike/drainage swale is placed above a disturbed slope, it reduces the volume of water reaching the disturbed area by intercepting runoff from above (Figure 12). When it is placed horizontally across a disturbed slope, it reduces the velocity of runoff flowing down the slope by reducing the distance that the runoff can flow downhill.

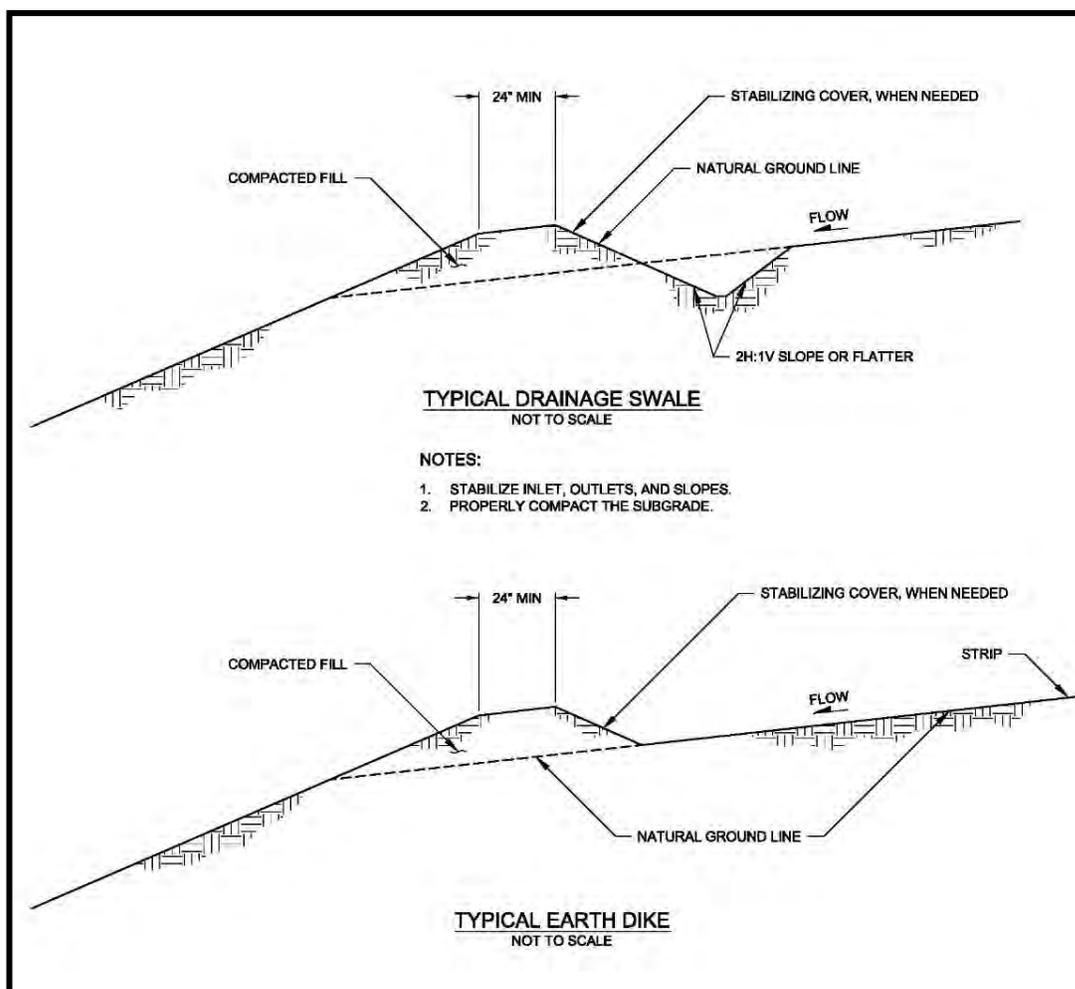


Figure 12. Earth Dike and Drainage Swale.

Planning Considerations

A temporary diversion dike or swale is intended to divert overland sheet flow to a stabilized outlet or a sediment trapping facility during establishment of permanent stabilization on a sloping disturbed area. When used at the top of a slope, the structure protects exposed slopes by keeping upland runoff away. When used at the base of a slope, the structure protects adjacent and downstream areas by diverting sediment-laden runoff to a sediment trapping facility.

If the dike or swale is going to remain in place for longer than 15 days, it must be stabilized with temporary or permanent vegetation. The slope behind the dike or swale is also an important consideration. The dike or swale must have a positive grade to assure drainage, but if the slope is too great, precautions including channel protection and check dams must be taken to prevent erosion due to high velocity of flow.

This practice is considered an economical one because it uses material available on the site and can usually be constructed with equipment needed for site grading. Stabilizing the dike or swale with vegetation can extend the useful life of the BMP.

Design Criteria

- Temporary measures that may also remain as permanent erosion control are typically implemented during construction activities. Review construction for areas where overtopping may occur.
- Subbasin tributary area should be one acre or less.
- Earth dikes must meet the criteria in Table 5.
- Drainage swales must meet the criteria in Table 6.
- An 8- or 12-inch-diameter compost sock may also be used.
- [Design the dike and/or swale to contain flows calculated by one of the following methods:](#)
 - [Single Event Hydrograph Method: The peak volumetric flow rate from a 10-year, 24-hour frequency storm with a 10-minute time step.](#)
 - [Continuous Simulation Method: The 10-year peak flow rate, as determined by an approved continuous runoff model with a 15-minute time step or less.](#)

Maintenance

Inspect the measure after every major storm and make repairs as necessary. Repair damage caused by construction traffic or other activity before the end of each working day.

Table 5. Design Criteria for Earth Dike.

Feature	Requirement
Top Width	2-foot minimum
Height	18-inch minimum measured from upslope toe and at a compaction of 90 percent ASTM D698 standard proctor
Side Slopes	25 percent or flatter
Grade	Topography dependent, except that the dike should be limited to grades between 0.5 and 1.0 percent
Horizontal Spacing of Earth Dikes	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Slopes less than 5 percent = 300 feet • Slopes 5–10 percent = 200 feet • Slopes 10–40 percent = 100 feet
Stabilization	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Slopes = less than 5 percent. Seed and mulched construction (refer to BMPs E1.10 and E1.15) • Slopes = 5 to 40 percent. Dependent on runoff velocities and dike materials • Stabilization should be done immediately using either sod or riprap to avoid erosion
Outlet	The upslope side of the dike should provide positive drainage to the dike outlet. No erosion should occur at the outlet. Provide energy dissipation measures as necessary. Sediment-laden runoff must be released through a sediment trapping facility.
Other	Minimize construction traffic over temporary dikes

Table 6. Design Criteria for Drainage Swale.

Feature	Requirement
Bottom Width	2-foot minimum. Bottom should be level.
Depth	1-foot minimum
Side Slopes	25 percent or flatter
Grade	5 percent maximum with positive drainage to suitable outlet such as a sediment trap
Stabilization	Seed as per BMP E1.10 temporary seeding or Ecology BMP C130. Riprap 12 inches thick pressed into bank and extending at least 8 inches vertical from the bottom.
Stabilization	Slope of disturbed area: Less than 5 percent = 300 feet 5–10 percent = 200 feet 10–40 percent = 100 feet
Outlet	Level spreader or riprap to stabilized outlet/sedimentation pond

4.3. Sediment Control Practices

Sediment retention practices for construction activities are temporary controls only. Permanent sediment retention requires a separate process for flow control and treatment facilities as outlined in *Volume 3 – Project Stormwater Control*.

Temporary sediment retention BMPs are described in the sections below and include:

- BMP E3.10: Filter Fence (*Section 4.3.1*)
- BMP E3.20: Gravel Filter Berm (*Section 4.3.2*)
- BMP E3.25: Storm Drain Inlet Protection (*Section 4.3.3*)
- BMP E3.30: Vegetated Strip (*Section 4.3.4*)
- BMP E3.35: Straw Wattles, Compost Socks, and Compost Berms (*Section 4.3.5*)
- BMP E3.40: Sediment Trap (*Section 4.3.6*)
- BMP E3.50: Portable Sediment Tank (*Section 4.3.7*)
- BMP E3.60: Construction Stormwater Filtration (*Section 4.3.8*)
- BMP E3.65: Cleaning Inlets and Catch Basins (*Section 4.3.9*)
- BMP E3.70: Street Sweeping and Vacuuming (*Section 4.3.10*)
- Brush Barrier – refer to Ecology BMP C231
- Temporary Sediment Pond (~~Temporaryer basin~~) – refer to Ecology BMP C241
- Construction Stormwater Chemical Treatment – refer to Ecology BMP C250

The requirements for maintaining these BMPs are included with each description. All temporary sediment retention practices should be maintained and repaired as needed to ensure continued performance of their intended function.

Temporary BMPs must be removed within 5 business days after final site stabilization is achieved, or after they are no longer needed, whichever is later. In either case, trapped sediment must be removed or stabilized on site and the disturbed areas permanently stabilized.

4.3.1. *BMP E3.10: Filter Fence*

Description

A temporary sediment barrier consisting of a filter fabric stretched across and attached to supporting posts and entrenched. The filter fence is constructed of stakes and synthetic filter fabric with a rigid wire fence backing where necessary for support.

Purpose

Filter fence is used during construction operations to intercept and detain small amounts of sediment under sheet flow conditions from disturbed areas in order to prevent sediment from leaving the site, and to decrease the velocity of sheet flows (Figure 13).



Figure 13. Filter Fence Installed on a Slope.

Conditions Where Practice Applies

Filter fence may be used downslope of all disturbed areas and must be provided just upstream of the point(s) of runoff discharge from a site, before the flow becomes concentrated. They may also be used below disturbed areas where runoff may occur in the form of sheet and rill erosion, wherever runoff has the potential to impact downstream resources.

Planning Considerations

Laboratory work at the Virginia Highway and Transportation Research Council has shown that filter fence can trap a much higher percentage of suspended sediments than can straw bales, which have been disallowed by Ecology. The fence must be properly installed to fully function. The installation methods outlined here can improve performance.

Design Criteria

Refer to Figure 14 for design details.

- The drainage area must be 1 acre or less. On larger sites, the fence must be used in combination with sediment basin(s).
- Maximum slope steepness on the site (perpendicular to fence line) is 45 percent.
- Maximum sheet or overland flowpath length to the fence is 100 feet.
- Concentrated flows must not be greater than 0.5 cubic feet per second (cfs).
- Selection of a filter fabric is based on soil conditions at the project site. Soil conditions affect the apparent opening size (AOS) fabric specification. Soils also affect the characteristics of the support fence, which depend on the choice of tensile strength. The designer should specify a filter fabric that retains the soil found on the project site, yet will have openings large enough to permit drainage and prevent clogging. Refer to Table 7 for selection of the AOS.
- The material used in a filter fabric fence must have sufficient strength to withstand various stress conditions. The ability to pass flow through must be balanced with the material's ability to trap sediments.
- Support non-woven and regular strength slit film fabrics with wire mesh, chicken wire, 2-inch x 2-inch wire, safety fence, or jute mesh to increase the strength of the fabric. [FilterSilt](#) fence materials are available that have synthetic mesh backing attached.
- Filter fabric material must contain ultraviolet ray inhibitors and stabilizers to provide a minimum of 6 months of expected usable construction life at a temperature range of 0°F to 120°F.
- One hundred percent biodegradable [filtersilt](#) fence is available that is strong, long lasting, and can be left in place after the project is completed.
- The following design criteria must be used with a Large Project Construction Stormwater ~~and Erosion~~ Control [and Soil Management](#) Plan (*Section 2.1.2*):
 - Purchase filter fabric in a continuous roll cut to the length of the barrier to avoid use of joints. When joints are necessary, splice filter cloth together only at a support post, with a minimum 6-inch overlap. Securely fasten both ends to the post.
 - Space posts a maximum of 6 feet apart and drive securely into the ground a minimum of 30 inches (where physically possible).
 - Excavate a trench approximately 8 inches wide and 12 inches deep along the line of posts and upslope from the barrier. Construct the trench to follow the contour.

- When slit film filter fabric is used, fasten a wire mesh support fence securely to the upslope side of the posts using heavy-duty wire staples at least 1 inch long, tie wires, or hog rings. Extend the wire into the trench a minimum of 4 inches and not more than 36 inches above the original ground surface.
- Wire slit film filter fabric to the fence. Extend 20 inches of the fabric into the trench. Extend the fabric not more than 36 inches above the original ground surface. Filter fabric should not be stapled to existing trees. Other types of fabric may be stapled to the fence.
- When extra-strength or monofilament fabric and closer post spacing are used, the wire mesh support fence may be eliminated. In such a case, staple or wire the filter fabric directly to the posts. Use extra care when joining or overlapping these stiffer fabrics.
- Use properly compacted native material. This is the preferred alternative because the soil forms a more continuous contact with the trench below, and use of native materials cuts down on the number of trips that must be made on and off site.
- Remove filter fabric fences when they have served their useful purpose, but not before the upslope area has been permanently stabilized. Remove retained sediment and properly dispose of, or mulch and seed.

Table 7. Geotextile Standards.

Geotextile Property	Test Method	Geotextile Property Requirements
Polymeric Mesh AOS	ASTM D4751	0.60 mm max. for slit film woven (#30 sieve) 0.30 mm max. for all other geotextile types (#50 sieve) 0.15 mm min. for all fabric types (#100 sieve)
Water Permittivity	ASTM D4491	0.02 sec ⁻¹ min.
Grab Tensile Strength	ASTM D4632	180 lbs. min. for extra strength fabric 100 lbs min. for standard strength fabric
Grab Tensile Strength	ASTM D4632	30% max.
Ultraviolet Resistance	ASTM D4355	70% min.

Maintenance

- Inspect immediately after each rainfall, and at least daily during prolonged rainfall. Repair as necessary.
- Remove sediment when it reaches approximately one-third the height of the fence.
- Spread any sediment deposits remaining in place after the filter fence is no longer required to conform to the existing grade, prepare and seed.
- Repair any damage immediately.
- Intercept and convey all evident concentrated flows uphill of the [filtersilt](#) fence to a sediment pond.
- Check the uphill side of the fence for signs of the fence clogging and acting as a barrier to flow, and causing channelization of flows parallel to the fence. If this occurs, replace the fence or remove the trapped sediment.
- Replace filter fabric that has deteriorated due to ultraviolet breakdown.

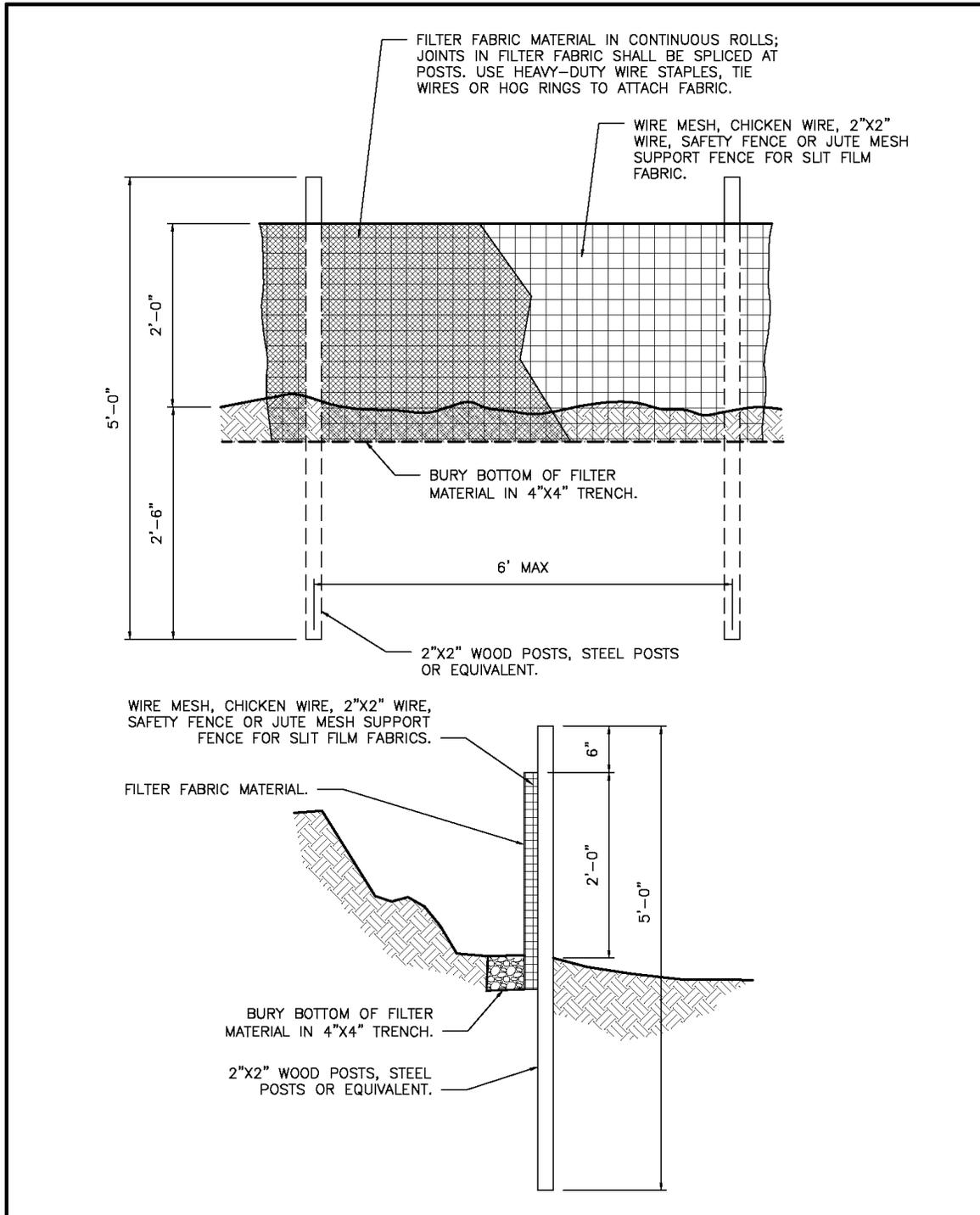


Figure 14. Silt-Filter Fence Details.

4.3.2. *BMP E3.20: Gravel Filter Berm*

Description

A raised gravel berm or mound constructed in traffic areas.

Purpose

To keep sediment away from traffic areas by filtering runoff through gravel or crushed rock.

Conditions Where Practice Applies

- On private property only. This BMP is not allowed in the public right-of-way.
- Where a temporary measure is needed to retain sediment from traffic areas within the project site.

Design Criteria

- Berm material must be 3/4 to 3 inches in size; washed, well-graded gravel or crushed rock with less than 5 percent fines.
- Spacing of berms, perpendicular to the flow of traffic:
 - Every 300 feet on slopes less than 5 percent
 - Every 200 feet on slopes between 5 and 10 percent
 - Every 100 feet on slopes greater than 10 percent
- Berm dimensions:
 - 1 foot high with 18 percent side slopes
 - 8 linear feet per 1 cfs runoff based on the 10-year, 24-hour design storm

Maintenance

- Inspect regularly. Remove sediment and replace filter material when it becomes clogged.

4.3.3. *BMP E3.25: Storm Drain Inlet Protection*

Description

A sediment filter or an excavated impounding area around a storm drain or catch basin.

Purpose

To prevent sediment from entering storm drainage systems prior to permanent stabilization of the disturbed area.

Conditions Where Practice Applies

Where downslope ~~storm drain~~ inlets are operational prior to permanent stabilization of the disturbed drainage area. Within the project site, protection should be provided for all ~~storm drain~~ inlets downslope and within 500 feet to a block of a disturbed or construction area, whichever is further, unless the runoff that enters the catch basin will be conveyed to a sediment pond or trap.

Drainage areas should be limited to 1 acre or less per inlet. Emergency overflows may be required where stormwater ponding would cause a hazard. If an emergency overflow is provided, additional end-of-pipe treatment may be required. Different types of structures are applicable to different conditions:

- Structures less than 12 inches deep – use other methods to protect the inlet (BMP E3.70 Street Sweeping and Vacuuming).
- Storm drain or catch basin filter sock – applicable on private properties or within the public right-of-way for structures greater than 12 inches deep.
- Block and gravel curb inlet protection – applicable for private properties only, on a paved surface. Sturdy, but limited filtration. Consists of a barrier formed around an inlet with concrete blocks and gravel (Figure 15).
- Curb and gutter barrier – applicable for private properties only, using a sandbag or rock berm (riprap and aggregate) 3 feet high and 3 feet wide in a horseshoe shape (Figure 16). An 8- or 12-inch diameter compost sock may also be used in temporary, low-velocity applications.

Planning Considerations

- The best way to prevent sediment from entering the storm drain is to stabilize the site as quickly as possible, preventing erosion and stopping sediment at its source. Proper implementation of other BMPs, such as filter fence (BMP E3.10), straw wattles (BMP E3.35) and covering practices can eliminate or reduce the need for downstream inlet protection, and their implementation is mandatory. Clean out the stormwater drain or catch basin prior to implementing this BMP (refer to BMP E3.65 Cleaning Inlets and Catch Basins).
- Within the project site, remove BMP within 5 business days after final site stabilization is achieved or after it is no longer needed, whichever is longer. Daily removal is required when the BMP is necessary and approved to be installed in the street inlets/catch basins for short durations to protect the public drainage system or public combined sewer from pollution generating activities, such as ~~sawcuttingsaw-cutting~~, utility excavation or paving.

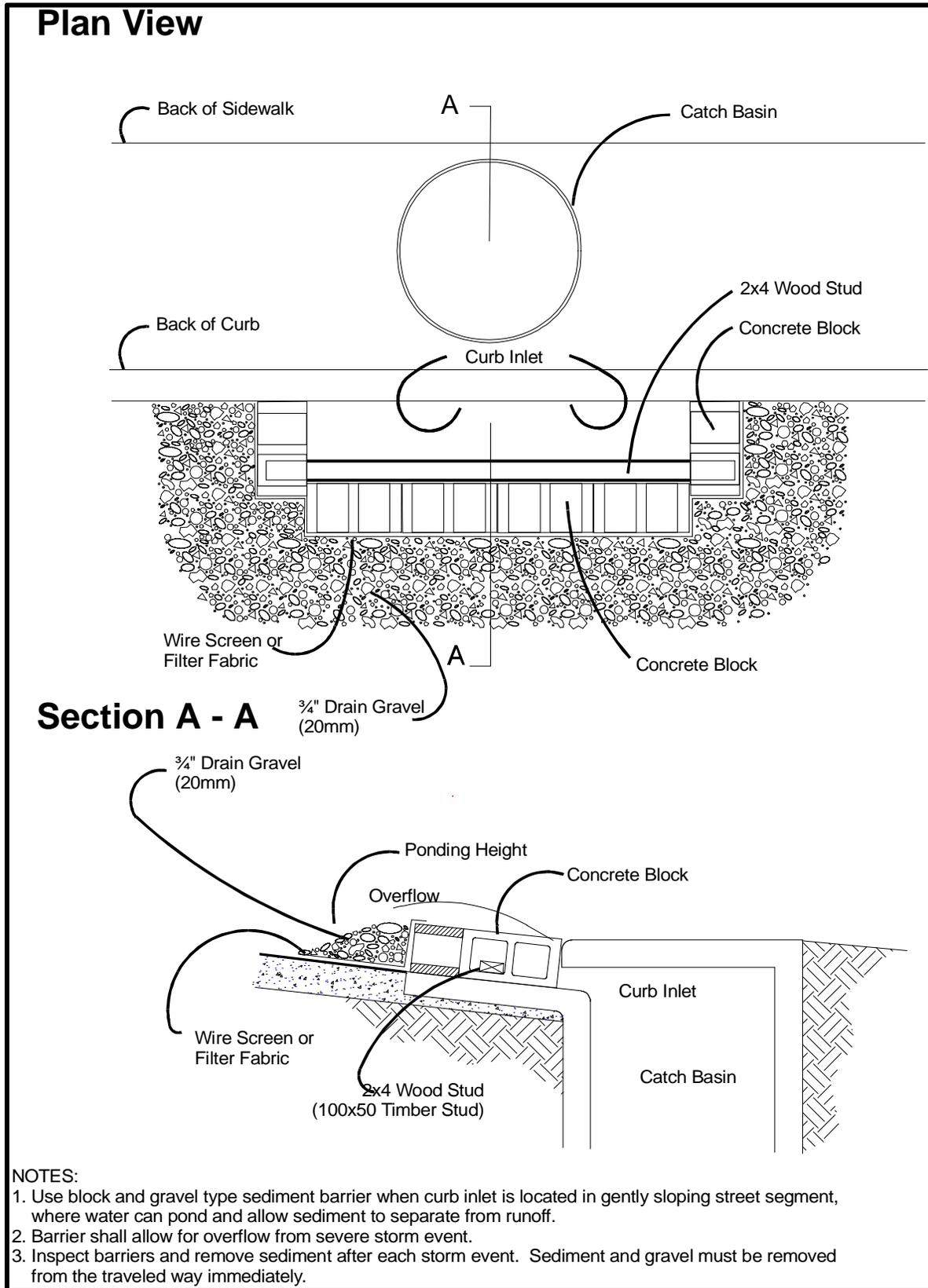


Figure 15. Block and Gravel Curb Inlet Protection.



Figure 16. Curb and Gutter Barrier.

- All methods for [storm drain](#) inlet protection are prone to plugging and require a high frequency of maintenance.
- Storm drains made operational before their drainage area is stabilized can convey large amounts of sediment to natural drainage channels. In cases of extreme sediment loading, the storm drain itself may clog and lose a major portion of its capacity. To avoid these problems, it is necessary to prevent sediment from entering the system at the inlets.
- Several types of inlet filters and traps have different applications that depend on site conditions and type of inlet. Other innovative techniques for accomplishing the same purpose are encouraged, but only after specific plans and details are submitted to and approved by the SDCI. Note that these various inlet protection devices are for drainage areas of less than 1 acre. Runoff from larger disturbed areas should be routed through a [Temporary Sediment Pond or Trap-or-Pond](#) (refer to Ecology BMPs C241 and E3.40).

Design Criteria

- Secure grates and spaces of all inlets to prevent seepage of sediment-laden water.
- All catch basin protection measures should include sediment sumps of 1 to 2 feet in depth with 25 percent side slopes.
- Installation procedure for a drain or catch basin filter sock:
 - For structures greater than 12 inches deep, the filter sock can be laid into the inlet as long as the overflow opening is in the direction of the outlet pipe.
 - Trim and remove filter sock material that extends beyond the grate.
 - Make provisions to decant accumulated sediment.
 - Install a high-flow bypass that will not clog under normal use at a project site.
- Installation procedures for block and gravel curb inlet protection:
 - Place two concrete blocks on their sides abutting the curb at either side of the inlet opening—these are spacer blocks.
 - Place a piece of lumber through the outer holes of each spacer block to align the front blocks.
 - Place blocks on their sides across the front of the inlet and abutting the spacer blocks.
 - Place wire mesh with 1/2-inch openings over the outside vertical face.
 - Pile coarse aggregate against the wire to the top of the barrier.
- Installation procedures for curb and gutter sediment barrier:
 - Construct a horseshoe shaped berm.
 - If using riprap, create a face with coarse aggregate 3 feet high and 3 feet wide, at least 2 feet from the inlet.

Maintenance

- Inspections should be made on a regular basis, especially after large storm events. Inlet protection devices should be cleaned or removed and replaced when sediment has filled one-third of the available storage (unless a different standard is specified by the product manufacturer).
- Do not wash sediment into storm drains while cleaning. Spread all excavated material evenly over the surrounding land area or stockpile and stabilize as appropriate.

4.3.4. BMP E3.30: Vegetated Strip

Description

A vegetated area located downslope of a disturbed area that is capable of filtering coarse sediment from runoff and slowing runoff velocities.

Purpose

Vegetated strips reduce the transport of coarse sediment from a project site by providing a temporary physical barrier to sediment and reducing the runoff velocities of overland flow.

Conditions Where Practice Applies

- Vegetated strips may be used downslope of all disturbed areas, placed parallel to the toe of the slope.
- Vegetated strips are not intended to treat concentrated flows, nor are they intended to treat substantial amounts of overland flow. Any concentrated flows must be conveyed through the drainage system to a sediment pond. The only circumstance where overland flow can be treated solely by a strip, rather than by a sediment pond, is when the strip flowpath length can be achieved with the associated average slope (Table 8).

Table 8. Vegetated Strip Implementation Criteria.

Average Slope	Slope Percent	Flowpath Length
1.5H:1V or less	67% or less	100 feet
2H:1V or less	50% or less	115 feet
4H:1V or less	25% or less	150 feet
6H:1V or less	16.7% or less	200 feet
10H:1V or less	10% or less	250 feet

Design Criteria

- The vegetated strip must consist of a minimum of a 25-foot wide continuous strip of dense vegetation with permeable topsoil. Grass covered, landscaped areas are generally not adequate because the volume of sediment overwhelms the grass. Ideally, vegetated strips should consist of undisturbed native growth with a well-developed soil that allows for infiltration of runoff.
- The slope within the strip must not exceed 25 percent.
- Delineate the uphill boundary of the vegetated strip with clearing limits.

Maintenance

- Immediately seed and mulch any areas damaged by erosion or construction activity.
- Install sod if more than 5 feet of the original vegetated strip width has had vegetation removed or is being eroded.
- If there are indications that concentrated flows are traveling across the buffer, install stormwater controls to reduce the flows entering the buffer, or install additional perimeter protection.

4.3.5. *BMP E3.35: Straw Wattles, Compost Socks, and Compost Berms*

Description

Temporary erosion and sediment control barriers consisting of encased straw, encased compost, or a compost berm.

Straw wattles consist of straw that is wrapped in biodegradable tubular plastic or similar encasing material. Straw wattles are typically 8 to 10 inches in diameter and 25 to 30 feet in length. The wattles are placed in shallow trenches and staked along the contour of disturbed or newly constructed slopes (Figure 17). Compost socks consist of a net tube, similar to straw wattles, filled with compost, and available in biodegradable mesh, or non-biodegradable mesh for installations longer than 6 months. Compost berms are ~~triangular cross-section~~ rows of compost with a triangular cross-section that can serve a similar function as wattles or socks. Compost socks and berms typically do not require trenching.



Figure 17. Straw Wattles or Compost Sock for Inlet Protection.

Purpose

To reduce the velocity, spread the flow of rill and sheet runoff, and capture and retain sediment.

Conditions Where Practice Applies

- Disturbed areas that require immediate erosion protection.
- Exposed soils during short construction delays, or over winter months.
- On slopes requiring stabilization until permanent vegetation can be established.
- For inlet protection or elsewhere on top of pavement to filter or direct flow.
- As an alternative to [filters](#) fence for perimeter control.

Planning Considerations

- Compost socks and straw wattles are effective for 1 to 2 seasons. Berms are effective for 1 to 2 weeks, or longer if vegetated and/or protected by fencing.
- If conditions are appropriate, straw wattles and compost socks can be staked to the ground using willow cuttings for added re-vegetation. Compost socks can also be filled with a compost/seed mix to provide temporary or permanent vegetation. Use biodegradable socks for permanent installations.

Design Criteria

- It is critical that straw wattles and compost socks are installed perpendicular to the flow direction and parallel to the slope contour (Figure 18). Rilling can occur beneath straw wattles if not properly entrenched and water can pass between straw wattles and compost socks if not tightly abutted together.
- In most conditions, compost socks do not require trenching (because of their superior ground contact). Straw wattles do require trenching.
- For straw wattles, dig narrow trenches across the slope on contour to a depth of 3 to 5 inches on clay soils and soils with gradual slopes. Construct trenches at contour intervals of 3 to 30 feet apart depending on the steepness of the slope, soil type, and rainfall. The steeper the slope the closer together the trenches.
- Start building trenches and installing wattles from the base of the slope and work up. Spread excavated material evenly along the uphill slope and compact using hand tamping or other methods.
- Install straw wattles snugly into the trenches and abut tightly end to end. Do not overlap the ends. Install stakes at each end of the wattle, and at 4-foot centers along entire length of wattle. If required, install pilot holes for the stakes using a straight bar to drive holes through the wattle and into the soil.
- On loose soils, steep slopes, and areas with high rainfall, dig the trenches to a depth of 5 to 7 inches, or 1/2 to 2/3 of the thickness of the wattle.
- At a minimum, use wooden stakes that are approximately 3/4 inches square and 24 inches long. Willow cuttings or 3/8-inch rebar can also be used for stakes. Drive stakes through the middle of the straw wattle or compost sock, leaving 2 to 3 inches of the stake protruding above the wattle or sock.
- Compost socks are usually placed on the prepared surface, without trenching, so long as no rilling exists on that surface. If the surface is sloped, stake through the sock at 10-foot intervals, or more closely on steeper slopes. After staking, walk down the top of the sock to press it onto the ground surface.

- Compost berms are typically 1 foot high by 2 feet wide at the base, or 18 inches high and 3 feet wide.
- Protect compost berms from foot or vehicle traffic by a fence, or otherwise immediately seed to provide stability. Short-term (one to two week) applications may not require protection and stabilization.

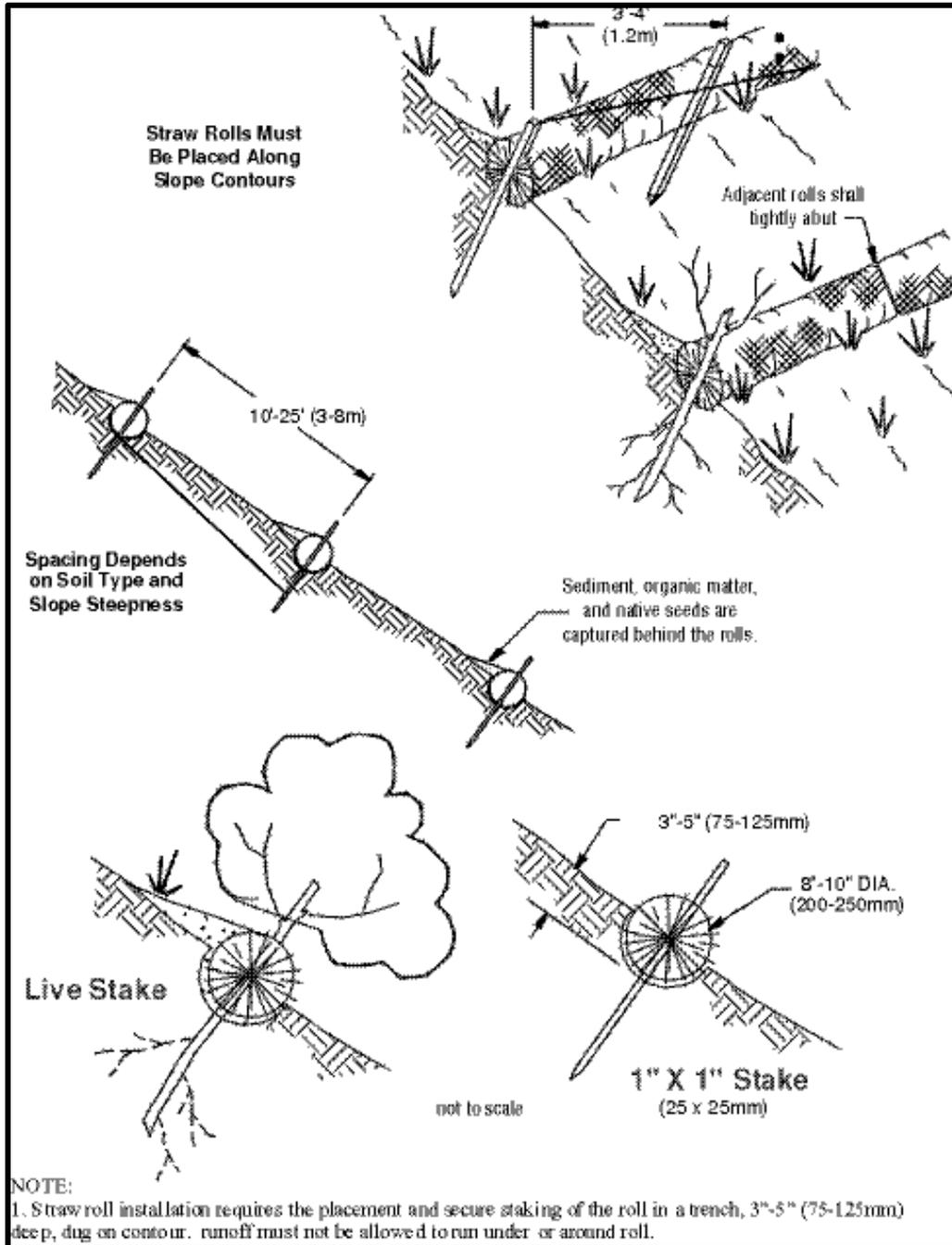


Figure 18. Straw Wattle Details.

Maintenance

- Inspect wattles to ensure they are in contact with soil and thoroughly entrenched, especially after significant rainfall on steep sandy soils. Repair as necessary.
- Straw wattles and compost socks can be compressed by vehicle traffic, creating an overflow point. Repair immediately.
- Inspect the slope after significant storms and repair any areas where wattles are not tightly abutted or water has scoured beneath the wattles.

4.3.6. *BMP E3.40: Sediment Trap*

Sizing is perhaps less important than constant maintenance for this BMP because it is a temporary control. Inspections must be made and sediment removed regularly for sediment traps to function well.

Description

A small temporary ponding area with a gravel outlet formed by excavation and/or by constructing an earthen embankment.

Purpose

To collect and store sediment from project sites cleared and/or graded during construction. It is intended for use in relatively small drainage basins, with no unusual drainage features, and a projected quick build-out time. It should help in reducing silt-laden runoff which clogs offsite conveyance systems and destroys habitat, particularly in streams.

Conditions Where Practice Applies

Proposed building sites where the tributary drainage basin is less than 3 acres.

Planning Considerations

- Prior to leaving a project site where the tributary drainage is 3 acres or less, stormwater runoff must pass through a sediment pond or other appropriate sediment removal BMP (refer to Table 1a and Table 1b for other approved stormwater controls).
- If the contributing drainage area is greater than 3 acres, refer to Ecology BMP C241 Sediment Ponds ([Temporary](#)), or subdivide the tributary drainage area.
- The trap is a temporary measure (with a design life of approximately 6 months) and is to be maintained until the project site is permanently protected against erosion by vegetation and/or structures.
- Sediment must be periodically removed from the trap. Plans should detail how this sediment is to be disposed of, such as by use in fill areas on site or removed to an approved offsite dump. Sediment traps, along with other perimeter controls, must be installed before any land disturbance takes place in the drainage area.
- Alternative Methods: Consider using a temporary aboveground storage tank (e.g., Baker Tank) for temporary storage. If a tank cannot be used, consider using a pond with pumping capabilities to another temporary holding structure. Refer to BMP E3.50 Portable Sediment Tank.
- Wherever possible, sediment-laden water should be discharged into onsite, relatively level, vegetated areas (refer to BMP E3.30 Vegetated Strip).
- Projects that are constructing ~~if permanent flow control BMPs or runoff treatment BMPs control facilities are part of the project that use ponding for treatment,~~ may use the rough-graded or final-graded permanent BMP footprint for the temporary sediment trap. ~~they should be used for sediment retention.~~ Refer to *Volume 3 – Project Stormwater Control* for additional requirements.

Safety

Sediment traps and ponds should be limited to project sites where failure of the structure would not result in loss of life, damage to homes or buildings, or interruption of use or service of public roads or utilities.

Sediment traps and ponds are attractive to children and can be very dangerous. Local ordinances regarding health and safety must be adhered to. If fencing of the pond is required, the type of fence and its location must be shown in the Construction Stormwater Pollution Control Plan.

Design Criteria

~~If permanent runoff control facilities are part of the project, they should be used for sediment retention. Refer to Volume 3 – Project Stormwater Control for additional requirements.~~

To determine the sediment trap geometry, first calculate the design surface area (SA) of the trap, measured at the invert of the weir (Figure 19). Use the following equation:

$$SA = FS(Q_2/V_s)$$

Where:

$$Q_2 = \text{Peak volumetric flow rate}$$

The peak volumetric design flow rate shall ~~may~~ be calculated by one of the following methods determined using either single event or continuous simulation hydrologic modeling ~~;~~:

- Single Event Hydrograph Method: Design inflow based on T ~~the~~ peak volumetric flow rate discharge from a the developed 2-year, 24-hour design storm with a 10-minute time step runoff event from the contributing drainage area as computed in the hydrologic analysis. The 10-year peak volumetric flow rate shall ~~should~~ be used if the project size, expected timing and duration of construction, or downstream conditions warrant a higher level of protection.
- If C ~~continuous S~~ simulation M ~~methods are used, use t~~ he 50 percent annual probability or 10 percent annual probability flows (2-year or 10-year recurrence interval, ~~respectively) as outlined above~~ with, and modeled using a 15-minute time step or less.
- Rational Method: If no hydrologic analysis is required for the other portions of the site design (conveyance, flow control, and/or water quality control) and the site is less than 1 acre, the Rational Method may be used for sediment trap design. Refer to *Appendix F* for additional guidelines.

V_s = the settling velocity of the soil particle of interest. The 0.02 millimeter (mm) (medium silt) particle with an assumed density of 2.65 grams per cubic centimeter (g/cm^3) has been selected as the particle of interest and has a settling velocity (V_s) of 0.00096 ft/sec.

FS = A safety factor of 2 to account for non-ideal settling.

Therefore, the equation for computing [sediment trap](#) surface area becomes:

$$SA = \frac{2 \times Q_2}{0.00096} \quad \text{or} \quad 2,080 \text{ square feet per cfs of inflow}$$

Note: Even if permanent facilities are used, they must still have a surface area that is at least as large as that derived from the above formula. If they do not, the pond must be enlarged.

The outlet riser or pipe should be [4-53.5](#) feet minimum above bottom to draw clean water and avoid discharging sediment that is still suspended in the lower part of the water column.

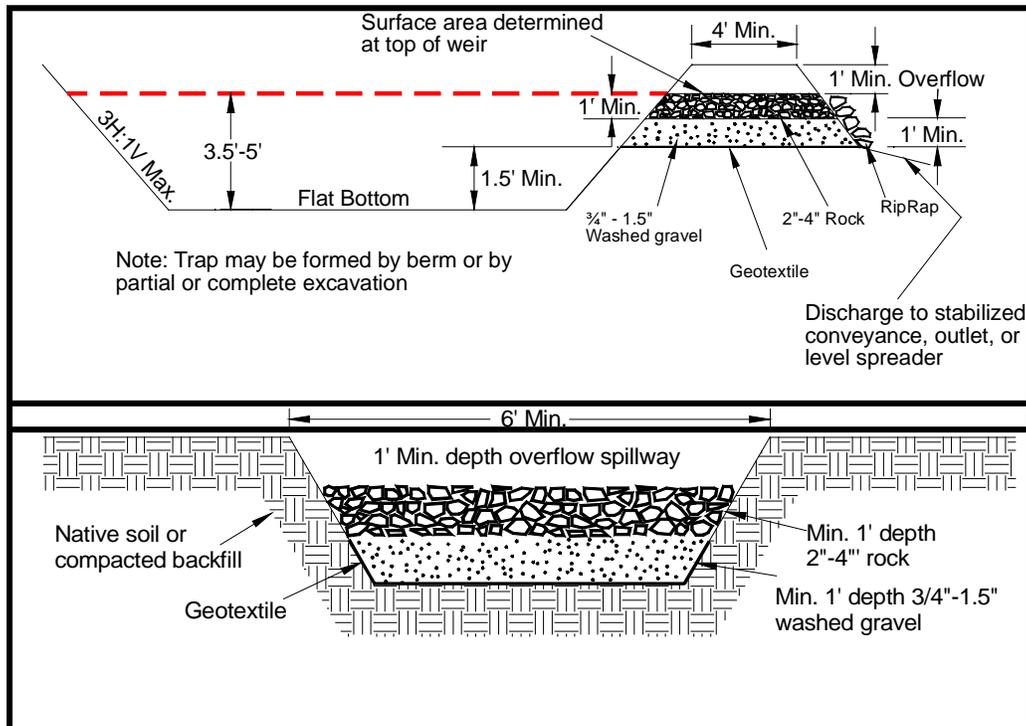


Figure 19. Cross Section of Sediment Trap and Outlet.

To aid in determining sediment depth, all sediment traps should have a staff gauge with a prominent mark 1 foot above the bottom of the trap.

Maintenance

- The sediment trap must be continually monitored and regularly maintained. The size of the trap is less important to its effectiveness than is regular sediment removal. Remove sediment from the trap when it reaches approximately 1 foot in depth (assuming a 1-1/2 foot sediment accumulation depth). Conduct regular inspections and additional inspections after each large runoff-producing storm.
- Maintain and repair all temporary and permanent erosion and sediment control practices as needed to assure continued performance of their intended function.
- Remove all temporary erosion and sediment control measures within 5 business days after final site stabilization is achieved, or after the temporary BMPs are no longer needed, whichever is longer. Remove trapped sediment or stabilize on site. Permanently stabilize disturbed soil areas resulting from removal.

4.3.7. *BMP E3.50: Portable Sediment Tank*

Description

A compartmental tank brought temporarily to a project site. Sediment-laden water is pumped into the tank to trap and retain sediment.

Purpose

A portable sediment tank is used for temporary storage of sediment-laden water and to trap and retain sediment prior to discharging to an appropriate discharge point.

Conditions Where Practice Applies

A portable sediment tank should be used on sites where excavations are deep and space is limited, or wherever the tank can be located per the manufacturer's specifications with an appropriate discharge point.

Planning Considerations

Using a portable sediment tank is the preferred method to minimize potential impacts to the project site. The tank configuration, size, location, and discharge point must be presented in the Construction Stormwater ~~and Erosion~~ Control and Soil Management Plan and approved by the City.

Follow the manufacturer's or vendor's specifications for choosing the appropriate location. In addition, the tank should be located for ease of clean-out and disposal of trapped sediment, and to minimize the interference with construction activities and pedestrian traffic.

If a permit is obtained for discharge to a combined sewer system conduct all discharge activities in accordance with permit requirements, including when it can be discharged, and the discharge flow rate.

Design Criteria

Sediment tanks must have a minimum depth of 2 feet and be designed to allow for emergency flow to an approved discharge point. Outlet riser or pipe should be 1.5 feet minimum above bottom to draw clean water and avoid discharging sediment that is still suspended in the lower part of the water column.

As noted above, tank configuration and size must be presented in the Construction Stormwater ~~and Erosion~~ Control and Soil Management Plan and approved by the City. For planning purposes, the following formula should be used in determining the minimum storage volume of the sediment tank. Additional storage volume may be required by the City.

Pump Discharge Design inflow in gallons per minute (gpm) x 16 = cubic feet storage.
See Refer to Section 4.3.6 for BMP E3.40 Sediment Traps for design inflow selection requirements.

Container designs can vary from cylindrical tanks to rectangular boxes, depending on the manufacturer. Any tank configuration can be used if the storage volume is adequate and approval is obtained from the City.

Effectiveness

The pollution removal efficiency of the sediment tank can be increased by using flocculation chemicals, such as alum (aluminum sulfate) in the tank. Flocculation will allow very small suspended particles to settle out and decrease the time it takes for larger particles to settle out. Flocculation tank setup is considerably more complicated as the rate of flocculent addition must be carefully monitored.

For sites that do not require coverage under Ecology's Construction Stormwater General Permit, formal written approval from the City is required to use chemical treatment such as flocculation chemicals, regardless of site size. Any proposed chemicals and the method of use must also be formally approved by Ecology. Refer to Ecology BMP C250 [and Appendix B](#) for more information on chemical treatment.

Alternatives

An alternative to a portable sediment tank is a tank constructed using steel drums, sturdy wood, or other material suitable for handling the pressure exerted by the volume of the water.

- Sediment tanks must have a minimum depth of 2 feet.
- The tank must be located for easy clean-out and disposal of the trapped sediment and to minimize the interference with construction activities.
- Once the water level nears the top of the tank, the pump must be shut off while the tank drains and additional capacity is made available.
- Clean out the tank as soon as one-third of the original capacity is depleted due to sediment accumulation. The tank must be clearly marked showing the cleanout point.
- An appropriate discharge point must be selected, and approved by the City.

Maintenance

- Follow the manufacturer's or vendor's specifications.
- During construction, inspect BMPs daily during the work week with additional inspections scheduled during storm events. Make any required repairs immediately.
- Inspect filtering or control devices frequently. Repair or replace them to ensure that the structure functions as designed.
- Clean out the tank as soon as one-third of the original capacity is depleted due to sediment accumulation. The tank must be clearly marked showing the clean-out point. Removed sediment may be disposed of on site if no contamination is present. Contaminated sediment must be disposed of according to local governing agency requirements.
- Systems should be filled in or otherwise removed when permanent dewatering controls are in place and connected to an approved treatment and receiving system.

4.3.8. BMP E3.60: Construction Stormwater Filtration

Description

Use of a filter to remove sediment from stormwater runoff.

Purpose

Filtration removes sediment from runoff originating from disturbed areas of the site.

Conditions Where Practice Applies

Construction stormwater filtration should be used when traditional [construction stormwater BMPs](#) used to control soil erosion and sediment loss from [construction project](#) sites may not be adequate to ensure compliance with the water quality standard for turbidity in the receiving water. Filtration may be used in conjunction with gravity settling to remove sediment as small as fine silt (0.5 micrometers [μm]). The reduction in turbidity will be dependent on the particle size distribution of the sediment in the stormwater. In some circumstances, sedimentation and filtration may achieve compliance with the water quality standard for turbidity.

Unlike chemical treatment, the use of construction stormwater filtration does not require approval from Ecology. Filtration may also be used in conjunction with polymer treatment in a portable system to assure capture of the flocculated solids. Filtration in conjunction with polymer treatment requires testing under the Chemical Technology Assessment Protocol – Ecology (CTAPE) before it can be initiated. Approval from [the appropriate regional Ecology office](#) must be obtained at each site where [chemical polymers](#) use is proposed prior to use. For more guidance on stormwater chemical treatment, refer to Ecology BMP C250.

Filtration with sand media has been used for over a century to treat water and wastewater. The use of sand filtration for treatment of stormwater has developed recently, generally to treat runoff from streets, parking lots, and residential areas. The application of filtration to construction stormwater treatment is currently under development.

Design Criteria

Two types of filtration systems may be applied to construction stormwater treatment: rapid and slow.

- Rapid [filtration systems](#) ~~sand filters~~ are the typical system used for water and wastewater treatment. They can achieve relatively high hydraulic flow rates, on the order of 2 to 20 gallons per minute per square foot (gpm/sf), because they have automatic backwash systems to remove accumulated solids.
- ~~In contrast, slow~~ [filtration systems](#) ~~sand filters~~ have very low hydraulic rates, on the order of 0.02 gpm/sf, because they do not have backwash systems. ~~To date, slow~~ [sand filtration systems](#) ~~have~~ generally been used [as post-construction BMPs](#) to treat stormwater. Slow ~~sand~~ filtration is mechanically simple in comparison to rapid ~~sand~~ filtration, but requires a much larger filter area.

Filter Type and EfficienciesFiltration Equipment

Sand media filters are available with automatic backwashing features that can filter to 50 µm particle size. Screen or bag filters can filter down to 5 µm. Fiber wound filters can remove particles down to 0.5 µm. Filters should be sequenced from the largest to the smallest pore opening. Sediment removal efficiency will be related to particle size distribution in the stormwater.

Treatment Process and Description

Stormwater is collected at interception point(s) on the site and is diverted to an untreated stormwater sediment pond or tank for removal of large sediment and storage of the stormwater before it is treated by the filtration system. In a rapid filtration system, the untreated stormwater is pumped from the trap, pond, or tank through the filtration media system in a rapid sand filtration system. Slow sand filtration systems are designed as flow through systems using gravity to convey water from the pond or tank through the filtration media. If large volumes of concrete are being poured, pH adjustment may be necessary (refer to BMPs C1.56, C1.58, and C1.59).

Sizing Criteria for Flow-through Treatment Systems for Discharges to Designated Receiving Waters:

Filtration treatment systems must be designed to control the velocity and peak volumetric flow rate that is discharged from the system and consequently the project site. Refer to Element 4 Protect Downstream Properties and Receiving Waters (SMC 22.805.020.D) for further detail on this requirement.

When sizing storage ponds or tanks for flow through systems for water bodies exempt from flow control, the treatment system capacity should be a factor. The untreated stormwater storage pond or tank should be sized to hold 1.5 times the runoff volume of the 10-year, 24-hour storm event minus the treatment system flow rate for an 8-hour period. For a chitosan-enhanced sand filtration system, the treatment system flow rate should be sized using a hydraulic loading rate between 6-8 gpm/sf. Other hydraulic loading rates may be more appropriate for other systems. Bypass should be provided around the filtration~~chemical~~ treatment system to accommodate extreme storms. Runoff volume should be calculated using the methods presented in *Volume 3, Chapter 4*. Worst-case land cover conditions (i.e., producing the most runoff—most likely condition present prior to final landscaping) should be used for analyses (in most cases, this would be the land cover conditions just prior to final landscaping).

Sizing Criteria for Listed Creek Basins and Non-listed Creek Basins:

Sites that must implement flow control for developed site conditions must also control stormwater release rates during construction.

Maintenance

- Rapid sand filters typically have automatic backwash systems triggered by a pre-set pressure drop across the filter. If the backwash water volume is not large or substantially more turbid than the stormwater stored in the holding pond or tank, return of backwash to the pond or tank may be appropriate. However, land application or another means of treatment and disposal may be necessary.
- Screen, bag, and fiber filters must be cleaned and/or replaced when they become clogged.
- Sediment should be removed from the storage and/or treatment ponds as necessary. Typically, sediment removal is required once or twice during a wet season and at the decommissioning of the ponds.

4.3.9. *BMP E3.65: Cleaning Inlets and Catch Basins*

Description

Removal of debris from existing inlets, catch basins, and connecting pipelines to protect and maintain private facilities and the public drainage system.

Purpose

The purpose of cleaning inlets and catch basins is to restore the function of the drainage collection system and reduce sediment transfer through the public drainage system or public combined sewer system.

Conditions Where Practice Applies

- Whenever other sediment control BMPs are not feasible or have failed.
- Whenever the public drainage collection facilities immediately downstream are not functioning.
- Whenever there is ponding in the travel lanes of the public roadway.

Planning Considerations

Large amounts of sediment can be conveyed through inlets, catch basins and the public drainage system or public combined sewer. Sediment can also plug these facilities, causing a flooding hazard or a hazard to traffic and pedestrians in the public roadway. Protection from sediment and debris is not always possible or effective; therefore, cleaning is the last action taken.

The best ways to prevent sediment from entering the storm drain are:

- To control the discharge points
- Stabilize the site to control pollution at its source
- Good housekeeping such as sweeping, vacuuming, and cleaning (BMP E3.70)

It is important to identify which BMP is feasible at each point of drainage collection and discharge, and during each construction phase. Inlet and catch basin cleaning must be performed when other protection methods are not possible or fail.

Design Criteria

- Identify the drainage flow-path(s) on site and downstream for a minimum distance of 500 feet or one block, whichever is further in the public roadway.
- Identify the location of all existing inlets and catch basins within the project area that may be impacted. Identify whether they will remain, be removed, or abandoned during construction.
- When an inlet or catch basin is to be removed or abandoned, plug that path to the public drainage system or public combined sewer prior to demolition of the immediate surroundings.

- ~~Storm drain~~ inlet protection (BMP E3.25) is required when feasible. When it is not feasible, or fails, clean affected inlets, catch basins, and connecting pipe.
- Use a vacuum truck or shovels with proper disposal for cleaning. Jetting material downstream into the public drainage system or public combined sewer is not allowed.
- Protect new inlets and catch basins from onsite sediment and clean after site stabilization, as necessary.

Maintenance

- Regularly inspect inlets and catch basins on site and within a distance of 500 feet or one block, whichever is further, in the public roadway. Increase inspections as necessary, especially after street sweeping.
- Clean inlets when sediment and/or debris are visible.
- Clean catch basins whenever debris and/or sediment occupy more than one-half the capacity or ~~are~~ within 18 inches of the outlet pipe invert.
- Always clean inlets and catch basins after site stabilization.

4.3.10. BMP E3.70: Street Sweeping and Vacuuming

Description

Use of human-powered and/or mechanical equipment to collect sediment on paved surfaces to minimize sediment accumulation in private systems and the public drainage system. This BMP may also be used to clean paved surfaces in preparation for final paving.

Purpose

Sweeping and vacuuming minimizes project area sediment from entering the public drainage system or public combined sewer. Targeted pollutants include: sediment, nutrients, trash, metals, bacteria, oil and grease, and organics.

Conditions Where Practice Applies

Sweeping and vacuuming are suitable on any paved surface and, in particular, anywhere sediment is tracked from the project site onto public or private paved streets and roads, typically at the stabilized construction [entrance access](#) (BMP E2.10) and other construction access points. Sweeping and vacuuming are also applicable during preparation of paved surfaces for final paving.

Planning Considerations

Sweeping and vacuuming may not be effective when sediment is wet or when tracked soil is caked (caked soil may need to be scraped loose). Washing is not an alternative to sweeping and vacuuming because of the risk of pollutant transport.

Design Criteria

- Control the number of points where vehicles can leave the site to allow focused sweeping and vacuuming efforts.
- Do not use kick brooms or sweeper attachments.
- If not mixed with debris or trash, consider incorporating the removed sediment back into the project.

Maintenance

- After initiating sweeping and/or vacuuming, inspect the potential sediment tracking locations daily to ensure they are clean of any sediment.
- Visible sediment tracking should be swept or vacuumed on a daily basis.
- Be careful not to sweep up any unknown substance or any object that may be potentially hazardous.
- Adjust brooms frequently; maximize efficiency of sweeping operations.
- After sweeping is finished, properly dispose of sweeper wastes at an approved disposal site.

CHAPTER 5 – SOURCE CONTROL PRACTICES FOR CONSTRUCTION POLLUTANTS OTHER THAN SEDIMENT

5.1. Source Control Practices

The City of [Seattle \(City\)](#) is committed to protecting the public drainage system or public combined sewer, ponds, wetlands, lakes, streams, and coastal and estuarine water bodies from damage by sediment and other pollutants generated during construction activities. The focus of *Chapter 4* was on erosion and sediment control; however, potential pollutants other than sediment are common at project sites and may also impact stormwater and groundwater quality when they come into direct contact with runoff.

Potential pollutants include non-hazardous materials such as wood, paper, demolition debris, concrete, and metal scraps. There are also potential pollutants from hazardous materials and their associated wastes such as pesticides (e.g., insecticides, fungicides, herbicides, rodenticides), petrochemicals (e.g., oils, gasoline, asphalt degreaser) and other construction chemicals such as concrete products, sealer, paints, and washwater associated with these products.

The most economical and effective controls for pollutants other than sediment are good “housekeeping” practices, and an awareness by construction workers, planners, engineers, and developers of the need for and purpose of compliance with federal, state, and local regulations.

Please refer to the Stormwater Code and *Volume 4 – Source Control* for further information concerning controlling pollution at the source and preventing contamination of stormwater for all discharges. This volume should be reviewed to ensure that all Director’s Rules requirements are being met for each construction project.

The standards for each individual [best management practice \(BMP\)](#) are divided into six sections:

1. Description
2. Purpose
3. Conditions Where Practice Applies
4. Planning Considerations
5. Design Criteria
6. Maintenance

Note that some BMPs were divided into different sections to reflect their individual needs. As with erosion and sediment control BMPs, source control BMPs include "Conditions Where Practice Applies," which always refers to site conditions. As site conditions change, BMPs must be changed to remain in compliance.

This chapter contains the standards and specifications for source control BMPs to properly manage construction pollutants other than sediment. They include:

- BMP C1.15: Material Delivery, Storage, and Containment (*Section 5.1.1*)
- BMP C1.20: Use of Chemicals During Construction (*Section 5.1.2*)
- BMP C1.25: Demolition of Buildings (*Section 5.1.3*)
- BMP C1.30: Building Repair, Remodeling, and Construction (*Section 5.1.4*)
- BMP C1.35: Sawcutting and Paving Pollution Prevention (*Section 5.1.5*)
- BMP C1.40: Temporary Dewatering (*Section 5.1.6*)
- BMP C1.45: Solid Waste Handling and Disposal (*Section 5.1.7*)
- BMP C1.50: Disposal of Asbestos and Polychlorinated Biphenyls (PCBs) (*Section 5.1.8*)
- BMP C1.55: Airborne Debris Curtain (*Section 5.1.9*)
- BMP C1.56: Concrete Handling and Disposal (*Section 5.1.10*)
- BMP C1.59: High pH Neutralization Using CO₂ (*Section 5.1.11*)

5.1.1. *BMP C1.15: Material Delivery, Storage, and Containment*

Description

Best practices for all deliveries, storage, and containment of materials, liquid and solid on a project site that may potentially pollute stormwater.

Purpose

The purpose of this BMP is to prevent, reduce, or eliminate the discharge of pollutants to the drainage system or receiving water from the delivery and storage of materials on site. This is achieved by minimizing the storage of hazardous materials on site, storing materials in a designated area, and installing secondary containment.

Conditions Where Practice Applies

These procedures are recommended for use at all project sites with delivery and storage of the following materials:

- Petroleum products such as fuel, oil and grease
- Soil stabilizers and binders (e.g., Polyacrylamide)
- Fertilizers, pesticides, and herbicides
- Detergents
- Asphalt and concrete compounds
- Hazardous chemicals such as acids, lime, adhesives, paints, solvents and curing compounds
- Any other material that may be detrimental if released to the environment

Planning Considerations

Dangerous solid wastes must be stored and handled according to special guidelines and may require a permit. Follow the regulations and requirements outlined by [the Washington State Department of Ecology \(Ecology\)](#) and, in some cases, King County.

Design Criteria

The following steps must be taken to minimize risk:

- Locate temporary storage area away from vehicular traffic, near the construction entrance(s), and away from drainage channels or storm drains.
- Keep ~~Material~~ Safety Data Sheets (MSDS) on site for all materials stored. Keep chemicals in their original labeled containers.
- Minimize hazardous material storage on site.
- Handle hazardous materials as infrequently as possible.
- During the wet weather season (October 1 to April 30), consider storing materials in a covered area.
- Do not store chemicals, drums, or bagged materials directly on the ground. Place these items on a pallet and, when possible, in secondary containment.

- If drums must be kept uncovered, store them at a slight angle to reduce ponding of rainwater on the lids to reduce corrosion. Domed plastic covers are inexpensive and snap to the top of drums, preventing water from collecting.
- Store materials with secondary containment, such as a curbed paved area, pallets with built-in containment, or even a children's wading pool for non-reactive materials such as detergents, oil, grease, and paints. Small amounts of material may be secondarily contained in "bus boy" trays or concrete mixing trays.
- Use spill prevention and control measures for maintenance, fueling, and repair of heavy equipment and vehicles. Clean contaminated surfaces immediately following any spill incident.
- Provide cover, containment, and protection from vandalism for all chemicals, liquid products, petroleum products, and other materials that have the potential to pose a threat to human health or the environment. Include secondary containment for onsite fueling tanks.

Secondary Containment Practices:

- Store all hazardous substances with a listed Reportable Quantity in approved containers and drums and in secondary containment. The list of Reportable Quantities is available [at on the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency's \(U.S. EPA's\) website: \(www2.epa.gov/superfund\)](http://www2.epa.gov/superfund).
- Provide temporary secondary containment facilities with a spill containment volume able to contain precipitation from a 25-year, 24-hour storm event plus 10 percent of the total enclosed container volume of all containers; or 110 percent of the capacity of the largest container within its boundary, whichever is greater.
- Provide sufficient separation between stored containers to allow for spill cleanup and emergency response access.
- During the wet weather season (October 1 to April 30), cover each secondary containment facility during non-working days, prior to and during rain events.
- Provide secondary containment facilities that are impervious to the materials stored for a minimum contact time of 72 hours.

Maintenance

- Keep secondary containment facilities free of accumulated rainwater and spills. In the event of spills or leaks, collect accumulated rainwater and spills and place into drums. Treat these liquids as hazardous waste unless testing determines them to be non-hazardous.
- Keep material storage areas clean, organized and equipped with an ample supply of appropriate spill clean-up material (spill kit). For spill prevention and cleanup requirements, including spill kit instructions, refer to *Volume 4 – Source Control*.

5.1.2. *BMP C1.20: Use of Chemicals During Construction*

Description

Best practices for control, storage, cleaning and disposal of all chemicals used at a project site that may potentially pollute stormwater.

Purpose

A large percentage of potential pollutants from chemicals can be effectively controlled at project sites through implementation of source control and soil erosion and sedimentation control practices.

Conditions Where Practice Applies

This BMP applies to most project sites since many types of chemicals may be used during construction activities. These chemical pollutants include paints, acids, cleaning solvents, asphalt products, soil additives, concrete-curing compounds, and many others. These materials can be carried by sediment and water runoff from project sites.

Planning Considerations

Disposal of concrete products, additives, and curing compounds depends on the product. Some liquid wastes must be stored and handled according to special guidelines and may require a permit. Follow the regulations and requirements outlined by Ecology and, in some cases, King County.

Refer to *Volume 4 – Source Control* to see if additional source controls are required.

Design Criteria

- As in the case of other pollutants, good housekeeping is the most important means of controlling pollution.
- Use only the recommended amounts of chemical materials and apply them in a proper manner to further reduce pollution.
- Acid and alkaline solutions from exposed soil or rock units high in acid and alkaline-forming natural elements should be controlled using good site planning and preconstruction geological surveys. Refer to BMP C1.56 Concrete Handling and Disposal. Neutralization of these pollutants often provides the best treatment.
- The City requires project site operators to adjust the pH of stormwater if necessary to prevent violations of water quality standards. Refer to BMP C1.59 High pH Neutralization Using CO₂.
- Chemicals used in batch treatment or flow-through treatment must be approved in writing by Ecology prior to use. Formal approval from the City is based on Ecology's protocols. For a list of treatment chemicals that have been evaluated and are currently approved for use by Ecology ~~visit~~[refer to the Department's website- \(https://ecology.wa.gov/Regulations-Permits/Guidance-technical-assistance/Stormwater-permittee-guidance-resources/Emerging-stormwater-](https://ecology.wa.gov/Regulations-Permits/Guidance-technical-assistance/Stormwater-permittee-guidance-resources/Emerging-stormwater-)

[treatment-
technologieswww.ecy.wa.gov/programs/wq/stormwater/newtech/index.html](http://www.ecy.wa.gov/programs/wq/stormwater/newtech/index.html)).

- For paint disposal, the correct method of wastes varies with the material:
 - Wash-up waters from water-based paints may go into a sanitary sewer, which is regulated by the King County Industrial Waste Program (206) 263-3000.
 - Wastes from oil-based paints, cleaning solvents, thinners, and mineral spirits must be disposed of through a licensed waste management firm or treatment, storage, and disposal (TSD) facility.

Maintenance

- Seal fractures in the bedrock with grout and bentonite will reduce the amount of acid or alkaline seepage from excavations.
- Adequate treatment and disposal of concrete further reduces pollution.

5.1.3. *BMP C1.25: Demolition of Buildings*

Description

Methods used to protect stormwater from pollution associated with the removal of existing buildings (and clearing of the rubble) by means of controlled explosions, wrecking balls, or manual methods.

Purpose

The loose debris produced by building demolition activities can contain toxic organic compounds, metals, and suspended solids that may pollute stormwater. Toxic organic compounds, including PCBs, may be present in buildings built or remodeled prior to 1980. Projects, regardless of size, shall implement practices to properly handle and dispose of materials that may contain PCBs such as transformers, light ballasts, caulk and some roofing materials so that they do not come into contact with stormwater.

Conditions Where Practice Applies

Complete or partial building demolition, structure demolition, or other activity that requires controlled explosions, wrecking balls, or manual methods to demolish a structure, and/or clearing of demolition rubble.

Planning Considerations

This BMP is intended to provide basic information to protect stormwater from being polluted by demolition debris. However, demolition of buildings is regulated in Washington by Ecology and the Puget Sound Clean Air Agency (PSCAA). Refer to Ecology's [web page "Manage Construction and Demolition Waste"](#) [web page](#) for additional requirements (<https://ecology.wa.gov/Regulations-Permits/Guidance-technical-assistance/Dangerous-waste-guidance/Common-dangerous-waste/Construction-and-demolition> www.ecy.wa.gov/programs/hwtr/dangermat/demo_debris_constr_materials.html) and PSCAA's [website](#) for other information and requirements (www.pscleanair.gov/185/Asbestos www.pscleanair.org/business/Asbestos/Pages/default.asp [*](#)).

Design Criteria

- Protect the drainage system from sediment-laden runoff and loose particles. To the extent possible, use dikes, berms, or other methods to protect overland discharge paths from runoff.
- Sweep street gutters, sidewalks, driveways, and other paved surfaces in the immediate area of the demolition daily to collect and properly dispose of loose debris and garbage.
- Spray water, such as from a hydrant or water truck, to help control windblown fine materials such as soil, concrete dust, and paint chips. Control the amount of water so that runoff from the site does not occur, yet dust control is achieved. Never use oils for dust control.
- Schedule demolition to take place during a dry time of the year.

Maintenance

Clean up debris on a regular basis to prevent stormwater contamination.

5.1.4. *BMP C1.30: Building Repair, Remodeling, and Construction*

Description

Best practices for the control of pollutants associated with construction of buildings and other structures such as, but not limited to, remodeling of existing buildings and houses, and general repair work on building exteriors.

Purpose

Pollutants of concern may be generated during building repair, remodeling, and construction, including petroleum hydrocarbons, organic compounds, suspended solids, metals, pH, and oils and greases.

Conditions Where Practice Applies

When buildings and/or structures are repaired, remodeled, and constructed.

Planning Considerations

Educating employees about the need to control site activities is one of the most effective methods to prevent stormwater pollution.

Design Criteria

- Use ground cloths or drop cloths underneath activities.
- Use drain covers or similarly effective devices if dust, grit, washwater, or other pollutants may impact onsite or downstream offsite catch basins. Collect and dispose of the accumulated sediment-laden runoff and solids before the cover is removed.
- Clean all tools in an inside sink that drains to the sanitary sewer. If cleaning must be done outside, collect all wastewater and dispose of properly.
- Clean non-water-based finishes from tools in a manner that allows the collection of used solvents for recycling or proper disposal.
- Water can be sprayed to help control windblown fine materials such as soil, concrete dust, and paint chips. Control the amount of water so that runoff from the site does not occur, yet dust control is achieved. Never use oils for dust control.
- [In the Shoreline District, as defined by SMC Chapter 23.60A Seattle Shoreline Program Regulations, comply with the provisions of SMC 23.60A.152 and SMC 23.60A.155 or the current Shoreline Master Program code.](#)
- [Construction and repair work shall use BMPs to prevent the entry of debris and other waste materials into any water body. Any cleaning, sanding, cutting of treated wood, or resurfacing operation occurring over water or in water shall be performed with tarpaulins, decking, or similarly effective materials securely affixed above the water line to prevent material from entering the water. Before the tarpaulins, decking, or similarly effective materials are removed, the accumulated contents shall be removed by vacuuming or an equivalent method that prevents material from entering the water.](#)

- [No over-water or in-water application of paint, preservative treatment, or other chemical compounds is permitted, except in accordance with BMPs to prevent the compounds from entering the water.](#)
- [In addition to the BMPs to prevent debris and chemical compounds from construction, remodeling, and repair work from entering water bodies, a secondary containment system \(e.g., floating containment boom\) is required for work over water or in water. Additional requirements may apply, as required by local, state, and federal regulations.](#)
- [Construction staging areas shall be as far from the water bodies on the site as possible.](#)

Maintenance

- Maintain drain covers regularly (weekly or as needed) to prevent plugging.
- Recycle materials whenever possible.

5.1.5. BMP C1.35: Sawcutting and Paving Pollution Prevention

Description

Best practices to minimize and eliminate wastewater and slurry from sawcutting and paving operations including, but not limited to, the following:

- Sawing
- Surfacing
- Coring
- Grinding
- Roughening
- Hydro-demolition
- Bridge and road surfacing

Purpose

Sawcutting and paving operations generate slurry and wastewater that contain fine particles and high pH, both of which can violate the water quality standards in receiving waters.

Conditions Where Practice Applies

Any time sawcutting or paving operations take place.

Planning Considerations

This BMP is intended to minimize and eliminate wastewater and slurry from entering the public drainage control system and receiving waters. Wastewater may be permitted to be discharged to a sanitary sewer, which is regulated by Seattle Public Utilities and the King County Industrial Waste Program (206) 263-3000.

Design Criteria

- Vacuum slurry and cuttings during the activity to prevent migration off site. Do not allow slurry and cuttings to remain on permanent concrete or asphalt paving overnight.
- Dispose of collected slurry and cuttings in a manner that does not violate groundwater or surface water quality standards.
- Do not drain wastewater that is generated during hydro-demolition, surface roughening, or similar operations to any natural or constructed drainage conveyance. Dispose of wastewater in a manner that does not violate groundwater or surface water quality standards.
- Clean and dispose of waste material and demolition debris in a manner that does not cause contamination of water. If the area is swept with a pick-up sweeper, haul out the material to an appropriate disposal site.

Maintenance

Continually monitor operations to determine whether slurry, cuttings, or wastewater could enter the public drainage system or the public sewer. If inspections show that a violation of water quality standards could occur, stop operations and immediately implement preventative measures such as berms, barriers, secondary containment, and vacuum trucks.

5.1.6. *BMP C1.40: Temporary Dewatering*

Description

The removal and appropriate discharge and release of groundwater, whether it is from a simple trench or a large excavation.

Purpose

Temporary dewatering is used when groundwater needs to be removed before certain operations can be performed, or to keep work conditions safe. It is typical for contractors to use ditch pumps and/or well points to dewater, but it is very important to identify and use the appropriate locations for discharge. Dewatering may require a temporary BMP for settling and/or filtering sediment-laden water. A temporary sediment pond or other equivalent facility is used to settle and/or filter the water. Properly designed and implemented temporary dewatering will:

- Prevent the discharged water from eroding soil on site
- Remove sediment from the collected water
- Choose the best location for discharge
- Preserve downstream natural resources and real property

Projects which are required to comply with Minimum Requirements for Flow Control (SMC 22.805.080) must account for dewatering discharge in determining an allowable release rate.

Conditions Where Practice Applies

Public or private properties with the following:

- Foundation excavations
- Utilities and infrastructure construction projects, including installation, repair and maintenance of:
 - Electrical conduits
 - Vaults/tanks
 - Sanitary sewer and public drainage systems
 - Phone and cable lines
 - Gas or other fuel lines
 - Other excavations or graded areas requiring dewatering

Clean, non-turbid dewatering water, such as well-point groundwater, may be discharged to the public combined sewer; systems tributary to receiving waters; or directly into receiving waters, provided the dewatering flow is discharged to a stabilized system and does not cause erosion or flooding of receiving waters [or downstream systems](#). Clean dewatering water should not be routed through stormwater sediment ponds.

If dewatering must occur, a Side Sewer Permit for Temporary Dewatering (SSPTD) and a Discharge Authorization Letter from King County Industrial Waste may be required prior to commencing dewatering at the site. The SSPTD permit may include a separate Temporary Dewatering Plan, water quality treatment, and/or flow control requirements, as well as compliance monitoring requirements.

For a copy of the SSPTD “Tip ~~503506~~,” go to the [Seattle Department of Construction and Inspections \(SDCI\)](#) Public Resources Center on the 20th floor of the Seattle Municipal Tower, 700 Fifth Avenue, Seattle, Washington 98124 ~~(same location as above)~~, or [visitrefer to](#) SDCI’s [TipsCAM](#) web ~~page~~site (<http://web1.seattle.gov/DPD/CAMs/CamList.aspx>).

Planning Considerations

Prior to implementing temporary dewatering, minimize the amount of water that will be collected and the potential amount of sediment that may enter the water. Implement the following prior to temporary dewatering:

- For trench excavation, limit the trench length to 150 feet and place the excavated material on the up-gradient side of the trench.
- Install diversion ditches or berms to minimize the amount of clean stormwater runoff allowed into the excavated area.
- Dewatering in periods of intense, heavy rain, when the infiltrative capacity of the soil is exceeded, should be avoided.
- Never discharge to bare or newly vegetated areas.

Once the site has been prepared as described above, assess the site for the issues listed below to assist the City in determining which discharge option to approve:

- Water clarity. If the water is turbid (cloudy), there are dissolved and/or settable solids in the water that should be filtered or settled out prior to discharge. Determine if contaminants are present in impounded water. Check for odors, discoloration, or oily sheen. Check any soils and/or groundwater testing results.
- If contamination may be or is present, the Director of SPU reserves the right to require sampling and analysis to prove that water quality is being protected. Highly turbid or contaminated dewatering water should be handled separately from stormwater. Contaminated groundwater is a prohibited discharge; however, it may be treated to become a permissible discharge if metals and other pollutants are mitigated to meet concentration thresholds in state water quality standards. If no such water quality standards exist for a pollutant, discharge limits should be based on the stricter standard of any other appropriate and relevant water quality criteria (i.e., Washington State water quality standards, U.S. EPA national recommended water quality criteria for aquatic life and human health, and the National Toxics Rule).
- Depending upon the type of downstream infrastructure and the desired discharge volume, the dewatering discharge flow rate may be required to be limited to a daily (measured by gallons or cubic feet per day) or instantaneous (measured by gallons or cubic feet per second) maximum.

Design Criteria

One of several types of dewatering facilities may be constructed, depending upon site conditions and the type of activities.

Water Removal

The removal of water from the excavated area can be accomplished by numerous methods. The most common of these are:

- Gravity drain through a daylight channel
- Mechanical pumping
- Siphoning
- Using the appropriate construction equipment to scoop and dump water from the excavation

Stabilize channels or any conveyance feature dug for discharging water from the excavated area. If flow velocities cause erosion within the channel, install a ditch lining, such as geotextile or heavy plastic sheeting.

Discharge Structure

Water conveyed by channels, ditches, pumps, hose, or equipment buckets should be discharged in a regulated manner to a stable [discharge](#) structure. The structure must be:

- Appropriate to filter sediment
- Able to withstand the velocity of the discharged water to prevent erosion
- Sized and operated such that pumped water will flow through an [sediment removal energy dissipation](#) device [and converted to gravity flow prior to discharge to a downstream system](#)
- Not overtop the structure

Typical constructed areas are:

- Sediment traps (refer to BMP E3.40)
- Portable sediment tanks (refer to BMP E3.50)
- Enclosure of hay bales, filter fabric (refer to BMP E3.10), or both
- Sediment filter bag

Sediment Removal – General

Sediment ~~must~~ [should](#) be settled prior to discharge. All settling systems should be engineered and adequately sized for site conditions. [Sediment removal is required when establishing wells for well-point dewatering but may be removed once the well and filter pack are established, and the discharge is found to be clean and non-turbid.](#) General settling and filtering options include the following:

- Containment in a pond structure for a minimum of 4 hours or until water is clear (time will vary greatly depending upon gradation of sediment). Place a pump in a gravel bed at the bottom of the pond.
- Discharge to a manufactured / pre-made structure specifically designed for sediment removal, like a Silt Sak, Silt Bag, or other similar product. Pump to a settling tank with sampling ports.
- Transport off site in vehicle, such as a vacuum flush truck, for legal disposal.
- Filter through a sieve or other filter media (e.g., swimming pool filter). Simple onsite filter systems can be constructed including: wrapping the ends of the suction and discharge pipes with filter fabric; discharging through a series of drums filled with successively finer gravel and sand; and other filtering techniques like those described under [storm drain](#) inlet protection (BMP E3.25).
- Manufactured bags, polymers, or other systems. These systems do not always work on fine clay soils, and will only be allowed for use where approved. Chemical treatments should have state approval before they are used (refer to Ecology BMP C250 Construction Stormwater Chemical Treatment [and Appendix B](#)).
- Line or protect the flow-path in some way to prevent mobilization of additional sediment.
- Dry and reuse filtered material on site in a mixture with other site soils, or appropriately dispose of the material based on nature and levels of any contaminants present.

Vegetated Buffer

A well stabilized, onsite, vegetated area may serve as a dewatering facility if the area is appropriate to filter sediment and at the same time withstand the velocity of the discharged water without erosion. The discharge of sediment-laden water onto a vegetated area must not pose a threat to the survival of the existing vegetative stand through smothering by sedimentation.

Direct discharge of lightly sediment bearing water may be able to go directly into well-buffered areas with a 2 percent slope as long as a method of spreading flow into sheet flow is available.

Straw Bale/Filter Fabric Pit

An excavated or bermed sedimentation pond or structure can also be created using straw bale and filter fabric (refer to BMP E3.10 Filter Fence) to create a pit. Flow to the structure may not exceed the sediment removal structure's capacity to settle and filter flow or the structure's volume capacity. Wherever possible, the structure should also discharge to a well-vegetated buffer through sheet flow, should maximize the distance to the nearest receiving water, and should minimize the slope of the buffer area. Also, the excavated portion may need to be lined with geotextile to help reduce scour and to prevent the inclusion of soil from within the structure (refer to BMP E3.40 Sediment Trap).

Sediment Filter Bag

The filter bag should be constructed of non-woven geotextile material that will provide adequate filtering ability to capture larger soil particles from the pumped water. The bag

should be constructed so that there is an inlet neck that may be clamped around the dewatering pump discharge hose so that all of the pumped water passes through the bag.

The filter bag should be used in combination with a straw bale/~~filters~~ fence pit when located within 50 feet of a receiving water. When the distance is greater than 50 feet, the bag may be placed on well-established vegetation, or on an aggregate pad constructed of crushed rock at a minimum depth of 6 inches. The bag should never be placed on bare soil.

The capacity of the sediment filter bag should be adequate to handle the dewatering pump discharge, and should be based on the bag manufacturer's recommendation.

When used in conjunction with a straw bale/~~filters~~ fence pit, a filter bag may be operated until the water in the pit reaches the crest of the emergency overflow. The pump must be shut off at this point. When placed on either a rock pad or well-established vegetation, the bag may be operated until the discharge from the bag reaches a receiving water. Unless the discharge is at least as clear as the receiving water, the pump must be shut off at this point.

When the bag has been completely filled with sediment, it should be cut open, re-graded in place, and immediately stabilized with either sod or erosion control mat.

Maintenance

- Check filtering devices frequently to make sure they are unclogged and operating correctly. Pay special attention to the buffer area for any sign of erosion and concentration of flow that may compromise the buffer area. Where possible, observe the visual quality of the effluent and determine if additional treatment can be provided.
- Make adjustments depending on the amount of sediment in the water being pumped.
- Repair and/or replace any equipment that does not function as designed.
- The accumulated sediment which is removed during maintenance must be spread on site and stabilized or disposed of at an approved disposal site.
- Systems should be filled in or otherwise removed when permanent dewatering controls are in place and connected to an approved treatment and receiving system.

5.1.7. BMP C1.45: Solid Waste Handling and Disposal

Description

Methods used to protect stormwater from pollution associated with the management, handling and disposal of all solid waste generated on a project site.

Purpose

Solid waste is one of the major pollutants caused by construction and can have direct impacts to stormwater as a potential pollutant if not managed and disposed of properly. Solid waste includes the following:

- Trees and shrubs removed during land clearing
- Wood and paper used in packaging and building materials
- Scrap metals and metal shavings
- Sanitary wastes
- Rubber, plastic, and glass pieces
- Masonry products
- Leftover food, food containers, beverage cans, coffee cups, lunch wrapping paper, aluminum foil, and plastic
- Cigarette packages and butts
- Unwanted or discarded construction and demolition products

Conditions Where Practice Applies

All project sites.

Planning Considerations

The major control mechanism for these pollutants is to provide adequate disposal facilities.

Design Criteria

- Collection containers: Project sites should have at least two containers; one for garbage or non-recyclable construction wastes and the other for recycling. Multiple containers for source-separated recyclables, such as clean wood and metal, are encouraged. Source-separating recyclables on the site means more recycling, less waste, and generally lower tipping fees/disposal costs. All containers located on the job site should be clearly marked, labeled with a list of acceptable materials, and kept closed when not in use. Any container designated for recycling should have at least 90% of its contents be recyclable and no garbage or items not accepted by the receiving facility. Garbage should not be deposited in a container designated for construction waste or for recycling.
- Remove garbage frequently to maintain project sites in a clean and attractive manner. Remove and dispose of accumulated solid waste at authorized disposal areas.

- Label waste containers and locate them in a covered area. Keep lids closed at all times.
- The City requires the recycling of readily recyclable construction and demolition waste materials and submittal of a Waste Diversion Report per SMC 21.36.089 and subsequent SPU Director's Rules related to construction materials disposal bans. In addition, the Seattle Department of Construction and Inspection now requires that a Waste Diversion Plan be part of the permit application for a building permit if the project is 750 square feet or greater and that a Salvage Assessment be performed for any job involving demolition. At the end of each project a Waste Diversion Report must be submitted to Seattle Public Utilities that documents through facility weight receipts where materials from the construction or demolition site went for reuse, recycling and disposal.
- Reuse and Recycling: Reuse on and off site reduces waste and is the most preferred method for handling materials. Several local firms provide salvage assessment and resale of building materials. Green building credits recognize reuse as well as recycling.
- Hauling: Reusables and recyclables may be hauled by any company you choose or you may "self-haul" yourself. Non-recyclable construction waste such as painted and treated wood or fiberglass insulation must be hauled only by the City's contracted hauler, Waste Management; or you may "self-haul" yourself to the appropriate receiving facility.
- Recyclable Materials from Project Sites: Current and future targeted materials and their handling, hauling and destination requirements are listed in Table 9.
- For more information about the City's construction and demolition waste recycling requirements, refer to the City's website: (www.seattle.gov/utilities/businesses-and-key-accounts/construction/construction-wastewww.seattle.gov/utilities/businesses-and-key-accounts/construction/construction-waste).
- For assistance with finding recycling facilities, refer to the King County Green Tools website at: (<https://kingcounty.gov/depts/dnrp/solid-waste/programs/green-building.aspx><http://your.kingcounty.gov/solidwaste/wdidw>).
- For assistance in determining where to take motor oil, pesticides, smoke alarms, fluorescent bulbs, and other hazardous materials, refer to the Local Hazardous Waste Management Program website: (www.hazwastehelp.com).
- Selective (rather than wholesale) removal of trees is helpful in conservation of soil and reduction of wood wastes. Avoid indiscriminate removal of trees and other beneficial vegetation.

Table 9. Handling, Hauling, and Destination Requirements for Targeted Materials.

Targeted Materials	Banned from Disposal	Collection Method and Hauling	Facilities ^{*a}
Land Clearing (such as trees, shrubs, stumps)	Yes	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Self-haul or Order drop box from a private recycler Grind and use on site 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> City transfer stations Private drop sites for yard waste Composting facilities Wood waste recyclers
Asphalt Paving	Yes	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Self-haul or Order drop box from a private hauler or recycler 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Concrete recyclers Sand and gravel operations Mixed waste recyclers
Bricks	Yes, if whole	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Reuse on or off site Self-haul to a reuse store or private recycler 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Reuse stores Sand and gravel operations
Concrete	Yes, if unpainted	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Reuse on or off site as fill only if appropriate for groundwater conditions Self-haul 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Concrete recyclers, Sand and gravel operations Mixed waste recyclers
Cardboard and Paper	Yes	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Use City provided curbside recycling containers or commercial recycling cart service if available for the building site Self-haul 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> City transfer stations Many private recyclers
Metal (ferrous and non-ferrous)	Yes	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Use City provided curbside recycling container if available for building site Self-haul 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> City transfer stations Many private recyclers
New Construction Gypsum Scrap	Yes	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Self-haul Drop box from a private recycler 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Drywall recyclers Mixed waste recyclers
Carpet	Yes, starting in July 2022^b Possibly in 2015	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Self-haul Drop box from a private hauler or recycler 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Take back offered through flooring stores for installers Some mixed waste recyclers if clean
Plastic Film Wrap	Yes, starting in July 2022^b 2015 for clean film	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Self-haul Drop box from a private hauler or recycler 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Mixed waste recyclers if clean
Wood	Yes, 2015 for if unpainted and untreated wood over 6 inches in length	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Self-haul Drop box from a private hauler or recycler 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> City transfer stations Private drop sites and recycling facilities
Tear-off Asphalt Roofing Shingles	Yes, starting in July 2022^b Possibly in 2015	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Self-haul to a private recycler 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Private asphalt shingle recyclers Some mixed waste recyclers

Table 9 (continued). Handling, Hauling, and Destination Requirements for Targeted Materials.

Targeted Materials	Banned from Disposal	Collection Method and Hauling	Facilities*
Food Waste (such as from lunches)	Yes ²⁰¹⁵ for food, but not the wrappings or containers	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Use City provided curbside organics container or commercial cart service if available for the building site 	
Tin and Aluminum Cans: Glass and Plastic Bottles and Jars	Yes	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Use City provided curbside recycling container or commercial recycling cart service if available for the building site Self-haul 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> City transfer stations Private recyclers
Cups	Yes	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Use City provided curbside recycling container or commercial recycling cart service if available for the building site 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> City transfer stations Private recyclers
Other Non-Recyclable Waste Materials		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Self-haul to City transfer stations for disposal Order a container from Waste Management, the City's contractor for the hauling of non-recyclable construction wastes at 1-800-592-9995 	

^{a*} For a list of construction waste recycling facilities, refer to [the City's website: \(www.seattle.gov/utilities/businesses-and-key-accounts/construction/construction-waste/recycling-requirements/certified-facilities\)](http://www.seattle.gov/utilities/businesses-and-key-accounts/construction/construction-waste/recycling-requirements/certified-facilities) www.seattle.gov/utilities/businesses-and-key-accounts/construction/construction-waste/recycling-requirements/certified-facilities.

^b Refer to Director's Rule SW-640 (formerly DR SW-405.3) for the effective date for bans on carpet, plastic film wrap, and tear-off asphalt roofing shingles.

Maintenance

Soil erosion and sediment control structures capture much of the solid waste from project sites. Frequently remove litter from these structures to reduce the amount of solid waste despoiling the landscape.

5.1.8. BMP C1.50: Disposal of Asbestos and Polychlorinated Biphenyls (PCBs)

Use and disposal of these potential pollutants are regulated by both state and federal agencies. For further information, contact:

- For asbestos:
 - Puget Sound Clean Air Agency (<https://pscleanair.gov>~~www.pscleanair.org~~) (206) 343-8800 or toll-free (800) 552-3565
 - U.S. EPA (www.epa.gov/asbestos) (206) 553-1200 or toll-free (800) 424-4EPA
- For wastes containing PCBs:
 - Washington Department of Ecology, Hazardous Waste Section: (206) 449-6687
 - U.S. EPA (<https://www.epa.gov/hwww.epa.gov/osw/hazard/tsd/pcbs/>) (206) 553-1200 or toll-free (800) 424-4EPA

5.1.9. *BMP C1.55: Airborne Debris Curtain*

Description

Using plastic or other material to create a vertical barrier, or curtain, around a building or other structure undergoing exposed construction, or cleaning activities to minimize the spread of airborne debris.

Purpose

Activities related to exposed building construction, repair, or cleaning include spraying, pressure washing, surface preparation, sand blasting, paint removal, sanding, and painting. If conducted outdoors, all of these activities are associated with high risk for contaminating water resources.

Potential pollutants include spent fire retardants, abrasive grits, solvents, oils, washwater, paint overspray, cleaners and detergents, paint chips, glass fibers, and dust. Pollutant constituents include suspended solids, oils and greases, organic compounds, copper, lead, tin, and zinc.

Conditions Where Practice Applies

This BMP should be implemented when spraying, blasting, sanding, or washing outdoors.

Planning Considerations

- Relocate maintenance and repair activities that can be moved indoors to reduce the potential for direct pollution of stormwater.
- Evaluate disposal methods for spent abrasives, cleaners, etc.
- Consider using no soaps or detergents. Brush the exterior surface with water only.

Despite what is on the label, the term biodegradable does not mean that the product is safe or environmentally friendly. Some cleaning products may degrade eventually, but are still harmful to the environment.

Design Criteria

- Use fixed platforms with appropriate plastic or tarpaulin barriers as work surfaces and for containment when work is performed near a receiving water. This helps to prevent material or overspray from coming into contact with stormwater or the receiving water.
- Use sanders that have dust-containment bags and avoid sanding in windy conditions.
- Store materials such as paints, tools, and ground cloths indoors or in a covered area when not in use.
- Contain blasting and spraying activities by hanging tarpaulins to block the wind and prevent dust and overspray from escaping. Do not perform uncontained spray painting, blasting, or sanding activities over open water without proper protection (e.g., overspray collection, drop clothes, booms).

- Use plywood and/or plastic sheeting to cover open areas when sandblasting.
- During painting, finishing, or sand blasting, use ground cloths to collect drips, spills, paint chips, and used blasting sand.
- Avoid collecting debris in areas subject to foot or vehicular traffic to control tracking.

Maintenance

- Collect spent abrasives and other waste materials regularly. Contain and store them under cover until they can be disposed of properly.
- At least once each week or more often as needed, sweep and clean ground surface areas. Do not hose them down. Properly dispose of the collected materials.
- Use one of the following treatment BMPs when paint chips or blasting grit are present in the work area:
 - Cleaning Inlets and Catch Basins (BMP E3.65)
 - Street Sweeping and Vacuuming (BMP E3.70)
 - [Storm Drain](#) Inlet Protection (BMP E3.25). Use filtration with media designed for the pollutants present.

Catch basin filters only remove solids and do not provide treatment for other pollutants associated with some building cleaning activities.

5.1.10. BMP C1.56: Concrete Handling and Disposal

Description

~~Methods for control, containment, removal and disposal of concrete materials and waste products to prevent contamination of storm drains, open ditches, or critical areas, such as water bodies and wetlands. Concrete work includes storing storage, mixing, pouring, placement placing, finishing, removal removing, saw cutting, or clean-up of concrete materials, the slurry, or process water associated with these activities, and the proper construction of a contained area on a project site where concrete and concrete wastewater and washout may be stored for later disposal.~~

Purpose

To prevent or reduce the discharge of fine particles and high pH process water and slurry from concrete materials. Concrete spillage or concrete discharge to waters of the state is prohibited.

Conditions Where Practice Applies

Anytime concrete is used, removed, or disposed of, including, but not limited to, placement and maintenance of:

- Curbs,
- Sidewalks,
- Roads,
- Bridges,
- Foundations,
- Floors, ~~and~~
- Runways.

Anytime cured or uncured concrete is used, removed or disposed of, or water that has come in contact with uncured concrete is present, it must be disposed of properly. Activities that use, remove, or dispose of concrete include, but are not limited to, sawing slurry, coring, grinding, roughening, hydro-demolition, bridge and road surfacing.

Planning Considerations

~~Sawcutting and surfacing operations generate slurry and process water that contains fine particles and high pH (concrete cutting), both of which can violate the water quality standards in the receiving water. Concrete spillage or concrete discharge to receiving waters is prohibited. Use this BMP to minimize and eliminate process water and slurry created through sawcutting or surfacing from entering receiving waters. Utilize these management practices anytime sawcutting or surfacing operations take place.~~

Washwater and stormwater that has contacted uncured cement will become high-pH waters, which must be collected and treated before release to the public drainage system or public combined sewer. Concrete should not be placed during heavy rain events.

Wash concrete truck drums and other concrete handling equipment at an approved offsite location or in designated concrete washout areas only. Do not wash out concrete trucks on the ground (including formed areas awaiting concrete) or into storm drains, open ditches, streets, or streams. Refer to BMP C1.58 for information on concrete washout areas.

Refer to BMP C1.59 for pH adjustments requirements. Refer to the Construction Stormwater General Permit for pH monitoring requirements if the project involves one of the following activities:

- Significant concrete work (greater than 1,000 cubic yards poured concrete or recycled concrete used over the life of a project)
- The use of engineered soils amended with (but not limited to) Portland cement-treated base, cement kiln dust, or fly ash
- Discharge of stormwater to receiving waters on the 303(d) list (Category 5) for high pH

Education:

- Discuss the concrete management techniques described in this BMP with the ready-mix concrete supplier before any deliveries are made.
- Educate employees and subcontractors on the concrete waste management techniques described in this BMP.
- Arrange for contractor's superintendent or CESCL to oversee and enforce concrete waste management procedures.
- Install a sign adjacent to each temporary concrete washout area facility (BMP C1.58) to inform concrete equipment operators about utilizing the proper facilities.

Contracts:

Incorporate requirements for concrete waste management into concrete supplier and subcontractor agreements.

Design Criteria

- Within 15 feet of receiving waters, always use forms or solid barriers for concrete pours, such as pilings.
- Return unused concrete remaining in the truck and pump to the originating batch plant for recycling.
- ~~Do not dump excess concrete on site, except in designated concrete washout areas.~~
- ~~Ensure that washout of concrete trucks is performed off site or in designated concrete washout areas. If washout is done on site, wash out concrete truck chutes, pumps, and internals into formed areas only. Do not wash out concrete trucks onto the ground, or into storm drains, open ditches, streets, or streams.~~
- ~~Concrete washout areas may be prefabricated concrete washout containers, or self-installed structures (above-grade or below-grade).~~

- Prefabricated containers are most resistant to damage and protect against spills and leaks. Companies may offer delivery service and provide regular maintenance and disposal of solid and liquid waste.
- Use approximately 7 gallons of washwater or less to wash one truck chute.
- Use approximately 50 gallons of washwater or less to wash out the hopper of a concrete pump truck.
- Washout facilities ([BMP C1.58](#)) should be maintained to provide adequate holding capacity with a minimum freeboard of 12 inches.
- Washout facilities ([BMP C1.58](#)) must be cleaned, or new facilities must be constructed and ready for use once the washout is 75 percent full.

~~● If the washout is nearing capacity, vacuum and dispose of the waste material in an approved manner.~~

~~*Note: If less than 10 concrete trucks or pumbers need to be washed out on site, the washwater may be disposed of in a formed area awaiting concrete or an upland disposal site where it will not contaminate surface or groundwater. The upland disposal site must be at least 50 feet from critical areas such as storm drains, open ditches, or water bodies, including wetlands.*~~

- ~~● Vacuum slurry and cuttings during cutting and surfacing operations. Do not allow slurry and cuttings to drain to any natural or constructed drainage conveyance including stormwater systems. This may require temporarily blocking catch basins. Dispose of collected slurry and cuttings in a manner that does not violate ground water or surface water quality standards.~~
- Do not allow process water generated during hydro-demolition, surface roughening or similar operations to drain to any natural or constructed drainage conveyance including stormwater systems. Dispose of process water in a manner that does not violate ground-water or surface water quality standards.
- Wash off hand tools including, but not limited to, screeds, shovels, rakes, floats, and trowels into formed areas or into a designated concrete washout area ([BMP C1.58](#)) only.
- Handle and dispose of cleaning waste material and demolition debris in a manner that does not cause contamination of water. Dispose of sweeping material from a pick-up sweeper at an appropriate disposal site.
- Wash equipment difficult to move, such as concrete pavers, in areas that do not directly drain to natural or constructed stormwater conveyances.
- ~~● Do not allow washdown from areas, such as concrete aggregate driveways, to drain directly to natural or constructed stormwater conveyances.~~
- ~~● Never At no time shall concrete be washed off concrete into the footprint of an area where an infiltration feature will be installed.~~
- Contain washwater and leftover product in a lined container when no formed areas are available. Dispose of contained concrete in a manner that does not violate groundwater or surface water quality standards.
- The following steps will help reduce stormwater pollution from concrete wastes:
 - Do not allow excess concrete to be dumped on site, except in designated concrete washout areas.

- If self-installed concrete washout areas are used, below-grade structures are preferred over above-grade structures because they are less prone to spills and leaks. Self-installed above-grade structures should only be used if excavation is not practical.

5.1.11. BMP C1.58: Concrete Washout Area

Description

Methods for control, containment, removal, and disposal of concrete materials and waste products to prevent contamination of storm drains, open ditches, or critical areas, such as water bodies and wetlands. Concrete work includes storage, mixing, pouring, placement, finishing, removal, sawcutting, or cleanup of concrete materials, slurry, or process water associated with these activities. It also includes the proper construction of a contained area on a project site where concrete and concrete wastewater and washout may be stored for later disposal.

Purpose

Prevent or reduce the discharge of pollutants from concrete waste to stormwater by conducting washout off- site, or performing onsite washout in a designated area.

Conditions Where Practice Applies

Concrete washout areas are implemented on construction projects where:

- Concrete is used as a construction material.
- It is not possible to dispose of all concrete wastewater and washout off- site (ready mix plant, etc.).
- Concrete truck drums are washed on- site.

Note that auxiliary concrete truck components (e.g., chutes and hoses) and small concrete handling equipment, (e.g., hand tools, screeds, shovels, rakes, floats, trowels, and wheelbarrows) may be washed off into formed areas awaiting a concrete pour.

At no time shall concrete handling equipment be washed off into the footprint of a proposed area where an infiltration BMP will be installed.

Design Criteria

Location and Placement of Washout Areas

- Locate washout area at least 50 feet from storm drains, open ditches, or critical areas, such as water bodies and wetlands.
- Allow convenient access for concrete trucks, preferably near the area where the concrete is being poured.
- If trucks need to leave a paved area to access washout, prevent track-out with a pad of rock or quarry spalls (refer to BMP E2.10). These areas should be far enough away from other construction traffic to reduce the likelihood of accidental damage and spills.
- The number of washout facilities you installed should depend on the expected demand for storage capacity.

- On large sites with extensive concrete work, washouts [facilities](#) should be placed in multiple locations for ease of use by concrete truck drivers.
- [If the washout facility is nearing capacity, vacuum and dispose of the waste material in an approved manner.](#)

[Note: If less than 10 concrete trucks or pumpers need to be washed out on site, the washwater may be disposed of in a formed area awaiting a concrete pour or an upland disposal site where it will not contaminate surface water or groundwater. The upland disposal site must be at least 50 feet from critical areas such as storm drains, open ditches, or water bodies, including wetlands.](#)

- [Concrete washout areas shall be constructed and maintained in sufficient quantity and size to contain all liquid and concrete waste generated by washout operations.](#)

Onsite Temporary Concrete Washout Facility, Transit Truck Washout Procedures

- Locate temporary concrete washout facilities a minimum of 50 feet from critical areas including storm drain inlets, open drainage [BMPsfacilities](#), and receiving waters. Refer to Figures 20 and 21.
- Construct and maintain concrete washout facilities in sufficient quantity and size to contain all liquid and concrete waste generated by washout operations.
- Perform washout of concrete trucks in designated areas only.
- Concrete washout from concrete pumper bins can be washed into concrete pumper trucks and discharged into the designated washout area or properly disposed of off site.
- Once concrete wastes are washed into the designated area and allowed to harden, break up, remove, and dispose of the concrete per applicable solid waste regulations. Dispose of hardened concrete on a regular basis.

Temporary Above-Grade Concrete Washout Facility

- Construct temporary concrete washout facilities (type above grade) (refer to Figures 20 and 21), with a recommended minimum length and minimum width of 10 feet, but with sufficient quantity and volume to contain all liquid and concrete waste generated by washout operations.
- Use plastic lining material that is a minimum of 10 mil polyethylene sheeting and free of holes, tears, or other defects that compromise the impermeability of the material.

Temporary Below-Grade Concrete Washout Facility

- Construct temporary concrete washout facilities (refer to Figure 20, type "below-grade") with a recommended minimum length and minimum width of 10 feet. The quantity and volume should be sufficient to contain all liquid and concrete waste generated by washout operations.
- Use commercial type lath and flagging.
- Use plastic lining material that is a minimum of 10 mil polyethylene sheeting and free of holes, tears, or other defects that compromise the impermeability of the material.
- Install liner seams should in accordance with manufacturers' recommendations.

- Prepare soil base so that it is free of rocks or other debris that may cause tears or holes in the plastic lining material.

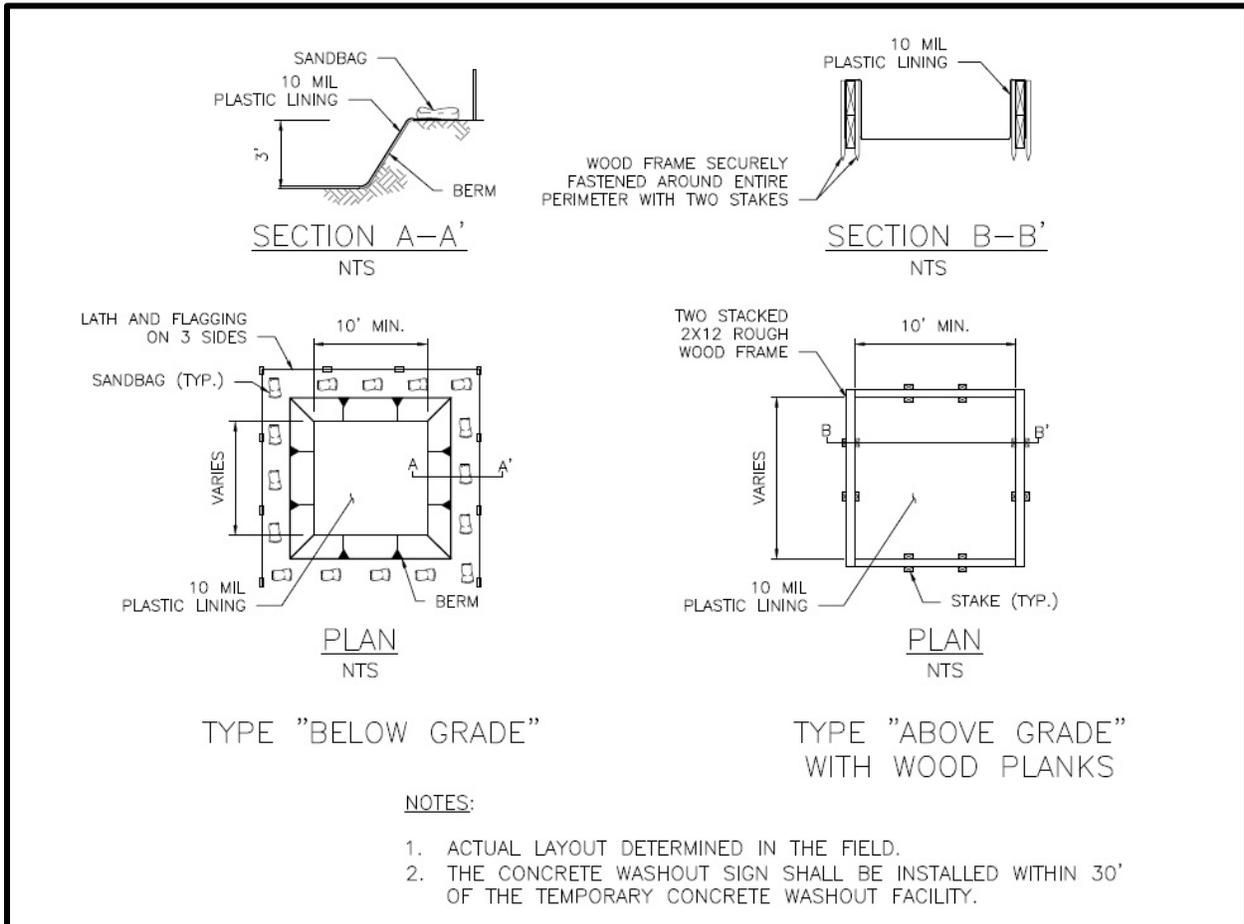


Figure 20. Concrete Washout Facility.

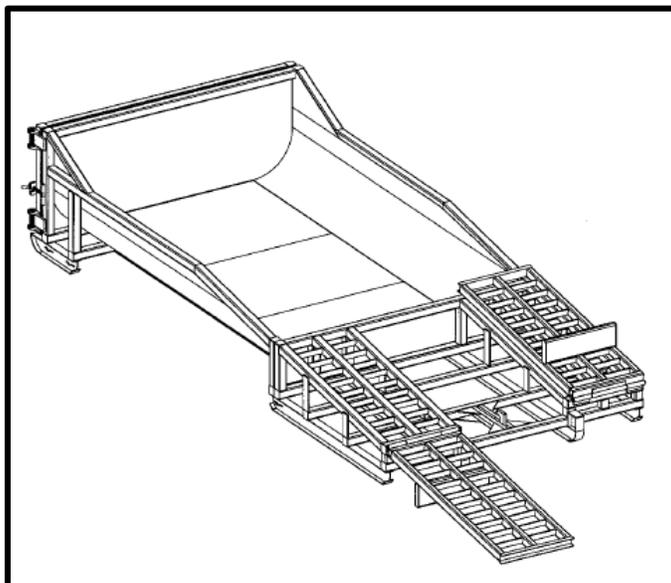


Figure 21. Prefabricated Concrete Washout Container with Ramp.

Maintenance

- Check containers for holes in the liner daily during concrete pours and repair the same day.
- Continually monitor operations to determine whether slurry, cuttings, or process water could enter receiving waters. If inspections show that a violation of water quality standards could occur, stop operations and immediately implement preventive measures such as berms, barriers, secondary containment, and vacuum trucks.
- Inspect and verify that concrete washout BMPs are in place prior to the commencement of concrete work.
- During periods of concrete work, inspect daily to verify continued performance.
- Check overall condition and performance.
- Check remaining capacity (percent full).
- If using self-installed washout facilities, verify plastic liners are intact and sidewalls are not damaged.
- If using prefabricated containers, check for leaks.
- Do not discharge liquid or slurry to receiving waters, drainage channels, storm drains or directly onto ground.
- Do not use the public sanitary sewer without King County Industrial Waste Program approval.
- Place a secure, non-collapsing, non-water collecting cover over the concrete washout facility prior to a predicted wet weather event to prevent accumulation and overflow of precipitation.
- Remove and dispose of hardened concrete and return the structure to a functional condition. Concrete may be reused on site or hauled away for disposal or recycling.

- When removing materials from the self-installed concrete washout, build a new structure. If the previous structure is still intact, inspect for signs of weakening or damage, and make any necessary repairs. Re-line the structure with new plastic after each cleaning.

Removal of Temporary Concrete Washout Facilities

- When temporary concrete washout facilities are no longer required for the work, remove and properly dispose of the hardened concrete, slurries and liquids.
- Remove and dispose of or recycle materials used to construct temporary concrete washout facilities.
- Backfill, repair and stabilize holes, depressions or other ground disturbance caused by the removal of the temporary concrete washout facilities to prevent erosion.

~~5.1.11~~ 5.1.12. *BMP C1.59: High pH Neutralization Using CO₂*

Description

Methods for neutralization of high pH water prior to discharge into the drainage system or receiving waters.

Purpose

When pH levels in stormwater rise above 8.5 it is necessary to lower the pH levels to the acceptable range of 6.5 to 8.5, this process is called pH neutralization. pH neutralization involves the use of solid or compressed carbon dioxide gas in water requiring neutralization (CO₂ Sparging). Neutralized stormwater may be discharged to receiving waters under the Ecology Construction Stormwater General permit.

Neutralized process water such as concrete truck ~~washout~~~~wash-out~~, hydro-demolition, or ~~sawcuttings~~~~saw-cutting~~ slurry must be managed to prevent discharge to receiving waters. Any stormwater contaminated during concrete work is considered process wastewater and must not be discharged to receiving waters.

Reasons for pH Neutralization

- A pH level range of 6.5 to 8.5 is typical for most natural watercourses, and this neutral pH is required for the survival of aquatic organisms. Should the pH rise or drop out of this range, fish and other aquatic organisms may become stressed and may die.
- Calcium hardness can contribute to high pH values and cause toxicity that is associated with high pH conditions. A high level of calcium hardness in receiving waters is not allowed.
- The water quality standard for pH in Washington State is in the range of 6.5 to 8.5. The groundwater standard for calcium and other dissolved solids in Washington State is less than 500 mg/l.

Conditions Where Practice Applies

Causes of High pH

High pH at project sites is most commonly caused by the contact of stormwater with poured or recycled concrete, cement, mortars, and other construction materials containing Portland cement or lime. (Refer to BMP C1.56 for more information on concrete handling procedures.) The principal caustic agent in cement is calcium hydroxide (free lime).

Advantages of CO₂ Sparging

- Rapidly neutralizes high pH water
- Cost effective and safer to handle than acid compounds
- CO₂ is self-buffering. It is difficult to overdose and create harmfully low pH levels
- Material is readily available

The Chemical Process

When carbon dioxide (CO₂) is added to water (H₂O), carbonic acid (H₂CO₃) is formed which can further dissociate into a proton (H⁺) and a bicarbonate anion (HCO₃⁻) as shown below:



The free proton is a weak acid that can lower the pH. Water temperature has an effect on the reaction as well. The colder the water temperature is the slower the reaction occurs and the warmer the water temperature is the quicker the reaction occurs. Most construction applications in Washington State have water temperatures in the 50°F or higher range so the reaction is almost instantaneous.

Design Criteria

Treatment Process

High pH water may be treated using continuous treatment, continuous discharge systems. These manufactured systems continuously monitor influent and effluent pH to ensure that pH values are within an acceptable range before being discharged. All systems must have fail safe automatic shut off switches in the event that pH is not within the acceptable discharge range. Only trained operators may operate manufactured systems. System manufacturers often provide trained operators or training on their devices.

The following procedure may be used when not using a continuous discharge system:

1. Make every effort to isolate the potential high pH water in order to treat it separately from other stormwater on site.
2. Store water in an acceptable storage facility, detention pond, or containment cell prior to treatment.
3. Transfer water to be treated to the treatment structure. Ensure that treatment structure size is sufficient to hold the amount of water that is to be treated. Do not fill tank completely, allow at least 2 feet of freeboard.
4. Sample the water for pH and note the clarity of the water. Generally, less CO₂ is necessary for clearer water. Record this information in the stormwater treatment logbook.
5. In the pH adjustment structure, add CO₂ until the pH falls in the range of 6.9 to 7.1. Remember that pH water quality standards apply so adjusting pH to within 0.2 pH units of receiving water (background pH) is recommended. It is unlikely that pH can be adjusted to within 0.2 pH units using dry ice. Compressed carbon dioxide gas should be introduced to the water using a carbon dioxide diffuser located near the bottom of the tank, this will allow carbon dioxide to bubble up through the water and diffuse more evenly.
6. Slowly discharge the water making sure water does not get stirred up in the process. Release about 80 percent of the water from the structure leaving any sludge behind.
7. Discharge treated water through a pond or drainage system.
8. Excess sludge needs to be disposed of properly as concrete waste. If several batches of water are undergoing pH treatment, sludge can be left in the treatment structure for the next batch treatment. Dispose of sludge when it fills 50 percent of tank volume.

Sites that must implement flow control for the developed site must also control stormwater release rates during construction. All treated stormwater must go through a flow control facility before being released to receiving waters or systems which require flow control.

Maintenance Standards

Safety and Materials Handling

- Handle all equipment in accordance with Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA) rules and regulations
- Follow manufacturer guidelines for materials handling

Operator Records

Each operator should provide:

- A diagram of the monitoring and treatment equipment
- A description of the pumping rates and capacity the treatment equipment is capable of treating

Each operator should keep a written record of the following:

- Client name and phone number
- Date of treatment
- Weather conditions
- Project name and location
- Volume of water treated
- pH of untreated water
- Amount of CO₂ needed to adjust water to a pH range of 6.9 to 7.1
- pH of treated water
- Discharge point location and description

A copy of this record should be given to the project proponent/owner/contractor who must retain the record for 3 years.

This page intentionally left blank

<h1>SDCI</h1>	<h2>Director's Rule 10-2021</h2>
<h1>SPU</h1>	<h2>Director's Rule DWW-200</h2>

Applicant: Department of Construction & Inspections Seattle Public Utilities	Page: # of ###	Supersedes: SDCI: 17-2017 SPU: DWW-200 (2017)
	Publication: TBD	Effective: 07/01/2021
Subject: Stormwater Manual Volume 3 of 5	Code and Section Reference: SMC 22.800-22.808	
	Type of Rule: Code interpretation	
	Ordinance Authority: SMC 3.06.040, 3.32.020	
Index: Title 22.800 Stormwater Code	Approved: _____ Nathan Torgelson, Director, SDCI	Date: _____
	Approved: _____ Mami Hara, General Manager/CEO, SPU	Date: _____

PUBLIC REVIEW DRAFT
VOLUME 3 —
PROJECT STORMWATER CONTROL

CITY OF SEATTLE
SEATTLE PUBLIC UTILITIES
DEPARTMENT OF CONSTRUCTION AND INSPECTION

March 2021

Note:

Some pages in this document have been purposely skipped or blank pages inserted so that this document will print correctly when duplexed.

Table of Contents

CHAPTER 1 - Introduction.....	1-1
1.1. Purpose of this Volume.....	1-1
1.2. How to Use this Volume.....	1-1
CHAPTER 2 - BMP Categories.....	2-1
2.1. Introduction.....	2-1
2.2. Soil Amendment.....	2-2
2.3. Tree Planting and Retention.....	2-2
2.4. Dispersion BMPs.....	2-2
2.5. Infiltration BMPs.....	2-3
2.6. Rainwater Harvesting BMPs.....	2-3
2.7. Alternative Surface BMPs.....	2-4
2.8. Detention BMPs.....	2-4
2.9. Non-infiltrating BMPs.....	2-5
CHAPTER 3 - BMP Selection and Sizing Approach.....	3-1
3.1. Determine Dispersion Feasibility.....	3-2
3.2. Determine Infiltration Feasibility.....	3-3
3.3. BMP Selection for On-site Stormwater Management.....	3-16
3.3.1. On-site List Approach.....	3-16
3.3.2. On-site Performance Standard.....	3-18
3.4. BMP Selection for Flow Control.....	3-19
3.5. BMP Selection for Water Quality Treatment.....	3-21
3.5.1. Selection Steps.....	3-21
3.5.2. Treatment Performance Goals and BMP Options.....	3-25
3.5.2.1. Oil Control Treatment.....	3-25
3.5.2.2. Phosphorus Treatment.....	3-26
3.5.2.3. Enhanced Treatment.....	3-26
3.5.2.4. Basic Treatment.....	3-28
CHAPTER 4 - General Design Requirements.....	4-1
4.1. Sizing Approach.....	4-2
4.1.1. On-site List Approach.....	4-2
4.1.2. Pre-sized Approach.....	4-3
4.1.2.1. Pre-sized Facilities.....	4-3
4.1.2.2. Pre-sized Credits, Sizing Factors, and Equations.....	4-3
4.1.2.3. Pre-sized Calculator.....	4-5
4.1.3. Modeling Approach.....	4-6
4.1.3.1. On-site Performance Standard.....	4-6
4.1.3.2. Flow Control.....	4-6
4.1.3.3. Water Quality Treatment.....	4-7

- 4.1.3.4. Wetland Hydroperiod Protection 4-8
 - 4.1.3.5. Closed Depressions 4-8
 - 4.2. Bypass, Flow-Through, and Off-Site Flow General Design Requirements 4-9
 - 4.2.1. Treatment BMPs 4-9
 - 4.2.2. Bypassing Flows Entering a Site 4-10
 - 4.2.2.1. Scenario 1 – Bypassing Flows Entering a Site 4-10
 - 4.2.2.2. Scenario 2 – Flow-Through a Flow Control BMP 4-10
 - 4.2.3. Bypassing Flows Leaving a Site 4-11
 - 4.2.3.1. Scenario 3 - Compensate for Uncontrolled Bypass 4-11
 - 4.2.3.2. Scenario 4 – Uncontrolled Flows Leaving the Site 4-12
 - 4.3. Conveyance and Overflow General Design Requirements 4-13
 - 4.3.1. Conveyance Design and Capacity Analysis 4-13
 - 4.3.2. Requirements for Projects with No Off-site Point of Discharge 4-13
 - 4.3.3. BMP and Conveyance Overflow Requirements 4-16
 - 4.4. Presettling and Pretreatment Requirements 4-17
 - 4.4.1. Description 4-17
 - 4.4.2. Performance Mechanisms 4-17
 - 4.4.3. Applicability 4-17
 - 4.4.3.1. Presettling and Pretreatment 4-17
 - 4.4.3.2. Pretreatment 4-20
 - 4.4.4. Site Considerations 4-21
 - 4.4.5. Design Criteria 4-21
 - 4.4.6. Operations and Maintenance Requirements 4-22
 - 4.5. Infiltration BMPs 4-23
 - 4.5.1. Infiltration BMP Sizing 4-23
 - 4.5.2. Soil Requirements for Water Quality Treatment 4-24
 - 4.5.2.1. Underlying Soil Requirements for Infiltration BMPs 4-24
 - 4.5.2.2. Imported Soil and Sand 4-24
- CHAPTER 5 - BMP Design 5-1
 - 5.1. Soil Amendment BMP 5-2
 - 5.1.1. Description 5-2
 - 5.1.2. Performance Mechanisms 5-2
 - 5.1.3. Applicability 5-2
 - 5.1.4. Site Considerations 5-3
 - 5.1.5. Design Criteria 5-3
 - 5.1.5.1. Soil Amendments 5-3
 - 5.1.5.2. Implementation Options 5-4
 - 5.1.5.3. Soil Retention 5-6
 - 5.1.5.4. Soil Management Plan 5-6
 - 5.1.6. BMP Sizing 5-7
 - 5.1.7. Minimum Construction Requirements 5-7
 - 5.1.8. Operations and Maintenance Requirements 5-7
 - 5.2. Tree Planting and Retention 5-8
 - 5.2.1. Description 5-8
 - 5.2.2. Performance Mechanisms 5-8

- 5.2.3. Applicability 5-8
- 5.2.4. Site Considerations 5-8
 - 5.2.4.1. Retained Trees 5-8
 - 5.2.4.2. Newly Planted Trees 5-9
- 5.2.5. Design Criteria 5-9
 - 5.2.5.1. Retained Trees 5-9
 - 5.2.5.2. Newly Planted Trees 5-10
- 5.2.6. BMP Credits 5-12
 - 5.2.6.1. Credit for On-site List Approach 5-12
 - 5.2.6.2. Pre-Sized Approach for Flow Control 5-12
 - 5.2.6.3. Modeling Approach for On-site Performance Standard and Flow Control 5-12
- 5.2.7. Minimum Construction Requirements 5-13
- 5.2.8. Operations and Maintenance Requirements 5-13
- 5.3. Dispersion BMPs 5-14
 - 5.3.1. Design Requirements for Dispersion BMPs 5-14
 - 5.3.1.1. General Site Considerations 5-14
 - 5.3.1.2. General Design Criteria for Dispersion Flowpaths 5-14
 - 5.3.2. Full Dispersion 5-16
 - 5.3.3. Splashblock Downspout Dispersion 5-17
 - 5.3.3.1. Description 5-17
 - 5.3.3.2. Performance Mechanisms 5-17
 - 5.3.3.3. Applicability 5-17
 - 5.3.3.4. Site Considerations 5-17
 - 5.3.3.5. Design Criteria 5-17
 - 5.3.3.6. BMP Credits 5-20
 - 5.3.3.7. Minimum Construction Requirements 5-21
 - 5.3.3.8. Operations and Maintenance Requirements 5-22
 - 5.3.4. Trench Downspout Dispersion 5-23
 - 5.3.4.1. Description 5-23
 - 5.3.4.2. Performance Mechanisms 5-23
 - 5.3.4.3. Applicability 5-23
 - 5.3.4.4. Site Considerations 5-23
 - 5.3.4.5. Design Criteria 5-23
 - 5.3.4.6. BMP Credits 5-26
 - 5.3.4.7. Minimum Construction Requirements 5-27
 - 5.3.4.8. Operations and Maintenance Requirements 5-27
 - 5.3.5. Sheet Flow Dispersion 5-28
 - 5.3.5.1. Description 5-28
 - 5.3.5.2. Performance Mechanisms 5-28
 - 5.3.5.3. Applicability 5-28
 - 5.3.5.4. Site Considerations 5-28
 - 5.3.5.5. Design Criteria 5-28
 - 5.3.5.6. BMP Credits 5-30
 - 5.3.5.7. Minimum Construction Requirements 5-31
 - 5.3.5.8. Operations and Maintenance Requirements 5-31

- 5.3.6. Concentrated Flow Dispersion.....5-32
 - 5.3.6.1. Description5-32
 - 5.3.6.2. Performance Mechanisms5-32
 - 5.3.6.3. Applicability5-32
 - 5.3.6.4. Site Considerations.....5-32
 - 5.3.6.5. Design Criteria5-32
 - 5.3.6.6. BMP Credits.....5-35
 - 5.3.6.7. Minimum Construction Requirements5-36
 - 5.3.6.8. Operations and Maintenance Requirements.....5-37
- 5.3.7. Sidewalk/Trail Compost-Amended Strip.....5-38
 - 5.3.7.1. Description5-38
 - 5.3.7.2. Performance Mechanisms5-38
 - 5.3.7.3. Applicability5-38
 - 5.3.7.4. Site Considerations.....5-38
 - 5.3.7.5. Design Criteria5-39
 - 5.3.7.6. BMP Sizing5-41
 - 5.3.7.7. Minimum Construction Requirements5-43
 - 5.3.7.8. Operation and Maintenance Requirements.....5-43
- 5.4. Infiltration BMPs.....5-44
 - 5.4.1. General Considerations for Infiltration BMPs5-45
 - 5.4.2. Infiltration Trenches5-47
 - 5.4.2.1. Description5-47
 - 5.4.2.2. Performance Mechanisms5-47
 - 5.4.2.3. Applicability5-47
 - 5.4.2.4. Site Considerations.....5-48
 - 5.4.2.5. Design Criteria5-48
 - 5.4.2.6. BMP Credits.....5-51
 - 5.4.2.7. Minimum Construction Requirements5-54
 - 5.4.2.8. Operations and Maintenance Requirements.....5-54
 - 5.4.3. Drywells.....5-55
 - 5.4.3.1. Description5-55
 - 5.4.3.2. Performance Mechanisms5-55
 - 5.4.3.3. Applicability5-55
 - 5.4.3.4. Site Considerations.....5-55
 - 5.4.3.5. Design Criteria5-55
 - 5.4.3.6. BMP Sizing5-59
 - 5.4.3.7. Minimum Construction Requirements5-61
 - 5.4.3.8. Operations and Maintenance Requirements.....5-61
 - 5.4.4. Infiltrating Bioretention.....5-62
 - 5.4.4.1. Description5-62
 - 5.4.4.2. Performance Mechanisms5-62
 - 5.4.4.3. Applicability5-63
 - 5.4.4.4. Site Considerations.....5-63
 - 5.4.4.5. Design Criteria5-63
 - 5.4.4.6. BMP Sizing5-81

- 5.4.4.7. Minimum Construction Requirements5-88
- 5.4.4.8. Operations and Maintenance Requirements.....5-88
- 5.4.5. Rain Gardens5-89
 - 5.4.5.1. Description5-89
 - 5.4.5.2. Performance Mechanisms5-89
 - 5.4.5.3. Applicability5-89
 - 5.4.5.4. Site Considerations.....5-90
 - 5.4.5.5. Design Criteria5-90
 - 5.4.5.6. BMP Sizing5-96
 - 5.4.5.7. Minimum Construction Requirements5-97
 - 5.4.5.8. Operations and Maintenance Requirements.....5-97
- 5.4.6. Permeable Pavement Facilities5-98
 - 5.4.6.1. Description5-98
 - 5.4.6.2. Performance Mechanisms5-99
 - 5.4.6.3. Applicability5-99
 - 5.4.6.4. Site Considerations.....5-99
 - 5.4.6.5. Design Criteria5-100
 - 5.4.6.6. BMP Sizing5-113
 - 5.4.6.7. Minimum Construction Requirements5-117
 - 5.4.6.8. Operations and Maintenance Requirements.....5-118
- 5.4.7. Perforated Stub-Out Connections.....5-119
 - 5.4.7.1. Description5-119
 - 5.4.7.2. Performance Mechanisms5-119
 - 5.4.7.3. Applicability5-119
 - 5.4.7.4. Site Considerations.....5-119
 - 5.4.7.5. Design Criteria5-119
 - 5.4.7.6. BMP Credits.....5-122
 - 5.4.7.7. Minimum Construction Requirements5-122
 - 5.4.7.8. Operations and Maintenance Requirements.....5-122
- 5.4.8. Infiltration Basins.....5-123
 - 5.4.8.1. Description5-123
 - 5.4.8.2. Performance Mechanisms5-123
 - 5.4.8.3. Applicability5-123
 - 5.4.8.4. Site Considerations.....5-123
 - 5.4.8.5. Design Criteria5-123
 - 5.4.8.6. BMP Sizing5-123
 - 5.4.8.7. Minimum Construction Requirements5-123
 - 5.4.8.8. Operations and Maintenance Requirements.....5-124
- 5.4.9. Infiltration Chambers/Vaults5-125
 - 5.4.9.1. Description5-125
 - 5.4.9.2. Performance Mechanisms5-125
 - 5.4.9.3. Applicability5-125
 - 5.4.9.4. Site Considerations.....5-125
 - 5.4.9.5. Design Criteria5-126
 - 5.4.9.6. BMP Sizing5-128

- 5.4.9.7. Minimum Construction Requirements 5-130
- 5.4.9.8. Operations and Maintenance Requirements..... 5-131
- 5.5. Rainwater Harvesting BMPs 5-132
 - 5.5.1. Rainwater Harvesting 5-133
 - 5.5.1.1. Description 5-133
 - 5.5.1.2. Performance Mechanisms 5-133
 - 5.5.1.3. Applicability 5-133
 - 5.5.1.4. Site Considerations..... 5-133
 - 5.5.1.5. Design Criteria 5-134
 - 5.5.1.6. BMP Sizing 5-136
 - 5.5.1.7. Minimum Construction Requirements 5-140
 - 5.5.1.8. Operations and Maintenance Requirements..... 5-141
 - 5.5.2. Single-Family Residential (SFR) Cisterns..... 5-142
 - 5.5.2.1. Description 5-142
 - 5.5.2.2. Performance Mechanisms 5-142
 - 5.5.2.3. Applicability 5-142
 - 5.5.2.4. Site Considerations..... 5-142
 - 5.5.2.5. Design Criteria 5-142
 - 5.5.2.6. BMP Sizing 5-145
 - 5.5.2.7. Minimum Construction Requirements 5-145
 - 5.5.2.8. Operations and Maintenance Requirements..... 5-145
- 5.6. Alternative Surface BMPs 5-146
 - 5.6.1. Vegetated Roof Systems..... 5-147
 - 5.6.1.1. Description 5-147
 - 5.6.1.2. Performance Mechanisms 5-148
 - 5.6.1.3. Applicability 5-148
 - 5.6.1.4. Site Considerations..... 5-148
 - 5.6.1.5. Design Criteria 5-148
 - 5.6.1.6. BMP Credits..... 5-151
 - 5.6.1.7. Minimum Construction Requirements 5-152
 - 5.6.1.8. Operations and Maintenance Requirements..... 5-152
 - 5.6.2. Permeable Pavement Surfaces 5-153
 - 5.6.2.1. Description 5-153
 - 5.6.2.2. Performance Mechanisms 5-153
 - 5.6.2.3. Applicability 5-153
 - 5.6.2.4. Site Considerations..... 5-153
 - 5.6.2.5. Design Criteria 5-154
 - 5.6.2.6. BMP Sizing 5-158
 - 5.6.2.7. Minimum Construction Requirements 5-161
 - 5.6.2.8. Operations and Maintenance Requirements..... 5-161
- 5.7. Detention BMPs 5-162
 - 5.7.1. Detention Ponds 5-163
 - 5.7.1.1. Description 5-163
 - 5.7.1.2. Performance Mechanisms 5-163
 - 5.7.1.3. Applicability 5-163
 - 5.7.1.4. Site Considerations..... 5-163

- 5.7.1.5. Design Criteria 5-164
- 5.7.1.6. BMP Sizing 5-166
- 5.7.1.7. Minimum Construction Requirements 5-166
- 5.7.1.8. Operations and Maintenance Requirements..... 5-166
- 5.7.2. Detention Pipes 5-167
 - 5.7.2.1. Description 5-167
 - 5.7.2.2. Performance Mechanisms 5-167
 - 5.7.2.3. Applicability 5-167
 - 5.7.2.4. Site Considerations..... 5-167
 - 5.7.2.5. Design Criteria 5-168
 - 5.7.2.6. BMP Sizing 5-171
 - 5.7.2.7. Minimum Construction Requirements 5-173
 - 5.7.2.8. Operations and Maintenance Requirements..... 5-174
- 5.7.3. Detention Vaults/Chambers 5-175
 - 5.7.3.1. Description 5-175
 - 5.7.3.2. Performance Mechanisms 5-175
 - 5.7.3.3. Applicability 5-175
 - 5.7.3.4. Site Considerations..... 5-175
 - 5.7.3.5. Design Criteria 5-176
 - 5.7.3.6. BMP Sizing 5-180
 - 5.7.3.7. Minimum Construction Requirements 5-182
 - 5.7.3.8. Operations and Maintenance Requirements..... 5-183
- 5.7.4. Detention Cisterns 5-184
 - 5.7.4.1. Description 5-184
 - 5.7.4.2. Performance Mechanisms 5-184
 - 5.7.4.3. Applicability 5-184
 - 5.7.4.4. Site Considerations..... 5-184
 - 5.7.4.5. Design Criteria 5-184
 - 5.7.4.6. BMP Sizing 5-186
 - 5.7.4.7. Minimum Construction Requirements 5-188
 - 5.7.4.8. Operations and Maintenance Requirements..... 5-188
- 5.7.5. Other Detention Options 5-189
 - 5.7.5.1. Use of Parking Lots for Additional Detention 5-189
 - 5.7.5.2. Use of Roofs for Detention..... 5-189
- 5.8. Non-Infiltrating BMPs 5-190
 - 5.8.1. Design Requirements for Non-infiltrating BMPs 5-190
 - 5.8.1.1. Site and Design Considerations..... 5-190
 - 5.8.2. Non-Infiltrating Bioretention 5-192
 - 5.8.2.1. Description 5-192
 - 5.8.2.2. Performance Mechanisms 5-192
 - 5.8.2.3. Applicability 5-193
 - 5.8.2.4. Site Considerations..... 5-193
 - 5.8.2.5. Design Criteria 5-194
 - 5.8.2.6. BMP Sizing 5-196
 - 5.8.2.7. Minimum Construction Requirements 5-199
 - 5.8.2.8. Operations and Maintenance Requirements..... 5-199

5.8.3.	Biofiltration Swales	5-200
5.8.3.1.	Description	5-200
5.8.3.2.	Performance Mechanisms	5-200
5.8.3.3.	Applicability	5-200
5.8.3.4.	Site Considerations	5-201
5.8.3.5.	Design Criteria	5-202
5.8.3.6.	BMP Sizing	5-206
5.8.3.7.	Minimum Construction Requirements	5-206
5.8.3.8.	Operations and Maintenance Requirements	5-207
5.8.4.	Filter Strips/Drains	5-208
5.8.4.1.	Description	5-208
5.8.4.2.	Performance Mechanisms	5-208
5.8.4.3.	Applicability	5-208
5.8.4.4.	Site Considerations	5-209
5.8.4.5.	Design Criteria	5-209
5.8.4.6.	BMP Sizing	5-210
5.8.4.7.	Minimum Construction Requirements	5-210
5.8.4.8.	Operations and Maintenance Requirements	5-211
5.8.5.	Sand Filters	5-212
5.8.5.1.	Description	5-212
5.8.5.2.	Performance Mechanisms	5-212
5.8.5.3.	Applicability	5-213
5.8.5.4.	Site Considerations	5-213
5.8.5.5.	Design Criteria	5-214
5.8.5.6.	BMP Sizing	5-217
5.8.5.7.	Minimum Construction Requirements	5-221
5.8.5.8.	Operations and Maintenance Requirements	5-221
5.8.6.	Wet Ponds	5-222
5.8.6.1.	Description	5-222
5.8.6.2.	Performance Mechanisms	5-222
5.8.6.3.	Applicability	5-222
5.8.6.4.	Site Considerations	5-222
5.8.6.5.	Design Criteria	5-223
5.8.6.6.	BMP Sizing	5-226
5.8.6.7.	Minimum Construction Requirements	5-226
5.8.6.8.	Operations and Maintenance Requirements	5-226
5.8.7.	Wet Vaults	5-227
5.8.7.1.	Description	5-227
5.8.7.2.	Performance Mechanisms	5-227
5.8.7.3.	Applicability	5-227
5.8.7.4.	Site Considerations	5-227
5.8.7.5.	Design Criteria	5-228
5.8.7.6.	BMP Sizing	5-233
5.8.7.7.	Minimum Construction Requirements	5-233
5.8.7.8.	Operations and Maintenance Requirements	5-233

5.8.8. Stormwater Treatment Wetlands 5-234

 5.8.8.1. Description 5-234

 5.8.8.2. Performance Mechanisms 5-234

 5.8.8.3. Applicability 5-234

 5.8.8.4. Site Considerations 5-234

 5.8.8.5. Design Criteria 5-234

 5.8.8.6. BMP Sizing 5-235

 5.8.8.7. Minimum Construction Requirements 5-235

 5.8.8.8. Operations and Maintenance Requirements 5-235

5.8.9. Combined Detention and Wet Pool Facilities 5-236

 5.8.9.1. Description 5-236

 5.8.9.2. Performance Mechanisms 5-236

 5.8.9.3. Applicability 5-237

 5.8.9.4. Site Considerations 5-237

 5.8.9.5. Design Criteria 5-237

 5.8.9.6. BMP Sizing 5-237

 5.8.9.7. Minimum Construction Requirements 5-238

 5.8.9.8. Operations and Maintenance Requirements 5-238

5.8.10. Oil/Water Separators 5-239

 5.8.10.1. Description 5-239

 5.8.10.2. Performance Mechanisms 5-239

 5.8.10.3. Applicability 5-239

 5.8.10.4. Site Considerations 5-240

 5.8.10.5. Design Criteria 5-241

 5.8.10.6. BMP Sizing 5-246

 5.8.10.7. Minimum Construction Requirements 5-248

 5.8.10.8. Operations and Maintenance Requirements 5-248

5.8.11. Proprietary and Emerging Water Quality Treatment Technologies 5-249

 5.8.11.1. Description 5-249

 5.8.11.2. Performance Mechanisms 5-250

 5.8.11.3. Applicability and Restrictions 5-250

 5.8.11.4. Site Considerations 5-251

 5.8.11.5. Design Criteria 5-251

 5.8.11.6. BMP Sizing 5-252

 5.8.11.7. Minimum Construction Requirements 5-254

 5.8.11.8. Operations and Maintenance Requirements 5-254

CHAPTER 6 - References 6-1

Tables

Table 3.1.	Minimum Investigation and Testing Requirements for Shallow Infiltration BMPs.	3-10
Table 3.2.	Minimum Investigation and Testing Requirements for Deep Infiltration BMPs.	3-12
Table 3.3.	Minimum Measured Infiltration Rates.....	3-13
Table 3.4.	Flow Control BMPs and Applicable Standards.	3-20
Table 3.5.	Zoning Categorization and TSS Characteristics.	3-21
Table 3.6.	Treatment Trains for Phosphorus Treatment.	3-26
Table 3.7.	Treatment Trains for Enhanced Treatment.	3-27
Table 4.1.	Presettling and Pretreatment Requirements.	4-18
Table 5.1.	Minimum Soil Volume for Trees in Planters.....	5-10
Table 5.2.	Pre-sized On-site Stormwater Management and Flow Control Credits for Retained Trees.	5-12
Table 5.3.	Pre-sized On-site Stormwater Management and Flow Control Credits for Newly Planted Trees.	5-12
Table 5.4.	Pre-Sized Flow Control Credits for Splashblock Downspout Dispersion.	5-21
Table 5.5.	Continuous Modeling Assumptions for Downspout Dispersion.....	5-21
Table 5.6.	Pre-sized Flow Control Credits for Trench Downspout Dispersion.	5-26
Table 5.7.	Continuous Modeling Assumptions for Trench Downspout Dispersion.	5-27
Table 5.8.	Pre-sized Flow Control Credits for Sheet Flow Dispersion.	5-30
Table 5.9.	Continuous Modeling Assumptions for Sheet Flow Dispersion.....	5-31
Table 5.10.	Pre-sized Flow Control Credits for Concentrated Flow Dispersion.....	5-36
Table 5.11.	Continuous Modeling Assumptions for Concentrated Flow Dispersion.	5-36
Table 5.12.	On-site List Sizing for Sidewalk/Trail Compost-Amended Strips.	5-42
Table 5.13.	Continuous Modeling Assumptions for Sidewalk/Trail Compost-Amended Strips.	5-42
Table 5.14.	On-site List Sizing for Infiltration Trenches.	5-51
Table 5.15.	Pre-Sized Sizing Factors and Equations for Infiltration Trenches.	5-53
Table 5.16.	Continuous Modeling Assumptions for Infiltration Trench Facilities.	5-54
Table 5.17.	On-site List Sizing for Drywells.	5-59
Table 5.18.	Pre-Sized Sizing Factors and Equations for Drywells.	5-60
Table 5.19.	Presettling Requirements for Bioretention Facilities in Roadway Projects.	5-70

Table 5.20.	Presettling Requirements for Bioretention Facilities in Non-roadway Projects.	5-71
Table 5.21.	On-site List Sizing for Infiltrating Bioretention with and without Underdrains.	5-81
Table 5.22.	Pre-sized Sizing Factors and Equations for Infiltrating Bioretention Without Underdrains.	5-84
Table 5.23.	Pre-sized Sizing Factors and Equations for Infiltrating Bioretention with Underdrains.	5-86
Table 5.24.	Continuous Modeling Assumptions for Infiltrating Bioretention.	5-87
Table 5.25.	On-site List Sizing for Rain Gardens.	5-96
Table 5.26.	Pre-sized Sizing Factors and Equations for Permeable Pavement Facilities without Underdrains.	5-115
Table 5.27.	Continuous Modeling Assumptions for Permeable Pavement Facility.	5-117
Table 5.28.	Pre-Sized Sizing Factors and Equations for Infiltration Chambers.	5-129
Table 5.29.	Continuous Modeling Assumptions for Infiltration Chambers/Vaults.	5-130
Table 5.30.	Typical Assumptions for Non-Potable Rainwater Demand Calculations.	5-137
Table 5.31.	Typical Assumptions for Potable Rainwater Demand Calculations.	5-139
Table 5.32.	Continuous Modeling Assumptions for Rainwater Harvesting.	5-140
Table 5.33.	On-site List Sizing for SFR Cisterns.	5-145
Table 5.34.	Pre-sized Flow Control Credits for Vegetated Roofs.	5-151
Table 5.35.	Continuous Modeling Assumptions for Vegetated Roof Systems.	5-152
Table 5.36.	Pre-Sized Flow Control Credits for Permeable Pavement Surfaces with and without Check Dams.	5-158
Table 5.37.	Modeling Methods for Permeable Pavement Surfaces.	5-159
Table 5.38.	Continuous Modeling Assumptions for Permeable Pavement Surface.	5-160
Table 5.39.	Pre-sized Sizing Equations for Detention Pipe.	5-172
Table 5.40.	Continuous Modeling Assumptions for Detention Pipe.	5-173
Table 5.41.	Pre-sized Sizing Equations for Detention Vaults.	5-181
Table 5.42.	Continuous Modeling Assumptions for Detention Vaults/Chambers.	5-182
Table 5.43.	Pre-Sized Sizing Factors and Equations for Aboveground Detention Cisterns.	5-187
Table 5.44.	Non-infiltrating BMP Placement in Relation to Detention BMP.	5-191
Table 5.45.	On-site List Sizing for Non-infiltrating Bioretention.	5-197
Table 5.46.	Pre-Sized Sizing Factors and Equations for Non-Infiltrating Bioretention. ...	5-198

Table 5.47.	Basic and Compost Amended Vegetated Filter Strip Design and Sizing Criteria.	5-210
Table 5.48.	Sand Filter Design Parameters.	5-219
Table 5.49.	Sand Filter Area Increments for Various Soil and Cover Types.	5-220
Table 5.50.	Sand Filter Design and Sizing Criteria.	5-221

Figures

Figure 3.1.	Infiltration Feasibility.	3-4
Figure 3.2.	Water Quality Treatment BMP Selection Flow Chart.	3-24
Figure 5.1.	Cross-Section of Soil Amendment.	5-5
Figure 5.2.	Typical Downspout Splashblock Dispersion.	5-18
Figure 5.3.	Typical Downspout Splashblock.	5-19
Figure 5.4.	Typical Downspout Dispersion Trench.	5-24
Figure 5.5.	Typical Sheet Flow Dispersion for Flat and Moderately Sloping Driveways.	5-29
Figure 5.6.	Typical Concentrated Flow Dispersion for Steep Driveways.	5-33
Figure 5.7.	Typical Sidewalk/Trail Compost-Amended Strip BMP.	5-40
Figure 5.8.	Typical Infiltration Trench Receiving Concentrated Flow.	5-50
Figure 5.9.	Typical Infiltration Trench Receiving Sheet Flow.	5-51
Figure 5.10.	Typical Infiltration Drywell.	5-57
Figure 5.11.	Infiltrating Bioretention Facility with Sloped Sides (without Underdrain).	5-64
Figure 5.12.	Infiltrating Bioretention Facility with Vertical Sides (without Underdrain).	5-65
Figure 5.13.	Infiltrating Bioretention Facility with Sloped Sides (with Underdrain).	5-66
Figure 5.14.	Infiltrating Bioretention Facility with Vertical Sides (with Underdrain).	5-67
Figure 5.15.	Stormwater Facility Cleanout for Facility Outside of the Right-of-Way.	5-77
Figure 5.16.	Typical Rain Garden.	5-91
Figure 5.17.	Permeable Pavement Facility.	5-102
Figure 5.18.	Typical Permeable Pavement Facility with Checkdams.	5-103
Figure 5.19.	Permeable Pavement Concrete Edge Treatment.	5-112
Figure 5.20.	Permeable Pavement Geomembrane Edge Treatment.	5-113
Figure 5.21.	Perforated Stub-Out Connection.	5-120
Figure 5.22.	Typical Infiltration Chamber/Vault.	5-127

Figure 5.23. Detention Cistern with Harvesting Capacity for Single-Family Residential Projects Only. 5-143

Figure 5.24. Vegetated Roof System. 5-147

Figure 5.25. Permeable Pavement Surface..... 5-155

Figure 5.26. Typical Detention Pipe..... 5-169

Figure 5.27. Typical Detention Vault..... 5-177

Figure 5.28. Detention Cistern. 5-185

Figure 5.29. Non-infiltrating Bioretention Facility with Sloped Sides..... 5-194

Figure 5.30. Non-infiltrating Bioretention Facility with Vertical Sides. 5-195

Figure 5.31. Biofiltration Swale Plan and Profile..... 5-203

Figure 5.32. Typical Wet Vault. 5-230

Figure 5.33. Typical API (Baffle Type) Separator. 5-242

Figure 5.34. Typical Coalescing Plate Separator. 5-243

CHAPTER 1 – INTRODUCTION

1.1. Purpose of this Volume

Volume 3 (*Project Stormwater Control*) of the City of Seattle Stormwater Manual presents approved methods, requirements, criteria, details, and general guidance for analysis and design of on-site stormwater management, flow control, and water quality treatment pursuant to the Seattle Municipal Code (SMC), Chapter 22.800 through 22.808, the Stormwater Code.

This volume describes and provides technical requirements for selecting, designing, constructing, and maintaining best management practices (BMPs) required by the Stormwater Code. These BMPs are designed to reduce the flow rates or volumes of stormwater runoff, reduce the level of pollutants contained in that runoff, and convey stormwater runoff. In accordance with provisions of the Stormwater Code, additional BMPs beyond those specified in this volume may be required.

1.2. How to Use this Volume

- *Chapter 1* (this chapter) outlines the purpose and content of this volume.
- *Chapter 2* describes the BMP categories.
- *Chapter 3* describes the steps required to select appropriate BMPs after the minimum requirements for on-site stormwater management, flow control, and/or water quality treatment have been determined using *Volume 1*.
- *Chapter 4* provides general design requirements for the following:
 - On-site List Approach, Pre-sized Approach, and Modeling Approach
 - Information pertinent to bypass and conveyance design
 - Presettling and pretreatment requirements
 - Infiltration BMP sizing requirements
- *Chapter 5* provides detailed descriptions and design criteria for BMPs outlined in *Chapter 2*.
- Several appendices also support the information contained in this volume. These appendices include:
 - *Appendix A* – Definitions
 - *Appendix C* – On-site Stormwater Management BMP Infeasibility Criteria
 - *Appendix D* – Subsurface Investigation and Infiltration Testing for Infiltration BMPs
 - *Appendix E* – Additional Design Requirements and Plant Lists
 - *Appendix F* – Hydrologic Analysis and Design

- *Appendix G* – Stormwater Control Operations and Maintenance Requirements
- *Appendix H* – Financial Feasibility Documentation for Vegetated Roofs and Rainwater Harvesting

CHAPTER 2 – BMP CATEGORIES

2.1. Introduction

BMPs are designed to reduce the flow rates or volumes of stormwater runoff, reduce the level of pollutants contained in that runoff, and convey stormwater runoff. BMPs include structural stormwater facilities that provide long-term management of stormwater at developed sites. This volume covers four primary functional categories of stormwater BMPs:

- **On-site stormwater management** includes BMPs designed to reduce runoff volume and pollutants from development using infiltration, dispersion, and retention of stormwater runoff on-site.
- **Flow control BMPs** typically detain, retain, or infiltrate stormwater runoff to control the flow rate, frequency, duration, and sometimes the volume of stormwater runoff leaving the site.
- **Water quality treatment BMPs** remove pollutants through one or more of the following processes: gravity settling of particulate pollutants, filtration, biological processes, and/or adsorption. Target pollutants include:
 - Sand, silt, and other suspended solids
 - Metals such as copper, lead, and zinc
 - Nutrients (e.g., nitrogen and phosphorus)
 - Certain bacteria and viruses
 - Organic contaminants such as petroleum hydrocarbons and pesticides

Water quality treatment in this volume is divided into the following four categories based on the type of pollutant removal provided: basic treatment, enhanced treatment, oil treatment, or phosphorus treatment. Additional details on these treatment categories are provided in *Section 3.5*.

- **Conveyance BMPs** are designed to transport stormwater and can incorporate additional functions such as flow control or water quality treatment.

Note that some BMPs fall under more than one functional category. Determining which BMPs to use for a given application will depend on the applicable Stormwater Code requirements (refer to *Volume 1*), as well as site-specific factors such as available land surface and infiltration capacity of the soils. Distributed BMPs using infiltration, filtration, storage, evapotranspiration, or stormwater reuse are preferred when feasible. Additional requirements for conveyance are described in the Side Sewer Code (SMC, Chapter 21.16) and associated rules.

To help further differentiate among the many functions, applications, and design requirements presented in this volume the following sections describe eight subcategories of BMPs. BMPs are placed in one of the following subcategories based on their primary function:

1. Soil amendment BMP
2. Tree planting and retention
3. Dispersion BMPs
4. Infiltration BMPs
5. Rainwater harvesting BMPs
6. Alternative surface BMPs
7. Detention BMPs
8. Non-infiltrating BMPs

Each section contains a chart identifying the functional categories to which the BMP can be applied (to meet a requirement) and a reference to the section within this volume containing additional information.

2.2. Soil Amendment

Site soils shall meet the minimum quality and depth requirement at project completion (*Section 5.1*). Requirements may be achieved by either retaining and protecting undisturbed soil or restoring the soil (e.g., amending with compost) in disturbed areas.

2.3. Tree Planting and Retention

Tree planting and retention provides interception and evapotranspiration of stormwater.

BMP	On-site	Flow Control	Water Quality	Conveyance	Reference
Tree planting and retention	✓ ^a	✓ ^a			<i>Section 5.2</i>

^a [On-site](#) Performance and Flow Control Standards may be partially achieved.

2.4. Dispersion BMPs

Dispersion is a simple method of stormwater management that uses surface grading to avoid concentrating flows or to disperse flows over vegetation.

The dispersion BMPs described in this volume include:

BMP	On-site	Flow Control	Water Quality	Conveyance	Reference
Full dispersion	✓ ^a	✓ ^a			<i>Section 5.3.2</i>
Splashblock downspout dispersion	✓ ^a	✓ ^a	✓ ^b		<i>Section 5.3.3</i>
Trench downspout dispersion	✓ ^a	✓ ^a	✓ ^b		<i>Section 5.3.4</i>
Sheet flow dispersion	✓ ^a	✓ ^a	✓ ^b		<i>Section 5.3.5</i>
Concentrated flow dispersion	✓ ^a	✓ ^a	✓ ^b		<i>Section 5.3.6</i>
Sidewalk/trail compost-amended strip	✓ ^a				Section 5.3.7

^a [On-site](#) Performance and Flow Control Standards may be partially or completely achieved depending upon underlying soil type.

^b Meets Basic Treatment when additional design requirements for [vegetated](#) filter strips are met (refer to *Section 5.8.4*).

2.5. Infiltration BMPs

Infiltration BMPs are designed to facilitate infiltration of stormwater into the ground. Infiltration is feasible only where sufficiently porous soils are available and where other site constraints are not limiting (e.g., steep slopes, high groundwater), as detailed under *Section 3.2*.

The infiltration BMPs described in this volume include:

BMP	On-site	Flow Control	Water Quality	Conveyance	Reference
Infiltration trenches ^a	✓	✓	✓ ^{b, c}		<i>Section 5.4.2</i>
Drywells ^a	✓	✓			<i>Section 5.4.3</i>
Infiltrating bioretention	✓ ^d	✓ ^d	✓ ^c	✓ ^e	<i>Section 5.4.4</i>
Rain gardens	✓ ^f			✓ ^e	<i>Section 5.4.5</i>
Permeable pavement facilities	✓	✓	✓ ^{c, g}		<i>Section 5.4.6</i>
Perforated stub-out connections	✓ ^f				<i>Section 5.4.7</i>
Infiltration basins	✓ ^h	✓	✓ ^b		<i>Section 5.4.8</i>
Infiltration chambers/vaults	✓ ^h	✓	✓ ^b		<i>Section 5.4.9</i>

^a Only applicable where the site measured infiltration rate is at least 5 inches per hour. PGHS or PGPS may only be directed to infiltration trenches and drywells if the soil suitability criteria for the subgrade soils is met (*Section 4.5.2*).

^b Soil suitability criteria for subgrade soils (refer to *Section 4.5.2*) and applicable drawdown requirements (*Section 4.5.1*) also apply.

^c Refer to Phosphorus treatment train options for infiltration BMPs included in *Section 4.4.3.2*.

^d For infiltrating bioretention with underdrain, [On-site LID](#) Performance and Flow Control standards may be partially or fully achieved depending upon ponding depth, degree of underdrain elevation, infiltration rate, contributing area, and use of orifice control.

^e Infiltrating bioretention and rain gardens may be connected in series, with the overflows of upstream cells directed to downstream cells to provide conveyance.

^f Included in the On-site List, but cannot be used to meet the On-site Performance Standard.

^g Underlying soil shall meet the treatment soil requirements outlined in *Section 4.5.2* or a water quality treatment course shall be included per *Section 5.4.6.5*.

^h Not included in the On-site List, but can be used to meet the On-site Performance Standard.

2.6. Rainwater Harvesting BMPs

Rainwater harvesting BMPs capture and store rainwater for beneficial use. Roof runoff may be routed to cisterns for storage and non-potable uses such as irrigation, toilet flushing, mechanical equipment, and cold water supply to laundry with basic filtration. Additional filtration and disinfection is required for use of collected roof runoff for potable use. Using collected roof runoff for potable use is only allowed for single-family residential (SFR) projects. Design plans for use of harvested rainwater shall be prepared per *Rainwater Harvesting and Connection to Plumbing Fixtures* (Public Health – Seattle & King County 2011).

The rainwater harvesting BMPs described in this volume include:

BMP	On-site	Flow Control	Water Quality	Conveyance	Reference
Rainwater harvesting ^a	✓	✓			Section 5.5.1
Single-family Residential (SFR) cisterns	✓				Section 5.5.2

^a Rainwater harvesting is not approved for pollution-generating surfaces, so the water quality [treatment](#) standard is not applicable.

2.7. Alternative Surface BMPs

Alternative surface BMPs convert a conventional impervious surface to a surface that reduces the amount of stormwater runoff and also provides flow control.

The alternative surface BMPs described in this volume include:

BMP	On-site	Flow Control	Water Quality	Conveyance	Reference
Vegetated roof systems	✓ ^a	✓ ^a			Section 5.6.1
Permeable pavement surfaces ^b	✓	✓ ^{c, d}	✓ ^{c, d, e}		Section 5.6.2

^a On-site Performance and Flow Control Standard may be partially achieved.

^b While similar to permeable pavement “facilities” (refer to [Section 2.5](#)), permeable pavement “surfaces” are designed to function as a permeable land surface and not intended to receive runoff from other surfaces. Therefore, they are not considered infiltration facilities and have less onerous siting and design requirements.

^c Infiltration testing is required to meet flow control and water quality treatment standards (refer to [Appendix D](#)).

^d Standard may be partially or completely achieved depending upon subgrade slope, infiltration rate of subgrade soil, and whether aggregate subbase is laid above or below surrounding grade.

^e Underlying soil shall meet the treatment soil requirements outlined in [Section 4.5.2](#) or a water quality treatment course shall be included per [Section 5.4.6.5, 5.6.6.5](#).

2.8. Detention BMPs

Detention BMPs are designed to collect and temporarily store runoff and then release it over a period of time at a reduced rate. Detention BMPs have an outlet control structure designed to release flows at an attenuated rate to meet flow control standards. Detention BMPs can also be combined with non-infiltrating BMPs to provide [water quality runoff](#) treatment as well as flow control benefits. For a summary of combined detention and wet pool BMPs refer to [Section 2.9](#).

The detention BMPs described in this volume include:

BMP	On-site	Flow Control	Water Quality	Conveyance	Reference
Detention ponds	✓ ^a	✓		✓	Section 5.7.1
Detention pipes	✓ ^a	✓ ^b		✓	Section 5.7.2
Detention vaults/ chambers	✓ ^a	✓ ^b		✓	Section 5.7.3
Detention cisterns	✓	✓ ^b		✓	Section 5.7.4
Other detention options		✓		✓	Section 5.7.5

^a Not included in the On-site List, but can be used to partially achieve the On-site Performance Standard for smaller contributing areas.

^b Standard may be partially or completely achieved depending upon contributing area and minimum orifice size.

2.9. Non-infiltrating BMPs

Non-infiltrating BMPs are designed to remove pollutants contained in stormwater runoff. Some non-infiltrating BMPs may provide low levels of flow control as a secondary benefit, or be combined with detention BMPs to meet flow control requirements.

Subcategories of non-infiltrating BMPs are presented below:

- **Non-infiltrating Bioretention** is similar to infiltrating bioretention (*Section 5.4.4*) except that facilities are designed with an [low-permeability or](#) impervious bottom and sidewalls preventing infiltration to underlying soil. After infiltrating through the bioretention soil, the water is discharged via an underdrain. Non-infiltrating bioretention provides the following functions:

BMP	On-site	Flow Control	Water Quality	Conveyance	Reference
Non-infiltrating Bioretention	✓ ^a	✓ ^a	✓	✓ ^b	<i>Section 5.8.2</i>

^a On-Site Performance and Flow Control Standards may be partially or completely achieved depending upon ponding depth, contributing area, and use of orifice control.

^b Non-infiltrating bioretention may be connected in series, with the overflows of upstream cells directed to downstream cells to provide conveyance.

- **Biofiltration Swales** use vegetation in conjunction with slow and shallow-depth flow for [runoff-water quality](#) treatment. Biofiltration swales may also result in some incidental infiltration to underlying soils. Biofiltration swales described in this volume include:

BMP	On-site	Flow Control	Water Quality ^a	Conveyance	Reference
Basic biofiltration swale			✓	✓	<i>Section 5.8.3</i>
Wet biofiltration swale			✓	✓	<i>Section 5.8.3</i>
Continuous inflow biofiltration swale			✓	✓	<i>Section 5.8.3</i>
Compost-amended biofiltration swale			✓	✓	<i>Section 5.8.3</i>

^a Refer to *Section 3.5.2.2* for more information on Two-BMP Treatment Trains.

- **Filter Strips/Drains** are grassy slopes that receive unconcentrated runoff from adjacent hard surfaces such as a parking lots, driveways, or roadways. Filter strips are graded to maintain sheet flow over their entire width. Compost and other amendments can be incorporated into filter strip designs to provide enhanced treatment. Filter strip/drain BMPs described in this volume include:

BMP	On-site	Flow Control	Water Quality	Conveyance	Reference
Vegetated Basic filter strips			✓ ^a	✓	Section 5.8.4
Compost-amended vegetated filter strips (CAVFS)			✓	✓	Section 5.8.4
Media filter drains (MFD)			✓	✓	Section 5.8.4

^a Refer to Section 3.5.2.2 for more information on Two-BMP Treatment Trains.

- **Sand Filters** pass stormwater through a constructed sand bed. Sand filters can be sized as either basic or large BMPs to meet different water quality objectives. The sand filter BMPs described in this volume include:

BMP	On-site	Flow Control	Water Quality ^a	Conveyance	Reference
Basic and large sand filter basins			✓		Section 5.8.5
Sand filter vaults			✓		Section 5.8.5
Linear sand filters			✓		Section 5.8.5

^a Refer to Section 3.5.2.2 for more information on Two-BMP Treatment Trains.

- **Wet Ponds** are constructed stormwater ponds that retain a permanent pool of water (i.e., a wet pool or dead storage) at least during the wet season. The wet pond BMPs described in this volume include:

BMP	On-site	Flow Control	Water Quality ^a	Conveyance	Reference
Wet ponds – basic and large			✓	✓	Section 5.8.6

^a Refer to Section 3.5.2.2 for more information on Two-BMP Treatment Trains.

- **Wet Vaults** are drainage facilities that contain permanent pools of water that are filled during the initial runoff from a storm event. They are similar to wet ponds, except the facility is constructed below grade in a concrete (or similar) vault. The wet vault BMPs described in this volume include:

BMP	On-site	Flow Control	Water Quality ^a	Conveyance	Reference
Wet vaults			✓	✓	Section 5.8.7

^a Refer to Section 3.5.2.2 for more information on Two-BMP Treatment Trains.

- **Stormwater Treatment Wetlands** are similar to wet ponds, except that they also provide a shallow marsh area to allow the establishment of emergent wetland aquatic plants, which improves pollutant removal. In land development situations, wetlands are usually constructed for two main reasons: to replace or mitigate impacts when natural wetlands are filled or impacted by development (mitigation wetlands) or to treat stormwater runoff (stormwater treatment wetlands). Mitigation wetlands may not be used as stormwater treatment facilities because stormwater treatment

functions are not compatible with normal wetland function. The stormwater treatment wetland BMPs described in this volume include:

BMP	On-site	Flow Control	Water Quality ^a	Conveyance	Reference
Stormwater treatment wetlands			✓	✓	Section 5.8.8

^a Refer to Section 3.5.2.2 for more information on Two-BMP Treatment Trains.

- **Combined Detention and Wet Pool BMPs** provide a combination of [water quality runoff](#) treatment and flow control. If combined, the wet pool portion of the facility can often be incorporated below the detention facility to minimize further loss of development area. Combined detention and wet pool facilities described in this volume include:

BMP	On-site	Flow Control	Water Quality ^a	Conveyance	Reference
Combined detention and wet pond		✓	✓	✓	Section 5.8.9
Combined detention and wet vault		✓ ^b	✓	✓	Section 5.8.9
Combined detention and stormwater wetland		✓	✓	✓	Section 5.8.9

^a Refer to Section 3.5.2.2 for more information on Two-BMP Treatment Trains.

^b Standard may be partially or completely achieved depending upon contributing area and minimum orifice size.

- **Oil/Water Separators** remove floating and dispersed oil using gravity. Oil/water separators described in this volume include:

BMP	On-site	Flow Control	Water Quality	Conveyance	Reference
American Petroleum Institute (API baffle type) oil/water separator			✓		Section 5.8.10
Coalescing plate (CP) oil/water separator			✓		Section 5.8.10

- **Proprietary and Emerging Water Quality Treatment Technologies** consist of technologies that are monitored in the state of Washington through the Technology Assessment Protocol – Ecology (TAPE) process. Upon completion of a monitoring program, the monitoring data is evaluated by Ecology and the technology may be approved for use for pretreatment, basic treatment, enhanced treatment, oil treatment, and/or phosphorus treatment. The following technologies have received General Use Level Designations (GULD) approval from Ecology at the time of publication and is provided as a reference. This list is subject to change. [Note: Some manufacturers have multiple media blends available, not all of which have received GULD approval.](#) Refer to Ecology’s website for a list of approved stormwater technologies, including uses and limitations and technologies currently under review

(<https://ecology.wa.gov/Regulations-Permits/Guidance-technical-assistance/Stormwater-permittee-guidance-resources/Emerging-stormwater-treatment-technologies>
www.ecy.wa.gov/programs/WQ/stormwater/newtech/technologies.html). Refer to *Section 3.5* and *Section 5.8.11* for additional Seattle requirements for sizing proprietary technologies for annual maintenance.

BMP	On-site	Flow Control	Water Quality	Conveyance	Reference
Bay Filter® (Silica sand, perlite, activated alumina media)			✓		<i>Section 5.8.11</i>
Filterra®			✓		<i>Section 5.8.11</i>
FloGard Perk Filter® (Zeolite, perlite, carbon media)			✓		<i>Section 5.8.11</i>
Stormwater Management StormFilter (StormFilter)® (Zeolite, perlite, granular activated carbon media)			✓		<i>Section 5.8.11</i>
Bio Clean (Forterra) MWS-Linear Modular Wetland®			✓		Section 5.8.11

CHAPTER 3 – BMP SELECTION AND SIZING APPROACH

This chapter describes the steps for selecting appropriate stormwater BMPs and is organized into the following five sections:

- *Section 3.1* – Determine Dispersion Feasibility
- *Section 3.2* – Determine Infiltration Feasibility
- *Section 3.3* – BMP Selection for On-site Stormwater Management
- *Section 3.4* – BMP Selection for Flow Control
- *Section 3.5* – BMP Selection for Water Quality Treatment

Since dispersion and infiltration BMPs can serve multiple functions (on-site stormwater management, flow control, or water quality treatment), the process for evaluating feasibility for those types of BMPs is described first. Following the dispersion and infiltration feasibility determination are specific steps related to the minimum requirements (on-site stormwater management, flow control, and/or water quality treatment) that apply to a specific project. To determine which of these three minimum requirements apply to a project, refer to the 7-step approach in *Volume 1, Chapter 2*. Note that more than one, two, or all three of these minimum requirements may apply.

3.1. Determine Dispersion Feasibility

This section provides a two-step procedure for evaluating the feasibility of dispersion for a site (refer to *Section 2.4* for a list of dispersion BMPs).

Each of the following steps is outlined in more detail in the subsequent sections.

- *Step 1* – Evaluate horizontal setbacks and site constraints
- *Step 2* – Evaluate use of dispersion to meet minimum requirements

Step 1: Evaluate horizontal setbacks and site constraints

Assess the following to determine dispersion feasibility for the site:

Horizontal Setbacks

Horizontal setbacks vary depending on the type of dispersion BMP selected. Refer to the following sections for horizontal setback requirements:

- *Section 5.3.3* – Splashblock downspout dispersion
- *Section 5.3.4* – Trench downspout dispersion
- *Section 5.3.5* – Sheet flow dispersion
- [Section 5.3.6](#) – Concentrated flow dispersion
- [Section 5.3.7 – Sidewalk/trail compost-amended strip](#)

Site Constraints

- Steep Slope or Landslide-prone Areas – the dispersion flowpath is not typically permitted within landslide-prone areas or within a setback of 10 times the height of the steep slope to a maximum of 500 feet above a steep slope area.
- Septic Systems and Drain Fields – the dispersion flowpath is not permitted within 10 feet of a proposed or existing septic system or drainfield.
- Contaminated Sites and Landfills – the dispersion flowpath is not permitted within 100 feet of a contaminated site or landfill (active or closed).

Flowpath/Flow Path Requirements

Dispersion BMPs have minimum requirements for a vegetated [flowpath/flow path](#) that can be difficult to achieve in an urban environment. Assess the following:

- Full dispersion – the flowpath shall be directed over a minimum of 100 feet of vegetation.
- Sheet flow dispersion – the flowpath shall be directed over a minimum of 10 feet of vegetation.
- Concentrated flow dispersion, trench downspout dispersion and splashblock downspout dispersion – the flowpath shall be directed over a minimum of 25 feet of vegetation.

Step 2: Evaluate use of dispersion to meet minimum requirements

If dispersion is considered feasible for the site, evaluate the feasibility of individual dispersion BMPs (*Section 5.3*) when selecting BMPs in *Section 3.3* – On-site Stormwater Management, *Section 3.4* (Flow Control), and *Section 3.5* (Water Quality Treatment).

3.2. Determine Infiltration Feasibility

This section provides step-by-step procedures for evaluating the feasibility of infiltration for a site and determining design infiltration rates for facility design. Refer to *Section 2.5* for a list of infiltration BMPs.

Each of the following steps is outlined in more detail in the subsequent sections.

- *Step 1* – Evaluate Infiltration Investigation Map
- *Step 2* – Evaluate horizontal setbacks and site constraints
- *Step 3* – Conduct subsurface investigation and evaluate vertical separation requirements
- *Step 4* – Conduct infiltration testing
- *Step 5* – Determine design infiltration rate
- *Step 6* – Conduct groundwater monitoring, receptor characterization, and mounding analysis, if applicable
- *Step 7* – Evaluate use of infiltration to meet minimum requirements

Step 1: Evaluate Infiltration Investigation Map

- Determine if Seattle has mapped the site as “infiltration investigation not required to meet the on-site stormwater management, flow control, or water quality treatment requirements.” Based on some of the required setbacks and known infiltration restrictions, the City has mapped areas where infiltration is [expected to be limited due to proximity to environmentally critical area \(ECA\), steep slopes, and known landfills](#) ([www.seattle.gov/sdci/codes/codes-we-enforce-\(a-z\)/stormwater-codes](http://www.seattle.gov/sdci/codes/codes-we-enforce-(a-z)/stormwater-codes)www.seattle.gov/dpd/codesrules/codes/stormwater).
- [The map is advisory and does not include all site constraints.](#) If the site is [fully](#) within an area that is mapped, further infiltration investigation to meet the on-site stormwater management, flow control, or water quality treatment requirements is not required. [Continue to s](#)Select other non-infiltrating BMPs in *Section 3.3* (on-site stormwater management), *Section 3.4* (flow control), and *Section 3.5* (water quality treatment) [to meet these requirements.](#) [If the site is partially within a mapped area or not at all within the mapped area, the following steps below shall be used to determine if infiltration is feasible on any portion of the site.](#)

Step 2: Evaluate Horizontal Setbacks and Site Constraints

Evaluate the following criteria related to limitations, horizontal setbacks, and contaminated soil or groundwater. For any portion of the site that falls within an area that limits or restricts infiltration BMPs, further infiltration investigation to meet the on-site stormwater management, flow control, or water quality treatment requirements is not required. An infiltration feasibility flow chart is presented in Figure 3.1.

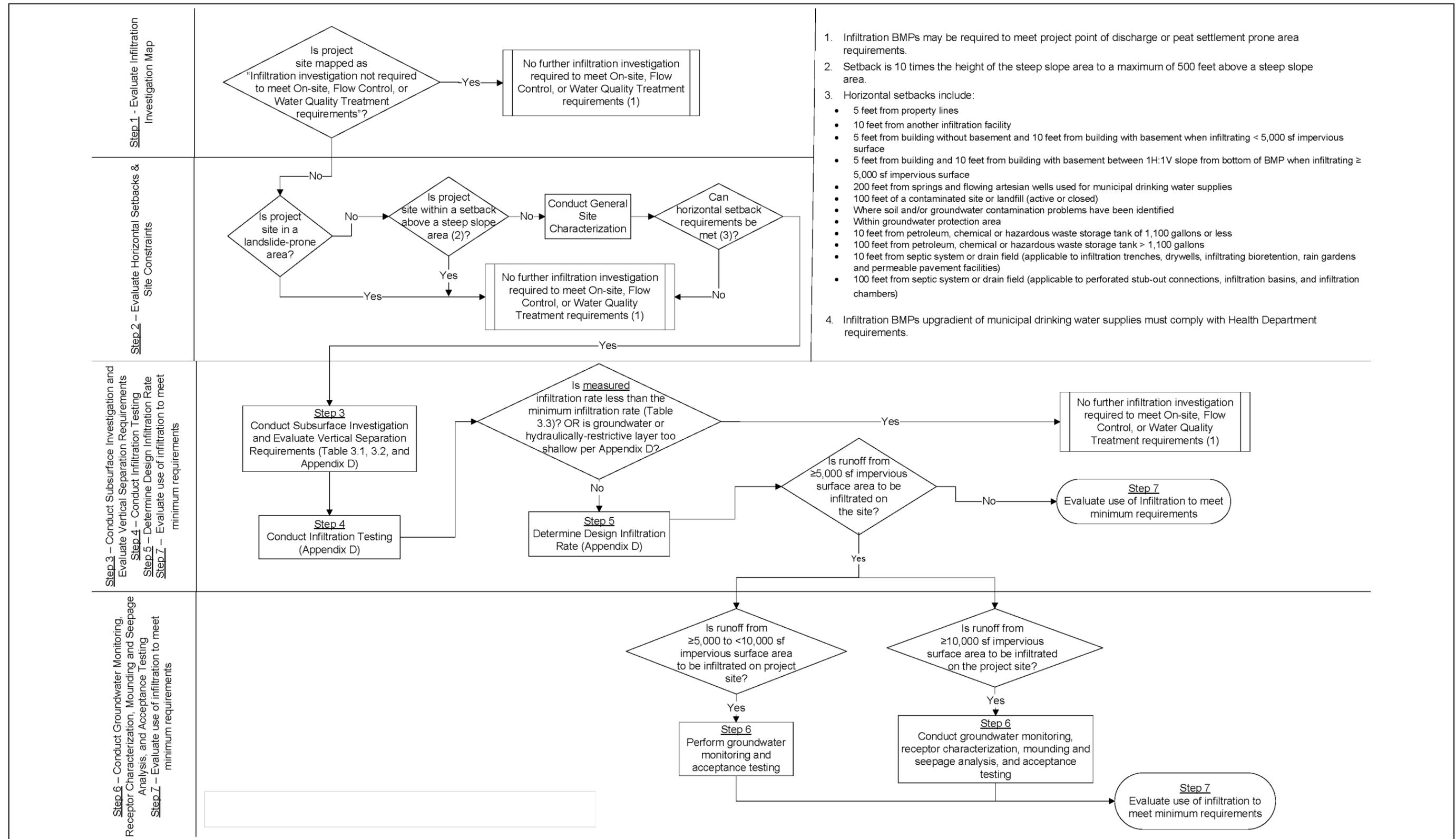


Figure 3.1. Infiltration Feasibility.

Assess the following to determine infiltration feasibility for the site:

Horizontal Setbacks

For infiltrating bioretention and rain gardens, horizontal setbacks are measured from the vertical extent of the cell or basin (e.g., top of the bioretention soil). For infiltration chambers/[vaults](#), horizontal setbacks are measured from the outside bottom of the structure. For all other infiltration BMPs, horizontal setbacks are measured from edge of the aggregate.

Infiltration is not permitted in the following areas:

- Within 5 feet from property lines. As an exception, no setback is required from the property line abutting the public right-of-way.
- Within 10 feet of another infiltration facility.
- Within the following setbacks from onsite and off-site structures:
 - When runoff from less than 5,000 square feet of impervious surface area is infiltrated on the site, the infiltration BMP shall not be within 5 feet from a building without a basement, and/or 10 feet from a building with a basement.
 - When runoff from 5,000 square feet or more of impervious surface area is infiltrated on the site, a building shall not intersect with a 1H:1V slope from the bottom edge of an infiltration BMP. The resulting setback shall be no less than 5 feet from a building without a basement and/or 10 feet from a building with a basement. For setbacks from buildings or structures on adjacent lots, potential buildings or structures should be considered for future build-out conditions.

Note:

- If the development site is located within a peat settlement prone area, infiltration is required in order to achieve no net reduction in surface runoff volume that is infiltrated in the existing condition. Refer to SMC, Section 25.09.110.G. [Guidance and sizing for infiltration facilities provided in SDCI Director's Rule 12-2008 – Infiltration Facilities in Peat Settlement-prone Areas.](#)
- If development is located in an area with no off-site point of discharge ([Section 4.3.2-7](#)) infiltration may be feasible, but the drainage control plan shall be prepared by a civil engineer.
- Deviations from these site constraints and setbacks shall be approved by the Director and require a report stamped and signed by a licensed professional stating that the siting of an infiltration BMP within a setback will not cause an adverse impact to the public or the environment.
- The thresholds above are based on impervious surface area rather than hard surface area to exclude permeable pavement surfaces (non-infiltrating BMPs) from the threshold.

Site Constraints

- Steep Slope or Landslide-prone Areas – infiltration is limited within landslide-prone areas or within a setback of 10 times the height of the steep slope to a maximum of 500 feet above a steep slope area (as defined by the regulations for ECAs [SMC,

Section 25.09.020]). Infiltration within this area may be feasible provided a [detailed](#) slope stability analysis is completed by a licensed engineer or engineering geologist. The analysis shall determine the effects that infiltration would have on the landslide-prone or steep slope area and adjacent properties.

- Septic Systems and Drain Fields – Within 10 feet of proposed or existing septic systems or drain fields (applicable to infiltration trenches, drywells, infiltrating bioretention, rain gardens, and permeable pavement facilities). Other infiltration BMPs (perforated stub-out connections, infiltration basins, and infiltration chambers/[vaults](#)) are not permitted within 100 feet of proposed or existing septic systems or drain fields.
- Drinking Water Supply Wells or Springs – Within 100 feet of drinking water supply wells or springs used for drinking water.
- Groundwater Protection Area – Within a groundwater protection area unless approved by the King County Department of Health and the Director. If approved, water quality treatment per *Section 4.5.2.2 (Imported Soil Requirements for Bioretention Systems)* may be required.
- Contaminated Sites and Landfills:
 - Within 100 feet of a contaminated site or landfill (active or closed). For projects where runoff from 5,000 square feet or more of impervious surface area will be infiltrated on the site, infiltration within 500 feet up-gradient or 100 feet down-gradient of a contaminated site or landfill (active or closed) requires analysis and approval by a licensed hydrogeologist.
 - Where soil and/or groundwater contamination problems have been identified, including, but not limited to, the following:
 - EPA Superfund Program site list (www.epa.gov/superfund/sites/index.htm)
 - EPA Resource Conservation and Recovery Act (RCRA) Program site list (www.epa.gov/epawaste/hazard/correctiveaction/facility/index.htm)
 - EPA mapping tool that plots the locations of Superfund and RCRA-regulated sites (www2.epa.gov/cleanups/cleanups-my-community)
 - Ecology regulated contaminated sites (<https://ecology.wa.gov/Regulations-Permits/Guidance-technical-assistance/Site-Register-lists-and-data>www.ecy.wa.gov/fs)
 - Ecology Toxics Cleanup Program website (<https://ecology.wa.gov/Spills-Cleanup/Contamination-cleanup/Cleanup-sites/Toxic-cleanup-sites>www.ecy.wa.gov/cleanup.html)
- ~~Underground or Above Ground~~ [Petroleum, Chemical, or Liquid Hazardous Waste](#) Storage Tanks:
 - Within 10 feet of an underground or above ground storage tank or connecting underground pipes when the capacity of the tank and pipe system is 1,100 gallons or less. (~~Applicable to tanks used to store petroleum products, chemicals, or liquid hazardous wastes.~~)
 - Within 100 feet of an underground or above ground storage tank or connecting underground pipes when the capacity of the tank and pipe system is greater than 1,100 gallons. (~~Applicable to tanks used to store petroleum products, chemicals, or liquid hazardous wastes.~~)

Step 3: Conduct Subsurface Investigation and Evaluate Vertical Separation Requirements

Note that the applicant may choose to perform Step 3 and Step 4 in either order (i.e., Step 4 – Conduct Infiltration Testing can be done before Step 3 – Conduct Subsurface Investigation and Evaluate Vertical Separation Requirements).

Subsurface Investigations

Subsurface investigations are required to identify subsurface and groundwater conditions that may affect performance of the infiltration facility. Investigations shall be performed at the location of the proposed facility or as close as possible, but no more than 50 feet away. The number and type of subsurface investigations required are provided in Table 3.1 and Table 3.2. Seasonal timing for infiltration testing and groundwater monitoring requirements for infiltration facilities can impact project schedules. Subsurface investigations are preferred to be scheduled during the wet season, between November and March. Larger projects may want to consult with a licensed professional early in project development. Seasonal timing, depth of subsurface investigations, and investigation procedures are provided in *Appendix D*.

This manual includes four types of subsurface investigations:

- Simple subsurface investigation
- Standard subsurface investigation
- Comprehensive subsurface investigation
- Deep infiltration subsurface investigation

Subsurface investigation is required for the entire site or portion(s) of the site that have not been excluded based on information reviewed in Steps 1 and 2.

The type of subsurface investigation required for a project is provided in Table 3.1 and Table 3.2 and varies by the impervious surface area infiltrated on site. Subsurface investigation procedures are provided in *Appendix D*. If the infiltration testing report is required to be prepared by a licensed professional, then the subsurface investigation shall also be prepared by a licensed professional.

Projects shall document the results of the required subsurface investigation and evaluation of vertical separation requirements. The information to be contained in this report is provided in *Appendix D*.

Table 3.2 provides information for deep infiltration BMPs. Deep infiltration BMPs are typically used to direct stormwater past surface soil layers that have lower infiltration rates and into well-draining soil. The depth of the soil layers with lower infiltration rates can vary significantly, so the technique required to reach the well-draining soils will also vary.

Table 3.1. Minimum Investigation and Testing Requirements for Shallow Infiltration BMPs.

Impervious Area Infiltrated on the Site ^{a,h,j}	Step 3		Step 4		Step 6				
	Subsurface Investigation		Infiltration Testing		Groundwater Monitoring		Characterization of Infiltration Receptor	Groundwater Mounding and Seepage Analysis	Acceptance Testing
	Minimum Number	Type	Minimum Number	Type	Minimum Number of Wells	Duration and Frequency			
<2,000 ft ²	1 per facility AND at least 1 per 150 linear feet of a facility ^{c,d}	Simple subsurface investigation	1 per facility AND at least 1 per 150 linear feet of a facility ^{c,d}	Simple Infiltration Test ⁱ	0	NA	No	No	No
≥2,000 to <5,000 ft ²		Standard subsurface investigation		Simple Infiltration Test ⁱ or Small PIT; if ≥2,000 ft ² of the site infiltration will occur within a single facility, ^e the Small PIT ^f method is required	0	NA	No	No	No
≥5,000 to <10,000 ft ²		Comprehensive subsurface investigation ^h	1 per facility AND at least 1 per 150 linear feet of a facility ^{c,d}	Small PIT ^f	1	Monthly for at least 1 wet season; monthly for at least 1 year if within 200 feet of a designated receiving water ^b	No	No	Yes
≥10,000 ft ² to <1 acre		Small or Large PIT ^{f,k}	Comprehensive subsurface investigation ^h	Small PIT ^f	3	Monthly for at least 1 year ^b	Yes, for infiltration basins	Yes ^g	Yes
≥1 acre									

Note: Deviations from the minimum requirements in this table, when recommended and documented by the licensed professional, may be approved by the Director. If the licensed professional determines continuity of subsurface materials based on site investigations or if acceptance testing will be done during construction then fewer tests may be approved. Designer shall be prepared to make allowances to the design during construction if site conditions differ than assumed for the design or if the acceptance test during construction determines that the infiltration rate is lower than assumed for the design.

^a Site is defined for SFR and Parcel projects as the project area; for Trail, Sidewalk or Roadway projects, it is defined by one intersection to the other and blocks may vary in length.

^b If the project site is within 200 feet of tidal waters, groundwater data capturing low/high tide fluctuation for one calendar year shall be collected to determine if groundwater at the project is influenced by tidal fluctuations. Groundwater monitoring is not required if available groundwater elevation data within 50 feet of the proposed facility shows the highest

- measured groundwater level to be at least 10 feet below the bottom of the proposed infiltration facility or if the initial groundwater measurement is more than 15 feet below the bottom of the proposed infiltration facility.
- c For bioretention or rain gardens, a facility refers to either a single cell, or a series of cells connected in series, with the overflows of upstream cells directed to downstream cells to provide additional flow control and/or treatment and conveyance.
 - d Preferably, the investigation is conducted at the location of the proposed infiltration facility, but it ~~shall~~ be within 50 feet of the facility location.
 - e A single facility is defined as a facility that has at least a 10 foot separation distance from another infiltration facility, measured from the closest vertical extent of maximum ponding before overflow, or for bioretention and rain gardens, the maximum vertical extent of the top of the bioretention soil or compost amended soil.
 - f The investigation and infiltration testing report shall be prepared by a licensed professional.
 - g Groundwater mounding and seepage analysis is required where the depth to the seasonal high groundwater elevation or hydraulically-restrictive material is less than 15 feet below the bottom of the proposed infiltration facility.
 - h ~~For projects where runoff from 5,000 square feet or more of impervious surface area will be infiltrated on the site, infiltration within 500 feet up-gradient or 100 feet down-gradient of a contaminated site or landfill (active or closed) requires analysis and approval by a licensed hydrogeologist. For projects with infiltration facilities within 500 feet up-gradient or 100 feet down-gradient of a contaminated site or landfill (active or closed), analysis and approval by a licensed hydrogeologist is required if runoff from 5,000 square feet or more of impervious surface area will be infiltrated on the site.~~
 - i The Simple Infiltration Test is not allowed for projects with no off-site point of discharge (*Section 4.3.2-4*). These projects shall use a Small PIT.
 - j Permeable pavement not included in the impervious area total.
 - k A small scale PIT may be substituted if the site has a high infiltration rate (>4 in/hr), making a large scale PIT difficult, and the site geotechnical investigations suggest uniform subsurface characteristics.

Table 3.2. Minimum Investigation and Testing Requirements for Deep Infiltration BMPs.

Impervious Area Infiltrated on the Site ^{a,e}	Step 3		Step 4		Step 6				
	Subsurface Investigations		Infiltration Tests		Groundwater Monitoring		Characterization of Infiltration Receptor	Groundwater Mounding and Seepage Analysis	Acceptance Testing
	Minimum Number and Location	Type	Minimum Number and Location	Type	Minimum Number of Wells	Duration and Frequency			
<10,000 ft ²	One at every deep infiltration location	Deep infiltration subsurface investigation ^d	One at every deep infiltration location	Deep Infiltration Test	3	Monthly for at least 1 wet season; monthly for at least 1 year if within 200 feet of a designated receiving water ^b	No	No	Yes
≥10,000 ft ²						Monthly for at least 1 year ^b	Yes	Yes ^c	Yes

Note: Deviations from the minimum requirements in this table, when recommended and documented by the licensed professional, may be approved by the Director. If the licensed professional determines continuity of subsurface materials based on site investigations or if acceptance testing will be done during construction then fewer tests may be approved. Designer shall be prepared to make allowances to the design during construction if site conditions differ than assumed for the design or if the acceptance test during construction determines that the infiltration rate is lower than assumed for the design.

- ^a Site is defined for SFR and Parcel projects as the project area; for Trail, Sidewalk or Roadway projects, it is defined by one intersection to the other and blocks may vary in length.
- ^b If the project site is within 200 feet of tidal waters, groundwater data capturing low/high tide fluctuation for one calendar year shall be collected to determine if groundwater at the project is influenced by tidal fluctuations. Groundwater monitoring is not required if available groundwater elevation data within 50 feet of the proposed facility shows the highest measured groundwater level to be at least 10 feet below the bottom of the proposed facility.
- ^c Groundwater mounding and seepage analysis is required where the depth to the seasonal high groundwater elevation or hydraulically-restrictive material is less than 15 feet below the bottom of the proposed infiltration facility.
- ^d For projects where runoff from 5,000 square feet or more of impervious surface area will be infiltrated on the site, infiltration within 500 feet up-gradient or 100 feet down-gradient of a contaminated site or landfill (active or closed) requires analysis and approval by a licensed hydrogeologist.
- ^e [Permeable pavement not included in the impervious area total.](#)

Vertical Separation Requirements

Vertical separation requirements shall be evaluated when performing a subsurface investigation. Infiltration BMPs require a minimum vertical separation from the lowest elevation of the facility to the underlying groundwater table or hydraulically-restrictive material (*Appendix D, Section D-2.2.4*). The vertical separation requirements for shallow infiltration BMPs depend upon the type of subsurface investigation required and the seasonal timing of the geotechnical exploration conducted to evaluate clearances.

Step 4: Conduct Infiltration Testing

This manual includes four methods of field infiltration testing to determine the measured infiltration rate:

- Simple Test (Small-scale infiltration test)
- Small Pilot Infiltration Test (PIT)
- Large PIT
- Deep Infiltration Test

The type of infiltration test required for a project is provided in Table 3.1 and Table 3.2 and varies by the impervious surface area routed to infiltration BMPs on a site. Infiltration testing procedures are provided in *Appendix D*. The Small PIT, Large PIT, and Deep Infiltration Test reports shall be prepared by a licensed professional.

The minimum allowed infiltration rates are provided in Table 3.3.

Table 3.3. Minimum Measured Infiltration Rates.

Infiltration BMP	Minimum Measured Infiltration Rate for On-site List Approach (in/hr)	Minimum Allowed Measured Infiltration Rate for Meeting Flow Control, Water Quality Treatment, and On-site Performance Standards (in/hr)
Infiltration Trenches	5	5
Drywells	5	5
Infiltrating Bioretention without underdrain	0.6	0.6
Infiltrating Bioretention with underdrain	0.3	No minimum
Rain Gardens	0.3	Not applicable (only for On-site List Approach)
Permeable Pavement Facility	0.3	0.3 ^b
Permeable Pavement Surface	0.3 ^a	No minimum
Sidewalk/Trail Compost-Amended Strip	0.3^a	No minimum
Perforated Stub-out Connections	0.3	Not applicable (only for On-site List Approach)
Infiltration Basins	Not applicable	0.6
Infiltration Chambers/Vaults	Not applicable	0.6

^a Infiltration testing not required, only necessary to prove infeasibility.

^b No minimum infiltration rate if underdrain is installed.

Step 5: Determine Design Infiltration Rate

- The measured infiltration rate determined in Step 4 shall be reduced using correction factors to account for site variability and number of tests conducted, uncertainty of the test method, and potential for long-term clogging due to siltation and bio-buildup. The corrected infiltration rate is considered the long-term or design infiltration rate and is used for all BMP sizing calculations. Correction factors and methodology is provided in *Appendix D, Section D-4*.

Step 6: Conduct Groundwater Monitoring, Receptor Characterization, Mounding and Seepage Analysis, and Acceptance Testing (as applicable)

Groundwater Monitoring

Groundwater monitoring is required when runoff from more than 5,000 square feet of impervious surface area is infiltrated on the site (refer to Table 3.1). If the results of this groundwater monitoring indicate that adverse conditions could occur, as determined by a licensed professional, the infiltration facility shall not be built. Groundwater elevation data shall be used to evaluate the bottom of the facility against the vertical separation requirements in *Appendix D, Section D-2.2.4* to determine infiltration feasibility.

Characterization of the Infiltration Receptor

For projects proposing an infiltration basin or deep infiltration BMPs to infiltrate runoff from more than 10,000 square feet of impervious surface area, the infiltration receptor (unsaturated and saturated soil receiving the stormwater) shall be characterized (refer to Table 3.1 and *Appendix D*). If the results of this characterization indicate that adverse conditions could occur, as determined by a licensed professional, the infiltration facility shall not be built. Refer to *Appendix D, Section D-6*.

Groundwater Mounding and Seepage Analysis

A mounding analysis shall be required for projects that will be infiltrating 10,000 square feet or more of impervious surface area on the site and where the depth to the seasonal high groundwater elevation or hydraulically-restrictive material is less than 15 feet below the bottom of the proposed BMP. If the results of the mounding analysis indicate that adverse conditions could occur, as determined by a licensed professional, the infiltration facility shall not be built. Refer to *Appendix D, Section D-7*.

Acceptance Testing

Thresholds for acceptance testing are summarized in Table 3.1 and Table 3.2. [Acceptance testing requirements are provided in Appendix D, Section D-8](#). In general, acceptance testing shall be performed for infiltration BMPs receiving runoff from greater than 5,000 square feet of impervious surface area; however acceptance testing may also be required for infiltration BMPs receiving runoff from a smaller contributing area. As an exception, all permeable pavement facilities and surfaces are required to perform acceptance testing per *Section 5.4.6.5*.

At a minimum, the acceptance testing shall demonstrate that the infiltration facility performs at the design infiltration rate.

Acceptance testing of deep infiltration BMPs shall consist of the infiltration testing procedures for deep infiltration wells described in *Appendix D, Section D-4*.

Step 7: Evaluate use of infiltration to meet minimum requirements

- If infiltration is considered feasible, evaluate the feasibility of infiltration BMPs when selecting BMPs in *Section 3.3* (on-site stormwater management), *Section 3.4* (flow control), and *Section 3.5* (water quality treatment).

3.3. BMP Selection for On-site Stormwater Management

If the on-site stormwater management requirement is triggered, it can be met by using the On-Site List Approach or the On-site Performance Standard. The procedures for selecting BMPs under these options are provided in the following sections. Selection of BMPs shall build upon site assessment and planning information described in *Volume 1, Chapter 7.2* and *Volume 3, Sections 3.1 and 3.2*. Flow control and water quality treatment requirements may also apply (refer to *Sections 3.4 and 3.5*).

3.3.1. On-site List Approach

If the on-site stormwater management requirement is triggered (per *Volume 1, Section 4.3.2*) and the On-site List Approach is selected as the method for compliance, follow the steps presented below to select the appropriate BMP(s) for a given project. [The City has also prepared a spreadsheet tool \(On-site Stormwater Management – List Approach Calculator\) to help users document and implement the On-Site List Approach. Refer to SDCI's Stormwater Code web page to download the latest version of the spreadsheet tool: \[www.seattle.gov/sdci/codes/codes-we-enforce-\\(a-z\\)/stormwater-code\]\(http://www.seattle.gov/sdci/codes/codes-we-enforce-\(a-z\)/stormwater-code\)](#)

Step 1: Determine if Dispersion and Infiltration are Feasible

Refer to *Section 3.1* and *Section 3.2*.

Step 2: Calculate Areas by Surface Type

For each project type, divide the project area into hard surface areas with distinct drainage pathways ([e.g., downspouts, collection points, and grading toward leaving a project site](#)) and conduct a BMP evaluation for each surface sub area.

Step 3: Refer to Applicable On-site List(s)

Identify the On-site List(s) in [SMC, Section 22.805.070](#) or *Volume 1, Section 5.2* for the project type(s) that apply to the project. The On-site Lists provide On-site BMPs prioritized by category, with Category 1 comprising the first priority BMPs.

Step 4: Evaluate BMPs by Category

For each hard surface area type (i.e., roof or non-roof [ground-related surface]), evaluate the On-site BMP(s) as described in Steps 5 through 7 below. Evaluate the feasibility of all On-site BMPs in the first category before moving on to the next category. Note that the On-site List Approach assumes each hard surface area may be evaluated separately. Proposals to use BMPs in series (i.e., multiple bioretention cells) may require modeling using the On-site Performance Standard. Refer to the *General Design Requirements* in *Chapter 4* for additional requirements that may affect the design and placement of BMPs on the site.

Step 5: Evaluate Feasibility of Category 1 BMPs

Determine feasibility of the BMP(s) in Category 1. The BMP is considered infeasible if one of the following applies:

- The BMP is considered infeasible per the “Infeasibility Criteria” provided for the BMP in *Appendix C*, which includes applicable Design Criteria and Site Considerations provided for the BMP in *Chapter 5*.
- Competing needs (e.g., historic preservation laws, health and safety standards) as provided in SMC, Section 22.805.070 conflict with the BMP.
- The BMP size as detailed in the sizing for the On-site List Approach in *Chapter 5* cannot be met.

Note: Some BMPs that are not sized can meet the requirements for a sub-area. Refer to *Credit for On-site List Approach* in *Chapter 5*.

Step 6: Select Category 1 BMP(s)

If any of the Category 1 BMPs are feasible for a surface (or surface “sub area”), then a Category 1 BMP shall be used to manage runoff for a given hard surface area (or surface sub area). [Any of the feasible BMPs within the category can be used.](#) Size the BMPs for the contributing area per the On-site List Approach sizing requirements in *Chapter 5*.

Step 7: Document Infeasibility of Category 1 BMPs (if applicable)

If all the Category 1 BMPs are deemed infeasible, infeasibility shall be documented. The applicant shall provide a completed On-site List Requirement Infeasibility Criteria Checklist (refer to the tables provided in *Appendix C*) or a narrative description and rationale with substantial evidence sufficient to explain and justify the applicant’s conclusion that the On-site BMPs are infeasible.

If there are remaining unmanaged hard surfaces, proceed to Step 8. If all hard surfaces are managed, the BMP selection process for the On-site List Approach is complete.

Step 8: Evaluate/Select Category 2 BMPs

If there are remaining unmanaged hard surfaces, evaluate the On-site BMPs in Category 2 using the same approach described in Steps 5 through 7.

If all hard surfaces are managed, the BMP selection process for the On-site List Approach is complete.

Step 9: Evaluate/Select Category 3 BMPs

If there are remaining unmanaged hard surfaces, evaluate the On-site BMPs in Category 3 using the same approach described in Steps 5 through 7.

If all hard surfaces are managed, the BMP selection process for the On-site List Approach is complete.

Step 10: Evaluate/Select Category 4 BMPs (SFR and Parcel-based projects only)

If there are remaining unmanaged hard surfaces, evaluate the On-site BMPs in Category 4 using the same approach described in Steps 5 through 7.

If all hard surfaces are managed, the BMP selection process for the On-site List Approach is complete.

Step 11: Evaluate/Select Category 5 BMPs (SFR and Parcel-based projects only)

If there are remaining unmanaged hard surfaces, evaluate the On-site BMPs in Category 5 using the same approach described in Steps 5 through 7.

If all hard surfaces are managed, the BMP selection process for the On-site List Approach is complete. If none of the BMPs in the appropriate categories on the On-site List are feasible, then no further evaluation is required for that surface and the BMP selection process for the On-site List Approach is considered to be complete (refer to SMC, Section 22.805.070).

3.3.2. On-site Performance Standard

If the on-site stormwater management requirement is triggered and the On-site Performance Standard is selected as the method for compliance, follow the steps presented below to select the appropriate BMP(s) for a given project.

Step 1: Determine if Dispersion and Infiltration are Feasible

Refer to *Section 3.1* and *Section 3.2*.

Step 2: Select BMP(s)

Select a BMP, or multiple BMPs, to meet the On-Site Performance Standard. Refer to the *General Design Requirements* in *Chapter 4* for additional requirements that may affect the design and placement of BMPs on the site. Refer to *Chapter 5* of this volume for BMP applicability, site suitability, and design criteria. Note that in order to meet the On-Site Performance Standard, the selected BMP(s) will most likely need to include infiltration.

Step 3: Use Modeling Approach for BMP design

The Modeling Approach for each BMP design shall be applied. Refer to *Section 4.1.3* and *Appendix F, Section F-4* for detailed information on modeling requirements/guidelines.

3.4. BMP Selection for Flow Control

If the flow control minimum requirement is triggered, follow the steps presented below to select the appropriate flow control BMPs for a given project. All projects shall use On-site BMPs to the maximum extent feasible to meet Flow Control Minimum Requirements per SMC 22.805.080.B. In addition, On-site Stormwater Management and Water Quality Treatment Requirements may apply (refer to *Sections 3.3 and 3.5*). [The City has also prepared a spreadsheet tool \(Pre-Sized Flow Control Calculator\) to help users document and implement the flow control BMP selection process for small sites \(<10,000 square feet of new and replaced hard surface area\). Refer to SDCI's Stormwater Code web page to download the latest version of the spreadsheet tool: \[www.seattle.gov/sdci/codes/codes-we-enforce-\\(a-z\\)/stormwater-code\]\(http://www.seattle.gov/sdci/codes/codes-we-enforce-\(a-z\)/stormwater-code\)](#)

Step 1: Determine if Dispersion and Infiltration are Feasible

Refer to *Section 3.1* and *Section 3.2*.

Step 2: Determine if Water Quality Treatment requirements also apply

If the minimum requirements for water quality treatment also apply to a project, look for opportunities to use flow control BMPs that can also meet water quality treatment requirements (refer to *Chapter 2* and *Chapter 5* in this volume).

Step 3: Select Flow Control BMP(s)

Select a flow control BMP, or multiple BMPs (*refer to Chapter 2*). Refer to the *General Design Requirements* in *Chapter 4* for additional requirements that may affect the design and placement of BMPs on the site. Refer to *Chapter 5* of this volume for applicability, site suitability, and design criteria. Select flow control BMPs that best integrate with on-site stormwater management to the maximum extent feasible.

Step 4: Use Pre-sized or Modeling Approach for BMP Design

For projects with 10,000 square feet or more new and replaced hard surface area, use the Modeling Approach for BMP design (Step 4b). For sites with less than 10,000 square feet of new and replaced hard surface area, either the Pre-Sized Approach or Modeling Approach for BMP design may be used (Steps 4a or 4b).

Step 4a: Use Pre-sized Approach for BMP design

Apply the Pre-sized Approach for BMP design (refer to *Section 4.1.2*). The designer may also choose to use the Modeling Approach (refer to Step 4b).

Step 4b: Use Modeling Approach for BMP design

Apply the Modeling Approach for BMP design. Refer to *Section 4.1.3* and *Appendix F* for modeling guidelines.

Table 3.4 summarizes flow control BMPs that can be used to meet Pre-developed Forested, Pre-developed Pasture, and/or Peak Control Standards. Refer to each BMP section in *Chapter 5* for more specific information on modeling to meet flow control standards.

Table 3.4. Flow Control BMPs and Applicable Standards.

Flow Control BMP	Applicable Flow Control Standards			Section Reference
	Forested	Pasture	Peak	
Tree Planting and Retention	A	A	A	Section 5.2
Full Dispersion	B	B	✓	Section 5.3.2
Splashblock Downspout Dispersion	B	B	✓	Section 5.3.3
Trench Downspout Dispersion	B	B	B	Section 5.3.4
Sheet Flow Dispersion	B	B	B	Section 5.3.5
Concentrated Flow Dispersion	B	B	B	Section 5.3.6
Infiltration Trenches	B	B	B	Section 5.4.2
Drywells	B	B	B	Section 5.4.3
Infiltrating Bioretention without underdrain	✓	✓	✓	Section 5.4.4
Infiltrating Bioretention with underdrain	C	C	C	Section 5.4.4
Permeable Pavement Facilities	✓	✓	✓	Section 5.4.6
Infiltration Basins	✓	✓	✓	Section 5.4.8
Infiltration Chambers/Vaults	✓	✓	✓	Section 5.4.9
Rainwater Harvesting	✓	✓	✓	Section 5.5.1
Vegetated Roof Systems	A	A	A	Section 5.6.1
Permeable Pavement Surfaces	D	D	D	Section 5.6.2
Detention Ponds	✓	✓	✓	Section 5.7.1
Detention Pipes	E	E	E	Section 5.7.2
Detention Vaults/Chambers	E	E	E	Section 5.7.3
Detention Cisterns	E	E	✓	Section 5.7.4
Non-infiltrating Bioretention	C	C	C	Section 5.8.2
Combined Detention and Wet Pond	✓	✓	✓	Section 5.8.9
Combined Detention and Wet Vault	E	E	E	Section 5.8.9
Combined Detention and Stormwater Wetland	✓	✓	✓	Section 5.8.9

✓ – Standard achieved.

A – Standard may be partially achieved.

B – Standard may be partially or completely achieved depending upon underlying soil type.

C – Standard may be partially or completely achieved depending upon ponding depth, degree of underdrain elevation (if applicable), infiltration rate (if applicable), contributing area, and use of orifice control.

D – Standard may be partially or completely achieved depending upon subgrade slope, infiltration rate of subgrade soil, and whether aggregate subbase is laid above or below surrounding grade.

E – Standard may be partially or completely achieved depending upon contributing area and minimum orifice size.

3.5. BMP Selection for Water Quality Treatment

If the Water Quality Treatment Minimum Requirement is triggered (refer to *Volume 1, Section 5.4.2*), this section describes the step-by-step process for selecting the type of treatment BMPs that apply to individual projects, as well as the physical site features that can impact water quality treatment BMP selection. All projects shall use On-site BMPs to the maximum extent feasible to meet Water Quality Treatment Minimum Requirements per SMC 22.805.090.B. Refer to *Section 3.5.2* for additional detail on BMP selection for the following water quality treatment performance goals – oil control, phosphorus, enhanced, and basic.

3.5.1. Selection Steps

If one or more Water Quality Treatment Minimum Requirements are triggered, designers should follow the steps presented below and in Figure 3.2 to select the appropriate water quality treatment BMPs for a given project. In addition, On-site Stormwater Management and Flow Control Requirements may apply (refer to *Sections 3.3 and 3.4*).

Step 1: Determine the Associated Pollutants of Concern

- Determine the pollutants of concern and potential loads through an analysis of the proposed use(s) of the project site. Identify areas of the project site associated with the production of metals, organic compounds, and other toxic wastes that can be entrained in precipitation and runoff (through air pollution or deposition on the ground surface).
- Determine the potential for high sediment input. Particularly, sites with a large amount of fine-grained particles, such as silt and sand, can clog infiltration and filtration BMPs. Pretreatment may be required to remove total suspended solids (TSS) for infiltration and filtration BMPs (refer to *Section 4.4*). High TSS loads can also hinder the function of oil/water separators, especially coalescing plate (CP) separator systems, if sediment clogs the coalescing plates.
- Mean, or upper confidence limit, TSS loadings from Table 3.5 may be assumed when there is an absence of more site specific information.

Table 3.5. Zoning Categorization and TSS Characteristics.

Zoning Categorization	Total Suspended Solids Concentration (mg/L) ^a		
	LCL	UCL	Mean
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Parcels zoned as SFR or MFR • Non-arterial streets adjacent to properties zoned as SFR or MFR 	44	93	69
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Parcels zoned as neighborhood/commercial, downtown, major institutions, master planned community, or residential/commercial • Arterial streets with adjacent property zoned as neighborhood/commercial, downtown, major institutions, master planned community, or residential/commercial 	58	106	82

Table 3.5 (continued). Zoning Categorization and TSS Characteristics.

Zoning Categorization	Total Suspended Solids Concentration (mg/L) ^a		
	LCL	UCL	Mean
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Parcels zoned as manufacturing/industrial • Non-arterial or arterial streets with adjacent property zoned as manufacturing/industrial 	58	177	118

^a Reference: SPU 2015.

LCL = lower confidence limit

UCL = upper confidence limit

SFR = Single-family Residential

MFR = [MultifamilyMulti-Family](#) Residential

Step 2: Select an Oil Control BMP if Oil Control is Required

If oil control is required (refer to *Volume 1, Section 5.4.2.1*), select an Oil Control BMP using the list in Figure 3.2 and the information in *Section 3.5.2.1*. Refer to the *General Design Requirements* in *Chapter 4* for additional requirements that may affect the design and placement of BMPs on the site (e.g., bypass). Refer to *Section 5.8.9* of this volume for design information.

Step 3: Select a Phosphorus Treatment BMP if Phosphorus Treatment is Required

At the time this manual was developed, there were no established phosphorus-specific treatment requirements for project-scale treatment BMPs in Seattle. However, if phosphorus treatment is required (refer to *Volume 1, Section 5.4.2.2*), select a Phosphorus Treatment BMP using the list in Figure 3.2 and the information in *Section 3.5.2.2* of this volume. If a project site is also subject to the enhanced treatment requirement, select a BMP or treatment train that is listed as providing both Enhanced Treatment and Phosphorus Treatment. Refer to the *General Design Requirements* in *Chapter 4* for additional requirements that may affect the design and placement of BMPs on the site (e.g., bypass). Refer to *Chapter 5* of this volume for BMP applicability, site considerations, and design criteria. Select water quality treatment BMPs that best integrate with the on-site stormwater management to the maximum extent feasible.

Step 4: Select an Enhanced Treatment BMP if Enhanced Treatment is Required

If enhanced treatment is required (refer to *Volume 1, Section 5.4.2.3*), select an Enhanced Treatment BMP using the list in Figure 3.2 and the information in *Section 3.5.2.3* of this volume. Determine whether infiltration is feasible (refer to *Section 3.2*). If infiltration is feasible, select an infiltration BMP (refer to Figure 3.2). Determine whether presettling or pretreatment is required (refer to *Section 4.4*). Select water quality treatment BMPs that best integrate with the on-site stormwater management to the maximum extent feasible.

If a project site is also subject to the phosphorus treatment requirement, select a BMP or treatment train that is listed as providing both Enhanced Treatment and Phosphorus Treatment. Refer to the *General Design Requirements* in *Chapter 4* for additional

requirements that may affect the design and placement of BMPs on the site. Refer to *Chapter 5* of this volume for BMP applicability, site considerations, and design criteria.

Step 5: Select a Basic Treatment BMP

If the Water Quality Treatment Minimum Requirement is triggered (refer to *Volume 1, Chapters 2 and 5*) and the criteria for Phosphorus Treatment and Enhanced Treatment do not apply (refer to *Volume 1, Section 5.4.2.2 and 5.4.2.3*), then only basic treatment is required. Determine whether infiltration is feasible (refer to *Section 3.2*). If infiltration is feasible, select an infiltration BMP (refer to *Figure 3.2*). Determine whether presettling or pretreatment is required (refer to *Section 4.4*). Select treatment BMPs that best integrate with the on-site stormwater management to the maximum extent feasible.

Select a Basic Treatment BMP using the list in *Figure 3.2* and the information in *Section 3.3.2.4*. Refer to the General Design Requirements in *Chapter 4* for additional requirements that may affect the design and placement of BMPs on the site. Refer to *Chapter 5* of this volume for BMP applicability, site considerations, and design criteria.

Step 6: Use Pre-sized or Modeling Sizing Approach for BMP Design

For projects with 10,000 square feet or more new and replaced hard surface area, use the Modeling Approach for BMP design (Step 6b). For sites with less than 10,000 square feet new and replaced hard surface area, use either the Pre-sized Approach or Modeling Approach for BMP design (Steps 6a or 6b).

Step 6a: Use Pre-sized Approach for BMP design

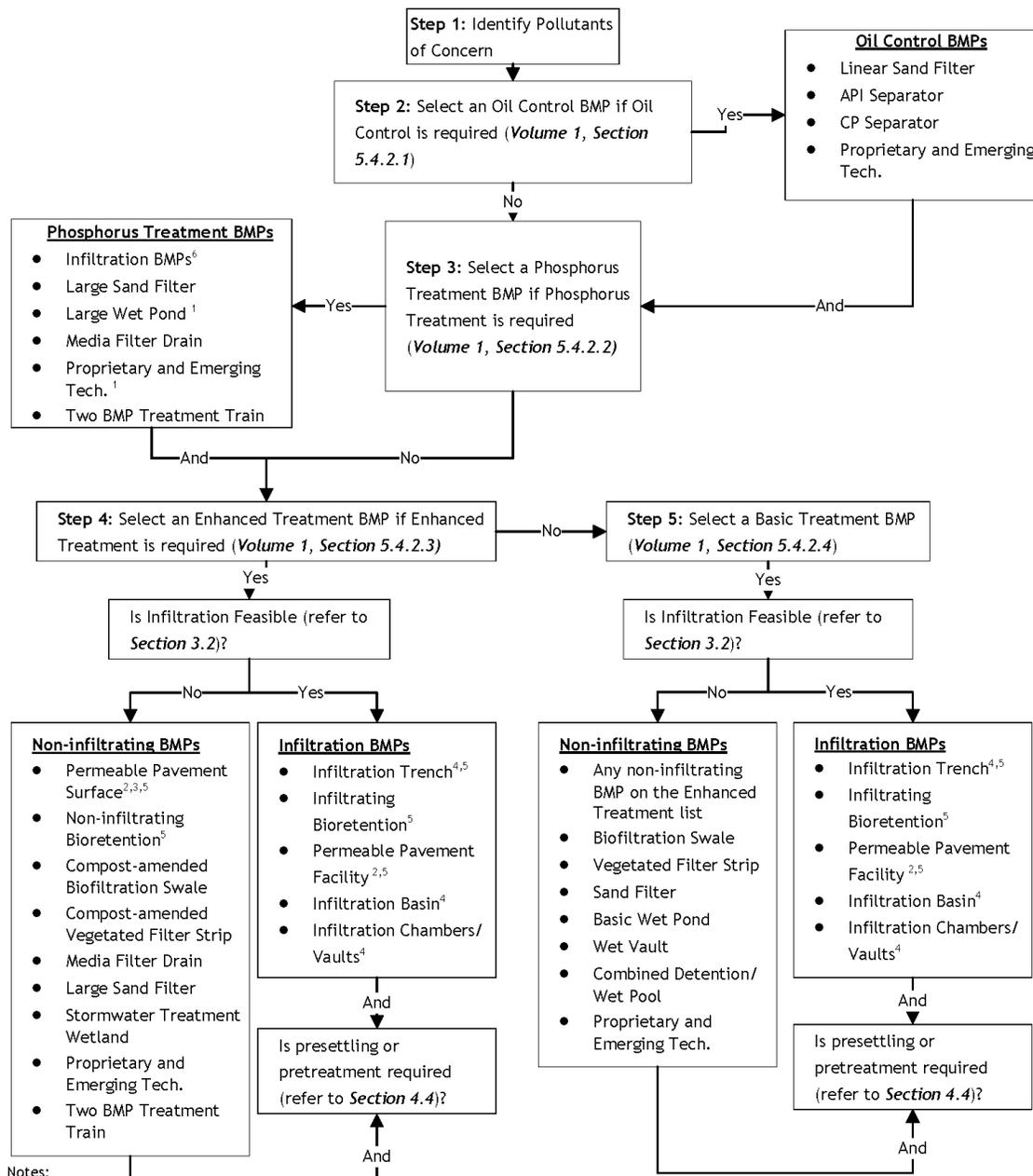
Apply the Pre-sized Approach for BMP design (refer to *Section 4.1.2*). The designer may also choose to use the Modeling Approach (refer to Step 6b).

Step 6b: Use Modeling Approach for BMP design

Apply the Modeling Approach for BMP design. Refer to *Section 4.1.3* and *Appendix F* for modeling guidelines.

BMPs should be sized using either the water quality design storm volume or flow rate on an annual average basis. The performance goal applies on an average annual basis to the entire annual discharge volume (treated plus bypassed). The incremental portion of runoff in excess of the water quality design flow rate or volume can be routed around the BMP (offline treatment facilities), or can be passed through the BMP (on-line treatment BMPs) provided a net pollutant reduction is maintained (refer to *Section 4.2*). Other contributing areas shall bypass the facility, or the facility shall be sized to accommodate the additional contributing area. Where feasible, offline facilities are required to prevent resuspension and washout of accumulated [sediment \(and associated metals and phosphorus\)](#) during large storm events.

Oil/water separators shall be located offline and bypass the incremental portion of flows that exceed the offline water quality design flow rate (refer to *Section 4.2.1*). If it is not possible to locate the separator offline (e.g., roadway intersections), use the on-line water quality design flow rate (refer to *Section 4.2.1*).



Notes:

- 1 - When Phosphorous Control and Enhanced Treatment are required, the Large Wet Pond and certain types of emerging technologies will not meet both types of treatment requirements. A different or an additional treatment BMP will be required to meet Enhanced Treatment.
- 2 - Underlying soil must meet the treatment soil requirements outlined in Section 4.5.2 or a water quality treatment course must be included per Section 5.4.6.5.
- 3 - Standard may be partially or completely achieved depending upon subgrade slope, infiltration rate of subgrade soil, and whether aggregate subbase is laid above or below surrounding grade.
- 4 - Soil suitability criteria (Section 4.5.2) and applicable drawdown requirements (Section 4.5.1) must be met.
- 5- BMP is on the On-site List (Volume 1, Section 5.2).
6. If the infiltration BMP is within ¼ mile of a phosphorus sensitive water (or tributary to that water), native soil must meet soil suitability criteria (Section 4.5.2) to be used to meet Phosphorus Treatment. If the infiltration BMP is a minimum of ¼ mile away, native soil does not have to meet the soil suitability criteria to be used to meet Phosphorus Treatment requirements if infiltration into the native soil is preceded by a Basic Treatment BMP.

Figure 3.2. Water Quality Treatment BMP Selection Flow Chart.

Mass-Based Sizing for Proprietary BMPs

The City requires proprietary technologies to be sized to account for solids loading targeting annual maintenance. To achieve this target, the City requires adjustment of the water quality design flow rate based upon mass loading ratios. Refer to *Section 5.8.11.6* to determine how to size proprietary BMPs using the mass-based sizing approach. When *Section 5.8.11.6* does not provide sizing guidance for a BMP of interest, refer to Table 3.5 and provide documentation from the manufacturer that the annual maintenance target has been met.

3.5.2. Treatment Performance Goals and BMP Options

This section identifies choices that meet the treatment BMP categories referred to in *Section 3.5.1*. The treatment BMP categories in this section are discussed in the order of the decision process outlined in Figure 3.2 and include the following:

- Oil Control Treatment, *Section 3.5.2.1*
- Phosphorus Treatment, *Section 3.5.2.2*
- Enhanced Treatment, *Section [3.5.2.3](#)*
- Basic Treatment, *Section 3.5.2.4*

3.5.2.1. Oil Control Treatment

Performance Goal – Oil Control Treatment BMPs are designed to achieve the following:

- No ongoing or recurring visible sheen
- A 24-hour average Total Petroleum Hydrocarbon (TPH) concentration no greater than 10 mg/l
- A maximum of 15 mg/l for a discrete sample (grab sample)

Note: For the analysis of [grab samples for](#) most petroleum products, use the NWTPH-Dx method ~~in Ecology Publication No. ECY-97-602, Analytical Methods for Petroleum Hydrocarbons~~. If the concentration of gasoline is of interest, use the NWTPH-Gx method to analyze grab samples.

BMP Options – Any one of the following options may be selected to satisfy the oil control requirement:

- Linear Sand Filter (refer to *Section [5.8.55-8-8](#)*)
- API-Type Oil/Water Separator (refer to *Section [5.8.105-8-12](#)*)
- Coalescing Plate Oil/Water Separator (refer to *Section [5.8.105-8-12](#)*)
- Proprietary and Emerging Water Quality Treatment Technologies (refer to *Section [5.8.115-8-14](#)*)

Note: The linear sand filter is also used for basic, enhanced, and phosphorus treatment. If used to satisfy one of those treatment requirements, do not use the same BMP to satisfy the oil control requirement. This increase in maintenance is to prevent clogging of the filter by oil so that it will function for suspended solids, metals, and phosphorus removal as well.

3.5.2.2. Phosphorus Treatment

Performance Goal – Phosphorus Treatment BMPs are designed to achieve 50 percent total phosphorus (TP) removal for a range of influent concentrations of 0.1 to 0.5 mg/l. In addition, the Phosphorus Treatment BMPs are designed to achieve Basic Treatment.

BMP Options – Any one of the following options may be selected to satisfy the Phosphorus Treatment requirement:

- Infiltration Trench – refer to *Section 5.4.2*
- Infiltrating Bioretention [\(without underdrain\)](#) – refer to *Section 5.4.4*
- Permeable Pavement Facility – refer to *Section 5.4.6*
- Infiltration Basin – refer to *Section 5.4.8*
- Infiltration Chamber/[Vault](#) – refer to *Section 5.4.9*
- Media Filter Drain – refer to *Section 5.8.4*
- Large Sand Filter – refer to *Section [5.8.55-8-8](#)*
- Large Wet Pond – refer to *Section [5.8.65-8-9](#)*
- Proprietary and Emerging Water Quality Treatment Technologies targeted for phosphorus removal – refer to *Section [5.8.115-8-14](#)*
- Two-BMP Treatment Trains – refer to Table 3.6

Table 3.6. Treatment Trains for Phosphorus Treatment.

First BMP	Second BMP
Biofiltration Swale (<i>Section 5.8.3</i>)	Basic Sand Filter or Sand Filter Vault (<i>Section 5.8.5</i>)
Vegetated Filter Strip (<i>Section 5.8.4</i>)	Linear Sand Filter (<i>Section 5.8.5</i>), no presettling needed
Linear Sand Filter (<i>Section 5.8.5</i>)	Vegetated Filter Strip (<i>Section 5.8.4</i>)
Basic Wet Pond (<i>Section 5.8.6</i>)	Basic Sand Filter or Sand Filter Vault (<i>Section 5.8.5</i>)
Wet Vault (<i>Section 5.8.7</i>)	Basic Sand Filter or Sand Filter Vault (<i>Section 5.8.5</i>)
Stormwater Treatment Wetland (<i>Section 5.8.8</i>)	Basic Sand Filter or Sand Filter Vault (<i>Section 5.8.5</i>)
Basic Combined Detention and Wet Pool (<i>Section 5.8.9</i>)	Basic Sand Filter or Sand Filter Vault (<i>Section 5.8.5</i>)
Basic Treatment BMP (Section 3.5.2.4)	BMP which infiltrates into native soil^a

^a [Either a\) native soil shall meet Soil Suitability Criteria \(Section 4.5.2\) or b\) infiltration shall be a minimum of 1/4 mile from phosphorus-sensitive water \(or tributary to that water\) and be preceded by a Basic Treatment BMP.](#)

3.5.2.3. Enhanced Treatment

Performance Goal – Enhanced Treatment BMPs without compost are designed to remove greater than 30 percent dissolved copper removal and greater than 60 percent dissolved zinc removal. The performance goal assumes that the Enhanced Treatment BMP is treating stormwater with dissolved copper typically ranging from 5 to 20 µg/l, and dissolved zinc ranging from 20 to 300 µg/l. In addition, the Enhanced Treatment BMPs are designed to achieve Basic Treatment.

BMP Options – Any one of the following options may be selected to satisfy the Enhanced Treatment requirement:

- Infiltration Trench – refer to *Section 5.4.2*
- Infiltrating Bioretention – refer to *Section 5.4.4*
- Permeable Pavement Facilities – refer to *Section 5.4.6*
- Infiltration Basin – refer to *Section 5.4.8*
- Infiltration Chamber/[Vault](#) – refer to *Section 5.4.9*
- Permeable Pavement Surfaces – refer to *Section 5.6.2*
- Non-infiltrating Bioretention – refer to *Section 5.8.2*
- Compost-amended Biofiltration Swale – refer to *Section 5.8.32*
- Compost-amended Vegetated Filter Strip (CAVFS) – refer to *Section 5.8.45-8-7*
- Media Filter Drain – refer to *Section 5.8.45-8-7*
- Large Sand Filter – refer to *Section 5.8.55-8-8*
- Stormwater Treatment Wetland – refer to *Section 5.8.85-8-11*
- Proprietary and Emerging Water Quality Treatment Technologies – refer to *Section 5.8.115-8-14*
- Two BMP Treatment Trains – refer to Table 3.7

Table 3.7. Treatment Trains for Enhanced Treatment.

First BMP	Second BMP
Biofiltration Swale (<i>Section 5.8.3</i>)	Basic Sand Filter, Sand Filter Vault, or an approved Proprietary and Emerging Water Quality Treatment Technology ^a (<i>Section 5.8.5</i> or <i>Section 5.8.11</i>)
Vegetated Filter Strip (<i>Section 5.8.4</i>)	Linear Sand Filter with no presettling cell needed (<i>Section 5.8.5</i>)
Linear Sand Filter (<i>Section 5.8.5</i>)	Vegetated Filter Strip (<i>Section 5.8.4</i>)
Basic Wet Pond (<i>Section 5.8.6</i>)	Basic Sand Filter, Sand Filter Vault, or an approved Proprietary and Emerging Water Quality Treatment Technology ^a (<i>Section 5.8.5</i> or <i>Section 5.8.11</i>)
Wet Vault (<i>Section 5.8.7</i>)	Basic Sand Filter, Sand Filter Vault, or an approved Proprietary and Emerging Water Quality Treatment Technology ^a (<i>Section 5.8.5</i> or <i>Section 5.8.11</i>)
Basic Combined Detention/Wet Pool (<i>Section 5.8.9</i>)	Basic Sand Filter, Sand Filter Vault, or an approved Proprietary and Emerging Water Quality Treatment Technology ^a (<i>Section 5.8.5</i> or <i>Section 5.8.11</i>)
Basic Sand Filter or Sand Filter Vault with a presettling cell if the filter is not preceded by a detention BMP (<i>Section 5.8.5</i>)	An approved Proprietary and Emerging Water Quality Treatment Technology ^a (<i>Section 5.8.5</i> or <i>Section 5.8.11</i>)

^a The media shall be of a type approved for basic or enhanced treatment use by Ecology and accepted by the Director.

3.5.2.4. *Basic Treatment*

Performance Goal – Basic Treatment BMPs are designed to achieve 80 percent removal of TSS for influent concentrations greater than 100 mg/l, but less than 200 mg/l. For influent concentrations greater than 200 mg/l, a higher treatment goal may be appropriate. For influent concentrations less than 100 mg/l, the BMPs are designed to achieve an effluent goal of 20 mg/l TSS.

BMP Options – Any one of the following options may be selected to satisfy the basic treatment requirement:

- Infiltration Trench – refer to *Section 5.4.2*
- Infiltrating Bioretention – refer to *Section 5.4.4*
- Permeable Pavement Facility – refer to *Section 5.4.6*
- Infiltration Basin – refer to *Section 5.4.8*
- Infiltration Chamber/[Vault](#) – refer to *Section 5.4.9*
- Permeable Pavement Surfaces – refer to *Section 5.6.2*
- Non-infiltrating Bioretention – refer to *Section 5.8.2*
- Biofiltration Swales – refer to *Section 5.8.3*
- [Vegetated](#)Basic Filter Strip – refer to *Section 5.8.4*
- Compost-amended Vegetated Filter Strip (CAVFS) – refer to *Section 5.8.4*
- Media Filter Drain – refer to *Section 5.8.4*
- Sand Filters – refer to *Section 5.8.5*
- Basic Wet Pond – refer to *Section 5.8.6*
- Wet Vault – refer to *Section 5.8.7*
- Stormwater Treatment Wetland – refer to *Section 5.8.8*
- Combined Detention and Wet Pool – refer to *Section 5.8.9*
- Proprietary and Emerging Water Quality Treatment Technologies – refer to *Section 5.8.11*

CHAPTER 4 – GENERAL DESIGN REQUIREMENTS

This chapter describes general design requirements for the following:

- Sizing approach
- Bypass, [flow-through, and off-site flow](#)
- Conveyance
- [Presettling and pPretreatment requirements](#)
- Infiltration BMPs [requirements](#)

4.1. Sizing Approach

This section describes the sizing approach for the following:

- **On-site List Approach:** to meet the On-site Stormwater Management requirement
- **Pre-sized Approach:** flow control credits, BMP sizing factors, and BMP sizing equations to meet flow control or water quality treatment performance standards
- **Modeling Approach:** continuous modeling approach to meet the On-Site Performance Standard, a specific flow control standard, or a water quality treatment requirement

The minimum requirements based on project type are provided in *Volume 1, Chapter 4*.

4.1.1. On-site List Approach

Under the On-site List Approach, the On-site Stormwater Management Requirement may be met by selecting from a prioritized list of On-site BMPs as explained in *Section 3.3.1*. On-site List BMPs shall be sized as prescribed under the Sizing for On-site List Approach in each On-site BMP section in *Chapter 5*.

4.1.2. Pre-sized Approach

The Pre-sized Approach may be used to select and size a BMP to meet flow control and water quality treatment performance standards without performing continuous modeling when the following conditions have been met:

- The new and replaced hard surface area associated with a project does not exceed 10,000 square feet, and
- The project is subject to the Pre-developed Pasture Standard, the Peak Control Standard, and/or Water Quality Treatment Standard (Basic, Oil, Phosphorus, and Enhanced Treatment)

4.1.2.1. Pre-sized Facilities

The BMPs included in the Pre-sized Approach include the following:

BMP Category and Name	Type of Credit/Factor	Applicable Standards
Tree Planting and Retention	Flow Control Credit	Flow Control
Dispersion BMPs		
Downspout Dispersion	Flow Control Credit	Flow Control
Sheet Flow Dispersion	Flow Control Credit	Flow Control
Infiltration BMPs		
Infiltration Trenches	BMP Sizing Factor	Flow Control, Water Quality
Dry Wells	BMP Sizing Factor	Flow Control
Infiltrating Bioretention	BMP Sizing Factor	Flow Control, Water Quality
Permeable Pavement Facilities	BMP Sizing Factor	Flow Control, Water Quality
Infiltration Chambers	BMP Sizing Factor	Flow Control, Water Quality
Alternative Surface BMPs		
Vegetated Roof Systems	Flow Control Credit	Flow Control
Permeable Pavement Surfaces	Flow Control Credit	Flow Control
Detention BMPs		
Detention Pipes	BMP Sizing Equation	Flow Control
Detention Vaults	BMP Sizing Equation	Flow Control
Detention Cisterns (aboveground)	BMP Sizing Equation	Flow Control
Non-infiltrating BMPs		
Non-infiltrating Bioretention	BMP Sizing Factor	Flow Control, Water Quality

Specific design requirements for the pre-sized BMPs (e.g., side slopes, freeboard, aggregate thickness, soil depth) are provided in the *BMP Credit* or *BMP Sizing* sections in *Chapter 5*.

4.1.2.2. Pre-sized Credits, Sizing Factors, and Equations

The pre-sized BMPs are provided as either a flow control credit, BMP sizing factor, or BMP sizing equation. These are described below.

- **Flow Control Credits:** Flow control credits are awarded for BMPs that reduce hard surface areas. These credits can be applied to reduce the hard surface area requiring flow control. Note: This applies to flow control calculations only. If a site is also subject to water quality treatment requirements, calculations for water quality shall also be performed.

- **BMP Sizing Factors:** BMPs may be sized using the sizing factors provided in *Chapter 5*. The sizing factors can be used to calculate the BMP size as a function of the contributing area ([this includes undisturbed areas and off site areas draining to the BMP](#)). These sizing factors were developed using a continuous runoff hydrologic model to achieve applicable flow control and water quality treatment standards. For BMPs with variable allowable depths, sizing factors are provided for at least two typical depths. Designers may linearly interpolate BMP size for intermediate design depths, but may not extrapolate.
- **BMP Sizing Equations:** BMPs may be sized using the sizing equations provided in *Chapter 5*. Sizing equations were developed using a continuous runoff hydrologic model to achieve applicable flow control and water quality treatment standards.

For each BMP, flow control credits, sizing factors, or sizing equations were developed for typical design variations (e.g., ponding depths, aggregate thickness, slopes, etc.). To use these BMPs with a different design configuration or BMPs not listed above, the designer shall use the Modeling Approach (refer to *Section 4.1.3*).

When using the pre-sized sizing factors or sizing equations for water quality treatment, stormwater flows from other areas (beyond the area for which the [BMPfacility](#) is sized) shall be bypassed around the [BMPfacility](#); or [BMPsfacilities](#) shall be sized to treat runoff from the entire area draining to the [BMPfacility](#), [even if some of those areas are not pollutant-generating](#).

When using the pre-sized sizing factors or sizing equations for flow control, it is preferred that flow control [BMPsfacilities](#) be sized for the entire area draining to the [BMPfacility](#). Additional flows may pass through a [BMPfacility](#) pre-sized to meet a flow control standard with the following limitations:

- The maximum additional area (i.e., area beyond the area for which the [BMPfacility](#) is pre-sized) that passes through a pre-sized BMP shall not exceed twice the area for which it is pre-sized.
- No flow control credit is given for runoff from any area in excess of the area for which the [BMPfacility](#) was pre-sized.
- If additional area is routed to a [BMPfacility](#), it shall be clearly noted on submitted plans.
- The overflow infrastructure shall be sized for the full contributing area (refer to *Section 4.3.3*).
- Projects shall still meet the flow control standards at the point of compliance.

BMP sizing factors and equations were developed for Pre-developed Pasture and Peak Control Standards. If both standards apply to a project (such as a site in a non-listed creek basin with a capacity constrained drainage system), the larger BMP size or conservative flow control credit shall be used. A Pre-sized Approach was not developed for the Pre-developed Forested Standard because it is not triggered as often as the other flow control standards.

Generalized assumptions were used to design the pre-sized BMPs that may result in conservative sizing or may underestimate flow control or treatment credits for some sites. Refer to the *BMP Credit* or *BMP Sizing* sections each BMP section in *Chapter 5* for modeling

assumptions used in the Pre-sized Approach. Designers have the option to use the pre-sized BMPs provided in this section, or to follow the Modeling Approach (refer to *Section 4.1.3*) and submit an alternative BMP size with supporting engineering calculations for review and consideration.

4.1.2.3. Pre-sized Calculator

The City has also prepared a spreadsheet tool (An Excel-based Pre-sized Flow Control Calculator) to help users document and implement the flow control BMP selection process for small sites (<10,000 square feet of new and replaced hard surface area). Refer to ~~is provided on the~~ SDCI's Stormwater Code web page ~~website~~ to download the latest version of the spreadsheet tool: ~~(~~[www.seattle.gov/sdci/codes/codes-we-enforce-\(a-z\)/stormwater-code](http://www.seattle.gov/sdci/codes/codes-we-enforce-(a-z)/stormwater-code)~~)~~www.seattle.gov/dpd/codesrules/codes/stormwater~~.~~ This spreadsheet tool/calculator automates sizing calculations (i.e., the flow control credits, BMP sizing factors and BMP sizing equations described above) and guides the applicant through the process of selecting BMPs. This calculator may be provided as part of a plan submittal to document compliance with flow control and/or water quality treatment standards.

4.1.3. Modeling Approach

Unless otherwise specified, all continuous modeling shall be performed using the City of Seattle Design Time Series (consisting of a 158-year precipitation and evaporation time series that ~~is are~~ representative of the climatic conditions in the City of Seattle) and a 5-minute computational time step (refer to Table F.12 in Appendix F, Section F-4 for correct time step).

Drainage basins for both disturbed and undisturbed areas shall be clearly noted on submitted plans. Any off-site areas that are topographically tributary or have piped connections shall be shown on drainage basin maps. Modeling shall extend to the approved point of discharge or to the limits of a downstream capacity analysis.

Note that soils that are amended using options 2, 3, or 4 as described in Section 5.1.6 may be modeled as pasture land use.

Continuous simulation methods and a list of approved continuous runoff hydrologic simulation models are provided in Appendix F.

4.1.3.1. On-site Performance Standard

As an alternative to the On-site List Approach (Section 4.1.1), the On-site Requirement can be met by demonstrating that the On-site Performance Standard (Volume 1, Section 5.2) is achieved. Under the Modeling Approach, BMPs are designed to achieve the On-site Performance Standard using a continuous ~~rainfall~~-runoff hydrologic model. Specific modeling requirements are presented in the *BMP Credit* or *BMP Sizing* section for each BMP in Chapter 5. For compliance with the On-site Performance Standard, it shall be demonstrated that the suite of BMPs used on the site results in the standard being met at the discharge point (also known as the point of discharge).

4.1.3.2. Flow Control

The Modeling Approach may be used for any project to design flow control BMPs, and is required for the following scenarios:

- Projects with new and replaced hard surface area equal to or exceeding 10,000 square feet that trigger a flow control standard
- Projects with new and replaced hard surface area less than 10,000 square feet that are proposing to use different BMPs and/or assumptions than those used in the Pre-sized Approach

Under the Modeling Approach, flow control BMPs are designed to achieve flow control standards using a continuous ~~rainfall~~-runoff hydrologic model refer to (refer to Volume 1, Section 5.3). Specific modeling requirements are presented in the *BMP Sizing* or *BMP Credits* section for each BMP in Chapter 5. For detention BMPs the minimum bottom orifice diameter will be too large to meet standard release rates in some scenarios, even with minimal head. Designers should iteratively increase detention area and decrease live storage depth until the performance criteria are met. However, live storage depth need not be reduced to less than 3 feet in an attempt to meet the flow control standards. Typically, flow control standards can

be achieved using a 0.5-inch-diameter bottom orifice with a 3-foot live storage depth in the following scenarios:

- Pre-developed Forested Standard can be achieved when the contributing impervious area is greater than approximately 45,000 square feet.
- Pre-developed Pasture Standard can be achieved when the contributing impervious area is greater than approximately 19,000 square feet.
- Peak Control Standard can be achieved when the contributing impervious area is greater than approximately 2,000 square feet.

For smaller contributing impervious areas, the following design/modeling approach is recommended:

- *Step 1* – Size the detention facility with 3 feet or less of head to meet the flow control standard with an optimized orifice size (orifice diameter may be lower than minimum allowed for construction).
- *Step 2* – Use the facility size (e.g., length and diameter) obtained in Step 1 and increase the orifice diameter to the minimum size (0.5 inch).

The BMPs used to meet the On-site List or the On-site Performance Standard may be included in the model and may contribute towards meeting the flow control standard(s), if applicable. When using the Modeling Approach, it shall be demonstrated that the suite of BMPs used on the site results in the standard(s) being met at the point of discharge.

4.1.3.3. *Water Quality Treatment*

The Modeling Approach may be used for any project to design water quality treatment BMPs, and is required for the following scenarios:

- Projects with new and replaced hard surface area equal to or exceeding 10,000 square feet that trigger Basic or Enhanced Treatment
- Projects that trigger Phosphorus or Oil Treatment
- Projects with new and replaced hard surface area less than 10,000 square feet that are proposing to use different BMPs and/or assumptions than those used in the Pre-sized Approach

Under the Modeling Approach, water quality treatment BMPs are designed to treat a specific water quality design storm volume or flow rate (refer to *Volume 1, Section 5.4.1* and *Appendix F*) using a continuous ~~rainfall~~-runoff [hydrologic](#) model. Specific modeling requirements are presented in the *BMP Sizing* section for each applicable BMP in *Chapter 5*. Some non-infiltrating BMPs (sand filters and oil/water separators) use a simplified sizing approach (refer to *Section 5.8.5* and *5.8.10*). The BMPs used to meet the On-site List or the On-site Performance Standard may be included in the model and may contribute towards meeting the Water Quality Treatment Standard, if applicable.

4.1.3.4. Wetland Hydroperiod Protection

There are two methods for calculating wetland hydroperiod protection:

- Method 1 – Monitoring and Wetland Stage Monitoring
- Method 2 – Site Discharge Modeling

Both methods involve continuous simulation modeling. Refer to Volume I, Appendix I-C of the 2019 SWMMWW for specific details on how to evaluate wetland hydroperiod protection using these methods.

Method 1 – Monitoring and Wetland Stage Monitoring

The following calculations should be included in the wetland hydroperiod evaluation using Method 1:

- Existing water level fluctuation (WLF) based on monitored water levels
 - Mean annual
 - Mean monthly
- Estimated daily, monthly, or annual WLF based on continuous simulation modeling
- Allowable WLF change (compare with estimated WLF to verify compliance)

Method 2 – Site Discharge Monitoring

The following calculations should be included in the wetland hydroperiod evaluation using Method 2:

- Daily discharge volumes based on continuous simulation modeling
- Monthly discharge volumes based on continuous simulation modeling

4.1.3.5. Closed Depressions

The analysis of closed depressions requires careful assessment of the existing hydrologic performance in order to evaluate the impacts a proposed project will have. The applicable requirements should be thoroughly reviewed prior to proceeding with the analysis. Closed depressions generally facilitate infiltration of runoff. If a closed depression is classified as a wetland, then Minimum Requirement #8 applies (refer to Volume 1, Section 3.5). A continuous runoff hydrologic model shall be used for closed depression analysis and design of mitigation facilities. If a closed depression is not classified as a wetland, model the ponding area at the bottom of the closed depression as an infiltration pond using an approved continuous runoff hydrologic model.

4.2. Bypass, Flow-Through, and Off-Site Flow General Design Requirements

4.2.1. ~~On-line vs. Offline Treatment BMPs~~ On-line vs. Offline

Treatment BMPs shall be designed to treat runoff from the entire area (disturbed and undisturbed, hard surface and pervious surface, pollution-generating and non-pollution generating, on-site and off-site) draining to it. Flows from off-site and runoff from non-pollution generating areas on-site that can be kept separate may be bypassed around the treatment BMP to reduce its required size.

Treatment BMPs located upstream of a detention system can be designed as on-line or offline BMPs.

- On-line BMPs:** On-line BMPs receive all of the stormwater runoff from the contributing area and do not include flow splitters. The on-line water quality design flow rate (as determined by a continuous runoff hydrologic model) is used to size on-line BMPs. On-line BMPs treat flows up to the on-line water quality design flow rate to meet the performance goal, and flows higher than the on-line water quality design flow rate pass through the BMP at a lower percent removal. Runoff flow rates in excess of the water quality design flow rate can be routed through the BMP provided a net pollutant reduction is maintained, and the applicable annual average performance goal is designed to be met and velocities are not high enough to resuspend sediments. Designers shall ensure that the higher flows will not damage the BMPs. If higher flows will damage the proposed BMP, the flows to the BMP shall be attenuated or an off-line BMP shall be used.
- Offline BMPs:** Off-line BMPs make use of a flow splitter directly upstream of the BMP to regulate the amount of flow entering the BMP. The flow splitter shall be designed to direct flows up to and including the offline water quality design flow rate (as determined by a continuous runoff hydrologic model) to the BMP. The BMP shall be sized to treat the offline water quality design flow rate. For non-infiltrating BMPs not preceded by an equalization or storage basin, flows exceeding the water quality design flow rate may be bypassed around (internal bypass is generally not acceptable) the treatment BMP. ~~Where feasible, o~~Offline facilities are required to prevent resuspension and washout of accumulated sediment (and associated metals and phosphorus) during large storm events (*Section 3.5*). However, during bypass events, the BMP facility will continue to receive and treat the water quality design flow rate. Only the higher incremental portion of flow rates are bypassed around a treatment BMP. Design guidelines for flow splitters for use in offline BMPs are provided in *Appendix E-2*.

Non-infiltrating BMPs ~~preceded by~~ located downstream of an equalization or storage basin may identify a lower water quality design flow rate provided that at least 91 percent of the total runoff volume predicted by an approved continuous runoff hydrologic model is treated to the applicable performance goals (e.g., 80 percent total suspended solids (TSS) removal at the water quality design flow rate and 80 percent TSS removal on an annual average basis).

4.2.2. *Bypassing Flows Entering ~~or Leaving~~ a Site*

The following ~~three flow~~ bypass-related scenarios ~~require~~ recognize that additional considerations be taken into account when designing BMPs when off-site flows enter a project site. ~~(refer to also Appendix E for design guidelines for flow splitters):~~

1. Flow currently enters the project site, but can be bypassed as part of the proposed project improvements.
2. Flow currently enters the project site, but cannot be bypassed as part of the proposed project improvements.
- ~~3. Flow that is within the project limits cannot feasibly be routed to the project BMP.~~

The requirements and guidelines applicable to each scenario are outlined below.

4.2.2.1. *Scenario 1 – ~~Managing Bypassing Flows Entering a Site~~*

Off-site fFlows may bypass ~~flow control~~ BMPs if all of the following conditions are met:

- Natural drainage courses are maintained
- Existing flows to wetlands are maintained (refer to *Volume 1, Section 5.3.1*)
- Off-site flows that are naturally attenuated by the project site under predeveloped conditions ~~must~~ shall remain attenuated, either by natural means or by providing additional on-site detention to mimic the attenuated condition and so that peak flows or discharge rates and duration do not increase.
- The point of discharge does not adversely impact down gradient properties

Refer to Appendix E-2 for design guidelines for flow splitters.

4.2.2.2. *Scenario 2 – ~~Managing Flows Entering a Site~~Flow-Through a Flow Control BMP*

It is preferred that flow control ~~BMPs~~ facilities be sized for the entire area draining to the ~~BMP~~ facility. It is required that treatment BMPs be sized for the entire area draining to the BMP.

Additional flows may pass through a ~~BMP~~ facility sized to meet a flow control standard with the following limitations:

- ~~The maximum additional area (i.e., area beyond the area for which the facility is pre-sized) that may pass through a BMP shall not exceed twice the area for which it is sized.~~ Projects shall still meet the flow control standard at the point of compliance where the flow control standard is evaluated.
- ~~No flow control credit is given for runoff from any area in excess of the area for which the facility was sized.~~
- If additional area is routed to a BMP, it shall be clearly noted on submitted plans and drainage basin maps.
- The overflow infrastructure shall be sized for the full contributing area (refer to *Section 4.3.3*).

- If the flow control BMP was sized using the modeling approach (refer to Section 4.1.3), ~~if and~~ the existing 100-year peak flow rate from any upstream off-site area is greater than 50 percent of the 100-year developed peak flow rate (undetained) for the project site, then the runoff from the off-site area ~~must-shall~~ not flow to the flow control BMP facility.
- If the flow control BMP was sized using the pre-sized approach (refer to Section 4.1.2) the entire area draining to the facility shall not be greater than twice the area for which it is sized.
- Projects shall still meet the flow control standards at the point of compliance. No flow control credit is given for runoff from any area in excess of the area for which the facility was sized.

4.2.3. Bypassing Flows Leaving a Site

At times it is not practical to collect all flows from a project site. All bypass areas shall be clearly noted on the submitted plans when bypass of a BMP is proposed. The following bypass-related scenarios recognize that additional considerations be taken into account when it is not feasible to collect runoff from a portion of the site.

1. A flow control BMP is designed to compensate for uncontrolled bypass flows.
2. A flow control BMP cannot be designed to collect or compensate for a small bypass area.

In either scenario, the bypass drainage that is not feasible to be collected shall sheet flow from the site. No concentrated drainage may flow from the site unless it is in a conveyance system directed to an approved point of discharge. Also, in no case will drainage from more than 500 square feet of impervious area at a driveway and no more than a 10-foot width of impervious area abutting a public sidewalk, measured perpendicular to the public sidewalk, be permitted to drain across a public sidewalk.

4.2.2.3.4.2.3.1. Scenario 3 - Uncontrolled Flows Leaving the Site Compensate for Uncontrolled Bypass

Design of a flow control BMP can compensate for uncontrolled bypass if all of the following conditions are met:

- The flow control BMP is sized using the modeling approach to overdetain flow to compensate for the uncontrolled bypass (refer to Section 4.1.3).
- The modeling documents that the flow control standard is met at the point of compliance, where flow control standards are evaluated and the controlled and uncontrolled flow join.
- When the bypass will not create significant adverse impacts to down gradient properties

Runoff from a project that cannot feasibly be routed to the proposed flow control BMP may be bypassed under one of the following conditions:

- When the proposed flow control BMP are designed to manage uncontrolled flow and meet the applicable minimum requirements for the project

- ~~When the bypass area is due to incidental grading to match surrounding roadways or properties, and is less than 1,000 square feet and will not create significant adverse impacts to down gradient properties~~

4.2.3.2. Scenario 4 – Uncontrolled Flows Leaving the Site

It is typically feasible to compensate for uncontrolled flows with a flow control BMP as described in Scenario 3. In the rare case when it is not feasible to compensate for uncontrolled flows leaving the site, runoff may be bypassed and not compensated if all of the following conditions are met:

- When the bypass area is due to incidental grading to match surrounding roadways or properties.
- When the bypass area is less than 1,000 square feet.
- When the bypass will not create significant adverse impacts to down gradient properties

4.3. Conveyance and Overflow General Design Requirements

4.3.1. *Conveyance Design and Capacity Analysis*

For design or capacity analysis of the public drainage system, early consultation with Seattle Public Utilities is recommended. ~~Client Assistance Memo (CAM) 1180 describes~~ Design ~~Guidelines~~ Requirements for Public ~~Storm Drain Facilities~~ Drainage Systems are described in the Public Drainage System Requirements Director's Rule on SPU's Policy and Director's Rules web page: <http://www.seattle.gov/utilities/about/policies>. Requirements and recommendations for Hydrologic Analysis and Design are in *Appendix F*. Requirements for service drains and side sewers are described in the Side Sewer Directors' Rule on SDCI's Side Sewer Code web page: [www.seattle.gov/sdci/codes/codes-we-enforce-\(a-z\)/side-sewer-code](http://www.seattle.gov/sdci/codes/codes-we-enforce-(a-z)/side-sewer-code).

~~4.3.2. *Approved Point of Discharge*~~

~~All projects shall convey stormwater flow to an approved point of discharge and include overflows for all stormwater BMPs.~~

~~The approved point of discharge as determined by the Director, in order of priority, includes:~~

- ~~● Surface waters~~
- ~~● Public storm drain pipes~~
- ~~● Ditch and culvert system~~
- ~~● Public combined sewer pipes~~
- ~~● Infiltration on site~~

~~4.3.3.~~ 4.3.2. *Requirements for Projects with No Off-site Point of Discharge*

Refer to Volume 1, Section 2.3 to determine the approved point of discharge. Where it has been determined by the Director that there is no off-site point of discharge for the project, the following minimum design criteria shall be met:

- The drainage control plan shall be prepared by a licensed civil engineer;
- Infiltration ~~shall be~~ feasible per *Section 3.2*, or ~~as recommended~~ infiltration is determined to be feasible as documented in a stamped and signed report from a licensed professional and approved by the Director;
- In addition to meeting other minimum requirements for the project, the infiltration BMP shall be designed to infiltrate the runoff volume from the area of development for the storm event with a 4 percent annual probability (25-year recurrence interval flow); and
- Infiltration BMPs shall be sized so that overflows do not exceed 0.0001 cfs during the peak flow with a 4 percent annual probability (25-year recurrence flow).

- [Identify the overland flowpath for flows that will exceed the capacity of the infiltration BMP. Prevent the flows from causing erosion or flooding on site or on adjacent properties \(refer to *Section 4.3.3*\). If the flows will be directed towards an offsite building, structure or ECA Steep Slope or Landslide Prone area, then the infiltration BMPs shall be designed to fully infiltrate all flows for the full, required simulation period in the continuous runoff model \(i.e., 100 percent infiltration\).](#)
- [Overland flow path shall be vegetated and a minimum of 10 feet long between BMP and any property line \(excluding right-of-way line\).](#)
- [If the project site is within the setback from an ECA Steep Slope or Landslide Prone area where infiltration is limited a slope stability analysis is required per the Site Constraint section in *Section 3.2*.](#)
- [Alternatively, if it is demonstrated that infiltration is not feasible as indicated above, all new and replaced hard surfaces shall be dispersed using Dispersion BMPs from *Section 5.3*.](#)

Note that the Simple Infiltration Test is not allowed for projects with no off-site point of discharge. These projects shall use a Small PIT to determine the measured infiltration rate (Refer to *Appendix D*).

One option for a small project with no approved off-site point of discharge consists of an infiltration BMP (i.e., infiltration trench, drywell or infiltration chamber/vault) situated downstream of a bioretention cell or a permeable pavement facility sized to infiltrate storms up to the conveyance standard (25-year recurrence interval flow). Refer to *Appendix E, Section E-10* for dry well sizing provided for this scenario.

Infiltration testing and plan preparation clarification for detached accessory dwelling units (DADUs) and additions with less than 1,500 sf of new plus replaced hard surface on lots with no off-site point of discharge:

- The applicant is allowed to perform the infiltration testing unless [the project site is within the setback from an ECA Steep Slope or Landslide Prone area where infiltration is limited \(refer to the Site Constraints in *Section 3.2*\) or unless testing by a licensed professional is otherwise determined to be required](#) by the Director.
- If the applicant chooses (in lieu of a licensed professional) to conduct the infiltration testing, the applicant shall conduct the Small PIT (rather than the Simple Infiltration Test).
- The test shall be documented with the Pilot Infiltration Test Checklist and a minimum 0.25-3 in/hr measured soil infiltration rate [must shall](#) be demonstrated.
- Drywells shall be sized, at a minimum, per [Appendix E, Section E-10—Drywell Sizing Tables \(as modified July 22, 2016, in the Clarification Sheet for the Seattle Stormwater Manual\)](#).
- The applicant is allowed to prepare the drainage control plan unless otherwise determined by the Director.

~~4.3.4. Conveyance Systems to Point of Discharge~~

~~The types of conveyance systems to the approved point of discharge, in order of priority, includes:~~

- ~~— Direct pipe connections~~
- ~~— Ditch and culvert system~~
- ~~— Gutter or street flow line~~
- ~~— Surface dispersal~~

4.3.5.4.3.3. *BMP and Conveyance Overflow Requirements*

Overflows are critical to minimize flooding and protect properties, the downstream conveyance system, and receiving waters.

BMP overflow options to an approved point of discharge (refer to *Section 4.3.2*) include the following:

- Direct conveyance
- Through a downstream BMP
- Through interflow to the surface
- To surface discharge
- Combination of these measures

Overflow conveyance options include the following:

- Piped
- Daylighted through a storage reservoir
- Distributed through a flow spreader (refer to *Appendix E*)
- Discharged through overtopping of the BMP

Plan shall include a site map that indicates all flow paths through pipes and surface topography. Consider overflows that may result from:

- Larger storms
- Failure of infiltration capacity for infiltrative BMPs
- BMP failure due to defects or problems (refer to *Appendix G*)
- Pump or electrical failures for pumped systems

Overflow requirements specific to the right-of-way include:

- Contain overflows within the roadway and direct to the drainage system or public combined sewer.
- Overflow paths shall not be over sidewalks.
- Overflow paths shall not be to private property, except as approved by the Director.

At a minimum, overflows shall be designed to convey peak flows with a 4 percent annual probability (25-year recurrence interval flows). During large storm events, capacity will be limited at the approved point of discharge and backwater calculations and installation of backwater protection may be required.

~~For dispersion BMPs and for infiltration BMPs designed to fully infiltrate all flows for the 158-year simulation period, a constructed overflow is not required. Plans shall indicate surface flow paths in case of failure of the BMP.~~

4.4. Presettling and Pretreatment Requirements

Presettling and pretreatment should be evaluated for most BMPs to protect BMPs from excessive siltation and debris. Pretreatment is required for some water quality treatment BMPs. Refer to the individual BMP sections in Chapter 5 for presettling and pretreatment requirements specific to those BMPs.

4.4.1. Description

Presettling and pretreatment are essential to effective long-term BMP performance.

- **Presettling:** Presettling consists of structures or cells. Presettling structures are catch basins or vaults that are located upstream of a BMP and are intended to collect sediment that could otherwise clog or impair the function of the primary BMP. Presettling structures protect facilities from excessive siltation and debris through settling to remove TSS prior to discharging to the primary BMP. Other types of presettling facilities (i.e., presettling cells, presettling zones) specific to BMPs are described in the BMP Design Criteria in *Chapter 5*.
- **Pretreatment:** Pretreatment consists of structures that are used to remove sediments, floating oils and floating debris (such as trash) upstream of a water quality treatment BMP to reduce clogging of the BMP.
 - Hydrodynamic separators: Flow-through structures with a settling or separation unit to remove sediments and particle-bound pollutants. The BMP name refers to the application of the energy of flowing water to facilitate sediment separation and removal. Depending on the type of unit, particle settling may occur by means of swirl action or indirect filtration.
 - Floatables capture: Facilities designed to trap floating oils and debris before it enters a primary treatment BMP. These facilities take advantage of the floating properties of certain pollutants, such as oils and trash, and capture them where they can be easily removed, sending the rest of the stormwater to a separate area for further treatment.

4.4.2. Performance Mechanisms

Where the primary performance mechanism of a treatment BMP is biofiltration, infiltration, filtration, or settling; excessive sediment can reduce the effectiveness over time by reducing stormwater contact with vegetation or clogging sands and other filtration media.

4.4.3. Applicability

4.4.3.1. Presettling and Pretreatment

Presettling should be evaluated for most BMPs to protect BMPs from excessive siltation and debris. Pretreatment may be required to remove TSS for infiltration and filtration BMPs and can be used as an alternative to presettling structures or cells. Refer to the individual BMP sections in Chapter 5 for presettling and pretreatment requirements specific to those BMPs. Pretreatment should also be considered where the basic treatment BMP or the receiving water may be adversely affected by non-targeted pollutants (e.g., oil), or may by

overwhelmed by a heavy load of targeted pollutants (e.g., suspended solids). General requirements for presettling and pretreatment are summarized in Table 4.1.

Table 4.1. Presettling and Pretreatment Requirements.

BMP	Presettling Cell or Structure	Alternative Pretreatment	Reference
Infiltration Trenches	S	Basic Treatment BMP or Proprietary and Emerging Water Quality Treatment Technologies ^a	<i>Section 5.4.2</i>
Drywells	A	Basic Treatment BMP or Proprietary and Emerging Water Quality Treatment Technologies ^a	<i>Section 5.4.3</i>
Infiltrating Bioretention	S	Basic Treatment BMP or Proprietary and Emerging Water Quality Treatment Technologies Emerging Technology ^a	<i>Section 5.4.4</i>
Rain Gardens	N	Not applicable	<i>Section 5.4.5</i>
Permeable Pavement Facilities	S	Basic Treatment BMP or Proprietary and Emerging Water Quality Treatment Technologies ^a	<i>Section 5.4.6</i>
Permeable Pavement Facility/Infiltration Chamber combination	S	Basic Treatment BMP or Proprietary and Emerging Water Quality Treatment Technologies ^a	Section 5.4.6
Perforated Stub-out Connections	S	Not applicable	<i>Section 5.4.7</i>
Infiltration Basins	S	Basic Treatment BMP or Proprietary and Emerging Water Quality Treatment Technologies ^a	<i>Section 5.4.8</i>
Infiltration Chambers/ Vaults	S	Basic Treatment BMP or Proprietary and Emerging Water Quality Treatment Technologies ^a	<i>Section 5.4.9</i>
Permeable Pavement Surfaces	N	Not applicable	<i>Section 5.6.2</i>
Non-infiltrating Bioretention	S	Basic Treatment BMP or Proprietary and Emerging Water Quality Treatment Technologies ^a	<i>Section 5.8.2</i>
Detention Ponds	A	Basic Treatment BMP or Proprietary and Emerging Water Quality Treatment Technologies ^a	<i>Section 5.7.1</i>
Detention Pipes	S	Not applicable	<i>Section 5.7.2</i>
Detention Vaults	S	Not applicable	<i>Section 5.7.3</i>
Detention Chambers	S	Basic Treatment BMP or Proprietary and Emerging Water Quality Treatment Technologies ^a	Section 5.7.3
Detention Cisterns	N	Not applicable	<i>Section 5.7.4</i>

Table 4.1 (continued). Presettling and Pretreatment Requirements.

BMP	Presettling Cell or Structure	Alternative Pretreatment	Reference
Basic Biofiltration Swale	S	Basic Treatment BMP or Proprietary and Emerging Water Quality Treatment Technologies ^a	Section 5.8.3
Wet Biofiltration Swale	S	Basic Treatment BMP or Proprietary and Emerging Water Quality Treatment Technologies ^a	Section 5.8.3
Compost-amended Biofiltration Swale	S	Basic Treatment BMP or Proprietary and Emerging Water Quality Treatment Technologies ^a	Section 5.8.3
Continuous Inflow Biofiltration Swale	N	Not applicable	Section 5.8.3
Basic Sand Filter Basin	A	Treatment Train	Section 5.8.5
Large Sand Filter Basin	A	Treatment Train	Section 5.8.5
Sand Filter Vaults	A	Treatment Train	Section 5.8.5
Linear Sand Filters	S	Treatment Train	Section 5.8.5
Basic Wet Pond	A	Treatment Train	Section 5.8.6
Large Wet Pond	A	Treatment Train	Section 5.8.6
Wet Vaults	A	Treatment Train	Section 5.8.7
Stormwater Treatment Wetlands	A	Treatment Train	Section 5.8.8
Combined Detention and Wet Pond	A	Treatment Train	Section 5.8.9
Combined Detention and Wet Vault	A	Treatment Train	Section 5.8.9
Combined Detention and Stormwater Wetland	A	Treatment Train	Section 5.8.9
American Petroleum Institute (API baffle type) Oil/water Separator	S	Basic Treatment BMP or Proprietary and Emerging Water Quality Treatment Technologies ^a	Section 5.8.10
Coalescing plate (CP) Oil/water Separator	S	Basic Treatment BMP or Proprietary and Emerging Water Quality Treatment Technologies ^a	Section 5.8.10
Proprietary and Emerging Water Quality Treatment Technology	S	Basic Treatment BMP or Proprietary and Emerging Water Quality Treatment Technologies ^a	Section 5.8.11

S – Sometimes

A – Always

N – Not Required

^a Refer to Section 5.8.11 for more information on approved stormwater technologies and technologies currently under review for pretreatment.

~~Pretreatment should also be considered where the basic treatment BMP or the receiving water may be adversely affected by non-targeted pollutants (e.g., oil), or may be overwhelmed by a heavy load of targeted pollutants (e.g., suspended solids).~~

4.4.3.2. Pretreatment

Specific pretreatment requirements for enhanced and phosphorus treatment are summarized in the following subsections.

Enhanced Treatment

~~In addition to the requirements for presettling and pretreatment are summarized in Table 4.1, infiltration through soils that meet the minimum soil suitability criteria for water quality treatment (refer to Section 4.5.2) are considered enhanced treatment if preceded by a presettling cell or Basic Treatment BMP, except where presettling is not required due to the size of the contributing basin. Refer to the design criteria for the specific BMP for further information about presettling requirements. The following treatment trains can provide enhanced treatment:~~

~~Infiltration BMP preceded by a presettling cell or Basic Treatment BMP:~~

~~If infiltration is through soils meeting the minimum criteria for water quality treatment (refer to Section 4.5.2), a presettling cell or a basic treatment BMP can serve for pretreatment.~~

~~Infiltration preceded by a Basic Treatment BMP:~~

~~If infiltration is through soils that do not meet the soil suitability criteria for water quality treatment (refer to Section 4.5.2), treatment shall be provided by a basic treatment BMP unless the soil and site fit the description in the next option below.~~

~~Infiltration preceded by an Enhanced Treatment BMP:~~

~~If the soils do not meet the soil suitability criteria for water quality treatment (refer to Section 4.5.2) and the infiltration site is within 1/4 mile of a fresh water designated for aquatic life use or that has an existing aquatic life use, treatment shall be provided by another treatment BMP option.~~

Note: Bioretention systems that are constructed using the soil mix specified in Section 5.4.4.5 will qualify as Enhanced Treatment.

Phosphorus Treatment

~~In addition to the requirements for presettling and pretreatment are summarized in Table 4.1, the following combinations treatment trains can also provide phosphorus treatment:~~

- ~~Infiltration BMP through soils that meet the minimum soil suitability criteria for water quality treatment (refer to Section 4.5.2) preceded by a presettling cell or Basic Treatment BMP, except where presettling is not required due to the size of the contributing basin. Refer to the design criteria for the specific BMP for further information about presettling requirements. ÷~~

~~If infiltration is through soils that meet the soil suitability criteria for water quality treatment (refer to Section 4.5.2), a presettling cell or a basic treatment BMP can serve for pretreatment.~~

- ~~Infiltration preceded by a Basic Treatment BMP through soils that do NOT meet the minimum soil suitability criteria for water quality treatment (refer to Section 4.5.2) if:~~
 - ~~It is preceded by a Basic Treatment BMP, AND~~
 - ~~There is a minimum distance of 1/4 mile between the infiltration location and the phosphorus sensitive receiving water (or tributary to that water).~~

~~If infiltration is through soils that do not meet the soil suitability criteria for water quality treatment (refer to Section 4.5.2), treatment shall be provided by a basic treatment BMP unless the soil and site fit the description in the next option below.~~

- ~~Infiltration preceded by a Phosphorus Treatment BMP:~~

~~If the infiltration soils do not meet the soil suitability criteria for water quality treatment (refer to Section 4.5.2) and the infiltration site is within 1/4 mile of a nutrient-critical receiving water, or a tributary to that water, treatment shall be provided by another a phosphorus treatment train BMP. At the time of publishing, the City has not have any designated any nutrient-critical receiving waters. In the event that any City nutrient-critical receiving waters are designated, the City will publish a Directors' Rule.~~

4.4.4. Site Considerations

Refer to *Chapter 5* for specific presettling requirements for some BMPs. Additional site considerations may apply depending on site conditions and other factors.

- Presettling:
 - For site considerations related to catch basins used as presettling structures, refer to City of Seattle Standard Plan No. 240, 241, or equivalent.
 - Refer to Site Considerations in *Chapter 5* for more information on presettling site consideration requirements specific to BMPs.
- Pretreatment:
 - Refer to manufacturer guidance for site considerations for hydrodynamic separators and floatables capture.

4.4.5. Design Criteria

Refer to *Chapter 5* for specific presettling requirements for some BMPs.

- Presettling:
 - Inflows shall be routed through a catch basin ~~or yard drain~~ with downturned elbow (trap) upstream of the BMP to capture sediment and reduce the potential for clogging. The minimum sump depth shall be 2 feet below outlet pipe.
 - Catch basins used for presettling shall be per City of Seattle Standard Plan No. 240, 241, or equivalent.

- Pretreatment:
 - Refer to manufacturer guidance for design criteria for hydrodynamic separators and floatables capture.
 - [Refer to BMP T6.10: Presettling Basin in the Volume V of the SWMMWW for specific design criteria and site constraints and setbacks including dam safety design and review requirements for impoundments that store greater than or equal to 10 acre-feet \(435,600 cubic feet or 3.26 million gallons\) above the natural ground level or have an embankment height of greater than 6 feet at the downstream toe.](#)

4.4.6. Operations and Maintenance Requirements

Presettling and pretreatment BMP operations and maintenance requirements are provided in *Appendix G* for Infiltration Facilities, Biofiltration Swales, Filter Strips, Wet Ponds, Stormwater Treatment Wetlands, Sand Filter Basins, and Sand Filter Vaults.

Refer to Ecology's website and the manufacturer for BMP-specific maintenance requirements for hydrodynamic separators (<https://ecology.wa.gov/Regulations-Permits/Guidance-technical-assistance/Stormwater-permittee-guidance-resources/Emerging-stormwater-treatment-technologies>www.ecy.wa.gov/programs/WQ/stormwater/newtech/technologies.html).

4.5. Infiltration BMPs

Infiltration BMPs have specific sizing guidelines and soil requirements that are summarized in the following subsections.

4.5.1. Infiltration BMP Sizing

Sizing for selected infiltration BMPs are provided in the BMP Sizing sections of *Chapter 5*. Below are the general procedures for sizing an infiltration BMP to: (A) infiltrate 100 percent of runoff; (B) meet the water quality treatment requirements; and (C) meet flow control standards. Infiltration BMPs shall be designed using an approved model.

- (A) For 100 percent infiltration (e.g., for project sites without a point of discharge):
- Input dimensions of the infiltration BMP into an approved model
 - Input design infiltration rate (measured infiltration rate with correction factor applied)
 - Input a riser height and diameter to represent the BMP overflow conditions (any flow through the riser indicates that you have less than 100 percent infiltration and shall increase the infiltration BMP dimensions)
 - Run the model and review the model-reported percentage of runoff infiltrated. If less than 100 percent infiltrated, increase BMP dimensions until 100 percent infiltration is achieved. There is no need to check duration when infiltrating 100 percent of the full continuous record runoff file.
- (B) For 91 percent infiltration (water quality treatment requirement):
- The procedure is the same as option A, except that the target is to infiltrate 91 percent of the influent runoff volume. In addition, to prevent the onset of anaerobic conditions, an infiltration BMP designed for water quality treatment purposes shall be designed to drain the water quality design treatment volume within 48 hours. The water quality design treatment volume is reported by the approved models.
 - The drawdown time can be calculated by using a horizontal projection of the infiltration basin mid-depth dimension and the design infiltration rate. Refer to *Section 4.5.2* for soil requirements for water quality treatment.
- (C) To meet flow control standards with infiltration:
- This design allows less than 100 percent infiltration as long as any BMP overflows meet the numerical peak and/or duration standards outlined in *Volume 1, Section 3.2*. Set up the model as explained for 100 percent infiltration (option A). Run the model and review the flow duration and flow frequency results to determine if the standard is achieved.

4.5.2. Soil Requirements for Water Quality Treatment

The soil requirements for water quality treatment vary depending on the type of infiltration BMP. Many infiltration BMPs (e.g., infiltration basins, infiltration trenches, and permeable pavement facilities) rely on the properties of the underlying soils (i.e., existing underneath the facility) to meet water quality treatment requirements. Bioretention systems utilize imported soils meeting specific criteria to meet water quality treatment requirements. The following sections summarize the applicable soil requirements for both categories of BMPs.

4.5.2.1. Underlying Soil Requirements for Infiltration BMPs

Infiltration basins, infiltration trenches, and permeable pavement facilities meet the requirements for basic, phosphorus, and enhanced treatment provided that the following soil suitability criteria are met:

- **Soil Suitability Criteria #1** – For infiltration BMPs used for treatment purposes, the measured (initial) soil infiltration rate shall be 9 inches/hour, or less. Design (long-term) infiltration rates up to 3.0 inches/hour can also be considered, if the infiltration receptor is not a sole-source aquifer as designated by EPA Region 10, and in the judgment of the experienced licensed professional, the treatment soil has characteristics comparable to those specified in Soil Suitability Criteria #2 to adequately control target pollutants.
- **Soil Suitability Criteria #2** – The underlying soil for a depth of at least 18 inches shall meet the following conditions:
 - Cation exchange capacity (CEC), as determined by U.S. EPA Method 9081, of the soil shall be greater than or equal to 5 milliequivalents per 100 grams of dry soil. Lower CEC content may be considered if it is based on a soil loading capacity determination for the target pollutants that is approved by the Director.
 - Organic content of the treatment soil (ASTM D 2974): Organic matter can increase the sorptive capacity of the soil for some pollutants. Soil organic content should be at least 1 percent; however, the licensed professional designing the facility shall evaluate whether the organic matter content is sufficient for control of the target pollutant(s).
- **Soil Suitability Criteria #3** – Waste materials of any kind, including recycled materials, shall not be used as infiltration media.

[If native soils do not meet these criteria, the appropriate type of water quality treatment BMP \(Enhanced, Phosphorus, or Basic\) is required prior to infiltration. Refer to Volume 1, Section 5.4.2 for the water quality treatment standards to be met and Section 3.5 of this volume to determine the type of water quality treatment BMP to use to meet those standards.](#)

4.5.2.2. Imported Soil and Sand

Infiltrating bioretention facilities (Section 5.4.4) meet the requirements for basic and enhanced treatment, but are not subject to the same underlying soil ~~infiltration-treatment~~ requirements for infiltration basins, infiltration trenches, and permeable pavement facilities (i.e., soil suitability criteria #1 through #3) because they use the City-specific standards for

the imported bioretention soil mix. Soil requirements for bioretention facilities are provided in *Section 5.4.4.5*.

If permeable pavement is being designed to provide water quality treatment and the existing subgrade does not meet requirements for treatment soil provided in *Section 4.5.2*, a 6-inch water quality treatment course shall be included between the subbase and the storage reservoir. The course shall be composed of a media meeting the treatment soil criteria (*Section 4.5.2*) or the sand media material specification for sand filters in *Section 5.8.5*.

CHAPTER 5 – BMP DESIGN

For each BMP in this chapter, detailed technical information is organized as follows:

- **Description:** provides a description of the BMP and each of the BMP configurations.
- **Performance Mechanisms:** defines how pollutants are removed (treatment mechanisms) and/or how stormwater discharge is managed (flow control mechanisms).
- **Applicability:** lists the BMP configurations that can be designed to meet the requirements for on-site stormwater management, flow control, water quality treatment (basic, enhanced, oil control, phosphorus), and/or conveyance.
- **Site Considerations:** identifies the limitations associated with siting each BMP. The application of a BMP may be constrained by factors such as approximate footprint, groundwater elevation, soil characteristics, and other site-specific conditions.
- **Design Criteria:** provides descriptions and specifications for BMP components and materials.
- **BMP Sizing:** presents sizing requirements and modeling procedures for each BMP. General modeling guidance is provided in *Appendix F*.
- **Minimum Construction Requirements:** describes critical considerations during construction of the BMP, such as erosion control, landscape stabilization, and timing of BMP installation.
- **Operations and Maintenance Requirements:** provides a reference to the operations and maintenance (O&M) requirements included in *Appendix G*.

5.1. Soil Amendment BMP

5.1.1. Description

Site soils shall meet minimum quality and depth requirement at project completion.

~~Requirements may be achieved by either retaining and protecting undisturbed soil or restoring the soil.~~ This code requirement shall be met by:

- Retention and protection of undisturbed soil; or
- Restoration of soil quality and depth (e.g., amending with compost) in disturbed areas

Additional guidance for this BMP can be found in Seattle Tip 531, Post Construction Soil Management, and *Building Soil: Guidelines and Resources for Implementing Soil Quality and Depth BMP T5.13* (Stenn et al. ~~2018~~2012), which is available at the building soil website (www.buildingsoil.org).

5.1.2. Performance Mechanisms

Naturally occurring (undisturbed) soil, soil organisms, and vegetation provide the following important stormwater management functions:

- Water infiltration
- Nutrient, sediment, and pollutant adsorption
- Sediment and pollutant biofiltration
- Water interflow storage and transmission
- Pollutant decomposition

These functions are largely lost when development strips away underlying soil and vegetation and replaces it with minimal soil and sod. Soil amendment helps to regain greater stormwater functions in the post development landscape, provide increased treatment of pollutants and sediments that result from development and habitation, and minimize ~~the need for some landscaping reliance on~~ chemicals for weed/pest control or plant vigor, thus ~~reducing pollution~~ protecting water quality through prevention.

5.1.3. Applicability

Soil amendment BMP requirements are applicable to ~~a~~All areas subject to clearing, grading, or compaction (including construction laydown areas) that have not been covered by ~~hard~~impervious surface, incorporated into a stormwater BMP~~drainage facility~~, or engineered for stability as (e.g., structural fill or cut slope(s) for sediment and erosion control). ~~shall, at project completion, meet the soil amendment BMP requirements.~~ Only the areas of the sites where existing vegetation and/or soil are disturbed or compacted are required to be restored.

Soil amendment can also be used to help achieve on-site stormwater management ~~and~~ flow control, and water quality treatment standards. Refer to when integrated into a dispersion BMP (refer to Section 5.3) ~~for integrating soil amendment with dispersion BMPs and Section 5.1.6 for modeling amended soils.~~

5.1.4. *Site Considerations*

On slopes exceeding 33 percent, soil amendment is not required, but may be used if recommended by a licensed professional.

~~At project completion, meet soil amendment requirements for all areas subject to clearing, grading, or compaction that have not been covered by a hard surface, incorporated into a drainage facility, or engineered as structural fill or slope. Only the areas where existing vegetation and/or soil are disturbed or compacted are required to be restored.~~

5.1.5. *Design Criteria*

This section describes the implementation options and design requirements for the soil amendment BMP. Typical cross-sections of compost-amended soil in planting bed and turf applications are shown in Figure 5.1. Design criteria are provided in this section for the following elements:

- [Soil amendments](#)
- Implementation options
- Soil retention
- ~~Soil quality~~
- Soil Management Plan

5.1.5.1. *Soil AmendmentsQuality*

Soil organic matter is often missing from disturbed soils. Replenish organic matter by amending with compost. Standardized “pre-approved” soil amendment rates have been established for planting beds and turf areas. Alternatively, custom amendment rates may be calculated. Both options are described in further detail in the subsequent section.

All areas subject to clearing and grading that have not been covered by hard surface, incorporated into a drainage facility, or engineered as structural fill or slope shall, at project completion, demonstrate the following:

- A topsoil layer, whether stockpiled soil, amended soil or imported soil, meeting these requirements:
 - An organic matter content, as measured by the loss-on-ignition test, of a minimum 8 percent (target 10 percent) dry weight in planting beds, or a minimum 4 percent (target 5 percent) organic matter content in turf areas. Acceptable test methods for determining loss-on-ignition soil organic matter include the most current version of ASTM D2974 (Test Methods for Moisture, Ash, and Organic Matter of Peat and Other Organic Soils) and TMECC 05.07A (Loss-On-Ignition Organic Matter Method).
 - A pH from 6.0 to 8.0 or matching the pH of the original undisturbed soil.
 - A minimum depth of 8 inches.

- These requirements may be met with the City of Seattle Standard Specifications: 9-14.1(1) Topsoil Type A – Imported; 9-14.1(2) Reused Amended Site Soil; 9-14.1(4) Planting Soil; or 9-14.1(5) General Turf Area Soil.
- Root zones within the dripline of existing trees to be retained must be protected from all disturbance and/or construction impacts. Refer to City of Seattle Standard Plan No. 133 and Standard Specification 8-01.3(2)B for applicable tree retention requirements. where tree roots limit the depth of incorporation of amendments are exempted from this requirement. Fence and protect these root zones from stripping of soil, grading, or compaction to the maximum extent practical.
- Scarify subsoils below the topsoil layer at least 4 inches for a finished minimum depth of 12 inches of uncompacted soil. Incorporate some of the upper material to avoid stratified layers, where feasible.
- After planting: mulch planting beds with 2 to 4 inches of organic material such as arborist wood chips, medium compost, or coarse bark, shredded leaves, compost, etc.
- Use compost and other materials that meet either of the two the-following organic content requirements:
 - The organic content for “pre-approved” amendment rates can only be met using compost that meets the definition of “composted materials” in WAC 173-350 Section 220. Compost meeting the City of Seattle Standard Specification 9.14.4(8) Compost is recommended but not required. The compost shall have an organic matter content of 40 percent to 65 percent, and a carbon to nitrogen ratio below 25:1. As an exception, the carbon to nitrogen ratio may be as high as 35:1 for plantings composed entirely of plants native to the Puget Sound Lowlands region.
 - Calculated amendment rates may be met through use of composted materials as defined above, or other organic materials amended to meet the carbon to nitrogen ratio requirements, and meeting the contaminant standards compost specified in WAC 173-350 Section 220. Refer to the *Building Soil* manual (Stenn et al. ~~2018~~2012) or website (www.buildingsoil.org) for the method of calculating custom amendment rates.

Ensure that the resulting soil is conducive-suitable for to the type (species) of vegetation to be established. A qualified horticultural, soil or landscape design professional may submit a Soil Management Plan showing different amounts or types of soil amendment and mulch than those described in the “pre-approved” rates. Carbon-to-nitrogen ratios and soil pH may also be varied to suit plant needs. The Soil Management Plan shall describe how the soil preparation is conducive to the type of vegetation to be established. It shall still provide the required uncompacted soil depth and as much organic matter as the vegetation will tolerate, with an appropriate surface mulch after planting.

5.1.5.2. Implementation Options

The soil quality design requirements can be met by using one of the four options listed below:

1. Retain and Protect Undisturbed Soil:
 - Leave undisturbed vegetation and soil, and protect from compaction by fencing and keeping materials storage and equipment off these areas during construction.

[Refer to City of Seattle Standard Specification 8-01.3\(2\)B for protection requirements such as fencing and other applicable protection measures.](#)

- For all areas where soil or vegetation are disturbed, use option 2, 3, or 4.

2. Amend Soil:

- Amend existing site *in situ* topsoil or subsoil either at default “pre-approved” rates, or at custom calculated rates to meet the soil quality guidelines based on engineering tests of the soil and amendment. The default pre-approved rates are:
 - In planting beds: place 3 inches of compost and till in to an 8-inch depth.
 - In turf areas: place 1.75 inches of compost and till in to an 8-inch depth.
 - Scarify (loosen) subsoil 4 inches below amended layer to produce a 12-inch depth of un-compacted soil.
 - After planting: apply 2 to 4 inches of arborist wood chips, [medium compost](#), or [coarse](#) compost ~~mulch to in the~~ planting beds. Coarse bark mulch may be used but has lower benefits to plants and soil. Do not use fine bark because it can seal the soil surface.

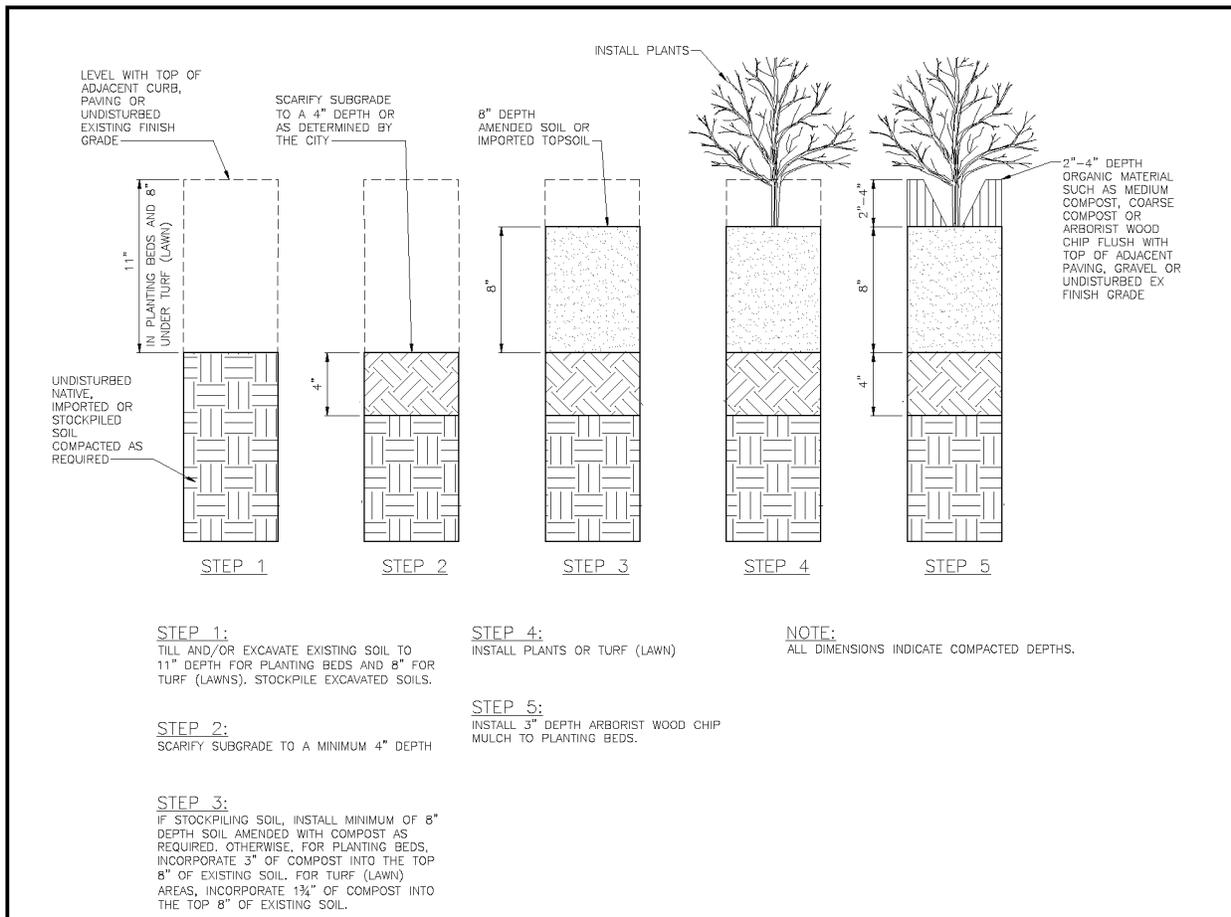


Figure 5.1. Cross-Section of Soil Amendment.

3. Stockpile Soil:

- Stockpile existing topsoil during grading and replace it prior to planting. Amend stockpiled topsoil if needed to meet the organic matter or depth requirements either at the default “pre-approved” rate or at a custom calculated rate (refer to the Building Soil manual [Stenn et al. [20182012](#)] or website (www.buildingsoil.org), for custom calculation method). Scarify subsoil and mulch planting beds, as described in option (2) above.

4. Import Soil:

- Import topsoil mix of sufficient organic content and [install to meet](#) depth ~~to meet the~~ requirements. Imported soils should not contain excessive clay or silt fines (more than 5 percent passing the No. 200 sieve) because that could restrict stormwater infiltration. The default pre-approved rates for imported topsoils are:
 - For planting beds: use a mix by volume of 35 percent compost with 65 percent mineral soil to achieve the requirement of a minimum 8 percent (target 10 percent) organic matter by loss-on-ignition test.
 - For turf areas: use a mix by volume of 20 percent compost with 80 percent mineral soil to achieve the requirement of a minimum 4 percent (target 5 percent) organic matter by loss-on-ignition test.
 - Scarify subsoil and mulch planting beds, as described in option (2) above.

Note: More than one method may be used on different portions of the same site.

5.1.5.3. Soil Retention

Retain and protect the duff layer and native topsoil in an undisturbed state to the maximum extent feasible, and protect from compaction (SMC, Section 22.805.020.D.2).

~~Prior to disturbance of areas not subject to soil retention requirements, in any areas requiring grading, remove, and stockpile, and protect the duff layer and topsoil on site in a designated, controlled area, which is not adjacent to public resources and critical areas. Distribute stockpiled materials to areas shown on project plans for new tree and/or plant installation. Reapply to other portions of the site where feasible.~~

Root zones where tree roots limit the depth of incorporation of amendments are exempted from this requirement. Fence and protect these root zones from stripping of soil, grading, or compaction to the maximum extent practical.

5.1.5.4. Soil Management Plan

A Soil Management Plan is required and shall include the following:

- A site map showing areas to be fenced and left undisturbed during construction, and areas that will be amended at the turf or planting bed rates
- Calculations of the amounts of compost, compost amended topsoil, and mulch to be used on the site.

5.1.6. BMP Sizing

When the soil amendment BMP is applied as part of a dispersion BMP design, the On-Site List Requirement is met for the hard surface area that is dispersed. On-site stormwater management and flow control standards can also be met or partially met as described under the following sections:

- Full Dispersion (*Section 5.3.2*)
- Splashblock Downspout Dispersion (*Section 5.3.3*)
- Trench Downspout Dispersion (*Section 5.3.4*)
- Sheet Flow Dispersion (*Section 5.3.5*)
- Concentrated Flow Dispersion (*Section 5.3.6*)

~~All lawn and landscaped areas that meet the soil amendment BMP requirements are amended using implementation options 2, 3, or 4 from Section 5.1.5.2 will generate less runoff and may be modeled as pasture rather than lawn (WWHM) or grass (MGSFlood) surface over the underlying soil (till or outwash).~~

5.1.7. Minimum Construction Requirements

Minimum construction requirements for disturbed areas include the following:

- Incorporate soil to meet Soil Amendment BMP requirements toward the end of construction, ~~and once established,~~ protect amended areas from ~~compaction and erosion or damage by work as well as any other site improvements to follow.~~
- Plant soil with appropriate vegetation and mulch planting beds.

Additional information is provided in the *Building Soil* manual (Stenn et al. ~~2018~~2012).

5.1.8. Operations and Maintenance Requirements

The most important maintenance ~~issue-practice~~ is to replenish the soil organic matter by leaving leaf litter and grass clippings on-site (or by adding compost and mulch regularly). ~~This BMP is designed to reduce the need for irrigation, fertilizers, herbicides, and pesticides. This routinely scheduled task is necessary to minimize reliance on chemicals for weed/pest control or plant vigor, thus protecting water quality.~~

5.2. Tree Planting and Retention

5.2.1. Description

New trees can be planted and/or existing trees can be protected and retained on a project site to achieve on-site stormwater management and/or flow control credits.

5.2.2. Performance Mechanisms

Trees provide flow control via interception, transpiration, and increased infiltration. Additional environmental benefits include improved air quality, carbon sequestration, reduced heat island effect, pollutant removal, and habitat.

5.2.3. Applicability

Retained and newly planted trees receive credits toward meeting on-site stormwater management and flow control requirements. The degree of flow control that can be provided depends on the tree type (i.e., evergreen or deciduous), canopy area, and whether or not the tree canopy overhangs hard surfaces. [Retained and newly planted trees](#) ~~This BMP~~ can be applied to meet or partially meet the requirements listed below.

BMP	On-site		Flow Control			Water Quality				Conveyance
	List	Standard	Forest	Pasture	Peak	Basic	Enhanced	Oil Control	Phosphorus	
Tree Planting and Retention	✓	✓ ^a	✓ ^a	✓ ^a	✓ ^a					

^a Standard may be partially achieved.

5.2.4. Site Considerations

Trees ~~can provide are a landscape amenity with~~ flow control benefits ~~that can be planted or retained in most settings~~. On-site stormwater management and/or flow control credit is ~~given~~ [provided](#) for ~~retaining-retained~~ or ~~planting-newly planted~~ trees within 20 feet of ground level hard surfaces such as driveways, patios, and parking lots. Refer to *Appendix C* for additional infeasibility criteria for the On-site List Approach.

Retained or newly planted trees may also count toward Green Factor, landscaping, and/or tree protection requirements.

Site considerations specific to retained and newly planted trees are provided below.

5.2.4.1. Retained Trees

Setbacks of proposed infrastructure from existing trees are critical [site-planning](#) considerations. Tree protection requirements limit grading and other disturbances in

proximity to the tree (refer to SMC Chapter 25.11, City of Seattle Standard Specification 1-07.16(2), 8-01.3(2)A and City of Seattle Standard Plan No. 132 and 133).

5.2.4.2. *Newly Planted Trees*

Mature tree height, size, and rooting depth shall be considered to ensure that the tree location is appropriate given adjacent and above- and below-ground infrastructure. Although setbacks will vary by species, some general recommendations are presented below.

- Minimum 5-foot or 1/3 the mature canopy diameter, whichever is greater, setback from structures
- Minimum 5-foot setback from underground utility lines
- Minimum 2-foot setback from edge of any paved surface

5.2.5. *Design Criteria*

This section provides the design requirements for retained trees and newly planted trees.

5.2.5.1. *Retained Trees*

To quality for achieve on-site stormwater management and/or flow control credits by retaining trees on the project site, the requirements described below must-shall be met. Design criteria are provided in this section for the following elements:

- Tree species and condition
- Tree size
- Tree canopy area (based on dripline delineation)
- Tree location (with setbacks from ground level hard surfaces and underground utilities)

Tree Condition and Compatibility with Construction

Clearly show existing tree species and tree locations on submittal drawings. Trees to be retained shall be adequately viable for long-term retention (i.e., in good health and compatible with proposed construction).

Tree Size

To receive on-site stormwater management and and/or flow control credit, retained trees shall have a minimum 4 inch diameter at breast height (DBH). DBH is defined as the outside bark diameter at 4.5 feet above the ground on the uphill side of a tree. For existing trees smaller than this, the newly planted tree credit may be applied if the requirements presented in *Section 5.2.5.2 Newly Planted Trees* are met.

Tree Canopy Area

The canopy area of the retained tree is measured as the area within the tree dripline. A dripline is the line encircling the base of a tree, which is delineated by a vertical line extending from the outer limit of a tree's branch tips down to the ground (refer to City of

Seattle Standard Plan [No. 133](#)). If trees are clustered, overlapping canopies are not double counted.

Tree Location

The credit for retained trees depends upon proximity to ground level hard surfaces. To receive credit, the existing tree shall be located on the development site [or abutting right-of-way](#) and within 20 feet of new or replaced ground level hard surfaces (e.g., driveway, patio, parking lot). For single-family residential projects only, credit is also given for trees that are 20 feet or less from existing ground level hard surfaces in the right-of-way (e.g., sidewalk). Distance from the edge of hard surfaces is measured from the tree trunk center at ground level. Refer *Section 5.2.4.1* for other setbacks applicable to retained trees.

The City may require an arborist report if a hard surface is proposed within the critical root zone of the existing tree. The critical root zone is defined as the line encircling the base of the tree within half the diameter of the dripline (refer to City of Seattle Standard Plan [No. 133](#)). If the arborist report concludes that the hard surface should not be placed within 20 feet of the tree trunk center, but canopy overlap with hard surface is still anticipated [given despite](#) a longer setback, credit may be approved.

Retained trees planted in planter boxes are eligible for credit if the planters provide a minimum soil depth of 30 inches and meet the minimum soil volume standards presented in Table 5.1.

Table 5.1. Minimum Soil Volume for Trees in Planters.

Tree Size Category ^a	Planting Area Soil Volume ^b	Planting Surface Area ^c	Example Dimensions ^c
Small Trees	Small trees not eligible for credit		
Small/Medium Trees	225 cubic feet	90 square feet	5 feet x 18 feet
Medium/Large Trees	375 cubic feet	150 square feet	6 feet x 25 feet
Large Trees	525 cubic feet	210 square feet	7 feet x 30 feet

^a Tree size categories from the City of Seattle Master Tree List.

^b Note that these are minimum soil volume requirements. Trees will be healthier, bigger, and longer-lived if greater soil volume is provided.

^c Surface area and example dimensions assume a 30-inch soil depth. Smaller surface areas can achieve the same volume if a deeper soil profile is provided, or if adjacent paved surfaces are [installed over structural soil or similar technologies engineered for structural support](#).

5.2.5.2. *Newly Plantedly Planted Trees*

To achieve on-site stormwater management and/or flow control credits by planting trees on a project site, the requirements described below [must shall](#) be met. Design criteria are provided in this section for the following elements:

- Tree species
- Tree size
- Tree location (with setbacks from ground level hard surfaces structures and belowground utilities)

- Plant material and planting specifications
- Irrigation

Tree Species

Approved tree species are listed in the [reference materials posted on City of Seattle Master Tree List \(Approved Tree List\) available via link from the SDCI's website \(www.seattle.gov/sdci/codes/codes-we-enforce-\(a-z\)/stormwater-codewww.seattle.gov/dpd/codesrules/codes/stormwater\)](#). Trees in the small category are not eligible for credit. Tree species not included ~~in~~ on the [reference materials posted on SDCI's websiteCity of Seattle Master Tree List](#) may be given credit with [the permissionprior approval by of](#) the Director.

Tree Size

To receive on-site stormwater management and/or flow control credit, new deciduous trees [with a single trunk](#) shall be at least 1.5 inches in diameter measured 6 inches above the ground. [New deciduous trees with a single trunk planted in the right-of-way shall be 2 to 2.5 inches in diameter \(e.g., caliper\) measured 6 inches above the ground. Multi-stemmed deciduous trees shall have at least three stems and be at least 6 feet tall.](#) New evergreen trees shall be at least 4 feet tall.

Tree Location

[Site-Locate](#) trees according to sun, soil, and moisture requirements. Select planting locations to ensure that sight distances and appropriate setbacks are maintained given mature height, size, and rooting depths.

Trees used to receive the newly planted tree credit shall meet the tree location requirements listed in *Section 5.2.5.1, Retained Trees*. Refer to *Section 5.2.4.2* for other setbacks applicable to new trees.

To help ensure tree survival and canopy coverage, the minimum tree spacing for newly planted trees shall accommodate mature tree spread (refer to [the reference materials posted on SDCI's websiteCity of Seattle Master Tree List](#)). On-site stormwater management and/or flow control credit will not be given for new trees with on-center spacing less than 10 feet.

New trees planted [in planter boxes on site or specifically approved and permitted for public right-of-wayin planter boxes](#) are eligible for credit if the planters provide a minimum soil depth of 30 inches and meet the minimum soil volume standards presented in Table 5.1.

Plant Material and Planting Specifications

Recommended guidelines for planting materials and methods are provided in City of Seattle Standard Specifications 8-02 and 9-14, and Standard Plan No. 100a, 100b, and 101.

5.2.6. BMP Credits

5.2.6.1. Credit for On-site List Approach

Hard surface areas managed by newly planted trees meet the On-site List Requirement (refer to *Section 3.3.1*). Trees shall meet the Design Criteria in *Section 5.2.5* ~~and shall be planted to the maximum extent feasible~~. Retained trees meeting the requirements presented in this section may be ~~also be used in lieu of newly planted trees~~ to meet the on-site list requirement.

[On-site stormwater management credits for retained and newly planted trees are provided in Tables 5.2 and 5.3. These credits can be applied to reduce the hard surface area requiring on-site stormwater management.](#)

Table 5.2. Pre-sized [On-site Stormwater Management and Flow Control Credits](#) for Retained Trees.

Tree Type	Credit
Evergreen	20% of canopy area (minimum of 100 square feet/tree)
Deciduous	10% of canopy area (minimum of 50 square feet/tree)

Hard Surface Area Managed = Σ Canopy Area x Credit (%) / 100.

Table 5.3. Pre-sized [On-site Stormwater Management and Flow Control Credits](#) for Newly Planted Trees.

Tree Type	Credit
Evergreen	50 square feet/tree
Deciduous	20 square feet/tree

Hard Surface Area Managed = Σ Number of Trees x Credit (square feet/tree).

5.2.6.2. Pre-Sized Approach for Flow Control

The Pre-sized Approach may be used for projects with new and replaced hard surface areas up to 10,000 square feet. Flow control credits for retained and newly planted trees are provided in Tables 5.2 and 5.3. These credits can be applied to reduce the hard surface area requiring flow control.

To use these credits, the requirements outlined in *Section 5.2.5 Design Criteria* ~~must~~ shall be met. The total tree credit for retained and newly planted trees shall not exceed 25 percent of the new plus replaced hard surface requiring mitigation. Tree credits are not applicable to trees located in native vegetation areas used for flow dispersion or other flow control or on-site stormwater management credit.

5.2.6.3. Modeling Approach for On-site Performance Standard and Flow Control

When using the Modeling Approach to meet the On-Site Performance Standard or flow control standards, the credits for retained and newly planted trees (Tables 5.2 and 5.3) can be applied as explained for the *Pre-sized Approach for Flow Control*. The hard surface areas credited by the retained and newly planted trees need not be entered into the continuous

[runoff](#) hydrologic model when sizing other on-site stormwater management or flow control BMPs.

5.2.7. Minimum Construction Requirements

Install and maintain fence and protect the existing tree roots [within the dripline and provide additional protection for](#), trunk, [structural branches and](#) ~~and~~ [and full](#) canopy [extents](#) during construction activities per SMC Tree Protection Chapter 25.11, City of Seattle Standard Specification 1-07.16(2), 8-01.3(2)A, and City of Seattle Standard Plan No. 132a and 133.

Planting methods for new trees are provided in [Section 5.2.5.2 Newly Planted Trees](#).

5.2.8. Operations and Maintenance Requirements

The following O&M requirements apply to retained trees:

- [Retain, maintain, and protect trees on the site for the life of the development or until any approved redevelopment occurs.](#)
- ~~—~~
- Prune [when necessary, for compatibility with site uses or right of way functions, for clearances from public and privately owned infrastructure and/or to avoid damage to trees, important to preserve the health and longevity of trees.](#), ~~when necessary, for compatibility with other infrastructure and/or to preserve the health and longevity of trees.~~ Meet industry standards for pruning (ANSI A300 standards).

The following O&M requirements apply to newly planted trees:

- Provide supplemental irrigation [for at least five](#) ~~during the first three~~ growing seasons after planting to help ensure tree survival.

Additional O&M requirements for dead or declining trees are provided in [Appendix G \(BMP No. 26\)](#).

5.3. Dispersion BMPs

Dispersion BMPs disperse runoff over vegetated pervious areas to provide flow control. The dispersion BMPs in this section include:

- Full dispersion
- Splashblock downspout dispersion
- Trench downspout dispersion
- Sheet flow dispersion
- Concentrated flow dispersion

Key design requirements that are common to all dispersion BMPs are provided in *Section 5.3.1*. Guidance and requirements that are specific to the different types of dispersion are provided in the subsequent sections.

5.3.1. Design Requirements for Dispersion BMPs

5.3.1.1. General Site Considerations

The following are key considerations in determining the feasibility of dispersion BMPs for a particular site:

- Dispersion flowpath area – Dispersion BMPs generally require large areas of vegetated ground cover to meet flowpath requirements and are not feasible in most urban settings.
- Erosion or flooding potential – Dispersion is not allowed in settings where the dispersed flows might cause erosion or flooding problems, either onsite or on adjacent properties.
- Site topography – Dispersion flowpaths are prohibited in and near certain sloped areas (refer to flowpath requirements below).

5.3.1.2. General Design Criteria for Dispersion Flowpaths

Flowpath design requirements that are common to all dispersion BMPs are listed below. Additional requirements that are specific to each of the dispersion types are provided in each BMP section.

- The vegetated flowpath shall consist of either undisturbed, well-established native landscape or lawn, or landscape or groundcover over soil that meets the Soil Amendment BMP requirements outlined in *Section 5.1*.
- To ensure that the groundcover is dense to help disperse and infiltrate flows and prevent erosion, the design plans shall specify that vegetation coverage of plants will achieve 90 percent coverage within 1 year.
- The flowpath topography shall promote shallow sheet flow across a width of no less than 6 feet for dispersion points (i.e., splashblocks or rock pads) or the width of the dispersion device (i.e., trench or sheet flow transition zone).

- The dispersion flowpath is not typically permitted within landslide-prone areas as defined by the Regulations for Environmentally Critical Areas (SMC, Section 25.09.020).
- The dispersion flowpath is not typically permitted within a setback above a steep slope area (SMC, Section 25.09.020). The setback is calculated as 10 times the height of the steep slope area (to a 500 foot maximum setback). Dispersion within this setback may be feasible provided a ~~detailed~~ slope stability analysis is completed by a geotechnical engineer. The analysis shall determine the effects that dispersion would have on the steep slope area and adjacent properties.
- The dispersion flowpath is not permitted within 100 feet of a contaminated site or landfill (active or closed).
- For sites with septic systems, the point of discharge to the dispersion device (e.g., splash block, dispersion trench) shall be downgradient of the drainfield primary and reserve areas.

5.3.2. Full Dispersion

On-site stormwater management, flow control, and/or water quality treatment standards may be provided using full dispersion as presented in the *Stormwater Management Manual for Western Washington* (SWMMWW). The requirements for full dispersion are difficult to achieve in an urban setting. As an example, [for the entire site of a residential development to be fully dispersed, its ~~must~~ shall](#) preserve 65 percent ~~of a site~~ in a forested or native condition and limit the impervious site coverage to 10 percent. [However, if the entire site cannot be fully dispersed, portions of it may be fully dispersed if there is a vegetated flow path of at least 100 feet downstream of the surface to be dispersed.](#) Given the large extent of vegetative cover required for full dispersion, these credits will most likely only apply to Seattle Parks or large campus projects.

Refer to BMP T5.30 in Volume V of the SWMMWW for full dispersion applicability, site considerations, design criteria, modeling requirements, and minimum construction requirements.

5.3.3. Splashblock Downspout Dispersion

5.3.3.1. Description

Splashblock downspout dispersion consists of a splashblock or crushed rock pad used to disperse downspout flows to a downslope well-vegetated flowpath of at least 50 feet.

5.3.3.2. Performance Mechanisms

Splashblock downspout dispersion can provide flow control via attenuation, soil storage, and losses to infiltration, evaporation, and transpiration.

5.3.3.3. Applicability

Splashblock downspout dispersion can be designed to provide on-site stormwater management and flow control. This BMP can be applied to meet or partially meet the requirements listed below. If the designer implements a dispersion BMP to meet water quality treatment standards, the BMP shall be designed using the additional design requirements for [vegetatedbasic](#) filter strips per *Section 5.8.4*.

BMP	On-site		Flow Control			Water Quality				Conveyance
	List	Standard	Forest	Pasture	Peak	Basic	Enhanced	Oil Control	Phosphorus	
Splashblock downspout dispersion	✓	✓ ^a	✓ ^a	✓ ^a	✓ ^a	✓ ^b				

^a Standard may be partially or completely achieved depending upon underlying soil type.

^b ~~Must~~ Shall meet additional design requirements for [vegetatedbasic](#) filter strips (refer to *Section 5.8.4*) [to fully meet the water quality treatment requirement](#).

5.3.3.4. Site Considerations

General site considerations for determining the feasibility of dispersion BMPs for a particular site are provided in *Section 5.3.1.1*. Refer to *Appendix C* for additional infeasibility criteria for the On-site List Approach.

5.3.3.5. Design Criteria

This section provides a description and requirements for the components of splashblock downspout dispersion. Typical components of splashblock downspout dispersion are shown in Figure 5.2. Design criteria are provided in this section for the following elements:

- Contributing area
- Splashblock or rock pad
- Dispersion flowpath
- Overflow

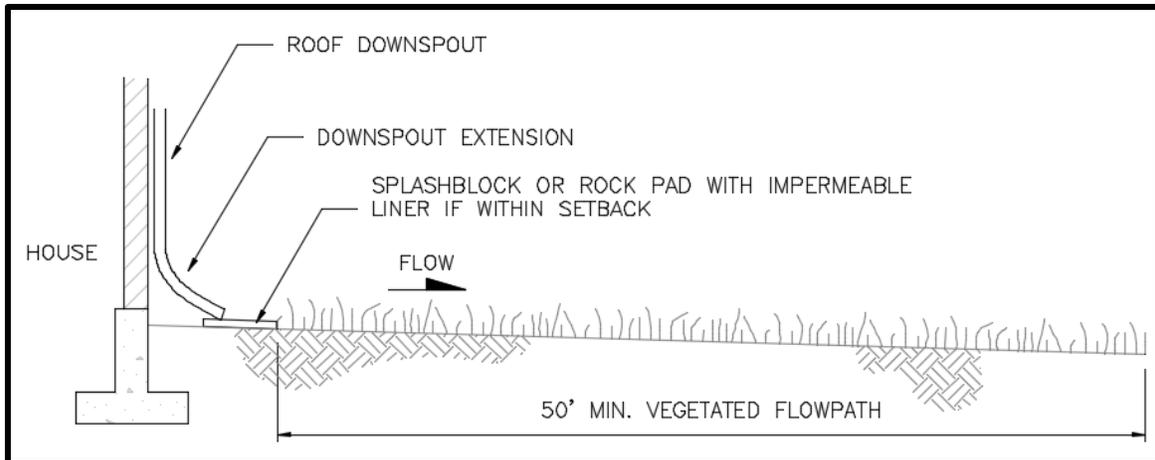


Figure 5.2. Typical Downspout Splashblock Dispersion.

Some of the critical requirements for splashblock downspout dispersion (e.g., flowpaths, setbacks) are shown in Figure 5.3.

Contributing Area

A maximum of 700 square feet of roof area may drain to each splashblock. If at least 50 percent of the roof is a vegetated roof, contributing roof areas up to 900 square feet will be allowed.

Splashblock or Rock Pad

A splashblock or a pad of crushed rock (2 feet wide by 3 feet long by 6 inches deep) shall be placed at each downspout point of discharge.

There are two approved methods for splashblock downspout dispersion:

- *Splashblock/Rock Pad:* If the ground is sloped away from the foundation, and there is adequate vegetation and area for effective dispersion, splashblocks/rock pads will typically be adequate to disperse stormwater runoff.
- *Splashblock/Rock Pad with downspout extension:* If the ground is fairly level, the building includes a basement, or if foundation drains are proposed, splashblocks with downspout extensions should be used to move the point of discharge away from the foundation. Downspout extensions can include piping to a splashblock/rock pad a considerable distance from the downspout.

The dispersion device (e.g., end of splash block, edge of rock pad, or edge of dispersion trench) shall be at least 5 feet from a structure. A 10-foot setback from a building with a basement is recommended. The rock pad shall have an impermeable liner within this setback.

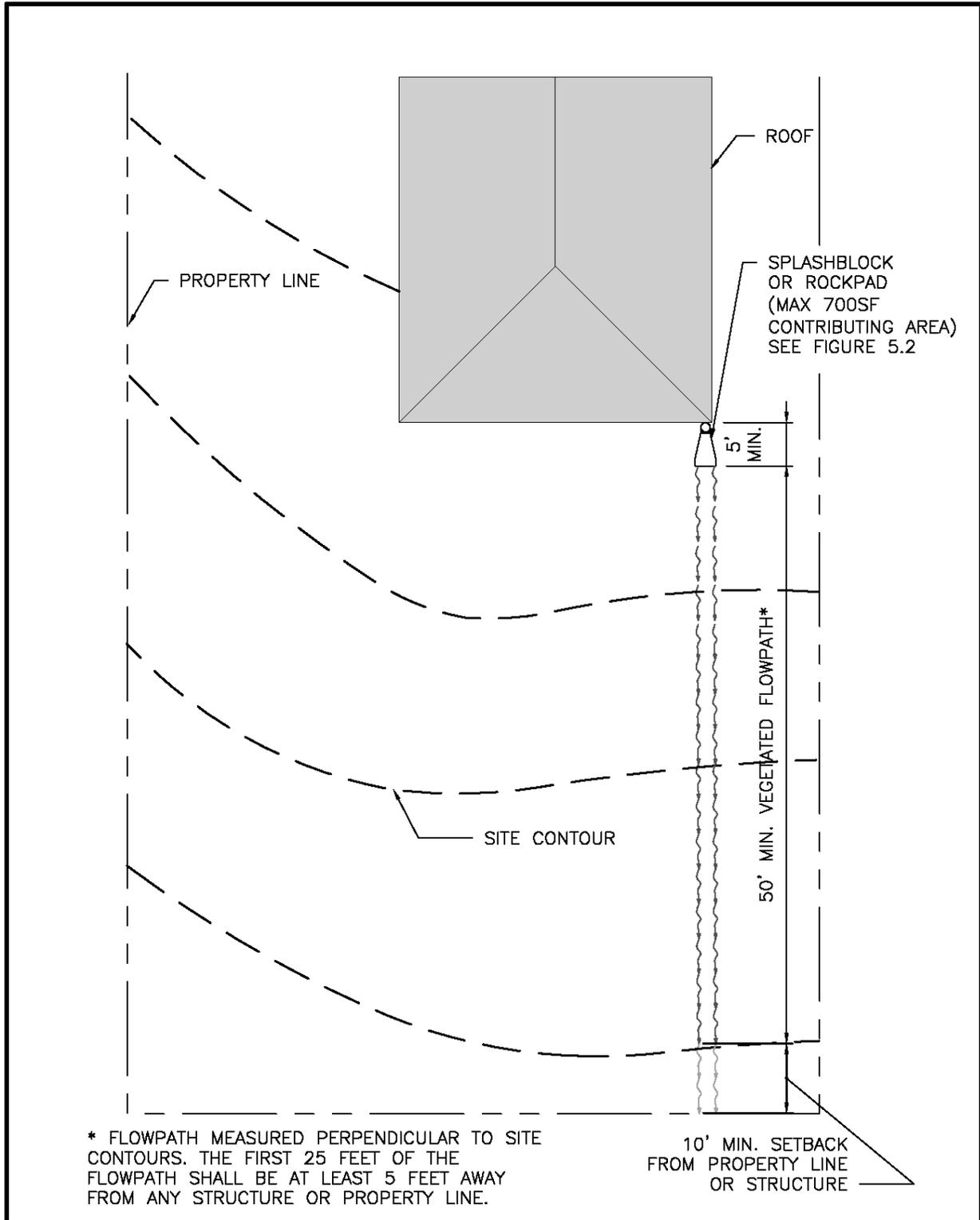


Figure 5.3. Typical Downspout Splashblock and Dispersion Trench Plan.

Dispersion Flowpath

The general minimum requirements for the dispersion flowpath are provided in *Section 5.3.1.2*. Additional flowpath requirements specific to splashblock downspout dispersion are listed below and shown in Figure 5.3:

- Provide a vegetated flowpath of at least 50 feet between the dispersion device (e.g., splash block, rock pad) and any ~~slope over 15 percent~~, stream, wetland, lake, ~~or other hard surface~~, or slope over 15 percent. Critical area buffers may count toward flowpath lengths. Measure the flowpath length perpendicular to site contours.
- The slope of the 50-foot vegetated flowpath shall not exceed 15 percent.
- Down gradient of the required 50 foot flowpath, an additional 10 feet shall be provided before the flowpath intersects a property line (~~excluding the except where the property line abutting abuts the right-of-way~~) or encounters a structure.
- ~~Install~~ The first 25 feet of the dispersion flowpath shall be at least 5 feet (perpendicular to the flowpath) from any structure or property line (except where the property line abuts the right-of-way).
- Provide a separate flowpath for each downspout dispersion device. For the purpose of maintaining adequate separation of flows discharged from adjacent dispersion devices, space vegetated flowpaths at least 20 feet apart at the upslope end and do not overlap with other flowpaths at any point along the flowpath lengths.
- For the purpose of measuring setbacks to structures, property lines or other flowpaths, assume the flowpath width to be 3 feet extending from the center line of the splashblock or rock pad. Measure setbacks from the edge of the assumed flowpath.

Overflow

Identify the overland flowpath for each downspout dispersion point. Consider surface flows that may extend beyond the design flowpath length. Do not allow flow to cause erosion or flooding onsite or on adjacent properties (refer to Section 4.3.3).

5.3.3.6. BMP Credits

Credit for On-site List Approach

The hard surface area dispersed using splashblock downspout dispersion meets the On-site List Requirement (refer to *Section 3.3.1* and *Appendix C* for infeasibility criteria).

Pre-sized Approach for Flow Control

The Pre-sized Approach may be used for projects with new and replaced hard surface areas up to 10,000 square feet. Under the Pre-sized Approach (refer to *Section 4.1.2*), flow control credits may be achieved by using downspout dispersion. Credits are provided in Table 5.4, organized by flow control standard. These credits can be applied to reduce the hard surface area requiring flow control. Since the credits for dispersion are less than 100 percent, the standard is not achieved and additional flow control measures will be required. As an example, for a site subject to the Pre-developed Pasture Standard, a dispersed hard surface area would receive a 91 percent credit. Therefore, 91 percent of the hard surface area dispersed can be excluded from flow control calculations. The hard surface area (area used to size a downstream flow control BMP) would be calculated as 9 percent of the hard surface area dispersed.

Table 5.4. Pre-Sized Flow Control Credits for Splashblock Downspout Dispersion.

Dispersion Type	Credit (%)	
	Pre-developed Pasture Standard	Peak Control Standard
Splashblock Downspout Dispersion	74% 94%	76% 94%

Hard Surface Area Managed = Hard Surface Area Dispersed x Credit (%) / 100.

The flow control credits outlined above are applicable only if downspout dispersion meets the minimum design requirements outlined in this section. Alternatively, dispersion can be evaluated using a continuous [runoff hydrologic simulation](#) model as described below.

Modeling Approach for On-site Performance Standard and Flow Control

Continuous hydrologic modeling may be used to quantify the performance of splashblock downspout dispersion relative to the on-site and flow control performance standards using the procedures and assumptions listed in Table 5.5.

Table 5.5. Continuous Modeling Assumptions for Downspout Dispersion.

Variable	Assumption
Precipitation Series	Seattle 158-year, 5-minute series
Computational Time Step	5 minutes
HSPF Parameters	LSUR, SLSUR, NSUR shall be adjusted per Appendix F
Flowpath Length	50 feet minimum
Flowpath Width	Match the width of the splash block or rock pad
Flowpath Slope	Proposed condition (15% maximum)
Roof Area Dispersed	<p>Single Downspout Option 1 (WWHM only): The connected rRoof area shall be dispersed modeled as lawn—a lateral flow impervious area over the underlying soil type (e.g., till). The lateral flow elements in WWHM are available on the Mitigated Scenario screen. The lateral flow impervious area element (roof area) should be connected to the lawn/landscape lateral flow soil basin element (the vegetated flowpath). Existing slope condition of dispersion flowpath should be used.</p> <p>Multiple Downspouts Option 2 (WWHM or MGSFlood): The roof area can be modeled as 50% landscaped (lawn in WWHM; grass in MGSFlood) and 50% impervious. Represent roof runoff dispersion using the lateral flow routine. Modeled flowpath width shall be no more than 6 feet for dispersion points (i.e., splashblocks or rock pads) or the width of the dispersion device (i.e., trench).</p>

[Refer to Section 5.1.6 for modeling amended soils to partially meet the flow control and/or water quality treatment requirement when runoff is dispersed on amended soil.](#)

5.3.3.7. Minimum Construction Requirements

Protect the dispersion flowpath from sedimentation and compaction during construction. If the flowpath area is disturbed during construction, restore the area to meet the Soil Amendment BMP requirements in *Section 5.1*, and establish a dense cover of lawn, landscape, or groundcover.

5.3.3.8. Operations and Maintenance Requirements

Splashblock downspout dispersion O&M requirements are provided in *Appendix G* (BMP No. [2524](#)).

5.3.4. Trench Downspout Dispersion

5.3.4.1. Description

Trench downspout dispersion consists of a gravel-filled dispersion trench used to disperse downspout flows to a downslope well-vegetated flowpath of at least 25 feet.

5.3.4.2. Performance Mechanisms

Trench downspout dispersion can provide flow control via attenuation, soil storage, and losses to infiltration, evaporation, and transpiration.

5.3.4.3. Applicability

Trench downspout dispersion can be designed to provide on-site stormwater management and flow control. This BMP can be applied to meet or partially meet the requirements listed below. If the designer implements a dispersion BMP to meet water quality treatment standards, the BMP shall be designed using the additional design requirements for [vegetatedbasic](#) filter strips per *Section 5.8.4*.

BMP	On-site		Flow Control			Water Quality				Conveyance
	List	Standard	Forest	Pasture	Peak	Basic	Enhanced	Oil Control	Phosphorus	
Trench downspout dispersion	✓	✓ ^a	✓ ^a	✓ ^a	✓ ^a	✓ ^b				

^a Standard may be partially or completely achieved depending upon underlying soil type.

^b [Must Shall](#) meet additional design requirements for [vegetatedbasic](#) filter strips (refer to *Section 5.8.4*) [to fully meet the water quality treatment requirement](#).

5.3.4.4. Site Considerations

General site considerations for determining the feasibility of dispersion BMPs for a particular site are provided in *Section 5.3.1.1*. Refer to *Appendix C* for additional infeasibility criteria for the On-site List Approach.

5.3.4.5. Design Criteria

This section provides a description and requirements for the components of trench downspout dispersion. Some of the critical requirements for trench downspout dispersion (e.g., flowpaths, setbacks) are shown in Figure 5.4. Design criteria are provided in this section for the following elements:

- [Contributing area](#)
- Downspout dispersion trench
- Dispersion flowpath
- Overflow

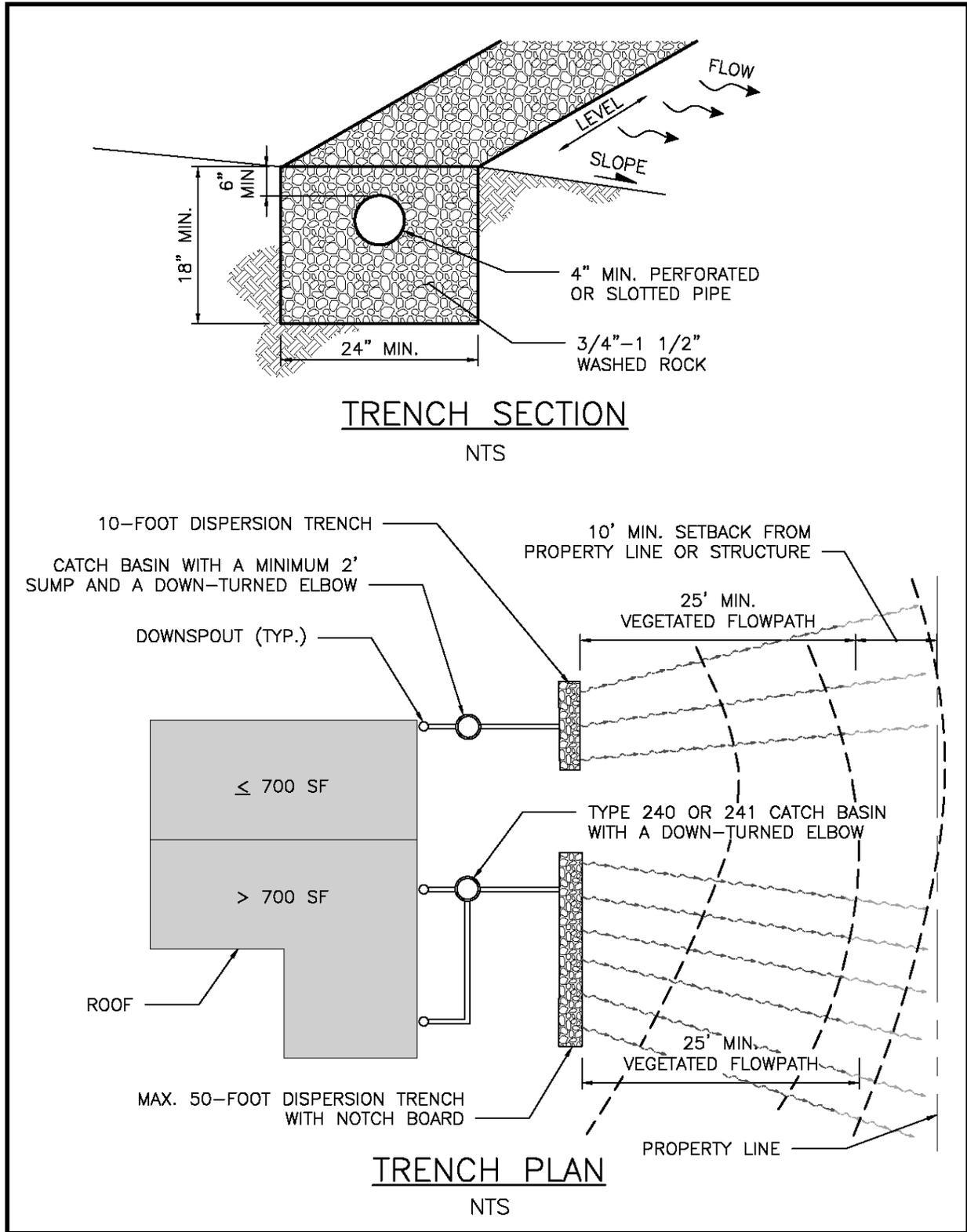


Figure 5.4. Typical Downspout Dispersion Trench.

Contributing Area

A maximum of 700 square feet of roof area may drain to each downspout dispersion trench. If at least 50 percent of the roof is a vegetated roof, contributing roof areas up to 900 square feet will be allowed.

Downspout Dispersion Trench

The minimum requirements associated with dispersion trench design include the following:

- The trench shall be a minimum of 18 inches deep and 2 feet wide.
- Trenches shall be filled with uniformly-graded, washed gravel with a nominal size from 0.75- to 1.5-inch diameter. The minimum void volume shall be 30 percent. These requirements can be met with City of Seattle Mineral Aggregate Type 4.
- The trench shall be level and aligned parallel to site elevation contours to disperse the water to the downslope flowpath. The trench shall be constructed to prevent point discharge and erosion.
- Water shall be conveyed to the trench with a solid pipe and distributed within the trench via a perforated or slotted pipe with a minimum diameter of 4 inches. Pipe cover shall be a minimum of 6 inches.
- Trenches serving up to 700 square feet of roof area shall be 10 feet long. For roof areas larger than 700 square feet, a dispersion trench with a dispersion device, such as a notched grade board, is recommended. Refer to BMP T5.10B in Volume VIII of the SWMMWW for typical plan and section views of a downspout dispersion trench with notched grade board. The total length of this design shall provide at least 10 feet of trench per 700 square feet of roof area and not exceed 50 feet. If the roof is a vegetated roof, contributing areas larger than 700 square feet may be approved for a 10-foot trench.
- A setback of at least 5 feet shall be maintained between any edge of the trench and any property line.
- The setback between any edge of the trench and any structure shall be 5 feet. A 10-foot setback from a building with a basement is recommended.

Presettling

Stormwater inflows shall be routed through a catch basin ~~or yard drain~~ with downturned elbow (trap) and 2-foot-deep sump upstream of the ~~drywell-dispersion trench~~ to capture sediment and reduce the potential for clogging. Catch basins shall be per City of Seattle Standard Plan No. 240, 241, or equivalent.

Dispersion Flowpath

The general minimum requirements for the dispersion flowpath are provided in *Section 5.3.1.2*. Additional flowpath requirements specific to trench downspout dispersion are listed below and shown in Figure 5.3:

- A vegetated flowpath shall be at least 25 feet between the outlet of the trench and ~~any~~ any property line, slope over 15 percent, stream, wetland, lake, structure, ~~or other~~

hard surface, or slope over 15 percent. Critical area buffers may count toward flowpath lengths. The flowpath length is measured perpendicular to site contours.

- The slope of the 25-foot vegetated flowpath shall not exceed 15 percent.
- Down gradient of the required 25-foot flowpath, an additional 10 feet shall be provided before the flowpath intersects a property line (~~excluding~~ except where the property line ~~abutting~~ abuts the right-of-way) or encounters a structure.
- The first 25 feet of the dispersion flowpath shall be at least 5 feet (perpendicularly to the flowpath) from any structure or property line (~~excluding~~ except where the property line ~~abutting~~ abuts the right-of-way).
- Each downspout dispersion device (e.g., dispersion trench) shall have a separate flowpath. For the purpose of maintaining adequate separation of flows discharged from adjacent dispersion devices, vegetated flowpaths shall be at least 20 feet apart at the upslope end and shall not overlap with other flowpaths at any point along the flowpath lengths.
- For the purpose of measuring setbacks to structures, property lines, and other flowpaths, the flowpath width shall be assumed to be the length of the dispersion trench. Setbacks shall be measured from the edge of the assumed flowpath.

Overflow

Identify the overland flowpath for each downspout dispersion point. Consider surface flows that may extend beyond the design flowpath length. Prevent flow from causing erosion or flooding on site or on adjacent properties (refer to Section 4.3.3).

5.3.4.6. BMP Credits

Credit for On-site List Approach

The hard surface area dispersed using trench downspout dispersion meets the On-site List Requirement (refer to *Section 3.3.1* and *Appendix C* for infeasibility criteria).

Pre-sized Approach for Flow Control

The Pre-sized Approach may be used for projects with new and replaced hard surface areas up to 10,000 square feet. Under the Pre-sized Approach (refer to *Section 4.1.2*), flow control credits may be achieved by using downspout dispersion. The credits provided in Table 5.6 can be applied to reduce the hard surface area requiring flow control as explained for splashblock downspout dispersion (refer to *Section 5.3.3.6*).

Table 5.6. Pre-sized Flow Control Credits for Trench Downspout Dispersion.

Dispersion Type	Credit (%)	
	Pre-developed Pasture Standard	Peak Control Standard
Trench Downspout Dispersion	<u>74%94%</u>	<u>9476%</u>

Hard Surface Area Managed = Hard Surface Area Dispersed x Credit (%) / 100.

Modeling Approach for On-site Performance Standard and Flow Control

Continuous hydrologic modeling may be used to quantify the performance of trench downspout dispersion relative to the on-site and flow control standards using the procedures and assumptions listed in [Table 5.7](#) presented for splashblock downspout dispersion in [Table 5.4](#) (refer to [Section 5.3.3.6](#)).

Table 5.7. Continuous Modeling Assumptions for Trench Downspout Dispersion.

Variable	Assumption
Precipitation Series	Seattle 2021 Precipitation Time Series
Computational Time Step	5 minutes
HSPF Parameters	LSUR, SLSUR, NSUR shall be adjusted per <i>Appendix F</i>
Flowpath Length	25 feet minimum
Flowpath Width	Width of the dispersion device (i.e., trench): 10 feet minimum
Flowpath Slope	Existing condition
Roof Area Dispersed	<p>Single Downspout (WWHM only): The connected roof area should be modeled as a lateral flow impervious area over the underlying soil type (e.g., till). The lateral flow elements in WWHM are available on the Mitigated Scenario screen. The lateral flow impervious area element (roof area) should be connected to the lawn/landscape lateral flow soil basin element (the vegetated flowpath).</p> <p>Multiple Downspouts (WWHM or MGSFlood): The roof area can be modeled as 50% landscaped (lawn in WWHM; grass in MGSFlood) and 50% impervious.</p>

Refer to [Section 5.1.6](#) for modeling amended soils to partially meet the flow control and/or water quality treatment requirement when runoff is dispersed on amended soil.

5.3.4.7. Minimum Construction Requirements

Protect the dispersion flowpath from sedimentation and compaction during construction. If the flowpath area is disturbed during construction, restore the area to meet the Soil Amendment BMP requirements in [Section 5.1](#) and establish a dense cover of lawn, landscape or groundcover. During construction confirm the dispersion trench surface is level (e.g., laser testing or flow test).

5.3.4.8. Operations and Maintenance Requirements

Trench downspout dispersion O&M requirements are provided in [Appendix G](#) (BMP No. [2524](#)).

5.3.5. Sheet Flow Dispersion

5.3.5.1. Description

Sheet flow dispersion is one of the simplest methods of runoff control. This BMP can be used for any hard surface or pervious surface that is graded to avoid concentrating flows. Because flows are already dispersed as they leave the surface (i.e., not concentrated), they need only traverse a narrow band of adjacent vegetation for effective flow attenuation and treatment.

5.3.5.2. Performance Mechanisms

Sheet flow dispersion can provide flow control via flow attenuation, soil storage, and losses to infiltration, evaporation, and transpiration.

5.3.5.3. Applicability

Sheet flow dispersion can be designed to provide on-site stormwater management and flow control. This BMP can be applied to meet or partially meet the requirements listed below. If the designer implements a dispersion BMP to meet water quality treatment standards, the BMP shall be designed using the additional design requirements for filter strips per *Section 5.8.4*.

BMP	On-site		Flow Control			Water Quality				Conveyance
	List	Standard	Forest	Pasture	Peak	Basic	Enhanced	Oil Control	Phosphorus	
Sheet flow dispersion	✓	✓ ^a	✓ ^a	✓ ^a	✓ ^a	✓ ^b				

^a Standard may be partially or completely achieved depending upon underlying soil type.

^b Must Shall meet additional design requirements for vegetatedbasic filter strips (refer to *Section 5.8.4*) to fully meet the water quality treatment requirement.

5.3.5.4. Site Considerations

General site considerations for determining the feasibility of dispersion BMPs for a particular site are provided in *Section 5.3.1.1*. Sheet flow dispersion is applicable for hard surfaces with slopes less than 15 percent, such as sidewalks, driveways, sport courts, patios, roofs without gutters, or other situations where concentration of flows can be avoided. Refer to *Appendix C* for additional infeasibility criteria for the On-site List Approach.

5.3.5.5. Design Criteria

This section provides a description and requirements for the components of sheet flow dispersion. A typical plan for driveway sheet flow dispersion is shown in Figure 5.5. Design criteria are provided in this section for the following elements:

- Contributing area
- Transition zone
- Dispersion flowpath
- Overflow

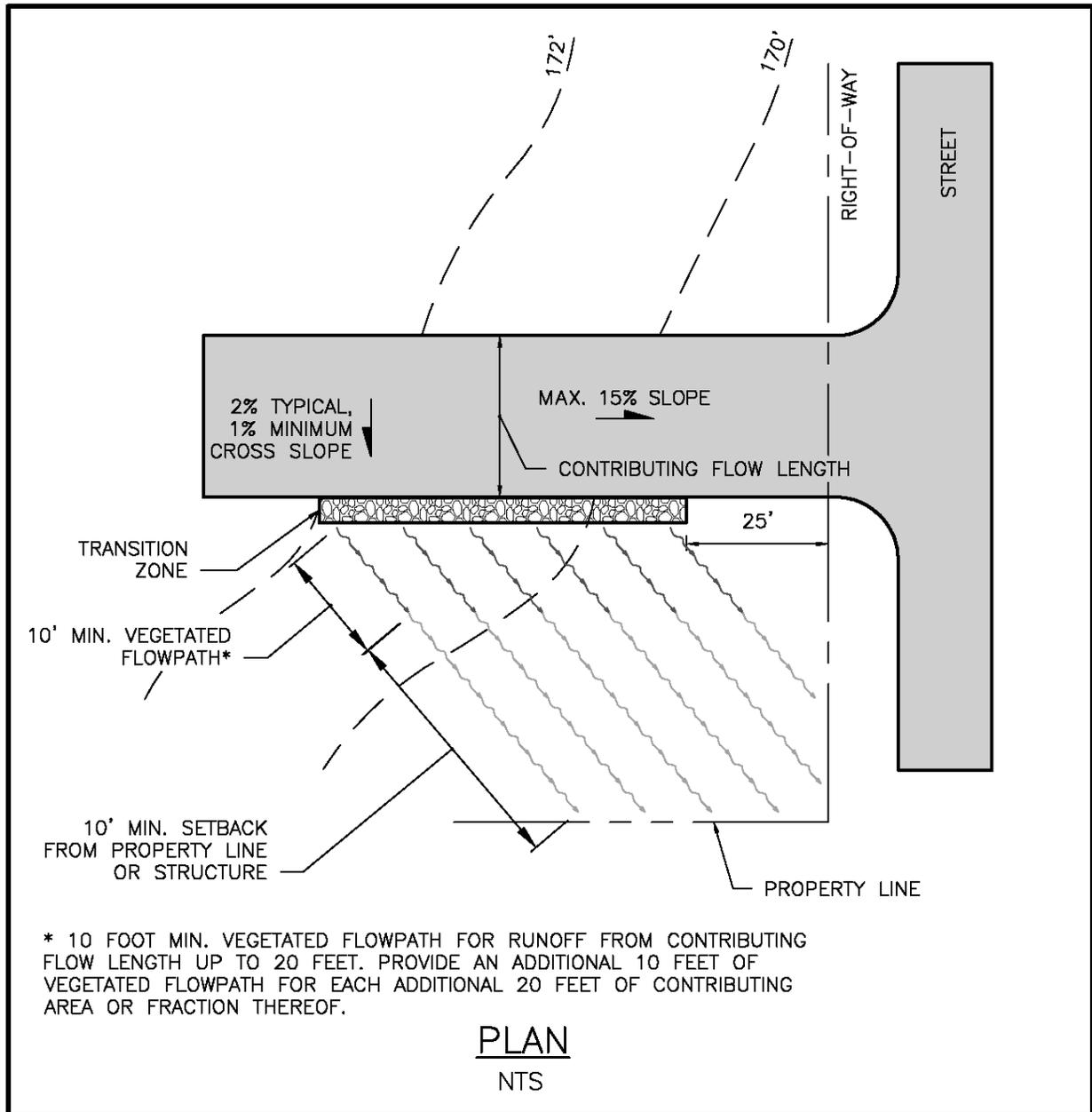


Figure 5.5. Typical Sheet Flow Dispersion for Flat and Moderately Sloping Driveways.

Contributing Area

The hard surface area contributing sheet flow to the dispersion flowpath shall have a slope less than 15 percent. The cross slope towards the transition zone shall be a minimum of 2 percent.

Transition Zone

A 2-foot-wide transition zone to discourage channeling shall be provided between the edge of the contributing hard surface area (or building eaves) and the downslope vegetation. This

may be an extension of subgrade material (crushed rock), modular pavement, drain rock, or other material approved by the Director.

Dispersion Flowpath

The general minimum requirements associated with the dispersion flowpath are provided in *Section 5.3.1.2*. An additional flowpath requirement specific to sheet flow dispersion is as follows:

- Provide a vegetated flowpath of 10 feet to disperse sheet flow runoff from hard surface with a contributing flow length of 20 feet. If the contributing hard surface is at least 50 percent permeable pavement, the contributing flow length may be increased from 20 to 25 feet. Provide an additional 10 linear feet of vegetated flowpath for each additional 20 linear feet of contributing flow length or fraction thereof.
- [The slope of the vegetated flowpath shall not exceed 15 percent.](#)
- Down gradient of the required flowpath (per the bullet above), an additional 10 feet shall be provided before the flowpath intersects a property line (excluding the property line abutting the right-of-way) or encounters a structure.

Overflow

Identify the overland flowpath for each dispersion point. Consider surface flows that may extend beyond the design flowpath length. Prevent flow from causing erosion or flooding on site or on adjacent properties ([refer to Section 4.3.3](#)).

5.3.5.6. BMP Credits

Credit for On-site List Approach

The hard surface area dispersed using sheet flow dispersion meets the On-site List Requirement (refer to *Section 3.3.1* and *Appendix C* for infeasibility criteria).

Pre-sized Approach for Flow Control

The Pre-sized Approach may be used for projects with new and replaced hard surface areas up to 10,000 square feet. Under the Pre-sized Approach (refer to *Section 4.1.2*), flow control credits may be achieved by using sheet flow dispersion. The credits provided in [Table 5.85-7](#) can be applied to reduce the hard surface area requiring flow control as explained for splashblock downspout dispersion.

Table [5.85-7](#). Pre-sized Flow Control Credits for Sheet Flow Dispersion.

Dispersion Type	Credit (%)	
	Pre-developed Pasture Standard	Peak Control Standard
Sheet Flow Dispersion	9474%	9476%

Hard Surface Area Managed = Hard Surface Area Dispersed x Credit (%) / 100.

Modeling Approach for On-site Performance Standard and Flow Control

Continuous hydrologic modeling may be used to quantify the performance of sheet flow dispersion relative to the on-site and flow control standards using the procedures and assumptions listed in Table [5.95-8](#).

Table 5.95-8. Continuous Modeling Assumptions for Sheet Flow Dispersion.

Variable	Assumption
Precipitation Series	Seattle 158-year, 5-minute series
Computational Time Step	5 minutes
HSPF Parameters	LSUR, SLSUR, NSUR shall be adjusted per Appendix F
Flowpath Length	10 feet minimum
Flowpath Width	Width of the dispersion device (i.e., sheet flow transition zone); 2 feet minimum
Flowpath Slope	Existing condition
Hard Surface Area Dispersed	<p>The hard surface area should be modeled as a lateral flow impervious area over the underlying soil type (e.g., till). In WWHM, this option is available on the Mitigated Scenario screen. The lateral flow impervious area element (representing the area that is dispersed) should be connected to the lawn/landscape lateral flow soil basin element (the vegetated flowpath). Option 1: Impervious area dispersed modeled as lawn over the underlying soil type (e.g., till). Existing slope condition of dispersion flowpath should be used.</p> <p>Option 2: Represent impervious runoff dispersion using the lateral flow routine (this option shall be used if contributing area includes a vegetated roof or permeable pavement). Modeled flowpath width shall no more than the width of the dispersion device (i.e., sheet flow transition zone).</p>

[Refer to Section 5.1.6 for modeling amended soils to partially meet the flow control and/or water quality treatment requirement when runoff is dispersed on amended soil.](#)

5.3.5.7. Minimum Construction Requirements

Protect the dispersion flowpath from sedimentation and compaction during construction. If the flowpath area is disturbed during construction, restore the area to meet the Soil Amendment BMP requirements in *Section 5.1* and establish a dense cover of lawn, landscape or groundcover.

5.3.5.8. Operations and Maintenance Requirements

Sheet flow dispersion O&M requirements are provided in *Appendix G (BMP No. 2524)*.

5.3.6. Concentrated Flow Dispersion

5.3.6.1. Description

Concentrated flow dispersion BMPs disperse concentrated flows from driveways or other pavement through a vegetated pervious area to provide flow control. In a typical application, sheet flow from a ground-level impervious surface is intercepted by a berm or slot drain and conveyed to a dispersion point (i.e., rock pad or dispersion trench).

5.3.6.2. Performance Mechanisms

Concentrated flow dispersion can provide flow control via attenuation, soil storage, and losses to infiltration, evaporation, and transpiration.

5.3.6.3. Applicability

Concentrated flow dispersion can be designed to provide on-site stormwater management and flow control. This BMP can be applied to meet or partially meet the requirements listed below. If the designer implements a dispersion BMP to meet water quality treatment standards, the BMP shall be designed using the additional design requirements for filter strips per *Section 5.8.4*.

BMP	On-site		Flow Control			Water Quality			Conveyance	
	List	Standard	Forest	Pasture	Peak	Basic	Enhanced	Oil Control		Phosphorus
Concentrated Flow Dispersion	✓	✓ ^a	✓ ^a	✓ ^a	✓ ^a	✓ ^b				

^a Standard may be partially or completely achieved depending upon underlying soil type.

^b ~~Must~~ Shall meet additional design requirements for vegetated~~basic~~ filter strips (refer to *Section 5.8.4*) to fully meet the water quality treatment requirement.

5.3.6.4. Site Considerations

General site considerations for determining the feasibility of dispersion BMPs for a particular site are provided in *Section 5.3.1.1*. Refer to *Appendix C* for additional infeasibility criteria for the On-site List Approach.

5.3.6.5. Design Criteria

This section provides a description and requirements for the components of concentrated flow dispersion. A typical plan for concentrated flow dispersion for steep driveways is shown in Figure 5.6. Design criteria are provided in this section for the following elements:

- Contributing area
- Berm or slotted drain
- Rock pad (dispersion device option 1)
- Downspout dispersion trench (dispersion device option 2)
- Dispersion flowpath

- Overflow

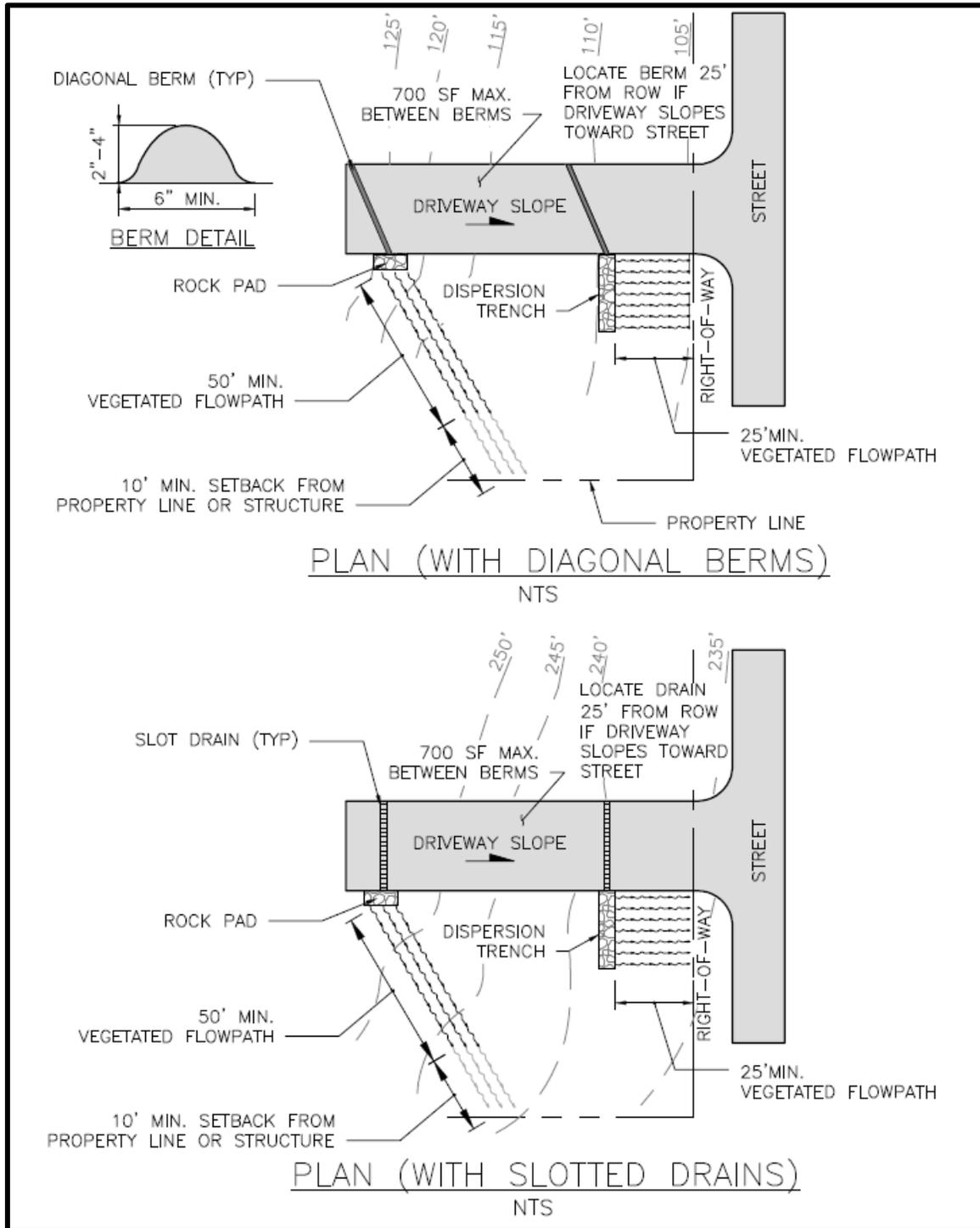


Figure 5.6. Typical Concentrated Flow Dispersion for Steep Driveways.

Contributing Area

A maximum of 700 square feet of impervious area may drain to each concentrated flow dispersion device (i.e., rock pad or dispersion trench). Larger contributing areas may be approved for other types of hard surfaces (e.g., permeable pavement). If at least 50 percent of the contributing area is permeable pavement, contributing areas up to 900 square feet will be allowed.

Berm or Slotted Drain

A slotted drain, diagonal berm, or similar measure shall be provided to direct flow to the rock pad or dispersion trench.

Rock Pad (if selected)

If selected as the dispersion device, a pad of crushed rock (2 feet wide by 3 feet long by 6 inches deep) shall be placed at the point of discharge. The downstream edge of rock pad shall be at least 5 feet from a structure. A 10-foot setback from a building with a basement is recommended. The rock pad shall have an impermeable liner within setback.

Dispersion Trench (if selected)

If selected as the dispersion device, the dispersion trench design shall meet the following minimum requirements:

- The trench shall be a minimum of 18 inches deep and 2 feet wide.
- The trench shall be level and aligned parallel to site elevation contours to disperse the water to the downslope flowpath. The trench shall be constructed to prevent point discharge and erosion.
- Trenches serving up to 700 square feet of impervious area shall be 10-foot-long. If the contributing area is not an impervious surface (e.g., permeable pavement), contributing areas larger than 700 square feet may be approved for a 10-foot trench. If at least 50 percent of the contributing area is permeable pavement, contributing areas up to 900 square feet will be allowed for a 10-foot trench. For contributing areas greater than the contributing areas noted above, the trench length shall be calculated as a minimum of 10 feet plus a proportional trench length based on the additional contributing area. For example, trench length for trenches serving non-permeable pavement areas larger than 700 square feet shall be calculated as: Total roof area in square feet x 10 feet ÷ 700 square feet.
- A setback of at least 5 feet shall be maintained between any edge of the trench and any structure or property line. A 10-foot setback from a building with a basement is recommended.

Dispersion Flowpath

The minimum requirements for the dispersion flowpath are listed below:

- For rock pads, a vegetated flowpath of at least 50 feet shall be provided between the dispersion device any ~~slope over 15 percent~~, stream, wetland, lake, ~~or other~~ hard

surface, [or slope over 15 percent](#),. Critical area buffers may count toward flowpath lengths. The flowpath length is measured perpendicular to site contours.

- [For dispersion trenches, a vegetated flowpath of at least 25 feet shall be provided between the outlet of the trench and any property line, slope over 15 percent, stream, wetland, lake, structure, or other hard surface. Critical area buffers may count toward flowpath lengths. The flowpath length is measured perpendicular to site contours.](#)
- [The slope of the vegetated flowpath shall not exceed 15 percent.](#)
- Down gradient of the required flowpath (per the bullets above), an additional 10 feet shall be provided before the flowpath intersects a property line (excluding the property line abutting the right-of-way) or encounters a structure.
- The first 25 feet of the dispersion flowpath shall be at least 5 feet from any structure or property line.
- Each dispersion device shall have a separate flowpath. For the purpose of maintaining adequate separation of flows discharged from adjacent dispersion devices, vegetated flowpaths shall be at least 20 feet apart at the upslope end and shall not overlap with other flowpaths at any point along the flowpath lengths.
- For the purpose of measuring setbacks to structures, property lines, and other flowpaths, the following shall be assumed:
 - The rock pad flowpath width shall be assumed to be 3 feet extending from the center line of the rock pad
 - The dispersion trench flowpath width shall be assumed to be the length of the dispersion trench.
 - Setbacks shall be measured from the edge of the assumed flowpath.

Overflow

Identify the overland flowpath for each dispersion point. Consider surface flows that may extend beyond the design flowpath length. Prevent flow from causing erosion or flooding on site or on adjacent properties [\(refer to Section 4.3.3\)](#).

5.3.6.6. *BMP Credits*

Credit for On-site List Approach

The hard surface area dispersed using concentrated dispersion meets the On-site List Requirement (refer to *Section 3.3.1* and *Appendix C* for infeasibility criteria).

Pre-sized Approach for Flow Control

The Pre-sized Approach may be used for projects with new and replaced hard surface areas up to 10,000 square feet. Under the Pre-sized Approach (refer to *Section 4.1.2*), flow control credits may be achieved by using concentrated flow dispersion. The credits provided in [Table 5.9-10](#) can be applied to reduce the hard surface area requiring flow control as explained for splashblock downspout dispersion.

Table 5.910. Pre-sized Flow Control Credits for Concentrated Flow Dispersion.

Dispersion Type	Credit (%)	
	Pre-developed Pasture Standard	Peak Control Standard
Concentrated Flow Dispersion	9474%	9476%

Hard Surface Area Managed = Hard Surface Area Dispersed x Credit (%) / 100.

Modeling Approach for On-site Performance Standard and Flow Control

Continuous hydrologic modeling may be used to quantify the performance of concentrated flow dispersion relative to the on-site and flow control performance standards using the procedures and assumptions listed in Table 5.110.

Table 5.110. Continuous Modeling Assumptions for Concentrated Flow Dispersion.

Variable	Assumption
Precipitation Series	Seattle 158-year, 5-minute series
Computational Time Step	5 minutes
HSPF Parameters	LSUR, SLSUR, NSUR shall be adjusted per <i>Appendix F</i>
Flowpath Length	25 feet minimum
Flowpath Width	6 feet for dispersion points (i.e., splashblocks or rock pads) or the width of the dispersion device (i.e., trench)
Flowpath Slope	Existing condition
Hard Surface Area Dispersed	<p>Single Downspout or Area Option 1: The hard surface area should be modeled as a lateral flow impervious area over the underlying soil type (e.g., till). The lateral flow elements in WWHM are available on the Mitigated Scenario screen. The lateral flow impervious area element (representing the area that is dispersed) should be connected to the lawn/landscape lateral flow soil basin element (the vegetated flowpath). Impervious area dispersed modeled as lawn over the underlying soil type (e.g., till). Existing slope condition of dispersion flowpath should be used.</p> <p>Multiple Downspouts (Option 12): In situations where multiple downspout dispersions will occur, a pad of crushed rock or dispersion trenches are used, and the flowpath is at least 50 feet, the hard surface area can be modeled as 100% landscaped (lawn in WWHM; grass in MGSFlood). Represent impervious runoff dispersion using the lateral flow routine. (this option shall be used if contributing area includes permeable pavement). Modeled flowpath width shall be no more than 6 feet for dispersion points (i.e., splashblocks or rock pads) or the width of the dispersion device (i.e., trench).</p> <p>Multiple Downspouts (Option 2): In situations where multiple downspout dispersions will occur, dispersion trenches are used, and the flowpath is at 25 to 50 feet, the hard surface area can be modeled as 50% landscaped (lawn in WWHM; grass in MGSFlood) and 50% impervious.</p>

Refer to [Section 5.1.6](#) for modeling amended soils to partially meet the flow control and/or water quality treatment requirement when runoff is dispersed on amended soil.

5.3.6.7. Minimum Construction Requirements

Protect the concentrated flow dispersion flowpath from sedimentation and compaction during construction. If the flowpath area is disturbed during construction, restore the area to meet the Soil Amendment BMP requirements in [Section 5.1](#) and establish a dense cover of lawn,

landscape or groundcover. If a dispersion trench is used, confirm the trench surface is level (e.g., laser testing or flow test).

5.3.6.8. Operations and Maintenance Requirements

Concentrated flow dispersion O&M requirements are provided in *Appendix G (BMP No. [2524](#))*.

5.3.7. Sidewalk/Trail Compost-Amended Strip

5.3.7.1. Description

The sidewalk/trail compost-amended strip consists of a compost-amended, vegetated strip (amended per [Section 5.1 Soil Amendment BMP](#)) located continuously adjacent to a sidewalk or trail hard surface to be mitigated. The BMP provides runoff mitigation for sheet flow from an adjacent sidewalk or trail through infiltration and evapotranspiration.

5.3.7.2. Performance Mechanisms

Sidewalk/trail compost-amended strips can provide flow control via flow attenuation, soil storage, and losses to infiltration, evaporation, and transpiration.

5.3.7.3. Applicability

Sidewalk/trail compost-amended strips are designed to meet both the On-site List Approach using the provided sizing factors and the On-site Performance Approach, using the modeling assumptions provided in [Section 5.3.7.6](#). Sidewalk/trail compost-amended strips may be constructed in conjunction with other stormwater BMPs to achieve mitigation requirements other than On-site Stormwater Management. When the sidewalk/trail compost-amended strip is used to help meet flow control or water quality treatment requirements, the designer shall prove performance by explicit simulation with an approved continuous simulation model.

BMP	On-site		Flow Control			Water Quality			Conveyance	
	List	Standard	Forest	Pasture	Peak	Basic	Enhanced	Oil Control		Phosphorus
Sidewalk/trail compost-amended strip	✓	✓	✓ ^a	✓ ^a	✓ ^a	✓ ^b	✓ ^c			

^a Standard may be partially achieved.

^b Shall meet additional design requirements for vegetated filter strips (refer to [Section 5.8.4](#)) to fully meet the water quality treatment requirement.

^c Shall meet additional design requirements for CAVFS (refer to [Section 5.8.4](#)) to fully meet the water quality treatment requirement.

5.3.7.4. Site Considerations

The sidewalk/trail compost-amended strip is applicable for pedestrian and multi-use trails and sidewalks. The target surface may consist of any hard surface (e.g., concrete, asphalt, and compacted gravel) that does not exceed the specified widths or longitudinal and lateral slopes. Likewise, the BMP location adjacent to the target surface shall not be overly steep, shall be compost-amended, and vegetated. Vegetation shall be dense and healthy, but specific vegetation is left to the designer (e.g., turf or dense ground cover). Shrubs and trees are acceptable in addition to the turf or dense ground cover. Refer to [Appendix C](#) for additional infeasibility criteria for the On-site List Approach.

The sidewalk/trail compost-amended strip follows minimum requirements similar to those associated with dispersion and infiltration BMPs. To reduce the potential for concentrated flow entering the BMP, the sidewalk/trail compost-amended strip can only be used where the tributary sidewalk and trail lateral (perpendicular to the edge of hard surface adjacent to the BMP) slopes are not less than 1 percent and not greater than 5 percent, and the longitudinal slope is not greater than 8 percent. (Note that ADA requirements for sidewalk slopes will typically be even more limiting.) In addition, the contributing hard surface may not exceed 25 feet in width.

The sidewalk/trail compost-amended strip shall also be located immediately adjacent to the trail or sidewalk surface to be mitigated and have a slope not greater than 25 percent (i.e., 4 horizontal to 1 vertical) and not less than 2 percent.

The sidewalk/trail compost-amended strip design is based on the native soil design infiltration rate, as determined by site-specific testing and applied long-term infiltration rate safety factors. If no native soil infiltration testing is conducted, the designer shall assume a design infiltration rate of 0.15 inch per hour.

5.3.7.5. Design Criteria

This section provides a description and requirements for the components of sidewalk/trail compost-amended strips. Typical components for sidewalk/trail compost-amended strips are shown in Figure 5.7. Design criteria are provided in this section for the following elements:

- Contributing area
- Level spreader
- Compost-amended strip
- Overflow

Contributing Area

The width of the contributing area is measured perpendicular to the edge of pavement adjacent to the BMP and shall not exceed 25 feet.

Sidewalk/trail compost-amended strips allow for run-on of non-sidewalk/trail surfaces not greater than 10 percent of the sidewalk and trail area. The contributing area widths used to determine the sizing factor shall account for any run-on surface area.

Level Spreader

Sidewalks/trails with a width greater than or equal to 10 feet require a level spreader to help ensure even distribution of flow entering the sidewalk/trail compost-amended strip. The level spreader shall consist of vegetated compost-amended soil (refer to *Section 5.1*) and shall be 1-foot wide, as measured perpendicular to the edge of hard surface adjacent to the BMP. The level spreader lateral (i.e., between the hard surface and sidewalk/trail compost-amended strip) slope shall be 2 percent or less. The top of the level spreader shall be lower than the adjacent sidewalk/trail surface by at least 1 inch. The level spreader width (1 foot) can be included as part of the total required sidewalk/trail compost-amended strip width.

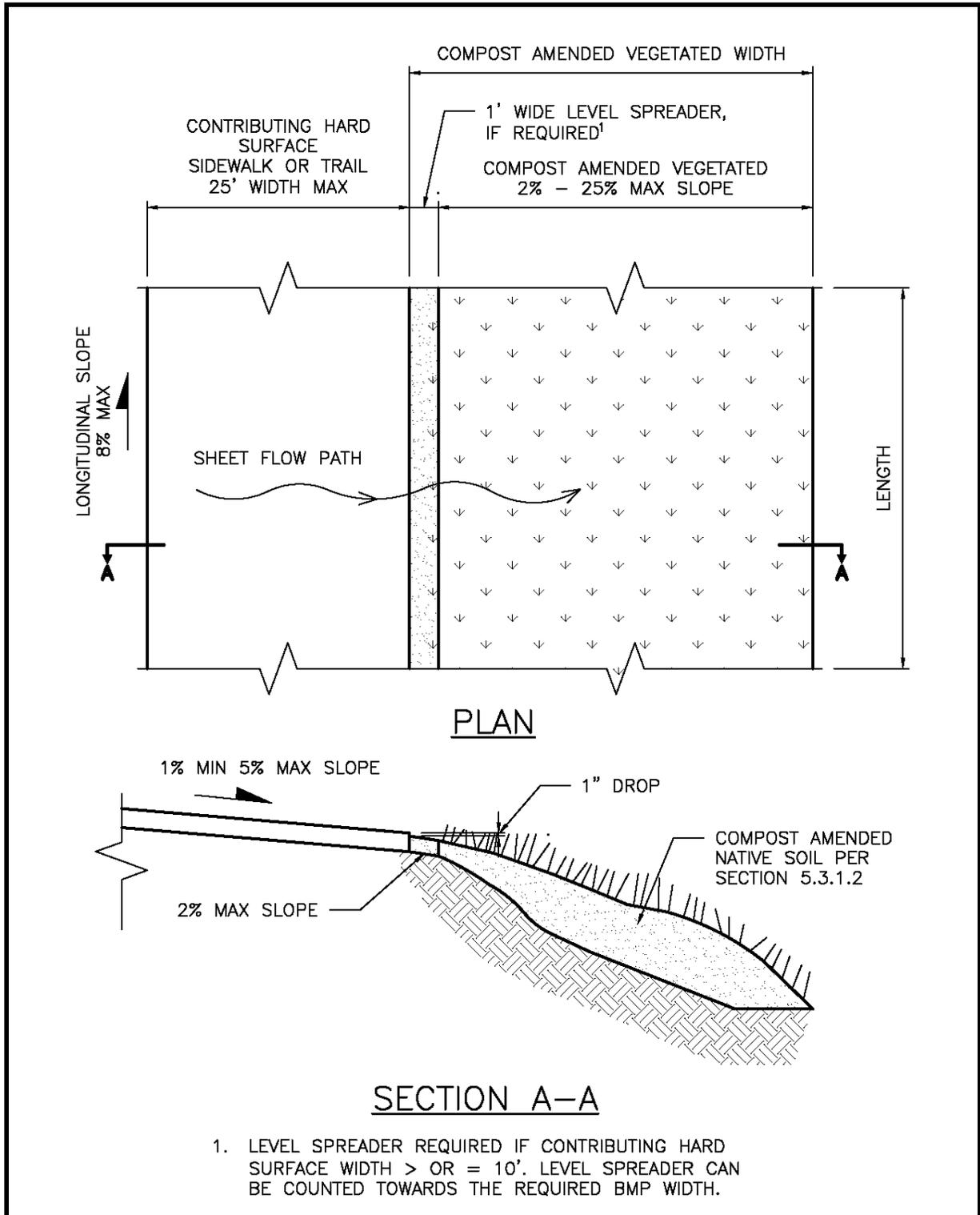


Figure 5.7. Typical Sidewalk/Trail Compost-Amended Strip BMP.

Compost-Amended Strip

The general minimum requirements associated with the flowpath to the sidewalk/trail compost-amended strip are provided in Section 5.3.1.2. Additional flowpath requirements specific to sidewalk/trail compost-amended strips are as follows:

- The total sidewalk/trail compost-amended strip width may not be less than 1 foot.
- The lateral slope of the sidewalk/trail compost-amended strip shall not be less than 2 percent nor greater than 25 percent.
- The sidewalk/trail compost-amended strip shall be amended (refer to Section 5.1) and vegetated. Vegetation shall be dense and healthy, but specific vegetation is left to the designer (e.g., turf or dense ground cover). Shrubs and trees are acceptable in addition to the turf or dense ground cover.
- The width of the BMP is measured perpendicular to the edge of adjacent hard surface.

Overflow

The overflow flowpath downstream of the sidewalk/trail compost-amended strip shall be identified, and surface flows that may extend beyond the sidewalk/trail compost-amended strip shall be considered. Sidewalk/trail compost-amended strip design and site design shall prevent overflow from the sidewalk/trail compost-amended strip from causing erosion or flooding on site or on adjacent properties. Overland flowpath shall be vegetated and a minimum of 10 feet long prior to intersecting a building or property line (excluding right-of-way line).

5.3.7.6. BMP Sizing

The sidewalk/trail compost-amended strip width may be determined using the sizing factor approach for the On-Site Standard by providing the specified ratio of BMP width to the width of the contributing area. Alternatively, explicit simulation of the sidewalk/trail composted amended strip may be used to size the appropriate strip width for the contributing area.

Sizing Factors for On-site List Approach

Sidewalk/trail compost-amended strips may be sized using the sizing factors provided in Table 5.12 to meet the On-site List Approach. Sizing factors are presented as a ratio of hard surface width to sidewalk/trail compost-amended strip width. Sidewalk/trail compost-amended strip width is calculated by multiplying the width of hard surface contributing runoff by the sizing factor.

Refer to Section 3.3.1 and Appendix C for infeasibility criteria to determine sidewalk/trail compost-amended strip infeasibility.

Table 5.12. On-site List Sizing for Sidewalk/Trail Compost-Amended Strips.

Sidewalk/Trail Hard Surface Width	Subgrade Soil Design Infiltration Rate^a	Sizing Factor for Strip Width^{b,c}
Less than 10 feet	0.15 inch/hour	42%
	0.3 inch/hour	29%
	0.6 inch/hour	21%
Greater than or equal to 10 feet ^d	0.15 inch/hour	33%
	0.3 inch/hour	21%
	0.6 inch/hour and greater	13%

^a The subgrade soil design infiltration rate is based on site-specific infiltration rate measurement and safety factors as detailed in [Section 3.2](#) and [Appendix D](#).

^b The sizing factors meet both the Forested and Pasture On-site Performance Standard requirement.

^c Total BMP width (level spreader, if required, plus compost-amended strip) shall not be less than 1 foot. BMP width is measured perpendicular to the adjacent edge of hard surface.

^d A 1-foot-wide level spreader adjacent to the sidewalk or trail is required for sidewalk or trail widths greater than or equal to 10 feet. The 1-foot length of the level spreader can be counted towards the required BMP width determined in the table.

Modeling Approach for On-site Performance Standard

Sidewalk/trail compost-amended strips can also be sized using the forested and pasture On-site Performance Standard. Continuous runoff hydrologic modeling using the CAVFS element in WWHM may be used to quantify the performance of sidewalk/trail compost-amended strips relative to the On-site Performance Standard using the procedures and assumptions listed in [Table 5.13](#). Modeling in MGSFlood is not currently allowed for this BMP.

Table 5.13. Continuous Modeling Assumptions for Sidewalk/Trail Compost-Amended Strips.

Variable	Assumption
Precipitation Series	Seattle 2021 Precipitation Time Series
Computational Time Step	5 minutes
HSPF Parameters	LSUR, SLSUR, NSUR shall be adjusted per Appendix E
Precipitation and Evaporation Applied to BMP	Yes
Minimum Pervious Strip Depth	8 inches
Embankment Height	Dependent on width of BMP. BMP surface slope shall not exceed 25 percent or be less than 2 percent.
Compost-Amended Strip Slope	Shall not exceed 25 percent or be less than 2 percent.
Maximum Water Depth	1 inch
Compost-Amended Soil Hydraulic Conductivity	1 inch per hour
Compost-Amended Soil Porosity	30 percent
Subgrade Soil Design Infiltration Rate	Design infiltration rate (Section 3.2 and Appendix D). If no testing is conducted, assume an infiltration rate of 0.15 inch per hour.

Refer to [Section 5.1.6](#) for modeling amended soils to partially meet the flow control and/or water quality treatment requirement when runoff is dispersed on amended soil.

5.3.7.7. Minimum Construction Requirements

Protect the flowpath from sedimentation and compaction during construction. If the flowpath area is disturbed during construction, restore the area to meet the Soil Amendment BMP requirements (refer to Section 5.1) and establish a dense cover of lawn, landscape, or groundcover.

5.3.7.8. Operation and Maintenance Requirements

O&M requirements for sidewalk/trail compost-amended strips are the same as the Filter Strip (Basic and CAVFS) O&M requirements provided in Appendix G (BMP No. 11).

5.4. Infiltration BMPs

Infiltration BMPs are designed to facilitate percolation of stormwater into the ground. The infiltration BMPs in this section include:

- Infiltration trenches (*Section 5.4.2*)
- Drywells (*Section 5.4.3*)
- Infiltrating bioretention (*Section 5.4.4*)
- Rain gardens (*Section 5.4.5*)
- Permeable pavement facilities (*Section 5.4.6*)
- Perforated stub-out connections (*Section 5.4.7*)
- Infiltration basins (*Section 5.4.8*)
- Infiltration chambers/[vaults](#) (*Section 5.4.9*)

Infiltration, where appropriate, is the preferred method for stormwater management because it attempts to restore the pre-development flow regime. Due to the geologic and topographic conditions in Seattle, not all sites are suitable for stormwater infiltration. The use of infiltration practices may be limited in some areas due to topography and potential landslide hazards. In addition, many locations in Seattle have soils that are underlain by hydraulically-restrictive materials (refer to *Appendix D, Section D-2.2.4*). These relatively impervious layers may limit or preclude infiltration by causing perched groundwater conditions during the wet season.

5.4.1. General Considerations for Infiltration BMPs

This section provides general requirements that are common to all infiltration BMPs included in this manual. Additional requirements specific to the different types of infiltration BMPs are provided in *Section 5.4.2* through *5.4.9*.

Note that permeable pavement surfaces (*Section 5.6.2*) are not considered infiltration BMPs for the purpose of this manual because they do not receive significant (greater than 10 percent) runoff from other areas and manage only the rain falling on the pavement surface. Although stormwater will infiltrate into the underlying soil, the volume infiltrated is similar to that infiltrated on vegetated permeable surfaces and do not necessitate the restrictions set forth in this section. Similarly, dispersion BMPs (*Section 5.3*) are not considered infiltration BMPs for the purposes of this manual. Although stormwater will infiltrate into the underlying soil, the stormwater is dispersed across a large area (subject to setbacks) making many of the restrictions set forth in this section unnecessary. The specific restrictions and setbacks that are applicable to permeable pavement surfaces and dispersion BMPs are provided in their respective sections in *Chapter 5* of this volume. An exception is that infiltration testing is required for permeable pavement surfaces when hydrologic modeling will be conducted to evaluate performance relative to the flow control, water quality treatment, or the On-Site Performance Standard. Infiltration testing may also be used to demonstrate that permeable pavement surfaces are not feasible for the On-site List.

In addition to shallow infiltration BMPs, *Appendix D* also covers provisions for deep infiltration BMPs, which may include Underground Injection Control (UIC) wells. Deep infiltration BMPs are typically used to direct stormwater past surface soil layers that have lower infiltration rates and into well-draining soil. The depth of the soil layers with lower infiltration rates can vary significantly, so the technique required to reach the well-draining soils will also vary.

~~According to Washington Administrative Code (WAC 173-218-030), a UIC well is defined as “a well that is used to discharge fluids into the subsurface. A UIC well is one of the following: (1) A bored, drilled or driven shaft, or dug hole whose depth is greater than the largest surface dimension; (2) an improved sinkhole; or (3) a subsurface fluid distribution system.” UIC well systems meeting the above criteria may include drywells, pipe or French drains, drain fields, and other similar devices that are used to discharge stormwater directly into the ground. Infiltration trenches with perforated or slotted pipe used to disperse and inject flows may also be considered to be UIC wells.~~

UIC wells are regulated by Ecology and the UIC Program (WAC 173-218). If UIC wells are considered, refer to ~~Volume I, Chapter 4 of the SWMMWW (Ecology 2019) for requirements, including *Guidance for UIC Wells that Manage Stormwater* (Ecology 2006). Information on the UIC program can also be found on~~ Refer to Ecology’s website for updates and revisions: <https://ecology.wa.gov/Regulations-Permits/Guidance-technical-assistance/Underground-injection-control-program> www.ecy.wa.gov/programs/wq/grndwtr/uic/

The person responsible for the infiltration facility (i.e., the property owner for private systems) shall determine whether the facility is a regulated UIC well and what requirements apply. ~~Refer to Ecology’s UIC program for UIC well requirements.~~

Ecology SWMMWW Language	References
<p><u>The UIC program defines a UIC well as a well that is used to discharge fluids from the ground surface into the subsurface and is one of the following:</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● <u>A bored, drilled or driven shaft, or dug hole whose depth is greater than the largest surface dimension; or</u> ● <u>A dug hole whose depth is greater than the largest surface dimension.</u> <u>or</u> ● <u>An improved sinkhole; which is a natural crevice that has been modified, or</u> ● <u>A subsurface fluid distribution system which includes perforated pipes, drain tiles or other similar mechanisms intended to distribute fluids below the surface of the ground.</u> 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● <u>Volume I, Chapter 2, Section 1-2.14 of the SWMMWW (Ecology 2019)</u>
<p><u>Examples of UIC wells or subsurface infiltration systems are the following:</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● <u>Drywells</u> ● <u>Drain fields</u> ● <u>Infiltration trenches with perforated [or slotted] pipe</u> ● <u>Storm chamber systems with the intent to infiltrate</u> ● <u>French drains</u> ● <u>Bioretention systems intending to infiltrate water from a [slotted] pipe below the treatment soil</u> ● <u>Other similar devices that discharge to ground</u> <p><u>Note: Modifications from the SWMMWW are shown in brackets for design criteria specific to the City of Seattle.</u></p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● <u>Volume I, Chapter 2, Section 1-2.14 of the SWMMWW (Ecology 2019)</u>

5.4.2. Infiltration Trenches

5.4.2.1. Description

Infiltration trenches are trenches backfilled with a coarse aggregate. Stormwater runoff can enter the trench as overland surface flow through a grate or exposed aggregate surface, or as concentrated flow delivered to the aggregate-filled trench using a perforated or slotted distribution pipe.

Infiltration trenches are subject to state UIC regulations when perforated pipe is used. Provided that the design and O&M criteria in this section are met, only the registration requirement applies. Where perforated pipe is not used, the registration requirement does not apply.

Ecology SWMMWW Language	References
<u>All UIC wells must be registered except: UIC wells at single-family homes (or duplexes) receiving only residential roof runoff used to collect stormwater runoff from roof surfaces on an individual home (or duplex) or for basement flooding control.</u>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <u>Volume I, Chapter 4, Section 1-4.3 of the SWMMWW (Ecology 2019)</u>
<p><u>The following are not UIC wells:</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <u>Infiltration trenches designed without perforated pipe or a similar mechanism</u> 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <u>Volume I, Chapter 2, Section 1-2.14 of the SWMMWW (Ecology 2019)</u>

5.4.2.2. Performance Mechanisms

Flow control occurs through temporary storage of stormwater runoff in the spatial voids of the aggregate material and subsequent infiltration of stormwater into the underlying soils. Pollutant removal mechanisms include infiltration, filtration, adsorption, and biodegradation.

5.4.2.3. Applicability

An infiltration trench can be designed to provide on-site stormwater management, flow control and/or water quality treatment. This BMP can be applied to meet the requirements listed below.

BMP	On-site		Flow Control			Water Quality				Conveyance
	List	Standard	Forest	Pasture	Peak	Basic	Enhanced	Oil Control	Phosphorus	
Infiltration Trenches	✓ ^a	✓ ^{a, b}	✓ ^{a, b}		✓ ^{a, c}					

^a Infiltration trenches are only applicable where the site measured infiltration rate is at least 5 inches per hour. PGHS or PGPS may only be directed to infiltration trenches if the soil suitability criteria for the subgrade soils is met (*Section 4.5.2*).

^b Soil suitability criteria for subgrade soils (*Section 4.5.2*) and applicable drawdown requirements (*Section 4.5.1*) also apply.

^c Refer to treatment train options for infiltration BMPs included in *Section 4.4.3.2*.

5.4.2.4. *Site Considerations*

Site considerations for the applicability of infiltration trenches are provided in *Section 3.2* and *Section 4.5*. Refer to *Appendix C* for additional infeasibility criteria for the On-site List Approach.

5.4.2.5. *Design Criteria*

This section provides a description and requirements for the components of infiltration trenches. Refer to Figures [5.85-7](#) and [5.95-8](#) for schematics of typical infiltration trenches. Design criteria are provided in this section for the following elements:

- Trench dimensions and layout
- Aggregate material
- Geotextile
- Subgrade
- Flow entrance and presettling
- Perforated pipe
- Observation port
- Overflow

Trench Dimensions and Layout

The minimum requirements associated with the trench dimensions and layout include the following:

- The minimum depth of an infiltration trench shall be 18 inches.
- The minimum width of an infiltration trench shall be 24 inches. Sides of adjacent trenches shall be a minimum of 5 feet apart. [There is no maximum trench width.](#)
- The bottom of the trench shall be level.

To maximize the storage depth in the trench, the trench should be oriented parallel to site contour lines. The trench can be placed under a pervious or impervious surface cover to conserve space.

Aggregate Material

Trenches shall be filled with uniformly-graded, washed gravel with a nominal size from 0.75- to 1.5-inch diameter. The minimum void volume shall be 30 percent. These requirements can be met with City of Seattle Mineral Aggregate Type 4.

Geotextile

Non-woven geotextile fabric, according to the specifications presented in *Appendix E*, shall completely surround the aggregate material. A 6-inch minimum layer of sand may be used as a filter media instead of geotextile at the bottom of the trench, but geotextile is still required on the sides and top of the aggregate material.

Subgrade

The minimum measured subgrade infiltration rate for infiltration trenches is 5 inches per hour. If infiltration trenches are to be used to meet the water quality treatment requirement or if runoff from any PGHS is directed to the infiltration trench, underlying soil shall meet the soil requirements outlined in *Section 4.5.2*.

During construction the subgrade soil surface can become smeared and sealed by excavation equipment. The design shall require scarification or raking of the side walls and bottom of the facility excavation to a minimum depth of 4 inches after excavation to restore infiltration rate.

Flow Entrance and Presettling

Trenches designed to receive concentrated stormwater flows (refer to Figure [5.85-7](#)) shall include a small catch basin ~~or yard drain~~ with downturned elbow (trap). Presettling requirements are provided in *Section 4.4.5*.

For trenches designed to receive sheet flow (refer to Figure [5.95-8](#)), the site shall be graded so that runoff is directed as sheet flow across a minimum 10-foot grass buffer strip to remove larger sediment particles prior to runoff entering the trench. Six inches of gravel shall be placed over the geotextile covering the trench aggregate to allow flows to enter the trench.

Perforated Pipe

Concentrated flows shall be distributed into the aggregate material using a perforated or slotted subsurface pipe with a minimum diameter of 4 inches.

Observation Port

Infiltration trenches that are designed to meet flow control and/or water quality treatment requirements and receive runoff from contributing areas of 2,000 square feet or more shall be equipped with an observation port to measure the drawdown time following a storm and to monitor sedimentation to determine maintenance needs. Observation ports shall consist of a 4-inch minimum diameter perforated or slotted pipe that extends to the bottom of the trench (i.e., to the subgrade) and is equipped with a secure well cap.

Overflow

Trenches shall have an overflow designed to convey any flow exceeding the capacity of the facility [unless designed to fully infiltrate all flows for the full, required simulation period. Plans shall indicate surface flow paths in case of failure of the BMP \(refer to Section 4.3.3\). per Section 4.3.4.](#) If overflow is connected to the public drainage system [with a pipe](#), a catch basin shall be installed prior to the connection to the public drainage system to prevent root intrusion into public drainage main lines.

To prevent damage to overlying pavement, trenches located beneath pavement shall be constructed with a trench pipe overflow connected to a ~~small yard drain or~~ catch basin with a grate cover. Design shall be such that, if the trench infiltration capacity is exceeded, the trench pipe overflow would occur out of the catch basin to an approved point of discharge. The vertical elevation difference between the pavement surface and the trench pipe overflow invert shall be 1 foot minimum.

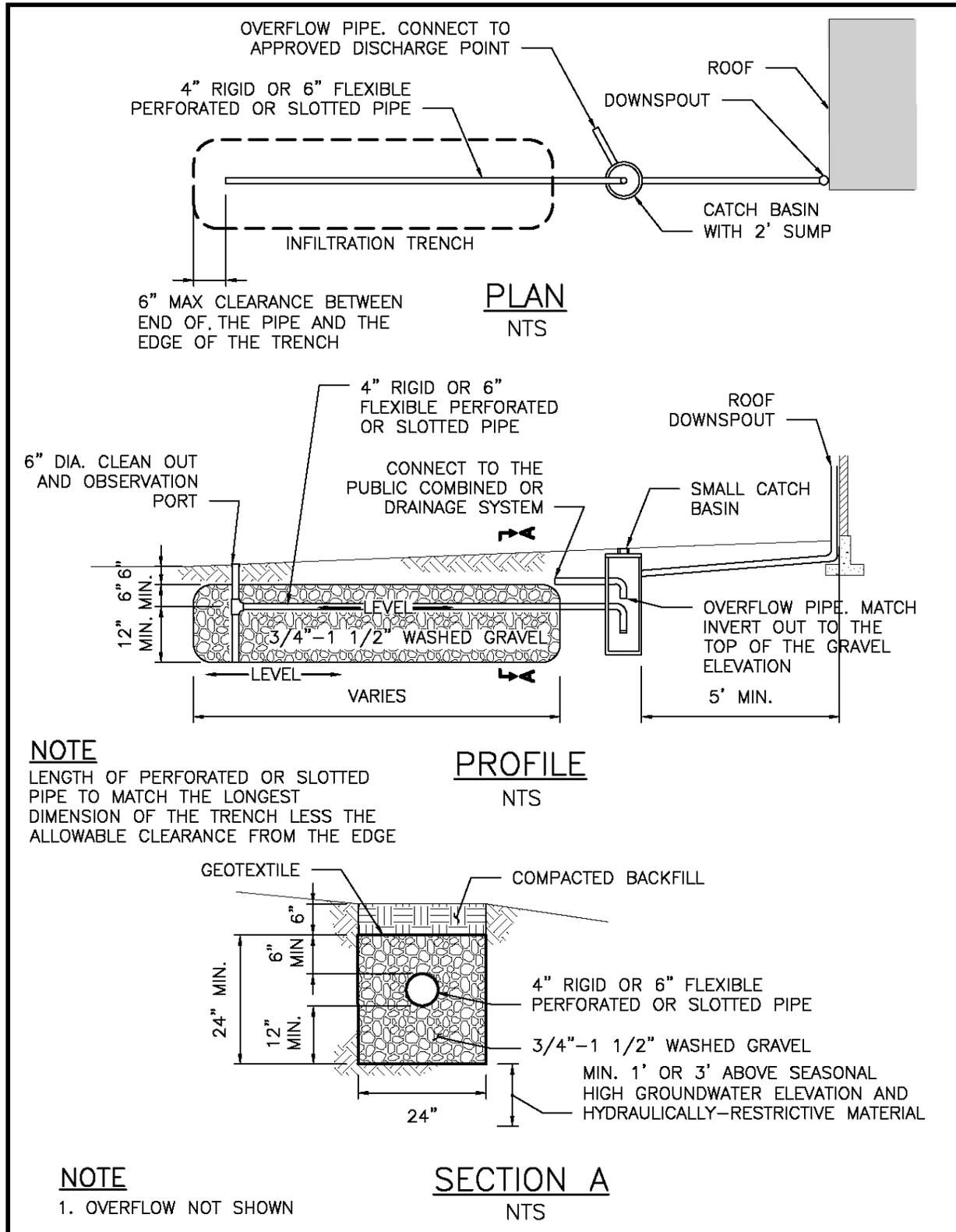


Figure 5.85-7. Typical Infiltration Trench Receiving Concentrated Flow.

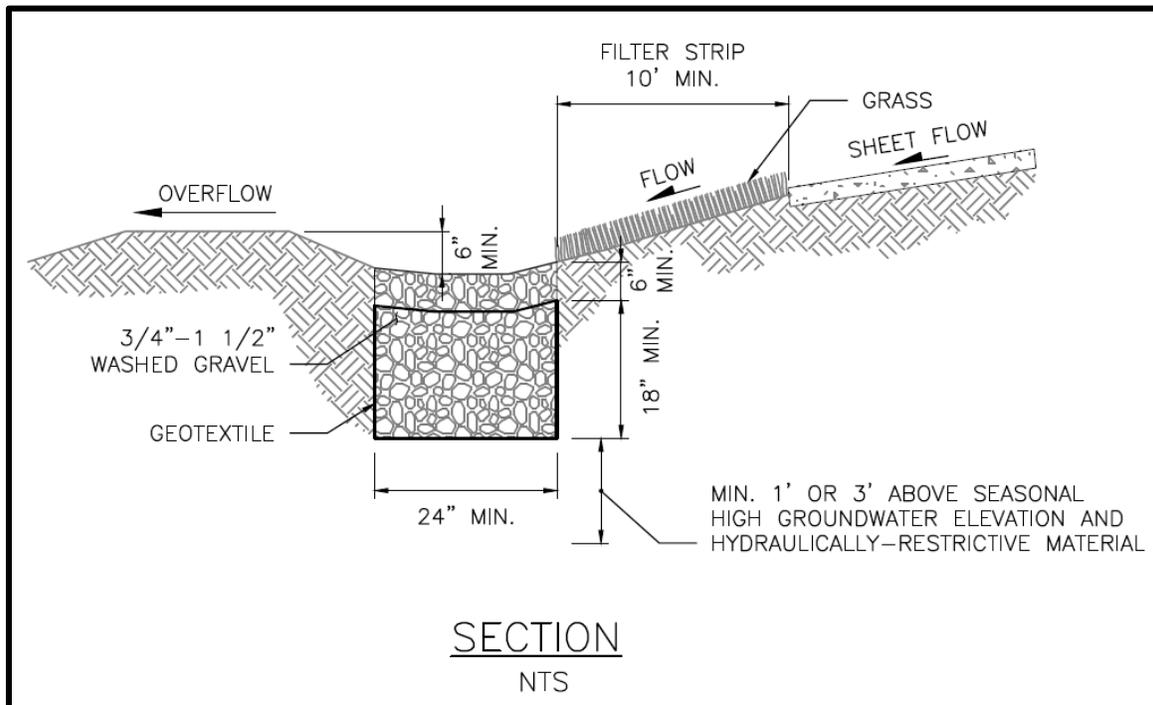


Figure 5.95-8. Typical Infiltration Trench Receiving Sheet Flow.

5.4.2.6. BMP Credits

Credit for On-site List Approach

Infiltration trenches can only be considered for compliance with the On-Site List Requirement (refer to Section 3.3.1 and Appendix C for infeasibility criteria) when the site measured infiltration rate is at least 5 inches per hour. The hard surface area managed with an infiltration trench sized according to Table 5.145-11 meets the requirement. Aggregate-filled trench shall be a minimum of 18 inches deep (as shown in Figures 5.85-7 and 5.95-8) and between 24 and 48 inches wide.

Table 5.145-11. On-site List Sizing for Infiltration Trenches.

Subgrade Soil Design Infiltration Rate	Sizing Factor for Infiltration Trench Area ^a
1 inch/hour	15%
2.5 inches/hour	10.5%
5 inches/hour	5.7%
7.5 inches/hour	4.8%
10 inches/hour	4%

Infiltration Trench Area = Contributing Hard Surface Area x Factor (%) / 100.

Hard Surface Area Managed = Trench Area ÷ Factor (%) / 100.

^a Sizing factors developed based on Ecology sizing requirements for T5.10A in Volume V# of the SWMMWW (trench length as a function of soil type). Soil types were converted to initial infiltration rates based on Ecology's Table 3.7 – Recommended Infiltration Rates based on USDA Soil Textural Classification from Ecology's 2005 SWMMWW Volume III. Design infiltration rates were calculated by applying a correction factor of 2. Trench length was converted to a sizing factor.

Sizing factors are used to calculate the infiltration trench facility area as a function of the area contributing runoff to the trench as explained below for the Pre-sized Approach. The subgrade design infiltration rate shall be rounded down to the nearest rate in the sizing table.

Pre-sized Approach for Flow Control and Water Quality Treatment

The Pre-sized Approach may be used for projects with new and replaced hard surface areas up to 10,000 square feet. Under the Pre-sized Approach (refer to *Section 4.1.2*), pre-sized infiltration trenches may be used to achieve Pre-developed Pasture, Peak Control and Water Quality Treatment Standards. Sizing factors and equations for infiltration trenches receiving runoff from a hard surface are provided in Table [5.155-12](#). Factors are organized by flow control standard, trench depth, subgrade soil design infiltration rate, and contributing area. A 1.5-foot or 3-foot aggregate storage reservoir depth may be selected. The aggregate storage reservoir is the subsurface aggregate layer below the overflow invert elevation that stores water for infiltration into the underlying subgrade soils (refer to Figures [5.85-7](#) and [5.95-8](#)). The design rate for the subgrade soils shall be rounded down to the nearest infiltration rate in the pre-sized table (i.e., 1.0, or 2.5 inch per hour).

To use these sizing factors or equations to meet flow control standards, the facility shall meet the general requirements for infiltration trenches outlined in this section, plus the following specific requirements:

- The trench area shall be sized using the applicable sizing factor or equation.
- The average aggregate storage reservoir depth across the trench shall be set at the designated height (1.5 or 3 feet). For intermediate ponding depths (between 1.5 and 3.0 feet), the sizing factor may be linearly interpolated.
- To use pre-sized infiltration trenches to meet the water quality treatment requirement or if any runoff from PGHS is directed to the trench, the underlying soil shall meet soil requirements specified in *Section 4.5.2*.
- The aggregate storage reservoir shall be composed of Mineral Aggregate Type 4 or approved equal.
- Invert of overflow shall be set at top of the storage reservoir to provide the required aggregate storage reservoir depth (e.g., pipe invert set at 1.5 or 3 feet if the bottom of the trench is flat).

Table 5.155-12. Pre-Sized Sizing Factors and Equations for Infiltration Trenches.

Trench Depth	Subgrade Soil Design Infiltration Rate	Contributing Area (sf)	Sizing Factor/Equation for Infiltration Trench Area		
			Pre-developed Pasture Standard	Peak Control Standard	Water Quality Treatment Standard ^a
1.5 feet	1.0 inch/hour	≤ 2,000	12.0%	46.4 15.7%	5.0%
		2,001 – 10,000	[0.0764 x A] +56.3		
	2.5 inch/hour	≤ 2,000	5.4%	8.3 8.1%	2.2%
		2,001 – 10,000	[0.0311 x A] +47.2		
3.0 feet	1.0 inch/hour	≤ 2,000	8.4%	44.0 10.1%	3.5%
		2,001 – 10,000	[0.0542 x A] +61.4		
	2.5 inch/hour	≤ 2,000	3.8%	6.0 5.5%	1.6%
		2,001 – 10,000	[0.0241 x A] +27.7		

A – contributing hard surface area; sf – square feet.

For Sizing Factors: Infiltration Trench Area = Contributing Hard Surface Area x Factor (%) / 100.
 Hard Surface Area Managed = Trench Area ÷ Factor (%) / 100.

For Sizing Equations: Infiltration Trench Area (sf) = [Factor x A (sf)] + Integer.
 Hard Surface Area Managed (sf) = [Trench Area (sf) – Integer] ÷ Factor.

^a Pre-sized Approach may be used to meet basic or enhanced water quality treatment if soil suitability criteria are met (refer to Section 4.5.2).

The infiltration trench facility area is calculated as a function of the area contributing runoff to the trench. As an example, to meet the Pre-developed Pasture Standard using a 1.5-foot-deep infiltration trench for a contributing area between 2,000 and 10,000 square feet where the design subgrade infiltration rate of 2.5 or more inches per hour, the trench area would be calculated as: 0.0311 x contributing hard surface area + 47.2. All area values shall be in square feet.

Alternatively, infiltration trench facilities can be sized using a continuous hydrologic simulation model as described in the subsequent section.

Modeling Approach for On-site Performance Standard, Flow Control, and Water Quality Treatment

When using continuous hydrologic modeling to size infiltration trenches, the assumptions listed in Table 5.165-13 shall be applied. It is recommended that infiltration trenches be modeled as a gravel-filled trench with infiltration to underlying soil and an overflow. The contributing area, trench area, and depth should be iteratively sized until the Minimum Requirements for On-site Stormwater Management and/or Flow Control, and/or Water Quality Treatment are met (refer to *Volume 1—Project Minimum Requirements*) or where it has been determined by the Director that there is no off-site point of discharge for the project, the requirements of Section 4.3.2 are met. General sizing procedures for infiltration facilities are presented in Section 4.5.1.

Table 5.165-13. Continuous Modeling Assumptions for Infiltration Trench Facilities.

Variable	Assumption
Precipitation Series	Seattle 158-year, 5-minute series
Computational Time Step	5 minutes
HSPF Parameters	LSUR, SLSUR, NSUR shall be adjusted per Appendix F
Inflows to Facility	Surface flow and interflow from total drainage area (including impervious and pervious contributing areas) routed to facility.
Precipitation and Evaporation Applied to Facility	Yes, if sited under pervious surface (e.g., lawn). If model does not apply precipitation and evaporation to facility, include the facility area as additional impervious area in the post-developed basin area that contributes runoff to the facility.
Aggregate Storage Reservoir Depth	Average depth of aggregate below overflow invert
Aggregate Storage Reservoir Porosity	Assume maximum 30% unless test showing higher porosity is provided
Subgrade Soil Design Infiltration Rate	Design infiltration rate (<i>Section 4.5.2, Appendix D</i>)
Infiltration Across Wetted Surface Area	No (bottom area only)
Outlet Structure	Overflow elevation set at average maximum subsurface ponding depth. May be modeled as weir flow over riser edge. Note that freeboard shall be sufficient to allow water surface elevation to rise above the overflow elevation to provide head for discharge.

5.4.2.7. Minimum Construction Requirements

During construction, it is critical to prevent clogging and over-compaction of the subgrade. Minimum requirements associated with infiltration trench construction include the following:

- **Aggregate Placement and Compaction** – Place the stone aggregate in lifts and compact using plate compactors. A maximum loose lift thickness of 12 inches is allowed. The compaction process aids in adhering the geotextile to the excavation sides, thereby, reducing soil piping, geotextile clogging, and settlement problems.
- **Potential Contamination** – Prevent natural or fill soils from intermixing with the aggregate. Remove all contaminated aggregate and replace with uncontaminated aggregate.
- **Overlap** – Following the stone aggregate placement, fold the geotextile over the stone aggregate to form a 12-inch minimum longitudinal overlap. When geotextile overlaps are required between rolls, overlap the upstream roll a minimum of 2 feet over the downstream roll in order to provide a shingled effect.

5.4.2.8. Operations and Maintenance Requirements

General O&M requirements for infiltration facilities apply to infiltration trenches. Infiltration trench O&M requirements are provided in *Appendix G (BMP No. 2)*.

5.4.3. Drywells

5.4.3.1. Description

Drywells are similar to infiltration trenches but are typically deeper and require less surface area. Stormwater is delivered to the drywell by pipe.

Drywells are subject to state UIC regulations. Provided that the design and O&M criteria in this section are met, only the registration requirement applies.

<u>Ecology SWMMWW Language</u>	<u>References</u>
<u>All UIC wells must be registered except: UIC wells at single-family homes (or duplexes) receiving only residential roof runoff used to collect stormwater runoff from roof surfaces on an individual home (or duplex) or for basement flooding control.</u>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <u>Volume I, Chapter 4, Section 1-4.3 of the SWMMWW (Ecology 2019)</u>

5.4.3.2. Performance Mechanisms

Flow control occurs through temporary storage of stormwater runoff in the spatial voids of the aggregate material, and subsequent infiltration of stormwater into the underlying soils.

5.4.3.3. Applicability

A drywell can be designed to provide on-site stormwater management and/or flow control. This BMP can be applied to meet the requirements listed below.

BMP	On-site		Flow Control			Water Quality				Conveyance
	List	Standard	Forest	Pasture	Peak	Basic	Enhanced	Oil Control	Phosphorus	
Drywell	✓ ^a									

^a Drywells are only applicable where the site measured infiltration rate is at least 5 inches per hour. PGHS or PGPS may only be directed to drywells if the soil suitability criteria for the subgrade soils is met (Section 4.5.2).

5.4.3.4. Site Considerations

Site considerations for the applicability of drywells are provided in Section 3.2 and Section 4.5. Refer to Appendix C for additional infeasibility criteria for the On-site List Approach.

5.4.3.5. Design Criteria

This section following provides a description and requirements for the components of drywells. Figure 5.105-9 shows a typical drywell system. Design criteria are provided in this section for the following elements:

- Drywell dimensions and layout
- Aggregate material

- Geotextile
- Subgrade
- Flow entrance and presettling
- Perforated pipe
- Observation port
- Overflow

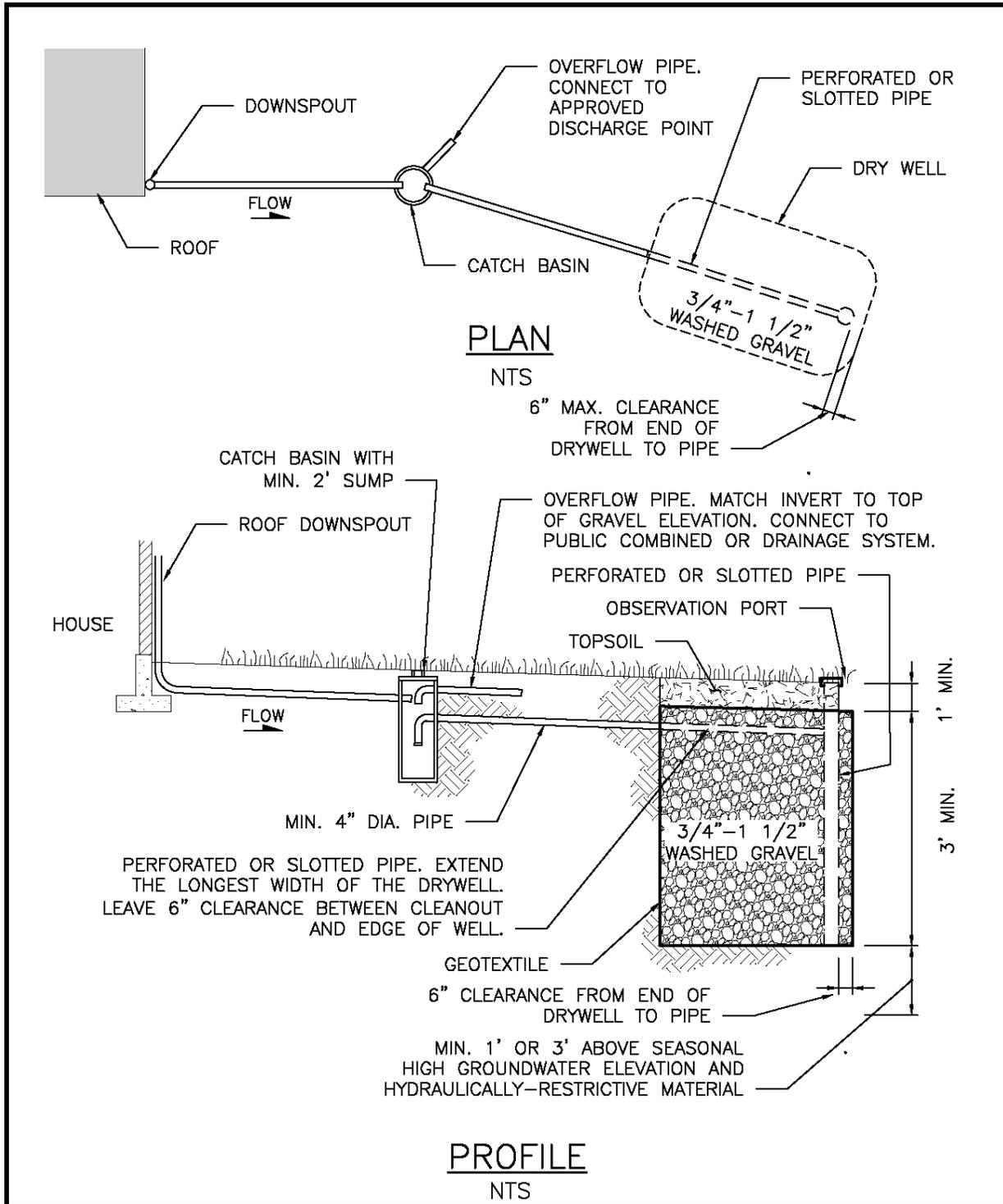


Figure 5.105-9. Typical Infiltration Drywell.

Drywell Dimensions and Layout

Minimum requirements associated with the drywell dimensions and layout include the following:

- The minimum depth of a drywell (aggregate and cover) shall be 4 feet.
- Spacing between drywells shall be a minimum of 10 feet.
- The drywell can be placed under a pervious or impervious surface cover to conserve space.

Aggregate Material

Drywells shall be filled with uniformly graded, washed gravel with a nominal size from 0.75- to 1.5-inch diameter. The minimum void volume shall be 30 percent. These requirements can be met with City of Seattle Mineral Aggregate Type 4.

Geotextile

Non-woven geotextile fabric, according to the specifications presented in *Appendix E*, shall be placed around the walls, bottom and top of the drywell aggregate. A 6-inch minimum layer of sand may be used as a filter media instead of geotextile at the bottom of the well, but geotextile is still required on the sides and top of the aggregate material.

Subgrade

The minimum measured subgrade infiltration rate for drywells is 5 inches per hour. If runoff from any PGHS is directed to the drywell, underlying soil shall meet the soil requirements outlined in *Section 4.5.2*.

During construction the subgrade soil surface can become smeared and sealed by excavation equipment. The design shall require scarification or raking of the side walls and bottom of the facility excavation to a minimum depth of 4 inches after excavation to restore infiltration rate.

Flow Entrance and Presettling

Flows shall be delivered to the drywell aggregate using a pipe with a 4-inch minimum diameter. Stormwater inflows shall be routed through a catch basin ~~or yard drain~~ with downturned elbow (trap). Presettling requirements are provided in *Section 4.4.5*.

Observation Port

Drywells that are designed to meet flow control requirements and receive runoff from contributing areas of 5,000 square feet or more shall be equipped with an observation port to measure the drawdown time following a storm and to monitor sedimentation to determine maintenance needs. Observation wells shall consist of a 4-inch minimum diameter perforated or slotted pipe that extends to the bottom of the drywell (i.e., to the subgrade) and is equipped with a secure well cap.

Overflow

Drywells shall have an overflow designed to convey any flow exceeding the capacity of the facility unless designed to fully infiltrate all flows for the full, required simulation period. Plans shall indicate surface flow paths in case of failure of the BMP (refer to Section 4.3.3). ~~per Section 4.3.4.~~ If overflow is connected to the public drainage system, a catch basin shall be installed prior to the connection to the public drainage system to prevent root intrusion into public drainage main lines.

To prevent damage to overlying pavement, drywells located beneath pavement shall be constructed with a trench pipe overflow connected to a ~~small yard drain or~~ catch basin with a grate cover. Design shall be such that, if the drywell infiltration capacity is exceeded, the trench pipe overflow would occur out of the catch basin to an approved point of discharge. The vertical elevation difference between the pavement surface and the trench pipe overflow invert shall be one foot minimum.

5.4.3.6. BMP Sizing

Sizing for On-site List Approach

Drywells can only be selected to meet the On-site List Requirement (refer to Section 3.3.1 and Appendix C for infeasibility criteria) when the site measured infiltration rate is at least 5 inches per hour. The hard surface area managed with a drywell sized according to Table 5.145.17 meets the requirement.

Table 5.145.17. On-site List Sizing for Drywells.

Aggregate Depth	Subgrade Soil Design Infiltration Rate	Sizing Factor for Facility Bottom Area ^a
		On-site List
4 feet	2.5 inch/hour	2.4%
	5 inches/hour	2.4%
	7.5 inches/hour	2.3%
	10 inches/hour	2.1%

Drywell Area (sf) = Contributing Hard Surface Area x Factor (%) / 100.

Hard Surface Area Managed = Drywell Area ÷ Factor (%) / 100.

Drywell shall be a minimum of 48 inches in diameter.

^a Sizing factors developed based on Ecology sizing requirements for T5.10A in Volume VIII of the SWMMWW (drywell aggregate volume as a function of soil type). Soil types were converted to initial infiltration rates based on Ecology's Table 3.7 – Recommended Infiltration Rates based on USDA Soil Textural Classification from Ecology's 2005 SWMMWW Volume III. Design infiltration rates were calculated by applying a correction factor of 2. Drywell volume was converted to a sizing factor.

Pre-sized Approach for Flow Control

The Pre-sized Approach may be used for projects with new and replaced hard surface areas up to 10,000 square feet. Under the Pre-sized Approach (refer to Section 4.1.2), pre-sized drywells may be used to achieve Pre-developed Pasture and Peak Control Standards. Sizing factors and equations for drywells receiving runoff from a hard surface are provided in Table 5.155.18. Factors are organized by flow control standard, drywell depth, subgrade soil design infiltration rates and contributing area. A 4-foot or 6-foot aggregate storage reservoir

depth may be selected. The aggregate storage reservoir is the subsurface aggregate layer below the overflow invert elevation that stores water for infiltration into the underlying subgrade soils. The design rate for the subgrade soils shall be rounded down to the nearest infiltration rate in the pre-sized table (i.e., 1.0 or 2.5 inch per hour).

To use these sizing factors or equations to meet flow control standards, the facility shall meet the general requirements for drywells outlined in this section plus the following specific requirements:

- The drywell area shall be sized using the applicable sizing factor or equation.
- The average aggregate storage reservoir depth in the drywell shall be set at the designated height (e.g., 4 feet). For intermediate ponding depths (between 4 and 6 feet), the sizing factor may be linearly interpolated.
- If any runoff from PGHS is directed to the drywell, the underlying soil shall meet soil requirements specified in *Section 4.5.2*.
- The aggregate storage reservoir shall be composed of Mineral Aggregate Type 4 or approved equal.
- The invert of the overflow shall be set at top of the storage reservoir to provide the required aggregate storage reservoir depth (e.g., pipe invert set at 4 feet if the bottom of the well is flat).

Table 5-155.18. Pre-Sized Sizing Factors and Equations for Drywells.

Drywell Depth	Subgrade Soil Design Infiltration Rate	Contributing Area (sf)	Sizing Factor/Equation for Drywell Area	
			Pre-developed Pasture Standard	Peak Control Standard
4.0 feet	1.0 inch/hour	≤ 2,000	7.0%	9.28.9%
		2,001 – 10,000	[0.0463 x A] + 49.1	
	2.5 inch/hour	≤ 2,000	3.1%	5.14.6%
		2,001 – 10,000	[0.0212 x A] + 20.2	
6.0 feet	1.0 inch/hour	≤ 2,000	4.3%	6.45.4%
		2,001 – 10,000	[0.032 x A] + 22.5	
	2.5 inch/hour	≤ 2,000	2.2%	3.93.3%
		2,001 – 10,000	[0.0172 x A] + 10.4	

A – contributing hard surface area; sf – square feet.

Drywell shall be a minimum of 48 inches in diameter.

For Sizing Factors: Drywell Area = Contributing Hard Surface Area x Factor (%) / 100.

Hard Surface Area Managed = Drywell Area ÷ Factor (%) / 100.

For Sizing Equations: Drywell Area (sf) = [Factor x A (sf)] + Integer.

Hard Surface Area Managed (sf) = [Drywell Area (sf) - Integer] ÷ Factor.

The drywell facility area is calculated as a function of the area contributing runoff to the drywell. As an example, to meet the Pre-developed Pasture Standard using a 6-foot-deep drywell for a contributing area less than 2,000 square feet, the well area would be equal to 4.3 percent of the contributing area when the subgrade infiltration rate is between 1.0 and 2.49 inches per hour.

Alternatively, drywell facilities can be sized using a continuous hydrologic simulation model as described in the subsequent section.

Modeling Approach for On-site Performance Standard and Flow Control

Continuous hydrologic modeling may be used to size drywells using the general infiltration BMP sizing procedures presented in *Section 4.5.1* and the procedures presented for infiltration trenches in *Section 5.4.2.6*.

5.4.3.7. *Minimum Construction Requirements*

During construction, it is critical to prevent clogging and over-compaction of the subgrade. Minimum requirements associated with drywell construction include the following:

- **Aggregate Placement and Compaction** – Place the stone aggregate in lifts and compact using plate compactors. A maximum loose lift thickness of 12 inches is allowed. The compaction process aids in adhering the geotextile to the excavation sides, thereby, reducing soil piping, geotextile clogging, and settlement problems.
- **Potential Contamination** – Prevent natural or fill soils from intermixing with the aggregate. Remove all contaminated aggregate and replace with uncontaminated aggregate.
- **Overlap** – Following the stone aggregate placement, fold the geotextile over the stone aggregate to form a 12-inch minimum longitudinal overlap. When geotextile overlaps are required between rolls, overlap the upstream roll a minimum of 2 feet over the downstream roll in order to provide a shingled effect.

5.4.3.8. *Operations and Maintenance Requirements*

General O&M requirements for infiltration facilities apply to drywells. Drywell O&M requirements are provided in *Appendix G (BMP No 2)*.

5.4.4. Infiltrating Bioretention

5.4.4.1. Description

Infiltrating bioretention facilities are shallow earthen depressions or vertical walled open-bottom boxes with a designed soil mix and plants adapted to the local climate and soil moisture conditions. Stormwater is stored as surface ponding before it filters through the underlying bioretention soil. Stormwater that exceeds the surface storage capacity overflows to an adjacent drainage system. Treated water is infiltrated into the underlying soil or, in soils with lower infiltration rates, collected by an underdrain and discharged to the drainage system. Bioretention facilities can be individual cells or multiple cells connected in series.

Two variations of infiltrating bioretention facilities are included in this section:

- **Infiltrating bioretention facility:** Bioretention facilities can have either sloped sides (e.g., an earthen depression) or vertical sides (e.g., vertical walled open-bottom box). Infiltrating bioretention cells are not lined, and may or may not have an underdrain or outlet control structure (e.g., orifice).
- **Infiltrating bioretention facility series:** Bioretention facilities with sloped or vertical sides may be connected in series, with the overflows of upstream cells directed to downstream cells to provide additional flow control and/or treatment and conveyance. Individual cells are defined as separate ponding areas delineated by distinct overflow to a downstream BMP or point of discharge.

Rain gardens are similar to infiltrating bioretention facilities, but are subject to fewer technical requirements (refer to *Section 5.4.5*). Bioretention facilities are considered non-infiltrating if they include a liner, ~~or other low-permeability barrier, or~~ impermeable barrier to [restrict or](#) prevent infiltration to the underlying soil (refer to *Section 5.8.2*).

5.4.4.2. Performance Mechanisms

Infiltrating bioretention provides flow control via detention, attenuation, and losses due to infiltration, interception, evaporation, and transpiration. Water quality treatment is accomplished through sedimentation, filtration, adsorption, uptake, or biodegradation and transformation of pollutants by soil organisms, soil media, and plants.

5.4.4.3. *Applicability*

Infiltrating bioretention facilities can be designed to provide on-site stormwater management, flow control and/or water quality treatment. This BMP can be applied to meet or partially meet the requirements listed below.

BMP	On-site		Flow Control			Water Quality				Conveyance
	List	Standard	Forest	Pasture	Peak	Basic	Enhanced	Oil Control	Phosphorus	
Infiltrating bioretention without underdrain	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓ ^b	✓ ^c
Infiltrating bioretention with underdrain	✓	✓ ^a	✓ ^a	✓ ^a	✓ ^a	✓	✓		✓ ^b	✓ ^c

^a Standard may be partially or completely achieved depending upon ponding depth, degree of underdrain elevation, infiltration rate, contributing area, and use of orifice control.

^b Refer to [treatment train options for infiltration BMPs included in Section 4.4.3.2](#) [Soil Suitability Criteria in Section 4.5.2](#).

^c Infiltrating bioretention facilities may be connected in series, with the overflows from upstream cells directed to downstream cells to provide conveyance.

5.4.4.4. *Site Considerations*

Site considerations for the applicability of infiltrating bioretention are provided in *Section 3.2* and *Section 4.5*. Additional site considerations apply for nutrient-critical receiving waters:

- **Phosphorous considerations:** Infiltrating bioretention is not permitted within 1/4 mile of nutrient-critical receiving waters if the underlying soil does not meet the soil requirements outlined in *Section 4.5.2*. Bioretention with an underdrain is not permitted if the underdrained water would be routed to a nutrient-critical receiving water.
- Refer to *Appendix C* for additional infeasibility criteria for the On-site List Approach.

5.4.4.5. *Design Criteria*

This section provides a description, recommendations, and requirements for the components of bioretention facilities. Typical components of bioretention facilities without underdrains and configured sloped and vertical sides are shown in Figures [5.115-10](#) and [5.125-11](#), respectively. Typical components of bioretention facilities with underdrains and configured sloped and vertical sides are shown in Figures [5.135-12](#) and [5.145-13](#), respectively. Refer to *Appendix C* for additional infeasibility criteria for the On-site List Approach.

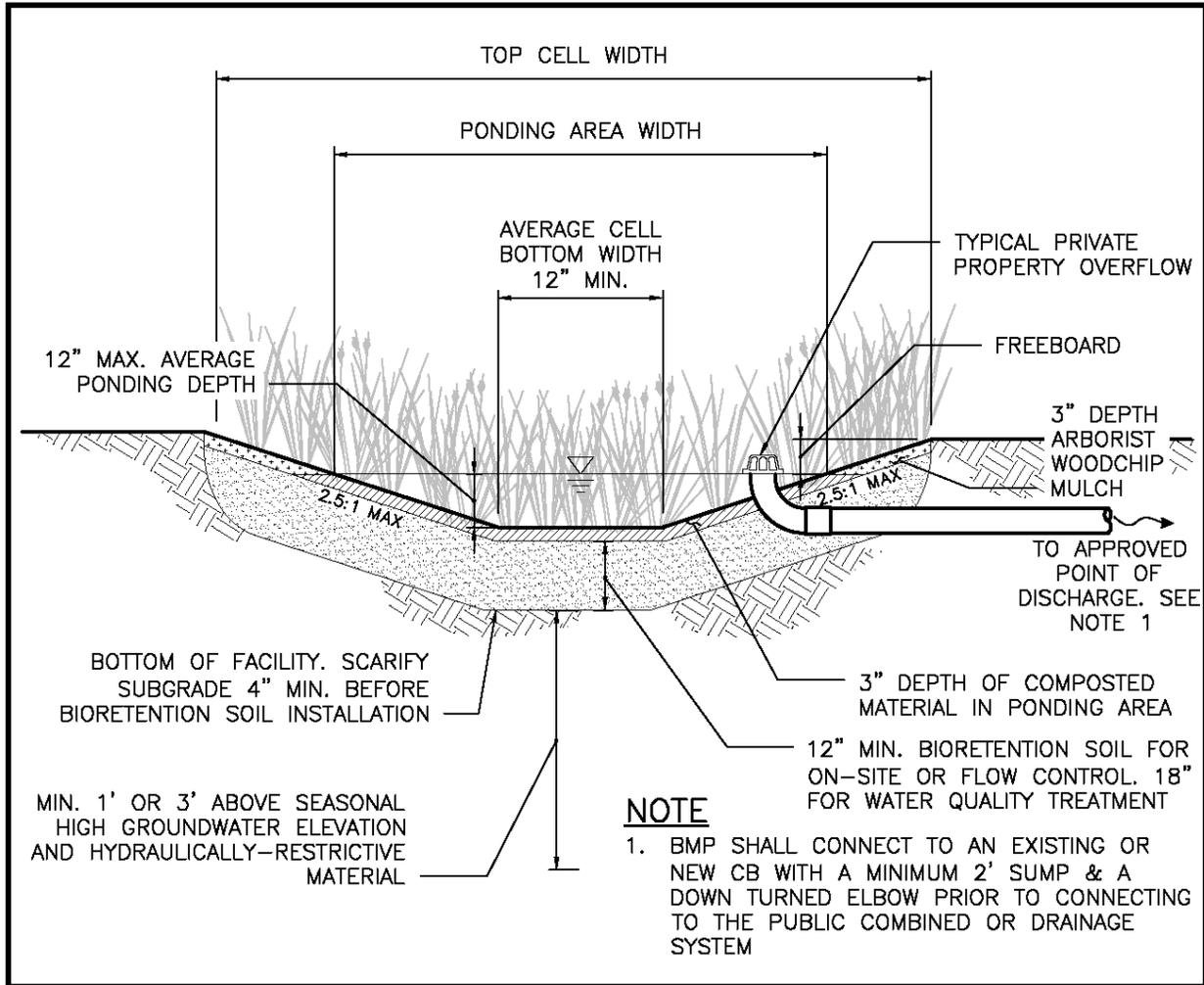


Figure 5.115-10. Infiltrating Bioretention Facility with Sloped Sides (without Underdrain).

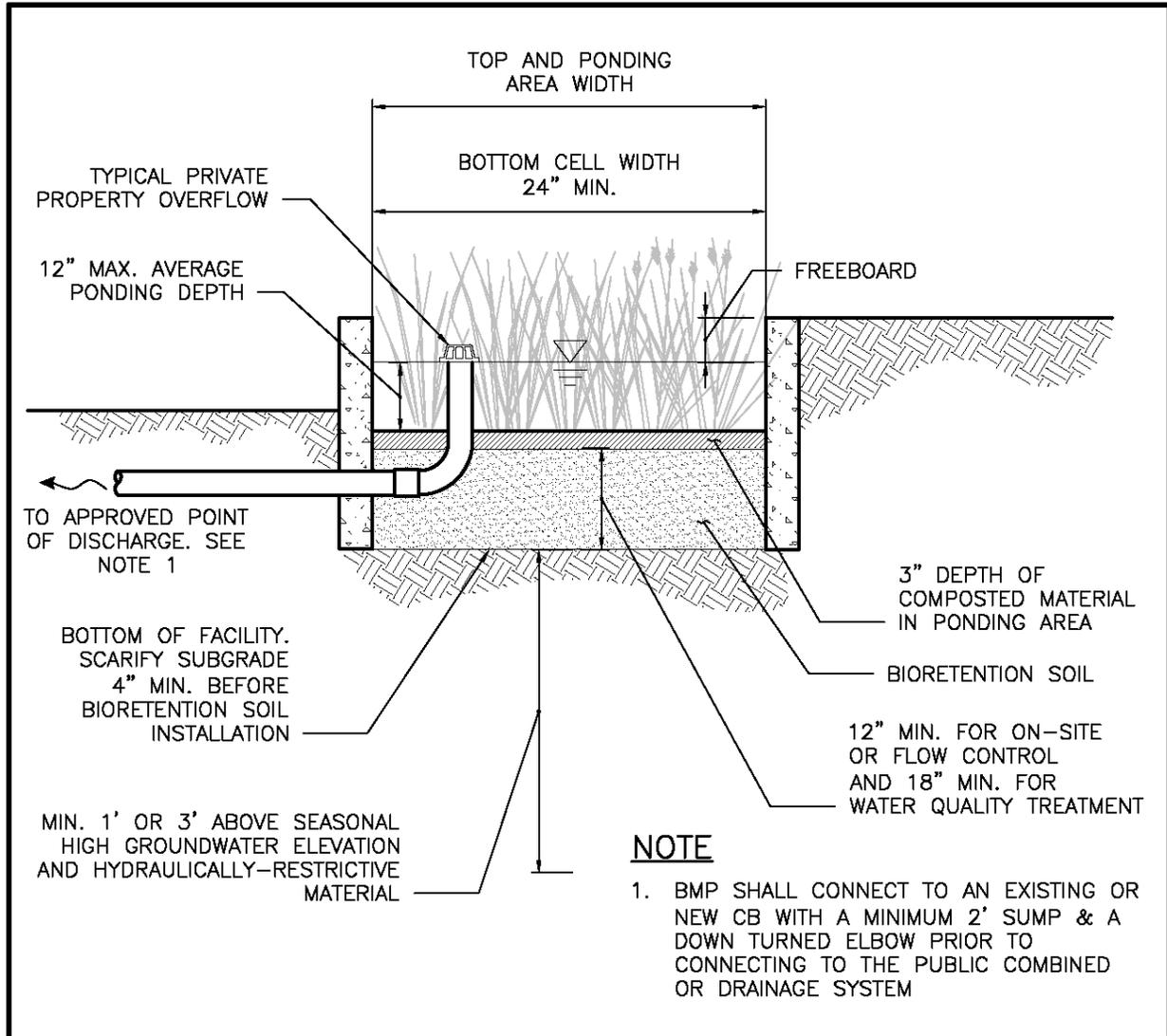


Figure 5.125-11. Infiltrating Bioretention Facility with Vertical Sides (without Underdrain).

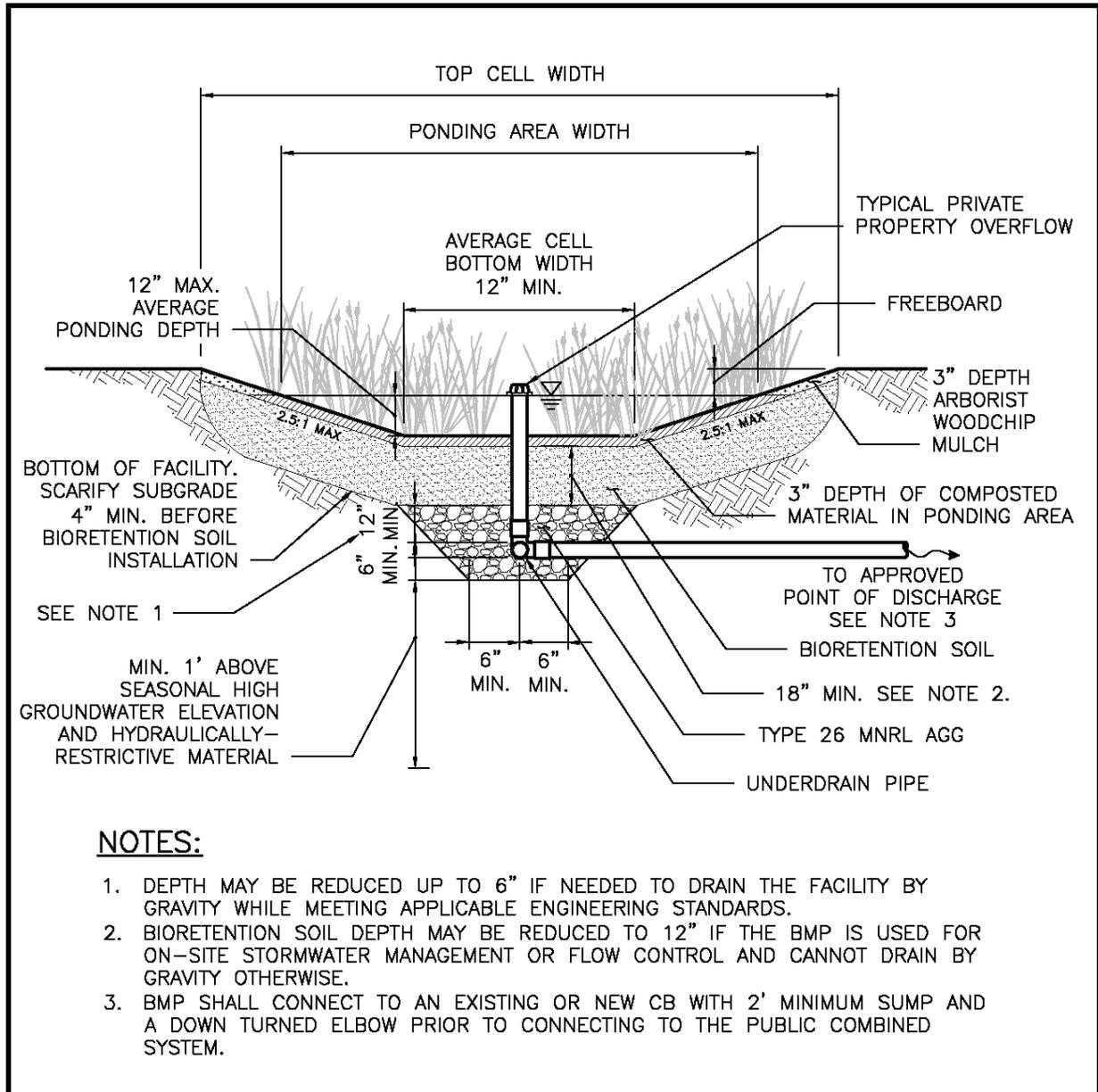


Figure 5.135-12. Infiltrating Bioretention Facility with Sloped Sides (with Underdrain).

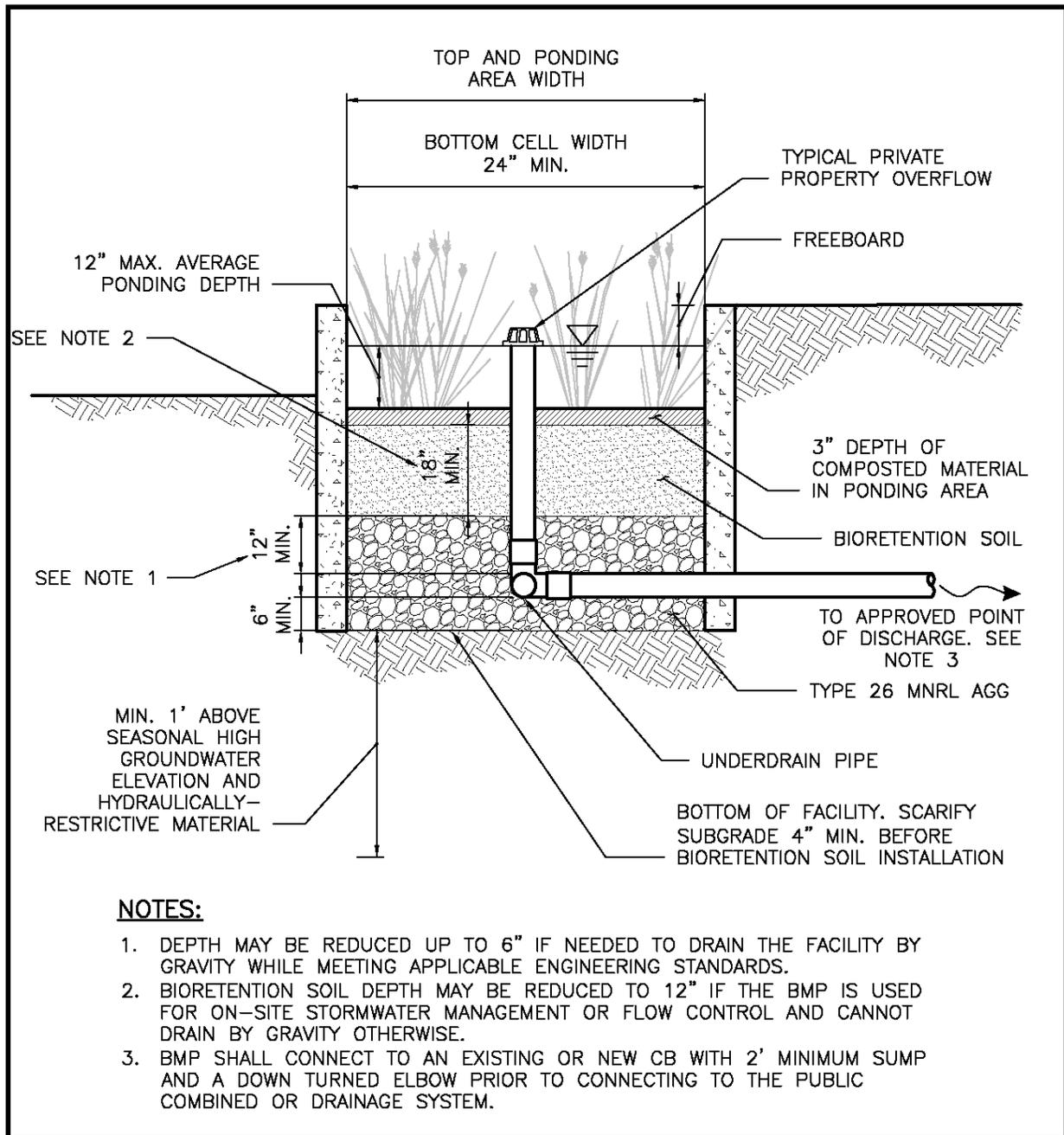


Figure 5.145-13. Infiltrating Bioretention Facility with Vertical Sides (with Underdrain).

Design criteria are provided in this section for the following elements:

- Contributing area
- Flow entrance
- Presettling
- Ponding area

- Bioretention soil
- Subgrade
- Underdrain (if required)
- Flow restrictor (optional)
- Overflow
- Liners (optional)
- Plant material
- Mulch layer

The Low Impact Development Technical Guidance Manual for Puget Sound (Puget Sound LID Manual) provides additional guidance on bioretention design.

Contributing Area

Bioretention cells are small and distributed. Unless approved by the Director, the contributing area to a bioretention facility is limited as follows:

- No single cell may receive runoff from more than 5,000 square feet of impervious area, unless as noted below for a series of bioretention cells.
- The bottom area of an individual cell shall be no larger than 800 square feet per the Ponding Area section (page 5-59). Runoff from more than 5,000 square feet of impervious area may be directed to an upstream cell in a bioretention series (interconnected series of cells). Note that in this case, the first cell or two will receive the heaviest pollutant loading and will require more maintenance than the other cells in the series.
- Contributing area may be greater than 5,000 square feet of impervious area only with the permission of the Director. Large contributing areas increase concerns about sediment accumulation and maintenance.

The bioretention facility should be sized for the contributing area routed to the facility. It is recommended that facilities not be oversized because the vegetation in oversized facilities may not receive sufficient stormwater runoff for irrigation, increasing maintenance. If a designer chooses to oversize the bioretention facility beyond the area required to meet the performance standard(s), the maximum allowable size (cell bottom area as a percent of the contributing area) is twice the size required to meet the Pre-developed Pasture Standard. The bottom area of the facility that is required to meet the performance standard(s) and the standard(s) being met shall be clearly noted on submitted plans and differentiated from the surrounding landscape.

Stormwater flows from other areas (beyond the area for which the facility is sized) should be bypassed around the facility in order to reduce sediment loading to the cell and the potential for bioretention soil clogging and increased maintenance needs.

For water quality treatment facilities, if bypass is not feasible, facilities shall be sized to treat runoff from the entire area draining to the facility.

It is also preferred that on-site and flow control facilities be sized for the entire area draining to the facility where feasible. Additional flows may pass through a bioretention facility sized to meet a flow control standard or on-site stormwater management requirement with the following limitations:

- The maximum area (i.e., areas beyond the area for which the facility is sized) that may pass through a bioretention facility shall not exceed twice the area for which it is sized due to sediment loading concerns;
- No flow control or on-site stormwater management credit is given for runoff from any area in excess of the area for which the facility was sized;
- If additional area is routed to a facility, it shall be clearly noted on submitted plans;
- The overflow infrastructure shall be sized for the full contributing area (refer to *Section 4.3.3*);
- ~~Projects shall still meet the flow control standards at the point of compliance; and~~
- Presettling calculations shall demonstrate that the water velocities in the vegetated areas of the facility do not exceed 2 feet per second during peak flows with 4 percent annual probability (the 25-year recurrence interval flow) (calculated through the narrowest vegetated cross section of the facility).

Flow Entrance

Flow entrances shall be sized to capture flow from the drainage area and designed to both reduce the potential for clogging at the inlet and prevent inflow from causing erosion in the facility. Four primary types of flow entrances can be used for bioretention facilities: dispersed flow (e.g., vegetated buffer strips), sheet flow, curb cuts, and concentrated flow (e.g., piped flow). Where feasible and appropriate within the site context, vegetated buffer strips are the preferred entrance type because they slow incoming flows and provide initial settling of particulates.

The minimum requirements associated with the flow entrance design include the following:

- For facilities in the right-of-way, the flow entrance elevation shall be above the overflow elevation.
- For sheet flow into a facility, a minimum 1-inch drop from the edge of a contributing hard surface to the vegetated flow entrance is required. This drop is intended to allow for less frequent maintenance by allowing some sediment/debris buildup at the edge where flow enters the facility. Refer to City of Seattle Standard Plan No. 292 and 293.
- The following requirements apply to roadway and parking lot curb cut flow entrances:
 - The curb cut width shall be sized based on the drainage area, longitudinal slope along the curb, and the cross slope at the inlet.
 - The minimum curb cut width shall be 8 inches for non-right-of-way applications (e.g., parking lots) and 10 inches in the right-of-way (refer to the City of Seattle Plan Nos. 295, 296, 297, and 298).
 - The curb cut shall have either a minimum of 8 percent slope from the outer curb face extending to a minimum of 12 inches beyond the back of curb, or provide a

minimum of a 2-inch vertical drop from the back of curb to the vegetated surface of the facility.

- If concentrated flows are entering the facility (e.g., pipe or curb cut), flow energy dissipation (e.g., rock/cobble pad or flow dispersion weir) shall be incorporated to reduce the potential for erosion at the inlet.

Presettling

Presettling to capture debris and sediment load from contributing drainage areas is required at the flow entrance for some bioretention facilities. By having a designated presettling zone, maintenance can be targeted in this area to remove sediment build-up.

The minimum requirements associated with the presettling design include the following:

- The minimum presettling requirements for bioretention facilities sited in the public right-of-way collecting runoff from pollution generating impervious surfaces are provided in Table 5-165.19.
- The minimum presettling requirements for bioretention facilities sited in all other settings are provided in the Table 5-175.20.
- If the cell will receive flows from impervious areas beyond the area for which the facility is sized, the presettling measures shall be designed for the entire area draining to the facility.

The area designated as the presettling zone shall not be included in the bottom area required to meet on-site stormwater management, flow control and/or water quality treatment. However, the presettling zone shall be included in the total landscaped facility top area for evaluation against the 500 square foot threshold for right-of-way project infeasibility (Appendix C). [An example bioretention presettling zone is provided in City of Seattle Standard Plan No. 299.](#)

Table 5-165.19. Presettling Requirements for Bioretention Facilities in Roadway Projects.

Longitudinal Length of Street (L) or Impervious Area ^a (A) Contributing Runoff to a Single Flow Entrance	Presettling Requirements
Residential Streets	
L ≤ 360 linear feet of gutter OR A ≤ 6,700 square feet of ROW impervious area AND Pollution Generating Impervious Surface < 5,000 square feet	No presettling is required.
360 < L ≤ 660 linear feet of gutter OR 6,700 < A ≤ 12,300 square feet of ROW impervious area OR Pollution Generating Impervious Surface ≥ 5,000 square feet	At a minimum, the bottom of the first 2 feet in length (for a total area of 2.5 square feet) of the upstream bioretention cell (at the flow entrance) shall be designated the presettling zone. This bottom area shall be constructed of a roughened concrete pad surrounded by cobbles per City of Seattle Standard Plan No. 299290 .

Table 5.165.19 (continued). Presettling Requirements for Bioretention Facilities in Roadway Projects.

Longitudinal Length of Street (L) or Impervious Area ^a (A) Contributing Runoff to a Single Flow Entrance	Presettling Requirements
Residential Streets (continued)	
L > 660 linear feet of gutter OR A > 12,300 square feet of ROW impervious area	Presettling requirements are project specific, to be determined by designer and approved by the Director.
Arterial Streets	
L ≤ 360 linear feet of gutter OR A ≤ 9,000 square feet of ROW impervious area	At a minimum, the bottom of the first 2 feet in length (for a total area of 2.5 square feet) of the upstream bioretention cell (at the flow entrance) shall be designated the presettling zone. This bottom area shall be constructed of a roughened concrete pad surrounded by cobbles per City of Seattle Standard Plan No. 299290 .
360 < L ≤ 660 linear feet of gutter OR 9000 < A ≤ 16,500 square feet of ROW impervious area	The full length of the first cell (in a series), which should have a bottom length of 8–10 feet designated as the presettling zone. At a minimum, the bottom of the first 2 feet in length (for a total area of 5 square feet) of this presettling zone shall have a roughened concrete pad. This initial bottom area should be followed by a porous weir that allows water to be temporarily detained and slowed down, such as a row of boulders set low (a few inches above the bottom of bioretention cell).
L > 600 linear feet of gutter OR A > 16,500 square feet of ROW impervious area	Presettling requirements are project specific, to be determined by designer and approved by the Director.

^a All ROW impervious area contributing runoff to the facility shall be included (e.g., roadway, sidewalk, driveways). Runoff from ROW pervious surfaces need not be included. Runoff from adjacent non-ROW impervious areas can be considered incidental and need not be included unless assessment of the site determines that the adjacent area that contributes runoff is greater than 10% of the total ROW impervious area.

Table 5.175.20. Presettling Requirements for Bioretention Facilities in Non-roadway Projects.

Impervious Area (square feet) Contributing Runoff to a Single Flow Entrance	Presettling Requirements
< 5,000	No presettling is required. Designer to determine if site specific presettling is needed based on upstream area conditions.
≥ 5,000 and < 10,000	The bottom of the first 2 to 3 feet of the upstream bioretention cell (at the flow entrance) shall be designated the presettling zone. This bottom area of the cell shall be constructed of cobbles, concrete open celled paving grids, plastic lattices filled with gravel or groundcover vegetation, a roughened concrete pad, or similar material for collection of sediment for maintenance. Alternatively, a catch basin (such as City of Seattle Standard Plan No. 240 or 241) with a minimum 2-foot sump may be used as the presettling zone. Where the pipe (from the catch basin) daylight into the bioretention cell, provide energy dissipation within the cell.

Table 5.175.20 (continued). Presettling Requirements for Bioretention Facilities in Non-roadway Projects.

Impervious Area (square feet) Contributing Runoff to a Single Flow Entrance	Presettling Requirements
≥ 10,000	Presettling requirements are project specific, to be determined by designer and approved by the Director.

Ponding Area

The ponding area provides surface storage for storm flows and the first stages of pollutant treatment within the bioretention facility. The minimum requirements for ponding area design for facilities with both side slopes and vertical sides include:

- The bottom area of an individual cell shall be no larger than 800 square feet (limitation is to ensure that bioretention facilities are small-scale and distributed). [The bottom of an individual cell may be larger than 800 square feet if the facility serves a regional area and with the permission of the Director.](#)
- The bottom area of an individual cell shall be no less than 4 square feet.
- The average ponding depth shall be no less than 2 inches.
- The ponding depth shall be no more than 12 inches. In right-of-way areas with high pedestrian traffic, the ponding depth may be restricted to 6 inches or less.
- The surface pool drawdown time shall be a maximum of 24 hours (drain time is calculated as the maximum ponding depth divided by the subgrade soil design infiltration rate). Note that facilities sized using the On-site List and Pre-sized Approach meet this requirement.
- The bottom slope shall be no more than 3 percent.

Additional minimum requirements for ponding area design specific to bioretention facilities with side slopes include the following:

- The maximum planted side slope is 2.5H:1V. In the ROW, if the facility is on a curbless street and less than 50 feet of an intersection, the maximum planted side slope is 3H:1V. If total facility depth exceeds 3 feet, the maximum planted side slope is 3H:1V. If steeper sides are necessary, rockery, concrete walls, or steeper soil wraps may be used.
- If berming is used to achieve the minimum top facility elevation needed to meet ponding depth and freeboard needs, maximum berm slope is 2.5H:1V, and minimum berm top width is 6 inches. Soil used for berming where the permanent restoration is landscape shall meet the bioretention soil specification and be compacted to a minimum of 90 percent dry density.
- For trees planted within or alongside slopes of the bioretention cell, the maximum side slope around the tree is 1H:1V.
- The average bottom width for the facility shall be no less than ~~18~~[12](#) inches.

Additional minimum requirements for ponding area design specific to bioretention facilities with vertical sides include the following:

- The facility width (planted area between walls) shall be no less than 2 feet. For plant health, the recommended minimum facility width is 4 feet.

To address traffic and pedestrian safety concerns, [refer to City of Seattle Standard Plan No. 292 and 293 for bioretention facilities in the right-of-way.](#) †The following additional minimum requirements [also](#) apply to bioretention facilities in the right-of-way:

- ~~The following minimum setbacks shall be provided for facilities with sloped sides:~~
 - ~~2 feet minimum from face of curb to top of slope on non-principal arterial streets~~
 - ~~4 feet minimum from face of curb to top of slope for principal arterial street~~
 - ~~1 foot minimum from edge of sidewalk to top of slope~~
- A minimum of one access path across planting strip shall be provided between the street and public sidewalk for each parcel. Access paths shall be a minimum of 5 feet wide. It is preferred that the access path is within 15 feet of the structure access point (such as path to doorway or stairs).
- Bioretention cells shall not impact driveway/alley access. A 2-foot minimum setback shall be provided from the pavement edge of the driveway curb cut wing to the top (top of slope) of bioretention cell.
- A two-foot minimum setback shall be provided from the edge of paving for the public sidewalk/curb ramp at the intersection to the top of slope of the bioretention cell. Curb ramp improvements are required whenever the construction of bioretention cells and associated street improvements remove pavement within the crosswalk area of the street or sidewalk, impact curbs, sidewalks, curb ramps, curb returns or landings within the intersection area, or affect access to or use of a public facility.

Bioretention Soil

The minimum requirements associated with bioretention soil design include:

- The bioretention soil shall meet City of Seattle Standard Specification 7-21. Soil shall be a well-blended mixture of 2 parts fine compost (approximately 35 to 40 percent) by volume and 3 parts mineral aggregate (approximately 60 to 65 percent) by volume. The mixture shall be well blended to produce a homogeneous mix, and have an organic matter content of 4 to 8 percent determined using the Loss on Ignition Method. Materials shall meet the criteria provided below.
- Fine compost for bioretention soil shall meet the criteria below:
 - Gradation. Fine compost shall meet the following size gradations by dry weight when tested in accordance with the U.S. Composting Council *Testing Methods for the Examination of Compost and Composting (TMECC) Test Method 02.02-B, Sample Sieving for Aggregate Size Classification*:

Sieve Size	Percent Passing	
	Minimum	Maximum
2"	100%	
1"	99%	100%
5/8"	90%	100%
1/4"	75%	100%

- pH. The pH shall be between 6.0 and 8.5 when tested in accordance with TMECC 04.11-A; “1:5 Slurry pH.”
- Physical Contaminants. Manufactured inert material (concrete, ceramics, metal, etc.) shall be less than 1.0 percent by weight as determined by TMECC 03.08-A “percent dry weight basis.” Film plastics shall be 0.1 percent or less, by dry weight.
- Organic Content. Minimum organic matter content shall be 40 percent by dry weight basis as determined by TMECC 05.07-A; Loss-On-Ignition Organic Matter Method.
- Salinity. Soluble salt contents shall be less than 5.0 mmhos/cm tested in accordance with TMECC 04.10-A; “1:5 Slurry Method, Mass Basis.”
- Maturity. Maturity shall be greater than 80 percent in accordance with TMECC 05.05-A; “Germination and Vigor.” The Engineer may also evaluate compost for maturity using the Solvita Compost Maturity Test at time of delivery. Fine Compost shall score a number 6 or above on the Solvita Compost Maturity Test. Coarse Compost shall score a 5 or above on the Solvita Compost Maturity Test.
- Stability. Stability shall be 7 or below in accordance with TMECC 05.08-B; “Carbon Dioxide Evolution Rate.”
- Feedstocks. The compost product shall contain a minimum of 65 percent by volume from recycled plant waste as defined in WAC 173-350-100 as “yard waste,” “crop residues,” and “bulking agents.” A maximum of 35 percent by volume of “post-consumer food waste” as defined in WAC 173-350-100 may be substituted for recycled plant waste. A minimum of 10 percent food waste in compost is required. The Engineer may approve compost products containing up to 35 percent biosolids or manure feedstocks for specific projects or soil blends, but these feedstocks are not allowed unless specified, and not allowed in compost used for bioretention soils.
- C:N. Fine compost shall have a carbon to nitrogen ratio of less than 25:1 as determined using TMECC 04.01 “Total Carbon” and TMECC 04.02D “Total Kjeldhal Nitrogen.” The Engineer may specify a C:N ratio up to 35:1 for projects where the plants selected are entirely Puget Sound native species. Compost may be mixed with fir or hemlock bark meeting requirements of [City of Seattle Standard Specification 9-14.4\(3\)](#) to raise the C:N ratio above 25:1. Coarse compost shall have a carbon to nitrogen ratio between 20:1 and 45:1.
- Mineral aggregate for bioretention soil shall be analyzed by an accredited lab using the sieve sizes noted below, and shall meet the following gradation:

Sieve Size	Percent Passing
3/8" Square	100
U.S. No. 4	60 – 100
U.S. No. 10	40 – 100
U.S. No. 40	15 – 50
U.S. No. 200	2 – 5

- [For facilities without underdrains, b](#)Bioretention soil depth [where no underdrain is used](#) shall be a minimum [18 inches for water quality treatment and 12 inches for on-site stormwater management and flow control.](#)

- Bioretention soil depth where an underdrain is used shall be a minimum 18 inches depth but may be reduced to a depth of 12 inches if it is needed to drain by gravity and the facility is used to meet on-site stormwater management or flow control and flow control requirements, and 18 inches to meet water quality treatment requirements.
- ~~For facilities with underdrains, the bioretention soil shall have a minimum depth of 18 inches.~~

~~Filter fabrics/geotextile are not required because the gradation between the bioretention soil and the subgrade soil is typically not large enough to result in significant migration of fines from the subgrade into the bioretention soil. Additionally, filter fabrics may clog with downward migration of fines from the bioretention soil material. Therefore, f~~Filter fabrics/geotextile shall not be used between the bioretention soil layer and the underlying subgrade. Exceptions may be allowed when specified by a licensed professional as defined in *Appendix D, Section D-1* and documented in the geotechnical design recommendations.

Subgrade

The minimum measured subgrade infiltration rate for infiltrating bioretention facilities without underdrains is 0.6 inch per hour. For infiltrating bioretention facilities with underdrains, the minimum measured subgrade infiltration rate is 0.3 inch per hour where used to meet the On-site List Approach (there is no minimum rate where used to meet other standards).

During construction the subgrade soil surface can become smeared and sealed by excavation equipment. The design shall require scarification or raking of the side walls and bottom of the facility excavation to a minimum depth of 4 inches after excavation to restore infiltration rate.

Underdrain (If Required)

Underdrain systems (refer to Figures ~~5.135-12~~ and ~~5.145-13~~) ~~must~~ shall be installed if the subgrade soils have a measured infiltration rate of less than 0.6 inch per hour. Designs utilizing underdrains provide less infiltration and flow control benefits. To improve performance, the underdrain may be further elevated (beyond the 6 inches shown in Figures ~~5.135-12~~ and ~~5.145-13~~); the subsurface gravel reservoir under the pipe may be widened to extend across the entire facility bottom; and/or a flow restrictor may be used.

The underdrain pipe diameter will depend on hydraulic capacity required. The underdrain can be connected to a downstream BMP, such as another bioretention cell as part of a connected system, or to an approved point of discharge.

The minimum requirements associated with the underdrain design include:

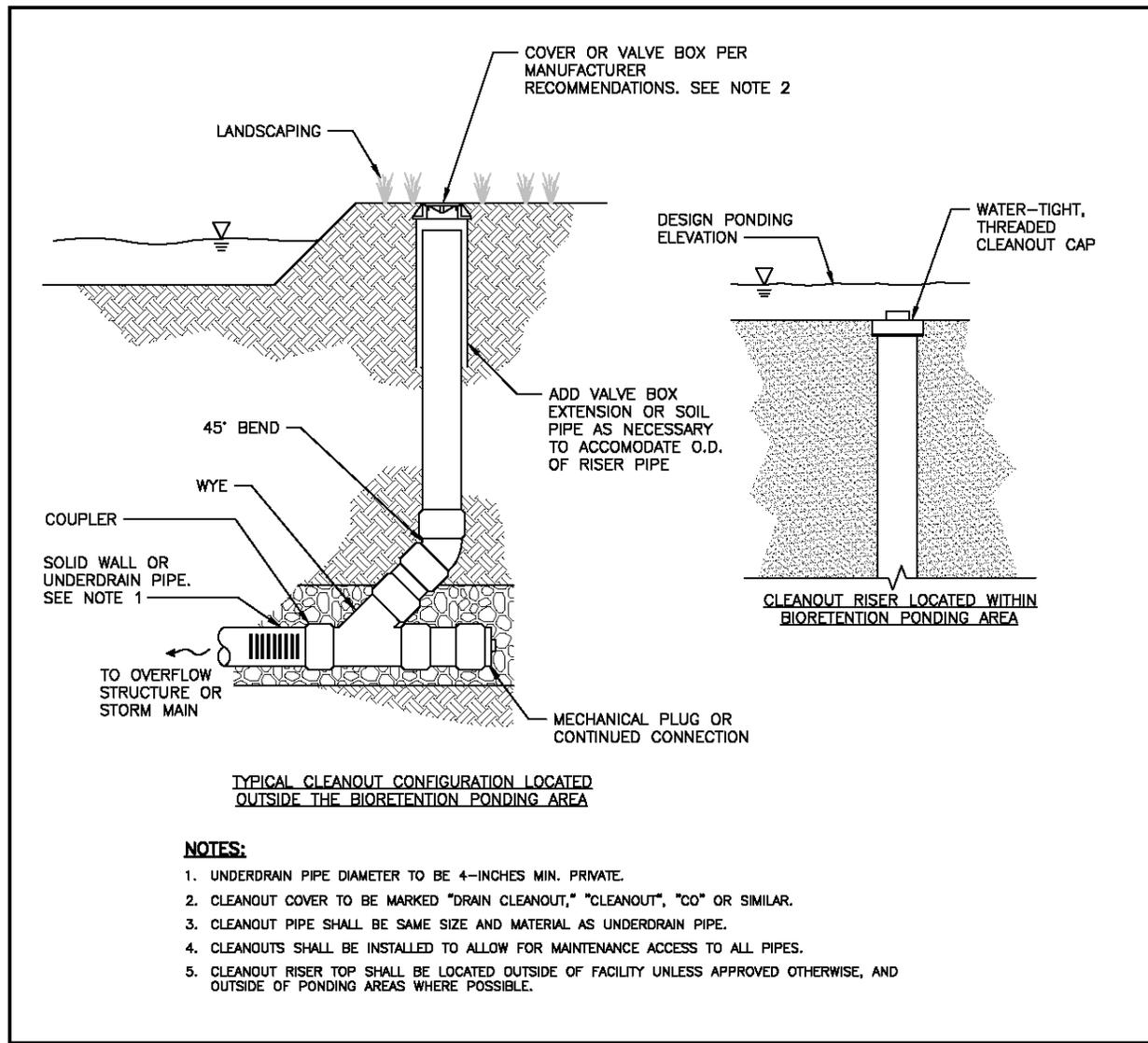
- Slotted pipe per City of Seattle Standard Plan No. 291.
- Underdrain pipe shall have a minimum diameter of 6 inches in the ROW and 4 inches outside of the ROW.
- Underdrain pipe slope shall be no less than 0.5 percent.

- Pipe shall be placed in filter material and have a minimum cover depth of 12 inches and bedding depth of 6 inches. Refer to Figures [5.135-12](#) and [5.145-13](#) for required pipe bedding dimensions. Cover depth may be reduced up to 6 inches in order to discharge stormwater from the facility under gravity flow conditions while meeting the applicable engineering standards, ~~if approved by the Director~~.
- Filter material shall meet the specifications of City of Seattle Mineral Aggregate Type 26 (gravel backfill for drains, City of Seattle Standard Specifications).
- Underdrains shall be equipped with cleanouts and observation port as follows:
 - For right-of-way projects, underdrains shall have a cleanout per City of Seattle Standard Plans at the upstream end and a combined cleanout and observation ports per City of Seattle Standard Plan No. 281 a minimum of every 100 feet along the pipe. Cleanouts and observation ports shall have locking cast iron caps.
 - For non-right-of-way projects, underdrains shall have a cleanout at the upstream end ([Figure 5.15](#)) and a combined cleanout and observation ports ([City of Seattle Standard Plan No. 281](#)) a minimum of every 100 feet along the pipe. Cleanouts and observation ports shall be non-perforated pipe (sized to match underdrain diameter) and shall meet the requirements in the Side Sewer Directors' Rule.
- When bioretention facilities with underdrains are used to meet the Minimum Requirements for Flow Control (SMC 22.805.080) or the Minimum Requirements for Treatment (SMC 22.805.090) and drain to a retention or detention facility, the subsurface gravel reservoir beneath the underdrain pipe shall be widened to extend across the entire facility bottom.

Flow Restrictor (Optional)

A flow restrictor assembly may be installed at the outlet of an underdrain system to further detain outflow. When used, the orifice diameter shall be sized to achieve the desired performance goal. The minimum requirements associated with the flow restrictor design include:

- An inspection chamber (catch basin or maintenance hole with clearances per City of Seattle Standard Plan No. 270 and 272A) shall be installed at the flow control assembly to allow for access and maintenance.
- A minimum orifice diameter of 0.25 inch. Note that an orifice diameter smaller than 0.5 inch is allowed for this subsurface application because the bioretention soil serves as a filter, making clogging of the orifice less likely.



[Figure 5.15. Stormwater Facility Cleanout for Facility Outside of the Right-of-Way.](#)

Overflow

A bioretention facility overflow controls overtopping with a pipe, an earthen channel, a weir, or a curb cut installed at the designed maximum ponding elevation and is connected to a downstream BMP or an approved point of discharge.

The minimum requirements associated with the overflow design include the following:

- Overflows shall convey any flow exceeding the capacity of the facility [unless designed to fully infiltrate all flows for the full, required simulation period. Plans shall indicate surface flow paths in case of failure of the BMP \(refer to Section 4.3.3\).](#) [per Section 4.3.4.](#)
- Freeboard shall be provided to ensure that any overtopping of the facility is safely conveyed to an approved point of discharge without flooding adjacent properties or

sidewalks. The minimum freeboard measured from the invert of the overflow point (e.g., standpipe, earthen channel, curb cut) or 25-year recurrence interval water surface elevation (as specified below) to the lowest overtopping elevation of the facility is:

- 2 inches measured from the invert of the overflow point for contributing drainage areas less than 3,000 square feet
- 4 inches measured from the invert of the overflow point for contributing drainage areas from 3,000 square feet to 5,000 square feet
- 6 inches measured from the invert of the overflow point for contributing drainage areas from greater than 5,000 square feet to 10,000 square feet
- 6 inches of measured from the 25-year recurrence interval water surface elevation (demonstrated with hydrologic modeling) for contributing drainage areas greater than 10,000 square feet
- With a curb and gutter, freeboard may be reduced if the project can demonstrate that any overtopping of the facility for larger events (greater than the 25-year recurrence interval) would be consistent with *Section 4.3.3*.
- The drain pipe, if used, shall have a minimum diameter of 4 inches.
- If the cell will receive flows from impervious areas beyond the area for which the facility is sized, the overflow conveyance infrastructure and freeboard requires engineering design to safely convey runoff from the entire area draining to the facility.

Liners (Optional)

Infiltrating bioretention facilities infiltrate stormwater into the underlying soil. However, adjacent roads, foundations, slopes, utilities, or other infrastructure may require that certain infiltration pathways are restricted to prevent excessive hydrologic loading. Two types of hydraulic restricting layers can be incorporated into bioretention facility designs:

- Clay (bentonite) liners as low permeability liners
- Geomembrane liners which completely block flow

[Refer to Appendix E, Section E-7 for more information about liners.](#)

For infiltrating bioretention facilities, the hydraulic restriction layer [shall be limited to only the extent necessary to protect adjacent area as described above](#) and shall not be used across the entire facility bottom (refer to *Section 5.8.2, Non-infiltrating Bioretention Facilities*). The horizontal footprint of the hydraulic restriction layer ~~must~~ [shall](#) be excluded from the infiltration area (bottom area and/or side slopes) represented for hydrologic modeling.

Plants

In general, the predominant plantings used in bioretention facilities are species adapted to stresses associated with wet and dry conditions. Soil moisture conditions will vary within the facility from saturated (bottom of cell) to relatively dry (rim of cell). Accordingly, wetland plants may be planted in the lower areas and drought-tolerant species planted on the

perimeter of the facility or on mounded areas. Trees selected from the bioretention plant list (*Appendix E*) are allowed and encouraged as part of bioretention.

The minimum requirements associated with the vegetation design include the following:

- The design plans shall specify that vegetation coverage of plants will achieve 90 percent coverage within 2 years. For this purpose, cover is defined as canopy cover and should be measured when deciduous plants are in bloom.
- For facilities receiving runoff from 5,000 square feet or more hard surface, plant spacing and plant size shall be designed by a licensed landscape architect to achieve specified coverage.
- The plants shall be sited according to sun, soil, wind, and moisture requirements. ([refer to Appendix E, Section E-9](#)).
- [If a bioretention facility will be located in a full shade area \(i.e., receiving less than 3 hours of direct sunlight per day\), then a licensed landscape architect shall provide input on the plant selection and layout. If a licensed landscape architect determines that plants will not survive in the fully shaded location, 3 inches of clean, washed drainage gravel backfill for drains \(Type 26\) or mulch may be used as a top dressing in lieu of plants.](#)
- At a minimum, provisions shall be made for supplemental irrigation/watering during the first two growing seasons following installation and in subsequent periods of drought.
- Plants for bioretention facilities sited in the right-of-way shall be selected from the bioretention plant list in *Appendix E, Section E-9*.

Refer to the Puget Sound LID Manual for guidance on plant selection and recommendations for increasing survival rates. Recommended planting lists can be found in the Puget Sound LID Manual, the Right-of-Way Improvements Manual, and the Seattle Green Factor plant list (refer to SDCI Director's Rule 10-2011).

Mulch Layer

Properly selected organic mulch material reduces weed establishment, regulates soil temperatures and moisture, and adds organic matter to the soil. Compost and arborist wood chip mulch are required for different applications within the bioretention cell. Compost mulch is an excellent slow-release source of plant nutrients and does not float, but compost does not suppress weed growth as well as bulkier, higher carbon mulches like arborist wood chips. Arborist wood chips are superior to bark mulch in promoting plant growth, feeding beneficial soil organisms, reducing plant water stress, and maintaining surface soil porosity.

The minimum requirements associated with organic mulch include:

- [Organic mulch in the bottom of the cell and up to the ponding elevation shall consist of coarse or medium compost \(per City of Seattle Standard Specification 9-14.4\(8\)bb\). Medium compost shall meet the requirements for fine compost provided in the Bioretention Soil Section and the following gradation by dry weight:](#)

<u>Sieve Size</u>	<u>Percent Passing</u>	
	<u>Minimum</u>	<u>Maximum</u>
1"	100%	100%
5/8"	85%	100%
1/4"	70%	85%

Coarse compost shall meet the requirements for fine compost provided in the *Bioretention Soil Section* and the following gradation by dry weight:

Sieve Size	Percent Passing	
	Minimum	Maximum
3"	100%	
1"	90%	100%
3/4"	70%	100%
1/4"	40%	6%

- Organic mulch on cell slopes above the ponding elevation and the around the rim area shall consist of arborist wood chip mulch (per City of Seattle Standard Specification 9-14.4(4)). Arborist wood chip mulch shall meet the criteria below:
 - Arborist wood chip mulch shall be coarse ground wood chips (approximately 0.5 inch to 6 inches along the longest dimension) derived from the mechanical grinding or shredding of the aboveground portions of trees. It may contain wood, wood fiber, bark, branches, and leaves; but may not contain visible amounts of soil. It shall be free of weeds and weed seeds including but not limited to plants on the King County Noxious Weed list available at: www.kingcounty.gov/weeds, and shall be free of invasive plant portions capable of resprouting, including but not limited to horsetail, ivy, clematis, knotweed, etc. It may not contain more than 0.5 percent by weight of manufactured inert material (plastic, concrete, ceramics, metal, etc.).
 - Arborist wood chip mulch, when tested, shall meet the following loose volume gradation:

Sieve Size	Percent Passing	
	Minimum	Maximum
2"	95%	100%
1"	70%	100%
5/8"	0%	50%
1/4"	0%	40%

No particles may be longer than 8 inches.

- ~~Depth shall be a minimum of 2 inches and a maximum of 3 inches~~ for both types of organic mulch

In bioretention areas outside of roadway right-of-way, or where higher flow velocities are anticipated, an aggregate mulch may be used. Where higher flow velocities are anticipated, the use of mineral aggregate is to dissipate flow energy and protect underlying bioretention soil. Aggregate mulch varies in size and type, but 1- to 1.5-inch gravel (rounded) decorative rock is typical. The aggregate mulch shall be washed rock (free of fines) and the area covered

with aggregate mulch shall not exceed one-fourth of the facility bottom area. [Aggregate mulch shall be free-draining and applied in a manner to maintain the permeability of the bioretention. Therefore, areas where it is applied shall not be considered hard surface.](#)

As an alternative to mulch, a dense groundcover may be used. Mulch is required in conjunction with the groundcover until groundcover is established.

5.4.4.6. BMP Sizing

Sizing for On-site List Approach

Infiltrating bioretention may be selected to meet the On-site List Requirement (refer to *Section 3.3.1* and *Appendix C* for infeasibility criteria). To meet the requirement, bioretention ~~must~~ shall be sized according to the sizing factors provided in Table [5-185.21](#). Sizing factors for facilities without underdrains are based on achieving a minimum wetted surface area of 5 percent of the contributing area or meeting the On-site Performance Standard for a pre-developed condition of forest on till (whichever is greater). Sizing factors for facilities with underdrains are increased by 11 percent (i.e., multiplied by a factor of 1.11) to account for reduced performance (due to the presence of an underdrain).

Factors are organized by cell ponding depth, cell side slope, and subgrade design infiltration rate. To select the appropriate sizing factor:

- The subgrade design infiltration rate shall be rounded down to the nearest rate in the sizing table.
- The design ponding depth shall be rounded down to the nearest depth in the sizing table, or sizing factors may be linearly interpolated for intermediate ponding depths (e.g., between 3 and 4 inches ponding).

Table [5-185.21](#). On-site List Sizing for Infiltrating Bioretention with and without Underdrains.

Bioretention Configuration	Average Ponding Depth	Subgrade Soil Design Infiltration Rate	Sizing Factor for Facility Bottom Area	
			Without Underdrain ^a	With Underdrain ^b
Sloped sides	2 inches	0.15 inch/hour	NA ^c	8.9% 6.8% ^d
		0.3 inch/hour	4.7% 4.5% ^e	5.2% 5.0% ^d
		0.6 inch/hour	4.5%	5.0% 5.0%
		1.0 inch/hour	4.5%	5.0%
		2.5 inch/hour	4.5%	5.0%
	6 inches	0.15 inch/hour	NA ^{c,f}	5.6% 4.7% ^d
		0.3 inch/hour	3.5%	3.9%
		0.6 inch/hour	3.5%	3.9%
		1.0 inch/hour	3.5%	3.9%
		2.5 inch/hour	3.5%	3.9%

Table 5.21 (continued). On-site List Sizing for Infiltrating Bioretention with and Without Underdrains.

Bioretention Configuration	Average Ponding Depth	Subgrade Soil Design Infiltration Rate	Sizing Factor for Facility Bottom Area	
			Without Underdrain ^a	With Underdrain ^b
Sloped sides (continued)	12 inches	0.15 inch/hour	NA ^{c,f}	2.8% 3.2% ^d
		0.3 inch/hour	NA ^f	2.6% 3.9%
		0.6 inch/hour	2.3%	2.6%
		1.0 inch/hour	2.3%	2.6%
		2.5 inch/hour	2.3%	2.6%
Vertical sides	6 inches	0.15 inch/hour	NA ^{c,f}	9.2% 7.2% ^d
		0.3 inch/hour	5.3% 5.0% ^e	5.9% 5.6% ^d
		0.6 inch/hour	5.0% ^g	5.6% 5.6% ^g
		1.0 inch/hour	5.0% ^g	5.6% ^g
		2.5 inch/hour	5.0% ^g	5.6% ^g
	12 inches	0.15 inch/hour	NA ^{c,f}	7.1% 5.7% ^d
		0.3 inch/hour	NA ^f	5.6%
		0.6 inch/hour	5.0%	5.6%
		1.0 inch/hour	5.0%	5.6%
		2.5 inch/hour	5.0%	5.6%

NA – not applicable.

^a Sizing factors are based on achieving a minimum wetted surface area of 5 percent, unless otherwise noted.

^b Sizing factors are based on a minimum wetted surface area of 5 percent multiplied by a factor of 1.11, unless otherwise noted.

^c Underdrain systems shall be installed if the subgrade soils have a measured infiltration rate of less than 0.6 inch per hour (note that the infiltration rates listed in the table are design rates).

^d Sizing factor increased to the sized required to meet the On-site Performance Standard for a pre-developed condition of forest on till and multiplied by a factor of 1.11.

^e Sizing factor increased beyond the minimum wetted surface area of 5 percent to meet the On-site Performance Standard for a pre-developed condition of forest on till.

^f Ponding depth and infiltration rate combination do not achieve drawdown requirements.

^g To maximize flow control benefit, 12 inch vertical side walls are recommended for design infiltration rates exceeding 0.3 inch per hour.

Bioretention Facility Bottom Area = Contributing Hard Surface Area x Factor (%) / 100.

Hard Surface Area Managed = Bioretention Facility Bottom Area ÷ Factor (%) / 100.

The facility shall meet the general requirements for infiltrating bioretention outlined in this section plus the following specific requirements:

- The bottom area shall be sized using the applicable sizing factor.
- It is preferred that the bottom area is flat, but up to 3 percent slope is permitted.
- For facilities with sloped sides, the side slopes within the ponded area shall be no steeper than 2.5H:1V.
- For facilities without underdrains, the bioretention soil depth shall be a minimum of 12 inches for flow control and 18 inches for water quality treatment. For facilities with underdrains, the amended soil shall have a minimum depth of 18 inches.

- The average ponding depth for the cell shall be no less than the selected ponding depth.
- ~~No Low-permeability or~~ impermeable liner shall not be used except to protect-adjacent roads, foundations, slopes, utilities, or other infrastructure from excessive hydrologic loading. Liner shall not be used across the entire facility bottom.

The *bottom area* for the cell is calculated as a function of the hard surface area routed to it. As an example, the bottom area of the bioretention cell with vertical sides would be equal to 5.3 percent of the hard surface area routed to it when the ponding depth is an average of 6 inches and the design infiltration rate is equal to greater than 0.3 inch per hour.

For facilities with sloped sides, top area is calculated as a function of the cell bottom area and the side slopes up to the total facility depth (i.e., ponding and freeboard depth).

Pre-sized Approach for Flow Control and Water Quality Treatment

The Pre-sized Approach may be used for projects with new and replaced hard surface areas up to 10,000 square feet. Under the Pre-sized Approach (refer to *Section 4.1.2*), simple equations are used to calculate the size of “pre-designed” bioretention facilities subject to specific design requirements (e.g., side slope, ponding depth). Sizing factors and equations for infiltrating bioretention without underdrains and with underdrains are provided in Tables [5-195.22](#) and [5-205.23](#), respectively. Note that the modeling conducted to develop sizing factors and equations for bioretention with underdrains did not include infiltration to underlying soil due to modeling constraints at the time of publication.

Pre-sized infiltrating bioretention facilities without underdrains may be used to achieve the Pre-developed Pasture, Peak Control, and Water Quality Treatment Standards. Pre-sized infiltrating bioretention facilities with underdrains may be used to achieve the Peak Control and Water Quality Treatment Standards. Sizing factors are organized by side slopes (i.e., sloped sides or vertical sides), performance standard, facility ponding depth, subgrade soil design infiltration rate (for facilities without underdrains), and contributing area. To select the appropriate sizing factor or equation:

- The design ponding depth shall be rounded down to the nearest depth in the sizing table, or sizing factors may be linearly interpolated for intermediate ponding depths (e.g., between 6 and 12 inches ponding).
- For facilities without underdrains, the subgrade design infiltration rate shall be rounded down to the nearest infiltration rate in the pre-sized table (i.e., 0.15, 0.3, 0.6, 1.0, or 2.5 inches per hour).

Table 5.195.22. Pre-sized Sizing Factors and Equations for Infiltrating Bioretention Without Underdrains.

Bioretention Configuration	Average Ponding Depth	Subgrade Soil Design Infiltration Rate	Contributing Area (sf)	Sizing Factor/Equation for Facility Bottom Area		
				Pre-developed Pasture Standard	Peak Control Standard	Water Quality Treatment Standard ^a
Sloped sides	2 inches	0.15 inch/hour	≤2,000	37.8% <u>22.9%</u>	NP	40.3% <u>8.8%</u>
			2,001 – 10,000	$[0.2132 \times A] + 325.2$ $[0.1600 \times A] + 139.6$		
		0.3 inch/hour	≤2,000	29.7% <u>18.4%</u>	NP	8.4% <u>6.9%</u>
			2,001 – 10,000	$[0.1727 \times A] + 246.6$ $[0.1319 \times A] + 106$		
		0.6 inch/hour	≤2,000	41.7% <u>9.5%</u>	NP	4.4% <u>3.1%</u>
			2,001 – 10,000	$[0.0786 \times A] + 76.1$ $[0.0756 \times A] + 38.8$		
	1.0 inch/hour	≤2,000	4.3% <u>8.3%</u>	NP	3.8% <u>2.7%</u>	
		2,001 – 10,000	$[0.0301 \times A] + 26.2$ $[0.0650 \times A] + 34.7$			
	2.5 inch/hour	≤2,000	4.3% <u>3.6%</u>	NP	4.5% <u>1.3%</u>	
		2,001 – 10,000	$[0.0301 \times A] + 26.2$ $[0.0251 \times A] + 19.7$			
	6 inches	0.15 inch/hour	≤ 2,000	NA ^b	NA ^b	NA ^b
			2,001 – 10,000			
		0.3 inch/hour	≤2,000	13.9% <u>10.4%</u>	47.7% <u>14%</u>	4.7% <u>1.5%</u>
			2,001 – 10,000	$[0.0981 \times A] + 80$ $[0.0830 \times A] + 38.7$		
		0.6 inch/hour	≤2,000	8.5% <u>6.2%</u>	12.2% <u>9.6%</u>	3.0% <u>0.7%</u>
			2,001 – 10,000	$[0.0653 \times A] + 38.2$ $[0.0560 \times A] + 10.2$		
	1.0 inch/hour	≤2,000	7.3% <u>5.3%</u>	40.7% <u>8.6%</u>	2.6% <u>0.7%</u>	
		2,001 – 10,000	$[0.0561 \times A] + 32.7$ $[0.0480 \times A] + 8.8$			
2.5 inch/hour	≤2,000	2.9% <u>2.1%</u>	5.3% <u>4.7%</u>	4.0% <u>0.5%</u>		
	2,001 – 10,000	$[0.0214 \times A] + 12$ $[0.0177 \times A] + 3.5$				
12 inches	0.15 inch/hour	≤2,000	NA ^b	NA ^b	NA ^b	
		2,001 – 10,000				
	0.3 inch/hour	≤2,000	NA ^b	NA ^b	NA ^b	
		2,001 – 10,000				
	0.6 inch/hour	≤2,000	4.3% <u>3.3%</u>	8.2% <u>7.0%</u>	4.7% <u>1.1%</u>	
		2,001 – 10,000	$[0.0444 \times A] - 3.6$ $[0.0395 \times A] - 16.1$			
1.0 inch/hour	≤2,000	3.7% <u>2.8%</u>	7.2% <u>6.1%</u>	4.5% <u>1.0%</u>		
	2,001 – 10,000	$[0.038 \times A] - 4$ $[0.0335 \times A] - 13.3$				

Table 5.195.22 (continued). Pre-sized Sizing Factors and Equations for Infiltrating Bioretention Without Underdrains.

Bioretention Configuration	Average Ponding Depth	Subgrade Soil Design Infiltration Rate	Contributing Area (sf)	Sizing Factor/Equation for Facility Bottom Area		
				Pre-developed Pasture Standard	Peak Control Standard	Water Quality Treatment Standard ^a
Sloped sides (continued)	12 inches (continued)	2.5 inch/hour	≤2,000	1.2%1.0%	3.3%2.8%	0.6%0.4%
			2,001 – 10,000	$[0.0142 \times A] - 5.5$ $[0.0110 \times A] - 3$		
Vertical sides	6 inches	0.15 inch/hour	≤2,000	NA ^b	NA ^b	NA ^b
			2,001 – 10,000			
		0.3 inch/hour	≤2,000	20.2%15.8%	20.8% 16.8%	6.6%5.5%
			2,001 – 10,000	$[0.1106 \times A] + 182.2$ $[0.0957 \times A] + 126$		
		0.6 inch/hour	≤2,000	13.6%10.7%	15.4% 13.3%	4.5%3.7%
			2,001 – 10,000	$[0.0753 \times A] + 124.7$ $[0.0671 \times A] + 81.2$		
	1.0 inch/hour	≤2,000	11.9%9.3%	13.7% 11.9%	4.0%3.2%	
		2,001 – 10,000	$[0.0657 \times A] + 108.8$ $[0.0585 \times A] + 70.5$			
	2.5 inch/hour	≤2,000	5.4%4.1%	7.3%6.6%	1.9%1.4%	
		2,001 – 10,000	$[0.0297 \times A] + 49.4$ $[0.0262 \times A] + 30.4$			
	12 inches	0.15 inch/hour	≤2,000	NA ^b	NA ^b	NA ^b
			2,001 – 10,000			
		0.3 inch/hour	≤2,000	NA ^b	NA ^b	NA ^b
			2,001 – 10,000			
		0.6 inch/hour	≤2,000	10.2%8.1%	11.2% 9.7%	3.6%2.8%
			2,001 – 10,000	$[0.0582 \times A] + 90.1$ $[0.0518 \times A] + 57.6$		
	1.0 inch/hour	≤2,000	9.0%7.0%	10.1% 8.6%	3.2%2.5%	
		2,001 – 10,000	$[0.0513 \times A] + 79.1$ $[0.0454 \times A] + 49.4$			
2.5 inch/hour	≤2,000	4.4%3.0%	5.7%4.6%	1.6%1.1%		
	2,001 – 10,000	$[0.0255 \times A] + 38$ $[0.0213 \times A] + 18.6$				

NP – sizing factors not provided; NA – not applicable; A – contributing hard surface area; sf – square feet.

For Sizing Factors: Bioretention Facility Bottom Area = Contributing Hard Surface Area x Factor (%) / 100.

Hard Surface Area Managed = Bioretention Facility Bottom Area ÷ Factor (%) / 100.

For Sizing Equations: Bioretention Facility Bottom Area (sf) = [Factor x A (sf)] + Integer.

Hard Surface Area Managed (sf) = [Bioretention Bottom Area (sf) - Integer] ÷ Factor.

^a Pre-sized Approach may be used to meet basic water quality treatment. Enhanced water quality treatment may be achieved if soil suitability criteria are met (refer to Section 4.5.2).

^b Ponding depth and infiltration rate combination do not achieve drawdown requirements.

Table 5.205.23. Pre-sized Sizing Factors and Equations for Infiltrating Bioretention with Underdrains.

Bioretention Configuration	Average Ponding Depth	Contributing Area (sf)	Sizing Factor/Equation for Facility Bottom Area		
			Pre-developed Pasture Standard	Peak Control Standard	Water Quality Treatment
Sloped sides	2 inches	0 – 10,000	NA ^a	NA ^a	1.3%
	6 inches	≤ 2,000	NA ^a	NA ^a	[0.0059 x A] - 3.2153
		2,001 – 10,000			[0.0097 x A] - 11.2974
	12 inches	≤ 2,700	NA ^a	3.0% to 4.5% ^b	0.4% to 2.0%
2,701 – 10,000		[0.0052 x A] - 12.0924			
Vertical sides	6 inches	0 – 10,000	NA ^a	NA ^a	1.2% to 1.3%
	12 inches	0 – 10,000	NA ^a	4.5% ^b	1.0% to 1.4%

NA – not applicable

For Sizing Factors: Bioretention Facility Bottom Area = Contributing Hard Surface Area x Factor (%) / 100.

Hard Surface Area Managed = Bioretention Facility Bottom Area ÷ Factor (%) / 100.

For Sizing Equations: Bioretention Facility Bottom Area (sf) = [Factor x A (sf)] + Integer.

Hard Surface Area Managed (sf) = [Bioretention Bottom Area (sf) – Integer] ÷ Factor.

^a Bioretention facilities with underdrains are not capable of achieving the standard unless orifice controls are used. The Modeling Approach may be used to more accurately represent additional performance due to infiltration, which is neglected in the Pre-Sized approach.

^b When used to meet the Peak Control Standard, the facility size shall not be larger than prescribed by the sizing factor (or sizing factor range) because flow control performance may be diminished for larger facilities (larger facilities will not pond water sufficiently to slow flows).

To use these pre-sized facilities to meet performance standards, the bioretention facility shall meet the general requirements outlined in this section plus the following specific requirements:

- The bottom area shall be sized using the applicable sizing factor or equation.
- It is preferred that the bottom area is flat, but up to 3 percent slope is permitted.
- For facilities with sloped sides, the side slopes within the ponded area shall be no steeper than 2.5H:1V.
- For facilities without underdrains, the bioretention soil depth shall be a minimum of 12 inches for flow control and 18 inches for water quality treatment. For facilities with underdrains, the amended soil shall have a minimum depth of 18 inches.
- The average ponding depth for the cell shall be no less than the selected ponding depth.

The bottom area for the cell is calculated as a function of the hard surface area routed to it. As an example, to meet the Pre-developed Pasture Standard using a bioretention facility without an underdrain, with sloped sides, and an average ponding depth of 6 inches for a contributing area between 2,000 and 10,000 square feet where the design subgrade infiltration rate is between 1 and 2.49 inches per hour, the bioretention bottom area would be calculated as: 0.0561 x contributing hard surface area + 32.7. All area values shall be in

square feet. The bottom area of the same facility sized for a contributing area less than 2,000 square feet would be equal to 7.3 percent of the hard surface area routed to it.

Modeling Approach for On-site Performance Standard, Flow Control, and Water Quality Treatment

When using continuous simulation hydrologic modeling to size bioretention cells, the assumptions listed in Table 5-215.24 shall be applied [Note: MGSFlood is not currently approved (as of March 2021) by Ecology for modeling bioretention]. Infiltrating bioretention can be modeled as a layer of soil (with specified design infiltration rate and porosity) with ponding, infiltration to underlying soil and overflow. The contributing area, cell bottom area, and ponding depth should be iteratively sized until the Minimum Requirements for On-site Stormwater Management, Flow Control and/or Treatment are met (refer to *Volume 1 – Project Minimum Requirements*) or where it has been determined by the Director that there is no off-site point of discharge for the project, the requirements of Section 4.3.2 are met. General sizing procedures for infiltration facilities are presented in *Section 4.5.1*.

Table 5-215.24. Continuous Modeling Assumptions for Infiltrating Bioretention.

Variable	Assumption
Precipitation Series	Seattle 158-year, 5-minute series
Computational Time Step	5 minutes
<u>HSPF Parameters</u>	<u>LSUR, SLSUR, NSUR shall be adjusted per Appendix F</u>
Inflows to Facility	Surface flow and interflow from total drainage area (including impervious and pervious contributing areas) routed to facility
Precipitation and Evaporation Applied to Facility	Yes. <u>WWHM and MGSFlood both apply precipitation and evaporation to the facility automatically.</u> If model does not apply precipitation and evaporation to facility automatically, then modelers shall add the facility area to the post developed impervious contributing area to account for this additional precipitation and evaporation (note that this will underestimate the evaporation of ponded water).
Bioretention Soil Infiltration Rate	The design infiltration rate shall be 6 inches per hour.
Bioretention Soil Porosity	A 30% porosity shall be assumed for facility sizing.
Bioretention Soil Depth	For facilities without underdrains, the soil shall have a minimum of 12 inches for flow control and minimum of 18 inches for water quality treatment. For facilities with underdrains, the soil shall have a minimum depth of 18 inches.
Subgrade Soil Design Infiltration Rate	Design infiltration rate (<i>Section 4.5.2, Appendix D</i>)
Liner	The horizontal footprint of a liner shall be excluded from the infiltration area (bottom area and/or side slopes)
Underdrain (if required)	If the underdrain is elevated above the bottom extent of the aggregate layer, water stored in the aggregate below the underdrain invert may be modeled to provide storage and infiltrate to subsurface soil. For the purposes of this manual, underdrains meeting the bedding requirements shown in Figures <u>5.135-42</u> and <u>5.145-43</u> are considered “elevated” by 6 inches. In order to model the underdrain with underlying storage and infiltration, the aggregate gravel reservoir shall extend across the bottom of the facility. The underdrain pipe could be further elevated for improved flow control performance.

Variable	Assumption
Overflow Structure	The overflow elevation shall be set at the maximum ponding elevation (excluding freeboard). It may be modeled as weir flow over a riser edge. Note that the total facility depth (including freeboard) shall be sufficient to allow water surface elevation to rise above the overflow elevation to provide head for discharge.

5.4.4.7. *Minimum Construction Requirements*

During construction, it is critical to prevent clogging and over-compaction of the subgrade and bioretention soils. Minimum requirements associated with bioretention facility construction include the following:

- Place bioretention soil per the requirements of City of Seattle Standard Specifications.
- Do not excavate or place soil during wet or saturated conditions.

Refer to the Puget Sound LID Manual for additional guidance on bioretention construction.

5.4.4.8. *Operations and Maintenance Requirements*

Bioretention O&M requirements are provided in *Appendix G* (BMP No. [2322](#)).

5.4.5. Rain Gardens

5.4.5.1. Description

Rain gardens are shallow, landscaped depressions with compost amended soil or imported bioretention soil and plants adapted to the local climate and soil moisture conditions. Stormwater is stored as surface ponding before it filters through the underlying amended soil. Stormwater that exceeds the surface storage capacity overflows to an adjacent drainage system. Treated water is infiltrated into the underlying soil. Rain gardens can be individual cells or multiple cells connected in series.

Rain gardens are infiltration BMPs and shall be designed according to the requirements in *Section 3.2* and *Section 4.5*.

Rain gardens are similar to infiltrating bioretention facilities (refer to *Section 5.4.4*) with the following exceptions:

- Rain gardens may only be used to meet the On-site List Approach.
- Rain gardens cannot be used on projects choosing to meet the On-site Performance Standard or projects that trigger flow control or water quality treatment requirements.
- Rain gardens may not have a liner or underdrain.
- The maximum ponding depth is 6 inches [except for in the right-of-way where the maximum ponding depth is 3 inches](#).
- Rain gardens may have compost amended soil rather than imported bioretention soil.
- There are no presettling requirements.
- Within the right-of-way, rain gardens are not an allowable BMP if incidental runoff from PGHS exceeds 10 percent of the contributing area.
- Observation ports are not required.

5.4.5.2. Performance Mechanisms

Like infiltrating bioretention, rain gardens provide flow control via detention, attenuation, and losses due to infiltration, interception, evaporation, and transpiration. Some water quality treatment is provided through sedimentation, filtration, adsorption, uptake, or biodegradation and transformation of pollutants by soil organisms, soil media, and plants (note that rain gardens cannot be used to achieve water quality treatment).

5.4.5.3. Applicability

As shown in the table below, rain gardens can only be applied to meet the on-site stormwater management requirement using the On-site List Approach. To meet flow control, water quality treatment or the On-site Performance Standards, an infiltrating bioretention facility may be used (refer to *Section 5.4.4*).

BMP	On-site		Flow Control			Water Quality				Conveyance
	List	Standard	Forest	Pasture	Peak	Basic	Enhanced	Oil Control	Phosphorus	
Rain garden	✓									✓ ^a

^a Rain gardens may be connected in series, with the overflows from upstream cells directed to downstream cells to provide conveyance.

5.4.5.4. Site Considerations

Site considerations for the applicability of rain gardens are provided in *Section 3.2* and *Section 4.5*. Refer to *Appendix C* for additional infeasibility criteria for the On-site List Approach.

5.4.5.5. Design Criteria

This section provides a description, recommendations, and requirements for the components of rain gardens. Typical components of a rain garden are shown in Figure [5.165-14](#). Design criteria are provided in this section for the following elements:

- Contributing area
- Flow entrance
- Ponding area
- Compost amended or imported bioretention soil
- Subgrade
- Overflow
- Plants
- Mulch layer

For additional guidance on rain garden design and construction, refer to the *Rain Garden Handbook for Western Washington Homeowners* (WSU 2013, or as revised). Sizing guidance provided in the handbook is not applicable (refer to *Section 5.4.5.6* for sizing requirements).

Contributing Area

A single rain garden cell or a series of cells shall not receive runoff from more than 5,000 square feet of impervious area. This area limitation is to ensure that rain gardens are small-scale and distributed. In no case shall the area contributing runoff to a rain garden consist of more than 10 percent PGHS within the right-of-way.

The rain garden cell area should be sized for the contributing area routed to the cell. It is recommended that cells not be oversized because the vegetation in oversized cells may not receive sufficient storm water runoff for irrigation, increasing maintenance requirements.

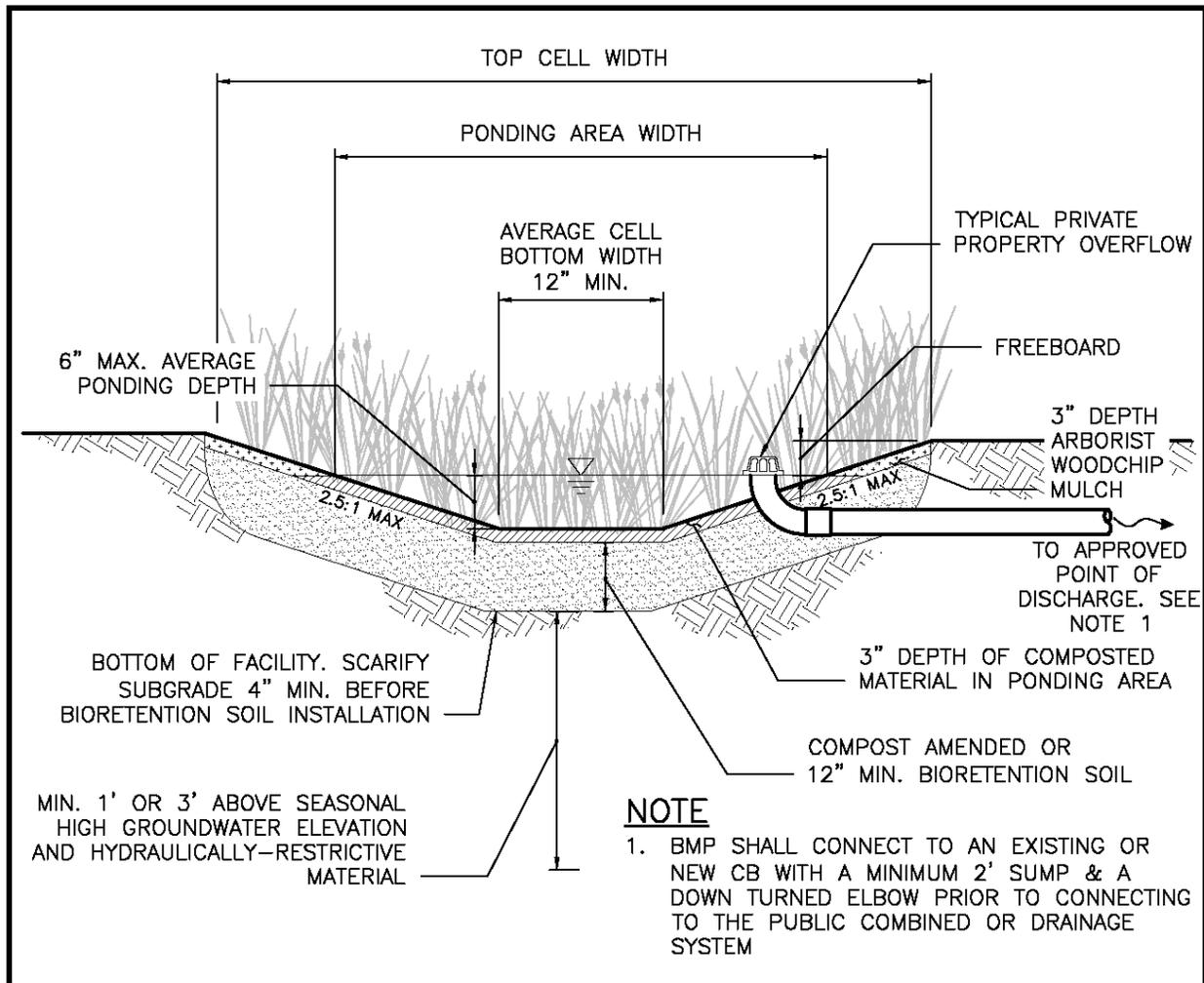


Figure 5.165-14. Typical Rain Garden.

Stormwater flows from other areas (beyond the area for which the rain garden is sized) should be bypassed around the cell in order to reduce sediment loading to the cell and the potential for clogging. While it is preferred that rain gardens be sized to manage only the area draining to the cell, excess flows may be routed through a rain garden with the following limitations:

- The maximum impervious drainage area that may be routed to a rain garden shall not exceed twice the area for which it is sized, limited to a maximum of 5,000 square feet. Additional runoff contributions from pervious areas are acceptable. No on-site stormwater management credit is given for runoff from areas beyond the design area.
- Additional runoff routed to a rain garden shall be clearly noted on submitted plans.

Flow Entrance

Flow entrances must-shall be sized to capture flow from the drainage area and designed to both reduce the potential for clogging at the inlet and prevent inflow from causing erosion in the rain garden cell. Four primary types of flow entrances can be used for rain gardens:

- Dispersed flow (e.g., vegetated buffer strips)

- Sheet flow
- Curb cuts
- Concentrated flow (e.g., piped flow)

Vegetated buffer strips are the preferred entrance type because they slow incoming flows and provide initial settling of particulates. Refer to the Puget Sound LID Manual for guidance on flow entrances.

The minimum requirements associated with the flow entrance design include the following:

- For rain gardens ~~in the right-of-way~~, the flow entrance elevation shall be above the overflow elevation.
- For sheet flow into a rain garden, a minimum 1-inch drop from the edge of a contributing hard surface to the vegetated flow entrance is required. This drop is intended to allow for less frequent maintenance by allowing some sediment/debris buildup at the edge where flow enters the rain garden.
- The following requirements apply to parking lot curb cut flow entrances:
 - The minimum curb cut width shall be 8 inches.
 - The curb cut ~~must~~ shall have either a minimum of 8 percent slope from the outer curb face extending to a minimum of 12 inches beyond the back of curb, or provide a minimum of 2-inch vertical drop from the back of curb to the vegetated surface of the cell.
- If concentrated flows are entering the cell (e.g., pipe or curb cut), flow energy dissipation (e.g., rock/cobble pad or flow dispersion weir) shall be incorporated to reduce the potential for erosion at the inlet.

Ponding Area

The ponding area provides surface storage for storm flows and the first stages of pollutant treatment within the cell. The minimum requirements associated with the cell ponding area design include the following:

- The bottom area of a cell shall be no less than 4 square feet, except where used to manage sidewalk runoff in the ROW planting strip where the minimum area can be reduced to 2 square feet if needed to eliminate check dams.
- The average ponding depth shall be no less than 2 inches and no more than 6 inches.
- The maximum planted side slope is 2.5H:1V. If total cell depth exceeds 3 feet, the maximum planted side slope is 3H:1V. If steeper sides are necessary, rockery, concrete walls, or steeper soil wraps may be used.
- If berming is used to achieve the minimum top cell elevation needed to meet ponding depth and freeboard needs, maximum berm slope is 2.5H:1V, and minimum berm top width of is 6 inches. Soil used for berming where the permanent restoration is landscape shall be imported bioretention soil or amended subgrade soil and compacted to a minimum of 90 percent dry density.
- For trees planted within or alongside slopes of a rain garden cell, the maximum side slope around the tree is 1H:1V.

- The average bottom width for the rain garden shall be no less than 12 inches.
- The bottom slope shall be no more than 3 percent.

[Refer to CAM 1190 for additional guidance for siting rain gardens within the right-of-way.](#)

~~To address traffic and pedestrian safety concerns, the following additional minimum requirements apply to rain gardens in the right-of-way:~~

- ~~• The following minimum setbacks shall be provided:~~
 - ~~○ 1.5 feet minimum from face of curb to top of slope on non-arterial streets for rain gardens with average ponding depths of 3 inches or less~~
 - ~~○ 2 feet minimum from face of curb to top of slope on non-arterial streets for rain gardens with average ponding depths greater than 3 inches~~
 - ~~○ 2 feet minimum from face of curb to top of slope on non-principal arterial streets~~
 - ~~○ 4 feet minimum from face of curb to top of slope for principal arterial streets~~
 - ~~○ 1 foot minimum from edge of sidewalk to top of slope~~
- ~~• A minimum of one access path across planting strip shall be provided between the street and public sidewalk for each parcel. Access paths shall be a minimum of 5 feet wide. It is preferred that the access path is within 15 feet of the structure access point (such as path to doorway or stairs).~~
- ~~• Rain gardens shall not impact driveway/alley access. A 2-foot minimum setback shall be provided from the pavement edge of the driveway curb cut wing to the top (top of slope) of rain garden.~~
- ~~• A two-foot minimum setback shall be provided from the edge of paving for the public sidewalk/curb ramp at the intersection to the top of slope of the rain garden. Curb ramp improvements are required whenever the construction of rain gardens and associated street improvements remove pavement within the crosswalk area of the street or sidewalk, impact curbs, sidewalks, curb ramps, curb returns or landings within the intersection area, or affect access to or use of a public facility.~~

Compost Amended or Imported Bioretention Soil

Proper soil specification, preparation, installation, and maintenance are critical factors for rain garden performance. To meet rain garden soil requirements, the subgrade soil may be amended with compost or the subgrade soil may be over excavated and replaced with imported bioretention soil.

To determine if the subgrade soil is suitable for amending with compost, a simple soil texture test can be performed. When digging the test hole for the subgrade soil infiltration test do the following:

- Squeeze moist soil into a ball. If the soil falls apart or can be broken up easily and is gritty feeling, this suggests a sandier, well-draining soil. This type of soil is suitable for amending and use in the rain garden.
- If the soil is sticky, smooth, and forms a ball that can be worked like modeling clay, this suggests poor-draining soil with high clay content. If the soil is smooth, pliable but

not sticky then it is likely a silty soil and moderate to poor draining. These soils are less suitable for amending and shall be replaced with 12 inches of imported bioretention soil per City of Seattle Standard Specification 7-21 (refer to *Section 5.4.4.5*).

- If the soil is dry, add water a few drops at a time, break down the chunks to work the water into soil, and then perform the soil texture test.

If the subgrade soil is suitable, amend existing site topsoil or subsoil per *Section 5.1.5.1*.

Subgrade

The minimum measured subgrade infiltration rate for rain gardens is 0.3 inch per hour.

If subgrade soil is over excavated to place imported bioretention soil, the subgrade soil surface can become smeared and sealed by excavation equipment during construction. The design shall require scarification or raking of the side walls and bottom of the rain garden excavation to a minimum depth of 4 inches after excavation to restore infiltration rate.

Overflow

A rain garden shall have an overflow. The rain garden overflow can be provided by a drain pipe, earthen channel or curb cut installed at the designed maximum ponding elevation and connected to a downstream BMP or an approved point of discharge.

The minimum requirements associated with the overflow design include the following:

- Overflows shall convey any flow exceeding the capacity of the cell unless designed to fully infiltrate all flows for the full, required simulation period. Plans shall indicate surface flow paths in case of failure of the BMP (refer to *Section 4.3.3*). ~~per *Section 4.3.4*.~~
- Freeboard shall be provided to ensure that overflows are safely conveyed to an approved point of discharge without flooding adjacent properties or sidewalks. The minimum freeboard measured from the invert of the overflow point (e.g., standpipe, earthen channel, curb cut) to the lowest overtopping elevation of the cell is 2 inches for contributing drainage areas less than 3,000 square feet and 4 inches for contributing drainage areas from 3,000 square feet to 5,000 square feet.
- The drain pipe, if used, shall have a minimum diameter of 4 inches.
- For cells in the right-of-way with ponding depths of 3 inches or less (e.g., Sidewalk Projects), it is acceptable to allow overflow over the curb to the roadway conveyance system.
- If the cell will receive flows from areas beyond the area for which the rain garden is sized (refer to the *Contributing Area* subsection), the overflow conveyance infrastructure shall safely convey runoff from the total drainage area.

Plants

In general, the predominant plantings used in rain gardens are species adapted to stresses associated with wet and dry conditions. Soil moisture conditions will vary within the rain garden from saturated (bottom of cell) to relatively dry (rim of cell). Accordingly, wetland

plants may be planted in the lower areas and drought-tolerant species planted on the perimeter of the rain garden or on mounded areas.

The minimum requirements associated with the vegetation design include the following:

- The plans shall specify that vegetation coverage of plants will achieve 90 percent coverage within 2 years. For this purpose, cover is defined as canopy cover and should be measured when deciduous plants are in bloom.
- The plants ~~must~~shall be sited according to sun, soil, wind and moisture requirements.
- At a minimum, provisions shall be made for supplemental irrigation/watering during the first two growing seasons following installation and in subsequent periods of drought.
- Plants for rain gardens sited in the right-of-way shall be selected from bioretention plant list (*Appendix E*).

Refer to the Rain Garden Handbook for Western Washington Homeowners and the Puget Sound LID Manual for guidance on plant selection and recommendations for increasing survival rates.

Mulch Layer

Properly selected organic mulch material reduces weed establishment, regulates soil temperatures and moisture, and adds organic matter to the soil. Compost and arborist wood chip mulch are required for different applications within the rain garden cell. Compost mulch is an excellent slow-release source of plant nutrients and does not float, but compost does not suppress weed growth as well as bulkier, higher carbon mulches like arborist wood chips. Arborist wood chips are superior to bark mulch in promoting plant growth, feeding beneficial soil organisms, reducing plant water stress, and maintaining surface soil porosity.

Organic mulch shall consist of the following:

- Compost (per City of Seattle Standard Specification 9-14.4(8)~~6b~~) in the bottom of the rain garden cell and up to the ponding elevation
- Arborist wood chip mulch (per City of Seattle Standard Specification 9-14.4(4)) on cell slopes above the ponding elevation and the around the rim area
- A minimum of 2 inches and a maximum of 3 inches for both types of organic mulch

~~In~~ Rain garden designs may use aggregate mulch. This may be desirable in areas where higher flow velocities are anticipated, an aggregate mulch may be used to dissipate flow energy and protect underlying soil. Aggregate mulch varies in size and type, but 1- to 1.5-inch gravel (rounded) decorative rock is typical. Aggregate mulch shall be washed (free of fines) and the area covered with aggregate mulch shall not exceed one fourth of the rain garden bottom area.

As an alternative to mulch, a dense groundcover may be used. Mulch is required in conjunction with the groundcover until groundcover is established. Mulch is not required for turf-vegetated cells.

5.4.5.6. BMP Sizing

Sizing for On-site List Approach

Rain gardens may be selected to meet the On-site List Requirement (refer to *Section 3.3.1* and *Appendix C* for infeasibility criteria). To meet the requirement rain gardens shall be sized according to the sizing factors provided in Table 5-225.25. Sizing factors are based on achieving a minimum wetted surface area of 5 percent of the contributing area or meeting the On-site Performance Standard for a pre-developed condition of forest on till (whichever is greater).

Factors are organized by cell ponding depth, cell side slope, and subgrade design infiltration rate. To select the appropriate sizing factor:

- The subgrade design infiltration rate shall be rounded down to the nearest rate in the sizing table.
- The ponding depth shall be rounded down to the nearest depth in the sizing table, or sizing factors may be linearly interpolated for intermediate ponding depths (e.g., between 3 and 4 inches ponding).

The rain garden shall meet the general requirements for rain gardens outlined in this section plus the following specific requirements:

- The bottom area shall be sized using the applicable sizing factor.
- It is preferred that the bottom area be flat, but up to 3 percent slope is permitted.
- For facilities with sloped sides, the side slopes within the ponded area shall be no steeper than 2.5H:1V.
- The rain garden soil depth shall be a minimum of 12 inches.
- The average ponding depth for the cell shall be no less than the selected ponding depth.

The *bottom* area for the rain garden is calculated as a function of the hard surface area routed to it. As an example, the bottom area of the rain garden would be equal to 3.5 percent of the hard surface area routed to it when the design infiltrating rate is 0.6 inch per hour and the ponding depth is an average of 6 inches. For facilities with sloped sides, top area is calculated as a function of the cell bottom area and the side slopes up to the total rain garden depth (i.e., ponding and freeboard depth).

Table 5-225.25. On-site List Sizing for Rain Gardens.

Bioretention Configuration	Average Ponding Depth	Subgrade Soil Design Infiltration Rate	Sizing Factor for Rain Garden Bottom Area ^a
			On-site List
Sloped sides	2 inches	0.15 inch/hour	6.1% 8.0% ^b
		0.3 inch/hour	4.5% 4.7% ^b
		0.6 inch/hour	4.5%
		1.0 inch/hour	4.5%
		2.5 inch/hour	4.5%

Table 5.225.25 (continued). On-site List Sizing for Rain Gardens.

Bioretention Configuration	Average Ponding Depth	Subgrade Soil Design Infiltration Rate	Sizing Factor for Rain Garden Bottom Area ^a
			On-site List
Sloped sides (continued)	6 inches	0.15 inch/hour	NA ^c
		0.3 inch/hour	3.5%
		0.6 inch/hour	3.5%
		1.0 inch/hour	3.5%
		2.5 inch/hour	3.5%
Vertical sides	6 inches	0.15 inch/hour	NA ^c
		0.3 inch/hour	5.0% 5.3% ^b
		0.6 inch/hour	5.0%
		1.0 inch/hour	5.0%
		2.5 inch/hour	5.0%

NA – not applicable

^a Sizing factors are based on achieving a minimum wetted surface area of 5 percent unless otherwise noted.

^b Sizing factor increased beyond the minimum wetted surface area of 5 percent to meet the On-site Performance Standard for a pre-developed condition of forest on till.

^c Ponding depth and infiltration rate combination do not achieve drawdown requirements.

Rain Garden Bottom Area = Contributing Hard Surface Area x Factor (%) / 100.

5.4.5.7. Minimum Construction Requirements

During construction, it is critical to prevent clogging and over-compaction of the subgrade, bioretention soils or amended soils. Minimum requirements associated with rain garden construction include the following:

- Amend subgrade soil per *Section 5.1* or place bioretention soil per the requirements of City of Seattle Standard Specifications.
- Do not excavate, place soil, or amend soil during wet or saturated conditions.

5.4.5.8. Operations and Maintenance Requirements

Rain garden O&M requirements are provided in *Appendix G (BMP No. 2928)*.

5.4.6. Permeable Pavement Facilities

5.4.6.1. Description

Permeable pavement is a paving system that allows rainfall to infiltrate into an underlying aggregate storage reservoir, where stormwater is stored and infiltrated to the underlying subgrade or removed by an overflow drainage system. Two categories of permeable pavement BMPs are included in this manual: permeable pavement facilities (provided in this section) and permeable pavement surfaces (provided in *Section 5.6.2*).

The main difference between permeable pavement facilities and permeable pavement surfaces is that permeable pavement surfaces are not intended to have a significant amount of run-on from other surfaces and they have an aggregate base with a depth as little as 3 inches where permeable pavement facilities are sized to infiltrate drainage from impervious run-on areas that are 2 to 5 times the area of the BMP and require an aggregate base storage reservoir with a minimum depth of 6 inches. The deeper reservoir course allows permeable pavement facilities to more easily meet performance standards for a larger percentage of the project because it can infiltrate runoff from other hard surfaces such as roofs. Also, in this manual, permeable pavement facilities are considered infiltrating facilities, while permeable pavement surfaces are considered a surface runoff reduction method, which makes the on-site stormwater management infeasibility criteria different.

A comparison of these BMPs is provided in Table 5.23.

Table 5.23. Comparison of Permeable Pavement Facilities and Surfaces.

Characteristic		Permeable Pavement Facility	Permeable Pavement Surface
Infiltration Facility	Subject to restrictions for infiltration facilities (e.g., setbacks, separation from groundwater)	Yes	No
On-site List	Can be used to meet the On-site Stormwater Management requirement using the On-site List Approach	Yes	Yes
Performance Standards	Can typically be designed to meet performance standards for the permeable pavement area	Yes	Low-slope installations only (up to 2%)
Run-on	Can be designed to manage (meet stormwater requirements) for stormwater runoff from other contributing areas (run-on)	Yes	No
Subsurface Check Dams	Installation on sloped subgrade requires subsurface check dams to achieve the design storage depth across the facility	Yes	High slope installations only (exceeding 5%)
Aggregate Depth	Required minimum aggregate depth	6 inches storage reservoir	3 inches aggregate subbase

A permeable pavement facility consists of a pervious wearing course (e.g., porous asphalt, pervious concrete) and an underlying storage reservoir. The storage reservoir is designed to support expected loads and store stormwater to allow time for the water to infiltrate into the underlying soil.

Due to the permeable nature of a permeable pavement facility, future application of an impervious surface (e.g., fog seal, chip seal or other types of impervious overlay) over top of the facility is prohibited.

While not explicitly addressed in this section, infiltration galleries may be allowed under impermeable pavements in lieu of permeable pavement.

5.4.6.2. Performance Mechanisms

Flow control occurs through temporary storage of stormwater runoff in the voids of the aggregate material and subsequent infiltration of stormwater into the underlying soils. Pollutant removal mechanisms include sedimentation, infiltration, filtration, adsorption, and biodegradation.

5.4.6.3. Applicability

Permeable pavement facilities can be designed to provide on-site stormwater management, flow control and/or water quality treatment. This BMP can be applied to meet or partially meet the requirements listed below.

BMP	On-site		Flow Control			Water Quality				Conveyance
	List	Standard	Forest	Pasture	Peak	Basic	Enhanced	Oil Control	Phosphorus	
Permeable Pavement Facility	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓ ^a	✓ ^a		✓ ^b	

^a Underlying soil shall meet the treatment soil requirements outlined in Section 4.5.2 or a water quality treatment course shall be included per Section 5.4.6.5.

^b Refer to treatment train options for infiltration BMPs included in Section 4.4.3.2.

5.4.6.4. Site Considerations

Unlike many facilities that require dedicated space on a site, permeable pavement facilities are part of the usable lot area and can replace conventional pavements, including:

- Sidewalks and pedestrian plazas
- Pedestrian and bike trails
- Driveways
- Most parking lots
- Low volume roads, alleys, and access drives

Site considerations for the applicability of permeable pavement facilities include:

- **Setbacks and restrictions:** Permeable pavement facilities shall meet the siting and infiltration rate requirements for infiltration facilities presented in Section 3.2 and Section 4.5. For areas where permeable pavement facilities are not permitted, permeable pavement surfaces may be used because they do not take additional run-on and are not categorized as infiltration facilities (refer to Section 5.6.2).

- **Site topography:** The recommended maximum surface (wearing course) slope for permeable pavement facilities is 6 percent to allow efficient storage of water within the subbase. For vehicular traction, the maximum surface slope varies by wearing course type (refer to industry guidelines). Minimum wearing course slope shall be 1 percent unless provision is made for positive drainage in event of surface clogging.
The recommended maximum subgrade slope for permeable pavement applications is 6 percent. Subgrades that are sloped require subsurface check dams to promote storage in the subgrade (refer to *Section 5.4.6.5 – Subsurface Check Dam* and Figure [5.185-16](#)). At steeper subgrades slopes, design and construction become more complex and the construction cost increases.
- **Land use:** Because permeable pavement can clog with sediment, permeable paving facilities are not recommended where sediment and pollutant loading is unavoidable, including the following conditions:
 - Excessive sediment contamination is likely on the pavement surface (e.g., construction areas, landscaping material yards).
 - It is infeasible to prevent stormwater run-on to the permeable pavement from unstabilized erodible areas without presettling.
 - Regular, heavy application of sand is anticipated for maintaining traction during winter, or the facility is in close proximity to areas that will be sanded. A minimum 7-foot clearance is required between a permeable pavement facility and the travel lane of sanded arterial roads.
 - Sites where the risk of concentrated pollutant spills are more likely (e.g., gas stations, truck stops, car washes, vehicle maintenance areas, industrial chemical storage sites).
- **Accessibility:** As for standard pavement design, ADA accessibility issues shall be addressed when designing a permeable pavement facility, particularly when using pavers.
- Refer to *Appendix C* for additional infeasibility criteria for the On-site List Approach.

5.4.6.5. Design Criteria

This section provides descriptions, recommendations, and requirements for the common components of permeable pavement facilities. Typical components of a permeable pavement facility are shown in Figure [5.175-15](#) and a permeable pavement facility with check dams is shown in Figure [5.185-16](#). Some, or all, of the components may be used for a given application depending on the permeable pavement type (e.g., porous asphalt, pavers, etc.), site characteristics and restrictions, and design objectives.

Design criteria are provided in this section for the following elements:

- Contributing area
- Flow Entrance/presettling
- Wearing course
- Leveling course

- Storage reservoir
- Subgrade
- Subsurface check dams
- Overflow
- Geotextile
- Water quality treatment course (if required)
- Observation/[maintenance](#) port
- Underdrain (optional)
- [Edge treatment](#)

The structural design of permeable pavement to support anticipated loads is outside the scope of this manual.

The Puget Sound LID Manual provides additional guidance on permeable pavement design.

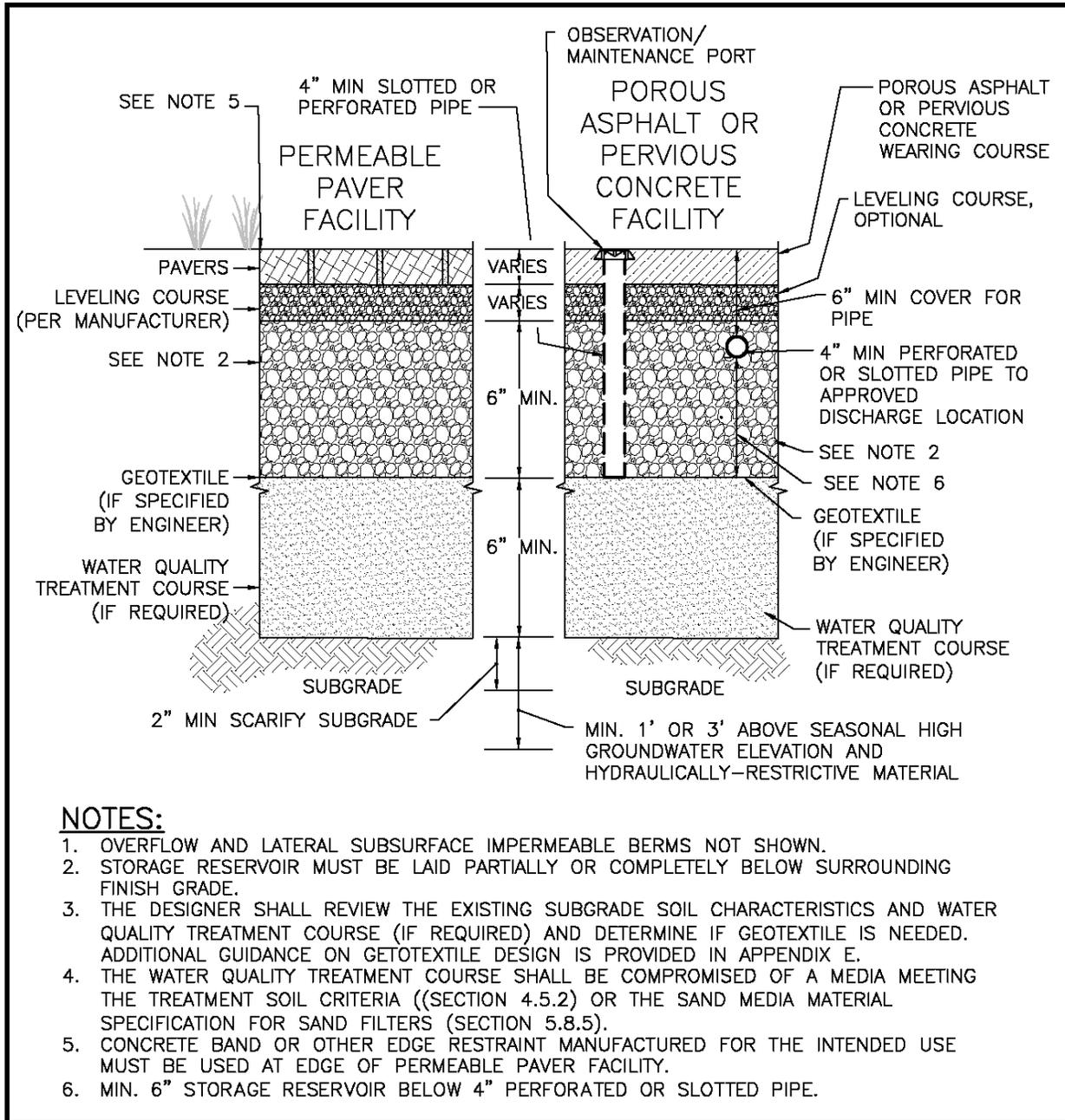


Figure 5.175-15. Permeable Pavement Facility.

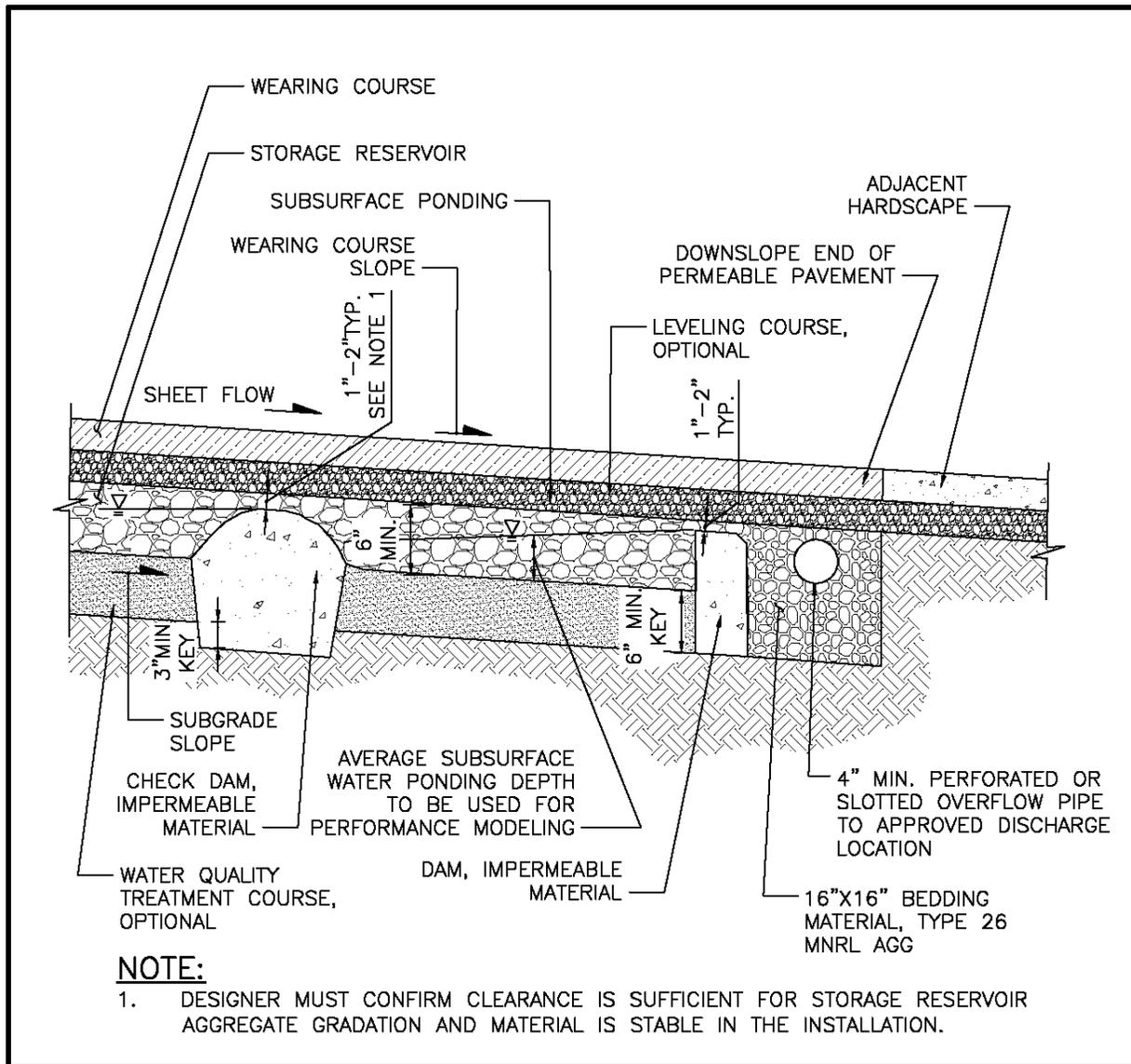


Figure 5.185-16. Typical Permeable Pavement Facility with Checkdams.

Contributing Area

Permeable pavement facilities may be designed to manage (meet stormwater requirements for) runoff from other contributing areas (run-on). When designed to receive run-on, permeable pavement areas shall be protected from sedimentation which can cause clogging and diminished facility performance. The minimum requirements associated with the contributing area include the following:

- The contributing area shall be no larger than specified by surface type below:
 - Pollution-generating hard surfaces (e.g., roadways, parking lots): maximum run-on ratio of 2:1

- Non-pollution generating hard surfaces (e.g., roofs, sidewalks) and stabilized pervious surfaces: maximum run-on ratio of 5:1
- For a mix of surface areas, the maximum run-on ratio shall be area-weighted (e.g., a contributing area composed of half parking lot and half roof would be subject to a maximum run-on ratio of 3.5:1)
- To prevent sediment flowing onto the pavement, run-on shall not occur from erodible/unstabilized areas or from impervious areas that receive run-on from unstabilized areas.
- Run-on shall not occur from contributing areas from which sediment or pollutant loads are unavoidable. Refer to land use restrictions listed in the *Site Considerations* subsection.

Flow Entrance/Presettling

Run-on should be directed to the permeable pavement facility in a distributed manner (e.g., sheet flow) rather than through concentrated flow, where possible. Specific requirements associated with the run-on flow entrance area provided below.

- If the run-on flow is concentrated and the contributing area exceeds 1,000 square feet, run-on shall be dispersed to permeable pavement. Acceptable methods include sheet flow (e.g., dispersion trench) or subsurface delivery to the storage reservoir. ~~If subsurface delivery is used, stormwater inflows shall be routed through a catch basin or yard drain with downturned elbow (trap). Presettling requirements are provided in Section 4.4.5. After presettling, flows shall be distributed to the storage reservoir (e.g., via slotted drain pipe).~~
- If the run-on flow is concentrated and the contributing area is 1,000 square feet or less, concentrated run-on is permitted. However, the designer shall consider the concentrated flow velocity, permeable pavement slope and permeable pavement flow path to ensure that the run-on will be captured by the pavement.
- If subsurface delivery is used, stormwater inflows shall be routed through a catch basin ~~or yard drain~~ with downturned elbow (trap). Presettling requirements are provided in Section 4.4.5. After presettling, flows shall be distributed to the storage reservoir ~~(e.g., via slotted drain pipe)~~ that runs the length of the permeable pavement facility. For permeable pavement facilities wider than 40 feet, the slotted distribution pipes shall be located at a minimum of 20 feet on-center.
- Where run-on flows onto permeable pavement and flow is concentrated, these areas shall be identified in the O&M plan as requiring more frequent cleaning and inspection to ensure overall facility performance.
- If run-on flow from an impervious surface is dispersed (e.g., via sheet flow), the flow path length on the contributing impervious surface shall not be more than 5 times the flow path length on the permeable pavement. The minimum flow path length on the permeable pavement shall be 4 feet.

Wearing Course

The surface layer of a permeable pavement facility is the wearing course. Categories of wearing courses include:

- **Porous Asphalt:** Porous asphalt concrete is open-graded asphalt with reduced fines and air pockets encased within it that allow water to drain to the base below. Similar to conventional asphalt, porous asphalt is laid with traditional asphalt paving equipment. Simple applications include a single wearing course.
- **Pervious Concrete:** Pervious cement concrete is similar to porous asphalt in that the mixture omits or substantially reduces the fines to create stable air pockets encased within it. Pervious concrete typically has a rougher surface than impermeable concrete or porous asphalt.
- **Permeable Pavers:** Permeable pavers consist of paver blocks made of permeable material or paver blocks with gaps between them that allow water to drain to the base below. The most common form of permeable pavers are permeable interlocking concrete paver blocks. These are modular blocks with gaps between them that are filled with a permeable material (typically small clean stone).
- **Grid Systems:** Open-celled paving grids consist of a rigid grid composed of concrete or a durable plastic that is filled with gravel or vegetation. The support base and the ring walls prevent soil compaction and reduce rutting and erosion by supporting the weight of traffic and concentrated loads. Vegetated grid systems are filled with a mix of sand, gravel, and topsoil and planted with a variety of non-turf forming grasses or low-growing groundcovers. Gravel-filled grid systems are filled with a clean aggregate mix specified by the manufacturer. [The fill material shall be at least a minimum of 2 inches deep.](#)
- **Gravel walkways or areas:** [Gravel walkways or areas that are not subject to vehicular load and consist of one of the following materials:](#)
 - [City of Seattle Mineral Aggregate Type 22 or 24](#)
 - [Modified AASHTO Grading #57 per Washington State Department of Transportation Standard Specification for Road, Bridge and Municipal Construction, 2020 \(WSDOT 2020\) Section 9-03.1\(4\)C, with 0 to 2 percent passing #200 wet sieve; percent fracture shall be in accordance with requirements per WSDOT 2020 9-03.9\(2\)](#)

Minimum requirements associated with the wearing course design include the following:

- A minimum wearing course surface slope of 1 percent is required (2 percent recommended) to ensure positive surface drainage should the surface become clogged. Wearing course surface slopes less than 1 percent may be approved when the engineered drainage plan documents no harm from surface ponding.
- For sidewalks in the right-of-way, the wearing course surface slope shall be no more than 6 percent.
- For pervious concrete applications in the right-of-way, the pervious concrete area shall be no less than 250 square feet.
- [Wearing course material for pavers and grid systems shall be on the Allowable Permeable Pavement Wearing Course Materials for Stormwater Credit list on the SDCI website \(\[www.seattle.gov/sdci/codes/codes-we-enforce-\\(a-z\\)/stormwater-\]\(http://www.seattle.gov/sdci/codes/codes-we-enforce-\(a-z\)/stormwater-\)](#)

www.seattle.gov/dpd/codesrules/codes/stormwater) or approved [an approved equal](#) by the Director.

- [Cast-in-place pavers or pre-cast paver stones may be used as a wearing course on private property if each paver is surrounded with an area of free-draining aggregate that is at least 10 percent of the area of the paver and the required storage reservoir below the paver is maintained. The free-draining aggregate surrounding each paver shall meet the requirements of the storage reservoir or the leveling course aggregates. Note: since these pavers may be prone to movement under loads \(e.g., vehicles or heavy pedestrian traffic\), they may not be suitable for certain applications. The minimum required spacing between pavers is estimated by multiplying the required area by 2 and dividing by the perimeter of the paver per the following equation:](#)
 - [Spacing \(between pavers\) = 2 X Paver Area \(square inches\) X \(10-percent/100\) / Perimeter Length of Paver \(inches\)](#)
- For pervious concrete, City of Seattle Standard Specifications shall be used for projects in the right-of-way. For projects outside of the right-of-way, the City of Seattle Standard Specifications or an approved equivalent shall be used.
- For porous asphalt, refer to the Puget Sound LID Manual for additional guidance on wearing course design.
- [Acceptance Testing:](#)
 - For projects with less than 5,000 square feet of new plus replaced hard surface, infiltration capacity may be demonstrated using a bucket test wherein a bucket of water is thrown on the surface. If anything other than a scant amount of water puddles or runs off the surface, ~~quantitative~~ testing is required as described below.
 - For projects with 5,000 square feet or more new plus replaced hard surface a minimum initial uncorrected infiltration rate of 100 inches per hour is required, unless otherwise approved for vegetated grid systems. To improve the probability of long-term performance, significantly higher measured infiltration rates are desirable.
 - For measuring initial surface infiltration rates for porous asphalt or pervious concrete, the Standard Test Method for Infiltration Rate of In Place Pervious Concrete (ASTM C1701) or the infiltration rate field test from the City of Seattle standard specification for pervious concrete shall be used.
 - For measuring initial surface infiltration rates for permeable pavers, the Standard Test Method for Surface Infiltration Rate of Permeable Unit Pavement Systems (ASTM C1781) shall be used.
 - For grid systems, refer to manufacturers testing recommendations.

Leveling Course

Depending upon the type of wearing course, a leveling course (also called a bedding or choker course) may be required. A leveling course is often required for grid systems, permeable pavers, and pervious concrete. This course is a layer of aggregate that provides a more uniform surface for laying pavement or pavers and typically consists of crushed aggregate

smaller in size than the underlying storage reservoir. Course thickness will vary with permeable pavement type.

Leveling course material and thickness shall be included as required per manufacturer or designer recommendations. Leveling course material shall be compatible with underlying storage reservoir material (with low potential to migrate into underlying storage reservoir) and shall not limit the infiltration rate through the system.

Storage Reservoir

Stormwater passes through the wearing and leveling courses to an underlying aggregate storage reservoir, also referred to as base material, where it is filtered and stored prior to infiltration into the underlying soil. This aggregate also serves as the pavement's support base and shall be sufficiently thick to support the expected loads. Design of the subgrade for loading is outside of the scope of this manual. A licensed engineer is needed to determine subsoil load bearing, minimum aggregate base thickness, and aggregate compaction for loading.

Minimum requirements associated with the storage reservoir design include the following:

- A 6-inch minimum depth of storage reservoir aggregate is required. Note that more depth may be needed for structural design support. A shallower depth may be approved around trees where necessary to protect roots.
- The storage reservoir shall be laid partially or completely below the elevation of the surrounding grade.
- The storage reservoir shall have a minimum total void volume of 25 percent after compacted in place. Percent voids (porosity) shall be determined in accordance with ASTM C29/C29M. Use the jigging procedure to densify the sample (do not use the shoveling procedure). These requirements are met if the aggregate materials recommended below are used.
- Aggregate material shall have 0 to 2 percent passing #200 wet sieve.
- For walkways, the following aggregate materials are recommended and meet the requirements listed above:
 - City of Seattle Mineral Aggregate Type 22 or 24
 - Modified AASHTO #57 per *Washington State Department of Transportation Standard Specifications for Road, Bridge, and Municipal Construction*, [2020/2014](#) (WSDOT [2020/2014](#)) Section 9-03.1(4)C, with 0-2 percent passing #200 wet sieve; percent fracture shall be in accordance with requirements per WSDOT [2014-2020](#) 9-03.9(2)
- For vehicular applications, the following aggregate materials are recommended and meet the requirements listed above:
 - City of Seattle Mineral Aggregate Type 13
 - Modified AASHTO #57 per WSDOT [2014-2020](#) Section 9-03.1(4)C with 0 to 2 percent passing #200 wet sieve; percent fracture shall be in accordance with requirements per WSDOT [2014-2020](#) 9-03.9(2)

- Permeable ballast per WSDOT [2014-2020](#) Section 9-03.9(2)

Subgrade

The minimum measured subgrade infiltration rate for permeable pavement facilities without underdrains is 0.3 inch per hour. If permeable pavement facilities are to be used to meet the water quality treatment requirement, underlying soil shall meet the treatment soil requirements outlined in *Section 4.5.2* or a water quality treatment course shall be included.

During construction the subgrade soil surface can become smeared and sealed by excavation equipment. The design shall require scarification or raking of the side walls and bottom of the facility excavation to a minimum depth of 4 inches after excavation to restore infiltration rate.

Subsurface Check Dam

Sloped facilities have an increased potential for lateral flows through the storage reservoir aggregate along the top of relatively impermeable subgrade soil. This poses a risk of subsurface erosion (which may undermine pavement) and reduces the storage and infiltration capacity of the pavement facility. If required depending upon slope, the subgrade shall be designed to create subsurface ponding to detain subsurface flow, increase infiltration, and reduce structural problems associated with subgrade erosion (refer to Figure [5.185-16](#)). In such cases, ponding shall be provided using periodic lateral subsurface barriers (e.g., check dams) oriented perpendicular to the subgrade slope. While the frequency of the check dams is calculated based on the required subsurface ponding depth and the subgrade slope, typical designs include barriers every 6 to 12 inches of grade loss.

Subsurface check dams are required unless:

- The subgrade slope is less than 1 percent and the storage reservoir aggregate is laid below surrounding subgrade or
- A licensed professional makes a determination based on soil type and permeability that check dams are not required to address subgrade erosion or ensure performance of system.

Minimum requirements associated with check dams include the following:

- Check dams shall ~~be impermeable and~~ restrict lateral flow along the top of the subgrade soil. [Examples of material to use for subsurface check dams include concrete, controlled-density fill \(CDF\), or similar material.](#)
- Check dams shall be installed at regular intervals perpendicular to the subgrade slope to provide the required average subsurface ponding depth in the storage reservoir.
- The check dams shall not extend to the elevation of the surrounding ground.
- Each check dam shall have an overflow, as described below, or allow overtopping to the next downslope storage reservoir section without causing water to flow out of the pavement surface or out the sides of the base materials that are above grade.

Note that the subgrade on sloped sites may be terraced to reduce the frequency of check dams. Even with terracing, a minimum of one downstream check dam is required to provide subsurface ponding.

Overflow

Unless designed to provide full infiltration (*Section 4.5.1*), permeable pavement facilities shall have an overflow (*Section 4.3.3*). Minimum requirements associated with the overflow design include the following:

- Overflow shall be designed to convey any flow exceeding the capacity of the facility unless designed to fully infiltrate all flows for the full, required simulation period. Plans shall indicate surface flow paths in case of failure of the BMP (refer to *Section 4.3.3*). per *Section 4.3.4*. Options include:
 - Subsurface slotted drain pipe(s) set at the design ponding elevation to route flow to a conveyance system
 - Lateral flow through the storage reservoir to a daylighted conveyance system
- In the right-of-way, slotted pipe per City of Seattle Standard Plan No. 291 shall be used. On private property, perforated pipe shall meet Side Sewer Directors' Rule requirements.
- For facilities installed on a sloped subgrade, at least one overflow shall be sited at the downslope extent of the facility.
- If a slotted overflow pipe is used to collect water in the pavement section, the pipe diameter and spacing shall be designed based on the hydraulic capacity required. A non-perforated cleanout (sized to match underdrain diameter) shall be connected to the underdrain every 100 feet at a minimum. Projects in the right-of-way shall use City of Seattle Standard Plan No. 281. Projects on private properties shall use requirements in the Side Sewer Directors' Rule.
- A minimum wearing course surface slope of 1 percent is required (2 percent recommended) to ensure positive surface drainage should the surface become clogged.
- The designer shall consider the flow path of water when the permeable pavement section is fully saturated to the maximum design depth or when the wearing course is clogged to confirm there are no unanticipated discharge locations (e.g., impact to intersecting utility trenches, sheet flow to adjacent properties). The flow path shall be described on the plan submittal.
- If a permeable pavement facility is used in the public roadway section, the roadway conveyance system shall be designed as if the road surface were impermeable unless otherwise approved by the Director.

Note that the slotted pipe discussed in this section is set at the design ponding depth in the storage reservoir and is considered an overflow, not an underdrain. Underdrains are addressed in a separate subsection below.

Geotextile

Generally, geotextiles and geogrids are used for the following purposes:

- As a filter layer to prevent clogging of infiltration surfaces
- To prevent fines from migrating to more open-graded material and causing associated structural instability
- To prevent downward movement of the aggregate base into the subgrade for soil types with poor structural stability

Geotextiles between the permeable pavement subgrade and aggregate base [in a traditional permeable pavement facility design](#) are not required or necessary for many soil types and, if incorrectly applied, can clog and reduce infiltration capability at the subgrade or other material interface. Therefore, the use of geotextiles is discouraged unless it is deemed necessary. As part of the pavement section design, the designer shall review the existing subgrade soil characteristics and treatment layer if any, and determine if geotextile is needed. [If a combination permeable pavement facility and infiltration chamber facility is being used, geotextile shall be placed between the wearing course and the stackable, modular plastic cells.](#) Additional guidance on geotextile design is provided in *Appendix E*.

Minimum requirements associated with the geotextile design, if used, include the following:

- Use geotextile recommended by the manufacturer's specifications and by a geotechnical engineer for the given subgrade soil type or treatment layer and base aggregate.
- Extend the fabric up the sides of the excavation. This is especially important if the base is adjacent to conventional paving surfaces to prevent migration of fines from dense-graded base material and soil subgrade to the open graded base. Geotextile is not required on the sides if concrete curbs extend the full depth of the base/sub-base.
- Overlap adjacent strips of fabric at least 24 inches.
- Use geotextile that passes water at a greater rate than the design infiltration rate for the existing subgrade soils.

Water Quality Treatment Course (If Required)

If the permeable pavement is being designed to provide water quality treatment or if the permeable pavement will be PGHS exceeding 2,000 square feet, underlying soils shall meet the requirements for treatment soil provided in *Section 4.5.2*. If the existing subgrade does not meet these requirements, a 6-inch water quality treatment course shall be included between the subbase and the storage reservoir. The course shall be composed of a media meeting the treatment soil criteria (*Section 4.5.2*) or the sand media material specification for sand filters in *Section 5.8.5*.

Observation/Maintenance Port

If a permeable pavement facility is designed to meet flow control and/or water quality treatment requirements and the permeable pavement area plus the run-on area (if any) is 5,000 square feet or greater, it shall be equipped with an observation/maintenance port to allow for monitoring of the drawdown time following a storm. The observation/maintenance port shall consist of an ~~8-inch~~ 4-inch minimum diameter perforated or slotted pipe with a ~~locking lid~~ secure well cap that extends to the bottom of the pavement section and keyed into the subbase. ~~The port shall be located at the downslope area of the pavement system. Additional ports are required for every additional 5,000 square feet of permeable pavement area plus run-on area.~~

Observation/maintenance ports are required:

- At the downslope area of the pavement system and
- One for every additional 5,000 square feet of contributing area (permeable pavement area plus run-on area)

Underdrain (Optional)

Underdrain systems shall be installed if the subgrade soils have a measured infiltration rate of less than 0.3 inch per hour. Designs utilizing underdrains provide less infiltration and flow control benefits. To improve performance, the underdrain may be elevated to maximize infiltration and/or outlet controls (e.g., orifice control) may be used to attenuate underdrain flows prior to release.

The underdrain pipe diameter will depend on hydraulic capacity required. The minimum requirements associated with the underdrain design include:

- In the right-of-way, slotted pipe per City of Seattle Standard Plan No. 291 shall be used. On private property, perforated pipe shall meet Side Sewer Directors' Rule requirements.
- Underdrain pipe slope shall be no less than 0.5 percent.
- ~~Aggregate around pipe shall be graded to filter sediment and prevent clogging.~~
- A non-perforated cleanout (sized to match underdrain diameter) shall be connected to the underdrain every 100 feet minimum. Projects in the right-of-way shall use City of Seattle Standard Plan No. 281. Projects on private properties shall use requirements in the Side Sewer Directors' Rule.

Note that the slotted pipe discussed in this section is set below the design ponding depth in the storage reservoir and is considered an underdrain, not an overflow. Overflows are addressed in a separate subsection above.

Edge Treatment

Edge treatment is required around the perimeter of permeable pavers to prevent it from unraveling over time. Edge treatments can also be used to protect the subgrade of adjacent conventional pavement. Refer to Figures 5.19 and 5.20 for examples of concrete and geomembrane edge treatments, respectively. Concrete edge treatments may be used for either of those purposes while geomembrane may only be used where permeable pavement to protect adjacent pavement. A manufactured paver restraint may also be used at edges, but it shall be suitable for the pavement use (e.g., vehicular use vs. pedestrian only).

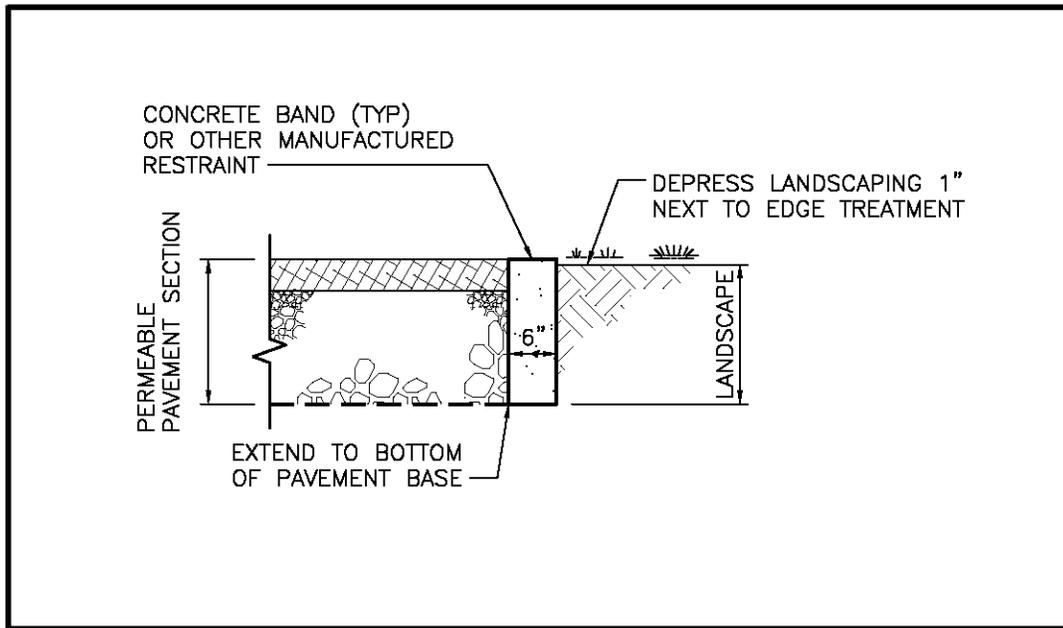
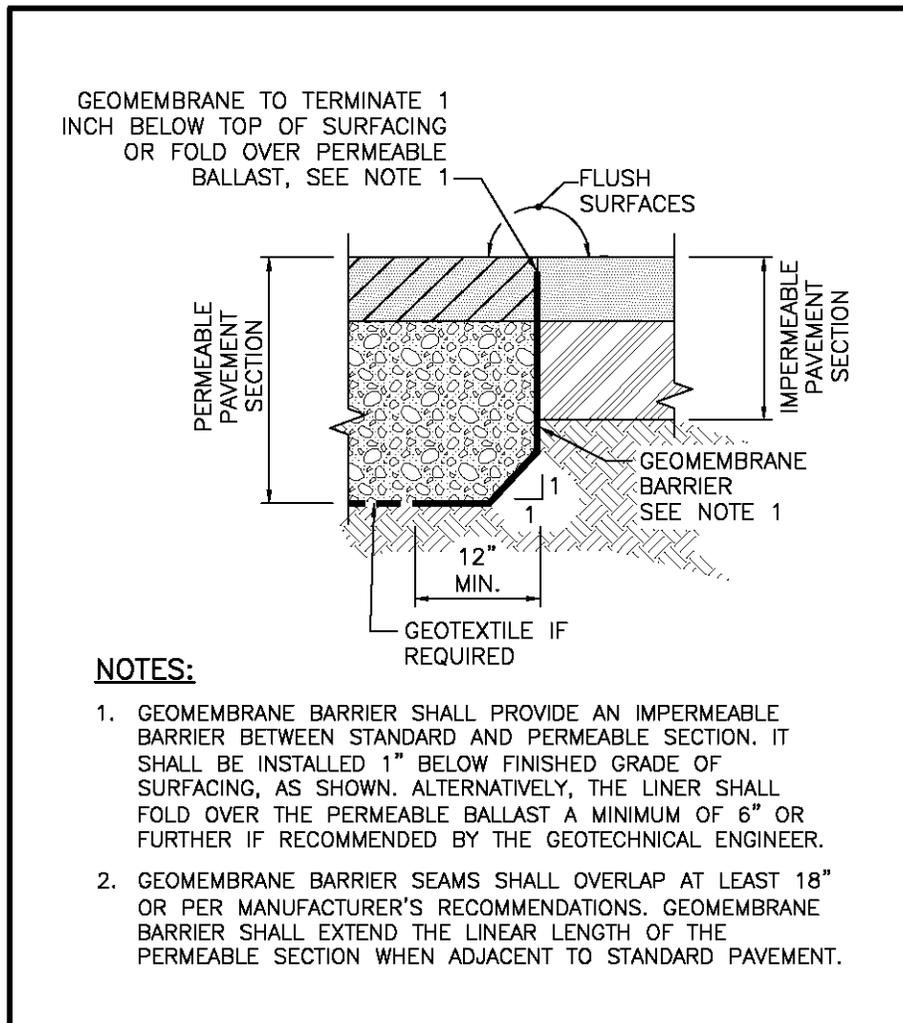


Figure 5.19. Permeable Pavement Concrete Edge Treatment.



[Figure 5.20. Permeable Pavement Geomembrane Edge Treatment.](#)

5.4.6.6. BMP Sizing

Sizing for On-site List Approach

Permeable pavement facilities without underdrains may be selected to meet the On-site List Requirement (refer to *Section 3.3.1* and *Appendix C* for infeasibility criteria). The area of the permeable pavement facility meets the requirement. In addition, hard surface area contributing run-on to a permeable pavement facility also meets the requirement if it does not exceed the thresholds listed below:

- For pollution-generating hard surfaces (e.g., roadways, parking lots) the run-on ratio shall be no more than 2:1 (sizing factor 50 percent or greater)
- For non-pollution generating hard surfaces (e.g., roofs, sidewalks) and stabilized pervious surfaces the run-on ratio shall be no more than 5:1 (sizing factor 20 percent or greater)

- For a mix of surface areas, the maximum run-on ratio shall be area-weighted (e.g., a contributing area composed of half parking lot and half roof would be subject to a maximum run-on ratio of 3.5:1).

For permeable pavement facilities receiving run-on, the minimum required permeable pavement facility area is calculated as 50 and 20 percent of the hard surface area routed to it for pollution-generating and non-pollution generating hard surfaces, respectively.

Pre-sized Approach for Flow Control and Water Quality Treatment

The Pre-sized Approach may be used for projects with new and replaced hard surface areas up to 10,000 square feet. Under the Pre-sized Approach (refer to *Section 4.1.2*), pre-sized permeable pavement facilities without underdrains may be used to achieve Pre-developed Pasture, Peak Control and Water Quality Treatment Standards. Sizing factors and equations for permeable pavement facilities receiving runoff from a hard surface are provided in Table 5-245.26. Factors are organized by performance standard, subgrade soil design infiltration rate, and contributing area. The design rate for the subgrade soil shall be rounded down to the nearest infiltration rate in the pre-sized table (i.e., 0.15, 0.3, 0.6, 1.0, or 2.5 inches per hour).

To use these sizing factors or equations to meet performance standards, the facility shall meet the general requirements for permeable pavement facilities outlined in this section plus the following specific requirements:

- The permeable pavement area shall be sized using the applicable sizing factor or equation.
- The selected subsurface ponding depth (i.e., 6 or 12 inches) shall be provided in the storage reservoir. For intermediate ponding depths (between 6 and 12 inches), the sizing factor may be linearly interpolated. For subgrade slopes of 1.0 percent or greater, check dams are required to provide this subsurface ponding depth, on average, across the facility.
- To meet water quality treatment, the underlying soil shall meet the soil requirements outlined in *Section 4.5.2* or a water quality treatment course shall be used.
- No underdrain or [low-permeability liner or](#) impermeable liner may be used.

Table 5.245.26. Pre-sized Sizing Factors and Equations for Permeable Pavement Facilities without Underdrains.

Ponding Depth in Storage Reservoir	Subgrade Soil Design Infiltration Rate	Contributing Area (sf)	Sizing Factor/Equation for Permeable Pavement Facility Area ^a			
			Pre-developed Pasture Standard	Peak Control Standard	Water Quality Treatment Standard ^b	
6 inches	0.15 inch/hour	≤ 2,000	132.6%	256.8 342.1%	26.9%	
		2,001 – 10,000	[0.4842 x A] + 1651.1			
	0.3 inch/hour	≤ 2,000	99.8%	490.2247.4%	24.6%	
		2,001 – 10,000	[0.375 x A] + 1223.9			
	0.6 inch/hour	≤ 2,000	34.1%	56.958.0%	20.0% ^c	
		2,001 – 10,000	[0.1568 x A] + 369.4			
	1.0 inch/hour	≤ 2,000	29.2%	49.650.6%	20.0% ^c	
		2,001 – 10,000	[0.1349 x A] + 314.9			
	2.5 inch/hour	≤ 2,000	20.0% ^c	22.422.7%	20.0% ^c	
		2,001 – 10,000	[0.053 x A] + 110.7			
	12 inches	0.15 inch/hour	≤ 2,000	71.4%	400.8113.9%	20.0% ^c
			2,001 – 10,000	[0.3236 x A] + 785.9		
0.3 inch/hour		≤ 2,000	55.5%	79.388.1%	20.0% ^c	
		2,001 – 10,000	[0.2573 x A] + 600.3			
0.6 inch/hour		≤ 2,000	23.8%	36.436.6%	20.0% ^c	
		2,001 – 10,000	[0.1247 x A] + 229.2			
1.0 inch/hour		≤ 2,000	20.5%	32.733.1%	20.0% ^c	
		2,001 – 10,000	[0.1076 x A] + 198.2			
2.5 inch/hour		≤ 2,000	20.0% ^c	20.0% ^c	20.0% ^c	
		2,001 – 10,000	[0.0435 x A] + 81.7			

A – contributing hard surface area; sf – square feet.

For Sizing Factors: Permeable Pavement Facility Area = Contributing Hard Surface Area x Factor (%) / 100.

Hard Surface Area Managed = Permeable Pavement Area ÷ Factor (%) / 100.

For Sizing Equations: Permeable Pavement Area (sf) = [Factor x A (sf)] + Integer.

Hard Surface Area Managed (sf) = [Permeable Pavement Area (sf) – Integer] ÷ Factor.

^a Maximum run-on ratios apply which may require larger permeable pavement facilities than those sized using the Pre-sized Approach.

^b Pre-sized Approach may be used to meet basic water quality treatment. Enhanced water quality treatment may be achieved if soil suitability criteria are met (refer to Section 4.5.2).

^c The minimum sizing factor is 20 percent because the contributing area to a facility is limited to 5 times the permeable pavement facility area.

The required permeable pavement facility area is calculated as a function of the hard surface area routed to it. As an example, to meet the Pre-developed Pasture Standard using a permeable pavement facility with an average water depth in the storage reservoir of 6 inches for a contributing area less than 2,000 square feet, the permeable pavement area would be equal to 34.1 percent of the hard surface area routed to it when the subgrade infiltration rate is between 0.6 and 0.99 inch per hour (Table 5.24). If the contributing area is a non-pollution generating surface (e.g., roof, sidewalk), a sizing factor of 34.1 percent is acceptable because it is greater than 20 percent (corresponding to a run-on ratio less than 5:1).

However, if the contributing area is pollution generating (e.g., driveway, parking lot), a minimum sizing factor of 50 percent is required (corresponding to a run-on ratio less than 2:1). If the contributing area is a mix of surface types, the minimum sizing factor and maximum run-on ratio must-shall be calculated as a weighted average:

$$\text{Minimum Sizing Factor} = (\% \text{ area non-pollution generating} \times 20\% + \% \text{ area pollution generating} \times 50\%) / 100\%$$

$$\text{Maximum Run-on Ratio (X:1)} = (\% \text{ area non-pollution generating} \times 5 + \% \text{ area pollution generating} \times 2) / 100\%$$

For example, a site with 70 percent roof and 30 percent driveway would have a minimum sizing factor of 29 percent $[(70\% \times 20\% + 30\% \times 50\% / 100)]$ and a maximum run-on ratio of 4:1 $[(70\% \times 5 + 30\% \times 2) / 100\%]$.

Alternatively, permeable pavement facilities can be sized using a continuous simulation hydrologic model as described below.

Modeling Approach for On-site Performance Standard, Flow Control, and Water Quality Treatment

When using continuous simulation hydrologic modeling to size permeable pavement, the assumptions listed in Table [5-255.27](#) shall be applied. It is recommended that permeable pavement be modeled as an impervious area with runoff routed to a gravel-filled infiltration trench (with the same area as the contributing impervious area). Runoff from other areas draining to the permeable pavement surface can also be routed to the trench. The contributing area, pavement area, and average subsurface ponding depth in the aggregate storage reservoir should be iteratively sized until the Minimum Requirements for On-site Stormwater Management, Flow Control and/or Treatment are met (refer to *Volume 1 – Project Minimum Requirements*) or where it has been determined by the Director that there is no off-site point of discharge for the project, the requirements of Section 4.3.2 are met. General sizing procedures for infiltration facilities are presented in *Section 4.5.1*. Specific modeling guidelines are outlined below:

- Model only the average depth of the storage reservoir occupied by ponded water before check dam overtopping or overflow. The storage reservoir aggregate above this depth, and the overlying leveling and wearing course are not modeled.
- Because the infiltration rates of the wearing course and leveling course are typically high and will not restrict flow entering the facility section, the infiltration through these layers may be neglected (i.e., not modeled).
- The area of subgrade covered by check dams must-shall be excluded from gravel trench bottom area.
- Only the volume in the reservoir course may be used as storage volume in the model. The BMP shall not rely on void space in the wearing course to function.

Table 5.255.27. Continuous Modeling Assumptions for Permeable Pavement Facility.

Variable	Assumption
Precipitation Series	Seattle 158-year, 5-minute series
Computational Time Step	5 minutes
HSPF Parameters	LSUR, SLSUR, NSUR shall be adjusted per Appendix F
Permeable Pavement Facility and Contributing Area	Option 1: WWHM and MGSFlood have a modeling element The selected model may have a routine specifically developed for permeable pavement that simulates run-on from other contributing drainage areas, precipitation falling on the pavement, infiltration through the pavement section, storage in the aggregate beneath the pavement, and infiltration into the underlying soil. Option 2: If a permeable pavement modeling element routine is not available in the selected model , represent the permeable pavement area as an impervious basin with runoff routed to a gravel-filled trench (of the same size as the permeable pavement area) with infiltration to underlying soil. Other drainage areas contributing runoff to the pavement (surface flow and interflow), if any, are also routed to the gravel trench.
Precipitation Applied to Facility	If using Option 1, precipitation is applied to the pavement area. If using Option 2, do not apply precipitation to the trench bed because precipitation is already applied to basin before routing to trench.
Evaporation Applied to Facility	If using Option 1, evaporation is applied to the pavement area. If using Option 2, while evaporation is applied to the impervious basin before routing to the trench.
Storage Reservoir Depth	Average subsurface water ponding depth in the pavement aggregate courses (average across the facility) before check dam overtopping or overflow.
Storage Reservoir Porosity	Assume maximum 25 percent unless test is provided showing higher porosity (up to 35 percent) for aggregate compacted and in place.
Subgrade Soil Design Infiltration Rate	Design infiltration rate (<i>Section 4.5.2, Appendix D</i>).
Infiltration Across Wetted Surface Area	No, if subgrade sidewalls are steeper than 2H:1V (infiltration on bottom area only).
Outlet Structure	Unless the selected model represents surface sheet flow when pavement section is saturated, the overflow can be simulated as overtopping an overflow riser. Overflow riser elevation is set at average maximum subsurface ponding depth. Flow may be modeled as weir flow over riser edge. Freeboard modeled within the storage reservoir shall be sufficient to allow the water surface elevation to rise above the weir or overflow pipe elevation to provide head for discharge.

5.4.6.7. Minimum Construction Requirements

Proper construction methods and pre-planning are essential for the successful application of any permeable paving facility. Over compaction of the underlying soil or fine sediment contamination onto the existing subgrade and pavement section during construction will significantly degrade or effectively eliminate the infiltration capability of the facility.

Minimum requirements associated with construction of a permeable pavement facility include the following:

- Conduct field infiltration and compaction testing of the water quality treatment course (if included) prior to placement of overlying courses.

- Prevent intermixing of the various base course materials with fines and sediment. Remove and replace all contaminated material.
- Complete final subgrade excavation during dry weather on the same day bottom aggregate course is placed, when practicable.
- Use traffic control measures to protect permeable pavement subgrade areas from heavy equipment operation or truck/vehicular traffic.
- Select excavation, grading, and compaction equipment to minimize the potential for over-compaction.
- [Follow a back-dumping approach to prevent compaction when installing the aggregate base. Back-dumping includes the following steps:](#)
 1. [The aggregate base is dumped onto the subgrade from the edge of the installation and the aggregate is then pushed out onto the subgrade.](#)
 - 5-2. [Trucks then dump subsequent loads from on top of the aggregate base as the installation progresses.](#)
- Isolate the permeable pavement site from sedimentation during construction, either by use of effective erosion and sediment control measures upstream. Alternatively, delay the excavation of the lowest 1 foot of material above the final subgrade elevation for the entire pavement area until after all sediment-producing construction activities have been completed and upstream areas have been permanently stabilized. Once the site is stabilized, the lowest 1 foot of material may be removed. For more information on site stabilization, refer to *Volume 2 – Construction Stormwater Control*.
- Conduct field infiltration test of the permeable surface after the complete pavement section is installed to verify that it meets the minimum initial uncorrected infiltration rate of 100 inches per hour (refer to testing methods in the *Wearing Course* subsection in *Section 5.4.6.5*).

5.4.6.8. Operations and Maintenance Requirements

Permeable pavement O&M requirements are provided in *Appendix G (BMP No. [2625](#))*.

5.4.7. Perforated Stub-Out Connections

5.4.7.1. Description

A perforated stub-out connection is a length of perforated pipe within a gravel-filled trench that is placed between roof downspouts and a stub-out connection to the public drainage system.

5.4.7.2. Performance Mechanisms

Perforated stub-out connections are intended to provide some flow control via infiltration during drier months. During the wet winter months, they may provide little or no flow control.

5.4.7.3. Applicability

As shown in the table below, perforated stub-out connections can only be applied to meet the on-site stormwater management requirement using the On-site List Approach.

BMP	On-site		Flow Control			Water Quality				Conveyance
	List	Standard	Forest	Pasture	Peak	Basic	Enhanced	Oil Control	Phosphorus	
Perforated Stub-out Connections	✓									

5.4.7.4. Site Considerations

The stub-out connection should be sited to allow a maximum amount of runoff to infiltrate into the ground (ideally a dry, relatively well drained, location). Site considerations for the applicability of perforated stub-out connections include:

- **Setbacks and restrictions:** The perforated portion of the system shall meet the siting and infiltration rate requirements for infiltration facilities presented in *Section 3.2 and Section 4.5*.
- **Site prohibitions:** The perforated pipe portion of the system shall not be located under hard or heavily compacted (e.g., driveways and parking areas) surfaces.
- Refer to *Appendix C* for additional infeasibility criteria for the On-site List Approach.

5.4.7.5. Design Criteria

This section provides a description and requirements for the components of perforated stub-out connections. A typical stub-out connection is shown in Figure [5.215-17](#). Design criteria are provided in this section for the following elements:

- Presettling
- Perforated pipe and trench
- Overflow

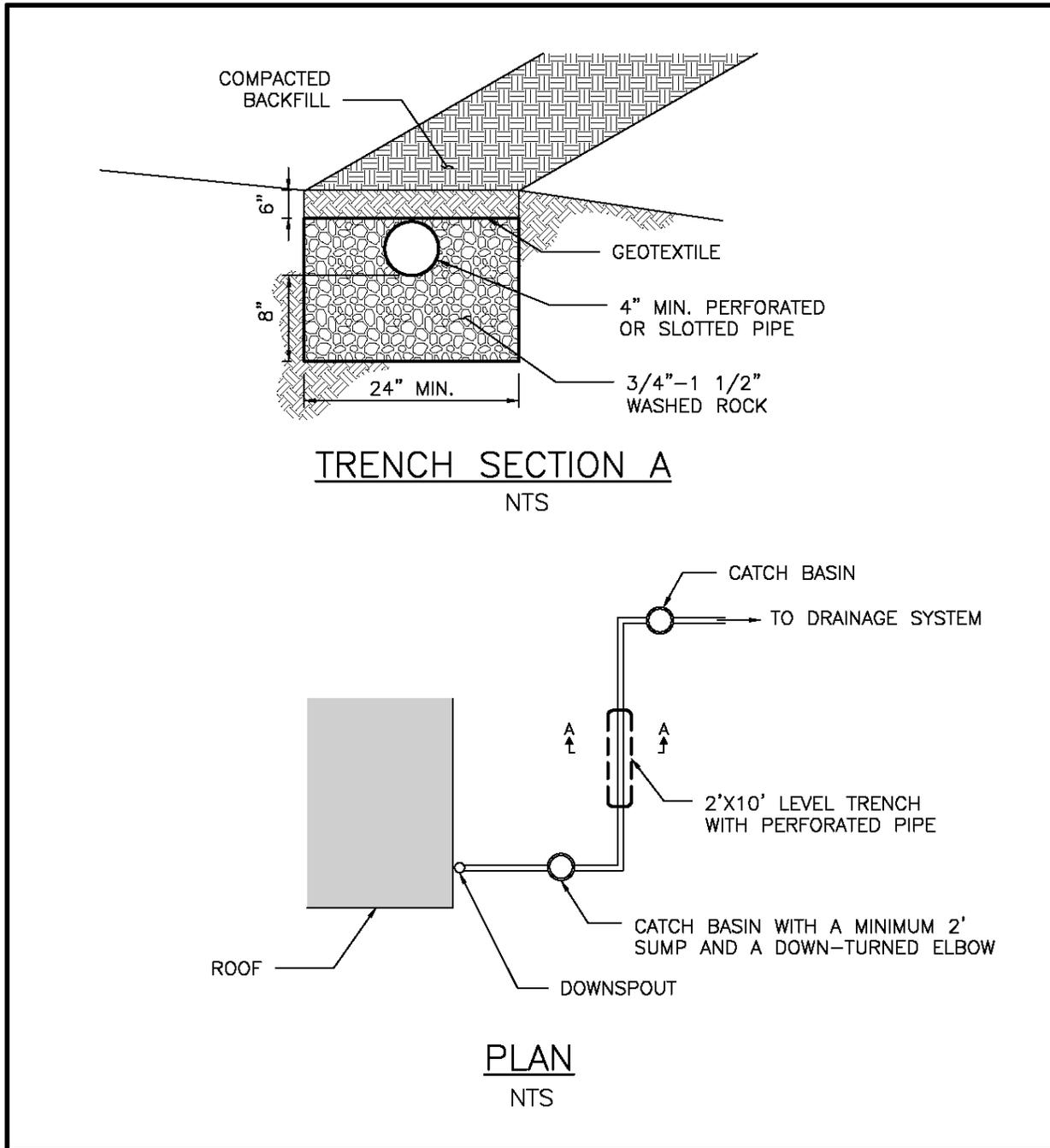


Figure 5.215-17. Perforated Stub-Out Connection.

Presettling

- Stormwater inflows shall be routed through a catch basin ~~or yard drain~~ with a downturned elbow (trap). Presettling requirements are provided in *Section 4.4.5*.

Perforated Pipe and Trench

The minimum requirements associated with the pipe and trench include the following:

- Perforated stub-out connections shall be at least 10 feet of perforated pipe per 5,000 square feet of roof area.
- The trench shall be a minimum of 2 feet wide and 18 inches deep. The bottom of the trench shall be level.
- The trench shall be filled with uniformly-graded, washed gravel with a nominal size from 0.75- to 1.5-inch diameter. The minimum void volume shall be 30 percent. These requirements can be met with City of Seattle Mineral Aggregate Type 4.
- The pipe length that extends through the trench shall be a perforated or slotted pipe with a minimum diameter of 4 inches. The pipe shall be placed level with the pipe invert a minimum of 8 inches above the bottom of the trench.
- The trench shall be wrapped with non-woven geotextile fabric, [according to specifications in Appendix E](#), and covered with 6 inches of compacted backfill.

Subgrade

The minimum measured subgrade infiltration rate for perforated stub-out connections is 0.3 inch per hour.

During construction the subgrade soil surface can become smeared and sealed by excavation equipment. The design shall require scarification or raking of the side walls and bottom of the facility excavation to a minimum depth of 4 inches after excavation to restore infiltration rate.

Overflow

Perforated stub-out connections shall have an overflow designed to convey any flow exceeding the capacity of the facility ~~per~~ [unless designed to fully infiltrate all flows for the full, required simulation period. Plans shall indicate surface flow paths in case of failure of the BMP \(refer to Section 4.3.3\)](#).

~~Section 4.3.4~~ If overflow is connected to the public drainage system, a catch basin shall be installed prior to the connection to the public drainage system to prevent root intrusion into public drainage main lines.

5.4.7.6. BMP Credits

Credit for On-site List Approach

Perforated stub-outs may be selected to meet the On-site List Requirement (refer to *Section 3.3.1* and *Appendix C* for infeasibility criteria). The area of hard surface conveyed using a perforated stub-out meets the requirement.

Pre-sized Approach

Perforated stub-out connections are not included in the Pre-sized Approach because this BMP is not eligible for flow control credits.

Modeling Approach

Any flow reduction is variable and unpredictable. No computer modeling techniques are allowed that would predict any reduction in flow rates and volumes from the connected area.

5.4.7.7. Minimum Construction Requirements

During construction, it is critical to prevent clogging and over-compaction of the subgrade. The minimum construction requirements for infiltration trenches in *Section 5.4.2.7* apply.

5.4.7.8. Operations and Maintenance Requirements

General O&M requirements for infiltration facilities apply to perforated stub-out connections. Perforated stub-out connection O&M requirements are provided in *Appendix G (BMP No. 2)*.

5.4.8. Infiltration Basins

5.4.8.1. Description

Infiltration basins are large earthen impoundments used for the collection, temporary storage, and infiltration of stormwater runoff.

5.4.8.2. Performance Mechanisms

Pollutant removal and flow control occur through infiltration of stormwater into the underlying soils. Secondary pollutant removal mechanisms include filtration, adsorption, and biological uptake.

5.4.8.3. Applicability

An infiltration basin can be designed to provide treatment and/or flow control. This BMP can be applied to meet the requirements listed below.

BMP	On-site		Flow Control			Water Quality				Conveyance
	List	Standard	Forest	Pasture	Peak	Basic	Enhanced	Oil Control	Phosphorus	
Infiltration Basin		✓	✓	✓	✓	✓ ^a	✓ ^a		✓ ^b	

^a Soil suitability criteria (Section 4.5.2) and applicable drawdown requirements (Section 4.5.1) also apply.

^b Refer to treatment train options for infiltration BMPs included in Section 4.4.3.2.

5.4.8.4. Site Considerations

Refer to Infiltration Basins in Volume [V#](#) of the SWMMWW for site considerations related to infiltration basins. Additional site considerations may apply depending on site conditions and other factors.

5.4.8.5. Design Criteria

Refer to Infiltration Basins in Volume [V#](#) of the SWMMWW for infiltration basin design criteria.

5.4.8.6. BMP Sizing

Refer to Infiltration Basins in Volume [V#](#) of the SWMMWW for infiltration basin sizing requirements.

5.4.8.7. Minimum Construction Requirements

Refer to Infiltration Basins in Volume [V#](#) of the SWMMWW for infiltration basin minimum construction requirements. The following minimum construction requirements also apply to infiltration basins installed in Seattle:

- The development plan sheets shall list the proper construction sequence so that the infiltration basin is protected during construction.
- The floor of an infiltration basin shall be raked or deep tilled after final grading to restore infiltration rates.

5.4.8.8. Operations and Maintenance Requirements

Infiltration basin O&M requirements are provided in *Appendix G (BMP No. 2)*.

5.4.9. Infiltration Chambers/Vaults

5.4.9.1. Description

Infiltration chambers/vaults are buried structures, ~~typically arch-shaped~~, within which collected stormwater is temporarily stored and then infiltrated into the underlying soil. Infiltration chambers/vaults create an underground cavity that can provide a greater void volume than infiltration trenches and often require a smaller footprint.

Infiltration chambers are subject to state UIC regulations. Provided that the design and O&M criteria in this section are met, only the registration requirement applies.

Ecology SWMMWW Language	References
All UIC wells must be registered except: UIC wells at single-family homes (or duplexes) receiving only residential roof runoff used to collect stormwater runoff from roof surfaces on an individual home (or duplex) or for basement flooding control.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Volume I, Chapter 4, Section 1-4.3 of the SWMMWW (Ecology 2019)

5.4.9.2. Performance Mechanisms

Infiltration chambers/vaults can be used on their own or in combination with other BMPs to provide temporary storage of stormwater runoff and subsequent infiltration into the underlying soils. Pollutant removal mechanisms include infiltration, filtration, and soil adsorption.

5.4.9.3. Applicability

Infiltration chambers/vaults can be designed to provide on-site stormwater management, flow control and/or treatment. This BMP can be applied to meet the requirements listed below.

BMP	On-site		Flow Control			Water Quality				Conveyance
	List	Standard	Forest	Pasture	Peak	Basic	Enhanced	Oil Control	Phosphorus	
Infiltration Chambers/Vaults		✓	✓	✓	✓	✓ ^a	✓ ^a		✓ ^b	

^a Soil suitability criteria for subgrade soils (Section 4.5.2) and applicable drawdown requirements (Section 5.4.1) also apply.

^b Refer to treatment train options for infiltration BMPs included in Section 4.4.3.2.

5.4.9.4. Site Considerations

Site considerations for the applicability of infiltration chambers/vaults are provided in Section 3.2 and Section 4.5.

5.4.9.5. Design Criteria

The following provides a description and requirements for the components of infiltration chambers/[vaults](#). Some or all of the components may be used for a given application depending on the site characteristics and restrictions and design objectives. Refer to Figure [5.225-18](#) for a schematic of a typical infiltration chamber/[vault](#). Design criteria are provided in this section for the following elements:

- Flow entrance and presettling
- Chamber/[vault](#) materials and layout
- Chamber/[vault](#) bedding
- [Subgrade](#)
- [Liner](#)
- [Overflow](#)
- [Observation/maintenance port](#)

Flow Entrance and Presettling

Inflow pipe or a manifold system shall be connected to each infiltration chamber/[vault](#). Stormwater inflows shall be routed through a catch basin ~~with or yard drain~~ with downturned elbow (trap). Presettling requirements are provided in *Section 4.4.5*.

Chamber/[Vault](#) Materials and Layout

Infiltration chambers/[vaults](#) can be constructed of a variety of different materials (i.e., plastic, concrete, aluminum, steel) and shapes (i.e., arch, box). Chamber/[vault](#) spacing and depth of cover shall be per the manufacturer's requirements.

Chamber/[Vault](#) Bedding

Infiltration chamber/[vault](#) bedding is specified by the manufacturer. Minimum bedding shall be from 6 inches below the infiltration chamber/[vault](#) to an elevation one-half the height of the chamber/[vault](#) on the outside of the chamber/[vault](#). Chambers/[vaults](#) shall be bedded with uniformly-graded, washed gravel with a nominal size from 0.75- to 1.5-inch diameter. The minimum void volume shall be 30 percent. These requirements can be met with City of Seattle Mineral Aggregate Type 4.

Subgrade

The minimum measured subgrade infiltration rate for infiltration chambers/[vaults](#) is 0.6 inch per hour.

During construction the subgrade soil surface can become smeared and sealed by excavation equipment. The design shall require scarification or raking of the side walls and bottom of the facility excavation to a minimum depth of 4 inches after excavation to restore infiltration rate.

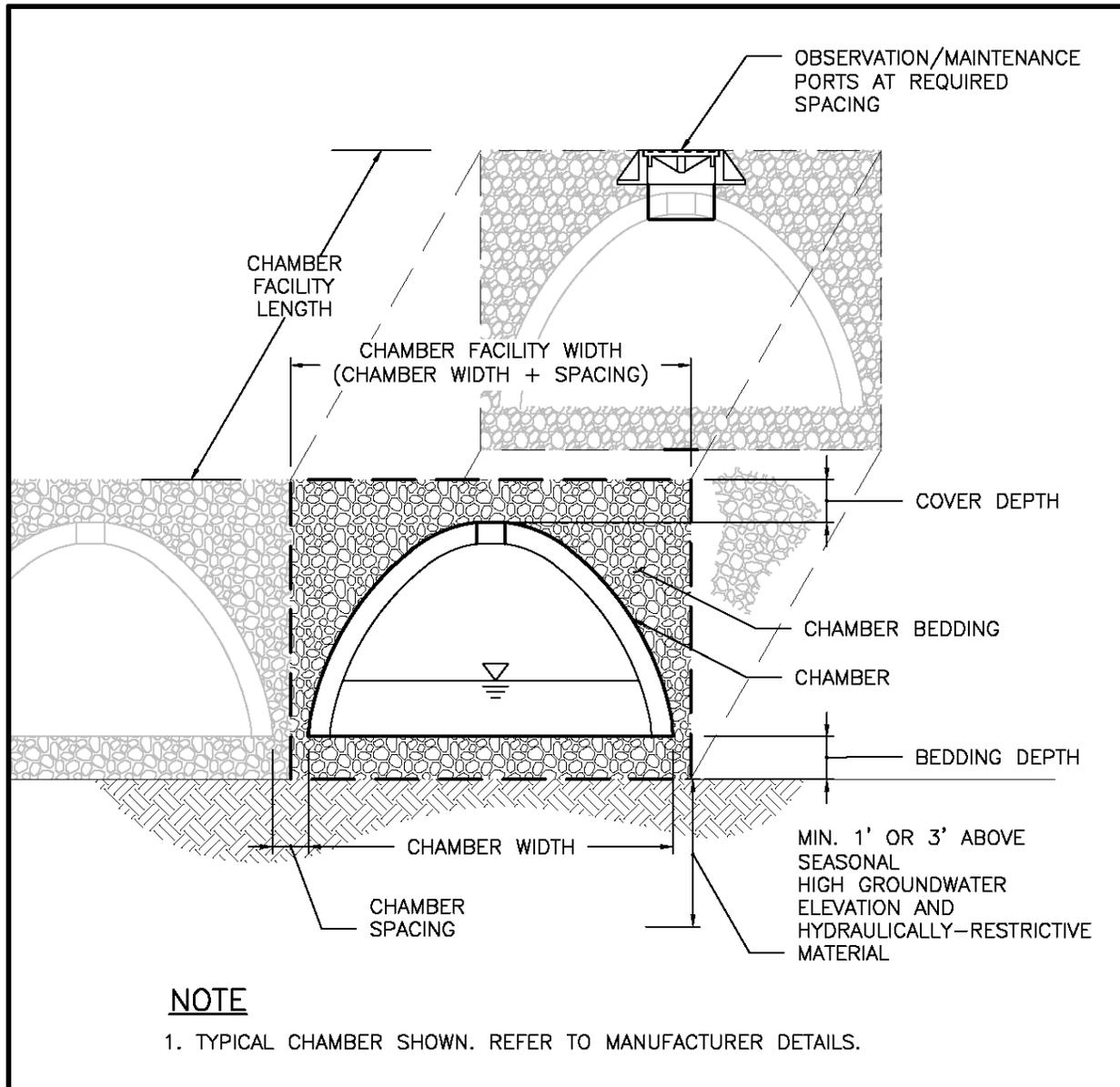


Figure 5.225-18. Typical Infiltration Chamber/Vault.

Liner

Non-woven geotextile fabric, a low permeability liner, or an impermeable liner shall be placed at the sides of any stackable, modular infiltration chamber products. Refer to the specifications presented in Appendix E.

Overflow

Infiltration chambers/vaults shall have an overflow designed to convey any flow exceeding the capacity of the facility unless designed to fully infiltrate all flows for the full, required simulation period. Plans shall indicate surface flow paths in case of failure of the BMP (refer to per-Section 4.3.3). If overflow is connected to the public drainage system, a catch basin

shall be installed prior to the connection to the public drainage system to prevent root intrusion into public drainage main lines.

Observation/Maintenance Port

Infiltration chambers/vaults shall be equipped with observation/maintenance ports to measure the drawdown time following a storm, to monitor sedimentation to determine maintenance needs, and to provide access for sediment removal. Observation/maintenance ports at a 50-foot minimum spacing are required at:

- All inlets
- All outlets
- Any sediment forebay/trap

The observation/maintenance ports shall consist of a 24-inch minimum diameter opening for maintenance access with unobstructed view down to the gravel bedding. The ports shall have locking lids. The ports for stackable, modular infiltration chamber products shall have an open, unobstructed view to the bottom of the chambers. If the port uses pipe that extends to the bottom of the chamber, it shall be perforated or slotted pipe and shall have openings at the bottom to allow for sediment removal. If 24-inch-diameter ports are not available from the manufacturer of the modular chamber product, a 12-inch-diameter port can be used for stackable, modular infiltration chambers. Refer to the Operations and Maintenance Requirements (Section 5.4.9.8) for personnel access requirements.

If personnel will be entering the facility, a 24-inch-diameter ring and cover and a 36-inch-diameter vertical pipe is required.

5.4.9.6. BMP Sizing

Pre-sized Approach for Flow Control and Water Quality Treatment

The Pre-sized Approach may be used for projects with new and replaced hard surface areas up to 10,000 square feet. Under the Pre-sized Approach (refer to Section 4.1.2), pre-sized arched infiltration chambers may be used to achieve Pre-developed Pasture, Peak Control and Water Quality Treatment Standards. Sizing factors were not developed for other infiltration vault shapes other than arched infiltration chambers. Sizing factors and equations for infiltration chambers receiving runoff from a hard surface are provided in Table 5-265.28. Factors are organized by flow control standard, subgrade soil design infiltration rate, and contributing area. The design rate for the subgrade soils shall be rounded down to the nearest infiltration rate in the Table 5-265.28 (i.e., 0.15, 0.3, 0.6, 1.0, or 2.5 inch per hour).

To use these sizing factors or equations to meet flow control standards, the facility shall meet the general requirements for infiltration chambers outlined in this section, plus the following specific requirements:

- The chamber area shall be sized using the applicable sizing factor or equation.
- The aggregate storage reservoir shall be composed of Mineral Aggregate Type 4 or approved equal.

- The effective chamber storage depth (as calculated in the Modeling Approach below) shall be at least 2 feet.
- To use [these a](#) pre-sized infiltration chamber [facility](#) to meet water quality treatment, the underlying soil shall meet soil requirements specified in *Section 4.5.2*.
- Invert of overflow shall be set at top of the storage reservoir to provide the required storage reservoir depth used in the manufacturer's calculation of chamber [facility](#) storage volume.

[Infiltration c](#)Chambers that do not meet the above requirements shall use the Modeling Approach.

Table 5-265.28. Pre-Sized Sizing Factors and Equations for Infiltration Chambers.

Subgrade Soil Design Infiltration Rate	Contributing Area (sf)	Sizing Factor/Equation for Infiltration Chamber Area		
		Pre-developed Pasture Standard	Peak Control Standard	Water Quality Treatment Standard ^a
0.15 inch/hour	≤2,000	13.1%	12.6%	6.2%
	2,001 – 10,000	$[0.0879 \times A] + 91.4$		
0.3 inch/hour	≤2,000	11.1%	11.1%	5.1%
	2,001 – 10,000	$[0.0733 \times A] + 79.9$		
0.6 inch/hour	≤2,000	7.2%	8.0%	3.0%
	2,001 – 10,000	$[0.0441 \times A] + 56.8$		
1.0 inch/hour	≤2,000	6.4%	7.2%	2.6%
	2,001 – 10,000	$[0.0392 \times A] + 50.7$		
2.5 inch/hour	≤2,000	3.4%	4.3%	1.4%
	2,001 – 10,000	$[0.021 \times A] + 28$		

A – contributing hard surface area; sf – square feet.

For Sizing Factors: Infiltration Chamber Area (sf) = Contributing Hard Surface Area (sf) x Factor (%) / 100.

Hard Surface Area Managed (sf) = Chamber Area (sf) ÷ Factor (%) / 100.

For Sizing Equations: Infiltration Chamber Area (sf) = [Factor x A (sf)] + Integer.

Hard Surface Area Managed (sf) = [Chamber Area (sf) – Integer] ÷ Factor.

^a Pre-sized Approach may be used to meet basic water quality treatment. Enhanced water quality treatment may be achieved if soil suitability criteria are met (refer to *Section 4.5.2*).

The infiltration chamber [facility](#) area is calculated as a function of the area contributing runoff to the chamber [facility](#). As an example, to meet the Pre-developed Pasture Standard for a contributing area between 2,000 and 10,000 square feet where the subgrade infiltration rate is between 0.3 and 0.59 inch per hour, the chamber [facility](#) area would be calculated as: $0.0733 \times$ contributing hard surface area + 79.9. All area values shall be in square feet.

Alternatively, infiltration chambers [and other shapes of infiltration vaults facilities](#) can be sized using a continuous hydrologic simulation model as described in the subsequent section.

Modeling Approach for On-site Performance Standard, Flow Control, and Water Quality Treatment

When using continuous hydrologic modeling to size infiltration chambers/[vaults](#), the assumptions listed in Table [5-275.29](#) shall be applied. It is recommended that infiltration

chambers/[vaults](#) be modeled as a pond with vertical side walls and a depth (controlled in the model by the height of the outlet structure) set equal to the effective depth of the chamber/[vault-facility](#). For a given chamber/[vault](#) type and size, the effective depth (i.e., the equivalent chamber/[vault-facility](#) storage depth assuming 100 percent voids) can be estimated based on the chamber/[vault-facility](#) storage volume (chamber/[vault](#) plus aggregate storage – typically obtained from the chamber/[vault](#) manufacturer) and chamber/[vault-facility](#) footprint area (including aggregate spacing between chambers/[vaults](#)). Storage volume provided by the manufacturer should assume 30 percent aggregate porosity unless test showing higher porosity is provided. For example, for a 4-foot-wide by 7-foot-long chamber/[vault](#) with 6-inch chamber/[vault](#) spacing and a manufacturer provided storage volume of 70 cubic feet (assuming 30 percent aggregate porosity), the effective depth would be calculated as follows:

Effective Storage Depth = Storage Volume (70 cubic feet – per manufacturer) ÷ Chamber/[Vault-Facility](#) Area where,

Chamber/[Vault](#) Area = Chamber/[Vault](#) Width including Spacing
(4 feet + 3 inches + 3 inches) x Chamber/[Vault](#) Length (7 feet).

Once the effective depth for a given chamber/[vault](#) system is established, the chamber/[vault](#) area or length should be iteratively sized until the Minimum Requirements for [Flow Control and/or Water Quality Treatment are met \(refer to Volume 1\) or where it has been determined by the Director that there is no offsite point of discharge for the project, the requirements of Section 4.3.2 are met. Flow Control are met \(refer to Volume 1, Section 5.3\).](#) General sizing procedures for infiltration [BMPsfacilities](#) are presented in [Section 4.5.1](#).

Table 5-275.29. Continuous Modeling Assumptions for Infiltration Chambers/[Vaults](#).

Variable	Assumption
Precipitation Series	Seattle 158-year, 5-minute series
Computational Time Step	5 minutes
HSPF Parameters	LSUR, SLSUR, NSUR shall be adjusted per Appendix F.
Inflows to Facility	Surface flow and interflow from total drainage area (including impervious and pervious contributing areas) routed to facility
Precipitation and Evaporation Applied to Facility	No
Total Depth	Effective storage depth plus freeboard
Subgrade Soil Design Infiltration Rate	Design infiltration rate (Section 4.5.2, Appendix D)
Infiltration Across Wetted Surface Area	No (bottom area only)
Outlet Structure	Specify riser diameter and riser height (set equal to the effective storage depth)

5.4.9.7. *Minimum Construction Requirements*

During construction, it is critical to prevent clogging and over-compaction of the subgrade. Refer to the minimum construction requirements for infiltration trenches in [Section 5.4.2.7](#).

5.4.9.8. Operations and Maintenance Requirements

General O&M requirements for infiltration facilities provided in *Appendix G (BMP No. 2)* apply to infiltration chambers/[vaults](#). Manufacturers of specific infiltration chambers/[vaults](#) may have additional O&M recommendations.

[Document a plan for cleaning and maintenance access for any equipment and personnel required for chambers and for vaults that are not as shown in Figure 5.22. If personnel will be entering the facility, a 24-inch-diameter ring and cover and 36-inch-diameter vertical pipe is required.](#)

5.5. Rainwater Harvesting BMPs

Rainwater harvesting BMPs capture and store rainwater for beneficial use. The BMPs in this section include:

- Rainwater harvesting
- Single-Family Residential (SFR) Cisterns

5.5.1. Rainwater Harvesting

5.5.1.1. Description

Rainwater harvesting is the capture and storage of rainwater for subsequent use. Runoff from roofs may be routed to cisterns for storage and beneficial non-potable uses, such as irrigation, mechanical equipment, industrial process uses, toilet flushing, and the cold water supply for laundry. The potable use of collected rainwater may be used for single-family residences with proper design and approval from Public Health – Seattle & King County.

Rainwater harvesting functions can be combined with detention pipes, vaults, and cisterns (refer to *Sections 5.7.2, 5.7.3, and 5.7.4*).

5.5.1.2. Performance Mechanisms

Rainwater harvesting can be used to achieve reductions in peak flows, flow durations and runoff volumes. The flow control performance of rainwater harvesting is a function of contributing area, storage volume and rainwater use rate.

5.5.1.3. Applicability

Rainwater harvesting systems can be designed to provide on-site stormwater management and flow control, and can be an effective volume reduction practice for projects where infiltration is not permitted or desired. Rainwater harvesting has higher stormwater management benefits when designed for uses that occur regularly through the wet season (e.g., toilet flushing and cold water laundry). The use of harvested rainwater for irrigation during the dry months provides less benefit.

This BMP can be applied to meet the requirements listed below.

BMP	On-site		Flow Control			Water Quality ^a				Conveyance
	List	Standard	Forest	Pasture	Peak	Basic	Enhanced	Oil Control	Phosphorus	
Rainwater Harvesting	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓					

^a Rainwater harvesting is not approved for pollution-generating surfaces, so the water quality [treatment](#) standard is not applicable.

5.5.1.4. Site Considerations

Rainwater harvesting can be used for new or retrofit projects. Depending upon site constraints, cisterns may be installed at grade, underground, under a deck, or in a basement or crawl space. Cisterns may be used individually or connected to each other in a series for increased storage capacity. Refer to *Appendix C* for additional infeasibility criteria for the On-site List Approach.

[Rainwater harvesting cisterns are allowed in the side, front, and rear yard/setbacks that are required by the Land Use Code \(SMC Title 23\) in certain land use zones. However, if the](#)

cistern extends above grade or sits above grade, then the amount of the yard/setback that it can cover may be restricted if the cistern is over a certain height, width, or total storage capacity. Height is measured from the lowest adjacent grade. Width is the outside width and is measured perpendicular to the setback line. Storage capacity is the total volume of water that can be stored in the cistern.

Refer to the Land Use Code (SMC Title 23) for the specific height, width, and storage capacity that trigger yard/setback coverage limitations for GSI features. Note: The requirements vary based on zoning and are not required in all zones.

5.5.1.5. Design Criteria

This section provides descriptions, recommendations, and requirements for the common components of rainwater harvesting systems. Design criteria are provided in this section for the following elements:

- Contributing area
- Collection system
- Prefilter
- Cistern/storage system
- Distribution system
- Water treatment system
- Overflow
- Backflow prevention device

The City accepts rainwater harvesting systems with indoor and/or outdoor water use for compliance with flow control standards. The indoor use of harvested water is regulated by Public Health – Seattle & King County.

In addition to the requirements presented in this section, all components of a rainwater harvesting system shall be designed and constructed in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations and the City of Seattle Building and Residential Code, City of Seattle Plumbing Code, and Public Health – Seattle & King County requirements, and all other applicable laws.

Refer to the Puget Sound LID Manual and ARCSA/ASPE/ANSI 63-2013: Rainwater Catchment Systems for general guidance for design of rainwater harvesting systems. Refer to *Rainwater Harvesting and Connection to Plumbing Fixtures* (Public Health – Seattle & King County 2011) and the Puget Sound LID Manual for design requirements specific to indoor use of harvested rainwater.

Links to resources on rainwater harvesting, including permit requirements, are available at the SDCI website ([www.seattle.gov/sdci/codes/codes-we-enforce-\(a-z\)/stormwater-codewww.seattle.gov/dpd/codesrules/codes/stormwater](http://www.seattle.gov/sdci/codes/codes-we-enforce-(a-z)/stormwater-codewww.seattle.gov/dpd/codesrules/codes/stormwater)).

Contributing Area

The area contributing runoff to a rainwater harvesting system shall be a roof. Any rainwater collected from a vegetated roof underdrain may require additional treatment to remove tannins and suspended solids. Additionally vegetated roofs will naturally reduce the amount of water available for collection through the evapotranspiration of the plants and soil media.

Collection System

The collection system includes gutters and downspouts, as well as the piping and any other conveyance needed to route rainwater to the prefilter and on to the cistern.

Prefilter

A prefilter shall be provided with a debris screen that protects the cistern from the intrusion of debris, insects, vermin, or other organisms. The debris screen shall be corrosion resistant and shall have openings no larger than a nominal 0.15 cm (1,500 microns) (1/16 inch) or have been certified by a government regulatory agency to remove particles greater than 500 µm. A self-cleaning prefilter is recommended.

Cistern/Storage System

Cisterns can be constructed from a variety of materials (e.g., plastic, concrete, corrugated steel with liner, fiberglass) and placed in various locations. They can include tanks, pipes, and enclosed portions of buildings—above or underground. The minimum requirements for all cistern systems include the following:

- Cisterns shall be installed in accordance with manufacturer’s installation instructions, the City of Seattle Building Code, and all applicable laws, including foundation and other structural requirements.
- Cistern/storage systems shall have access points and drains to allow inspection and cleaning.
- Cistern openings shall be designed to restrict entry from unauthorized personnel and appropriate signage shall be provided. Any cistern/storage system opening that could allow the entry of personnel shall be marked: “danger – confined space.”
- Cleaning of any accumulated sediment on the bottom of the cistern shall be possible by flushing through a drain or vacuuming.
- Cisterns shall be designed to prevent mosquitoes and other nuisance insects and animals from entering the cistern system. This shall be done with 1/16-inch stainless steel mesh screening at all vents and other openings to the cistern.
- Opaque containers shall be used for aboveground cisterns to minimize algal growth.

Minimum requirements specific to underground cistern design include the following:

- Cistern/storage systems that are buried underground must-shall have a maintenance hole riser that protrudes a minimum of 8 inches above the surrounding ground. Maintenance hole covers shall be secured and locked to prevent tampering.

- Cistern/storage systems shall meet buoyancy resistance requirements per manufacturer’s specifications, the City of Seattle Building Code, and the City of Seattle Plumbing Code.

Distribution System

Distribution of collected rainwater may be accomplished by gravity or by pumps and pipes to move water from the storage system to the end use area. For gravity fed irrigation use, an outlet spigot can be installed near the bottom of the tank. Water shall be drawn from at least 4 inches above the bottom of the tank or by use of a floating screened inlet in the tank. Any piping and/or fixtures containing collected rainwater shall be appropriately labeled per code.

Water Treatment System

Water quality treatment is typically required to protect the delivery and distribution system and to improve the quality of the collected water for the intended use. The pre-filter may be sufficient for a gravity fed irrigation system, while a pumped system for toilet flushing may require sediment filtration to 20 μ to 50 μ .

Additional discussion of treatment for indoor use is outside of the scope of this manual. Refer to the Puget Sound LID Manual and/or ARCSA/ASPE/ANSI 63-2013: Rainwater Catchment Systems for additional guidance on indoor use of harvested rainwater. Approval is required by Public Health – Seattle & King County for any project routing harvesting water to an indoor plumbing system.

Overflow

Minimum requirements associated with overflow design include the following:

- Overflows shall be designed to convey excess flow to the approved point of discharge per [Section 4.3.3](#).
- The overflow pipe shall have a conveyance capacity that is equal to or greater than all of the conveyance inlets delivering rainwater to the cistern. The minimum overflow pipe diameter shall be 4 inches.

Backflow Prevention Device

Refer to Public Health – Seattle & King County and the City of Seattle Plumbing Code for backflow prevention and cross-connection control requirements for back-up water supply.

5.5.1.6. BMP Sizing

Sizing for On-site List Approach

Rainwater harvesting may be selected to meet the On-site List Requirement [in Category 2 or Category 4](#) (refer to [Section 3.3.1](#) and [Appendix C](#) for infeasibility criteria). To meet the requirement [for Category 2 of the On-site List, document \(using the Modeling Approach described below\) that the rainwater harvesting system shall be designed to meet](#) the On-site Performance Standard [appropriate to the project for the contributing area \(refer to Modeling Approach for On-site Performance Standard and Flow Control\)](#).

If rainwater harvesting is selected for Category 4 of the On-site List, the rainwater harvesting system shall reduce discharged rooftop runoff volume by 25 percent on an average annual basis, as determined by an approved continuous simulation model. This reduction in runoff volume can be determined by comparing the total runoff from the roof and the average annual rainwater demand outlined in the following steps.

Step 1: Determine the average annual runoff volume from the tributary roof area

The roof area contributing to the rainwater harvesting system can be determined using the total runoff volume divided by the number of simulation years (e.g., 158 years).

Step 2: Determine the average annual runoff volume discharging as overflow from the rainwater harvesting system

This can be determined using the total discharged runoff volume divided by the number of simulation years (e.g., 158 years).

Step 3: Determine the ratio of the overflow discharge volume compared to the average annual runoff volume

Calculate the ratio of the numbers determined in Steps 1 and 2 (divide the average annual rainwater harvesting system overflow volume from Step 2 by the average annual roof runoff volume from Step 1). If the ratio is at least 0.25, the rainwater harvesting system meets the requirements for Category 4 of the On-site List.

Modeling Approach for On-site Performance Standard and Flow Control

If rainwater harvesting is selected for Category 2 of the On-site List, the on-site performance standard appropriate to the project shall be used to size the rainwater harvesting system. Rainwater harvesting systems can also be sized to meet flow control standards. The process for sizing a rainwater harvesting system to meet the on-site performance standard or a flow control standard is the same and is outlined in the following steps.

Step 1: Determine rainwater demand

When estimating rainwater demand for the purposes of modeling the on-site performance standard or a flow control standard, only year-round indoor uses may be included (e.g., seasonal irrigation may not be considered). Typical assumptions for non-potable and potable uses are provided in Tables 5-285.30 and 5-295.31 below.

Table 5-285.30. Typical Assumptions for Non-Potable Rainwater Demand Calculations.

Use	Assumptions	Source
Commercial Building Uses for Employees		
Number of employees	Actual ^a	
Employees that are male	50%	Assumed
Water closet (toilet) uses per male employee	1 use/day	LEED Reference Guide
Urinal uses per male employee	2 uses/day	LEED Reference Guide

Water closet uses per female employee	3 uses/day	LEED Reference Guide
Toilet and urinal fixture flow rates	Actual (gallons per use)	Manufacturer's data
Commercial Building Uses for Visitors		
Number of visitors	Actual ^b	
Water closet (toilet) uses per male visitor	0.2 use/day	LEED Reference Guide
Urinal uses per male visitor	0.1 use/day	LEED Reference Guide
Water closet (toilet) uses per female visitor	0.1 uses/day	LEED Reference Guide
Toilet and urinal fixture flow rates	Actual (gallons per use)	Manufacturer's data
Residential Building		
Water closet (toilet) uses per resident	5.1 uses per day per person	Rainwater Catchment Systems (ARCSA/ASPE/ANSI 63-2013) Table E.1
Toilet and urinal fixture flow rates	Actual (gallons per use)	Manufacturer's data
Cold water leg of laundry	80%	DeOreo and Mayer (Drinking Water Research, July–September 2012), WRF, Table 8
Laundry usage	0.310-37 loads/day/capita ^c	Residential End Uses of Water Executive Report, Version 2 Study (WRF 2016/1999), AWWA
Residents per bedroom	2 for the first bedroom and 1 for each other bedroom per unit	Assumed

^a Typically not more than 1 employee per 2,000 sf of retail or 1 employee per 150 sf of office.

^b Typically not more than 150 visitors per day for commercial uses.

^c Derived from [3144](#) gallons/load and [9.645](#) gallons per day per person from the Residential End Uses of Water [Executive Report \(WRF 2016\) Study \(1999\), AWWA](#).

Table 5-295.31. Typical Assumptions for Potable Rainwater Demand Calculations.

Use	Usage	Duration	Source
Commercial Building Uses for Employees			
Lavatory faucet	3 uses/day	30 seconds/use	LEED Reference Guide
Shower	0.1 uses/day	300 seconds/use	LEED Reference Guide
Kitchen sink	1 use/day	15 seconds/use	LEED Reference Guide
Faucet, shower and sink fixture flow rates	Actual (gallons/minute)	–	Manufacturer's data
Commercial Building Uses for Visitors			
Lavatory faucet	0.5 use/day	30 seconds/use	LEED Reference Guide
Faucet fixture flow rates	Actual (gallons/minute)	–	Manufacturer's data
Residential Building Uses^a			
Faucets	11.140.9 gallons/day/capita	–	Residential End Uses of Water Executive Report, Version 2 Study (WRF 2016+1999)-AWWA
Shower	11.144.6 gallons/day/capita	–	Residential End Uses of Water Executive Report, Version 2 Study (WRF 2016+1999)-AWWA
Bath	1.5 gallons/day/capita	=	Residential End Uses of Water Executive Report, Version 2 (WRF 2016)
Dishwasher	0.7 gallons/day/capita	=	Residential End Uses of Water Executive Report, Version 2 (WRF 2016)
Faucet and shower fixture flow rates	Actual (gallons/minute)	–	Manufacturer's data

^a Additional residential potable water use rates can be obtained from [the Water Research Foundation \(WRF 2016\) executive report: www.allianceforwaterefficiency.org/resources/residential-end-uses-of-water-study-1999.aspx](http://www.allianceforwaterefficiency.org/resources/residential-end-uses-of-water-study-1999.aspx). This study is in the process of being updated and new data may be available in 2015 or 2016.

Daily demand is calculated for each use as shown in the examples below:

- Water closet demand for female employees in commercial building (gallons/day) = total number of employees x 50 percent x 3 uses/day x toilet flow rate (gallons/use)
- Lavatory faucet demand for visitors in commercial building (gallons/day) = [number of visitors per day x 0.5 uses/day x 30 seconds/use x faucet flow rate (gallons/minute)] ÷ 60 seconds/minute

The rainwater uses are summed to calculate a total daily demand in gallons per day. For commercial buildings that do not operate daily, a multiplier is applied to the total demand (i.e., a multiplier of 5/7 is applied if business is open 5 days per week).

The average demand (D) in cubic feet per hour is then calculated by dividing the demand in gallons per day by 179.5. The rainwater demand is then reduced by a factor of 10 percent (multiplied by a factor of 0.9) to account for lower than anticipated water use (e.g., periods of vacancy).

Step 2: Calculate the “Infiltration Rate” Equivalent to the Rainwater Demand

In order to represent the daily rainwater demand in the continuous simulation model, the equivalent cistern “infiltration rate” is calculated as follows:

Equivalent Cistern “Infiltration Rate” (inch/hour) = $D \times (12 \text{ inches/foot})/A$, where:

D = Average Daily Rainwater Demand (cubic feet per hour)

A = Cistern Footprint Area (square feet)

Step 3: Determine Contributing Roof Area

The actual roof area draining to the cistern is the contributing roof area.

Step 4: Integrate Rainwater Harvesting into Development Site Model

In an approved continuous hydrologic model, runoff from the contributing roof area is directed to a storage element (e.g., vault, cistern) with an infiltration routine to represent the cistern with rainwater use (refer to Table 5-305.32). The equivalent “infiltration rate,” calculated as shown above, is applied to the bottom area of the storage element. The size of the storage element and/or the equivalent “infiltration rate” (rainwater use rate) are adjusted to achieve the desired level of performance. Note that when the storage element size is modified, the equivalent “infiltration area” shall be updated based on the new cistern footprint area (refer to the equation in Step 2).

If rainwater harvesting does not achieve the applicable stormwater performance standard(s), overflow from the storage element can be routed to a downstream stormwater management practice (e.g., detention, bioretention) that can be sized to meet the standard(s).

Table 5-305.32. Continuous Modeling Assumptions for Rainwater Harvesting.

Variable	Assumption
Precipitation Series	Seattle 158-year, 5-minute series
Computational Time Step	5 minutes
HSPF Parameters	LSUR, SLSUR, NSUR shall be adjusted per Appendix F
Inflows to Cistern	Surface flow from drainage area (roof area) routed to facility
Storage in Cistern	Storage element (e.g., vault, cistern)
Rainwater Demand	Represent rainwater demand as an equivalent “infiltration rate” applied to the bottom of the storage element
Outlet Structure	Overflow elevation set at live storage depth. May be modeled as weir flow over riser edge. Note that freeboard shall be sufficient to allow water surface elevation to rise above the overflow elevation to provide head for discharge.

5.5.1.7. Minimum Construction Requirements

Rainwater harvesting systems shall be constructed according to the manufacturer’s recommendations, the City of Seattle Building Code, the City of Seattle Plumbing Code, and all applicable laws.

5.5.1.8. Operations and Maintenance Requirements

Rainwater harvesting O&M requirements are provided in *Appendix G (BMP No. [2423](#))*.

Additional O&M guidance can be found in ARCSA/ASPE/ANSI 63-2013: Rainwater Catchment Systems.

5.5.2. Single-Family Residential (SFR) Cisterns

5.5.2.1. Description

Detention cisterns (*Section 5.7.4*) can be designed to allow rainwater harvesting of roof runoff for outdoor irrigation use. For single-family residential (SFR) projects, these are combined harvesting and detention cisterns (referred to as SFR cisterns).

The SFR cistern requires seasonal operation of a valve to detain water through the winter months.

5.5.2.2. Performance Mechanisms

SFR cisterns provide flow attenuation by slowly releasing low flows through an orifice.

5.5.2.3. Applicability

SFR cisterns can be applied to meet the requirements listed below.

BMP	On-site		Flow Control			Water Quality				Conveyance
	List	Standard	Forest	Pasture	Peak	Basic	Enhanced	Oil Control	Phosphorus	
SFR Cisterns	✓									

5.5.2.4. Site Considerations

SFR cisterns can be used on any new or retrofit single-family residential project. Refer to *Appendix C* for additional infeasibility criteria for the On-site List Approach.

[SFR cisterns are allowed in the side, front and rear yard/setbacks that are required by the Land Use Code \(SMC Title 23\) in certain land use zones. However, the amount of the yard/setback that it can cover may be restricted if the cistern is over a certain height, width, or total storage capacity. Height is measured from the lowest adjacent grade. Width is the outside width and is measured perpendicular to the setback line. Storage capacity is the total volume of water that can be stored in the cistern.](#)

[Refer to the Land Use Code \(SMC Title 23\) for the specific height, width, and storage capacity that trigger yard/setback coverage limitations for GSI features. Note: The requirements vary based on zoning and are not required in all zones.](#)

5.5.2.5. Design Criteria

The following provides descriptions, recommendations, and requirements for the common components of cistern detention systems. A schematic for a typical SFR cistern are shown in Figure [5.235-19](#). Design criteria are provided in this section for the following elements:

- Contributing area

- Collection system
- Screen/debris excluder
- Cistern
- Flow control orifice
- Overflow

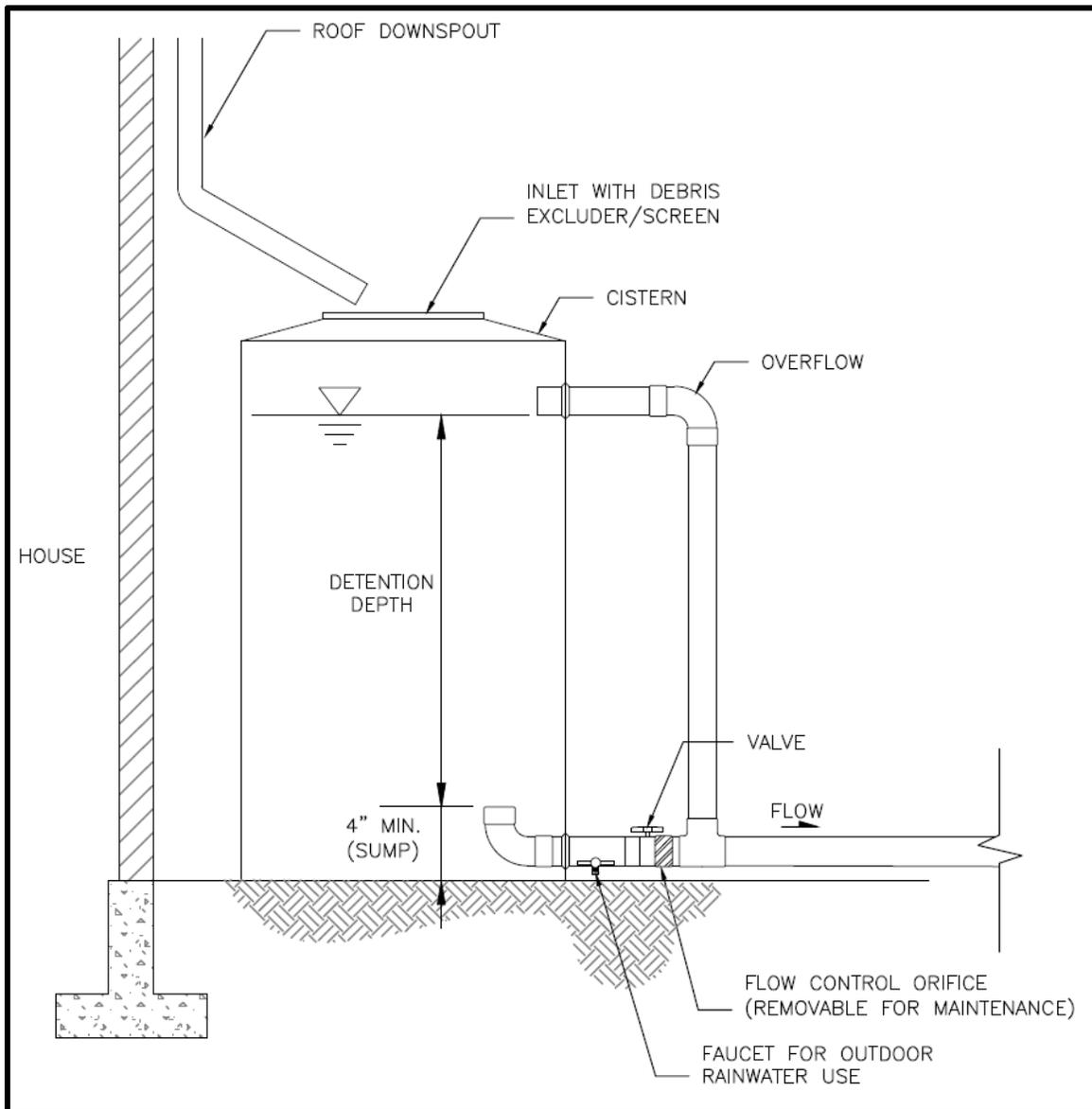


Figure 5.235-19. Detention Cistern with Harvesting Capacity for Single-Family Residential Projects Only.

Contributing Area

The area contributing runoff to a SFR cistern shall not be pollution generating (e.g., surfaces subject to vehicular traffic are not acceptable).

To protect the water quality of the rainwater harvested, avoid collecting runoff from roof surfaces composed of materials such as copper or zinc that may release contaminants into your system. Also avoid collecting runoff from roof materials treated with fungicides or herbicides.

Collection System

Collection systems include gutters and downspouts, as well as piping and any other conveyance needed to route runoff from the roof to the cistern.

Rainwater use shall be for outdoor irrigation uses only.

Screens/Debris Excluder

A filter screen or other debris barrier is required to prevent insects, leaves, and other larger debris from entering the system. A self-cleaning inlet filter is recommended.

Cistern

Cisterns are commonly constructed of fiberglass, polyethylene, concrete, metal, or wood. Tanks can be installed at or below grade, and individually or in series.

Minimum requirements associated with cistern design include the following:

- If cistern height exceeds 4.5 feet (excluding piping), width exceeds 4 feet, or storage volume exceeds 600 gallons, the cistern may be subject to stricter Land Use Code (SMC Title 23) setback requirements.
- All cisterns ~~must~~ shall be installed in accordance with manufacturer's installation instructions.
- Cisterns shall be designed to prevent mosquitoes and other nuisance insects and animals from entering the cistern system. This can be done with tight-fitting covers and appropriate screening at all openings to the cistern.
- Opaque containers shall be used for aboveground cisterns to prevent penetration of sunlight to minimize algal growth.
- Minimum cistern size shall be that of a rain barrel (typically 55 gallons).

Flow Control Orifice

Minimum requirements associated with flow control orifice design include the following:

- Cisterns shall be aboveground and have an orifice diameter of 0.25 inch.
- Minimum 4-inch sump shall be provided to protect the orifice from sediment.

Overflow

Cisterns shall have an overflow to convey water exceeding the detention capacity of the system to an approved point of discharge or another BMP (e.g., bioretention area, vegetated cell, or infiltration trench) per *Section 4.3.3*. Conveyance may be provided by gravity flow or by pumps, but gravity flow is preferred.

5.5.2.6. BMP Sizing

Sizing for On-site List Approach

SFR cisterns may be selected to meet the On-site List Requirement (refer to *Section 3.3.1* and *Appendix C* for infeasibility criteria). The area draining to a properly sized cistern meets the requirement. The cistern area sizing factors and minimum live storage depths are provided in [Table 5-315.33](#). Three to five feet of live storage between the low flow orifice and the overflow must shall be provided, and the low flow orifice shall have a diameter of 0.25 inch.

Table 5-315.33. On-site List Sizing for SFR Cisterns.

Contributing Area (square feet)	Sizing Factor Cistern Bottom Area ^a	Minimum Live Storage Depth ^b (ft)
	On-site Performance Standard	
400–799	3.6%	3.0
800–899	2.8%	4.0
900–999	2.4%	
1,000–1,099	2.0%	
1,100–1,199	1.7%	
1,200–1,299	1.4%	
1,300–1,399	1.4%	5.0
1,400–1,899	1.3%	
1,900–1,999	1.2%	
2,000–2,999	1.6%	
3,000–4,200	1.9%	

sf – square feet.

Cistern Area = Contributing Hard Surface Area x Factor (%) / 100.

Hard Surface Area Managed = Cistern Area ÷ Factor (%) / 100.

^a Sizing factors based on achieving an 85% reduction in the 1-year recurrence interval flow.

^b Detention depth refers to live storage depth (i.e., does not include freeboard or sediment storage requirements).

5.5.2.7. Minimum Construction Requirements

Refer to the construction-related issues outlined above as part of the design criteria. An additional construction requirement is as follows:

- Submit field changes to the flow control device assembly, including elevation changes, to the Engineer of Record for confirmation that the device still meets the design requirements.

5.5.2.8. Operations and Maintenance Requirements

SFR cistern O&M requirements are provided in *Appendix G (BMP No. 2423)*.

The home owner shall open the valve to engage the flow control orifice during the non-growing season (approximately October through April or May). If the valve is not opened during this time, the cistern will fill and overflow, eliminating the detention benefits of the system. A plan shall be submitted demonstrating how the O&M requirements will be met.

5.6. Alternative Surface BMPs

Alternative surface BMPs convert a conventional impervious surface to a surface that reduces the amount of stormwater runoff and also provides flow control. The BMPs in this section include:

- Vegetated roof systems
- Permeable pavement surfaces

5.6.1. Vegetated Roof Systems

5.6.1.1. Description

Vegetated roofs are areas of living vegetation installed on top of buildings, or other above-grade impervious surfaces (e.g., at least 10 feet above grade). Vegetated roofs are also known as ecoroofs, green roofs, and roof gardens.

A vegetated roof consists of a system in which several materials are layered to achieve the desired vegetative cover and stormwater management function (refer to Figure 5.245-20). Design components vary depending on the vegetated roof type and site constraints, but may include a waterproofing material, a root barrier, a drainage layer, a separation fabric, a growth media (soil), and vegetation. Vegetated roof systems are categorized by the depth and the types of courses used in their construction.

- **Intensive roofs:** Intensive roofs are deeper installations, composed of at least 6 inches of growth media and planted with ground covers, grasses, shrubs and sometimes trees.
- **Extensive roofs:** Extensive roofs are shallower installations, composed of less than 6 inches of growth media and planted with a palette of drought-tolerant, low maintenance ground covers. Extensive vegetated roofs have the lowest weight and are typically the most suitable for placement on existing structures. Extensive systems are further divided into two types:
 - Single-course systems consist of a single growth media designed to be freely draining and support plant growth.
 - Multi-course systems include both a growth media layer and a separate, underlying drainage layer.

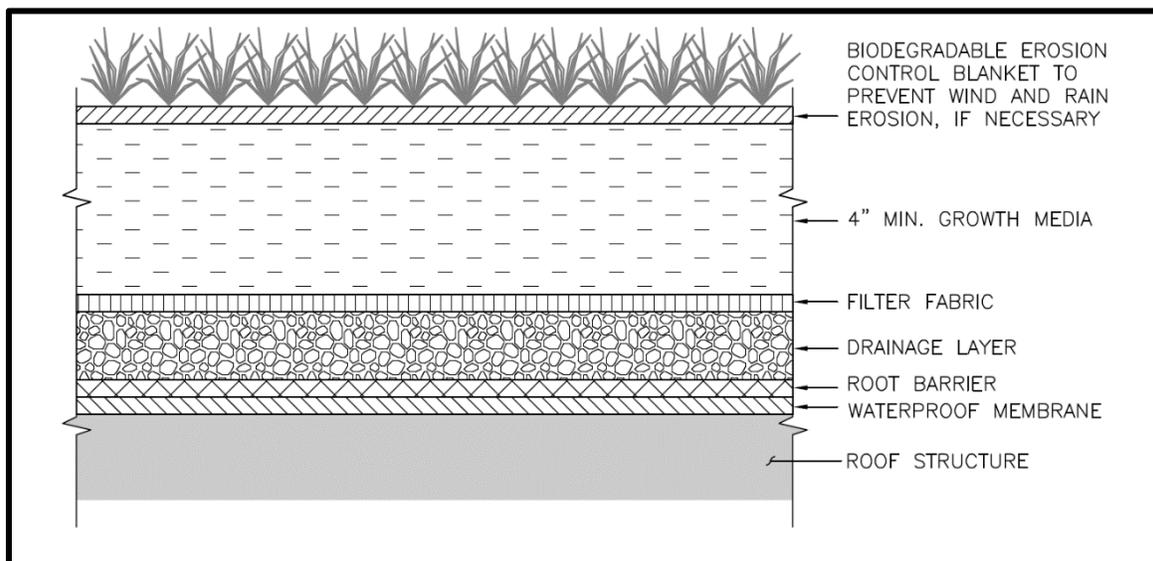


Figure 5.245-20. Vegetated Roof System.

The following types of vegetated roof systems are acceptable for flow control compliance:

- Intensive systems
- Extensive multi-course systems (and commercially available modular systems) with at least 4 inches of growth media
- Extensive single-course systems with at least 4 inches of growth media

5.6.1.2. Performance Mechanisms

Vegetated roof systems can provide flow control via attenuation, soil storage, and losses to interception, evaporation, and transpiration.

5.6.1.3. Applicability

Vegetated roof systems can be designed to provide on-site stormwater management and flow control. The degree of flow control provided by vegetated roofs varies depending on the growth media (soil) depth, growth media composition, drainage layer characteristics, vegetation type, roof slope, and other design considerations. This BMP can be applied to meet or partially meet the requirements listed below.

BMP	On-site		Flow Control			Water Quality				Conveyance
	List	Standard	Forest	Pasture	Peak	Basic	Enhanced	Oil Control	Phosphorus	
Vegetated Roof System	✓	✓ ^a	✓ ^a	✓ ^a	✓ ^a					

^a Standard may be partially achieved.

5.6.1.4. Site Considerations

Vegetated roof systems for stormwater management are accepted for roof slopes between 1 and 22 degrees (0.2:12 and 5:12), but require additional analysis at slopes exceeding 10 degrees (2:12).

A primary consideration for the feasibility of vegetated roofs is the structural capability of the roof and building structure. Related factors, including design load, slipping and shear issues, and wind load, are outside the scope of this manual. Refer to the City of Seattle Building Code for structural requirements. Refer to *Appendix C* for additional infeasibility criteria for the On-site List.

5.6.1.5. Design Criteria

The following sections provide a description, recommendations, and requirements for the common components of vegetated roof systems. Typical components of a vegetated roof are shown in Figure [5.245-20](#). Design criteria are provided in this section for the following elements:

- Roof slope
- Vegetation
- Growth media
- Drainage layer
- Drain system and overflow

While vegetated roofs will include additional system components (e.g., waterproof membrane, root barrier, separation fabric for multi-course systems), the design and construction requirements for these components are outside of the scope of this manual.

Refer to the Puget Sound LID Manual for a more detailed description of the components of and design criteria for vegetated roofs, as well as additional references and design guidance.

Roof Slope

Vegetated roofs can be applied to a range of rooftop slopes; however, steeper slopes may result in reduced flow control performance and may warrant a more complicated design (e.g., lateral support measures). Roofs with slopes between 1 and 5 degrees (0.2:12 and 1:12) are the easiest to install, are the least complex, and generally provide the greatest stormwater storage capacity per inch of growth media.

For on-site or flow control compliance, the roof slope shall be between 1 and 22 degrees (0.2:12 and 5:12). Roofs with slopes greater than 10 degrees (2:12) require an analysis of engineered slope stability.

Vegetation

Vegetation used on extensive vegetated roofs shall be drought tolerant, self-sustaining, low maintenance, and perennial or self-sowing. Appropriate plants should also be able to withstand heat, cold, periodic inundation and high winds. Vegetation with these attributes typically includes succulents, grasses, herbs, and wildflowers that are adapted to harsh conditions. Refer to the Green Factor plant list (SDCI Director's Rule 10-2011). Refer to the Puget Sound LID Manual for additional vegetation guidance for vegetated roofs.

Minimum requirements associated with vegetation design include the following:

- The design plans shall specify that vegetation coverage of selected plants will achieve 80 percent coverage within 2 years.
- For non-single family residential projects, plant spacing and plant size shall be designed to achieve specified coverage by a licensed landscape architect.
- Vegetation shall be suitable for rooftop conditions (e.g., hot, cold, dry, and windy).
- Plants shall not require fertilizer, pesticides or herbicides after 2-year establishment period. Application of fertilizer, pesticides or herbicides shall be minimized after a 3-year establishment period.

Note: Vegetated roofs may require fertilizer for establishment and long-term health. The goal of fertilization is to support plant health and vigor while also minimizing the amount of nutrient runoff within stormwater. During the first 3 years of

establishment, a granular, slow-release fertilizer with a target N-P-K ratio of 18-6-12 or a generic 10-10-10 is recommended. Application should occur during the spring growing season. After initial plant establishment, vegetation should be monitored and soil should be tested annually or every other year to determine whether additional fertilizer applications are necessary. Fertilizer should not be applied during the hottest and driest parts of the year when plants are dormant or not actively growing. Fertilizer should not be over-applied. Vegetated roofs have excellent drainage and are intended to help reduce pollutants that result from stormwater runoff. Fertilizing should be conducted carefully and strategically to avoid water quality impacts.

Growth Media

Vegetated roof systems use a light-weight growth media with adequate fertility and drainage capacity to support plants and allow filtration and storage of water. Growth media composition (fines content and water holding capacity) is key to flow control performance. Refer to the Puget Sound LID Manual for additional guidance on growth media design.

Minimum requirements associated with the growth media design include the following:

- The growth media shall be a minimum of 4 inches deep. Refer to the SDCI website ([www.seattle.gov/sdci/codes/codes-we-enforce-\(a-z\)/stormwater-codes](http://www.seattle.gov/sdci/codes/codes-we-enforce-(a-z)/stormwater-codes)~~www.seattle.gov/dpd/codesrules/codes/stormwater~~) for a growth media specification. Approved media testing labs and approved media products are also provided on the website.
- For non-single family residential projects, growth media depth and characteristics shall support growth for selected plant species and shall be approved by a licensed landscape architect.
- Vegetated roofs shall not be subject to any use that will significantly compact the growth media.
- Unless designed for foot traffic, vegetated roof areas that are accessible to the public shall be protected (e.g., signs, railing, fencing) from foot traffic and other loads.
- Biodegradable erosion control blanket or other measures to control erosion of growth media shall be maintained until 90 percent vegetation coverage is achieved.

Drainage Layer

Intensive and extensive multi-course vegetated roof systems shall include a drainage layer below the growth media. The drainage layer is a multipurpose layer designed to provide void spaces to hold a portion of the water that passes through the growth media and to channel the water to the roof drain system. The drainage layer can consist of a layer of aggregate or a manufactured mat or board that provides an open free draining area. Many manufactured products include egg carton shaped depressions that retain a portion of the water for eventual evapotranspiration.

Drain System and Overflow

Vegetated roof systems shall be equipped with a roof drainage system capable of collecting subsurface and surface drainage and conveying it safely to a downstream BMP or an approved

point of discharge. To facilitate subsurface drainage, interceptor drains (i.e., underdrains) are often installed at a regular spacing to prevent excessive moisture build up in the media and convey water to the roof drain. Roof outlets shall be protected from encroaching plant growth and loose gravel, and shall be constructed and located so that they are permanently accessible.

5.6.1.6. BMP Credits

Credit for On-site List Approach

A vegetated roof system may be selected to meet the On-site List Requirement (refer to *Section 3.3.1* and *Appendix C* for infeasibility criteria). The hard surface area covered by a vegetated roof system meets the requirement. To account for roof areas that cannot feasibly be covered by a vegetated roof system (e.g., access ways, roof vents), the entire roof area meets the On-site List Requirement if 80 percent of the roof is covered by a vegetated roof. If a smaller portion of the roof is covered by a vegetated roof, only the covered portion of the roof meets the On-site List Requirement and an additional BMP is required for the remaining area.

Pre-sized Approach for Flow Control

The Pre-sized Approach may be used for projects with new and replaced hard surface areas up to 10,000 square feet. Under the Pre-sized Approach (refer to *Section 4.1.2*), flow control credits towards meeting the Pre-developed Pasture and Peak Control Standards may be partially achieved by vegetated roof systems. Credits for vegetated roofs are provided in [Table 5-325.34](#), organized by performance standard and growth media depth. These credits can be applied to reduce the hard surface area requiring flow control. Since the credits for vegetated roofs are less than 100 percent, the standard is not completely achieved and additional flow control measures will be required. As an example, for a site subject to the Peak Control Standard, a vegetated roof would receive an 86 percent credit. Therefore, 86 percent of the impervious area covered by the vegetated roof can be excluded from drainage calculations. The impervious area used to size the downstream flow control facility would be calculated as 14 percent of the impervious area covered by the vegetated roof.

Table 5-325.34. Pre-sized Flow Control Credits for Vegetated Roofs.

Vegetated Roof Type	Credit (%)	
	Pre-developed Pasture Standard	Peak Control Standard
Single or Multi Multi-Course/ 4 inch minimum media depth	16% 24%	80% 86%

Impervious Area Managed = Vegetated roof Area x Credit (%) / 100.

The flow control credits outlined above are applicable only if the vegetated roof meets the minimum design requirements outlined in this section and the minimum media depth specified in [Table 5-325.34](#).

Alternatively, vegetated roofs can be sized using a continuous model as described below.

Modeling Approach for On-site Performance Standard and Flow Control

When using continuous simulation hydrologic modeling to quantify the on-site stormwater management and/or flow control performance of vegetated roof systems, the assumptions listed in Table 5-335.35 shall be applied. It is recommended that vegetated roofs be modeled as layers of aggregate with surface flows, interflow, and exfiltrating flow routed to an outlet.

Table 5-335.35. Continuous Modeling Assumptions for Vegetated Roof Systems.

Variable ^a	Assumption
Precipitation Series	Seattle 158-year, 5-minute series
Computational Time Step	5 minutes
HSPF Parameters	LSUR, SLSUR, NSUR shall be adjusted per Appendix F
Inflows to Facility	None
Precipitation and Evaporation Applied to Facility	Yes
Depth of Material (inches)	Growth media/soil depth (minimum of 4 inches). Currently, MGSFlood and the Western Washington Hydrology Model (WWHM) are not capable of representing the flow control benefits of the drainage layer or other storage beneath the growth media.
Vegetative Cover	Ground cover or shrubs. Shrubs are appropriate only when growth media is 6 inches or greater.
Length of Rooftop (ft)	The average surface flowpath length of the surface flow path to from the most upstream point to the roof drain
Slope of Rooftop (ft/ft)	The slope of the vegetated roof
Discharge from Facility	Surface flow, interflow and exfiltrated flow from vegetated roof module routed to downstream BMP or point of compliance. Note that the exfiltrated flow (flow infiltrated through the media and collected by the drainage layer) is tracked as groundwater in MGSFlood and WWHM.

^a Depending upon the hydrologic model used, some inputs may not be requested.

The media depth can be modified to achieve various degrees of flow control. Because the on-site stormwater management and flow control standards cannot typically be achieved using a vegetated roof, additional downstream flow control measures may be required.

5.6.1.7. Minimum Construction Requirements

The growth media shall be protected from over compaction during construction.

5.6.1.8. Operations and Maintenance Requirements

Vegetated roof system O&M requirements are provided in *Appendix G (BMP No. 2827)*. A Landscape Management Plan shall be developed and implemented for vegetation O&M. [Irrigation shall be provided for a minimum of five growing seasons. If an irrigation system is included, An Irrigation Design and Operation Plan shall be included in the Vegetated Roof Maintenance Landscape Management Plan.](#)

5.6.2. Permeable Pavement Surfaces

5.6.2.1. Description

Permeable pavement is a paving system which allows rainfall to percolate into the underlying subgrade. Two categories of permeable pavement BMPs are included in this manual: permeable pavement surfaces and permeable pavement facilities. A comparison of these BMPs is provided in *Section 5.4.6*.

A permeable pavement surface consists of a pervious wearing course (e.g., porous asphalt, pervious concrete) and an aggregate subbase installed over subgrade soil. The aggregate subbase is designed to manage only the water that falls upon it. Because permeable pavement surfaces are designed to function as a permeable land surface and not intended to manage runoff from other surfaces, they are not considered infiltration facilities and have less onerous siting and design requirements.

5.6.2.2. Performance Mechanisms

Flow control occurs through temporary storage of stormwater runoff in the voids of the aggregate material and subsequent infiltration of stormwater into the underlying soils. Pollutant removal mechanisms include infiltration, filtration and sedimentation, biodegradation, and soil adsorption.

5.6.2.3. Applicability

Permeable pavement surfaces can be designed to provide on-site stormwater management, flow control and/or water quality treatment. This BMP can be applied to meet or partially meet the requirements listed below.

BMP	On-site		Flow Control			Water Quality				Conveyance
	List	Standard	Forest	Pasture	Peak	Basic	Enhanced	Oil Control	Phosphorus	
Permeable Pavement Surface	✓	✓	✓ ^a	✓ ^a	✓ ^a	✓ ^{a, b}	✓ ^{a, b}			

^a Standard may be partially or completely achieved depending upon subgrade slope, infiltration rate of subgrade soil, and whether aggregate subbase is laid above or below surrounding grade.

^b Underlying soil shall meet the treatment soil requirements outlined in *Section 4.5.2* or a water quality treatment course shall be included per *Section 5.4.6.54-5.6.5*.

5.6.2.4. Site Considerations

Since permeable pavement surfaces are not designed to receive runoff from other surfaces and are designed to function as a permeable land surface, they are not considered infiltration facilities. Therefore, the restrictions related to infiltration facilities (e.g., restrictions, setbacks, separation from groundwater) are not applicable. An exception is that infiltration testing is required for permeable pavement surfaces when hydrologic modeling will be conducted to evaluate performance relative to the flow control, water quality treatment or

On-site Performance Standard. Site considerations for the applicability of permeable pavement surfaces include:

- **Site topography:** The recommended maximum surface (wearing course) slope for permeable pavement surfaces is 6 percent to allow efficient storage of water within the subbase. For vehicular traction, the maximum surface slope varies by wearing course type (refer to industry guidelines). Minimum wearing course slope shall be 1 percent unless provision is made for positive drainage in event of surface clogging.

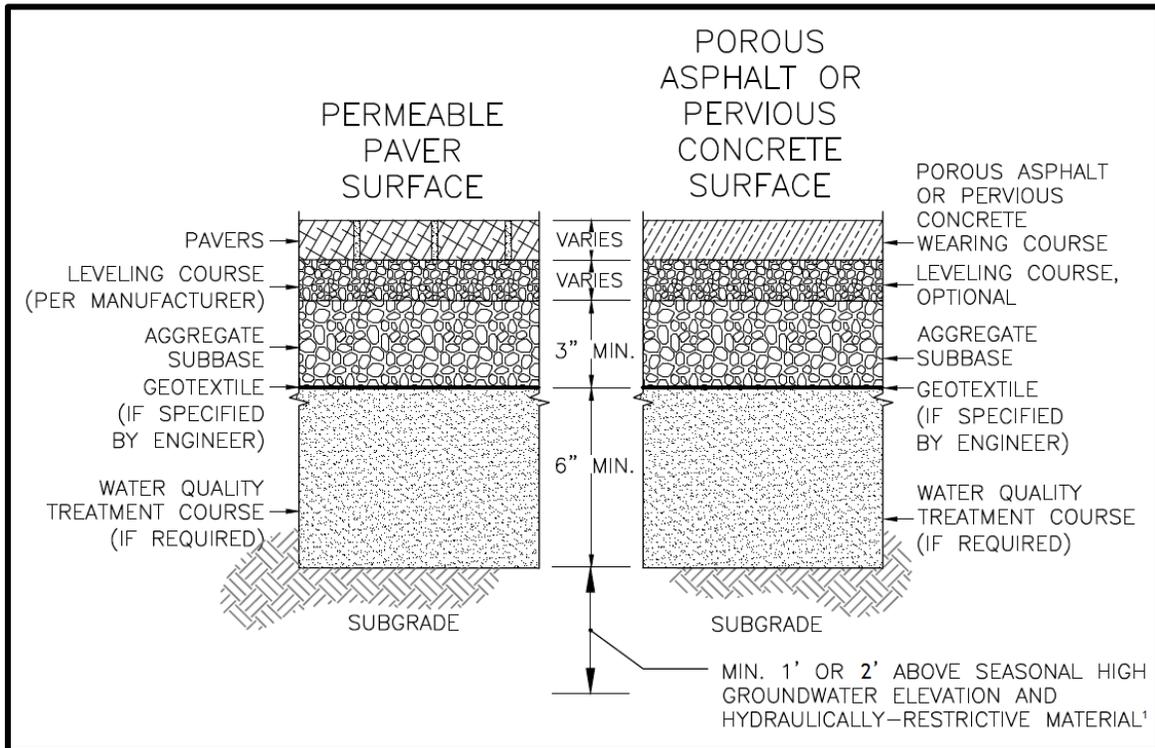
The recommended maximum subgrade slope for permeable pavement applications is 6 percent. Subgrades with slopes exceeding 5 percent require subsurface check dams to promote storage in the subgrade. At steeper subgrades slopes, design and construction become more complex and the construction cost increases.
- **Land use:** Because permeable pavement can clog with sediment, permeable pavement surfaces are not recommended where sediment and pollutant loading is unavoidable, including the following conditions:
 - Excessive sediment contamination is likely on the pavement surface (e.g., construction areas, landscaping material yards).
 - It is infeasible to prevent stormwater run-on to the permeable pavement from unstabilized erodible areas without presettling.
 - Regular, heavy application of sand is anticipated for maintaining traction during winter, or the facility is in close proximity to areas that will be sanded. A minimum seven foot clearance is required between a permeable pavement facility and the travel lane of sanded arterial roads.
 - Sites where the risk of concentrated pollutant spills are more likely (e.g., gas stations, truck stops, car washes, vehicle maintenance areas, industrial chemical storage sites).
- **Accessibility:** As for standard pavement design, ADA accessibility issues shall be addressed when designing a permeable pavement surface, particularly when using pavers.
- **Subsurface contamination:** Permeable pavement surfaces shall not be sited:
 - Within 10 feet of an underground storage tank (or connecting underground pipes) used to store petroleum products, chemicals, or liquid hazardous wastes
 - Where the site is a contaminated site or abandoned landfill

Refer to *Appendix C* for additional infeasibility criteria for the On-site List Approach.

5.6.2.5. Design Criteria

This section provides descriptions, recommendations, and requirements for the common components of permeable pavement surfaces. Some, or all, of the components may be used for a given application depending on the permeable pavement type (e.g., porous asphalt, pavers, etc.), site characteristics and restrictions, and design objectives. Typical components of a permeable pavement surface are shown in Figure [5.255-21](#). The design criteria for the following components are the same as those presented for permeable pavement facilities (refer to *Section 5.4.6*):

- Wearing course
- Leveling course
- Subgrade
- Geotextile
- Water quality treatment course



¹ See Table C.3 of Appendix C to determine. Subsurface investigation is not required for permeable pavement surfaces, but subsurface investigation must be performed to demonstrate infeasibility due to lack of vertical separation.

Figure 5.255-21. Permeable Pavement Surface.

The requirements for the following components differ from permeable pavement facilities and the design criteria for these components are provided below.

- Contributing area
- Aggregate subbase
- Subgrade
- Subsurface check dams
- Overflow

Note that, unlike permeable pavement facilities, observation ports are not required, flow entrances, presettling, and underdrains are not applicable, and the aggregate is referred to as an aggregate subbase instead of storage reservoir.

The structural design of permeable pavement to support anticipated loads is outside the scope of this manual.

The Puget Sound LID Manual provides additional guidance on permeable pavement design.

Contributing Area

Permeable pavement surfaces shall not be designed to receive significant runoff from other areas (run-on). In no case may the surface receive run-on from an impervious area greater than 10 percent of the permeable pavement area. Any run-on shall be dispersed. To prevent sediment flowing onto the pavement, run-on shall not occur from erodible/unstabilized areas or from impervious areas that receive run-on from unstabilized areas.

Aggregate Subbase

Stormwater passes through the wearing and leveling courses to an underlying aggregate subbase where it is filtered and stored prior to infiltration into the underlying soil. This aggregate also serves as the pavement's support base and shall be sufficiently thick to support the expected loads. Design of the subgrade for loading is outside of the scope of this manual. A licensed engineer is needed to determine subsoil load bearing, minimum aggregate base thickness, and aggregate compaction for loading.

Minimum requirements associated with the aggregate subbase design include the following:

- A 3-inch minimum depth of aggregate subbase is required. Note that more depth may be needed for constructability and placement of the subbase material (due to size of rock in the subbase) and for structural design support.
- The aggregate base shall have a minimum total void volume of 25 percent after compacted in place. Percent voids (porosity) shall be determined in accordance with ASTM C29/C29M. Use the jigging procedure to densify the sample (do not use the shoveling procedure).
- Aggregate material shall have 0 to 2 percent passing #200 wet sieve.
- For walkways, the following aggregate materials are recommended and meet the requirements listed above:
 - City of Seattle Mineral Aggregate Type 24
 - Modified AASHTO #57 per WSDOT [20202014](#) Section 9-03.1(4)C with 0 to 2 percent passing #200 wet sieve; percent fracture shall be in accordance with requirements per WSDOT [20202014](#) 9-03.9(2).
- For vehicular applications, the following aggregate materials are recommended and meet the requirements listed above:
 - City of Seattle Mineral Aggregate Type 13
 - Modified AASHTO #57 per WSDOT [20202014](#) Section 9-03.1(4)C with 0 to 2 percent passing #200 wet sieve; percent fracture shall be in accordance with requirements per WSDOT [20202014](#) 9-03.9(2).
 - Permeable ballast per WSDOT [20202014](#) Section 9-03.9(2)

Subgrade

The minimum measured subgrade infiltration rate for permeable pavement surfaces is 0.3 inch per hour. Note that infiltration testing is not required to use permeable pavement surfaces to meet the On-site List Approach, but may be used to demonstrate infeasibility

(i.e., infiltration rates less than 0.3 inch per hour). If permeable pavement surfaces are to be used to meet the water quality treatment requirement, underlying soil shall meet the treatment soil requirements outlined in *Section 4.5.2* or a water quality treatment course shall be included.

During construction the subgrade soil surface can become smeared and sealed by excavation equipment. The design shall require scarification or raking of the side walls and bottom of the facility excavation to a minimum depth of 4 inches after excavation to restore infiltration rate.

Subsurface Check Dams

Sloped facilities have an increased potential for lateral flows through the aggregate subbase along the top of the relatively impermeable subgrade soil. This poses a risk of subsurface erosion and reduces the storage and infiltration capacity of the pavement surface. If required depending upon slope, the subgrade ~~must~~ shall be designed to create subsurface ponding to detain subsurface flow, increase infiltration, and reduce structural problems associated with subgrade erosion on slopes (refer to Figure ~~5.185-16~~ in *Section 5.4.6*). In such cases, ponding shall be provided using periodic lateral subsurface barriers (e.g., check dams) oriented perpendicular to the subgrade slope. While the frequency of the check dams is calculated based on the required subsurface ponding depth and the subgrade slope, typical designs include barriers at least every 3 inches of grade loss.

Minimum requirements associated with lateral subsurface barriers include the following:

- Permeable pavement surfaces with subgrade slopes greater than 5 percent shall include subsurface check dams to reduce structural problems associated with subgrade erosion on slopes, unless a geotechnical evaluation of subgrade soils shows that check dams are unnecessary for erosion control.
- Subsurface check dams shall be impermeable and restrict lateral flow along the top of the subgrade soil.
- The check dams shall not extend to the elevation of the surrounding ground.

Design of Underdrained Surfaces to be Equivalent to Permeable Pavement Surfaces

Areas with underdrains, such as athletic fields, play areas, synthetic turf yards, etc., are hard surfaces per the definitions of “impervious surface” and “hard surface” in Appendix A of this Stormwater Manual. However, they can be designed to act equivalently to a permeable pavement surface if they meet all of the design criteria for permeable pavement surfaces and the following criteria are met:

- The 3-inch minimum aggregate subbase for the entire underdrained area is located below the lowest underdrain or subsurface check dams are added to ensure at least 3 inches of subsurface ponding will occur across the entire underdrained area. Note that additional aggregate depth may be needed for constructability and placement of the subbase material (due to size of rock in the subbase), for structural design support, or for stormwater storage.

- [The materials above and below the subbase aggregate are free-draining and no impermeable liners are used.](#)

5.6.2.6. BMP Sizing

Sizing for On-site List Approach

Permeable pavement surfaces shall be selected to meet the On-site List Requirement (refer to *Section 3.3.1* and *Appendix C* for infeasibility criteria). The area of permeable pavement surface meets the requirement.

Pre-sized Approach for Flow Control

The Pre-sized Approach may be used for projects with new and replaced hard surface areas up to 10,000 square feet. Under the Pre-sized Approach (refer to *Section 4.1.2*), pre-sized permeable pavement surfaces receive credits toward meeting the Pre-developed Pasture and Peak Control Standards. Credits for permeable pavement surfaces are provided in [Table 5-345.36](#), organized by performance standard and subgrade slope. These credits can be applied to reduce the hard surface area requiring flow control. If partial credit (less than 100 percent) is received, the standard is not completely achieved and additional measures will be required. As an example, for a site subject to the Peak Control Standard, a permeable pavement surface on subgrade with a slope exceeding 2 percent would receive a 71 percent credit. Therefore, 71 percent of the permeable pavement surface can be excluded from drainage calculations. The impervious area (the area used to size the downstream flow control facility) would be calculated as 29 percent of the permeable pavement surface area.

Table 5-345.36. Pre-Sized Flow Control Credits for Permeable Pavement Surfaces with and without Check Dams.

	Subgrade Slope	Credit (%)		
		Pre-developed Pasture Standard	Peak Control Standard	Water Quality Treatment Standard ^a
Without Check Dams	Up to 2%	25%100%	7%96%^b	88%100%
	>2%	0%99%	0%71%	6%100%
With Check Dams	Up to 2%	100%	63%	100%
	>2%	99%	68%	100%

Impervious Area Managed = Permeable Pavement Surface Area x Credit (%) / 100.

^a Pre-sized Approach may be used to meet basic water quality treatment. Enhanced water quality treatment may be achieved if soil suitability criteria are met (refer to *Section 4.5.2*).

^b [Permeable pavement surface meets the peak flow standard \(i.e., achieves a 100% credit\) if the aggregate subbase depth is increased to 3.5 inches.](#)

To use these flow control credits to meet flow control standards, the BMP shall meet the general requirements for permeable pavement surfaces outlined in this section plus the following specific requirements:

- The aggregate subbase shall be at least 3 inches in depth.
- Subgrade slope shall be as specified in the table.

- To meet water quality treatment, the underlying soil shall meet the treatment soil requirements outlined in *Section 4.5.2* or a water quality treatment course shall be used.
- No underdrain or [low-permeability liner](#) or impermeable liner may be used.

For subgrade slopes exceeding 2 percent, flow control performance is lower. For improved performance, the surface may be designed as a permeable pavement facility with subsurface ponding and/or increased aggregate subbase depth. In this case, the surface shall be evaluated as a permeable pavement facility (refer to *Section 5.4.6*).

Alternatively, the performance of permeable pavement surfaces can be evaluated using a continuous simulation hydrologic model as described below.

Modeling Approach for On-site Performance Standard, Flow Control, and Water Quality Treatment

The approved continuous simulation hydrologic modeling methods for permeable pavement surfaces vary as shown in Table [5-355.37](#). ~~Depending upon the slope of the underlying subgrade and whether or not the aggregate subbase is below the surrounding grade, surfaces may be modeled explicitly (refer to Table 5.36) or with a land cover approximation (refer to Table 5.37).~~

For flat and low slope permeable pavement surface installations (0 to 2 percent) with subgrade below the surrounding grade, the aggregate subbase depth may be iteratively sized until the performance standard(s) are met. For other scenarios, partial credit towards meeting standards can be achieved and runoff from the pavement area can be routed to a downstream BMP.

Table [5-355.37](#). Modeling Methods for Permeable Pavement Surfaces.

Subbase	Wearing Course	Subgrade Slope	Modeling Representation	Performance
Subbase below (or partially below) the surrounding grade without internal dams within the base materials	Any	0–2%	Model subbase storage and infiltration into underlying soil explicitly. The aggregate subbase depth should be set at the depth of the aggregate below the surrounding grade. Refer to Table 5.38-5.36 .	The aggregate subbase depth may be sized to meet performance standards.
			Represent surface with land cover approximation. Refer to Table 5.37.	Partial credit towards performance standard may be achieved.
		>2%	Model subbase storage and infiltration into underlying soil explicitly with nominal ponding depth of 0.5-inch infiltration rate and a total effective depth of 1 inch. The dimensions of the simulated permeable pavement shall be equal to the below grade base materials. If required for simulation, an overflow riser shall have a height of 0.5 inch and a diameter of 1,000 inches (to ensure there is minimal head on the riser). Refer to Table 5.38-5.36 .	Partial credit towards performance standard may be achieved. To fully meet performance standards on sloped subgrade, use permeable pavement facility (refer to <i>Section 5.4.6</i>).

			Represent surface with land cover approximation. Refer to Table 5.37.	
Subbase below (or partially below) the surrounding grade with internal check dams within the base material Subbase above surrounding grade	Any Perous Asphalt or Pervious Concrete	Any	Model subbase storage and infiltration into underlying soil explicitly. Model each cell of permeable pavement that is separated by internal dams separately as a gravel-filled trench. The dimensions of each simulated cell shall be equal to the below grade base materials with a storage depth equal to the average depth of water behind the downstream check dam. If required for simulation, an overflow riser shall have a height equal to the storage depth and a diameter of 1,000 inches (to ensure there is minimal head on the riser). Each cell should have an appropriate tributary drainage area equal to the permeable pavement area above. Refer to Table 5.38. Represent surface with land cover approximation. Refer to Table 5.37.	Partial credit towards performance standard may be achieved.
	Grid System	Any	Represent surface with land cover approximation. Refer to Table 5.37.	Partial credit towards performance standard may be achieved.
	Permeable Paver	Any	Represent surface with land cover approximation. Refer to Table 5.37.	Partial credit towards performance standard may be achieved.

Table 5-365.38. Continuous Modeling Assumptions for Permeable Pavement Surface (Explicit Representation).

Variable	Assumption
Precipitation Series	Seattle 158-year, 5-minute series
Computational Time Step	5 minutes
HSPF Parameters	LSUR, SLSUR, NSUR shall be adjusted per Appendix F
Permeable Pavement Surface	Option 1: WWHM and MGSFlood have an element The selected model may have a routine specifically developed for permeable pavement that simulates precipitation falling on the pavement, infiltration through the pavement section, storage in the aggregate beneath the pavement, and infiltration into the underlying soil. Option 2: If a permeable pavement element routine is not available, represent the permeable pavement area as an impervious basin with runoff routed to a gravel-filled trench (of the same size as the permeable pavement area) with infiltration to underlying soil. The gravel-filled trench represents the pavement's underlying aggregate layer. Refer to See Table 5-255.27 "Permeable Pavement Facility and Contributing Area" row for guidance on modeling run-on from other contributing drainage areas. Additional areas draining to permeable pavement surfaces are limited to 10% of the permeable pavement area.
Precipitation Applied to Surface	If using Option 1, precipitation is applied to the pavement area. If using Option 2, do not apply precipitation to the trench bed because precipitation is already applied to basin before routing to trench.
Evaporation Applied to Surface	If using Option 1, evaporation is applied to the pavement area.

	If using Option 2, evaporation is applied to the impervious basin before routing to the trench.
Aggregate Subbase Depth	When the subgrade slope is 0 to 2%, use the depth of the aggregate subbase below surrounding grade. When the subgrade slope exceeds 2%, use a total effective nominal depth of 1 inch . 0.5 inch .
Aggregate Subbase Porosity	Assume maximum 25% unless test result is provided showing higher porosity (up to 35%) for aggregate compacted and in place.
Subgrade Soil Design Infiltration Rate	Design infiltration rate (<i>Section 4.5.2, Appendix D</i>)
Infiltration Across Wetted Surface Area	No (infiltration on bottom area only)
Outlet Structure	Unless the selected model represents surface sheet flow when pavement section is saturated, the overflow can be simulated as overtopping an overflow riser. Overflow riser elevation is set at average maximum subsurface ponding depth. Flow may be modeled as weir flow over riser edge. Freeboard modeled within the storage reservoir shall be sufficient to allow the water surface elevation to rise above the weir or overflow pipe elevation to provide head for discharge.

5.6.2.7. Minimum Construction Requirements

The construction specifications and criteria for permeable pavement surfaces are the same as those presented for permeable pavement facilities (refer to *Section 5.4.6.7*).

5.6.2.8. Operations and Maintenance Requirements

Permeable pavement O&M requirements are the same as those presented for permeable pavement facilities in *Appendix G (BMP No. 2625)*.

~~Table 5.37. Continuous Modeling Assumptions for Permeable Pavement Surface (Land Cover Approximation).~~

Variable	Assumption
Precipitation Series	Seattle 158-year, 5-minute series
Computational Time Step	5 minutes
Basin	Model surface area as land cover approximation: Perous Asphalt or Pervious Concrete: lawn on underlying soil type (till or outwash) Grid System: lawn on underlying soil type (till or outwash) Permeable Paver: 50% lawn on underlying soil type (till or outwash) and 50% impervious

5.7. Detention BMPs

Detention facilities provide for the temporary storage of stormwater runoff. Stormwater is then released through a control structure at an attenuated rate to meet flow control performance standards. The BMPs in this section include:

- Detention ponds
- Detention pipes
- Detention vaults/[chambers](#)
- Detention cisterns
- Other detention options

5.7.1. Detention Ponds

5.7.1.1. Description

Detention ponds are basins that temporarily store runoff and control release rates. Detention ponds may be designed to drain completely between storm events, or designed as a combination water quality treatment and flow control facility. The combination of water quality treatment and flow control functions is summarized in *Section 5.8.9*.

5.7.1.2. Performance Mechanisms

Detention ponds provide peak flow attenuation by slowly releasing low flows through an outlet control structure.

5.7.1.3. Applicability

Detention ponds can be applied to meet or partially meet the requirements listed below.

BMP	On-site		Flow Control			Water Quality			Conveyance	
	List	Standard	Forest	Pasture	Peak	Basic	Enhanced	Oil Control		Phosphorus
Detention Pond		✓ ^a	✓	✓	✓					✓

^a Standard may be partially achieved for smaller contributing areas.

5.7.1.4. Site Considerations

Detention ponds require a large amount of area. In addition to the area required for the pond, maintenance access shall be provided, which can affect the footprint of the pond and in part determine whether they are feasible for a particular site. In a highly developed area like the City of Seattle, large open ponds are somewhat uncommon.

Setback requirements for detention ponds are intended to protect neighboring properties from flooding and protect receiving waters and critical areas from water quality impacts. Refer to Volume V of the SWMMWW for detention pond setback requirements. The following additional setback requirements also apply to detention ponds installed within the City limits:

- A minimum 5-foot setback is required from the toe of the exterior slope to the property line.
- A minimum 5-foot setback is required from the emergency overflow water surface to the property line.
- Geotechnical analysis is required for facilities within 20 feet of any structure or property line or within 50 feet up-slope of a structure when the slope between the top of the pond and the structure is greater than 15 percent.
- [Detention ponds are not allowed within steep slopes, known landslide areas, and their 15-foot buffers as defined by the regulations for ECAs \(SMC, Section 25.09.012\). For](#)

[detention ponds within a setback equal to the height of the slope to a maximum of 50 feet from the top of steep slope and known landslide area, a slope stability assessment shall be completed by a licensed geotechnical engineer or engineering geologist considering the effects on slope stability due to a leaking or damaged detention BMP.](#)

5.7.1.5. Design Criteria

The design criteria in this section are for detention ponds. However, many of the criteria also apply to infiltration basins (*Section 5.4.8*), as well as wet ponds and combined detention/wet pools (*Section 5.8.9*).

The following provides a description and requirements for the components of detention ponds. Some or all of the components may be used for a given application depending on the site characteristics and restrictions, pollutant loading, and design objectives. Design criteria are provided in this section or in Volume [V#](#) of the SWMMWW for the following elements:

Design Element	SWMMWW Design Criteria	Seattle-specific Design Criteria
Detention pond geometry	✓	✓
Access to cells for maintenance	✓	✓
Fencing	✓	✓
Embankments and failure analysis	✓	✓
Dam safety	✓	✓
Vegetation and landscaping	✓	✓
Design and construction of access roads	✓	
Primary overflow	✓	
Emergency overflow spillway	✓	

Refer to Detention Ponds in Volume [V#](#) of the SWMMWW for specific detention pond design criteria. The City's design criteria for specific design elements are summarized below.

Detention Pond Geometry

Refer to Detention Ponds in Volume [V#](#) of the SWMMWW for detention pond design considerations. The following additional requirements shall be followed for detention ponds installed in Seattle:

- Vertical retaining walls and fencing shall be used for areas of the pond designed for sediment removal by Vactor.
- Any pond cell allowing or requiring entry for maintenance, including vegetation maintenance, shall have a section of interior side slopes of 4H:1V for safe egress.

Access to Cells for Maintenance

Refer to Detention Ponds in Volume [V#](#) of the SWMMWW for access design considerations. The following additional requirement shall be followed for detention ponds installed in Seattle:

- An access plan is required for sediment removal from all cells. ~~Early conversation with SPU is encouraged and Director's approval is required.~~

Fencing

Refer to Detention Ponds in Volume [V#](#) of the SWMMWW for fencing considerations. Fencing requirements will depend on the specific site and possibly on land use requirements. ~~Early conversation with SPU and SDCI about Safety and Public Access is encouraged and Director's approval is required.~~ Fencing and gates will be evaluated as part of planning for access for maintenance in addition to public access or exclusion planning.

Embankments and Failure Analysis

Refer to Detention Ponds in Volume [V#](#) of the SWMMWW for embankment design requirements. The following additional requirements shall be followed for detention ponds installed in Seattle:

- If an embankment is proposed to impound water, early conversations with SPU and SDCI are encouraged ~~and Director's approval is required.~~ Impoundment of a water volume exceeding 10 acre-feet is considered a dam and is regulated by Ecology, and SPU shall be notified. Materials provided to Ecology shall be submitted to SPU upon request.
- A failure analysis describing impacts of embankment failure shall be provided.

Dam Safety

Refer to Detention Ponds in Volume [V#](#) of the SWMMWW for dam safety requirements. The following additional requirement shall be followed for detention ponds installed in Seattle:

- Detention facilities that can impound 10 acre-feet or more with the water level at the embankment crest shall meet the state's dam safety requirements, even if water storage is intermittent and infrequent (WAC 173-175-020(1)).

Ecology contact information and electronic versions of the guidance documents in PDF format are available on the Ecology website at (<https://ecology.wa.gov/Water-Shorelines/Water-supply/Dams>~~www.ecy.wa.gov/programs/wr/dams/dss.html~~).

Vegetation and Landscaping

Refer to Detention Ponds in Volume [V#](#) of the SWMMWW for vegetation and landscaping requirements. The following additional requirements shall be followed for detention ponds installed in Seattle:

- A plan for landscape establishment is required. Consider installation of a hose bib and water service for watering.
- All planted slopes shall be accessible for vegetation maintenance.
- Use of ornamental plantings in the vicinity of a detention pond are discouraged and may not be allowed to due concerns regarding seed transport.

5.7.1.6. BMP Sizing

Refer to Detention Ponds in Volume [VIII](#) of the SWMMWW for BMP Sizing considerations.

5.7.1.7. Minimum Construction Requirements

The following construction requirements should be considered during construction of a detention pond:

- Detention ponds may be used for sediment control during site construction, but sediment shall be removed upon completion.
- Exposed earth on the pond bottom and interior side slopes shall be vegetated or seeded with an appropriate seed mixture.

5.7.1.8. Operations and Maintenance Requirements

Detention pond O&M requirements are provided in *Appendix G (BMP No. 1)*.

5.7.2. Detention Pipes

5.7.2.1. Description

Detention pipes are underground storage facilities for stormwater. Detention pipes can be combined with rainwater harvesting (refer to *Section 5.5.1*).

5.7.2.2. Performance Mechanisms

Detention pipes provide peak flow attenuation by slowly releasing low flows through an orifice.

5.7.2.3. Applicability

Detention pipes can be applied to meet or partially meet the requirements listed below.

BMP	On-site		Flow Control			Water Quality				Conveyance
	List	Standard	Forest	Pasture	Peak	Basic	Enhanced	Oil Control	Phosphorus	
Detention Pipe		✓ ^a	✓ ^b	✓ ^b	✓ ^b					✓

^a Standard may be partially achieved for smaller contributing areas.

^b Standard may be partially or completely achieved depending upon contributing area and minimum orifice size.

5.7.2.4. Site Considerations

The primary site considerations for detention pipes include conflicts with existing underground utilities, [building foundation and steep slopes and landslide prone areas](#). While there are no specific setback requirements for detention pipes [from buildings](#), detention pipe location and pipe material approval is required and may require geotechnical analysis.

[Detention pipes are not allowed within steep slopes, known landslide areas, and their 15-foot buffers as defined by the regulations for ECAs \(SMC, Section 25.09.012\). For detention pipes within a setback equal to the height of the slope to a maximum of 50 feet from the top of steep slope and known landslide area, a slope stability assessment shall be completed by a licensed geotechnical engineer or engineering geologist considering the effects on slope stability due to a leaking or damaged detention BMP. More stringent watertightness/exfiltration field testing of detention pipes within a 50-foot setback from the top of the steep slope and known landslide area may be required.](#)

[Additionally, pipe systems that do not provide a watertight seal \(e.g., CMP pipe\) are not allowed within 200 feet from the top of an ECA steep slope, landslide prone area, or known landslide area or under buildings or other structures.](#)

Grading and drainage collection on the site are important site considerations that can impact flow control effectiveness. Special care may be necessary, particularly with roadway projects, to match BMP sizing to actual runoff collected and conveyed to the facility.

5.7.2.5. Design Criteria

The following provides a description and requirements for the components of detention pipes. [Components of a typical detention pipe are shown in Figure 5.26.](#) Some or all of the components may be used for a given application depending on the site characteristics and restrictions and design objectives. Design criteria are provided in this section for the following elements:

- Materials
- Pipe bedding
- Structural stability
- Access

Detention Pipe Materials and Bedding

The material, diameter, and specification of the detention pipe shall be indicated on the [Side Sewer Permit application, drainage plans](#) required before installing the drainage facility. Typical design requirements for detention pipes are shown in City of Seattle Standard Plan No. 270 through 272 and provided in the City of Seattle Side Sewer Directors' Rule, which can be found on SDCI's website (www.seattle.gov/sdci~~www.seattle.gov/dpd~~). [Proposals for alternate materials, or alternate bulkhead designs shall be submitted with loading calculations.](#)

Refer to [City of Seattle Standard Plan No. 272 and Appendix E](#) for flow control structure details.

~~The City has developed the following requirements for pipe bedding:~~

All detention pipe bedding installed on public property shall be per the City of Seattle Standard Specifications for Road, Bridge and Municipal Construction.

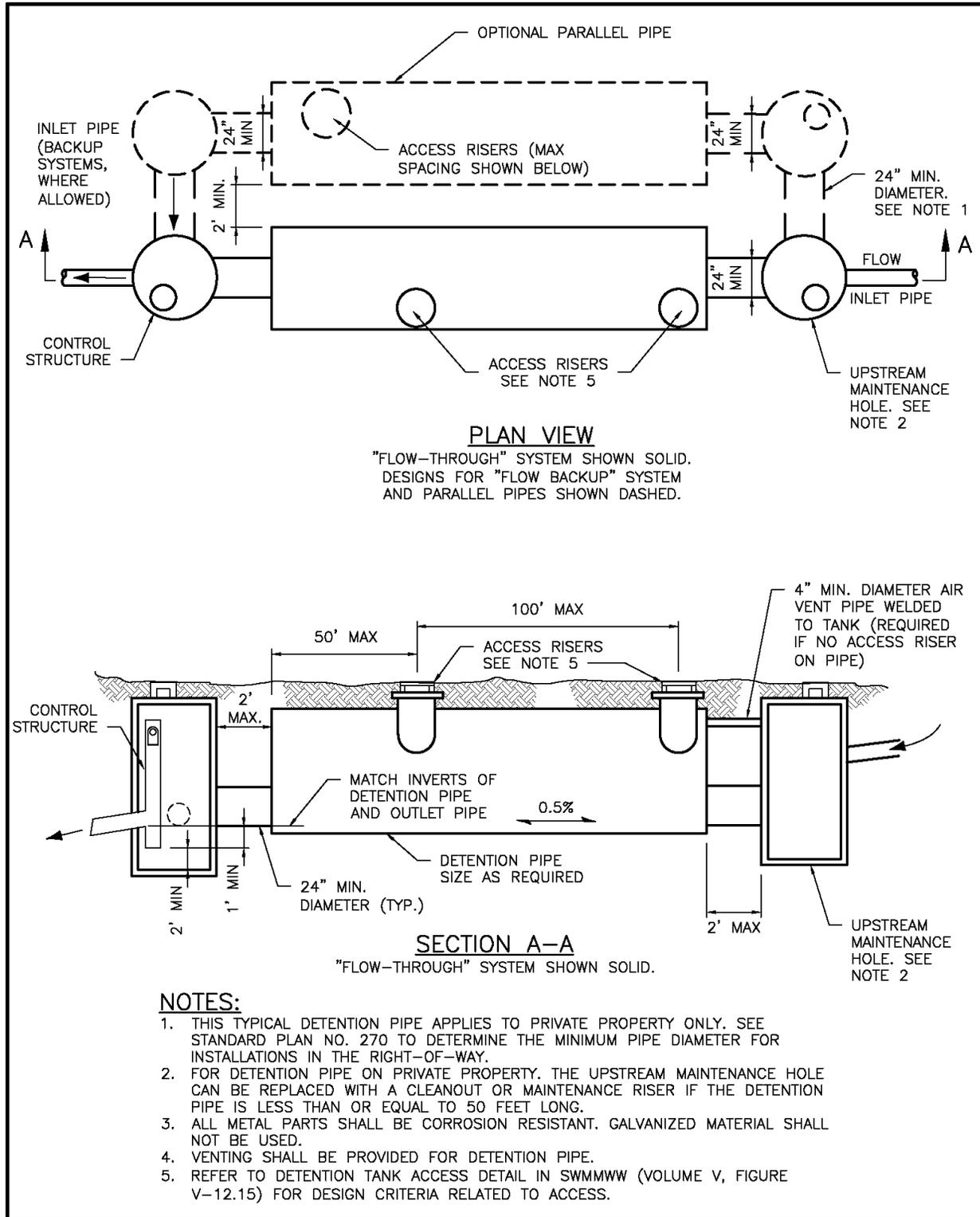


Figure 5.26. Typical Detention Pipe.

Structural Stability

The following structural requirements apply to detention pipes:

- Detention pipes shall meet structural requirements for overburden support, buoyancy, and traffic loading as appropriate.
- [Detention pipes and associated structures shall be watertight and the finished detention pipe system shall be field tested as described in Section 5.7.2.7.](#)
- When a detention pipe is located under a building, provide a load analysis [and show the detention pipe on the structural plans for the building for structural review in addition to the drainage plans](#). The pipe shall not be located under the foundation or have pressure exerted on it by the foundation. In moderately pervious soils where seasonal groundwater may induce flotation, buoyancy tendencies shall be balanced either by ballasting with backfill or concrete backfill, providing concrete anchors, or increasing the total weight.
- [When corrugated metal pipe is selected, end plates shall be designed for structural stability at maximum hydrostatic loading. Flat end plates generally require thicker gage material than the pipe and/or require reinforcing ribs. Corrugated metal pipe is not allowed for use in the right-of-way, critical areas, geologic hazard areas, or underneath buildings.](#)
- [When an alternate to the City of Seattle Standard Plans is proposed \(including materials, end plates or combination T-top maintenance hole and end plate, or end plate with a smaller pipe connecting to a standard maintenance hole\), the alternate shall be designed for structural stability at maximum hydrostatic loading and to be watertight. Alternates to City of Seattle Standard Plan No. 270 are not allowed for use in the right-of-way.](#)
- Detention pipes shall be placed on a stable, well consolidated foundation, have suitable bedding, and shall follow City of Seattle Standard Specifications for Road, Bridge, and Municipal Construction.
- Detention pipes shall not be placed in fill slopes, unless a geotechnical analysis is provided for stability and constructability.

Access

[The following access requirements apply to detention pipes in the right-of-way:](#)

- ~~Within the right-of-way~~ [A maintenance hole structure is required at all access points shall be provided](#) as shown on City of Seattle Standard Plan No. 270.
- Truck access is required at each maintenance hole location.

[The following access requirements apply to detention pipes on private property:](#)

- ~~A maintenance structure at all access points per Detention pipes on a parcel have an option to follow~~ City of Seattle Standard Plan No. 270 ~~or 271 shall be used except as follows: or, when using corrugated metal pipe, City of Seattle Standard Plan No. 271 may be used.~~

- A 36-inch-diameter vertical pipe with ladder and a 24-inch-diameter locking manhole frame and cover per the Detention Tank Access Detail in the SWMMWW (Volume V, Figure V-12.15) may be used along pipe spans.
- Detention pipes less than 50 feet long may substitute a cleanout for the maintenance hole at the upstream end.
- Alternate configurations may be approved only when a plan for cleaning and maintenance access for any equipment and personnel required and for visual inspection by City of Seattle inspection personnel has been prepared and submitted for review.

In addition, the following access requirements apply to both detention pipes in the right-of-way and on private property:

- All detention pipe openings and flow control structures shall be readily accessible for maintenance personnel, maintenance vehicles, and City of Seattle inspection personnel.
- Multiple detention pipes that are connected to a single flow control structure shall be connected between structures with pipe of a minimum 24-inch diameter. Larger diameter connecting pipe is preferred.
- Connector pipes for manifolded detention pipes or for the connection between a maintenance hole structures shall be a minimum of 24-inch diameter.
- All detention pipes more than 50 feet long and all detention pipes in the right-of-way shall provide an upstream-maintenance hole for access at both ends of the pipe. ~~Detention pipes less than 50 feet long on private property may substitute a cleanout for the maintenance hole at the upstream end.~~

5.7.2.6. BMP Sizing

Pre-sized Approach for Flow Control

The Pre-sized Approach may be used for projects with new and replaced hard surface areas up to 10,000 square feet. Under the Pre-sized Approach (refer to *Section 4.1.2*), pre-sized detention pipes may be used to achieve Pre-developed Pasture and Peak Control Standards. Sizing factors for detention pipe receiving runoff from a hard surface are provided in Table ~~5-385.39~~ 5.385.39. Sizing factors are organized by pipe diameter, contributing area, and flow control standard. To use these sizing factors to meet flow control standards, the facility shall meet the general requirements for detention pipes outlined in this section, plus the following specific requirements:

- Sizing equations are applicable for contributing areas between 2,000 and 10,000 square feet.
- Pipe length shall be sized using the applicable sizing equation.
- The low flow orifice diameter shall be 0.5 inch.
- Detention pipe shall be the designated diameter (24 or 36 inches). For intermediate diameters (between 24 and 36 inches), the pipe length may be linearly interpolated.

- The entire volume of the pipe shall be available for storage (overflow riser shall be set equal to the crown of the pipe).

The pipe length is calculated as a function of the hard surface area routed to it. As an example, for the Pre-developed Pasture Standard, the pipe length for a 24-inch-diameter pipe receiving runoff from between 2,000 to 10,000 square feet of hard surface would be calculated as:

$$0.0571 \times \text{contributing hard surface area (square feet)} + 49.5 \text{ feet}$$

All area values shall be in square feet and length values shall be in feet. Alternatively, detention pipes for small sites can be sized using a continuous model as described in the subsequent section.

Table 5-395.39. Pre-sized Sizing Equations for Detention Pipe.

Detention Pipe Diameter ^a	Contributing Area	Sizing Equation for Pipe Length			
		Pre-developed Pasture Standard	Pre-Developed Pasture Standard Orifice Diameter for Construction	Peak Control Standard	Peak Control Standard Orifice Diameter for Construction
24 inches	2,000 – 495,000 sf	NA	NA	[0.0475 x A] + 270.00014 x [A ^{1.69}]	0.5
	5,001 – 6,000 sf	[0.0571 x A] + 49.5	0.5		0.625
	6,001 – 8,500 sf				
	8,501 – 10,000 sf				0.75
36 inches	2,000 – 495,000 sf	NA	NA	[0.0236 x A] + 6.750.000196 x [A ^{1.55}]	0.5
	5,001 – 7,000 sf	[0.0733 x A] - 220.95	0.5		
	7,001 – 10,000 sf	[0.0257 x A] + 21.8			0.625

A – contributing hard surface area; ft – feet; sf – square feet.

For Peak Control Standard: Pipe Length (ft) = Factor x [A (sf) ^ Integer].

Hard Surface Area Managed (sf) = [Pipe Length (ft) ÷ Factor] ^ (1 ÷ Integer).

For Pre-developed Pasture Standard: Pipe Length (ft) = [Factor x A (sf)] + Integer.

Hard Surface Area Managed (sf) = [Pipe Length (ft) - Integer] ÷ Factor.

^a Detention pipe diameter refers to live storage depth (i.e., does not include freeboard or sediment storage requirements).

Modeling Approach for On-site Performance Standard and Flow Control

When using the continuous runoff model for pipe sizing, the assumptions listed in Table 5-395.40 shall be applied. It is recommended that pipes be modeled as horizontal cylinders with an outlet structure that includes a low flow orifice. The contributing area, pipe diameter, pipe length and orifice configuration should be iteratively sized until the Minimum Requirements for Flow Control are met (refer to *Volume 1, Section 5.3*).

For smaller contributing areas, the minimum diameter for the low flow orifice (0.5 inch) will be too large to meet standard release rates, even with minimal head. Refer to *Section 4.1.3.2* for contributing area thresholds and an alternative modeling approach for smaller contributing areas. The designer is advised to evaluate other detention BMPs, including

vaults, since the required pipe slope, minimum orifice size, and contributing area may make the detention pipe BMP impractical. Evaluation of a detention pipe diameter less than 18 inches is not advised. Refer to *Section 4.1.3.2* for additional flow control modeling guidance.

Table 5-395.40. Continuous Modeling Assumptions for Detention Pipe.

Variable	Assumption
Precipitation Series	Seattle 158-year, 5-minute series
Computational Time Step	5 minutes
HSPF Parameters	LSUR, SLSUR, NSUR shall be adjusted per Appendix E
Inflows to Facility	Surface flow and interflow from total drainage area (including impervious and pervious contributing areas) be connected to the facility.
Precipitation and Evaporation Applied to Facility	No
Infiltration	No
Total Depth	The total depth is the pipe diameter (i.e., live storage depth)-
Outlet Structure	Low flow orifice, riser height and diameter
Low Flow Orifice	Minimum diameter of 0.5 inch, set 1 foot below the pipe invert-

5.7.2.7. Minimum Construction Requirements

Construction requirements are as follows:

- Place at least 4 inches of bedding under the pipe. The bedding shall fill the trench to a point half-way up the sides of the pipe (to the “spring line”).
- Provide at least 2 feet of cover over a detention pipe. For single-family and duplex residences, 18 inches of cover is allowable. Before a side sewer permit is signed off as completed, a City inspector shall approve the installed system, including the detention pipe and the flow control structure, after it is bedded but before it is covered with soil.
- The standard slope for detention pipes is 0.5 percent. The inlet pipe to the detention pipe and the outlet pipe from the flow control structure shall have at least a 2 percent slope, the same as required for other service drain pipes.
- [Detention pipe systems shall be field tested for exfiltration \(i.e., watertightness\) as follows:](#)
 - [Plug the inlets and outlet and fill the system to one-half the distance from the outlet invert to the top of the riser on the outlet structure.](#)
 - [The maximum allowable leakage shall not exceed one percent of the volume over a 24-hour period](#)
- Field changes to the flow control device assembly, including elevation changes, require submittal to the Engineer of Record for confirmation that the device still meets the design requirements.

5.7.2.8. Operations and Maintenance Requirements

Detention pipe O&M requirements are provided in *Appendix G (BMP No. 3)*.

[Alternate configuration of detention pipes shall document a plan for cleaning and maintenance access for any equipment and personnel required.](#)

5.7.3. Detention Vaults/Chambers

5.7.3.1. Description

Detention vaults/chambers are underground storage facilities for stormwater. Detention vaults/chambers can be combined with rainwater harvesting (refer to *Section 5.5.1*). Stackable, modular detention chambers can also be used.

5.7.3.2. Performance Mechanisms

Detention vaults/chambers provide peak flow attenuation by slowly releasing low flows through an orifice.

5.7.3.3. Applicability

Detention vaults/chambers can be applied to meet or partially meet the requirements listed below.

BMP	On-site		Flow Control			Water Quality			Conveyance	
	List	Standard	Forest	Pasture	Peak	Basic	Enhanced	Oil Control		Phosphorus
Detention Vault/ <u>Chamber</u>		✓ ^a	✓ ^b	✓ ^{a, b}	✓ ^b					✓

^a Standard may be partially achieved for smaller contributing areas.

^b Standard may be partially or completely achieved depending upon contributing area and minimum orifice size.

5.7.3.4. Site Considerations

Detention vaults/chambers are typically shallower than detention pipes, since they can utilize a greater area. Primary site considerations for a detention vault/chambers include providing sufficient access points for maintenance, incorporating the access requirements into a site, conflicts with existing underground utilities, and site setback requirements. While there are no specific setback requirements for detention vaults/chambers from buildings and utilities, detention vault/chamber location and vault/chamber material approval is required, and may also require geotechnical analysis.

Detention vaults/chambers are not allowed within steep slopes, known landslide areas, and their 15-foot buffers as defined by the regulations for ECAs (SMC, Section 25.09.012).

An impermeable liner is required for detention chambers with open bottoms or sides when the facility is within the horizontal setbacks and site constraint areas that are required for infiltrating BMPs per Step 2 of Section 3.2. However, detention facilities that include chambers with open bottoms or sides (e.g., modular, stackable chambers, open-bottom arch pipe, etc.) are not allowed within 200 feet from the top of an ECA steep slope, landslide prone area, or known landslide area or under buildings or other structures even if an impermeable liner is provided.

For detention vaults/chambers within a setback equal to the height of the slope to a maximum of 50 feet from the top of steep slope and known landslide area, a slope stability assessment shall be completed by a licensed geotechnical engineer or engineering geologist considering the effects on slope stability due to a leaking or damaged detention BMP. More stringent exfiltration (i.e., watertightness) testing of detention vaults/chambers within a 50-foot setback from the top of the steep slope and known landslide area may be required.

Grading and drainage collection on site are important site considerations that can impact flow control effectiveness. Special care is necessary, particularly with roadway projects, to match BMP sizing to actual runoff collected and conveyed to the facility.

5.7.3.5. Design Criteria

The following provides a description and requirements for the components of standard detention vaults (Figure 5.275-22) and stackable, modular detention chambers. Flow control structure details are outlined in *Appendix E*. Some or all of the components may be used for a given application depending on the site characteristics and restrictions, pollutant loading, and design objectives.

Standard Detention Vaults

Design criteria are provided in this section for the following elements of a detention vault:

- Materials
- Sediment storage
- Structural stability
- Access

Design criteria are summarized below for each of these design elements.

Materials

Minimum 3,000 psi structural reinforced concrete shall be used for detention vaults. All construction joints shall be provided with water stops.

Sediment/Oil Storage

Elevate the invert elevation of the outlet above the bottom of the vault to provide an average of 6 inches of sediment storage over the entire bottom. Also, elevate the outlet a minimum of 2 feet above the orifice to retain oil within the vault. The sediment storage requirement can also be addressed by deepening the forebay at the inlet with a dead storage volume equal to 10 percent of the live volume or an equivalent volume to the 6-inch-deep average sediment storage, whichever is greater.

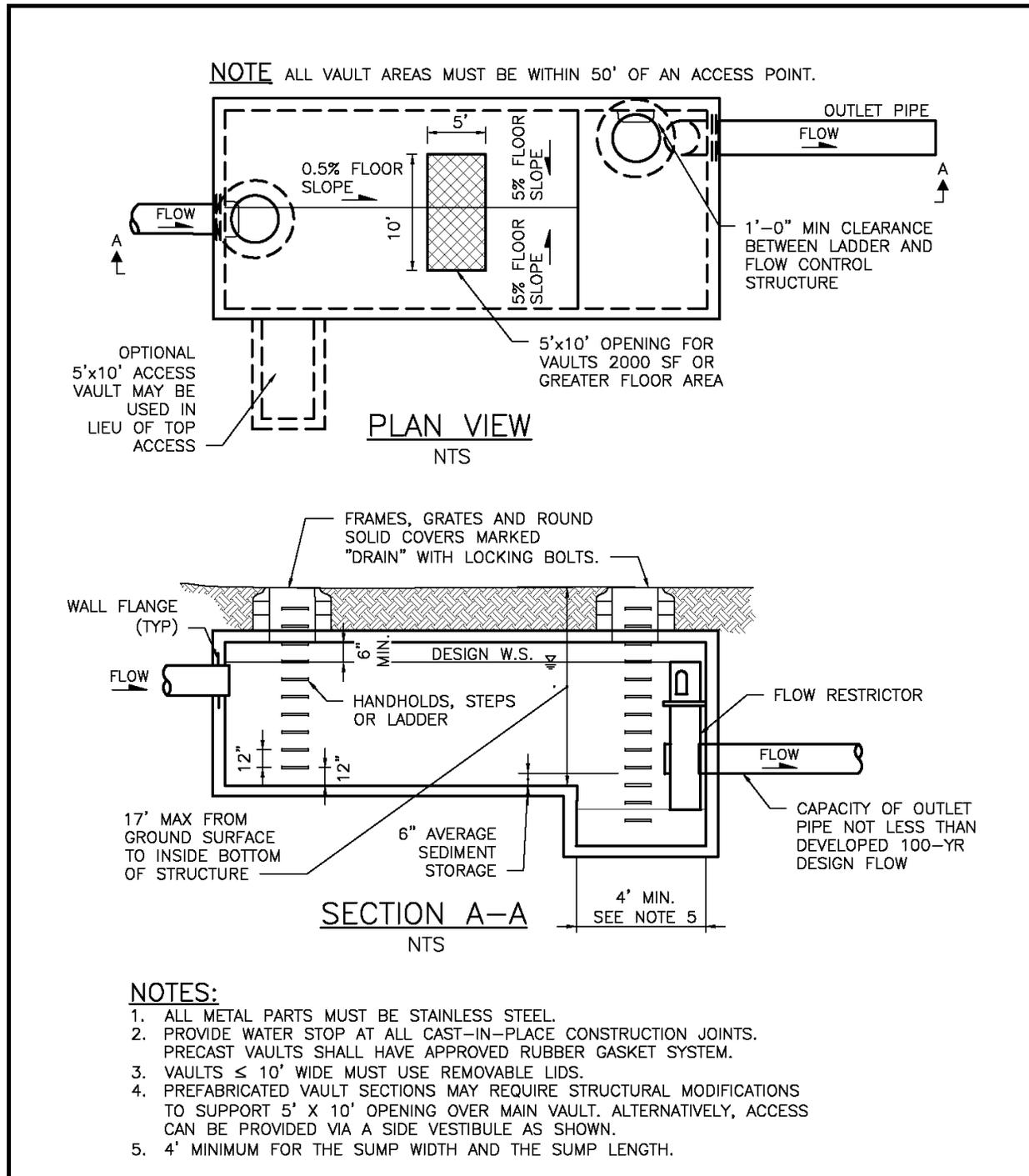


Figure 5.275-22. Typical Detention Vault.

Structural Stability

The following structural requirements apply to detention vaults:

- Detention vaults shall meet structural requirements for overburden support, buoyancy, and traffic loading as appropriate. [Provide a load analysis and submit structural plans for review.](#)
- ~~Design of d~~ Detention vaults shall be watertight [and shall be field tested as described in Section 5.7.3.7.](#)
- When detention vaults are incorporated into or underneath a building, they shall meet all structural requirements for the building or demonstrate no structural interaction, including no loading on the vault from the building foundation.
- Detention vaults shall be placed on a stable, well-consolidated foundation and bedding material.
- Detention vaults shall not be placed in fill slopes, unless a geotechnical analysis for stability and constructability is provided.

Detention pipe is preferred over detention vaults for the public drainage system. Early conversations with SPU are encouraged if considering installation of a detention vault in the right-of-way.

Access

The following access requirements apply to detention vaults:

- Access shall be provided for visual inspection of the flow control structure and for cleaning the entire floor area of the detention vault. A plan for access, including maintenance equipment access is required.
- Access may be provided by use of removable panels, hatches, or ring and cover. For any detention vault requiring entry for maintenance, ladders shall be installed so that the egress path does not exceed 25 feet.
- All access shall be readily accessible by maintenance vehicles, including structures located under buildings.
- The maximum depth from finished grade to the detention vault invert is 17 feet.
- Access shall be provided over both the inlet pipe and outlet structure. Access openings shall be positioned a maximum of 50 feet from any location within the detention vault. Additional access points may be needed on large vaults. Vaults ~~must~~ [shall](#) be designed to slope at least 5 percent from each side towards the center, forming a broad “v” to facilitate sediment removal. If more than one “v” is provided in the vault floor to minimize vault depth, access to each “v” shall be provided. [The sloping floor may not extend into the live volume section of the detention vault.](#)
- Internal structural walls of large vaults shall be provided with openings sufficient for maintenance access between cells. The openings shall be sized and situated to allow access to the maintenance “v” in the vault floor.

Detention Chambers

Follow detention vault design criteria, except for access. For access requirements, refer to detention pipes (Section 5.7.2.5). For connections between chambers, use a 24-inch minimum pipe. Detention chambers shall also include air vents.

Stackable, Modular Detention Chambers

Design criteria are provided in this section for the following elements of a stackable, modular detention chamber:

- Flow entrance and presettling
- Sediment storage
- Chamber materials and layout
- Chamber bedding
- Liner
- Structural stability
- Observation/maintenance port

Design criteria are summarized below for each of these design elements.

Flow Entrance and Presettling

Inflow pipe or a manifold system shall be connected to each stackable, modular detention chamber. Stormwater inflows shall be routed through a catch basin or similar structure with a 2-foot-deep minimum sump and a downturned elbow (trap) before entering the BMP. The volume of the sump shall be equal to the volume of a catch basin required by the current Director's Rules for side sewers. Presettling requirements are provided in Section 4.4.5.

Sediment Storage

Stackable, modular detention chambers shall have 6 inches of dead storage for sediment. This sediment storage requirement can also be addressed by deepening the forebay at the inlet with an equivalent dead storage volume. The sediment storage shall be within the open chamber above the aggregate bedding and liner.

Chamber Materials and Layout

Stackable, modular detention chambers can be constructed of a variety of different materials (i.e., plastic, concrete, aluminum, steel) and shapes (i.e., arch, box). Chamber spacing and depth of cover shall be per the manufacturer's requirements.

Chamber Bedding

Stackable, modular detention chamber bedding is specified by the manufacturer. Minimum bedding shall be from 6-inches below the chamber to an elevation one half the height of the chamber on the outside of the chamber. Chambers shall be bedded with uniformly-graded, washed gravel with a nominal size from 0.75- to 1.5-inch diameter. The minimum void volume shall be 30 percent. These requirements can be met with City of Seattle Mineral Aggregate Type 4.

Liner

A low permeability liner or an impermeable liner shall be placed at the bottom and sides of stackable, modular detention chambers. An impermeable liner is required if the facility is within the horizontal setbacks and site constraint areas that are required for infiltrating BMPs per Step 2 of Section 3.2. Refer to the liner specifications in Appendix E.

Structural Stability

The following structural requirements apply to stackable, modular detention chambers:

- Chambers shall meet structural requirements for overburden support, buoyancy, and traffic loading as appropriate. Provide a load analysis and submit structural plans for review.
- Chambers shall be watertight and shall be field tested as described in Section 5.7.3.7.
- Chambers are not allowed to be incorporated into or underneath a building.
- Chambers shall be placed on a stable, well-consolidated foundation and bedding material.
- Chambers shall not be placed in fill slopes, unless a geotechnical analysis for stability and constructability is provided.

Observation/Maintenance Port

Stackable, modular detention chambers shall be equipped with observation/maintenance ports to measure the drawdown time following a storm, to monitor sedimentation to determine maintenance needs, and to provide access for sediment removal.

Observation/maintenance ports at a 50-foot minimum spacing are required at:

- All inlets
- All outlets
- Any sediment forebay/trap

The observation/maintenance ports shall consist of a 12-inch minimum diameter opening with unobstructed view down to the bottom of the chamber. The ports shall have locking lids. If the port includes a pipe that extends through the chamber, the pipe shall be perforated or slotted pipe and shall include notches or space at the bottom to allow for sediment removal through the pipe.

5.7.3.6. BMP Sizing

Pre-sized Approach for Flow Control

The Pre-sized Approach may be used for projects with new and replaced hard surface areas up to 10,000 square feet. Under the Pre-sized Approach (refer to Section 4.1.2), pre-sized detention vaults may be used to achieve Pre-developed Pasture and Peak Control Standards. Sizing factors were not developed for other detention chamber shapes other than a typical detention vault. Sizing factors for rectangular detention vaults receiving runoff from a hard surfaces are provided in Table 5-405.41. Sizing factors are organized by detention depth, contributing area, and flow control standard. To use these sizing factors to meet flow control

standards, the facility shall meet the general requirements for vaults outlined in this section, plus the following specific requirements:

- Sizing equations are applicable for contributing areas between 2,000 and 10,000 square feet.
- Vault area shall be sized using the applicable sizing equation.
- The low flow orifice diameter shall be 0.5 inch.
- Invert of overflow shall be set at the designated detention (i.e., live storage) depth (3 or 4 feet) above the invert of the low flow orifice. For intermediate depths (between 3 and 4 feet), the vault area may be linearly interpolated.
- The vault shall have vertical walls to the designated overflow height.

Table 5.405.41. Pre-sized Sizing Equations for Detention Vaults.

Detention Depth ^a	Contributing Area	Sizing Equation for Vault Area			
		Pre-developed Pasture Standard	Pre-Developed Pasture Standard Orifice Diameter for Construction	Peak Control Standard	Peak Control Standard Orifice Diameter for Construction
3 feet	2,000 – 35,000 sf	NA	NA	$[0.0525 \times A] + 27.25$	0.5
	35,001 – 7,500 sf	[0.0662 x A] + 38.9	0.5	64-sf	0.625
	7,501 – 10,000 sf			$0.00025 \times [A^{1.62}]$	
4 feet	2,000 – 38,000 sf	NA ^b	NA	$[0.0365 \times A] + 19.16$	0.5
	8,001 – 10,000 sf			62-sf	$0.0011 \times [A^{1.41}]$

A – contributing hard surface area; NA – not applicable; sf – square feet.

For Peak Control Standard: Vault Area (sf) = Factor x [A (sf) ^ Integer].

Hard Surface Area Managed (sf) = [Vault Area (sf) ÷ Factor] ^ (1 ÷ Integer).

For Pre-developed Pasture Standard: Vault Area (sf) = [Factor x A (sf)] + Integer.

Hard Surface Area Managed (sf) = [Vault Area (sf) - Integer] ÷ Factor.

^a Detention depth refers to live storage depth (i.e., does not include freeboard or sediment storage requirements).

^b A vault with 4 feet of head above the low flow orifice is not applicable for sites subject to the Pre-developed Pasture Standard because the designer is required to reduce the head to at least 3 feet in an attempt to meet this standard (refer to [see Section 4.1.3.2](#)).

The vault area is calculated as a function of the hard area routed to it. As an example, for the Peak Control Standard, the area for a vault with an overflow invert set at 4.0 feet above the low flow orifice and receiving runoff from between 3,000 and 10,000 square feet of hard surface would be calculated as:

$$0.0011 \times [\text{hard surface area (square feet)} ^ 1.41]$$

All area units shall be in square feet. A [detention](#) vault with 4 feet of head above the low flow orifice is not applicable for sites subject to the Pre-developed Pasture Standard because the designer is required to reduce the head to 3 feet in an attempt to meet this standard

(refer to *Section 4.1.3.2*). To meet the Pre-developed Pasture Standard, a [detention](#) vault with 3 feet of live storage depth shall be used.

Modeling Approach for On-site Performance Standard and Flow Control

When using the continuous runoff model for vault sizing, the assumptions listed in Table [5.415.42](#) shall be applied. It is recommended that [detention](#) vaults/[chambers](#) be modeled as a flat-bottomed detention vault/[chamber](#) or tank with an outlet structure that includes a low flow orifice. The contributing area, detention bottom area, overflow depth and orifice configuration should be iteratively sized until the Minimum Requirements for Flow Control are met (refer to *Volume 1, Section 5.3*).

Table [5.415.42](#). Continuous Modeling Assumptions for Detention Vaults/[Chambers](#).

Variable	Assumption
Precipitation Series	Seattle 158-year, 5-minute series
Computational Time Step	5 minutes
HSPF Parameters	LSUR, SLSUR, NSUR shall be adjusted per Appendix F
Inflows to Facility	Surface flow and interflow from total drainage area (including impervious and pervious contributing areas) connected to the facility
Precipitation and Evaporation Applied to Facility	No
Infiltration	No
Total Depth	Vault height (including freeboard) above the vault bottom (does not include sediment storage)
Outlet Structure	Low flow orifice, riser height and diameter
Low Flow Orifice	Invert of low flow orifice set at a minimum of 6 inches above the bottom of the vault

For smaller contributing areas, the minimum diameter for the low flow orifice (0.5 inch) will be too large to meet standard release rates, even with minimal head. Refer to *Section 4.1.3.2* for contributing area thresholds and an alternative modeling approach for smaller contributing areas. For scenarios where standard(s) cannot be met, the designer is advised to evaluate other BMPs. Evaluation of live storage depth less than 3 feet is not required. Refer to *Section 4.1.3.2* for additional flow control modeling guidance.

5.7.3.7. Minimum Construction Requirements

Refer to the construction-related issues outlined above as part of the design criteria. Additional construction requirements are as follows:

- [Conduct infiltration or exfiltration testing of the ~~De~~ detention vault/\[chamber\]\(#\) shall be field tested for exfiltration \(i.e., watertightness\) as follows:](#)
 - [Plug the inlets and outlet and fill the vault/\[chamber\]\(#\) to one-half the distance from the outlet invert to the top of the riser on the outlet structure.](#)
 - [The maximum allowable leakage shall not exceed one percent of the volume over a 24-hour test period.](#)

- Submit field changes to the flow control device assembly, including elevation changes, to the Engineer of Record for confirmation that the device still meets the design requirements.

5.7.3.8. Operations and Maintenance Requirements

Detention vault/[chamber](#) O&M requirements are provided in *Appendix G (BMP No. 3)*.

[Document a plan for cleaning and maintenance access for any equipment and personnel required for stackable, modular detention chambers.](#)

5.7.4. Detention Cisterns

5.7.4.1. Description

Detention cisterns are tanks used for the capture and detention of stormwater runoff. Runoff from roof downspouts can be routed to cisterns for detention and slow release to an approved point of discharge. Like other detention facilities, cisterns can be used to achieve reductions in peak flows and flow durations.

Detention cisterns can be combined with rainwater harvesting (refer to *Section 5.5.1*).

5.7.4.2. Performance Mechanisms

Detention cisterns provide peak flow attenuation by slowly releasing low flows through an orifice. The flow control performance of a detention cistern is a function of contributing area, storage volume, cistern height, and orifice size.

5.7.4.3. Applicability

Detention cisterns can be applied to meet or partially meet the requirements listed below.

BMP	On-site		Flow Control			Water Quality				Conveyance
	List	Standard	Forest	Pasture	Peak	Basic	Enhanced	Oil Control	Phosphorus	
Detention Cistern		✓	✓ ^a	✓ ^a	✓					✓

^a Standard may be partially or completely achieved depending upon contributing area and minimum orifice size.

5.7.4.4. Site Considerations

Detention cisterns can be used to detain rooftop runoff in any type of new or retrofit development project. Cisterns may be used individually or connected to each other in series for greater detention and storage capacity. Detained stormwater and system overflows may be conveyed to an approved point of discharge or to another BMP such as bioretention.

5.7.4.5. Design Criteria

The following provides recommendations and requirements for the common components of cistern detention systems. A schematic for a typical detention cistern is shown in Figure [5.285-23](#). Design criteria are provided in this section for the following elements:

- Contributing area
- Collection system
- Screen/debris excluder
- Cistern
- Flow control orifice
- Overflow

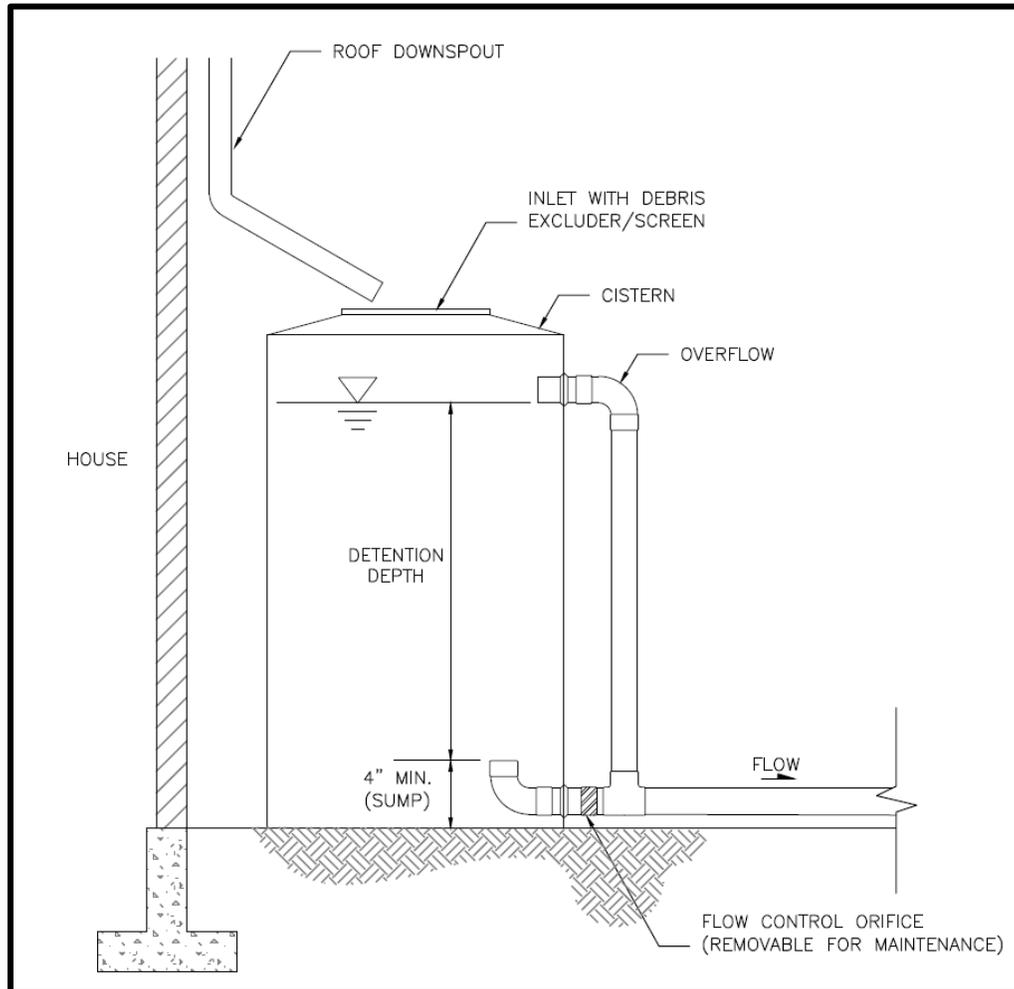


Figure 5.285-23. Detention Cistern.

Contributing Area

The area contributing runoff to a detention cistern shall not be pollution generating (e.g., surfaces subject to vehicular traffic are not acceptable).

To protect the water quality of the rainwater harvested, avoid collecting runoff from roof surfaces composed of materials such as copper or zinc that may release contaminants into the system. Also avoid collecting runoff from roof materials treated with fungicides or herbicides.

Collection System

Collection systems include gutters and downspouts, as well as piping and any other conveyance needed to route runoff from the roof to the cistern.

Screens/Debris Excluder

A filter screen or other debris barrier is required to prevent insects, leaves, and other larger debris from entering the system. A self-cleaning inlet filter is recommended.

Cistern

Cisterns are commonly constructed of fiberglass, polyethylene, concrete, metal, or wood. Tanks can be installed at or below grade, and individually or in series.

Minimum requirements associated with cistern design include the following:

- Detention cisterns are subject to Land Use Code (SMC Title 23) setback requirements.
- All cisterns shall be installed in accordance with manufacturer's installation instructions.
- Cisterns shall be designed to prevent mosquitoes and other nuisance insects and animals from entering the cistern system. This can be done with tight-fitting covers and appropriate screening at all openings to the cistern.
- Opaque containers shall be used for aboveground cisterns to prevent penetration of sunlight to minimize algal growth.
- Minimum cistern size shall be that of a rain barrel (typically 55 gallons).

Flow Control Orifice

Minimum requirements associated with flow control orifice design include the following:

- As with other detention systems, the minimum diameter shall be 0.25 inch for orifices located above ground, and 0.5 inch for orifices located underground. (Note: belowground facilities are not permitted for single-family residential sites unless approved by the Director.)
- Minimum 4-inch sump shall be provided to protect the orifice from sediment.

Overflow

Cisterns shall have an overflow to convey water exceeding the detention capacity of the system to an approved point of discharge or another BMP (e.g., bioretention area, vegetated cell, or infiltration trench) per *Section 4.3.3*. Conveyance may be provided by gravity flow or by pumps, but gravity flow is preferred.

5.7.4.6. BMP Sizing

Pre-sized Approach for Flow Control

The Pre-sized Approach may be used for projects with new and replaced hard surface areas up to 10,000 square feet. Under the Pre-sized Approach (refer to *Section 4.1.2*), pre-sized detention cisterns may be used to achieve Pre-developed Pasture and Peak Control Standards. Sizing factors for aboveground cisterns receiving runoff from a hard surface are provided in Table 5-425.43. Factors are organized by flow control standard, cistern overflow depth and contributing area. To use these sizing factors and equations to meet flow control standards, the facility shall meet the general requirements for cisterns outlined in this section plus the following specific requirements:

- The cistern area shall be sized using the applicable sizing factor or equation.
- The flow control orifice diameter shall be 0.25 inch.

- The invert of the overflow shall be set at the designated detention (i.e., live storage) depth (3 or 4 feet) above the invert of the flow control orifice. For intermediate depths (between 3 and 4 feet), the cistern area may be linearly interpolated.
- The cistern shall have vertical walls to the designated overflow height.

Table 5-425.43. Pre-Sized Sizing Factors and Equations for Aboveground Detention Cisterns.

Detention Depth ^a	Contributing Area (sf)	Sizing Factor/Equation for Cistern Area				
		Pre-developed Pasture Standard	Pre-Developed Pasture Standard Orifice Diameter for Construction	Peak Control Standard	Peak Control Standard Orifice Diameter for Construction	
3 feet	≤ 2,000	10.6%	0.25	[0.0552 x A] - 2.3435	0.25	
	2,001 – 3,500					5.9%
	3,501 – 5,000	408 sf		0.00036 x A ^{1.68}	0.375	
	5,001 – 10,000 9,999	0.00015 x [A ^{1.74}]			0.5	
	10,000				0.625	
4 feet	≤ 2,000	6.4%	0.25	0.0141 x [A ^{1.1289}]	0.25	
	2,001 – 5,000 3,500					4.1%
	3,501 – 5,000					0.00038 x [A ^{1.63}]
	5,001 – 6,000	322 sf			0.5	
	6,001 – 10,000 9,999	0.0001 x [A ^{1.73}]				0.625
	10,000					

A – contributing hard surface area; sf – square feet.

For Sizing Factors: Cistern Area = Contributing Hard Surface Area x Factor (%)/100.

Hard Surface Area Managed = Cistern Area ÷ Factor (%)/100.

For Linear Equations: Cistern Area (sf) = [Factor x A (sf)] + Integer.

Hard Surface Area Managed (sf) = [Cistern Area (sf) - Integer] ÷ Factor.

For Power Equations: Cistern Area (sf) = Factor x [A (sf) ^ Integer].

Hard Surface Area Managed (sf) = [Cistern Area (sf) ÷ Factor] ^ (1 ÷ Integer).

The cistern bottom area is calculated as a function of the hard surface area routed to it. As an example, to meet the Pre-developed Pasture Standard, the area of a cistern with an overflow invert set at 3 feet above the flow control orifice and receiving runoff from between 5,000 and 10,000 square feet would be calculated as:

$$0.00015 \times \text{contributing hard surface area (square feet)} ^ 1.74$$

All area values shall be in units of square feet. For the same cistern receiving runoff from between 3,500 and 5,000 square feet, the cistern area would be 408 square feet.

Alternatively, cisterns can be sized using a continuous model as described in the next section.

Modeling Approach for On-site Performance Standard and Flow Control

Continuous modeling may be used to size detention cisterns using the procedures presented for detention vaults/[chambers](#) in *Section 5.7.3*. The assumptions provided in [Table 5.41](#)[5.42](#) shall be applied.

5.7.4.7. Minimum Construction Requirements

Refer to the construction-related issues outlined above as part of the design criteria. An additional construction requirement is as follows:

- Submit field changes to the flow control device assembly, including elevation changes, to the Engineer of Record for confirmation that the device still meets the design requirements.

5.7.4.8. Operations and Maintenance Requirements

Detention cistern O&M requirements are provided in *Appendix G (BMP No. [2423](#))*. A plan shall be submitted demonstrating how the O&M requirements will be met.

5.7.5. Other Detention Options

Designers and developers are encouraged to consider creative opportunities for providing detention, when it is required. Athletic fields, roofs, parking lots that are not continually in use, and other large surface areas may provide opportunities for stormwater storage. This section presents other design options for detaining flows to meet flow control requirements.

5.7.5.1. Use of Parking Lots for Additional Detention

Private parking lots may be used to provide additional detention storage for runoff events greater than the 50 percent annual probability (2-year recurrence interval), provided all of the following conditions are met:

- Depth of storage shall be 3 inches or less for parking lots serving retail and office buildings and 6 inches or less for parking lots serving commercial truck traffic only for runoff events up to and including the storm event with a 1 percent annual probability (100-year recurrence interval flow).
- The emergency overflow path shall be identified and noted on the engineering plan. The overflow shall not create a significant adverse impact to downhill properties or drainage system.
- Fire lanes used for emergency equipment shall be free of ponding water for all runoff events up to and including the storm event with a 1 percent annual probability (100-year recurrence interval flow).

5.7.5.2. Use of Roofs for Detention

Detention ponding on roofs may be used to meet flow control requirements provided all of the following conditions are met:

- The roof support structure shall be analyzed by a structural engineer to address the weight of ponded water.
- The roof area shall be sufficiently waterproofed to achieve a minimum service life of 30 years.
- The minimum pitch of the roof area shall be 0.25 inch per foot.
- An overflow system shall be designed to safely convey the peak flow with a 1 percent annual probability (100-year recurrence interval flow).
- A mechanism shall be included in the design to allow the ponding area to be drained for maintenance purposes or in the event the restrictor device is plugged.

5.8. Non-Infiltrating BMPs

Non-infiltrating BMPs are designed to remove pollutants contained in stormwater runoff. Some non-infiltrating BMPs may provide low levels of flow control as a secondary benefit. The BMP categories in this section include:

- Non-infiltrating Bioretention
- Biofiltration Swales
- Filter Strips/Drains
- Sand Filters
- Wet Ponds
- Wet Vaults
- Stormwater Treatment Wetlands
- Combined Detention and Wet Pool Facilities
- Oil/Water Separators
- Proprietary and Emerging Water Quality Treatment Technologies

5.8.1. Design Requirements for Non-infiltrating BMPs

5.8.1.1. Site and Design Considerations

Refer to each non-infiltrating BMP section for setback requirements intended to protect adjacent properties, receiving waters, and other critical areas (i.e., landslide-prone areas).

The Phosphorus Removal and Enhanced Treatment performance goals, described in Sections 3.5.2.2 and 0, respectively, include treatment train options in which more than one type of BMP is used and the sequence of BMPs is prescribed. The specific pollutant removal role of the second or third BMP in a treatment train often assumes that significant solids settling has already occurred.

This section summarizes the placement of non-infiltrating BMPs in relation to detention BMPs as shown in Table 5-435.44. Also note that oil control BMPs shall be located upstream of ~~other non-infiltrating BMPs and detention~~ BMPs, and as close to the source of the oil-generating activity as possible.

Table 5.435.44. Non-infiltrating BMP Placement in Relation to Detention BMP.

Non-infiltrating BMP	Preceding Detention BMP	Following Detention BMP
Basic Biofiltration Swale (Section 5.8.3)	Allowed	Allowed—prolonged flows may reduce vegetation survival. Consider wet biofiltration swale instead.
Wet Biofiltration Swale (Section 5.8.3)	Allowed	Allowed.
Filter Strip (Section 5.8.4)	Allowed	Not allowed— must shall be installed before flows concentrate; cannot effectively be re-dispersed.
Basic or Large Sand Filter or Sand Filter Vault (Section 5.8.5)	Allowed—presettling and control of floatables needed	Allowed—sand filters downstream of detention BMPs may require field adjustments if prolonged flows cause sand saturation, anoxic conditions, and phosphorus release.
Basic or Large Wet Pond (Section 5.8.6)	Allowed	Allowed—less water level fluctuation in ponds downstream of detention may improve aesthetic qualities and performance.
Wet Vault (Section 5.8.7)	Allowed	Allowed.
Stormwater Treatment Wetland/Pond (Section 5.8.8)	Allowed	Allowed—less water level fluctuation and better plant diversity are possible if the stormwater wetland is located downstream of the detention BMP.
Proprietary and Emerging Water Quality Treatment Technologies (Section 5.8.11)	Allowed	Allowed—depending on the type of technology.

5.8.2. Non-Infiltrating Bioretention

5.8.2.1. Description

Non-infiltrating bioretention facilities are earthen depressions or vertical walled containers with a designed soil mix and plants adapted to the local climate and soil moisture conditions. Stormwater is stored as surface ponding before it filters through the underlying bioretention soil. Stormwater that exceeds the surface storage capacity overflows to an adjacent drainage system. Treated water is collected by an underdrain and discharged. Bioretention facilities can be individual cells or multiple cells connected in series.

Unlike infiltrating bioretention (refer to *Section 5.4.4*), non-infiltrating bioretention facilities typically include a ~~liner or other low-permeability or~~ impermeable barrier to ~~limit or~~ prevent infiltration to the underlying soil. However, if all the horizontal setback requirements for infiltrating facilities are met and there are no geotechnical or contamination concerns, the liner may be omitted.

Two variations of non-infiltrating bioretention facilities are included in this section:

- **Non-infiltrating bioretention facility:** These bioretention facilities can have either sloped sides (e.g., an earthen depression with a liner) or vertical sides (e.g., vertical walled ~~impermeable~~ container). Non-infiltrating bioretention shall have an underdrain. These facilities may or may not have an outlet control structure to attenuate underdrain flows prior to release.
- **Non-infiltrating bioretention facility series:** Non-infiltrating bioretention facilities with sloped sides or vertical sides may be connected in a series, with the overflows of upstream cells directed to downstream cells to provide additional flow control and/or treatment, and conveyance.

5.8.2.2. Performance Mechanisms

Non-infiltrating bioretention provides flow control via detention, attenuation, and losses due to interception, evaporation, and transpiration. Water quality treatment is accomplished through sedimentation, filtration, adsorption, uptake, or biodegradation and transformation of pollutants by soil organisms, soil media, and plants.

5.8.2.3. *Applicability*

Non-infiltrating bioretention can be designed to provide on-site stormwater management, flow control, and/or water quality treatment. These facilities can be applied to meet or partially meet the requirements listed below.

BMP	On-site		Flow Control			Water Quality				Conveyance
	List	Standard	Forest	Pasture	Peak	Basic	Enhanced	Oil Control	Phosphorus	
Non-Infiltrating Bioretention	✓	✓ ^a	✓ ^a	✓ ^a	✓ ^a	✓	✓			✓ ^b

^a Standard may be partially or completely achieved depending upon ponding depth, contributing area, and use of orifice control.

^b Non-infiltrating bioretention facilities may be connected in series, with the overflows of upstream cells directed to downstream cells to provide conveyance.

5.8.2.4. *Site Considerations*

Because typically non-infiltrating bioretention facilities do not infiltrate water to surrounding soils (water discharges via an underdrain and surface overflow), these BMPs are not subject to infiltration facility requirements. However, some infiltration requirements apply if a liner is not used (refer to Volume 3, Section 5.8.5-22.5 below).

Non-infiltrating bioretention is not permitted if the underdrained water would be routed to a nutrient-critical receiving water. Non-infiltrating bioretention is also not permitted within a setback equal to the height of the slope to a maximum of 50 feet from the top of steep slope or known landslide area.

Non-infiltrating bioretention is allowed in the side, front, and rear yard/setbacks that are required by the Land Use Code (SMC Title 23) in certain land use zones. However, if the facility extends above grade (e.g., a non-infiltrating bioretention planter that is partially or completely above the surrounding grade), then the amount of the yard/setback that it can cover may be restricted if the facility is over a certain height or width. Height is measured from the lowest adjacent grade. Width is the outside width and is measured perpendicular to the setback line.

Refer to the Land Use Code (SMC Title 23) for the specific heights and widths that trigger yard/setback coverage limitations for GSI features. Note: The requirements vary based on zoning and are not required in all zones.

Note: The “total storage capacity” mentioned in these code sections does not apply to non-infiltrating bioretention. Also, larger non-infiltrating bioretention planters may be permitted without restriction of the amount of yard/setback coverage if they meet the standards for retaining walls within a required yard/setback.

Refer to *Appendix C* for additional infeasibility criteria for the On-site List Approach.

5.8.2.5. Design Criteria

Typical components of non-infiltrating bioretention facilities with sloped sides and vertical sides are shown in Figures 5.295-24 and 5.305-25, respectively.

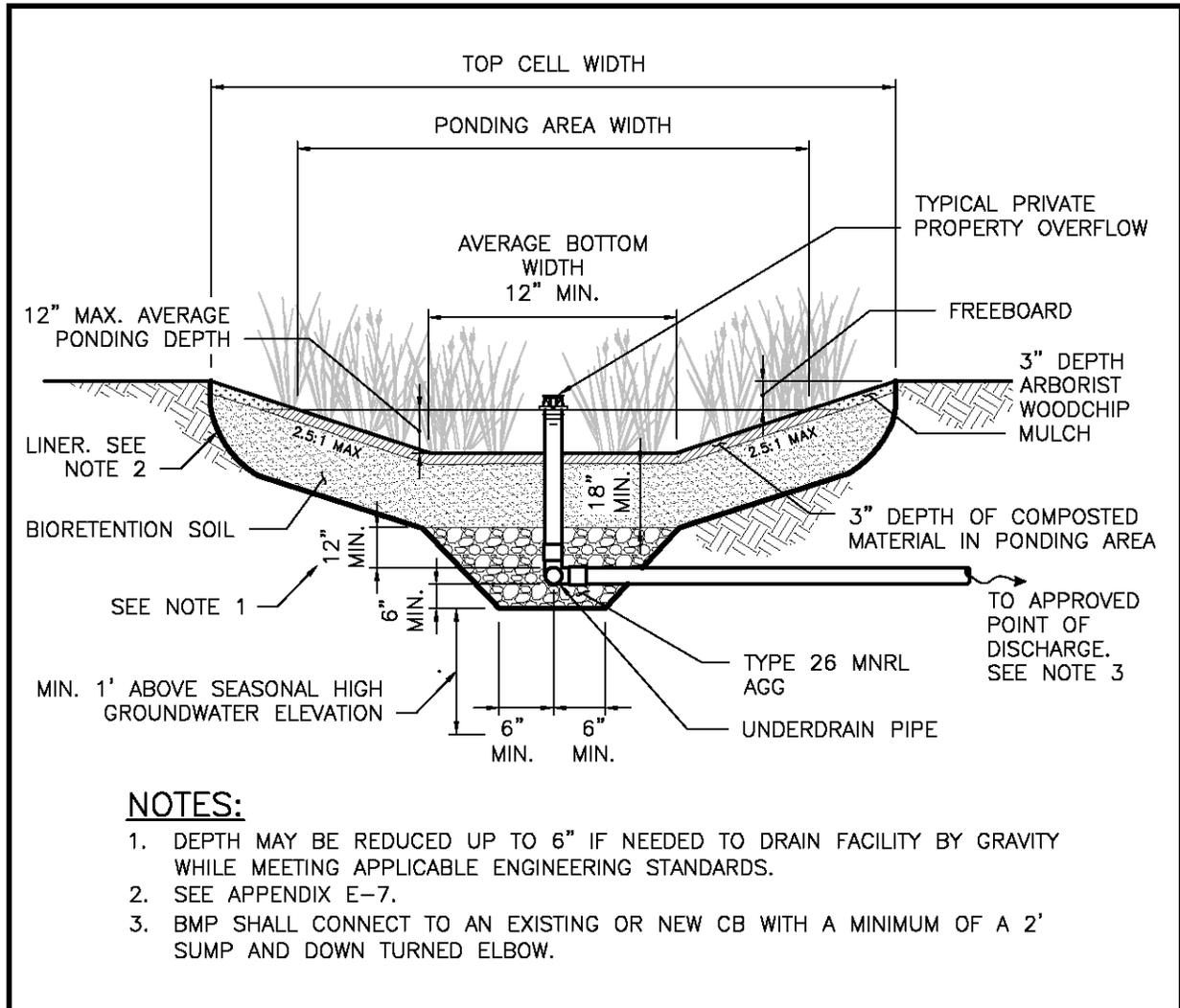


Figure 5.295-24. Non-infiltrating Bioretention Facility with Sloped Sides.

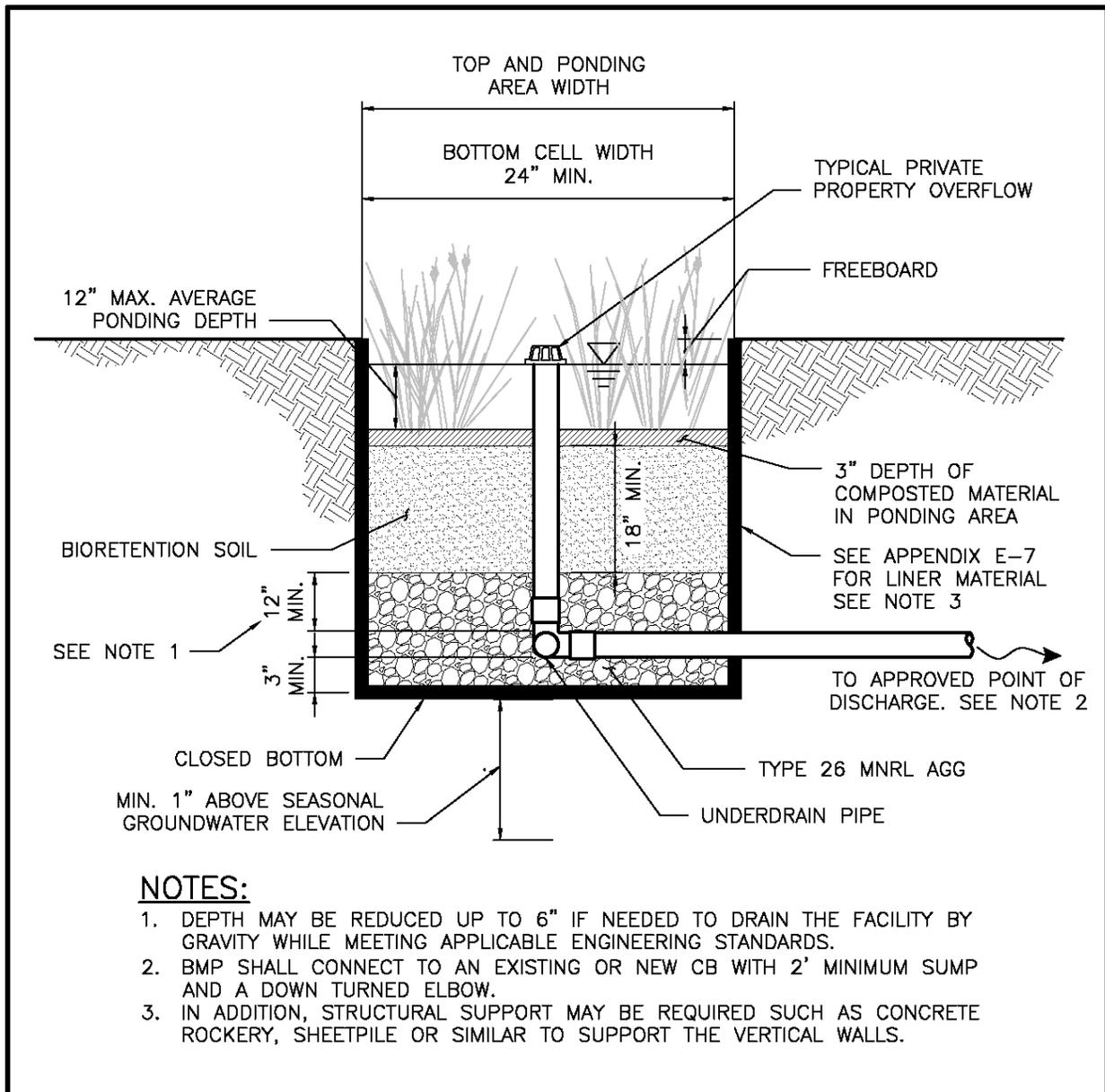


Figure 5.305-25. Non-infiltrating Bioretention Facility with Vertical Sides.

The design criteria for non-infiltrating bioretention is the same as presented for infiltrating bioretention in *Section 5.4.4*, with the following exceptions:

- [Typically, non-infiltrating bioretention includes a hydraulic restriction layer to restrict or prevent infiltration into surrounding soils. The type of hydraulic restriction layer required depends on site setbacks:](#)
 - [If the area available for siting is within the setback for a contaminated site or landfill \(refer to *Volume 3, Section 3.2*\), an impermeable liner shall be used to create a hydraulic restriction layer. Refer to *Appendix E, Section E-7* for liner design criteria.](#)

- If the area available for siting meets the setback from contamination and landfills, but not the other minimum horizontal setback requirements for infiltrating facilities (refer to *Volume 3, Section 3.2*), low-permeability liner or walls shall be used as the hydraulic restriction layer. The facility shall include a hydraulic restriction layer to prevent infiltration to surrounding soils. The facility may be composed of a low permeability (e.g., concrete) container with a closed bottom, or may be lined with a low permeability material (e.g., clay, geomembrane liner) to prevent infiltration. Refer to *Appendix E, Section E-7* for liner design criteria.
 - If Horizontal Setbacks and Site Constraints for infiltration can be met (refer to *Volume 3, Section 3.2*), no liner is required.
 - Where the inflow or discharge line enters or exits the BMP, measures shall be taken to prevent drainage from entering the trench backfill or pipe bedding such as factory boots or trench dams using bentonite, low density concrete fill, etc.
 - The facility shall be equipped with an underdrain.
 - While not required, it is recommended that facilities with contributing drainage areas up to 5,000 square feet, be designed with a 0.25-inch-diameter removable and maintainable orifice to improve flow control performance.
 - *Special Instructions:* The City acknowledges that the current bioretention soil mix has the tendency to export nutrients and is currently in the process of developing a new mix to address this problem. Until a new mix is developed, use either:
 - Sand, meeting the gradation required for a sand filter and well as the vegetation requirements for a sand filter (*Section 5.8.5*), or
 - A mix that is 70% by volume Mineral Aggregate as specified in the City of Seattle Standard Specifications Section 9-03.2(2) and 30% compost per Section 9-14.4(8) which otherwise meets the requirements for bioretention soil in Section 9-14 may be used instead of the bioretention soil shown in the figures above *for this BMP only*.
- Once the new mix is available, use of that mix will supersede these special instructions.

5.8.2.6. *BMP Sizing*

Sizing for On-site List Approach

Non-infiltrating bioretention may be selected to meet the On-site List Requirement (refer to *Section 3.3.1* and *Appendix C* for infeasibility criteria). To meet the requirement, the facility shall be sized according to the sizing factors provided in Table 5.445.45. ~~Sizing factors are based on achieving a minimum wetted surface area of 5 percent of the contributing area, increased by 11 percent (i.e., multiplied by 1.11) to account for reduced performance due to the presence of an underdrain.~~

Factors are organized by cell ponding depth, contributing area, and side slope. To select the appropriate sizing factor the design ponding depth shall be rounded down to the nearest depth in the sizing table, or sizing factors may be linearly interpolated for intermediate ponding depths (e.g., between 4 and 6 inches ponding).

The facility shall meet the general requirements for non-infiltrating bioretention outlined in this section plus the following specific requirements:

- The bottom area shall be sized using the applicable sizing factor.
- It is preferred that the bottom area is flat, but up to 3 percent slope is permitted.
- For facilities with sloped sides, the side slopes within the ponded area shall be no steeper than 2.5H:1V.
- The bioretention soil depth shall be a minimum of 18 inches.
- The average ponding depth for the cell shall be no less than the selected ponding depth.

Table 5.445.45. On-site List Sizing for Non-infiltrating Bioretention.

Bioretention Configuration	Average Ponding Depth	Contributing Area (sf)	Sizing Factor for Facility Bottom Area ^a
			On-site List
Sloped sides	2 inches	0 – 10,000	1.3% 5.0%
	6 inches	≤2,000	[0.0059 x A] - 3.215 3.9%
		2,001 – 10,000	[0.0097 x A] - 11.297
	12 inches	≤2,700	0.4% 2.6%
2,701 – 10,000		[0.0052 x A] - 12.1092	
Vertical sides	6 inches	0 – 10,000	1.2% 5.6%
	12 inches	0 – 10,000	1.0% 5.6%

NA – not applicable.

Bioretention Bottom Area = Contributing Hard Surface Area x Factor (%) / 100.

Hard Surface Area Managed = Bioretention Bottom Area ÷ Factor (%) / 100.

^a ~~Sizing factors are based on achieving a minimum wetted surface area of 5 percent of the contributing area, increased by 11 percent (i.e., multiplied by 1.11) to account for reduced performance due to the presence of an underdrain.~~

The bottom area for the cell is calculated as a function of the hard surface area routed to it. As an example, the bottom area of the bioretention cell with sloped sides would be equal to 2.6 percent of the hard surface area routed to it when the average ponding depth is 12 inches. For facilities with sloped sides, the top area is calculated as a function of the cell bottom area and the side slopes up to the total facility depth (i.e., ponding and freeboard depth).

Pre-sized Approach for Flow Control and Water Quality Treatment

The Pre-sized Approach may be used for projects with new and replaced hard surface areas up to 10,000 square feet. Under the Pre-sized Approach (refer to *Section 4.1.2*), pre-sized non-infiltrating bioretention facilities may be used to achieve ~~the Peak Control and~~ Water Quality Treatment Standards. Sizing factors and equations for non-infiltrating bioretention facilities with underdrains are provided in Table 5.455.46. Factors are organized by side slopes (i.e., sloped sides or vertical sides), performance standard, facility ponding depth, and contributing area. To select the appropriate sizing factor, the design ponding depth shall be

rounded down to the nearest depth in the sizing table, or sizing factors may be linearly interpolated for intermediate ponding depths (e.g., between 6 and 12 inches ponding).

To use these pre-sized facilities to meet performance standards, the bioretention facility shall meet the general requirements outlined in this section plus the following specific requirements:

- The bottom area shall be sized using the applicable sizing factor or equation. ~~When used to meet the Peak Control Standard, the facility size shall not be significantly larger (i.e., area shall not be more than 25 percent larger) than prescribed by the Peak Control Standard sizing factor because peak flow control performance may be diminished for larger facilities.~~
- It is preferred that the bottom area is flat, but up to a 3 percent slope is permitted.
- For facilities with sloped sides, the side slopes within the ponded area shall be no steeper than 2.5H:1V.
- The bioretention soil depth shall be a minimum of 18 inches.
- The average ponding depth for the cell shall be no less than the selected ponding depth.

Table ~~5.455.46.~~ Pre-Sized Sizing Factors and Equations for Non-Infiltrating Bioretention.

Bioretention Configuration	Average Ponding Depth	Contributing Area (sf)	Sizing Factor/Equation for Facility Bottom Area		
			Pre-developed Pasture Standard	Peak Control Standard	Water Quality Treatment
Sloped sides	2 inches	0 – 10,000	NA ^a	NA ^a	1.3%
	6 inches	≤2,000	NA ^a	NA ^a	[0.0059 x A] - 3.2 15
		2,001 – 10,000			[0.0097 x A] - 11.3 11.297
	12 inches	≤ 2,700	NA ^a	NA ^a 3% to 4.5% ^b	2.0%0.4%
2,701 – 10,000		[0.0052 x A] - 12.1 12.092			
Vertical sides	6 inches	0 – 10,000	NA ^a	NA ^a	4.3%1.2%
	12 inches	0 – 10,000	NA ^a	NA ^a 4.5% ^b	4.1%1.0%

NA – not applicable

For Sizing Factors: Bioretention Facility Bottom Area = Contributing Hard Surface Area x Factor (%) / 100

Hard Surface Area Managed = Bioretention Facility Bottom Area ÷ Factor (%) / 100

For Sizing Equations: Bioretention Facility Bottom Area (sf) = [Factor x A (sf)] + Integer.

Hard Surface Area Managed (sf) = [Bioretention Bottom Area (sf) - Integer] ÷ Factor.

^a Bioretention facilities with underdrains are not capable of achieving the standard unless orifice controls are used.

^b ~~When used to meet the Peak Control Standard, the facility size shall not be significantly larger (i.e., area shall not be more than 25 percent larger) than prescribed by the sizing factor (or sizing factor range) because flow control performance may be diminished for larger facilities (larger facilities will not pond water sufficiently to slow flows).~~

The *bottom area* for the bioretention facility area is calculated as a function of the hard surface area routed to it. As an example, to meet the Water Quality Treatment Standard, the bottom area of the bioretention facility with vertical sides and an average of 12 inches of ponding would be equal to 1.1 percent of the hard surface area routed to it. The bottom area

of same facility with slopes sides would be calculated as: $0.0052 \times$ contributing hard surface area - 12.1. All area values shall be in square feet. For facilities with sloped sides, the top area is calculated as a function of the cell bottom area and the side slopes up to the total facility depth (i.e., ponding and freeboard depth).

Instead of using the Pre-sized Approach, non-infiltrating bioretention facilities can be sized using a continuous simulation hydrologic model as described in the following section.

Modeling Approach for On-site Performance Standard, Flow Control, and Water Quality Treatment

When using continuous simulation hydrologic modeling to size non-infiltrating bioretention, the assumptions listed for infiltrating bioretention in Table 5.215.24 shall be applied, with the exception that the facility is modeled with no infiltration to underlying soil. **Note: MGS Flood is not currently approved (as of March 2021) by Ecology for modeling bioretention.** ~~Note that When using currently available modeling methods, non-infiltrating bioretention is not capable of meeting the Pre-developed Forested or Pre-developed Pasture Standard. Facilities may be sized to achieve the Peak Control Standard with an optimized ratio of planter area and contributing surface area, but performance may diminish with larger and smaller ratios.~~

5.8.2.7. Minimum Construction Requirements

Minimum construction requirements associated with non-infiltrating bioretention facilities include the following:

- Place bioretention soil in accordance with the requirements of City of Seattle Standard Specifications.
- Protect bioretention soil in cells from sediment during construction and do not use as sediment control facilities.

Refer to the Puget Sound LID Manual for additional guidance on bioretention construction.

5.8.2.8. Operations and Maintenance Requirements

Non-infiltrating bioretention O&M requirements are provided in *Appendix G (BMP No. 2322)*.

5.8.3. Biofiltration Swales

5.8.3.1. Description

A biofiltration swale is an open, gently sloped, vegetated channel designed to treat stormwater. Biofiltration swales are designed so that stormwater will flow evenly across the entire width of a densely vegetated channel. The four biofiltration swales described in this section are:

1. **Basic biofiltration swale:** a swale with a densely vegetated channel, with all runoff entering at the head of the swale.
2. **Wet biofiltration swale:** similar to the basic swale, but due to site conditions and/or influent conditions, this swale is designed to accommodate saturated soil conditions. It is appropriate for locations where the longitudinal slope is very low, water tables are high, or continuous low base flow is present.
3. **Continuous inflow biofiltration swale:** similar to the basic swale, but runoff enters at multiple locations along the length of the swale. The basic swale design is modified by increasing the swale length to achieve an equivalent average residence time.
4. **Compost-amended biofiltration swale:** same as the basic swale, but with a 3-inch compost blanket within the channel of the swale.

5.8.3.2. Performance Mechanisms

Pollutant removal occurs by filtration as stormwater moves through the vegetation, enhancing sedimentation, and trapping pollutants within the compost or vegetation.

5.8.3.3. Applicability

A swale can be designed for water quality treatment and conveyance of stormwater flow. This combined use can reduce development costs by eliminating the need for separate conveyance and treatment systems. Biofiltration swales are typically configured as flow-through systems, with little or no detention or storage. This BMP can be applied to meet the requirements as summarized below.

BMP	On-site		Flow Control			Water Quality				Conveyance
	List	Standard	Forest	Pasture	Peak	Basic	Enhanced	Oil Control	Phosphorus	
Basic Biofiltration Swale						✓	TT-A or TT-B		TT-A	✓
Wet Biofiltration Swale						✓	TT-A or TT-B		TT-A	✓
Continuous Inflow Biofiltration Swale						✓	TT-A or TT-B		TT-A	✓
Compost-amended Biofiltration Swale						✓	✓	✓		✓

TT-A = Treatment Train A ([must shall](#) be followed by a Basic Sand Filter or Sand Filter Vault (*Section 5.8.5*))

TT-B = Treatment Train B ([must shall](#) be followed by an approved Proprietary and Emerging Water Quality Treatment Technology (*Section 5.8.11*))

Refer to *Section 3.5.2.2* for more information on Two-BMP Treatment Trains.

5.8.3.4. Site Considerations

The following are common considerations for determining the feasibility of biofiltration swales for a particular site.

- Setbacks and restrictions:
 - All biofiltration swales shall be a minimum of 50 feet from the top of any steep (greater than 40 percent) slope. A geotechnical analysis and report shall be prepared addressing the potential impact of the facility on a slope steeper than 15 percent.
 - The water surface at the outlet invert elevation shall be set back 100 feet from existing septic system drain fields. This setback may be reduced with written approval of Public Health – Seattle & King County.
- Biofiltration swales are generally suitable for contributing areas of less than 5 acres.
- Biofiltration swales may be used for linear areas along roadways, driveways, and parking lots.
- Swales may be incorporated into a project's landscape design with either a mowable grass swale or water tolerant vegetation.
- Shaded areas, including deep channels, with less than 6 hours of sunlight during the summer months can inhibit vegetation growth.
- Stormwater runoff containing high concentrations of oil and grease impairs the treatment capability of a swale. Oil control options described in *Section 5.8.10* should be applied upstream of the biofiltration swale in these situations.
- Most biofiltration swales are designed to be on-line facilities with flows above the water quality design flow or volume passing through the facility with lesser or no pollutant removal. However, an offline design (where flows above the water quality design flows or volume are bypassed around the facility) may be preferred in some cases to avoid scour and damage to vegetation during high flows. An additional benefit of designing swales to be offline is that the stability check, which may make the swale larger, is not necessary (refer to *Sections 5.8.3.5 – Design Criteria* and *5.8.3.6 – BMP Sizing*).
- Minimum footprint is 100 feet by 20 feet. The actual footprint will depend on the bottom width, side slopes, and length, which are all dependent on the design flows (refer to *Section 5.8.3.6 – BMP Sizing*).
- Alignment should avoid sharp bends where erosion of the swale side slope can occur. However, gradual meandering bends in the swale are desirable for aesthetic purposes and to promote slower flow.
- Leaves and needles that can smother the grass or clog part of the swale [flowpath](#) can be a maintenance concern. Landscaping plans should take into consideration the problems that falling leaves and needles can cause for swale performance and maintenance. Landscape planter beds should be designed and located so that soil does not erode from the beds and enter a nearby biofiltration swale.

- Wet biofiltration swales are applied where a basic biofiltration swale is desired but not allowed or advisable because one or more of the following conditions exist:
 - The swale is on till soils and is downstream of a detention pond providing flow control.
 - Saturated soil conditions are likely because of seeps, continuous base flow, or high groundwater on the site.
 - Longitudinal slopes are less than 2 percent.
- A continuous inflow biofiltration swale is recommended when the following conditions exist:
 - Inflows are not concentrated or when flow enters at frequent points along the swale.
 - Unconcentrated inflow occurs along roadways that that have no curbs, where runoff sheet flows across the shoulder to the swale.
- A continuous inflow biofiltration swale is not appropriate when significant lateral flows enter a swale at some point downstream from the head of the swale. In this situation, the swale length shall be recalculated from the point of entry to provide adequate treatment for the increased flow.

Additional site considerations may apply depending on site conditions and other factors.

5.8.3.5. Design Criteria

The following provides a description and requirements for the components of biofiltration swales. Typical plan and profile views of a biofiltration swale are provided in Figure [5.315-26](#). Some or all of the components may be used for a given application depending on the site characteristics and restrictions, pollutant loading, and design objectives. Design criteria are provided in this section or in Volume V of the SWMMWW for the following elements:

Design Element	SWMMWW Design Criteria	Seattle-specific Design Criteria
Level spreaders	✓	✓
Underdrain (if any)	✓	✓
Low-flow drains (if any)		✓
Outlet and overflow		✓
Access		✓
Soil amendment		✓
Vegetation criteria Planting requirements	✓	✓
Dividing berm	✓	
Check dams or steps (if any)	✓	
High-flow bypass (if any)	✓	

Refer to BMP T9.10 – Basic Biofiltration Swale, BMP T9.20 – Wet Biofiltration Swale, and BMP T9.30 – Continuous Inflow Biofiltration Swale in Volume V of the SWMMWW for specific design criteria. Refer to the WSDOT Highway Runoff Manual under BMP RT.04 – Biofiltration Swale for design criteria for compost-amended biofiltration swales (CABS). In addition to

criteria developed by Ecology and WSDOT, the City has also developed specific design criteria for several design elements which are summarized below.

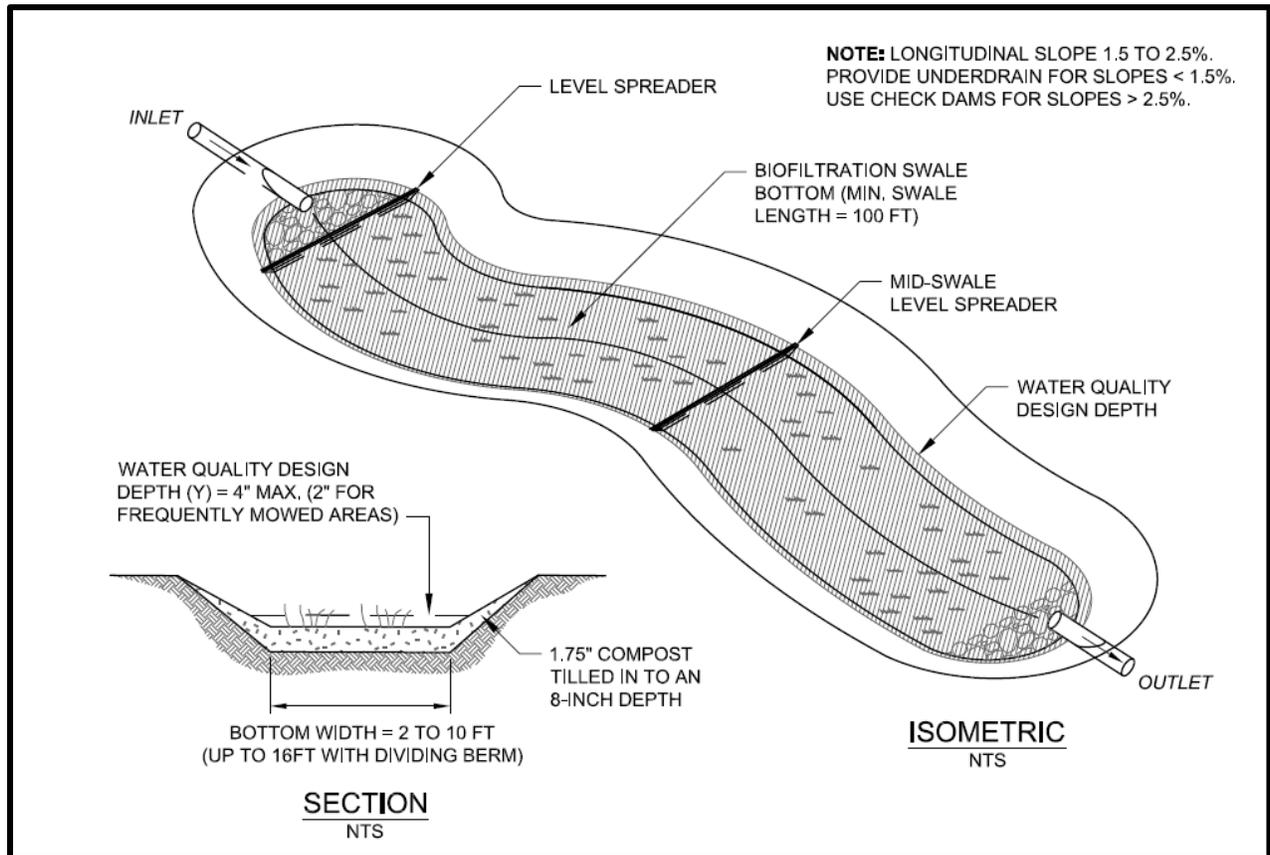


Figure 5.315-26. Biofiltration Swale Plan and Profile.

Level Spreaders

Refer to BMP T9.10 – Basic Biofiltration Swale, BMP T9.20 – Wet Biofiltration Swale, and BMP T9.30 – Continuous Inflow Biofiltration Swale in Volume V of the SWMMWW for biofiltration swale design considerations.

In addition, the City of Seattle requires level spreaders at the toe of vertical drops (check dams). Design guidelines and example design figures for level spreaders are provided in *Appendix E*.

Underdrains

Refer to BMP T9.10 – Basic Biofiltration Swale, BMP T9.20 – Wet Biofiltration Swale, and BMP T9.30 – Continuous Inflow Biofiltration Swale in Volume V of the SWMMWW for design considerations.

In addition, the City of Seattle requires underdrains for swales less than 1.5 percent longitudinal slope on till soils.

Low-flow Drains

Low-flow drains are narrow surface drains filled with pea gravel that run lengthwise through the swale to discharge base flows; they should not be confused with underdrains. Wet biofiltration swales are typically preferred when seeps, continuous base flow, or high groundwater is present. Alternatively, if a low-flow drain is proposed, the following requirements apply to biofiltration swales installed in Seattle:

- If a swale will receive base flows because of seeps and springs on site, then either a low-flow drain shall be provided or a wet biofiltration swale shall be used. In general, base flows less than 0.01 cubic feet per second (cfs) per acre can be handled with a low-flow drain. If flows are likely to be in excess of this level, a wet biofiltration swale should be used. Low-flow drains are not required for wet biofiltration swales.
- If a low-flow drain is used, it shall extend the entire length of the swale.
- The low-flow drain shall be a minimum of 6 inches deep, and its width shall be no greater than 5 percent of the calculated swale bottom width. Adjust the bottom width accordingly to maintain the necessary design bottom width for treatment.
- If an anchored plate or concrete sump is used for flow spreading at the swale inlet, the plate or sump wall shall have a v-notch (maximum top width equal to 5 percent of swale width) or holes to allow preferential exit of low flows into the drain. Additional design guidelines for level spreaders are provided in *Appendix E*.

Outlet and Overflow

All biofiltration swales shall include an outlet and overflow to an approved point of discharge per *Section 4.3.3*.

Access

Access requirements specific to biofiltration swale installations in Seattle are summarized below.

Access Requirement	Basic and Continuous Inflow Biofiltration Swale	Wet Biofiltration Swale
Access locations	Half the length of the swale	Inflow and outflow only
Access road width	Minimum of 10 feet	
Access road curves	Minimum width of 15 feet and a minimum outside radius of 40 feet	
Wheel strips made of modular grid pavement (refer to Section 5.4.6 Figure 5-26) ^a	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Support 16,000 pound vehicle • Firm underlying soil or structural fill (not amended topsoil) • Fill or cover with underlying soil (no amendments) and seed with grass • Strip width = 18 inches • Not counted as treatment area • Not allowed in biofiltration swales with underdrains 	Not allowed

^a If a low-flow drain is also needed, a portion of the wheel strip may be filled with pea gravel as appropriate to form the drain.

Soil Amendment

The following requirements shall be followed for biofiltration swales installed in Seattle:

- The condition of the soil is critical to support healthy grass growth. Native topsoil that has been stockpiled on site or in-situ soil may be used provided that it meets the soil quality criteria described in *Section 4.5.2*. Soil amendments are required if underlying soil is not suitable. Refer to *Section 5.1* for information regarding Soil Amendment BMP requirements.
- If the longitudinal slope is less than 1.5 percent (requiring the use of underdrains along the swale length), the subgrade should contain 10 percent or more of sand to promote infiltration of standing water. If sand is added to promote drainage, the soil or sand substrate shall still be amended with compost.

Vegetation Criteria Planting Requirements

Refer to BMP T9.10 – Basic Biofiltration Swale, BMP T9.20 – Wet Biofiltration Swale, and BMP T9.30 – Continuous Inflow Biofiltration Swale in Volume V of the SWMMWW for biofiltration [swale vegetation criteria planting requirements](#). The following additional [planting requirements vegetation criteria](#) shall be followed for biofiltration swales installed in Seattle:

- Grass shall be established throughout the entire treatment area of the biofiltration swale subject to the following provisions:
 - Seeding is best performed in spring (mid-March to June) or fall (late September to October). For summer seeding, sprinkler systems or other measures for watering grass seed shall be provided.
 - Seed may be applied via hydroseeding or broadcast application.
 - Irrigation is required during the first summer following installation if seeding occurs in spring or summer. Swales seeded in the fall may not need irrigation. Site planning shall address the need for sprinklers or other means of irrigation.
- Swales are subject to both dry and wet conditions and accumulation of sediment and debris. A mixture of dry-area and wet-area grass species that can continue to grow through silt deposits is most effective. Acceptable grass seed mixes for the Seattle area are provided in the City of Seattle Standard Specifications (9-14). As an alternative to these mixes, a horticultural or erosion control specialist may develop a seed specification tailored to the site. *Appendix E* includes a plant list for biofiltration swales that lists grasses or other plants that are particularly tolerant of wet conditions.
- Sod may be used where needed to initiate adequate growth. If sod is used, the sod shall be grown from a seed mix suitable for a biofiltration swale and clay content shall be less than 10 percent.
- During seeding, slow-release fertilizers may be applied to speed the growth of grass. If the swale is discharges to a nutrient-critical receiving water, low phosphorus fertilizers (such as formulations in the proportion 3:1:3 N-P-K or less) or a slow-release phosphorus formulation such as rock phosphate or bone meal should be used. A typical fertilizer application rate should be 2 pounds per 1,000 square feet. If animal manures are used in the fertilizer, they shall be sterilized to avoid leaching fecal coliform bacteria into receiving waters.

- A grassy swale should be incorporated into the project site landscape design. Shrubs may be planted along the edges of a swale (above the water quality treatment level) provided that exposure of the swale bottom to sunlight and maintenance accessibility are not compromised. Note: For swales used to convey high flows, the plant material selected shall bind the soil adequately to prevent erosion.

5.8.3.6. *BMP Sizing*

Refer to BMP T9.10 – Basic Biofiltration Swale, BMP T9.20 – Wet Biofiltration Swale, and BMP T9.30 – Continuous Inflow Biofiltration Swale in Volume V of the SWMMWW for BMP Sizing considerations.

Biofiltration swale design procedures are described in the SWMMWW for the following steps:

- Preliminary steps (P)
- Design steps [for biofiltration swale capacity](#) (D)
- Stability check steps [\(SC\)](#)

Seattle-specific guidance for Preliminary Step P-1 includes the following:

- For offline swales, the high flow bypass shall be designed so that all flows up to and including the water quality design flow rate are directed to the swale. The water quality design flow rate (Q) is calculated by multiplying the design flow determined by an approved continuous runoff model by an offline ratio of 3.0.
- For on-line swales, Q is determined by multiplying the design flow determined by an approved continuous runoff model by an on-line ratio of 1.65.

5.8.3.7. *Minimum Construction Requirements*

Minimum construction requirements associated with biofiltration swales include the following:

- Grade [biofiltration](#) swales to attain uniform longitudinal and lateral slopes.
- Avoid compaction during construction.
- Do not put biofiltration swales into operation until areas of exposed soil in the contributing drainage areas have been sufficiently stabilized. Deposition of eroded soils can impede the growth of grass in the swale and reduce [water quality swale](#) treatment effectiveness. Therefore, erosion and sediment control measures shall remain in place until the [biofiltration](#) swale vegetation is established (refer to *Volume 2 – Construction Stormwater Control*).
- Protect newly constructed [biofiltration](#) swales from stormwater flows until grass has been established by diverting flows or by covering the swale bottom with clear plastic until the grass is well rooted. If these actions are not feasible, place an erosion control blanket per City of Seattle Standard [Specification Plan No. 9-14.5\(2\)](#) over the freshly applied seed mix. Sod may be used as a temporary cover during the wet season, but sodded areas shall be reseeded with a suitable grass mix as soon as the weather is conducive to seed germination. Remove sod before reseeding.

5.8.3.8. Operations and Maintenance Requirements

Basic, wet, and continuous inflow biofiltration swale O&M requirements are provided in *Appendix G (BMPs No. 9 and 10)*. Compost-amended biofiltration swale O&M requirements can be found in the WSDOT Highway Runoff Manual under BMP RT.04 – Biofiltration Swale.

5.8.4. Filter Strips/Drains

5.8.4.1. Description

A filter strip is a grassy slope that receives unconcentrated runoff from adjacent hard surfaces such as a parking lots, driveways, or roadways. Filter strips are graded to maintain sheet flow over their entire width. Compost and other amendments can be incorporated into filter strips designs to provide enhanced treatment (refer to *Section 3.5.2.3*). The following three types of filter strip BMPs are described in this section:

1. **VegetatedBasic filter strip:** a flat filter strip with no side slopes. Polluted stormwater is distributed as sheet flow across the inlet width of the filter strip.
2. **Compost-amended vegetated filter strip (CAVFS):** An enhanced treatment option, similar to the [vegetatedBasic](#) filter strip, but the filter area is compost-amended to improve infiltration characteristics, increase surface roughness, and improve plant sustainability. Once permanent vegetation is established, the advantages of the CAVFS are higher surface roughness, greater retention and infiltration capacity, improved removal of soluble cationic contaminants through sorption, improved overall vegetative health, and a reduction of invasive weeds. Compost-amended systems have somewhat higher construction costs due to more expensive materials, but require less land area for [water qualityrunoff](#) treatment, which can reduce overall costs.
3. **Media filter drain (MFD):** Previously referred to as the ecology embankment, a linear flow-through stormwater treatment device that can be sited along roadway side-slopes (conventional design) and medians (dual MFD), borrow ditches, or other linear depressions. Cut-slope applications may also be considered. MFDs have four basic components: a gravel no-vegetation zone, a vegetated filter strip, the MFD mix bed, and an optional gravel-filled underdrain trench or layer of crushed surfacing base course (CSBC). The layer of CSBC shall be porous enough to allow treated flows to freely drain away from the MFD mix.

5.8.4.2. Performance Mechanisms

Filter strips remove pollutants primarily by filtration as stormwater moves through the grass blades. This enhances sedimentation and traps pollutants which adhere to the grass and thatch. Pollutants can also be adsorbed by the underlying soil when infiltration occurs, but the extent of infiltration depends on the type of soil, the density of grass, and the slope of the filter strip. The MFD removes suspended solids, phosphorus, and metals from roadway runoff through physical straining, ion exchange, carbonate precipitation, and biofiltration.

5.8.4.3. Applicability

A filter strip can be designed for both treatment and conveyance of stormwater flow. This combined use can reduce development costs by eliminating the need for separate conveyance and treatment systems. [VegetatedBasic](#) filter strips, CAVFS, and MFDs are typically configured as flow-through systems, with little or no detention or storage. This BMP can be applied to meet the requirements as summarized below.

BMP	On-site		Flow Control			Water Quality				Conveyance
	List	Standard	Forest	Pasture	Peak	Basic	Enhanced	Oil Control	Phosphorus	
VegetatedBasic Filter Strip						✓	TT-A or TT-B		TT-A or TT-B	✓
CAVFS						✓	✓			✓
MFD						✓	✓			✓

TT-A = Treatment Train A ([must-shall](#) be followed by a Linear Sand Filter (*Section 5.8.5*).

TT-B = Treatment Train B ([must-shall](#) be preceded by a Linear Sand Filter (*Section 5.8.5*).

Refer to *Section 3.5.2.2* for more information on Two-BMP Treatment Trains.

5.8.4.4. Site Considerations

The following are site considerations for determining the feasibility of filter strips for a particular site.

- Setbacks and restrictions:
 - The filter strips are not typically permitted within landslide-prone areas as defined by the Regulations for Environmentally Critical Areas (SMC, Section 25.09.020).
 - The filter strips are not typically permitted within a setback above a steep slope area (SMC, Section 25.09.020). The setback is calculated as 10 times the height of the steep slope area (to a 500 foot maximum setback). Filter strips within this setback may be feasible provided a [detailed](#) slope stability analysis is completed by a geotechnical engineer. The analysis shall determine the effects that filter strip would have on the steep slope area and adjacent properties.
 - For sites with septic systems, the point of discharge to filter strip shall be downgradient of the drainfield primary and reserve areas.
- Filter strips are suitable for sites with a maximum lateral slope of the contributing area of 2 percent.
- Filter strips are suitable for sites with a maximum longitudinal slope of the contributing area of 5 percent. Contributing areas with longitudinal slopes steeper than 5 percent should either use a different BMP or shall provide energy dissipation and flow spreading mechanisms upslope of the upper edge of the filter strip.
- Filter strips are designed as on-line facilities. They are designed to receive continuous sheet flow from contributing areas and should not be located downstream of detention facilities or other concentrated flows.
- MFDs can be used in areas with longitudinal slopes less than 5 percent.

Additional site considerations may apply depending on site conditions and other factors.

5.8.4.5. Design Criteria

Refer to BMP T9.40 – [VegetatedBasic](#) Filter Strip, BMP T7.40 – CAVFS, and BMP T8.40 – MFD in Volume V of the SWMMWW for filter strip design criteria. Additional descriptions,

applications, and design details are provided in the WSDOT Highway Runoff Manual under BMP RT.02 – Vegetated Filter Strip and RT.07 – MFD. The City allows the use of MFDs per the Ecology-approved designs outlined in the WSDOT Highway Runoff Manual.

5.8.4.6. BMP Sizing

Filter strips shall be designed to meet the criteria listed in Table 5-465.47. Refer to BMP T9.40 – [Vegetated Basic Filter Strip](#), BMP T7.40 – CAVFS, and BMP T8.40 – MFD in Volume V of the SWMMWW for additional information on filter strip sizing methods.

Table 5-465.47. Basic and Compost Amended Vegetated Filter Strip Design and Sizing Criteria.

Design Parameter	Vegetated Basic Filter Strip	CAVFS	MFD
Longitudinal slope	1 – 33%	1 – 15%	5%
Lateral slope	NA		2 – 25%
Maximum velocity	0.5 feet/second		NA
Maximum water depth	1 inch		NA
Manning's roughness coefficient	0.35	0.40 to 0.55 ^a	NA
Minimum hydraulic residence time at Water Quality Design Flow Rate	9 minutes	NA	NA
Minimum length	NA ^c	NA	NA
Maximum side slope	Inlet edge ≥ 1 inch lower than contributing paved area		NA
Max. tributary drainage flowpath/flow-path	150 feet		
Max. longitudinal slope of contributing area	5% (steeper than 5% need upslope flow spreading and energy dissipation)		5%
Max. lateral slope of contributing area	2% (at the edge of the strip inlet) ^b		NA

^a Manning's n ranges from 0.40 (hydroseeded, grass maintained at 95% density and 4-inch length via mowing, periodic reseeded, and possible landscaping with shrubs) to 0.55 (top-dressed with ≥3 inches compost or mulch [seeded or landscaped]).

^b A stepped series of flow spreaders installed at the head of the strip could compensate for slightly steeper slopes.

^c Length based on achieving required hydraulic residence time.

5.8.4.7. Minimum Construction Requirements

Minimum construction requirements associated with filter strips include the following:

- [Install an erosion control blanket below the design water depth of a vegetated filter strip, at least 4 inches of topsoil, and the selected seed mix. Use a straw mulch or sod above the water line. Refer to Volume 2 – Construction Stormwater Control for erosion and sediment control BMPs.](#)
- Do not put filter strips into operation until areas of exposed soil in the contributing drainage areas have been sufficiently stabilized. Deposition of eroded soils can impede the growth of grass in the filter strip and reduce treatment effectiveness. Erosion and sediment control measures shall remain in place until the filter strip vegetation is established ~~(Refer to Volume 2 – Construction Stormwater Control for erosion and sediment control BMPs).~~
- Avoid compaction of ~~the~~ filter strip areas during construction.

5.8.4.8. Operations and Maintenance Requirements

[Vegetated](#)~~Basic~~ filter strip O&M requirements are provided *Appendix G (BMP No. 11)*. CAVFS and MFD O&M requirements can be found in the WSDOT Highway Runoff Manual under BMP RT.02 – Vegetated Filter Strip and RT.07 – MFD.

5.8.5. Sand Filters

5.8.5.1. Description

Sand filters are used to provide water quality treatment. The following three sand filter BMPs are described in this section:

1. **Sand filter basins:** Like an infiltration basin, the sand filter basin is an impoundment that temporarily stores stormwater runoff so that it can infiltrate, but instead of infiltrating through the underlying soil, stormwater passes through a constructed sand bed. Sand filters can be sized as either a basic or a large facility to meet different water quality objectives. Sand filter basins are designed with underdrains to collect and route runoff following treatment to the downstream conveyance system.
2. **Sand filter vaults:** A sand filter vault is similar to a sand filter basin, except that the entire facility is installed below grade in a vault. It typically consists of a presettling cell (if pretreatment is not already provided) and a sand filtration cell. Like a sand filter basin, a vault can be sized as either a basic or a large facility to meet different water quality objectives.
3. **Linear sand filters:** Linear sand filters are similar to sand filter vaults, except the vault is configured as a long, shallow, linear system. The vault contains two cells or chambers, one for removing coarse sediment and the other containing sand overlying an underdrain. Runoff usually enters the settling chamber as unconcentrated flow from an adjacent area and overflows to a central weir into the sand portion of the vault.

5.8.5.2. Performance Mechanisms

Sand filters treat stormwater primarily via physical filtration. As stormwater passes through the sand media, pollutants are trapped in the small spaces between sand grains, or adhere to the sand surface. Over time, soil bacteria may also grow in the sand bed and some biological removal may occur.

Sand filter media can also be amended with steel fiber and crushed calcitic limestone to increase dissolved metals removal. Use of amended sand filters [is allowed with the permission of the requires](#) Director's approval.

5.8.5.3. Applicability

A sand filter BMP can be applied to meet the requirements as summarized below.

BMP	On-site		Flow Control			Water Quality			Conveyance	
	List	Standard	Forest	Pasture	Peak	Basic	Enhanced	Oil Control		Phosphorus
Basic Sand Filter						✓	TT-A, TT-B, or TT-C		TT-A, TT-B, TT-C, or TT-D	✓
Large Sand Filter						✓	✓		✓	✓
Sand Filter Vault						✓	TT-A, TT-B, or TT-C		TT-A, TT-B, TT-C, or TT-D	✓
Large Sand Filter Vault						✓	✓		✓	✓
Linear Sand Filter						✓	TT-E or TT-F	✓ ^a	TT-E or TT-F	✓

TT-A = Treatment Train A ([must shall](#) be preceded by a Basic Wet Pond (*Section 5.8.6*), Wet Vault (*Section 5.8.7*), Basic Combined Detention/Wetpool (*Section 5.8.9*))

TT-B = Treatment Train B ([must shall](#) be preceded by a Biofiltration Swale (*Section 5.8.3*))

TT-C = Treatment Train C ([must shall](#) be followed by an approved Proprietary and Emerging Water Quality Treatment Technology (*Section 5.8.11*))

TT-D = Treatment Train D ([must shall](#) be preceded by a Stormwater Treatment Wetland (*Section 5.8.8*))

TT-E = Treatment Train E ([must shall](#) be followed by a Filter Strip (*Section 5.8.4*))

TT-F = Treatment Train F ([must shall](#) be preceded by a Filter Strip (*Section 5.8.4*))

Refer to *Section 3.5.2.2* for more information on Two-BMP Treatment Trains

^a Linear sand filter may not be used for oil control if it is used to satisfy any other treatment requirement.

5.8.5.4. Site Considerations

Refer to BMP T8.10 – Basic Sand Filter Basin, BMP T8.11 – Large Sand Filter Basin, BMP T8.20 – Sand Filter Vault, and BMP T8.30 – Linear Sand Filter in Volume V of the SWMMWW for site considerations related to sand filters. The following site considerations also apply to sand filters installed in Seattle:

- [Sand filters are not allowed within steep slopes, known landslide areas, and their 15-foot buffers as defined by the regulations for ECAs \(SMC, Section 25.09.012\). For sand filters within a setback equal to the height of the slope to a maximum of 50 feet from the top of steep slope and known landslide area, a slope stability assessment shall be completed by a licensed geotechnical engineer or engineering geologist considering the effects on slope stability due to a leaking or damaged detention BMP. More stringent exfiltration \(i.e., watertightness\) testing of sand filter vaults within a 50-foot setback from the top of the steep slope and known landslide area may be required. No specific setbacks or restrictions apply to closed bottom \(lined\) sand filter. The following setbacks and restrictions apply to open bottom \(unlined\) sand filters.](#)
 - [All open bottom sand filters shall be a minimum of 50 feet from the top of any steep \(greater than 40 percent\) slope. A geotechnical analysis and report shall be prepared addressing the potential impact of the open bottom sand filter on a slope steeper than 15 percent.](#)

~~○ The water surface at the outlet invert elevation shall be set back 100 feet from existing septic system drain fields. This setback may be reduced with written approval of Public Health—Seattle & King County.~~

- A sand filter can add landscape interest and should be incorporated into the project landscape design.
- Interior side slopes may be stepped with flat areas to provide informal seating with a game or play area below.
- Perennial beds can be planted above the overflow water surface elevation. However, large shrubs and trees are not recommended because shading limits evaporation and can inhibit drying of the filter surface. In addition, falling leaves and needles can clog the filter surface, requiring more frequent maintenance.

Additional site considerations may apply depending on site conditions and other factors.

5.8.5.5. Design Criteria

The following provides a description and requirements for the components of sand filters. Some or all of the components may be used for a given application depending on the site characteristics and restrictions, pollutant loading, and design objectives. Design criteria are provided in this section or in Volume V of the SWMMWW for the following elements:

Design Element	SWMMWW Design Criteria	Seattle-specific Design Criteria
Presettling	✓	✓
Liner	✓	✓
Geometry and composition	✓	✓
Structural requirements	✓	✓
Underdrains (if any)	✓	✓
Sand media	✓	✓
Vegetation (if any)		✓
Access	✓	✓
Offline/on-line facilities	✓	
Inlets and outlets	✓	

Refer to BMP T8.10 – Basic Sand Filter Basin, BMP T8.11 – Large Sand Filter Basin, BMP T8.20 – Sand Filter Vault, and BMP T8.30 – Linear Sand Filter in Volume V of the SWMMWW for sand filter basin and sand filter vault design criteria. In addition to Ecology’s criteria, the City has also developed specific design criteria for several design elements which are summarized below.

Presettling

Presettling is required to prevent clogging and extend the service life of the sand filter media. Presettling design requirements are described in *Section 4.4.5*. Refer to BMP T8.10 – Basic Sand Filter Basin, BMP T8.11 – Large Sand Filter Basin, BMP T8.20 – Sand Filter Vault, and BMP T8.30 – Linear Sand Filter in Volume V of the SWMMWW for sand filter basin and sand filter vault presettling requirements.

The following additional criteria apply specifically to sand filter vaults installed in Seattle:

- The presettling cell bottom may be longitudinally level or inclined toward the inlet.
- To facilitate sediment removal, the presettling cell bottom shall also slope from each side towards the center at a minimum of 5 percent, forming a broad “v.”
- More than one “v” may be used to minimize presettling cell depth.

Liners

Refer to BMP T8.10 – Basic Sand Filter Basin, BMP T8.11 – Large Sand Filter Basin, BMP T8.20 – Sand Filter Vault, and BMP T8.30 – Linear Sand Filter in Volume V of the SWMMWW for sand filter liner requirements.

- Refer to *Appendix E* for additional information on liner design criteria.

Geometry and Composition

Refer to BMP T8.10 – Basic Sand Filter Basin, BMP T8.11 – Large Sand Filter Basin, BMP T8.20 – Sand Filter Vault, and BMP T8.30 – Linear Sand Filter in Volume V of the SWMMWW for sand filter basin and sand filter geometry and composition requirements.

The following additional criterion applies to all sand filter types installed in Seattle:

- Depth of storage over the filter media (d) shall be 6 feet maximum

The following additional criterion applies specifically to linear sand filters installed in Seattle:

- If separated from traffic areas, a linear sand filter may be covered or open, but if covered, the cover shall be removable for the entire length of the filter. Covers shall be grated if flow to the filter is from sheet flow.

Structural Requirements

Refer to BMP T8.10 – Basic Sand Filter Basin, BMP T8.11 – Large Sand Filter Basin, BMP T8.20 – Sand Filter Vault, and BMP T8.30 – Linear Sand Filter in Volume V of the SWMMWW for sand filter structural requirements.

The following additional criteria apply specifically to linear sand filters installed in Seattle:

- A linear sand filter vault shall be concrete (precast/prefabricated or cast-in-place). The concrete shall conform to the “Material” requirements for wet vaults (refer to *Section 5.8.7.5*).
- At the discretion of SDCI, the sediment cell may be made of materials other than concrete, provided water can be evenly spread for uniform delivery into the sand filter cell.
- Where linear sand filters are located in traffic areas, they shall meet the structural requirements specified for wet vaults (refer to *Section 5.8.7.5*). The sediment cell shall have a removable grated cover that meets HS-25 traffic loading requirements. The cover over the sand filter cell may be either solid or grated.

Underdrains

Underdrains are required to allow the sand media to dry out between events. Refer to BMP T8.10 – Basic Sand Filter Basin, BMP T8.11 – Large Sand Filter Basin, BMP T8.20 – Sand Filter Vault, and BMP T8.30 – Linear Sand Filter in Volume V of the SWMMWW for sand filter underdrain requirements.

The following additional requirements for underdrains also apply to sand filters installed in Seattle:

- If a drain strip is used for lateral drainage, the strip shall be placed at the slope specified by the manufacturer but at least at 0.5 percent. All drain strips shall extend to the central collector pipe. Drain strip installations shall be analyzed for conveyance because manufactured products vary in the amount of flow they are designed to handle.
- Underdrain pipes shall be per City of Seattle Standard Plan No. 291.
- A geotextile fabric (refer to specifications in *Appendix E*) shall be used between the sand layer and drain rock or gravel and placed so that 2 inches of drain rock/gravel is above the fabric. Drain rock shall be 0.75- to 1.5-inch rock or gravel backfill, washed free of clay and organic material. Cover the geotextile fabric with 1 inch of drain rock/gravel. Use 0.75- to 1.5-inch drain rock or gravel backfill, washed free of clay and organic material. These requirements can be met with City of Seattle Mineral Aggregate Type 4.

Sand Media

Refer to BMP T8.10 – Basic Sand Filter Basin, BMP T8.11 – Large Sand Filter Basin, BMP T8.20 – Sand Filter Vault, and BMP T8.30 – Linear Sand Filter in Volume V of the SWMMWW for sand filter media requirements.

The following additional requirement for sand media also applies to sand filters installed in Seattle:

- Sand filters shall drain freely. Sand media cannot be saturated for extended periods because under these conditions, oxygen can be depleted, releasing pollutants such as dissolved metals and phosphorus that are more mobile under anoxic conditions. To prevent this release of pollutants that have accumulated in the media, sand filters shall be designed to drain the water quality design storm volume within 72 hours.

Vegetation

Vegetation requirements for basic and large sand filter basins are not included in Volume V of the SWMMWW; however, the City has developed the following guidelines for grass cover for sand filter basins installed in Seattle:

- No topsoil may be added to sand filter beds because fine-grained materials (e.g., silt and clay) reduce the hydraulic capacity of the filter.
- Grass shall tolerate the demanding environment of the sand bed. Sand filters experience long periods of saturation during the winter wet season, followed by extended dry periods during the summer. Modeling predicts that sand filters will be

dry about 60 percent of the time in a typical year. Consequently, vegetation shall be capable of surviving drought, as well as wet conditions.

- *Appendix E* includes a plant list for sand filters. These species can generally survive approximately 1 month of submersion while dormant in the winter (until about February 15), but they can only withstand about 1 to 2 weeks of submersion after mid-February.
- Several grass species in the plant list in *Appendix E* can withstand summer drying and are fairly tolerant of infertile soils. In general, planting a mixture of three or more species is recommended. This ensures better coverage since tolerance of the different species is somewhat different, and the best adapted grasses will spread more rapidly than the others. Legumes, such as clover, fix nitrogen and can thrive in low-fertility soils such as sands. This makes them particularly good choices for planting the sand filter bed.
- A sports field sod grown in sand may be used on the sand surface. No other sod may be used due to the high clay content in most sod soils.
- To prevent overuse that could compact and potentially damage the filter surface, permanent structures (e.g., playground equipment or bleachers) are not permitted. Temporary structures or equipment shall be removed for filter maintenance.
- Seed should be applied in spring or mid to late fall unless irrigation is provided. If the filter is seeded during the dry summer months, surface irrigation is required to ensure that the seeds germinate and survive. Seed shall be applied at 80 pounds per acre.
- Slow-release fertilizers may be applied to improve germination.
- Low phosphorus fertilizers (such as formulations in the proportion 3:1:3 N-P-K or less) or a slow-release phosphorus formulation should be used.

Access

Refer to BMP T8.10 – Basic Sand Filter Basin, BMP T8.11 – Large Sand Filter Basin, BMP T8.20 – Sand Filter Vault, and BMP T8.30 – Linear Sand Filter in Volume V of the SWMMWW for sand filter access requirements.

The following additional criteria apply specifically to sand filter vaults installed in Seattle:

- Provision for access is the same as for wet vaults (refer to *Section 5.8.7.5*). However, the arch culvert sections allowed for wet vaults may not be used for sand filter vaults. Free access to the entire sand bed is needed for maintenance. Removable panels shall be provided over the entire sand bed.
- An access road shall be provided to the inlet and outlet of a sand filter for inspection and maintenance purposes.

5.8.5.6. BMP Sizing

Sand filters shall be designed to capture and treat 91 percent of the total runoff volume (95 percent for large sand filters) as calculated by an approved continuous runoff model. Only 9 percent of the total runoff volume (5 percent for large sand filters) may bypass or overflow from the sand filter facility. A flow splitter may be used to facilitate bypass. Design guidelines

for flow splitters are provided in *Appendix E*. The following design criteria apply to all sand filters, unless otherwise noted for Sand Filter Vaults and Linear Sand Filters.

Two methods are provided for sizing sand filters (Simplified Sizing Approach and Facility Modeling), both of which are based on Darcy's law:

$$Q = KiA$$

Where:

Q = water quality design flow (cfs)

K = hydraulic conductivity of the media (fps)

A = surface area perpendicular to the direction of flow (sf)

i = hydraulic gradient (ft/ft) for a constant head and constant media depth

$$i = \frac{h}{L}$$

Where:

h = average depth of water above the filter (ft), defined as d/2

d = maximum water storage depth above the filter surface (ft)

L = thickness of sand media (ft)

Although it is not seen directly, Darcy's law underlies both the simple and the modeling design methods. V, or more correctly, 1/V, is the direct input in the sand filter design. The relationship between V and K is revealed by equating Darcy's law and the equation of continuity, Q = VA. (Note: When water is flowing into the ground, V is commonly called the infiltration rate. It is ordinarily measured via a soil infiltration test.)

Specifically:

$$Q = KiA \quad \text{and} \quad Q = VA \text{ so,}$$

$$VA = KiA \quad \text{or} \quad V = Ki$$

Note that $V \neq K$. The infiltration rate is not the same as the hydraulic conductivity, but they do have the same units (distance per time). K can be equated to V by dividing V by the hydraulic gradient i, which is defined above. The hydraulic conductivity K does not change with head nor is it dependent on the thickness of the media, only on the characteristics of the media and the fluid. The hydraulic conductivity of 1 inch per hour (2.315×10^{-5} fps) used in this design is based on bench-scale tests of conditioned rather than clean sand. This design hydraulic conductivity represents the average sand bed condition as silt is captured and held in the filter bed. Unlike the hydraulic conductivity, the infiltration rate V changes with head and media thickness, although the media thickness is constant in the sand filter design. Table [5-475.48](#) shows values of V for different water depths d (d = 2h).

Table 5-475.48. Sand Filter Design Parameters.

	Sand Filter Design Parameters					
Facility ponding depth d (ft)	1	2	3	4	5	6
Infiltration rate V (in/hr) ^a	1.33	1.67	2.00	2.33	2.67	3.00
1/V (min/in)	45	36	30	26	22.5	20

^a The infiltration rate is not used directly, but is provided for information. V equals the hydraulic conductivity, K, times the hydraulic gradient, i. The hydraulic conductivity used is 1 in/hr. The hydraulic gradient = (h + L)/L, where h = d/2 and L = the sand depth (1.5 ft).

Simplified Sizing Approach

The simplified sizing approach is taken from the *King County Surface Water Design Manual*. It uses standard values to define filter hydraulic characteristics for determining the sand surface area. This method is useful for planning purposes, for a first approximation to begin iterations in the modeling method, or when use of a computer model is not desired or available. The simplified sizing method very often results in a larger filter than the modeling method. More robust calculation methods, using an approved continuous runoff model, may be used (refer to the following section on modeling method).

King County developed the simplified sizing approach to design sand filters that meet the required treatment volume without performing detailed modeling. Steps for the simplified sizing approach are summarized below.

- *Step 1 -Determine maximum depth of water above sand filter.* This depth is defined as the depth at which water begins to overflow the reservoir pond, and it depends on site topography and hydraulic constraints. The depth is chosen by the designer.
- *Step 2 – Determine site characteristics.* Determine the total number of hard surface acres and the total number of grass acres draining to the sand filter. Determine whether the site is on till or outwash soils.
- *Step 3 – Calculate minimum required surface area for the sand filter.* Determine the sand filter area by multiplying the values in Table 5-485.50 by the site acreage from Step 2 using the following equation:

$$A_{sf} = 0.7(T_i A_i + T_{tg} A_{tg} + T_{og} A_{og})$$

Where:

A_{sf} = sand filter area (sf)

0.7 = adjustment factor to account for routing effect on size

$T_{i,tg,og}$ = tributary area per soil/cover type (acres)

$A_{i,tg,og}$ = filter area per soil/cover type (sf/acre) from Table 5-485.49.

Table 5.485.49. Sand Filter Area Increments for Various Soil and Cover Types.

Treatment Goal	Maximum Depth above Filter (ft)	Soil and Cover Types [filter area (sf)/tributary area (acre)]		
		A_i Hard Surface	A_t Till Grass	A_{og} Outwash Grass
BASIC	6	760	160	140
	3	1,140	240	210
	1	1,711	360	314
LARGE	6	1,179	279	250
	3	1,769	419	370
	1	2,654	629	550

Forested areas may be ignored. Vegetated areas other than grass may still be represented as grass for the simple sizing method, or the detailed routing method may be employed using actual cover types.

The values in Table 5.48 were derived as follows. Flows were estimated using the KCRTS model for one acre of the cover types selected in the table. Darcy's law ($Q = KiA$) was then used to determine sand filter area using this flow Q , the hydraulic gradient i for the various ponding depths given, and a hydraulic conductivity k of 2.3×10^{-5} fps (1 in/hr). The hydraulic gradient i was calculated as $(h+l)/l$, where h = the average depth of water above the filter, taken to be the ponding depth $d/2$, and l = the thickness of the sand layer, which is 1.5 ft. The hydraulic conductivity represents a partially plugged sand condition found by bench-scale testing using successive trials with turbid water.

For depths between the values given in the table, areas can be interpolated. For depths outside the range presented in the table, the Facility Modeling method shall be used.

- **Step 4 – Size the underdrain system.** The underdrain system is sized to convey the peak filtered flows to the outlet. Underdrains can be used in lieu of analyzing conveyance capacity for feeder pipes (refer to Design Criteria section). Strip drains, if used, shall be analyzed for conveyance per manufacturer's specifications.

The collector pipe (i.e., the pipe collecting flows from the rest of the underdrain system) shall be sized to convey the 2-year, 15-minute peak flow with 1 foot of head above the invert of the upstream end of the collector pipe.

Intent – The underdrain shall be able to remove standing water from beneath the sand. If standing water remains, the sand will remain saturated. This could cause oxygen depletion and reduced conditions in the sand, allowing some pollutants to become mobile and be released from the filter to downstream receiving waters.

Simple Method Sizing Example:

For a site with 2 acres of hard surface area and 2 acres of till grass draining to the sand filter, and 3 feet of head above the filter, the required sand area for a basic size sand filter would be as follows:

Site Areas		Values for Basic Size (from Table 5.485.50)		
2 acres	x	1,140 sf/acre	=	2,280 sf
+ 2 acres	x	240 sf/acre	=	<u>480 sf</u>
			=	2,760 sf

Because the site is located in Seattle, the “regional scale factor” (refer to Step 1) is 1.0. Multiply 2,760 square feet by the 0.7 adjustment factor (refer to Step 4).

$$2,760 \text{ sf} \times 1.0 \times 0.7 = 1,930 \text{ sf}$$

The required sand bed area is therefore 1,930 square feet.

Note: Find the total facility area by adding 3H:1V side slopes for the 3-foot ponding depth plus extra vertical height to convey the 100-year flow. For example, if the total pond depth is 3.5 feet, the sand filter will require a total land area of (44 feet + 10.5 feet) x (44 feet + 10.5 feet) = 2,970 square feet, plus access and setback requirements.

Modeling Approach

When using continuous modeling to size a sand filter, apply the assumptions listed in Table 5-495.50.

Table 5-495.50. Sand Filter Design and Sizing Criteria.

Variable	Basic Sand Filter Basin	Large Sand Filter Basin	Sand Filter Vault	Linear Sand Filter
Precipitation Series	Seattle 158-year, 5-minute series			
Computational Time Step	15 minutes			
<u>HSPF Parameters</u>	<u>LSUR, SLSUR, NSUR shall be adjusted per Appendix F</u>			
Inflows to Facility	Continuous model output for applicable water quality design flow rate and volume			
Ponding Depth	Maximum water depth over the filter media			Maximum of 1 foot
Precipitation Applied to Facility	Yes		No	Yes (grated cover) No (solid cover)
Evaporation Applied to Facility	Yes		No	Yes (grated cover) No (solid cover)
Media depth	18 inches or other as designed			Minimum of 12 inches of sand and 8 inches of drain rock
Sand Media Hydraulic Conductivity	1 inch per hour			
Use Wetted Surface Area	Only if side slopes are 3H:1V or flatter		No	No

5.8.5.7. Minimum Construction Requirements

Refer to BMP T8.10 – Basic Sand Filter Basin, BMP T8.11 – Large Sand Filter Basin, BMP T8.20 – Sand Filter Vault, and BMP T8.30 – Linear Sand Filter in Volume V of the SWMMWW for sand filter minimum construction requirements.

5.8.5.8. Operations and Maintenance Requirements

Sand filter O&M requirements are provided in *Appendix G (BMPs No. 15 and 16)*.

5.8.6. Wet Ponds

5.8.6.1. Description

Wet ponds are constructed stormwater ponds that retain a permanent pool of water (i.e., a wet pool or dead storage) at least during the wet season.

As an option, a shallow marsh area can be created within the permanent pool volume to provide additional treatment for nutrient removal. Peak control can be provided in the live storage area above the permanent pool.

5.8.6.2. Performance Mechanisms

The volume of the wet pool, which slows down the velocity of incoming stormwater, allows particulates and particulate-bound pollutants to settle and is a key factor in determining wet pond effectiveness. Biological uptake also acts as a secondary pollutant removal mechanism.

5.8.6.3. Applicability

Wet ponds can be applied to meet the requirements as summarized below. Wet ponds can be combined with detention storage to provide flow control (refer to *Section 5.8.9*).

BMP	On-site		Flow Control			Water Quality				Conveyance
	List	Standard	Forest	Pasture	Peak	Basic	Enhanced	Oil Control	Phosphorus	
Basic Wet Pond						✓	TT-B		TT-A	✓
Large Wet Pond ^a						✓	✓		✓	✓

TT-A = Treatment Train A ([must-shall](#) be followed by a Basic Sand Filter or Sand Filter Vault (*Section 5.8.5*))

TT-B = Treatment Train B ([must-shall](#) be followed by a Sand Filter or Sand Filter Vault (*Section 5.8.5*) or an approved Proprietary and Emerging Water Quality Treatment Technology (*Section 5.8.11*))

Refer to *Section 3.5.2.2* for more information on Two-BMP Treatment Trains

^a A large wet pond requires a wet pool volume at least 1.5 times greater than for a basic wet pond.

5.8.6.4. Site Considerations

Site considerations for wet ponds are the same as those outlined for detention ponds under *Section 5.7.1.4*. Wet ponds require a larger area than a biofiltration swale or a sand filter, but can be integrated into the contours of a site fairly easily and function well for any size project.

Wet ponds work best when the water already in the pond is moved out en masse by incoming flows; a phenomenon called “plug flow.” Because treatment works on this displacement principle, the wet pool storage of wet ponds may be provided below the groundwater level without interfering unduly with treatment effectiveness. However, if combined with a detention function, the live storage [must-shall](#) be above the seasonal high groundwater level.

[Wet ponds are not allowed within steep slopes, known landslide areas, and their 15-foot buffers as defined by the regulations for ECAs \(SMC, Section 25.09.012\). For wet ponds within a setback equal to the height of the slope to a maximum of 50 feet from the top of steep slope and known landslide area, a slope stability assessment shall be completed by a licensed geotechnical engineer or engineering geologist considering the effects on slope stability due to a leaking or damaged BMP. Refer to Volume V of the SWMMWW for wet pond setback requirements.](#)

5.8.6.5. Design Criteria

Design criteria for wet ponds are generally the same as those outlined for detention ponds in *Section 5.7.1.5*. Some or all of the components may be used for a given application depending on the site characteristics and restrictions, pollutant loading, and design objectives. Design criteria are provided in this section or in Volume V of the SWMMWW for the following elements:

Design Element	SWMMWW Design Criteria	Seattle-specific Design Criteria
Pond geometry	✓	✓
Berms and baffles	✓	Refer to Detention Ponds (<i>Section 5.7.1.5</i>)
Presettling basin	✓	✓
Overflow structure	✓	Refer to Detention Ponds (<i>Section 5.7.1.5</i>)
Access	✓	Refer to Detention Ponds (<i>Section 5.7.1.5</i>)
Vegetation and landscaping	✓	✓
Inlets and outlets	✓	

Refer to BMP T10.10: – [Wetponds – Basic and Large Wet ponds](#) in Volume V of the SWMMWW for wet pond design criteria. In addition to Ecology’s criteria, the City has also developed specific design criteria for several design elements, which are summarized below.

Pond Geometry

A wet pond typically consists of two cells [within the wet pond](#) that are separated by a baffle or a berm. A baffle is a vertical divider placed across the entire width of the pond, stopping short of the bottom. A berm is a vertical divider typically built up from the bottom, or if in a vault, connects all the way to the bottom.

Seattle specific requirements include the following:

- The full-length berm or baffle promotes plug flow and enhances quiescence and laminar flow through as much of the entire water volume as possible. Alternative methods to the full-length berm or baffle that provide equivalent flow characteristics may be approved on a case-by-case basis by the City.
- Sediment storage shall be provided in the first cell. The sediment storage shall have a minimum depth of 1 foot. A fixed sediment depth monitor shall be installed in the first

cell to gauge sediment accumulation unless an alternative gauging method is proposed.

- The minimum depth of the first cell shall be 4 feet, exclusive of sediment storage requirements. The depth of the first cell may be greater than the depth of the second cell.
- Maximum pond depth (excluding sediment storage) shall not exceed 8 feet. Deep ponds (greater than 8 feet) may stratify during summer and create low oxygen conditions near the bottom resulting in re-release of phosphorus and other pollutants back into the water. For wet pool depths in excess of 6 feet, it is recommended that some form of recirculation be provided in the summer, such as a fountain, aerator, or small amount of base flow, to prevent stagnation and low dissolved oxygen conditions.
- The ratio of flow path length to width from the inlet to the outlet shall be at least 3:1. The flow path length is defined as the distance from the inlet to the outlet, as measured at mid-depth. The width at mid-depth can be calculated as follows:
$$\text{width} = (\text{average top width} + \text{average bottom width})/2.$$
- Wet ponds with wet pool volumes less than or equal to 4,000 cubic feet may be single celled (i.e., no baffle or berm is required). However, it is especially important in this case that the flow path length be maximized. The ratio of flow path length to width shall be at least 4:1 in single celled wet ponds, but should preferably be 5:1. In addition, a gravity drain for maintenance shall be provided 12 to 18 inches from the pond bottom.

Berms and Baffles

A berm or baffle shall extend across the full width of the wet pond and tie into the wet pond side slopes. Berm and baffle design criteria for wet ponds are the same as those outlined for detention ponds in *Section 5.7.1.5*.

Presettling

Refer to BMP T6.10 – Presettling Basin in Volume V of the SWMMWW for presettling basin design criteria.

Additional presettling requirements for wet ponds installed in Seattle include:

- Provide 1 foot minimum sediment storage depth.
- Provide 1 foot minimum freeboard (above the design water surface elevation).
- If the runoff will be in direct contact with the soil, line the presettling basin in accordance with the provisions in *Appendix E*.
- Catch basins used for presettling shall be per City of Seattle Standard Plan No. 240, 241 or equivalent.

Overflow Structure

Overflow structure design criteria for wet ponds are the same as those outlined for detention ponds under *Section 5.7.1.5*.

Access

Access requirements for wet ponds are the same as those outlined for detention ponds under *Section 5.7.1.5*.

Vegetation and Landscaping

Refer to BMP T10.10: – [Wetponds – Basic and Large](#) ~~Wet ponds~~ in Volume V of the SWMMWW for vegetation and landscaping requirements.

Additional vegetation and landscaping requirements for wet ponds installed in Seattle include:

- Exposed earth on the pond bottom and interior side slopes shall be sodded or seeded with an appropriate seed mixture. All remaining areas of the tract shall be vegetated or stabilized before the pond is put into operation.
- No trees or shrubs may be planted within 10 feet of inlet or outlet pipes or drainage structures such as spillways or flow spreaders. Species with roots that seek water, such as willow or poplar, shall be avoided within 50 feet of pipes or drainage structures.
- Shrubs that form a dense cover should be planted on slopes above the water quality design water surface on at least three sides. The purpose of planting is to discourage waterfowl use of the pond and to provide shading. *Appendix E* includes a plant list for wet pond peripheries.
- Planting is restricted on berms that impound water either permanently or temporarily during storms. Note: This restriction does not apply to cut slopes that form pond banks, only to berms.
 - Trees or shrubs may not be planted on portions of water-impounding berms taller than 4 feet high. Only grasses may be planted on berms taller than 4 feet.
 - Trees planted on portions of water-impounding berms less than 4 feet high shall be small, not higher than 20 feet mature height, and have a fibrous root system. Table [5.495.50](#) provides a list of small trees with these characteristics.
 - These trees reduce the likelihood of blow-down trees, or the possibility of channeling or piping of water through the root systems, which may contribute to structural failure on berms that retain water.
- All landscape material, including grass, shall be planted in topsoil of sufficient organic content and depth. Native underlying soils may be suitable for planting if amended per Soil Amendment BMP requirements in *Section 5.1*.
- Soil in which trees or shrubs are planted may require additional enrichment or additional compost top-dressing. Consult a certified arborist for site-specific recommendations.
- For a naturalistic effect, as well as ease of maintenance, trees or shrubs should be planted in clumps to form “landscape islands” rather than evenly spaced.
 - The landscaped islands shall be a minimum of 6 feet apart, and if set back from fences or other barriers, the setback distance should also be a minimum of 6 feet. Where tree foliage extends low to the ground, the 6 feet of setback should be

counted from the outer dripline of the trees (estimated at maturity). This setback allows a 6-foot-wide mower to pass around and between clumps.

- Evergreen trees and other trees that produce relatively little leaf-fall (such as Oregon ash, mimosa, or locust) are preferred.
- Trees should be set back so that branches do not extend over the pond (to prevent leaf-drop into the water).
- Drought tolerant species are recommended.

5.8.6.6. BMP Sizing

Refer to BMP T10.10:– [Wetponds – Basic and Large Wet Ponds](#) in Volume V of the SWMMWW for BMP Sizing considerations.

5.8.6.7. Minimum Construction Requirements

Refer to BMP T10.10:– [Wetponds – Basic and Large Wet Ponds](#) in Volume V of the SWMMWW for minimum construction requirements. Additional minimum construction requirements for wet ponds installed in Seattle are the same as those outlined for detention ponds under *Section 5.7.1.7*.

5.8.6.8. Operations and Maintenance Requirements

Wet pond O&M requirements are provided in *Appendix G (BMP No. 12)*.

5.8.7. Wet Vaults

5.8.7.1. Description

Wet vaults are drainage facilities that contain permanent pools of water that are filled during the initial runoff from a storm event. They are similar to wet ponds, except the wet pool is constructed below grade.

5.8.7.2. Performance Mechanisms

Wet vaults are designed to optimize water quality treatment by dissipating energy and providing retention time in order to settle out particulate pollutants. Being underground, the wet vault lacks the biological pollutant removal mechanisms, such as algae uptake, present in surface wet ponds. Wet vaults are believed to be ineffective in removing dissolved pollutants such as soluble phosphorus or metals, such as copper.

5.8.7.3. Applicability

A wet vault can be applied to meet the requirements as summarized below. Wet vaults can be combined with detention storage to provide flow control (refer to Section 5.8.9).

BMP	On-site		Flow Control			Water Quality				Conveyance
	List	Standard	Forest	Pasture	Peak	Basic	Enhanced	Oil Control	Phosphorus	
Wet Vault						✓	TT-A ^a or TT-B		TT-B	✓
Wet Vault and API oil/water separator						✓		✓		✓

^a The Media Filter media shall be of a nature that has the capability to remove dissolved metals effectively as approved by Ecology and accepted by the Director.

TT-A = Treatment Train A (must-shall be followed by Basic Sand Filter, Sand Filter Vault, or an approved Proprietary and Emerging Water Quality Treatment Technology [Section 5.8.11]).

TT-B = Treatment Train B (must-shall be followed by Basic Sand Filter or Sand Filter Vault).

Refer to Section 3.5.2.2 for more information on Two-BMP Treatment Trains.

5.8.7.4. Site Considerations

The following site considerations can help determine the feasibility of a wet vault for a particular site:

- While there are no specific setback requirements for wet vaults, vault location and vault material approval is required, and may require geotechnical analysis.
- Wet vaults are not allowed within steep slopes, known landslide areas, and their 15-foot buffers as defined by the regulations for ECAs (SMC, Section 25.09.012). For wet vaults within a setback equal to the height of the slope to a maximum of 50 feet from the top of steep slope and known landslide area, a slope stability assessment shall be completed by a licensed geotechnical engineer or engineering geologist considering the effects on slope stability due to a leaking or damaged BMP. More

[stringent exfiltration \(i.e., watertightness\) testing of wet vaults within a 50-foot setback from the top of the steep slope and known landslide area may be required.](#)

- Consider wet vaults where there are space limitations precluding the use of other treatment BMPs.
- Consider how the wet vault grates and access points fit within a site plan, including restrictions for safety considerations and restriction of pollutants entering through grates. Grates shall not operate as inlets. Generally, the surrounding area should be sloped away from grates.
- Consider how access will be provided for Vector trucks for sediment removal.

Additional site considerations may apply depending on site conditions and other factors.

5.8.7.5. Design Criteria

As with wet ponds, the primary design factor that determines the removal efficiency of a wet vault is the volume of the facility. The larger the volume, the higher the potential for pollutant removal. Performance is also improved by avoiding dead zones (like corners) where little exchange occurs, using large length-to-width ratios, dissipating energy at the inlet, and ensuring that flow rates are uniform to the extent possible and not increased between cells.

The methods for designing the wet vault are identical to the methods for designing wet ponds. The following provides a description and requirements for the components of wet vaults. Typical design details and concepts for the wet vault are shown in Figure [5.325-27](#). Some or all of the components may be used for a given application depending on the site characteristics and restrictions, pollutant loading, and design objectives. Design criteria are provided in this section for the following elements:

- Wet vault geometry
- Wet vault configuration
- Inlet, outlet and bypass, if used
- Modifications if combining with a baffle oil/water separator
- Modifications if combining with detention
- Access to cells for maintenance
- Structural requirements

Wet Vault Geometry

The minimum flow length-to-width ratio is 3:1. A greater ratio is desirable. The inlet and outlet should be at opposing corners of the vault to increase the flow path, if possible. Wet pool depths for vaults are the same as specified for wet ponds except for the following modifications:

- The sediment storage shall average 1 foot.
- The depth above sediment storage to the water quality design water surface shall be a minimum of 4 feet deep since planting cannot be used to prevent resuspension of

sediment in shallow water (as it can in open ponds) and to provide for a submerged inlet.

- The maximum depth from finished grade to the vault invert shall be 17 feet to allow for removing sediment by Vactor.

Wet Vault Configuration

The vault shall be separated into three cells by a wall and a baffle (baffle can be removable). The following criteria apply:

- A wall shall be placed at approximately one-third of the wet vault length.
- The wall height shall be set no higher than the water quality design water surface, and no lower than 1 foot below.
- A baffle shall be placed downstream of the wall, with a minimum distance between the wall and the baffle of 5 feet.
- The baffle shall extend from a minimum of 1 foot above the water quality design water surface to a minimum of 1 foot below the invert elevation of the inlet pipe.
- The lowest point of the baffle shall be a minimum of 2 feet from the bottom of the vault, and greater if feasible.

Note: If the vault is less than 2,000 cubic feet (inside dimensions), the vault may be one-celled.

Inlet, Outlet and Bypass

The following criteria apply to inlets, outlets, and bypasses:

- The number of inlets to the wet vault should be limited, and the flow path length shall be maximized from inlet to outlet for all inlets to the vault.
- The inlet to the wet vault shall be submerged with the inlet pipe invert a minimum of 3 feet from the vault bottom (not including sediment storage). The top of the inlet pipe should be submerged at least 1 foot, if possible.

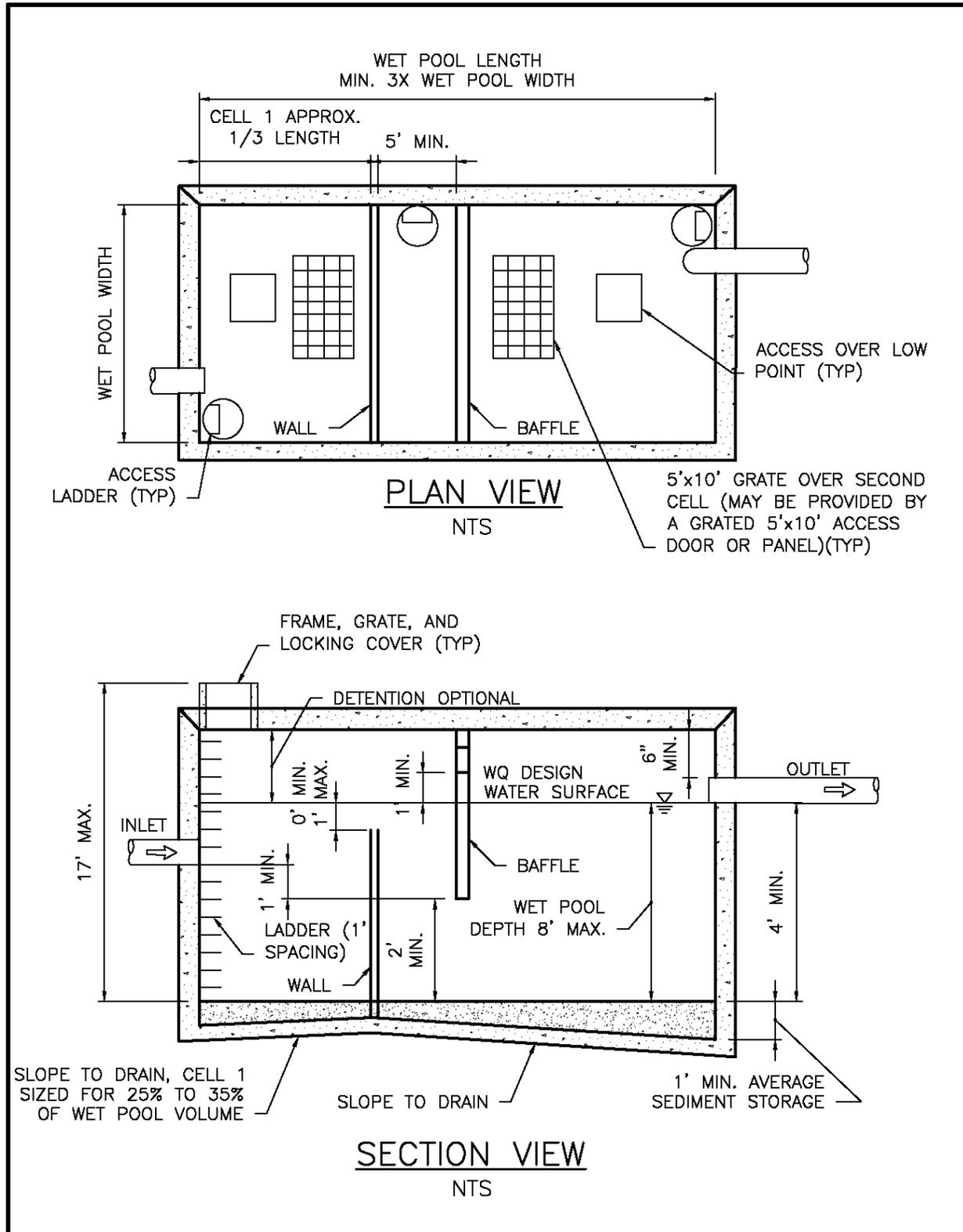


Figure 5.325-27. Typical Wet Vault.

The submerged inlet is to dissipate energy of the incoming flow. The distance from the bottom is to minimize resuspension of settled sediments. Alternative inlet designs that accomplish these objectives are acceptable.

- Unless designed as an offline facility, the capacity of the outlet pipe and available head above the outlet pipe shall be designed to convey the design flow for developed site conditions with a 1 percent annual probability (100-year recurrence) without overtopping the vault. The available head above the outlet pipe shall be a minimum of 6 inches.
- In single cell wet vaults (without a baffle), the outlet pipe shall be back-sloped or have a tee section, the lower arm of which shall extend 1 foot below the water quality design water surface to provide for trapping of oils and floatables in the vault.
- In a combination wet vault with detention, the outlet pipe shall have a flow control riser tee that extends a minimum of 2 feet below the water quality design water surface.
- Where pipes enter and leave the vault they shall be watertight.
- Valved and piped bypass of flows for maintenance is preferred. This isolates the wet vault for safe entry, prevents resuspension of particle pollutants during a cleaning operation, and manages the volume of water for disposal during cleaning.

Modifications if Combining with a Baffle Oil/Water Separator

If the project site is a high-use site and a wet vault is proposed, the vault may be combined with a baffle oil/water separator to meet the water quality treatment requirements with one facility rather than two. Structural modifications and added design criteria are provided below. However, the maintenance requirements for baffle oil/water separators shall be adhered to, in addition to those for a regular wet vault. This will result in more frequent inspection and cleaning than for a wet vault. Refer to *Section 5.8.10.8* for information on maintenance of baffle oil/water separators.

The sizing procedures for the baffle oil/water separator (*Section 5.8.10.6*) shall be run as a check to ensure the vault is large enough. If the oil/water separator sizing procedures result in a larger vault size, increase the wet vault size to match.

An oil retaining baffle shall be provided near the vault outlet. The baffle shall not contain a high-flow overflow, or else the retained oil will be washed out of the vault during large storms.

Additional design criteria for a combined wet vault with baffle oil/water separator are as follows:

- The vault shall have a minimum length-to-width ratio of 5:1.
- The vault shall have a design water depth-to-width ratio of between 1:3 to 1:2.
- The vault shall be watertight and shall be coated to protect from corrosion.
- Separator vaults shall have a shutoff mechanism on the outlet pipe to prevent oil discharges during maintenance and to provide emergency shut-off capability in case of a spill. A valve box and riser shall also be provided.

- Wet vaults used as oil/water separators shall be offline and shall bypass flows greater than the offline water quality design flow (i.e., the water quality design flow multiplied by the offline factor of 3.0).

This design minimizes the entrainment and/or emulsification of previously captured oil during very high flow events.

Modifications if Combining with Detention

The design criteria for detention vaults/[chambers](#) and wet vaults shall both be met, with the exception of the modifications included in BMP T10.40 – Combined Detention and Wetpool Facilities in Volume V of the SWMMWW.

Access to Cells for Maintenance

Refer to the access criteria listed under Detention Vaults/[Chambers](#) (*Section 5.7.3.5*). Access shall be provided to allow personnel to enter and provide emergency egress from all cells of a wet vault using the following criteria:

- For vaults with greater than 1,250 square feet of floor area, a 5-foot by 10-foot removable panel shall be provided over the inlet pipe (instead of a standard frame, grate and solid cover). Alternatively, a separate access vault may be provided.
- For vaults under roadways, the removable panel shall be located outside the travel lanes. Alternatively, multiple standard locking maintenance hole covers may be provided. Removable panels shall be at grade, have stainless steel lifting eyes, and weigh no more than 5 tons per panel.
- All access openings, except those covered by removable panels, shall have round, solid locking lids, or 3-foot square locking covers.
- Vaults with widths of 10 feet or less shall have removable lids.
- Internal structural walls of large vaults shall be provided with separate access risers or openings sufficient for maintenance access between cells.

Structural Requirements

Wet vaults shall conform with the “Materials” and “Structural Stability” criteria specified for detention vaults/[chambers](#) in *Section 5.7.3.5*.

Additional structural design criteria for a combined wet vault with baffle oil/water separator are as follows:

- The vault floor shall be sloped to drain to access points with the intent to allow flushing to Vactor points for sediment removal.
- A minimum of 50 square feet of grate shall be provided over each cell. For vaults in which the surface area of the second cell is greater than 1,250 square feet, 4 percent of the top shall be grated. This requirement may be met by one grate or by many smaller grates distributed over the second cell area. Note: a grated access door can be used to meet this requirement.

The grate allows air contact with the wet pool in order to minimize stagnant conditions which can result in oxygen depletion, especially in warm weather.

- All metal parts shall be corrosion-resistant. Galvanized materials shall not be used since galvanized metal contributes zinc to stormwater, sometimes in very high concentrations. Grates shall be coated for corrosion resistance with elastomeric epoxy or marine paint without zinc.
- The cells of a wet vault shall not be divided into additional subcells by internal walls. If internal structural support is needed, it is preferred that post and pier construction be used to support the vault lid rather than walls. Any walls used within cells shall be positioned so as to lengthen, rather than divide, the flow path.

Treatment effectiveness in wet pool facilities is related to the extent to which plug flow is achieved and short-circuiting and dead zones are avoided. Structural walls placed within the cells can interfere with plug flow and create significant dead zones, reducing treatment effectiveness.

5.8.7.6. BMP Sizing

Refer to [Wet Ponds](#) (Section 5.8.6.6) for BMP Sizing information.

5.8.7.7. Minimum Construction Requirements

Refer to the construction-related issues outlined above as part of the design criteria. Additional construction requirements include:

- Vault floor shall be sloped to drain.
- [Wet vaults shall be field tested for exfiltration \(i.e., watertightness\) as follows:](#)
~~Exfiltration or infiltration testing is required. Contractor shall propose a test method.~~
 - [Plug the inlets and outlet and fill the vault to the top of the wet pool volume \(plus one-half the distance from the outlet invert to the top of the riser on the outlet structure for a combination detention/wet vault\).](#)
 - [The maximum allowable leakage shall not exceed one percent of the volume over a 24-hour period.](#)
- All sediment shall be removed at the end of construction.

5.8.7.8. Operations and Maintenance Requirements

Wet vault O&M requirements are provided in *Appendix G (BMP No. 13)*.

5.8.8. Stormwater Treatment Wetlands

5.8.8.1. Description

Stormwater treatment wetlands are similar to wet ponds, but also provide a shallow marsh area to allow the establishment of emergent wetland aquatic plants, which improves pollutant removal.

5.8.8.2. Performance Mechanisms

Stormwater treatment wetlands remove sediment, metals, and pollutants that bind to humic or organic acids primarily through settling and biological uptake. Secondary performance mechanisms include filtration and soil adsorption. Phosphorus removal in stormwater wetlands is highly variable; therefore stormwater treatment wetlands are not expected to provide phosphorus control.

In land development situations, wetlands are usually constructed for two main reasons: to replace or mitigate impacts when natural wetlands are filled or impacted by development (mitigation wetlands); and to treat stormwater runoff (stormwater treatment wetlands). Mitigation wetlands may not be used as stormwater treatment facilities, because stormwater treatment functions are not compatible with normal wetland function.

5.8.8.3. Applicability

A stormwater treatment wetland can be applied to meet the requirements as summarized below. Stormwater treatment wetlands can be combined with detention storage to provide flow control (refer to *Section 5.8.9*).

BMP	On-site		Flow Control			Water Quality				Conveyance
	List	Standard	Forest	Pasture	Peak	Basic	Enhanced	Oil Control	Phosphorus	
Stormwater treatment wetland						✓	✓		TT-A	✓

TT-A = Treatment Train A (~~must~~ shall be followed by a Basic Sand Filter or Sand Filter Vault (*Section 5.8.5*).

Refer to *Section 3.5.2.2* for more information on Two-BMP Treatment Trains.

5.8.8.4. Site Considerations

Refer to BMP T10.30 – Stormwater Treatment Wetlands in Volume V of the SWMMWW for site considerations. Additional site considerations may apply depending on site conditions and other factors. Refer to Volume V of the SWMMWW for stormwater treatment wetland setback requirements.

5.8.8.5. Design Criteria

The following provides a description and requirements for the components of stormwater treatment wetlands. Some or all of the components may be used for a given application

depending on the site characteristics and restrictions, pollutant loading, and design objectives. Design criteria are provided in this section or in Volume V of the SWMMWW for the following elements:

Design Element	SWMMWW Design Criteria	Seattle-specific Design Criteria
Inlets and outlets	✓	✓
Wetland Geometry	✓	
Lining requirements	✓	
Access and setbacks	✓	
Planting requirements	✓	

Refer to BMP T10.30 – Stormwater Treatment Wetlands Volume V of the SWMMWW for design criteria. In addition to Ecology’s criteria, the City has also developed specific design criteria for inlets and outlets which are summarized below.

Inlets and Outlets

Refer to Wet Ponds (*Section 5.8.6.5*) for inlet and outlet requirements.

The following additional requirements apply to Stormwater Treatment Wetlands installed in Seattle:

- Inlets and outlets shall be placed to maximize the flow path through the facility. The ratio of flow path length to width from the inlet to the outlet shall be at least 3:1. The flow path length is defined as the distance from the inlet to the outlet, as measured at mid-depth. The width at mid-depth can be calculated as follows: width = (average top width + average bottom width)/2.
- To the extent possible create a complex microtopography within the wetland. Design the flow path to maximize sinuous flow between wetland cells.

5.8.8.6. BMP Sizing

Refer to BMP T10.30 – Stormwater Treatment Wetlands in Volume V of the SWMMWW for BMP sizing.

5.8.8.7. Minimum Construction Requirements

Construction requirements are the same as for Wet Ponds (*Section 5.8.6.7*).

5.8.8.8. Operations and Maintenance Requirements

Stormwater treatment wetland O&M requirements are provided in *Appendix G (BMP No. 14)*.

5.8.9. Combined Detention and Wet Pool Facilities

5.8.9.1. Description

Combined detention and water quality wet pool facilities have the appearance of a detention facility but contain a permanent pool of water as well. The following design procedures, requirements, and recommendations cover differences in the design of the stand-alone water quality facility when combined with detention storage. Site considerations, setbacks, and other typical siting and design considerations for combined facilities are the same as specified for each individual facility, unless noted below. The following combined facilities are addressed in this section:

- Detention/wet pond (basic and large)
- Detention/wet vault
- Detention/stormwater wetland.

There are two sizes of the combined wet pond, a basic and a large, but only a basic size for the combined wet vault and combined stormwater wetland. The facility sizes (basic and large) are related to the treatment performance goals (refer to *Section 3.5.2*).

5.8.9.2. Performance Mechanisms

The intent of a combined detention and wet pool facility is to provide water quality treatment in addition to flow control. The three types of combined facilities provide water quality treatment as follows:

- A combined detention/wet pond provides pollutant removal via settling and biological uptake.
- A combined detention/wet vault provides pollutant removal via settling.
- A combined detention/stormwater wetland provides pollutant removal via settling, biological uptake, filtration, and soil adsorption.

5.8.9.3. Applicability

Combined detention and wet pool facilities can be applied to meet the requirements as summarized below.

BMP	On-site		Flow Control			Water Quality				Conveyance
	List	Standard	Forest	Pasture	Peak	Basic	Enhanced	Oil Control	Phosphorus	
Combined detention and wet pond			✓	✓	✓	✓	TT-B		TT-A	✓
Combined detention and wet vault			✓ ^a	✓ ^a	✓ ^a	✓	TT-B		TT-A	✓
Combined detention and stormwater wetland			✓	✓	✓	✓	TT-B		TT-A	✓

^a Standard may be partially or completely achieved depending upon contributing area and minimum orifice size.

TT-A = Treatment Train A ([must shall](#) be followed by a Basic Sand Filter or Sand Filter Vault (*Section 5.8.5*).

TT-B = Treatment Train B ([must shall](#) be followed by a Basic Sand Filter or Sand Filter Vault (*Section 5.8.5*) or an approved Proprietary and Emerging Water Quality Treatment Technology (*Section 5.8.11*).

Refer to *Section 3.5.2.2* for more information on Two-BMP Treatment Trains.

5.8.9.4. Site Considerations

Refer to BMP T10.40 – Combined Detention and Wet Pool Facilities in Volume V of the SWMMWW for site considerations and setback requirements. Additional site considerations may apply depending on site conditions and other factors.

5.8.9.5. Design Criteria

Refer to BMP T10.40 – Combined Detention and Wetpool Facilities in Volume V of the SWMMWW for design criteria.

Combined Detention and Wet Vault

The design criteria for detention vaults/[chambers](#) and wet vaults shall both be met, except the modifications included in BMP T10.40 – Combined Detention and Wetpool Facilities in Volume V of the SWMMWW.

Combined Detention and Stormwater Wetland

The design criteria for detention ponds and stormwater wetlands shall both be met, except the modifications included in BMP T10.40 – Combined Detention and Wetpool Facilities in Volume V of the SWMMWW.

5.8.9.6. BMP Sizing

Refer to BMP T10.40 – Combined Detention and Wetpool Facilities in Volume V of the SWMMWW for BMP sizing.

5.8.9.7. Minimum Construction Requirements

Construction requirements are the same as for Wet Ponds (*Section 5.8.6.7*).

5.8.9.8. Operations and Maintenance Requirements

Detention and wet pool O&M requirements are provided in *Appendix G (BMPs No. 1, No. 3, No. 12, No. 13. and No. 14)*.

5.8.10. Oil/Water Separators

5.8.10.1. Description

Oil/water separators rely on passive mechanisms that take advantage of oil being lighter than water. Oil rises to the surface and can be periodically removed. The two types of oil/water separators typically used for stormwater treatment described in this section are the baffle type or American Petroleum Institute (API) oil/water separator and the coalescing plate (CP) oil/water separator:

1. **Baffle type separator (API):** Baffle (API) oil/water separators use vaults that have multiple cells separated by baffles extending down from the top of the vault. The baffles block oil flow out of the vault. Baffles are also commonly installed at the bottom of the vault to trap solids and sludge that accumulate over time. In many situations, simple floating or more sophisticated mechanical oil skimmers are installed to remove the oil once it has separated from the water.
2. **Coalescing plate (CP) separator:** CP separators are typically manufactured units consisting of a baffled vault containing several inclined corrugated plates stacked and bundled together. The plates are equally spaced (typical plate spacing ranges from 0.25 to 1 inch) and are made of a variety of materials, the most common being fiberglass and polypropylene. Efficient separation results because the plates reduce the vertical distance oil droplets shall rise in order to separate from the stormwater. Once they reach the plate, oil droplets form a film on the plate surface. The film builds up over time until it becomes thick enough to migrate upward along the inclined plate. When the film reaches the edge of the plate, oil is released as large droplets which rise rapidly to the surface, where the oil accumulates until the unit is maintained. Because the plate pack increases treatment effectiveness significantly, CP separators can achieve a specified treatment level with a smaller vault size than a simple baffle separator.

5.8.10.2. Performance Mechanisms

Oil/water separators are designed to remove free oil and are not generally effective in removing oil that has become either chemically or mechanically emulsified or dissolved in the stormwater.

5.8.10.3. Applicability

Oil/water separators can be applied to meet the requirements listed below.

BMP	On-site		Flow Control			Water Quality				Conveyance
	List	Standard	Forest	Pasture	Peak	Basic	Enhanced	Oil Control	Phosphorus	
API oil/water separator								✓		
CP oil/water separator								✓		

API oil/water separators are not effective in removing low concentrations of oil, and therefore, are not recommended for use on sites with very dilute concentrations of TPH. Other stormwater facilities, such as sand filters, biofiltration swales, and emerging water quality treatment technologies may be more applicable under these conditions. Linear sand filters are also approved for oil control (refer to *Section 5.8.5*). Spill control separators are often used as a source control BMP, but are not permitted as a stormwater treatment oil control BMP. Refer to *Volume 4, Source Control* for additional details on spill prevention and control.

5.8.10.4. Site Considerations

The following considerations can influence the feasibility of API oil/water separators for a particular site:

- Oil/water separators shall be installed upstream of other water quality treatment BMPs (except wet vaults), pumps, and conveyance structures that introduce turbulence.
- Oil/water separators may be located upstream or downstream of flow control BMPs.
- Oil/water separators shall be located offline and bypass the incremental portion of flows that exceed the offline water quality design flow rate (refer to *Section 4.2.1*). If it is not possible to locate the separator offline (e.g., roadway intersections), try to minimize the size of the area requiring oil control, and use the on-line water quality design flow rate (refer to *Section 4.2.1*).
- Oil/water separators shall not be used for removal of dissolved or emulsified materials such as coolants, soluble lubricants, glycols (anti-freeze), and alcohols.
- Oil/water separators are best located in areas where the contributing drainage area is nearly all impervious and a fairly high load of TPH is likely to be generated.
- Excluding unpaved areas helps to minimize the amount of sediment entering the vault, which reduces the need for maintenance. Pretreatment should be considered if the level of total suspended solids (TSS) in the inlet flow would cause clogging or otherwise impair the long-term efficiency of the separator.

The following considerations can influence the feasibility of CP separators for a particular site:

- CP separators are typically smaller than API separators and are suitable for sites where space is limited.
- CP separator designs may be required to add pretreatment for TSS that could cause clogging of the CP separator, or otherwise impair the long-term effectiveness of the separator.
- Typical applications of CP oil/water separators include inflows from small contributing drainage areas (fueling stations, maintenance shops, etc.) due to space limitations. However, if plugging of the plates is likely, then a new design basis for the baffle type API separator may be considered on an experimental basis.

Additional site considerations may apply depending on site conditions and other factors.

5.8.10.5. Design Criteria

The following provides a description and requirements for the components of oil/water separators. Some or all of the components may be used for a given application depending on the site characteristics and restrictions, pollutant loading, and design objectives. Design criteria are provided in this section for the following elements:

- Vault geometry
- Vault structure
- Baffles
- Separator plates
- Material requirements
- Inlet and outlet
- Access

Note: The following criteria apply to both API baffle and CP separators, unless otherwise specified.

Vault Geometry

Oil/water separator vaults are typically divided in three compartments: a forebay, an oil separation cell, and an afterbay:

- The length of the forebay shall be a minimum of 0.33 the length of the vault (L), but 0.5 L is recommended.
- The surface area of the forebay shall be at least 20 square feet per 10,000 square feet of tributary impervious area draining to the separator.
- The forebay is designed primarily to trap and collect sediment and debris, support plug flow conditions, and reduce turbulence.
- The oil separation cell traps and holds oil as it rises from the water column, and it serves as a secondary sediment collection area.
- The afterbay provides a relatively oil-free cell before the outlet and provides a secondary oil separation area.

The following criteria apply specifically to API separator bay vaults (Figure [5.335-28](#)):

- The design water depth shall be no deeper than 8 feet unless approved by the Director. Depths greater than 8 feet may be permitted on a case-by-case basis, taking into consideration the potential for depletion of oxygen in the water during the warm summer months.
- Baffle separator vaults shall have a minimum length-to-width ratio of 5:1.
- Baffle separator vaults shall have a design water depth-to-width ratio of between 0.3 and 0.5.

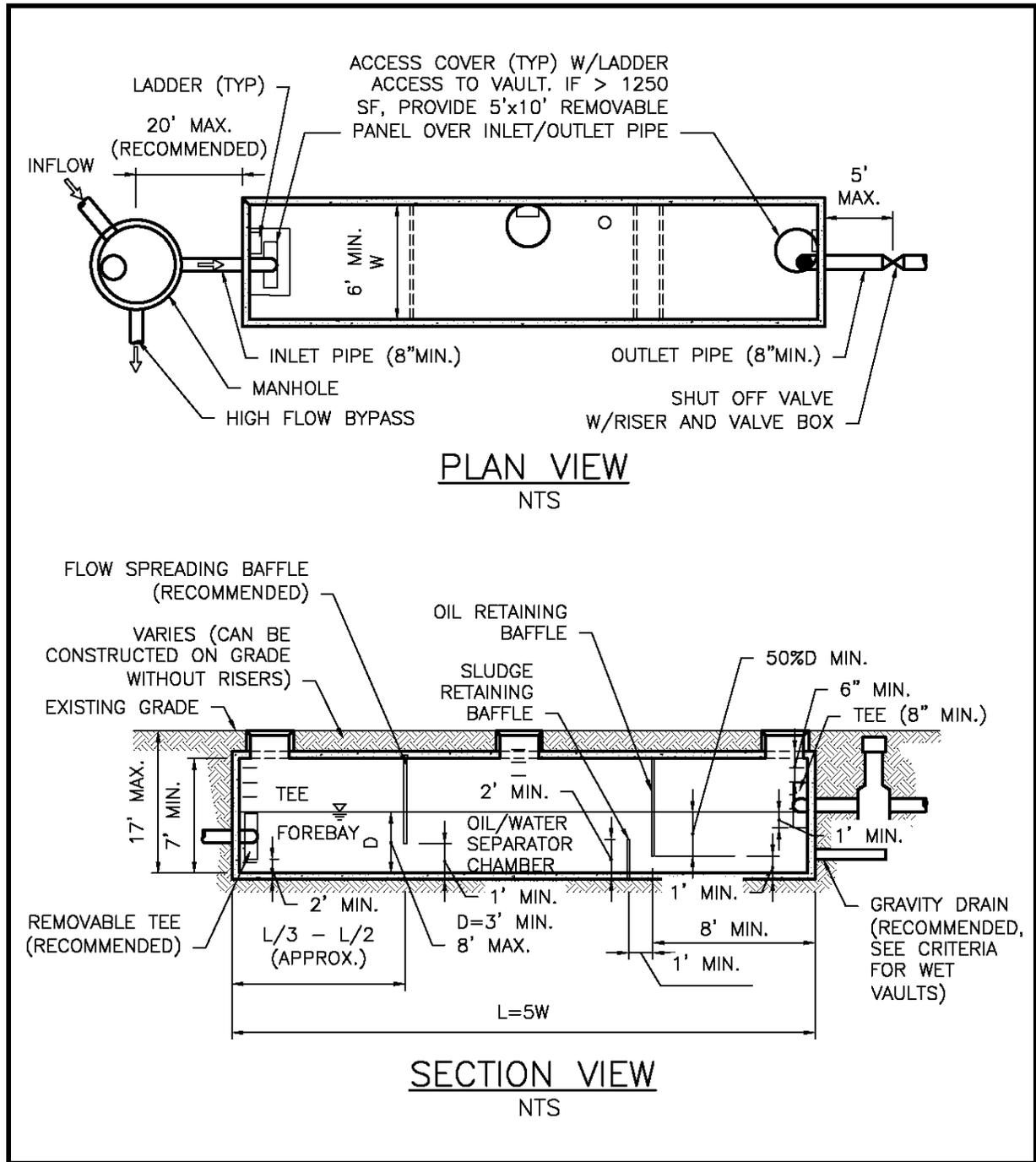


Figure 5.335-28. Typical API (Baffle Type) Separator.

The following criteria apply specifically to CP separators (Figure 5.345-29):

- In lieu of an attached forebay, a separate grit chamber, sized to be at least 20 square feet per 10,000 square feet of tributary impervious area, may precede the oil/water separator.

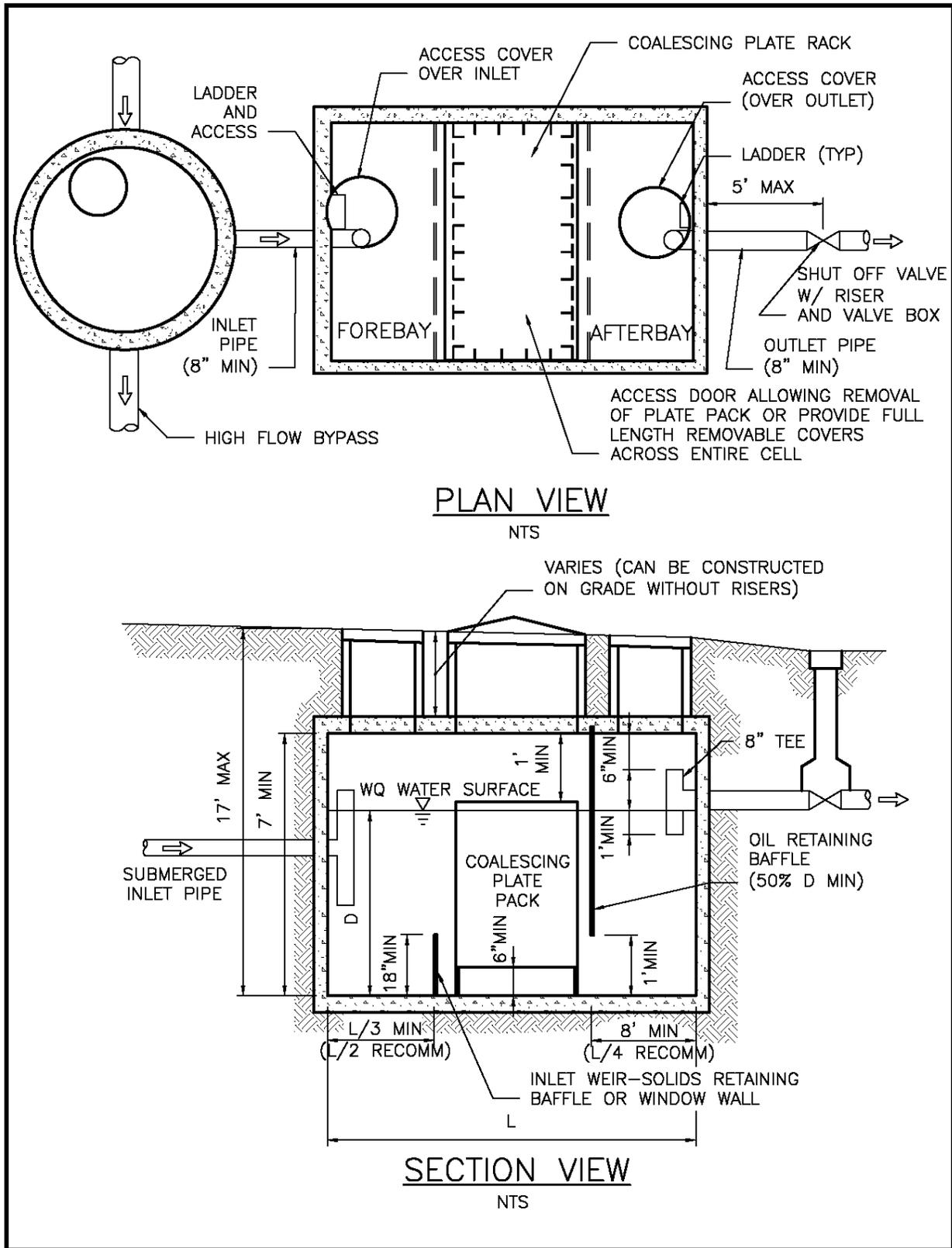


Figure 5.345-29. Typical Coalescing Plate Separator.

Vault Structure

The following criteria apply to both API and CP separator bays:

- Separator vaults shall be watertight.
- Separator vaults shall have a shutoff mechanism on the outlet pipe to prevent oil discharges during maintenance and to provide emergency shutoff capability in the event of a spill. A valve box and riser shall be provided.
- Roughing screens for the forebay or upstream of the separator to remove debris, should be used if needed. Screen openings should be approximately 0.75 inch.
- A gravity drain for maintenance is recommended if grade allows. The drain invert should be at a depth equal to the depth of the oil retaining baffle. Deeper drains are encouraged where feasible.
- If large amounts of oil are likely to be captured, a bleed-off pipe and separate waste oil tank can be located adjacent to the vault to channel separated oils into the tank. This improves the overall effectiveness of the facility, especially if maintenance is only performed annually. It also improves the quality of the waste oil recovered from the facility.
- Absorbents and/or skimmers should be used in the afterbay.

Baffles

The following criteria apply specifically to API separator bay vaults:

- A removable flow-spreading baffle, extending from the surface to a depth of up to half of the vault depth (D) is recommended to spread flows. Design guidelines for level spreaders are provided in *Appendix E*.
- A removable oil retaining baffle shall be provided and located approximately one-quarter of the distance from the outlet wall or a minimum of 8 feet, whichever is greater (the 8-foot minimum is for maintenance purposes). The oil-retaining baffle shall extend from the elevation of the water surface to a depth of at least 50 percent of the design water depth and at least 1 foot from the separator bottom. Various configurations are possible, but the baffle shall be designed to minimize turbulence and entrainment of sediment.
- The removable bottom baffle (sediment-retaining baffle) shall be a minimum of 24 inches, and located at least 1 foot from the oil-retaining baffle. A “window wall” baffle may be used, but the area of the window opening shall be at least three times greater than the area of the inflow pipe.
- Baffles may be fixed rather than removable if additional entry ports and ladders are provided so that both sides of the baffle are accessible by maintenance crews.
- Baffle height to water depth ratios should be 0.85 for top baffles and 0.15 for bottom baffles.

The following criteria apply specifically to CP separators:

- An oil-retaining baffle shall be provided. For large units, a baffle position of one-quarter of the distance from the outlet wall is recommended. The oil-retaining baffle shall extend from the water surface to a depth of at least 50 percent of the design water depth and at least 1 foot from the separator bottom. Various configurations are possible, but the baffle shall be designed to minimize turbulence and entrainment of sediment.

- A bottom sediment-retaining baffle shall be provided upstream of the plate pack. The minimum height of the sludge-retaining baffle shall be 18 inches. Window walls may be used, but the window opening shall be a minimum of three times greater than the area of the inflow pipe.

Coalescing Plate Separators

The following criteria apply specifically to CP separators:

- Plates shall be inclined at 45 to 60 degrees from the horizontal. This range of angles exceeds the angle of repose of many solids, and therefore, provides more effective droplet separation while minimizing the accumulation of solids on the individual plates.
- Plates shall have a minimum spacing of 0.5-inch and have corrugations.
- Plates shall be securely bundled in a plate pack for ease of removal and cleaning (with high-pressure rinse or equivalent).
- The plate pack shall be a minimum of 6 inches from the vault bottom for sediment storage.
- There should be 1 foot of head space between the top of the plate pack and the bottom of the vault cover.

Material Requirements

The following guidelines apply when selecting oil/water separator materials:

- Vault baffles shall be concrete, stainless steel, fiberglass reinforced plastic, or another acceptable material, and shall be securely fastened to the vault.
- The following criteria applies specifically to CP separators:
 - Plate packs shall be made of fiberglass, stainless steel, or polypropylene, unless otherwise recommended by the manufacturer and approved by the Director.
 - The entire space between the sides of the plate pack and the vault wall shall be filled with a solid but light-weight removable material such as a plastic or polyethylene foam to reduce short-circuiting around the plate pack. Rubber flaps are not effective for this purpose.

Inlet and Outlet

The following inlet and outlet criteria apply to both types of oil/water separators:

- The separator inlet shall be submerged. A tee section may be used to submerge the incoming flow and shall be at least 2 feet from the bottom of the tank and extend above the water quality design water surface.
- The submerged inlet is to dissipate energy of the incoming flow. The distance from the bottom is to minimize resuspension of settled sediments. Extending the tee to the surface allows air to escape the flow, thus reducing turbulence. Alternative inlet designs that accomplish these objectives are acceptable.
- The vault outlet pipe shall be sized to pass the water quality design flow before overflow. The vault outlet pipe shall be back-sloped or have a tee extending 1 foot above and below the water quality design water surface to provide for secondary trapping of oils and floatables in the wet vault. Note: The invert of the outlet pipe sets the water quality design water surface elevation.

Access Requirements

Access requirements are the same as for wet vaults (*Section 5.8.7.5*).

The following access requirements also apply for CP separators:

- Access to the compartment containing the plate pack shall be a removable panel or other access able to be opened wide enough to remove the entire coalescing plate bundle from the cell for cleaning or replacement. Doors or panels shall have stainless steel lifting eyes, and panels shall weigh no more than 5 tons per panel.
- A parking area or access pad (25-foot by 15-foot minimum) shall be provided near the coalescing plate bundles to allow for their removal from the vault by a truck-mounted crane or backhoe, and to allow for extracting accumulated solids and oils from the vault using a Vactor truck.

5.8.10.6. BMP Sizing

For offline separators, the high flow bypass shall be designed so that all flows up to and including the water quality design flow rate are directed to the separator. Design guidelines for flow splitters are provided in *Appendix E*. The water quality design flow rate is calculated by multiplying the design flow rate determined using an approved continuous simulation model by the offline ratio of 3.0. For on-line separators, the water quality design flow rate is calculated by multiplying the flow rate determined using an approved continuous simulation model by the on-line ratio of 1.65. Separators shall be designed as offline facilities wherever possible.

The API and CP sizing method is based on the horizontal velocity of the bulk fluid (V_h), the oil rise rate (V_t), the residence time (t_m), width, depth, and length considerations as follows:

1. Determine the oil rise rate, V_t , ~~in cm/sec~~, using Stokes' Law (Water Pollution Control Federation 1985) or empirical determination. Stokes Law assumes that flow is laminar and that oil droplets are spherical shaped. Stokes Law equation for rise rate, V_t (ft/min):

$$V_t = \frac{[1.97 * g * (\sigma_w - \sigma_o) * D^2]}{(18 * \eta_w)}$$

Where:

$$V_t = \text{oil rise rate (cm/sec)}$$

1.97 = conversion factor (cm/sec to ft/min)
 g = gravitational constant (981 cm/sec²)
 D = diameter of the oil particle (cm)
 σ_w = water density in grams per cubic centimeter (gm/cc) at 32°F
 σ_o = oil density
 η_w = dynamic viscosity of water (gm/cm-sec) at water temperature of 32°F, (Refer to American Petroleum Institute 1990)

Use:

$$g = 981 \text{ cm/sec}^2$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 D &= 60 \text{ microns (0.006 cm)} \\
 \sigma_w &= 0.999 \text{ gm/cc at } 32^\circ\text{F} \\
 \sigma_o &= \text{Select conservatively high oil density. For example, if} \\
 &\text{diesel oil @ } \sigma_o = 0.85 \text{ gm/cc and motor oil @ } \sigma_o = 0.90 \text{ gm/cc can be} \\
 &\text{present then use } \sigma_o = 0.90 \text{ gm/cc} \\
 \eta_w &= 0.017921 \text{ gm/cm-sec}
 \end{aligned}$$

2. Determine Q:

Q = the 15-minute Water Quality design flow rate in ft³/min multiplied by the offline facility ratio of 3.0. Note that some continuous hydrologic models give the water quality design flow rate in ft³/sec. Multiply this flow rate by 60 to obtain the flow rate in ft³/min.

3. Calculate horizontal velocity of the bulk fluid, V_h (in ft/min) and water depth in separator (d) in feet.

$$\begin{aligned}
 V_h &= 15V_t \\
 d &= (Q/2V_h)^{0.51/2}
 \end{aligned}$$

Note: Separator water depth (d) shall be: $3 \leq d \leq 8$ feet to minimize turbulence (American Petroleum Institute 1990; US Army Corps of Engineers 1994). If the calculated depth is less than 3 feet, an API separator is not appropriate for the site. If the calculated depth exceeds 8 feet, consider using two separators.

4. Calculate the minimum residence time (t_m), in minutes, of the separator at depth d:

$$t_m = d/V_t$$

5. Calculate the minimum length of the separator section, I(s):

$$I(s) = (F * Q * t_m) / (w * d) = F * (V_h/V_t) * d$$

Where:

$$F = 1.65$$

Use depth/width (d/w) ratio of 0.5 (American Petroleum Institute 1990)

For other dimensions, including the length of the forebay, the length of the afterbay, and the overall length, L; refer to Figure 5.345-29.

6. Calculate $V = I(s) * w * d = F * Q * t_m$, and $A_h = w * I(s)$

$$\begin{aligned}
 V &= \text{minimum hydraulic design volume (cubic feet)} \\
 A_h &= \text{minimum horizontal area of the separator (square feet)}.
 \end{aligned}$$

CP separators follow the same sizing method as API separators. Calculate the projected (horizontal) surface area of plates needed using the following equation:

$$A_p = Q/V_t = Q/[0.00386 * (\sigma_w - \sigma_o/\eta_w)]$$

$$A_p = A_a(\cosine b)$$

Where:

- A_p = projected surface area of the plate in (ft²); 0.00386 is unit conversion constant
- Q = the on-line (1.65) or offline (3.0) adjustment factor x the 15-minute water quality design flow rate, (ft³/min)
- V_t = Rise rate of 0.033 ft/min, or empirical determination, or Stokes Law based
- σ_w = density of water at 32°F
- σ_o = density of oil at 32°F
- A_a = actual plate area in (ft²) (one side only)
- b = angle of the plates with the horizontal in degrees (usually varies from 45 to 60 degrees)
- η_w = viscosity of water at 32°F.

5.8.10.7. Minimum Construction Requirements

The following are construction requirements associated with the construction of an oil/water separator:

- Follow the manufacturer's recommended construction procedures and installation instructions, as well as any applicable City requirements.
- Upon completion of installation, thoroughly clean and flush the oil/water separator prior to operation.
- Specify appropriate performance tests after installation and shakedown, and/or provide certification by a licensed engineer that the separator is functioning in accordance with design objectives.

5.8.10.8. Operations and Maintenance Requirements

Oil/water separator O&M requirements are provided in *Appendix G (BMP No. 18 and 19)*.

5.8.11. Proprietary and Emerging Water Quality Treatment Technologies

This section describes how the City will evaluate the use of proprietary and emerging water quality treatment technologies.

5.8.11.1. Description

To receive Ecology approval for use in stormwater applications in Washington, new technologies shall be evaluated following Ecology's technology assessment protocols (TAPE and CTAPE), which establish guidelines for evaluating the performance of water quality treatment technologies in achieving different levels of performance (i.e., pretreatment, basic, enhanced, phosphorus, oil). The evaluation process requires manufacturers to field test the performance of new water quality treatment technologies. After the successful completion of field testing, the ~~vendor~~ [manufacturer](#) submits a technology evaluation report (TER) to Ecology for review and approval. Information about Ecology's evaluation process can be found at the following website (<https://ecology.wa.gov/Regulations-Permits/Guidance-technical-assistance/Stormwater-permittee-guidance-resources/Emerging-stormwater-treatment-technologies>www.ecy.wa.gov/programs/wq/stormwater/newtech/index.html).

Under the technology assessment process, Ecology assigns "Use Level Designations" to emerging technologies based on the results of the TAPE and CTAPE evaluation. Ecology establishes the use level for each technology and its associated performance level based on the relevance, amount, and quality of performance data available as defined below:

- **GULD – General Use Level Designation:** A General Use Level Designation (GULD) is assigned to technologies for which the performance monitoring demonstrates with a sufficient degree of confidence, that the technology is expected to achieve Ecology's performance goals. Use is subject to conditions, including design restrictions and sizing, documented in a use level designation letter prepared by Ecology.
- **CULD – Conditional Use Level Designation:** A Conditional Use Level Designation (CULD) is assigned to technologies that have considerable performance data not collected per the TAPE protocol. Ecology will allow the use of technologies that receive a CULD for a specified time, during which performance monitoring shall be conducted and a TER submitted to Ecology. Units that are in place do not have to be removed after the specified time period. Use is subject to conditions, including design restrictions and sizing, documented in a use level designation letter prepared by Ecology.
- **PULD – Pilot Use Level Designation:** A Pilot Use Level Designation (PULD) is assigned to new technologies that have limited performance monitoring data or that only have laboratory performance data. The PULD allows limited use of the technology to allow performance monitoring to be conducted. PULD technologies may be installed provided that the ~~vendor~~ [manufacturer](#) and/or developer agree to conduct performance monitoring per the TAPE protocol at all installations. Use is subject to conditions, including design restrictions and sizing, documented in a use level designation letter prepared by Ecology.

5.8.11.2. Performance Mechanisms

Ecology (2018~~2011~~) has established different performance goals for water quality treatment technologies based on the types of pollutants that they are effective in removing and their applicable use for water quality treatment. Proprietary technologies use a wide variety of mechanisms to achieve these performance goals. This section has further information on a small sub-set of proprietary technologies that have achieved a GULD designation using primarily filtration and adsorption.

5.8.11.3. Applicability and Restrictions

The following subset of ~~four~~ TAPE approved proprietary technologies have been evaluated by the City and sized for annual maintenance and can be applied to meet or partially meet the requirements listed below. [Note: Some manufacturers have multiple media blends available, not all of which have received GULD approval.](#) Other proprietary technologies may be applicable, refer to ~~the~~ Ecology's TAPE web [page](#)site.

BMP	On-site		Flow Control			Water Quality				Conveyance
	List	Standard	Forest	Pasture	Peak	Basic	Enhanced	Oil Control	Phosphorus	
BayFilter® (Silica sand, perlite, activated alumina media)						✓				
Filterra®						✓	✓	✓	✓	
FloGard Perk Filter® (Zeolite, perlite, carbon media)						✓			✓	
Stormwater Management StormFilter (StormFilter)® (Zeolite, perlite, granular activated carbon media)						✓				
MWS-Linear Modular Wetland®						✓	✓		✓	
Kraken®						✓			✓	

Note: Hydraulic conductivity differs from sizing for basic treatment, Use the lowest applicable hydraulic conductivity when sizing.

The Director will accept technologies approved by Ecology as described below:

- GULD technologies for use on parcels will be accepted subject to the conditions of use established by in the use level designation established by Ecology and sized for mass loading targeting annual maintenance. Use in the right-of-way is subject to approval by SPU and early consultation is encouraged. Not all GULD approved BMPs will be acceptable.
- CULD technologies will be accepted on a limited basis provided that the project owner signs an agreement with the City stating that the owner will modify/upgrade the system in accordance with any conditions that Ecology may require as part of the final

GULD designation and sized for mass loading targeting annual maintenance. The owner shall also file annual reports as outlined by the City.

- PULD technologies will be accepted on a limited basis to enable manufacturers to obtain data to help fulfill the requirements of the TAPE protocol. These projects shall be approved in advance by the Director of SPU, be sized for mass loading targeting annual maintenance and have an approved monitoring plan reviewed by Ecology, and provide a financial bond to provide clean-up and replacement in the event of failure.

5.8.11.4. Site Considerations

Site considerations for the Filterra® system installation are primarily regarding grading and landscaping. For grading, both the flow entrance to the Filterra® and bypass to a catch basin are important considerations and need to be analyzed together. Landscaping within the Filterra® system shall be from the approved list. Either the box or Filterra Bioscape® systems may be used.

[Site considerations for the MWS-Linear Modular Wetland® are dependent on grading, hydraulics, and landscaping. Landscaping within the MWS-Linear Modular Wetland® system shall be from the approved list. The pretreatment chamber access shall be accessible for replacement of the pretreatment filters.](#)

Site considerations for the filter cartridge systems ([e.g., BayFilter®, FloGard Perk Filter®, StormFilter®](#)) are primarily hydraulic and how to select cartridges, group cartridges and in which kind of structure. Multiple cartridges in a maintenance hole or vault will most likely be easier to remove and replace. Vaults, maintenance hole and catch basin installations and stacked or unstacked cartridges may be allowed. Within the right-of-way, maintenance hole and vault installation are preferred. Multiple heights of cartridge systems and required heads for filter function are available. Backwater conditions may restrict the use of these technologies and both the structure elevations and anticipated water surface elevations of the surrounding drainage system shall be considered.

No specific setbacks or restrictions apply to closed bottom facilities. The following setbacks and restrictions apply to open bottom facilities.

- All open bottom facilities shall be a minimum of 50 feet from the top of any steep (greater than 40 percent) slope. A geotechnical analysis and report shall be prepared addressing the potential impact of the open bottom facility on a slope steeper than 15 percent.
- The water surface at the outlet invert elevation shall be set back 100 feet from existing septic system drain fields. This setback may be reduced with written approval of Public Health – Seattle & King County.

5.8.11.5. Design Criteria

In addition to the manufacturer's design criteria and the conditions of use in Western Washington required by Ecology, Seattle has adopted design criteria on piping and access and manufacturer review.

Piping

Inlet, outlet and interior piping shall have a minimum size of 6 inches. To the extent feasible, piping should be straight with as few bends and turns as possible to reduce headloss and minimize the potential for sediment to accumulate in the piping system.

Access

Access for lifting equipment to remove and replace filter cartridges is required. For filter cartridge systems in a vault or maintenance hole configuration where individual cartridges are not directly below the lid or cover of the structure, a plan for the safe removal and replacement is required.

Manufacturer Review

Design review with the manufacturer of the proprietary technology is required to check grading and variables that are specific to the proposed installation. Sizing requirements in *Section 5.8.11.6* are in addition to the manufacturer's requirements.

5.8.11.6. BMP Sizing

The City has developed sizing criteria for a subset of the proprietary treatment systems that are most commonly used in Seattle. The sizing criteria are based on a target level of once-a-year maintenance to ensure meeting the operations and maintenance requirements established in the Ecology use level designations for each technology. Facilities would not be inspected multiple times during the first year as required by TAPE, but would be designed to perform for 1 year under normal circumstances before maintenance is required.

The sizing criteria were developed using information from each manufacturer regarding how much solid material can be removed before the hydraulic capacity of their system is reduced to the point where it can no longer treat the required design storm without bypassing flow. Solids loading capacity information is fairly limited and each [vendor-manufacturer](#) uses different methods to evaluate. In the absence of standardized testing protocols, the City has used data currently available from the [vendors/manufacturers](#). TSS loading was as shown in Table 3.5. It is anticipated that sizing criteria may be modified as more [vendor-manufacturer](#) testing information becomes available in the future.

For the subset of proprietary technologies in *Section 5.8.11.3*, application of the mass loading ratios will satisfy these requirements for basic treatment. For requirements other than basic treatment, or for other proprietary technologies, separate calculations demonstrating that they meet the annual maintenance goal for mass loading typical for the land use in Seattle are required.

Step 1: Determine the water quality design flow rate

Use an approved continuous model to determine the on-line water quality design flow rate using the following assumptions.

Variable	Assumption
Precipitation Series	Seattle 158-year, 5-minute series
Computational Time Step	15 minutes
HSPF Parameters	LSUR, SLSUR, NSUR shall be adjusted per Appendix F
Inflows to Facility	Surface flow from total drainage area (including impervious and pervious contributing areas) routed to facilities.

Step 2: Adjust the water quality design flow rate

For basic treatment requirements for the subset of proprietary technologies in *Section 5.8.11.3*, adjust the water quality design flow rate using the mass loading ratios below. Multiply the flow rate determined in Step 1 by the mass loading ratio.

Zoning Categories	Mass Loading Ratios ^{a,b}				
	Filter Cartridge Systems^c	Vertical Flow Media Filter Systems^d			
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Parcels zoned as SFR or MFR Non-arterial streets adjacent to properties zoned as SFR or MFR 	2.54 0	1.64 0	2.0	3.0	1.0
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Parcels zoned as neighborhood/commercial, downtown, major institutions, master planned community, or residential/commercial Arterial streets with adjacent property zoned as neighborhood/commercial, downtown, major institutions, master planned community, or residential/commercial 	2.64 0	1.64 0	2.0	3.5	1.0
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Parcels zoned as manufacturing/industrial Non-arterial or arterial streets with adjacent property zoned as manufacturing/industrial 	3.76 0	2.34 0	3.0	4.5	1.5

^a Mass loading ratios were developed for this limited set of proprietary technologies using a mean total suspended solids concentration ([Refer to See Table 3.5](#)) and assumed use of an ~~on-line~~offline water quality design flow rate. Use of this table is restricted to uses that match those assumptions. For other proprietary technologies, or other assumptions, [refer to see Section 3.5-BMP Selection for Water Quality Treatment](#).

^b [When applicable, designer shall round up to the nearest whole cartridge or next largest vault size.](#)

^c [Filter cartridge systems approved for use in the City of Seattle include:](#)

- [BayFilter® \(BaySaver\)](#)
- [FloGard PerkFilter® \(Oldcastle\)](#)
- [Kraken® \(Bio Clean Forterra\)](#)
- [MWS-Linear Modular Wetland® \(Bio Clean Forterra\)](#)
- [StormFilter® \(Contech\)](#)

^d [Vertical flow media filter systems approved for use in the City of Seattle include:](#)

- [BioPod® \(Oldcastle\)](#)
- [Filterra® \(Contech\)](#)

Step 3: Determine the allowable water quality design flow rate

Determine the allowable flow rate for the specific proprietary technology, specific configuration and size proposed to meet the requirements as described in the Ecology GULD table conditions of use.

Step 4: Select the size of facility or number of cartridges

Use the modified design flow rate from Step 2 to select the size of facility or number of cartridges needed. Round up as necessary.

5.8.11.7. Minimum Construction Requirements

The following are construction requirements with the construction of proprietary technologies:

- Follow the manufacturer's recommended construction procedures and installation instructions as well as any applicable City requirements.
- Follow the manufacturer's requirements for flow rate restrictions (orifice).
- Protect the media filter systems from construction flows. Thoroughly clean structures and replace media or media cartridges if impacted from construction flows.

5.8.11.8. Operations and Maintenance Requirements

Refer to Ecology's website and the manufacturer's website for facility-specific maintenance requirements (<https://ecology.wa.gov/Regulations-Permits/Guidance-technical-assistance/Stormwater-permittee-guidance-resources/Emerging-stormwater-treatment-technologieswww.ecy.wa.gov/programs/WQ/stormwater/newtech/technologies.html>).

O&M requirements for proprietary technology ~~filter cartridge-type filter~~ systems (e.g., Bay Filter®, FloGard Perk Filter®, and ~~Stormwater Management StormFilter~~ StormFilter®), and the ~~proprietary technology~~ Filterra® system, and MWS-Linear Modular Wetland® are included in *Appendix G (BMP No. 17, and 21, and 22)*. BMPs sized using the mass loading ratios as required in *Section 5.8.11.6* are not required to inspect the facility multiple times during the first year of operation or develop a site-specific inspection/maintenance schedule as indicated in the Ecology GULD approval. Annual maintenance, including filter cartridge replacement as needed is required.

CHAPTER 6 – REFERENCES

[DeOreo, B., and P. Mayer. 2012. Residential End Uses of Water: Progress Report and Interim Results. Drinking Water Research. July-September 2012.](#)

[Ecology. 2006. Guidance for UIC Wells that Manage Stormwater. Publication No. 05-10-067. Prepared by the Washington State Department of Ecology, Olympia, Washington. December 2006.](#)

Ecology. [20182014](#). Technical Guidance Manual for Evaluating Emerging Stormwater Treatment Technologies: Technology Assessment Protocol – Ecology (TAPE). Publication No. [18-10-03811-10-061](#). Prepared by the Washington State Department of Ecology, Olympia, Washington. [September 2018August 2014](#).

Ecology. [20192012](#). Stormwater Management Manual for Western Washington. [5 vols.](#) Publication No. [19-10-02114-10-055 \(a revision of Publication No. 12-10-030\)](#). Prepared by the Washington State Department of Ecology, Olympia, Washington. [July 2019August 2012, revised in December 2014](#).

Public Health – Seattle & King County. 2011. Rainwater Harvesting and Connection to Plumbing Fixtures. Document Code No. Product/Method #10-004 (replaces #07-001). January 25, 2011.

Seattle. 2012. Right-of-Way Improvements Manual.

SPU. 2015. City of Seattle. Protecting Seattle’s Waterways. Volume 3 – Final Integrated Plan. Appendix F: Pollutant Reduction Estimation Method – Candidate Stormwater Projects. May 29, 2015.

Stenn, H., et al. [20182012](#). Building Soil: Guidelines and Resources for Implementing Soil Quality and Depth BMP T5.13 [in WDOE Stormwater Management Manual for Western Washington. 5th edition.](#) Available online at www.buildingsoil.org.

[WRF. 2016. Residential End Uses of Water Executive Report, Version 2. Water Research Foundation. April 2016.](#)

WSDOT. [20202014](#). Washington State Department of Transportation Standard Specifications for Road, Bridge, and Municipal Construction, [20202014](#). Publication No. M 41-10. Prepared by Washington State Department of Transportation. [September 2020January 2014](#).

WSU. 2012. Low Impact Development Technical Guidance Manual for Puget Sound.

WSU. 2013. Rain Garden Handbook for Western Washington Homeowners. Prepared by the Pierce County Extension of Washington State University, Puyallup, Washington.

This page intentionally left blank.

SDCI	Director's Rule 10-2021
SPU	Director's Rule DWW-200

Applicant: Department of Construction & Inspections Seattle Public Utilities	Page: # of ###	Supersedes: SDCI: 17-2017 SPU: DWW-200 (2017)
	Publication: TBD	Effective: 07/01/2021
Subject: Stormwater Manual Volume 4 of 5	Code and Section Reference: SMC 22.800-22.808	
	Type of Rule: Code interpretation	
	Ordinance Authority: SMC 3.06.040, 3.32.020	
Index: Title 22.800 Stormwater Code	Approved: _____ Nathan Torgelson, Director, SDCI	Date: _____
	Approved: _____ Mami Hara, General Manager/CEO, SPU	Date: _____

PUBLIC REVIEW DRAFT
VOLUME 4 —
SOURCE CONTROL

CITY OF SEATTLE
SEATTLE PUBLIC UTILITIES
DEPARTMENT OF CONSTRUCTION AND INSPECTIONSS

March 2021

Note:

Some pages in this document have been purposely skipped or blank pages inserted so that this document will print correctly when duplexed.

Table of Contents

CHAPTER 1 - Introduction.....	1-1
1.1. What Is the Purpose of This Volume?	1-1
1.2. How Does this Volume Apply to Businesses and Properties?.....	1-1
1.3. Which Pollutants Are Targeted in This Volume?.....	1-2
1.3.1. pH.....	1-2
1.3.2. Total Suspended Solids	1-2
1.3.3. Chemical and Biological Oxygen Demanding Substances.....	1-2
1.3.4. Metals	1-2
1.3.5. Bacteria and Viruses	1-3
1.3.6. Nutrients.....	1-3
1.3.7. Toxic Organic Compounds.....	1-3
1.3.8. Other Chemicals and Substances	1-3
1.3.9. Oils and Greases.....	1-3
1.3.10. Soaps and Detergents.....	1-3
1.4. What Are BMPs?.....	1-4
1.4.1. Source Control BMPs	1-4
1.4.2. Treatment BMPs	1-4
1.5. Already Implementing Best Management Practices?.....	1-5
1.6. Getting Started	1-5
CHAPTER 2 - Best Management Practices for All Real Property	2-1
2.1. Required Best Management Practices.....	2-1
2.1.1. BMP 1: Eliminate Illicit Connections and Illicit Discharges	2-2
2.1.2. BMP 2: Perform Routine Maintenance.....	2-3
2.1.3. BMP 3: Dispose of Fluids and Wastes Properly	2-4
2.1.4. BMP 4: Proper Storage of Solid Wastes	2-5
2.1.5. BMP 5: Spill Prevention and Cleanup.....	2-7
2.1.6. BMP 6: Provide Oversight and Training for Staff	2-10
2.1.7. BMP 7: Property Maintenance	2-11
2.1.8. BMP 8: Rooftop Dog Runs	2-12
2.2. Required Best Management Practices for Specific Activities.....	2-13
2.2.1. BMP 9: Fueling at Dedicated Stations	2-14
2.2.2. BMP 10: Mobile Fueling of Vehicles and Heavy Equipment	2-20
2.2.3. BMP 11: In-Water and Over-Water Fueling.....	2-22
2.2.4. BMP 12: Maintenance and Repair of Vehicles and Equipment.....	2-23
2.2.5. BMP 13: Concrete and Asphalt Mixing and Production	2-25
2.2.6. BMP 14: Concrete Pouring, Concrete/Asphalt Cutting, and Asphalt Application	2-28
2.2.7. BMP 15: Recycling, Wrecking Yard, and Scrap Yard Operations	2-30
2.2.8. BMP 16: Storage of Liquids in Aboveground Tanks.....	2-33

CHAPTER 3 – Business and Public Entity Best Management Practices for Specific Activities 3-1

- 3.1. Cleaning or Washing 3-2
 - 3.1.1. BMP 17: Cleaning or Washing 3-3
- 3.2. Transfer of Liquid or Solid Materials 3-7
 - 3.2.1. BMP 18: Loading and Unloading of Liquid or Solid Material 3-8
- 3.3. Production and Application 3-13
 - 3.3.1. BMP 19: Manufacturing and Post-Processing of Metal Products 3-16
 - 3.3.2. BMP 20: Processing of Treated Wood 3-18
 - 3.3.3. BMP 21: Commercial Composting 3-20
 - 3.3.4. BMP 22: Landscaping and Vegetation Management 3-22
 - 3.3.5. BMP 23: Painting, Finishing, and Coating Activities 3-26
 - 3.3.6. BMP 24: Commercial Printing Operations 3-28
 - 3.3.7. BMP 25: Manufacturing Activities 3-29
- 3.4. Storage and Stockpiling 3-31
 - 3.4.1. BMP 26: Storage of Leachable or Erodible Materials 3-32
 - 3.4.2. BMP 27: Temporary Storage or Processing of Fruits, Vegetables, or Grains 3-36
 - 3.4.3. BMP 28: Portable Container Storage 3-38
- 3.5. Dust, Soil Erosion, and Sediment Control 3-42
 - 3.5.1. BMP 29: Dust Control in Disturbed Land Areas and on Unpaved Roadways and Parking Lots 3-43
 - 3.5.2. BMP 30: Dust Control at Manufacturing Sites 3-44
 - 3.5.3. BMP 31: Soil Erosion and Sediment Control at Industrial Facilities 3-45
- 3.6. Other Activities 3-46
 - 3.6.1. BMP 32: Commercial Animal Care and Handling 3-47
 - 3.6.2. BMP 33: Log Sorting and Handling 3-48
 - 3.6.3. BMP 34: Boat Building, Maintenance, and Repair 3-49
 - 3.6.4. BMP 35: Cleaning and Maintenance of Pools, Spas, Hot Tubs, and Fountains 3-51
 - 3.6.5. BMP 36: Deicing and Anti-icing Operations for Airports and Streets 3-52
 - 3.6.6. BMP 37: Maintenance and Management of Roof and Building Drains at Industrial and Commercial Buildings 3-54
 - 3.6.7. BMP 38: Maintenance and Operation of Railroad Yards 3-55
 - 3.6.8. BMP 39: Maintenance of Public and Private Utility Corridors and Facilities 3-57
 - 3.6.9. BMP 40: Maintenance of Roadside Ditches 3-59
 - 3.6.10. BMP 41: Potable Water Line Flushing, Water Tank Maintenance, and Hydrant Testing 3-61
 - 3.6.11. BMP 42: Urban Streets 3-62
 - 3.6.12. BMP 43: Nurseries and Greenhouses 3-63
 - 3.6.13. BMP 44: Color Events 3-64
 - 3.6.14. BMP 45: Pet Waste 3-65
 - 3.6.15. BMP 46: Labeling Storm Drain Inlets on Your Property 3-66
 - 3.6.16. BMP 47: Well, Utility, Directional, and Geotechnical Drilling 3-67

3.6.17. BMP 48: Goose Waste3-68

3.6.18. BMP 49: Pesticides and an Integrated Pest Management Program3-69

3.6.19. BMP 50: Storage of Dry Pesticides and Fertilizers3-70

3.6.20. BMP 51: Irrigation3-71

3.6.21. BMP 52: Dock Washing3-72

3.6.22. BMP 53: Roof Vents3-73

3.6.23. BMP 54: Streets and Highways3-74

3.6.24. BMP 55: Fertilizer Application.....3-75

CHAPTER 4 - References 4-1

Tables

Table 1. Worksheet for Identifying Applicable BMPs..... 1-7

Figures

Figure 1. Covered Outdoor Storage of Solid Wastes. 2-5

Figure 2. Waste Storage Area with Spill Kit and Posted Spill Plan..... 2-8

Figure 3. Fueling Island Schematic.2-15

Figure 4. Roof at Fueling Island to Prevent Stormwater Run-On.2-17

Figure 5. Commercially Available Catch Basin Filter Sock.2-26

Figure 6. Car Wash Building with Drain to the Sanitary Sewer..... 3-4

Figure 7. Schematic of Wash Pad with Sump..... 3-5

Figure 8. Temporary Containment Device Placed Under a Hose Connection. 3-9

Figure 9. Loading Docks with an Overhang to Prevent Material Contact with Stormwater.3-11

Figure 10. Structure Used To Cover Manufacturing Activities.3-30

Figure 11. Covered and Secured Storage Area for Bulk Solids.3-33

Figure 12. Covered Storage Area for Erodible Material (gravel).....3-34

Figure 13. Covered and Secured Storage Area for Containers.3-39

Figure 14. Containers Surrounded by a Berm in an Enclosed Area.3-39

CHAPTER 1 – INTRODUCTION

1.1. What Is the Purpose of This Volume?

This volume is designed to help businesses, individuals, responsible parties, and public agencies in Seattle implement best management practices (BMPs) for source control to prevent pollutants from contaminating stormwater runoff and entering receiving waters, such as rivers, lakes, streams and Puget Sound. Polluted stormwater can pose risks to the health, safety, and welfare of humans and the environment. Source control is the practice of preventing pollution at its source.

This chapter provides a worksheet for use in determining which BMPs are required for specific activities, including activities planned for proposed development sites. As required by the Seattle Municipal Code (SMC), Chapters 22.800 through 22.808 (Stormwater Code), BMPs from this volume must be implemented to minimize contamination and discharge of stormwater from pollution generating activities.

[See-Refer to Appendix A](#) for definitions of technical terms used in this [volumemanual](#).

1.2. How Does this Volume Apply to Businesses and Properties?

Some BMPs are required for all real property in Seattle (refer to *Chapter 2*). The implementation of additional BMPs for specific pollution generating activities applies to all businesses and public agencies in Seattle except those that drain to the public combined sewer (refer to *Chapter 3*).

The BMPs in this volume have been integrated from many documents, programs and regulations, including the following:

- Federal Clean Water Act
- Federal Coastal Zone Management Act
- Phase I National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System (NPDES) Municipal Stormwater General Permit
- Washington State Department of Ecology (Ecology) Stormwater Management Manual for Western Washington (SWMMWW)
- Puget Sound Action Agenda
- The City's Stormwater Code (SMC, Chapters 22.800 through 22.808)

Owners, operators, and occupants of property, and anyone causing or contributing to a violation of the City Code are each considered a “responsible party” for purposes of a Code violation (SMC, [Section 22.801.190](#)).

If a commercial property is owned, leased, or rented to tenants, the owner is also responsible for any pollution from the property and can be held responsible for water quality problems caused by tenants. Make sure tenants are informed of their responsibilities.

1.3. Which Pollutants Are Targeted in This Volume?

The following provides descriptions of typical pollutants targeted by the source control BMPs outlined in this manual, including explanations of why the pollutants can be harmful and some of the common sources of these pollutants.

1.3.1. pH

The pH value of a substance is a measurement of its acidity or alkalinity. The pH of a body of water is vitally important because most aquatic life survives within a relatively narrow range of pH values (6.5 to 8.5). A pH that is lower than 6.5 can be too acidic to support aquatic life. A pH that is higher than 8.5 can be too alkaline to support aquatic life. Some sources that can contribute to a change in the pH of stormwater and receiving waters are:

- Cement in poured concrete
- Cement dust
- Materials used in paving and recycling operations
- Solutions used in metal plating operations
- Chemicals from printing and other industrial processes
- Common cleaners such as bleaches and deck cleaners
- Calcium chloride

1.3.2. Total Suspended Solids

Total suspended solids can include particles such as sand, silt, soil, iron precipitates, and biological solids, all of which can increase the turbidity in receiving waters (make the water cloudy) and can settle out in streams as sediment. This can destroy fish habitat and other aquatic life because excess sediment has the potential to smother aquatic organisms, including developing fish eggs, and also coat them with toxic substances such as petroleum and metals, which can adhere to the sediment in receiving waters.

1.3.3. Chemical and ~~Biological~~ Biochemical Oxygen Demanding Substances

Chemical wastes and degradable organic matter (such as landscaping waste and food waste) can drastically affect water quality if allowed to enter stormwater. As these substances are broken down by bacteria, the oxygen in the water is depleted. The resulting decrease in oxygen supply can stress or eventually kill fish and other aquatic species. Chemical oxygen demand (COD) and biological oxygen demand (BOD) are two parameters that indicate the amount of oxygen that is used up by various pollutants.

1.3.4. Metals

Metals are used in many products and include copper, lead, zinc and arsenic. Certain metals wear off vehicle brakes, tires, and galvanized surfaces, and are released from paint, scrap metal, and protective coatings used on buildings. Metals such as zinc can also be a component

in products such as moss killers. These metals can be carried by stormwater runoff into receiving waters where they have been linked to severe health and reproductive problems in fish and other aquatic animals.

1.3.5. Bacteria and Viruses

Bacteria and viruses from animal wastes, wildlife, illicit connections, and leaking sewer lines can contaminate receiving waters and result in the closure of swimming and shellfish areas. Concentrations of bacteria called fecal coliform, —enterococci in marine water, and *Escherichia coli* in fresh water—are typically used as indicators of pollution.

1.3.6. Nutrients

In the context of water quality, the nutrients of concern are primarily compounds that contain nitrogen and phosphorus. Excess nutrients allowed to enter receiving waters can lead to overgrowth of algae, depletion of oxygen in the water, and channel clogging due to the overgrowth of vegetation. The water can also become unattractive for recreational use and unsuitable for fish and wildlife. Sources of nutrients include fertilizers, leaking trash containers, leaking sewer lines, yard waste, and animal waste.

1.3.7. Toxic Organic Compounds

A number of organic compounds are toxic to the aquatic environment. Many pesticides, herbicides, rodenticides, and fungicides contain organic compounds that can be deadly to aquatic life. The same is true of organic compounds included in antifreeze, wood preservatives, cleansers, and a host of other more exotic organic compounds that result from industrial operations or past industrial practices (such as phthalates, polychlorinated biphenyls [PCBs], dioxins, and chlordane). These toxic organic compounds can remain in the sediment for a long time.

1.3.8. Other Chemicals and Substances

There are many other chemicals and substances that can cause problems if they are allowed to enter the aquatic environment. Even compounds classified as “biodegradable” or “environmentally friendly” can have devastating effects on aquatic life. Some of the most common chemicals and substances that pollute stormwater are oils, greases, soaps, and detergents.

1.3.9. Oils and Greases

Oil and grease can be generated from either petroleum-based or food-based sources. Oils and greases conveyed in stormwater can accumulate in receiving waters and contaminate soil. Petroleum-based oils and greases can be immediately toxic to fish and wildlife. Food-based oils and greases can coat insects and fish gills, leading to suffocation.

1.3.10. Soaps and Detergents

Vehicles and structures are commonly washed with soaps and other detergents mixed with water. If not managed properly, the resulting washwater can flow to an inlet/catch basin or

ditch, which discharges the polluted water directly to the nearest stream or lake, or to Puget Sound. Soaps and detergents, even the biodegradable ones, can have immediate and long-term effects on aquatic life. Sediment and oil released when vehicles and structures are washed with soaps and detergents can also collect in the washwater, causing further harm to fish and other aquatic wildlife. Soaps used on roofs to treat moss can also result in soaps being discharged via roof drains to receiving waters.

The term “biodegradable” on a product label does not mean that the product is safe or environmentally friendly. The product may degrade faster than alternative products but can still be harmful to the environment.

1.4. What Are BMPs?

BMPs for managing stormwater are divided into two broad categories: source control BMPs and treatment BMPs.

1.4.1. Source Control BMPs

Source control BMPs prevent contaminants from entering stormwater runoff by controlling them at their source. Source control can include operational changes (such as sweeping or process changes) or structural changes (such as extending a roof or installing a treatment facility).

Source control requirements are based on the following goals:

1. Prevent stormwater pollution by eliminating pathways that may introduce pollutants into stormwater.
2. Protect soil, groundwater, and receiving waters by capturing acute releases, such as spills, to reduce chronic contamination of the environment.
3. Segregate stormwater and wastewater flows.
4. Direct wastewater discharges and areas with the potential for wastewater discharge (such as vehicle washing facilities) to the sanitary or combined sewer system.
5. Provide an approved method of containment and discharge for areas that have the potential for spills, and are not expected to regularly receive stormwater flow or require water use (such as covered fuel islands or covered containment areas).
6. Create a combination of structural controls and operational procedures to ensure sustainability of the BMPs.

1.4.2. Treatment BMPs

This volume also identifies specific treatment BMPs that apply to particular pollutant sources such as fueling stations, railroad yards, and the outdoor storage and transfer of materials, byproducts, or finished products. Examples of treatment BMPs are oil/water separators, wet vaults, and biofilters. After identifying the required treatment BMPs, refer to *Volume 3 – Project Stormwater Control* for additional information about treatment BMPs.

1.5. Already Implementing Best Management Practices?

Property owners and operators may already be implementing BMPs in accordance with other federal, state, or local requirements (e.g., businesses that have a National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System [NPDES] permit from Ecology). In some cases, the City's requirements may be in addition to, or more stringent than other applicable requirements. Anyone with questions about how to meet all of the source control requirements for stormwater should contact the City of Seattle Stormwater Source Control Unit via the Water Quality Hotline at (206) 684-7587. City inspectors will work with responsible parties to determine the applicable BMPs.

If it is determined that the BMPs being implemented are not effectively addressing the discharge of contaminants, additional BMPs may be required, including treatment and structural BMPs.

Entities that conduct specific industrial activities are required to obtain an Industrial NPDES Permit for their stormwater discharges. For more information about whether an entity needs an NPDES permit, refer to Ecology's website (<https://ecology.wa.gov/Water-Shorelines/Water-quality/Runoff-pollution/Stormwater>www.ecy.wa.gov/programs/wq/stormwater/index.html) or call Ecology at (360) 407-6000.

1.6. Getting Started

To understand the source control requirements addressed by this volume, the first step is to determine if the property discharges to the combined sewer, drainage system, or receiving water. If the answer is not clear, call the Water Quality Hotline at (206) 684-7587 Option 3 and request assistance.

All real property in Seattle must implement ~~the citywide~~ [BMPs 1 through BMP 8 for all real property](#) outlined in [Section 2.1](#) ~~Chapter 2~~. [BMP 9 through BMP 16 also apply to all real property but are related to specific activities that may occur at a property.](#)

In addition, businesses and public agencies, except those that discharge only to the public combined sewer, must implement the additional BMPs pertinent to site-specific activities outlined in *Chapter 3*.

The worksheet provided below (Table 1) is designed to help identify the appropriate BMPs required. The worksheet contains BMPs organized by the different activities that businesses and public agencies perform. If the listed activity is performed indoors and all discharges (e.g., process water, washwater, lubricants, solvents, fugitive dust, granular material, and blowdown waste) are controlled such that there is no exposure of stormwater to pollutants, then additional BMPs do not have to be implemented for that activity.

1. Complete all sections of the worksheet, checking the appropriate boxes for all activities that occur at the work place.
2. If any of the activities were checked as being performed outdoors (or inside in areas that might spill or flow outside), additional BMPs are required for that activity. Refer

to the subsection of this volume identified in the first column of the worksheet for a description of the required BMPs.

Questions can be answered by leaving a message on the [SPU Water Quality Hotline](tel:2066847587) at (206) 684-7587 or contacting the SPU Green Business Program at (206) 343-8505 or on the [City's website at: \(www.seattle.gov/util/ForBusinesses/GreenYourBusiness/index.htm\)](http://www.seattle.gov/util/ForBusinesses/GreenYourBusiness/index.htm).

Table 1. Worksheet for Identifying Applicable BMPs.

Section Reference	BMP Number and Name	
<u>SECTION 2.1 – REQUIRED CITYWIDE BEST MANAGEMENT PRACTICES FOR ALL REAL PROPERTY</u>		
2.1.1	BMP 1: Eliminate Illicit Connections <u>and Illicit Discharges</u>	
2.1.2	BMP 2: Perform Routine Maintenance	
2.1.3	BMP 3: Dispose of Fluids and Wastes Properly	
2.1.4	BMP 4: Proper Storage of Solid Wastes	
2.1.5	BMP 5: Spill Prevention and Cleanup	
2.1.6	BMP 6: Provide Oversight and Training for Staff	
2.1.7	BMP 7: <u>Site-Property</u> Maintenance	
<u>2.1.8</u>	<u>BMP 8: Rooftop Dog Runs</u>	
Section Reference	BMP Number and Name	Is Activity Conducted on the Site?
<u>BUSINESS AND PUBLIC ENTITY BEST MANAGEMENT PRACTICES FOR SPECIFIC ACTIVITIES^a</u>		
<u>2.2.1</u>	BMP 9: Fueling at Dedicated Stations <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● <u>Applies to gas stations, pumps at fleet vehicle yards or shops, and other privately owned pumps, including construction sites</u> 	
<u>2.2.2</u>	BMP 10: Mobile Fueling of Vehicles and Heavy Equipment <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● <u>Applies to fleet fueling, wet fueling, and wet hosing</u> 	
<u>2.2.3</u>	BMP 11: In-Water and Over-Water Fueling	
<u>2.2.4</u>	BMP 12: Maintenance and Repair of Vehicles and Equipment <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● <u>Applies to vehicle maintenance operations and activities where fluids from vehicles and equipment are removed and replaced at permanent or temporary sites</u> 	
<u>2.2.5</u>	BMP 13: Concrete and Asphalt Mixing and Production <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● <u>Applies to the mixing of raw materials on the site to produce concrete or asphalt or the making of concrete or asphalt products</u> 	
<u>2.2.6</u>	BMP 14: Concrete Pouring, Concrete/Asphalt Cutting, and Asphalt Application <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● <u>Applies to construction sites, driveway, and parking lot resurfacing, and cutting</u> 	
<u>2.2.7</u>	BMP 15: Recycling, Wrecking Yard, and Scrap Yard Operations <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● <u>Applies to scrapped equipment, vehicles, construction materials, and assorted recyclables</u> 	
<u>2.2.8</u>	BMP 16: Storage of Liquids in Aboveground Tanks <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● <u>Applies to all liquids in aboveground tanks</u> 	
<p>^a <u>BMP 9 through BMP 16 apply to All Real Property, but are related to specific activities that may occur at a businesses or be performed by public agencies.</u></p> <p>Does site drain only to the public combined sewer?</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● If yes, only <i>Chapter 2</i> BMPs are required. ● If no, fill out the remainder of the worksheet to determine applicable BMPs for site activities per SMC₁ <u>Section 22.803.040.</u> <p>If unsure where the site discharges to, call the Water Quality Hotline at (206) 684-7587 for assistance.</p>		

Table 1 (continued). Worksheet for Identifying Applicable BMPs.

Section Reference	BMP Number and Name	Is Activity Conducted in an Area That Could Impact the Drainage System or Receiving Waters?
SECTION 3.1 – CLEANING OR WASHING		
3.1.1	BMP 178 : Cleaning or Washing <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Applies to all outdoor washing activities, including the following: ● Cleaning or washing of tools, engines, manufacturing equipment, vents, filters, pots and pans, grills, and floor mats ● Fleet vehicle yards, car dealerships, car washes, and maintenance facilities ● Mobile washing, including carpet cleaning, pressure washing, truck washing, etc. 	
SECTION 3.2 – TRANSFER OF LIQUID OR SOLID MATERIALS		
3.2.1	BMP 189 : Loading and Unloading of Liquid or Solid Material <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Applies to loading and unloading of liquid or solid materials 	
3.2.2	BMP 10: Fueling at Dedicated Stations <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Applies to gas stations, pumps at fleet vehicle yards or shops, and other privately owned pumps, including construction sites 	
3.2.3	BMP 11: Maintenance and Repair of Vehicles and Equipment <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Applies to vehicle maintenance operations and activities where fluids from vehicles and equipment are removed and replaced at permanent or temporary sites 	
3.2.4	BMP 12: Mobile Fueling of Vehicles and Heavy Equipment <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Applies to fleet fueling, wet fueling, and wet hosing 	
SECTION 3.3 – PRODUCTION AND APPLICATION ACTIVITIES		
3.3.1	BMP 13: Concrete and Asphalt Mixing and Production <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Applies to mixing of raw materials on the site to produce concrete or asphalt or making concrete or asphalt products 	
3.3.2	BMP 14: Concrete Pouring, Concrete/Asphalt Cutting, and Asphalt Application <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Applies to construction sites, driveway and parking lot resurfacing, and cutting 	
3.3.13.3.3	BMP 1945 : Manufacturing and Post-processing of Metal Products <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Applies to machining, grinding, soldering, cutting, welding, quenching, rinsing, etc. 	
3.3.23.3.4	BMP 2046 : Processing and Storage of Treated Wood <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Applies to chemical preservative treatment of wood, as well as outdoor storage 	
3.3.33.3.5	BMP 2147 : Commercial Composting <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Applies to commercial composting facilities that operate outside without cover 	

Table 1 (continued). Worksheet for Identifying Applicable BMPs.

Section Reference	BMP Number and Name	Is Activity Conducted in an Area That Could Impact the Drainage System or Receiving Waters?
3.3.43.3.6	BMP 2248 : Landscaping and Vegetation Management <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Applies to grading, storage of landscape materials, soil transfer, vegetation removal, pesticide and fertilizer applications, and watering 	
3.3.53.3.7	BMP 2319 : Painting, Finishing, and Coating Activities <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Applies to surface preparation and the application of paints, finishes, and/or coatings 	
3.3.63.3.8	BMP 2420 : Commercial Printing Operations <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Applies to materials used in the printing process 	
3.3.73.3.9	BMP 2524 : Manufacturing Activities <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Applies to manufacturing activities in outdoor areas 	
SECTION 3.4 – STORAGE AND STOCKPILING ACTIVITIES		
3.4.1	BMP 2622 : Storage or Transfer of Leachable or Erodible Materials <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Includes sand, topsoil, lumber, and other products 	
3.4.2	BMP 2723 : Temporary Storage or Processing of Fruits, Vegetables, or Grains <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Applies to storage of fruits, vegetables, or grains; and processing activities at: wineries; breweries; fresh and frozen juice makers; and other food and beverage processing operations 	
3.4.3	BMP 24: Recycling, Wrecking Yard, and Scrap Yard Operations <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Applies to scrapped equipment, vehicles, construction materials, and assorted recyclables 	
SECTION 3.4 (continued) – STORAGE AND STOCKPILING ACTIVITIES		
3.4.33.4.4	BMP 2825 : Portable Container Storage <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Applies to containers used for temporary and permanent storage 	
3.4.5	BMP 26: Storage of Liquids in Aboveground Tanks <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Applies to all liquids in aboveground tanks 	
3.4.6	BMP 27: Lot Maintenance and Storage <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Applies to public and commercial parking areas Applies to storage of automobile parts, vehicles, or equipment 	
SECTION 3.5 – DUST, SOIL EROSION, AND SEDIMENT CONTROL		
3.5.1	BMP 2928 : Dust Control in Disturbed Land Areas and on Unpaved Roadways and Parking Lots <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Applies to dust control measures in disturbed land areas or on unpaved roadways and parking lots 	
3.5.2	BMP 3029 : Dust Control at Manufacturing Sites <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Applies to grain dust, sawdust, coal, gravel, crushed rock, cement, boiler fly ash, and other airborne polluting materials 	

Table 1 (continued). Worksheet for Identifying Applicable BMPs.

Section Reference	BMP Number and Name	Is Activity Conducted in an Area That Could Impact the Drainage System or Receiving Waters?
3.5.3	BMP 3130 : Soil Erosion and Sediment Control at Industrial Sites <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Applies to industrial activities that take place on soil 	
SECTION 3.6 – OTHER ACTIVITIES		
3.6.1	BMP 3234 : Commercial Animal Care and Handling <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Applies to operations at kennels, fenced pens, veterinary clinics, and businesses and public agencies that board animals 	
3.6.2 and Ecology Pub. 04-10-034	BMP 3332 : Log Sorting and Handling <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Applies to log yards 	
3.6.3	BMP 3433 : Boat Building, Mooring, Maintenance, and Repair <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Applies to all types of maintenance, repair, and building operations at shipyards, ports, and marinas 	
3.6.4	BMP 3534 : Cleaning and Maintenance of Pools, Spas, Hot Tubs, and Fountains <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Applies to cleaning and maintenance of pools, spas, hot tubs, and fountains, including all commercial pool cleaners 	
3.6.5	BMP 3635 : Deicing and Anti-icing Operations for Airports and Streets <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Applies to highways, aircraft, runways and taxiways, and streets 	
SECTION 3.6 (continued) – OTHER ACTIVITIES		
3.6.6	BMP 3736 : Maintenance and Management of Roof and Building Drains at Manufacturing and Commercial Buildings <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Applies to maintenance and management of roofs and sides of manufacturing and commercial buildings 	
3.6.7	BMP 3837 : Maintenance and Operation of Railroad Yards <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Applies to cleaning, maintenance, and repair of equipment and engines; fueling; waste disposal; and all other yard maintenance activities 	
3.6.8	BMP 3938 : Maintenance of Public and Private Utility Corridors and Facilities <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Applies to maintenance activities related to public and private utilities, including pipelines, pump stations, rights-of-way, and transmission corridors 	
3.6.9	BMP 4039 : Maintenance of Roadside Ditches <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Applies to activities related to the maintenance of roadside ditches 	
3.6.10	BMP 41: Potable Water Line Flushing, Water Tank Maintenance, and Hydrant Testing	
3.6.11	BMP 42: Urban Streets	
3.6.12	BMP 43: Nurseries and Greenhouses	

Table 1 (continued). Worksheet for Identifying Applicable BMPs.

Section Reference	BMP Number and Name	Is Activity Conducted in an Area That Could Impact the Drainage System or Receiving Waters?
3.6.13	BMP 44: Color Events	
3.6.14	BMP 45: Pet Waste	
3.6.15	BMP 46: Labeling Storm Drain Inlets on Your Property	
3.6.16	BMP 47: Well, Utility, Directional, and Geotechnical Drilling	
3.6.17	BMP 48: Goose Waste	
3.6.18	BMP 49: Pesticides and an Integrated Pest Management Program	
3.6.19	BMP 50: Storage of Dry Pesticides and Fertilizers	
3.6.20	BMP 51: Irrigation	
3.6.21	BMP 52: Dock Washing	
3.6.22	BMP 53: Roof Vents	
3.6.23	BMP 54: Streets and Highways	
3.6.24	BMP 55: Fertilizer Application	

Notes:

^a—If this activity could impact stormwater or receiving waters, refer to the corresponding section of this volume (identified in the first column) for BMP descriptions.

CHAPTER 2 – ~~CITYWIDE~~ BEST MANAGEMENT PRACTICES FOR ALL REAL PROPERTY

2.1. Required ~~Citywide~~ Best Management Practices

All real property must implement and maintain the following source control [best management practices](#) (BMPs) to prevent or minimize pollutants from leaving a site or property ([Seattle Municipal Code \[SMC\]](#), Section 22.803.030):-

- [BMP 1: Eliminate Illicit Connections and Illicit Discharges](#)
- [BMP 2: Perform Routine Maintenance](#)
- [BMP 3: Dispose of Fluids and Wastes Properly](#)
- [BMP 4: Proper Storage of Solid Wastes](#)
- [BMP 5: Spill Prevention and Cleanup](#)
- [BMP 6: Provide Oversight and Training for Staff](#)
- [BMP 7: Property Maintenance](#)
- [BMP 8: Rooftop Dog Runs](#)

~~Owners, operators, and occupants of property, and anyone causing or contributing to a violation of the Stormwater Code (Code) are each considered a “responsible party” relative to a Code violation (SMC, Section 22.801.190).~~

Stormwater Code Language	References
SMC, Section 22.803.030 – For all discharges, responsible parties shall implement and maintain source controls to prevent or minimize pollutants from leaving a site or property.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● None provided
SMC, Section 22.801.090 – “Responsible party” means all of the following persons: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Owners, operators, and occupants of property; and 2. Any person causing or contributing to a violation of the provisions of this subtitle. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● None provided

Final code language to be added to final manual

2.1.1. ***BMP 1: Eliminate Illicit Connections and Illicit Discharges***

Illicit connections [and discharges](#) include sanitary or process wastewater connections [and unpermitted discharges of pollutants](#) that are improperly discharging to a drainage system or receiving water. These improper connections [and discharges](#) allow a variety of pollutants to flow directly to receiving waters instead of the sanitary sewer or septic system. Frequently, such connections [and discharges](#) are not intentional, but can be very harmful to the environment and must be eliminated. Refer to *Volume 1, Section 3.11* for the minimum requirements to comply with the Seattle Side Sewer Code (SMC, Chapter 21.16).

Required elements of this BMP include:

- For all real properties, responsible parties must examine their plumbing systems to identify any potential illicit connections. A good place to start is with an examination of the site plans. Remodeling and tenant improvement projects are particularly susceptible to inadvertent illicit connections. If an illicit connection is suspected, [perform a trace the source using](#) closed-circuit television inspection (CCTV) ~~or~~ dye test with a nontoxic dye, [smoke testing, flow test, or visual reconnaissance](#). These tests are typically best performed by qualified personnel such as a plumbing contractor. Notify [the Washington State Department of Ecology \(Ecology\)](#)'s Northwest Regional Office at (425) 649-7000 and [Seattle Public Utilities \(SPU\)](#) at (206) 386-1800 prior to performing a dye test that may result in a discharge to a receiving water.
- If illicit connections are found, permanently plug or disconnect the connections.
- Obtain all necessary permits for altering or repairing side sewers and plumbing fixtures. Restrictions on certain types of discharges, particularly industrial process waters, may require pretreatment of discharges before they enter the sanitary sewer. It is the responsibility of the property owner or business operator to obtain the necessary permits and to replace the connection.
- The Stormwater Code allows the Director to require that a responsible party provide or create site drainage and sewer system maps with verified discharge points to aid in identifying illicit connections and/or to verify that illicit connections are eliminated.
- [Eliminate illicit discharges to drainage systems and receiving waters.](#)

2.1.2. *BMP 2: Perform Routine Maintenance*

Sediment and pollutants can accumulate over time in various components of drainage collection, conveyance, and treatment systems, such as catch basins, ditches, storm drains, and oil/water separators. When a storm event occurs, the excessive sediment and pollutants can become mobilized and carried into receiving waters, [the public drainage system, or a public combined sewer](#). Performing routine maintenance is required and helps prevent sediment and pollutants from discharging downstream.

Required elements of this BMP include:

- Inspect all conveyance, detention and treatment systems at least annually and clean or repair structures whenever the condition thresholds described in *Appendix G* are triggered. Systems in industrial areas or areas that receive excessive sediment, foliage or debris may require more frequent inspection and maintenance. If leaves or woody debris accumulate on catch basins and inlets, clean as needed to prevent flooding.
- Clean catch basins when they are greater than 60 percent full of sediment, within 6 inches of the bottom of the lowest pipe, or there are obvious signs of pollution visible. At 60 percent capacity, there is not enough settling space to remove sediment from stormwater and they cease to function as designed.
- All catch basins are required to have outlet traps (downturned elbow) ~~similar to City of Seattle Standard Plan No. 267~~. Outlet traps help to keep oil and other floatables from discharging to the public drainage system, [public combined sewer](#), or receiving waters. Replace or repair outlet traps when missing or damaged. When catch basins lack sufficient depth or room to install an outlet trap, evaluate the drainage system to determine if there is an appropriate downstream location and install an outlet trap at that location.
- Properly dispose of all solids, polluted material, and stagnant water collected through system cleaning. ~~Do not decant water back to the system. Do not decant untreated, treated, or filtered water back into drainage system~~. Do not jet material downstream into the system. In all systems, known or suspected contaminated material may need to be tested for additional disposal requirements.

Consider posting “Dump No Waste” or other warning signs adjacent to inlets/catch basins where possible.

Several contractors offer cleaning services for drainage systems. A list of contractors can be found on the SPU website, online, or in the Yellow Pages under entries such as “Sewer Contractors.”

2.1.3. *BMP 3: Dispose of Fluids and Wastes Properly*

For all real properties, responsible parties must properly dispose of solid and liquid wastes and contaminated stormwater and ~~sediment~~street waste solids. There are generally ~~four~~five options for disposal, depending on the type of waste:

1. Recycling facilities
- ~~1-2.~~ Permitted centralized waste treatment facilities
- ~~2-3.~~ Municipal solid waste disposal facilities
- ~~3-4.~~ Hazardous waste treatment, storage, and disposal facilities
- ~~4-5.~~ Sanitary sewer or combined sewer

Some liquid wastes and contaminated stormwater (depending on the pollutants and associated concentrations) may be discharged to the sanitary sewer system, but are subject to approval by the City and King County. Restrictions on certain types of discharges may require pretreatment of discharges before they enter the sanitary sewer.

If wastes cannot be legally discharged to a sanitary sewer, one of the other three disposal options must be used. Sumps or holding tanks may be useful for storing liquid wastes temporarily. The contents must be disposed of properly.

Contaminated ~~sediment~~street waste solids ~~must~~must be handled by following either the guidance in Management of Street Waste Solids and Liquids in Appendix IV-B of the Stormwater Management Manual for Western Washington (SWMMWW) (Ecology 2019) or the Dangerous Waste Regulations (Washington Administrative Code [WAC], Chapter 173-303), if applicable. ~~If testing determines materials are not dangerous waste but contaminants are present, consult with Public Health—Seattle & King County for disposal options.~~

For assistance with finding recycling facilities, refer to the King County Green Tools web page (<https://kingcounty.gov/depts/dnrp/solid-waste/programs/green-building.aspx>).

For assistance in determining where to take motor oil, pesticides, smoke alarms, fluorescent bulbs, and other hazardous materials, refer to the Local Hazardous Waste Management Program website (www.hazwastehelp.com).

Required elements of this BMP include:

- Dispose of wastes in accordance with applicable solid waste, dangerous waste, industrial waste, and other regulations.

2.1.4. *BMP 4: Proper Storage of Solid Wastes*

This BMP applies to properties that store solid wastes, including garbage, recyclables, compostable materials, and cooking grease containers outdoors. If improperly stored, these wastes can contribute a variety of pollutants to stormwater.

Required elements of this BMP include:

- Store all solid wastes in suitable containers (Figure 1). Check storage containers [and trash compactors](#) for damage and replace them if they are leaking, corroded, or otherwise deteriorating.



Figure 1. Covered Outdoor Storage of Solid Wastes.

- Ensure that storage containers have leak-proof lids or are covered by some other means, and that lids are closed at all times.
- Sweep the waste storage area or clean frequently to collect all loose solids for proper disposal in a storage container. ~~When washing the area, contain and properly dispose of washwater.~~
- ~~Connect trash compactors equipped with a drain hose to the sanitary sewer. Drain dumpsters, dumpster pads, and trash compactors to the sanitary sewer.~~
- ~~Connect areas containing dumpsters and trash compactors to the sanitary sewer, unless equipped with a drain hose.~~
- ~~Contain and properly dispose of washwater pursuant to BMP 17 (Cleaning or Washing) when washing dumpsters and used cooking oil containers.~~

- Clean up leaks and spills as they occur. Keep the area around ~~used cooking oil~~grease storage containers clean and free of spilled grease, oils, food waste, and debris.
- Storage Container Requirements for Used Cooking Oil:
 - Store used cooking oil containers indoors or on private property. When authorized by the Seattle Department of Transportation (SDOT) and SPU Solid Waste, containers can be stored in the right-of-way.
 - Owners of used cooking oil containers must implement the following:
 - Label each used cooking oil container with the following:
 - The name and phone number of container owner
 - Contains used cooking oil
 - Report spills by calling SPU at (206) 386-1800
 - Record all authorized users specific to each container.
 - Place and maintain lids on used cooking oil storage containers to prevent rainwater intrusion.
 - Do not ~~fill storage containers beyond allow accumulated waste to exceed 90 percent of their capacity of the storage container.~~ If this occurs accumulated used cooking oil exceeds 90 percent of the capacity of the storage container, obtain and use another suitable storage container. ~~Do not overfill containers.~~
 - Ensure that screens are kept clean and clear of debris.
 - Used cooking oil containers must be located to prevent tipping, spillage, vandalism, and vehicle impact. Spills resulting from damage, tipping, vandalism, and leaks are the responsibility of the owner of the container. Recommended approaches include:
 - Store used cooking oil in containers inherently resistant to tipping. Barrels are not tip resistant.
 - Locate used cooking oil containers on a level surface or secure them to prevent tipping.
 - Store used cooking oil in containers with a tight-fitting leak-resistant lid.
 - Store used cooking oil containers within a building or in a locked and secure area to prevent unauthorized use or vandalism.
 - Protect used cooking oil containers from vehicle impact by fenced enclosures, bollards, or other physical barriers.
 - Do not attempt to transfer used cooking oil from the kitchen to the used cooking oil container using overfilled small containers.
- For containers stored in the right-of-way, label with owner information and contents

2.1.5. BMP 5: Spill Prevention and Cleanup

Leaks and spills can damage public infrastructure, interfere with sewage treatment and cause a threat to human health or the environment. Spills are often preventable if appropriate chemical and waste handling techniques are practiced effectively and the spill response plan is immediately implemented. Additional spill control requirements may be required based on the specific activity occurring on site.

A spill can be a one-time event, a continuous leak, or frequent small spills. All types must be addressed. [Spills resulting from vandalism or inadequate waste management are the responsibility of the waste owner.](#)

Businesses and real properties that load, unload, store, and manage liquids or other erodible materials must implement this BMP.

2.1.5.1. Spill Prevention

Implement the following practices and provide spill cleanup kits (*Section 2.1.5.3*) at activity locations where spills may occur:

- Clearly [mark or](#) label all containers that contain potential pollutants.
- Store and transport liquid materials in appropriate containers with tight-fitting lids.
- Place drip pans underneath all containers, fittings, valves, and where materials are likely to spill or leak. [Check drip pans periodically to prevent overflow during rain events.](#)
- Use tarpaulins, ground cloths, or drip pans in areas where materials are mixed, carried, and applied to capture any spilled materials.
- Train employees on the safe techniques for handling materials used on the site and to check for leaks and spills.

2.1.5.2. Spill Plan

- Develop and implement a spill plan and update it annually or whenever there is a change in activities or staff responsible for spill cleanup. Post a written summary of the plan at areas with a high potential for spills, such as loading docks, product storage areas, waste storage areas, and near a phone (Figure 2). The spill plan may need to be posted at multiple locations. Describe the facility, including the owner's name, address, and telephone number; the nature of the facility activity; and the general types of chemicals used at the facility.
- Designate spill response employees to be on the site during business activities. Provide a current list of the names, and telephone numbers (office and home) of designated spill response employee(s) who are responsible for implementing the spill plan.
- Provide a site plan showing the locations of storage areas for chemicals, inlets/catch basins, spill kits and other relevant infrastructure or materials information.
- Describe the emergency cleanup and disposal procedures. Note the location of the spill kit in the spill plan.
- List the names and telephone numbers of public agencies to contact in the event of a spill. Refer to *Section 2.1.5.4* for more information.



Figure 2. Waste Storage Area with Spill Kit and Posted Spill Plan.

2.1.5.3. *Spill Cleanup Kit*

Store spill cleanup kits near areas with a high potential for spills so that they are easily accessible in the event of a spill. The contents of the spill kit must be appropriate to the types and quantities of materials stored or otherwise used at the facility, and refilled when the materials are used. A spill kit may include the following items:

- Absorbent pads
- Sorbent booms or socks
- Absorbent granular material (such as kitty litter)
- Protective clothing (such as latex gloves and safety goggles)
- Thick plastic garbage bags
- Drain cover

2.1.5.4. *Spill Cleanup and Proper Disposal of Material*

In the event of a spill, implement the following procedures:

- Implement the spill plan immediately.
- Contact the designated spill response employee(s).
- Block off and seal nearby inlets/catch basins to prevent materials from entering the drainage system or combined sewer.
- ~~Use an appropriate material to clean up spills. Do not use emulsifiers or dispersants such as liquid detergents or degreasers.~~
- At the earliest possible time, but in any case within 24 hours, report all spills, discharges, or releases that have impacted or could impact a drainage system, a combined sewer, a sanitary sewer, or a receiving water to the SPU Operations Response Center at (206) 386-1800. This reporting requirement is in addition to, and not instead of, any other reporting requirements under federal, state, or local laws. Other agencies may include Seattle Fire Department (206) 386-1400, Department of Ecology (425) 649-7000 and the National Response Center (800) 424-8802. Spill reporting should take priority over the collection of supporting information. In case of emergency, dial 911.
- Use an appropriate material to clean up spills. Do not use emulsifiers or dispersants such as liquid detergents or degreasers unless they are cleaned up afterwards.
- ~~Do not wash absorbent material into interior floor drains or inlets/catch basins. Do not wash absorbent materials into interior floor drains or inlets/catch basins. Pick up all absorbent materials for proper disposal after application. Spill cleanup is incomplete until all absorbent materials have been recovered.~~
- Dispose of used spill control materials in accordance with the Seattle Solid Waste Collection Code (SMC, Chapter 21.36), Dangerous Waste Regulations (WAC, Chapter 173-303), and applicable laws.

The SPU Green Business Program is a free conservation program funded by SPU. The program offers free technical assistance, free spill kits, and assistance in developing a spill plan. They can be reached by calling (206) 343-8505 or on the City's website at: (www.seattle.gov/util/ForBusinesses/GreenYourBusiness).

2.1.6. BMP 6: Provide Oversight and Training for Staff

The key to sustaining BMPs is to ensure that staff are properly trained in their purpose and maintenance requirements. Assign source control maintenance as a job responsibility for staff.

For all businesses and public entities, required elements of this BMP include:

- Train all team members annually in the operation, maintenance, and inspection of BMPs. Keep training records on file.
- Train all team members annually in spill cleanup.
- Assign an employee to oversee implementation and management of stormwater source control ~~BMPs~~best management practices.

The SPU Green Business Program is a free conservation program funded by SPU. The program offers free technical assistance and can assist with employee training. They can be reached by calling (206) 343-8505 or on the City's website at: (www.seattle.gov/util/ForBusinesses/GreenYourBusiness).

2.1.7. *BMP 7: Site-Property Maintenance*

Good site-property maintenance reduces the potential for stormwater to come into contact with pollutants and can reduce maintenance intervals for the drainage system and combined sewer.

Public and commercial parking lots such as those for retail stores, fleet vehicles (including rent-a-car lots and car dealerships), and equipment sale and rental businesses; equipment storage yards; parking lot driveways; and restaurant drive-throughs can be sources of toxic hydrocarbons and other organic compounds, including oils and greases, metals, and suspended solids. Even sidewalks may need occasional cleaning and could generate pollutants.

For all businesses and public entities, required elements of this BMP include:

- ~~Where feasible, l~~ocate pollution generating activities away from stormwater pathways, such as inlets/catch basins, conveyance pipes, and ditches.
- Sweep or vacuum paved areas used for loading and unloading of materials, outdoor production and manufacturing, driveways, parking lots, sidewalks, and storage areas as needed to prevent pollutant transport off site or to the drainage system. Mechanical or hand sweeping may be necessary for areas that a vacuum sweeper cannot reach.
- Do not hose down or otherwise transport pollutants from any area to the ground, drainage system, combined sewer, or receiving water except where permissible pursuant to SMC, Section 22.802.030.
- Discharges of street and sidewalk washwater may be permitted when surfaces are swept prior to washing, detergents are not used, and water use is minimized.
- Promptly contain and clean up solid and liquid leaks and spills (refer to BMP 5 for specific information on spill prevention and cleanup).
- Inspect areas used for loading and unloading, material/waste storage, and vehicle parking as needed to prevent pollutant transport off site or to the drainage system.
- ~~Do not hose down or otherwise transport pollutants from any area to the ground, drainage system, combined sewer, or receiving water.~~Place drip pans, absorbent pads, or other containment vessels below leaking vehicles (including inoperable vehicles and equipment and employee vehicles) in a manner that catches leaks or spills. Drip pans or other containment measures must be managed to prevent overflowing and the contents disposed of properly. Absorbent pads must be weighted down so they do not blow away and must be inspected and changed out and disposed of properly before becoming fully saturated.
- For properties other than those that drain only to the combined sewer, an oil removal system such as an American Petroleum Institute (API) oil/water separator, coalescing plate oil/water separator, catch basin filter sock, or equivalent BMP that is approved by SPU is required for parking lots that meet the threshold for vehicle traffic intensity of a “high-use site.” Refer to SMC, Section 22.801.090 for the definition of “high-use site.”

2.1.8. BMP 8: Rooftop Dog Runs

Rooftop dog runs are sometimes provided as an amenity at large residential and commercial properties. Dog runs are typically constructed with artificial turf and other dog-friendly amenities that can accumulate pet waste. They often have automatic sprinklers to wash down the area.

Pet waste that washes into lakes, streams, or Puget Sound begins to decay, depleting oxygen and releasing ammonia. Low oxygen concentrations and ammonia combined with warm water can kill fish. Pet waste also contains nutrients that encourage the growth of weeds and algae and contribute to low oxygen concentrations and high pH in waters we use for swimming, boating, and fishing. Most importantly, pet waste can carry viruses and bacteria that could cause disease and lead to beach closures or bans on shellfish harvesting.

The following required elements of this BMP apply to all dog runs located on rooftops or above-grade plazas:

- Prevent stormwater discharge from the dog run from flowing directly or indirectly to a public drainage system, private drainage system, drainage control facility, or receiving water body.
- Drainage from dog runs, including overflow drainage, must be plumbed to the building sanitary sewer.
- No more than 200 square feet of uncovered dog run area may discharge to the sanitary sewer. This is to prevent excess stormwater from entering the public sanitary sewer system. The portion of a dog run area that is greater than 200 square feet must be covered. The cover must be a roof or canopy that prevents stormwater from coming in contact with the dog run area and directs uncontaminated stormwater runoff to the building drainage system per the requirements of the Seattle Plumbing Code.
- In combined sewer areas, dog runs greater than 200 square feet do not require a cover, but all drainage from the dog run area must be directed to the building sanitary sewer system. This contaminated stormwater runoff must not be connected to a combined side sewer until downstream of the entire building drainage system, including all drainage collection and control facilities such as detention vaults. (Note: If the dog run is part of a construction project that requires flow control (refer to Volume 1), the uncovered dog run area must be modeled as an uncontrolled bypass area that connects to the point of compliance and the flow control BMPs must be oversized to account for this bypass area.)

2.2. Required Best Management Practices for Specific Activities

For business and public entities with specific pollution-generating activities, the following BMPs must be implemented to prevent or minimize pollutants from leaving a site or property:

- [BMP 9: Fueling at Dedicated Stations](#)
- [BMP 10: Mobile Fueling of Vehicles and Heavy Equipment](#)
- [BMP 11: In-Water and Over-Water Fueling](#)
- [BMP 12: Maintenance and Repair of Vehicles and Equipment](#)
- [BMP 13: Concrete and Asphalt Mixing and Production](#)
- [BMP 14: Concrete Pouring, Concrete/Asphalt Cutting, and Asphalt Application](#)
- [BMP 15: Recycling, Wrecking Yard, and Scrap Yard Operations](#)
- [BMP 16: Storage of Liquids in Above-ground Tanks](#)

<u>Stormwater Code Language</u>	<u>References</u>
<p><i>SMC, Section 22.803.040 – For all discharges, source controls shall be implemented, to extent allowed by law, by businesses and public entities for the following specific pollution-generating activities as specified in the joint SPU/DPD Directors’ Rule 10-2021/DWW-200 “Source Control” in Volume 4 Source Control,” to the extent necessary to prevent prohibited discharges as described in subsection 22.802.020.A through subsection 22.802.020.D, and to prevent contaminants from coming in contact with drainage water or being discharged to the drainage system or directly into receiving waters.</i></p> <p style="text-align: center; font-size: 2em; opacity: 0.5;">Final code language to be added to final manual</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● <u>None provided</u>

2.2.1. BMP ~~910~~: Fueling at Dedicated Stations

This BMP applies to businesses and public agencies that operate a facility used exclusively for the transfer of fuels from a stationary pumping station to vehicles or equipment. This type of fueling station includes aboveground or underground fuel storage facilities, which may be permanent or temporary. Fueling stations include facilities such as, but not limited to, commercial gasoline stations, 24-hour convenience stores, car washes, warehouses, manufacturing establishments, maintenance yards, port facilities, marinas and boatyards, construction sites, and private fleet fueling stations.

Description of Pollutants

Typically, stormwater contamination at fueling stations is caused by leaks or spills of fuels, lubrication oils, radiator coolants, fuel additives, and vehicle washwater. These materials contain organic compounds, oils and greases, and metals that can be harmful to humans and aquatic life. These pollutants must not be discharged to the drainage system or directly into receiving water.

A spill can be a one-time event, a continuous leak, or frequent small spills. All types must be addressed.

Required BMP Elements

All BMPs related to fueling at dedicated stations must be consistent with the requirements of the Seattle Fire Code (SMC, Chapter 22.600). The water quality requirements presented in this manual are separate from, and in addition to, the requirements of the Seattle Fire Code. These water quality requirements relate to fuel storage tanks, fuel dispensing equipment, area lighting, spill control and secondary containment, signage, maintenance, and operations. For current requirements, refer to the Seattle Fire Code.

New or substantially altered stations* require the following (refer to Figure [37](#)):

*Substantial alteration of fueling stations includes replacing the canopy or relocating, replacing, or adding one or more fuel dispensers in such a way that the Portland cement concrete (or equivalent) paving in the fueling area is modified. Addition of fuel tanks to a site also triggers implementation of source control BMPs. ~~For further guidance on determining the actions considered substantial remodeling, contact the Department of Planning and Development (DPD).~~

- Construct fueling stations on an impervious concrete pad under a roof to keep out rainfall and to prevent stormwater run-on. Pave the fueling island and containment pad with Portland cement concrete or equivalent. Asphalt is not considered an equivalent material.
- ~~Use an oil control treatment BMP for contaminated stormwater and wastewater in the fueling containment area with discharge to the sanitary sewer. Alternatively, discharge to a dead-end sump.~~

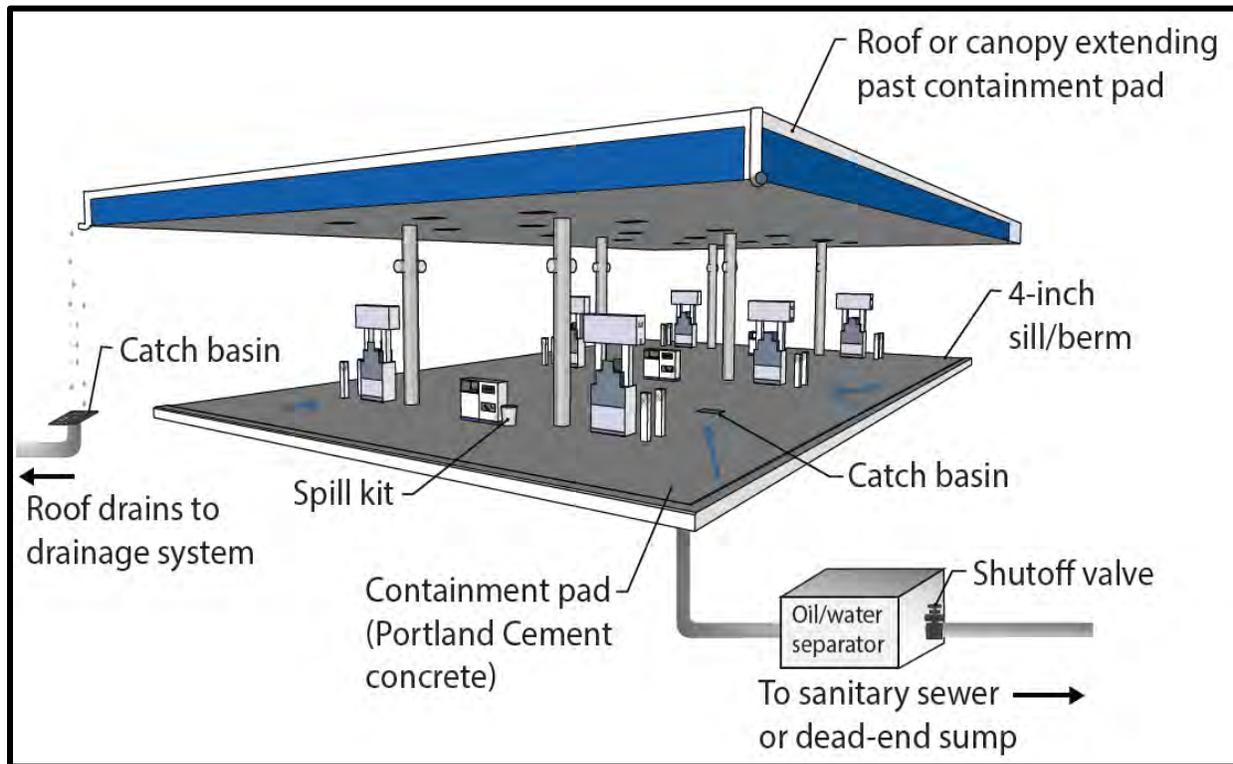


Figure 37. Fueling Island Schematic.

- Design the fueling island (Figure 48) to minimize stormwater contamination, to control spills, and to collect and direct contaminated stormwater and/or wastewater to a pretreatment facility that will achieve the performance goal per [Section 3.5.2.1- \(Oil Control Treatment\) in Volume 3 – Project Stormwater Control](#) ~~required level of treatment~~. The fueling island must be designed in compliance with all applicable codes.
- ~~Drains from the fueling island must discharge to the sanitary sewer or to a dead-end sump.~~
- The fueling island spill containment pad must be designed with the following:
 - A sill/berm (or equivalent control) raised to a minimum of 4 inches to contain spilled liquids and to prevent the run-on of stormwater from the surrounding area. Raised sills are not required at open-grate trenches that connect to an approved drainage control system.
 - A concrete containment pad ~~sloped~~ around the fueling island [that is sloped](#) toward the fuel [containment](#) pad drains. The slope of the drains must not be less than 1 percent.
 - [Drains from the fueling island containment pad must discharge to the sanitary sewer, combined sewer, or a dead-end sump. Provide drainage using trench drains and/or catch basins to collect spilled liquids and any contaminated stormwater runoff from the fuel island containment pad and convey it to either \(1\) the sanitary sewer—if approved by SPU and King County—through an approved pretreatment system such as an oil/water separator, or \(2\) a dead-end sump so that it can be held for proper off-site disposal.](#)

- ~~Collect runoff from the fuel island containment pad and convey it to either (1) the sanitary sewer if approved by SPU and/or King County using an oil/water separator or (2) hold for proper offsite disposal.~~
 - For discharges to the sanitary sewer, a catch basin must shall be installed upstream of the oil/water separator.
 - ~~The~~ If a dead-end sump is used, it must be easily inspected.
 - Collected runoff from the fuel island containment pad discharged to the sanitary sewer must comply with Seattle Municipal Code SMC, Section 21.16.300 – Prohibited discharge of certain substances. Comply with pretreatment regulations prohibiting discharges that could cause a fire or explosion (WAC, Section 173-216-060).
 - The minimum spill retention volume of the oil/water separator or dead-end sump (i.e., volume of spilled fuel contained before the structure overflows) shall must be sized as follows:
 - ~~(1) For a covered fuel pad:~~ 15 minutes for the flow rate of the dispensing mechanism with the highest through-put rate, ~~or~~
 - ~~(2) For if the an uncovered area is uncovered, or an area that receives run-on from an uncovered area:~~ the 15-minute peak flow rate of the 6-month, 24-hour storm event (or 91 percent of the total runoff volume for the simulation period if using continuous runoff modeling) over the surface of the containment pad, ~~– whichever is greater plus the volume required for a covered fuel pad.~~
- The minimum volume of the spill containment sump must should be a minimum of 50 gallons with an adequate grit sedimentation volume. The spill retention/containment volume of the oil/water separator must retain the required spill volume when the oil/water separator is full of water. Dead-end sumps must not be used when the fuel containment area is uncovered or will receive run-on from other areas unless approved by the Director of SPU.
- Note: To calculate the fuel containment capacity, determine the volume of fuel retention on the basis of the retained water volume in the bottom of the oil/water separator bottom and the density of fuel. Fuel containment will be above the static water level into the normal headspace of the oil/water separator (i.e., floating on top of the retained water volume) when the automatic shutoff valve is closed. Subtract the retained water volume in the oil/water separator from the overall volume of the oil/water separator to determine the spill retention volume.
- For further requirements and guidance related to the storage of fuel-contaminated stormwater, refer to BMP 1626 in Section 2.1.163.4.5.
 - ~~For discharges to the sanitary sewer or combined sewer, an automatic shutoff valve is required at the discharge point of the oil/water separator. The valve at the discharge point must be closed in the event of a spill. For discharges to the sanitary sewer, an automatic shutoff valve is required at the discharge point of the oil water separator. The valve must be closed in the event of a spill. The spill control sump must be sized in compliance with the Seattle Fire Code and the International Fire Code. For more information, contact the Seattle Fire Department (206) 386-1400.~~

- When an oil-stop valve or resin plug valve is ~~utilized~~^{used}, it must be engineered to be at least as protective as ~~an~~ automatic ~~shutoff~~^{shut-off} valve ~~above~~.
- Construct a roof or canopy over the fueling island to prevent precipitation from falling directly onto the spill containment pad (Figure 48). The roof or canopy must:
 - At a minimum, cover the spill containment pad (within the grade break or fuel dispensing area) and preferably extend several additional feet to reduce the introduction of windblown rain.
 - Roofs and canopies 10 feet or less in height must have a minimum overhang of 3 feet on each side. The overhang must be measured relative to the berm or other hydraulic grade break.
 - Roofs or canopies greater than 10 feet in height must have a minimum overhang of 5 feet on each side.



Figure 48. Roof at Fueling Island to Prevent Stormwater Run-On.

- Convey runoff collected in roof or canopy drains to a drainage system or receiving water outside the fueling containment area. This will prevent the mixing of uncontaminated runoff from the roof with contaminated runoff from the fueling island.
- A roof or canopy may not be practical at fueling stations that regularly fuel vehicles 10 feet in height or more, particularly at industrial or transportation sites. Additional BMPs or equivalent measures are required. At these types of fueling facilities, the following BMPs apply, as well as all of the other required BMPs and fire prevention requirements (Seattle Fire Code and Uniform Fire Code):

- The concrete fueling pad must be equipped with an emergency spill control device that includes a shutoff valve for drainage from the fueling area.
- The shutoff valve must be closed in the event of a spill. An automatic shutoff valve is preferred required to minimize the time lapse between spill and containment.

Obtain all necessary permits for installing, altering, or repairing side sewers. Restrictions on certain types of discharges may require pretreatment before they enter the sanitary sewer.

The following BMPs or equivalent measures are required for all fueling stations:

- Implement ~~all citywide~~ BMPs 1 through BMP 8 for all real property (refer to Section 2.1 ~~Chapter 2~~).
- Train employees on the proper use of fuel dispensers.
- Do not use dispersants to clean up spills or sheens.
- Post signs related to the operation of fuel dispensers in accordance with the Seattle Fire Code. For example, post “No Topping Off” signs near fuel dispensers (topping off gasoline tanks results in spillage and vents gasoline fumes to the air).
- Ensure that the person conducting the fuel transfer is present at the fueling dispenser/fueling pump during fuel transfer, particularly at unattended or self-service stations. Post “Stay with Vehicle during Fueling” signage near fuel dispensers.
- Ensure that the automatic shutoff on the fuel nozzle is functioning properly.
- Ensure that at least one designated trained person is available either on site or on call at all times to promptly and properly implement spill prevention and cleanup. If the fueling station is unattended, the spill plan must be visible to all customers using the station, and the spill kit must also be accessible and fully stocked at all times.
- Keep suitable cleanup materials, such as dry adsorbent materials, on site to enable employees to promptly clean up spills.
- Transfer the fuel from the delivery tank trucks to the fuel storage tank in impervious contained areas and ensure that appropriate overflow protection is used. Alternatively, cover Cover nearby inlets/catch basins during the filling process and use drip pans under all hose connections.

~~The following additional BMPs or equivalent measures are required for fueling over open water, such as at marinas or boatyards:~~

- ~~• Have an employee supervise the fuel dock.~~
- ~~• Use automatic shut-off nozzles and promote the use of “whistles” and fuel/air separators on air vents or tank stems of inboard fuel tanks to reduce the amount of fuel spilled into receiving waters during fueling of boats.~~
- ~~• During fueling operations, visually monitor the liquid level indicator to prevent the tank from being overfilled.~~
- ~~• The maximum amount of product received must not exceed 95 percent capacity of the receiving tank.~~
- ~~• Spilled fuel and contaminated stormwater must be conveyed either to the sanitary sewer if approved by SPU and/or King County or to an oil removal treatment facility.~~

~~such as an American Petroleum Institute (API) oil/water separator, coalescing plate oil/water separator, or equivalent treatment and then to a basic treatment facility (refer to Volume 3—Project Stormwater Control).~~

~~Facilities and procedures for the loading or unloading of petroleum products must comply with U.S. Coast Guard requirements. Refer to specifications in the Stormwater Management Manual for Western Washington (SWMMWW), Volume IV-D (Ecology 2014).~~

Recommended BMPs

- ~~● Provide information to all appropriate parties on collection and recycling programs for oil, oil-absorbing pads, and oil filters.~~
- ~~● Direct all appropriate parties to the proper disposal of all used hydrocarbon products through the use of signs, mailings, and other means.~~

2.1.8.2.2.2. BMP 1012: Mobile Fueling of Vehicles and Heavy Equipment

This BMP applies to businesses and public agencies that fill fuel tanks of vehicles and equipment by means of tank trucks driven to sites where the vehicles are located (also known as mobile fueling, fleet fueling, wet fueling, or wet hosing).

Description of Pollutants

Typically, stormwater contamination at mobile fueling locations is caused by leaks or spills of fuels and automotive fluids. These materials contain organic compounds, oils and greases, and metals that can be harmful to humans and to the aquatic environment. These pollutants must not be discharged to the drainage system or directly into receiving waters.

Required BMP Elements

The following BMPs or equivalent measures are required of all businesses (organizations or individuals) and public agencies that conduct mobile fueling of vehicles and heavy equipment:

- Implement ~~all citywide~~ BMPs 1 through BMP 8 for all real property (refer to Section 2.1~~Chapter 2~~).
- Mobile fueling operations must be permitted by the Seattle Fire Department ~~and comply with both the Seattle Fire Code and Washington State Fire Code~~.
- In fueling locations near sensitive aquifers, designated wetlands, wetland buffers, or other receiving water, compliance with additional local requirements may be required.
- ~~Ensure compliance with all 49 CFR 178 requirements for Department of Transportation (DOT) 406 cargo tankers. Documentation from a DOT Registered Inspector is required to provide proof of compliance.~~
- Train the driver/operator annually in spill prevention and cleanup. Make all employees aware of the significant liability associated with fuel spills. New employees must be trained upon hiring. Document and keep all training records.
- Develop and follow a written fuel operation plan that is:
 - Properly signed and dated by the responsible manager
 - Retained at headquarters and distributed to all operators, along with the spill plan
 - Made available in the event that an authorized government agency requests a review
- Ensure that the driver/operator is present and constantly observing and monitoring the fuel transfer location during fuel transfer. Implement the following procedures at fuel transfer locations:
 - To the extent practical, locate the point of fueling at least 25 feet from the nearest inlet/catch basin or inside an impervious containment area with a volumetric holding capacity equal to or greater than 110 percent of the fueling tank volume, or cover the inlet/catch basin to ensure there is no inflow of spilled or leaked fuel. Before removing drain cover, check for sheen. Do not remove if sheen is present and properly dispose of contaminated material.

- Place a drip pan or an absorbent pad under each fueling location prior to and during all dispensing operations. The pan must be watertight and must have a [minimum](#) capacity of 5 gallons.
- Handle and operate fuel transfer hoses and nozzles, drip pan(s), and absorbent pads to prevent fuel spills and leaks from reaching the ground, receiving water, and inlets/catch basins.
- Avoid extending the fueling hoses across a traffic lane without a cone barrier and do not allow vehicles to drive over fuel hoses.
- Do not “top off” fuel tanks.
- Use automatic shutoff nozzles for dispensing the fuel. Replace automatic shutoff nozzles as recommended by the manufacturer.
- Inspect, maintain, and replace equipment on fueling vehicles, particularly hoses and nozzles, at established intervals to prevent failures. Document and keep all inspection records on file.
- Use an adequate lighting system at the filling point.
- At a minimum, maintain the following spill cleanup materials in a readily accessible location in all fueling vehicles:
 - Non-water-absorbent materials capable of absorbing 15 gallons of diesel fuel
 - An inlet/catch basin plug or cover
 - A non-water-absorbent containment boom at least 10 feet long with a 12-gallon absorbent capacity
 - A non-spark-generating shovel
 - [Adequate means to hold spent absorbents generated by a 15-gallon spill for disposal.](#)
 - ~~Two 5-gallon buckets with lids~~
- Immediately remove and properly dispose of [fuel-contaminated](#) soils with visible surface contamination to prevent the spread of chemicals to groundwater or receiving water via stormwater runoff.
- Immediately notify the Seattle Fire Department (911), the Ecology Northwest Regional Office (425) 649-7000, and SPU (206) 386-1800 in the event of a spill. Establish a “call down list” to ensure the rapid and proper notification of management and government officials if any significant amount of product is discharged from the site. Keep the list in a protected but readily accessible location in the mobile fueling truck. The “call down list” should also identify spill response contractors available in the area to ensure the rapid removal of significant product spills into the environment. [Include this bullet item in the fuel operation plan.](#)
- Do not use dispersants to clean up spills or sheens [unless they will be picked up for proper disposal.](#)

2.2.3. BMP 11: In-Water and Over-Water Fueling

This BMP apply to businesses and public agencies that operate a facility used for the transfer of fuels from a stationary station to vehicles or equipment in water.

Description of Pollutants

In-water and over-water fueling can result in leaks or spills of fuels and associated petroleum products that can be harmful to humans and aquatic life.

Required BMP Elements

Required BMP elements are contained in S439 – *BMPs In-Water and Over-Water Fueling in Volume IV of the SWMMWW (Ecology 2019).*

2.1.9.2.2.4. *BMP 1211: Maintenance and Repair of Vehicles and Equipment*

This BMP applies to businesses and public agencies on whose premises oil, fuel, engine oil, and other fluids such as battery acid, coolants, and transmission and brake fluids are removed and replaced in vehicles and equipment. It also applies to mobile vehicle maintenance operations.

Description of Pollutants

Pollutants of concern are total petroleum hydrocarbons, toxic organic compounds, oils and greases, pH, and metals. These pollutants must not be discharged to the drainage system or directly into receiving waters.

Required BMP Elements

The following BMPs or equivalent measures are required of all businesses and public agencies engaged in vehicle and equipment repair and maintenance activities:

- Implement ~~all citywide BMPs~~ BMP 1 through BMP 8 for all real property (refer to Section 2.1 ~~Chapter 2~~).
- Inspect all incoming vehicles and equipment for leaks and spills. Clean up all leaks and spills as they occur. Drain all fluids that have the potential to leak from wrecked vehicles and from equipment when they arrive. Store and dispose of fluids properly.

A spill can be a one-time event, a continuous leak, or frequent small spills. All types must be addressed as prescribed in BMP 5 (Spill Prevention and Cleanup).

- ~~Ensure that spill control materials that are appropriate to the type and quantity of materials being stored are kept readily accessible and stocked for ease of use. Soiled rags and other cleanup material must be properly disposed of or professionally cleaned and reused.~~
- Maintenance and repair activities must be conducted inside a building or other covered impervious containment area that is sloped to prevent run-on of uncontaminated stormwater and runoff of contaminated water. If an emergency situation requires immediate repair outside, containment devices must be used.
- ~~Do not use dispersants to clean up spills or sheens.~~
- ~~Use drip pans or other containment devices beneath the vehicle or equipment to capture all spills and drips.~~
- Make sure all outside materials that have the potential to leach or spill to the drainage system are covered and contained, or moved to an indoor location.
- Maintenance and repair areas cannot be hosed down. Instead, they must be swept weekly or more often as needed to collect dirt. ~~Spills must be wiped up with rags and other absorbent materials. If pressure washing is necessary, the wastewater must be collected and disposed of properly. It cannot be discharged to the drainage system.~~

- Wastes, such as washwater, may not be discharged to the stormwater system or receiving waters except as conditionally allowed in SMC, Section 22.802.030. Do not discharge vehicle fluids to the drainage system, sanitary sewer, or receiving waters. Do not pour or convey washwater, liquid waste, or other pollutants into the drainage system.
- Maintenance and repair shop floor drains must discharge to the sanitary sewer. Do not allow drains inside maintenance buildings to connect to the sanitary sewer without prior approval by SPU and/or King County or both.
- If extensive staining and oily sheen isare present, absorbent pillows or booms must be used in or around catch basins and properly maintained to prevent oil from entering the drainage system. If operational BMPs are insufficient to prevent and manage recurrent oily discharges, then structural source control measures may be required.

2.1.10-2.2.5. *BMP 13: Concrete and Asphalt Mixing and Production*

This BMP applies to businesses and public agencies that mix raw materials onsite to produce concrete or asphalt.

Description of Pollutants

Pollutants of concern include petroleum hydrocarbons, toxic organic compounds, oils and greases, metals, and pH. Not only can concrete pouring activities severely alter the pH of stormwater runoff, but slurry from aggregate washing can harden in drainage infrastructure, thereby reducing capacity, which can result in flooding. These pollutants must not be discharged to the drainage system or directly into receiving waters.

Required BMP Elements

Activities associated with concrete and asphalt mixing and production may require an NPDES permit from Ecology. Refer to Ecology's website (<https://ecology.wa.gov/Regulations-Permits/Permits-certifications/Stormwater-general-permits> www.ecy.wa.gov/programs/wq/stormwater/index.html) or call Ecology at (360) 407-6000 to determine if the site activities trigger permit coverage.

The following BMPs or equivalent measures are required of all businesses and public agencies engaged in activities related to concrete and asphalt mixing and production at stationary sites:

- Implement ~~all citywide BMPs~~ [BMP 1 through BMP 8 for all real property](#) (refer to [Section 2.1](#) ~~Chapter 2~~).
- Cover production ~~areas and pouring areas~~ to protect them from contact with stormwater.
- Recycle all process water from production, pouring, and equipment cleaning or discharge it to a dead-end sump, process water treatment system, or the sanitary sewer. Obtain all necessary permits for discharge to the sanitary sewer.
- Never discharge washout from fresh concrete or concrete mixing into streets, sidewalks, drainage systems, or receiving waters.
- Segregate production areas from stormwater inputs. Any stormwater that mixes with production areas is considered process water and cannot be discharged to the drainage system or receiving waters. Obtain all necessary permits for discharge to the sanitary sewer.
- Establish a BMP maintenance schedule and educate employees annually about the need to prevent stormwater contamination through regular BMP maintenance. Document and keep all maintenance training records on hand.
- Use absorbent materials or catch basin filter socks (Figure 5) in and around inlets/catch basins to help filter out solids. If catch basin filter socks are used, maintain the filters regularly (weekly or as needed) to prevent plugging. Stormwater contaminated with concrete or asphalt must not enter the drainage system.

Catch basin filter socks only remove solids and do not provide treatment for other pollutants associated with concrete and asphalt mixing and production.

- Sweep the production and pouring area, driveways, gutters, and all other outdoor areas daily or more often as necessary to collect fine particles and aggregate for recycling or proper disposal.



Figure 5. Commercially Available Catch Basin Filter Sock.

- Do not wash or hose down areas that flow to the drainage system.
- Make sure all outside materials that have the potential to leach or spill to the drainage system are covered, contained, or moved to an indoor location.
- [Collect, treat, and properly dispose of runoff that comes in contact with release agents.](#)
- If operational controls do not prevent stormwater contamination, treatment BMPs may be necessary.

For information about water quality treatment BMPs for activities related to concrete and asphalt mixing and production at stationary sites, refer to *Volume 3 – Project Stormwater Control*. For a current list of proprietary and emerging water quality treatment technologies, refer to Ecology's website (<https://ecology.wa.gov/Regulations-Permits/Guidance-technical-assistance/Stormwater-permittee-guidance-resources/Emerging-stormwater-treatment-technologies> www.ecy.wa.gov/programs/wq/stormwater/newtech/index.html).

Recommended BMPs

Although not required, the following BMPs are recommended to further prevent and minimize the contamination of stormwater resulting from concrete and asphalt mixing and production activities:

- Pave the mixing ~~and,~~ production, ~~and pouring~~ areas. A sump drain in these areas is not advisable due to potential clogging problems, ~~but could be used in a curing area.~~ Sweep these areas to remove loose aggregate and recycle or properly dispose of the aggregate ~~properly~~.
- Use catch basin covers or similarly effective containment devices to prevent runoff from entering the drainage system.

~~2.1.11.2.2.6.~~ ***BMP 14: Concrete Pouring, Concrete/Asphalt Cutting, and Asphalt Application***

This BMP applies to businesses and public agencies that apply asphalt or pour or cut concrete or asphalt for building construction and remodeling; road construction; repair and construction of sidewalks, curbs, and gutters; sealing of driveways and roofs; and other applications.

Description of Pollutants

Pollutants of concern include petroleum hydrocarbons, toxic organic compounds, oils and greases, metals, suspended solids, and pH. Not only can concrete pouring activities severely alter the pH of stormwater runoff, but slurry from aggregate washing can harden in stormwater pipes, thereby, reducing their capacity and resulting in flooding. These pollutants must not be discharged to the drainage system or directly into receiving waters.

Required BMP Elements

The following BMPs or equivalent measures are required of all businesses and public agencies engaged in activities related to concrete pouring and cutting and asphalt application:

- Implement ~~all citywide BMPs~~ [BMP 1 through BMP 8 for all real property](#) (refer to [Section 2.1](#) ~~Chapter 2~~).
- Sweep or shovel and collect loose aggregate chunks and dust for recycling or proper disposal at the end of each workday or as needed, especially at work sites such as streets, driveways, parking lots, sidewalks, curbs, and gutters where rain can readily pick up the loose material and carry it to the nearest stormwater conveyance system. Never hose down concrete or asphalt waste materials to an inlet/catch basin, ditch or receiving water.
- Place catch basin covers or similarly effective containment devices over all nearby drains at the beginning of each workday.
- Shovel and/or vacuum all slurry and remove from the site. All accumulated runoff and solids must be collected and properly disposed of at the end of each workday, or more often if necessary.
- Make sure all outside materials that have the potential to leach or spill to the drainage system are covered, contained, or moved to an indoor location.
- Use a mechanism for containment and collection of the discarded concrete slurry when performing exposed aggregate washing, where the top layer of unhardened concrete is hosed or scraped off to leave a rough finish. Dispose of the slurry properly.
- Use a catch basin filter sock to remove solid materials from inlets/catch basins. Maintain the filter regularly to prevent plugging. Stormwater contaminated with concrete or asphalt must not enter the drainage system.
- Perform cleaning of concrete application and mixing equipment or concrete delivery vehicles in a designated area where the rinse water can be controlled and properly disposed of.

- Collect, treat, and properly dispose of runoff that comes in contact with diesel or coatings used in asphalt applications, cleanup, or transportation.
- Collect, treat, and properly dispose of runoff from cutting activities.

~~For information about water quality treatment BMPs related to concrete and asphalt mixing and production activities, refer to Volume 3— Project Stormwater Control. For a current list of proprietary and emerging water quality treatment technologies, refer to Ecology’s website (www.ecy.wa.gov/programs/wq/stormwater/newtech/index.html).~~

Recommended BMPs

Although not required, the following BMPs are recommended to further prevent and minimize the contamination of stormwater resulting from concrete pouring and cutting and asphalt application at temporary sites:

- Avoid the activity when rain is falling or expected.
- If possible, portable asphalt mixing equipment should be covered by an awning, a lean-to, or other simple structure to avoid contact with rain.
- Recycle broken concrete and asphalt. Search for “Recycling Services” online ~~or in the Yellow Pages of the telephone book~~ to find a local recycler.

2.1.12-2.2.7. BMP 1524: Recycling, Wrecking Yard, and Scrap Yard Operations

This BMP applies to businesses and public agencies that reclaim various materials for resale or for scrap, such as vehicles, parts of vehicles, equipment, construction materials, metals, beverage containers, electronic waste and papers. Activities that can generate pollutants include the following: transfer, dismantling, and crushing of vehicles and scrap metal; transfer and removal of fluids; maintenance and cleaning of vehicles, parts, and equipment; and storage of fluids, parts for resale, solid wastes, scrap parts, materials that are contaminated or contain fluids, equipment, and vehicles that contain fluids.

Description of Pollutants

Potential sources of pollutants include paper, plastic, metal scrap debris, engines, transmissions, radiators, batteries, and other materials that contain fluids or are contaminated with fluids. Other pollutant sources include leachate from metal components, contaminated soil, and eroded soil.

Potential pollutants typically found at vehicle recycling and scrap yards include oils and greases, ethylene glycol, propylene glycol, suspended solids, [polychlorinated biphenyls \(PCBs\)](#), phthalates, substances that increase biological oxygen demand (BOD), metals (including mercury), and low (acidic) pH. [PCB sources can include lamp ballasts, capacitors from white goods, transformers, or other electrical equipment.](#)

Required BMP Elements

Recycling, wrecking yard or scrap yard activities may require an NPDES permit from Ecology. Refer to Ecology's website (<https://ecology.wa.gov/Water-Shorelines/Water-quality/Runoff-pollution/Stormwater> <http://www.ecy.wa.gov/programs/wq/stormwater/index.html>) or call Ecology at (360) 407-6000 to determine if the site activities trigger permit coverage. If the permit is required, refer to Publication 94-146, Vehicle and Metal Recyclers: A Guide for Implementing the Industrial Stormwater General National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System Permit Requirements (Ecology 2011), for the selection of BMPs.

At a minimum, the following BMPs or equivalent measures are required for activities related to recycling, wrecking yard, and scrap yard operations. Additional BMPs may be required for businesses and public agencies subject to Ecology's Industrial Stormwater General Permit.

- Implement ~~all citywide BMPs~~ [BMP 1 through BMP 8 for all real property](#) (refer to [Section 2.1](#) ~~Chapter 2~~).
- Drain all fluids upon arrival, prior to storage or disposal.
- Inspect all items for leakage or potential leaks. Use drip pans or other containment where necessary to prevent leaks from reaching the ground or drainage systems. Do not hose pollutants from any area to the ground or into drainage systems.
- Make sure all outside materials that have the potential to leach or spill to the drainage system are covered, contained, or moved to an indoor location.

- Keep all containers, including dumpsters and scrap collection bins, under cover or fit them with a lid that must be kept closed when the container is not in use. Empty bins may have residual pollutants from previous contents and must be covered when stored outside.
- Areas used for processing material to be recycled or for draining/transferring fluid should be designed to stop run-on and to contain all fluids that may be spilled or released. Use cover and containment options such as an enclosed building or roof, and berms or dikes. If there is a sump, dispose of waste properly or recycle accordingly.
- For fluids stored in containers, the containers must be rigid, durable, resistant to corrosion due to the weather and fluid contents, water-tight, and equipped with a tight-fitting lid able to retain the contents in the event of tipping. Place containers/drums in covered impervious secondary containment areas. Store fluids in steel or plastic drums that are rigid and durable, resistant to corrosion from the weather and fluid content, water tight and equipped with a tight fitting lid. Store batteries properly.
- Label all containers/tanks with their contents and identify the hazard they pose. Handle all dangerous and/or hazardous materials and waste in accordance with SPU, King County, and Ecology's requirements.
- Prevent track out from the site onto the adjacent roadway.
- If operational BMPs are not sufficient to prevent stormwater contamination, structural controls must be implemented, including treatment or structural containment. Structural controls must be implemented for new or redeveloped facilities to prevent prohibited discharges to the public drainage system, the private drainage system, receiving waters (refer to SMC, Section 22.802.020), or the public sewer system (refer to SMC, Section 21.16.300).
- For facilities subject to Ecology's Industrial Stormwater General Permit, refer to Vehicle and Metal Recyclers: A Guide for Implementing the Industrial Stormwater General National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System Permit Requirements (Ecology 2011). Apply the BMPs in that guidance document to scrap material recycling facilities, depending on the pollutant sources at those facilities.
- Check incoming scrap materials, vehicles, and equipment for potential fluid contents and batteries.
- Remove batteries and store them in a leak-proof container and under cover.
- Cover and raise above the ground surface any materials that may contaminate stormwater. A tarpaulin and pallet are acceptable.
- Storage of flammable and combustible materials must comply with the appropriate fire codes.
- Develop and implement a BMP inspection log to be used daily. Keep all records on file.
- Inspect storage areas regularly and promptly clean up any leaks, spills, or contamination.
- Sweep paved storage areas daily or more often as needed to remove accumulated dust and pollutants. Inspect storage areas often and maintain good housekeeping.

- Keep spill cleanup materials in a central location. Ensure that employees are familiar with the site's spill control plan and/or proper spill cleanup procedures. Restock spill cleanup supplies after each use.

2.2.8. BMP 1626: Storage of Liquids in Above-ground Tanks

This BMP applies to businesses and public agencies that have on their premises above-ground tanks that contain liquids (excluding uncontaminated water). These tanks may be equipped with a valved drain, vent, pump, and bottom hose connection. These include, but are not limited to, commercial aboveground heating oil tanks; gasoline and diesel tanks; food products; or process water.

Description of Pollutants

Pollutant sources include leaks and spills that can occur at connections and during liquid transfer. Oils and greases, organic compounds, acids, alkalis, and metals in tank water and condensate drainage can also result in stormwater contamination.

Required BMP Elements

The following BMPs or equivalent measures are required for activities related to the storage of liquids in aboveground tanks:

- ~~Implement all citywide~~ BMPs 1 through BMP 8 for all real property (refer to Section 2.1Chapter 2).
- Provide secondary containment or use a double-walled tank.
- Do not discharge contaminated stormwater within the secondary containment area to the drainage system. Evidence of contamination can include the presence of visible sheen, smell, color or turbidity in the runoff, or existing or historical operational problems at the facility. Check for acceptable pH ranges for areas subject to acid or alkaline contamination. Develop appropriate screening techniques for water-miscible contaminants such as test strips or laboratory testing.
- Implement the following maintenance activities to prevent and minimize stormwater contamination:
 - Inspect tank containment areas regularly to identify problems (e.g., cracks, corrosion, leaks) with components such as fittings, pipe connections, and valves.
 - Replace or repair tanks that are leaking, corroded, or otherwise deteriorating. Document and keep all inspection records. A soundness evaluation by a Professional Engineer may be requested to confirm tank stability.
 - Sweep and clean the tank storage area regularly.
- For new and redeveloped sites, locate and design tanks to prevent and minimize stormwater contamination:
 - Locate permanent tanks on an impervious (Portland cement concrete or equivalent) spillsecondary containment padarea. All exposed containment surfaces within the containment area must be impervious to all material in the tanks.
 - Surround the spill containment padarea with dikes or walls (as illustrated in Figure 15) or provide double-walled tanks approved by the Underwriters Laboratory (UL). Design the dike to be of sufficient height to provide a containment volume of either 10 percent of the total volume of the enclosed tanks

or 110 percent of the volume of the largest tank, whichever is greater. If a single tank, the dike must be able to hold 110 percent of the volume of that tank.

- ~~Slope~~ covered secondary containment pads so they will not drain to a dead-end sump or equivalent for the collection of small spills.
- If the tank containment area is not covered, equip the outlet from the spill-containment sump with a shutoff valve. The valve should only be opened to convey contaminated stormwater to an approved treatment system or disposal facility or to convey uncontaminated stormwater to the drainage system.
- ~~Evidence of contamination can include the presence of visible sheen, color or turbidity in the runoff, or existing or historical operational problems at the facility. Check for acceptable pH ranges for areas subject to acid or alkaline contamination. If contamination is present, discharge to the treatment system.~~
- Place adequately sized drip pans beneath all mounted taps and locations where drips and spills might occur during the filling and ~~draining~~unloading of tanks.
- Include a tank overfill protection system to minimize the risk of spillage during loading.
- In areas with multiple ~~At~~ petroleum product storage tanks ~~farms~~, convey stormwater through an American Petroleum Institute (API) oil/water separator, coalescing plate oil/water separator, or other approved treatment system with an automatic shutoff valve or oil stop valve prior to discharge to the sanitary sewer. Oil stop valves must be selected on the basis of the type of petroleum product stored in the tank(s).

CHAPTER 3 – ~~COMMERCIAL AND~~ ~~INDUSTRIAL~~BUSINESS AND PUBLIC ENTITY~~ACTIVITY~~ BEST MANAGEMENT PRACTICES FOR SPECIFIC ACTIVITIES

In addition to ~~the citywide~~ BMPs 1 through BMP 8 for all real property (Section 2.1) and BMP 9 through BMP 16 for specific activities for all real property (Section 2.2)~~in Chapter 2~~, there are many additional source control BMPs that may be required depending on the specific ~~commercial and industrial~~ activities that occur or will occur on a site at a business or a public entity, except those ~~the that~~ drain only to the combined sewer. Source control requirements are outlined in Seattle Municipal Code (SMC), Section 22.803.040 (Minimum Requirements for Source Controls for All Businesses and Public Entities) and SMC, Section 22.805.020.K (Install Source Control BMPs).

Before reading this chapter, fill out the worksheet in *Section 1.6* to identify which site-specific activities require BMPs.

3.1. Cleaning or Washing

The cleaning or washing of vehicles, aircraft, vessels, engines, tools, cooking equipment, manufacturing equipment, and buildings are pollution generating activities when not conducted properly. When these activities are performed, the resulting washwater usually contains soap or detergents, and can contain a variety of pollutants that contaminate stormwater. The specific BMPs that apply to cleaning and washing are presented in this section.

The discharge from some maintenance activities may be allowed, provided they meet the conditions outlined in the Stormwater Code. Those maintenance activities include street and sidewalk washing and routine external building washdown. [Refer to](#) [See](#) the required provisions and conditions outlined in the Stormwater Code [\(SMC, Chapters 22.800 through 22.808\)](#).

Remember to also implement [all required citywide](#) BMPs [1 through BMP 8 for all real property](#) from [Section 2.1](#) [Chapter 2](#).

3.1.1. **BMP 178: Cleaning or Washing**

This BMP applies to cleaning, washing, and rinsing activities, including pressure washing and steam cleaning. The purpose of cleaning and washing activities is to remove pollutants from equipment, vehicles, boats and buildings; these pollutants should not be discharged to the public drainage system.

Description of Pollutants

Source pollutants include surfactants₇; petroleum hydrocarbons₇; toxic organic compounds₇; fats, oils₇ and greases₇; soaps₇; detergents₇; nutrients₇; metals₇; polychlorinated biphenyls (PCBs)₇; pH₇; suspended solids₇; substances that increase biological oxygen demand (BOD)₇; and substances that increase chemical oxygen demand (COD).

Required BMP Elements

The following BMPs or equivalent measures are required of all businesses and public agencies engaged in cleaning or washing activities:

- Implement all ~~citywide~~ BMPs 1 through BMP 8 for all real property (refer to Section 2.1 Chapter 2).
- Provide training to employees regarding proper disposal of wastewater. This training must be documented.
- Outside drains discharge to the combined sewer, directly to local waters, or to the public drainage system, depending on the location within Seattle. Directing washwater/washing activities in to drains that discharge to the drainage system or local waters is not allowed unless specifically identified as conditionally permitted. Identify the type of system on your property and train employees about required BMPs accordingly.
- ~~The following are conditionally permissible washing practices: (1) Discharges of street and sidewalk washwater when the surfaces have been swept prior to washing, detergents are not used, and water use is minimized; and (2) Discharges of water from routine external building washdown when detergents are not used and water use is minimized. These conditions must be met or the washing activity is prohibited. For cleaning related to food service establishment equipment, wipe the equipment before cleaning/washing to remove excess pollutants.~~
- Sweep surfaces before cleaning/washing to remove excess sediment and other pollutants.
- Discharge wastewater from cleaning or washing activities into the sanitary or combined sewer at a site that is if properly approved for discharge, into a process treatment system, or into a holding tank. It is illegal to discharge the dirty solution/washwater to the drainage system or local waters. A permit/Authorization for discharge to the sanitary or combined sewer may be required₇ and pretreatment may be necessary. If using a holding tank, ensure that it is properly sized and does not overflow.
- Cover and/or contain the washing activity or wash conduct the activity inside a building having a floor drain that discharges to the sanitary sewer.

- If roof equipment or hood vents are cleaned, ensure that no wastewater or [prohibited substance \(refer to SMC, Chapter 22.802\)](#) ~~process water~~ is discharged to the roof drains or drainage system.
- Label all mobile cleaning equipment as follows: “Properly dispose of all wastewater. Do not discharge to an inlet/catch basin, ditch, stream, or on the ground.”

Ecology Publication WQ-R-95-056, *Vehicle and Equipment Washwater Discharges: Best Management Practices Manual* (Ecology 2012) can be used for guidance on sumps, holding tanks, and the prevention of runoff.

For wash pads discharging directly to the sanitary sewer:

- The uncovered portion of the wash pad must be no larger than 200 square feet or must have an overhanging roof (refer to Figure 6). This is to prevent excess stormwater from entering the sanitary sewer. Covering may be required in many situations.



Figure 6. Car Wash Building with Drain to the Sanitary Sewer.

- If the uncovered wash pad cannot be less than 200 square feet, a shut off valve may be installed which will direct washwater to the sanitary sewer when the wash pad is in use, and stormwater to the drainage system when the wash pad is not in use (refer to Figure 7). The valve on the outlet may be manually operated; however, a pneumatic or electrical valve system is preferable. The valve may be on a timer circuit, where it

is opened upon completion of a wash cycle. The timer would then close the valve after the sump or separator is drained.

- [The wash pad must be clearly signed as to the operation and location of the valve.](#)
- [Conduct ~~and annual~~ training is required on operation of for ~~this~~ the valve system.](#)
- If adjacent to a building or constructed over hazardous material storage areas, other regulations, including the Seattle Fire Code, may apply.
- Obtain all necessary permits for installing, altering or repairing onsite drainage and side sewers. Restrictions on certain types of discharges may require pretreatment before they enter the sanitary sewer.

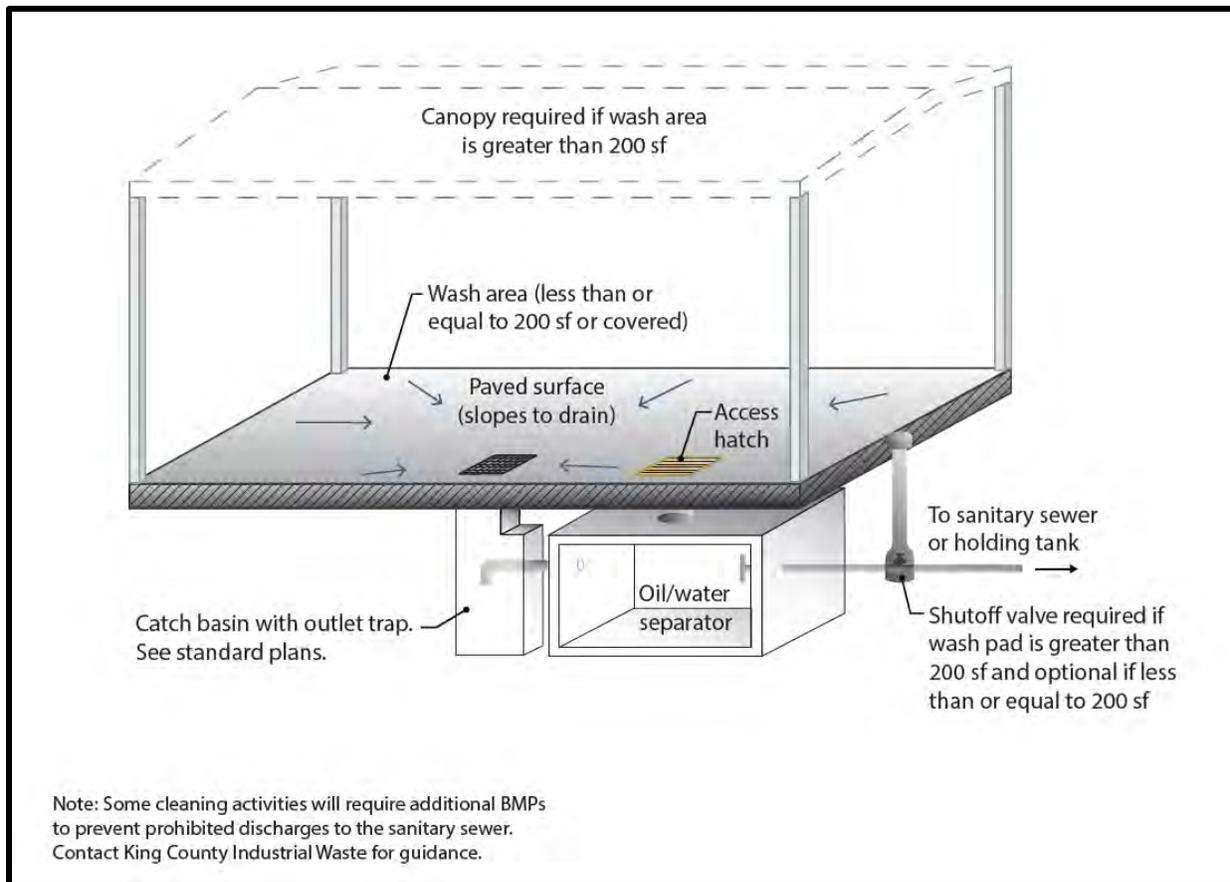


Figure 7. Schematic of Wash Pad with Sump.

Recommended BMPs

Although not required, the following BMPs can provide additional pollution control for washing activities that drain to the sanitary sewer. To reduce the potential overall pollution load to the sanitary sewer from washing operations for tools, vehicles, engines, and manufacturing equipment:

- Minimize water and detergent use in all washing operations.
- Use phosphate-free detergents when practical.
- Consider recycling the washwater by installing a closed-loop water recycling system.

- Use the least hazardous cleaning products available.
- For intermittent washing of vehicles, use a car wash that recycles washwater and discharges to the sanitary sewer.

3.2. Transfer of Liquid or Solid Materials

The transfer of liquid or solid materials, including the loading and unloading of such material, fueling of vehicles or equipment at mobile or designated locations, and vehicle and equipment repair and maintenance are activities that have a high risk for spills or leaks of toxic material. Both required and recommended BMPs can help prevent, minimize, and manage the effects of accidental spills or leaks. The specific BMPs that apply to the transfer of particular types of liquid and solid materials are presented in this section.

Remember to also implement ~~all required citywide~~ [BMPs 1 through BMP 8 for all real property](#) from [Section 2.1Chapter 2](#).

3.2.1. *BMP 189: Loading and Unloading of Liquid or Solid Material*

This BMP applies to businesses and public agencies engaged in the loading and unloading of liquid or solid materials or the transfer of non-containerized bulk materials. Sources of pollution include loading docks, vehicles, and equipment involved in material handling. These activities are typically conducted at shipping and receiving areas, outside storage areas, and fueling areas.

Description of Pollutants

Leaks and spills of fuels, oils, powders, organic compounds, nutrients, metals, food products, salts, acids, and alkalis during transfer are potential sources of stormwater contamination. Spills from breaks in hydraulic lines and leaking forklifts are common problems at loading docks. Many inlets/catch basins in Seattle discharge directly to local streams and waterways and therefore spilled or leaked products can adversely affect water quality and harm both people and aquatic organisms that come in contact with the contaminated water. These pollutants must not be discharged to the drainage system or directly into receiving waters.

Required BMP Elements

The following BMPs or equivalent measures are required in all loading and unloading areas:

- Implement ~~all citywide~~ [BMPs 1 through BMP 8 for all real property](#) (refer to [Section 2.1](#)~~Chapter 2~~).
- Sweep as often as necessary to prevent material contact with stormwater and to remove accumulated debris and other material that could otherwise be washed off by stormwater. Do not sweep this debris into drainage infrastructure.
- Place drip pans or other appropriate temporary containment devices in locations where leaks or spills may occur, such as hose connections, hose reels, and filler nozzles (Figure 8).
- Always use drip pans when making and breaking connections. Clean drip pans after each use to remove any residual material. Dispose of any residual material in accordance with the Seattle Solid Waste Collection Code (SMC, Chapter 21.36) and the state Dangerous Waste Regulations (WAC, Chapter 173-303).
- Inspect loading and unloading areas after each delivery for leaks and spills and clean up immediately.
- Check material handling equipment such as valves, hoses, pumps, flanges, and connections regularly for leaks, and repair as needed. Document and keep all inspection records. Store contaminated equipment inside or under cover to prevent residual material from coming into contact with stormwater.
- [Provide impervious containment with berms, dikes, etc., and/or cover the loading/unloading area to prevent run-on and runoff of contaminated stormwater. Maintain drainage areas in and around storage areas for solid materials with a minimum slope of 1.5 percent to prevent pooling and minimize leachate formation. Areas should be sloped to drain stormwater to the perimeter for collection or to internal "alleyways" where no stockpiled material is kept. Place curbs along the edge or slope the edge of the loading and unloading area such that stormwater can flow to an](#)

~~internal drainage system that leads to an approved treatment BMP. This will prevent contaminated stormwater from passing directly over paved surfaces and into the drainage system.~~

- ~~● Pave and slope loading and unloading areas to prevent the pooling of water. The use of catch basins and drain lines in the interior of the paved area should be minimized as they frequently become covered by material. Catch basins are preferred in designated “alleyways” that will not be covered by material, containers, or equipment.~~



Figure 8. Temporary Containment Device Placed Under a Hose Connection.

~~Consistent with the requirements of this volume of the Seattle Stormwater Manual and the Seattle Fire Code (SMC, Chapter 22.600) and to the extent practical, unload and load solids and liquids in a manufacturing building or under a roof, lean to, or other appropriate cover.~~

The following BMPs or equivalent measures are required in areas of transfer from tanker trucks and railcars to aboveground or underground storage tanks:

- To minimize the risk of accidental spillage, prepare and follow an “Operations Plan” that describes procedures for loading/unloading. Train employees on the plan.
- For rail facilities, install and maintain a drip pan system within the rails to collect spills and leaks from tank cars, hose connections, hose reels, and filler nozzles.

The following BMPs or equivalent measures are required in areas of loading and unloading from or to marine vessels:

- Facilities and procedures for the loading or unloading of petroleum products must comply with U.S. Coast Guard requirements; ~~refer to specifications in the (Stormwater Management Manual for Western Washington (SWMMWW), Volume IV, Appendix IV-D R.5 (Ecology 2014).~~
- For requirements related to the transfer of small quantities from tanks and containers:
- Refer to BMP [2825](#) for storage of portable containers of liquid or dangerous waste containers ([Section 3.4.33-4.4](#)) and BMP [1626](#) for storage of liquids in aboveground tanks ([Section 2.1.163-4.5](#)).

Recommended BMPs

Although not required, the following BMPs can provide additional pollution protection:

- Whenever possible, conduct the activity indoors or under cover to minimize exposure to stormwater.
- ~~Choose less toxic materials for use in facility operations.~~
- For the transfer of liquids in areas that cannot contain a catastrophic spill, install an automatic shutoff system in case of an unanticipated interruption in off-loading (e.g., a coupling break, hose rupture, or overfill).
- Install and maintain overhangs (Figure 9) or door skirts that enclose the trailer end to prevent contact with stormwater.



Figure 9. Loading Docks with an Overhang to Prevent Material Contact with Stormwater.

[Mobile Fueling of Vehicles and Heavy Equipment \(BMP 10-1210\)](#) (Section [2.1.1023-2.2](#)) is recommended in areas of transfer from tanker trucks to aboveground or underground storage tanks; [and it](#) includes:

- Pave the area on which the transfer takes place. If any transferred liquid, such as gasoline, is reactive with asphalt, pave the area with Portland cement concrete or equivalent.
- Construct a slope, berm, or dike to direct runoff from the transfer area to a dead-end sump, spill containment sump, a spill control oil/water separator, or other spill control device. The minimum spill retention time should be 15 minutes for the flow rate of the dispensing mechanism with the highest through-put rate, or at the peak flow rate of the 6-month, 24-hour storm event ([or 91 percent of the total runoff volume for the simulation period if using continuous runoff modeling](#)) over the surface of the containment pad, whichever is greater. The volume of the spill containment sump should be a minimum of 50 gallons with an adequate grit sedimentation volume.

~~3.2.2. ***BMP 11: Maintenance and Repair of Vehicles and Equipment***~~

[\[This BMP was moved to Chapter 2 – tracked changes from the 2016 Stormwater Manual are shown in Chapter 2.\]](#)

3.3. Production and Application

Production and application activities are associated with a high risk for spills or leaks of toxic material. Required and recommended BMPs can help to prevent, minimize, and manage accidental spills or leaks so that there are minimal environmental impacts. The specific BMPs that apply to particular types of production and application activities are presented in this section.

Remember to also implement ~~all required citywide~~ BMPs [1 through BMP 8](#) for all real property from [Section 2.1](#)~~Chapter 2~~.

~~3.3.1. ***BMP 13: Concrete and Asphalt Mixing and Production***~~

[\[This BMP was moved to Chapter 2 – tracked changes from the 2016 Stormwater Manual are shown in Chapter 2.\]](#)

~~***BMP 14: Concrete Pouring, Concrete/Asphalt Cutting, and Asphalt Application***~~

~~[This BMP was moved to Chapter 2 – tracked changes from the 2016 Stormwater Manual are shown in Chapter 2.]~~

3.3.2.3.3.1. BMP 1915: Manufacturing and Post-Processing of Metal Products

This BMP applies to businesses and public agencies such as mills, foundries, and fabricators that manufacture or process metal products. A variety of activities such as machining, grinding, soldering, cutting, welding, quenching, etching, bending, coating, cooling, and rinsing may take place.

Description of Pollutants

Pollutants of concern include toxic organic compounds, metals, oils and greases, pH, suspended solids, and substances that increase COD. These pollutants must not be discharged to the drainage system or directly into receiving waters.

Required BMP Elements

Activities associated with metal manufacturing and processing may require an NPDES permit from Ecology. Refer to Ecology's website (<https://ecology.wa.gov/Water-Shorelines/Water-quality/Runoff-pollution/Stormwater>www.ecy.wa.gov/programs/wq/stormwater/index.html) or call Ecology at (360) 407-6000 to determine if the site activities trigger permit coverage.

The following BMPs or equivalent measures are required of all businesses and public agencies engaged in activities related to manufacturing and processing of metal products:

- Implement ~~all citywide~~ BMPs 1 through BMP 8 for all real property (refer to Section 2.1~~Chapter 2~~).
- Process wastewater (including contact cooling water, filter backwash, or cooling tower blowdown) from this activity and stormwater runoff from processing or production areas must be discharged to the sanitary sewer or, a holding tank, or process treatment system. If a holding tank is used for the storage of wastewater, the contents must be pumped out before the tank is full and disposed of appropriately to the sanitary sewer or process treatment system hauled off site. Obtain all necessary permits for discharge to the sanitary sewer.
- Cover the activity area to prevent rain from contacting the process and to reduce the amount of runoff that may require treatment.
- Make sure all outside materials that have the potential to leach or spill to the drainage system are covered, contained, or moved to an indoor location.
- Sweep the activity area at the end of each workday or more often as needed to collect and properly dispose of metal fragments and product residues. Do not allow metal fragments, residues, or dust to accumulate in areas exposed to stormwater.
- Educate employees about controlling their work with metal products to minimize stormwater pollution. Document and keep all training records on hand.

Recommended BMPs

Although not required, the following BMPs are recommended to further prevent and minimize the contamination of stormwater resulting from the manufacturing and processing of metal products:

- Limit the amount of water used in quenching and rinsing. Recycle used water where possible.
- Use a catch basin filter to capture stray metal particles. Maintain the filter regularly (weekly or as needed) to prevent plugging.

For information about water quality treatment BMPs related to concrete and asphalt mixing and production activities, refer to *Volume 3 – Project Stormwater Control*. For a current list of proprietary and emerging water quality treatment technologies, refer to Ecology’s website (<https://ecology.wa.gov/Regulations-Permits/Guidance-technical-assistance/Stormwater-permittee-guidance-resources/Emerging-stormwater-treatment-technologies>www.ecy.wa.gov/programs/wq/stormwater/newtech/index.html).

~~3.3.3.3.2.~~ ***BMP 2016: Processing and Storage of Treated Wood***

This BMP applies to businesses and public agencies that perform wood treatment including both anti-staining and preserving using pressure processes, dipping, or spraying. It also applies to businesses and public agencies ~~whothat store or~~ cut treated wood [outside](#).

Description of Pollutants

Pollutant sources include drips of condensate or preservative after pressurized treatment, product washwater (in the treatment or storage areas), spills and leaks from process equipment and preservative tanks, fugitive emissions from vapors in the process, blowouts and emergency pressure releases, and kick-back from lumber (leakage of preservative as it returns to normal pressure).

Potential pollutants typically include wood treating chemicals, substances that increase biological oxygen demand (BOD), suspended solids, oils and greases, benzene, toluene, ethylbenzene, phenol, chlorophenols, nitrophenols, metals such as chromium and zinc, and polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons (PAHs). Potential pollutants depend on the chemical additive used. Wood preservatives and antistaining chemical additives include creosote, creosote/coal tar, pentachlorophenol, copper naphthenate, arsenic trioxide, and inorganic arsenicals. These pollutants must not be discharged to the drainage system or directly into receiving waters.

Required BMP Elements

Activities associated with processing treated wood may require an NPDES permit from Ecology. Refer to Ecology's website (<https://ecology.wa.gov/Water-Shorelines/Water-quality/Runoff-pollution/Stormwater>www.ecy.wa.gov/programs/wq/stormwater/index.html) or call Ecology at (360) 407-6000 to determine if the site activities trigger permit coverage.

The following BMPs or equivalent measures are required of all businesses and public agencies engaged in activities related to wood treatment ~~and storage~~:

- Implement ~~all citywide~~ [BMPs 1 through BMP 8 for all real property](#) (refer to [Section 2.1](#)~~Chapter 2~~).

Production Areas:

- Cover and/or enclose the following and contain with impervious surfaces:
 - All wood treatment areas
 - All treated wood
 - All associated wastes
- Segregate clean stormwater from process water. Convey all process water to an approved treatment system and discharge to the sanitary sewer [or haul off site](#). Obtain all necessary permits for discharge to the sanitary sewer.
- Dedicate equipment that is used for treatment activities to prevent the tracking of treatment chemicals to other areas on site.

- For areas around dip tanks, spray booths, and retorts:
 - Eliminate non-process traffic on the drip pad.
 - Scrub down non-dedicated lift trucks on the drip pad.
 - Construct a slope and direct the drainage in a manner that allows treatment chemicals to flow back to the wood treatment process.
 - Seal any holes or cracks in the asphalt areas subject to contamination with wood treatment chemicals.

Storage Areas:

- Cover and/or enclose storage areas for treated wood and contain with impervious surfaces. [Alternatively, dry lumber stacks may be thoroughly wrapped in plastic to prevent contact with stormwater, elevated, and stored in uncovered areas.](#)
- Immediately remove and properly dispose of soils with visible surface contamination to prevent the spread of chemicals to groundwater or another receiving water from stormwater runoff.

For Treated Wood Products:

- Elevate treated wood products to prevent contact with stormwater run-on and runoff.
- Place treated wood products over the dip tank or on an inclined ramp for a minimum of 30 minutes to allow excess chemicals to drip back to the dip tank.
- ~~Place in a covered paved storage area for at least 24 hours before placement in outside storage. Use a longer storage period during cold weather unless the temporary storage building is heated. See storage requirements above for outdoor storage.~~ [Bulk storage of treated wood is permitted outside only when the units are protected from contact with stormwater by tarpaulins or wraps.](#)
- ~~Ensure that the wood is drip free and dry on the surface before it is moved.~~
- [When cutting treated wood, collect all dust and debris for proper disposal.](#)
- ~~If any wood is observed to be contributing chemicals to the environment in the treated wood storage area, relocate it on a concrete chemical containment structure until the surface is clean and the wood is drip free and dry on the surface.~~

3.3.4.3.3. BMP 2117: Commercial Composting

This BMP applies to commercial composting facilities that operate outside without cover. These facilities require large areas for the decomposition of waste and other feedstock.

Description of Pollutants

When stormwater is allowed to seep through active composting areas—including waste receiving and processing areas—it becomes leachate. Pollutants in leachate include nutrients, substances that increase biological oxygen demand (BOD), organic compounds, coliform bacteria, low (acidic) pH, color, and suspended solids. Runoff from areas at the facility that is not associated with active processing and curing, such as product storage areas, vehicle maintenance areas, and access roads, can also contain contaminants. These pollutants must not be discharged to the drainage system or directly into receiving waters.

Required BMP Elements

Activities associated with commercial composting may require an NPDES permit from Ecology [as well as other permits](#). Refer to Ecology's website (<https://ecology.wa.gov/Water-Shorelines/Water-quality/Runoff-pollution/Stormwater>) www.ecy.wa.gov/programs/wq/stormwater/index.html or call Ecology at (360) 407-6000 to determine if the site activities trigger permit coverage. For state regulations related to composting facilities, refer to WAC, Section 173-350-220.

The following BMPs or equivalent measures are required of all businesses and public agencies engaged in commercial composting activities:

- Implement ~~all citywide~~ [BMPs 1 through BMP 8 for all real property](#) (refer to [Section 2.1 Chapter 2](#)).
- ~~Ensure that compost feedstock does not contain dangerous wastes regulated under WAC, Chapter 173-303, or hazardous products of a similar nature.~~
- ~~Train employees to screen incoming wastes for undesirable materials. Document and keep all training records.~~
- [Screen incoming wastes for dangerous materials and solid wastes. These materials will not be accepted for composting and must be properly disposed of.](#)
- Clean up and sweep debris from yard areas daily and more often as needed.
- Store finished compost [on an impervious surface and](#) in a manner to prevent contamination of stormwater.
- [Convey all leachate to the sanitary sewer, a holding tank, or a permitted onsite treatment system that is designed to treat the leachate and remove suspended solids. If a holding tank is used for the storage of leachate, the contents must be pumped out before the tank is full and disposed of appropriately to a sanitary sewer or wastewater treatment system.](#)

- For new and redeveloped facilities, prevent and minimize stormwater contamination by storing finished compost on a concrete pad that is:
 - Curbed to separate leachate from uncontaminated stormwater
 - Sloped sufficiently to direct leachate to the collection device
 - Designed with one or more sumps or catch basins capable of collecting all leachate generated by the design storm and conveying it to the leachate holding structure
- Ponds used to collect, store, or treat leachate and other contaminated waters associated with the composting process must be lined to prevent groundwater contamination. Apply All Known Available and Reasonable Methods of Prevention, Control, and Treatment (AKART) technologies to all pond liners, regardless of the construction materials.

Recommended BMPs

Although not required, the following BMPs are recommended to further prevent and minimize the contamination of stormwater resulting from commercial composting activities:

- Locate stored residues in areas designed to collect leachate and limit storage times to prevent degradation and generation of leachate.

~~3.3.5.~~ **3.3.4. BMP 2218: Landscaping and Vegetation Management**

This BMP applies to businesses and public agencies that perform landscaping, including grading, storage of landscape materials, soil transfer, vegetation removal, pesticide and fertilizer applications, and watering. Landscaping and vegetation management can include control of objectionable weeds, insects, mold, bacteria, and other pests by means of chemical pesticides and is conducted commercially at commercial, industrial, and residential sites. Examples of landscaping and lawn and vegetation management include weed control on golf courses, access roads, and utility corridors; treatment or removal of moss from rooftops, sidewalks, or driveways; killing of nuisance rodents; application of fungicides on patio decks; and residential lawn and plant care.

Description of Pollutants

Stormwater contaminants from landscaping and vegetation management activities include toxic organic compounds, metals, oils, suspended solids, pH, coliform bacteria, fertilizers, pesticides, and detergents.

Pesticides such as pentachlorophenol, carbamates, and organometallics can be released to the environment as a result of leaching and dripping from treated plants, container leaks, product misuse, and outside storage of pesticide-contaminated materials and equipment. Inappropriate management of vegetation and improper application of pesticides or fertilizers can result in stormwater contamination. These pollutants must not be discharged to the drainage system or directly into receiving waters, except as permitted by Ecology.

The Washington State Department of Agriculture regulates pesticide use and application.

Required BMP Elements

The following BMPs or equivalent measures are required of all businesses and public agencies engaged in landscaping and vegetation management activities:

- Implement ~~all citywide~~ [BMPs 1 through BMP 8 for all real property](#) (refer to [Section 2.1](#) ~~Chapter 2~~).

Landscaping:

- Do not dispose ~~of or store~~ [of](#) collected vegetation in drainage systems, waterways, receiving waters, or ~~greenbelt areas~~ [public spaces](#). Take care to avoid contamination or site disturbance.
- Use mulch or other erosion control measures when soils or erodible materials are exposed for more than 1 week during the dry season (May 1 to September 30) or 2 days during the rainy season (October 1 to April 30).
- [Comply with Appendix I of this manual and S435 – BMPs for Pesticides and an Integrated Pest Management Program in Volume IV of the SWMMWW \(Ecology 2019\) \(referenced in BMP 49 and BMP 50\) for more information.](#)
- [Implement the landscaping principles in Volume 1, Section 7.8, when planning, constructing, and maintaining landscaped areas.](#)

- Comply with all landscape management plans that apply to the site (refer to Appendix I of this manual).

Pesticides:

- Develop and implement an Integrated Pest Management (IPM) plan (refer to Appendix I). If pesticides or herbicides are used, they must be carefully applied in accordance with label instructions and the Federal Insecticide, Rodenticide and Fungicide Act (FIFRA) and applicable state laws.
 - Choose the least toxic pesticide that is capable of reducing the infestation to acceptable levels.
 - Conduct any pest control during the life stage when the pest is most vulnerable. For example, if it is necessary to use a *Bacillus thuringiensis* application to control tent caterpillars, it must be applied before the caterpillars form their cocoons or it will be ineffective. The pest control method should be site specific rather than using generic methods.
-
- When necessary to use, apply pesticides according to the directions on the label and use the following BMPs:
 - Conduct spray applications according to specific label directions and the applicable local and state regulations.
 - Do not apply pesticides if it is raining or immediately before expected rain (unless the label directs such timing).
 - Ensure that the pesticide application equipment is capable of immediate shutoff in the event of an emergency.
 - Do not apply pesticides within 100 feet of receiving waters, including wetlands, ponds, streams, sloughs, or any ditch or channel conveyance that leads to receiving water, except when approved by Ecology or SPU. All critical areas including streams and wetlands must be flagged prior to spraying. Take care to avoid contamination or site disturbance during applications.
 - Never apply pesticides in quantities that exceed the manufacturer's instructions.
 - Mix pesticides and clean the application equipment under cover in an area where accidental spills will not enter groundwater or other receiving waters and will not contaminate the soil.
 - For roof moss control, ensure that runoff does not enter downspouts or otherwise contaminate stormwater.

The Environmentally Critical Area (ECA) Ordinance (SMC, Chapter 25.09) also restricts certain described pesticide use within buffer zones of certain critical areas.

- Storage:
 - Store pesticides in enclosed or covered impervious containment areas.
 - Do not hose down the paved areas to an inlet/catch basin or ditch.
 - Keep pesticide contaminated waste materials in designated covered and contained areas, and dispose of properly.

- ~~Reuse rinsate generated from equipment cleaning and/or triple rinse pesticide containers and reuse as product or recycle into product.~~

Vegetation Management:

- Fertilizer:
 - Apply all fertilizers using properly trained personnel. Document and keep all training records.
 - For commercial and industrial facilities, do not apply fertilizers to grass swales, filter strips, or buffer areas that drain to receiving waters.
 - [Refer to S443 – BMPs for Fertilizer Application in Volume IV of the SWMMWW \(Ecology 2019\) for additional information \(referenced in BMP 55\).](#)

Recommended BMPs

~~For more details on landscaping and vegetation management, refer to the Stormwater Management Manual for Western Washington (SWMMWW), Volume IV, Source Control, BMPs for Landscaping and Lawn/Vegetation Management (Ecology 2014).~~

Although not required, the following BMPs are recommended to further prevent and minimize the contamination of stormwater resulting from landscaping and lawn and vegetation management activities:

- If adjacent to a building or constructed over hazardous material storage areas, other regulations, including the Seattle Fire Code, may apply.
- Install engineered soil and landscape systems to improve the infiltration and regulation of stormwater in landscaped areas.
- Mulch and mow whenever practical.
- Dispose of grass clippings, leaves, sticks, and other collected vegetation by composting, where feasible.
- Till fertilizers into the soil where practical rather than dumping or broadcasting them onto the surface. Determine the proper fertilizer application for the types of soil and vegetation encountered.
- Till a topsoil mix or composted organic material into the soil to create a well-mixed transition layer that encourages deeper root systems and greater drought-tolerance.
- Use manual and/or mechanical methods of vegetation removal rather than applying herbicides, where practical.

Pesticides:

- ~~Consider alternatives to the use of pesticides, such as covering or harvesting weeds, substituting other species, and manual weed control and moss removal.~~
- ~~Consider the use of soil amendments, such as compost, that are known to control some common diseases in plants, such as root rot (caused by the pathogen *Pythium* spp.), ashy stem blight, and parasitic nematodes. The following are possible mechanisms for disease control by compost addition (U.S. EPA 1997):~~
 - ~~Successful competition for nutrients by antibiotic production~~

- ~~Successful predation against pathogens by beneficial microorganisms~~
- ~~Activation of disease resistant genes in plants by composts~~

An amended soil and landscape system can preserve both the plant system and the soil system more effectively. This type of approach can provide a soil and landscape system with adequate depth, permeability, and organic matter to sustain itself and continue working to effectively infiltrate stormwater and provide a sustainable nutrient cycle.

Vegetation Management:

- Material:
 - Use topsoil layer that is at least 8 inches thick and consists of at least 8 percent organic matter to provide a sufficient growing medium for the vegetation.
 - Select the appropriate turfgrass mixture for the applicable climate and soil type.
- Fertilizer:
 - Use slow-release fertilizer and organic materials for the best availability for turf grass.
 - Time the fertilizer application to periods of maximum plant uptake. Fertilizers should be applied in amounts appropriate for the target vegetation and at the time of year that minimizes loss to surface water and groundwater.
 - Do not fertilize during a drought or when the soil is dry.
 - [Refer to the S443 – BMPs for Fertilizer Application in the SWMMWW \(Ecology 2019\) for additional information \(referenced in BMP 55\).](#)

~~3.3.6.3.3.5.~~ ***BMP 2319: Painting, Finishing, and Coating Activities***

This BMP applies to businesses and public agencies that perform outdoor surface preparation and application of paints, finishes, and coatings to vehicles, boats, buildings, and equipment.

Description of Pollutants

Potential pollutants include organic compounds, oils and greases, metals, and suspended solids. These pollutants must not be discharged to the drainage system or directly into receiving waters.

Required BMP Elements

Activities associated with boatyard and shipyard operations may require an NPDES permit from Ecology. Refer to Ecology's website (<https://ecology.wa.gov/Water-Shorelines/Water-quality/Runoff-pollution/Stormwater>www.ecy.wa.gov/programs/wq/stormwater/index.html) or call Ecology at (360) 407-6000 to determine if the site activities trigger permit coverage.

The following BMPs or equivalent measures are required of all businesses and public agencies engaged in activities related to the painting, finishing, and coating of vehicles, boats, buildings, and equipment outside.

- Implement ~~all citywide~~ [BMPs 1 through BMP 8 for all real property](#) (refer to [Section 2.1](#) ~~Chapter 2~~).

Preparation and Application:

- Train employees in the application and cleanup of paints, finishes, and coatings to reduce misuse and overspray. Document and keep all training records.
- Use ground cloths or drop cloths underneath outdoor painting, scraping, sandblasting work, and properly clean and temporarily store collected debris after each use.
- Use a catch basin cover, filter sock, or similarly effective runoff control device if dust, sediment or other pollutants may escape the work area. If catch basin filter socks are used onsite, maintain the filter regularly to prevent plugging. Stormwater contaminated with pollutants must not enter the drainage system.

Catch basin filter socks only remove solids and do not provide treatment for other pollutants associated with painting, finishing, and coating activities.

- Do not conduct spraying, blasting, or sanding activities over open water or where wind may blow paint into water. If windy conditions are present, use a curtain to contain the activity.
- While using a spray gun or conducting sand blasting, enclose and/or contain all work in compliance with applicable air pollution control requirements and those of the Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA), the Washington Industrial Safety and Health Act, and the Puget Sound Clean Air Agency.

Cleanup:

- Wipe up spills with rags and other absorbent materials immediately. Do not hose down the area.
- On marine dock areas, sweep to collect debris. Do not hose down debris.
- Use a ground cloth, pail, drum, drip pan, tarpaulin, or other protective device for activities such as paint mixing and tool cleaning outside or where spills can contaminate stormwater. Whenever possible, conduct these activities inside or in an enclosed area.
- Clean paintbrushes and tools covered with water-based paints into drains connected to the sanitary sewer. Verify the discharge point before discharging.
- Collect solvents used to clean brushes and tools covered with non-water-based paints, finishes, or other materials. Safely and properly recycle or dispose of used solvents (e.g., paint thinner, turpentine, and xylol).

Material Storage and Disposal:

- Dispose of all waste properly and prevent all uncontrolled releases to the air, ground, or water.
- Store all paints, finishes, or solvents inside a building or in covered secondary containment.
- All containers must have tight-fitting lids [able to retain the contents in the event of tipping](#).

Recommended BMPs

Although not required, the following BMPs are recommended to further prevent and minimize the contamination of stormwater resulting from activities related to the painting, finishing, and coating of vehicles, boats, buildings, and equipment:

- Recycle paints, paint thinner, solvents, washwater from pressure washers, and any other recyclable materials.
- Use efficient spray equipment such as electrostatic, air-atomized, high-volume/low-pressure, or gravity-feed spray equipment.
- Purchase recycled paints, paint thinner, solvents, and other products where feasible.
- Dispose of unused paint promptly.

3.3.7.3.3.6. BMP 2420: Commercial Printing Operations

This BMP applies to businesses and public agencies that perform commercial printing. Materials used in the printing process include inorganic and organic acids, resins, solvents, polyester film, developers, alcohol, vinyl lacquer, dyes, acetates, and polymers.

Description of Pollutants

Waste products from commercial printing processes may include waste inks and ink sludge, resins, photographic chemicals, solvents, acid and alkaline solutions, chlorides, chromium, zinc, lead, formaldehyde, silver, plasticizers, paper, dust, and used lubricating oils. These pollutants must not be discharged to the drainage system or directly into receiving waters.

Printing operations are conducted indoors; therefore, the likely points of potential contact with stormwater are outside storage areas and the external loading bays where chemicals are offloaded.

Required BMP Elements

The following BMPs or equivalent measures are required of all businesses and public agencies engaged in commercial printing activities:

- Implement ~~all citywide~~ [BMPs 1 through BMP 8 for all real property](#) (refer to [Section 2.1](#)~~Chapter 2~~).
- Sweep outdoor areas as necessary to prevent accumulation of dust and debris.
- Discharge process wastewater to the sanitary sewer if approved by SPU and/or King County, or to an approved process wastewater treatment system.
- Determine whether any generated wastes are dangerous wastes and accumulate and dispose of them accordingly.
- Store materials inside a building or in covered secondary containment.

~~3.3.8.~~3.3.7. BMP 2521: Manufacturing Activities

This BMP applies to businesses and public agencies that perform any type of outdoor processing, fabrication, mixing, milling, or refining. This also includes areas where historical contamination may currently be contaminating stormwater.

Description of Pollutants

Pollutant sources from outside manufacturing operations include outside process areas, air pollution control equipment, and areas of historical manufacturing activity. Pollutants can include suspended solids, pH, metals, oils and greases, a variety of organic compounds, and substances that increase chemical oxygen demand (COD). These pollutants must not be discharged to the drainage system or directly into receiving waters.

Required BMP Elements

Outdoor activities associated with industrial manufacturing may require an NPDES permit from Ecology. Refer to Ecology's website (<https://ecology.wa.gov/Water-Shorelines/Water-quality/Runoff-pollution/Stormwater>www.ecy.wa.gov/programs/wq/stormwater/index.html) or call Ecology at (360) 407-6000 to determine if the site activities trigger permit coverage.

The following BMPs or equivalent measures are required of all businesses and public agencies engaged in outdoor manufacturing activities:

- Implement ~~all citywide~~ [BMPs 1 through BMP 8 for all real property](#) (refer to [Section 2.1](#) ~~Chapter 2~~).
- Move all or parts of the manufacturing activity into a building or cover (Figure 10), contain the activity, and connect floor drains to the sanitary sewer. Obtain all necessary permits for installing, altering, or repairing side sewers. Restrictions on certain types of discharges may require pretreatment of discharges before they enter the sanitary sewer. Construct a berm or a sloped floor as needed to prevent drainage of pollutants to outside areas and to prevent run-on of uncontaminated stormwater.
- Make sure all outside materials that have the potential to leach or spill to the drainage system are covered, contained, or moved to an indoor location. The cover must not contribute pollutants to the drainage system.
- Sweep paved areas daily or more often as needed to prevent contamination of stormwater.
- ~~Consider modifying the activity to eliminate or minimize the contamination of stormwater.~~
- Isolate and segregate pollutants where feasible. Convey the segregated pollutants to a sanitary sewer, process treatment, or dead-end sump, depending on the available methods and applicable permit requirements.
- If operational BMPs are not sufficient to prevent stormwater contamination, structural controls must be implemented, including treatment or structural containment.

[Recommended BMPs](#)

[Although not required, the following BMPs are recommended to further prevent and minimize the contamination of stormwater resulting from manufacturing activities:](#)

- [Consider modifying the activity to eliminate or minimize the contamination of stormwater.](#)



Figure 10. Structure Used To Cover Manufacturing Activities.

3.4. Storage and Stockpiling

Activities related to the storage and stockpiling of liquid or solid materials are potentially associated with a high risk for spillage, leakage, erosion, or leaching of pollutants. Both required and recommended BMPs can help to prevent, minimize, and manage the effects of accidental spills and leaks. The specific BMPs that apply to various types of storage and stockpiling activities are presented below.

Remember to also implement ~~all required citywide~~ [BMPs 1 through BMP 8 for all real property](#) from [Section 2.1](#) ~~Chapter 2~~.

3.4.1. *BMP ~~2622~~: Storage ~~or Transfer~~ of Leachable or Erodible Materials*

This BMP applies to businesses and public agencies on whose premises there will be storage ~~and transfer~~ of leachable and erodible materials, including, but not limited to: gravel, sand, salts, topsoil, compost, logs, sawdust, wood chips, lumber and other building materials, concrete, and non-coated galvanized metal or other leachable metal.

Description of Pollutants

If stormwater comes in contact with stockpiled materials, pollutants may be leached or erosion of the stored materials may occur. [Though these materials are typically destined to be used outside, storage of large quantities of these materials awaiting sale or use can contribute high levels of localized pollutant loading.](#) Potential pollutants include suspended solids, substances that increase biological oxygen demand (BOD), organic compounds, dissolved salts (e.g., sodium chloride, calcium chloride, and magnesium chloride), metals, and oils that may be attached to metal parts. These pollutants must not be discharged to the drainage system or directly into receiving waters. Even low levels of metals such as copper and zinc can have detrimental effects on aquatic life.

Required BMP Elements

The following BMPs or equivalent measures are required of all businesses and public agencies engaged in the storage ~~or transfer~~ of leachable or erodible materials:

- Implement ~~all citywide~~ [BMPs 1 through BMP 8 for all real property](#) (refer to [Section 2.1 Chapter 2](#)).
- Store the material inside or cover and contain the material. The cover must fully prevent wind and weather contact with the polluting material. The cover must not contribute pollutants to the drainage system.
- Do not hose down the contained stockpile area to an inlet/catch basin, ditch, or to receiving waters.
- Sweep paved storage areas daily or more often as necessary to collect and dispose of loose solid materials.
- For stockpiles ~~larger than 5 cubic yards~~, implement the following:
 - Store in a covered, paved area, preferably surrounded by a berm, as shown in Figure 11. The cover must fully prevent wind and weather contact with the polluting material. The cover must not contribute pollutants to the drainage system.
 - Place temporary plastic sheeting (polyethylene, polypropylene, Hypalon, or equivalent material) over the material as illustrated in Figure 12. Anchor sheeting to prevent contact with rainfall.
 - [For new or modified areas, pPave the area](#) and install a drainage system:
 - Place curbs or berms along the perimeter of the area to prevent the run-on of uncontaminated stormwater and to collect and convey runoff to a treatment system.

- Slope the paved area in a manner that minimizes the contact between stormwater (e.g., pooling) and leachable materials.



Figure 11. Covered and Secured Storage Area for Bulk Solids.



Figure 12. Covered Storage Area for Erodible Material (gravel).

- For large stockpiles that cannot be covered:
 - Install containment devices such as a berm or a low wall around the perimeter of the site and at any catch basins as needed to prevent erosion of the stockpiled material, and to prevent discharge of leachate from the stockpiled material off site or to an inlet/catch basin.
 - Ensure that contaminated stormwater is not discharged directly to [the drainage system catch basins](#) without being conveyed through a treatment BMP. [Volume 3 – Project Stormwater Control presents approved methods, requirements, criteria, details, and general guidance for analysis and design of on-site stormwater management, flow control, and water quality treatment pursuant to SMC, Chapter 22.800 through 22.808 \(Stormwater Code\).](#)
 - Inspect and maintain catch basins on a regular basis (weekly or more often as needed). ~~Use catch basin filter socks to catch solids.~~ Stormwater contaminated with pollutants must not enter the drainage system.
- ~~Convey stormwater contaminated with solids from the stockpile area to a wet pond, wet vault, settling basin, media filter, catch basin filter sock, or other appropriate settling system. Maintain all settling systems regularly (weekly or as needed) to prevent plugging.~~
- [Maintain drainage areas in and around storage areas for solid materials with a minimum slope of 1.5 percent to prevent pooling and minimize leachate formation. Slope storage areas to drain stormwater to a collection area at the perimeter of the storage area or to internal drainage “alleyways” between storage areas, where material is not stockpiled.](#)

- Make cleanup materials, such as brooms, dustpans, and vacuum sweepers, accessible for use near the storage area.

Recommended BMPs

The following BMPs are recommended to further prevent and minimize the contamination of stormwater resulting from activities related to the storage or transfer of leachable and erodible materials:

- ~~Maintain drainage areas in and around storage areas of solid materials with a minimum slope of 2 percent to prevent pooling and minimize leachate formation. Slope storage areas to drain stormwater to a collection area at the perimeter of the storage area, or to internal drainage “alleyways” between storage areas, where material is not stockpiled.~~
- If and when feasible, collect and recycle materials and leachate to the stockpile.
- ~~Stock cleanup materials, such as brooms, dustpans, and vacuum sweepers, near the storage area.~~
- Keep the minimum amount of stockpiled materials on site. Smaller piles minimize the loss of materials due to wind and rain and will make the piles more manageable to cover.
- ~~Use waterproof liners to prevent leaks from the solid waste container.~~
- ~~Whenever possible, store solid wastes inside.~~

3.4.2. *BMP ~~27-23~~: Temporary Storage or Processing of Fruits, Vegetables, or Grains*

This BMP applies to businesses and public agencies that temporarily store fruits, vegetables, and grains outdoors before processing or sale, or that crush, cut, or shred for wines, beer, frozen juices, or other food and beverage products.

Description of Pollutants

Activities involving the storage or processing of fruits, vegetables, and grains can potentially result in the delivery of pollutants to stormwater. Potential pollutants of concern from all fruit and vegetable storage and processing activities include nutrients, suspended solids, substances that increase biological oxygen demand (BOD), and color. These pollutants must not be discharged to the drainage system or directly into receiving waters.

Required BMP Elements

[Outdoor activities associated with food processing \(examples include brewing activities, grape crushing at wineries, and fresh fruit packing\) may require an NPDES permit from Ecology. Refer to Ecology's website \(<https://ecology.wa.gov/Water-Shorelines/Water-quality/Runoff-pollution/Stormwater>\) or call Ecology at \(360\) 407-6000 to determine if the site activities trigger permit coverage.](#)

The following BMPs or equivalent measures are required of all businesses and public agencies engaged in the temporary storage or processing of fruits, vegetables, and grains:

- Implement ~~all citywide~~ [BMPs 1 through BMP 8 for all real property](#) (refer to [Section 2.1](#) ~~Chapter 2~~).
- Do not allow water used to clean produce to enter the drainage system.
- Sweep paved storage areas daily or more often as needed. Inspect storage areas often and maintain good housekeeping.
- Make sure all outside materials that have the potential to leach or spill to the drainage system are covered, contained, or moved to an indoor location.
- Enclose the processing area in a building or shed, or cover the area with provisions for stormwater run-on prevention. [If less than 200 square feet, a](#) alternatively, pave and slope the area to drain to the sanitary sewer, [a](#) holding tank, or [a](#) process treatment system collection drain. ~~Provide-Prevent~~ stormwater run-on [from entering](#) ~~protection for~~ the processing area. If a holding tank is used for the storage of wastewater, pump out the contents before the tank is full ~~and dispose of wastewater to a sanitary sewer or approved wastewater treatment system~~ and dispose of it properly.
- [Keep cleanup materials, such as brooms and dustpans, near the storage area.](#)

~~3.4.3. **BMP 24: Recycling, Wrecking Yard, and Scrap Yard Operations**~~

~~[This BMP was moved to Chapter 2 – tracked changes from the 2016 Stormwater Manual are shown in Chapter 2.]~~

3.4.4.3.4.3. BMP 2825: Portable Container Storage

The BMPs specified below apply to businesses and public agencies that keep containers [outside](#) on [their](#) premises that may include, but are not limited to, used automotive fluids, liquid feedstock, cleaning compounds, chemicals, dangerous wastes (liquid or solid), and contaminated stormwater. For outside storage of [used](#) cooking [grease-oil](#) containers, [see-refer to](#) BMP 4.

Description of Pollutants

Leaks and spills during handling and storage of portable containers are the primary sources of pollutants. Potential pollutant constituents are oils and greases, low (acid) or high (alkaline) pH, surfactants, substances that increase biological oxygen demand (BOD), substances that increase chemical oxygen demand (COD), and toxic organic compounds.

Required BMP Elements

The following required BMPs apply to all portable containers:

- Implement ~~all citywide~~ [BMPs 1 through BMP 8 for all real property](#) (refer to [Section 2.1](#) ~~Chapter 2~~).
- ~~Wherever possible, store containers on a paved surface under a roof or other appropriate cover or in a building.~~
- Store materials in a leak-proof container with a tight-fitting lid [able to contain the material in the event of tipping](#).
- Label all containers to identify their contents. Position containers so [that labels/markings](#) are clearly visible. ~~If the material is hazardous waste it should have a hazardous waste label.~~
- ~~Ensure that spill kits are located near container storage areas.~~
- Place drip pans beneath all taps on mounted containers and at all potential drip and spill locations during the filling and [unloading-draining](#) of containers.
- Inspect container storage areas regularly for corrosion, structural failure, spills, leaks, [and](#) overfills, ~~and failure of piping systems~~. Check containers daily for leaks and spills. Replace containers and replace and tighten bungs in drums as needed.
- Secure [drums-containers](#) in a manner that prevents accidental spillage, pilferage, or any unauthorized use (Figure 13 and Figure 14).
- ~~Place containers mounted for direct removal of a liquid chemical inside a containment area as described above. Use a drip pan during liquid transfer.~~
- ~~For containers (such as drums) stored in the right-of-way, label with owner information and contents.~~

Recommended BMP Elements

- [Wherever possible, store containers on a paved surface under a roof or other appropriate cover or in a building.](#)



Figure 13. Covered and Secured Storage Area for Containers.



Figure 14. Containers Surrounded by a Berm in an Enclosed Area.

The following BMPs or equivalent measures are required for activities related to [outside storage of containers of hazardous or dangerous material](#) ~~or wastes and liquids except potable water or waste containers located outside~~:

- Store containers in a designated area. Provide covered secondary containment that is capable of holding a volume of either 10 percent of the total volume of the enclosed containers or 110 percent of the volume of the largest container, whichever is greater. Provide a portable secondary containment unit or cover and pave the storage area with an impervious surface and install a berm or dike to surround the area. Slope the area to drain into a dead-end sump for the collection of leaks and small spills.
- Store containers that do not contain free liquids in a designated sloped area with the containers elevated or otherwise protected from stormwater run-on.
- Elevate metal drums to prevent corrosion and leakage.
- Ensure that the storage of reactive, ignitable, or flammable liquids complies with the Seattle Fire Code and Washington State Fire Code.

Recommended BMPs

~~The following BMPs are recommended to further prevent and reduce the contamination of stormwater resulting from the storage of all liquid, containers:~~

- ~~● Provide secondary containment.~~
- ~~● Minimize inventory and accumulation to prevent excess storage of materials.~~

~~3.4.5. BMP 26: Storage of Liquids in Above-ground Tanks~~

[This BMP was moved to Chapter 2 through tracked changes from the 2016 Stormwater Manual are shown in Chapter 2.]

~~3.4.6. BMP 27: Lot Maintenance and Storage~~

This BMP applies to businesses and public agencies that own or operate public and commercial parking lots and sidewalks, such as those associated with retail stores, apartment buildings, fleet vehicles (including car rental lots and car dealerships), and equipment sale and rental facilities. It also includes properties where vehicles or equipment are stored outside.

~~Description of Pollutants~~

Potential pollutants produced by the parking and storage of vehicles and equipment include petroleum hydrocarbons and other organic compounds, oils and greases, metals, and suspended solids.

~~Required BMP Elements~~

The following BMPs or equivalent measures are required for activities related to the parking and storage of vehicles and equipment:

- ~~Implement all citywide BMPs (refer to Chapter 2).~~
- ~~Sweep or vacuum parking lots, storage areas, sidewalks, and driveways regularly to collect dirt, waste, and debris and dispose as solid waste.~~
- ~~When washing a parking lot, follow guidelines for washing found in BMP 8.~~
- ~~When storing materials other than vehicles, refer to applicable BMPs in this volume.~~
- ~~Inspect the lot routinely for leaks and spills. Employ spill cleanup procedures (refer to BMP 5) when necessary. Pick up absorbents and properly dispose of them after use.~~
- ~~An oil removal system such as an API oil/water separator, coalescing plate oil/water separator, catch basin filter sock, or equivalent BMP that is approved by SPU is required for parking lots that meet the threshold for vehicle traffic intensity of a high-use site. Refer to Volume 3—Project Stormwater Control for information on traffic intensity thresholds. If a catch basin filter sock is used, maintain the filter regularly to prevent plugging.~~

3.5. Dust, Soil Erosion, and Sediment Control

Construction, manufacturing, and industrial activities have the potential to generate significant amounts of dust, soil, and sediment, which can pollute both air and stormwater. Control measures for dust, soil, and sediment are necessary to prevent pollution, but BMPs that are not properly implemented can be harmful to stormwater and the environment.

The required and recommended BMPs for these activities are presented below. First, prevent the production of dust, soil, and sediment. Then, implement BMPs to minimize their production. Finally, manage dust, soil, and sediment so that contaminated stormwater is not conveyed to the drainage system or receiving waters.

Remember to also implement ~~all required citywide~~ [BMPs 1 through BMP 8 for all real property](#) from [Section 2.1](#) ~~Chapter 2~~.

3.5.1. *BMP ~~2928~~: Dust Control in Disturbed Land Areas and on Unpaved Roadways and Parking Lots*

This BMP applies to businesses and public agencies that pursue dust control measures in disturbed land areas or on unpaved roadways and parking lots. All land-disturbing activity must comply with the erosion and sediment controls described in the Stormwater Code (SMC, [Chapters 22.800 through 22.808](#)).

Description of Pollutants

Dust can result in air and water pollution, particularly at demolition sites, in disturbed land areas, and on unpaved roadways and parking lots. Chemicals applied to dust-prone areas to minimize dust production also have the potential to pollute stormwater and receiving waters if they are not properly selected or applied.

Required BMP Elements

The following BMPs or equivalent measures are required of all businesses and public agencies engaged in activities that generate dust:

- Implement ~~all citywide~~ [BMPs 1 through BMP 8 for all real property](#) (refer to [Section 2.1Chapter 2](#)).
- Protect inlets/catch basins during application of dust suppressants. [Prevent liquid dust suppressants from flowing into the drainage system during application.](#)
- Sprinkle or wet down soil or dust with water as long as it does not result in a discharge to inlets/catch basins or receiving waters.
- Only use local and/or state government approved dust suppressant chemicals, such as those listed in Publication [No. 96-433, Methods for Dust Control Techniques for Dust Prevention and Suppression](#) (Ecology [2016a2003](#)).
- Avoid excessive and repeated application of dust suppression chemicals. Time the application of dust suppressants to avoid or minimize their wash off by rainfall or human activity (such as irrigation).
- Street gutters, sidewalks, driveways, and other paved surfaces in the immediate area of the activity must be swept regularly to collect and properly dispose of [dust, dirt, loose debris,](#) and garbage.
- Install catch basin filter socks on site and in surrounding catch basins to collect sediment and debris. Maintain the filters regularly to prevent plugging.

BMPs required for [construction](#) dust control, such as dust suppression by water spray, are provided in *Volume 2 – Construction Stormwater Control*.

3.5.2. *BMP 3029: Dust Control at Manufacturing Sites*

This BMP applies to all businesses and public agencies, but particularly industrial and manufacturing facilities that have the potential to generate dust, including gravel, crushed rock, cement, fly ash, and other airborne pollutants.

Description of Pollutants

Industrial material handling activities can generate a considerable amount of dust, which is typically removed by means of exhaust systems. The exhaust systems can generate air emissions and can contaminate stormwater. Dust can be generated by mixing cement and concrete products and handling powdered materials. Particulate materials that can cause air pollution are sawdust, coal, boiler fly ash, and dust from grain, coal, gravel, crushed rock, and cement. Air emissions can contaminate stormwater if not properly managed and controlled.

Required BMP Elements

The following BMPs or equivalent measures are required of all businesses and public agencies engaged in activities that can generate dust:

- Implement ~~all citywide~~ [BMPs 1 through BMP 8 for all real property](#) (refer to [Section 2.1 Chapter 2](#)).
- Clean accumulated dust and residue from powdered material handling equipment and vehicles as needed.
- Maintain onsite controls so that no vehicle track-out occurs.
- Regularly sweep areas of accumulated dust that can contaminate stormwater. Sweeping should be conducted with vacuum-filter equipment to minimize dust generation and ensure optimal dust removal.
- Maintain dust collection devices on a regular basis.
- Where feasible, periodically wash surfaces, such as roofs and yards, to prevent buildup. Discharge washwater to the sanitary sewer, [if authorized](#), or recover for proper off-site [treatment or disposal](#).
- If operational BMPs are not sufficient to prevent stormwater contamination, structural controls must be implemented, including treatment or structural containment.

Facility operations that create or have the potential to create air pollution are regulated by the Puget Sound Clean Air Agency. For more information on necessary permits, contact the Puget Sound Clean Air Agency at (800) 552-3565.

3.5.3. ***BMP ~~3130~~: Soil Erosion and Sediment Control at Industrial Sites/Facilities***

This BMP applies to business and public agency industrial facilities that operate in ~~or near~~ areas with exposed or disturbed soils, areas with steep grades, or as deemed necessary to prevent sediment transport. For information on construction related soil erosion and sediment control, refer to *Volume 2 – Construction Stormwater Control*.

Description of Pollutants

Industrial activities in areas with exposed or disturbed soils or areas with steep grades can be sources of sediment that can contaminate stormwater runoff. Pollutants include suspended solids, oils and greases, metals, and other industrial contaminants ~~leaching~~ from onsite activities.

Required BMP Elements

The following BMPs or equivalent measures are required of all businesses and public agencies to deal with soil erosion and sediment control:

- Implement ~~all citywide~~ [BMPs 1 through BMP 8 for all real property](#) (refer to [Section 2.1/Chapter 2](#)).
- Limit the exposure of erodible soil.
- Stabilize or cover erodible soil to prevent erosion.
- Stabilize entrances/exits to prevent track-out.
- Install one or more of the following cover practices:
 - Vegetative cover, such as grass, trees, or shrubs, in erodible soil areas
 - Covering with mats, such as clear plastic, jute, or synthetic fiber
 - Preservation of natural vegetation, including grass, trees, shrubs, and vines
- If operational BMPs are not sufficient to prevent stormwater contamination, structural controls must be implemented, including treatment or structural containment, which may include paving.

Washington State Water Quality Standards have specific limits on turbidity discharges. For specific information, reference WAC, Chapter 173-201A.

3.6. Other Activities

Several activities that do not fall into the previously described categories have a high risk for generating pollutants and contaminating stormwater and receiving waters. The required and recommended BMPs for these activities are presented as follows, according to the type of activity and the potential pollutants. Regardless of the activity, an overall approach to pollutant control should first emphasize pollution prevention, then the minimization of pollution, followed by pollution management.

Remember to also implement ~~all required citywide~~ BMPs [1 through BMP 8 for all real property](#) from [Section 2.1Chapter 2](#).

3.6.1. *BMP ~~3231~~: Commercial Animal Care and Handling*

This BMP applies to businesses and public agencies that perform animal care and handling including the management of animals at racetracks, kennels, day kennels, fenced pens, and veterinary offices and hospitals. It encompasses businesses or public agencies that provide boarding services for horses, dogs, cats, and other animals.

Description of Pollutants

Examples of animal handling activities that can generate pollutants are the cleanup of manure deposits and animal washing. Potential pollutants include fecal coliform bacteria, nutrients, soap, substances that increase biological oxygen demand (BOD) and suspended solids.

Required BMP Elements

The following source control BMPs or equivalent measures are required for all commercial animal handling activities:

- Implement ~~all citywide~~ [BMPs 1 through BMP 8 for all real property](#) (refer to [Section 2.1](#) ~~Chapter 2~~).
- Regularly sweep and clean animal-keeping areas to collect and properly dispose of droppings, uneaten food, and other potential stormwater contaminants. Do not discharge pollutants associated with these activities to the drainage system.
- If inlets/catch basins are in areas where animals are concentrated, close these drains and redirect stormwater to an appropriate treatment area, or cover area to prevent contact with stormwater.
- Do not hose down areas that contain potential stormwater contaminants if the water will drain to inlets/catch basins or receiving waters. Do not allow washwater to be discharged to inlets/catch basins or receiving waters without proper treatment.
- If animals are not leashed or in cages, the animal-keeping area must be surrounded by a fence or other means of preventing animals from moving out of the controlled area where BMPs are used.
- For outside surface areas that must be disinfected, use an unsaturated mop to spot clean the area. Do not allow wastewater runoff to enter the drainage system.

Recommended BMPs

Areas where animals are kept or exercised should be located where runoff will infiltrate and ~~not where it will not flow~~ [to drainage systems or receiving waters](#). ~~to catch basins or street drains.~~

3.6.2. *BMP 3332: Log Sorting and Handling*

This BMP applies to businesses and public agencies with paved or unpaved areas where logs are transferred, sorted, debarked, cut, and stored to prepare them for shipment; or for the production of dimensional lumber, plywood, chips, poles, or other products. Log yards are generally maintained at sawmills, shipping ports, and pulp mills.

Log sorting and handling activities may require an NPDES permit from Ecology. Refer to Ecology's website (<https://ecology.wa.gov/Water-Shorelines/Water-quality/Runoff-pollution/Stormwater> www.ecy.wa.gov/programs/wq/stormwater/index.html) or call Ecology at (360) 407-6000 to determine if the site activities trigger permit coverage. Required and recommended source control and treatment BMPs are described in detail in Publication [No. 04-10-031](#), *Industrial Stormwater General Permit Implementation Manual for Log Yards* (Ecology [2016b2004](#); [currently under revision](#)).

Refer to *S413 – BMPs for Log Sorting and Handling* in [Volume IV of the SWMMWW](#), ~~Volume IV~~ (Ecology [20192014](#)) for a description of the pollutants associated with this activity and the required BMP elements.

3.6.3. *BMP ~~3433~~: Boat Building, ~~Mooring~~, Maintenance, and Repair*

This BMP applies to businesses and public agencies that perform activities related to boat and shipbuilding and their repair and maintenance at boatyards, shipyards, ports, and marinas. Activities that can generate pollutants include pressure washing, surface preparation, paint removal, sanding, painting, engine maintenance and repairs, and material handling and storage. If conducted outdoors, all of these activities are associated with a high risk for contaminating receiving water.

Description of Pollutants

Potential pollutants include spent abrasive grits, solvents, oils, ethylene glycol, washwater, paint overspray, cleaners and detergents, anticorrosion compounds, paint chips, scrap metal, welding rods, resins, glass fibers, dust, and miscellaneous trash. Pollutant constituents include suspended solids, oils and greases, organic compounds, copper, lead, tin, and zinc.

Required BMP Elements

Activities associated with boatyard and shipyard operations may require an NPDES permit from Ecology. Refer to Ecology's website (<https://ecology.wa.gov/Water-Shorelines/Water-quality/Runoff-pollution/Stormwater> www.ecy.wa.gov/programs/wq/stormwater/index.html) or call Ecology at (360) 407-6000 to determine if the site activities trigger permit coverage.

The following BMPs or equivalent measures are required for boat and ship building, maintenance, and repair activities:

- Implement ~~all citywide~~ [BMPs 1 through BMP 8 for all real property](#) (refer to [Section 2.1](#) ~~Chapter 2~~).
- In addition to the ~~citywide~~ [BMP 5](#) spill control requirements, include a marine containment boom in spill kits for shipyards, boatyards, and marinas.
- Locate spill kits on all piers or docks.
- Immediately clean up any spills on dock, boat, or ship deck areas and dispose of the wastes properly.
- Immediately repair or replace leaking connections, valves, pipes, hoses, and equipment that can result in the contamination of stormwater.
- Relocate maintenance and repair activities onshore if feasible to reduce the potential for direct pollution of receiving waters.
- Perform paint and solvent mixing, fuel mixing, and similar handling of liquids onshore or in a location with proper containment so that nothing can spill directly into receiving waters.
- All liquids stored over water or on docks must have covered secondary containment.
- Store all batteries and oily parts in a covered container with a tight-fitting lid.
- Store materials such as paints, tools, and ground cloths indoors or in a covered area when not in use.
- Collect spent abrasives regularly and contain or store them under cover until they can be disposed of properly.

- Sweep and clean yard areas, docks, and boat ramps at least once each week or more often as needed. Do not hose them down. Properly dispose of the collected materials. Sweep dry docks before flooding.
- When washing, do not allow any pollutants, including soap, to enter the drainage system or receiving water.
- Use fixed platforms with appropriate plastic or tarpaulin barriers as work surfaces and for containment when work is performed on a vessel in the water to prevent material or overspray from contacting stormwater or receiving water. Use of the platform approach should be kept to a minimum. Only work that is done in compliance with NPDES requirements should be done over water.

The following BMPs or equivalent measures are required for boat and ship blasting and spray painting activities:

- Move the activity indoors or enclose, cover, and contain the activity. Prohibit outside spray painting, blasting, or sanding activities during windy conditions that render containment ineffective.
- Store materials such as paints, tools, and ground cloths indoors or in a covered area when not in use.
- Contain blasting and spray painting activities by hanging tarpaulins to block the wind and prevent dust and overspray from escaping. Do not perform uncontained spray painting, blasting, or sanding activities over open water without proper protection (e.g., overspray collection, drop clothes, booms).
- Use plywood and/or plastic sheeting to cover open areas between decks when sandblasting.
- Use ground cloths to collect drips and spills during painting and finishing operations, paint chips, and used blasting sand during sand blasting.
- Do not paint or use spray guns on or above the deck.

In the event of an accidental discharge of oil or hazardous material into receiving water or onto land if there is a potential for entry into receiving water, the responsible party must meet all notification requirements including, but not limited to, notifying the yard, port, or marina owner or manager; Ecology's Northwest Regional Office at (425) 649-7000; and the National Response Center at (800) 424-8802 (24-hour). If the spill can reach or has reached marine water, call the U.S. Coast Guard at (206) 217-6232.

Recommended BMPs

Although not required, the following BMPs are encouraged to further reduce the potential for stormwater contamination:

- Select the least toxic antifouling paint available.
- Routinely clean boat interiors and properly dispose of collected materials so that accumulated water, which must be drained from the boat, does not become contaminated.

3.6.4. *BMP ~~3534~~: Cleaning and Maintenance of Pools, Spas, Hot Tubs, and Fountains*

This BMP applies to all public and commercial swimming pools and spas, hot tubs, and fountains that use chemicals and/or are heated. Pools and spas at hotels, motels, apartments, and condominium complexes are also covered.

Description of Pollutants

Pollutants of concern include nutrients, suspended solids, chlorine, pH, and substances that increase chemical oxygen demand (COD).

Required BMP Elements

The following BMPs or equivalent measures are required for all pool, spa, hot tub, and fountain cleaning and maintenance activities:

- Implement ~~all citywide~~ [BMPs 1 through BMP 8 for all real property](#) (refer to [Section 2.1](#)~~Chapter 2~~).
- Discharge wastewater from backwashing and other maintenance activities related to cleaning to the sanitary sewer. Obtain all necessary permits for discharge to the sanitary sewer.
- For pool, spa, hot tub, and fountain draining, discharge to the sanitary sewer is the preferred method. Obtain all necessary permits for discharge to the sanitary sewer.
- If discharging to the ground, the discharge must comply with Ecology’s Groundwater Quality Standards (WAC, Chapter 173-200). Discharge must be moderated to allow infiltration of all water into the ground and not produce surface runoff.
- If discharge to the sanitary sewer or ground is not possible for draining a pool, spa, hot tub, or fountain, water may be discharged to a ditch or drainage system, provided that the following conditions have been met:
 - Dechlorinated/debrominated to 0.1 part per million (ppm) or less
 - Adjusted to a pH between 6.5 and 8.5
 - Adjusted to a temperature and dissolved oxygen concentration that will prevent an increase in temperature or a decrease in dissolved oxygen concentration in the downstream receiving water
 - Released at a controlled flow rate to prevent erosion and high flow impacts in the drainage ditch or downstream receiving water
 - Free of any coloration, dirt, [cleaning chemicals](#)~~suds~~, algae, filter media, or [acid cleaning](#)~~otherwise prohibited~~ wastes

Guidance on dechlorination is provided in the Department of Health’s Water System Design Manual, Publication 331-123 (DOH 2009). The Department of Health manual further references the American Water Works Association (AWWA) Standard for Disinfecting Water Mains (C651) and Standard for Disinfecting Water Storage Facilities (C652). Contact AWWA for more information. Contact a pool chemical supplier to obtain the neutralizing chemicals needed.

3.6.5. *BMP ~~3635~~: Deicing and Anti-icing Operations for Airports and Streets*

This BMP applies to businesses and public agencies that perform deicing and anti-icing operations used on highways, streets, airport runways, and aircraft to control ice and snow.

Description of Pollutants

Typically, ethylene glycol and propylene glycol are used on aircraft as deicers. The deicers commonly used on highways and streets include calcium magnesium acetate, calcium chloride, magnesium chloride, sodium chloride, urea, and potassium acetate.

Deicing and anti-icing chemicals become pollutants when they are conveyed to inlets/catch basins or to receiving water after application. Leaks and spills of these chemicals can also occur during their handling and storage.

Discharges of spent glycol in aircraft application areas are process wastewaters regulated under the Ecology NPDES permit. (Contact Ecology at (360) 407-6000 for details.) BMPs for aircraft deicers and anti-icers must be consistent with aviation safety requirements and the operational needs of the aircraft operator.

Required BMP Elements

The following BMPs or equivalent measures are required for deicing and anti-icing activities related to aircraft:

- Implement ~~all citywide~~ [BMPs 1 through BMP 8 for all real property](#) (refer to [Section 2.1](#) ~~Chapter 2~~).
- Conduct aircraft deicing and anti-icing applications in impervious containment areas. Collect spent deicing liquids (e.g., ethylene glycol) and anti-icing chemicals (e.g., urea) that drain from aircraft in deicing or anti-icing application areas and convey them to a sanitary sewer, treatment facility, or other approved disposal or recovery method. Divert runoff of deicing chemicals from paved gate areas to appropriate collection areas or conveyances for proper treatment or disposal.
- Do not allow spent deicing and anti-icing chemicals or contaminated stormwater to be discharged directly or indirectly from application areas, including gate areas, to a receiving water or groundwater.
- Transfer deicing and anti-icing chemicals on an impervious containment pad, or an equivalent spill/leak containment area, and store them in secondary containment areas.

The following BMPs or equivalent measures are required for deicing and anti-icing activities related to runways and taxiways:

- Avoid excessive application of de/anti-icing chemicals, which could contaminate stormwater.
- Store and transfer de/anti-icing materials on an impervious containment pad or an equivalent containment area.

The following BMPs or equivalent measures are required for deicing and anti-icing activities related to streets and highways:

- Select deicers and anti-icers that result in the least adverse environmental impact. Apply only as needed using minimum quantities.
- Where feasible and practical, use roadway deicers, such as calcium magnesium acetate, potassium acetate, or similar materials that cause less adverse environmental impact than urea and sodium chloride.
- Store and transfer deicing and anti-icing materials on an impervious containment pad.
- Sweep or clean up accumulated deicing and anti-icing materials and grit from roads as soon as possible after the road surface clears.
- Increase maintenance of stormwater structures as necessary.

Recommended BMPs

Although not required, the following BMPs are recommended to further reduce the potential for the contamination of stormwater and receiving waters:

Aircraft:

- Establish a centralized aircraft deicing and anti-icing facility, if feasible and practical, or conduct deicing and anti-icing in designated areas of the tarmac equipped with separate collection drains for the spent deicing liquids.
- Consider installing a recovery system for aircraft deicing and anti-icing chemicals, or contract with a chemical recycler, if practical.

Airport Runways and Taxiways:

- Include limits on toxic materials and phosphorus in the specifications for deicers and anti-icers, where applicable.
- Consider using anti-icing materials rather than deicers if they will result in less adverse environmental impact.
- Select cost-effective deicers and anti-icers that cause the least adverse environmental impact.

Streets and Highways:

- Intensify roadway cleaning in early spring to help remove particulates from road surfaces.
- Include limits on toxic metals in the specifications for deicers and anti-icers.

3.6.6. *BMP ~~3736~~: Maintenance and Management of Roof and Building Drains at [Manufacturing Industrial and Commercial Buildings](#)*

This BMP applies to businesses and public agencies where the roofs and sides of [manufacturing industrial or](#) commercial buildings can be sources of pollutants when stormwater runoff results in the leaching of roofing materials, materials from building vents, air emissions, flashing, cleaning agents, and applied moss killers. Flaking paint and caulking can also be sources of pollutants.

Description of Pollutants

Vapors and entrained liquid and solid droplets and particles have been identified as potential pollutants in roof and building runoff. The pollutants identified include metals, solvents, low (acidic) and high (alkaline) pH, substances that increase biological oxygen demand (BOD), and organic compounds. Flaking paint or caulking may be a source of metals and organic compounds. [PCBs may leach out of old paint coatings and caulking materials from buildings, such as those built or renovated between 1950 and 1980.](#)

[Entities that conduct specific industrial activities are required to obtain an Industrial NPDES Permit for their stormwater discharges. For more information about whether an entity needs an NPDES permit, refer to Ecology's website \(<https://ecology.wa.gov/Water-Shorelines/Water-quality/Runoff-pollution/Stormwater>\) or call Ecology at \(360\) 407-6000.](#)

Required BMP Elements

The following BMPs or equivalent measures are required for all commercial and [manufacturing industrial](#) buildings to prevent and reduce stormwater pollution:

- Implement ~~all citywide~~ [BMPs 1 through BMP 8 for all real property](#) (refer to [Section 2.1](#) ~~Chapter 2~~).
- If leachates or emissions from buildings are suspected sources of stormwater pollutants, sample and analyze the stormwater draining from the building ~~or~~ [and](#) sediment from nearby catch basins.
- If a roof or building is identified as a source of stormwater pollutants, implement appropriate [operational](#) source control measures, such as air pollution control equipment, selection of [alternative](#) materials, operational changes, material recycling, ~~or~~ [process changes](#), remediation, or treatment.
- Sweep areas routinely to remove pollutant residues.
- If operational methods do not prevent or reduce [zinc pollution from galvanized roofing or siding](#), paint/coat the galvanized surfaces as described in Publication 08-10-025, *Suggested Practices to Reduce Zinc Concentrations in Industrial Stormwater Discharges* (Ecology 2008) or treat the stormwater runoff.
- If operational BMPs are not sufficient to prevent stormwater contamination, structural controls must be implemented, including treatment or [structural](#) containment.

3.6.7. *BMP 3837: Maintenance and Operation of Railroad Yards*

This BMP applies to businesses and public agencies that perform activities at railroad yards not otherwise covered in this manual, including cleaning, maintenance, and repair of equipment and engines; fueling; waste disposal (including human waste); and all other yard maintenance activities (including vegetation management).

Description of Pollutants

Pollutant sources include litter; cleaning areas for locomotives, rail cars, and equipment; fueling areas; rail cargo; human waste disposal; outside material storage areas; erosion and loss of soil particles from the railroad bed; maintenance and repair activities at railroad terminals, switching yards, and maintenance yards; and herbicides used for vegetation management. Potential pollutants include oils and greases, suspended solids, substances that increase biological oxygen demand (BOD), fecal coliform, organic compounds, pesticides, and metals.

Required BMP Elements

The following BMPs or equivalent measures are required for railroad yards:

- Implement ~~all citywide~~ [BMPs 1 through BMP 8 for all real property](#) (refer to [Section 2.1 Chapter 2](#)).
- Implement the applicable BMPs in this volume specific to the activity that is occurring.
- Do not allow discharge from toilets to outside areas. Pump-out facilities should be used to service these units.
- Use drip pans at hose and pipe connections during liquid transfer and other leak-prone areas.
- During maintenance, do not discard debris or waste liquids along the tracks or in railroad yards.
- In areas subject to leaks or spills of oils or other chemicals, convey the contaminated stormwater to an appropriate treatment system such as the sanitary sewer, if approved by SPU and/or King County, or to an [American Petroleum Institute \(API\)](#) oil/water separator, coalescing plate oil/water separator for floating oils, or an appropriate treatment [BMP facility](#) (refer to [see Volume 3 – Project Stormwater Control](#)).
- [Place drip pans, absorbent pads/mats, or other containment measures below leaking vehicles \(including inoperable vehicles and equipment\) in a manner that catches leaks or spills. Drip pans or other containment measures must be managed to prevent overflowing or pass-through, and the contents must be disposed of properly. Absorbent pads or mats must be weighted down or secured so as not to be blown away by the wind, and changed out prior to becoming fully saturated.](#)
- [During routine maintenance, discharge locomotive cooling systems only after the locomotive has stopped and at a location where the coolant can be collected, managed, and then disposed of properly.](#)

- Handle wastes generated from large-scale equipment cleaning, such as locomotive, track equipment, or axle--cleaning operations, properly to avoid harming the environment and to comply with state and federal environmental regulations.
- Store any metal scrap where it will not come in contact with stormwater.
- Place track mats under each rail/flange lubricator that is in service where track mats can be safely installed and maintained without danger to rolling stock or personnel.
- Install track mats at designated engine tie-up and/or outdoor locomotive parking locations (e.g., service tracks) in SWPPP-permitted areas and locomotives are unattended and idle for extended periods of time.
- Inspect and replace track mats, as necessary. Routinely inspect all track mats for tears or saturation and replace as necessary.
- Install spill containment pans/trays or track mats at designated locomotive and railcar maintenance facilities and fixed fueling areas to reduce environmental impacts due to potential spills under locomotives and other track equipment. Direct spill containment pans/trays to an oil/water separator where feasible for treatment or collect spilled chemicals for proper disposal.
- During locomotive fueling operations use drip pans or secondary containment to capture any fuel or oil seepage.
- Select cost-effective rail/flange lubricant that provides safe and effective rail operation while considering adverse environmental impacts. Consider both the chemical composition of the lubricant and the likelihood of off-rail transfer during rain events.
- Do not conduct heavy/major locomotive engine repairs on the rail line. Conduct heavy/major engine repairs at an established railroad maintenance facility.
- Store creosote-treated railroad ties in locations that reduce the potential to impact stormwater runoff.

3.6.8. *BMP 3938: Maintenance of Public and Private Utility Corridors and Facilities*

This BMP applies to businesses and public agencies that maintain utility corridors and associated equipment at petroleum product pipelines, natural gas pipelines, water pipelines, pump stations, electrical power transmission corridors, and rights-of-way.

Description of Pollutants

Corridors and facilities can be sources of pollutants, such as herbicides used for vegetation management and eroded soil particles generated from unpaved access roads. At pump stations, waste materials generated during maintenance activities are often temporarily stored outside, and thus can be a source of pollution into inlets/catch basins and receiving waters.

Additional potential pollutant sources include the leaching of preservatives from wood utility poles, polychlorinated biphenyls (PCBs) in older transformers, water that is removed from underground transformer vaults, and leaks or spills from petroleum pipelines. Potential pollutants are oils and greases, suspended solids, substances that increase biological oxygen demand (BOD), organic compounds, polychlorinated biphenyls, pesticides, and metals.

Required BMP Elements

The following BMPs or equivalent measures are required for activities related to the maintenance of public and utility corridors and facilities:

- Implement ~~all citywide~~ [BMPs 1 through BMP 8 for all real property](#) (refer to [Section 2.1](#) ~~Chapter 2~~).
- Implement ~~BMPs 22~~ [for](#) [\(Landscaping and Vegetation Management \(BMP 18\), including and integrated pest management \(IPM\). Implement S435 – BMPs for Pesticides and an Integrated Pest Management Program in Volume IV of the SWMMWW \(Ecology 2019\) \(referenced in BMP 49\). Appendix I of this manual contains information on developing an integrated pest management plan.](#)
- When water or sediments are removed from electric transformer vaults, determine whether contaminants are present before disposing of the water and sediments.
 - This includes inspecting for the presence of oil or oil sheen and determining from records or testing whether the transformers contain or contained polychlorinated biphenyls (PCBs).
 - If records or tests indicate that the sediment or water could contain PCBs ~~at concentrations greater than the allowable levels~~, manage the sediment or water in accordance with applicable federal and state regulations, including the federal rules for polychlorinated biphenyls (Code of Federal Regulations, Title 40, Part 761) and the state Model Toxics Control Act cleanup regulations (WAC, Chapter 173-340).
 - Water removed from the vaults can be discharged in accordance with the Code of Federal Regulations, Title 40, Section 761.79, and state regulations (Washington

Administrative Code, Chapters 173-201A and 173-200), or via the sanitary sewer if the requirements, including applicable permits, for such a discharge are met.

- Provide maintenance practices to prevent stormwater from accumulating and draining across and/or onto roadways. Stormwater should be conveyed through roadside ditches and culverts. The road should be crowned, outsloped, water barred, or otherwise left in a condition that is not conducive to erosion.
- Maintain ditches and culverts at an appropriate frequency to prevent plugging and flooding across the roadbed, with resulting overflow erosion.
- Apply the appropriate BMPs in this volume for the storage of waste materials that can contaminate stormwater.
- Within utility corridors, prepare maintenance procedures to minimize the erosion of soil. An implementation schedule may provide for a vegetative, gravel, or equivalent cover that minimizes thinly vegetated ground surfaces within the corridor.

Recommended BMPs

Although not required, the following BMPs can further prevent and minimize stormwater contamination:

- Maintain vegetation in roadside ditches that discharge to receiving waters to remove some pollutants associated with sediments carried by stormwater.
- When selecting utility poles for a specific location, consideration should be given to the potential environmental effects of the pole or poles during their storage, handling, and end use.
- If a wood product treated with chemical preservatives is used, it should be made in accordance with generally accepted industry standards such as the American Wood Preservers Association Standards.
- If the pole or poles will be placed in or near a drinking water well or a critical area, consider alternative materials or technologies. These include poles made of material(s) other than wood, such as fiberglass composites, metal, or concrete.
- Consider the use of other technologies and materials, such as sleeves or caissons for wood poles, when they are determined to be practical and available.
- As soon as practical, remove all litter from wire cutting and replacement operations.

3.6.9. *BMP 4039: Maintenance of Roadside Ditches*

This BMP applies to businesses and public agencies that perform activities related to the maintenance of roadside ditches, which can present a high risk of polluting stormwater because the ditches in which work is performed flow into the drainage system.

Description of Pollutants

Common road debris including particles from tire wear, dripped oil and other fluids; chemicals used in deicing; pesticides; herbicides; eroded or contaminated soil; and metals can be sources of stormwater pollutants.

Required BMP Elements

The following BMPs or equivalent measures are required for activities related to the maintenance of roadside ditches:

- Implement ~~all citywide~~ [BMPs 1 through BMP 8 for all real property](#) (refer to [Section 2.1 Chapter 2](#)).
- Implement BMPs for Landscaping and Vegetation Management (BMP [2218](#)), ~~including~~ [and integrated pest management \(IPM\). Implement S435 – BMPs for Pesticides and an Integrated Pest Management Program in Volume IV of the SWMMWW \(Ecology 2019\) \(referenced in BMP 49\).](#)
- Inspect roadside ditches regularly, as needed to identify sediment accumulations and areas of localized erosion.
- Clean ditches on a regular basis, as needed:
 - Keep ditches free of rubbish and debris.
 - Conduct ditch maintenance (seeding, fertilizer application, and harvesting) when most effective, usually in late spring and/or early fall and avoid maintenance during heavy rainfall.
 - Do not apply fertilizer unless needed to maintain vegetative growth.
 - Do not leave material from the ditch cleaning on roadway surfaces.
 - Sweep and remove dirt and debris that remains on the pavement at the completion of ditch cleaning operations.
 - Segregate clean materials from suspect or contaminated materials. Non-contaminated soils may be handled as “clean soils” and non-contaminated vegetative matter can be composted or disposed of in a municipal waste landfill, if permitted. Suspected contaminated or contaminated material removed from ditches must be tested and handled according to the Dangerous Waste Regulations (WAC, Chapter 173-303) unless testing indicates that it is not dangerous waste.
- Vegetation in ditches often prevents erosion and cleanses runoff:
 - Remove vegetation only when flow is blocked or excess sediments have accumulated.
 - Use grass vegetation, unless specified otherwise by SPU.
 - Establish vegetation from the edge of the pavement if possible or at least from the top of the slope of the ditch.

- Use temporary erosion and sediment control measures or re-vegetate as necessary to prevent erosion during ditch reshaping.
- Diversion ditches on top of cut slopes that are constructed to prevent slope erosion by intercepting surface drainage must be maintained to retain their diversion shape and capability.
- Inspect culverts on a regular basis for scour or sedimentation at the inlet and outlet, and repair as necessary. Give priority to culverts that are conveying perennial or salmon-bearing streams and to culverts near streams in areas of high sediment load, such as those near subdivisions during construction. Maintain trash racks to avoid damage, blockage or erosion of culverts.
- Waste generated from ditch maintenance, i.e., spoils and debris, may be contaminated and require specialized disposal. Refer to BMP 3 for waste disposal guidelines.
- Note: ~~that~~ Work in wet areas may be regulated by local, state, or federal laws ~~which~~ that impose obligations on the responsible party.

3.6.10. BMP 41: Potable Water Line Flushing, Water Tank Maintenance, and Hydrant Testing

This BMP applies to businesses and public agencies that perform activities related to potable water line flushing, water tank maintenance, and hydrant testing.

Description of Pollutants

Improper water line flushing, water tank maintenance, and hydrant testing may result in the discharge of sediments and materials to water bodies. Chemicals associated with water line flushing and water tank maintenance may be harmful to aquatic organisms and have an adverse effect on receiving water bodies.

Required BMP Elements

Required BMP elements are contained in S441 – BMPs for Potable Water Line Flushing, Water Tank Maintenance and Hydrant Testing in Volume IV of the SWMMWW (Ecology 2019).

3.6.11. BMP 42: Urban Streets

This BMP applies to businesses and public agencies that perform activities on urban streets.

Description of Pollutants

Urban streets can be a source of pollutants such as soil, fine dust, vegetation, nutrients, trash, oil and grease, vehicle combustion products, ice control salts, and pollutants that wash onto roadways from other areas.

Required BMP Elements

Required BMP elements are contained in S430 – [BMPs for Urban Streets in Volume IV of the SWMMWW \(Ecology 2019\)](#).

3.6.12. BMP 43: Nurseries and Greenhouses

This BMP applies to businesses and public agencies that operate nurseries and greenhouses.

Description of Pollutants

Nurseries and greenhouses can be a source of nutrients (phosphorus, nitrogen, etc.), sediment, bacteria, and organic matter that can degrade water quality.

Required BMP Elements

Required BMP elements are contained in *S449 – BMPs for Nurseries and Greenhouses* in Volume IV of the SWMMWW (Ecology 2019).

3.6.13. BMP 44: Color Events

[This BMP applies to the general public, businesses, and religious and commercial entities that participate in, host, or sponsor color events.](#)

Description of Pollutants

[The dye materials used in color events can degrade water quality and impact aquatic life. Even if the dye is labeled “biodegradable” or “nontoxic,” it is not allowed to be discharged into storm drains or water bodies.](#)

[The term “biodegradable” on a product label does not mean that the product is safe or environmentally friendly. The product may degrade faster than alternative products but can still be harmful to the environment.](#)

Required BMP Elements

[Required BMP elements are contained in *S436 – BMPs for Color Events* in Volume IV of the SWMMWW \(Ecology 2019\).](#)

3.6.14. BMP 45: Pet Waste

This BMP applies to the general public, businesses, and public agencies.

Description of Pollutants

Pet waste can carry viruses and bacteria that could cause disease and lead to beach closures or bans on shellfish harvesting.

Required BMP Elements

Required BMP elements are contained in S440 – BMPs for Pet Waste in Volume IV of the SWMMWW (Ecology 2019).

[3.6.15. BMP 46: Labeling Storm Drain Inlets on Your Property](#)

[This BMP applies to businesses and public agencies.](#)

[Description of Pollutants](#)

[Storm drain inlets themselves are not a source of pollutants; however, they can be used to discharge pollutants. Labels on storm drains can educate the public about prohibitions against dumping materials in storm drains.](#)

[Required BMP Elements](#)

[Required BMP elements are contained in *S442 – BMPs for Labeling Storm Drain Inlets on Your Property* in Volume IV of the SWMMWW \(Ecology 2019\).](#)

3.6.16. BMP 47: Well, Utility, Directional, and Geotechnical Drilling

This BMP applies to businesses and public agencies that are involved with drilling activities.

Description of Pollutants

Drilling activities can allow exposed soil and contaminated soil to wash into the drainage system.

Required BMP Elements

Required BMP elements are contained in *S446 – BMPs for Well, Utility, Directional and Geotechnical Drilling* in Volume IV of the SWMMWW (Ecology 2019).

3.6.17. BMP 48: Goose Waste

[This BMP applies to the general public, businesses, and public agencies.](#)

Description of Pollutants

[Goose waste can contribute to algae growth in water due to its high nutrient content. Goose feces may contain pathogens that can affect people who use the water bodies.](#)

Required BMP Elements

[Required BMP elements are contained in *S452 – BMPs for Goose Waste* in Volume IV of the SWMMWW \(Ecology 2019\).](#)

3.6.18. BMP 49: Pesticides and an Integrated Pest Management Program

This BMP applies to businesses and public agencies that use pesticides.

Description of Pollutants

Inadequate management of pesticides can allow them to enter stormwater and receiving water bodies, resulting in impacts on non-targeted organisms.

Required BMP Elements

Required BMP elements are contained in *Appendix I* of this manual and *S435 – BMPs for Pesticides and an Integrated Pest Management Program* in Volume *IV* of the *SWMMWW* (Ecology 2019).

3.6.19. BMP 50: Storage of Dry Pesticides and Fertilizers

[This BMP applies to businesses and public agencies that store dry pesticides and fertilizers.](#)

Description of Pollutants

[Inappropriate management of pesticides and fertilizers results in contamination of stormwater and receiving water bodies, which can degrade water quality and adversely affect fish and other aquatic life.](#)

Required BMP Elements

[Required BMP elements are contained in *S435 – BMPs for Pesticides and an Integrated Pest Management Program* in Volume IV of the SWMMWW \(Ecology 2019\).](#)

~~3.6.10~~ 3.6.20. *BMP 51: Irrigation*

This BMP applies to businesses and public agencies that have irrigation systems.

Description of Pollutants

Improper irrigation can encourage pest problems, leach nutrients, and make a lawn completely dependent on artificial watering.

Required BMP Elements

Required BMP elements are contained in *S450 – BMPs for Irrigation* in Volume IV of the *SWMMWW* (Ecology 2019).

3.6.21. BMP 52: Dock Washing

This BMP applies to the general public, businesses, and public agencies that are involved in dock washing.

Description of Pollutants

Washing docks can result in the discharge of dirt and other pollutants that may be toxic to aquatic life.

Required BMP Elements

Required BMP elements are contained in *S434 – BMPs for Dock Washing* in Volume IV of the SWMMWW (Ecology 2019).

3.6.22. BMP 53: Roof Vents

This BMP applies to businesses and public agencies that have roof vents.

Description of Pollutants

This BMP applies to processes that vent emissions to the roof, result in the accumulation of pollutants on roofs, or both. Pollutants from these processes may build up on roofs and may pollute stormwater runoff.

Required BMP Elements

Required BMP elements are contained in *S447 – BMPs for Roof Vents* in Volume IV of the *SWMMWW (Ecology 2019)*.

3.6.23. BMP 54: Streets and Highways

This BMP applies to businesses and public agencies that maintain and apply deicers/anti-icers to streets and highways.

Description of Pollutants

This BMP applies to maintenance and deicing/anti-icing of streets and highways. Chemicals used for deicing/anti-icing may be harmful to aquatic organisms.

Required BMP Elements

Required BMP elements are contained in *S406 – BMPs for Streets and Highways* in Volume IV of the SWMMWW (Ecology 2019).

3.6.24. BMP 55: Fertilizer Application

This BMP applies to businesses and public agencies that use fertilizers.

Description of Pollutants

Improper application of fertilizer can be a source of nutrients (phosphorus, nitrogen, etc.) that can degrade water quality.

Required BMP Elements

Required BMP elements are contained in *S443 – BMPs for Fertilizer Application* in Volume IV of the SWMMWW (Ecology 2019).

CHAPTER 4 – REFERENCES

DOH. 2009. *Water System Design Manual*. Publication 331-123. Washington Department of Health, Olympia, Washington. December 2009.

Ecology. ~~2016a~~2003. ~~Methods for Dust Control~~*Techniques for Dust Prevention and Suppression*. Publication No. 96-433. Washington State Department of Ecology, Olympia, Washington. <https://fortress.wa.gov/ecy/publications/summarypages/96433.html>. Revised in ~~July 2016~~March 2003.

Ecology. ~~2016b~~2004. *Industrial Stormwater General Permit Implementation Manual for Log Yards*. Publication No. ~~umber~~ 04-10-031. Washington State Department of Ecology, Olympia, Washington. <https://fortress.wa.gov/ecy/publications/summarypages/0410031.html>. Revised in December 2016.

Ecology. 2008. *Suggested Practices to Reduce Zinc Concentrations in Industrial Stormwater Discharges*. Publication No. 08-10-025. Washington State Department of Ecology, Olympia, Washington. <https://fortress.wa.gov/ecy/publications/summarypages/0810025.html>.

Ecology. 2011. *Vehicle and Metal Recyclers: A Guide for Implementing the Industrial Stormwater General National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System Permit Requirements*. Publication No. 94-146. Washington State Department of Ecology, Olympia, Washington. <https://fortress.wa.gov/ecy/publications/summarypages/94146.html>. Revised in March 2011.

Ecology. 2012. *Vehicle and Equipment Washwater Discharges: Best Management Practices Manual*. Publication No. WQ-R-95-56. Washington State Department of Ecology, Olympia, Washington. <https://fortress.wa.gov/ecy/publications/SummaryPages/95056.html>. Revised in November 2012.

Ecology. ~~2019~~2014. *Stormwater Management Manual for Western Washington*. 5 vols. Publication No. ~~19-10-021~~14-10-055, a revision of Publication No. ~~12-10-030~~. Washington State Department of Ecology, Olympia, Washington. ~~July 2019~~Modified in December 2014. <https://ecology.wa.gov/Regulations-Permits/Guidance-technical-assistance/Stormwater-permittee-guidance-resources/Stormwater-manuals>. <https://fortress.wa.gov/ecy/publications/SummaryPages/1410055.html>

U.S. EPA. 1997. *Innovative Uses of Compost: Disease Control for Plants and Animals*. Publication EPA-530-F-97-044. U.S. Environmental Protection Agency.

This page intentionally left blank

SDCI	Director's Rule 10-2021
SPU	Director's Rule DWW-200

Applicant: Department of Construction & Inspections Seattle Public Utilities	Page: # of ###	Supersedes: SDCI: 17-2017 SPU: DWW-200 (2017)
	Publication: TBD	Effective: 07/01/2021
Subject: Stormwater Manual Volume 5 of 5	Code and Section Reference: SMC 22.800-22.808	
	Type of Rule: Code interpretation	
	Ordinance Authority: SMC 3.06.040, 3.32.020	
Index: Title 22.800 Stormwater Code	Approved: _____ Nathan Torgelson, Director, SDCI	Date: _____
	Approved: _____ Mami Hara, General Manager/CEO, SPU	Date: _____

PUBLIC REVIEW DRAFT
VOLUME 5 —
ENFORCEMENT

CITY OF SEATTLE
SEATTLE PUBLIC UTILITIES
DEPARTMENT OF CONSTRUCTION AND INSPECTIONS

March 2021

Note:

Some pages in this document have been purposely skipped or blank pages inserted so that this document will print correctly when duplexed.

Table of Contents

CHAPTER 1 - Introduction..... 1-1

CHAPTER 2 - Penalty Assessment Matrix 2-1

 2.1. Enforcement Penalty Matrix..... 2-1

 2.2. Application of Penalty Criteria 2-2

Tables

Table 1. Enforcement Penalty Matrix..... 2-1

Table 2. Penalty Points Rating and Corresponding Penalty Amount. 2-1

CHAPTER 1 – INTRODUCTION

The City of Seattle Department of Construction and Inspection (SDCI) and Seattle Public Utilities (SPU) produced this document as a joint Directors' Rule (DR) to interpret the enforcement provisions that are described in the Seattle Municipal Code (SMC) 22.800 through 22.808 (Stormwater Code). This volume is designed to help clarify the application of enforcement in Seattle.

If the Director finds a violation of the Stormwater Code has occurred or is occurring, a Notice of Violation (NOV) or an Order is given to the responsible party of that violation. The civil penalty attached with the NOV or Order is determined using the enforcement penalty matrix described below.

CHAPTER 2 – PENALTY ASSESSMENT MATRIX

2.1. Enforcement Penalty Matrix

The enforcement penalty matrix (Table 1) is composed of a set of criteria formulated as questions for the Director to evaluate and answer. The Director uses the guidelines of *Section 1.3* to determine the total points to be assessed according to the violation. Once the total amount of penalty points is determined, a rating and a corresponding penalty amount is established (Table 2).

Table 1. Enforcement Penalty Matrix.

Enforcement Evaluation Criterion	No (0 points)	Possibly (1 point)	Probably (2 points)	Definitely (3 points)
Public Health Risk?				
Environmental Damage or Adverse Impacts to Infrastructure?				
Willful or Knowing Violation?				
Unresponsive in Correcting Action?				
Improper or Inadequate Operation or Maintenance?				
Failure to Obtain and Comply with Necessary Permits, Certifications, and Approvals?				
Economic Benefit to Non-Compliance?				
Repeat Violation?				

Table 2. Penalty Points Rating and Corresponding Penalty Amount.

Rating	1–2	3–4	5–8	9–11	12–14	15
Penalty	\$250	\$500	\$1,000	\$1,500	\$2,000	\$2,500
Rating	16	17	18	19	20+	
Penalty	\$3,000	\$3,500	\$4,000	\$4,500	\$5,000	

2.2. Application of Penalty Criteria

The framework below provides guidance on how to rate each criterion of the enforcement penalty matrix. The civil penalty is determined by the total score of the matrix.

1. Did the violation pose a public health risk¹?
 - a. Answer “no” if there is no evidence to support a claim of public health risk or adverse health effects.
 - b. Answer “possibly” if evidence supports a claim of public health risk and there is a plausible connection between this violation and health effect.
 - c. Answer “probably” if evidence supports a claim of public health risk and there is a likely connection between this violation and health effect.
 - d. Answer “definitely” if there is direct evidence linking public health risk or adverse effects with the violation.
2. Did the violation result in environmental damage or adverse impacts to infrastructure²?
 - a. Answer “no” if there is no evidence to support a claim of environmental or infrastructure damage.
 - b. Answer “possibly” if environmental or infrastructure damage can be inferred from evidence or knowledge of the effects of the violation.
 - c. Answer “probably” if there is evidence to support a claim of environmental or infrastructure damage and there is a likely connection between the violation and the damage/impairment.
 - d. Answer “definitely” if there is direct evidence linking environmental or infrastructure damage with the violation.
3. Was the action a willful and knowing violation?
 - a. Answer “no” if the violator obviously did not know that the action or inaction constituted a violation.
 - b. Answer “possibly” if the violator should have known.
 - c. Answer “probably” if it is likely the violator knew.
 - d. Answer “definitely” if the violator clearly knew or was previously informed by inspectors.

¹ Risk involving the physical or social well-being of a community or environment.

² Results in damage to publicly owned infrastructure that contributes to its impairment.

4. Was the responsible party³ unresponsive in correcting the violation?
 - a. Answer “no” if the violation was corrected as soon as the responsible party learned of it.
 - b. Answer “possibly” if the violation was corrected in a less timely and cooperative fashion.
 - c. Answer “probably” if the responsible person made some attempt to correct the problem, but did not correct it.
 - d. Answer “definitely” if the responsible party made no attempt to correct the violation.
5. Was the violation a result of improper operation, inadequate maintenance, or inadequate implementation of a required plan that addresses stormwater management (e.g., O&M⁴ manual, DCP⁵, SWPPP⁶, or TESC⁷ plan)?
 - a. Answer “no” if the violation was not the result of improper operation or inadequate maintenance.
 - b. Answer “possibly” if the facility has an O&M manual, DCP, SWPPP, or TESC plan, but it is out of date or inadequate.
 - c. Answer “probably” if there is no O&M manual, DCP, SWPPP, or TESC plan and the violation would have been less severe if the plan were developed and followed.
 - d. Answer “definitely” if the facility has no O&M manual, DCP, SWPPP, or TESC plan or did not follow its plan AND the violation was clearly the result of improper operation or maintenance.
6. Did the responsible party fail to obtain and comply with relevant permits, certifications, and approvals that require or would have required the responsible party to manage stormwater in a manner that could have prevented or mitigated the Code violation?
 - a. Answer “no” if the paperwork was complete and appropriate for the job or task that caused the violation.
 - b. Answer “possibly” if the responsible party obtained and received approval for some but not all of the required permit(s).

³ Owners, operators, and occupants of property, and any person causing or contributing to a violation of the City Code are considered a “responsible party” for purposes of a Code violation (SMC, Section 22.801.190).

⁴ Operations and maintenance

⁵ Drainage Control Plan

⁶ Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plan

⁷ Temporary Erosion and Sediment Control

- c. Answer “probably” if the responsible party obtained some but not all of the required permit(s) and did not receive approvals for the job or task that caused the violation.
 - d. Answer “definitely” if the responsible party either did not obtain the necessary permits or did obtain permits but did not comply with their conditions.
7. Did anyone benefit economically⁸ from non-compliance?
- a. Answer “no” if it is clear that no one gained an economic benefit.
 - b. Answer “possibly” if someone might have benefited.
 - c. Answer “probably” if anyone benefited, but the benefit is not quantifiable.
 - d. Answer “definitely” if the economic benefit is quantifiable.
8. Is this violation a repeat violation⁹?
- a. Answer “no” to indicate that there have been no prior violations.
 - b. Answer “possibly” to indicate that there has been one prior violation.
 - c. Answer “probably” to indicate that there have been two prior violations.
 - d. Answer “definitely” to indicate that there have been three or more prior violations.

⁸ Gain and/or no loss in resources.

⁹ From Stormwater Code (SMC, Section 22.801.190): “Repeat violation” means a prior violation of this subtitle within the preceding 5 years that became a final order or decision of the Director or a court. The violation does not need to be the same nor occur on one site to be considered repeat.

APPENDIX A

Definitions

Note:

Some pages in this document have been purposely skipped or blank pages inserted so that this document will print correctly when duplexed.

- “Agency” means any governmental entity or its subdivision.
- “Agency, City” means “City agency” as defined in Section 25.09.520.
- “Approved” means approved by the Director.
- “Aquatic life use” means “aquatic life use” as defined in WAC 173-201A-200. For the purposes of this subtitle, at minimum the following water bodies are designated for aquatic life use: small lakes, creeks, and ~~freshwater~~ fresh designated receiving waters.
- “Arterial” means “arterial” as defined in Section 11.14.035.
- “Basic treatment facility” means a drainage control facility designed to reduce concentrations of total suspended solids in drainage water.
- “Basic treatment receiving water” means:
 - All marine waters, including Puget Sound;
 - Lake Union;
 - Lake Washington;
 - Ship Canal and bays between Lake Washington and Puget Sound; and
 - Duwamish River.
- “Best management practice” (BMP) means a schedule of activities, prohibitions of practices, operational and maintenance procedures, structural facilities, or managerial practice or device that, when used singly or in combination, prevents, reduces, or treats contamination of drainage water, prevents or reduces soil erosion, or prevents or reduces other adverse effects of drainage water. When the Directors develop rules and/or manuals prescribing BMPs for particular purposes, whether or not those rules and/or manuals are adopted by ordinance, BMPs ~~prescribed~~ specified in the rules and/or manuals shall be the BMPs required for compliance with this subtitle.
- “Building permit” means a document issued by ~~SDC~~ the Seattle Department of Construction and Inspections authorizing construction or other specified activity in accordance with the Seattle Building Code (Chapter 22.100) or the Seattle Residential Code (Chapter 22.150).
- “Capacity-constrained system” means a drainage system or public combined sewer that the Director of SPU has determined to have inadequate capacity to carry existing and anticipated loads, or a drainage system that includes ditches or culverts.
- “Certified Erosion and Sediment Control Lead” (CESCL) means an individual who has current certification through an approved erosion and sediment control training program that meets the minimum training standards established by Ecology.
- “Civil engineer, licensed” means a person who is licensed by the State of Washington to practice civil engineering.
- “City agency” means “City agency” as defined in Section 25.09.520.
- “Combined sewer.” See “public combined sewer.”
- “Combined sewer basin” or “public combined sewer basin” means the area tributary to a public combined sewer feature, including, but not limited to, a combined sewer overflow outfall, trunk line connection, pump station, or regulator.

- “Compaction” means the densification, settlement, or packing of earth material or fill in such a way that permeability is reduced by mechanical means.
- “Construction Stormwater Control Plan” means a document that explains and illustrates the measures to be taken on the construction site to [control prevent erosion and discharge of sediment and other](#) pollutants on a construction project.
- “Containment area” means the area designated for conducting pollution-generating activities for the purposes of implementing source controls or designing and installing source controls or treatment facilities.
- “Contaminate” means the addition of sediment, any other pollutant or waste, or any illicit or prohibited discharge.
- “Creek” means a Type [2-5S, F, Np, or Ns](#) water as defined in WAC 222-16-031, [or as defined in WAC 222-16-030 after state water type maps are adopted](#), and is used synonymously with “stream.”
- “Damages” means monetary compensation for harm, loss, costs, or expenses incurred by the City, including, but not limited, to the following: costs of abating or correcting violations of this subtitle; fines or penalties the City incurs as a result of a violation of this subtitle; and costs to repair or clean the public drainage system or public combined sewer as a result of a violation. For the purposes of this subtitle, damages do not include compensation to any person other than the City.
- “Designated receiving waters” means the Duwamish River, Puget Sound, Lake Washington, Lake Union, Elliott Bay, Portage Bay, Union Bay, the Lake Washington Ship Canal, and other receiving waters determined by the Director of SPU and approved by Ecology as having sufficient capacity to receive discharges of drainage water such that a site discharging to the designated receiving water is not required to implement flow control.
- “Detention” means temporary storage of drainage water for the purpose of controlling the drainage discharge rate.
- “Development” means [the following activities](#):
 1. [Class IV-general forest practices that are conversions from timberland to other uses](#);
 - ~~1-2.~~ [Land disturbing activity](#) ~~or~~;
 3. [The addition or replacement of hard surfaces](#) ~~surfaces~~;
 4. [Expansion of a building footprint or addition or replacement of a structure](#);
 5. [Structural development, including construction, installation, or expansion of a building or other structure](#);
 6. [Seeking approval of a building permit, other construction permit, grading permit, or master use permit that involves any of the foregoing activities](#); and
 - ~~2-7.~~ [Seeking approval of subdivision, short plat, unit lot subdivision, or binding site plans, as defined and applied in Chapter 58.17 RCW, or other master use permit.](#)

[Development is a type of project.](#)

- “Director” means the Director of the Department authorized to take a particular action, and the Director’s designees, who may be employees of that department or another City department.
- “Director of SDCI” means the Director of the [Seattle Department of Construction and Inspections](#) ~~of The City of Seattle and/~~ or the designee of [Planning and Development](#) ~~the Seattle Department of Construction and Inspections~~, who may be employees of that department or another City department.
- “Director of SDOT” means the Director of Seattle Department of Transportation of The City of Seattle ~~and/~~ or the designee of the Director of Seattle Department of Transportation, who may be employees of that department or another City department.
- “Director of SPU” means the [Director-General Manager and Chief Executive Officer](#) of Seattle Public Utilities of The City of Seattle ~~and/~~ or the designee of the [Director-General Manager and Chief Executive Officer](#) of Seattle Public Utilities, who may be employees of that department or another City department.
- “Discharge point” means the location from which drainage water from a site is released.
- “Discharge rate” means the rate at which drainage water is released from a site. The discharge rate is expressed as volume per unit of time, such as cubic feet per second.
- ~~“DPD” means the Department of Planning and Development.~~
- “Drainage basin” means the geographic and hydrologic tributary area or subunit of a watershed through which drainage water is collected, regulated, transported, and discharged to receiving waters.
- “Drainage basin plan” means a plan to manage the quality and quantity of drainage water in a watershed or a drainage basin, including watershed action plans.
- “Drainage control” means the management of drainage water. Drainage control is accomplished through one or more of the following: collecting, conveying, and discharging drainage water; controlling the discharge rate from a site; controlling the flow duration from a site; controlling the quantity from a site; and separating, treating or preventing the introduction of pollutants.
- “Drainage control facility” means any facility, including best management practices, installed or constructed for the purpose of controlling the discharge rate, flow duration, quantity, and/or quality of drainage water.
- “Drainage control plan” means a plan for collecting, controlling, transporting and disposing of drainage water falling upon, entering, flowing within, and exiting the site, including designs for drainage control facilities.
- “Drainage system” means a system intended to collect, convey and control release of only drainage water. The system may be either publicly or privately owned or operated, and the system may serve public or private property. It includes components such as pipes, ditches, culverts, [curbs, gutters](#), and drainage control facilities. Drainage systems are not receiving waters.
- “Drainage water” means stormwater and all other discharges that are permissible pursuant to subsection 22.802.030.A.

- “Earth material” means any rock, gravel, natural soil, fill, or re-sedimented soil, or any combination thereof, but does not include any solid waste as defined by RCW 70.95.
- “Ecology” means the Washington State Department of Ecology.
- “Effective [impervious hard](#) surface” means those [impervious hard](#) surfaces that are connected via sheet flow or discrete conveyance to a drainage system.
- “Enhanced treatment facility” means a drainage control facility designed to reduce concentrations of dissolved metals in drainage water.
- “Environmentally critical area” (ECA) means an area designated in Section 25.09.[020-012](#).
- “EPA” means the United States Environmental Protection Agency.
- “Erodible or leachable materials” means wastes, chemicals, or other substances which, when exposed to rainfall, measurably alter the physical or chemical characteristics of the drainage water. Examples include: erodible soils that are stockpiled; leachable materials that are stockpiled; uncovered process wastes; manure; fertilizers; oily substances; ashes, kiln dust; and garbage dumpster leakage.
- “Erosion” means the wearing away of the ground surface as a result of mass wasting or of the movement of wind, water, ice, or other geological agents, including such processes as gravitational creep. Erosion also means the detachment and movement of soil or rock fragments by water, wind, ice, or gravity.
- “Excavation” means the mechanical removal of earth material.
- “Exception” means relief from a requirement of this subtitle to a specific project.
- “Existing grade” means “existing grade” as defined in Section 22.170.050.
- “Fill” means a deposit of earth material placed by artificial means.
- “Flow control” means controlling the discharge rate, flow duration, or both of drainage water from the site through means such as infiltration or detention.
- “Flow control facility” means a drainage control facility for controlling the discharge rate, flow duration, or both of drainage water from a site.
- “Flow duration” means the aggregate time that peak flows are at or above a particular flow rate of interest.
- “Garbage” means putrescible waste.
- “Geotechnical engineer” or “Geotechnical/civil engineer” means a person licensed by The State of Washington as a professional civil engineer who has expertise in geotechnical engineering.
- “Grading” means excavation, filling, in-place ground modification, removal of roots or stumps that includes ground disturbance, stockpiling of earth materials, or any combination thereof, including the establishment of a grade following demolition of a structure.
- “Green stormwater infrastructure” means distributed BMPs, integrated into a project design, that use infiltration, filtration, storage, or evapotranspiration, or provide stormwater reuse.

- “Groundwater” means water in a saturated zone or stratum beneath the surface of land or below a surface water body. Refer to Ground Water Quality Standards, Chapter 173-200 WAC.
- “Hard surface” means an impervious surface, a permeable pavement, or a vegetated roof.
- “High-use sites” means sites that typically generate high concentrations of oil due to high traffic turnover or the frequent transfer of oil. High-use sites include:
 - An area of a commercial or industrial site subject to an expected average daily traffic (ADT) count equal to or greater than 100 vehicles per 1,000 square feet of gross building area;
 - An area of a commercial or industrial site subject to petroleum storage and transfer in excess of 1,500 gallons per year, not including routinely delivered heating oil;
 - An area of a commercial or industrial site subject to parking, storage or maintenance of 25 or more vehicles that are over 10 tons gross weight (trucks, buses, trains, heavy equipment, etc.);
 - A road intersection with a measured ADT count of 25,000 vehicles or more on the main roadway and 15,000 vehicles or more on any intersecting roadway, excluding projects proposing primarily pedestrian or bicycle use improvements.
- “Illicit connection” means any direct or indirect infrastructure connection to the public drainage system or receiving water that is not intended, not permitted, or not used for collecting drainage water.
- “Impervious surface” means any surface exposed to rainwater from which most water runs off. Impervious surfaces include, but are not limited to, roof tops, walkways, patios, driveways, formal planters, parking lots or storage areas, concrete or asphalt paving, areas with underdrains designed to remove stormwater from subgrade (e.g., playfields, athletic fields, rail yards), gravel surfaces subjected to vehicular traffic, compact gravel, packed earthen materials, and oiled macadam or other surfaces which similarly impede the natural infiltration of stormwater. Open, uncovered retention/detention facilities shall not be considered as impervious surfaces for the purposes of determining whether the thresholds for application of minimum requirements are exceeded. Open, uncovered retention/detention facilities shall be considered impervious surfaces for purposes of stormwater modeling.
- “Industrial activities” means material handling, transportation, or storage; manufacturing; maintenance; treatment; or disposal. Areas with industrial activities include plant yards, access roads and rail lines used by carriers of raw materials, manufactured products, waste material, or by-products; material handling sites; refuse sites; sites used for the application or disposal of process waste waters; sites used for the storage and maintenance of material handling equipment; sites used for residual treatment, storage, or disposal; shipping and receiving areas; manufacturing buildings; storage areas for raw materials, and intermediate and finished products; and areas where industrial activity has taken place in the past and significant materials remain and are exposed to stormwater.
- “Infiltration” means the downward movement of water from the surface to the subsoil. “Infiltration facility” means a drainage control facility that temporarily stores, and then percolates, drainage water into the underlying soil.

- “Integrated Drainage Plan” means a plan developed, reviewed, and approved pursuant to subsection 22.800.080.E.
- “Interflow” means that portion of rainfall and other precipitation that infiltrates into the soil and moves laterally through the upper soil horizons until intercepted by a stream channel or until it returns to the surface.
- “Inspector” means a City inspector, their designee, or licensed civil engineer performing the inspection work required by this subtitle.
- “Land disturbing activity” means any activity that results in a change in the existing soil cover, both vegetative and nonvegetative, or the existing topography. Land disturbing activities include, but are not limited to, clearing, grading, filling, excavation, or addition of new or the replacement of hard surface. Compaction, excluding hot asphalt mix, that is associated with stabilization of structures and road construction is also considered a land disturbing activity. Vegetation maintenance practices, including landscape maintenance and gardening, are not considered land disturbing activities. Stormwater facility maintenance is not considered land disturbing activity if conducted according to established standards and procedures.
- “Large project” means a project including:
 1. ~~5,000~~ Five thousand square feet or more of new plus replaced hard surface;
 2. ~~e~~One acre or more of land disturbing activity;
 3. ~~e~~Conversion of 3/4 acres or more of vegetation to lawn or landscaped area; or
 4. ~~e~~Conversion of 2.5 acres or more of native vegetation to pasture.
- “Listed creeks” means Blue Ridge Creek, Broadview Creek, Discovery Park Creek, Durham Creek, Frink Creek, Golden Gardens Creek, Kiwanis Ravine/Wolfe Creek, Licton Springs Creek, Madrona Park Creek, Mee-Kwa-Mooks Creek, Mount Baker Park Creek, Puget Creek, Riverview Creek, Schmitz Creek, Taylor Creek, and Washington Park Creek.
- “Master use permit” means a ~~document issued by SDCI giving permission for development or~~ “master use of land or street right-of-way permit” as defined in accordance with Chapter subsection 23.76-84A.025.
- “Maximum extent feasible” means the requirement is to be fully implemented, constrained only by the physical limitations of the site, practical considerations of engineering design, and reasonable considerations of financial costs.
- “Municipal stormwater NPDES permit” means the permit issued to the City under the federal Clean Water Act for public drainage systems within the City limits.
- “Native vegetation” means “native vegetation” as defined in Section 25.09.520.
- “New hard surface” means a surface that is: changed from a pervious surface to a hard surface (e.g., converting lawn to permeable pavement, resurfacing by upgrading from dirt to gravel, a bituminous surface treatment (“chip seal”), asphalt, concrete, or a hard surface structure); or upgraded from gravel to chip seal, asphalt, concrete, or a hard surface structure; or from a hard surface to a hard surface structure. Note that if asphalt or concrete has been overlaid by a chip seal, the existing condition should be considered as asphalt or concrete.

- “New impervious surface” means a surface that is: changed from a pervious surface to an impervious surface (e.g., resurfacing by upgrading from dirt to gravel, a bituminous surface treatment (“chip seal”), asphalt, concrete, or an impervious structure); or upgraded from gravel to chip seal, asphalt, concrete, or an impervious structure; or from a pervious surface to an impervious structure. Note that if asphalt or concrete has been overlaid by a chip seal, the existing condition should be considered as asphalt or concrete.
- “Non-listed creeks” means any creek not identified in the definition of “Listed creeks” in Section 22.801.130.
- “NPDES” means National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System, the national program for controlling discharges under the federal Clean Water Act.
- “NPDES permit” means an authorization, license or equivalent control document issued by the EPA or Ecology to implement the requirements of the NPDES program.
- “Nutrient-critical receiving water” means a surface water or water segment that is determined to be impaired due to phosphorus contributed by stormwater, as prescribed specified in rules promulgated by the Director of SPU which shall be based on consideration of water bodies reported by Ecology, and approved by EPA, under Category 5 (impaired) under Section 303(d) of the Clean Water Act for total phosphorus through Ecology’s Water Quality Assessment.
- “Oil control treatment facility” means a drainage control facility designed to reduce concentrations of oil in drainage water.
- “On-site BMP” means a best management practice identified in subsection 22.805.070.D.
- “Owner” means any person having title to and/or responsibility for, a building or property, including a lessee, guardian, receiver or trustee, and the owner’s duly authorized agent.
- “Parcel-based project” means any project that is not a roadway project, single-family residential project, sidewalk project, or trail project. The boundary of the public right-of-way shall form the boundary between the parcel and roadway portions of a project.
- “Person” means an individual, receiver, administrator, executor, assignee, trustee in bankruptcy, trust estate, firm, partnership, joint venture, club, company, joint stock company, business trust, municipal corporation, the State of Washington, political subdivision or agency of the State of Washington, public authority or other public body, corporation, limited liability company, association, society or any group of individuals acting as a unit, whether mutual, cooperative, fraternal, nonprofit or otherwise, and the United States or any instrumentality thereof.
- “Pervious surface” means a surface that is not impervious. See also “impervious surface.”
- “Phosphorus treatment facility” means a drainage control facility designed to reduce concentrations of phosphorus in drainage water.
- “Plan” means a graphic or schematic representation, with accompanying notes, schedules, specifications and other related documents, or a document consisting of checklists, steps, actions, schedules, or other contents that has been prepared pursuant to this subtitle, such as a site plan, drainage control plan, construction

stormwater control plan, stormwater pollution prevention plan, or integrated drainage plan.

- “Pollution-generating activity” means any activity that is regulated by the joint SPU/~~SDCI Directors~~SDPD Directors’ Rule titled “Seattle Stormwater Manual” at “Volume 4 - Source Control” or any activity with similar impacts on drainage water. These activities include, but are not limited to: cleaning and washing activities; transfer of liquid or solid material; production and application activities; dust, soil, and sediment control; commercial animal care and handling; log sorting and handling; boat building, mooring, maintenance, and repair; logging and tree removal; mining and quarrying of sand, gravel, rock, peat, clay, and other materials; cleaning and maintenance of swimming pool and spas; deicing and anti-icing operations for airports and streets; maintenance and management of roof and building drains at manufacturing and commercial buildings; maintenance and operation of railroad yards; maintenance of public and utility corridors and facilities; and maintenance of roadside ditches.
- “Pollution-generating hard surface” means those hard surfaces considered to be a significant source of pollutants in drainage water. See definition of pollution-generating impervious surface in this Section 22.801.170 for surfaces that are considered significant sources of pollutants in drainage water. In addition, permeable pavement subject to vehicular use or other pollutants as described in the definition for pollution-generating impervious surfaces is a pollution-generating hard surface.
- “Pollution-generating impervious surface” means those impervious surfaces considered to be a significant source of pollutants in drainage water. Such surfaces include those that are subject to any of the following: vehicular use; ~~certain~~ industrial activities; ~~or~~ storage of erodible or leachable materials, wastes, or chemicals, and ~~which that~~ receive direct rainfall or the run-on or blow-in of rainfall; Such surfaces also include roofs subject to venting of significant sources of pollutants; and metal roofs unless coated with an inert, non-leachable material (e.g., baked-on enamel coating).
 - A surface, whether paved or not, shall be considered subject to vehicular use if it is regularly used by motor vehicles. The following are considered regularly used surfaces: roads, unvegetated road shoulders, bike lanes within the traveled lane of a roadway, driveways, parking lots, unfenced fire lanes, vehicular equipment storage yards, rail lines and railways, and airport runways.
 - The following are not considered regularly used by motor vehicles: sidewalks and trails not subject to drainage from roads for motor vehicles, paved bicycle pathways separated from and not subject to drainage from roads for motor vehicles, fenced fire lanes, and infrequently used maintenance access roads with a recurring use of no more than one routine vehicle access per day.
- “Pollution-generating pervious surface” means any ~~non-impervious pervious~~ surface subject to any of the following: vehicular use; ~~industrial activities~~; ~~or~~ storage of erodible or leachable materials, wastes, or chemicals, and that receives ~~receive~~ direct rainfall or run-on or blow-in of rainfall; ~~use of pesticides and fertilizers~~; ~~or~~ loss of soil. Typical pollution-generating pervious surfaces include lawns, landscaped areas, golf courses, parks, cemeteries, and sports fields (natural and artificial turf).
- “Pre-developed condition” means the vegetation and soil conditions that are used to determine the allowable post-development discharge peak flow rates and flow durations, such as pasture or forest.

- “Private drainage system” means a drainage system that is not a public drainage system.
- “Project” means ~~the addition~~ any proposed action to alter or replacement of hard surface or the undertaking of land disturbing activity on develop a site. Development is a type of project.
- “Project site” means that portion of a property, properties, or ~~right~~rights-of-way subject to ~~addition or replacement of land-disturbing activities, new hard surfaces, or replaced~~ hard surfaces or the undertaking of land disturbing activity.
- “Public combined sewer” means a publicly owned and maintained system which carries drainage water and wastewater and flows to a publicly owned treatment works.
- “Public drainage system” means a drainage system owned or operated by ~~the~~The City of Seattle.
- “Public place” means and includes streets, avenues, ways, boulevards, drives, places, alleys, sidewalks, and planting (parking) strips, squares, triangles and right-of-way for public use and the space above or beneath its surface, whether or not opened or improved.
- “Public sanitary sewer” means the sanitary sewer that is owned or operated by ~~the~~The City of Seattle.
- “Public storm drain” means the part of a public drainage system that is wholly or partially piped, owned or operated by a City agency and designed to carry only drainage water.
- “Real property” means “real property” as defined in Chapter 3.110.
- “Receiving water” means the surface water, such as a creek, stream, river, lake, wetland or marine water, or groundwater, receiving drainage water. Drainage systems and public combined sewers are not receiving waters.
- “Repeat violation” means a prior violation of this subtitle within the preceding 5 years that became a final order or decision of the Director or a court. The violation does not need to be the same nor occur on one site to be considered repeat.
- “Replaced hard surface” or “replacement of hard surface” means, for structures, the removal down to the foundation and replacement; ~~of hard surfaces down to the foundation~~ and, for other hard surfaces, the removal down to existing subgrade or base course and replacement.
- “Replaced impervious surface” or “replacement of impervious surface” means, for structures, the removal down to the foundation and replacement; ~~of impervious surfaces down to the foundation~~ and, for other impervious surfaces, the removal down to existing subgrade or base course and replacement.
- “Responsible party” means all of the following persons:
 1. Owners, operators, and occupants of property; and
 2. Any person causing or contributing to a violation of the provisions of this subtitle.
- “Right-of-way” means “right-of-way” as defined in Section 23.84A.032.
- “Roadway” means “roadway” as defined in Section 23.84A.032.

- “Roadway project” means a project located in the public right-of-way that involves the creation of a new or replacement of an existing roadway or alley. The boundary of the public right-of-way shall form the boundary between the parcel and roadway portions of a project.
- “Runoff” means the portion of rainfall or other precipitation that becomes surface flow and interflow.
- “Sanitary sewer” means a system that conveys wastewater and is not designed to convey drainage water.
- “SDCI” means the [Seattle Department of Construction and Inspections](#).
- “SDOT” means the Seattle Department of Transportation.
- “Service drain” means “service drain” as defined in Section 21.16.030.
- “Side sewer” means “side sewer” as defined in Section 21.16.030.
- “Sidewalk” means “sidewalk” as defined in Section 23.84A.036.
- “Sidewalk project” means a project for the creation of a new sidewalk or replacement of an existing sidewalk, including any associated planting strip, apron, curb ramp, curb, or gutter, and necessary roadway grading and repair. If the total new plus replaced hard surface in the roadway exceeds 10,000 square feet, the entire project is a roadway project.
- “Single-family residential project” means a project that constructs one Single-family Dwelling Unit [pursuant to Sections as defined in subsection 23.44.006.A84A.032, and any associated accessory dwelling unit](#) located in land classified as being Single-family Residential 9,600 (SF 9600), Single-family Residential 7,200 (SF 7200), or Single-family Residential 5,000 (SF 5000) pursuant to Section 23.30.010, and the total new plus replaced hard surface is less than ~~105,000 square feet, and the total new plus replaced pollution generating hard surface is less than 5,000 square feet.~~
- “Site” means the ~~lot or parcel, or portion of street, highway or other right of way, or contiguous combination thereof, where development is proposed or performed~~ [area defined by the legal boundaries of a parcel or parcels of land subject to development](#). For roadway projects, the length of the project site and the right-of-way boundaries define the site.
- “Slope” means an inclined ground surface.
- “Small lakes” means Bitter Lake, Green Lake and Haller Lake.
- “Small project” means a project with:
 1. Less than 5,000 square feet of new and replaced hard surface; and
 2. Less than 1 acre of land disturbing activities.
- “SMC” means the Seattle Municipal Code.
- “Soil” means naturally deposited non-rock earth materials.
- “Solid waste” means “solid waste” as defined in Section 21.36.016.
- “Source controls” means structures or operations that prevent contaminants from coming in contact with drainage water through physical separation or careful management of activities that are known sources of pollution.

- “SPU” means Seattle Public Utilities.
- “Standard design” is a design pre-approved by the Director for drainage and erosion control available for use at a site with pre-defined characteristics.
- [“Standard Plans and Specifications” means the City of Seattle Standard Plans and Specifications for Road, Bridge, and Municipal Construction in effect on the date of permit application.](#)
- “Storm drain” means both public storm drain and service drain.
- “Stormwater” means runoff during and following precipitation and snowmelt events, including surface runoff, drainage and interflow.
- “Stream” means a Type [2-5S, F, Np, or Ns](#) water as defined in WAC 222-16-031, [or as defined in WAC 222-16-030 after state water type maps are adopted](#), and is used synonymously with “creek.”
- “Topsoil” means the weathered surface soil, including the organic layer, in which plants have most of their roots.
- “Trail” means a path of travel for recreation and/or transportation within a park, natural environment, or corridor.
- “Trail project” means a project for the creation of a new trail or replacement of an existing trail, and which does not contain pollution-generating hard surfaces.
- “Treatment facility” means a drainage control facility designed to remove pollutants from drainage water.
- “Wastewater” means “wastewater” as defined in Section 21.16.030.
- “Water Quality Standards” means Surface Water Quality Standards, Chapter 173-201A WAC, Ground Water Quality Standards, Chapter 173-200 WAC, and Sediment Management Standards, Chapter 173-204 WAC.
- “Watercourse” means the route, constructed or formed by humans or by natural processes, generally consisting of a channel with bed, banks or sides, in which surface waters flow. Watercourse includes small lakes, bogs, streams, creeks, and other receiving waters but does not include designated receiving waters.
- “Watershed” means a geographic region within which water drains into a particular river, stream, or other body of water.
- “Wetland” means a wetland designated under Section 25.09.020.
- “Wetland function” means the physical, biological, chemical, and geologic interactions among different components of the environment that occur within a wetland. Wetland functions can be grouped into three categories: functions that improve water quality; functions that change the water regime in a watershed, such as flood storage; and functions that provide habitat for plants and animals.
- “Wetland values” means wetland processes, characteristics, or attributes that are considered to benefit society.

This page intentionally left blank.

APPENDIX B

Additional Submittal Requirements

Note:

Some pages in this document have been purposely skipped or blank pages inserted so that this document will print correctly when duplexed.

Table of Contents

B-1. Preliminary Drainage Control Review Submittal Requirements for Master Use Permits	1
B-1.1. Subdivisions and Short Plats	1
B-1.1.1. Subdivisions	1
B-1.1.2. Short Plats	1
B-1.1.3. Shared Drainage Control Facilities and Systems for Subdivisions and Short Plats	2
B-1.1.4. Typical Drainage Conditions for Subdivisions and Short Plats	3
B-1.1.5. Easements for Subdivisions and Short Plats	4
B-1.1.6. Determining Minimum Requirements for Subdivisions and Short Plats	4
B-1.2. Unit Lot Subdivisions	4
B-1.3. Lot Boundary Adjustments	5
B-2. Drainage Report Format/Content Requirements	7

B-1. Preliminary Drainage Control Review Submittal Requirements for Master Use Permits

[Preliminary Drainage Control Review](#) is required for certain Master Use Permit (MUP) applications per [SMC 22.807.020.A](#) (refer to [Volume 1, Section 8.1](#)). The general submittal requirements are described in [Volume 1, Section 8.1](#). However, different types of MUPs require different levels of drainage review and different levels of detail.

[The following describes the specific submittal requirements and drainage review process for the most common types of MUP that will typically require drainage review.](#)

B-1.1. Subdivisions and Short Plats

B-1.1.1. Subdivisions

[“Full” Subdivisions per SMC 23.22 require a high level of detail for approval of Preliminary Drainage Control Review. Prior to Preliminary Plat Approval, a Preliminary Drainage Control Plan, Preliminary Drainage Report \(Report\), and all supporting documents as described in Volume 1, Section 8.1 must be submitted and approved. The Preliminary Drainage Control Plan and Report shall identify all BMPs necessary to meet the minimum requirements \(e.g., on-site stormwater management, flow control, water quality treatment, etc.\) including size and location. The level of detail required is the same as required for Standard and Comprehensive Drainage Control Review.](#)

[The Preliminary Drainage Control Plan approval does not constitute approval for construction. A Standard or Comprehensive Drainage Control Plan and Report must be submitted with a construction permit. Depending on the scope and location, required construction permit will be a Grading Permit, Building Permit, or a Seattle Department of Transportation \(SDOT\) Street Improvement Plan \(SIP\) Permit.](#)

[Subsequent construction permits in the subdivision must demonstrate with Standard or Comprehensive Drainage Control Plans that they are compliant with the intent of the approved Preliminary Drainage Control Plan.](#)

[Note: Additional requirements apply to permitting and construction of drainage control facilities and drainage systems that will be shared by multiple parcels, lots, tracts, etc., within the Subdivision. Refer to \[Section B-1.1.3\]\(#\).](#)

B-1.1.2. Short Plats

[Short Plats \(a.k.a. Short Subdivisions\) per SMC 23.24 require a similar level of detail as Full Subdivisions for approval of Preliminary Drainage Control Review.](#)

[Deferred Drainage Plans for Some Projects: The requirement for a Preliminary Drainage Control Plan and Report may be deferred until the construction permit by the Director if all of the following conditions are met:](#)

1. [The full development in the Short Plat, including all lots, parcels, and tracts, will not trigger flow control or water quality treatment or require a mainline extension,](#)
2. [The project has an approved offsite discharge point for drainage \(e.g., public storm drain\),](#)
3. [The downstream drainage system has adequate capacity,](#)
4. [Drainage Condition #1 in *Section B-1.1.4* is placed on the first sheet of the recorded plat.](#)

[Otherwise, a Preliminary Drainage Control Plan and Report, and all supporting documents as described in *Volume 1, Section 8.1* must be submitted and approved prior to approval of the Short Plat. Depending on the scope and location, this will require a Grading Permit, Building Permit, or an SDOT SIP Permit.](#)

[Subsequent construction permits in the short subdivision must demonstrate with Standard or Comprehensive Drainage Control Plans that they are compliant with the intent of the approved Preliminary Drainage Control Plan.](#)

[Note: Additional requirements apply to permitting and construction of drainage control facilities and drainage systems that will be shared by multiple parcels, lots, tracts, etc., in the Subdivision. Refer to *Section B-1.1.3*.](#)

[B-1.1.3. Shared Drainage Control Facilities and Systems for Subdivisions and Short Plats](#)

[Drainage control facilities and systems proposed on Preliminary Drainage Control Plans that will serve multiple parcels, lots, tracts, etc., in a Subdivision or Short Plat are subject to the following code requirement.](#)

Stormwater Code Language	References
<p>SMC 22.805.010.D. Construction of drainage control facilities and drainage systems for plats.</p> <p>1. In the case of a subdivision under SMC chapter 23.22, drainage control facilities or drainage systems that are identified on the associated preliminary drainage control plan or the approved preliminary plat and selected multiple proposed lots, parcels, tracts or rights-of-way shall be constructed prior to approval of the final plat unless a bond is provided according to SMC 22.808.010.C. Construction of the facilities or systems must be completed and final inspection approved prior to final inspection approval of the any building permit for any other construction within the subdivision and construction of the facilities or systems shall be completed and final inspection approved prior to final inspection approval of the any building permit for any other construction within the subdivision and prior to occupancy of any buildings, but in no event later than two years after final plat approval.</p> <p>2. In the case of a of a short plat under SMC chapter 23.24 with shared drainage control facilities or drainage systems that are identified on the preliminary drainage control plan and will serve multiple proposed lots, parcels, tracts or rights-of-way the following shall occur:</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Volume 1, Section 8.1 – Preliminary Drainage Control Review • SMC 22.807.020.A – Thresholds for Drainage Control Review

Refer to proposed Stormwater Code (Ch. 22.800-22.808) during public review
Final code language to be added to final manual

<p><i>a) The construction permit for the shared facilities or systems shall be issued prior to issuance of the any building permit for any other construction within the lots, parcels, tracts, or rights-of-way served by the shared facilities or systems.</i></p> <p><i>b) Construction of the shared facilities or system must be complete within the lots, parcels, tracts, or rights-of-way served by the shared facilities, and prior to occupancy of any buildings of these lots, parcels, or tracts.</i></p>	<p>Refer to proposed Stormwater Code (Ch. 22.800-22.808) during public review</p> <p>Final code language to be added to final manual</p>
---	--

B-1.1.4. Typical Drainage Conditions for Subdivisions and Short Plats

Subdivisions and Short Plats will require one or more drainage conditions. The applicable drainage conditions must be placed on the first sheet of the plat that will be recorded. The following are some of the typical drainage conditions that may apply. The conditions may require modifications per the reviewer and additional drainage conditions may apply as required by the Director.

Typical Drainage Condition #1. (Required on all Subdivisions and Short Plats): The subdivision of the property will not reduce the requirements of the Seattle Stormwater Code and the Seattle Side Sewer Code. The proposed parcels within this [Subdivision/Short Plat] will meet the standards required by the higher area threshold of the entire property being subdivided rather than the standards required for each of the proposed parcels individually.

Typical Drainage Condition #2. (Required for all Subdivisions or Short Plats that require submittal of Preliminary Drainage Control Plans): Approval of the Preliminary Drainage Control Plans and Report reviewed with this Subdivision/Short Subdivision is preliminary. A Standard or Comprehensive Drainage and Wastewater Control Plan, a Construction Stormwater Control and Soil Management Plan, a Drainage Report (if triggered), and all supporting documents will be required for all future construction permits within this Subdivision/Short Subdivision to demonstrate compliance with the approved Preliminary Drainage Control Plan.

Typical Drainage Condition #3 (Required if the Preliminary Drainage Control Plan shows drainage control facilities that will serve multiple lots, parcels, or tracts within the Subdivision/Short Subdivision): The construction permit for the shared facilities or systems shown on the preliminary drainage plan shall be issued prior to issuance of the any building permit for any other construction within the lots, parcels, tracts, or rights-of-way served by the shared facilities or systems; and construction of the shared facilities or systems shall be completed and final inspection approved prior to final inspection approval of any building permit for any other construction within the lots, parcels, tracts, or rights-of-way served by the shared facilities, and prior to occupancy of any buildings of these lots, parcels, or tracts. [for full subdivisions: but in no event later than two years after final plat approval.]

Typical Drainage Condition #4 (Required if a Public Storm Drain mainline extension is required.): The public storm drain shall be extended across the full street frontage of the Subdivision/Short Plat per SMC 22.805.020.L-N unless an adjustment or exception is approved by the Director of Seattle Public Utilities per SMC 22.800.040.B or C. The permits for the

required), and all supporting documents must be submitted with the Unit Lot Subdivision application (similar to Short Plats and Subdivisions).

Easements

All unit lots must be demonstrated to have access through easements for the proposed drainage features or conveyance systems that must cross the other unit lots within the subdivision and for all shared drainage facilities. Easements must be either established in the Unit Lot Subdivision or the previously recorded easement shall be shown and called out on the Unit Lot Subdivision plat, including the King County recording number.

B-1.3. Lot Boundary Adjustments

Preliminary Drainage Review for Lot Boundary Adjustments (LBA) per SMC 23.28 is limited to reviewing for adequacy of drainage.

If there is drainage infrastructure that is accessible to each adjusted lot and all lots that have street frontage have a public drainage system in their frontage or access directly to a receiving water, then a Preliminary Drainage Control Plan is not required.

However, if there is no available offsite point of discharge for some or all of the lots, then either:

1. It must be demonstrated that an extension of a public drainage system is feasible and the following LBA Drainage Adequacy Condition #1 must be added to the first page of the recorded LBA plat,
or
2. If an extension of a public drainage system is infeasible or the total potential new plus replaced hard surface on each adjusted lot is less than 5,000 square feet, a Preliminary Drainage Control Plan and associated documents may be submitted to demonstrate that the potential development on each lot can be constructed with infiltration or dispersion BMPs to meet the requirements of *Volume 1, Section 4.3.2.*

LBA Drainage Adequacy Condition #1 (Required if a Public Storm Drain mainline extension is required): The public storm drain shall be extended across the full street frontage of the adjusted lots per SMC 22.805.020.L unless an adjustment or exception is approved by the Director per SMC 22.800.040.B or C.

LBA Drainage Adequacy Condition #2. (Required for all LBAs that require submittal of Preliminary Drainage Control Plans to demonstrate adequacy of drainage): A Preliminary Drainage Control Plan was submitted to demonstrate adequacy of drainage for the adjusted lots using [on-site infiltration or dispersion BMPs of all hard surfaces]. Approval of this plan is preliminary. A Drainage and Wastewater Control Plan, a Construction Stormwater Control and Soil Management Plan, a Drainage Report, and all supporting documents will be required for all future construction permits within each of the lots and must comply with the provisions of the Preliminary Drainage Control Plan.

[The level of detail required on the Preliminary Drainage Control Plan must include a Site Plan showing the proposed or potential development and the sizes and possible locations of stormwater BMPs that will manage the runoff fully on site.](#)

[Note: For the purposes of determining if the thresholds for Stormwater Code requirements are met, unlike in Short Plats and Subdivisions, each lot is considered separately unless the projects on the separate lots are closely related as described in *Volume 1, Section 2.1*.](#)

[Easements](#)

[All adjusted lots must be demonstrated to have legal access for the proposed drainage features or conveyance systems that must cross the other lots to reach street frontage where drainage infrastructure is located or will be extended or have access to a receiving water. Easements must be either established in the LBA; or the previously recorded easement shall be shown and called out on the LBA plat, including the King County recording number.](#)

[Note: Per SPU Policy DWW-160, "The City does not allow the use of an easement in lieu of an extension of the public storm or sewer system \(i.e., public sanitary sewer \[PSS\], public combined sewer \[PS\], public storm drain \[PSD\]\). Any adjustments or exceptions to this restriction must be authorized by the SPU General Manager/CEO or a designee." A mainline extension may be required if there are any adjusted lots that abut a public street right-of-way where there is no existing public piped storm drain \(PSD\).](#)

B-2. [Drainage Report Format/Content Requirements](#)

Drainage Reports are a required part of many Drainage Control Plans as indicated in [Volume 1, Chapter 8](#). The following table describes the typical, required elements and recommended format for Drainage Reports. Elements that are not applicable to a particular project may be indicated as “not applicable” in the Drainage Report. Additional information that is not included in this table may be as described in [Volume 1, Section 8.4](#).

Drainage Report Section		Stormwater Manual Reference	Submittal Notes	
1. Introduction	1.1. Project overview	Volume 1, Chapter 8	Narrative describing the project.	
	1.2. Existing and Proposed Conditions		Describe the existing and proposed conditions including a summary of existing hard surface area.	
2. Determining minimum requirements	2.1. Define the boundaries of the project site	Volume 1, Section 2.1	Include a vicinity map highlighting the project area	
			Include a description of the drainage basin(s) where the project is located and a map highlighting the areas in the project that are in different drainage basins (if applicable).	
			If there are multiple basins, include a table with area calculations and identification of drainage basins.	
	2.2. Identify the type of project	Volume 1, Section 2.2	The project will be classified as a specific project type; this will determine the minimum requirements.	
	2.3. Identify the receiving water and downstream conveyance		Volume 1, Section 2.3	Include at least one map that shows the existing drainage infrastructure per basin.
				Include a table or narrative describing the type of receiving water/s and types downstream conveyance systems per basin.
	2.4. Perform site assessment and planning	Volume 1, Section 2.4	The Drainage Report shall contain, at a minimum, the evaluation and conclusion of each of these items (Section 2.4.1 through 2.4.11) when applicable.	
	2.4.1. Project boundaries	Volume 1, Section 7.2		
2.4.2. Setbacks				
2.4.3. Location of buildings				
2.4.4. Foundation and footing drains				
2.4.5. Soil condition assessment and infiltration feasibility analysis	Volume 1, Section 7.3; Volume 3, Section 3.2			

Drainage Report Section		Stormwater Manual Reference	Submittal Notes
2. Determining minimum requirements (continued)	2.4.6. Environmentally critical areas (ECAs)	Volume 1, Section 7.4	
	2.4.7. Dewatering (Temporary and Permanent)	Volume 1, Section 7.5	Identify any temporary or permanent groundwater that the project will discharge and include estimates of the discharge rates from a licensed professional.
	2.4.8. Topography	Volume 1, Section 7.6	
	2.4.9. Site Assessment	Volume 1, Section 7.7	
	2.4.10. Landscaping principles	Volume 1, Section 7.8	
	2.4.11. Site design considerations and dispersion feasibility	Volume 1, Section 7.9 Volume 3, Section 3.2	
	2.5. Calculate land disturbing activity and new plus replaced hard surface	Volume 1, Section 2.5	Provide a map highlighting the project's new plus replaced hard surface and limits of disturbance per basin. Provide a color map that identifies different types of surfaces (i.e., hard vs. pervious) and area calculations.
	2.6. Calculate new plus replace pollution generating surface	Volume 1, Section 2.6	If water quality treatment is required, provide a map highlighting the pollution generating hard and pervious areas per basin and delineate the areas tributary to each Water Quality BMP.
	2.7. Determine which minimum requirements apply	Volume 1, Section 2.7	Include a summary of all minimum requirements that apply.
3. Minimum requirements for all projects	3.1. Maintaining natural drainage patterns	Volume 1, Section 3.1	The Drainage Report shall contain, at a minimum, an evaluation and conclusion of each of these items (Section 3.1 through 3.12) when applicable.
	3.2. Discharge point	Volume 1, Section 3.2	
	3.3. Flood-prone areas	Volume 1, Section 3.3	

Drainage Report Section		Stormwater Manual Reference	Submittal Notes
3. Minimum requirements for all projects (continued)	3.4. Construction site stormwater pollution prevention control	Volume 1, Section 3.4; Volume 1, Chapter 8; Volume 2, Chapter 2	Include small- or large-project CSC checklist and CSC plan. A narrative is also required and a short narrative describing the selected BMPs and the results of any required calculations.
	3.5. Protect wetlands	Volume 1, Section 3.5	
	3.6. Protect streams and creeks	Volume 1, Section 3.6	
	3.7. Protect shorelines	Volume 1, Section 3.7	
	3.8. Ensure sufficient capacity	Volume 1, Section 3.8	
	3.9. Install source control BMPs	Volume 1, Section 3.9; Volume 4, Section 1.6	Include the Worksheet for Identifying Applicable Source Control BMPs (Volume 4, Table 1)
	3.10. Do not obstruct water courses	Volume 1, Section 3.10	
	3.11. Comply with side sewer code	Volume 1, Section 3.11	Side sewers in ROW shall be shown on SIP plans but require a separate permit.
	3.12. Maintained and inspection	Volume 1, Section 3.12	
4. Minimum requirements based on project type	4.1. Soil amendment	Volume 1, Section 5.1	Include site plans highlighting the area requiring soil amendment (disturbed area)
	4.2. On-site Stormwater management	Volume 1, Section 5.2; Volume 3, Chapter 3	Include a narrative with a summary of the BMPs selected and describe any modeling required for the sizing of the BMPs or special considerations such as presettling. Describe in the infeasibility criteria for On-site Stormwater Management BMPs that were not selected. Reference the appropriate Appendix of the Report for the On-site Stormwater Management Calculator and any other required infeasibility documentation.

Drainage Report Section		Stormwater Manual Reference	Submittal Notes	
4. Minimum requirements based on project type (continued)	4.3. Flow control	5.3.1. Wetland protection standard	<i>Volume 1, Section 5.3;</i> <i>Volume 3, Sections 3.4 and 4.1</i>	When using hydrologic modeling software, provide conclusions for each simulation to explain how the proposed flow control BMP complied with SMC, Section 22.805.080. Include a map identifying the tributary area connected to the flow control BMP that specifies the amount of area been collected.
		5.3.2. Pre-developed forest standard		
		5.3.3. Pre-developed pasture standard		
		5.3.4. Peak control standard		
	4.4. Water quality treatment	5.4.1. Basic treatment	<i>Volume 1, Section 5.4;</i> <i>Volume 3, Section 3.5</i>	
		5.4.2. Oil treatment		
		5.4.3. Phosphorus treatment		
		5.4.4. Enhanced treatment		
5. Conclusion			Describe the project and how each of the requirements were met, giving a summary of the problems and solutions proposed for this project.	
Appendix A	Figures and Maps			
Appendix B	Construction Stormwater Control and Temporary Dewatering Calculations			
Appendix C	On-site Stormwater Management Workbook and any related documentation or calculations		Include the full workbook and any required documentation to justify infeasibility criteria selected (e.g., financial infeasibility criteria, rainwater demand analysis for rainwater harvesting, Geotechnical Engineering analysis and recommendations, etc.).	
Appendix D	Flow Control Calculations (if required)			
Appendix E	Water Quality Calculations (if required)			
Appendix F	Landscape Management Plan (if required)			
Appendix G	Source Control Calculations (if required)			
Appendix H	Infiltration Checklist and Documentation			

Drainage Report Section		Stormwater Manual Reference	Submittal Notes
Appendix I	Soil and Infiltration Investigation Documentation		Infiltration checklists and documentation. Groundwater investigation and estimated flowrate documentation. Geotechnical Report
Appendix J	Inspections and Operations and Maintenance (O&M) Requirements and schedule		

APPENDIX C

On-site Stormwater List BMP Infeasibility Criteria

Note:

Some pages in this document have been purposely skipped or blank pages inserted so that this document will print correctly when duplexed.

This appendix provides infeasibility criteria for use in evaluating BMPs to meet the On-site Stormwater Management Requirement using the On-Site List approach (SMC, Section 22.805.070.D.2) to manage new and replaced hard surfaces. Refer to *Volume 1, Section 5.2.2* to determine which On-site BMPs require evaluation for a project. Evaluation is based on project type, discharge location, and other criteria. Step-by-step instructions for using the On-site List Approach are provided in *Volume 3, Section 3.3.1*.

Prior to evaluating On-site BMPs, review the site design consideration in *Volume 1, Chapter 7 – Site Assessment and Planning* to conserve natural areas, retain native vegetation, reduce impervious surfaces, and integrate stormwater controls into the existing site layout to the maximum extent feasible. The infeasibility criteria provided [in this appendix below](#) apply to BMPs if the area proposed for the BMP is the only available area for the BMP, after all reasonable efforts to regrade the site and allow for alternative placement of the BMP have been made.

When using the On-site List approach, an on-site BMP is considered infeasible if an infeasibility [criterion/criteria](#) in Tables C.1 through [C.6G.4](#) is met.

Table C.1. On-site List Infeasibility Criteria: All Dispersion and Infiltration BMPs.

BMP	On-site List Infeasibility Criteria	Additional Information from Applicant
All BMPs	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Installation requires removal of an existing tree. To use this infeasibility criterion, the tree must be in good health and meet minimum size requirements: deciduous trees must have trunks at least 1.5 inches in diameter measured 6 inches above the ground, and evergreen trees must be at least 4 feet tall. In addition, the existing tree must be in an area that will be protected throughout construction. ● Where BMP installation is prohibited per Regulations for Environmentally Critical Areas (SMC Chapter 25.09). ● Where BMP installation would require pumping to a designated point of discharge, but failure of the pump may destabilize a steep slope. ● Where unable to maintain a desired access of 36 inches in a required building setback from a property line, except when using the Soil Amendment BMP (Volume 3, Section 5.1). ● Where unable to maintain clearance for required ingress, egress, or ADA pathways. ● Where BMP installation would require a pump when a pump is not already required to provide site storm drainage. Requiring a pump as the result of using the Rainwater Harvesting BMP does not make this BMP infeasible. 	

Table C.1 (continued). On-site List Infeasibility Criteria: All Dispersion and Infiltration BMPs.

BMP	On-site List Infeasibility Criteria	Additional Information from Applicant
All Dispersion BMPs	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● A licensed professional (as defined in <i>Appendix D, Section D-1</i>) recommends dispersion not be used anywhere within project site due to reasonable concerns of erosion, slope failure, or flooding (requires a signed and stamped written determination based on site-specific conditions from a licensed professional). ● The dispersion flow path area does not provide positive drainage. ● The dispersion flowpath area is within a landslide-prone area (SMC, Section 25.09.080). ● The dispersion flowpath area is within 100 feet of a contaminated site or landfill (active or closed). ● The dispersion flowpath area is in a steep slope area (SMC, Section 25.09.020) or within a setback to a steep slope area (calculated as 10 times the height of the steep slope to a 500-foot maximum setback). ● The dispersion flowpath area is within 10 feet of a proposed or existing septic system or drainfield. 	
All Infiltration BMPs	<p>The following criteria each establish that the BMP is infeasible but only if based on an evaluation of site-specific conditions and documented within a signed and stamped written determination from a licensed professional (as defined in <i>Appendix D, Section D-1</i>):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Infiltration is not recommended due to reasonable concerns about erosion, slope failure, or flooding. ● The area available for siting would threaten the safety or reliability of pre-existing underground utilities, pre-existing underground storage tanks, pre-existing structures, or pre-existing road or parking lot surfaces or subgrades. ● The area available for siting would threaten shoreline structures such as bulkheads. <p>The following criteria each establish that the BMP is infeasible, without further justification, though some criteria evaluation require professional services:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Evaluation of infiltration is not required per the “Infiltration Investigation Map”. ● The area available for siting does not allow for overflow conveyance to an approved point of discharge per Volume 3, Section 4.3.2. ● The area available for siting is within a steep slope area or land-slide prone area (or setback) (refer to <i>Volume 3, Section 3.2</i>). ● The area available for siting does not meet the minimum horizontal setback requirements (refer to <i>Volume 3, Section 3.2</i>). ● The area available for siting does not meet the minimum vertical setback requirements (refer to <i>Volume 3, Section 3.2</i>, and <i>Appendix D</i>). ● Infiltration is restricted due to contaminated soil or groundwater (refer to <i>Volume 3, Section 3.2</i>). 	

Table C.2. On-site List Infeasibility [Criteria](#): Category 1 BMPs.

BMP	On-site List Infeasibility Criteria	Additional Information from Applicant
Full Dispersion	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● One or more of the infeasibility criteria for “All BMPs” or “All Dispersion BMPs” (Table C.1) apply. ● The site has less than a 65 to 10 ratio of the native vegetation area to the impervious area. ● The minimum native vegetation flowpath length is less than 100 feet. 	
Infiltration Trenches	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● One or more of the infeasibility criteria for “All BMPs” or “All Infiltration BMPs” (Table C.1) apply. ● Field testing indicates potential infiltration trench site(s) have a measured underlying soil infiltration rate less than 5 inches per hour (<i>Volume 3, Section 5.4.2</i>). ● Where the site cannot be reasonably designed to locate a catch basin between the infiltration trench and point of connection to the public system. 	
Drywells	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● One or more of the infeasibility criteria for “All BMPs” or “All Infiltration BMPs” (Table C.1) apply. ● Field testing indicates potential drywell site(s) have a measured underlying soil infiltration rate less than 5 inches per hour (<i>Volume 3, Section 5.4.3</i>). ● Where the site cannot be reasonably designed to locate a catch basin between the drywell and point of connection to the public system. 	

Table C.3. On-site List Infeasibility Criteria: Category 2 BMPs.^a

BMP	On-site List Infeasibility Criteria	Additional Information from Applicant
Rain Gardens	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● One or more of the infeasibility criteria for “All BMPs” or “All Infiltration BMPs” (Table C.1) apply. ● In the right-of-way, the longitudinal road slope exceeds 4 percent. ● The rain garden would have a linear geometry with a longitudinal slope greater than 8 percent. ● The minimum bottom width of the rain garden (12-inch average) cannot be met due to, but not limited to: encroachment within the critical root zone of an existing tree(s) or minimum setbacks to structures, utilities, or property lines. ● The infiltration area is within the minimum vertical or horizontal clearance from utilities, according to clearances required by the utility owner. ● Field testing indicates soils have a measured underlying soil infiltration rate less than 0.3 inches per hour. 	
Infiltrating Bioretention Facilities	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● One or more of the infeasibility criteria for “All BMPs” or “All Infiltration BMPs” (Table C.1) apply. ● The infiltrating bioretention facility would have a linear geometry with a longitudinal slope greater than 8 percent. ● The minimum bottom width of the infiltrating bioretention facility (2 feet for facilities with vertical sides and 18 inch average for facilities with sloped sides) cannot be met due to, but not limited to: encroachment within the critical root zone of an existing tree(s) or minimum setbacks to structures, utilities, or property lines. ● The infiltration area is within the minimum vertical and horizontal clearance from utilities, according to clearances required by the utility owner. ● Field testing indicates soils have a measured underlying soil infiltration rate less than 0.3 inches per hour. ● Field testing indicates soils have a measured underlying soil infiltration rate less than 0.6 inches per hour and an underdrain cannot be installed per the design criteria. ● The facility with an underdrain would route underdrained water to a nutrient-critical receiving water. ● In the right-of-way, installation requires a vertical walled facility. 	
Rainwater Harvesting	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● One or more of the infeasibility criteria for “All BMPs” (Table C.1) apply. ● Project lacks non-pollution-generating roof from which to harvest rainwater. ● Non-potable water demand is insufficient to meet the On-site Performance Standard per modeling conducted in accordance with <i>Volume 3, Section 5.5.1.6</i>. ● Installation is not economically feasible based on reasonable consideration of financial cost (e.g., roof area is less than 20,000 sf or the ratio of roof area to average daily rainwater demand is less than 10,000 square feet/gpm) (refer to <i>Appendix H</i>). Documentation is required. 	

Table C.3 (continued). On-site List Infeasibility Criteria: Category 2 BMPs.^a

BMP	On-site List Infeasibility Criteria	Additional Information from Applicant
Permeable Pavement Facilities	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● One or more of the infeasibility criteria for “All BMPs” or “All Infiltration BMPs” (Table C.1) apply. <p>The following criteria each establish that the BMP is infeasible but only if based on an evaluation of site-specific conditions and a written recommendation from a licensed professional (as defined in <i>Appendix D, Section D-1</i>):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Infiltrating or ponding water below pavement area would compromise adjacent pavements. ● Fill soils are used that can become unstable when saturated. ● The permeable pavement design does not provide sufficient strength to support heavy loads in areas with “industrial activity” as identified in 40 CFR 122.26(b)(14). <p>The following criteria each establish that the BMP is infeasible, without further justification, though some criteria require professional services:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● The subgrade slope exceeds 6 percent after reasonable efforts to grade. ● The permeable pavement wearing course slope exceeds 6 percent after reasonable efforts to grade. ● For projects in the right-of-way, the permeable pavement surface area would be less than 2,000 square feet of contiguous pavement and the project discharges to: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ A designated receiving water body, or ○ A combined system, or ○ A capacity constrained system which does not drain to a creek wetland or small lake. ● The anticipated mature tree spread (based on tree species) would overhang more than 50 percent of permeable pavement area. ● The pavement is over a structure, such as, but not limited to: parking garages, box culverts, and bridges. ● The pavement is subject to long-term excessive sediment deposition (e.g., construction and landscaping material yards). ● Underlying soils are unsuitable for supporting traffic loads when saturated (e.g., a residential access road has a California Bearing Ratio of 5 percent or less). ● Field testing indicates soils have a measured underlying soil infiltration rate less than 0.3 inches per hour. ● Pavement is replacing an existing pollution-generating hard surface in the right-of-way. ● The street type is classified as arterial or collector rather than local access. Refer to RCW 35.78.010, RCW 36.86.070, and RCW 47.05.021. Note: This infeasibility criterion does not extend to sidewalks and other non-traffic bearing surfaces associated with the collector or arterial. 	

Table C.3 (continued). On-site List Infeasibility Criteria: Category 2 BMPs.^a

BMP	On-site List Infeasibility Criteria	Additional Information from Applicant
Permeable Pavement Facilities (continued)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Streets that receive more than very low traffic volumes, and areas having more than very low truck traffic. Streets with a projected average daily traffic volume of 400 vehicles or less are very low volume roads (AASHTO, 2001) (U.S. Dept. of Transportation, 2013). Areas with very low truck traffic volumes are streets and other areas not subject to through truck traffic but may receive up to weekly use by utility trucks (e.g., garbage, recycling), daily school bus use, and multiple daily use by pick-up trucks, mail/parcel delivery trucks, and maintenance vehicles. Note: This infeasibility criterion does not extend to sidewalks and other non-traffic bearing surfaces. ● The pavement area is defined as a “high use site” in SMC, Section 22.801.090. ● In areas with “industrial activity” as identified in 40 CFR 122.26(b)(14). ● Where the risk of concentrated pollutant spills is more likely, including, but not limited to, gas stations, truck stops, and industrial chemical storage sites. ● In areas where routine, heavy roadway applications of sand occur in frequent snow zones to maintain traction during weeks of snow and ice accumulation, including sidewalks within 7 feet of driving lanes with sand application. ● Where runoff from unstabilized erodible areas would occur without presettling. ● The areas contributing runoff to the permeable pavement facilities exceed the maximum run-on limits: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Pollution-generating impervious surfaces (e.g., roadways, parking lots) exceed the maximum run-on area ratio of 2:1 ○ Non-pollution generating impervious surfaces (e.g., roofs, sidewalks) and stabilized pervious surfaces exceed the maximum run-on area ratio of 5:1 ● Where the Director has determined that permeable pavement in active zones of a skate park, bike park, or sport court violates safety standards 	

Table C.3 (continued). On-site List Infeasibility Criteria: Category 2 BMPs.^a

BMP	On-site List Infeasibility Criteria	Additional Information from Applicant																		
Permeable Pavement Surfaces	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● One or more of the infeasibility criteria provided for permeable pavement facilities apply. (Note, however, that for permeable pavement surfaces, the infeasibility criteria for “All Infiltration BMPs” are not applicable). ● Field testing indicates soils have a measured underlying soil infiltration rate less than 0.3 inches per hour (Note: field infiltration tests are not required for permeable pavement surfaces, but must be used to demonstrate infeasibility). ● The site is a contaminated site or abandoned landfill. ● Installation is within 10 feet of an underground petroleum, chemical, or liquid hazardous waste storage tank or connecting underground pipes. (Applicable to tanks used to store petroleum products, chemicals, or liquid hazardous wastes). ● Run-on from an adjacent impervious area is greater than 10 percent of the permeable pavement surface area. ● A licensed professional (as defined in <i>Appendix D, Section D-1</i>) recommends permeable pavement not be used anywhere within the project site due to reasonable concerns of erosion, slope failure, or flooding (requires a signed and stamped written determination based on site-specific conditions from a licensed professional). ● Where the Director has determined that permeable pavement in active zones of a skate park, bike park, or sport court violates safety standards. ● Based on subsurface investigation,^a groundwater or hydraulically-restrictive layer is too shallow per the following Minimum Vertical Separation table. <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse; text-align: center;"> <thead> <tr> <th colspan="4" style="padding: 5px;">Permeable Pavement Surfaces</th> </tr> <tr> <th rowspan="2" style="padding: 5px;">Season</th> <th rowspan="2" style="padding: 5px;">Minimum Investigation Depth (ft)^b</th> <th colspan="2" style="padding: 5px;">Minimum Vertical Separation, ft^a</th> </tr> <tr> <th style="padding: 5px;">Ground-water</th> <th style="padding: 5px;">Hydraulically -Restrictive Layer</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td style="padding: 5px;">Wet Season (November – March)</td> <td style="padding: 5px;">2</td> <td style="padding: 5px;">1</td> <td style="padding: 5px;">1</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="padding: 5px;">Dry Season (April – October)</td> <td style="padding: 5px;">3</td> <td style="padding: 5px;">2</td> <td style="padding: 5px;">1</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p style="margin-top: 10px;"> ^a Subsurface investigation is not required for permeable pavement surfaces, but subsurface investigation must be performed to demonstrate infeasibility due to lack of vertical separation. ^b The minimum investigation depth and vertical separation shall be measured from the bottom of the BMP. The bottom of the BMP is defined as the deepest portion of proposed BMP where water is expected to move into the underlying soil (i.e., at the aggregate subbase or Water Quality Treatment Course [if required]). </p>	Permeable Pavement Surfaces				Season	Minimum Investigation Depth (ft)^b	Minimum Vertical Separation, ft^a		Ground-water	Hydraulically -Restrictive Layer	Wet Season (November – March)	2	1	1	Dry Season (April – October)	3	2	1	
Permeable Pavement Surfaces																				
Season	Minimum Investigation Depth (ft)^b	Minimum Vertical Separation, ft^a																		
		Ground-water	Hydraulically -Restrictive Layer																	
Wet Season (November – March)	2	1	1																	
Dry Season (April – October)	3	2	1																	

Table C.3 (continued). On-site List Infeasibility Criteria: Category 2 BMPs.^a

BMP	On-site List Infeasibility Criteria	Additional Information from Applicant
Sidewalk/Trail Compost-Amended Strip	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● One or more of the infeasibility criteria for “All BMPs,” “All Dispersion BMPs,” or “All Infiltration BMPs” (Table C.1) apply. ● The flowpath downstream of the Sidewalk/Trail Compost-Amended Strip is within 10 feet of a proposed or existing septic system or drainfield, as measured from the toe of the Sidewalk/Trail Compost-Amended Strip slope. ● The sidewalk or trail to be dispersed exceeds a lateral slope of 5 percent or a longitudinal slope of 8 percent. ● The sidewalk or trail to be dispersed has a lateral slope of less than 1 percent. ● Field testing indicates underlying soils have a design soil infiltration rate less than 0.15 inch per hour. Note that field infiltration tests are not required for the Sidewalk/Trail Compost-Amended Strip, but must be used to demonstrate infeasibility. ● The minimum Sidewalk/Trail Compost-Amended Strip design criteria cannot be met. 	

^a [Category references Parcel-based Project list. Refer to SMC, Section 22.805.070.D and Volume 1 Section 5.2.2 for categories relevant to other types of projects.](#)

Table C.4. On-site List Infeasibility Criteria: Category 3 BMPs.^a

BMP	On-site List Infeasibility Criteria	Additional Information from Applicant
Sheet Flow Dispersion	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● One or more of the infeasibility criteria for “All BMPs” or “All Dispersion BMPs” (Table C.1) apply. ● The area to be dispersed (e.g., driveway, patio) exceeds a slope of 15 percent. ● The minimum vegetated flow path for sheet flow dispersion cannot be met. Note: A 10-foot flowpath is required to disperse runoff from a contributing flow length of up to 20 feet. An additional 10 feet of flow path is required for each additional 20 feet of contributing flow path or fraction thereof. Refer to <i>Volume 3, Figure 5.5</i>. ● The flowpath does not meet the minimum horizontal setback requirements to property lines, structures and other flowpaths (refer to <i>Volume 3, Section 5.3.5</i>). 	
Concentrated Flow Dispersion	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● One or more of the infeasibility criteria for “All BMPs” or “All Dispersion BMPs” (Table C.1) apply. ● There are no concentrated flows to disperse. ● The minimum dispersion trench length of 10 feet cannot be met. ● The vegetated flow path for the dispersion trench is less than 25 feet ● The vegetated flow path for a rock pad is less than 50 feet. ● Greater than 700 square feet of surface area drains to the BMP. ● The flowpath does not meet the minimum horizontal setback requirements to property lines, structures and other flowpaths (refer to <i>Volume 3, Section 5.3.6</i>). 	
Splashblock Downspout Dispersion	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● One or more of the infeasibility criteria for “All BMPs” or “All Dispersion BMPs” (Table C.1) apply. ● There are no downspouts. ● The vegetated flowpath is less than 50 feet. ● Greater than 700 square feet of surface area drains to the BMP. ● The flowpath does not meet the minimum horizontal setback requirements to property lines, structures and other flowpaths (refer to <i>Volume 3, Section 5.3.3</i>). 	
Trench Downspout Dispersion	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● One or more of the infeasibility criteria for “All BMPs”-or “All Dispersion BMPs” (Table C.1) apply. ● There are no downspouts. ● The minimum dispersion trench length of 10 feet for every 700 square feet of drainage area cannot be met. ● The vegetated flowpath is less than 25 feet. ● The flowpath is within the setbacks to property lines, structures and other flowpaths (refer to <i>Volume 3, Section 5.3.4</i>). 	

^a [Category references Single Family Residential-based Project list. Refer to SMC, Section 22.805.070.D and Volume 1 Section 5.2.2 for categories relevant to other types of projects.](#)

Table C.5. On-site List Infeasibility Criteria: Category 43 BMPs.^a

BMP	On-site List Infeasibility Criteria	Additional Information from Applicant
Non-Infiltrating Bioretention	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● One or more of the infeasibility criteria for “All BMPs” (Table C.1) apply. ● The minimum bottom width of the non-infiltrating bioretention facility (2 feet) cannot be met due to, but not limited to: encroachment within the critical root zone of an existing tree(s), minimum setbacks to structures/utilities, or project limits/planting strip too small. ● Minimum vertical and horizontal clearances from utilities are unachievable as required by utility owner. ● The facility would route underdrained water to a nutrient-critical receiving water. ● The area available for siting is within a setback equal to the height of the slope to a maximum of 50 feet from the top of steep slope and known landslide area. ● The BMP would be located on a structure or roof that cannot provide sufficient structural support for the BMP without reasonable effort to increase the strength of the roof design. ● Less than 1 foot between the liner and seasonal high groundwater elevation. 	
Rainwater Harvesting	See On-site List Infeasibility Criteria in Table C.3.	
Vegetated Roof Systems	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● One or more of the infeasibility criteria for “All BMPs” (Table C.1) apply. ● Project does not include a roof. ● Roof design has a slope less than 1 degree (0.2:12) or greater than 10 degrees (2:12). ● Installation is not economically feasible based on reasonable consideration of financial cost (refer to <i>Appendix H</i>). Documentation is required. ● The portion of the roof is an amenity area subject to pedestrian use (e.g., balcony, patio, walkway, pet runs, etc.). ● The portion of the roof is required for HVAC equipment and/or maintenance access ways (e.g., window washing, HVAC maintenance, etc.). ● The portion of the roof is completely covered with solar panels. 	
Single Family Residential (SFR) Cistern	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Project does not include non-pollution generating surfaces. ● The SFR cistern would be within restricted setbacks 	

^a [Category references Single Family Residential-based Project list. Refer to SMC, Section 22.805.070.D and Volume 1 Section 5.2.2 for categories relevant to other types of projects.](#)

Table C.6C-5. On-site List Infeasibility Criteria: Category 4-5 BMPs.^a

BMP	On-site List Infeasibility Criteria	Additional Information from Applicant
Perforated Stub-out Connections	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● One or more of the infeasibility criteria for “All BMPs” or “All Infiltration BMPs” (Table C.1) apply. ● The location for the perforated pipe portion of the system is under impervious or heavily compacted (e.g., driveways and parking areas) surfaces. ● The minimum perforated stub-out length of 10 feet per 5,000 square feet of contributing roof area cannot be met. ● Where the site cannot be reasonably designed to locate a catch basin between the perforated stub-out and point of connection to the public system. 	
Newly Planted Trees	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● The mature height, size, and/or rooting depth is not compatible with Medium and Large trees listed in the reference materials posted on SDCI’s websitecurrent Seattle Master Tree List. 	
Single Family Residential (SFR) Cistern	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● One or more of the infeasibility criteria for “All BMPs” (Table C.1) apply. ● Project does not include non-pollution generating surfaces. ● The SFR cistern would be within restricted setbacks. 	

^a [Category references Single Family Residential-based Project list. Refer to SMC, Section 22.805.070.D and Volume 1 Section 5.2.2 for categories relevant to other types of projects.](#)

APPENDIX D

Subsurface Investigation and Infiltration Testing for Infiltration BMPs

Note:

Some pages in this document have been purposely skipped or blank pages inserted so that this document will print correctly when duplexed.

Table of Contents

- D-1. Roles and Responsibilities of Licensed Professionals 1
- D-2. Subsurface Investigation 2
 - D-2.1. Description 2
 - D-2.2. General Subsurface Investigation Requirements 2
 - D-2.2.1. Subsurface Investigation Locations 2
 - D-2.2.2. Subsurface Investigation Timing 2
 - D-2.2.3. Alternatives to Subsurface Investigation 2
 - D-2.2.4. Investigation Depth and Vertical Separation Requirements 3
 - D-2.2.5. Subsurface Report 3
 - D-2.3. Simple Subsurface Investigation 3
 - D-2.4. Standard Subsurface Investigation 4
 - D-2.5. Comprehensive Subsurface Investigation 5
 - D-2.6. Deep Infiltration Subsurface Investigation 7
- D-3. Infiltration Tests 7
 - D-3.1. Description 7
 - D-3.2. Simple Infiltration Test 8
 - D-3.3. Small Pilot Infiltration Test (Small PIT) 9
 - D-3.4. Large Pilot Infiltration Test (Large PIT) 10
 - D-3.5. Deep Infiltration Test 11
- D-4. Infiltration Rate Correction Factor 12
 - D-4.1. Simple Infiltration Test 12
 - D-4.2. Small and Large PITs 12
- D-5. Groundwater Monitoring 13
- D-6. Characterization of Infiltration Receptor 14
- D-7. Groundwater Mounding and Seepage Analysis 14
 - D-7.1. Data Requirements 15
 - D-7.2. Analysis Procedures 16
- D-8. Acceptance Testing 17
 - D-8.1. Acceptance Criteria Definitions 17
 - D-8.2. Acceptance Testing Requirements 18
 - D-8.3. Acceptance Testing Plan 19
 - D-8.4. Acceptance Testing Submittal 20

D-1. Roles and Responsibilities of Licensed Professionals

This appendix provides the minimum investigation requirements for infiltration best management practices (BMPs). This information does not preclude the use of professional judgment to evaluate and manage risk associated with design, construction, and operation of infiltration BMPs.

When a licensed professional is required to perform a subsurface investigations and/or infiltration testing, that professional shall be an engineer, engineering geologist, geologist, hydrogeologist or soil scientist licensed by the State of Washington who has experience in infiltration and or groundwater testing and infiltration BMP design, except in the following cases:

- The licensed professional shall be either a geotechnical engineer or hydrogeologist licensed by the State of Washington when:
 - A Comprehensive Subsurface Investigation is required.
 - A correction factor for a Comprehensive Subsurface Investigation is required to be determined.
 - Infiltration is proposed in an Environmentally Critical Area (ECA) steep slope or landslide-prone areas or within a setback of 10 times the height of the steep slope area to a maximum of 500 feet above a steep slope area.
- The licensed professional shall be a hydrogeologist licensed in the State of Washington when:
 - Runoff from 5,000 square feet or more of impervious surface area will be infiltrated within 500 feet up-gradient or 100 feet down-gradient of a contaminated site or landfill (active or closed).
 - Groundwater mounding and/or seepage analysis is required.
 - A deep subsurface infiltration test is required.

Acceptance testing shall be performed by a licensed professional from the same category as was required for the design investigations.

Recommendations that deviate from the minimum investigation requirements specified in this appendix shall be contained in a stamped and signed letter from a State of Washington licensed professional engineer, engineering geologist, geologist, or hydrogeologist, herein referred to as licensed professional, who has experience in infiltration and groundwater testing and infiltration facility design, and must provide rationale and specific data supporting their professional judgment. For more information on the role of the geotechnical engineer or hydrogeologist licensed professional, refer to City of Seattle Director's Rule 5-201618-2011, *General Duties and Responsibilities of Geotechnical Engineers*.

D-2. Subsurface Investigation

D-2.1. Description

Subsurface investigations consist of any type of excavation that allows for the collection of soil samples and the observation of subsurface materials and groundwater conditions, including hand-auger holes, test pits, and drilled boreholes.

This section includes general subsurface investigation requirements followed by specific information regarding four types of subsurface investigations:

- Simple subsurface investigation
- Standard subsurface investigation
- Comprehensive subsurface investigation
- Deep infiltration subsurface investigation

D-2.2. General Subsurface Investigation Requirements

This section includes requirements for subsurface investigation locations, timing, alternatives, investigation depth and vertical separation requirements, and subsurface reports.

D-2.2.1. Subsurface Investigation Locations

For Single-Family Residential (SFR) and Parcel-based projects, the site is defined as the project area. For Trail, Sidewalk, or Roadway projects, the site is defined by one intersection to the other and blocks may vary in length. In many cases, subsurface investigations should be performed at the site of the infiltration [facility-BMP](#) or as close as possible, but no more than 50 feet away, to obtain relevant subsurface information. Subsurface investigations can be conducted at the same location as the infiltration tests ([refer to Section D-3](#)).

D-2.2.2. Subsurface Investigation Timing

Subsurface investigations should be performed in the wet season (November through March) if possible, when soils may contain a higher water content and groundwater levels are typically higher. Refer to *Sections D-2.3 through D-2.5* for wet season and dry season requirements for the different types of subsurface investigations.

D-2.2.3. Alternatives to Subsurface Investigation

In some cases, available data and the licensed professional's interpretation of subsurface material characteristics can be used to demonstrate that infiltration is infeasible on a site and precludes the need for all of the subsurface investigation or infiltration testing. Examples of these instances include, but are not limited to:

- Groundwater monitoring data that meets the requirements of the groundwater monitoring section ([refer to Section D-5](#)), at the site of the proposed [facility-BMP](#) showing groundwater elevations not meeting the vertical separation requirements ([refer to Section D-2.2.4](#)).

- Identification by the licensed professional of hydraulically-restrictive materials beneath the proposed [facility-BMP](#) and within the vertical separation requirements ([refer to Section D-2.2.4](#)).
- To support these instances, the licensed professional must submit a stamped and signed letter that provides rationale and specific data supporting their professional judgment for each area deemed infeasible for infiltration.

D-2.2.4. Investigation Depth and Vertical Separation Requirements

Investigation depth is measured below the bottom of the proposed infiltration BMP. The bottom of the infiltration [facility-BMP](#) is defined as the deepest portion of proposed [facility BMP](#) where infiltrating water is expected to move into the underlying soil.

The vertical separation requirements depend upon the type of subsurface investigation required and the seasonal timing of the geotechnical exploration conducted to evaluate clearance and are typically one foot less than the minimum investigation depths summarized in *Sections D-2.3 through D-2.5*. If groundwater or a hydraulically-restrictive material is encountered within the vertical separation depth, then no further investigation is required.

Examples of materials that may be interpreted as hydraulically-restrictive include:

- Glacially consolidated soils that have greater than 50 percent fines
- Glacially unconsolidated soils that have greater than 70 percent fines
- Bedrock

D-2.2.5. Subsurface Report

Projects that are required to perform subsurface investigations per *Volume 3, Section 3.2*, shall prepare a report documenting results of the subsurface investigations described in *Sections D-2.3 through D-2.6* and infiltration tests described in *Section D-3*.

D-2.3. Simple Subsurface Investigation

This section summarizes the minimum requirements of a Simple Subsurface Investigation. Refer to Table 3.1 in *Volume 3, Section 3.2* to determine the minimum subsurface investigation requirements for a project. [The Simple Subsurface Investigation is conducted approximately 5 feet from the test hole.](#)

A simple subsurface investigation report can be used to document the investigation and testing results. This report ~~shall~~[should](#) include the following, [as applicable](#):

- Map of investigation and testing location
- Soil characteristics
- [Depth to groundwater \(if encountered\)](#)
- [Results of subsurface investigations as required in Table 3.1 of Volume 3, Section 3.2 and evaluation of vertical separation results.](#)

Simple Subsurface Investigation Elements			
<u>Minimum Investigation Depth and Vertical Separation Requirements</u>			
All BMPs			
Season	Minimum Investigation Depth (ft)^a	Minimum Vertical Separation, ft ^a	
		Groundwater	Hydraulically-Restrictive Layer
Wet Season (November – March)	2	1	1
Dry Season (April – October)	3	2	1
<u>Soil Characteristics</u>			
Type and texture of soil			

^a ~~The minimum investigation depth and vertical separation shall be measured from the bottom of the facility.~~ The bottom of the facility-BMP is defined as the deepest portion of proposed facility-BMP where infiltrating water is expected to move into the underlying soil.

D-2.4. Standard Subsurface Investigation

This section summarizes the minimum requirements of a Standard Subsurface Investigation. Refer to Table 3.1 in *Volume 3, Section 3.2* to determine the minimum subsurface investigation requirements for a project.

A standard subsurface investigation report shall be used to document the investigation and testing results. This report shall include the following, as applicable:

- Map of investigation and testing location
- Soil characteristics for each soil and/or rock unit encountered
- Depth to groundwater (if encountered)
- Detailed logs for each investigation
- Results of subsurface investigations as required in Table 3.1 of *Volume 3, Section 3.2* and evaluation of vertical separation results.

If a small pilot infiltration test (PIT) is required, the report shall be signed and stamped by a licensed professional.

Standard Subsurface Investigation Elements			
Minimum Investigation Depth and Vertical Separation Requirements			
Season	Minimum Investigation Depth (ft) ^a	Minimum Vertical Separation (ft) ^a	
		Groundwater	Hydraulically-Restrictive Layer
Infiltration Basins			
Wet Season (November – March)	6	5	5
Dry Season (April – October)	7	6	5
All Other Infiltration BMPs			
Wet Season (November – March)	2	1	1
Dry Season (April – October)	4	3	1

Characterization for each soil and/or rock unit (strata with the same texture, color/mottling, density, and type)

- USCS classification or textural class
- Material texture, color/mottling, density and type
- Relative moisture content
- Grain size distribution, including fines content determination
- Presence of stratification or layering
- Presence of groundwater
- Iron oxide staining or mottling that may provide an indication of high water level
- Cation exchange capacity (refer to *Volume 3, Section 4.5.2*)

Detailed logs for each investigation

- Map showing the location of the test pits or borings
- Depth of investigations
- Investigation methods (hand augers, test pits, or drilled borings), material descriptions
- Depth to water (if present)
- Presence of stratification
- Existing boring or groundwater information

The report shall document how the information collected relates to the infiltration feasibility of the site based on the setbacks provided in *Volume 3, Section 3.2* and this appendix. If more than 2,000 sf of the site infiltration will occur within a single [facilityBMP](#), the Standard Subsurface Investigation report shall be prepared by a licensed professional.

^a ~~The minimum investigation depth and vertical separation shall be measured from the bottom of the facility.~~ The bottom of the [facilityBMP](#) is defined as the deepest portion of proposed [facilityBMP](#) where infiltrating water is expected to move into the underlying soil. For Small PITs, sampling of distinct materials below the bottom of the [facilityBMP](#) and within the vertical separation depth is required. Beyond this depth, samples should be collected every 2.5 feet.

D-2.5. Comprehensive Subsurface Investigation

This section summarizes the minimum requirements of a Comprehensive Subsurface Investigation. Refer to Table 3.1 in *Volume 3, Section 3.2* to determine the minimum subsurface investigation requirements for a project. The comprehensive subsurface investigation report shall be prepared, [signed and stamped](#) by a [licensed professional geotechnical engineer or hydrogeologist](#).

A comprehensive subsurface investigation report shall be used to document the investigation and testing results. This report shall include the following, as applicable:

- Map of investigation and testing location
- Soil characteristics for each soil and/or rock unit encountered
- Depth to groundwater (if encountered)
- Detailed logs for each investigation
- Results of subsurface investigations as required in Table 3.1 of Volume 3, Section 3.2 and evaluation of vertical separation results.

Comprehensive Subsurface Investigation Elements			
<u>Minimum Investigation Depth and Vertical Separation Requirements</u>			
Season	Minimum Investigation Depth (ft)^{a,b}	Minimum Vertical Separation (ft)	
		Groundwater	Hydraulically-Restrictive Layer
Infiltration Basins			
Wet Season (November – March)	6	5	5
Dry Season (April – October)	10	8	5
Permeable Pavement Facilities			
Wet Season (November – March)	2	1	1
Dry Season (April – October)	4	3	1
<u>Infiltrating Bioretention with Underdrain</u>			
<u>Wet Season (November – March)</u>	<u>2</u>	<u>1</u>	<u>1</u>
<u>Dry Season (April – October)</u>	<u>10</u>	<u>8</u>	<u>1</u>
<u>Infiltrating Bioretention without Underdrain and All Other Infiltration BMPs</u>			
Wet Season (November – March)	4	3	3
Dry Season (April – October)	10	8	3
<u>Characterization for each soil and/or rock unit (strata with the same texture, color/mottling, density, and type)</u>			
Same as Standard Subsurface Investigation (<i>Section D-2.4</i>)			
<u>Detailed logs for each investigation</u>			
Same as Standard Subsurface Investigation (<i>Section D-2.4</i>)			

^a The minimum investigation depth and vertical separation shall be measured from the bottom of the facility. The bottom of the facility BMP is defined as the deepest portion of proposed facility BMP where infiltrating water is expected to move into the underlying soil. For Small PITs, sampling of distinct materials below the bottom of the facility BMP and within the vertical separation depth is required. Beyond this depth, samples should be collected every 2.5 feet.

^b If the bottom of the facility BMP is not known, the minimum investigation depth shall be 16 feet below grade. Investigations that will also serve as groundwater monitoring wells shall not be less than 20 feet below the bottom of proposed facility BMP and the criteria for vertical separation to groundwater or hydraulically-restrictive materials listed above shall apply.

D-2.6. Deep Infiltration Subsurface Investigation

This section summarizes the minimum requirements of a Deep Infiltration Subsurface Investigation. Refer to Table 3.2 in *Volume 3, Section 3.2*, to determine the minimum subsurface investigation requirements for a project. The deep infiltration subsurface investigation report shall be prepared by a licensed [professional geotechnical engineer or hydrogeologist](#).

Deep Infiltration Subsurface Investigation Elements
<p><u>Minimum Investigation Depth</u> At least 10 feet below regional groundwater table or into aquitard underlying target soil</p>
<p><u>Characterization for each soil and/or rock unit (strata with the same texture, color/mottling, density, and type)</u> Same as Standard Subsurface Investigation (<i>Section D-2.4</i>)</p>
<p><u>Detailed logs for each investigation</u> Same as Standard Subsurface Investigation (<i>Section D-2.4</i>)</p>

D-3. Infiltration Tests

D-3.1. Description

Step 4 in *Volume 3, Section 3.2*, is Conduct Infiltration Testing. This section provides procedures for the following infiltration testing methods:

- Simple Infiltration Test (Small-scale infiltration test)
- Small Pilot Infiltration Test (PIT)
- Large PIT
- Deep infiltration test

To determine which infiltration test method is required for a project, refer to Table 3.1 and Table 3.2 in *Volume 3, Section 3.2*.

If possible, perform infiltration testing at the location of the proposed infiltration [facilityBMP](#). Infiltration testing results from a nearby location within 50 feet of the proposed infiltration [facilityBMP](#) may be approved at the discretion of the licensed professional. If ~~the infiltration testing is performed more than 50 feet from the final infiltration facility location due to existing site conditions (e.g., existing structure at location of proposed facility) and~~ greater than 5,000 sf is infiltrated on the site, then acceptance testing is required (refer to *Volume 3, Section 3.2*).

If variable soil conditions are observed at the site, multiple infiltration tests are recommended in the different soil types.

After the measured infiltration rates are determined using the procedures provided in this section, correction factors must be applied to calculate the design infiltration rate used for BMP sizing (refer to *Section D-4*).

The test method may be modified due to site conditions if recommended by the licensed professional and the reasoning is documented in the report. Any modifications to the proposed test method should be approved by the City.

D-3.2. Simple Infiltration Test

The Simple Infiltration Test is a small-scale infiltration test procedure adapted from the Washington State Department of Ecology (Ecology) Rain Garden Handbook for Western Washington (<https://fortress.wa.gov/ecy/publications/SummaryPages/1310027.html>).

The Simple Infiltration Test does not require a licensed professional.

The Simple Infiltration Test is not allowed for projects with no off-site point of discharge (*Volume 3, Section 4.3.2-4*). These projects shall use a Small PIT.

Procedure

If testing is performed during the wet season (November through March), only one test is required. If the test is performed during the dry season (April through October), two tests must be performed in same hole within 2 days, with the beginning of each test spaced 24 hours apart.

1. Dig a hole a minimum of 2 feet deep. Preferably, the depth of the hole should be measured from the bottom of the facility but at a minimum shall be measured from the proposed site finished grade. The hole shall be at least 2 feet in diameter.
2. Record the type and texture of the soil. If the soil is primarily fine-grained such as silt or clay, or is glacial till, infiltration may not be feasible.
3. At the same time that you dig your test hole, check for high groundwater by using a post hole digger to excavate a hole to the minimum subsurface investigation depth, as provided in *Section D-2.3*, approximately 5 feet from the test hole. If standing water or seeping water is observed in the hole, measure the depth to the standing water or seepage.
4. Pre-soak period: Add 12 inches of water to the hole. This can be measured using a ruler, scale, or tape measure. Be careful to avoid splashing, which could erode the sides of the hole or disturb the soil at the base of the hole.
5. Record the depth of water in the hole in inches.
6. Record the time water was added to the hole.
7. Check and record the time and depth of water in the hole on an hourly basis for up to two hours. Estimate the infiltration rate in inches per hour by calculating the drop in water level in inches for each hour. Based on the lowest of these measurements, determine which time interval to use for the infiltration test by following these guidelines:
 - >3 inch per hour fall, check at 15-minute intervals
 - 3 inch to 1 inch per hour fall, check at 30-minute intervals
 - <1 inch per hour fall, check at hourly intervals
8. Infiltration Test: Fill the hole back up to a depth of 12 inches. Check and record the time and depth of water in the hole at regular intervals based on the time interval

determined during the presoak period for a total of six measurements. If the hole empties prior to the six measurements, refill and continue recording until you have recorded six measurements.

9. Calculate measured infiltration rate. Refer to Table 3.3 in *Volume 3, Section 3.2*, for minimum infiltration rates for each type of infiltration BMP. Using the collected data, estimate the [measured](#)-infiltration rate in inches per hour by calculating the drop in water level in inches for each hour data was collected during the infiltration test. There should be a total of six values. The lowest calculated value is the measured infiltration rate in inches per hour
10. Mark test locations on site map.

D-3.3. Small Pilot Infiltration Test (Small PIT)

The testing procedure and data analysis requirements for the Small PIT are provided below. The report for this test shall include documentation of the testing procedure, analysis and results to assess infiltration feasibility and an explanation of the correction factor used to determine the design infiltration rate.

The Small PIT report shall be prepared by a licensed professional. The test method may be modified due to site conditions if recommended by the licensed professional and the reasoning is documented in the report.

Procedure

1. Excavate the test pit to the depth of the bottom of the proposed infiltration [facilityBMP](#). In the case of bioretention, excavate to the lowest estimated elevation at which the imported soil mix will contact the underlying soil. For permeable pavement, excavate to the elevation at which the imported subgrade materials, or the pavement itself, will contact the underlying soil. If the underlying soils (road subgrade) will be compacted, compact the underlying soils prior to testing. Note that the permeable pavement design guidance recommends compaction not exceed 90 to 92 percent.
2. Lay back the slopes sufficiently to avoid caving and erosion during the test. Alternatively, consider shoring the sides of the test pit.
3. The size of the bottom of the test pit shall be a minimum of 12 square feet (sf). [Accurately d](#)ocument the size and geometry of the test pit.
4. Install a device capable of measuring the water level in the pit during the test. This may be a pressure transducer (automatic measurements) or a vertical measuring rod (minimum 5 feet long) marked in half-inch increments in the center of the pit bottom (manual measurements).
5. Use a rigid pipe with a splash plate or some other device on the bottom to convey water to the bottom of the pit and reduce side-wall erosion and excessive disturbance of the pit bottom. Excessive erosion and bottom disturbance may result in clogging of the infiltration receptor and yield lower than actual infiltration rates.
6. Pre-soak period: Add water to the pit so that there is standing water for at least 6 hours. Maintain the pre-soak water level at least 12 inches above the bottom of the pit.

7. Steady state period:
 - a. At the end of the pre-soak period, add water to the pit at a rate that will maintain a depth of 12 inches above the bottom of the pit over a full hour.
 - b. Every 15 minutes during the steady state period, record the cumulative volume and instantaneous flow rate (in gallons per minute) necessary to maintain the water level at the same point (the design ponding depth) on the measuring rod or pressure transducer readout.
8. Falling head period: After 1 hour, turn off the water and record the rate of infiltration (the drop rate of the standing water) in inches per hour every 15 minutes using the pressure transducer or measuring rod data, for a minimum of 1 hour or until the pit is empty.
9. Within 24 hours after the falling head period~~At the conclusion of testing~~, over-excavate the pit to determine if the test water is mounded on shallow restrictive layers or if it has continued to flow deep into the subsurface. The investigation depth varies depending on the type of subsurface investigation required (refer to Table 3.1 in *Volume 3, Section 3.2*) and the seasonal timing of the geotechnical exploration conducted to evaluate clearance. Minimum investigation depths are provided in *Section D-2*.

Data Analysis

Using the established steady state flow rate, calculate and record the measured infiltration rate in inches per hour. Use the falling head data to confirm the measured infiltration rate calculated from the steady state data.

Adjust the measured infiltration rate using the correction factor (CF) described in *Section D-4* to estimate the design infiltration rate.

D-3.4. Large Pilot Infiltration Test (Large PIT)

A Large PIT will more closely simulate actual conditions for the infiltration facilityBMP than a Small PIT and may be preferred at the discretion of the licensed professional if not already required per Table 3.1 in *Volume 3, Section 3.2*. The testing procedure and data analysis requirements for the Large PIT are provided below. The report for this test shall include documentation of the testing procedure, analysis and results to assess infiltration feasibility and an explanation of the correction factor used to determine the design infiltration rate.

The Large PIT report shall be prepared by a licensed professional. The test method may be modified due to site conditions if recommended by the licensed professional and the reasoning is documented in the report.

Procedure

1. Excavate the test pit to the depth of the bottom of the proposed infiltration facilityBMP. In the case of bioretention, excavate to the lowest estimated elevation at which the imported soil mix will contact the underlying soil. For permeable pavement, excavate to the elevation at which the imported subgrade materials will contact the underlying soil. If the underlying soils (road subgrade) will be compacted, compact the

[underlying soils prior to testing. Note that the permeable pavement design guidance recommends compaction not exceed 90 to 92 percent.](#)

2. Lay back the slopes sufficiently to avoid caving and erosion during the test. Alternatively, consider shoring the sides of the test pit.
3. The size of the bottom of the test pit should be as close to the size of the planned infiltration [facility/BMP](#) as possible, but not less than 32 square feet in area (100 square feet is recommended). Where water availability is an issue, smaller areas may be considered, as determined by the licensed professional. [Accurately D](#)document the size and geometry of the test pit.

Refer to Steps 4 through 10 as described in the Small PIT procedure above.

Data Analysis

Refer to the data analysis guidance for small PITs in *Section D-3.3*.

D-3.5. Deep Infiltration Test

The design infiltration [rate capacity](#) for deep infiltration shall be determined by performing a constant-rate infiltration test followed by a falling-head infiltration test. The Deep Infiltration Test report shall include documentation of the testing procedure, analysis and results to assess infiltration feasibility and an explanation of the correction factor used to determine the design infiltration [rate capacity of the proposed BMP](#).

The Deep Infiltration Test report shall be prepared by a licensed professional. The test method may be modified due to site conditions if recommended by the licensed [professional geotechnical engineer or hydrogeologist](#) and the reasoning is documented in the report.

Procedure

1. Perform the test by adding water (obtained from a potable water source) to the test well to maintain a [constant](#) hydraulic head in the well ~~equal to approximately half the thickness of the unsaturated infiltration receptor soil layer.~~ [The specific target hydraulic head will depend on the subsurface conditions, the design and construction of the test well, and the project goals. As a starting point, it is recommended to saturate the entire screened portion of the test well that is within the target soil zone.](#)
2. Monitor the flow rate with a flow meter or other method that is capable of measuring flow to within 5 percent of the total flow rate.
3. Monitor water levels in the test well with a pressure transducer and datalogger on a maximum of 5-minute intervals.
4. Add water until the rate of water added is constant, or for a minimum of 4 hours.
5. Once a constant rate is achieved, the test is complete. Begin the falling head portion of the test. Monitor water levels during the falling [head test](#) until the water level has fallen to a minimum of 5 percent of the total head targeted during the constant rate portion of the test.
6. In addition to the required wells, monitor groundwater elevations in nearby monitoring wells as available.

Data Analysis

The test data shall be evaluated by a licensed hydrogeologist experienced in the analysis of well hydraulics and well testing data. As a result of the likely variability in soil conditions, specific methods for analysis of the data are not provided. It is the responsibility of the professional analyzing the data to select the appropriate methodology.

D-4. Infiltration Rate Correction Factor

Measured infiltration rates described in *Section D-3* shall be reduced using correction factors to determine the design infiltration rates. The determination of a design infiltration rate from in-situ infiltration test data involves a considerable amount of engineering judgment. Therefore, when determining the final design infiltration rate, the licensed professional shall consider the results of both soil subsurface material conditions and in-situ infiltration tests results. In no case shall the design infiltration rate exceed 10 inches per hour.

$$\text{Design Infiltration Rate} = \text{Measured Infiltration Rate} \times \text{CF}$$

A correction factor (CF) is applied to the measured infiltration rate to calculate the design infiltration rate. The design infiltration rate shall be used when sizing infiltration BMPs using the design criteria outlined in *Volume 3, Section 5.4*.

D-4.1. Simple Infiltration Test

A CF of 0.5 shall be applied to the measured infiltration rate to calculate the design infiltration rate.

D-4.2. Small and Large PITs

A CF of 0.5 must be used for all projects unless a lower value is warranted by site conditions, as recommended and documented by a licensed professional, and shall not be less than 0.2. In determining an appropriate CF, the following criteria shall be considered and are described below:

- Site variability and number of locations tested
- Uncertainty of test method
- Degree of influent control to prevent siltation and bio-buildup

Site variability and number of locations tested – This criterion depends on the level of uncertainty that adverse subsurface conditions may exist. The number of locations tested must be sufficient to represent the conditions throughout the [facilityBMP](#) site. The following are examples of how site variability and number and locations of the tests may affect uncertainty:

- The subsurface conditions are known to be uniform based on previous exploration and site geological factors, one PIT may be adequate to justify that the uncertainty for that site is low.
- High variability may exist due to subsurface conditions (such as buried stream channels) identified on previous explorations and site geological factors. In these

cases, even with many explorations and several PITs, the level of uncertainty may still be high.

- High uncertainty could also be assigned where conditions have a more typical variability, but few explorations and only one PIT is conducted. That is, the number of explorations and tests conducted do not match the degree of site variability anticipated.

Uncertainty of test method – This criterion represents the accuracy of the infiltration test method used. Larger scale tests are assumed to produce more reliable results (i.e., the Large PIT is more certain than the Small PIT).

Degree of influent control to prevent siltation and bio-buildup – High uncertainty for this criterion may be justified under the following circumstances:

- If the infiltration [facilityBMP](#) is located in a shady area where moss buildup or litter fall buildup from the surrounding vegetation is likely and cannot be easily controlled through long-term maintenance.
- If there is minimal pre-treatment, and the influent is likely to contain moderately high total suspended solids (TSS) levels.

If influent into the [facilityBMP](#) can be well controlled such that the planned long-term maintenance can easily control siltation and biomass buildup, then low uncertainty may be justified for this criterion.

D-5. Groundwater Monitoring

Groundwater monitoring wells (including the minimum subsurface investigation depth) shall be installed as determined in *Sections D-2.3 through D-2.6* under the direct supervision of a licensed professional. The minimum number of groundwater monitoring wells, duration of monitoring, and frequency of monitoring are summarized in Table 3.1 and Table 3.2 in *Volume 3, Section 3.2*. A report shall be developed that is prepared by a licensed professional and includes a map detailing the locations of the monitoring wells relative to the project site and a description of the groundwater levels relative to the investigation depth and vertical separation requirements provided in *Section D-2*.

Groundwater monitoring is not required in the following situations [when using shallow infiltration BMPs](#):

- Elevation data measured at project monitoring wells shows groundwater levels within the investigation depth and vertical separation requirements summarized in *Section D-2*
- Available groundwater elevation data within 50 feet of the proposed infiltration [facilityBMP](#) shows the highest measured groundwater level to be at least 10 feet below the bottom of the proposed infiltration [facilityBMP](#) or if the initial groundwater measurement is more than 15 feet below the bottom of the proposed infiltration facility

In these situations, no further investigation is required to meet on-site, flow control, or water quality treatment requirements. These exceptions do not apply to deep infiltration BMPs.

D-6. Characterization of Infiltration Receptor

The infiltration receptor is the unsaturated and saturated soil receiving stormwater from an infiltration [facilityBMP](#). Thresholds for triggering characterization of the infiltration receptor are summarized in Table 3.1 and Table 3.2 in *Volume 3, Section 3.2*.

Assessment and documentation by a licensed hydrogeologist characterizing the infiltration receptor shall include the following elements:

- Depth to groundwater and to hydraulically-restrictive material
- Seasonal variation of groundwater table based on well water levels and observed mottling of soils
- Existing groundwater flow direction and gradient
- Approximation of the lateral extent of infiltration receptor
- Volumetric water holding capacity of the infiltration receptor soils. The volumetric water holding capacity is the storage volume in the soil layer directly below the infiltration [facilityBMP](#) and above the seasonal high groundwater mark, or hydraulically-restrictive material.
- Horizontal hydraulic conductivity of the saturated zone to assess the aquifer's ability to laterally transport the infiltrated water

Note: As part of the infiltration receptor characterization for deep infiltration wells, the pretreatment requirements shall be evaluated as in the UIC Guidance Manual (Ecology 2006).

D-7. Groundwater Mounding and Seepage Analysis

Infiltration of large volumes of water may result in a rise in the water table or development of a shallow water table on hydraulically-restrictive materials that slow the downward percolation of water. If this mounding of water is excessive, the infiltration [facilityBMP](#) may become less effective and/or adjacent structures or facilities may be impacted by the rising water table. In addition, if the infiltration [facilityBMP](#) is adjacent to a slope, slope stability may be decreased.

Thresholds for triggering groundwater mounding and seepage analysis are summarized in Table 3.1 and Table 3.2 in *Volume 3, Section 3.2*.

The mounding analysis shall evaluate the impact of the infiltration [facilityBMP](#) on local groundwater flow direction and water table elevations and determine whether there would be any adverse effects caused by seepage zones on nearby building foundations, basements, roads, parking lots or sloping sites. If the results of the mounding analysis indicate that adverse conditions could occur, as determined by a licensed professional, the infiltration [facilityBMP](#) shall not be built.

If infiltration on the site may result in shallow lateral flow (interflow), the conveyance and possible locations where that interflow may re-emerge ~~shall~~ be assessed by a licensed hydrogeologist.

For deep infiltration BMPs, the following shall also be evaluated:

- Extent of groundwater mounding under the design flow rate
- Potential impacts from the groundwater mounding to:

- Deep infiltration BMP performance
- Surrounding infrastructure, including, but not limited to, infiltration [facilitiesBMPs](#), drainage facilities, foundations, basements, utility corridors, or retaining walls
- Offsite slope stability
- Down-gradient existing contamination plumes

Several analytical tools are available to evaluate potential groundwater mounding beneath infiltration [facilitiesBMPs](#). These include both analytical and numerical groundwater flow software. In general, public domain software programs shall be used (such those initially authored by the United States Geological Survey (USGS) or the Environmental Protection Agency).

The software program MODRET is considered a standard tool for evaluating infiltration [facilitiesBMPs](#), and is recommended in Ecology’s Stormwater Management Manual for Western Washington. Although MODRET is a proprietary computer program, it is readily available for purchase and is based on USGS software. However, MODRET is limited to evaluation of a single [facilityBMP](#) at a time, and generally will not be suitable for evaluating clustered [facilitiesBMPs](#).

The preferred program for simulating groundwater mounding beneath infiltration [facilitiesBMPs](#) is the USGS-based program MODFLOW. MODFLOW can be used to simulate a wide range of aquifer conditions and geometries. The primary limitation with MODFLOW is that most versions of the program do not simulate the movement of water through the unsaturated zone, which would normally be expected to slow the downward movement of water and allow for lateral spreading of water before reaching the water table. Instead, infiltrating water is input directly to the water table. For a shallow water table or perching layer this limitation should not greatly influence the overall results of the mounding simulation and represents a more conservative approach to simulating mounding.

Licensed hydrogeologists with formal training and experience in developing groundwater flow models ~~shall~~ conduct these analyses. It should also be noted that groundwater models do not provide specific answers, but are tools to help understand the behavior of groundwater systems under a variety of conditions. The results of any model should be used in the context of the overall goal of the project and be applied as warranted by the risk tolerance of the owner.

D-7.1. Data Requirements

Data requirements for development of a groundwater mounding model include:

- Soil and groundwater conditions
- Aquifer parameters (e.g., hydraulic conductivity and specific yield)
- Aquifer geometry
- Pre-infiltration hydraulic gradient
- Flow rate from infiltration [facilitiesBMPs](#)

Many of the data inputs for the groundwater mounding model should be available in the vicinity of the infiltration [facilitiesBMPs](#) from the subsurface investigation and infiltration testing performed for design of the [facilitiesBMPs](#). Outside the area of the infiltration

[facilitiesBMPs](#), data may be sparse and may need to be interpolated from regional data. The extent of the modeled area should be such that the edges of the model do not influence the data unless an actual boundary exists, such as Elliott Bay or Lake Washington.

In the absence of local information regarding the groundwater gradient and/or the distribution of hydraulic restrictive layers, mounding analyses should consider the general slope of the site and surrounding sites, as the general slope is likely indicative of the direction of interflow originating from infiltration [facilitiesBMPs](#) and the regional hydraulic gradient.

Aquifer parameters shall be estimated based on knowledge of local soil types and from grain size distribution of the soil samples collected as part of the subsurface investigation and testing program. In general, groundwater flow models tend to be most sensitive to variations in hydraulic conductivity values. Obtain hydraulic conductivity values from field testing of the infiltration receptor soils using standard industry methods.

D-7.2. Analysis Procedures

The initial step for any groundwater modeling analysis is the development of a conceptual model of the groundwater system. The conceptual model should describe the anticipated groundwater flow system including the data requirements described above, direction and rate of groundwater flow, potential model boundaries, and approach for simulating infiltration. The conceptual model provides the basis for constructing the computer model.

Because of the limited available data necessary for model inputs, a parametric analysis shall be performed whereby model inputs, especially aquifer parameters, are varied over a range of values to evaluate the potential impact on the mounding results. The range values shall be based on known variability in the parameter and experience with similar soils in the area by the licensed professional developing the model.

The following ranges of aquifer parameters shall be used in the parametric analysis:

- Hydraulic conductivity: one order of magnitude (e.g., + and - a power of 10) for each receptor soil
- Aquifer thickness: plus or minus 50 percent of the known values
- Specific yield: minimum range of 0.05 to 0.2

If known field conditions warrant, increase the above ranges as necessary.

In general, multiple infiltration scenarios will need to be simulated to evaluate potential mounding below the infiltration [facilitiesBMPs](#). For example, both short-term peak storm events and long-term seasonal precipitation should be evaluated. Additional scenarios may include a series of short-term high precipitation events. Although the actual events that need to be simulated will depend on subsurface conditions, number and types of infiltration [facilitiesBMPs](#), and potential risk factors, as a minimum the following scenario is required:

- A typical wet season (November through April) based on average monthly precipitation followed by a single-event rainfall modeling of the back-loaded long-duration storm for the 100-year recurrence interval, using data from the closest rain gage.

The licensed hydrogeologist performing the mounding analysis should use professional judgment and experience to potentially modify the above scenario or add additional scenarios on a project specific basis, as needed.

As additional soil and groundwater information is collected during construction, testing, and operation of the infiltration [facilityBMP](#), the mounding analysis should be revised and refined to incorporate any new information. If groundwater monitoring indicates results inconsistent with the findings of the mounding analysis, in the opinion of a licensed hydrogeologist, the model should be re-evaluated. The re-evaluation should include simulation of the precipitation events prior to the observed groundwater monitoring data.

D-8. Acceptance Testing

Acceptance testing is required for shallow infiltration BMPs receiving runoff from greater than 5,000 square feet of impervious surface area, including:

- [Infiltration Trenches](#)
- [Drywells](#)
- [Infiltration Bioretention \(with and without underdrains\)](#)
- [Infiltration Basins](#)
- [Infiltration Chambers](#)

It may also be required for infiltration BMPs receiving runoff from a smaller contributing area, if required by the Director. Refer to *Volume 3, Section 3.2*.

All permeable pavement facilities and surfaces are required to perform acceptance testing per Wearing Course Subsection in *Volume 3, Section 5.4.6.5*. Acceptance testing of deep infiltration BMPs shall consist of the infiltration testing for deep infiltration wells described in *Section D-3.5* performed on the completed permanent wells.

D-8.1. Acceptance Criteria Definitions

The purpose of acceptance testing is to confirm the constructed infiltration BMP will perform in accordance with design. Infiltration acceptance criteria include:

1. **Subsurface Condition Observations:** The observed soil and groundwater conditions in the excavated BMP shall exhibit no adverse conditions that will result in:
 - a. The maximum pool drawdown time to be exceeded. Refer to Criterion 4 (Pool Drawdown Time).
 - b. For BMPs intended to provide flow control or onsite stormwater management, a long-term infiltration rate lower than the design rate.
 - c. For BMPs intended to provide water quality treatment, a long-term infiltration rate that is higher than the design rate.

Observation and confirmation of the subsurface conditions shall be conducted by a licensed professional who is familiar/experienced with the field infiltration testing performed during design.

2. **Underlying Soil Infiltration Rate:** For BMPs without underdrains which rely on soil infiltration, the underlying soil infiltration rate achieved after construction of the infiltration BMP and adjusted to determine a long-term rate using correction factors shall be:

- a. High enough to ensure that the maximum pool drawdown time is not exceeded. Refer to Criterion 4 (Pool Drawdown Time).
 - b. Equal to or greater than the design infiltration rate, where flow control or onsite stormwater management is intended.
 - d.c. Less than or equal to the design infiltration rate where water quality treatment is intended.
- 7-3. Bioretention Soil Infiltration Rate: When water is applied to the infiltration BMP, it shall readily infiltrate into the bioretention soil and drain downward. If water ponds and does not drain downward, compaction or otherwise compromised bioretention soil is indicated.
4. Pool Drawdown Time: The surface pool drawdown time for maximum ponding depth shall be less than 24 hours after water has ceased being added to the BMP.

D-8.2. Acceptance Testing Requirements

Acceptance testing is intended to evaluate the post-construction infiltration performance of the BMP; therefore, timing of the testing during construction is important and shall be performed after all construction activities that could impact the targeted infiltration soil are completed. Activities such as compaction and contamination by finer soil particles can reduce the infiltration rate of bioretention and underlying soil. Water that runs off into the BMP that is not clear and contains sediment can reduce the infiltration rate of the BMP.

Infiltration acceptance testing shall be performed up to three steps. Steps 1 and 2 are recommended but optional. Step 3 is required.

Step 1. Observation of the Subsurface Conditions (optional)

During construction of the BMP, it is recommended that a licensed professional who is familiar/experienced with the field infiltration testing performed during design be on site to observe subsurface soil conditions and confirm the underlying soil conditions are consistent with those observed during the design infiltration testing. Refer to Criterion 1 (Subsurface Condition Observations) in Section D-8.1. If the soil conditions are observed to be consistent with design observations and testing, proceed to Step 3. If soil conditions are not consistent with design observations and testing, it is recommended to proceed to Step 2.

Step 2. Infiltration Testing of Differing Soil Conditions (optional)

If the subsurface soil conditions are observed to be different than design observations and testing, and the BMP is designed to rely on infiltration into the underlying soil, infiltration testing is recommended immediately (prior to backfilling the BMP) to determine if the underlying soil meets the design infiltration rate. For BMPs with multiple cells, one test in a representative cell per soil type shall be required. Although it is preferred that acceptance testing be performed in a similar manner as the design infiltration testing, specific procedures can be based on the professional judgement of the licensed professional who performed the testing during design. If the infiltration rate adjusted to a long-term rate using correction factors meets Criterion 2 (Underlying Soil Infiltration Rate)

in Section D-8.1, proceed to Step 3. If the rate adjusted to a long-term rate does not meet Criterion 2 (Underlying Soil Infiltration Rate) in Section D-8.1, retesting or redesign and reconstruction of the BMP shall be required.

Step 3. Acceptance Testing of Backfilled BMP (required)

Testing in this step shall be performed once the BMP has been backfilled, but prior to planting, if applicable:

- For BMPs without underdrains which rely on underlying soil infiltration, the acceptance test shall consist of testing the drawdown time to confirm it is less than or equal to the design ponding criteria. Refer to Criterion 4 (Pool Drawdown Time) in Section D-8.1. For BMPs with multiple cells, one test in a representative cell per soil type shall be required. If the acceptance test fails and the BMP performance is not equal to or better than the performance required by the design (refer to Criteria 3 and 4 [Bioretention Soil Infiltration Rate and Pool Drawdown Time] in Section D-8.1), then retesting or redesign and reconstruction of the BMP shall be required.
- For BMPs with an underdrain, acceptance testing shall verify the surface pool drawdown time for the maximum ponding depth meets the ponding criteria of the design or better. Refer to Criteria 3 and 4 (Bioretention Soil Infiltration Rate and Pool Drawdown Time) in Section D-8.1. If the acceptance test fails and the BMP performance is not equal to or better than the performance required by the design, then retesting or redesign and reconstruction of the BMP shall be required.

A monitoring well or piezometer is needed for Step 3 to observe water levels within the BMP if the BMP does not have an underdrain. For drywells, infiltration trenches and bioretention with an underdrain, the cleanout or observation port may be used to observe water levels if it allows accurate measurement of underlying soil infiltration. Drilling rigs or other mechanical methods are prohibited within the BMP footprint during construction; therefore, wells or piezometers must be placed using hand methods. The base of the well or piezometer shall be placed at the bottom of the BMP directly on top of the infiltrating soil.

D-8.3. Acceptance Testing Plan

An acceptance testing plan shall be prepared and submitted to the City signed and stamped by a licensed professional. The acceptance testing plan shall include, but is not limited to:

- A site plan showing and listing the proposed infiltration BMPs requiring acceptance testing.
- Measured infiltration rates, correction factors and infiltration testing backup data relied on for design.
- Infiltration testing procedures and specifications including an estimate of the amount of water, duration, rate to apply water to the BMP required for conducting the test and potential source of water.
- Specifications for monitoring wells, piezometer, and/or observation ports to be installed for testing and observation.
- Procedure for submittal and acceptance of results.

The acceptance testing plan shall be updated and resubmitted as required based on review by the City.

D-8.4. Acceptance Testing Submittal

The results of the acceptance testing shall be summarized in a memorandum signed and stamped by a licensed professional and submitted for final approval. The memorandum shall include:

- The infiltration rates, correction factors and infiltration testing backup data relied on for the design.
- The measured infiltration rates, correction factors and infiltration testing backup data resulting from the acceptance testing.
- A discussion of subsurface soil condition observations performed in Step 1. State why additional testing of subsurface conditions were or were not required.
- A discussion comparing the results of the Step 2 acceptance infiltration test (if performed) to the results of the design infiltration test. State whether the results of this test indicate the BMP will perform as intended during design.
- A discussion comparing the results of the Step 3 acceptance infiltration test to the results of the design infiltration test. State whether the results of this test indicate the BMP will perform as intended during design.
- If the acceptance testing is performed during the dry season, the licensed professional shall make a statement regarding the expected impact to the measured infiltration rate and how the BMP is expected to perform in the wet season.

APPENDIX E

Additional Design Requirements and Plant Lists

Table of Contents

E-1.	Flow Control Structures	1
	General Requirements	3
	Access	4
	Design Criteria	4
	Multiple Orifice Restrictor	4
	Weir Restrictor	5
	Flow Control Device Sizing	5
	Orifices	5
	Riser Overflow	7
E-2.	Flow Splitters	9
	General Design Criteria	9
	Materials	9
E-3.	Flow Spreaders	13
	General Design Criteria	13
	Option A – Anchored Plate	13
	Option B – Concrete Sump Box	14
	Option C – Notched Curb Spreader	14
	Option D – Through-Curb Ports	14
	Option E – Interrupted Curb	15
E-4.	Level Spreaders	17
	Definition	17
	Purpose	17
	Condition Where Practice Applies	17
	Planning Considerations	17
	Design Criteria	17
	Maintenance	19
E-5.	Pipe Slope Drains	21
	Definition	21
	Purpose	21
	Conditions Where Practice Applies	21
	Planning Considerations	21
	Design Criteria	22
	Maintenance	23
E-6.	Outlet Protection	25
	Definition	25
	Purpose	25
	Condition Where Practice Applies	25

Planning Considerations.....	25
Design Criteria.....	25
Maintenance	26
E-7. Liners	27
Design Criteria for Treatment Liners	28
Design Criteria for Low Permeability Liners	29
Compacted Till Liners	29
Clay Liners.....	30
Concrete Liners.....	30
Design Criteria for Impermeable Liners	31
Geomembrane Liners	31
E-8. Geotextiles	33
E-9. Plant Lists for Bioretention, Biofiltration Swales, Sand Filters, and Wet Ponds.....	35
Bioretention.....	35
Biofiltration Swales	71
Sand Filters	74
Wet Ponds.....	75
E-10. Drywell Sizing Tables	76

Tables

Table E.1. Spreader Length Based on 10-Year, 24-Hour Storm.	19
Table E.2. Lining Types Required by BMP Type.	28
Table E.3. Compacted Till Liners.	30
Table E.4. Part Shade List.	37
Table E.5. Sun List.	40
Table E.6. Native List (Sun to Part Shade includes cultivars).	46
Table E.7. Intersection and View Restriction Palette (under 24 inches in height).	53
Table E.8. Vertical Shrubs and Accent Plants.	56
Table E.9. Groundcovers if Low Profile is Required.	59
Table E.10. Steppable Plants.	61
Table E.11. Conifers (deciduous and evergreen).	62
Table E.12. Medium/Large Broad-leaved Evergreen Trees.	62
Table E.13. Large Deciduous Columnar Trees.....	63
Table E.14. Large Deciduous Trees.	64
Table E.15. Medium/Large Deciduous Trees.	65

Table E.16.	Medium Columnar Deciduous Trees.	66
Table E.17.	Medium Deciduous Trees.	67
Table E.18.	Small Conifer/Broad-leaved Evergreen Trees.	68
Table E.19.	Small Deciduous Trees.	69
Table E.20.	Plants Tolerant of Frequent Saturated Soil Conditions or Standing Water.	71
Table E.21.	Plants Suitable for the Upper Side Slopes of a Biofiltration Swale.	72
Table E.22.	Recommended Plants for Wet Biofiltration Swales.	73
Table E.23.	Recommended Plants for Sand Filters.	74
Table E.24.	Plants for Wet Pond Peripheries.	75
Table E.25.	Drywell Sizing Downstream of Bioretention Sized for Water Quality Treatment Standard or Permeable Pavement Facility.	76
Table E.26.	Drywell Sizing Downstream of Bioretention Sized for the Pre-Developed Pasture Standard.	77
Table E.27.	Drywell Sizing Downstream of Bioretention Sized for the On-Site Stormwater Management Standard.	77
Table E.28.	Drywell Sizing Without Bioretention or Permeable Pavement Facility Upstream.	78

Figures

Figure E.1.	Simple Orifice.	1
Figure E.2.	V-Notch, Sharp-Crested Weir.	2
Figure E.3.	Rectangular Notch, Sharp-Crested Weir.	3
Figure E.4.	Riser Inflow Curves.	6
Figure E.5.	Flow Splitter Example A.	10
Figure E.6.	Flow Splitter Example B.	11
Figure E.7.	Level Spreader Prior to Backfill and Downstream Stabilization.	18
Figure E.8.	Pipe Slope Drain Details.	21

Appendix E includes additional design requirements for the following:

- Flow Control Structures (*Section E-1*)
- Flow Splitters (*Section E-2*)
- Flow Spreaders (*Section E-3*)
- Level Spreaders (*Section E-4*)
- Pipe Slope Drains (*Section E-5*)
- Outlet Protection (*Section E-6*)
- Facility Liners (*Section E-7*)
- Geotextiles (*Section E-8*)
- Plant Lists for Bioretention, Biofiltration Swales, Sand Filters, and Wet Ponds (*Section E-9*)
- Drywell Sizing Tables (*Section E-10*)

E-1. Flow Control Structures

Flow control structures are catch basins or maintenance holes with a restrictor device for controlling outflow from a [facility BMP](#) to meet the desired performance. ~~Riser type restrictor devices (“tees”) also provide some incidental oil/water separation to temporarily detain oil or other floatable pollutants in runoff due to accidental spill or illegal dumping.~~

The ~~flow control restrictor~~ device usually consists of two or more orifices and/or a weir section sized to meet performance requirements. Standard ~~flow control device structure~~ details are shown in Figures E.1, ~~and E.2,~~ ~~and E.3~~ and in [City of Seattle Standard Plan 272a](#).

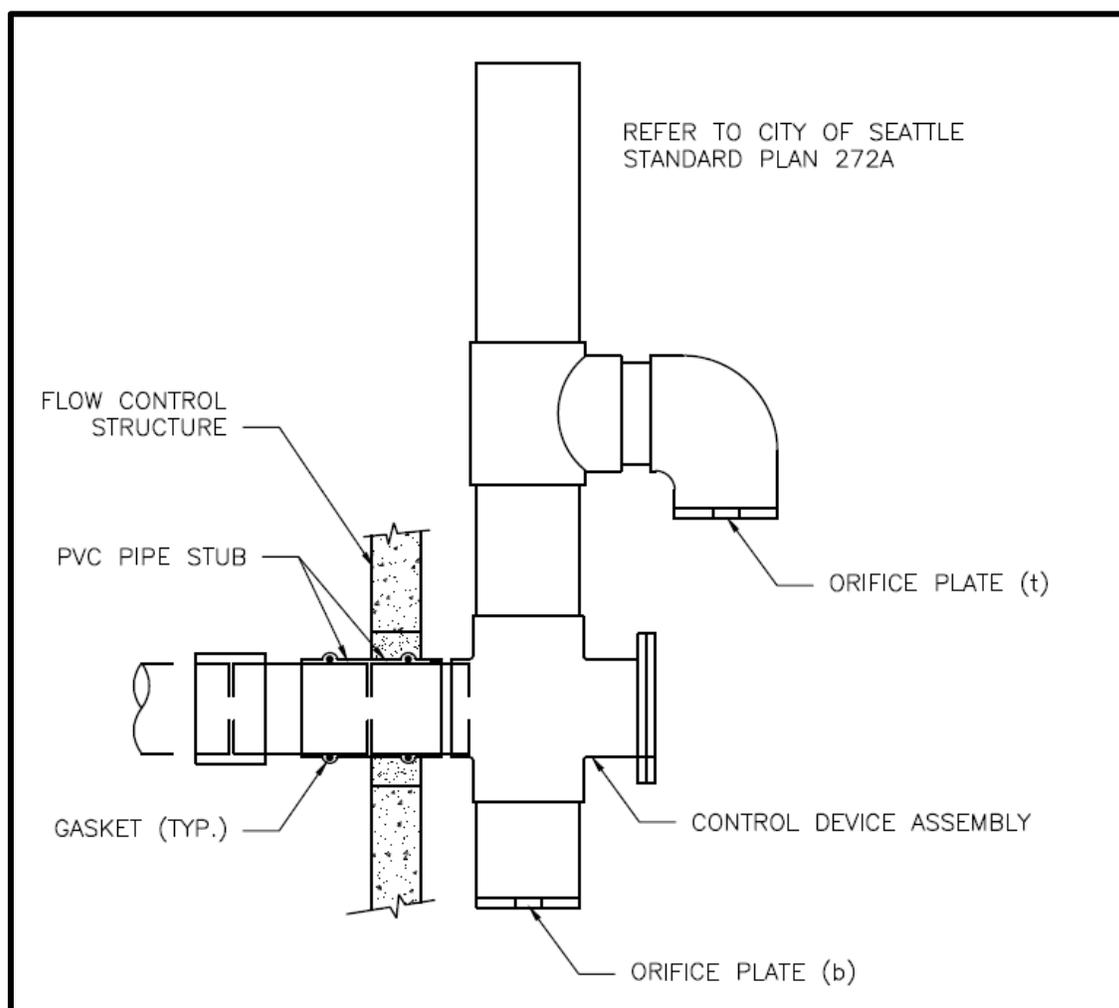


Figure E.1. Simple Orifice.

~~For design requirements related to conveyance and drainage refer to Volume 3, Section 4.3.~~

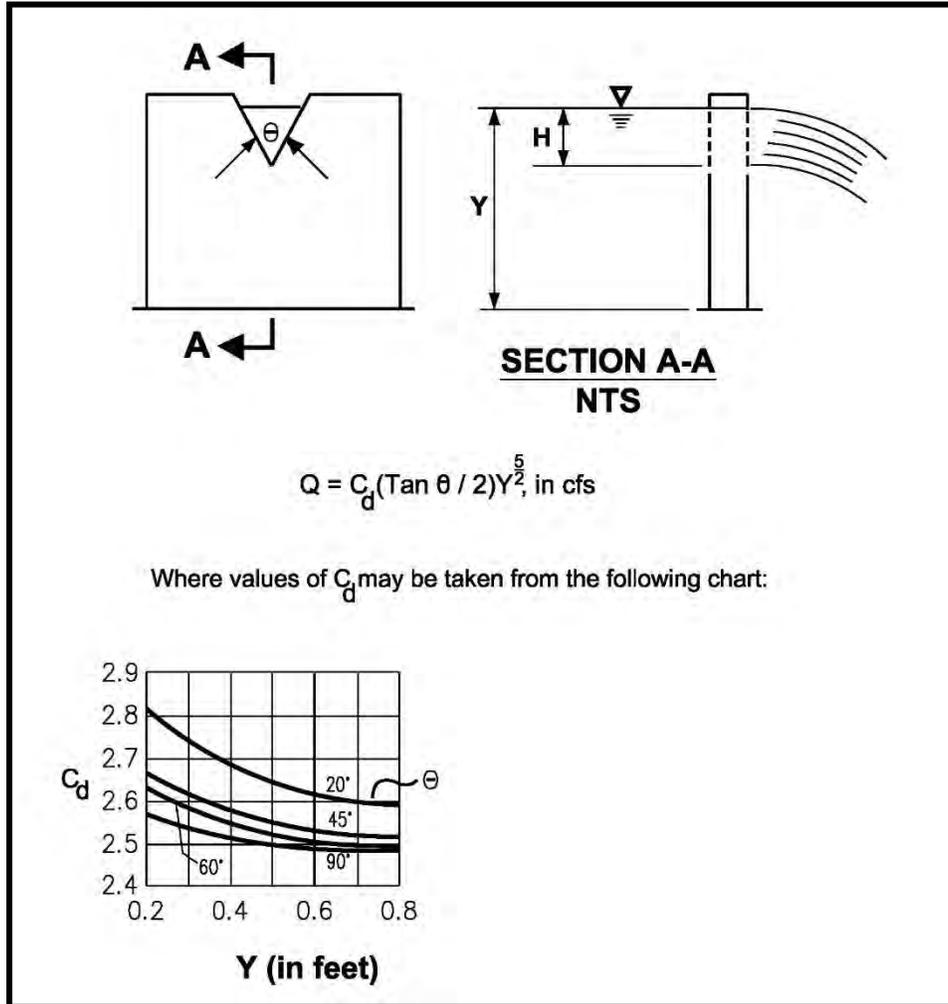


Figure E.2. V-Notch, Sharp-Crested Weir.

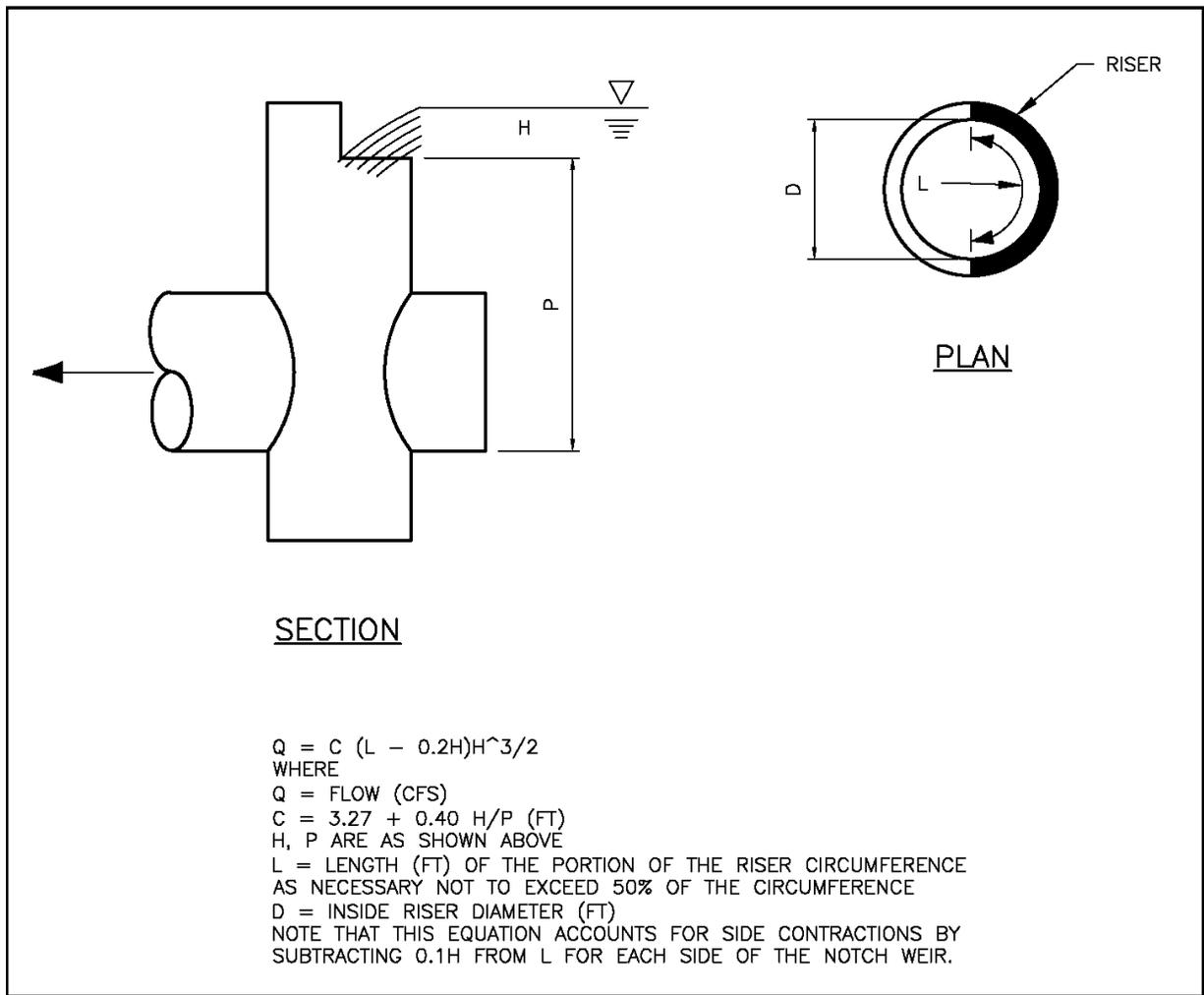


Figure E.3. Rectangular Notch, Sharp-Crested Weir.

General Requirements

Flow control structures shall comply with the specifications outlined in the City of Seattle’s Standard Plans No. 270 and 272A. Additional general requirements are presented below.

Plans submitted for a permit shall include:

- ~~F~~low control structure rim elevation;
- ~~S~~torage pipe invert elevation;
- ~~O~~utlet pipe invert elevation;
- ~~E~~elevation at the top of the storage pipe;
- ~~E~~elevation at the top of the overflow pipe;
- ~~O~~rifice diameter(s); ~~and~~
- ~~O~~rifice elevation(s);

For ponding ~~facilities~~BMPs, backwater effects shall be included in designing the height of the downstream conveyance system. High tailwater elevations may affect performance of the restrictor system and reduce live storage volumes.

For regionally sized detention BMPs, non-standard orifice orientation and orifice/weir and gate combinations for flow throttling may be used to meet both stormwater and operational requirements. These general requirements are not meant to be restrictive when a flow control need beyond what is discussed here can be demonstrated.

Access

The following access requirements apply to control structures:

- Access shall be provided to the flow control structure from the ground surface with a three-bolt locking maintenance hole ring and cover (refer to SDCI Director's Rule 2011-4, Requirements for Design & Construction of Side Sewers). Rim elevations shall match proposed finish grade. A rectangular cover, or a cover that allows water to enter through the top of the flow control structure, shall not be used. The ring and cover shall be set so the flow control device or the ladder is visible at the edge of the access opening.
- The inside diameter of the flow control structure shall be at least 4 feet to allow maintenance and repair access, and to accommodate stormwater overflow.
- Maintenance holes and catch basins shall meet the OSHA and WISHA confined space requirements, which include, but are not limited to, clearly marking entrances to confined space areas. This may be accomplished by hanging a removable sign in the access riser under the access lid.
- The flow control device shall ~~be PVC~~, not ~~be~~ Corrugated Metal Pipe (CMP). The mounting straps and the outlet adapter shall be installed in a manner that will make the flow control device easily removable for maintenance, repair, or replacement. The flow control device shall be designed and located under the maintenance hole ring and cover for inspection from the surface. The outlet pipe adapter may be a plastic, bell-end pipe, or a plastic coupling with rubber gaskets. The outside of the pipe or coupling shall be sanded, epoxy coated, and sand impacted to bond with the flow control structure.

Design Criteria

Multiple Orifice Restrictor

In most cases, control structures only need two orifices: one at the bottom and one near the top of the riser, oriented horizontally. ~~although~~ Additional orifices may best utilize detention storage volume in a few cases. ~~Several orifices may be located at the same elevation if necessary to meet performance requirements.~~

Design requirements for multiple orifice flow restrictors are presented below.

- The minimum allowable orifice diameter is 0.5 inches for underground tanks or vaults and 0.25 inches for aboveground cisterns. In some instances, a 0.5-inch bottom orifice

will be too large to meet target release rates, even with minimal head. In these cases, the live storage depth need not be reduced to less than 3 feet in an attempt to meet the performance standards. Also, underground weirs or orifices shall not be reduced to less than 0.5-inch length or diameter in an attempt to meet the performance standards~~under such circumstances, flow throttling devices may be a feasible option. These devices will throttle flows while maintaining a plug-resistant opening.~~

- ~~• Orifices may be constructed on a tee section as shown in City of Seattle Standard Plan No. 270 or on a baffle.~~
- In some cases, performance requirements may require the top orifice/elbow to be located too high on the riser to be physically constructed (e.g., a 13-inch diameter orifice positioned 0.5 feet from the top of the riser). In these cases, a notch weir in the riser pipe may be used to meet performance requirements.

Weir Restrictor

Design requirements for ~~weir~~multiple orifice flow restrictors are presented below.

- A sharp crested overflow weir shall be used ~~Weirs may be used as flow restrictors. However, they shall be designed~~ to provide for primary overflow of the detention BMP and should be analyzed for the developed 100-year peak flow discharge ~~ing to the detention facility~~ (Figure E.4E-3).
- A notch weir may be used to restrict flows and replace a top orifice.

Flow Control Device Sizing

Orifices

Flow-through orifice plates in the standard tee section or down-turned elbow may be approximated by the general equation:

$$Q = CA\sqrt{2gh}$$

- where
- Q = flow (cfs)
 - C = coefficient of discharge (0.62 for plate orifice)
 - A = area of orifice (ft²)
 - h = hydraulic head (ft)
 - g = gravity (32.2 ft/sec²)

Figure E.4E-3 illustrates this simplified application of the orifice equation.

The diameter of the orifice is calculated from the flow. The orifice equation is often useful when expressed as the orifice diameter in inches.

$$d = \sqrt{\frac{36.88Q}{\sqrt{h}}}$$

where d = orifice diameter (inches)
 Q = flow (cfs)
 h = hydraulic head (ft)

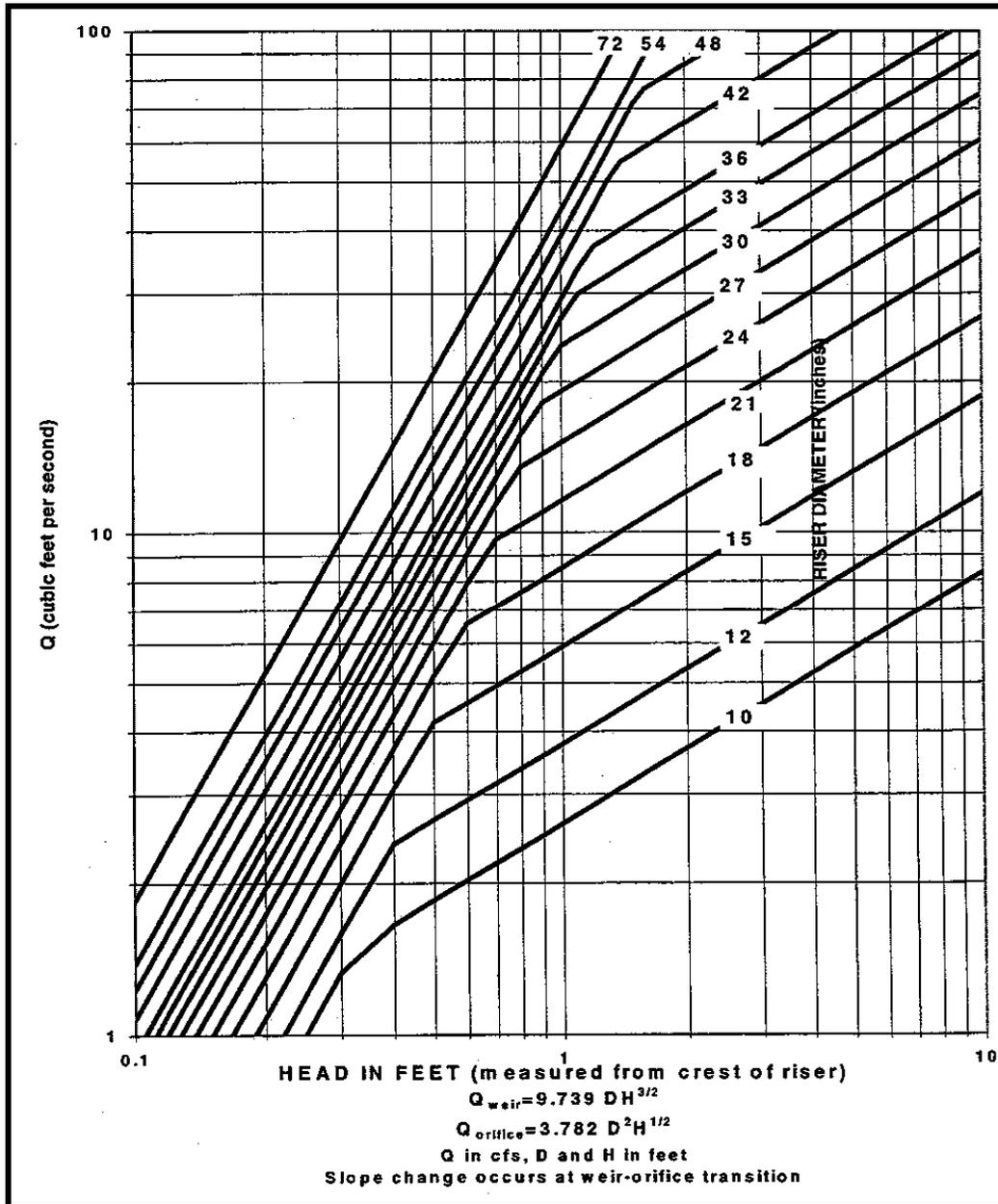


Figure E.4E-3. Riser Inflow Curves.

Riser Overflow

The combined orifice and riser (or weir) overflow may be used to meet performance requirements; however, the design shall still provide for ~~primary~~ overflow of the developed 100-year peak flow assuming all orifices are plugged. The nomograph in Figure ~~E.4E-3~~ can be used to determine the head (in feet) above a riser of given diameter and for a given flow ~~(usually the 100-year peak flow for developed conditions)~~. For design requirements on overflows, refer to *Volume 3, Section 4.3.4*.

E-2. Flow Splitters

Flow splitters are typically structures with baffles, weirs, or orifice controls. Two examples of maintenance hole flow splitters are shown in Figure [E.5E-4](#) and Figure [E.6E-5](#). Other equivalent designs for splitting flows may also be acceptable.

General Design Criteria

The top of the weir shall be located at the water surface for the design flow. Flows modeled using a continuous simulation model shall be at a 15-minute time step or less.

The maximum head shall be minimized for flow in excess of the water quality design flow. Specifically, flow to the [water quality treatment facility BMP](#) at the 100-year water surface shall not increase the design water quality flow by more than 10 percent.

As an alternative to using a solid top plate in Figure [E.6E-5](#), a full tee section may be used with the top of the tee at the 100-year water surface. This alternative would route emergency overflows (if the overflow pipe were plugged) through the [water quality treatment facility BMP](#) rather than generate back up from the maintenance hole.

Backwater effects shall be included in the design of standpipe height in the maintenance hole.

Materials

- The splitter baffle may be installed in a maintenance hole or vault.
- The baffle wall shall be made of reinforced concrete or another suitable material resistant to corrosion, and have a minimum 4-inch thickness.
- All metal parts shall be corrosion resistant. Examples of required materials include aluminum, stainless steel, and plastic. Zinc and galvanized materials are prohibited because of aquatic toxicity. Painted metal parts shall not be used because of poor longevity.

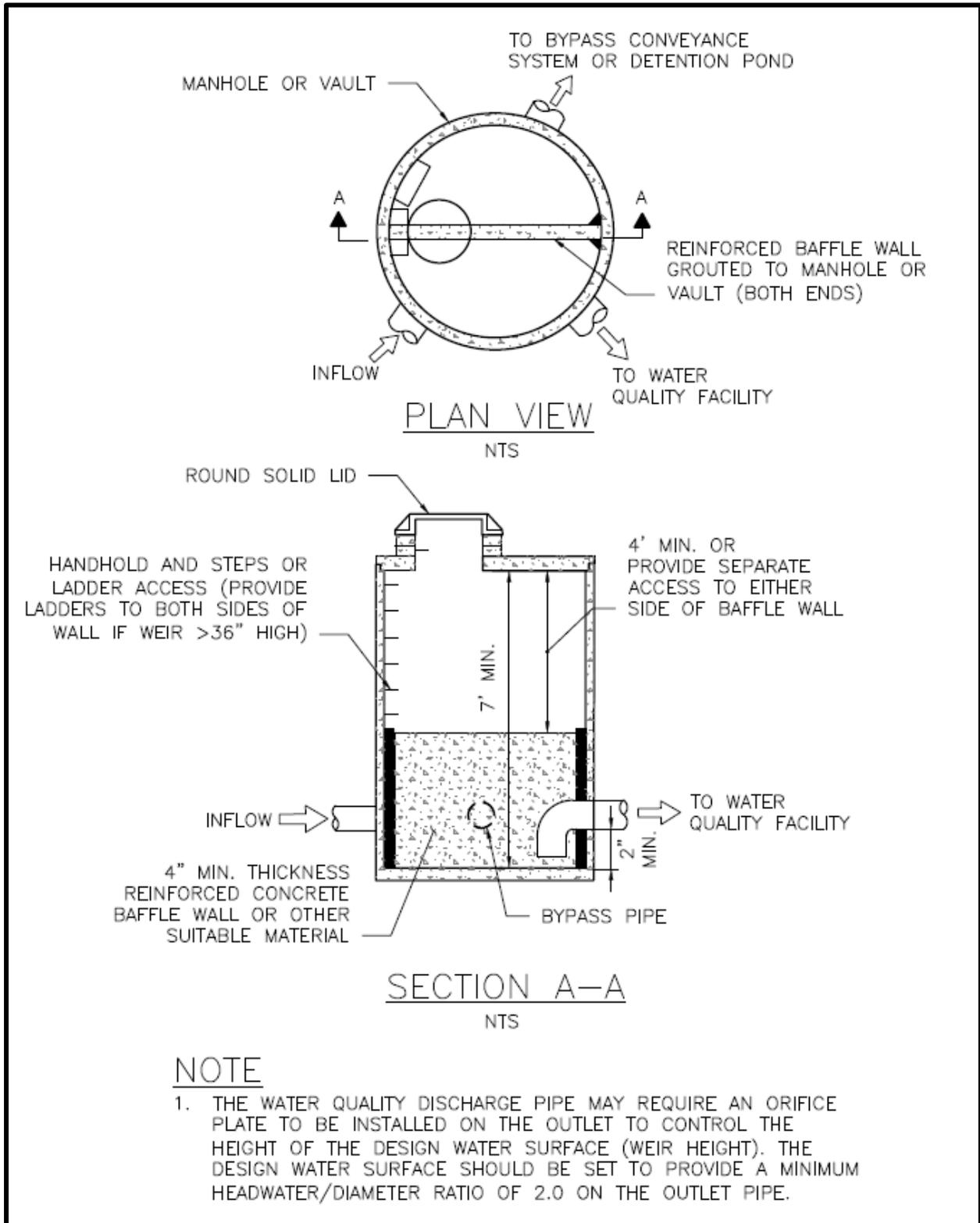


Figure E.5E-4. Flow Splitter Example A.

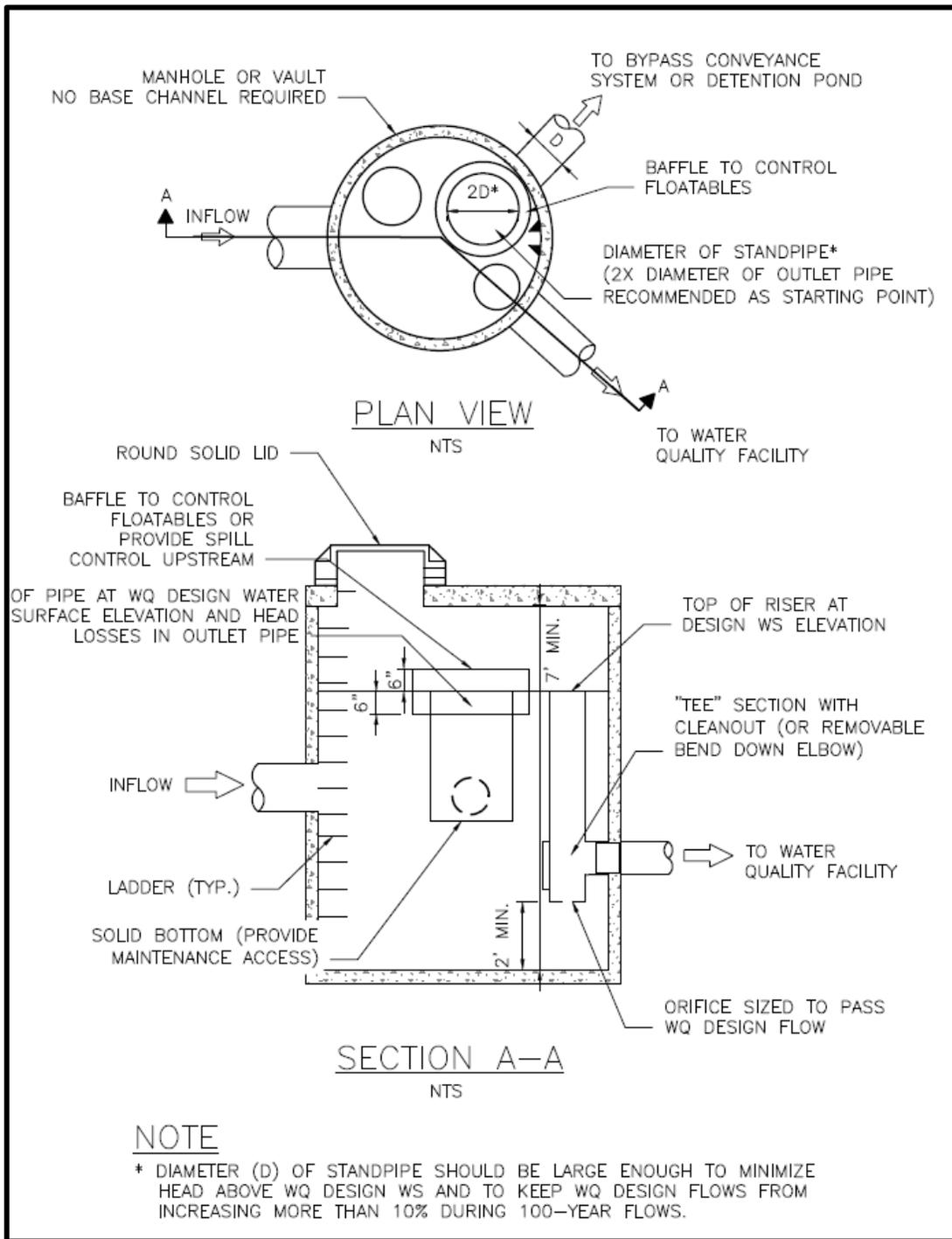


Figure E.6E-5. Flow Splitter Example B.

E-3. Flow Spreaders

Flow spreaders uniformly spread flows across the inflow portion of non-infiltrating BMPs (e.g., sand filter, biofiltration swale, or filter strip). There are five flow spreader options presented in this section:

- Option A – Anchored plate
- Option B – Concrete sump box
- Option C – Notched curb spreader
- Option D – Through-curb ports
- Option E – Interrupted curb

Options A through C can be used for spreading flows that are concentrated. Any one of these options can be used when spreading is required by the [facility-BMP](#) design criteria. Options A through C can also be used for unconcentrated flows, and in some cases shall be used, such as to correct for moderate grade changes along a filter strip.

Options D and E can only be used for flows that are already unconcentrated and enter a filter strip or continuous inflow biofiltration swale. Other flow spreader options are possible with prior approval by the Director.

General Design Criteria

- Where flow enters the flow spreader through a pipe, it is recommended that the pipe be submerged to the extent practical to dissipate energy as much as possible.
- For higher inflows (greater than 5 cfs for the 100-year storm), a Type 1 catch basin should be positioned in the spreader and the inflow pipe should enter the catch basin with flows exiting through the top grate [of the catch basin](#). The top of the grate should be lower than the [flow level](#) spreader plate, or if a notched spreader is used, lower than the bottom of the v-notches.

Option A – Anchored Plate

- An anchored plate flow spreader shall be preceded by a sump having a minimum depth of 8 inches and minimum width of 24 inches. If not otherwise stabilized, the sump area shall be lined to reduce erosion and to provide energy dissipation.
- The top surface of the flow spreader plate shall be level, projecting a minimum of 2 inches above the ground surface of the [water quality treatment facilityBMP](#), or v-notched with notches 6 to 10 inches on center and 1 to 6 inches deep (use shallower notches with closer spacing). Alternative designs may also be considered.
- A flow spreader plate shall extend horizontally beyond the bottom width of the [BMPfacility](#) to prevent water from eroding the side slope. The horizontal extent shall be such that the bank is protected for all flows up to the 100-year flow, or the maximum flow that will enter the [water quality treatment BMPfacility](#).
- Flow spreader plates shall be securely fixed in place.

- Flow spreader plates may be made of either wood, metal, fiberglass reinforced plastic, or other durable material. If wood, pressure treated 4- by 10-inch lumber or landscape timbers are acceptable.
- Anchor posts shall be 4-inch square concrete, tubular stainless steel, or other material resistant to decay. Refer to Volume V of the Stormwater Management Manual for Western Washington (SWMMWW) for an example of an anchored plate flow spreader.

Option B – Concrete Sump Box

- The wall of the downstream side of a rectangular concrete sump box shall be level and shall extend a minimum of 2 inches above the [inlet to the treatment BMP bed](#). This serves as a weir to spread the flows uniformly across the [BMP inlet bed](#).
- The downstream wall of a sump box shall have “wing walls” at both ends. Side walls and returns shall be slightly higher than the weir so that erosion of the side slope is minimized.
- Concrete for a sump box can be either cast-in-place or precast, but the bottom of the sump shall be reinforced with wire mesh for cast-in-place sumps [boxes](#).
- Sump boxes shall be placed over bases that consist of 4 inches of crushed rock, 5/8-inch minus to help assure the sump [box](#) remains level. Refer to Volume V of the SWMMWW for an example of a concrete sump box flow spreader.

Option C – Notched Curb Spreader

Notched curb spreader sections shall be ~~level and~~ made of extruded concrete laid side-by-side and level. Typically, five “teeth” per 4-foot section provides [good spacing](#). The space between adjacent teeth forms a v-notch.

Option D – Through-Curb Ports

Unconcentrated flows from paved areas entering filter strips or continuous inflow biofiltration swales can use [through-curb ports \(Option D\)](#) or interrupted curbs (Option E) to allow flows to enter the [BMP strip or swale](#). [Through-curb ports](#) use fabricated openings that [allow concrete curbing to be poured or extruded while still](#) providing [an opening through the curb to admit water to the BMP facility](#).

Openings in the curb shall be at regular intervals ~~and but~~ at least every 6 feet ~~(minimum)~~. The width of each ~~curb port~~ opening shall be a minimum of ~~11-8~~ inches [for non-right-of-way applications and a minimum of 10 inches in the right-of-way](#). Approximately 15 percent or more of the curb section length should be in open ports, and no port should discharge more than about 10 percent of the flow. Refer to Volume V of the SWMMWW for an example of a through-curb port flow spreader.

Option E – Interrupted Curb

Interrupted curbs are sections of curb placed to have gaps spaced at regular intervals along the total width (or length, depending on the [BMPfacility](#)) of the [treatmentfacility](#) area. At a minimum, gaps shall be every 6 feet to allow distribution of flows into the treatment [BMPfacility](#) before they become too concentrated. The opening shall be a minimum of [8 inches for non-right-of-way applications and a minimum of 10 inches in the right-of-way](#) ~~11 inches~~. As a general rule, no opening should discharge more than 10 percent of the overall flow entering the [BMPfacility](#).

E-4. Level Spreaders

Definition

A level spreader is constructed at zero percent grade and can be used to distribute concentrated runoff to sheet flow. Level spreaders can be used as either a temporary or a permanent BMP.

Purpose

To convert concentrated runoff to a thin layer of sheet flow to promote release onto a stable receiving area. For example, an existing vegetated area or a vegetated strip.

Condition Where Practice Applies

None identified for this BMP.

Planning Considerations

When properly constructed, the level spreader will significantly reduce the velocity of concentrated stormwater and spread it uniformly over a stabilized or undisturbed area.

Particular care shall be taken to ensure that the lower downslope side (or the lip) of the structure is level and on grade. If there are any depressions in the lip, flow will tend to concentrate at these points and erosion will occur, resulting in failure of the outlet. This problem may be avoided by using a grade board or a gravel lip over which the runoff shall flow when exiting the spreader. Regular maintenance is essential for this practice.

Level spreaders shall be constructed on undisturbed areas that are stabilized by existing vegetation, or areas that have been properly stabilized in accordance with the requirements of the Construction Stormwater and Erosion Control section of this manual (*Volume 2*), and where concentrated flows will be dissipated at zero percent grade (Figure [E.7E-6](#)).

Design Criteria

- The grade of the pipe and/or ditch for the last 20 feet before entering the level spreader shall be less than or equal to 1 percent, if feasible. If the grade is steeper, provide a flow dissipation device. The grade of the level spreader shall be zero percent to ensure uniform spreading of stormwater runoff.
- An 8-inch high gravel berm placed across the level lip shall consist of washed crushed rock, 2- to 4-inch or 0.75-inch to 1.5-inch size.
- The temporary level spreader length ~~shall~~ will be calculated by one of the following methods determined by estimating

- Single Event Hydrograph Method: The peak volumetric flow rate expected from the 10-year, 24-hour design storm (Q10) with a 10-minute time step, and selecting the appropriate length from Table E-1.
- Continuous Simulation Method:
 - The 10-year peak flow rate as determined ~~Alternatively, use the 10 percent annual probability flow (10-year recurrence interval) using a 5-minute time step, indicated by an approved continuous runoff model with a 15-minute time step or less.~~
 - ~~Use multiple spreaders for higher flows.~~ If the level spreader will be permanent, level spreader length will be determined by estimating the flow expected from the 25-year, 24-hour design storm (Q25). Alternatively, an approved continuous runoff model should be used to model the 25-year recurrence interval.
- Use multiple spreaders for higher flows.
 - The depth of the spreader as measured from the lip should be at least 8 inches and should be uniform across the entire length.
 - The area below the level spreader outlet shall be stabilized and have a slope of less than 11 percent.



Figure ~~E.7~~E.6. Level Spreader Prior to Backfill and Downstream Stabilization.

Table E.1. Spreader Length Based on 10-Year, 24-Hour Storm.

Q₁₀ in cfs	Minimum Length (in feet)
0 to 0.1	15
0.1 to 0.2	25
0.2 to 0.3	35
0.3 to 0.4	45
0.4 to 0.5	55

cfs = cubic feet per second

Q₁₀ = 10-year, 24-hour design storm

Maintenance

The spreader should be inspected regularly to ensure that it is functioning correctly. Do not place any material on [the level spreader](#) and prevent traffic from crossing [over](#) the [level spreader structure](#). If the [level](#) spreader is damaged, it [shall](#) ~~must~~ be immediately repaired.

E-5. Pipe Slope Drains

Definition

A slope drain consists of a pipe extending from the top to the bottom of a cut or fill slope and discharging into a stabilized watercourse or a sediment trapping device or onto a stabilization area. It can also be used for water discharging from a flow control or treatment [facilityBMP](#), or to safely convey water past the toe of the slope. Pipe slope drains can be used as ~~either~~ a temporary ~~or a permanent~~ BMP.

Purpose

To ~~convey~~ carry concentrated runoff down steep slopes without causing gullies, channel erosion, or saturation of landslide-prone soils (Figure [E.8E-7](#)).

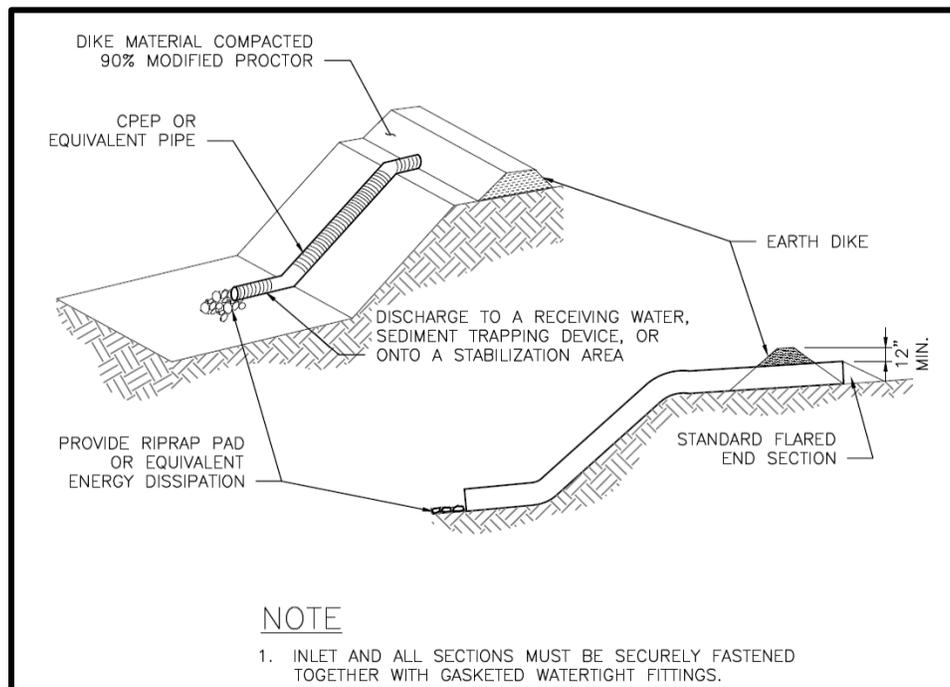


Figure [E.8E-7](#). Pipe Slope Drain Details.

Conditions Where Practice Applies

Pipe slope drains shall be used when conveying concentrated runoff down a steep slope has the potential to cause erosion.

Planning Considerations

There is often a lag between the time a cut or fill slope is completed and the time a permanent drainage system can be installed. During this period, the slope is usually not

stabilized and is particularly vulnerable to erosion. Temporary slope drains can provide valuable protection of exposed slopes until permanent drainage structures can be installed. The entrance section shall be securely entrenched, all connections shall be watertight, and the conduit shall be staked securely.

Additional protection requirements for steep slopes are included in the Environmentally Critical Area Ordinance (SMC, Section 25.09.180).

Design Criteria

- Permanent slope drains shall be designed by a licensed engineer and may have additional criteria for flow and water quality treatment requirements. Variations or alterations to the minimum BMP requirements outlined below require a licensed engineer's approval.
- Size the pipe to convey the projected flow. The capacity for temporary drains shall be sufficient to handle the flows calculated by one of the following methods:
 - Single Event Hydrograph Method: The peak volumetric flow rate calculated using a 10-year, 24-hour design storm peak flow with a 10-minute time step.
 - Continuous Simulation Method: Alternatively, use the 10 percent annual probability flow (10-year peak flow rate recurrence interval) using a 155-minute time step or less, indicated by an approved continuous runoff model.

The hydrologic analysis shall use the existing land cover condition for predicting flow rates from tributary areas outside the project limits. For tributary areas on the project site, the analysis shall use the temporary or permanent project land cover condition, whichever will produce the highest flow rates. If using WWHM, bare soil areas should be modeled as "landscaped area." Refer to *Appendix F* for additional information on stormwater modeling.

- Re-establish cover immediately on areas disturbed by installation.
- Ensure that the entrance area is stable and large enough to direct flow into the pipe.
- The entrance shall consist of a standard flared end section for culverts 12 inches and larger with a minimum 6-inch metal toe plate to prevent runoff from undercutting the pipe inlet. The slope of the entrance shall be at least 3 percent ~~(Figure E-8)~~.
- Pipe slope drain size should be no greater than 6 inches. Intercept flow frequently by using multiple pipe slope drains. Multiple pipes should be no closer than 10 feet.
- The soil around and under the pipe and entrance section shall be thoroughly compacted to prevent undercutting.
- The flared inlet section shall be securely connected to the slope drain and have watertight connecting bands.
- Slope drain sections shall be securely fastened together and have gasketed watertight fittings, and be securely anchored into the soil.
- Thrust blocks should be installed any time 90 degree bends are utilized. Depending on size of pipe and flow, these can be constructed with sand bags, straw bales staked in place, "t" posts and wire, or ecology blocks.

- Pipe needs to be secured along its full length to prevent movement. This can be done with steel “t” posts and wire. Install a post ~~is installed~~ on each side of the pipe and wire the pipe ~~is wired~~ to them. This should be done every 10 to 20 feet of pipe length, depending on the size of the pipe and quantity of water diverted.
- Earth dikes shall be used to direct runoff into a pipe slope drain. The height of the dike shall be at least 12 inches higher at all points than the top of the inlet pipe.
- The area below the outlet shall be stabilized with a riprap apron (refer to *Section E-6* for outlet protection).
- If the pipe slope drain is conveying sediment-laden water, direct all flows into the sediment trapping ~~facility~~BMP.
- Refer to the City of Seattle Standard Specifications for all material specifications (<http://www.seattle.gov/util/Engineering/StandardSpecsPlans/index.htm>).

Maintenance

- Check inlet and outlet points regularly, especially after heavy storms. The inlet should be free of undercutting, and no water should be going around the point of entry. If there are problems, reinforce the headwall with compacted earth or sand bags. The outlet point should be free of erosion and installed with appropriate outlet protection.
- For permanent installations, inspect the pipe periodically for vandalism and physical distress such as slides and wind-throw. Clean the pipe and outlet structure at the completion of construction.
- Normally the pipe slope is so steep that clogging is not a problem with smooth wall pipe; however, debris may become lodged in the pipe or at the inlet.

E-6. Outlet Protection

Definition

Energy dissipating materials or devices placed at concentrated flow outlets, such as the outlets of pipes or paved channel sections. Outlet protection can be used as either a temporary or a permanent BMP.

Purpose

To prevent scour at stormwater outlets, and to minimize the potential for downstream erosion by reducing the velocity of concentrated stormwater flows.

Condition Where Practice Applies

Outlet protection is required wherever concentrated runoff could cause scour or erosion.

Planning Considerations

None identified for this BMP.

Design Criteria

- Permanent BMPs shall be designed by a licensed engineer and may have additional criteria for flow and water quality treatment requirements. Variations and/or alterations to the minimum BMP requirements require a licensed engineer's approval.
- Protect At culvert outlets, protect from erosion by rock lining the downstream and extending up the channel sides above the maximum tailwater~~tail water~~ elevation.
- Standard wing walls, tapered outlets, and paved channels should also be considered when appropriate for permanent culvert outlet protection.
- ~~Organic or synthetic erosion blankets, with or without vegetation, are usually more effective than rock, less expensive, and easier to install. However, materials may be chosen using manufacturer product specifications.~~
- With low flows, grass-lined channels (refer to Ecology BMP C201) vegetation (including seed) can be an effective alternative for lining material.
- Blankets (refer to BMP E1.15: Mulching, Matting, and Compost Blankets in Volume 2) or riprap channel lining (refer to Ecology BMP C202) Riprap outlet protection may also appropriate in some situations provide suitable options for lining materials.
- The following guidelines shall be used for outlet protection with riprap:
 - For outlets at the base of steep slope pipes (pipe slopes greater than 10 percent), use an engineered energy dissipater

- ~~shall be used with~~ filter fabric or erosion control blankets should be used under riprap to prevent scour and channel erosion. [Refer to BMP E1.15: Mulching, Matting, and Compost Blankets in Volume 2.](#)

Maintenance

Check for evidence of erosion, scour, or channeling. Rock may need to be added if sediment builds up in the pore spaces of the outlet pad. Vegetation, erosion control blankets, or rock pads may need replacement. Partial blocking of an outlet with a protective measure is not allowed unless designed by a licensed engineer.

E-7. Facility Liners

Liners discussed in this section are intended to reduce the likelihood that pollutants in stormwater will reach groundwater when ~~runoff~~ treatment ~~facilities~~ ~~BMPs~~ are constructed ~~or protect surrounding areas from seepage when necessary~~. In addition to groundwater protection considerations, some facility types require permanent standing water for proper functioning. An example is the first cell of a wet pond.

There are ~~threetwo~~ types of ~~facility~~ liners:

1. **Treatment liners** amend the soil with materials that treat stormwater before it reaches more freely draining soils. They have slow rates of infiltration, generally less than 2.4 inches per hour, but not as slow as low permeability liners. Treatment liners may use in-place native soils or imported soils, provided that the design criteria outlined below are met.
2. **Low permeability liners** reduce infiltration to a very slow rate, generally less than 0.02 inches per hour. These types of liners are often used for industrial or commercial sites with a potential for high pollutant loading in the stormwater runoff. Low permeability liners may be constructed from compacted till, clay, ~~geomembrane~~, or concrete. Till liners are preferred because of their general resilience and ease of maintenance.
3. **Impermeable liners prevent the transmission of water between the BMP and native soils.** Impermeable liners shall be used when BMPs are constructed in areas where infiltration is not permitted or is discouraged (e.g., landslide-prone areas or in contaminated soils). Impermeable liners shall be constructed from geomembrane.

~~Liners may also be required in areas where infiltration is not permitted (e.g., landslide-prone areas).~~

Table E-2 shows the type of liner required for use with various ~~runoff~~ treatment ~~facilities~~ ~~BMPs~~ (detention, non-infiltrating, and pretreatment BMPs). Other liner configurations may be used with prior approval from the Director.

Liners shall be placed over the bottom and/or sides of the ~~facility~~ ~~BMP~~ as indicated in Table E-2.

When placing a liner for water quality treatment, A areas above the treatment volume that are required to pass flows greater than the water quality treatment flow (or volume) need not be lined. However, the lining shall be extended to the top of the interior side slope and be anchored if it cannot be permanently secured by other means.

Table E.2. Lining Types Required by BMP Type.

Facility/BMP	Area to be Lined	Type of Liner Required
Presettling basin	Bottom and sides	Low permeability liner, or treatment liner, <u>or impermeable liner</u>
Wet pond	First cell: bottom and sides to WQ design water surface	Low permeability liner, or treatment liner, <u>or impermeable liner</u>
	Second cell: bottom and sides to WQ design water surface	Treatment liner
Combined detention/non-infiltrating BMP	First cell: bottom and sides to WQ design water surface	Low permeability liner, or treatment liner, <u>or impermeable liner</u>
	Second cell: bottom and sides to WQ design water surface	Treatment liner
Stormwater wetland	Bottom and sides, both cells	Low permeability liner <u>or impermeable liner</u>
Sand filter basin	Required if over a critical aquifer recharge area, otherwise not required. Refer to <i>Volume 3, Section 5.8.5</i> .	Low permeability <u>line</u> , or treatment liner, <u>or impermeable liner</u>
Sand filter vault	Not applicable	No liner needed
Linear sand filter	Not applicable if in vault	No liner needed
	Bottom and sides of presettling cell if not in vault	Low permeability <u>liner</u> , or treatment liner, <u>or impermeable liner</u>
Media filter (in vault)	Not applicable	No liner needed
Wet vault	Not applicable	No liner needed
Non-infiltrating bioretention	Bottom and sides	Low permeability liner <u>or impermeable liner</u>
<u>Open bottom or open sided detention products (e.g., arch pipe, modular plastic tanks, etc.)</u>	<u>Bottom and sides</u>	<u>Low permeability liner or impermeable liner</u>

Notes

- ^a The Director may approve native soils as a low permeability liner based on measured infiltration rates and the recommendation of a licensed professional.
- ^b The Director may also require impermeable~~low permeability~~ liner based on infiltration setbacks or site constraints.

Design Criteria for Treatment Liners

This section presents the design criteria for treatment liners.

- A 2-foot-thick layer of soil with a minimum organic content of 1 percent AND a minimum cation exchange capacity (CEC) of 5 milliequivalents/100 grams can be used as a treatment layer beneath a water quality or detention facility/BMP.
- To demonstrate that in-place soils meet the above criteria, one sample per 1,000 square feet of facility/BMP area shall be tested. Each sample shall be a composite of subsamples collected throughout the depth of the treatment layer (usually 2 to 6 feet below the expected BMP invert).

- Typically, side wall seepage is not a concern if the seepage flows through the same stratum as the bottom of the treatment BMP. However, if the treatment soil is an engineered soil or has very low permeability, the potential to bypass the treatment soil through the side walls may be significant. In those cases, the treatment BMP side walls should be lined with at least 18 inches of treatment soil, as described above, to prevent untreated seepage. This lesser soil thickness is based on unsaturated flow as a result of alternating wet-dry periods. [Approved continuous simulation models must be run using the “No infiltration” option through the sidewalls if one sidewall is impervious unless the model can limit infiltration only to the unlined portion of the perimeter.](#)
- Organic content shall be measured on a dry weight basis using ASTM D2974.
- Cation exchange capacity (CEC) shall be tested using EPA laboratory method 9081.
- Certification by a soils testing laboratory that imported soil meets the organic content and CEC criteria above shall be provided to the City.
- ~~Animal manures used in treatment soil layers shall be sterilized because of potential for bacterial contamination of the groundwater.~~
- [The liner shall extend vertically to the water quality design water surface elevation plus 6 inches at the minimum.](#)

Design Criteria for Low Permeability Liners

This section presents the design criteria for each of the following four low permeability liner options: compacted till liners, clay liners, [geomembrane liners](#), and concrete liners. For low permeability liners, the following criteria apply:

- Where the seasonal high groundwater elevation is likely to contact a low permeability liner, liner buoyancy may be a concern. In these instances, use of a low permeability liner shall be designed by a geotechnical engineer.
- [Where grass is planted over a low permeability liner per the \[facility-BMP\]\(#\) design, a minimum of 6 inches of topsoil of sufficient organic content and depth or compost-amended native soil shall be placed over the liner in the area to be planted. Native underlying soils may be suitable for planting if amended per Soil Amendment BMP requirements in *Volume 3, Section 5.1*. Twelve inches of cover is preferred.](#)
- [Low permeability liners shall extend vertically to the design water surface elevation plus 6 inches at a minimum. For bioretention, the design water surface elevation shall be the 25-year water surface elevation.](#)

Compacted Till Liners

- Liner thickness shall be 18 inches after compaction.
- Soil shall be compacted to 95 percent minimum dry density, modified proctor method (ASTM D-1557).
- A different depth and density sufficient to slow the infiltration rate to 2.4×10^{-5} inches per minute may also be used instead of the above criteria if designed by a geotechnical engineer.
- Soil shall be placed in maximum 6-inch lifts.

- Soils shall meet the gradation outlined in Table E-3 unless otherwise designed by a geotechnical engineer.

Table E.3. Compacted Till Liners.

Sieve Size	Percent Passing
6-inch	100
4-inch	90
#4	70 – 100
#200	20

Clay Liners

- Liner thickness shall be 12 inches after compaction.
- Clay shall be compacted to 95 percent minimum dry density, modified proctor method (ASTM D-1557).
- A different depth and density sufficient to slow the infiltration rate to 2.4×10^{-5} inches per minute may also be used instead of the above criteria, if designed by a geotechnical engineer and approved by the Director.
- Plasticity index shall not be less than 15 percent (ASTM D-423, D-424).
- Liquid limit of clay shall not be less than 30 percent (ASTM D-2216).
- Clay particles passing shall not be less than 30 percent (ASTM D-422).
- The slope of clay liners shall be restricted to 3H:1V for all areas requiring soil cover; otherwise, the soil layer shall be stabilized by another method so that soil slippage into the [facility-BMP](#) does not occur. Any alternative soil stabilization method shall take maintenance access into consideration.

Concrete Liners

- Concrete liners may also be used for sedimentation chambers, ~~and~~ for sedimentation and filtration basins less than 1,000 square feet in area, [and non-infiltrating bioretention](#). Concrete shall be 5-inch thick Class 3000 or better and shall be reinforced by steel wire mesh. The steel wire mesh shall be 6 gage wire or larger and 6-inch by 6-inch mesh or smaller. An "Ordinary Surface Finish" is required per City of Seattle Standard Specification 6-02.3(14). When the underlying soil is clay or has an unconfined compressive strength of 0.25 ton per square foot or less, the concrete shall have a minimum 6-inch compacted aggregate base consisting of coarse sand and river stone, crushed stone or equivalent with diameter of 0.75 to 1 inch. Where visible, the concrete shall be inspected annually and all cracks shall be sealed.
- Portland cement liners are allowed irrespective of [facility-BMP](#) size, and shotcrete may be used on slopes. However, specifications shall be designed by a licensed engineer who certifies the liner against cracking or losing water retention ability under expected conditions of operation, including [facility-BMP](#) maintenance operations. Weight of maintenance equipment can be up to 80,000 pounds when fully loaded.
- Asphalt concrete may not be used for liners due to its permeability to many organic pollutants.

- If grass is to be grown over a concrete liner, slopes shall be no steeper than 5H:1V to prevent the top dressing material from slipping. Textured liners may be used on slopes up to 3H:1V upon recommended design by a geotechnical engineer that the top dressing will be stable for all site conditions, including maintenance.

Design Criteria for Impermeable Liners

Geomembrane Liners

- Geomembrane liners shall be ultraviolet (UV) light resistant and have a minimum thickness of 30 mils. A thickness of 40 mils shall be used in areas of maintenance access or where heavy machinery will be operated over the membrane.
- The geomembrane fabric shall be protected from puncture, tearing, and abrasion by installing geotextile fabric on the top ~~of and beneath~~bottom of the geomembrane. The geotextile fabric shall have a high survivability per the WSDOT Standard Specifications Section 9-33 Construction Geotextile. Equivalent methods for protecting the geomembrane liner may be permitted, subject to approval by Director. Equivalency will be based on the ability of the fabric to protect the geomembrane from puncture, tearing, and abrasion.
- Geomembranes shall be bedded according to the manufacturer's recommendations.
- Liners shall be covered with minimum of 12 inches of top dressing~~forming the bottom and sides of the water quality treatment facility, except for linear sand filters.~~ Top dressing shall ~~include~~consist of 6 inches of crushed rock immediately over the liner covered with 6 inches of topsoil of sufficient organic content and depth or compost-amended native soil. ~~The rock layer is~~ to mark the location of the liner for future maintenance operations. As an alternative to crushed rock, 12 inches of native soil may be used if orange plastic "safety fencing" or another highly-visible, continuous marker may be embedded 6 inches above the membrane to alert maintenance workers of the liner below.
- If possible, liners should be of a contrasting color so that maintenance workers are aware of any areas where a liner may have become exposed when maintaining the ~~facility~~BMP.
- Non-textured geomembrane liners shall not be used on slopes steeper than 5H:1V to prevent the top dressing material from slipping. Textured liners may be used on slopes up to 3H:1V upon design by a geotechnical engineer that the top dressing will be stable for all site conditions, including maintenance.
- Geomembrane liners used to control seepage shall be joined using heat-fusion or equivalent, and include boots around all pipe and structure penetrations.
- Geomembrane liners shall extend vertically to the design water surface elevation plus 6 inches at a minimum. For bioretention, the design water surface elevation shall be the 25-year water surface elevation.

E-8. Geotextiles

The following recommended applications are provided courtesy of Tony Allen (Geotechnical Engineer-WSDOT) with references provided to the relevant tables in the City of Seattle Standard Specifications:

- For sand filter drain strip between the sand and the drain rock or gravel layers, use Geotextile Properties for Underground Drainage, moderate survivability, Class A, from Tables 1 and 2 in the City of Seattle Standard Specifications 9-37.
- For sand filter matting located immediately above the impermeable liner and below the drains, the function of the geotextile is to protect the impermeable liner by acting as a cushion. The specification provided in Table 4 in the City of Seattle Standard Specifications 9-37 shall be used to specify survivability properties for the liner protection application. Table 2 in the City of Seattle Standard Specifications 9-37, Class C shall be used for filtration properties. Only nonwoven geotextiles are appropriate for the liner protection application.
- For infiltration [BMPs drains](#), use Geotextile for Underground Drainage, low survivability, Class C, from Tables 1 and 2 in the City of Seattle Standard Specifications 9-37.
- For a sand bed cover, a geotextile fabric is placed exposed on top of the sand layer to trap debris brought in by the stormwater and to protect the sand, facilitating easy cleaning of the surface of the sand layer. A polyethylene or polypropylene geonet shall be used in lieu of geotextile fabric. The geonet material shall have high UV resistance (90 percent or more strength retained after 500 hours in the weatherometer, ASTM D4355), and high permittivity (ASTM D4491, 0.8 sec⁻¹ or more) and percent open area (CWO-22125, 10 percent or more). Tensile strength shall be on the order of 200 pounds grab (ASTM D4632) or more.
- [For above and below a geomembrane liner, the geotextile fabric shall be Geotextile for Separation per the COS Standard Specifications Section 9-37 Construction Geotextile.](#)

E-9. Plant Lists for Bioretention, Biofiltration Swales, Sand Filters, and Wet Ponds

The following plant lists were developed as a guide for bioretention (infiltrating and non-infiltrating), biofiltration swales, sand filters, and wet ponds. For information regarding planting for other BMPs, refer to *Volume 3, Chapter 5*. More stringent requirements have been developed for [facilities-BMPs](#) sited in the right-of-way and can be found in the Seattle Right-of-Way Improvements Manual.

[The following design principles should be considered during plant selection:](#)

- [Select plants to minimize irrigation and maintenance needs. Coordinate planting design, whenever possible, with maintenance staff.](#)
- [Where appropriate, use regionally native species.](#)
- [Design a planting plan with a goal of achieving a minimum of 80 percent evergreen groundcover. Evergreen groundcover helps trap sediment and protects soil and infiltration rates during the wet season.](#)
- [Consider biodiversity of species, including a minimum of three to five species for planting plans for small BMPs, and increasing species diversity where possible. Species and genetic diversity increase resilience and the ability of a BMP to adapt during varying site conditions.](#)
- [Incorporate pollinator, bird, and wildlife species into planting plans where possible. Maximize various seasonal habitat function. For example, flowering plants should bloom three of the four seasons. Planting plans for BMPs adjacent to natural areas should include trees, shrubs, and groundcover that provide habitat value and support.](#)

Bioretention

The Seattle Right-of-Way Improvements Manual establishes height limits for non-street tree plantings in rights-of-way. Maximum plant height within 30 feet of an intersection (as measured from the corner of the curb) is 24 inches. Elsewhere in the right-of-way, plantings are allowed to be 30 inches with the exception of accent shrubs as directed.

The following planting zone codes apply to Tables E.4 through E.19:

- Zone 1: designation for plants that are used for water quality in the bottoms of ~~the~~ bioretention [facilitiesBMPs](#)
- Zone 2: designation for plants that are used for water quality in the lower slopes/wetted/ponded area of ~~the~~ bioretention [BMPsfacilities](#)
- Zone 3: species appropriate for planting at the tops and upper slopes ~~of the~~ of bioretention [BMPsareas](#) that are used as a border and as accents along the sidewalk, including vertical and accent plants and trees
- Zone 4: low, durable plants (under 24 inches) that are used in sight clearance areas or as accents at the edge of the [facilityBMP](#)

- Zone 5: designation for steppable plants used in the crossing zones and access areas along the curb – these plants may need to tolerate foot traffic, depending on their location

The following operations and maintenance/special needs code (O&M code) apply to Tables E.4 through E.10:

- A = Cut back perennials to 3 inches above ground in fall (October/November).
- B = Leave foliage and seedheads for winter interest and cut back if foliage collapses. Cut back in spring (Mid-January to Mid-March) before new growth emerges.
- C = Hand-rake in spring (Mid-January to Mid-March) before new growth emerges. Cut back to ground or thin every 2 to 3 years as needed.
- DS = Deadhead perennials in spring/summer to encourage reblooming and for neater appearance. Deadheading not required for function.
- DF = Deadhead perennials in fall for neater appearance and to prevent resowing. Deadheading not required for function.
- E = Cut back or prune of over sidewalk or clear zones. Remove deadwood anytime fall to spring.
- F = May need replacing every 5+/- years. (Replacement not required if vegetation coverage meets requirements)
- G = May need dividing every few years. Reasons for division include dieback in center and to increase coverage.

Table E.4. Part Shade List.

EG	DT	NWN	Height from Ground	Scientific Name	Common Name	Planting Zone	Suggested Size/ Spacing	Urban Frontage	Exposure	Design Comments	O&M Code	Additional O&M Comments
SEMI			<24"	<i>Abelia x grandiflora</i> 'Prostrata'	Prostrate white abelia	3, 4	1 Gal./30" o.c.	UF	☀, ∅		E	
	DT		18"–30"	<i>Aster divaricatus</i>	White wood aster	3	1 Gal./24" o.c.		∅		B	
			<24"	<i>Carex elata</i> 'Bowles Golden'	Bowles Golden sedge	1, 2	10 Cu. In. Plug/ 9" o.c.	UF	☀, ∅	Limit to areas of approx. 36"x36"	B	
EG			<24"	<i>Carex laxiculmis</i> 'Hobb'	Bunny Blue sedge	1, 2	10 Cu. In. Plug/ 9" o.c.	UF	∅		C	
EG	DT	NWN	24"–48"+	<i>Carex obnupta</i>	Slough sedge	1, 2	10 Cu. In. Plug/ 9" o.c.		☀, ∅	Do not intermix with other emergents. Do not plant near intersections. Drought tolerant wetland native.	C	Can be sheared more frequently if overcrowding other occurs. May require supplementary irrigation during prolonged dry periods.
		NWN	24"–36"	<i>Carex stipata</i>	Beaked sedge	1, 2	10 Cu. In. Plug/ 9" o.c.	UF	☀, ∅	Wetland native species. Limit to areas of approx. 36"x36"	B	May require supplementary irrigation during prolonged dry periods. Will die out if mowed or trimmed too regularly.
EG			24"–30"	<i>Carex testacea</i> or <i>dispacea</i>	Orange New Zealand or Autumn Sedge	1, 2	10 Cu. In. Plug/ 9" o.c.	UF	☀, ∅		C	

Table E.4 (continued). Part Shade List.

EG	DT	NWN	Height from Ground	Scientific Name	Common Name	Planting Zone	Suggested Size/ Spacing	Urban Frontage	Exposure	Design Comments	O&M Code	Additional O&M Comments
	DT		24"–36"	<i>Cornus sericea</i> 'Kelseyii'	Kelsey redstem dogwood	1, 2, 3	2 Gal./30" o.c.	UF	☀, ∅		E	Stems fragile until established.
		NWN	24"–40"	<i>Deschampsia caespitosa</i>	Tufted Hair Grass	1, 2	10 Cu. In. Plug/ 9" o.c.		☀, ∅	Native facultative species; does well in wet and dry conditions. Limit to areas of approx. 36"x36"	B	LOS A: For neater appearance, trim seedheads.
			<24"	<i>Deschampsia flexuosa</i> 'Aurea'	Golden crinkled hair grass	1, 2	10 Cu. In. Plug/ 9" o.c.	UF	☀, ∅	Limit to areas of approx. 36"x36"	B	LOS A: For neater appearance, trim seedheads.
			24"	<i>Fuchsia magellanica</i> 'Aurea'	Dwarf Hardy Fuchsia	3, 4	2 Gal./30" o.c.	UF	∅		E	
			<24"	<i>Galanthus elwesii</i>	Giant Snowdrop	3, 4	Bulb	UF	☀, ∅	Prefers part shade. May be short-lived if too hot.	F	
EG	DT	NWN	24"–36"+	<i>Gaultheria shallon</i>	Salal	3	1 Gal./24" o.c.	UF	☀, ∅		E	If height is a problem, Salal can be sheared with hedge trimmer.
EG			<24"	<i>Geum flore-plena</i> 'Blazing Sunset'	Blazing Sunset Avens	3, 4	1 Gal./10" o.c.	UF	☀, ∅		DS	
			24"–36"	<i>Iris pallida</i> 'Variegata'	Variegated sweet iris	3	1 Gal./18" o.c.	UF	☀, ∅		A	

Table E.4 (continued). Part Shade List.

EG	DT	NWN	Height from Ground	Scientific Name	Common Name	Planting Zone	Suggested Size/ Spacing	Urban Frontage	Exposure	Design Comments	O&M Code	Additional O&M Comments
EG	DR	NWN	<24"	<i>Mahonia repens</i>	Creeping Oregon holly-grape	3, 4	1 Gal./18" o.c.	UF	☀, ∅		E	
EG	DR	NWN	24"–36"	<i>Polystichum munitum</i>	Western swordfern	3	2 Gal./24" o.c.	UF	∅	Limit to group of 3	B	Cut back before fronds appear.
EG	DT		24"–36"	<i>Prunus laurocerasus</i> 'Mount Vernon'	Mount Vernon cherry laurel	3	2 Gal./24" o.c.	UF	☀, ∅		E	
EG			36"	<i>Rhododendron</i> Yak Hybrids, such as 'Ken Janeck'	Yak Hybrid	3	2 Gal./24" o.c.	UF	☀, ∅	Several other Yak hybrids stay low and neat	E	LOS A: May produce more flowers if pruned and/or deadheaded after blooming.
EG	DT		<24"	<i>Sarcococca hookeriana humilis</i>	Himalayan Sweet Box	3	2 Gal./24" o.c.	UF	∅	Winter fragrance	E	
EG			30"	<i>Taxus</i> 'Emerald Spreader'	Emerald Spreader Yew	3	2 Gal./24" o.c.	UF	☀, ∅		E	
		NWN	<24"	<i>Tolmiea menziesii</i>	Youth on Age	1, 2, 3	1 Gal./10" o.c.		∅		G	
EG	DT		<24"	<i>Veronica liwanensis</i>	Speedwell	3, 4, 5	4" Pot/12" o.c.	UF	☀, ∅		E	LOS A: Cut back for neater appearance.

EG = Evergreen

SEMI = Semi-evergreen

DT = Drought Tolerant

DR = Drought Resistant

NWN = Northwest Natives or Cultivars

UF = Urban Frontage (Mixed Use/Commercial) appropriate plants

☀ = Full Sun

∅ = Part Sun/Part Shade

LOS = Level of Service

Table E.5. Sun List.

EG	DT	NWN	Height from Ground	Scientific Name	Common Name	Planting Zone	Suggested Size/ Spacing	Urban Frontage	Exposure	Design Comments	O&M Code	Additional O&M Comments
SEMI			<24"	<i>Abelia x grandiflora</i> 'Prostrata'	Prostrate white abelia	3, 4	1 Gal./30" o.c.	UF	☀, ∅		E	
	DT		<24"	<i>Aster novi-belgii</i> 'Wood's Blue'	Wood's Blue New York Aster	3	1 Gal./18" o.c.	UF	☀		B, G	
			24"–36"	<i>Carex muskingumensis</i>	Palm sedge	1, 2	10 Cu. In. Plug/ 9" o.c.	UF	☀, ∅	Limit to areas of approx. 36"x36"	B	
			24"–36"	<i>Carex elata</i> 'Bowles Golden'	Bowles Golden Sedge	1, 2, 3	10 Cu. In. Plug/ 9" o.c.	UF	☀, ∅	Limit to areas of approx. 36"x36"	B	
			24"–36"+	<i>Carex grayi</i>	Gray's sedge	1, 2	10 Cu. In. Plug/ 9" o.c.	UF	☀, ∅	Limit to areas of approx. 36"x36"	B	
		NWN	24"–36"	<i>Carex stipata</i>	Beaked sedge	1, 2	10 Cu. In. Plug/ 9" o.c.	UF	☀, ∅	Wetland native species Limit to areas of approx. 36"x36"	B	May require supplementary irrigation during prolonged dry periods. Will die out if mowed or trimmed to regularly.
EG			24"–30"	<i>Carex testacea</i> or <i>dispacea</i>	Orange New Zealand or Autumn Sedge	1, 2, 3	10 Cu. In. Plug/ 9" o.c.	UF	☀, ∅		C	

Table E.5 (continued). Sun List.

EG	DT	NWN	Height from Ground	Scientific Name	Common Name	Planting Zone	Suggested Size/ Spacing	Urban Frontage	Exposure	Design Comments	O&M Code	Additional O&M Comments
	DT		24"–36"	<i>Caryopteris incana</i> 'Sunshine Blue'	Sunshine Blue Bluebeard	3, 4	1 Gal./18" o.c.	UF	☀		B OR DF	Cut back to about 18" above the ground or by half in early spring after new leaves are visible
	DT	NWN	24"–30"	<i>Cornus sericea</i> 'Kelseyii'	Kelsey redstem dogwood	1, 2, 3	2 Gal./30" o.c.	UF	☀, ∅		E	Stems fragile until established.
		NWN	24"–40"	<i>Deschampsia caespitosa</i>	Tufted Hair Grass	1, 2	10 Cu. In. Plug/ 9" o.c.		☀, ∅	Native facultative species: does well in wet and dry conditions. Limit to areas of approx. 36"x36"	B	LOS A: For neater appearance. trim seedheads.
			<24"	<i>Deschampsia flexuosa</i> 'Aurea'	Golden crinkled hair grass	1, 2	10 Cu. In. Plug/ 9" o.c.	UF	☀, ∅	Limit to areas of approx. 36"x36"	B	LOS A: For neater appearance. trim seedheads.
	DT		24"–36"	<i>Echinacea purpurea</i>	Coneflower	3	1 Gal./18" o.c.	UF	☀		B	LOS A: For neater appearance. deadhead.
EG	DT	NWN	24"–36"+	<i>Gaultheria shallon</i>	Salal	3	1 Gal./24" o.c.	UF	☀, ∅		E	If height is a problem, Salal can be sheared with hedge trimmer.

Table E.5 (continued). Sun List.

EG	DT	NWN	Height from Ground	Scientific Name	Common Name	Planting Zone	Suggested Size/ Spacing	Urban Frontage	Exposure	Design Comments	O&M Code	Additional O&M Comments
EG	DT		24"–36"	<i>Hebe</i> 'Red Edge'	Red Edge Hebe	3, 4	1 Gal./24" o.c.		☀		E	
	DT		<24"	<i>Hemerocallis</i> – Later Flowering Varieties	Later Flowering Daylily varieties	3, 4	1 Gal./15" o.c.	UF	☀, ∅	Later flowering varieties are not as susceptible to Daylily gall midge.	A	LOS A: For neater appearance, deadhead.
EG	DT		<24"	<i>Geranium x cantabrigiense</i> 'Cambridge'	Perennial Geranium	3, 4	1 Gal./15" o.c.	UF	☀, ∅		B	
SEMI	DT		<24"	<i>Helianthemum</i> 'Henfield Brilliant'	Sunrose	3, 4	1 Gal./10" o.c.	UF	☀		B	
EG	DT		24"–36"	<i>Helictotrichon sempervirens</i>	Blue oat grass	3	1 Gal./18" o.c.	UF	☀		C	
EG	DT		<24"	<i>Ilex x 'Mondo'</i>	Little Rascal Holly	3, 4	1 Gal./18" o.c.	UF	☀, ∅		E	
EG	DT	NWN	<24"	<i>Iris douglasiana</i>	Pacific Coast Iris	3, 4	1 Gal./18" o.c.	UF	☀	Many colors available.	G	LOS A: For neater appearance, cut back dead leaves and flower stalks.

Table E.5 (continued). Sun List.

EG	DT	NWN	Height from Ground	Scientific Name	Common Name	Planting Zone	Suggested Size/ Spacing	Urban Frontage	Exposure	Design Comments	O&M Code	Additional O&M Comments
SEMI	DT	NWN	<24"	<i>Iris missouriensis</i>	Rocky Mountain Iris	1, 2	1 Gal./12" o.c.	UF	☀		G	<p>May require supplementary irrigation during prolonged dry periods.</p> <p>LOS A: For neater appearance, cut back dead leaves and flower stalks.</p>
			24"–36"	<i>Iris sibirica</i> cultivars such as 'Bennerup Blue'	Siberian Iris	1, 2, 3	1 Gal./18" o.c.	UF			G	<p>LOS A: For neater appearance, cut back dead leaves and flower stalks.</p>
EG	DT	NWN	<24"	<i>Juncus balticus</i>	Baltic rush	1, 2	10 Cu. In. Plug/ 9" o.c.	UF	☀	<p>Wetland native species.</p> <p>Do not use in hot ROW locations.</p>	C	<p>May require supplementary irrigation during prolonged dry periods.</p> <p>Will die off if sheared too frequently.</p> <p>LOS A: Can be sheared more frequently if foliage collapses.</p>

Table E.5 (continued). Sun List.

EG	DT	NWN	Height from Ground	Scientific Name	Common Name	Planting Zone	Suggested Size/ Spacing	Urban Frontage	Exposure	Design Comments	O&M Code	Additional O&M Comments
EG		NWN	24"–36"	<i>Juncus effusus</i> 'Quartz Creek'	Quartz Creek Soft Rush	1, 2	10 Cu. In. Plug/ 9" o.c.	UF	☀, ∅		C	LOS A: Can be sheared more frequently if foliage collapses.
EG	DT		<24"	<i>Juniperus conferta</i> 'Blue Pacific'	Blue Pacific Shore juniper	3, 4	1 Gal./3' o.c.	UF	☀		E	
	DT	NWN	36"	<i>Leersia oryzoides</i>	Rice Cutgrass	1, 2	10 Cu. In. Plug/ 9" o.c.		☀	Limit to areas of approx. 36"x36"	B	LOS A: For neater appearance. trim seedheads.
EG	DR	NWN	<24"	<i>Mahonia repens</i>	Creeping Oregon holly-grape	3, 4	1 Gal./18" o.c.	UF	☀, ∅		E	
	DR		36"	<i>Miscanthus sinensis</i> 'Little Kitten'	Little Kitten Maiden Grass	3	1 Gal./15" o.c.	UF	☀		B	
	DT		30"	<i>Nepetax</i> 'Walker's Low'	Catmint	3	1 Gal./18" o.c.	UF	☀, ∅		B	
EG			36"	<i>Rhododendron</i> Yak Hybrids, such as 'Ken Janeck'	Yak Hybrid	3, 4	2 Gal./30" o.c.	UF	☀, ∅	Several other Yak hybrids stay low and neat	E	LOS A: May produce more flowers if pruned and/or deadheaded after blooming
	DT		24"–36"	<i>Rudbeckia fulgida</i> 'Goldsturm'	Black-Eyed Susan	3, 4	1 Gal./18" o.c.	UF	☀	Late season color accent.	A OR B	

Table E.5 (continued). Sun List.

EG	DT	NWN	Height from Ground	Scientific Name	Common Name	Planting Zone	Suggested Size/ Spacing	Urban Frontage	Exposure	Design Comments	O&M Code	Additional O&M Comments
	DT		<24"	<i>Sedum</i> 'Autumn Joy' or 'Matrona'	Stonecrop	3, 4	1 Gal./12" o.c.	UF	☀		G	LOS A: Can be cut back by half in June to prevent flopping.
	DT	NWN	<24"	<i>Solidago canadensis</i> 'Baby Gold' or <i>Solidago hybrida</i> 'Dansolitem'	Baby Gold or Little Lemon Goldenrod	3, 4	1 Gal./18" o.c.		☀	Late season color accent.	A	
		NWN	24"–48"	<i>Spiraea betulifolia</i> or <i>Spiraea betulifolia</i> 'Tor'	Birchleaf spirea	3	1 Gal./24" o.c.	UF	☀		E	
EG	DT	NWN	<24"	<i>Sedum oreganum</i>	Stonecrop	3, 4, 5	4" Pot/12" o.c.	UF	☀	Tolerates hot dry sites.	E	
EG	DT		<24"	<i>Teucrium chamaedrys</i>	Wall germander	3, 4	1 Gal./18" o.c.	UF	☀		E	LOS A: For neater appearance trim spent flowers in spring.
EG	DT		<24"	<i>Thymus serpyllum</i> 'Elfin'	Elfin creeping thyme	3, 4, 5	4" Pot/12" o.c.	UF	☀		F	

EG = Evergreen

SEMI = Semi-evergreen

DT = Drought Tolerant

DR = Drought Resistant

NWN = Northwest Natives or Cultivars

UF = Urban Frontage (Mixed Use/Commercial) appropriate plants

☀ = Full Sun

∅ = Part Sun/Part Shade

LOS = Level of Service

Table E.6. Native List (Sun to Part Shade includes cultivars).

EG	DT	NWN	Height from Ground	Scientific Name	Common Name	Planting Zone	Suggested Size/ Spacing	Urban Frontage	Exposure	Design Comments	O&M Code	Additional O&M Comments
	DR	NWN	24"–36"	<i>Aquilegia formosa</i>	Western Columbine	3, 4	1 Gal./18" o.c.		☀, ∅		DF	
EG	DT	NWN	<24"	<i>Arctostaphylos uva-ursi</i> 'Massachusetts' or 'Pt. Reyes'	Kinnikinnick	3, 4	1 Gal./12" o.c.	UF	☀, ∅	Possible use at vertical wall or single use low accent. Requires approval by Project Manager and Maintenance prior to use.	E	
	DR	NWN	24"–36"	<i>Camus leichtlinii</i> or <i>Camus quamash</i>	Great Camus or Common Camus	3, 4	1 Gal./12" o.c.		☀, ∅	Plant for in groups for effect. Can be planted as a bulb	DF	
EG		NWN	30"	<i>Carex densa</i>	Dense sedge	1, 2	40 Cu. In. Plug/ 9" o.c.	UF	☀	-	C	
	DR	NWN	24"–48"	<i>Carex deweyana</i>	Dewey's sedge	1, 2	10 Cu. In. Plug/ 9" o.c.		☀, ∅	Grows best on side slopes. Limit to areas of approx. 36"x36"	B	Likely to need supplementary irrigation if planted in full sun.
EG	DT	NWN	24"–48"+	<i>Carex obnupta</i>	Slough sedge	1, 2	10 Cu. In. Plug/ 9" o.c.		☀, ∅	Drought tolerant wetland native. Do not intermix with other emergents. Do not plant near intersections	C	May require supplementary irrigation during prolonged dry periods. Can be sheared more frequently if overcrowding other occurs.

Table E.6 (continued). Native List (Sun to Part Shade includes cultivars).

EG	DT	NWN	Height from Ground	Scientific Name	Common Name	Planting Zone	Suggested Size/ Spacing	Urban Frontage	Exposure	Design Comments	O&M Code	Additional O&M Comments
	DT	NWN	24"–36"	<i>Carex pachystachya</i>	Chamisso sedge	1, 2	10 Cu. In. Plug/ 9" o.c.		☀, ∅	Grows best on side slopes. Limit to areas of approx. 36"x36"	B	
		NWN	24"–36"	<i>Carex stipata</i>	Beaked sedge	1, 2	10 Cu. In. Plug/ 9" o.c.	UF	☀, ∅	Limit to areas of approx. 36"x36"	B	May require supplementary irrigation during prolonged dry periods. Will die out if mowed or trimmed too regularly.
	DT	NWN	24"–30"	<i>Cornus sericea</i> 'Kelseyii'	Kelsey redstem dogwood	1, 2, 3	2 Gal./30" o.c.	UF	☀, ∅	Limit to areas of approx. 36"x36"	E	Stems fragile until established.
		NWN	24"–40"	<i>Deschampsia caespitosa</i>	Tufted Hair Grass	1, 2	10 Cu. In. Plug/ 9" o.c.		☀, ∅	Native facultative species; does well in wet and dry conditions. Limit to areas of approx. 36"x36"	B	LOS A: For neater appearance, trim seedheads.
	DT	NWN	<24"	<i>Erigeron peregrinus</i>	subalpine fleabane daisy	3, 4	1 Gal./12" o.c.	UF	☀		DF	
	DT	NWN	36"	<i>Festuca idahoensis</i>	Idaho fescue	3, 4	1 Gal./18" o.c.		☀		DF	

Table E.6 (continued). Native List (Sun to Part Shade includes cultivars).

EG	DT	NWN	Height from Ground	Scientific Name	Common Name	Planting Zone	Suggested Size/ Spacing	Urban Frontage	Exposure	Design Comments	O&M Code	Additional O&M Comments
EG	DT	NWN	<24"	<i>Gaultheria ovatifolia</i>	Oregon wintergreen	3, 4	1 Gal./24" o.c.	UF	☀, ∅	If Gaultheria shallon is substituted see additional O&M notes	E	If height is a problem, can be sheared with hedge trimmer.
EG	DT	NWN	<24"	<i>Iris douglasiana</i>	Pacific Coast Iris	3, 4	1 Gal./18" o.c.	UF	☀	Many colors available.	G	LOS A: For neater appearance, cut back dead leaves and flower stalks.
SEMI	DT	NWN	<24"	<i>Iris missouriensis</i>	Rocky Mountain Iris	1, 2	1 Gal./12" o.c.	UF	☀		G	LOS A: For neater appearance, cut back dead leaves and flower stalks.
EG	DT	NWN	<24"	<i>Juncus balticus</i>	Baltic rush	1, 2	10 Cu. In. Plug/ 9" o.c.	UF	☀	Wetland native species. Do not use in hot ROW locations.	C	May require supplementary irrigation during prolonged dry periods. Will die off if sheared too frequently. LOS A: Can be sheared more frequently if foliage collapses.

Table E.6 (continued). Native List (Sun to Part Shade includes cultivars).

EG	DT	NWN	Height from Ground	Scientific Name	Common Name	Planting Zone	Suggested Size/ Spacing	Urban Frontage	Exposure	Design Comments	O&M Code	Additional O&M Comments
EG	DT	NWN	24"–48"+	<i>Juncus effusus</i>	Common rush	1, 2	10 Cu. In. Plug/ 9" o.c.		☀, ∅	Only <i>Juncus effusus</i> var. <i>pacificus</i> is native. Other varieties of <i>Juncus effusus</i>, even cultivars, are invasive and are not recommended for use in stormwater facilities. Do not intermix with other emergents. Do not plant near intersections	C	
EG		NWN	<24"	<i>Juncus ensifolius</i>	Dagger-leaf rush	1, 2	10 Cu. In. Plug/ 9" o.c.	UF	☀, ∅	Limit to areas of approx. 36"x36"	B	Requires supplementary irrigation in summer to thrive.
EG	DT	NWN	<24"	<i>Juncus tenuis</i>	Path rush	1, 2	10 Cu. In. Plug/ 9" o.c.	UF	☀, ∅	Native facultative species; does well in wet and dry conditions.	C	
EG	DT	NWN	<24"	<i>Juniperus communis</i> 'Mondap'	Alpine carpet juniper	4	1 Gal./24" o.c.	UF	☀		E	May require supplementary irrigation in summer. May require pruning

Table E.6 (continued). Native List (Sun to Part Shade includes cultivars).

EG	DT	NWN	Height from Ground	Scientific Name	Common Name	Planting Zone	Suggested Size/ Spacing	Urban Frontage	Exposure	Design Comments	O&M Code	Additional O&M Comments
EG		NWN	36"	<i>Ledum glandulosum</i>	Pacific or trapper's tea	1, 2, 3	5 Gal./36" o.c.	UF	☀, ∅	Plant near the bottom of swale	E	
	DT	NWN	36"	<i>Leersia oryzoides</i>	Rice Cutgrass	1, 2	40 Cu. In. Plug/ 9" o.c.		☀	Limit to areas of approx. 36"x36"	B	LOS A: For neater appearance trim seedheads.
EG	DT	NWN	<24"	<i>Lewisia cotyledon</i> or cultivars	Siskiyou lewisia	3, 4	1 Gal./12" o.c.	UF	☀		E	
EG		NWN	36"	<i>Mahonia aquifolium</i> 'Orange Flame' or 'Compacta'	Compact tall Oregon grape	3	1 Gal./36" o.c.	UF	☀, ∅		E	
EG	DR	NWN	<24"	<i>Mahonia repens</i>	Creeping Oregon grape	3, 4	1 Gal./18" o.c.	UF	☀, ∅		E	
	DT	NWN	<24"	<i>Maianthemum dilatatum</i>	False Lily of the Valley	1, 2, 3, 4	4" Pot/12" o.c.	UF	∅	Note tendency to spread	E	LOS A: Remove dead foliage in fall.
		NWN	24"-36"	<i>Mimulus guttatus</i>	Yellow monkey-flower	1, 2	1 Gal./18" o.c.		☀, ∅	Provides temporary color and habitat value. Will die back in late summer or winter but will reseed. Should not be used in large areas and relied upon for water quality treatment.	DF	

Table E.6 (continued). Native List (Sun to Part Shade includes cultivars).

EG	DT	NWN	Height from Ground	Scientific Name	Common Name	Planting Zone	Suggested Size/ Spacing	Urban Frontage	Exposure	Design Comments	O&M Code	Additional O&M Comments
EG	DT	NWN	36"	<i>Pachistima myrsinites</i>	Oregon Boxwood	3	1 Gal./36" o.c.	UF	☀, ∅		E	
		NWN	<24"	<i>Potentilla fruticosa</i> 'Sunset'	Frosty potentilla	3, 4	2 Gal./30" o.c.	UF	∅		E	
	DT	NWN	<24"	<i>Potentilla glandulosa</i> or <i>Potentilla gracilis</i>	Sticky cinquefoil or slender cinquefoil	3, 4	1 Gal./18" o.c.		☀, ∅		DF	
EG		NWN	24"–36"	<i>Polystichum imbricans</i> or <i>Polystichum lonchitis</i>	Narrow-leaf sword fern or Northern holly fern	3, 4	2 Gal./30" o.c.	UF	☀, ∅	If <i>Polystichum munitum</i> is substituted limit groups to 3 and prune yearly	B	Cut back before fronds appear.
	DT	NWN	<24"	<i>Solidago canadensis</i> 'Baby Gold' or <i>Solidago hybrida</i> 'Dansolitlem'	Baby Gold or Little Lemon Goldenrod	3, 4	1 Gal./18" o.c.		☀	Late season color accent.	A	
		NWN	24"–36"	<i>Spiraea betulifolia</i> or <i>Spiraea betulifolia</i> 'Tor'	Birchleaf spirea	3	1 Gal./24" o.c.	UF	☀		E	
EG	DT	NWN	<24"	<i>Sedum divergens</i>	Stonecrop	3, 4	4" Pot/12" o.c.	UF	☀, ∅	Tolerates hot dry sites.	E	LOS A: For neater appearance deadhead.

Table E.6 (continued). Native List (Sun to Part Shade includes cultivars).

EG	DT	NWN	Height from Ground	Scientific Name	Common Name	Planting Zone	Suggested Size/ Spacing	Urban Frontage	Exposure	Design Comments	O&M Code	Additional O&M Comments
EG	DT	NWN	<24"	<i>Sedum oregonum</i>	Stonecrop	3, 4, 5	4" Pot/12" o.c.	UF	☀	Tolerates hot dry sites.	E	
EG	DT	NWN	24"–36"	<i>Xerophyllum tenax</i>	Bear grass	3	1 Gal/18" o.c.	UF	☀	Tolerates hot dry sites.	E	

EG = Evergreen

SEMI = Semi-evergreen

DT = Drought Tolerant

DR = Drought Resistant

NWN = Northwest Natives or Cultivars

UF = Urban Frontage (Mixed Use/Commercial) appropriate plants

☀ = Full Sun

☀ = Part Sun/Part Shade

LOS = Level of Service

Table E.7. Intersection and View Restriction Palette (under 24 inches in height).

EG	DT	NWN	Height from Ground	Scientific Name	Common Name	Planting Zone	Suggested Size/ Spacing	Urban Frontage	Exposure	Design Comments	O&M Code	Additional O&M Comments
			<24"	<i>Chrysanthemum</i> 'Peach Centerpiece' or 'Bienchen'	Peach Centerpiece or golden chrysanthemum	3, 4	1 Gal./15" o.c.		☀	Late season color accent.	B & G	Pull if scraggly.
	DT		<24"	<i>Coreopsis lanceolata</i> 'Sterntaler'	Tickseed	3, 4	1 Gal./15" o.c.	UF	☀		B & G	
	DT		24"–30"	<i>Cornus sericea</i> 'Kelseyii'	Kelsey redstem dogwood	1, 2, 3	1 Gal./30" o.c.	UF	☀, ∅	Plant in bottom areas for sightlines.	E	Stems fragile until established.
EG	DT		<24"	<i>Epimedium rubrum</i> or <i>sulphurescens</i>	Barrenwort	3, 4	4" Pot/12" o.c.	UF	∅	Part shade to shade only without irrigation.	B	Cut back before flower stalks appear.
EG	DT		<24"	<i>Euonymus fortunei</i> 'Interbolwi'	Blondy winter-creeper	3, 4	1 Gal./18" o.c.	UF	☀, ∅		E	
	DT		<24"	<i>Geranium</i> 'Gerwat' 'Rozanne'	Rozanne geranium	3, 4	1 Gal./24" o.c.		☀, ∅		A	LOS A: Can be sheared for neater appearance.
EG			<24"	<i>Geum flore pleno</i> 'Blazing Sunset'	Blazing Sunset Avens	3, 4	1 Gal./18" o.c.	UF	☀, ∅		DS	
EG			<24"	<i>Hebe x</i> 'Champion'	Champion Hebe	3, 4	1 Gal./18" o.c.	UF	☀, ∅		E	
SEMI	DT		<24"	<i>Helianthemum nummularium</i> 'Wisley Primrose'	Yellow Sunrose	3, 4	1 Gal./12" o.c.	UF	∅		B	

Table E.7 (continued). Intersection and View Restriction Palette (under 24 inches in height).

EG	DT	NWN	Height from Ground	Scientific Name	Common Name	Planting Zone	Suggested Size/ Spacing	Urban Frontage	Exposure	Design Comments	O&M Code	Additional O&M Comments
EG	DT		24"–36"	<i>Helictotrichon sempervirens</i>	Blue oat grass	3	1 Gal./18" o.c.	UF	∅	36" height only when in flower. Airy flowers. Groups of 3 maximum.	C	
EG	DT		<24"	<i>Ilex</i> x 'Mondo'	Little Rascal Holly	3, 4	1 Gal./18" o.c.	UF	☀, ∅		E	
EG		NWN	<24"	<i>Juncus effusus</i> 'Carmen's Japan'	Carmen's Japanese Rush	1, 2	10 Cu. In. Plug/ 9" o.c.	UF	☀, ∅		C	
EG			<24"	<i>Juncus effusus</i> 'Spiralis'	Corkscrew soft rush	1, 2	10 Cu. In. Plug/ 9" o.c.	UF	☀, ∅		C	LOS A: Can be sheared more frequently if foliage collapses.
EG			24"–30"	<i>Juncus patens</i> or <i>Juncus patens</i> 'Elk blue'	California gray rush	1, 2	10 Cu. In. Plug/ 9" o.c.	UF	☀, ∅	Resilient wetland species: can survive summer drought and winter inundation. Plant in bottom areas for sightlines	C	LOS A: Can be sheared more frequently if foliage collapses.
EG			<24"	<i>Liriope muscari</i> and cultivars	Lily Turf	3, 4	4" Pot/12" o.c.	UF	☀, ∅		C	OK to pull clumps for ease of weed control.
EG	DR	NWN	<24"	<i>Mahonia repens</i>	Creeping Oregon holly-grape	3	1 Gal./18" o.c.	UF	☀, ∅		E	

Table E.7 (continued). Intersection and View Restriction Palette (under 24 inches in height).

EG	DT	NWN	Height from Ground	Scientific Name	Common Name	Planting Zone	Suggested Size/ Spacing	Urban Frontage	Exposure	Design Comments	O&M Code	Additional O&M Comments
	DT		<24"	<i>Narcissus</i> 'Dutch Master' or 'King Alfred'	Daffodil	3, 4	Bulb/As Shown	UF	∅		DS	Cut back foliage in summer.
		NWN	<24"	<i>Potentilla fruticosa</i> 'Sunset'	Frosty potentilla	3, 4	2 Gal./30" o.c.	UF	∅		E	
EG	DT		<24"	<i>Veronica liwanensis</i>	Speedwell	3, 4, 5	4" Pot/12" o.c.	UF	∅		E	LOS A: Cut back for neater appearance.

SEMI = Semi-evergreen

DT = Drought Tolerant

DR = Drought Resistant

NWN = Northwest Natives or Cultivars

UF = Urban Frontage (Mixed Use/Commercial) appropriate plants

☀ = Full Sun

∅ = Part Sun/Part Shade

LOS = Level of Service

Table E.8. Vertical Shrubs and Accent Plants.

EG	DT	NWN	Height from Ground	Scientific Name	Common Name	Planting Zone	Suggested Size/ Spacing	Urban Frontage	Exposure	Design Comments	O&M Code	Additional O&M Comments
		NWN	25'	<i>Amelanchier alnifolia</i>	Service Berry	1, 2, 3	Multi-stem, B&B, 5'-6' ht.		∅	Multi-stemmed are common native species. Can sucker and spread. Single stem species may be available if nursery prunes in advance.	E	May need windowing/ thinning.
			5'	<i>Cornus sanguinea</i> 'Midwinter Fire'	Midwinter Fire Dogwood	1, 2, 3	5 gal		☀, ∅		E	Prune 2/3 of all (older) branches to 8" above ground in March to keep in bounds and to maintain yellow twigs.
		NWN	6' to 8'	<i>Cornus sericea</i> 'Flaviramea'	Yellow-Twig Dogwood	1, 2, 3	5 gal		∅		E	Prune 2/3 of all (older) branches to 8" above ground in March to keep in bounds and to maintain red twigs.
			10'	<i>Hamamelis x intermedia</i> 'Pallida'	Witch Hazel	3	10 gal		☀, ∅	Vase-shaped open growing form	E	
			5'	<i>Hydrangea quercifolia</i> 'Pee Wee'	Oak-Leaf Hydrangea	3	5 gal		∅	Late summer flowers. Fall color. Bold leaves in winter.	E	May need windowing/ thinning.

Table E.8 (continued). Vertical Shrubs and Accent Plants.

EG	DT	NWN	Height from Ground	Scientific Name	Common Name	Planting Zone	Suggested Size/ Spacing	Urban Frontage	Exposure	Design Comments	O&M Code	Additional O&M Comments
EG			3'-4'	<i>Ilex glabra</i> 'Shamrock'	Inkberry	1, 2	5 gal.		☀, ∅		E	Female plants need a male pollinator to produce berries.
			3'-12'	<i>Ilex verticillata</i> and cultivated varieties	Winterberry	1, 2	5 gal.		☀, ∅		E	Female plants need a male pollinator to produce berries.
EG			8'-12'	<i>Mahonia</i> 'Arthur Menzies'	Ornamental Mahonia	3	5 gal		☀, ∅	Upright multi-stemmed.	E	
EG		NWN	6'-10'	<i>Mahonia aquifolium</i>	Oregon grape	3	5 gal		☀, ∅	Upright multi-stemmed.	E	
EG			5'	<i>Osmanthus</i> 'Goshiki'	Variegated Osmanthus	3	5 gal		∅	4' wide. Considered dwarf. New foliage is colorful.	E	May need windowing/ thinning.
			6'	<i>Physocarpus opulifolius</i> 'Nanus'	Dwarf Ninebark	1, 2, 3	5 gal		☀, ∅	Even dwarf form may be tall and wide.	E	May need windowing/ thinning.
EG			4'	<i>Pieris japonica</i> 'Little Heath'	Little Heath Lily of the Valley	3	3 gal.		∅	Variegated foliage that emerges pink in spring. Flowers in winter	E	May need windowing/ thinning.
		NWN	8'	<i>Ribes sanguineum</i> and cultivated varieties	Red Flowering Currant	3	5 gal		∅	Attracts hummingbirds	E	May need windowing/ thinning.

Table E.8 (continued). Vertical Shrubs and Accent Plants.

EG	DT	NWN	Height from Ground	Scientific Name	Common Name	Planting Zone	Suggested Size/ Spacing	Urban Frontage	Exposure	Design Comments	O&M Code	Additional O&M Comments
			15'–20'	<i>Salix integra</i> 'Hakuro Nishiki'	Dappled Willow	1, 2, 3	5 gal.		☀, Ø		E	Specify tree form; Prune to ground every other year to keep smaller
			8'–15'	<i>Sambucus nigra</i> 'Gerda'	Black Beauty Black Elder	1, 2, 3	5 gal.		☀, Ø		E	
		NWN	6'	<i>Symphoricarpos albus</i>	Snowberry	1, 2, 3	5 gal		☀, Ø	Forms thickets.	E	May need windowing/ thinning.
			6'	<i>Taxodium distichum</i> 'Peve Minaret'	Dwarf bald cypress	1, 2, 3					E	
EG		NWN	6'	<i>Vaccinium ovatum</i>	Evergreen Huckleberry	1, 2, 3	5 gal		☀, Ø		E	
			6'	<i>Vaccinium</i> 'Sunshine Blue'	Blueberry	3	5 gal		☀, Ø	Self-pollinating edible fruits. Good fall color.	E	
EG			10'	<i>Viburnum cinnamomifolium</i>	Cinnamon Viburnum	3	10 gal		☀, Ø		E	May need windowing/ thinning.
		NWN	7'–12'	<i>Viburnum edule</i>	Highbush cranberry	1, 2, 3	5 gal.		☀, Ø		E	

SEMI = Semi-evergreen

DT = Drought Tolerant

DR = Drought Resistant

NWN = Northwest Natives or Cultivars

UF = Urban Frontage (Mixed Use/Commercial) appropriate plants

☀ = Full Sun

Ø = Part Sun/Part Shade

LOS = Level of Service

Table E.9. Groundcovers if Low Profile is Required.

EG	DT	NWN	Height from Ground	Scientific Name	Common Name	Planting Zone	Suggested Size/ Spacing	Urban Frontage	Exposure	Design Comments	O&M Code	Additional O&M Comments
EG	DT		<24"	<i>Ajuga reptans</i>	Bugleweed	3, 4	4" Pot/12" o.c.	UF	☀, ∅		E	Can be pulled if grows beyond desired boundaries.
EG	DT		<24"	<i>Epimedium rubrum</i> or <i>sulphurescens</i> or cultivars	Barrenwort	3, 4	4" Pot/12" o.c.	UF	∅		B	Cut back foliage before flower stalks appear.
EG	DT		<24"	<i>Euonymus fortunei</i> 'Kewensis'	Winter-creeper euonymous	3, 4	1 Gal./18" o.c.	UF	☀, ∅		E	Can be mowed to keep low.
SEMI	DT		<24"	<i>Geranium macrorrhizum</i> 'Album' or other cultivars	Hardy Geranium	3, 4	1 Gal./18" o.c.	UF	☀, ∅		B	
	DT	NWN	<24"	<i>Maianthemum dilatatum</i>	False Lily of the Valley	1, 2, 3, 4	4" Pot/12" o.c.	UF	∅	Note tendency to spread	E	LOS-A: Remove dead foliage in fall.
EG	DT		<24"	<i>Pachysandra terminalis</i>	Japanese Spurge	3, 4	4" Pot/12" o.c.	UF	∅		C	
EG	DT		<24"	<i>Sibbaldiopsis tridentata</i> (= <i>Potentilla tridentata</i>)	Three-toothed Cinquefoil	3, 4	4" Pot/12" o.c.	UF	∅		E	

Table E.9 (continued). Groundcovers if Low Profile is Required.

EG	DT	NWN	Height from Ground	Scientific Name	Common Name	Planting Zone	Suggested Size/ Spacing	Urban Frontage	Exposure	Design Comments	O&M Code	Additional O&M Comments
EG	DT		<24"	<i>Rubus tricolor</i>	Creeping Chinese Bramble	3, 4	4" Pot/12" o.c.	UF	∅	Tolerates deep shade. Not as aggressive or spiny as other Rubus groundcovers. Red fuzzy stems and shiny leaves.	E	
EG	DT	NWN	<24"	<i>Sedum divergens</i>	Stonecrop	3, 4	4" Pot/12" o.c.	UF	☀, ∅	Tolerates hot dry sites.	E	LOS A: For neater appearance deadhead.
EG	DT		<24"	<i>Sedum requieni</i>	Miniature Stonecrop	3, 4, 5	4" Pot/12" o.c.	UF	☀, ∅	Tolerates hot dry sites.	E	
	DT	NWN	<24"	<i>Vancouveria hexandra</i>	Inside Out Flower	3, 4	4" Pot/12" o.c.	UF	∅		E	
SEMI			<24"	<i>Potentilla neumanniana</i> 'Nana'	Dwarf cinquefoil	3, 4, 5	4" Pot/12" o.c.	UF	☀, ∅		E	
EG			<24"	<i>Ophiopogon japonicus</i> 'Nanus'	Dwarf mondo grass	3, 4, 5	4" Pot/12" o.c.	UF	☀, ∅	Can space at 15" o.c. for cost saving	E	

SEMI = Semi-evergreen

DT = Drought Tolerant

DR = Drought Resistant

NWN = Northwest Natives or Cultivars

UF = Urban Frontage (Mixed Use/Commercial) appropriate plants

☀ = Full Sun

∅ = Part Sun/Part Shade

LOS = Level of Service

Table E.10. Steppable Plants.

EG	DT	NWN	Height from Ground	Scientific Name	Common Name	Planting Zone	Suggested Size/ Spacing	Urban Frontage	Exposure	Design Comments	O&M Code	Additional O&M Comments
EG			<24"	<i>Ophiopogon japonicus</i> 'Nanus'	Dwarf mondo grass	3, 4, 5	4" Pot/12" o.c.	UF	☀, ∅	Can space at 15" o.c. for cost saving	E	
SEMI			<24"	<i>Potentilla neumanniana</i> 'Nana'	Dwarf cinquefoil	3, 4, 5	4" Pot/12" o.c.	UF	☀, ∅		E	
EG	DT	NWN	<24"	<i>Sedum oregonum</i>	Stonecrop	3, 4, 5	4" Pot/12" o.c.	UF	☀	Tolerates hot dry sites.	E	
EG	DT		<24"	<i>Sedum requienii</i>	Miniature Stonecrop	3, 4, 5	4" Pot/12" o.c.	UF	☀, ∅	Tolerates hot dry sites.	E	
EG	DT		<24"	<i>Thymus serpyllum</i> 'Elfin'	Elfin creeping thyme	3, 4, 5	4" Pot/12" o.c.	UF	☀		F	
EG	DT		<24"	<i>Veronica liwanensis</i>	Speedwell	3, 4, 5	4" Pot/12" o.c.	UF	∅		E	LOS A: Cut back for neater appearance.

SEMI = Semi-evergreen

DT = Drought Tolerant

DR = Drought Resistant

NWN = Northwest Natives or Cultivars

UF = Urban Frontage (Mixed Use/Commercial) appropriate plants

☀ = Full Sun

∅ = Part Sun/Part Shade

LOS = Level of Service

Table E.11. Conifers (deciduous and evergreen).

Scientific and Common Name	Mature Urban Height	Spread	Under Wires?	Min Strip Width	Planting Zone	Fall Color	SDOT List	Design Comments
<i>Calocedrus decurrens</i> , Incense Cedar	75	15	No	8	3			
<i>Metasequoia glyptostroboides</i> , Dawn Redwood	50	25	No	6	1, 2, 3	Yes		Fast growing deciduous conifer.
<i>Pinus contorta</i> , Shore Pine	45	30	No	5	1, 2, 3			Facultative species that grows well in sandy soils. Found in wetland and upland habitats.
<i>Taxodium distichum</i> , Bald Cypress	55	35	No	8	1, 2, 3	Yes		A deciduous conifer, broadly spreading when mature – columnar when young.
<i>Taxodium distichum</i> 'Mickelson,' Shawnee Brave Bald Cypress	55	20	No	6	1, 2, 3	Yes	x	Deciduous conifer – tolerates city conditions.
<i>Thuja plicata</i> 'Excelsa' or 'Hogan,' Western Red Cedar	40	15–20	No	8	1, 2, 3			Narrow columnar form.

Table E.12. Medium/Large Broad-leaved Evergreen Trees.

Scientific and Common Name	Mature Height	Spread	Under Wires?	Min Strip Width	Planting Zone	Fall Color	SDOT List	Design Comments
<i>Lithocarpus densiflorus</i> , Tanoak	50	20	No	6	3			
<i>Quercus Ilex</i> , Holly Oak	40	30	No	5	3	N/A	x	Underside of leaf is silvery-white. Often has a prominent umbrella form. Prune for form.
<i>Umbellularia californica</i> , Oregon Myrtlewood	60	30	No	5	1, 2, 3			Drought tolerant native in S. OR. Fruit looks like miniature limes.

Table E.13. Large Deciduous Columnar Trees.

Scientific and Common Name	Mature Height	Spread	Under Wires?	Min Strip Width	Planting Zone	Fall Color	SDOT List	Design Comments
<i>Acer nigrum</i> 'Green Column,' Green Column Black Sugar Maple	50	10	No	6	3	Yes	x	
<i>Ginkgo biloba</i> 'Princeton Sentry,' Princeton Sentry Ginkgo	40	15	No	6	3	Yes	x	Prune for form
<i>Quercus robur</i> 'fastigiata,' Skyrocket Oak	40	15	No	6	3	N/A	x	

Table E.14. Large Deciduous Trees.

Scientific and Common Name	Mature Height	Spread	Under Wires?	Min Strip Width	Planting Zone	Fall Color	SDOT List	Design Comments
<i>Acer saccharum</i> 'Commemoration' or 'Bonfire' Commemoration or Bonfire Sugar Maple	50	35	No	6	1, 2, 3	Yes	x	Resistant to leaf tatter.
<i>Fagus sylvatica</i> , Green Beech	50	40	No	6	3	Yes	x	Silvery-grey bark. Can't handle root disturbance.
<i>Fagus sylvatica</i> 'Asplenifolia,' Fernleaf Beech	60	50	No	6	3	Yes	x	Can't handle root disturbance.
<i>Ginkgo biloba</i> 'Magyar,' Magyar Ginkgo	50	25	No	6	3	Yes	x	More upright and narrow than 'Autumn Gold.' Needs training when young.
<i>Liriodendron tulipifera</i> , Tulip Tree	60+	30	No	8	1, 2, 3	Yes	x	Fast-growing tree.
<i>Platins x acerifolia</i> 'Bloodgood,' Bloodgood London Planetree	50+	40	No	8	1, 2, 3	N/A	x	More anthracnose resistant than other varieties – large tree that needs space.
<i>Quercus bicolor</i> , Swamp White Oak	60	45	No	8	1, 2, 3	N/A	x	Shaggy peeling bark. Wet-soil tolerant.
<i>Quercus coccinea</i> , Scarlet Oak	60	40	No	6	3	Yes	x	Good fall color.
<i>Quercus imbricaria</i> , Shingle Oak	60	50	No	6	3	N/A	x	Leaves can persist throughout the winter.
<i>Quercus rubra</i> , Red Oak	60	45	No	8	1, 2, 3	Yes	x	Fast growing oak – large tree that needs space. Heavy acorn producer.
<i>Tilia tomentosa</i> , Silver Linden	60	50	No	6	3	Yes		Larger leaves than Littleleaf Linden. Fragrant flowers.
<i>Ulmus</i> 'Frontier' or 'Morton Glossy,' Frontier or Triumph Elm	50	35	No	6	1, 2, 3	Yes	x	Resistant to Dutch elm disease.
<i>Zelkova serrata</i> 'Greenvase' or 'Village Green' Green Vase or Village Green Zelkova	45	40	No	6	3	Yes	x	Exfoliating bark. Dark green leaves turn orange-red and purple in fall.

Table E.15. Medium/Large Deciduous Trees.

Scientific and Common Name	Mature Height	Spread	Under Wires?	Min Strip Width	Planting Zone	Fall Color	SDOT List	Design Comments
<i>Acer campestre</i> 'Evelyn,' Queen Elizabeth Hedge Maple	40	30	No	5	1, 2, 3	Yes	x	More upright branching than the species.
<i>Acer freemanii</i> 'Autumn Blaze,' Autumn Blaze Maple	50	40	No	6	1, 2, 3	Yes	x	Cross between red and silver maple – fast growing with good fall color.
<i>Acer rubrum</i> 'Scarsen,' Scarlet Sentinel Maple	40	25	No	6	1, 2, 3	Yes	x	Leaves are darker green and larger than those of other Red Maples and hold up well in summer heat. Upright branch habit.
<i>Aesculus x carnea</i> 'Briottii,' Red Horsechestnut	30	35	No	6	3	N/A	x	Do not use near greenways or bicycle routes due to litter. Resists heat and drought better than other horse chestnuts.
<i>Betula nigra</i> , River Birch	40	30	No	5	1, 2, 3	Yes		Excellent flaky bark. Resistant to Bronze Birch Borer.
<i>Cercidiphyllum japonicum</i> , Katsura tree	45	40	No	8	1, 2, 3	Yes		
<i>Eucommia ulmoides</i> , Hardy Rubber Tree	50	40	No	6	3	N/A	x	Dark green, very shiny leaves – insignificant fall color.
<i>Fagus sylvatica</i> 'Rohanii,' Purple Oak Leaf Beech	50	30	No	6	3	N/A	x	Purple leaves with wavy margins.
<i>Ginkgo biloba</i> 'Autumn Gold,' Autumn Gold Ginkgo	45	35	No	6	3	Yes	x	Narrow when young.
<i>Nothofagus antarctica</i> , Antarctic Beech	50	35	No	5	3	No	x	Rugged twisted branching and petite foliage.
<i>Quercus frainetto</i> , Italian Oak	50	30	No	6	3	N/A	x	Drought resistant – green, glossy leaves in summer.
<i>Sophora japonica</i> 'Regent,' Japanese Pagodatree	45	40	No	6	3	Yes	x	Has a rapid growth rate and tolerates city conditions, heat, and drought.
<i>Tilia cordata</i> 'Greenspire,' Greenspire Linden	40	30	No	6	3	Yes	x	Symmetrical, pyramidal form. Fragrant flowers.
<i>Ulmus parvifolia</i> 'Emer II,' Allee Elm	45	35	No	5	1, 2, 3	Yes	x	Exfoliating bark and good fall color – Resistant to Dutch Elm Disease.

Table E.16. Medium Columnar Deciduous Trees.

Scientific and Common Name	Mature Height	Spread	Under Wires?	Min Strip Width	Planting Zone	Fall Color	SDOT List	Design Comments
<i>Acer rubrum</i> 'Bowhall,' Bowhall Maple	40	20	No	6	1, 2, 3	Yes	x	Upright, pyramidal form.
<i>Carpinus betulus</i> 'Fastigiata,' Pyramidal European Hornbeam	40	15	No	5	1, 2, 3	Yes	x	Broadens when older.
<i>Fagus sylvatica</i> 'Dawyck Purple,' Dawyck Purple Beech	40	12	No	6	3	Yes	x	Purple foliage.
<i>Oxydendron arboreum</i> , Sourwood	35	12	No	5	3	Yes	x	Consistent and brilliant fall color.
<i>Nyssa sylvatica</i> , Tupelo	40	20	No	6	1, 2, 3	Yes	x	Chunky bark. Takes standing water and drought.

Table E.17. Medium Deciduous Trees.

Scientific and Common Name	Mature Height	Spread	Under Wires?	Min Strip Width	Planting Zone	Fall Color	SDOT List	Design Comments
<i>Acer rubrum</i> 'Karpick,' Karpick Maple	40	20	No	6	1, 2, 3	Yes	x	Finer texture than other narrow forms of columnar maple.
<i>Acer truncatum</i> x <i>A. platanoides</i> 'Keithsform' or 'Warrenred,' Norwegian or Pacific Sunset Maple	35	25	No	5	3	Yes	x	Reliable reddish orange fall color.
<i>Cladrastis kentukea</i> , Yellowwood	40	40	No	5	3	Yes	x	White flowers in spring, resembling wisteria flower – blooms profusely only every 2 to 4 years – yellow/gold fall color
<i>Cornus controversa</i> 'June Snow,' Giant Dogwood	40	30	No	5	3	Yes	x	Frothy, 6-inch clusters of white flowers in June.
<i>Corylus colurna</i> , Turkish Filbert	40	25	No	5	3	Yes	x	Tight, formal, dense crown – Nice central leader. Not for mixed use areas with high pedestrian traffic dues to significant debris from nuts. Drought tolerant. Plant smaller sizes in order to facilitate establishment.
<i>Magnolia denudata</i> , Yulan Magnolia	40	40	No	5	3	N/A	x	6-inch fragrant white flowers in spring.
<i>Ostrya virginiana</i> , Ironwood	40	25	No	5	3	Yes	x	Hop like fruit – slow growing
<i>Pterostyrax hispida</i> , Fragrant Epaulette Tree	40	30	No	5	3	Yes	x	Pendulous creamy white flowers – fragrant
<i>Ulmus parvifolia</i> 'Emer I,' Athena Classic Elm	30	35	No	5	1, 2, 3	Yes	x	High resistance to Dutch Elm Disease. Drought resistant. Cinnamon colored exfoliating bark.

Table E.18. Small Conifer/Broad-leaved Evergreen Trees.

Scientific and Common Name	Mature Height	Spread	Under Wires?	Min Strip Width	Planting Zone	Fall Color	SDOT List	Design Comments
<i>Chamaecyparis obtusa gracilis</i> , Slender Hinoki False Cypress	15	6	Yes	5	3			Drought tolerant when established.
<i>Embothrium coccineum</i> , Chilean Flame Tree	30	15	No	5	3			Brilliant orange red flowers in late spring. Tree can sucker.
<i>Eucryphia glutinosa</i> , Brushbush	25	15	Yes	5	3			Semi-evergreen. Best in part shade.
<i>Magnolia grandiflora</i> 'Edith Bogue,' Edith Bogue Magnolia	18	12	Yes	5	1, 2, 3			Excellent BLE magnolia due to hardiness.
<i>Magnolia grandiflora</i> 'Victoria,' Victoria Evergreen Magnolia	25	20	Yes	5	1, 2, 3	N/A	x	
<i>Magnolia maudiae</i> (= <i>Michelia maudiae</i>), NCN	25	20	Yes	5	3			
<i>Magnolia virginiana</i>	35	35		5	1, 2, 3		x	
<i>Quercus hypoleucoides</i>	30	15	No	5	3			
<i>Quercus myrsinifolia</i> , Chinese Evergreen Oak	30	15	No	5	3			

Table E.19. Small Deciduous Trees.

Scientific and Common Name	Mature Height	Spread	Under Wires?	Min Strip Width	Planting Zone	Fall Color	SDOT List	Design Comments
<i>Acer buegerianum</i> , Trident Maple	30	30	Yes	5	3	Yes	x	Must train to a single stem – interesting bark.
<i>Acer circinatum</i> , Vine Maple	25	25	Yes	5	3	Yes	x	Avoid using on harsh sites – native tree.
<i>Acer griseum</i> , Paperbark Maple	30	20	Yes	5	3	Yes	x	Peeling cinnamon colored bark.
<i>Acer tartaricum</i> , Tartarian Maple	20	20	Yes	5	3	Yes		
<i>Acer triflorum</i> , Three-Flower Maple	25	20	Yes	5	3	Yes	x	Multi seasonal interest with tan, exfoliating bark and red, orange/red fall color.
<i>Amelanchier laevis</i> 'Snowcloud,' Snowcloud Serviceberry	25	15	Yes	4	3	Yes		
<i>Asimina triloba</i> , Paw	30	20	Yes	5	1, 2, 3	N/A	x	Burgundy flower in spring before leaves.
<i>Betula nigra</i> 'Little King,' Little King River Birch	10	12	Yes	5	1, 2, 3	Yes		Suitable for enclosed vertical walls.
<i>Carpinus caroliniana</i> , American Hornbeam	25	20	Yes	5	1, 2, 3	Yes	x	Good fall color (variable – yellow, orange, red).
<i>Cornus kousa x nuttallii</i> 'Starlight,' Starlight Dogwood	20	20	Yes	4	3	Yes		
<i>Lagerstroemia</i> 'tuscarora,' Tuscarora Hybrid Crape Myrtle	20	20	Yes	4	3	Yes	x	Light cinnamon brown bark lends year round interest – drought resistant – likes a warm site.
<i>Maackia amurensis</i> , Amur Maackia	30	20	Yes	5	3	N/A	x	Exfoliating bark – flowering in June or July – varies in intensity from year to year.
<i>Magnolia</i> 'Elizabeth,' Elizabeth Magnolia	30	20	Yes	5	3	N/A	x	Yellowish to cream colored flower in spring.

Table E.19 (continued). Small Deciduous Trees.

Scientific and Common Name	Mature Height	Spread	Under Wires?	Min Strip Width	Planting Zone	Fall Color	SDOT List	Design Comments
<i>Magnolia</i> 'Galaxy,' Galaxy Magnolia	25	25	Yes	5	1, 2, 3	Yes	x	Suitable for enclosed vertical walls. Showy pink flowers.
<i>Magnolia kobus</i> 'Wada's Memory,' Wada's Memory Magnolia'	30	20	Yes	5	3	Yes	x	Drought tolerant. Does not flower well when young.
<i>Malus</i> 'Lancelot' ('Lanzam'), Lancelot Crabapple	15	15	Yes	4	3	Yes	x	Red flower buds, blooming white – red persistent fruit.
<i>Parrotia persica</i> , Persian Parrotia	30	20	No	5	3	Yes		Blooms before it leafs out – drought tolerant – Varied fall color – reds, oranges and yellows.
<i>Frangula purshiana</i> <i>Rhamnus purshiana</i> , Cascara	30	20	Yes	5	1, 2, 3	Yes	x	Facultative native species. Found in wetland and upland habitats. Can tolerate bioretention street tree environments; however, does not grow as well in narrow, hot ROW locations. Suitable for enclosed vertical walls.
<i>Salix matsudana</i> 'Tortuosa,' Corkscrew willow	30	15	Yes	5	1, 2, 3	Yes		Do not use with underdrain.
<i>Stewartia pseudocamellia</i> , Japanese Stewartia	25	15	Yes	5	3	Yes		Camellia-like flowers in summer. Interesting bark. Slow grower.
<i>Styrax japonica</i> , Japanese Snowbell	25	25	Yes	5	3	Yes	x	Reliable and easy to grow, it has plentiful, green 1/2-inch seeds. Flowers similar to lily in the valley.
<i>Tilia cordata</i> 'Chancole' or 'De Groot,' Chancellor or De Groot Littleleaf Linden	30+	20	No	C = 6, D = 5	3	Yes	x	Pyramidal when young. Fragrant flowers that attract bees. One of the smaller stature littleleaf lindens.

Biofiltration Swales

Table E.20. Plants Tolerant of Frequent Saturated Soil Conditions or Standing Water.

EG	DT	NWN	Agg ^a	Scientific Name	Common Name	BMP Comments	
						Application	Mowable
	DT		A	<i>Agrostis</i> spp.	Bentgrass	S	M
SEMI	DT	NWN		<i>Agrostis exarata</i>	Spike bentgrass	S	M
	DT		A	<i>Agrostis alba</i> or <i>gigantea</i>	Redtop	S	M
EG	DT		A	<i>Agrostis tenuis</i> or <i>capillaris</i>	Colonial bentgrass	S	M
EG				<i>Alopecurus aequalis</i>	Shortawn foxtail	S	M
EG				<i>Alopecurus geniculatus</i>	Water foxtail	S	M
EG			A	<i>Alopecurus pratensis</i>	Meadow foxtail	S	M
EG	DT	NWN		<i>Bromus carinatus</i>	California brome	S	M
SEMI				<i>Carex densa</i>	Dense sedge		
EG		NWN		<i>Carex obnupta</i>	Slough sedge		
SEMI				<i>Carex stipata</i>	Sawbeak sedge		
SEMI				<i>Eleocharis palustris</i>	Spike rush		
EG	DT	NWN		<i>Elymus glaucus</i>	Blue wildrye	S	M
EG	DT	NWN		<i>Elymus mollis</i>	Dune wildrye	S	M
		NWN		<i>Glyceria borealis</i>	Northern mannagrass		
		NWN		<i>Glyceria elata</i>	Tall mannagrass		
				<i>Glyceria grandis</i>	American mannagrass		
EG	DT		A	<i>Juncus effusus</i>	Soft (common) rush		
SEMI	DT			<i>Juncus patens</i>	Spreading rush		
SEMI	DT			<i>Juncus tenuis</i>	Slender rush		
EG			A	<i>Poa trivialis</i>	Rough-stalked bluegrass	S	M
SEMI		NWN		<i>Scirpus acutus</i>	Hardstem bulrush		
SEMI	DT	NWN		<i>Scirpus microcarpus</i>	Small-fruited bulrush		

EG = Evergreen

SEMI = Semi-evergreen

DT = Drought Tolerant/Resistant

NWN = Northwest Natives or Cultivars

A = Aggressive

S = Allowable as seed

M = Mowable

^a Aggressive category indicates plants to be used with caution or avoided in confined sites (e.g., right-of-way plantings), near greenbelts, etc., due to maintenance concerns.

Note: Plants with mature height over 3' should be grouped in masses no wider than 12' mature width with openings of minimum 10' between masses.

Note: Designer needs to respond to the size and aspect of the individual [facility-BMP](#) when selecting plants to be used.

Table E.21. Plants Suitable for the Upper Side Slopes of a Biofiltration Swale.

EG	DT	NWN	Agg ^a	Scientific Name	Common Name	BMP Comments	
						Application	Mowable
Groundcovers							
EG	DT	NWN	A	<i>Achillea millefolium</i>	Common yarrow		
	DT	NWN		<i>Arctostaphylos uva-ursi</i>	Kinnikinnick		
	DT	NWN		<i>Allium Cernum</i>	Nodding onion		
SEMI	DT			<i>Epimedium grandiflorum</i>	Epimedium		
EG	DT			<i>Euonymus fortunei</i>	Wintercreeper		
EG	DT	NWN	A	<i>Fragaria chiloensis</i>	Beach strawberry		
		NWN		<i>Lupinus latifolius</i>	Broadleaf lupine		
	DT			<i>Omphalodes verna</i>	Creeping forget-me-not		
EG	DT		A	<i>Rubus calycinoides</i>	Creeping raspberry		
EG	DT	NWN		<i>Sedum oreganum</i>	Oregon stonecrop		
EG	DT	NWN		<i>Sedum divergens</i>	Cascade stonecrop		
EG	DT		A	<i>Trifolium repens</i>	White lawn clover	S	M
Grasses (drought-tolerant, minimum mowing)							
EG				<i>Buchloe dactyloides</i>	Buffalo grass	S	M
EG	DT			<i>Festuca</i> spp. (e.g., Many Mustang, Silverado)	Dwarf tall fescues	S	M
EG				<i>Festuca amethystine</i>	Tufted fescue	S	
EG	DT		A	<i>Festuca arundinacea</i>	tall fescue grass	S	M
EG	DT			<i>Festuca ovina duriuscula</i> (e.g., Reliant, Aurora)	Sheep fescue		
EG	DT	NWN		<i>Festuca idahoensis</i>	Idaho fescue		
EG	DT	NWN	A	<i>Festuca rubra</i>	Creeping red fescue	S	M
EG	DT		A	<i>Festuca rubra</i> var. <i>commutata</i>	Chewings fescue	S	M
EG	DT			<i>Helictotrichon sempervirens</i>	Blue oatgrass		

EG = Evergreen

SEMI = Semi-evergreen

DT = Drought Tolerant/Resistant

NWN = Northwest Natives or Cultivars

A = Aggressive

S = Allowable as seed

M = Mowable

^a Aggressive category indicates plants to be used with caution or avoided in confined sites (e.g., right-of-way plantings), near greenbelts, etc., due to maintenance concerns.

Note: Plants with mature height over 3' should be grouped in masses no wider than 12' mature width with openings of minimum 10' between tall plant masses.

Note: Designer needs to respond to the size and aspect of the individual [facility-BMP](#) when selecting plants to be used.

Table E.22. Recommended Plants for Wet Biofiltration Swales.

EG	DT	NWN	Agg ^a	Scientific Name	Common Name	BMP Comments	
						Application	Mowable
SEMI	DT	NWN		<i>Agrostis exarata</i>	Spike bentgrass	S	M
EG	DT		A	<i>Agrostis tenuis</i> or <i>capillaris</i>	Colonial bentgrass	S	M
				<i>Alopecurus aequalis</i>	Shortawn foxtail	S	M
				<i>Alopecurus geniculatus</i>	Water foxtail	S	M
				<i>Eleocharis</i> spp.	Spike rush		
SEMI				<i>Carex densa</i>	Dense sedge		
EG		NWN		<i>Carex obnupta</i>	Slough sedge		
SEMI		NWN		<i>Carex stipata</i>	Sawbeak sedge		
				<i>Carex</i> spp.	Sedge		
EG	DT		A	<i>Festuca arundinacea</i> var.	Tall fescue grass	S	M
EG	DT	NWN	A	<i>Festuca rubra</i>	Creeping red fescue	S	M
				<i>Glyceria occidentalis</i>	Western mannagrass		
EG	DT		A	<i>Juncus effusus</i>	Soft (common) rush		
SEMI	DT			<i>Juncus patens</i>	Spreading rush		
SEMI	DT	NWN		<i>Juncus tenuis</i>	Slender rush		
EG			A	<i>Lolium perenne</i> – Var. dwarf	Dwarf ryegrass	S	
SEMI		NWN		<i>Oenanthe sarmentosa</i>	Water parsley		
SEMI		NWN		<i>Scirpus acutus</i>	Hardstem bulrush		
SEMI	DT	NWN		<i>Scirpus microcarpus</i>	Small-fruited bulrush		

EG = Evergreen

SEMI = Semi-evergreen

DT = Drought Tolerant/Resistant

NWN = Northwest Natives or Cultivars

A = Aggressive

S = Allowable as seed

M = Mowable

^a Aggressive category indicates plants to be used with caution or avoided in confined sites (e.g., right-of-way plantings), near greenbelts, etc., due to maintenance concerns.

Note: Plants with mature height over 3' should be grouped in masses no wider than 12' mature width with openings of minimum 10' between tall plant masses.

Note: Designer needs to respond to the size and aspect of the individual [facility-BMP](#) when selecting plants to be used.

Sand Filters

Table E.23. Recommended Plants for Sand Filters.

EG	DT	NWN	Agg ^a	Scientific Name	Common Name	BMP Comments	
						Application	Mowable
Basin Sides							
	DT	NWN		<i>Achillea millefolium</i>	Yarrow	S	
EG	DT			<i>Agrostis alba</i>	Redtop	S	M
EG	DT	NWN		<i>Agrostis exarata</i>	Spike bentgrass	S	M
EG	DT			<i>Agrostis palustris</i>	Creeping bentgrass	S	M
	DT			<i>Alopecurus pratensis</i>	Meadow foxtail	S	M
EG	DT	NWN		<i>Bromus carinatus</i>	California Brome	S	M
	DT	NWN		<i>Calamagrostis nutkaensis</i>	Pacific reed grass		
EG	DT	NWN		<i>Elymus glaucus</i>	Blue wildrye	S	M
EG	DT	NWN		<i>Elymus mollis</i>	Dune wildrye	S	M
EG	DT	NWN	A	<i>Juncus effusus</i>	Soft rush	S	
	DT	NWN		<i>Lupinus albicaulus</i>	Sickle keeled lupine	S	
EG	DT	NWN		<i>Luzula multiflora</i>	Field woodrush	S	
	DT		A	<i>Poa palustris</i>	Fowl bluegrass	S	M
EG			A	<i>Poa pratensis</i>	Kentucky bluegrass	S	M
Pond Bottom (Sand Surface)							
EG	DT			<i>Agrostis tenuis</i>	Colonial bentgrass (Highland strain good)	S	M
	DT			<i>Buchloe dactyloides</i>	Buffalo grass	S	M
	DT	NWN		<i>Camassia leichlinii</i> or <i>quamash</i>	camas		
EG	DT	NWN		<i>Carex mertensii</i>	Merten's sedge	S	
EG	DT	NWN		<i>Festuca elatior</i> (arundinacea)	Tall fescue	S	M
EG	DT	NWN		<i>Festuca elatior</i> "Many Mustang," "Silverado"	Dwarf tall fescues	S	M
EG	DT	NWN		<i>Fescue roemeri</i> (idahoensis)	Roemer's or Idaho fescue	S	
EG	DT	NWN		<i>Festuca rubra</i>	Red fescue	S	M
SEMI	DT	NWN		<i>Iris missouriensis</i>	Rocky Mountain iris		
EG	DT	NWN		<i>Juncus tenuis</i>	Slender rush	S	
EG	DT			<i>Lolium perenne</i>	Perennial ryegrass	S	M
EG	DT	NWN		<i>Luzula parviflora</i>	Small flowered woodrush	S	
EG	DT			<i>Trifolium repens</i>	White lawn clover	S	M
EG	DT			<i>Zoysia tenuifolia</i>	Korean grass	S	M

EG = Evergreen

A = Aggressive

SEMI = Semi-evergreen

S = Allowable as seed

DT = Drought Tolerant/Resistant

M = Mowable

NWN = Northwest Natives or Cultivars

^a Aggressive category indicates plants to be used with caution or avoided in confined sites (e.g., right-of-way plantings), near greenbelts, etc., due to maintenance concerns.

Note: Plants with mature height over 3' should be grouped in masses no wider than 8' mature size with openings of min. 10' between tall plant masses.

Note: Designer needs to respond to the size and aspect of the individual [facility-BMP](#) when selecting plants to be used.

Wet Ponds

Table E.24. Plants for Wet Pond Peripheries.

EG	DT	NWN	Agg ^a	Scientific Name	Common Name	BMP Comments	
						Application ^b	Mature Height
Trees to Provide Shading^c							
	DT	NWN		<i>Acer circinatum</i>	Vine maple	W	25'
				<i>Betula nigra</i>	River birch	W	40'
EG		NWN		<i>Myrica californica</i>	Pacific wax myrtle		18'
				<i>Nyssa Sylvatica</i>	Tupelo	W	40'
		NWN		<i>Oemleria cerasiformis</i>	Indian plum		10'
		NWN		<i>Prunus emarginata</i>	Wild cherry		40'
				<i>Taxus brevifolia</i>	Pacific yew		40'
EG	DT	NWN		<i>Thuja plicata</i>	Western red cedar	W	40'
Small Trees/High Shrubs with Fibrous Roots for Berms							
		NWN		<i>Acer circinatum</i>	Vine maple	W	25'
		NWN		<i>Amelanchier alnifolia</i>	Serviceberry		25'
EG	DT			<i>Arbutus unedo</i>	Strawberry tree		25'
		NWN		<i>Comus Stolonifera</i>	Red twig dogwood	W	20'
		NWN		<i>Corylus comuta</i> var. <i>cornuta</i>	Filbert		20'
		NWN		<i>Physocarpus capitatus</i>	Pacific ninebark		12'
		NWN	A	<i>Rubus spectabilis</i>	Salmonberry	W	8'
		NWN		<i>Sambucus racemosa</i>	Red elderberry		10'
				<i>Vaccinium opulus</i>	Highbush cranberry		10'
				<i>Vaccinium</i> spp.	Blueberry		4'-12'
Low Shrubs and Grasses with Fibrous Roots for Berms							
EG		NWN		<i>Arctostaphylos uva-ursi</i>	Kinnikinnick		0.5'
				<i>Cistus</i> spp.	Rock rose		2'-4'
SEMI		NWN		<i>Deschampsia cespitosa</i>	Tufted hairgrass		3'
EG	DT			<i>Festuca arundinacea</i>	tall fescue grass		3'
EG	DT			<i>Festuca ovina duriuscula</i> (e.g., Reliant, Aurora)	Sheep fescue		1'
		NWN		<i>Festuca rubra</i>	red fescue	W	0.5'
EG		NWN		<i>Gaultheria shallon</i>	Salal		4'
				<i>Helictotrichon sempervirens</i>	blue oatgrass		3'
EG		NWN		<i>Ledum groenlandicum</i>	Labrador tea	W	5'
				<i>Polystichum munitum</i>	sword fern	W	4'
		NWN	A	<i>Symphoricarpus albus</i>	Snowberry		5'
			(A)	e.g., <i>Miscanthis</i> , <i>Pennisetum</i>	Ornamental grasses		varies

EG = Evergreen

NWN = Northwest Natives or Cultivars

SEMI = Semi-evergreen

A = Aggressive

DT = Drought Tolerant/Resistant

W = Wet Tolerant

^a Aggressive category indicates plants to be used with caution or avoided in confined sites (e.g., right-of-way plantings), near greenbelts, etc., due to maintenance concerns.

^b Tolerant of occasional saturated soils or minimal inundation (<6" depth) for short periods (<72 hours).

^c If BMP has a liner, designer should review plants accordingly; trees generally are not appropriate to liner conditions.

Note: Plants with mature height over 3' should be grouped in masses no wider than 8' mature size with openings of min. 10' between tall plant masses.

Note: Designer needs to respond to the size and aspect of the individual [facility-BMP](#) when selecting plants to be used.

Note: Many factors contribute to waterfowl use of ponds and adjacent areas. Designers should investigate site-specific conditions and best practice methods to discourage waterfowl use as necessary.

E-10. Drywell Sizing Tables

The City has determined that the most common small project overflow scenario consists of a drywell situated downstream of a bioretention cell or a permeable pavement facility. For small projects with no approved off-site point of discharge (refer to *Volume 3, Section 4.3.2*), Table E.25, Table E.26, and Table E.27E.26 specify the required area for drywells of 4-foot and 6-foot depths to be used as overflow/point of discharge downstream of a bioretention cell or a permeable pavement facility sized for the water quality treatment standard, pre-developed pasture standard, and the on-site stormwater management standard for parcel-based and single-family residential projects, respectively.

The minimum measured infiltration rate from a Small or Large Pilot Infiltration Test (PIT) that is required to use these tables is 0.25 inches per hour (in/hr).

Table E.25. ~~Parcel-Based Projects:~~ Drywell Sizing Downstream of Bioretention Sized for Water Quality Treatment Standard ~~Sized for 91% Infiltration~~ or Permeable Pavement Facility.^c

Contributing Area (sf)	Drywell Area (sf) ^{a, b, c}	
	Drywell Depth = 4 ft	Drywell Depth = 6 ft
500	27	19
1,000	98	67
1,500	164	115
2,000	240	169
2,500	314	222
3,000	390	278
3,500	468	336
4,000	548	396
4,500	630	459
5,000	713	524

^a Sizing was performed using a 5-minute computational time-step and the "Seattle 38" 158-year synthetic precipitation series.

^b Drywell was sized to minimize the 25-year peak flow target to no more than 0.0001 cfs. Drywell design/modeling representation included a 4-foot or 6-foot depth, 25 percent porosity, 0.25 in/hr measured soil infiltration rate, and a variable length and width.

^c Bioretention and permeable pavement facilities must be sized per the pre-sized requirements in Volume 3 based on the amount of contributing area design/modeling representation included 6 inches of ponding, 0.25 in/hr measured soil infiltration rate, 3H:1V BMP side slopes, 12-inch bioretention soil thickness, 40 percent porosity, 3 in/hr bioretention soil infiltration rate, and a 12-inch overflow structure diameter.

Table E.26. ~~Single-Family Residential Projects: Drywell Sizing Downstream of Bioretention Sized for the Pre-Developed Pasture Standard Sized for 95% Infiltration or Permeable Pavement Facility.~~^c

Contributing Area (sf)	Drywell Area (sf) ^{a, b, c}	
	Drywell Depth = 4 ft	Drywell Depth = 6 ft
500	14	9
1,000	71	49
1,500	130	90
2,000	200	137
2,500	260	184
3,000	326	234
3,500	393	286
4,000	462	341
4,500	532	399
5,000	605	458

^a Sizing was performed using a 5-minute computational time-step and the "Seattle 38" 158-year synthetic precipitation series.

^b Drywell was sized to minimize the 25-year peak flow target to no more than 0.0001 cfs. Drywell design/modeling representation included a 4-foot or 6-foot depth, 25 percent porosity, 0.25 in/hr measured soil infiltration rate, and a variable length and width.

^c Bioretention ~~and permeable pavement facilities must be sized per the pre-sized requirements in Volume 3 based on the amount of contributing design/modeling representation included 6 inches of ponding, 0.25 in/hr measured soil infiltration rate, 3H:1V BMP side slopes, 12-inch bioretention soil thickness, 40 percent porosity, 3 in/hr bioretention soil infiltration rate, and a 12-inch overflow structure diameter.~~

Table E.27. Drywell Sizing Downstream of Bioretention Sized for the On-Site Stormwater Management Standard.

Contributing Area (sf)	Bioretention Bottom Area (sf) ^{a,b}	Drywell Area (sf) ^{b,c}	
		Drywell Depth = 4 ft	Drywell Depth = 6 ft
<u>500</u>	<u>9</u>	<u>56</u>	<u>39</u>
<u>1,000</u>	<u>17</u>	<u>99</u>	<u>68</u>
<u>1,500</u>	<u>30</u>	<u>170</u>	<u>119</u>
<u>2,000</u>	<u>44</u>	<u>249</u>	<u>178</u>
<u>2,500</u>	<u>60</u>	<u>332</u>	<u>238</u>
<u>3,000</u>	<u>76</u>	<u>417</u>	<u>299</u>
<u>3,500</u>	<u>94</u>	<u>501</u>	<u>361</u>
<u>4,000</u>	<u>112</u>	<u>587</u>	<u>424</u>
<u>4,500</u>	<u>131</u>	<u>665</u>	<u>488</u>
<u>5,000</u>	<u>151</u>	<u>753</u>	<u>544</u>

^a Bioretention design/modeling representation included 6 inches of ponding, 0.25 in/hr measured soil infiltration rate, 3H:1V BMP side slopes, a square bottom area, 12-inch bioretention soil thickness, 40 percent porosity, 3 in/hr bioretention soil infiltration rate, and a 12-inch overflow structure diameter.

^b Sizing was performed using a 5-minute computational time-step and the "Seattle 38" 158-year synthetic precipitation series.

^c Drywell was sized to reduce the 25-year peak discharge rate to no more than 0.0001 cfs. Drywell design/modeling representation included a 4-foot or 6-foot depth, 25 percent porosity, 0.25 in/hr measured soil infiltration rate, and a square bottom area.

Drywells that do not meet the above design criteria and the assumptions shall be sized to meet the Peak Control Standard per Volume 3, Section 5.4.3. For projects that discharge directly to a drywell (if a bioretention cell or permeable pavement facility are not feasible

upstream), the drywell shall be sized to meet the Peak Control Standard per Volume 3, Section 5.4.3. Table E.27-28 specifies the required area for drywells of 4-foot and 6-foot depths that are not located downstream of a bioretention cell or permeable pavement facility.

Table E.27-28. Drywell Sizing Without Bioretention or Permeable Pavement Facility Upstream.

Contributing Area (sf)	Drywell Area (sf) ^{a, b}	
	Drywell Depth = 4 ft	Drywell Depth = 6 ft
500	125	88
1,000	249	175
1,500	347	263
2,000	498	350
2,500	623	438
3,000	747	526
3,500	872	613
4,000	996	701
4,500	1,121	788
5,000	1,245	876

a Sizing was performed using a 5-minute computational time-step and the “Seattle 38” 158-year synthetic precipitation series.

b Drywell was sized to minimize the 25-year peak flow target to no more than 0.0001 cfs. Drywell design/modeling representation included a 4-foot or 6-foot depth, 25 percent porosity, 0.25 in/hr measured soil infiltration rate, and a variable length and width.

Drywells that do not meet the above design criteria and assumptions shall be sized to meet the requirements for projects with no offsite point of discharge per Volume 3, Section 4.3.2.

ATTACHMENT 1 – DESIGN STORM DIMENSIONLESS HYETOGRAPH ORDINATES

Table 1. Dimensionless Ordinates of the Short-Duration Design Storm.

DIMENSIONLESS ORDINATES OF SHORT-DURATION DESIGN STORM		
ELAPSED TIME (min)	INCREMENTAL ORDINATES	CUMULATIVE ORDINATES
0	0.0000	0.0000
5	0.0045	0.0045
10	0.0055	0.0100
15	0.0075	0.0175
20	0.0086	0.0261
25	0.0102	0.0363
30	0.0134	0.0497
35	0.0173	0.0670
40	0.0219	0.0889
45	0.0272	0.1161
50	0.0331	0.1492
55	0.0364	0.1856
60	0.0434	0.2290
65	0.0553	0.2843
70	0.0659	0.3502
75	0.1200	0.4702
80	0.1900	0.6602
85	0.1000	0.7602
90	0.0512	0.8114
95	0.0472	0.8586
100	0.0398	0.8984
105	0.0301	0.9285
110	0.0244	0.9529
115	0.0195	0.9724
120	0.0153	0.9877
125	0.0125	1.0002
130	0.0096	1.0098
135	0.0077	1.0175
140	0.0068	1.0243
145	0.0062	1.0305
150	0.0056	1.0361
155	0.0050	1.0411
160	0.0044	1.0455
165	0.0038	1.0493
170	0.0032	1.0525
175	0.0026	1.0551
180	0.0020	1.0571

Table 2. Dimensionless Ordinates of the Intermediate-Duration Design Storm.

DIMENSIONLESS ORDINATES OF INTERMEDIATE-DURATION DESIGN STORM								
ELAPSED TIME (Hr)	INCRM ORDINATE	SUM ORDINATE	ELAPSED TIME (Hr)	INRM ORDINATE	SUM ORDINATE	ELAPSED TIME (Hr)	INCRM ORDINATE	SUM ORDINATE
0.00	0.0000	0.0000	6.17	0.0118	0.1972	12.17	0.0210	1.1731
0.17	0.0020	0.0020	6.33	0.0123	0.2095	12.33	0.0201	1.1932
0.33	0.0020	0.0040	6.50	0.0129	0.2224	12.50	0.0193	1.2125
0.50	0.0020	0.0060	6.67	0.0136	0.2360	12.67	0.0184	1.2309
0.67	0.0020	0.0080	6.83	0.0142	0.2502	12.83	0.0176	1.2485
0.83	0.0020	0.0100	7.00	0.0150	0.2652	13.00	0.0168	1.2653
1.00	0.0021	0.0121	7.17	0.0163	0.2815	13.17	0.0154	1.2807
1.17	0.0021	0.0142	7.33	0.0171	0.2986	13.33	0.0147	1.2954
1.33	0.0021	0.0163	7.50	0.0180	0.3166	13.50	0.0140	1.3094
1.50	0.0021	0.0184	7.67	0.0188	0.3354	13.67	0.0132	1.3226
1.67	0.0021	0.0205	7.83	0.0197	0.3551	13.83	0.0127	1.3353
1.83	0.0022	0.0227	8.00	0.0205	0.3756	14.00	0.0121	1.3474
2.00	0.0022	0.0249	8.17	0.0215	0.3971	14.17	0.0116	1.3590
2.17	0.0023	0.0272	8.33	0.0224	0.4195	14.33	0.0113	1.3703
2.33	0.0023	0.0295	8.50	0.0229	0.4424	14.50	0.0111	1.3814
2.50	0.0024	0.0319	8.67	0.0232	0.4656	14.67	0.0109	1.3923
2.67	0.0025	0.0344	8.83	0.0237	0.4893	14.83	0.0107	1.4030
2.83	0.0028	0.0372	9.00	0.0257	0.5150	15.00	0.0105	1.4135
3.00	0.0030	0.0402	9.17	0.0290	0.5440	15.17	0.0103	1.4238
3.17	0.0034	0.0436	9.33	0.0320	0.5760	15.33	0.0098	1.4336
3.33	0.0038	0.0474	9.50	0.0338	0.6098	15.50	0.0093	1.4429
3.50	0.0042	0.0516	9.67	0.0349	0.6447	15.67	0.0085	1.4514
3.67	0.0046	0.0562	9.83	0.0411	0.6858	15.83	0.0078	1.4592
3.83	0.0054	0.0616	10.00	0.0540	0.7398	16.00	0.0070	1.4662
4.00	0.0062	0.0678	10.17	0.0760	0.8158	16.17	0.0062	1.4724
4.17	0.0070	0.0748	10.33	0.0470	0.8628	16.33	0.0054	1.4778
4.33	0.0079	0.0827	10.50	0.0372	0.9000	16.50	0.0049	1.4827
4.50	0.0085	0.0912	10.67	0.0347	0.9347	16.67	0.0044	1.4871
4.67	0.0090	0.1002	10.83	0.0337	0.9684	16.83	0.0039	1.4910
4.83	0.0095	0.1097	11.00	0.0330	1.0014	17.00	0.0035	1.4945
5.00	0.0100	0.1197	11.17	0.0308	1.0322	17.17	0.0032	1.4977
5.17	0.0104	0.1301	11.33	0.0269	1.0591	17.33	0.0029	1.5006
5.33	0.0107	0.1408	11.50	0.0247	1.0838	17.50	0.0026	1.5032
5.50	0.0109	0.1517	11.67	0.0237	1.1075	17.67	0.0024	1.5056
5.67	0.0110	0.1627	11.83	0.0228	1.1303	17.83	0.0024	1.5080
5.83	0.0113	0.1740	12.00	0.0218	1.1521	18.00	0.0023	1.5103
6.00	0.0114	0.1854						

Table 3. Dimensionless Ordinates of Front-Loaded Long-Duration Design Storm.

DIMENSIONLESS ORDINATES OF INTERMEDIATE-DURATION DESIGN STORM								
ELAPSED TIME (Hr)	INCRM ORDINATE	SUM ORDINATE	ELAPSED TIME (Hr)	INRM ORDINATE	SUM ORDINATE	ELAPSED TIME (Hr)	INCRM ORDINATE	SUM ORDINATE
0.00	0.0000	0.0000	7.17	0.0018	0.0569	14.17	0.0072	0.2570
0.17	0.0001	0.0001	7.33	0.0019	0.0588	14.33	0.0073	0.2643
0.33	0.0003	0.0004	7.50	0.0019	0.0607	14.50	0.0074	0.2717
0.50	0.0005	0.0009	7.67	0.0020	0.0627	14.67	0.0075	0.2792
0.67	0.0007	0.0016	7.83	0.0022	0.0649	14.83	0.0076	0.2868
0.83	0.0009	0.0025	8.00	0.0024	0.0673	15.00	0.0077	0.2945
1.00	0.0010	0.0035	8.17	0.0026	0.0699	15.17	0.0078	0.3023
1.17	0.0011	0.0046	8.33	0.0028	0.0727	15.33	0.0078	0.3101
1.33	0.0012	0.0058	8.50	0.0030	0.0757	15.50	0.0078	0.3179
1.50	0.0013	0.0071	8.67	0.0032	0.0789	15.67	0.0079	0.3258
1.67	0.0013	0.0084	8.83	0.0034	0.0823	15.83	0.0079	0.3337
1.83	0.0013	0.0097	9.00	0.0036	0.0859	16.00	0.0079	0.3416
2.00	0.0013	0.0110	9.17	0.0038	0.0897	16.17	0.0081	0.3497
2.17	0.0013	0.0123	9.33	0.0040	0.0937	16.33	0.0082	0.3579
2.33	0.0013	0.0136	9.50	0.0042	0.0979	16.50	0.0082	0.3661
2.50	0.0014	0.0150	9.67	0.0045	0.1024	16.67	0.0093	0.3754
2.67	0.0014	0.0164	9.83	0.0047	0.1071	16.83	0.0099	0.3853
2.83	0.0014	0.0178	10.00	0.0048	0.1119	17.00	0.0102	0.3955
3.00	0.0014	0.0192	10.17	0.0049	0.1168	17.17	0.0104	0.4059
3.17	0.0014	0.0206	10.33	0.0049	0.1217	17.33	0.0107	0.4166
3.33	0.0014	0.0220	10.50	0.0049	0.1266	17.50	0.0114	0.4280
3.50	0.0014	0.0234	10.67	0.0050	0.1316	17.67	0.0118	0.4398
3.67	0.0014	0.0248	10.83	0.0051	0.1367	17.83	0.0142	0.4540
3.83	0.0014	0.0262	11.00	0.0051	0.1418	18.00	0.0220	0.4760
4.00	0.0014	0.0276	11.17	0.0053	0.1471	18.17	0.0290	0.5050
4.17	0.0014	0.0290	11.33	0.0053	0.1524	18.33	0.0160	0.5210
4.33	0.0015	0.0305	11.50	0.0054	0.1578	18.50	0.0127	0.5337
4.50	0.0015	0.0320	11.67	0.0054	0.1632	18.67	0.0116	0.5453
4.67	0.0015	0.0335	11.83	0.0054	0.1686	18.83	0.0110	0.5563
4.83	0.0015	0.0350	12.00	0.0055	0.1741	19.00	0.0106	0.5669
5.00	0.0015	0.0365	12.17	0.0055	0.1796	19.17	0.0102	0.5771
5.17	0.0015	0.0380	12.33	0.0056	0.1852	19.33	0.0096	0.5867
5.33	0.0015	0.0395	12.50	0.0057	0.1909	19.50	0.0082	0.5949
5.50	0.0015	0.0410	12.67	0.0058	0.1967	19.67	0.0082	0.6031
5.67	0.0015	0.0425	12.83	0.0060	0.2027	19.83	0.0082	0.6113
5.83	0.0015	0.0440	13.00	0.0062	0.2089	20.00	0.0081	0.6194
6.00	0.0015	0.0455	13.17	0.0064	0.2153	20.17	0.0080	0.6274
6.17	0.0015	0.0470	13.33	0.0066	0.2219	20.33	0.0079	0.6353
6.33	0.0015	0.0485	13.50	0.0068	0.2287	20.50	0.0079	0.6432

Table 3 (continued). Dimensionless Ordinates of
Front-Loaded Long-Duration Design Storm.

DIMENSIONLESS ORDINATES OF INTERMEDIATE-DURATION DESIGN STORM								
ELAPSED TIME (Hr)	INCRM ORDINATE	SUM ORDINATE	ELAPSED TIME (Hr)	INRM ORDINATE	SUM ORDINATE	ELAPSED TIME (Hr)	INCRM ORDINATE	SUM ORDINATE
6.50	0.0016	0.0501	13.67	0.0069	0.2356	20.67	0.0078	0.6510
6.67	0.0016	0.0517	13.83	0.0070	0.2426	20.83	0.0078	0.6588
6.83	0.0017	0.0534	14.00	0.0072	0.2498	21.00	0.0077	0.6665
7.00	0.0017	0.0551						
21.17	0.0077	0.6742	30.17	0.0050	1.0069	39.17	0.0000	1.0984
21.33	0.0077	0.6819	30.33	0.0049	1.0118	39.33	0.0000	1.0984
21.50	0.0077	0.6896	30.50	0.0049	1.0167	39.50	0.0000	1.0984
21.67	0.0076	0.6972	30.67	0.0049	1.0216	39.67	0.0000	1.0984
21.83	0.0075	0.7047	30.83	0.0049	1.0265	39.83	0.0000	1.0984
22.00	0.0075	0.7122	31.00	0.0048	1.0313	40.00	0.0000	1.0984
22.17	0.0074	0.7196	31.17	0.0048	1.0361	40.17	0.0000	1.0984
22.33	0.0074	0.7270	31.33	0.0048	1.0409	40.33	0.0000	1.0984
22.50	0.0073	0.7343	31.50	0.0047	1.0456	40.50	0.0000	1.0984
22.67	0.0073	0.7416	31.67	0.0046	1.0502	40.67	0.0000	1.0984
22.83	0.0073	0.7489	31.83	0.0045	1.0547	40.83	0.0000	1.0984
23.00	0.0072	0.7561	32.00	0.0044	1.0591	41.00	0.0000	1.0984
23.17	0.0072	0.7633	32.17	0.0043	1.0634	41.17	0.0000	1.0984
23.33	0.0072	0.7705	32.33	0.0042	1.0676	41.33	0.0000	1.0984
23.50	0.0071	0.7776	32.50	0.0041	1.0717	41.50	0.0000	1.0984
23.67	0.0071	0.7847	32.67	0.0039	1.0756	41.67	0.0000	1.0984
23.83	0.0070	0.7917	32.83	0.0038	1.0794	41.83	0.0000	1.0984
24.00	0.0070	0.7987	33.00	0.0037	1.0831	42.00	0.0000	1.0984
24.17	0.0069	0.8056	33.17	0.0033	1.0864	42.17	0.0000	1.0984
24.33	0.0068	0.8124	33.33	0.0029	1.0893	42.33	0.0000	1.0984
24.50	0.0067	0.8191	33.50	0.0025	1.0918	42.50	0.0000	1.0984
24.67	0.0067	0.8258	33.67	0.0021	1.0939	42.67	0.0000	1.0984
24.83	0.0066	0.8324	33.83	0.0017	1.0956	42.83	0.0000	1.0984
25.00	0.0065	0.8389	34.00	0.0013	1.0969	43.00	0.0000	1.0984
25.17	0.0062	0.8451	34.17	0.0009	1.0978	43.17	0.0000	1.0984
25.33	0.0062	0.8513	34.33	0.0005	1.0983	43.33	0.0000	1.0984
25.50	0.0060	0.8573	34.50	0.0001	1.0984	43.50	0.0000	1.0984
25.67	0.0059	0.8632	34.67	0.0000	1.0984	43.67	0.0000	1.0984
25.83	0.0059	0.8691	34.83	0.0000	1.0984	43.83	0.0000	1.0984
26.00	0.0058	0.8749	35.00	0.0000	1.0984	44.00	0.0000	1.0984
26.17	0.0057	0.8806	35.17	0.0000	1.0984	44.17	0.0000	1.0984
26.33	0.0056	0.8862	35.33	0.0000	1.0984	44.33	0.0000	1.0984
26.50	0.0055	0.8917	35.50	0.0000	1.0984	44.50	0.0000	1.0984
26.67	0.0055	0.8972	35.67	0.0000	1.0984	44.67	0.0000	1.0984

**Table 3 (continued). Dimensionless Ordinates of
Front-Loaded Long-Duration Design Storm.**

DIMENSIONLESS ORDINATES OF INTERMEDIATE-DURATION DESIGN STORM								
ELAPSED TIME (Hr)	INCRM ORDINATE	SUM ORDINATE	ELAPSED TIME (Hr)	INRM ORDINATE	SUM ORDINATE	ELAPSED TIME (Hr)	INCRM ORDINATE	SUM ORDINATE
26.83	0.0055	0.9027	35.83	0.0000	1.0984	44.83	0.0000	1.0984
27.00	0.0055	0.9082	36.00	0.0000	1.0984	45.00	0.0000	1.0984
27.17	0.0054	0.9136	36.17	0.0000	1.0984	45.17	0.0000	1.0984
27.33	0.0054	0.9190	36.33	0.0000	1.0984	45.33	0.0000	1.0984
27.50	0.0054	0.9244	36.50	0.0000	1.0984	45.50	0.0000	1.0984
27.67	0.0053	0.9297	36.67	0.0000	1.0984	45.67	0.0000	1.0984
27.83	0.0053	0.9350	36.83	0.0000	1.0984	45.83	0.0000	1.0984
28.00	0.0053	0.9403	37.00	0.0000	1.0984	46.00	0.0000	1.0984
28.17	0.0053	0.9456	37.17	0.0000	1.0984	46.17	0.0000	1.0984
28.33	0.0052	0.9508	37.33	0.0000	1.0984	46.33	0.0000	1.0984
28.50	0.0052	0.9560	37.50	0.0000	1.0984	46.50	0.0000	1.0984
28.67	0.0052	0.9612	37.67	0.0000	1.0984	46.67	0.0000	1.0984
28.83	0.0052	0.9664	37.83	0.0000	1.0984	46.83	0.0000	1.0984
29.00	0.0052	0.9716	38.00	0.0000	1.0984	47.00	0.0000	1.0984
29.17	0.0051	0.9767	38.17	0.0000	1.0984	47.17	0.0000	1.0984
29.33	0.0051	0.9818	38.33	0.0000	1.0984	47.33	0.0000	1.0984
29.50	0.0051	0.9869	38.50	0.0000	1.0984	47.50	0.0000	1.0984
29.67	0.0050	0.9919	38.67	0.0000	1.0984	47.67	0.0001	1.0985
29.83	0.0050	0.9969	38.83	0.0000	1.0984	47.83	0.0002	1.0987
30.00	0.0050	1.0019	39.00	0.0000	1.0984	48.00	0.0003	1.0990
48.17	0.0004	1.0994	56.17	0.0026	1.2422			
48.33	0.0005	1.0999	56.33	0.0024	1.2446			
48.50	0.0006	1.1005	56.50	0.0023	1.2469			
48.67	0.0007	1.1012	56.67	0.0023	1.2492			
48.83	0.0007	1.1019	56.83	0.0022	1.2514			
49.00	0.0007	1.1026	57.00	0.0021	1.2535			
49.17	0.0007	1.1033	57.17	0.0019	1.2554			
49.33	0.0007	1.1040	57.33	0.0017	1.2571			
49.50	0.0007	1.1047	57.50	0.0016	1.2587			
49.67	0.0007	1.1054	57.67	0.0015	1.2602			
49.83	0.0007	1.1061	57.83	0.0015	1.2617			
50.00	0.0007	1.1068	58.00	0.0015	1.2632			
50.17	0.0007	1.1075	58.17	0.0015	1.2647			
50.33	0.0008	1.1083	58.33	0.0015	1.2662			
50.50	0.0009	1.1092	58.50	0.0015	1.2677			
50.67	0.0010	1.1102	58.67	0.0014	1.2691			
50.83	0.0011	1.1113	58.83	0.0014	1.2705			
51.00	0.0012	1.1125	59.00	0.0013	1.2718			

Table 3 (continued). Dimensionless Ordinates of
Front-Loaded Long-Duration Design Storm.

DIMENSIONLESS ORDINATES OF INTERMEDIATE-DURATION DESIGN STORM								
ELAPSED TIME (Hr)	INCRM ORDINATE	SUM ORDINATE	ELAPSED TIME (Hr)	INRM ORDINATE	SUM ORDINATE	ELAPSED TIME (Hr)	INCRM ORDINATE	SUM ORDINATE
51.17	0.0013	1.1138	59.17	0.0013	1.2731			
51.33	0.0014	1.1152	59.33	0.0012	1.2743			
51.50	0.0014	1.1166	59.50	0.0012	1.2755			
51.67	0.0014	1.1180	59.67	0.0011	1.2766			
51.83	0.0014	1.1194	59.83	0.0010	1.2776			
52.00	0.0015	1.1209	60.00	0.0009	1.2785			
52.17	0.0016	1.1225	60.17	0.0009	1.2794			
52.33	0.0018	1.1243	60.33	0.0008	1.2802			
52.50	0.0020	1.1263	60.50	0.0008	1.2810			
52.67	0.0021	1.1284	60.67	0.0007	1.2817			
52.83	0.0023	1.1307	60.83	0.0007	1.2824			
53.00	0.0023	1.1330	61.00	0.0007	1.2831			
53.17	0.0024	1.1354	61.17	0.0007	1.2838			
53.33	0.0026	1.1380	61.33	0.0007	1.2845			
53.50	0.0028	1.1408	61.50	0.0007	1.2852			
53.67	0.0032	1.1440	61.67	0.0007	1.2859			
53.83	0.0039	1.1479	61.83	0.0007	1.2866			
54.00	0.0048	1.1527	62.00	0.0007	1.2873			
54.17	0.0056	1.1583	62.17	0.0007	1.2880			
54.33	0.0076	1.1659	62.33	0.0007	1.2887			
54.50	0.0096	1.1755	62.50	0.0007	1.2894			
54.67	0.0133	1.1888	62.67	0.0006	1.2900			
54.83	0.0133	1.2021	62.83	0.0005	1.2905			
55.00	0.0096	1.2117	63.00	0.0004	1.2909			
55.17	0.0076	1.2193	63.17	0.0003	1.2912			
55.33	0.0056	1.2249	63.33	0.0002	1.2914			
55.50	0.0048	1.2297	63.50	0.0001	1.2915			
55.67	0.0039	1.2336	63.67	0.0000	1.2915			
55.83	0.0032	1.2368	63.83	0.0000	1.2915			
56.00	0.0028	1.2396	64.00	0.0000	1.2915			

Table 4. Dimensionless Ordinates of Back-Loaded Long-Duration Design Storm.

DIMENSIONLESS ORDINATES OF BACK-LOADED LONG-DURATION DESIGN STORM								
ELAPSED TIME (Hr)	INCRM ORDINATE	SUM ORDINATE	ELAPSED TIME (Hr)	INCRM ORDINATE	SUM ORDINATE	ELAPSED TIME (Hr)	INCRM ORDINATE	SUM ORDINATE
0.00	0.0000	0.0000	8.17	0.0039	0.1352	16.17	0.0000	0.1931
0.17	0.0001	0.0001	8.33	0.0032	0.1384	16.33	0.0000	0.1931
0.33	0.0002	0.0003	8.50	0.0028	0.1412	16.50	0.0000	0.1931
0.50	0.0003	0.0006	8.67	0.0026	0.1438	16.67	0.0000	0.1931
0.67	0.0004	0.0010	8.83	0.0024	0.1462	16.83	0.0000	0.1931
0.83	0.0005	0.0015	9.00	0.0023	0.1485	17.00	0.0000	0.1931
1.00	0.0006	0.0021	9.17	0.0023	0.1508	17.17	0.0000	0.1931
1.17	0.0007	0.0028	9.33	0.0022	0.1530	17.33	0.0000	0.1931
1.33	0.0007	0.0035	9.50	0.0021	0.1551	17.50	0.0000	0.1931
1.50	0.0007	0.0042	9.67	0.0019	0.1570	17.67	0.0000	0.1931
1.67	0.0007	0.0049	9.83	0.0017	0.1587	17.83	0.0000	0.1931
1.83	0.0007	0.0056	10.00	0.0016	0.1603	18.00	0.0000	0.1931
2.00	0.0007	0.0063	10.17	0.0015	0.1618	18.17	0.0000	0.1931
2.17	0.0007	0.0070	10.33	0.0015	0.1633	18.33	0.0000	0.1931
2.33	0.0007	0.0077	10.50	0.0015	0.1648	18.50	0.0000	0.1931
2.50	0.0007	0.0084	10.67	0.0015	0.1663	18.67	0.0000	0.1931
2.67	0.0007	0.0091	10.83	0.0015	0.1678	18.83	0.0000	0.1931
2.83	0.0008	0.0099	11.00	0.0015	0.1693	19.00	0.0000	0.1931
3.00	0.0009	0.0108	11.17	0.0014	0.1707	19.17	0.0000	0.1931
3.17	0.0010	0.0118	11.33	0.0014	0.1721	19.33	0.0000	0.1931
3.33	0.0011	0.0129	11.50	0.0013	0.1734	19.50	0.0000	0.1931
3.50	0.0012	0.0141	11.67	0.0013	0.1747	19.67	0.0000	0.1931
3.67	0.0013	0.0154	11.83	0.0012	0.1759	19.83	0.0000	0.1931
3.83	0.0014	0.0168	12.00	0.0012	0.1771	20.00	0.0000	0.1931
4.00	0.0014	0.0182	12.17	0.0011	0.1782	20.17	0.0000	0.1931
4.17	0.0014	0.0196	12.33	0.0010	0.1792	20.33	0.0000	0.1931
4.33	0.0014	0.0210	12.50	0.0009	0.1801	20.50	0.0000	0.1931
4.50	0.0015	0.0225	12.67	0.0009	0.1810	20.67	0.0000	0.1931
4.67	0.0016	0.0241	12.83	0.0008	0.1818	20.83	0.0000	0.1931
4.83	0.0018	0.0259	13.00	0.0008	0.1826	21.00	0.0000	0.1931
5.00	0.0020	0.0279	13.17	0.0007	0.1833	21.17	0.0000	0.1931
5.17	0.0021	0.0300	13.33	0.0007	0.1840	21.33	0.0000	0.1931
5.33	0.0023	0.0323	13.50	0.0007	0.1847	21.50	0.0000	0.1931
5.50	0.0023	0.0346	13.67	0.0007	0.1854	21.67	0.0000	0.1931
5.67	0.0024	0.0370	13.83	0.0007	0.1861	21.83	0.0000	0.1931
5.83	0.0026	0.0396	14.00	0.0007	0.1868	22.00	0.0000	0.1931
6.00	0.0028	0.0424	14.17	0.0007	0.1875	22.17	0.0000	0.1931
6.17	0.0032	0.0456	14.33	0.0007	0.1882	22.33	0.0000	0.1931
6.33	0.0039	0.0495	14.50	0.0007	0.1889	22.50	0.0000	0.1931
6.50	0.0048	0.0543	14.67	0.0007	0.1896	22.67	0.0000	0.1931

Table 4 (continued). Dimensionless Ordinates of Back-Loaded Long-Duration Design Storm.

DIMENSIONLESS ORDINATES OF BACK-LOADED LONG-DURATION DESIGN STORM								
ELAPSED TIME (Hr)	INCRM ORDINATE	SUM ORDINATE	ELAPSED TIME (Hr)	INCRM ORDINATE	SUM ORDINATE	ELAPSED TIME (Hr)	INCRM ORDINATE	SUM ORDINATE
6.67	0.0056	0.0599	14.83	0.0007	0.1903	22.83	0.0000	0.1931
6.83	0.0076	0.0675	15.00	0.0007	0.1910	23.00	0.0000	0.1931
7.00	0.0096	0.0771	15.17	0.0006	0.1916	23.17	0.0000	0.1931
7.17	0.0133	0.0904	15.33	0.0005	0.1921	23.33	0.0000	0.1931
7.33	0.0133	0.1037	15.50	0.0004	0.1925	23.50	0.0000	0.1931
7.50	0.0096	0.1133	15.67	0.0003	0.1928	23.67	0.0000	0.1931
7.67	0.0076	0.1209	15.83	0.0002	0.1930	23.83	0.0000	0.1931
7.83	0.0056	0.1265	16.00	0.0001	0.1931	24.00	0.0000	0.1931
8.00	0.0048	0.1313						
24.17	0.0000	0.1931	32.17	0.0014	0.2137	40.17	0.0053	0.3402
24.33	0.0000	0.1931	32.33	0.0014	0.2151	40.33	0.0053	0.3455
24.50	0.0000	0.1931	32.50	0.0014	0.2165	40.50	0.0054	0.3509
24.67	0.0000	0.1931	32.67	0.0014	0.2179	40.67	0.0054	0.3563
24.83	0.0000	0.1931	32.83	0.0014	0.2193	40.83	0.0054	0.3617
25.00	0.0000	0.1931	33.00	0.0014	0.2207	41.00	0.0055	0.3672
25.17	0.0000	0.1931	33.17	0.0014	0.2221	41.17	0.0055	0.3727
25.33	0.0000	0.1931	33.33	0.0015	0.2236	41.33	0.0056	0.3783
25.50	0.0000	0.1931	33.50	0.0015	0.2251	41.50	0.0057	0.3840
25.67	0.0000	0.1931	33.67	0.0015	0.2266	41.67	0.0058	0.3898
25.83	0.0000	0.1931	33.83	0.0015	0.2281	41.83	0.0060	0.3958
26.00	0.0000	0.1931	34.00	0.0015	0.2296	42.00	0.0062	0.4020
26.17	0.0000	0.1931	34.17	0.0015	0.2311	42.17	0.0064	0.4084
26.33	0.0000	0.1931	34.33	0.0015	0.2326	42.33	0.0066	0.4150
26.50	0.0000	0.1931	34.50	0.0015	0.2341	42.50	0.0068	0.4218
26.67	0.0000	0.1931	34.67	0.0015	0.2356	42.67	0.0069	0.4287
26.83	0.0000	0.1931	34.83	0.0015	0.2371	42.83	0.0070	0.4357
27.00	0.0000	0.1931	35.00	0.0015	0.2386	43.00	0.0072	0.4429
27.17	0.0000	0.1931	35.17	0.0015	0.2401	43.17	0.0072	0.4501
27.33	0.0000	0.1931	35.33	0.0015	0.2416	43.33	0.0073	0.4574
27.50	0.0000	0.1931	35.50	0.0016	0.2432	43.50	0.0074	0.4648
27.67	0.0000	0.1931	35.67	0.0016	0.2448	43.67	0.0075	0.4723
27.83	0.0000	0.1931	35.83	0.0017	0.2465	43.83	0.0076	0.4799
28.00	0.0000	0.1931	36.00	0.0017	0.2482	44.00	0.0077	0.4876
28.17	0.0000	0.1931	36.17	0.0018	0.2500	44.17	0.0078	0.4954
28.33	0.0000	0.1931	36.33	0.0019	0.2519	44.33	0.0078	0.5032
28.50	0.0000	0.1931	36.50	0.0019	0.2538	44.50	0.0078	0.5110
28.67	0.0000	0.1931	36.67	0.0020	0.2558	44.67	0.0079	0.5189
28.83	0.0000	0.1931	36.83	0.0022	0.2580	44.83	0.0079	0.5268
29.00	0.0000	0.1931	37.00	0.0024	0.2604	45.00	0.0079	0.5347

Table 4 (continued). Dimensionless Ordinates of Back-Loaded Long-Duration Design Storm.

DIMENSIONLESS ORDINATES OF BACK-LOADED LONG-DURATION DESIGN STORM								
ELAPSED TIME (Hr)	INCRM ORDINATE	SUM ORDINATE	ELAPSED TIME (Hr)	INCRM ORDINATE	SUM ORDINATE	ELAPSED TIME (Hr)	INCRM ORDINATE	SUM ORDINATE
29.17	0.0001	0.1932	37.17	0.0026	0.2630	45.17	0.0081	0.5428
29.33	0.0003	0.1935	37.33	0.0028	0.2658	45.33	0.0082	0.5510
29.50	0.0005	0.1940	37.50	0.0030	0.2688	45.50	0.0082	0.5592
29.67	0.0007	0.1947	37.67	0.0032	0.2720	45.67	0.0093	0.5685
29.83	0.0009	0.1956	37.83	0.0034	0.2754	45.83	0.0099	0.5784
30.00	0.0010	0.1966	38.00	0.0036	0.2790	46.00	0.0102	0.5886
30.17	0.0011	0.1977	38.17	0.0038	0.2828	46.17	0.0104	0.5990
30.33	0.0012	0.1989	38.33	0.0040	0.2868	46.33	0.0107	0.6097
30.50	0.0013	0.2002	38.50	0.0042	0.2910	46.50	0.0114	0.6211
30.67	0.0013	0.2015	38.67	0.0045	0.2955	46.67	0.0118	0.6329
30.83	0.0013	0.2028	38.83	0.0047	0.3002	46.83	0.0142	0.6471
31.00	0.0013	0.2041	39.00	0.0048	0.3050	47.00	0.0220	0.6691
31.17	0.0013	0.2054	39.17	0.0049	0.3099	47.17	0.0290	0.6981
31.33	0.0013	0.2067	39.33	0.0049	0.3148	47.33	0.0160	0.7141
31.50	0.0014	0.2081	39.50	0.0049	0.3197	47.50	0.0127	0.7268
31.67	0.0014	0.2095	39.67	0.0050	0.3247	47.67	0.0116	0.7384
31.83	0.0014	0.2109	39.83	0.0051	0.3298	47.83	0.0110	0.7494
32.00	0.0014	0.2123	40.00	0.0051	0.3349	48.00	0.0106	0.7600
48.17	0.0102	0.7702	56.17	0.0054	1.1067			
48.33	0.0096	0.7798	56.33	0.0054	1.1121			
48.50	0.0082	0.7880	56.50	0.0054	1.1175			
48.67	0.0082	0.7962	56.67	0.0053	1.1228			
48.83	0.0082	0.8044	56.83	0.0053	1.1281			
49.00	0.0081	0.8125	57.00	0.0053	1.1334			
49.17	0.0080	0.8205	57.17	0.0053	1.1387			
49.33	0.0079	0.8284	57.33	0.0052	1.1439			
49.50	0.0079	0.8363	57.50	0.0052	1.1491			
49.67	0.0078	0.8441	57.67	0.0052	1.1543			
49.83	0.0078	0.8519	57.83	0.0052	1.1595			
50.00	0.0077	0.8596	58.00	0.0052	1.1647			
50.17	0.0077	0.8673	58.17	0.0051	1.1698			
50.33	0.0077	0.8750	58.33	0.0051	1.1749			
50.50	0.0077	0.8827	58.50	0.0051	1.1800			
50.67	0.0076	0.8903	58.67	0.0050	1.1850			
50.83	0.0075	0.8978	58.83	0.0050	1.1900			
51.00	0.0075	0.9053	59.00	0.0050	1.1950			
51.17	0.0074	0.9127	59.17	0.0050	1.2000			
51.33	0.0074	0.9201	59.33	0.0049	1.2049			
51.50	0.0073	0.9274	59.50	0.0049	1.2098			

Table 4 (continued). Dimensionless Ordinates of Back-Loaded Long-Duration Design Storm.

DIMENSIONLESS ORDINATES OF BACK-LOADED LONG-DURATION DESIGN STORM								
ELAPSED TIME (Hr)	INCRM ORDINATE	SUM ORDINATE	ELAPSED TIME (Hr)	INCRM ORDINATE	SUM ORDINATE	ELAPSED TIME (Hr)	INCRM ORDINATE	SUM ORDINATE
51.67	0.0073	0.9347	59.67	0.0049	1.2147			
51.83	0.0073	0.9420	59.83	0.0049	1.2196			
52.00	0.0072	0.9492	60.00	0.0048	1.2244			
52.17	0.0072	0.9564	60.17	0.0048	1.2292			
52.33	0.0072	0.9636	60.33	0.0048	1.2340			
52.50	0.0071	0.9707	60.50	0.0047	1.2387			
52.67	0.0071	0.9778	60.67	0.0046	1.2433			
52.83	0.0070	0.9848	60.83	0.0045	1.2478			
53.00	0.0070	0.9918	61.00	0.0044	1.2522			
53.17	0.0069	0.9987	61.17	0.0043	1.2565			
53.33	0.0068	1.0055	61.33	0.0042	1.2607			
53.50	0.0067	1.0122	61.50	0.0041	1.2648			
53.67	0.0067	1.0189	61.67	0.0039	1.2687			
53.83	0.0066	1.0255	61.83	0.0038	1.2725			
54.00	0.0065	1.0320	62.00	0.0037	1.2762			
54.17	0.0062	1.0382	62.17	0.0033	1.2795			
54.33	0.0062	1.0444	62.33	0.0029	1.2824			
54.50	0.0060	1.0504	62.50	0.0025	1.2849			
54.67	0.0059	1.0563	62.67	0.0021	1.2870			
54.83	0.0059	1.0622	62.83	0.0017	1.2887			
55.00	0.0058	1.0680	63.00	0.0013	1.2900			
55.17	0.0057	1.0737	63.17	0.0009	1.2909			
55.33	0.0056	1.0793	63.33	0.0005	1.2914			
55.50	0.0055	1.0848	63.50	0.0001	1.2915			
55.67	0.0055	1.0903	63.67	0.0000	1.2915			
55.83	0.0055	1.0958	63.83	0.0000	1.2915			
56.00	0.0055	1.1013	64.00	0.0000	1.2915			

Table 5. Dimensionless Ordinates of 24-Hour Design Storm.

DIMENSIONLESS ORDINATES OF 24-HOUR DESIGN STORM								
ELAPSED TIME (Hr)	INCRM ORDINATE	SUM ORDINATE	ELAPSED TIME (Hr)	INCRM ORDINATE	SUM ORDINATE	ELAPSED TIME (Hr)	INCRM ORDINATE	SUM ORDINATE
0.00	0.0000	0.0000	7.17	0.0080	0.2596	14.17	0.0072	0.6769
0.17	0.0036	0.0036	7.33	0.0082	0.2678	14.33	0.0072	0.6841
0.33	0.0038	0.0074	7.50	0.0084	0.2762	14.50	0.0072	0.6913
0.50	0.0040	0.0114	7.67	0.0088	0.2850	14.67	0.0071	0.6984
0.67	0.0042	0.0156	7.83	0.0093	0.2943	14.83	0.0071	0.7055
0.83	0.0045	0.0201	8.00	0.0099	0.3042	15.00	0.0070	0.7125
1.00	0.0047	0.0248	8.17	0.0102	0.3144	15.17	0.0070	0.7195
1.17	0.0048	0.0296	8.33	0.0104	0.3248	15.33	0.0069	0.7264
1.33	0.0049	0.0345	8.50	0.0107	0.3355	15.50	0.0068	0.7332
1.50	0.0049	0.0394	8.67	0.0114	0.3469	15.67	0.0067	0.7399
1.67	0.0049	0.0443	8.83	0.0127	0.3596	15.83	0.0066	0.7465
1.83	0.0050	0.0493	9.00	0.0142	0.3738	16.00	0.0065	0.7530
2.00	0.0051	0.0544	9.17	0.0220	0.3958	16.17	0.0064	0.7594
2.17	0.0051	0.0595	9.33	0.0290	0.4248	16.33	0.0063	0.7657
2.33	0.0053	0.0648	9.50	0.0160	0.4408	16.50	0.0062	0.7719
2.50	0.0053	0.0701	9.67	0.0127	0.4535	16.67	0.0060	0.7779
2.67	0.0054	0.0755	9.83	0.0116	0.4651	16.83	0.0059	0.7838
2.83	0.0054	0.0809	10.00	0.0110	0.4761	17.00	0.0059	0.7897
3.00	0.0054	0.0863	10.17	0.0106	0.4867	17.17	0.0058	0.7955
3.17	0.0055	0.0918	10.33	0.0102	0.4969	17.33	0.0057	0.8012
3.33	0.0055	0.0973	10.50	0.0096	0.5065	17.50	0.0056	0.8068
3.50	0.0056	0.1029	10.67	0.0089	0.5154	17.67	0.0055	0.8123
3.67	0.0057	0.1086	10.83	0.0085	0.5239	17.83	0.0055	0.8178
3.83	0.0058	0.1144	11.00	0.0083	0.5322	18.00	0.0055	0.8233
4.00	0.0060	0.1204	11.17	0.0082	0.5404	18.17	0.0055	0.8288
4.17	0.0062	0.1266	11.33	0.0081	0.5485	18.33	0.0054	0.8342
4.33	0.0064	0.1330	11.50	0.0080	0.5565	18.50	0.0054	0.8396
4.50	0.0066	0.1396	11.67	0.0079	0.5644	18.67	0.0054	0.8450
4.67	0.0068	0.1464	11.83	0.0078	0.5722	18.83	0.0053	0.8503
4.83	0.0069	0.1533	12.00	0.0078	0.5800	19.00	0.0053	0.8556
5.00	0.0070	0.1603	12.17	0.0077	0.5877	19.17	0.0053	0.8609
5.17	0.0072	0.1675	12.33	0.0077	0.5954	19.33	0.0053	0.8662
5.33	0.0072	0.1747	12.50	0.0076	0.6030	19.50	0.0052	0.8714
5.50	0.0073	0.1820	12.67	0.0076	0.6106	19.67	0.0052	0.8766
5.67	0.0074	0.1894	12.83	0.0075	0.6181	19.83	0.0052	0.8818
5.83	0.0075	0.1969	13.00	0.0075	0.6256	20.00	0.0052	0.8870
6.00	0.0076	0.2045	13.17	0.0074	0.6330	20.17	0.0052	0.8922
6.17	0.0077	0.2122	13.33	0.0074	0.6404	20.33	0.0051	0.8973
6.33	0.0078	0.2200	13.50	0.0074	0.6478	20.50	0.0051	0.9024
6.50	0.0078	0.2278	13.67	0.0073	0.6551	20.67	0.0051	0.9075

Table 5 (continued). Dimensionless Ordinates of 24-Hour Design Storm.

DIMENSIONLESS ORDINATES OF 24-HOUR DESIGN STORM								
ELAPSED TIME (Hr)	INCRM ORDINATE	SUM ORDINATE	ELAPSED TIME (Hr)	INCRM ORDINATE	SUM ORDINATE	ELAPSED TIME (Hr)	INCRM ORDINATE	SUM ORDINATE
6.67	0.0079	0.2357	13.83	0.0073	0.6624	20.83	0.0050	0.9125
6.83	0.0079	0.2436	14.00	0.0073	0.6697	21.00	0.0050	0.9175
7.00	0.0080	0.2516						
21.17	0.0050	0.9225						
21.33	0.0050	0.9275						
21.50	0.0049	0.9324						
21.67	0.0049	0.9373						
21.83	0.0049	0.9422						
22.00	0.0049	0.9471						
22.17	0.0048	0.9519						
22.33	0.0048	0.9567						
22.50	0.0048	0.9615						
22.67	0.0047	0.9662						
22.83	0.0046	0.9708						
23.00	0.0045	0.9753						
23.17	0.0044	0.9797						
23.33	0.0043	0.9840						
23.50	0.0042	0.9882						
23.67	0.0041	0.9923						
23.83	0.0039	0.9962						
24.00	0.0038	1.0000						

ATTACHMENT 2 – PRECIPITATION MAGNITUDE-FREQUENCY ESTIMATES FOR SPU RAIN GAUGE LOCATIONS (~~UP TO 2012 DATA ONLY~~)

This appendix contains adapted text and excerpted tables and figures from *Analysis of Precipitation-Frequency and Storm Characteristics for the City of Seattle* (MGS Engineering Consultants, Inc. for Seattle Public Utilities, January 2013). [A majority of the analysis presented here is from rain gauge data ending in 2012. Tables 1, 3, and 4 were updated based on a study performed in 2020. Updated information may be obtained from the SPU Rain Gauge Network Data Steward as it becomes available.](#)

The results of homogeneity analyses indicate that at-site mean values for precipitation do not vary across the Seattle Metropolitan Area for durations of 3 hours and less. Accordingly, one set of intensity-duration-frequency (IDF) curves can be developed that are applicable to the Seattle Metropolitan Area. Table 1 and Figures 1 and 2 provide precipitation intensities and IDF curves representative of the Seattle Metropolitan Area for durations from 5 to 180 minutes.

Table 1. Intensity-Duration-Frequency Values for Durations from 5 Minutes Through 180 Minutes for Selected Recurrence Intervals for the Seattle Metropolitan Area.

<u>DURATION (minutes)</u>	<u>DURATION (hours minutes)</u>	PRECIPITATION INTENSITIES (in/hr)							
		RECURRENCE INTERVAL (years)							
		6-Month	2-Yr	5-Yr	10-Yr	20-Yr	25-Yr	50-Yr	100-Yr
<u>5</u>	<u>0.08335</u>	<u>1.024.04</u>	<u>1.314.60</u>	<u>1.622.08</u>	<u>2.062.45</u>	<u>2.392.92</u>	<u>2.793.08</u>	<u>2.923.64</u>	<u>3.354.20</u>
<u>6</u>	<u>0.10006</u>	<u>0.970.92</u>	<u>1.234.45</u>	<u>1.524.87</u>	<u>1.932.24</u>	<u>2.232.62</u>	<u>2.602.76</u>	<u>2.723.23</u>	<u>3.103.75</u>
<u>8</u>	<u>0.13338</u>	<u>0.860.80</u>	<u>1.084.24</u>	<u>1.334.59</u>	<u>1.674.87</u>	<u>1.942.24</u>	<u>2.252.32</u>	<u>2.352.74</u>	<u>2.683.13</u>
<u>10</u>	<u>0.16674</u>	<u>0.760.74</u>	<u>0.964.10</u>	<u>1.174.40</u>	<u>1.484.64</u>	<u>1.704.93</u>	<u>1.982.03</u>	<u>2.072.36</u>	<u>2.362.72</u>
<u>12</u>	<u>0.20004</u>	<u>0.690.65</u>	<u>0.864.00</u>	<u>1.054.27</u>	<u>1.324.48</u>	<u>1.534.74</u>	<u>1.774.82</u>	<u>1.852.14</u>	<u>2.112.43</u>
<u>15</u>	<u>0.25004</u>	<u>0.600.58</u>	<u>0.750.88</u>	<u>0.924.12</u>	<u>1.154.30</u>	<u>1.334.52</u>	<u>1.544.60</u>	<u>1.614.84</u>	<u>1.832.14</u>
<u>20</u>	<u>0.33332</u>	<u>0.510.50</u>	<u>0.630.75</u>	<u>0.770.95</u>	<u>0.964.10</u>	<u>1.114.28</u>	<u>1.284.34</u>	<u>1.344.54</u>	<u>1.534.76</u>
<u>25</u>	<u>0.41672</u>	<u>0.450.45</u>	<u>0.560.67</u>	<u>0.670.84</u>	<u>0.840.97</u>	<u>0.964.12</u>	<u>1.114.18</u>	<u>1.164.35</u>	<u>1.324.53</u>
<u>30</u>	<u>0.50003</u>	<u>0.410.44</u>	<u>0.500.64</u>	<u>0.600.76</u>	<u>0.750.87</u>	<u>0.864.04</u>	<u>1.004.05</u>	<u>1.044.24</u>	<u>1.184.37</u>
<u>35</u>	<u>0.58333</u>	<u>0.370.38</u>	<u>0.460.56</u>	<u>0.550.69</u>	<u>0.690.80</u>	<u>0.790.92</u>	<u>0.910.96</u>	<u>0.954.10</u>	<u>1.074.24</u>
<u>40</u>	<u>0.66674</u>	<u>0.350.35</u>	<u>0.430.52</u>	<u>0.510.64</u>	<u>0.640.74</u>	<u>0.730.85</u>	<u>0.840.89</u>	<u>0.874.04</u>	<u>0.994.14</u>
<u>45</u>	<u>0.75004</u>	<u>0.330.33</u>	<u>0.400.49</u>	<u>0.480.60</u>	<u>0.600.69</u>	<u>0.680.79</u>	<u>0.780.83</u>	<u>0.820.94</u>	<u>0.924.06</u>
<u>50</u>	<u>0.83335</u>	<u>0.310.32</u>	<u>0.380.46</u>	<u>0.460.57</u>	<u>0.560.65</u>	<u>0.640.74</u>	<u>0.740.78</u>	<u>0.770.88</u>	<u>0.870.99</u>
<u>55</u>	<u>0.91675</u>	<u>0.300.30</u>	<u>0.360.44</u>	<u>0.430.54</u>	<u>0.530.64</u>	<u>0.610.70</u>	<u>0.700.73</u>	<u>0.730.83</u>	<u>0.820.94</u>
<u>60</u>	<u>1.00006</u>	<u>0.290.29</u>	<u>0.350.42</u>	<u>0.420.54</u>	<u>0.510.58</u>	<u>0.580.67</u>	<u>0.660.70</u>	<u>0.690.79</u>	<u>0.780.89</u>
<u>65</u>	<u>1.08336</u>	<u>0.280.28</u>	<u>0.340.40</u>	<u>0.400.49</u>	<u>0.490.56</u>	<u>0.560.64</u>	<u>0.630.66</u>	<u>0.660.75</u>	<u>0.740.84</u>
<u>70</u>	<u>1.16677</u>	<u>0.270.27</u>	<u>0.320.38</u>	<u>0.380.47</u>	<u>0.470.53</u>	<u>0.530.64</u>	<u>0.610.64</u>	<u>0.630.72</u>	<u>0.710.80</u>
<u>80</u>	<u>1.33338</u>	<u>0.250.25</u>	<u>0.300.36</u>	<u>0.360.43</u>	<u>0.440.49</u>	<u>0.500.56</u>	<u>0.570.59</u>	<u>0.590.66</u>	<u>0.660.74</u>
<u>90</u>	<u>1.50009</u>	<u>0.240.24</u>	<u>0.290.33</u>	<u>0.340.41</u>	<u>0.410.46</u>	<u>0.470.52</u>	<u>0.530.55</u>	<u>0.550.62</u>	<u>0.620.69</u>
<u>100</u>	<u>1.66674</u>	<u>0.230.22</u>	<u>0.270.32</u>	<u>0.320.38</u>	<u>0.390.43</u>	<u>0.440.49</u>	<u>0.500.54</u>	<u>0.520.58</u>	<u>0.580.64</u>
<u>120</u>	<u>2.00004</u>	<u>0.210.20</u>	<u>0.250.29</u>	<u>0.300.35</u>	<u>0.360.39</u>	<u>0.400.44</u>	<u>0.460.46</u>	<u>0.470.52</u>	<u>0.530.57</u>
<u>140</u>	<u>2.33334</u>	<u>0.200.19</u>	<u>0.240.26</u>	<u>0.280.32</u>	<u>0.330.36</u>	<u>0.370.40</u>	<u>0.420.42</u>	<u>0.440.47</u>	<u>0.490.52</u>
<u>160</u>	<u>2.66674</u>	<u>0.190.18</u>	<u>0.220.24</u>	<u>0.260.29</u>	<u>0.310.33</u>	<u>0.350.37</u>	<u>0.390.39</u>	<u>0.410.43</u>	<u>0.450.48</u>
<u>180</u>	<u>3.00004</u>	<u>0.180.17</u>	<u>0.210.23</u>	<u>0.250.27</u>	<u>0.290.34</u>	<u>0.330.35</u>	<u>0.370.36</u>	<u>0.380.40</u>	<u>0.420.45</u>

Table 2. Two-Hour Precipitation Magnitude-Frequency Values for Selected Recurrence Intervals for the Seattle Metropolitan Area.

Recurrence Interval	2-Hour Total (inches)
6-month	0.40
2-yr	0.58
5-yr	0.70
10-yr	0.78
20-yr	0.88
25-yr	0.92
50-yr	1.04
100-yr	1.14

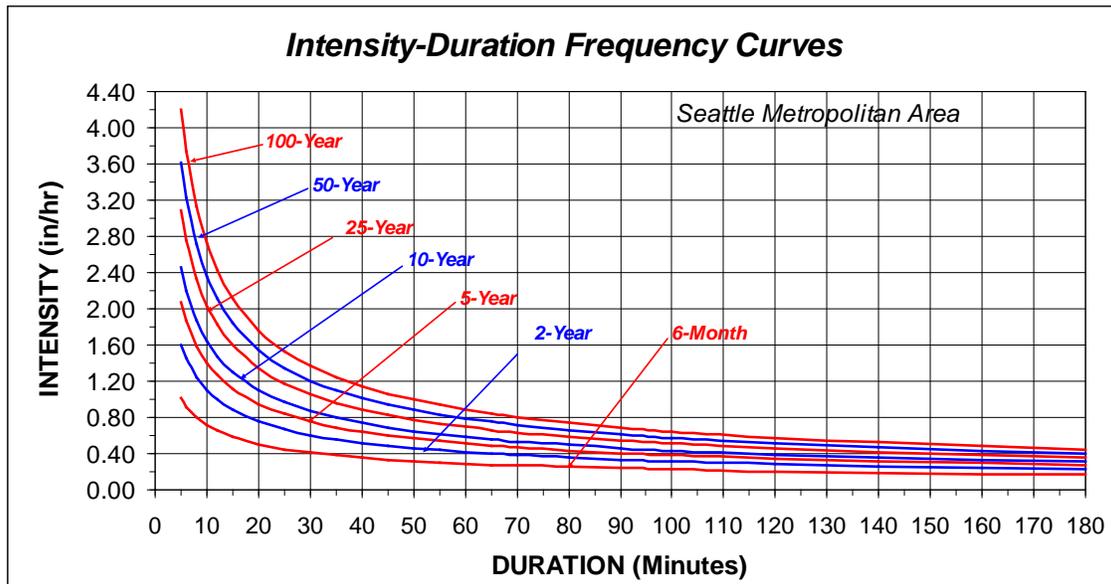


Figure 1. Intensity-Duration-Frequency Curves for the Seattle Metropolitan Area.

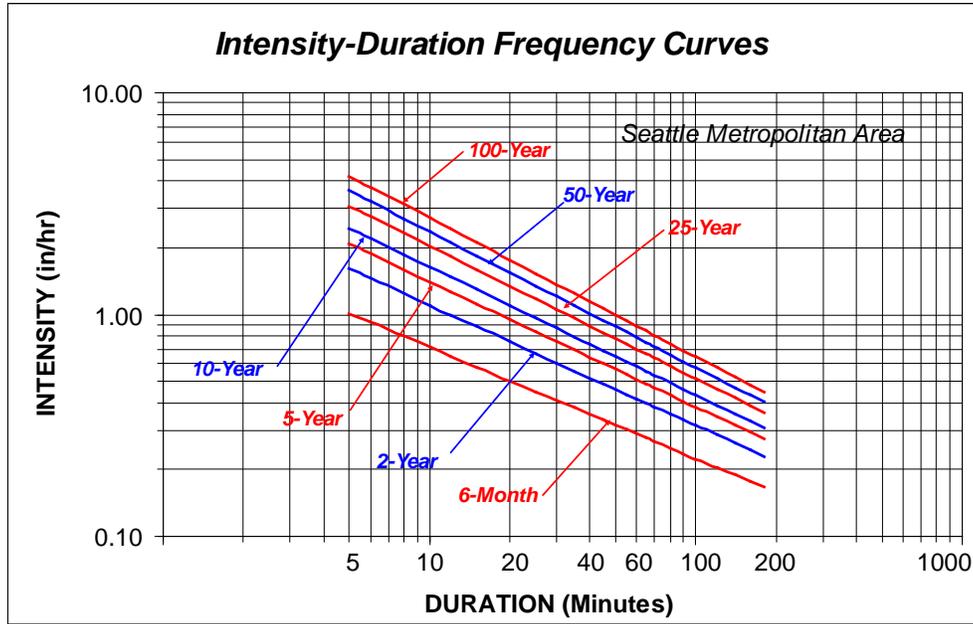


Figure 2. Intensity-Duration-Frequency Curves for the Seattle Metropolitan Area.

The following tables and figures contain estimates of precipitation-frequency values for durations of 6 hours, 12 hours, 24 hours, 48 hours, and 7 days for locations of SPU precipitation gauges (Table 2) in both tabular format and as magnitude-frequency curves. These precipitation values are based on estimates of the at-site mean values for the location of SPU gauges (Table 3) based on the spatial analysis of precipitation (gridded datasets) and the applicable regional growth curves obtained from the regional frequency analyses. Corrections have been applied to provide equivalent partial duration series estimates for frequently occurring events (5 times/year, 2 times/year, once/year, 2-year, and 5-year recurrence intervals).

Table 3. Listing of City of Seattle (SPU) Precipitation Gauges.

Station ID	Station Name	Latitude	Longitude	Year Start	Year End	Gauge Type
RG0145-S004	Haller Lake Shop	47.7211	122.3431	1965	20202003	TB
RG0245-S002	Magnuson Park/Mathews Beach Pump Stn	47.6950	122.2731	1969	20202003	TB
RG0345-S003	UW Hydraulics Lab	47.6481	122.3081	1965	20202003	TB
RG0445-S004	Maple Leaf Reservoir	47.6900	122.3119	1965	20202003	TB
RG0545-S005	Fauntleroy Ferry Dock	47.5231	122.3919	1968	20202003	TB
RG0745-S007	Whitman Middle School	47.6961	122.3769	1965	20202003	TB
RG0845-S008	Ballard Locks	47.6650	122.3969	1965	20202003	TB
RG0945-S009	Woodland Park Zoo	47.6681	122.3539	1965	20202003	TB
RG1045-S010	Rainier View-Ave Elementary	47.5000	122.2600	1968	20102003	TB
RG1145-S014	Metro-KC Denny Regulating	47.6169	122.3550	1970	20202003	TB
RG1245-S012	Catherine Blaine Elementary School Jr	47.6419	122.3969	1965	20202003	TB
RG1445-S014	Lafayette Elementary School/West Seattle High School	47.5781	122.3819	1965	20202003	TB
RG1545-S015	Puget Sound Clean Air Monitoring Station/Metro-KC Diagonal Pump	47.5619	122.3400	1965	20202003	TB
RG1645-S016	Metro-KC E Marginal Way	47.5350	122.3139	1970	20202003	TB
RG1745-S017	West Seattle Reservoir Treatment Engr Shop	47.5211	122.3450	1965	20202003	TB
RG1845-S018	Aki Kurose Middle School/Hillman Engr Shop	47.5481	122.2750	1965	20202003	TB
RG2045-S020	TT Minor Elementary	47.6119	122.3069	1975	20112003	TB
RG25	Garfield Community Center	47.6076	-122.3020	2010	2020	TB
RG30	Rainier Beach Public Library	47.5214	-122.2700	2011	2020	TB
RG32	Beacon Telemetry Shack	47.5698	-122.3080	2016	2020	TB
RG33	Fire Station #38	47.6688	-122.2840	2016	2020	TB
RG34	Fire Station #39	47.7213	-122.2970	2016	2020	TB
RG35	Capitol Hill Library	47.6229	-122.3220	2016	2020	TB
RG36	High Point Library	47.5480	-122.3760	2016	2020	TB
45-7473	Seattle Tacoma Airport	47.4500	122.3000	19401965	20202002	HR

TB – Tipping Bucket
HR – NOAA Hourly Gauge

Table 4. Listing of Best Estimate At-site Mean Values for City of Seattle (SPU) Precipitation Gauges.

<u>Best Estimate At-Site Mean Values (inches)</u>							
<u>Station ID</u>	<u>Station Name</u>	<u>6 Hr</u>	<u>12 Hr</u>	<u>24 Hr</u>	<u>48 Hr</u>	<u>72 Hr</u>	<u>7 Day</u>
RG01	Haller Lake Shop	1.020	1.495	2.000	2.465	2.985	4.290
RG02	Mathews Beach Pump Stn	1.030	1.525	2.105	2.595	3.085	4.470
RG03	UW Hydraulics Lab	1.055	1.535	2.075	2.570	3.060	4.330
RG04	Maple Leaf Reservoir	1.035	1.520	2.065	2.585	3.105	4.435
RG05	Fauntleroy Ferry Dock	1.070	1.560	2.115	2.675	3.105	4.260
RG07	Whitman Middle School	1.050	1.535	2.050	2.535	3.095	4.510
RG08	Ballard Locks	1.055	1.545	2.065	2.545	3.045	4.335
RG09	Woodland Park Zoo	1.020	1.480	1.980	2.465	2.935	4.190
RG10	Rainier Ave Elementary	1.100	1.595	2.250	2.825	3.345	4.630
RG11	Metro-KC Denny Regulating	1.025	1.500	2.020	2.520	2.955	4.100
RG12	Catherine Blaine Jr	1.045	1.530	2.045	2.550	3.080	4.435
RG14	West Seattle High School	1.065	1.570	2.110	2.665	3.205	4.495
RG15	Metro-KC Diagonal Pump	1.055	1.535	2.095	2.655	3.135	4.335
RG16	Metro-KC E Marginal Way	1.065	1.545	2.160	2.700	3.205	4.440
RG17	West Seattle Engr Shop	1.100	1.590	2.210	2.785	3.325	4.665
RG18	Hillman Engr Shop	1.080	1.560	2.165	2.735	3.235	4.510
RG20	TT Minor Elementary	1.080	1.595	2.150	2.720	3.170	4.440
RG25	Garfield Community Center	1.080	1.565	2.150	2.720	3.170	4.440
RG30	Rainier Beach Public Library	1.100	1.595	2.250	2.825	3.345	4.630
RG32	Beacon Telemetry Shack	1.070	1.555	2.150	2.700	3.195	4.465
RG33	Fire Station #38	1.045	1.525	2.090	2.600	3.100	4.430
RG34	Fire Station #39	1.025	1.510	2.045	2.525	3.030	4.390
RG35	Capitol Hill Library	1.055	1.540	2.100	2.625	3.125	4.415
RG36	High Point Library	1.070	1.560	2.120	2.670	3.165	4.400

<u>At-Site Mean Values (in)</u>							
<u>Station ID</u>	<u>Station Name</u>	<u>6-Hr</u>	<u>12-Hr</u>	<u>24-Hr</u>	<u>48-Hr</u>	<u>72-Hr</u>	<u>7-Day</u>
45-S001	Haller Lake Shop	1.02	1.45	1.97	2.40	2.88	4.05
45-S002	Magnusson Park	1.04	1.50	2.03	2.48	2.99	4.21
45-S003	UW Hydraulics Lab	1.04	1.50	2.04	2.50	3.00	4.23
45-S004	Maple Leaf Reservoir	1.04	1.50	2.03	2.48	2.99	4.21
45-S005	Fauntleroy Ferry Dock	1.07	1.56	2.12	2.61	3.14	4.45
45-S007	Whitman Middle School	1.04	1.50	2.03	2.48	2.99	4.21
45-S008	Ballard Locks	1.05	1.51	2.05	2.51	3.02	4.26
45-S009	Woodland Park Zoo	1.04	1.50	2.04	2.50	3.00	4.23
45-S010	Rainier View Elementary	1.10	1.60	2.18	2.69	3.25	4.60
45-S014	Metro-KC Denny Regulating	1.05	1.52	2.06	2.52	3.04	4.29
45-S012	Catherine Blaine Elementary School	1.05	1.51	2.05	2.51	3.02	4.26

45-S014	Lafayette Elementary School	1.07	1.55	2.10	2.58	3.11	4.39
45-S015	Puget Sound Clean Air Monitoring Station	1.05	1.52	2.07	2.54	3.06	4.34
45-S016	Metro KC E Marginal Way	1.06	1.54	2.09	2.57	3.09	4.37
45-S017	West Seattle Reservoir Treatment Shop	1.10	1.60	2.18	2.69	3.25	4.60
45-S018	Aki Kurose Middle School	1.06	1.53	2.08	2.55	3.07	4.34
45-S020	TT Minor Elementary	1.06	1.53	2.08	2.55	3.07	4.34
45-7473	Seattle Tacoma Airport	1.11	1.62	2.24	2.73	3.30	4.68

Table 5. Precipitation-Magnitude-Frequency Estimates for of SPU Gauge 01.

Duration (hr)	Precipitation (in)										
	Recurrence Interval (years)										
	0.5-Yr	1-Yr	2-Yr	5-Yr	10-Yr		25-Yr	50-Yr	100-Yr	500-Yr	
6		0.75	0.89	1.03	1.23	1.37		1.58	1.74	1.91	2.31
12		1.05	1.26	1.48	1.78	1.99		2.32	2.56	2.81	3.40
24		1.39	1.70	2.01	2.44	2.75		3.22	3.58	3.94	4.83
48		1.67	2.05	2.45	2.98	3.37		3.96	4.41	4.86	5.97
72		2.05	2.50	2.95	3.56	3.99		4.63	5.11	5.59	6.72
168		2.92	3.55	4.18	4.98	5.53		6.32	6.89	7.44	8.67

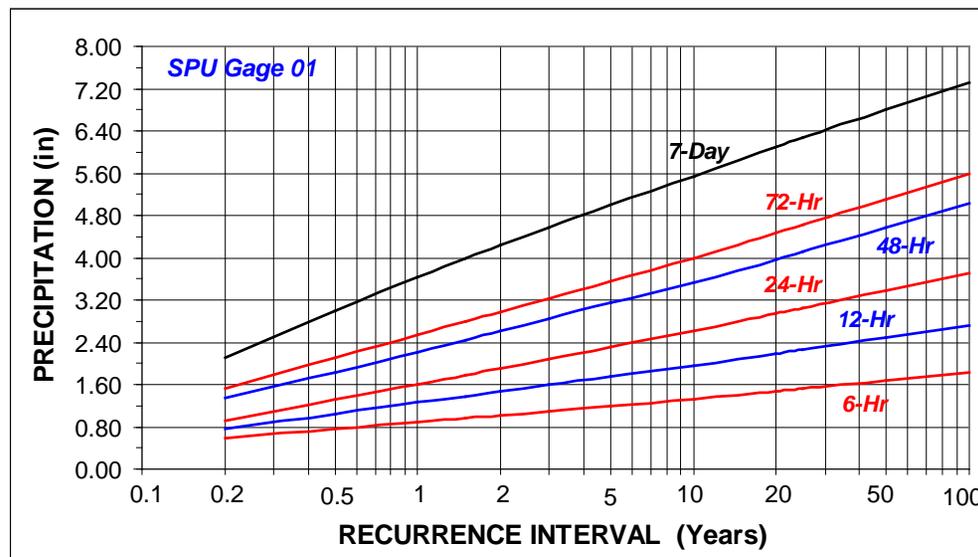


Figure 3. Precipitation-Magnitude-Frequency Estimates for of SPU Gauge 01.

Table 6. Precipitation-Magnitude-Frequency Estimates for SPU Gauge 02.

Duration (hr)	Precipitation (in)										
	Recurrence Interval (years)										
		0.5-Yr	1-Yr	2-Yr	5-Yr	10-Yr		25-Yr	50-Yr	100-Yr	500-Yr
6		0.77	0.91	1.06	1.26	1.40		1.62	1.78	1.95	2.36
12		1.08	1.30	1.53	1.83	2.05		2.38	2.64	2.89	3.50
24		1.44	1.75	2.07	2.51	2.83		3.31	3.68	4.06	4.97
48		1.73	2.12	2.53	3.08	3.49		4.09	4.56	5.03	6.18
72		2.13	2.59	3.06	3.69	4.13		4.80	5.30	5.79	6.97
168		3.03	3.69	4.34	5.17	5.75		6.57	7.16	7.74	9.01

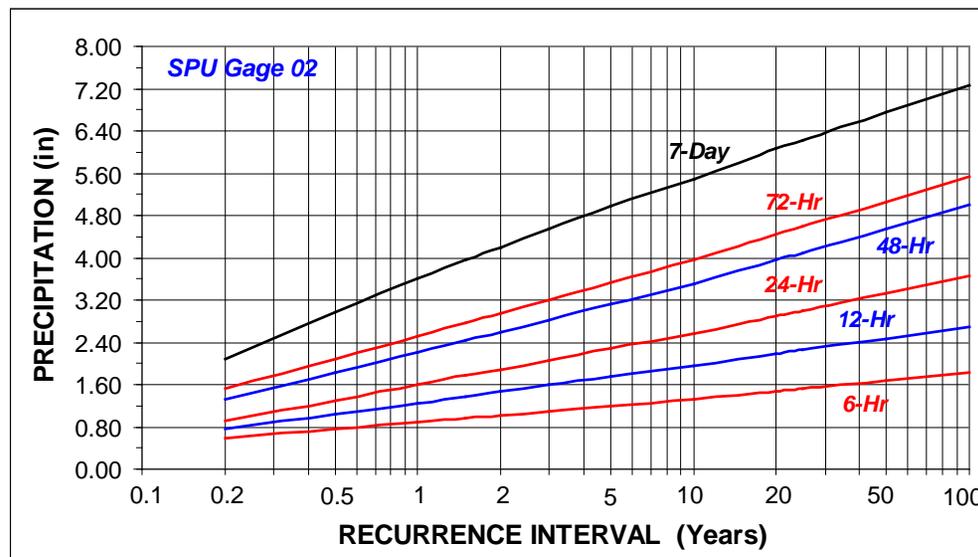


Figure 4. Precipitation-Magnitude-Frequency Estimates for SPU Gauge 02.

Table 7. Precipitation-Magnitude-Frequency Estimates for SPU Gauge 03.

Duration (hr)	Precipitation (in)										
	Recurrence Interval (years)										
	0.5-Yr	1-Yr	2-Yr	5-Yr	10-Yr		25-Yr	50-Yr	100-Yr	500-Yr	
6	0.77	0.91	1.06	1.26	1.41		1.62	1.79	1.96	2.37	
12	1.09	1.31	1.53	1.84	2.06		2.39	2.65	2.90	3.52	
24	1.44	1.75	2.08	2.52	2.84		3.33	3.70	4.08	4.99	
48	1.74	2.14	2.55	3.10	3.51		4.12	4.59	5.06	6.22	
72	2.14	2.60	3.08	3.71	4.16		4.83	5.33	5.83	7.01	
168	3.05	3.71	4.37	5.21	5.79		6.61	7.21	7.78	9.07	

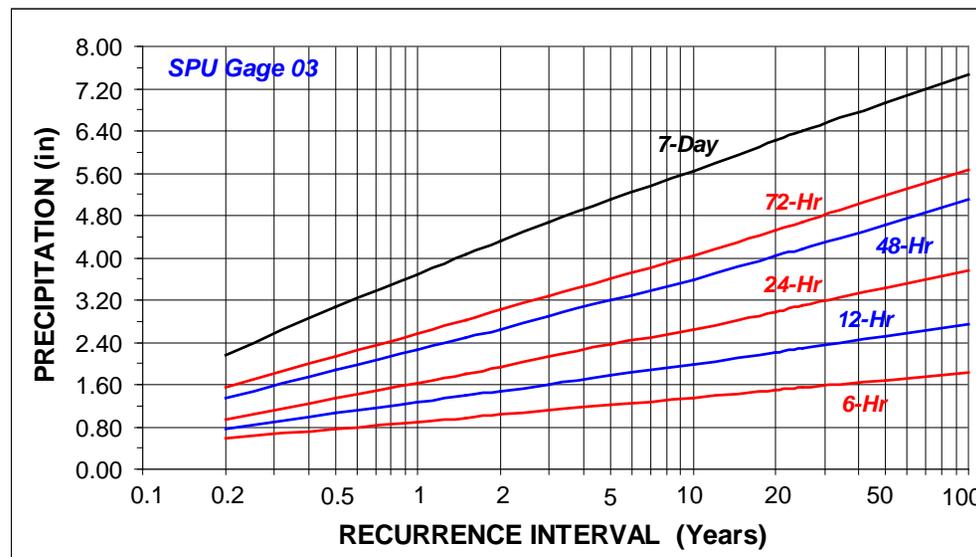


Figure 5. Precipitation-Magnitude-Frequency Estimates for SPU Gauge 03.

Table 8. Precipitation-Magnitude-Frequency Estimates for SPU Gauge 04.

Duration (hr)	Precipitation (in)										
	Recurrence Interval (years)										
		0.5-Yr	1-Yr	2-Yr	5-Yr	10-Yr		25-Yr	50-Yr	100-Yr	500-Yr
6		0.77	0.91	1.06	1.26	1.40		1.62	1.78	1.95	2.36
12		1.08	1.30	1.53	1.83	2.05		2.38	2.64	2.89	3.50
24		1.44	1.75	2.07	2.51	2.83		3.31	3.68	4.06	4.97
48		1.73	2.12	2.53	3.08	3.49		4.09	4.56	5.03	6.18
72		2.13	2.59	3.06	3.69	4.13		4.80	5.30	5.79	6.97
168		3.03	3.69	4.34	5.17	5.75		6.57	7.16	7.74	9.01

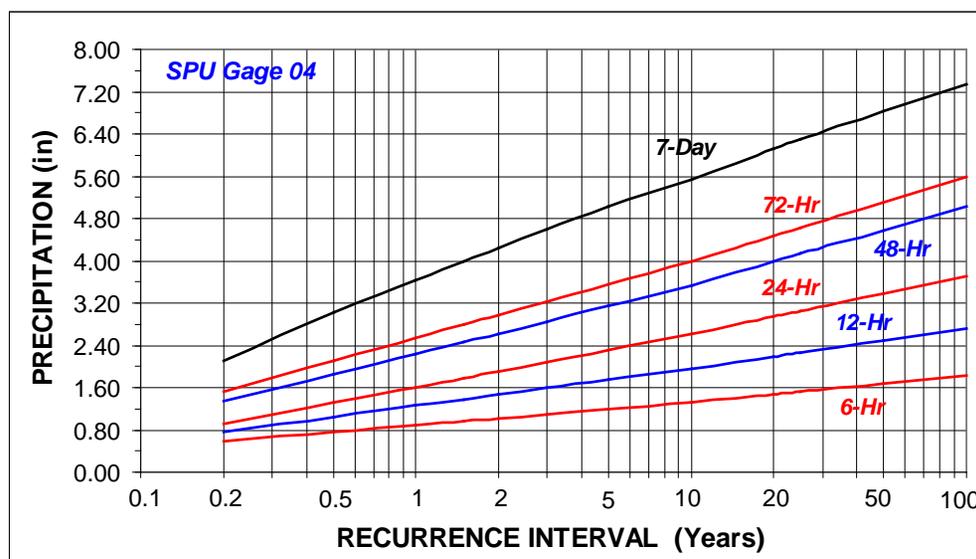


Figure 6. Precipitation-Magnitude-Frequency Estimates for SPU Gauge 04.

Table 9. Precipitation-Magnitude-Frequency Estimates for SPU Gauge 05.

Duration (hr)	Precipitation (in)										
	Recurrence Interval (years)										
		0.5-Yr	1-Yr	2-Yr	5-Yr	10-Yr		25-Yr	50-Yr	100-Yr	500-Yr
6		0.80	0.94	1.09	1.30	1.45		1.67	1.85	2.02	2.44
12		1.13	1.36	1.59	1.91	2.14		2.48	2.75	3.01	3.65
24		1.50	1.82	2.16	2.62	2.95		3.45	3.84	4.23	5.18
48		1.82	2.23	2.66	3.24	3.66		4.30	4.79	5.29	6.50
72		2.24	2.72	3.22	3.88	4.35		5.05	5.58	6.10	7.33
168		3.20	3.90	4.59	5.47	6.08		6.94	7.57	8.17	9.52

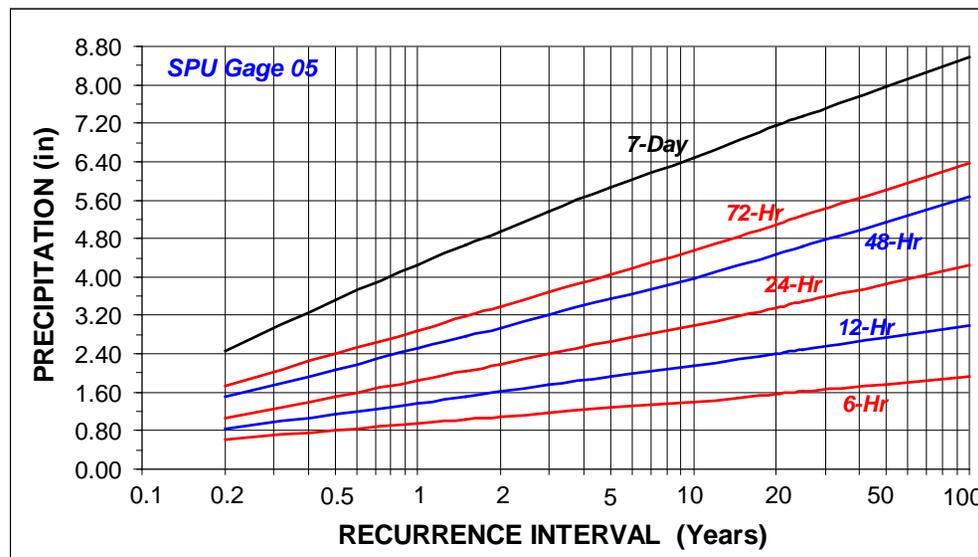


Figure 7. Precipitation-Magnitude-Frequency Estimates for SPU Gauge 05.

Table 10. Precipitation-Magnitude-Frequency Estimates for SPU Gauge 07.

Duration (hr)	Precipitation (in)										
	Recurrence Interval (years)										
		0.5-Yr	1-Yr	2-Yr	5-Yr	10-Yr		25-Yr	50-Yr	100-Yr	500-Yr
6		0.77	0.91	1.06	1.26	1.40		1.62	1.78	1.95	2.36
12		1.08	1.30	1.53	1.83	2.05		2.38	2.64	2.89	3.50
24		1.44	1.75	2.07	2.51	2.83		3.31	3.68	4.06	4.97
48		1.73	2.12	2.53	3.08	3.49		4.09	4.56	5.03	6.18
72		2.13	2.59	3.06	3.69	4.13		4.80	5.30	5.79	6.97
168		3.03	3.69	4.34	5.17	5.75		6.57	7.16	7.74	9.01

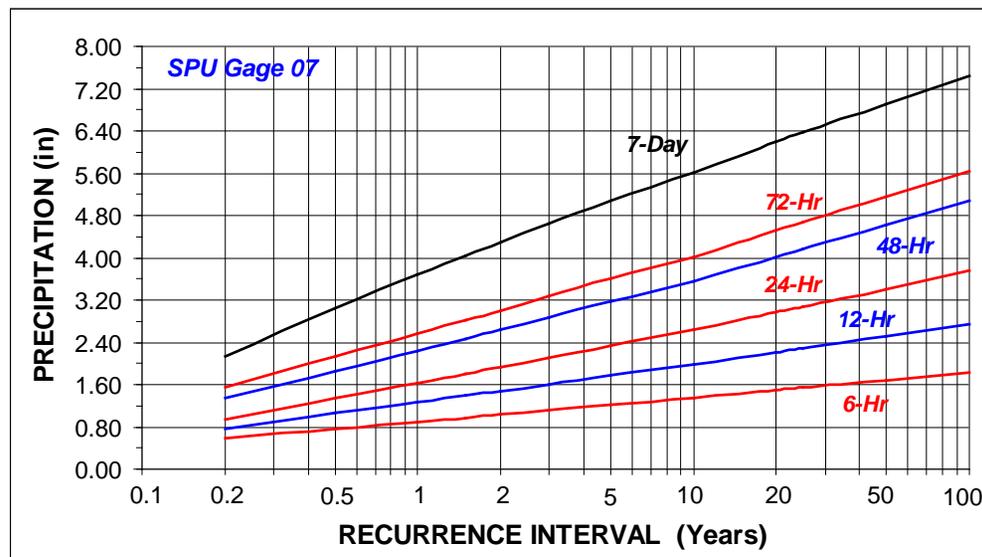


Figure 8. Precipitation-Magnitude-Frequency Estimates for SPU Gauge 07.

Table 11. Precipitation-Magnitude-Frequency Estimates for SPU Gauge 08.

Duration (hr)	Precipitation (in)										
	Recurrence Interval (years)										
		0.5-Yr	1-Yr	2-Yr	5-Yr	10-Yr		25-Yr	50-Yr	100-Yr	500-Yr
6		0.78	0.92	1.07	1.27	1.41		1.63	1.80	1.97	2.38
12		1.09	1.31	1.54	1.85	2.07		2.41	2.66	2.92	3.53
24		1.45	1.76	2.09	2.53	2.86		3.34	3.72	4.10	5.01
48		1.75	2.15	2.56	3.12	3.53		4.14	4.61	5.09	6.25
72		2.15	2.62	3.09	3.73	4.18		4.85	5.36	5.86	7.05
168		3.07	3.74	4.40	5.24	5.82		6.65	7.25	7.83	9.12

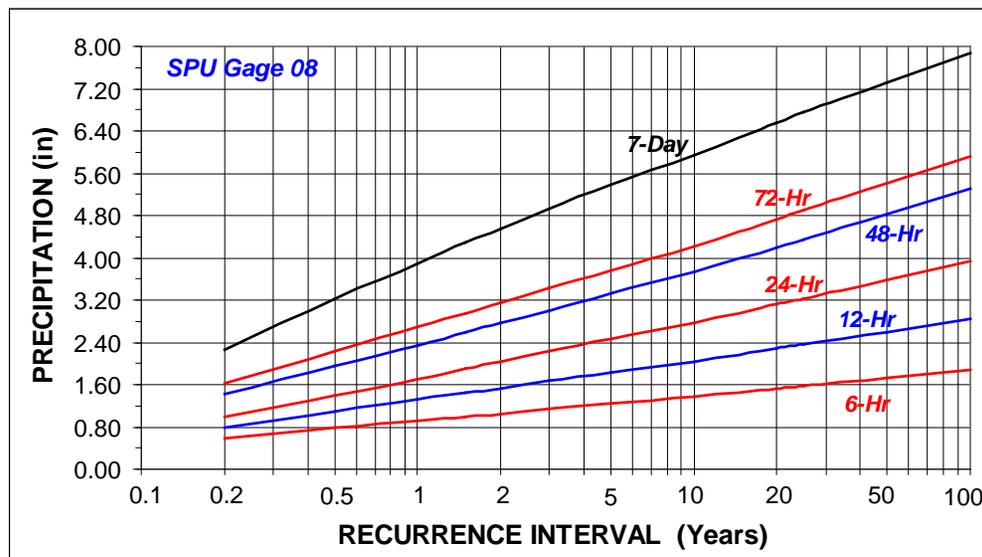


Figure 9. Precipitation-Magnitude-Frequency Estimates for SPU Gauge 08.

Table 12. Precipitation-Magnitude-Frequency Estimates for SPU Gauge 09.

Duration (hr)	Precipitation (in)										
	Recurrence Interval (years)										
		0.5-Yr	1-Yr	2-Yr	5-Yr	10-Yr		25-Yr	50-Yr	100-Yr	500-Yr
6		0.77	0.91	1.06	1.26	1.41		1.62	1.79	1.96	2.37
12		1.09	1.31	1.53	1.84	2.06		2.39	2.65	2.90	3.52
24		1.44	1.75	2.08	2.52	2.84		3.33	3.70	4.08	4.99
48		1.74	2.14	2.55	3.10	3.51		4.12	4.59	5.06	6.22
72		2.14	2.60	3.08	3.71	4.16		4.83	5.33	5.83	7.01
168		3.05	3.71	4.37	5.21	5.79		6.61	7.21	7.78	9.07

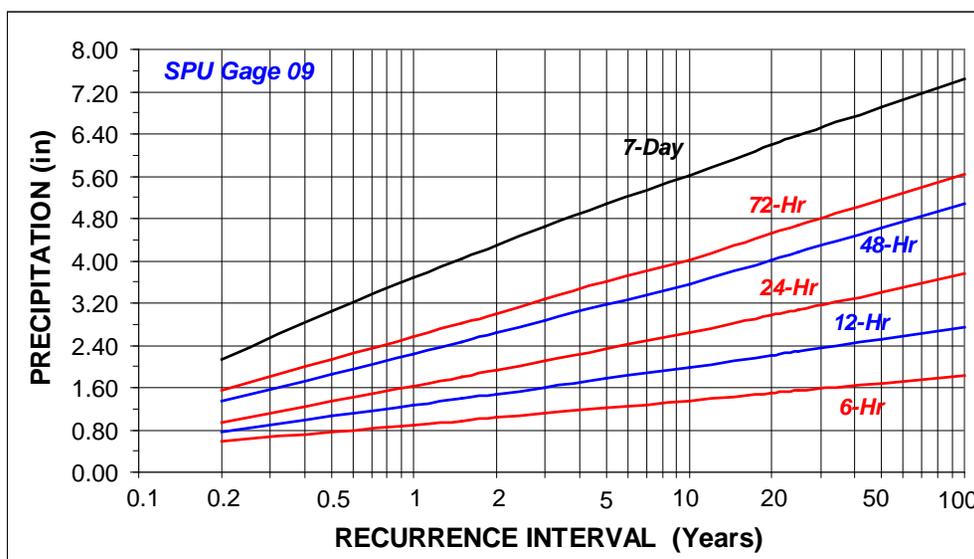


Figure 10. Precipitation-Magnitude-Frequency Estimates for SPU Gauge 09.

Table 13. Precipitation-Magnitude-Frequency Estimates for SPU Gauge 10.

Duration (hr)	Precipitation (in)										
	Recurrence Interval (years)										
		0.5-Yr	1-Yr	2-Yr	5-Yr	10-Yr		25-Yr	50-Yr	100-Yr	500-Yr
6		0.81	0.96	1.12	1.33	1.48		1.71	1.89	2.07	2.50
12		1.16	1.39	1.63	1.96	2.20		2.55	2.82	3.09	3.74
24		1.54	1.87	2.22	2.69	3.04		3.55	3.95	4.36	5.33
48		1.88	2.30	2.75	3.35	3.78		4.44	4.95	5.46	6.71
72		2.31	2.81	3.33	4.01	4.50		5.22	5.76	6.30	7.58
168		3.32	4.04	4.75	5.66	6.29		7.19	7.84	8.46	9.86

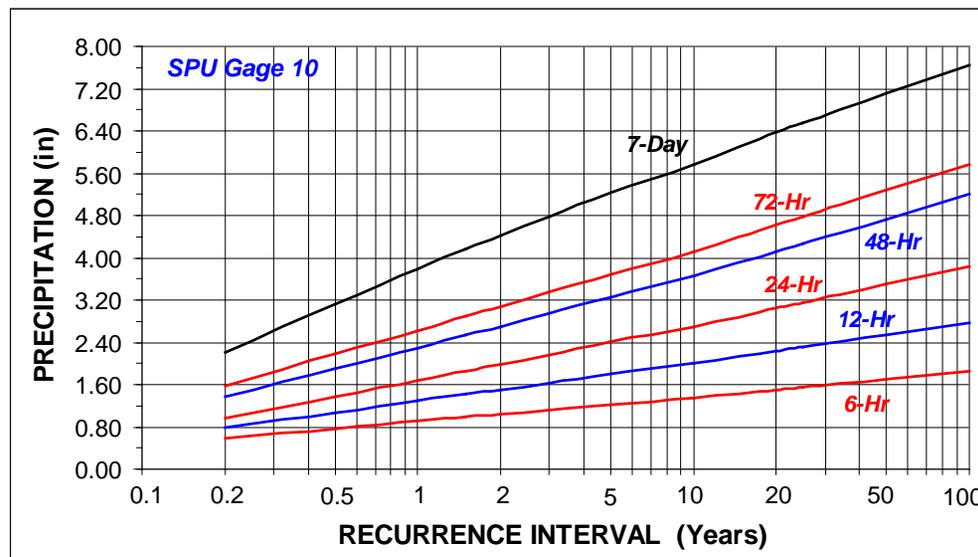


Figure 11. Precipitation-Magnitude-Frequency Estimates for SPU Gauge 10.

Table 14. Precipitation-Magnitude-Frequency Estimates for SPU Gauge 11.

Duration (hr)	Precipitation (in)										
	Recurrence Interval (years)										
		0.5-Yr	1-Yr	2-Yr	5-Yr	10-Yr		25-Yr	50-Yr	100-Yr	500-Yr
6		0.78	0.92	1.07	1.27	1.42		1.64	1.80	1.98	2.39
12		1.10	1.32	1.55	1.86	2.08		2.42	2.67	2.93	3.55
24		1.46	1.77	2.10	2.55	2.87		3.36	3.73	4.12	5.04
48		1.76	2.16	2.57	3.14	3.55		4.16	4.64	5.12	6.29
72		2.16	2.63	3.11	3.75	4.21		4.88	5.39	5.90	7.09
168		3.09	3.76	4.42	5.27	5.86		6.70	7.30	7.88	9.18

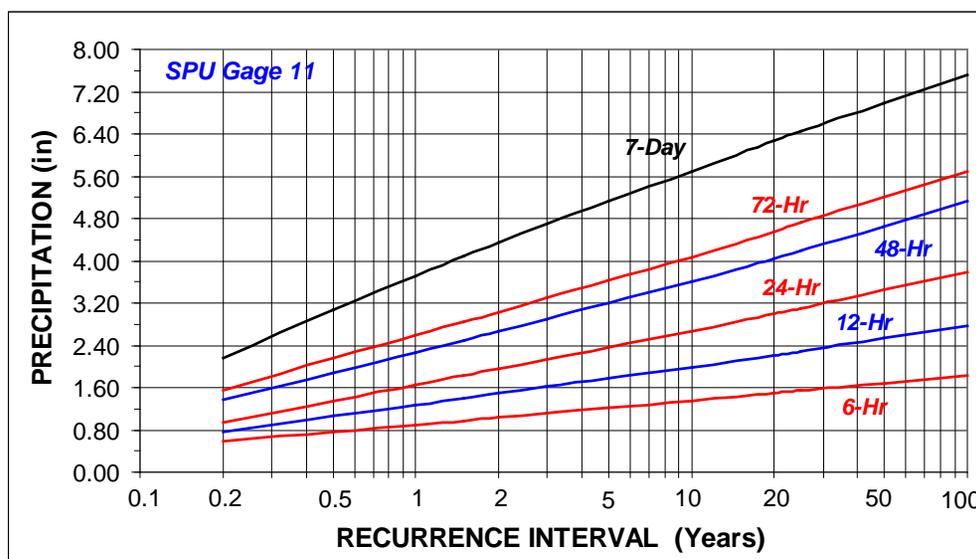


Figure 12. Precipitation-Magnitude-Frequency Estimates for SPU Gauge 11.

Table 15. Precipitation-Magnitude-Frequency Estimates for SPU Gauge 12.

Duration (hr)	Precipitation (in)										
	Recurrence Interval (years)										
		0.5-Yr	1-Yr	2-Yr	5-Yr	10-Yr		25-Yr	50-Yr	100-Yr	500-Yr
6		0.78	0.92	1.07	1.27	1.41		1.63	1.80	1.97	2.38
12		1.09	1.31	1.54	1.85	2.07		2.41	2.66	2.92	3.53
24		1.45	1.76	2.09	2.53	2.86		3.34	3.72	4.10	5.01
48		1.75	2.15	2.56	3.12	3.53		4.14	4.61	5.09	6.25
72		2.15	2.62	3.09	3.73	4.18		4.85	5.36	5.86	7.05
168		3.07	3.74	4.40	5.24	5.82		6.65	7.25	7.83	9.12

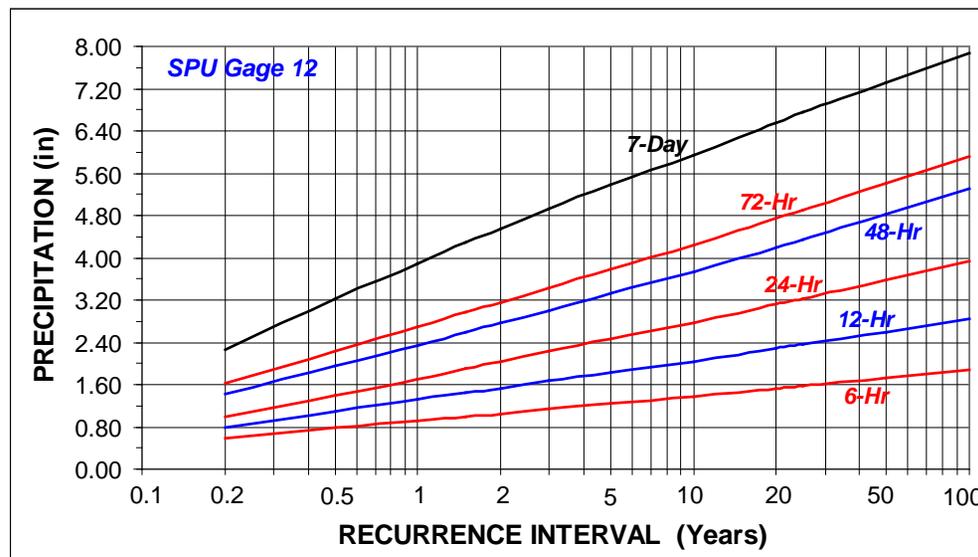


Figure 13. Precipitation-Magnitude-Frequency Estimates for SPU Gauge 12.

Table 16. Precipitation-Magnitude-Frequency Estimates for SPU Gauge 14.

Duration (hr)	Precipitation (in)										
	Recurrence Interval (years)										
		0.5-Yr	1-Yr	2-Yr	5-Yr	10-Yr		25-Yr	50-Yr	100-Yr	500-Yr
6		0.79	0.93	1.09	1.29	1.44		1.66	1.83	2.01	2.43
12		1.12	1.34	1.58	1.89	2.12		2.46	2.72	2.99	3.61
24		1.49	1.81	2.14	2.60	2.93		3.43	3.81	4.20	5.14
48		1.80	2.21	2.63	3.21	3.62		4.26	4.74	5.23	6.43
72		2.21	2.69	3.18	3.84	4.30		4.99	5.51	6.03	7.25
168		3.17	3.85	4.53	5.40	6.00		6.86	7.48	8.08	9.41

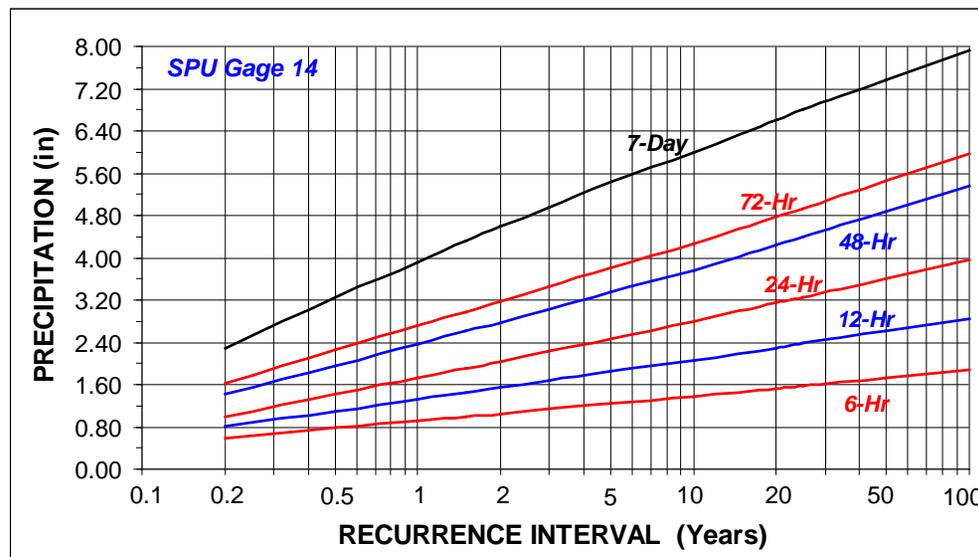


Figure 14. Precipitation-Magnitude-Frequency Estimates for SPU Gauge 14.

Table 17. Precipitation-Magnitude-Frequency Estimates for SPU Gauge 15.

Duration (hr)	Precipitation (in)										
	Recurrence Interval (years)										
		0.5-Yr	1-Yr	2-Yr	5-Yr	10-Yr		25-Yr	50-Yr	100-Yr	500-Yr
6		0.78	0.92	1.07	1.28	1.42		1.64	1.81	1.98	2.40
12		1.10	1.32	1.56	1.87	2.09		2.43	2.69	2.95	3.56
24		1.46	1.78	2.11	2.56	2.88		3.38	3.75	4.14	5.06
48		1.77	2.17	2.59	3.15	3.57		4.19	4.66	5.15	6.32
72		2.18	2.65	3.13	3.77	4.23		4.91	5.42	5.93	7.13
168		3.11	3.78	4.45	5.30	5.90		6.74	7.34	7.93	9.24

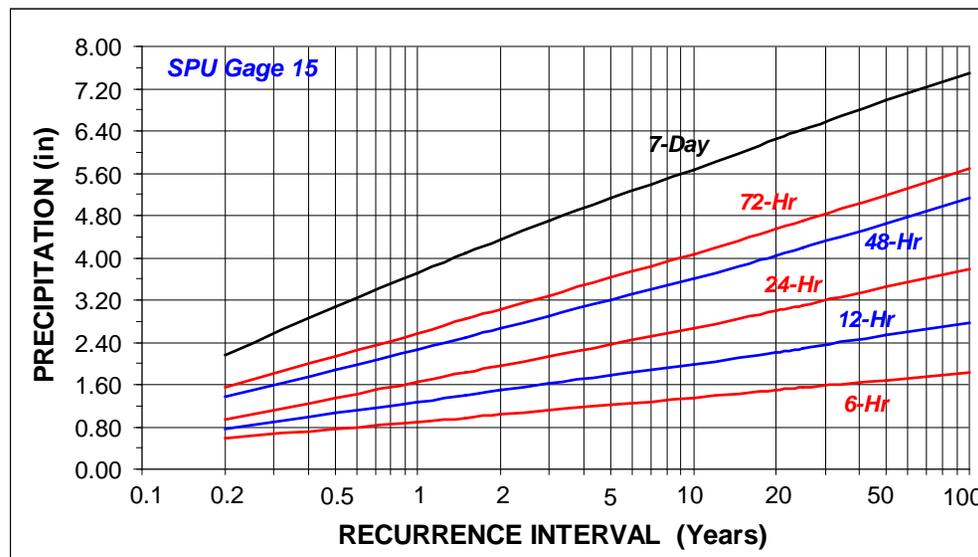


Figure 15. Precipitation-Magnitude-Frequency Estimates for SPU Gauge 15.

Table 18. Precipitation-Magnitude-Frequency Estimates for SPU Gauge 16.

Duration (hr)	Precipitation (in)										
	Recurrence Interval (years)										
		0.5-Yr	1-Yr	2-Yr	5-Yr	10-Yr		25-Yr	50-Yr	100-Yr	500-Yr
6		0.79	0.93	1.08	1.29	1.43		1.65	1.82	2.00	2.42
12		1.11	1.34	1.57	1.88	2.11		2.45	2.71	2.97	3.60
24		1.48	1.80	2.13	2.59	2.91		3.41	3.79	4.18	5.12
48		1.79	2.20	2.62	3.19	3.60		4.23	4.72	5.21	6.39
72		2.20	2.68	3.17	3.82	4.28		4.97	5.48	6.00	7.21
168		3.15	3.83	4.51	5.37	5.97		6.82	7.43	8.03	9.35

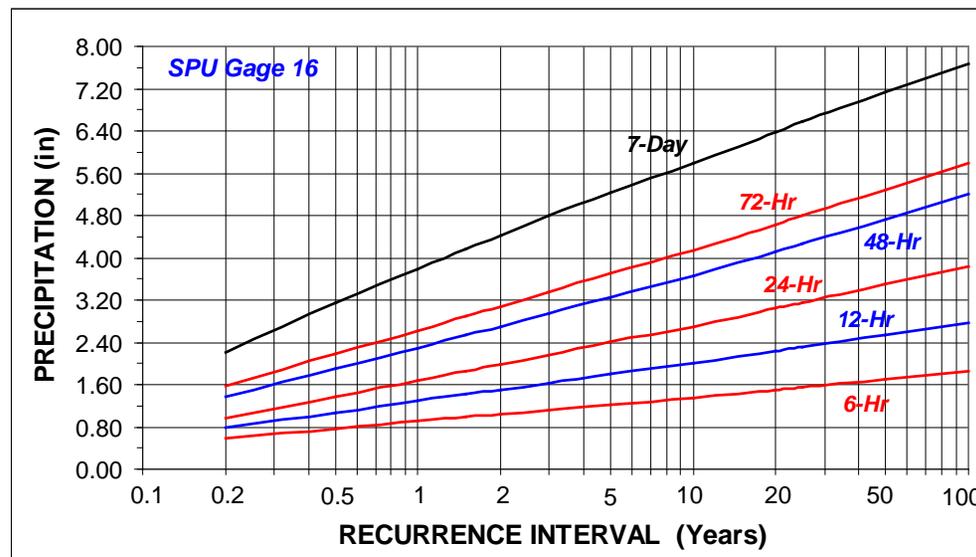


Figure 16. Precipitation-Magnitude-Frequency Estimates for SPU Gauge 16.

Table 19. Precipitation-Magnitude-Frequency Estimates for SPU Gauge 17.

Duration (hr)	Precipitation (in)										
	Recurrence Interval (years)										
	0.5-Yr	1-Yr	2-Yr	5-Yr	10-Yr	25-Yr	50-Yr	100-Yr	500-Yr		
6	0.81	0.96	1.12	1.33	1.48	1.71	1.89	2.07	2.50		
12	1.16	1.39	1.63	1.96	2.20	2.55	2.82	3.09	3.74		
24	1.54	1.87	2.22	2.69	3.04	3.55	3.95	4.36	5.33		
48	1.88	2.30	2.75	3.35	3.78	4.44	4.95	5.46	6.71		
72	2.31	2.81	3.33	4.01	4.50	5.22	5.76	6.30	7.58		
168	3.32	4.04	4.75	5.66	6.29	7.19	7.84	8.46	9.86		

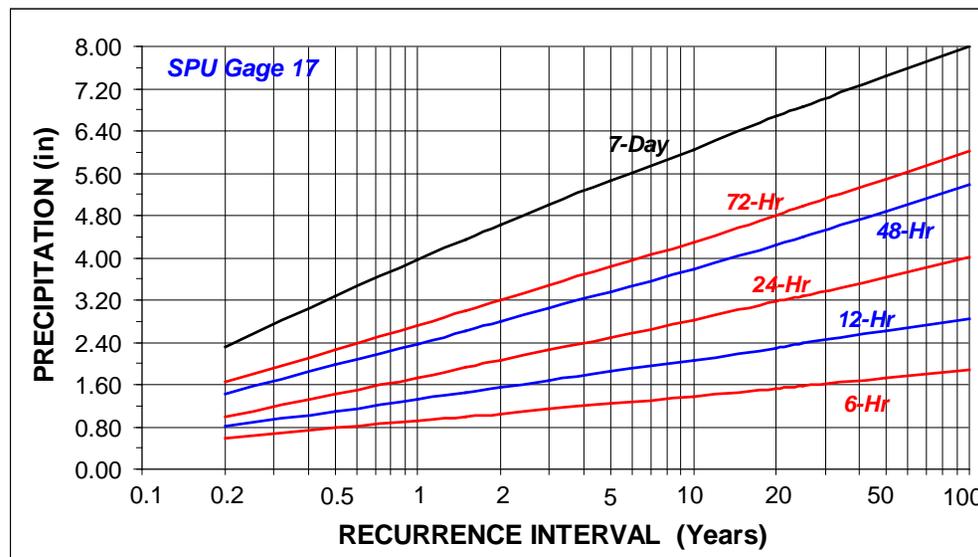


Figure 17. Precipitation-Magnitude-Frequency Estimates for SPU Gauge 17.

Table 20. Precipitation-Magnitude-Frequency Estimates for SPU Gauge 18.

Duration (hr)	Precipitation (in)										
	Recurrence Interval (years)										
		0.5-Yr	1-Yr	2-Yr	5-Yr	10-Yr		25-Yr	50-Yr	100-Yr	500-Yr
6		0.79	0.93	1.08	1.28	1.43		1.65	1.82	1.99	2.41
12		1.11	1.33	1.56	1.87	2.10		2.44	2.70	2.96	3.58
24		1.47	1.79	2.12	2.57	2.90		3.39	3.77	4.16	5.09
48		1.78	2.18	2.60	3.17	3.59		4.21	4.69	5.18	6.36
72		2.19	2.66	3.15	3.79	4.26		4.94	5.45	5.96	7.17
168		3.13	3.81	4.48	5.34	5.93		6.78	7.39	7.98	9.29

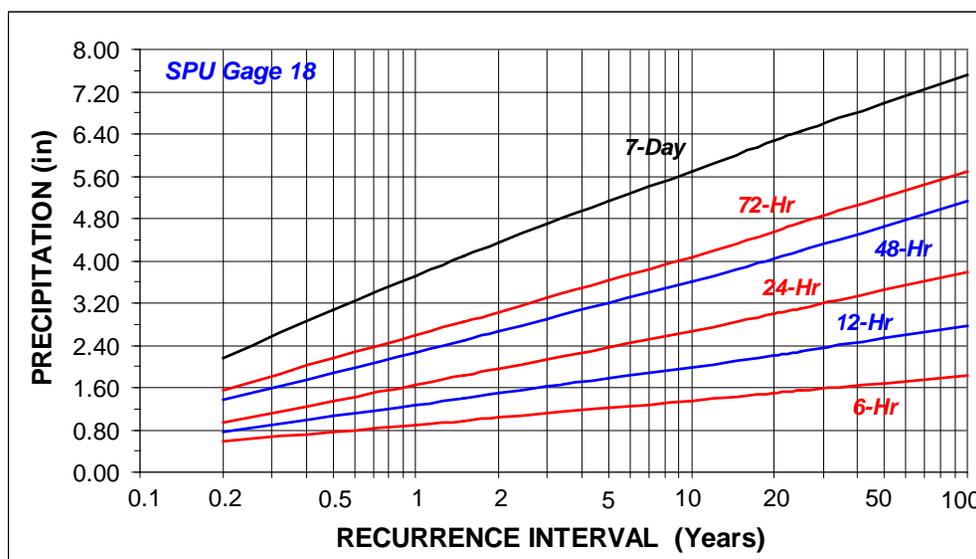


Figure 18. Precipitation-Magnitude-Frequency Estimates for SPU Gauge 18.

Table 21. Precipitation-Magnitude-Frequency Estimates for SPU Gauge 25.

Duration (hr)	Precipitation (in)										
	Recurrence Interval (years)										
		0.5-Yr	1-Yr	2-Yr	5-Yr	10-Yr		25-Yr	50-Yr	100-Yr	500-Yr
6		0.79	0.93	1.08	1.28	1.43		1.65	1.82	1.99	2.41
12		1.11	1.33	1.56	1.87	2.10		2.44	2.70	2.96	3.58
24		1.47	1.79	2.12	2.57	2.90		3.39	3.77	4.16	5.09
48		1.78	2.18	2.60	3.17	3.59		4.21	4.69	5.18	6.36
72		2.19	2.66	3.15	3.79	4.26		4.94	5.45	5.96	7.17
168		3.13	3.81	4.48	5.34	5.93		6.78	7.39	7.98	9.29

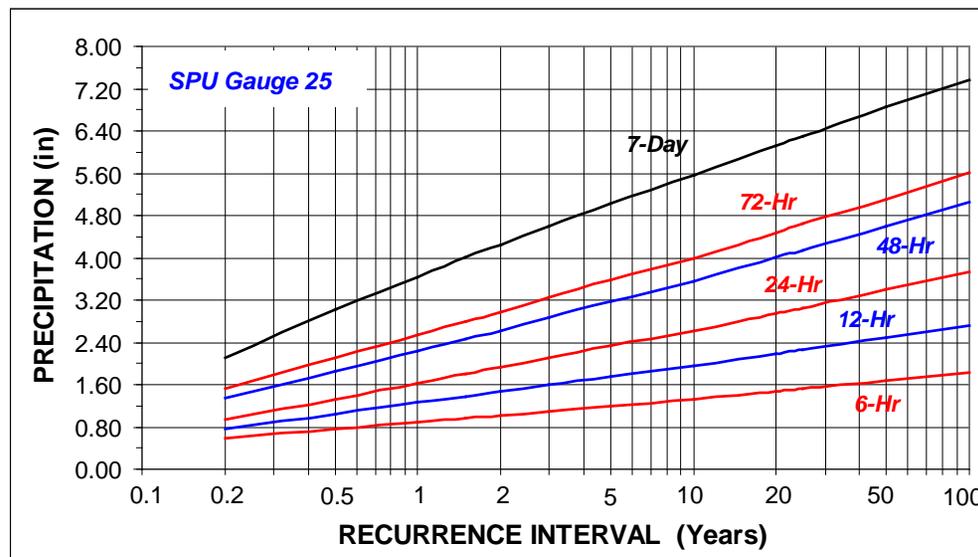


Figure 19. Precipitation-Magnitude-Frequency Estimates for SPU Gauge 25.

Table 22. Precipitation-Magnitude-Frequency Estimates for SeaTac.

Duration (hr)	Precipitation (in)										
	Recurrence Interval (years)										
		0.5-Yr	1-Yr	2-Yr	5-Yr	10-Yr		25-Yr	50-Yr	100-Yr	500-Yr
6		0.82	0.97	1.13	1.34	1.50		1.73	1.91	2.09	2.52
12		1.17	1.41	1.65	1.98	2.22		2.58	2.85	3.13	3.79
24		1.56	1.90	2.25	2.73	3.08		3.60	4.01	4.42	5.41
48		1.91	2.34	2.78	3.39	3.84		4.50	5.02	5.54	6.80
72		2.35	2.86	3.38	4.07	4.57		5.30	5.85	6.40	7.70
168		3.37	4.10	4.83	5.76	6.40		7.31	7.97	8.61	10.02

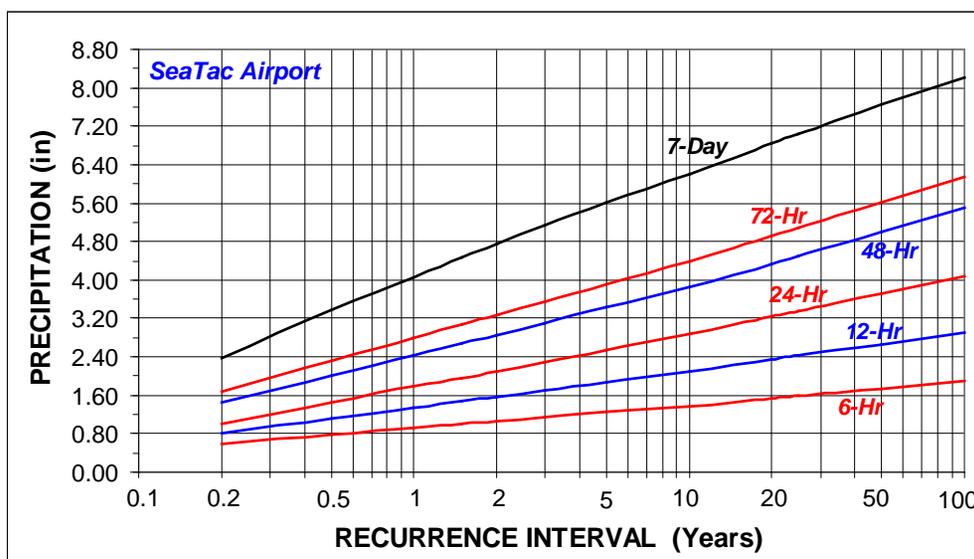


Figure 20. Precipitation-Magnitude-Frequency Estimates for SeaTac.

APPENDIX F

Hydrologic Analysis and Design

Note:

Some pages in this document have been purposely skipped or blank pages inserted so that this document will print correctly when duplexed.

Table of Contents

F-1. Introduction	1
F-2. Applicability of Hydrologic Analysis Methods	1
F-3. General Modeling Guidance.....	3
Historical Precipitation Data	3
Watershed Characterization	4
Calculation of Total Impervious Area.....	4
Calculation of Effective Impervious Area	4
Soil and Infiltration Parameters	7
Hydrologic Soil Groups	7
Infiltration Equations	7
Outfalls	12
Outfalls to Lakes and the Ship Canal.....	12
Tidal Influence/Sea Level Rise.....	13
F-4. Continuous Rainfall-Runoff Methods	14
Precipitation Input.....	14
Land Cover Categorization	15
Soil and Infiltration Parameters	15
Soil Mapping.....	15
Infiltration Parameters.....	17
Modeling Guidance.....	17
Computational Time Step Selection.....	17
HSPF Parameter Modification	18
Steps for Hydrologic Design Using Continuous Rainfall-Runoff Models	20
Flow Control Facility Design.....	21
Water Quality Treatment BMP Design.....	40
F-5. Single-Event Rainfall-Runoff Methods.....	45
Design Storm Hyetographs.....	45
Short-Duration Storm (3-hour)	47
Intermediate-Duration Storm (18 hour)	47
24-Hour Dimensionless Design Storm.....	48
Long-Duration Storm (64 hour).....	49
Curve Number Equation and Infiltration Parameters	53
Time of Concentration Estimation	55
Single-Event Routing Methods Overview	59
Unit Hydrograph Routing Methods.....	59
SBUH Routing Method.....	60
Level-Pool Routing Method	62

Modeling Guidance..... 63
 Steps for Hydrologic Design Using Single-Event Methods 63
 Stormwater Conveyance 63
 F-6. Rational Method 64
 Peak Rainfall Intensity Duration Frequency (IDF curves) 64
 Runoff Coefficients 66
 Time of Concentration Estimation 67
 F-7. Risk-Based Hydrologic Design Concepts..... 67
 Uncertainty 68
 F-8. References..... 68

Attachments

- Attachment 1 Design Storm Dimensionless Hyetograph Ordinates
- Attachment 2 Precipitation Magnitude-Frequency Estimates for SPU Rain Gauge Locations
(up to 2012 data only)

Tables

Table F.1.	Hydrologic Analysis Method Applicability.	2
Table F.2.	City of Seattle Rain Gauge Stations.	3
Table F.3.	Hydrologic Soil Group Definition for Common Soils in King County.	7
Table F.4.	Green-Ampt Infiltration Parameters.	9
Table F.5.	Estimates of Holtan AH.	10
Table F.6.	Estimates of Holtan FC Values.	10
Table F.7.	Physical Characteristics of Seattle Lakes.	12
Table F.8.	Continuous Model Land Cover and Areas of Application.	16
Table F.9.	Relationship Between Hydrologic Soil Group and Continuous Model Soil Group.	16
Table F.10.	Pervious Land Soil Type/Cover Combinations used with HSPF Model Parameters.	17
Table F.11.	Required Runoff Parameter Values for Each Pervious Land Segment (PERLND) and Impervious Land Segment (IMPLND).	19
Table F.12.	Required Continuous Simulation Model Computational Time Step for Various Stormwater Facilities.	20
Table F.13.	Example Simulated Peak Discharge Frequency Table and Hydrographs Exported to SWMM or Other Hydraulic Model for Desired Recurrence Intervals.	45
Table F.14.	Applicability of Storm Types for Hydrologic Design Applications.	46
Table F.15.	Post-Development Runoff Curve Numbers for Selected Agricultural, Suburban, and Urban Areas.	54
Table F.16.	Values of “n” and “k” for use in Computing Time of Concentration.	57
Table F.17.	Other Values of the Roughness Coefficient “n” for Channel Flow.	58
Table F.18.	Intensity-Duration-Frequency Values for 5- to 180-Minute Durations for Selected Recurrence Intervals for the City of Seattle.	65
Table F.19.	Rational Equation Runoff Coefficients.	66
Table F.20.	Coefficients for Average Velocity Equation.	67

Figures

Figure F.1.	Active City Rain Gauge Network Stations.	5
Figure F.2.	Projected Sea Level Rise in Washington’s Waters Relative to Year 2050.	14
Figure F.3.	Example Flood-Frequency Curves for a Stormwater Pond Designed to Control Post-Developed Peak Discharge Rates to Pre-Developed Levels at the 2-Year and 10-Year Recurrence Interval.	22
Figure F.4.	Runoff from 10-Acre Forested Site.	23
Figure F.5.	Flow Duration Curve Computed Using Time Series in Figure F.4.	23
Figure F.6.	Comparison of Pre-Developed and Post-Developed Flow Duration Curves.	25
Figure F.7.	General Guidance for Adjusting Pond Performance.	26
Figure F.8.	Example of Portion of Time-Series of Daily Runoff Volume and Depiction of Water Quality Design Volume.	40
Figure F.9.	Water Quality Treatment and Detention Definition.	41
Figure F.10.	Offline Water Quality Treatment Discharge Example.	42
Figure F.11.	On-Line Water Quality Treatment Discharge Example.	43
Figure F.12.	Dimensionless Short-Duration (3-hour) Design Storm, Seattle Metropolitan Area.	47
Figure F.13.	Dimensionless Intermediate-Duration (18-hour) Design Storm, Seattle Metropolitan Area.	48
Figure F.14.	Dimensionless 24-Hour Design Storm for Seattle Metropolitan Area.	49
Figure F.15.	Dimensionless Front-Loaded Long-Duration (64-hour) Design Storm for the Seattle Metropolitan Area.	50
Figure F.16.	Dimensionless Back-Loaded Long-Duration (64-hour) Design Storm for the Seattle Metropolitan Area.	51
Figure F.17.	Characteristics of Unit Hydrographs.	59
Figure F.18.	Intensity-Duration-Frequency Curves for the City of Seattle.	65

F-1. Introduction

This appendix presents hydrologic modeling concepts to support the design of stormwater best management practices (BMPs) that meet minimum requirements in the Stormwater Code and in *Volume 1 – Project Minimum Requirements*. This appendix includes descriptions of acceptable methods for estimating the quantity and hydrologic characteristics of stormwater runoff, and the assumptions and data requirements of these methods. Specifically, hydrologic tools and methods are presented for the following tasks:

- Calculating runoff hydrographs and time series using single-event and continuous rainfall runoff models.
- Calculating peak flows for conveyance, peak flow detention and retention, and water quality rate treatment BMPs.
- Calculating volumes for detention and retention and water quality volume treatment BMPs.
- Calculating flow durations for flow duration detention and retention based requirements.

Flow control and water quality performance standards are presented in *Volume 1*. BMP design requirements and specific modeling methods are provided in *Volume 3, Chapters 4 and 5*. Any request for alternative calculation methods shall follow the principles laid out in this appendix and be approved by the Director.

F-2. Applicability of Hydrologic Analysis Methods

The choice of a hydrologic analysis method depends on the type of facility being designed (conveyance, detention, or water quality) and the required performance standard. The size of the tributary area and watershed characteristics, including backwater effects, should also be considered.

Hydrologic analysis methods may be grouped into three categories:

- **Continuous rainfall-runoff models** use multi-decade precipitation and evaporation time series as input to produce a corresponding multi-decade time series of runoff. Continuous models are used to size stormwater management facilities to meet peak or flow duration performance standards and water quality treatment requirements. Discharge rates computed with continuous models may also be used to size conveyance facilities.
- **Single-event rainfall-runoff models** simulate rainfall-runoff for a single storm, typically 2 hours to 72 hours in length, and usually of a specified exceedance probability (recurrence interval). Single-event methods are applicable for sizing conveyance facilities.
- The **rational method** is appropriate for designing conveyance systems that receive runoff from small, quickly responding areas (less than 10 acres) where short, intense storms generate the highest peak flow. This method only produces a flow peak discharge rate, and routing effects are not included. Advantages of this method are that it is easy to apply and generally produces conservative results. For larger, more complex basins, routing and timing of the flood peaks becomes more important and single-event or continuous rainfall-runoff modeling is required.

The applicability of each method is summarized in Table F.1.

Table F.1. Hydrologic Analysis Method Applicability.

Method	Applicable Models	Constraints	On-site BMP Sizing	FC BMP Sizing	WQ BMP Sizing	Conveyance Sizing	TESC Design Flow Sizing
Continuous Rainfall-runoff Modeling	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • HSPF • MGSFlood • WWHM • Other^a 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Refer to Table F.12 for time step requirements • MGSFlood is not currently approved (as of March 2021) by Ecology for modeling bioretention 	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Single-event Rainfall-runoff Modeling	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • NRCS (formerly SCS)-TR-55 • SBUH • StormShed • Corps of Engineers HMS and HEC-1 • EPA SWMM-5, PCSWMM, and XP-SWMM • Other models approved by the Director 	Refer to Table F.14	NA	NA	NA	✓	✓
Rational Method	NA	<p><10 acres (measured to individual conveyance elements)</p> <p>Upstream of storage routing and backwater effects</p>	NA	NA	NA	✓	✓

^a The following continuous hydrologic models may also be used for project-specific situations: EPA SWMM5, ModFlow, HMS, PCSWMM, and other models approved by the Director.

BMP – Best Management Practice

FC – Flow Control

HSPF – Hydrologic Simulation Program Fortran (US EPA)

NA – Not Applicable

NRCS – Natural Resources Conservation Service

On-site – On-site Stormwater Management

SBUH – Santa Barbara Urban Hydrograph

[SCS—Soil Conservation Service](#)

SWMM – Storm Water Management Model

TESC – Temporary Erosion and Sediment Control

WQ – Water Quality

WWHM – Western Washington Hydrology Model

✓ = acceptable

F-3. General Modeling Guidance

This section includes general modeling guidance that may apply to all hydrologic analysis methods, including both continuous modeling and single-event modeling using historical precipitation data, watershed characterization, hydrologic soil groups, infiltration equations, and outfalls.

Historical Precipitation Data

Data collected from the Seattle Public Utilities (SPU) rain gauge network may be used in rainfall runoff models to aid in the design process by replicating past floods, to investigate anecdotal flood information, or for use in model calibration. Use of the historical time series is recommended, but is not required for the design of stormwater BMPs.

Continuous historical precipitation data are available from 17 active and 2 closed rain gauges from January 1978 through the present at a time step of 1 minute. Active and closed gauge names and locations are summarized in Table F.2 and active locations are summarized on Figure F.1. Continuous Rainfall-Runoff Methods (*Section F-4*) and Single-event Rainfall-runoff Methods (*Section F-5*) provide additional detail regarding selection of precipitation data.

Table F.2. City of Seattle Rain Gauge Stations.

Station ID	Station Name	Period of Record	Status
45-S001	Haller Lake Shop	1978 – current	Active
45-S002	Magnusson Park	1978 – current	Active
45-S003	UW Hydraulics Lab	1978 – current	Active
45-S004	Maple Leaf Reservoir	1978 – current	Active
45-S005	Fauntleroy Ferry Dock	1978 – current	Active
45-S007	Whitman Middle School	1978 – current	Active
45-S008	Ballard Locks	1978 – current	Active
45-S009	Woodland Park Zoo	1978 – current	Active
45-S010	Rainier View Elementary	1978 – 2008	Closed
45-S011	Metro-KC Denny Regulating	1978 – current	Active
45-S012	Catherine Blaine Elementary School	1978 – current	Active
45-S014	Lafayette Elementary School	1978 – current	Active
45-S015	Puget Sound Clean Air Monitoring Station	1978 – current	Active
45-S016	Metro-KC E Marginal Way	1978 – current	Active
45-S017	West Seattle Reservoir Treatment Shop	1978 – current	Active
45-S018	Aki Kurose Middle School	1978 – current	Active
45-S020	TT Minor Elementary	1978 – 2010	Closed
RG25	Garfield Community Center	2010 – current	Active
RG30	SPL Rainier Beach Branch	2009 – current	Active

Watershed Characterization

Prior to conducting any detailed stormwater runoff calculations, the overall relationship between the proposed project site and upstream and downstream off-site areas must be considered. The general hydrologic characteristics of the project site dictate the amount of runoff that will occur and where stormwater facilities can be placed. It is important to identify the stormwater destination point, including potential backwater effects. Drainage patterns and contributing areas can be determined from preliminary surveys of the area, available topographic contour maps, and SPU drainage system maps. Note that the drainage systems often cross topographic divides within the City of Seattle. Maps can be obtained [from through the City's GIS web pagemap-counter](http://www.seattle.gov/utilities/services/gis) (www.seattle.gov/utilities/services/gis www.seattle.gov/util/MyServices/GIS/index.htm).

Calculation of Total Impervious Area

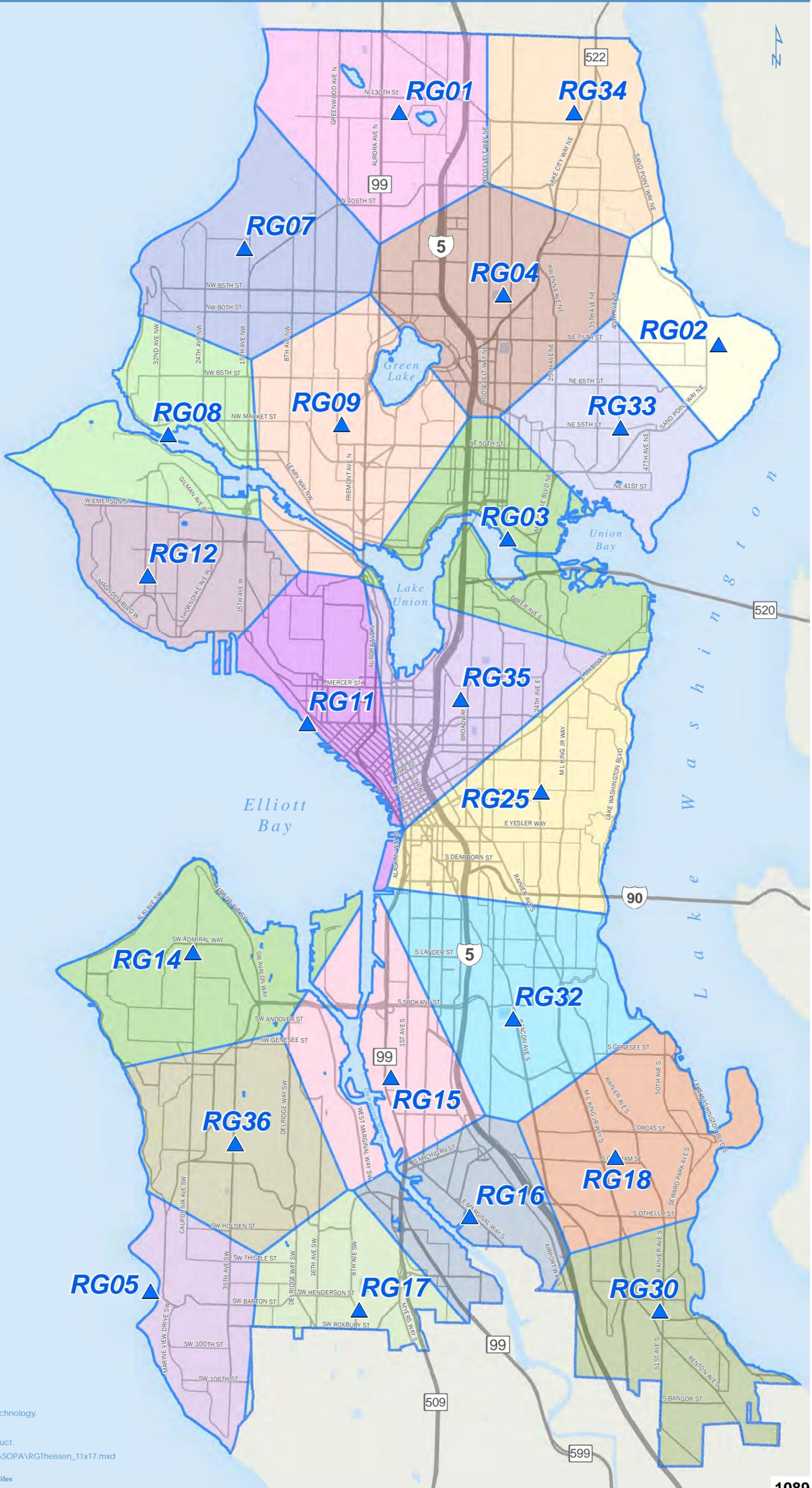
Impervious coverage for proposed development must be estimated. Impervious coverage of streets, sidewalks, hard surface trails, etc., shall be taken from plans of the site. Refer to *Volume 1, Appendix A*, and the Stormwater Code for definitions and descriptions of all surfaces that must be considered. Impervious coverage for off-site areas contributing flow to the site can be estimated from orthophotos available through GIS.

Calculation of Effective Impervious Area

Effective impervious surface is the fraction of impervious surface connected to a drainage system and is used in hydrologic simulations to estimate runoff. The effective impervious area is the total impervious area multiplied by the effective impervious fraction. Non-effective impervious surface is assumed to have the same hydrologic response as the immediately surrounding pervious area. For the existing condition modeling, areas with unconnected rooftops may be estimated from visual survey as approved by the Director.



City of Seattle Rain Gauges



Produced by DWW Environmental Science & Technology.

© 2018, THE CITY OF SEATTLE, all rights reserved. No warranties of any sort, including accuracy, fitness or merchantability, accompany this product.

This map X:\Separated Systems\Business Areas\SOPA\RGTheissen_11x17.mxd was produced on 3/22/2018.



Soil and Infiltration Parameters

Hydrologic Soil Groups

Hydrologic soil groups for common soil types in the Seattle area are listed in Table F.3.

Infiltration Equations

When computing runoff in models other than those based on HSPF, an infiltration soil loss method should be used. Examples of infiltration methods include the Green-Ampt (Rawls et al. 1993), Philip (Rawls et al. 1993), and Holtan (Holtan 1961) methods. These methods are incorporated into several commonly available computer programs including StormShed, PCSWMM, HEC HMS, and HEC-1. The City recommends the use of Green-Ampt method; however, the other methods listed above can also be used based on project-specific situations.

Table F.3. Hydrologic Soil Group Definition for Common Soils in King County.

Soil Group	Hydrologic Group	Soil Group	Hydrologic Group
Alderwood	C	Orcas Peat	D
Arents, Alderwood Material	C	Oridia	D
Arents, Everett Material	B	Ovalt	C
Beausite	C	Pilchuck	C
Bellingham	D	Puget	D
Briscot	D	Puyallup	B
Buckley	D	Ragnar	B
Coastal Beaches	Variable	Renton	D
Earlmont Silt Loam	D	Riverwash	Variable
Edgewick	C	Salal	C
Everett	A	Sammamish	D
Indianola	A	Seattle	D
Kitsap	C	Shacar	D
Klaus	C	Si Silt	C
Mixed Alluvial Lan	Variable	Snohomish	D
Nellton	A	Sultan	C
Newberg	B	Tukwila	D
Nooksack	C	Urban	Variable
Normal Sandy Loam	D	Woodinville	D

Table F.3 (continued). Hydrologic Soil Group Definition for Common Soils in King County.

HYDROLOGIC SOIL GROUP CLASSIFICATIONS	
A.	Low runoff potential: Soils having high infiltration rates, even when thoroughly wetted, and consisting chiefly of deep, well-to-excessively drained sands or gravels. These soils have a high rate of water transmission
B.	Moderately low runoff potential: Soils having moderate infiltration rates when thoroughly wetted, and consisting chiefly of moderately fine to moderately coarse textures. These soils have a moderate rate of water transmission.
C.	Moderately high runoff potential: Soils having slow infiltration rates when thoroughly wetted, and consisting chiefly of soils with a layer that impedes downward movement of water, or soils with moderately fine to fine textures. These soils have a slow rate of water transmission.
D.	High runoff potential: Soils having very slow infiltration rates when thoroughly wetted and consisting chiefly of clay soils with a high swelling potential, soils with a permanent high water table, soils with a hardpan or clay later at or near the surface, and shallow soils over nearly impervious material. These soils have a very slow rate of water transmission.

Source: TR-55 (NRCS 1986), Exhibit A-1. Revisions made from [Soil Conservation Service \(SCS\)](#), Soil Interpretation Record, Form #5, September 1988.

Green-Ampt Equation

The Green-Ampt model calculates cumulative infiltration by assuming water flow into a vertical soil profile like a piston flow.

$$f_t = K \left(\frac{\psi \Delta \theta}{F_t} + 1 \right) \quad (1)$$

$$F_{t+\Delta t} = F_t + K \Delta t + \psi \Delta \theta \ln \left[\frac{F_{t+\Delta t} + \psi \Delta \theta}{F_t + \psi \Delta \theta} \right] \quad (2)$$

- Where:
- f_t = infiltration rate (mm/hr or in/hr)
 - ψ = initial matric potential of the soil (mm or inches)
 - $\Delta \theta$ = difference of soil water content after infiltration with initial water content
 - K = hydraulic conductivity (mm/hr or in/hr)
 - F_t = cumulative infiltration at time t (mm or inches)
 - $F_{t+\Delta t}$ = cumulative infiltration at time $t + \Delta t$ (mm or inches)
 - Δt = time incremental (hours)

Equation (1) is used for determining ponding situation and (2) is used for calculating the cumulative infiltration after ponding. Trial and error method is the most popular method to solve equation (2) (Chow et al. 1988). Parameters ψ , $\Delta \theta$, and K were tabulated by Chow et al. (1988) for all soil classes. Chow et al. (1988) developed a procedure to solve infiltration with changing rainfall intensity by Green-Ampt method in a table. However, since it simplifies the water movement as a piston flow, the wetting front is distorted.

Typical values suggested by Rawls, Brakensiek, and Miller (as reflected in Chow et al. 1988) are shown in Table F.4 below.

Table F.4. Green-Ampt Infiltration Parameters.

USDA Soil Classification	Suction Head ψ		Hydraulic Conductivity K		Porosity	Effective Porosity θ_e
	(mm)	(in/hr)	(mm/hr)	(in/hr)		
Sand	49.5	1.95	117.8	4.64	0.437	0.417
Loamy Sand	61.3	2.42	29.9	1.18	0.437	0.401
Sandy Loam	110.1	4.34	10.9	0.43	0.453	0.412
Loam	88.9	3.50	3.4	0.13	0.463	0.434
Silt Loam	166.8	6.57	6.5	0.26	0.501	0.486
Sandy Clay Loam	218.5	8.61	1.5	0.06	0.398	0.330
Clay Loam	208.8	8.23	1.0	0.04	0.464	0.309
Silty Clay Loam	273.0	10.76	1.0	0.04	0.471	0.432
Sandy Clay	239.0	9.42	0.6	0.02	0.430	0.321
Silty Clay	292.2	11.51	0.5	0.02	0.479	0.423
Clay	316.3	12.46	0.3	0.01	0.475	0.385

in/hr – inches per hour

mm – millimeters

mm/hr – millimeters per hour

USDA – United States Department of Agriculture

Holtan's Equation

The empirical infiltration equation devised by Holtan (1961) is explicitly dependent on soil water conditions in the form of available pore space for moisture storage:

$$F = (GI)(AH) SMD^{IEXP} + FC \quad (3)$$

- Where:
- F = surface infiltration rate at a given time (in/hr)
 - GI = Growth Index representing the relative maturity of the ground cover (0 for newly planted, 1 for mature cover)
 - AH = constant as specified below
 - SMD = soil moisture deficit at a given time (inches)
 - IEXP = infiltration exponent (default value is 1.4)
 - FC = minimum surface infiltration rate (in/hr) and occurs when SMD equals zero

Parameters GI, AH, FC, and the initial soil moisture deficit (SMD0) are the principal input parameters and can be determined as follows:

- GI is typically set to 1.0 to represent mature ground cover.
- AH can be determined from Table F.5.

- FC can be approximated from Table F.6 or by using the saturated hydraulic conductivity, which is available from soil survey reports.

Table F.5. Estimates of Holtan AH.

Land Use or Cover	Base Area Rating ^a	
	Poor Condition	Good Condition
Fallow ^b	0.10	0.30
Row crops	0.10	0.20
Small grains	0.20	0.30
Hay (legumes)	0.20	0.40
Hay (sod)	0.40	0.60
Pasture (bunchgrass)	0.20	0.40
Temporary pasture (sod)	0.40	0.60
Permanent pasture (sod)	0.80	1.00
Woods and forests	0.80	1.00

^a Adjustments needed for “weeds” and “grazing.”

^b For fallow land only, “poor condition” means “after row crop,” and “good condition” means “after sod.”

Source: Holtan et al. (1975)

Table F.6. Estimates of Holtan FC Values.

SCS-NRCS Hydrologic Soil Group	Minimum Infiltration Rates FC (inches/hour)
A	0.30–0.45
B	0.15–0.30
C	0.05–0.15
D	< 0.05

Source: Musgrave (1955)

This equation has been found to be suitable for inclusion in catchment models because of soil water dependence, and satisfactory progress has been reported for runoff predictions (Dunin 1976).

Kostiakov's Equation

Kostiakov (1932) proposed the following equation for estimating infiltration:

$$i(t) = \alpha t^{-\beta} \quad (4)$$

Where: t = time
i = infiltration rate
 α = empirical constant ($\alpha > 0$)
 β = empirical constant ($0 < \beta < 1$)

Upon integration from 0 to t , equation (4) yields equation (5), which is the expression for cumulative infiltration, $I(t)$:

$$I(t) = \frac{\alpha}{1-\beta} t^{(1-\beta)} \quad (5)$$

Where: $I(t)$ = cumulative infiltration

The constants α and β can be determined by curve-fitting equation (5) to experimental data for cumulative infiltration, $I(t)$. Since infiltration rate (i) becomes zero as $t \rightarrow \infty$, rather than approach a constant non-zero value, Kostiakov proposed that equations (4) and (5) be used only for $t < t_{\max}$ where t_{\max} is equal to $(\alpha / K_s)^{(1/\beta)}$, and K_s is the saturated hydraulic conductivity of the soil. Kostiakov's equation describes the infiltration quite well at smaller times, but becomes less accurate at larger times (Philip 1957a and 1957b; Parlange and Haverkamp 1989).

Horton's Equation

Horton (1940) proposed to estimate infiltration in the following manner,

$$i(t) = i_f + (i_0 - i_f)e^{-\gamma t} \quad (6)$$

and

$$I(t) = i_f t + \frac{1}{\gamma} (i_0 - i_f)(1 - e^{-\gamma t}) \quad (7)$$

Where: i_0 = measured infiltration rate
 i_f = final infiltration rate
 γ = empirical constant

It is readily seen that $i(t)$ is non-zero as t approaches infinity, unlike Kostiakov's equation. It does not, however, adequately represent the rapid decrease of i from very high values at small t (Philip 1957a and 1957b). It also requires an additional parameter over the Kostiakov equation. Parlange and Haverkamp (1989), in their comparison study of various empirical infiltration equations, found the performance of Horton's equation to be inferior to that of Kostiakov's equation.

Mezencev's Equation

In order to overcome the limitations of Kostiaikov's equation for large times, Mezencev (Philip 1957a and 1957b) proposed the following as modifications to equations (4) and (5). Mezencev proposed infiltration estimated by:

$$i(t) = i_f + \alpha t^{-\beta} \quad (8)$$

and

$$I(t) = i_f t + \frac{\alpha}{1-\beta} t^{(1-\beta)} \quad (9)$$

Where: i_f = final infiltration rate at steady state

Outfalls

Outfalls to Lakes and the Ship Canal

Single-event hydraulic analysis of outfalls that discharge to lakes and the Ship Canal should be performed using high water [surface elevation](#) from the observed record. This assumption may lead to conservative results and it is recommended that the designer consider using continuous simulation with a varying receiving water level. Table F.7 shows the maximum observed water levels in Seattle lakes. Water levels may vary from year to year due to sedimentation and season.

For continuous simulations, the designer may choose to use the historical record or the highest observed elevations. Lake Washington and associated waters are controlled at the Hiram M. Chittenden Locks by the US Army Corps of Engineers (USACE). Refer to the USACE Reservoir Control Center website (www.nwd-wc.usace.army.mil/nws/hh/www/index.html) for Lake Washington Ship Canal data and note that elevations given are in USACE datum and should be converted to NAVD88 before use.

Table F.7. Physical Characteristics of Seattle Lakes.

	Bitter Lake	Haller Lake	Green Lake	Lake Union	Lake Washington
Water surface elevation (feet, NAVD88) ^a	434.4	376.9	164.3	16.8	18.6
Maximum depth (feet) ^b	31.0	36.0	30.0	50.0	214.0
Mean depth (feet) ^b	16.0	16.0	13.0	34.0	108.0
Area (acres) ^b	19.0	15,044.9	259	580.0	21,500

^a SPU Engineering Support Division – Survey Field Books, measurements were all converted to NAVD88 from the old City of Seattle Vertical Datum based on a conversion factor of 9.7 feet.

^b Sources: King County (20152014a) and King County (20162014b).

Note: Water levels may vary from year to year by as much as 3 feet.

Tidal Influence/Sea Level Rise

When utilizing single-event hydraulic analysis of the drainage system or combined sewer system with outfalls that discharge to the tidally influenced Duwamish River or Puget Sound, the highest observed tide from the observed record shall be used. Match the peak rainfall intensity to a tide cycle simulation with a peak of 12.14 feet (NAVD88). This assumption may lead to conservative results and it is recommended that the designer consider using continuous simulation with a varying receiving water level.

For continuous simulations, the designer should match, by time, the historical tidal record to the historical rainfall record. For rainfall simulations where there is no observed tidal elevation, use of a tide predictor is recommended. Tidal information is available from National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA) (<http://tidesandcurrents.noaa.gov>) and from the US Army Corps of Engineer's (www.nws.usace.army.mil/About/Offices/Engineering/HydraulicsandHydrology/HistoricalDatumRegions.aspx). The tidal boundary is simulated as a water surface elevation time series computed using astronomical tide theory (NOAA 1995).

Sea level is rising, and for both continuous and single-event modeling, the designer should evaluate the risks depending on the project design life and objectives. ~~Since 1899, the observed trend from 1898 to 1999 was a rise of 2.062-11 mm per year, which is equivalent to 8 inches in 100 years (0.69 feet total).~~ The effect of climate change on predicted sea level rise is expected to greatly exceed that rate, but there is ~~considerable~~ uncertainty ~~regarding~~ timing and severity. The Washington Coastal Resilience Project (Miller et al. 2018) represents the best available science on sea level rise. A report by the National Research Council Committee on Sea Level Rise in California, Oregon, and Washington (NRC 2012) has provided low, medium, and high estimates of local sea level rise as shown in The report provides local projections at various likelihoods and time frames (see Figure F.2). For Seattle, the central estimate (i.e., 50 percent probability) is 1.9 to 2.3 feet of rise by 2100, and 3.0 to 3.9 feet by 2150. Upper-end estimates (1 percent probability) project 5.1 feet of rise by 2100, and 10.4 feet of rise by 2150.

~~For Puget Sound, the "medium" estimate of sea level rise is 7 inches by 2050 and 24 inches by 2100. The low probability high impact estimate is for a rise of 19 inches by 2050 and up to 56 inches by 2100.~~

For design of tidally impacted public drainage system and public combined sewer system, hydraulic analysis of sea level rise is required. For other projects, it is recommended that designers analyze risk by adjusting the tidal record upwards by 1 to 4 feet, depending on the design life and risk tolerance of the project. Likewise, designers should look to further mitigate risk by considering current design adjustments or identifying possible future modifications. For design of facilities where water level elevation at the outfall is critical, the City recommends that the designer consider storm surge due to low atmospheric pressure and/or wind and wave action.

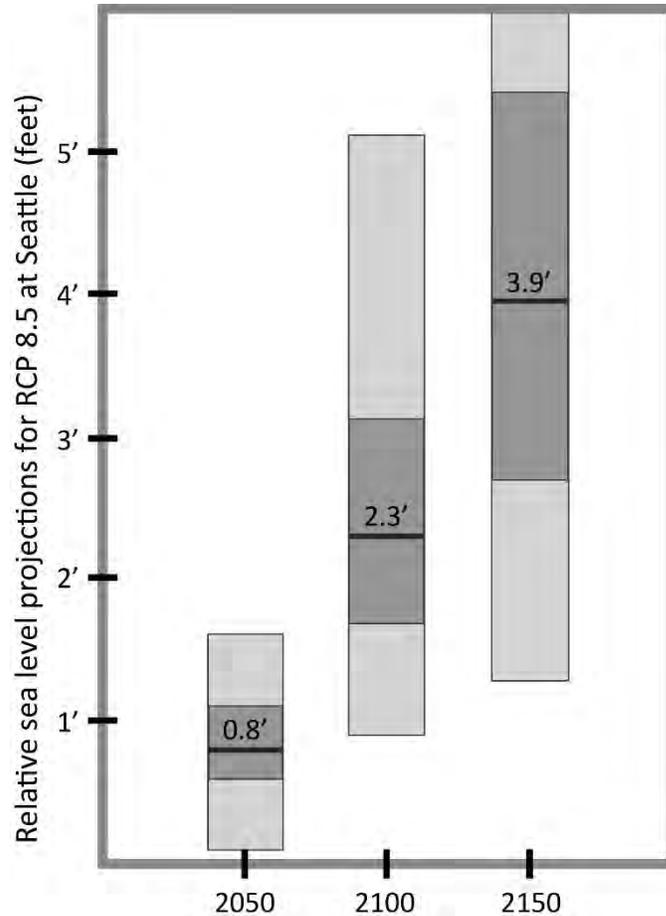


Figure F.2. Projected Sea Level Rise in Washington's Waters Relative to Year ~~2050~~2000.

F-4. Continuous Rainfall-Runoff Methods

This section includes specific modeling guidance that is applicable to continuous rainfall-runoff methods including precipitation input, land cover categorization, soil parameters, infiltration parameters, and modeling guidance.

Precipitation Input

Continuous rainfall-runoff models use multi-year inputs of precipitation and evaporation to compute a multi-year time series of runoff from the site. Using precipitation input that is representative of the site under consideration is critical for the accurate computation of runoff and the design of stormwater facilities.

Two types of precipitation and evaporation data are available for stormwater analysis. The first type is a design precipitation and evaporation time series. The design time series are appropriate for design and analysis of stormwater facilities and were developed by combining and scaling records from distant precipitation stations. The second type of time series is historical precipitation and evaporation time series (described in *Section F-3 – General*

Modeling Guidance). Because the record length of the historical precipitation and evaporation is relatively short, this data should be used for model calibration and not for design.

The City of Seattle Design Time Series consists of a precipitation and evaporation time series that are representative of the climatic conditions in the City of Seattle. The design precipitation time series was developed by combining and scaling precipitation records from widely separated stations to produce an “extended precipitation time series” with a 158-year record length (Schaefer and Barker 2002; Schaefer and Barker 2007). The precipitation scaling was performed such that the scaled precipitation record would possess the regional statistics at durations of 5 minutes, 10 minutes, 15 minutes, 20 minutes, 30 minutes, 45 minutes, 60 minutes, 2 hours, 6 hours, 24 hours, 3 days, 10 days, 30 days, 90 days, 6 months, and 12 months annual (Refer to [www.seattle.gov/sdci/codes/codes-we-enforce-\(a-z\)/stormwater-code](http://www.seattle.gov/sdci/codes/codes-we-enforce-(a-z)/stormwater-code) www.seattle.gov/dpd/codesrules/codes/stormwater/default.htm for modeling resources). The precipitation time series was developed at a 5-minute time step. For modeling of the combined sewer system, a shorter precipitation record length may be approved by the Director.

The evaporation time series waswere developed using a stochastic evaporation generating approach whereby daily evaporation was generated in a manner to preserve the daily and seasonal variability and accounting for differences observed on days with and without rainfall. The evaporation time series waswere developed from data collected at the Puyallup 2 West Experimental Station (station number 45-6803). Refer to [www.seattle.gov/sdci/codes/codes-we-enforce-\(a-z\)/stormwater-code](http://www.seattle.gov/sdci/codes/codes-we-enforce-(a-z)/stormwater-code) <http://www.seattle.gov/dpd/codesrules/codes/stormwater/default.htm> for modeling resources. The evaporation time series has a 1-hour time step.

Land Cover Categorization

~~Currently approved Ce~~continuous hydrologicflow models based on HSPF (e.g., WWHM and MGSFlood) include five land cover types: forest, pasture, lawn (or grass), wetland, and impervious. These cover types shall be applied as specified in Table F.8.

Soil and Infiltration Parameters

Soil Mapping

Mapping of soil types by the ~~Soil Conservation Service (SCS, now the National~~Natural Resources Conservation Service (NRCS), or the Washington Department of Natural Resources Geologic Information Portal (www.dnr.wa.gov/geologyportal) ~~mapping performed by the University of Washington (http://geomapnw.ess.washington.edu/)~~ may be used as a source of soil/geologic information for use in continuous hydrologic modeling. ~~The interactive online geologic maps for the Seattle area developed by the University of Washington generally provide a higher degree of resolution and better characterization of underlying soil geology.~~ If using SCS-NRCS maps, each soil type defined by the SCS-NRCS has been classified into one of four hydrologic soil groups; A, B, C, and D. Table F.3 shows ~~SCS~~hydrologic soil groups for common soil types in King County. As is common practice in hydrologic modeling in western

Washington, the soil groups used in the model generally correspond to the [SCS](#)-hydrologic soil groups as shown in Table F.9.

Table F.8. Continuous [Model Hydrologic Land Cover Groups](#) and Areas of Application.

Continuous Model Land Cover	Application	
	Pre-Developed	Post-Developed
Forest	All forest/shrub cover, irrespective of age	All permanent (e.g., protected by covenant) onsite forest/shrub cover, irrespective of age planted at densities sufficient to ensure 80%± canopy cover within 5 years.
Pasture	All grassland, pasture land, lawns, and cultivated or cleared area except for lawns in redevelopment areas with pre-development densities greater than 4 DU/GA	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> All areas that are amended using implementation options 2, 3, or 4 from Volume 3, Section 5.1.5.2 may be modeled as pasture rather than lawn (WWHM) or grass (MGSFlood). Unprotected forest in rural residential development shall be considered half pasture, half grass.
Lawn (or Grass) Landscape	Lawns in redevelopment areas with pre-development densities greater than 4 DU/GA	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> All post-development grassland and landscaping that is not amended using implementation options 2, 3, or 4 from Volume 3, Section 5.1.5.2. All onsite forested land not protected by covenant. This includes all disturbed areas required to meet the Soil Amendment BMP requirements (refer to Volume 1 and Volume 3, Section 5.1).
Wetland	All delineated wetland areas	All delineated wetland areas
Impervious	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> All impervious surfaces, including heavily compacted gravel and dirt roads, parking areas, etc. Open receiving waters (ponds and lakes) 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> All impervious surfaces (with and without underdrains), including heavily compacted gravel and dirt roads, parking areas, etc., and Pervious surfaces with underdrains Open receiving waters (ponds, lakes, and including onsite detention ponds, and wetwater quality ponds)

[BMP – Best Management Practice](#)

DU/GA – Dwelling Unit per Gross Acre

Table F.9. Relationship Between [SCS](#)-Hydrologic Soil Group and Continuous Model Soil Group.

SCS Hydrologic Soil Group	Continuous Model Soil Group
A	Outwash
B	Till or Outwash
C	Till
D	Wetland

SCS-Type B soils can be classified as either glacial till or outwash depending on the type of soil under consideration. Type B soils underlain by glacial till or bedrock, or ~~have~~with a seasonally high water table would be classified as till. Conversely, well-drained B type soils would be classified as outwash.

~~Note that neither the University of Washington nor SCS-The NRCS~~ maps may not be used for determining infiltration capacity or ~~for a~~ design infiltration rate.

Infiltration Parameters

The following discussion on HSPF model parameters applies to the use of continuous modeling (e.g., WWHM, MGSFlood). Default model parameters that define interception, infiltration, and movement of moisture through the soil, are based on work by the United States Geological Survey (USGS) (Dinicola 1990, 2001) and King County (2009). Pervious areas have been grouped into three land cover categories (forest, pasture, and lawn) and three soil/geologic categories (till, outwash, and saturated/wetland soil) for a total of seven cover/soil type combinations as shown in Table F.10. The combinations of soil type and land cover are called pervious land segments or PERLNDs. Default runoff parameters for each PERLND are summarized in Table F.11. These parameter values are used automatically by WWHM and MGSFlood programs for each land use type. A complete description of the PERLND parameters can be found in the HSPF User Manual (US EPA 2001). For a general discussion of infiltration equations refer to *Section F-3 – General Modeling Guidance*.

Table F.10. Pervious Land Soil Type/Cover Combinations used with HSPF Model Parameters.

Pervious Land Soil Type/Cover Combinations
1. Till/Forest
2. Till/Pasture
3. Till/Lawn
4. Outwash/Forest
5. Outwash/Pasture
6. Outwash/Lawn
7. Saturated Soil/All Cover Groups

Modeling Guidance

Computational Time Step Selection

An appropriate computational time step for continuous hydrologic models depends on the type of facility under consideration and the characteristics of the tributary watershed. In general, the design of facilities dependent on peak discharge require a shorter time step than facilities dependent on runoff volume. A longer time step is generally desirable to reduce the overall simulation time provided that computational accuracy is not sacrificed. Table F.12 summarizes the allowable computational time steps for various hydrologic design applications.

HSPF Parameter Modification

In HSPF (and MGSFlood and WWHM) pervious land categories are represented by PERLNDs and impervious land categories are represented by IMPLNDs. The only PERLND and IMPLND parameter [values](#) that should be adjusted by the user are LSUR (length of surface overland flow plane in feet), SLSUR (slope of surface overland flow plane in feet/feet), and NSUR (roughness of surface overland flow plane). [The default HSPF parameter values in MGSFlood and WWHM are appropriate for large sites that are not typical for City of Seattle projects. Users are required to change the values for LSUR, SLSUR, and NSUR per guidance in Table F.11 or adjust values for LSUR, SLSUR, and NSUR based on site-specific observations. These are parameters whose values are observable at an undeveloped site, and whose values can be reasonably estimated for the proposed development site. Any such changes made to parameter values noted in in Table F.11 shall](#) will be recorded in the model output [report and included](#). ~~The user shall submit PERLND and IMPLND changes with [their](#) project submittal.~~

Table F.11. Required Default Runoff Parameters Values for Each Pervious Land Segment (PERLND) and Impervious Land Segment (IMPLND).

Parameter	Pervious Land Segment (PERLND)							Impervious Land Segment (IMPLND)
	Till Soil			Outwash Soil			Saturated Soil	
	Forest	Pasture	Lawn	Forest	Pasture	Lawn	Forest, Pasture, or Lawn	
LZSN	4.5	4.5	4.5	5.0	5.0	5.0	4.0	NA
INFILT	0.08	0.06	0.03	2.0	1.6	0.8	2.0	NA
<u>LSUR^a</u>	<i>2 * √Contributing Area (square feet)</i>							
<u>LSUR</u>	<u>400</u>	<u>400</u>	<u>400</u>	<u>400</u>	<u>400</u>	<u>400</u>	<u>400</u>	
<u>SLSUR^a</u>	<u>0.050-1</u>	<u>0.050-1</u>	<u>0.050-1</u>	0.05	0.05	0.05	<u>0.050-001</u>	<u>0.05</u>
KVARY	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.3	0.3	0.3	0.5	NA
AGWRC	0.996	0.996	0.996	0.996	0.996	0.996	0.996	NA
INFEXP	2.0	2.0	2.0	2.0	2.0	2.0	10.0	NA
INFILD	2.0	2.0	2.0	2.0	2.0	2.0	2.0	NA
BASETP	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	NA
AGWETP	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.7	NA
CEPSC	0.2	0.15	0.1	0.2	0.15	0.1	0.1	NA
UZSN	0.5	0.4	0.25	0.5	0.5	0.5	3.0	NA
<u>NSUR^a</u>	<u>0.35</u>	<u>0.3</u>	<u>0.25</u>	<u>0.35</u>	<u>0.3</u>	<u>0.25</u>	0.5	<u>0.02</u>
INTFW	6.0	6.0	6.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	1.0	NA
IRC	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.7	0.7	0.7	0.7	NA
LZETP	0.7	0.4	0.25	0.7	0.4	0.25	0.8	NA
<u>RETSC</u>	<u>NA</u>	<u>NA</u>	<u>NA</u>	<u>NA</u>	<u>NA</u>	<u>NA</u>	<u>NA</u>	<u>0.1</u>

^a LSUR, SLSUR, and NSUR parameter values shall be adjusted based on site-specific observations.

LZSN = lower zone storage nominal (inches)

INFILT = infiltration capacity (in/hr)

LSUR = length of surface overland flow plane (feet)

SLSUR = slope of surface overland flow plane (feet/feet)

KVARY = groundwater exponent variable (inch -1)

AGWRC = active groundwater recession constant (day -1)

INFEXP = infiltration exponent

INFILD = ratio of maximum to mean infiltration

BASETP = base flow evapotranspiration (fraction)

AGWETP = active groundwater evapotranspiration (fraction)

CEPSC = Interception storage (inches)

UZSN = upper zone storage nominal (inches)

NSUR = roughness of surface overland flow plane (Manning's n)

INTFW = interflow index

IRC = interflow recession constant (day⁻¹)

LZETP = lower zone evapotranspiration (fraction)

RETSC = retention storage capacity (in)

NA = not applicable

Table F.12. Required Continuous Simulation Model Computational Time Step for Various Stormwater Facilities.

Type of Analysis	Maximum Time Step
Conveyance Sizing (Off-site)	5 minutes ^a
Conveyance Sizing Upstream of Stormwater Detention Facility (Onsite), TESC Design Flows	5 minutes ^a
Conveyance Sizing Downstream of Stormwater Detention Facility (Onsite), TESC Design Flows	15 minutes
Downstream Analysis, Off-site	5 minutes ^a
Flow Control (Detention and/or Infiltration) Facility and On-site BMP Sizing	5 minutes ^a
Water Quality Design Flow Rate	15 minutes
Water Quality Design Flow Volumes/Pollutant Loading	1 hour

^a A 15-minute time step may be used if the time of concentration computed is 30 minutes or more (refer to *Time of Concentration Estimation* in Section F-5).

Steps for Hydrologic Design Using Continuous Rainfall-Runoff Models

This section presents the general process involved in conducting hydrologic analyses using continuous models. The actual design process will vary considerably depending on the project scenario, the applicable requirements, the facility being designed, and the environmental conditions.

Step #	Procedure
C-1	Review all minimum requirements that apply to the proposed project (<i>Volume 1</i>)
C-2	Review applicable site assessment requirements (<i>Volume 1, Chapter 7</i>)
C-3	Identify and delineate the overall drainage basin for each discharge point from the development site under existing conditions: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Identify existing land use Identify existing soil types using onsite evaluation, NRCS soil survey, or mapping performed by the University of Washington (http://geomapnw.ess.washington.edu) Convert SCS-hydrologic soil types to HSPF soil classifications (till, outwash, or wetland) Identify existing drainage features such as streams, conveyance systems, detention facilities, ponding areas, depressions, etc.
C-4	Select and delineate pertinent subbasins based on existing conditions: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Select homogeneous subbasin areas Select separate subbasin areas for onsite and off-site drainage Select separate subbasin areas for major drainage features
C-5	Determine hydrologic parameters for each subbasin under existing conditions, if required: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Determine appropriate rainfall time series. For most design applications, the City of Seattle Design Time Series will be required. Categorize soil types and land cover Determine total and effective impervious areas within each subbasin Determine areas for each soil/cover type in each subbasin Select the required computational time step according to Table F.12
C-6	Compute runoff for the pre-developed condition. The continuous hydrologic model will utilize the selected precipitation time series, compute runoff from each subbasin, and route the runoff through the defined network. Flood-frequency and flow duration statistics will subsequently be computed at points of interest in the study area by the model.

Step #	Procedure
C-7	Determine hydrologic parameters for each subbasin under developed conditions: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Utilize rainfall time series selected for existing conditions • Categorize soil types and land cover • Determine total and effective impervious areas within each subbasin • Determine areas for each soil/cover type in each subbasin • Utilize computational time step selected for existing conditions
C-8	Compute runoff for the developed condition. The continuous hydrologic model will utilize the selected precipitation time series, compute runoff from each subbasin, and route the runoff through the defined network. Flood-frequency and flow duration statistics will subsequently be computed at points of interest in the study area by the model.

Additional design steps specific to flow control and water quality treatment facility design are described below.

Flow Control Facility Design

Peak Standard

Peak flow control-based standards require that the stormwater facilities be designed such that the post-development runoff peak discharge rate is controlled to one or more discharge rates, usually at specified recurrence intervals. An example of this type of standard is the Peak Flow Control Standard.

Flood-frequency analysis seeks to determine the flood flow or water surface elevation with a probability (p) of being equaled or exceeded in any given year. Return period (T_r) or recurrence interval is often used in lieu of probability to describe the frequency of exceedance of a flood of a given magnitude. Return period and annual exceedance probability are reciprocals (equation 10). Flood-frequency analysis is most commonly conducted for flood peak discharge and peak water surface elevation but can also be computed for maximum or minimum values for various durations. Flood-frequency analysis as used here refers to analysis of flood peak discharge or peak water surface elevation.

$$T_r = \frac{1}{p} \quad (10)$$

Where: T_r = average recurrence interval in years
 p = the annual exceedance probability

The annual exceedance probability of flow (or water surface elevation) may be estimated using the Gringorten (1963) plotting position formula (equation 11), which is a non-parametric approach.

$$T_r = \frac{N + 0.12}{i - 0.44} \quad (11)$$

Where: T_r = recurrence interval of the peak flow or peak elevation in years
 i = rank of the annual maxima peak flow from highest to lowest
 N = total number of years simulated

A probability distribution, such as the Generalized Extreme Value or Log-Pearson III (Interagency Advisory Committee on Water Data 1981), is not recommended for estimating the frequency characteristics.

Flood frequency analyses are used in continuous flow simulations to determine the effect of land use change and assess the effectiveness of flow control facilities. Flow control facilities are designed such that the post-developed peak discharge rate is at or below a target pre-developed peak discharge rate at one or more recurrence intervals. For example, Figure F.3 shows pre-developed and post-developed flood frequency curves for a stormwater pond designed to control peak discharges at the 2-year and 10-year recurrence intervals.

[Currently approved](#) Continuous simulation hydrologic models perform the frequency calculations and present the results in graphical and tabular form.

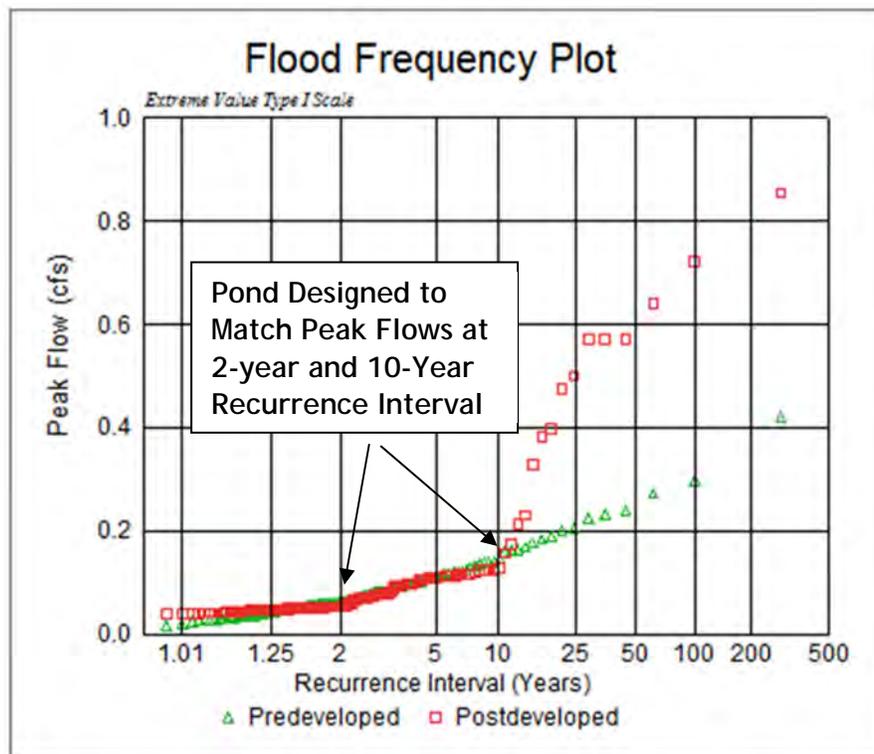


Figure F.3. Example Flood-Frequency Curves for a Stormwater Pond Designed to Control Post-Developed Peak Discharge Rates to Pre-Developed Levels at the 2-Year and 10-Year Recurrence Interval.

Flow Duration Standard

Flow duration statistics provide a convenient tool for characterizing stormwater runoff computed with a continuous hydrologic model. Examples of this type of standard are the Pre-developed Forest Standard and the Pre-developed Pasture Standard. [Evaluation of a flow duration design standard requires continuous simulation to compute the pre-development and post-development runoff record.](#) Duration statistics are computed by tracking the fraction of total simulation time that a specified flow rate is equaled or exceeded. Continuous rainfall-runoff models do this by dividing the range of flows simulated into discrete increments, and

then tracking the fraction of time that each flow is equaled or exceeded. For example, Figure F.4 shows a 1-year flow time series computed at hourly time steps from a 10-acre forested site and Figure F.5 shows the flow duration curve computed from this time series.

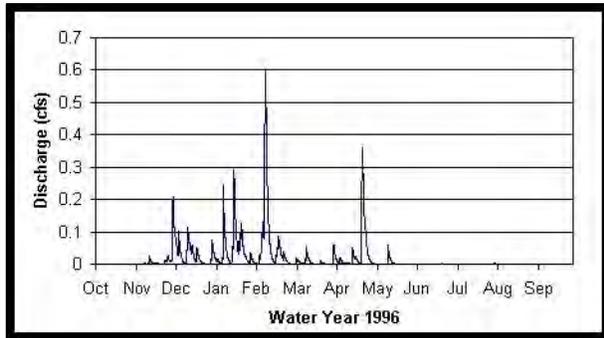


Figure F.4. Runoff from 10-Acre Forested Site.

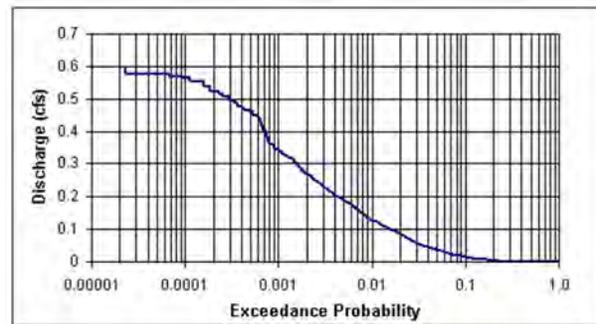


Figure F.5. Flow Duration Curve Computed Using Time Series in Figure F.4.

The fraction of time is termed “exceedance probability” because it represents the probability that a particular flow rate will be equaled or exceeded. It should be noted that exceedance probability for duration statistics is different from the “annual exceedance probability” associated with flood frequency statistics and there is no practical way of converting/relating annual exceedance probability statistics to flow duration statistics.

The flow duration standard can be viewed graphically as shown in Figure F.6. The flow duration curve for the site under pre-developed conditions is computed and is the target to which the post-developed flow duration curve is compared. The flow duration curve for the pond discharge must match the applicable pre-developed curve between 0.5 of the pre-developed 2-year ($0.5 Q_2$) and an upper limit, either the 2-year (Q_2) or the 50-year (Q_{50}) depending on the flow duration design standard for the facility.

Specified flow levels for the Pre-developed Forest Standard are typically 0.5 of the pre-developed 2-year peak flow ($0.5 Q_2$), the pre-developed 2-year peak flow (Q_2), and the pre-developed 50-year peak flow (Q_{50}) plus 97 other incremental flow values between $0.5 Q_2$ and Q_{50} . Specified flow levels for the Pre-developed Pasture Standard are typically 0.5 of the pre-developed 2-year peak flow ($0.5 Q_2$) and the pre-developed 2-year peak flow (Q_2) plus 98 other incremental flow values between $0.5 Q_2$ and Q_2 .

Depending on the flow duration design standard applicable to the stormwater facility, three criteria are evaluated to determine if the standard has been met.

1. Post-development flow duration values may not exceed the pre-development flow duration values between 0.5 of the pre-developed 2-year peak flow ($0.5 Q_2$) and the pre-developed 2-year peak flow (Q_2).
2. Post-development flow duration values may not exceed pre-development flow duration values between the pre-developed 2-year peak flow (Q_2) and the pre-developed 50-year peak flow (Q_{50}) by more than 10 percent, i.e., a post-development flow duration value may be up to 110 percent of the corresponding pre-development flow duration value.

3. [Post-development flow duration values may not exceed pre-development flow duration values for more than 50 percent of flow duration levels, i.e., not more than half of the post-development flow duration values may exceed 100 percent of the corresponding pre-development flow duration value.](#)

General guidance for adjusting the geometry and outlets of stormwater ponds to meet the duration standard were developed by King County (1999) and are summarized in Figure F.7 and described below. Refinements should be made in small increments with one refinement at a time. In general, the recommended approach is to analyze the duration curve from bottom to top, and adjust orifices from bottom to top. Inflection points in the outflow duration curve occur when additional structures (e.g., orifices, notches, overflows) become active. Refer to *Volume 3, Chapter 5* for complete facility design and sizing requirements.

Step #	Parameter	Procedure
P-1	Bottom Orifice Size	Adjust the bottom orifice to control the bottom arc of the post-developed flow duration curve. Reducing the bottom orifice discharge lowers and shortens the bottom arc while increasing the bottom orifice raises and lengthens the bottom arc.
P-2	Height of Second Orifice	The invert elevation of the second orifice affects the point on the flow duration curve where the transition (break in slope) occurs from the curve produced by the low-level orifice. Lower the invert elevation of the second orifice to move the transition point to the right on the lower arc. Raise the height of the second orifice to move the transition point to the left on the lower arc.
P-3	Second Orifice Size	The upper arc represents the combined discharge of both orifices. Adjust the second orifice size to control the arc of the curve for post-developed conditions. Increasing the second orifice raises the upper arc while decreasing the second orifice lowers the arc.
P-4	Pond Volume	Adjust the pond volume to control the upper end of the duration curve. Increase the pond volume to move the entire curve down and to the left to control riser overflow conditions. Decrease the pond volume to move the entire curve up and to the right to ensure that the outflow duration curve extends up to the riser overflow.

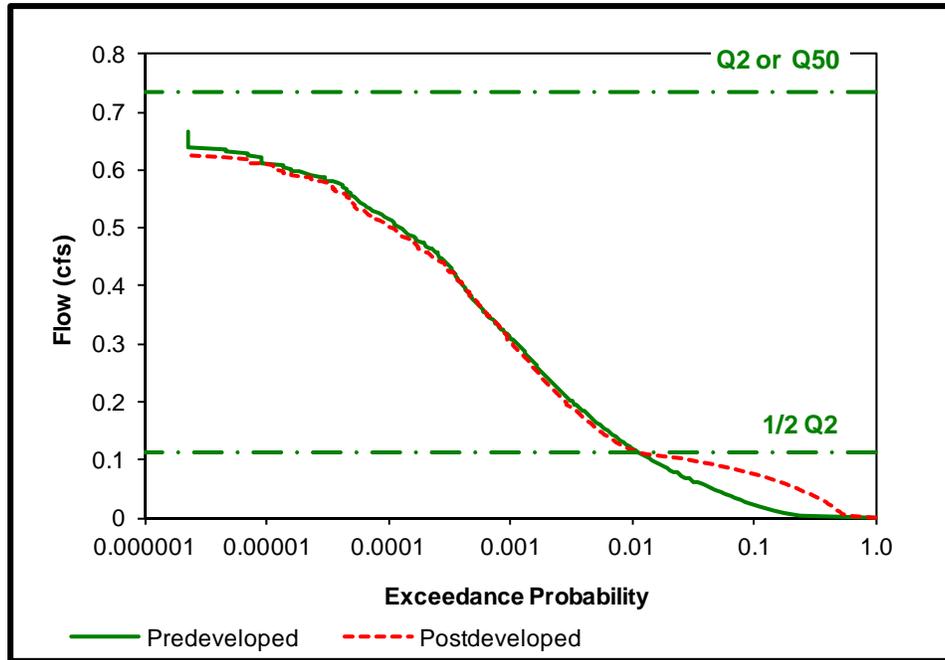


Figure F.6. Comparison of Pre-Developed and Post-Developed Flow Duration Curves.

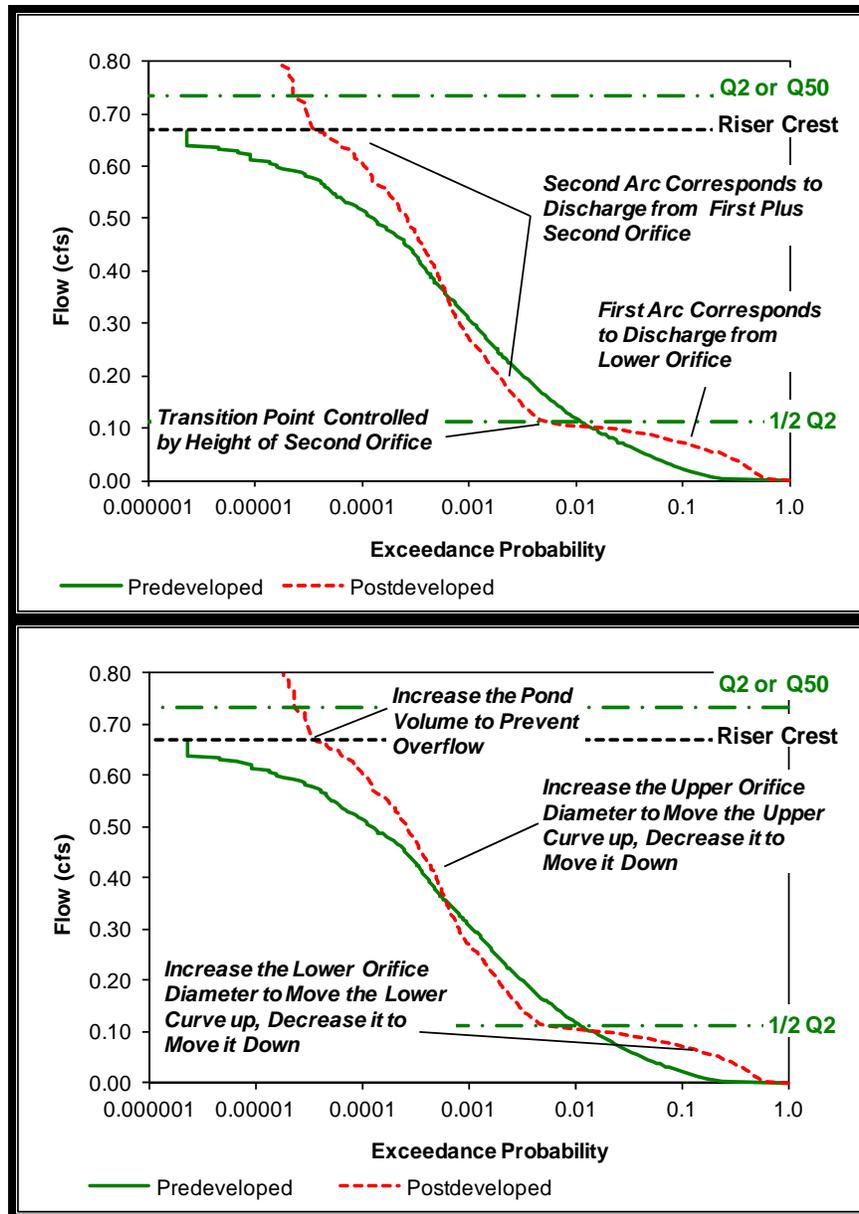


Figure F.7. General Guidance for Adjusting Pond Performance.

On-site Performance Standard BMP Design

This section provides guidance for sizing BMPs to meet the On-site Performance Standard. If the applicant chooses to use the On-site List Approach, modeling is typically not required (refer to sizing requirements in Chapter 5 of Volume 3). If the applicant chooses to use the On-site Performance Standard, the modeling procedures will depend upon the applicable target (i.e., forest or pasture). See Volume 3, Section 5.2.1 to determine the target based on the percent of existing hard surface and the type of drainage basin.

If the project discharge durations must match pre-developed forest flow durations for from 8 percent to 50 percent of the 2-year pre-developed flow, the procedures outlined above in the *Flow Duration Standard* subsection are generally applicable (with duration bounds revised

to 8 percent to 50 percent of the 2-year flow). Both WWHM and MGSFlood have the capability to evaluate (and report “pass” and “fail”) for this standard.

If the project discharge durations must match pre-developed pasture flow durations for the range of pre-developed discharge rates between the 1 percent and 10 percent exceedance values, the procedures outlined in this section are applicable.

The “frequency of exceedance” or “percent exceedance” (as referenced in the [Stormwater Code](#)), is the percent of time, over the simulation period (e.g., 158 years), that a given flow is equaled or exceeded. MGSFlood and WWHM both report “exceedance probability”- the decimal equivalent of “percent exceedance.” For example, the 1 to 10 percent exceedance range corresponds to the 0.01 and 0.1 exceedance probabilities displayed on the flow duration curves (see Figure F.7a). The standard is achieved if the post-developed flows are less than the pre-developed flows for the 1 to 10 percent exceedance range (red line is beneath the green line for the shaded range of exceedance values).

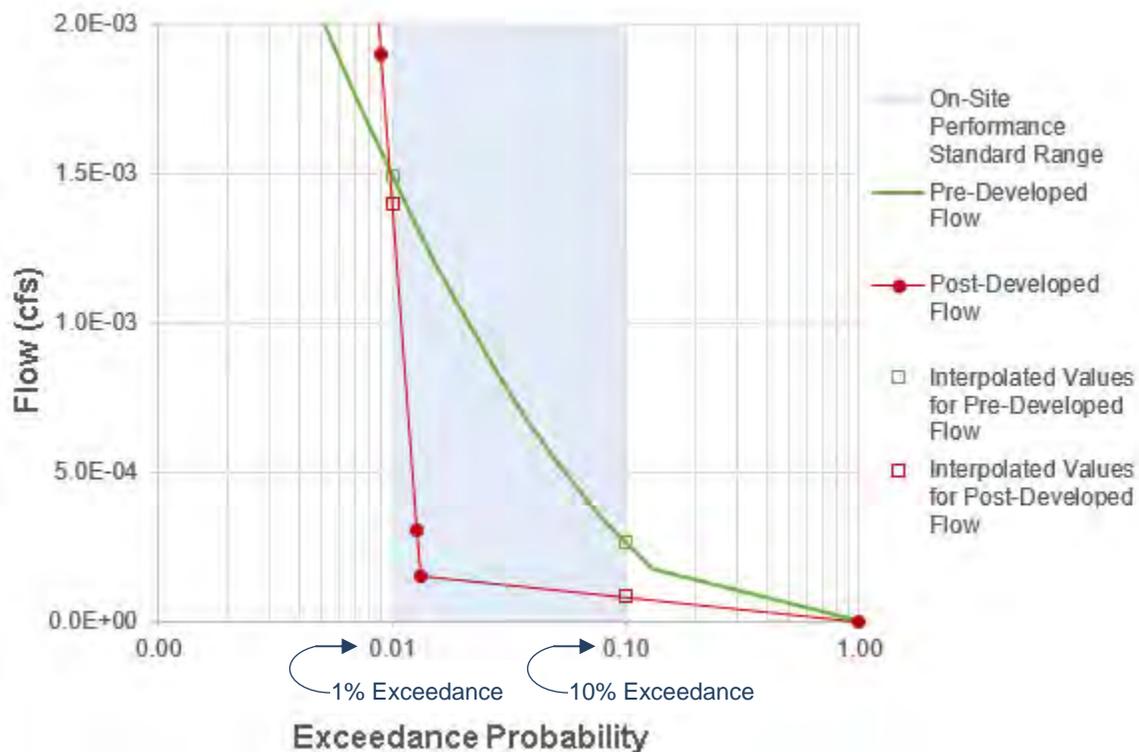


Figure F.7a. On-site Performance Standard Duration Curve.

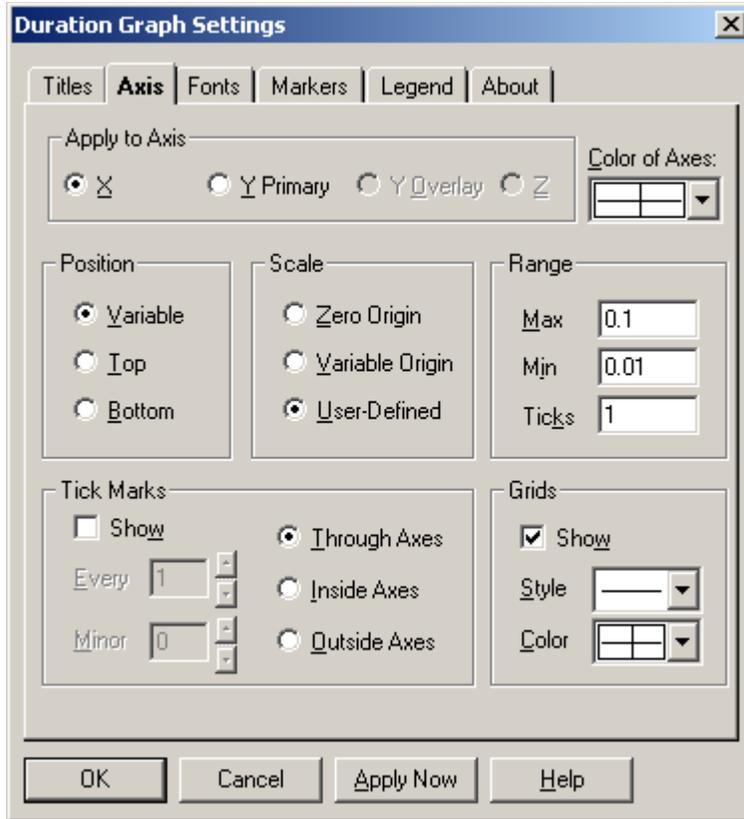
The latest versions of MGSFlood include the option to conduct a flow duration analysis based on the 1 to 10 percent exceedance standard. An MGSFlood user can select the option on the LID Duration tab in the Options menu. MGSFlood will then report “pass” or “fail” for the 1 to 10 percent exceedance standard. Neither MGSFlood nor WWHM does not currently (as of [March 2021](#) [February 5, 2016](#)) explicitly report “pass” or “fail” for the 1 to 10 percent exceedance standard. However, WWHM allows the user to define the bounds of duration analysis in term of flow rate (cubic feet per second). A user can calculate the pre-developed pasture 1 and 10 percent exceedance flow rates using the software and manually enter them

[as the bounds for the flow duration analysis on the Duration Criteria tab in the Options menu. WWHM will then report “pass” or “fail” for the 1 to 10 percent exceedance standard. We anticipate that, in the near future, both models will be updated to evaluate this standard internally. For users with different or older software, in the interim, the following procedures may be used to determine compliance with Seattle Stormwater Code. Details are provided for determining compliance with both MGSFlood and WWHM but similar procedures may be applicable to other software programs.](#)

Visual Evaluation of On-site Performance Standard in MGSFlood

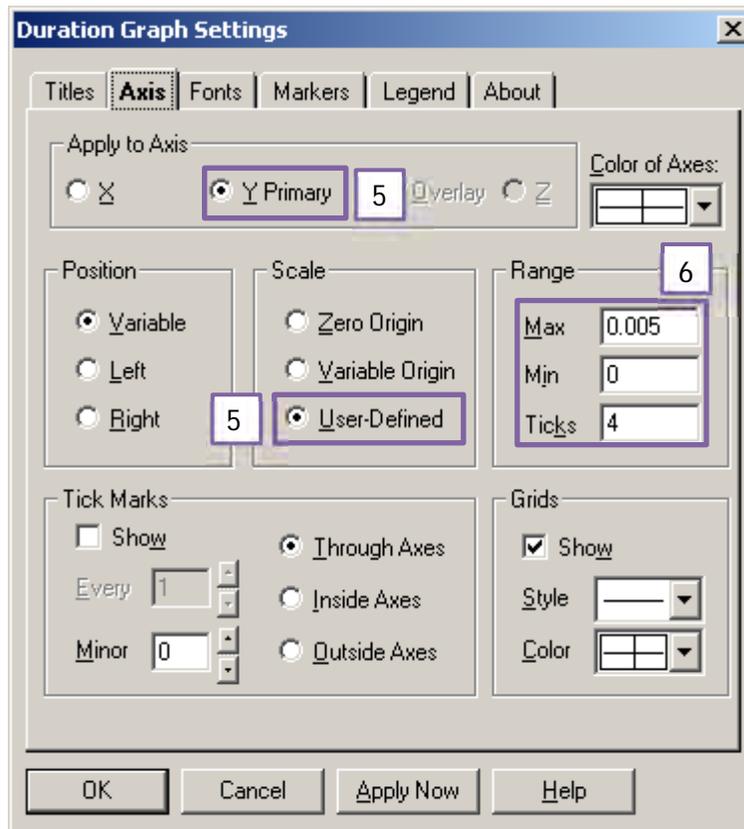
Compliance with the 1 to 10 percent exceedance standard may be confirmed by visually observing the MGSFlood Flow Duration Plot. The axes on the plot may be adjusted to clearly display the duration curve from 1 to 10 percent exceedance. Step-by-step instructions are provided below.

4. Right click on the Flow Duration Plot to open Duration Graph Settings
5. Select “Axis” tab
6. Edit x-axis scale (select “X”, “User Defined”)
7. Update x-axis range of values as follows:
 - a. Max = 0.1
 - b. Min = 0.01
 - c. Ticks = 1

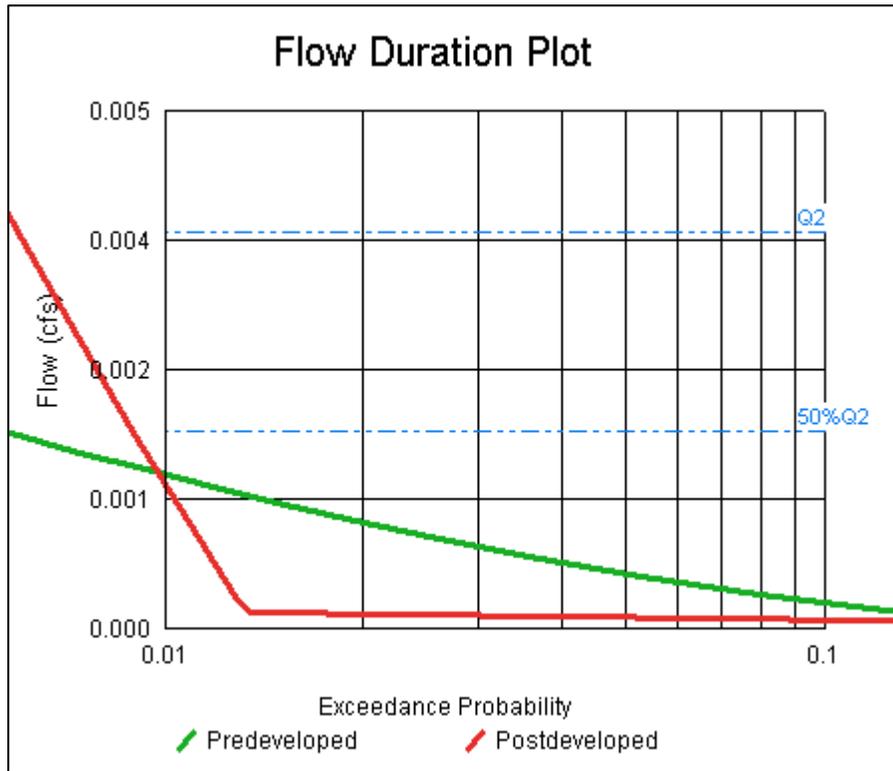


8. Edit y-axis scale (select "Y Primary," "User Defined")

- Update y-axis range of values. Values will vary depending on size of contributing area.



10. Visually inspect to confirm that the post-developed flows are less than the pre-developed flows for the 1 to 10 percent exceedance range (red line is beneath the green line for the range plotted).



Quantitative Evaluation of the On-site Performance Standard in MGSFlood

If the user wishes to fully optimize BMP sizes for the 1 to 10 percent exceedance standard, values must be calculated and evaluated outside of the model. Step-by-step procedures are provided below with an example:

1. Build and run the model
2. View report file (File>View Report)
3. Select "Full Output" to get full detailed report and click "Refresh"
4. Navigate to "Point of Compliance Flow Duration Data"
5. Determine pre-developed flows associated with 1 percent and 10 percent exceedance probability using the steps below. Note that a higher probability of exceedance corresponds to lower, more frequent, flows.
 - a. Identify the exceedance probability values immediately higher and immediately lower than the 1 percent exceedance. Record the exceedance probabilities and the associated flows as shown in the example below:

	Pre-development Runoff Discharge (cfs)	Exceedance Probability
Higher than 1%	1.37E-03	1.19%
Lower than 1%	1.54E-03	0.94%

6. Identify the exceedance probability values immediately higher and immediately lower than the 10 percent exceedance. Record the exceedance probabilities and the associated flows as shown in the example below:

	Pre-development Runoff Discharge (cfs)	Exceedance Probability
Higher than 10%	1.71E-04	13.15%
Lower than 10%	3.42E-04	7.97%

7. Logarithmically interpolate flows associated with the 1 and 10 percent exceedance probabilities using Equation 1 and Equation 2, respectively.

$$Flow_{1\%} = Flow_{lower} + \frac{Flow_{lower} - Flow_{higher}}{\log(Exceedance_{lower}) - \log(Exceedance_{higher})} \times [\log(1\%) - \log(Exceedance_{lower})] \quad \text{Eq 1.}$$

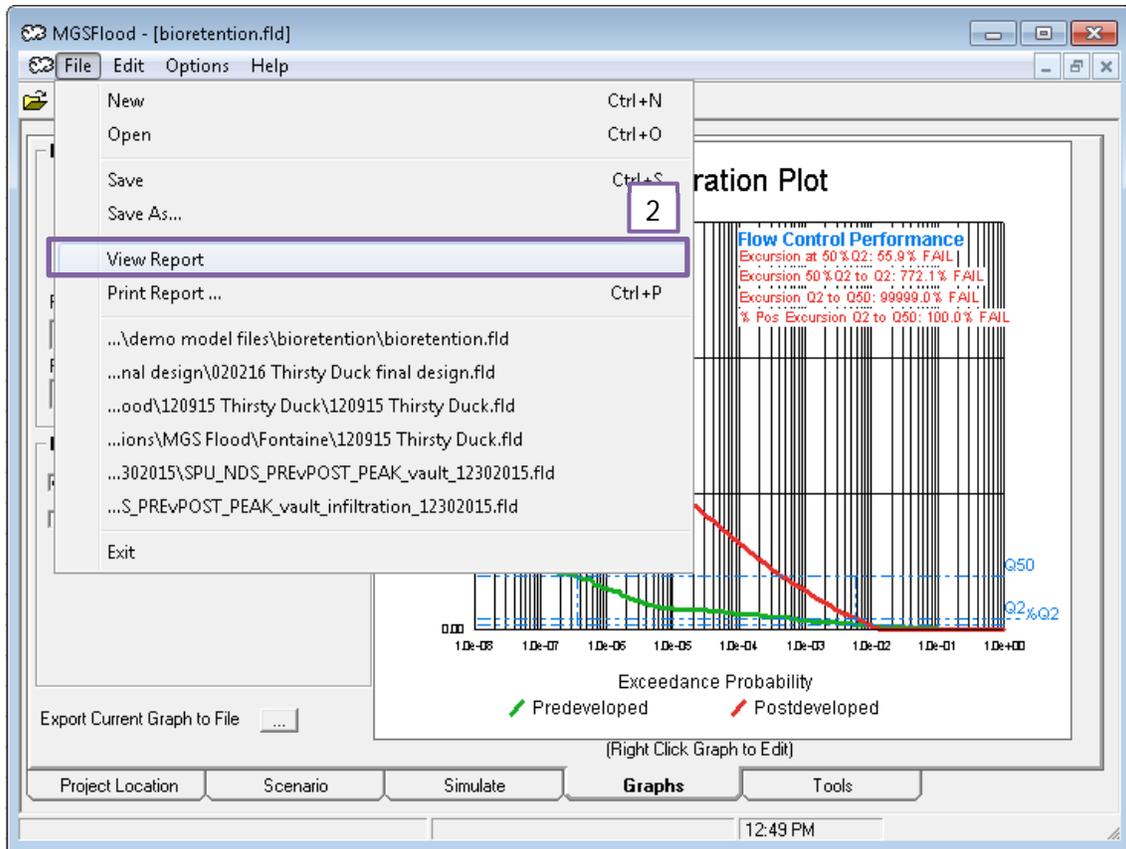
$$Flow_{10\%} = Flow_{lower} + \frac{Flow_{lower} - Flow_{higher}}{\log(Exceedance_{lower}) - \log(Exceedance_{higher})} \times [\log(10\%) - \log(Exceedance_{lower})] \quad \text{Eq 2.}$$

Results for this example are shown below:

	Pre-development Runoff Discharge (cfs)	Exceedance Probability
Interpolated flows at 1%	1.49E-03	1.00%
Interpolated flows at 10%	2.64E-04	10.00%

8. Determine post-developed flows associated with 1 percent and 10 percent exceedance probability. Repeat Steps 5a, 5b, and 5c using post-developed flows.

	Post-development Runoff Discharge (cfs)	Exceedance Probability
Interpolated flows at 1%	1.40E-03	1.00%
Interpolated flows at 10%	8.16E-05	10.00%



Summary Report

*** Point of Compliance Flow Duration Data ***

Predevelopment Runoff		Postdevelopment Runoff	
Discharge (cfs)	Exceedance Probability	Discharge (cfs)	Exceedance Probability
0.000E+00	1.0000E+00	0.000E+00	1.0000E+00
1.708E-04	1.3153E-01	1.528E-04	1.3408E-02
3.417E-04	7.9651E-02	3.056E-04	1.2772E-02
5.125E-04	5.2827E-02	1.894E-03	8.9475E-03
6.834E-04	3.8934E-02	2.525E-03	7.8439E-03
8.542E-04	2.6978E-02	3.157E-03	6.8956E-03
1.025E-03	2.0119E-02	3.820E-03	5.9901E-03
1.196E-03	1.5285E-02		-03
1.367E-03	1.1882E-02		-03
1.538E-03	9.3564E-03		-03
1.708E-03	7.4473E-03		-03
1.910E-03	5.7199E-03	6.945E-03	3.2085E-03
2.050E-03	4.8110E-03	7.615E-03	2.8183E-03
2.221E-03	3.8998E-03	8.208E-03	2.5351E-03
2.392E-03	3.1807E-03	8.839E-03	2.2812E-03
2.563E-03	2.5968E-03	9.470E-03	2.0536E-03
2.733E-03	2.1169E-03	1.010E-02	1.8602E-03
2.904E-03	1.7104E-03	1.073E-02	1.6888E-03
3.075E-03	1.4057E-03	1.136E-02	1.5407E-03
3.246E-03	1.1695E-03	1.200E-02	1.4010E-03
3.417E-03	9.9161E-04	1.263E-02	1.2808E-03

Report Output Level

Minimal Output (Compliance Statistics Only)
 Moderate Output (Includes Stats at All Locations)
 Full Output (Includes Stat Tables, Hydraulic Rating Tables)

Include Flow Duration Compliance Statistics
 Include LID Duration Compliance Statistics

Buttons: Refresh, Close

9. Compare pre-developed flows and post-developed flows at 1 and 10 percent exceedance probabilities and visually confirm, from the flow duration curves in the model, that the post-developed flows are smaller than the pre-developed flows. If post-developed flows at the 1 or 10 percent exceedance probability are higher than the pre-developed flows, or if the post developed flows appear to exceed the pre-developed flows for the 1 to 10 percent exceedance range of the duration curve (refer to procedures for visual observation, above), increase the BMP size(s), run the model, and repeat Steps 2 through 9.

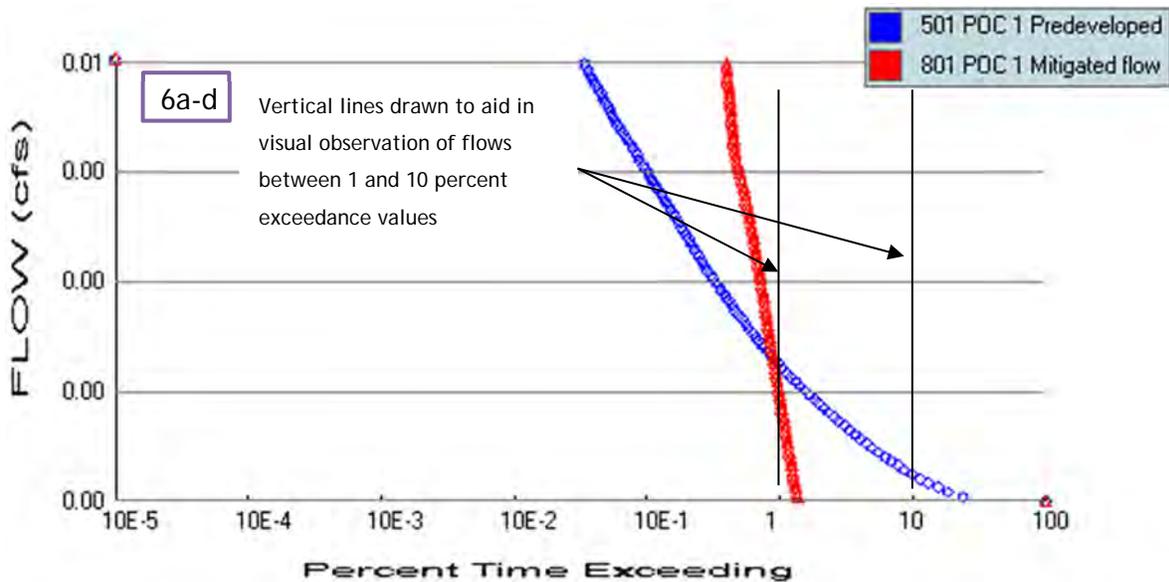
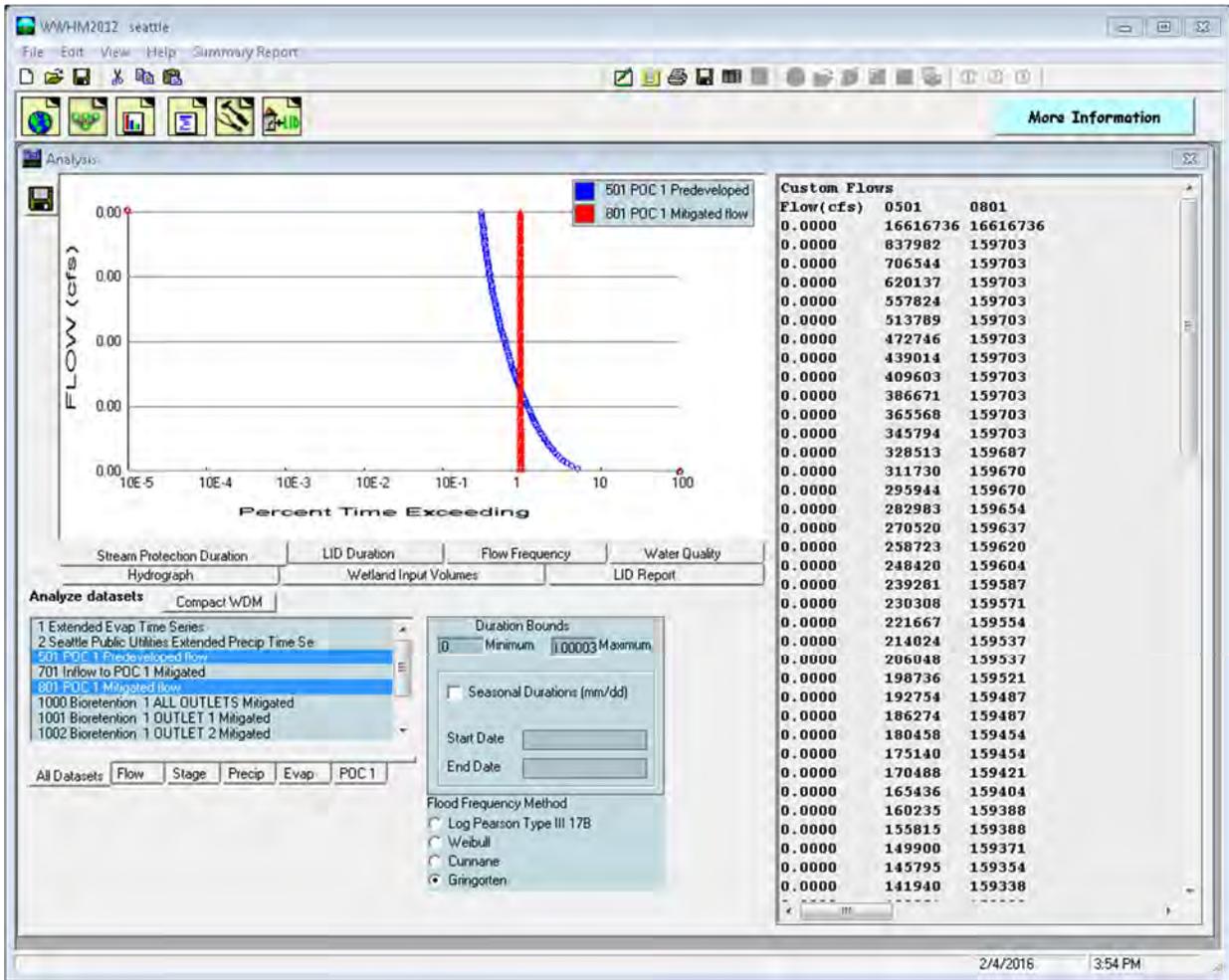
See Figure F.7a for a comparison of pre-and post-developed flow duration curves for the target exceedance probability range. Figure F.7a also includes the interpolated data points described above, shown as hollow squares on the graph. If post-developed flows (shown in red) are smaller than pre-developed flows (shown in green) for the target exceedance probability range (grey hatch), the project satisfies the On-site Performance Standard.

Visual Evaluation of On-site Performance Standard in WWHM

Compliance with the 1 to 10 percent exceedance standard may be estimated by visually observing the WWHM Stream Protection Duration Plot. The axes on the plot must be adjusted and manually evaluated to more clearly display the duration curve from 1 to 10 percent exceedance. Because the graphs are difficult to accurately read, the facility may need to be somewhat oversized to visually confirm compliance. Step-by-step instructions are provided below:

1. Build and run the model
2. View the “Stream Protection Duration” results in the Analysis tab window
3. Select the appropriate points of compliance for the pre-developed scenario and the mitigated (i.e., post-developed) scenario under “All Datasets” (hold CTRL to select more than one)
 - 501 POC 1 Predeveloped flow*
 - 801 POC 1 Mitigated flow*
4. Modify the “Duration Bounds” to include the 1 and 10 percent exceedance values
 - a. Minimum = 0 cfs
 - b. Maximum = established by trial and error until the pre-developed flows corresponding to the 1 percent exceedance are visible on the graph. To optimize the facility size(s), set the maximum value slightly above the predeveloped flow that is exceeded 1 percent of the time. This value can be approximated as the contributing area in acres times 0.00025 cfs per acre.
5. Select the “Stream Protection Duration” tab to re-calculate the results with the new duration bounds

6. Visually inspect the duration plot to confirm that the mitigated flows are smaller than the pre-developed flows for the 1 to 10 percent exceedance range. Because the plots are difficult to accurately read, the following steps are required to confirm compliance with the 1 to 10 percent exceedance standard:
 - a. Take a screenshot of the flow duration curve
 - b. Paste the screenshot into a word processing software, e.g., [Microsoft Word](#)
 - c. Overlay two vertical lines at the 1% and 10% tick marks
 - d. Confirm the mitigated flows (red line) are below the pre-developed flows (blue line) within the range of the two horizontal lines. Note: to visually ensure compliance, the facility may need to be somewhat oversized (the screenshot shown below is 10 percent larger than required when quantitative evaluated using the procedure provided below).



Evaluation of the On-site Performance Standard in WWHM

To quantitatively evaluate and fully optimize BMP sizes for the 1 to 10 percent exceedance standard, values must be calculated and evaluated outside of the model. Step-by-step procedures are provided below with an example:

1. Build and run the model
2. View the “Stream Protection Duration” results in the Analysis tab window
3. Select the appropriate points of compliance for the pre-developed scenario and the mitigated (i.e., post-developed) scenario under “All Datasets” (hold CTRL to select more than one)

501 POC 1 Predeveloped flow

801 POC 1 Mitigated flow

4. Modify the “Duration Bounds” to include the 1 and 10 percent exceedance values
 - a. Minimum = 0 cfs
 - b. Maximum = established by trial and error until the pre-developed flows corresponding to the 1 percent exceedance are visible on the graph. To optimize the facility size(s), set the maximum value slightly above the predeveloped flow that is exceeded 1 percent of the time. This value can be approximated as the contributing area in acres times 0.00025 cfs per acre.

$$0.12 \text{ acres} \times 0.00025 \text{ cfs/acre} = 0.00003$$

5. Select the “Stream Protection Duration” tab to re-calculate the results with the new duration bounds
6. Determine the total number of timesteps calculated by the model. Refer to the first line in the “Custom Flows” table (i.e., number of timesteps associated with a flow of zero cfs [flow at every timestep is greater than or equal to zero cfs]).

Custom Flows		
Flow(cfs)	0501	0801
0.0000	16616736	16616736

7. Calculate the number of timesteps that correspond to the 1 percent and 10 percent exceedance values using Equations 3 and 4

$$1 \text{ Percent of Timesteps} = \text{Total number of Timesteps} \times 0.01 \tag{Eq 3.}$$

$$10 \text{ Percent of Timesteps} = \text{Total number of Timesteps} \times 0.1 \tag{Eq 4.}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 1 \text{ Percent of Timesteps} &= 16,616,736 \times 0.01 = 166,167 \\
 10 \text{ Percent of Timesteps} &= 16,616,736 \times 0.1 = 1,661,674
 \end{aligned}$$

8. Compare pre-developed flows and post-developed (i.e., mitigated) flows at the 1 percent exceedance probability. While the flow values themselves are often too small to display in the “Custom Flows” table in WWHM, the number of timesteps a

given flow is exceeded can be used to evaluate facility performance relative to the pre-developed condition. For the On-site Performance standard, all flows with a probability of exceedance from 1 to 10 percent should be exceeded at the same frequency, or less frequently than the predeveloped condition. In other words, for a given flow in the target range, the number of timesteps that flow is exceeded should be fewer in the mitigated scenario than the pre-developed scenario. To compare the pre-developed and mitigated flows:

- a. Identify the flow values immediately higher and immediately lower than the target 1 percent of timesteps (as determined in Step 7) for the pre-developed scenario
- b. Compare the number of timesteps these flow values are exceeded in the mitigated scenario to the pre-developed scenario.
- c. If the pre-developed scenario is exceeded less frequently than the mitigated scenario, increase facility size and repeat Step 8.
- d. Proceed to Step 9.

Custom Flows		
Flow(cfs)	0501	0801
0.0000	170488	159421
0.0000	165436	159404

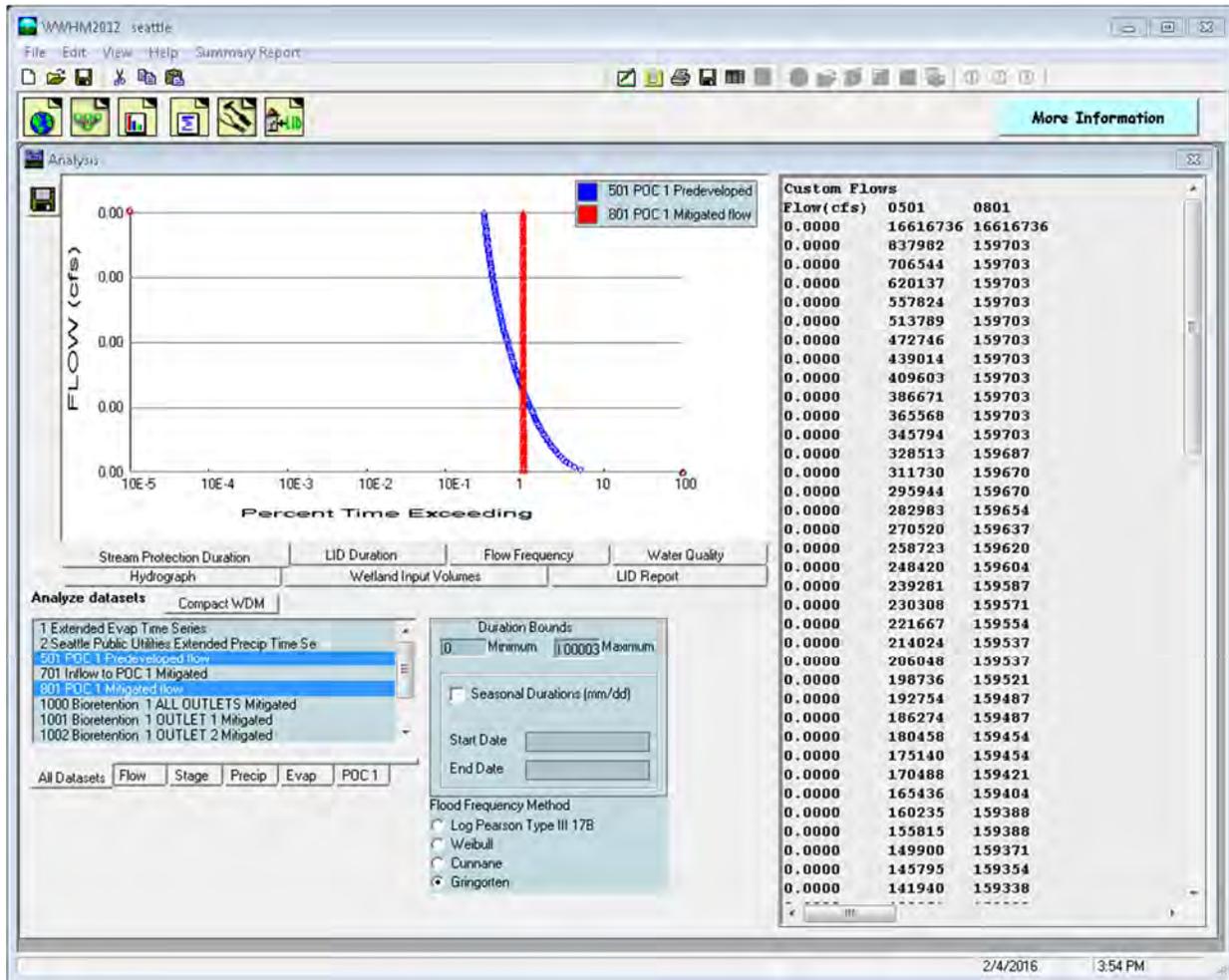
The first flow is exceeded for 170,488 timesteps ($170,488/16,616,736 = 1.03\%$) in the pre-developed condition. The second flow is exceeded for 165,436 timesteps ($165,436/16,616,736 = 0.996\%$) in the pre-developed condition. For these flows, the mitigated scenario is exceeded for a fewer number of timesteps than the pre-developed scenario, therefore the mitigated condition meets the On-site Performance Standard at the 1 percent exceedance value.

9. Compare pre-developed flows and post-developed (i.e., mitigated) flows at the 10 percent exceedance probability:
 - a. Identify the flow values immediately higher and immediately lower than the target 10 percent of timesteps (as determined in Step 7) for the pre-developed scenario.
 - b. Compare the number of timesteps these flow values are exceeded in the mitigated scenario to the pre-developed scenario.
 - c. If the pre-developed scenario is exceeded less frequently than the mitigated scenario, increase facility size and repeat Step 9.
 - d. Proceed to Step 10.

Custom Flows		
Flow(cfs)	0501	0801
0.0000	16616736	16616736
0.0000	837982	159703

The first flow is exceeded for 16,616,736 timesteps (16,616,736/16,616,736 = 100%) for both the pre-developed scenario and the mitigated scenario. The second flow is exceeded for 837,982 timesteps (837,982/16,616,736 = 5.04%) in the pre-developed condition and is exceeded for 21,134 timesteps in the mitigated condition. Therefore the mitigated condition meets the on-site standard at the 10 percent exceedance value.

10. Visually confirm, from the flow duration curves in the model, that the mitigated flows are smaller than the pre-developed flows for the 1 to 10 percent exceedance range. If the post developed flows appear to exceed the pre-developed flows for the 1 to 10 percent exceedance range of the duration curve, increase the BMP size(s) and repeat Steps 8 through 10.



Water Quality Treatment BMP Design

Water Quality Design Volume

The water quality design volume for sizing wet ponds is computed as the daily runoff volume that is greater than or equal to 91 percent of all daily values in the simulation period. The continuous model develops a daily runoff time series from the pond inflow time series and scans the computed daily time series to determine the 24-hour volume that is greater than or equal to 91 percent of all daily values in the time series. This value is then used as the volume for a “Basic Wet Pond” and 1.5 times this value is used for sizing a “Large Wet Pond.”

The water quality design volume is defined as the daily runoff volume at which 91 percent of the total runoff volume is produced by smaller daily volumes. The procedure can be visualized using Figure F.8 below. The bars on the graph represent daily inflow volume for the entire simulation. The time span along the x-axis in Figure F.8 is for 105 days, but in practice, this would include the entire simulated inflow time series (e.g., 158 years).

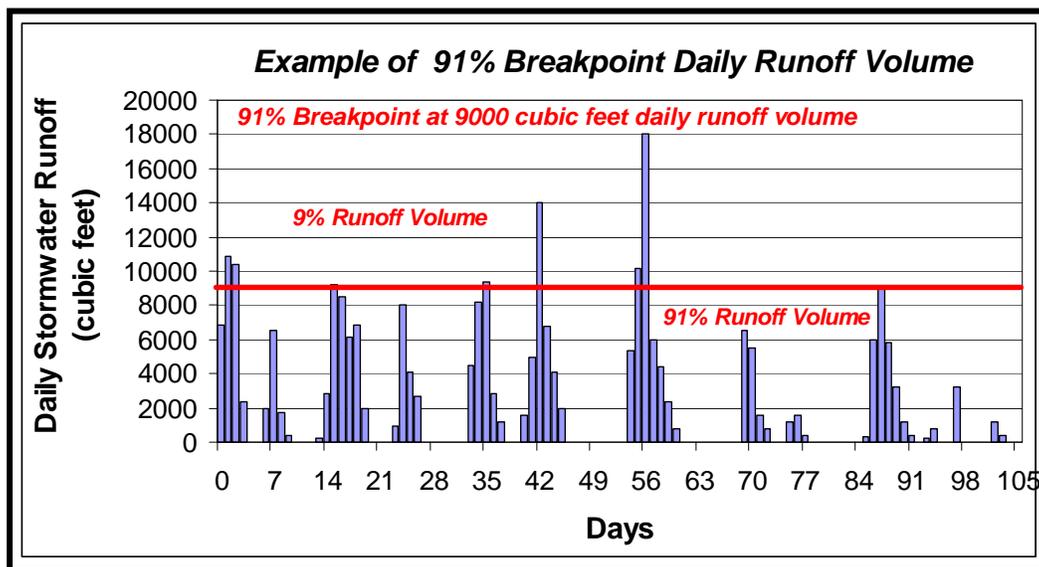


Figure F.8. Example of Portion of Time-Series of Daily Runoff Volume and Depiction of Water Quality Design Volume.

The horizontal line represents the water quality design volume. Its value is calculated such that 91 percent of the total daily runoff volume for the entire simulation resides below this line and 9 percent of the total daily runoff volume for the entire simulation exceeds the water quality design volume. Stated another way, if you total the daily runoff volumes that exceed the 9,000 cubic foot water quality design volume, they represent 9 percent of the total runoff volume.

The process for computing this water quality design volume may vary among continuous simulation models. An example of a typical approach used to compute the water quality design volume (WQDV) is summarized below.

Step #	Procedure
WQDV-1	Compute daily volume to the pond using the inflow time (convert the inflow rate to inflow volume on a midnight to midnight basis using a 1-hour or less time step).
WQDV-2	Compute the total inflow volume by summing all of the daily inflow volume values for the entire simulation.
WQDV-3	Compute a breakpoint value by multiplying the total runoff volume computed in Step WQDV-2 by 9 percent.
WQDV-4	Sort the daily runoff values from Step WQDV-1 in descending order (highest to lowest).
WQDV-5	Sum the sorted daily volume values until the total equals the 9 percent breakpoint. That is, the largest volume is added to the second largest, which is added to the third largest, etc., until the total equals the 9 percent breakpoint.
WQDV-6	The last daily value added to match the 9 percent breakpoint is defined as the water quality design volume.

Water Quality Treatment Design Flow Rate

The flow rate used to design flow rate dependent treatment facilities depends on whether or not the treatment is located upstream of a stormwater detention facility and whether it is an on-line or offline facility (Figure F.9).

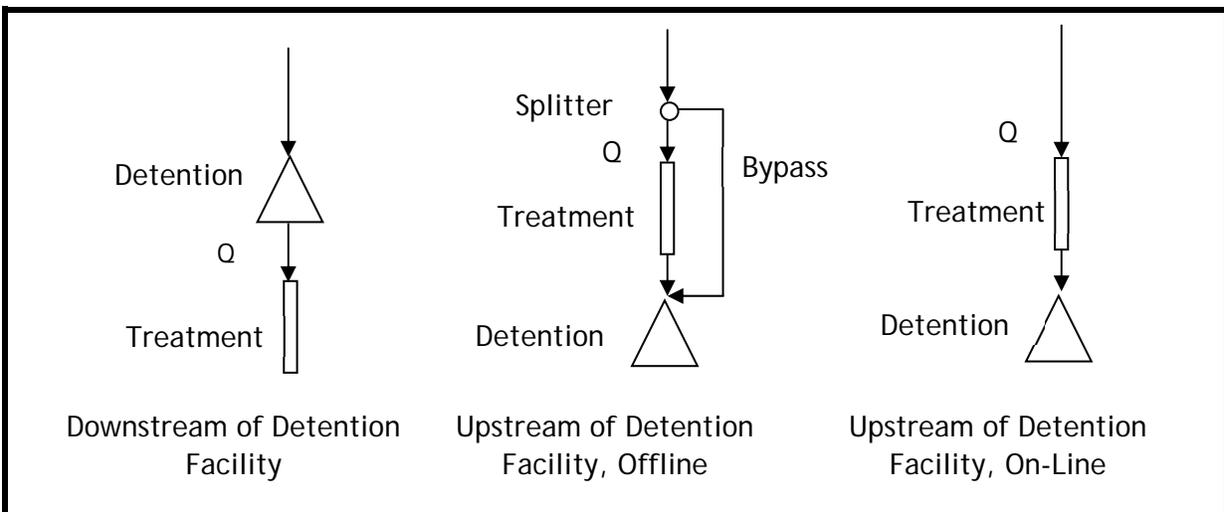


Figure F.9. Water Quality Treatment and Detention Definition.

Downstream of Detention Facilities: If the treatment facility is located downstream of a stormwater detention facility, then the water quality design flow rate is the release rate from the detention facility that has a 50 percent annual probability of occurring in any given year (2-year recurrence interval).

Upstream of Detention Facilities, Offline: Offline water quality treatment located upstream of the detention facility includes a high-flow bypass that routes the incremental flow in excess of the water quality design rate around the treatment facility. It is assumed that flows from the bypass enter the system downstream of the treatment facility but upstream of the detention facility. The continuous model determines the water quality treatment design flow rate as the rate corresponding to the runoff volume that is greater than or equal to

91 percent of the 15-minute runoff volume entering the treatment facility (Figure F.10). If runoff is computed using the City of Seattle Design Time Series with a time step of 15 minutes or less, then no time step adjustment factors are need for the water quality design discharge.

Upstream of Detention Facilities, On-line: On-line water quality treatment does not include a high-flow bypass for flows in excess of the water quality design flow rate and all runoff is routed through the facility. The continuous model determines the water quality treatment design flow rate as the rate corresponding to the runoff volume that is greater than or equal to 91 percent of the 15-minute runoff volume entering the treatment facility. However, those flows that exceed the water quality design flow are not counted as treated in the calculation (Figure F.11). Therefore, the design flow rate for on-line facilities is higher than for offline facilities. If runoff is computed using the City of Seattle Design Time Series with a time step of 15 minutes or less, then no time step adjustment factors are need for the water quality design discharge.

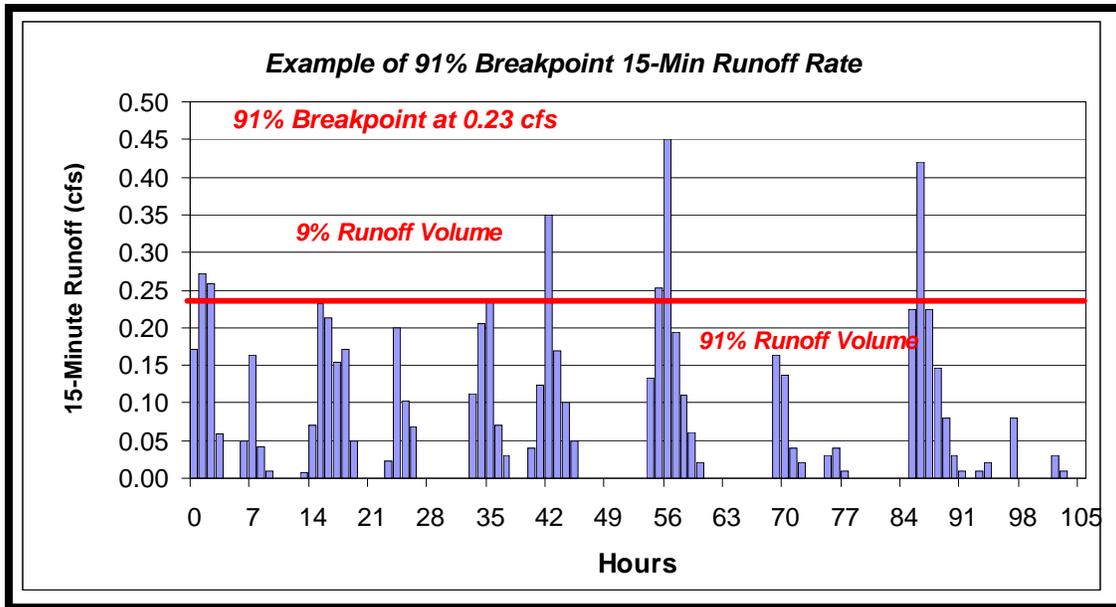


Figure F.10. Offline Water Quality Treatment Discharge Example.

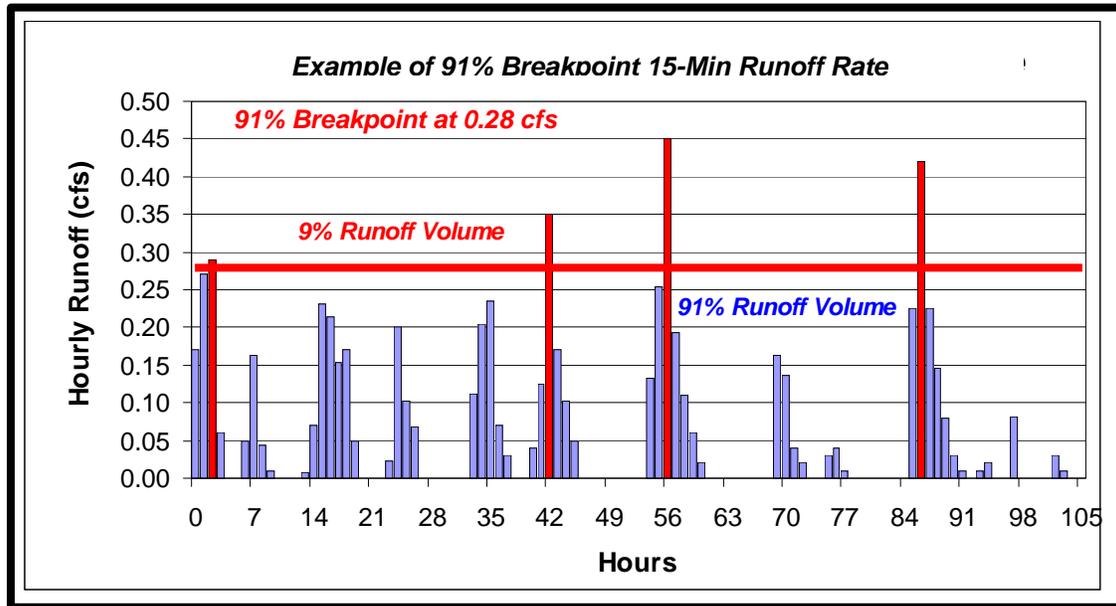


Figure F.11. On-Line Water Quality Treatment Discharge Example.

Infiltration Facilities Providing Water Quality Treatment: Infiltration facilities designed for water quality treatment must infiltrate 91 percent of the total runoff volume through soil meeting the treatment soils requirements outlined in *Volume 3, Section 4.5.2*. The procedure is the same as for designing infiltration for flow control, except that the target is to infiltrate 91 percent of the runoff file without overflow (refer to *Volume 3, Section 4.5.1*). In addition, to prevent the onset of anaerobic conditions, an infiltration facility designed for water quality treatment purposes must be designed to drain the water quality design volume within 48 hours. Drain time can be calculated by using a horizontal projection of the infiltration basin mid-depth dimensions and the design infiltration rate.

Stormwater Conveyance

Storms that produce the highest rates of runoff from developed areas are typically shorter in duration and are characterized by brief periods of high intensity rainfall. A 5-minute time step (refer to Table F.12) is required to adequately simulate the runoff peak discharge and hydrograph shape resulting from these high-intensity storms. A 15-minute time step may be used if the time of concentration computed is 30 minutes or more. Follow the modeling steps outlined in *Steps for Hydrologic Design Using Continuous Models*, and for conveyance-specific designs also perform the following:

Step #	Procedure
SC-1	Identify downstream hydraulic controls, such as outfalls (refer to Outfalls in <i>Section F-3</i>), known flooding locations, receiving pipe hydraulic grade line (HGL), pump station, regulator station, weirs, or orifices. Determine if backwater calculations or a dynamic hydraulic routing model are required.
SC-2	Analyze flood frequencies and select the flows representing the level of conveyance service and/or flood protection required.
SC-3	Utilize the peak flows to size or assess the capacity of pipe systems, culverts, channels, spillways and overflow structures.

Step #	Procedure
SC-4	Perform a capacity analysis to verify that there is sufficient capacity in the public drainage system or the public combined sewer system. Refer to <i>Volume 3, Section 4.3</i> and SMC, Section 22.805.020.J for specific requirements.
SC-5	Size the pipe to convey the selected peak flows.

Using Continuous Simulation Hydrographs with Dynamic Routing Models

Continuous hydrologic models based on the HSPF program utilize hydrologic (also known as lumped) routing routines to determine the time and magnitude of flow of a watercourse. Because of this, these models cannot simulate complex hydraulics such as where the flow reverses direction or where a downstream channel or pipe influences another upstream in a time dependent way.

For simulation of complex hydraulics in pipe systems or tidally influenced boundaries, a dynamic routing hydraulic program, such as the SWMM Extran routine, may be necessary to accurately determine the discharge rate and the water surface elevation or hydraulic grade line (HGL). Flows simulated using the continuous hydrologic model may be exported and used as input to the dynamic routing hydraulic model.

Dynamic routing models solve the full unsteady flow equations using numeric approximation methods. These methods typically require computational time steps that are relatively short to maintain numerical stability, and it may not be practical to attempt routing of multi-year sequences of runoff produced by the continuous hydrologic model. To reduce the simulation time, flow hydrographs from specific storms of interest computed using the continuous flow model may be used rather than the entire simulated flow time series.

To utilize a dynamic routing model to route hydrographs computed with the continuous hydrologic model, the procedure described in the *Steps for Hydrologic Design Using Continuous Models* should be followed to create the runoff time series. The following additional steps should be followed to identify storms of a particular recurrence interval, export them from the continuous model, and import them into SWMM (or other dynamic routing model):

Step #	Procedure
DR-1	Delineate the watershed with subbasin outlets (runoff collection points) corresponding to the main inflows to the pipe system.
DR-2	Run the continuous hydrologic model for the full period of record. For most design applications, the City of Seattle Design Time Series should be used. The routing effects of the pipe or other conveyance system to be analyzed should not be included in the continuous hydrologic model.
DR-3	Use flood peak discharge statistics computed by the continuous model to identify when floods of various recurrence intervals occur in the simulated time series. Export hydrographs with peak discharge rates corresponding to desired recurrence intervals in a format that can be read by the hydraulic model.

For example, Table F.13 shows flood peak discharge-frequency results for a subbasin. If hydrographs corresponding to the 100-year, 25-year, and 10-year recurrence intervals were needed for conveyance design purposes, then simulated hydrographs with recurrence intervals closest to those required would be exported from the continuous hydrologic model

as indicated in the right column of the table. The hydrograph duration would include a period antecedent to the flood peak (typically several days to a week) and several days following the flood peak.

F-5. Single-Event Rainfall–Runoff Methods

Single-event models simulate rainfall-runoff processes for a single-storm, typically 2 hours to 72 hours in length and usually of a specified exceedance probability. Because the primary interest is the flood hydrograph, calculation of evapotranspiration, soil moisture changes between storms, and base flow processes are typically not needed. This is in contrast to continuous rainfall-runoff models (*Section F-4*) where multi-decade precipitation and evaporation time series are used as input to produce a corresponding multi-decade time series of runoff.

Precipitation input to single-event models can include either historical data recorded from a rain gauge or a synthetic design storm hyetograph. This section describes the use of both types of precipitation input.

Design Storm Hyetographs

Design storm hyetographs were developed using noteworthy storms that were recorded by the City of Seattle gauging network. NOAA Atlas 2 precipitation-frequency (isopluvial) maps published in the early 1970s have historically been used in hydrologic analysis and design. These maps are replaced in this manual by precipitation magnitude-frequency estimates more specific to the City of Seattle. These estimates are based on a regional analysis using data from the SPU Rain Gauge Network and gauges from the NOAA national cooperative gaging network in western Washington. The most recent analysis included data from 1940 to 2003. Attachment 2 provides the precipitation data based on the SPU Rain Gauge Network.

Table F.13. Example Simulated Peak Discharge Frequency Table and Hydrographs Exported to SWMM or Other Hydraulic Model for Desired Recurrence Intervals.

Flood Peak Recurrence Interval (years)	Date of Peak ^a	Peak Discharge Rate (cfs)	Desired Recurrence Interval for Analysis
282	06/10/2010	7.62	
101	11/04/1998	6.11	100-year
62	06/29/1952	6.06	
44	02/03/2062	5.38	
35	07/18/2043	4.71	
28	10/06/1981	4.64	
24	03/03/1950	4.54	25-year
21	01/09/1990	4.40	
18	09/30/2011	4.40	
17	11/24/1990	4.27	
15	08/24/2077	4.25	
14	05/03/2002	4.25	
13	10/27/2054	4.15	

Table F.13 (continued). Example Simulated Peak Discharge Frequency Table and Hydrographs Exported to SWMM or Other Hydraulic Model for Desired Recurrence Intervals.

Flood Peak Recurrence Interval (years)	Date of Peak ^a	Peak Discharge Rate (cfs)	Desired Recurrence Interval for Analysis
12	10/26/1986	4.03	
11	09/01/2061	3.93	
10	01/20/2013	3.92	10-year
9.6	08/23/1968	3.92	
9.0	01/14/2040	3.76	

^a Simulation was performed using SPU Design Time Series, which is 158 years in length, and has dates spanning 10/1/1939 through 9/30/2097. (Note: This table may be revised in a future version of the 2021 Seattle Stormwater Manual.)

Statistical analyses were conducted for the storm characteristics and dimensionless design storms were developed for short, intermediate, and long duration storm events (Schaefer 2004). The short, intermediate, and long duration design storms can be scaled to any site-specific recurrence interval using precipitation magnitudes at the 2-hour, 6-hour, and 24-hour duration.

Table F.14 summarizes the applicability of the four City design storms. If multiple storm types are listed for a particular application, then all applicable storm types should be considered candidates and used in the hydrologic model. The candidate storm that produces the most severe hydrologic loading and most conservative design is then adopted as the design storm. Note that this table does not override the modeling requirements for specific facilities outlined in *Volume 3, Chapters 4 and 5*, or Table F.1. Table F.14 is for general guidance and applicability only.

Table F.14. Applicability of Storm Types for Hydrologic Design Applications.

Storm Type	Description	Applicability	Total Storm Duration	Precipitation from SPU Rain Gauges
Short-duration	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Typically occurs in late spring through early fall High intensity Limited volume 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Conveyance (storm drains, ditches, culverts, and other hydraulic structures) Flow Control 	3 hours	2 hours
Intermediate Duration	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Typically occurs in fall through early winter Low intensity High volume 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Conveyance (storm drains, ditches, culverts, and other hydraulic structures) Flow Control 	18 hours	6 hours
Seattle 24-hour	NA	Volume Based BMPs	24 hours	24 hours
Long-duration – Front and Back Loaded	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Typically occurs in late fall through early spring Low intensity High volume 	Flow Control	64 hours	24 hours

NA – not applicable

Short-Duration Storm (3-hour)

Short-duration design storms are used for design situations where peak discharge is of primary interest. The storm temporal pattern is shown in Figure F.12 as a dimensionless unit hyetograph. Tabular values for this hyetograph are listed in Attachment 1. The total storm precipitation is 1.06 times the 2-hour precipitation amount.

Use the following steps to utilize the short-duration storm in hydrologic analyses.

Step #	Procedure
SD-1	Obtain the 2-hour precipitation amount for the recurrence interval of interest (refer to Table 2 in Attachment 2). Note that the 2-hour precipitation values for short-duration storms do not vary across the City.
SD-2	Multiply the 5-minute incremental ordinates of the dimensionless short-duration design storm (Attachment 1, Table 1) by the 2-hour value from Step SD-1. Note that the resulting storm has a duration of 3 hours and the total storm amount will be 1.06 times the volume of the 2-hour precipitation (refer to the SDCI SPU Stormwater webpage for modeling resources).
SD-3	Input the resulting storm hyetograph into the hydrologic model. The resultant incremental precipitation ordinates have units of inches. To obtain the corresponding intensities (in/hr), multiply the precipitation increments by 12.

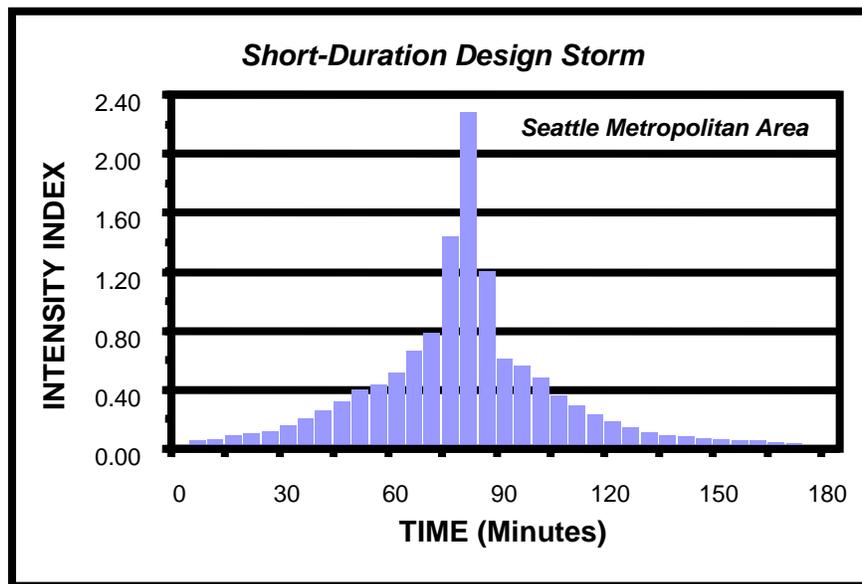


Figure F.12. Dimensionless Short-Duration (3-hour) Design Storm, Seattle Metropolitan Area.

Intermediate-Duration Storm (18 hour)

Intermediate-duration design storms are used in design applications where both peak discharge and runoff volume are important considerations and there is a need for a runoff hydrograph. The storm temporal pattern is shown in Figure F.13 as a dimensionless unit hyetograph. Tabular values for this hyetograph are listed in Attachment 1. The total storm precipitation is 1.51 times the 6-hour precipitation amount.

The following steps describe how to utilize the intermediate-duration storm in hydrologic analyses.

Step #	Procedure
ID-1	Obtain the 6-hour precipitation amount for the recurrence interval of interest for the watershed (refer to Attachment 2 for data from the SPU Gauge(s) of interest).
ID-2	Multiply the 10-minute incremental ordinates of the dimensionless intermediate-duration and long-duration design storms (Attachment 1, Tables 2 and 4) by the 6-hour value from Step ID-1. Note that the resulting storm has a duration of 18 hours and the total storm amount will be 1.51 times the volume of the 6-hour precipitation (refer to the SDCI SPU Stormwater webpage for modeling resources).
ID-3	Input the resulting storm hyetograph into the hydrologic model. The resultant incremental precipitation ordinates have units of inches. To obtain the corresponding intensities (in/hr), multiply the precipitation increments by 6.

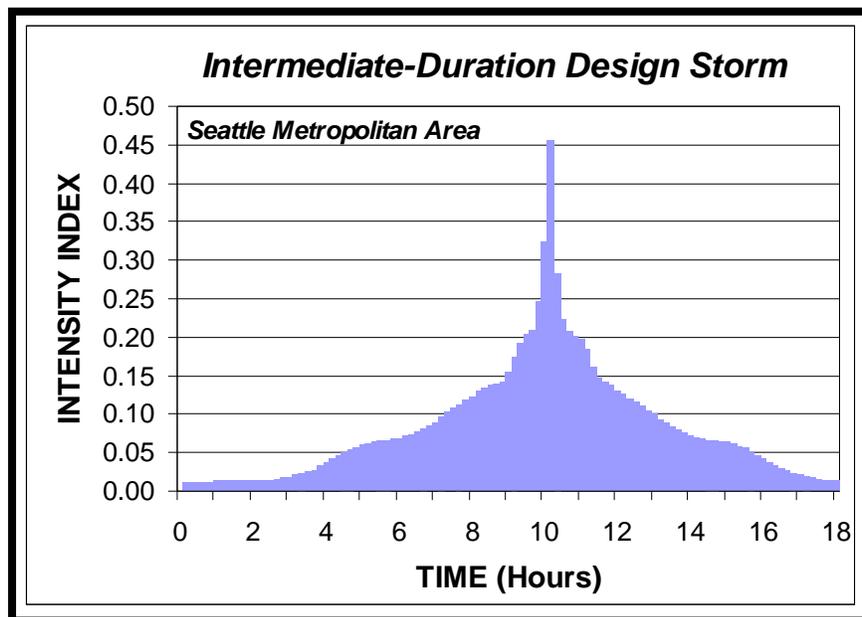


Figure F.13. Dimensionless Intermediate-Duration (18-hour) Design Storm, Seattle Metropolitan Area.

24-Hour Dimensionless Design Storm

Some specific volume-based stormwater facilities require or allow the use of a 24-hour design storm. To meet this need, the 24-hour dimensionless design storm was developed based on the maximum 24-hour period of precipitation within the long-duration design storm. It should be noted that the 24-hour dimensionless design storm has the same temporal shape and ordinates as the period of maximum 24-hour precipitation within the front-loaded and back-loaded long-duration dimensionless design storms. The City of Seattle 24-hour design storm is shown in Figure F.14.

Use the following steps to utilize the 24-hour design storm in hydrologic analyses:

Step #	Procedure
DD-1	Obtain the 24-hour precipitation amount for the recurrence interval of interest for the watershed (refer to Attachment 2 for data from the SPU Gauge(s) of interest).
DD-2	Multiply the 10-minute incremental ordinates of the dimensionless 24-hour duration design storm (Attachment 1, Table 5) by the 24-hour value from Step DD-1 (refer to the SDCI SPU Stormwater webpage for modeling resources).
DD-3	Input the resulting storm hyetograph into the hydrologic model. The resultant incremental precipitation ordinates have units of inches. To obtain the corresponding intensities (in/hr), multiply the precipitation increments by 6.

Long-Duration Storm (64 hour)

Long-duration design storms are primarily used in design of stormwater detention facilities and other projects where runoff volume is a primary consideration. Long-duration storms occur primarily in the late fall into early spring.

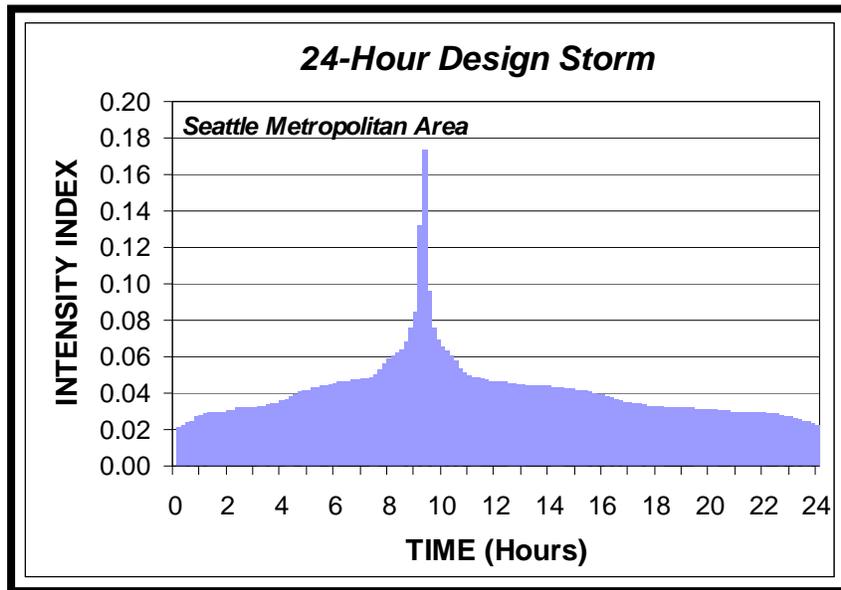


Figure F.14. Dimensionless 24-Hour Design Storm for Seattle Metropolitan Area.

Two long-duration dimensionless design storms are provided: a front-loaded design storm with the highest intensities at the beginning of the storm; and a back-loaded storm with the higher intensities nearer the end of the storm period. Characteristics of the front-loaded design storm have been observed more frequently, and this storm would be expected to produce more “typical” runoff conditions. The back-loaded storm occurs less often and is typically a more conservative event for drainage control facility design.

The long-duration storm hyetographs are 64 hours in duration. The storm temporal patterns for the front loaded and back loaded storms are shown in Figures F.15 and F.16 respectively. Tabular values for these storms are listed in Attachment 1. The total storm precipitation is

1.29 times the 24-hour precipitation amount for both the front and back loaded long-duration storm.

Use the following steps to utilize the long-duration storm in hydrologic analyses.

Step #	Procedure
LD-1	Obtain the 24-hour precipitation amount for the recurrence interval of interest for the watershed (refer to Attachment 2 for data from the SPU Gauge(s) of interest).
LD-2	Multiply the 10-minute incremental ordinates of the dimensionless long-duration design storm (Attachment 1, Table 3 or 4) by the 24-hour value from Step LD-1. Note that the resulting storm has a duration of 64 hours and the total storm amount will be 1.29 times the volume of the 6-hour precipitation (refer to the SDCI SPU Stormwater webpage for modeling resources).
LD-3	Input the resulting storm hyetograph into the hydrologic model. The resultant incremental precipitation ordinates have units of inches. To obtain the corresponding intensities (in/hr), multiply the precipitation increments by 6.

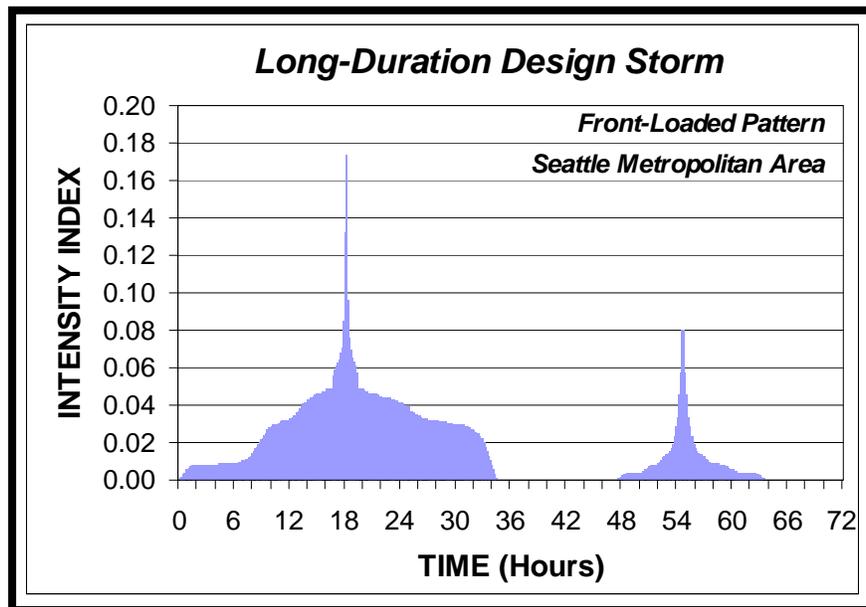


Figure F.15. Dimensionless Front-Loaded Long-Duration (64-hour) Design Storm for the Seattle Metropolitan Area.

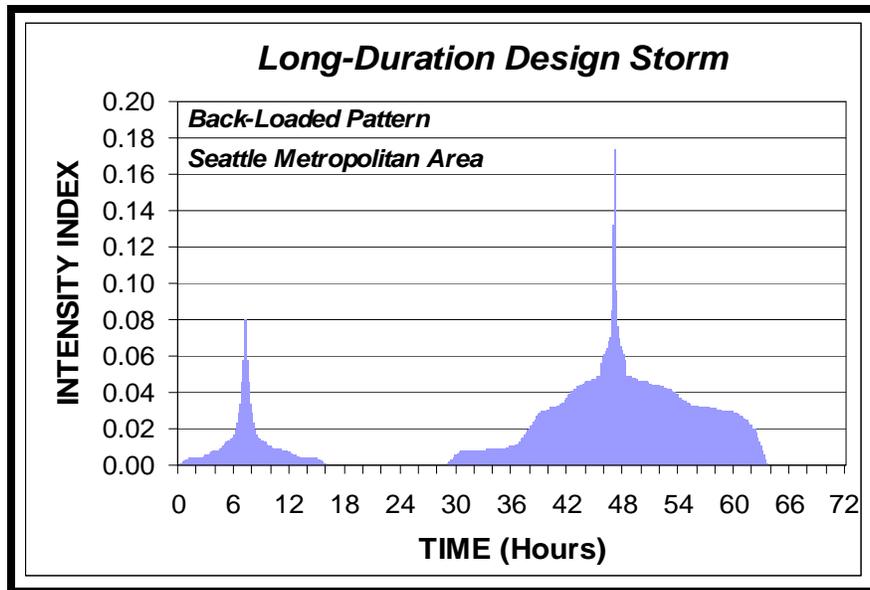


Figure F.16. Dimensionless Back-Loaded Long-Duration (64-hour) Design Storm for the Seattle Metropolitan Area.

Use of Historical Storms in Analysis

This section includes a catalog of the storms used to derive the design storm patterns described in the previous section. These historical storms can be used in rainfall runoff models to aid in the design process by replicating past floods. For example, an engineer could use the historical storms to demonstrate that a proposed conveyance system design would have adequate capacity to pass a large historical flood that occurred in the watershed. The storms could also be used for calibrating the hydrologic model to recorded flow data. Use of these historical storms to confirm a facility design is recommended but is not required for the design of stormwater facilities.

Tables F.15, F.16, and F.17 summarize historical storms recorded at City gauges for durations of 2 hours, 6 hours, and 24 hours respectively. Included in each table is the date when the storm ended, storm recurrence interval, and total precipitation for the duration of interest. The gauge locations are shown in Figure F.1. Electronic data for each storm is available in tabular form from SPU (refer to the SDCI SPU Stormwater webpage for modeling resources).

Table F.15. ~~Catalog of Short Duration (2-hour) Storms at City Rain Gauges.~~

Station ID	Station Name	Storm End Date	Storm Recurrence Interval (years)	2-hour Precipitation (inches)
45-S002	Mathews Beach Pump Strn	06/14/1978	16	0.86
45-S003	UW Hydraulics Lab	11/03/1978	10	0.79
45-S009	Woodland Park Zoo	08/17/1980	20	0.89
45-S008	Ballard Locks	08/28/1980	20	0.89
45-S002	Mathews Beach Pump Strn	05/29/1985	7	0.74
45-S014	West Seattle High School	10/26/1986	15	0.85
45-S020	TT Minor Elementary	10/04/1990	18	0.88
45-S009	Woodland Park Zoo	08/09/1991	6	0.72
45-S008	Ballard Locks	09/23/1992	45	1.02
45-S003	UW Hydraulics Lab	11/23/1997	9	0.77
45-S011	Metro-KC Denny Regulating	02/17/1998	14	0.84
45-S016	Metro-KC E Marginal Way	07/15/2001	6	0.71
45-S012	Catherine Blaine Jr	08/23/2001	14	0.84
45-S020	TT Minor Elementary	05/28/2002	4	0.83
45-S009	Woodland Park Zoo	09/03/2002	10	0.79
45-S004	Maple Leaf Reservoir	10/20/2003	18	0.88
45-S003	UW Hydraulics Lab	12/14/2006	13	0.83

Table F.16. ~~Catalog of Intermediate Duration (6-hour) Storms at City Rain Gauges.~~

Station ID	Station Name	Storm End Date	Storm Recurrence Interval (years)	6-hour Precipitation (inches)
45-S016	Metro-KC E Marginal Way	9/22/1978	32	1.61
45-S001	Haller Lake Shop	11/04/1978	70	1.74
45-S003	UW Hydraulics Lab	12/03/1982	92	1.82
45-S001	Haller Lake Shop	09/05/1984	5	1.21
45-S020	TT Minor Elementary	01/18/1986	>100	2.27
45-S010	Rainier Ave Elementary	01/09/1990	88	1.83
45-S003	UW Hydraulics Lab	12/29/1996	16	1.45
45-S004	Maple Leaf Reservoir	06/24/1999	7	1.28
45-S004	Maple Leaf Reservoir	10/20/2003	>100	1.96
45-S003	UW Hydraulics Lab	12/14/2006	36	1.62

Table F.17. ~~Catalog of Long Duration (24-hour) Storms at City Rain Gauges.~~

Station ID	Station Name	Storm End Date	Storm Recurrence Interval (years)	24-hour Precipitation (inches)
45-S008	Ballard Locks	12/17/1979	4	2.40
45-S009	Woodland Park Zoo	10/06/1981	24	3.07
45-S004	Maple Leaf Reservoir	11/01/1984	3	2.11
45-S001	Haller Lake Shop	01/18/1986	96	3.69
45-S016	Metro-KC E Marginal Way	11/23/1986	9	2.70
45-S003	UW Hydraulics Lab	11/24/1990	17	2.91
45-S002	Mathews Beach Pump Stn	04/04/1991	4	2.15
45-S020	TT Minor Elementary	02/08/1996	>100	5.07
45-S020	TT Minor Elementary	04/23/1996	8	2.56
45-S003	UW Hydraulics Lab	03/18/1997	7	2.53
45-S004	Maple Leaf Reservoir	11/25/1998	11	2.68
45-S010	Rainier Ave Elementary	11/14/2001	34	3.31
45-S004	Maple Leaf Reservoir	10/20/2003	>100	4.05

~~When using historical data from the City rain gauge network for model calibration, storms should be selected from stations as close as possible to the center of the watershed tributary to the project site. This will help ensure that the recorded data is representative of precipitation that fell in the watershed for storm of interest. In general, the shorter duration storms typically have smaller areal coverage and greater spatial variability than the longer duration storms. As a result, greater simulation errors would be expected if gauge data outside the watershed is used to simulate short duration storms.~~

SCS Curve Number Equation and Infiltration Parameters

The ~~SCS~~ Curve Number ~~loss~~ method may be used when computing runoff using the Long-duration storms (24 hours or 66 hours in length). The NRCS developed relationships between land use, soil type, vegetation cover, interception, infiltration, surface storage, and runoff. These relationships have been characterized by a single runoff coefficient called a “curve number” (CN). The National Engineering Handbook – Part 630: Hydrology (NRCS 1997) contains a detailed description of the development and use of the curve number method.

The CN is related to the runoff potential of a watershed according to equations (12) and (13).

$$Q_d = \frac{(P - 0.2 SMD_{MAX})^2}{(P + 0.8 SMD_{MAX})} \tag{12}$$

$$SMD_{MAX} = \frac{1000}{CN} - 10 \tag{13}$$

- Where:
- Q_d = runoff depth (inches)
 - P = precipitation depth (inches)
 - SMD_{MAX} = maximum soil moisture deficit (inches)
 - CN = ~~SCS~~ Curve Number for the soil (Table F. ~~1518~~)

The CN is a combination of a hydrologic soil group and land cover with higher CNs resulting in higher runoff. CN values for combinations of land cover and hydrologic soil group are listed in Table F.1548. Refer to Table F.3 in General Modeling Guidance (*Section F-3*) for information on soil groups in King County.

Table F.1548. SCS Western Washington Post-Development Runoff Curve Numbers for Selected Agricultural, Suburban, and Urban Areas.

Land Use Description		Curve Numbers by Hydrologic Soil Group			
		A	B	C	D
Land Cover Type and Hydrologic Condition					
<u>Pasture, grassland, or range-continuous forage for grazing</u>					
Fair Condition (ground cover 50% to 75% and not heavily grazed)		49	69	79	84
Good Condition (ground cover >75% and lightly or only occasionally grazed)		39	61	74	80
Cultivated land	Winter condition	86	94	94	95
Mountain-open areas	Low-growing brush and grasslands	74	82	89	92
Meadow or pasture		65	78	85	89
<u>Woods</u>					
Fair Condition (woods are grazed but not burned, and some forest litter covers the soil)		36	60	73	79
Good Condition (woods are protected from grazing, and litter and brush adequately cover the soil)		30	55	70	77
Wood or forest land	Undisturbed young second	42	64	76	84
Wood or forest land	growth or brush with cover	55	81	72	86
Orchard	crop	84	88	92	94
<u>Open spaces, (Llawns, parks, golf courses, cemeteries, landscaping, etc.)</u>					
Fair Condition: (grass cover on 50 to 75% of the area)		77	85	90	92
Good Condition: (grass cover on greater than 75% of the area)		68	80	86	90
<u>Impervious areas</u>					
Open receiving waters: (lakes, wetlands, ponds, etc.)		100	100	100	100
Paved impervious surfaces: pavement, (roads, roofs, driveways, etc.)		98	98	98	98
Gravel roads and parking lots		76	85	89	91
Dirt roads and parking lots		72	82	87	89
<u>Permeable pavement</u>					
Porous asphalt, porous concrete, or grid/lattice systems (without underlying perforated drain pipes to collect stormwater)		77	85	90	92
Paving blocks (without underlying perforated drain pipes to collect stormwater)		87	91	94	96
All permeable pavement types (with underlying perforated drain pipes to collect stormwater)		98	98	98	98

Time of Concentration Estimation

The time of concentration for the various surfaces and conveyances should be computed using the following methods, which are based on Chapter 3 of TR-55 (NRCS 1986).

Travel time (T_t) is the time it takes water to travel from one location to another in a watershed. T_t is a component of time of concentration (T_c), which is the time for runoff to travel from the hydraulically most distant point of the watershed. T_c is computed by summing all the travel times for consecutive components of the drainage conveyance system.

Water is assumed to move through a watershed as sheet flow, shallow concentrated flow, open channel flow, or some combination of these. The type that occurs is best determined by field inspection. The time of concentration (T_c) is the sum of T_t values for the various consecutive flow segments.

$$T_c = T_1 + T_2 + T_3 + \dots + T_n \quad (14)$$

Where: T_c = time of concentration (minutes)
 $T_{1,2,3,n}$ = time for consecutive flow path segments with different land cover categories or flow path slope

Travel time for each segment is computed using the following equation:

$$T_t = \frac{L}{60V} \quad (15)$$

Where: T_t = travel time (minutes)
 L = length of flow across a given segment (feet)
 V = average velocity across the land segment (ft/sec)

Sheet Flow: Sheet flow is flow over plane surfaces. Sheet flow travel time is computed using equation (16). This equation is applicable for relatively impervious areas with shallow flow depths up to about 0.1 foot and for travel lengths up to 300 feet. Modified Manning's effective roughness coefficients (n_s) are summarized in Table F. 1649. These n_s values are applicable for shallow flow depths up to about 0.1 foot and for travel lengths up to 300 feet.

$$T_t = 0.42 * (n_s * L)^{0.8} / ((P_{24})^{0.5} * (S_0)^{0.4}) \quad (16)$$

Where: T_t = travel time (minutes)
 n_s = sheet flow Manning's effective roughness coefficient from Table F. 1649
 L = overland flow length (feet)
 P_{24} = 2-year, 24-hour rainfall (inches)
 S_0 = slope of hydraulic grade line or land slope (feet/feet)

Shallow Concentrated Flow: After a maximum of 300 feet, sheet flow is assumed to become shallow concentrated flow. The average velocity for this flow can be calculated using the k_s values from Table F. 1649 in which average velocity is a function of watercourse slope and type of channel. After computing the average velocity using the velocity equation (17), the

travel time (T_t) for the shallow concentrated flow segment can be computed using the travel time equation (15).

Velocity Equation: A commonly used method of computing average velocity of flow, once it has measurable depth, is the following equation:

$$V = k_s \sqrt{S_o} \quad (17)$$

Where: k_s = velocity factor (Table F. [1649](#))
 S_o = slope of flow path (feet/feet)

"k" values in Table F. [1649](#) have been computed for various land covers and channel characteristics with assumptions made for hydraulic radius using the following rearrangement of Manning's equation:

$$k = (1.49 (R)^{0.667})/n \quad (18)$$

Where: R = assumed hydraulic radius
 n = Manning's roughness coefficient for open channel flow, from Tables F. [1649](#) or F. [1720](#)

Open Channel Flow: Open channels are assumed to begin where flow enters ditches or pipes, where surveyed cross section information has been obtained, where channels are visible on aerial photographs, or where lines indicating streams appear (in blue) on USGS quadrangle sheets. The k_c values from Table [F.166-14](#) used in velocity equation (17) or water surface profile information can be used to estimate average flow velocity. Average flow velocity is usually determined for bank-full conditions. The travel time (T_t) for the channel segment can be computed using travel time equation (15).

Lakes or Wetlands: Sometimes it is necessary to estimate the velocity of flow through a lake or wetland at the outlet of a watershed. This travel time is normally very small and can be assumed as zero. Where significant attenuation may occur due to storage effects, the flows should be routed using the "level-pool routing" technique described in the *Level-Pool Routing Method* section.

Limitations: The following limitations apply in estimating travel time (T_t):

- Manning's kinematic solution should not be used for sheet flow longer than 300 feet.
- In watersheds with drainage systems, carefully identify the appropriate hydraulic flow path to estimate T_c . Drainage systems generally handle only a small portion of a large event. The rest of the peak flow travels by streets, lawns, and other surfaces, to the outlet. Consult a standard hydraulics textbook (e.g., Gray 1961; Linsley et al. 1975; Pilgrim and Cordery 1993; Viessman et al. 1977) to determine average velocity in pipes for either pressure or non-pressure flow.
- A culvert or bridge can act as a reservoir outlet if there is significant storage behind it. A hydrograph should be developed to this point and the "level pool routing" technique should be used to determine the outflow rating curve through the culvert or bridge.

Table F. 1619. Values of “n” and “k” for use in Computing Time of Concentration.

FOR SHEET FLOW		n_s
Smooth surfaces (concrete, asphalt, gravel, or bare hard soil)		0.011
Fallow fields of loose soil surface (no vegetal residue)		0.05
Cultivated soil with crop residue (slope < 0.20 ft/ft)		0.06
Cultivated soil with crop residue (slope > 0.20 ft/ft)		0.17
Short prairie grass and lawns		0.15
Dense grass		0.24
Bermuda grass		0.41
Range, natural		0.13
Woods or forest, poor cover		0.40
Woods or forest, good cover		0.80
FOR SHALLOW, CONCENTRATED FLOW		k_s
Forest with heavy ground litter and meadows (n = 0.10)		3
Brushy ground with some trees (n = 0.06)		5
Fallow or minimum tillage cultivation (n = 0.04)		8
High grass (n = 0.035)		9
Short grass, pasture and lawns (n = 0.04)		11
Newly-bare ground (n = 0.025)		13
Paved and gravel areas (n = 0.012)		27
CHANNEL FLOW (INTERMITTENT, R = 0.2)		k_c
Forested swale with heavy ground litter (n = 0.10)		5
Forested drainage course/ravine with defined channel bed (n = 0.050)		10
Rock-lined waterway (n = 0.035)		15
Grassed waterway (n = 0.030)		17
Earth-lined waterway (n = 0.025)		20
CMP pipe (n = 0.024)		21
Concrete pipe (n = 0.012)		42
Other waterways and pipes		0.508/n
CHANNEL FLOW (CONTINUOUS STREAM, R = 0.4)		k_c
Meandering stream with some pools (n = 0.040)		20
Rock-lined stream (n = 0.035)		23
Grassed stream (n = 0.030)		27
Other streams, man-made channels and pipe		0.807/n

Source: USDA (1986).

Table F.1720. Other Values of the Roughness Coefficient “n” for Channel Flow.

Type of Channel and Description	Manning’s “n”	Type of Channel and Description	Manning’s “n”
A. Constructed Channels		6. Sluggish reaches, weedy deep pools	0.070
a. Earth, straight and uniform		7. Very weedy reaches, deep pools, or floodways with heavy stands of timber and underbrush	0.100
1. Clean, recently completed	0.018		
2. Gravel, uniform selection, clean	0.025	b. Mountain streams, no vegetation in channel, banks usually steep, trees and brush along banks submerged at high stages	
3. With short grass, few weeds	0.027	1. Bottom: gravel, cobbles, and few boulders	0.040
b. Earth, winding and sluggish		2. Bottom: cobbles with large boulders	0.050
1. No vegetation	0.025	B-2 Flood plains	
2. Grass, some weeds	0.030	a. Pasture, no brush	
3. Dense weeds or aquatic plants in deep channels	0.035	1. Short grass	0.030
4. Earth bottom and rubble sides	0.030	2. High grass	0.035
5. Stony bottom and weedy banks	0.035	b. Cultivated areas	
6. Cobble bottom and clean sides	0.040	1. No crop	0.030
c. Rock lined		2. Mature row crops	0.035
1. Smooth and uniform	0.035	3. Mature field crops	0.040
2. Jagged and irregular	0.040	c. Brush	
d. Channels not maintained, weeds and brush uncut		1. Scattered brush, heavy weeds	0.050
1. Dense weeds, high as flow depth	0.080	2. Light brush and trees	0.060
2. Clean bottom, brush on sides	0.050	3. Medium to dense brush	0.070
3. Same, highest stage of flow	0.070	4. Heavy, dense brush	0.100
4. Dense brush, high stage	0.100	d. Trees	
B. Natural Streams		1. Dense willows, straight	0.150
B-1 Minor streams (top width at flood stage <100 ft.)		2. Cleared land with tree stumps, no sprouts	0.040
a. Streams on plain		3. Same as above, but with heavy growth of sprouts	0.060
1. Clean, straight, full stage no rifts or deep pools	0.030	4. Heavy stand of timber, a Few down trees, little undergrowth, flood stage below branches	0.100
2. Same as above, but more stones and weeds	0.035	5. Same as above, but with flood stage reaching branches	0.120
3. Clean, winding, some pools and shoals	0.040		
4. Same as above, but some weeds	0.040		
5. Same as 4, but more stones	0.050		

Single-Event Routing Methods Overview

In the United States, the majority of single-event models for computation of runoff hydrographs are based on unit hydrographs. Most commercial software packages utilize unit hydrographs for making the transformation from computation of runoff volume to generation of the runoff hydrograph. This may require direct input of the ordinates of the unit hydrograph or the unit hydrograph may be computed internally based on watershed characteristics provided by the user. Notable exceptions include event-based models that utilize linear reservoir concepts, such as the Santa Barbara Urban Hydrograph model (SBUH), event-based models that utilize kinematic wave approaches, and continuous flow simulation models such as HSPF.

The *Unit Hydrograph Routing Methods* section describes rainfall-runoff modeling based on unit hydrograph concepts. The reader is referred to any standard hydrology textbook (e.g., Gray 1961; Linsley et al. 1975; Pilgrim and Cordery 1993; Viessman et al. 1977) for a detailed discussion of unit hydrograph theory. The *SBUH Routing Method* section includes a discussion of runoff hydrographs developed using the SBUH model. The *Level-Pool Routing Method* section provides a discussion on the level-pool method, which is appropriate for routing hydrographs through lakes, wetlands, and other areas of standing water.

Unit Hydrograph Routing Methods

The unit hydrograph is defined as the time-distribution of runoff (Figure F.17) measured at the watershed outlet as produced by 1 inch of runoff uniformly generated over the watershed during a specified period of time. Thus, a 10-minute unit hydrograph would be the runoff hydrograph (cfs) observed at the watershed outlet as generated by 1 inch of runoff uniformly produced over the watershed in a 10-minute period.

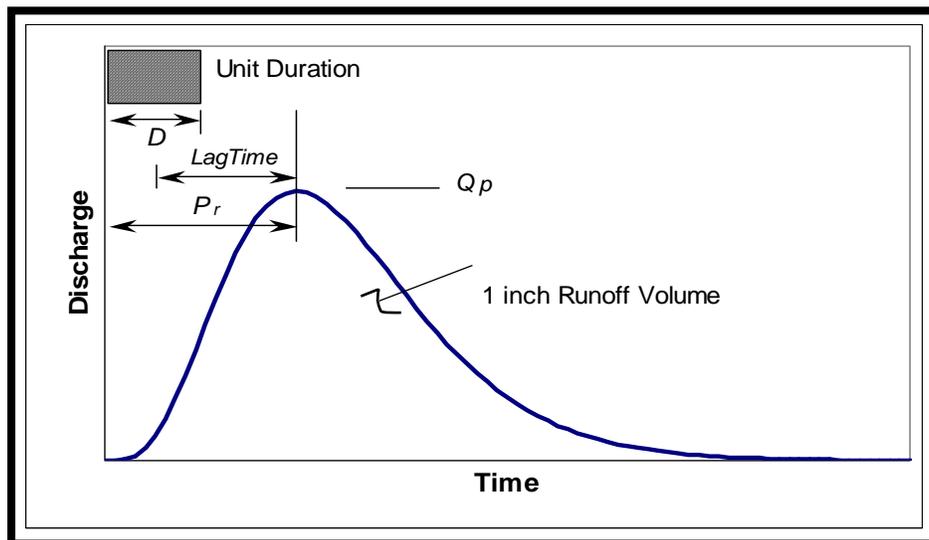


Figure F.17. Characteristics of Unit Hydrographs.

In computation of the runoff hydrograph, the unit hydrograph is scaled by the runoff in each D-minute period, and the resultant hydrographs for each D-minute period are added by superposition to yield the runoff hydrograph from the watershed.

Relationship of Computational Time Step to Time Lag (Lag Time). As indicated above, the ordinates of the unit hydrograph are specified on intervals equal to the computational time step. Recognizing that the time step and unit duration are equal ($\Delta t = D$), the unit duration must be chosen small enough to allow reasonable definition of the rising limb of the unit hydrograph. This is required to provide for adequate definition of the resultant runoff hydrograph in the vicinity of the runoff peak discharge. In addition, the value of D should be an integer multiple of the period of rise P_r so that the computational time step (Δt) falls on the peak discharge of the unit hydrograph.

Selection of Time Step (Δt) Based on Time of Concentration (T_c). The time-of concentration of the watershed (T_c) is often taken to be the elapsed time from the end of the unit duration (D) to the inflection point on the recession limb of the unit hydrograph (NRCS 1997). When the runoff hydrograph is computed based on unit hydrograph concepts utilizing time of concentration, the computational time step should be:

$$\Delta t < T_c/5 \quad (19)$$

To enhance compatibility with the City of Seattle design storms, the computational time step for runoff computations should be a multiple of the time step used to describe the design storm. The short-duration design storm is described in 5-minute intervals and the intermediate and long-duration design storms are described in 10-minute intervals. Therefore, the following additional criteria are required for selection of the time step for use with the short-duration design storm:

$$\Delta t = 5/n \quad (20)$$

And, for use with the intermediate and long-duration design storms:

$$\Delta t = 10/n \quad (21)$$

Where: n = integer greater than or equal to one

The above information should be particularly helpful for use with computer software that allows output of the runoff hydrograph on a time interval other than that used for internal computation of the runoff hydrograph. For those cases, the user may be unaware of the unit duration (D) and internal time step (Δt) being used by the computer program.

SBUH Routing Method

The SBUH method is an adaptation of standard hydrologic routing methods that employ the principle of conservation of mass. The routing equation for the SBUH method may be derived from linear reservoir concepts (Linsley et al. 1975; Fread 1993) where storage is taken to be a linear function of discharge.

The SBUH method uses two steps to synthesize the runoff hydrograph:

Step 1 – Compute the instantaneous hydrograph

Step 2 – Compute the runoff hydrograph

The instantaneous hydrograph is computed as follows:

$$I(t) = 60.5 R(t) A/\Delta t \quad (22)$$

Where: $I(t)$ = instantaneous hydrograph at each time step (Δt) (cfs)
 $R(t)$ = total runoff depth (both impervious and pervious) at time increment
 Δt (inches)
 A = area (acres)
 Δt = computational time step (minutes)

The runoff hydrograph is then obtained by routing the instantaneous hydrograph through an imaginary reservoir with a time delay equal to the time of concentration of the drainage basin. The following equation estimates the routed flow:

$$Q(t+1) = Q(t) + w[I(t) + I(t+1) - 2Q(t)] \quad (23)$$

$$w = \Delta t / (2T_c + \Delta t) \quad (24)$$

Where: $Q(t)$ = runoff hydrograph or routed flow (cfs)
 T_c = time of concentration (minutes)
 Δt = computational time step (minutes)

Selection of Time Step (Δt) Based on Time of Concentration (T_c). Equation (23) requires that the computational time step be sufficiently short that the change in inflow, outflow, and storage during the time step can be treated as linear. For the case of very small urban watersheds, the low to moderate intensities in the long-duration design storm would typically generate runoff over a longer period than the time of concentration of the watershed. As a result, the elapsed time of the rising limb of the runoff hydrograph (T_r) would likewise be much longer than the time of concentration of the watershed. In addition, the computational time step for routing should be a multiple of the time step used to describe the design storm. Therefore, for intermediate and long-duration storms, the computational time step should satisfy equations (25) and (26):

$$\Delta t < T_c \quad (25)$$

$$\Delta t = 10/n \quad (26)$$

Where: Δt = computational time step (minutes)
 T_c = time of concentration (minutes)
 n = an integer greater than or equal to one

For short duration design storms, the flood peak of the runoff hydrograph may be quite flashy and produced by high-intensity precipitation during a limited portion of the storm. For this case, the elapsed time for the rising limb of the runoff hydrograph may be similar in magnitude to that of the time-of-concentration of the watershed. In this situation, the time step should be smaller than the time of concentration. In addition, the computational time step for routing should be a multiple of the time step used to describe the design storm. Therefore, for the short-duration storm, the computational time step should satisfy equations (27) and (28):

$$\Delta t < T_c/5 \quad (27)$$

$$\Delta t = 5/n \quad (28)$$

Where: Δt = computational time step (minutes)
 T_c = time of concentration (minutes)
 n = an integer greater than or equal to one

Level-Pool Routing Method

This section presents a general description of the methodology for routing a hydrograph through a retention/detention facility, closed depression, or wetland. Note that the City does not allow the use of single-event models for retention/detention facility design. The information presented in this section is for informational purposes only. The level pool routing technique (Fread 1993) is based on the continuity equation:

Inflow-outflow=change in storage

$$\left[\frac{I_1 + I_2}{2} - \frac{O_1 + O_2}{2} \right] = \frac{\Delta S}{\Delta t} = S_2 - S_1 \quad (29)$$

rearranging:

$$I_1 + I_2 + 2S_1 - O_1 = O_2 + 2S_2 \quad (30)$$

Where: I = inflow at time 1 and time 2
 O = outflow at time 1 and time 2
 S = storage at time 1 and time 2
 Δt = computational time step (minutes)

The time step (Δt) must be consistent with the time interval used in developing the inflow hydrograph.

The following summarizes the steps required in performing level-pool hydrograph routing:

- Develop stage-storage-discharge relationship, which is a function of pond/wetland geometry and outflow
- Route the inflow hydrograph through the structure by applying equation (30) at each time step, where the inflow hydrograph supplies values of I , the stage-storage relationship supplies values of S , and the stage discharge relationship provides values of O .

Commercially available hydrologic computer models perform these calculations automatically.

Modeling Guidance

The following sections present the general process involved in conducting a hydrologic analysis using single-event hydrograph methods to evaluate or design stormwater conveyance systems. Applicability of single-event methods and design standard requirements are discussed in *Section F-2* of this appendix.

Steps for Hydrologic Design Using Single-Event Methods

The following summarizes the process for conducting hydrologic analyses using single-event models.

Step #	Procedure
SE-1	Review all minimum requirements that apply to the proposed project (<i>Volume 1</i>)
SE-2	Review applicable site definition and mapping requirements (<i>Volume 1</i>)
SE-3	Identify and delineate the overall drainage basin for each discharge point from the development site under existing conditions: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Identify existing land use ● Identify existing soil types using on-site evaluation, NRCS soil survey, or mapping performed by the University of Washington (http://geomapnw.ess.washington.edu) ● Identify existing drainage features such as streams, conveyance systems, detention facilities, ponding areas, depressions, etc.
SE-4	Select and delineate pertinent subbasins based on existing conditions: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Select homogeneous subbasin areas ● Select separate subbasin areas for on-site and off-site drainage ● Select separate subbasin areas for major drainage features.

Stormwater Conveyance

Existing and proposed stormwater conveyance facilities may be analyzed and designed using peak flows from hydrographs derived from single-event approaches described in this appendix. In addition to the steps listed in the *Steps for Hydrologic Design Using Single-event Methods* section, the following steps should be followed for designing/analyzing conveyance facilities:

Step #	Procedure
SC-1	Determine runoff parameters for each subbasin
SC-2	Identify pervious and impervious areas <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● The short- or intermediate-duration design storm generally governs the design of conveyance facilities. Both storm durations should be treated as candidate design storms and the one that produces the more conservative design (higher peak discharge rates) used as the design storm (refer to Design Storm Hyetograph section). ● Select runoff parameters per the Infiltration Equation section. ● Compute time of concentration per the Time of Concentration Estimation section.
SC-3	Identify downstream hydraulic controls, such as outfalls (refer to Outfalls in <i>Section F-3</i>), known flooding locations, receiving pipe HGL, pump station, regulator station, weirs or orifice. Determine if backwater calculations or a dynamic hydraulic routing model are required.

Step #	Procedure
SC-4	Compute runoff for the drainage system and determine peak discharge at the outlet of each subbasin for the design storm of interest
SC-5	Perform a capacity analysis to verify that there is sufficient capacity in the public drainage system or the public combined sewer system. Refer to <i>Volume 3, Section 4.3</i> and SMC, Section 22.805.020.J for specific requirements.
SC-6	Size the pipe based on the designated level of service.

F-6. Rational Method

The rational method is based on the assumption that rainfall intensity for any given duration is uniform over the entire tributary watershed. The rational formula relates peak discharge from the site of interest to rainfall intensity times a coefficient:

$$Q = CiA \quad (31)$$

Where:

- Q = peak discharge from the site of interest
- C = dimensionless runoff coefficient
- i = rainfall intensity for a given recurrence interval (in/hr)
- A = tributary area (acres)

The rainfall intensity (i) is determined from Figure F.18 or Table F.1821 for the precipitation recurrence interval of interest and duration corresponding to the calculated time of concentration (refer to *Time of Concentration Estimation* section below).

Peak Rainfall Intensity Duration Frequency (IDF curves)

Rainfall intensity-duration-frequency (IDF) curves allow calculation of average design rainfall intensity for a given exceedance probability (recurrence interval) over a range of durations. Precipitation-frequency statistics presented in this appendix were analyzed using data from the City's 17-gauge precipitation measurement network within the City of Seattle, and the national NOAA cooperative gauge network 13. Durations of 5 minutes, 10 minutes, 15 minutes, 20 minutes, 30 minutes, 45 minutes, 60 minutes, 2 hours, 3 hours, 6 hours, 12 hours, 24 hours, 48 hours, 72 hours, and 7 days were analyzed to develop the IDF curves. IDF curves for storm durations up to 3 hours and applicable to sites within Seattle are shown in Figure F.21.

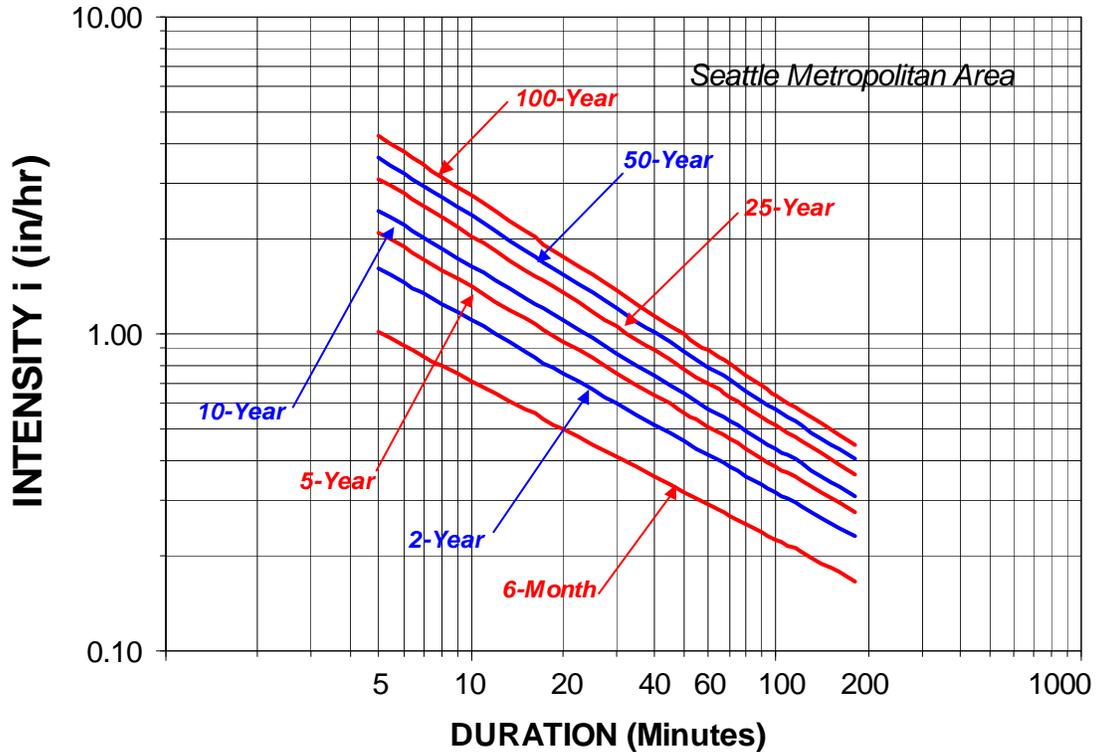


Figure F.18. Intensity-Duration-Frequency Curves for the City of Seattle.

Table F.1824. Intensity-Duration-Frequency Values for 5- to 180-Minute Durations for Selected Recurrence Intervals for the City of Seattle.

Duration (minutes)	Precipitation Intensities (in/hr)							
	Recurrence Interval (years)							
	6-mo	2-yr	5-yr	10-yr	20-yr	25-yr	50-yr	100-yr
5	1.01	1.60	2.08	2.45	2.92	3.08	3.61	4.20
6	0.92	1.45	1.87	2.21	2.62	2.76	3.23	3.75
8	0.80	1.24	1.59	1.87	2.21	2.32	2.71	3.13
10	0.71	1.10	1.40	1.64	1.93	2.03	2.36	2.72
12	0.65	1.00	1.27	1.48	1.74	1.82	2.11	2.43
15	0.58	0.88	1.12	1.30	1.52	1.60	1.84	2.11
20	0.50	0.75	0.95	1.10	1.28	1.34	1.54	1.76
25	0.45	0.67	0.84	0.97	1.12	1.18	1.35	1.53
30	0.41	0.61	0.76	0.87	1.01	1.05	1.21	1.37
35	0.38	0.56	0.69	0.80	0.92	0.96	1.10	1.24
40	0.35	0.52	0.64	0.74	0.85	0.89	1.01	1.14
45	0.33	0.49	0.60	0.69	0.79	0.83	0.94	1.06
50	0.32	0.46	0.57	0.65	0.74	0.78	0.88	0.99
55	0.30	0.44	0.54	0.61	0.70	0.73	0.83	0.94
60	0.29	0.42	0.51	0.58	0.67	0.70	0.79	0.89
65	0.28	0.40	0.49	0.56	0.64	0.66	0.75	0.84

Table F.1824 (continued). Intensity-Duration-Frequency Values for 5- to 180-minute Durations for Selected Recurrence Intervals for the City of Seattle.

Duration (minutes)	Precipitation Intensities (in/hr)							
	Recurrence Interval (years)							
	6-mo	2-yr	5-yr	10-yr	20-yr	25-yr	50-yr	100-yr
70	0.27	0.38	0.47	0.53	0.61	0.64	0.72	0.80
80	0.25	0.36	0.43	0.49	0.56	0.59	0.66	0.74
90	0.24	0.33	0.41	0.46	0.52	0.55	0.62	0.69
100	0.22	0.32	0.38	0.43	0.49	0.51	0.58	0.64
120	0.20	0.29	0.35	0.39	0.44	0.46	0.52	0.57
140	0.19	0.26	0.32	0.36	0.40	0.42	0.47	0.52
160	0.18	0.24	0.29	0.33	0.37	0.39	0.43	0.48
180	0.17	0.23	0.27	0.31	0.35	0.36	0.40	0.45

Runoff Coefficients

Runoff coefficients vary with the tributary land cover and to a certain extent, the total depth and intensity of the rainfall. The storm depth and intensity is typically neglected, and the runoff coefficient is based on land cover only (Table F.1922). For watersheds containing several land cover types, an aggregate runoff coefficient can be developed by computing the area weighted average from all cover types present (equation 32):

$$C_c = (C_1A_1 + C_2A_2 + C_3A_3 + \dots + C_nA_n) / A_t \quad (32)$$

Where: C_c = composite runoff coefficient for the site
 $C_{1, 2, \dots, n}$ = runoff coefficient for each land cover type
 $A_{1, 2, \dots, n}$ = area of each land cover type (acres)
 A_t = total tributary area (acres)

Table F.1922. Rational Equation Runoff Coefficients.

Land Cover	Runoff Coefficient (C)
Dense Forest	0.10
Light Forest	0.15
Pasture	0.20
Lawns	0.25
Gravel Areas	0.80
Pavement and Roofs	0.90
Open Water (Ponds Lakes and Wetlands)	1.00

Time of Concentration Estimation

Time of concentration (T_c) is defined as the time it takes for runoff to travel from the most hydraulically distant point of the drainage area to the outlet. T_c is computed by summing all the travel times for consecutive components of the drainage conveyance system.

$$T_c = T_1 + T_2 + T_3 + \dots + T_n \quad (33)$$

Where: T_c = time of concentration (minutes)
 $T_{1,2,3,\dots,n}$ = time for consecutive flow path segments with different land cover categories or flow path slope

Travel time for each segment is computed using the following equation:

$$T_t = L / V$$

Where: T_t = travel time (minutes)
 L = length of flow across a given segment (feet)
 V = average velocity across the land segment (ft/sec)

$$V = k_r \sqrt{S_o} \quad (34)$$

Where: k_r = Velocity factor (Table F.2023)
 S_o = Slope of flow path (feet/feet)

Table F.2023. Coefficients for Average Velocity Equation.

Land Cover	Velocity Factor (k_r)
Forest with Heavy Ground Cover and Meadow	2.5
Grass, Pasture, and Lawns	7.0
Nearly Bare Ground	10.1
Grassed Swale or Channel	15.0
Paved Areas	20.0

F-7. Risk-Based Hydrologic Design Concepts

Risk-based concepts and analytical approaches are being used more frequently in hydrologic design. A risk-based approach focuses on evaluating the two components of risk: the probability, and consequences of failure. Failure may be broadly defined and includes failure to meet a project goal, failure to meet a regulatory requirement, or the physical failure of a project element. Consequences of failure vary with the project type and features and may include economic, life safety, environmental, and political consequences.

Risk can be described qualitatively or quantitatively. For example, qualitative risk is often expressed as low, moderate, high, or very high, based on various combinations of the probability of failure and the consequences of failure. Quantitative risk assessment requires more detailed analysis to provide numerical measures of the probability of failure and consequences of failure. Quantitative units of measure for risk include loss of life per year for

life safety risk, and dollars per year for consequences that can be expressed in economic terms.

Risk concepts are often used in design where the design target, level-of-service, etc., is based on the consequences of failure or upon some adopted level of qualitative or quantitative risk. The design targets and level of conservatism of design are typically set based on the tolerable level of risk for a given project type or consideration of the regulatory requirements.

When applying a risk-based approach, engineers and hydrologists primarily evaluate the probability of failure (or probability of being in compliance) and may assess how and which uncertainties affect the probability of failure (or probability of being in compliance). Application of hydrologic computer models and detailed numerical descriptions of hydrologic/hydraulic system components are an integral part of assessing the probability of being in compliance.

Uncertainty

Historically, uncertainty in hydrologic simulation analyses and the consequences for analysis results are rarely quantified as part of stormwater engineering design. Factors of safety have typically been applied at the end of a hydrologic analysis to account for uncertainties in the analysis. The same factor of safety is typically used regardless of the level of uncertainty or the confidence in the hydrologic model's ability to realistically simulate runoff. For many projects, the fixed safety factor approach is adequate. However, for projects where the consequences of failure (an erroneous design) are large, quantifying the analysis uncertainty and risk of not meeting the design standard may be beneficial in selecting an appropriate level of design conservatism.

F-8. References

Chow, V.T., D.R. Maidment, and L.W. Mays. 1988. Applied Hydrology. McGraw-Hill, Inc. pp. 140-147.

Dinicola, R.S. 1990. Characterization and Simulation of Rainfall Runoff Relations in Western King and Snohomish Counties, Washington. US Geological Survey, Water-Resources Investigations Report 89-4052.

Dinicola, R.S. 2001. Validation of a numerical modeling method for simulating rainfall-runoff relations for headwater basins in western King and Snohomish counties, Washington. Water Supply Paper 2495.

Dunin, F.X. 1976. Infiltration: Its Simulation for Field Conditions. Chapter 8 in: Facets of Hydrology. J.C. Rodda (ed.). John Wiley & Sons, New York, NY. pp. 199-227.

Fread, D.L. 1993. Flow Routing. Chapter 10 in: Handbook of Hydrology. D.R. Maidment (ed.). McGraw-Hill, Inc.

- Gray, D.M. 1961. Synthetic Unit-Hydrographs for Small Drainage Areas. Proceedings ASCE, Journal Hydraulics Division, 87, No. 4, HY4, July 1961.
- Gringorten, I.I. 1963. A Plotting Rule for Extreme Probability Paper. Journal of Geophysical Research, vol. 68, pp. 813-814.
- Holtan, H.N. 1961. A Concept for Infiltration Estimates in Watershed Engineering. US Dept. of Agriculture. ARS 41-51.
- Holtan, H.N., Stiltner, G.I., Hensen, W.H., and N.C. Lopez. 1975. USDA HL-74 Revised Model of Watershed Hydrology. U. S. Department of Agriculture, Tech. Bull. 1518. 99 pp.
- Horton, R.E. 1940. An Approach Towards a Physical Interpretation of Infiltration Capacity. Soil Science Society of America Proceedings 5:399-417.
- Interagency Advisory Committee on Water Data. 1981. Guidelines for Determining Flood flow Frequency. Bulletin #17b. September 1981.
- King County. 2009. King County, Washington Surface Water Design Manual. Prepared by the King County Department of Natural Resources and Parks. January 9, 2009.
- King County Surface Water Management Division. 1999. King County Runoff Time series (KCRTS). Computer Software Reference Manual, Version 4.4.
- King County. ~~2015~~~~2014~~~~b~~. Major Lakes Monitoring. Available online at <https://green2.kingcounty.gov/lakes>~~http://green.kingcounty.gov/lakes~~>.
- King County. ~~2016~~~~2014~~~~a~~. Small Lakes ~~Data and Information and Data~~. Available online at <https://green2.kingcounty.gov/smalllakes/Default.aspx>~~http://your.kingcounty.gov/dnrr/wlr/water-resources/small-lakes/data/default.aspx~~>.
- Kostiakov, A.N. 1932. On the Dynamics of the Coefficient of Water Percolation in Soils and on the Necessity of Studying it from a Dynamic Point of View for the Purposes of Amelioration. Trans. Com. Int. Soc. Soil Sci. 6th Moscow A: 17-21.
- Linsley, R.K., M.A. Kohler, and J.L.H. Paulhus. 1975. Hydrology for Engineers. Second Edition. McGraw-Hill, Inc.
- [Miller, I.M., H. Morgan, G. Mauger, T. Newton, R. Weldon, D. Schmidt, M. Welch, E. Grossman. 2018. Projected Sea Level Rise for Washington State – A 2018 Assessment. A collaboration of Washington Sea Grant, University of Washington Climate Impacts Group, University of Oregon, University of Washington, and US Geological Survey. Prepared for the Washington Coastal Resilience Project.](#)
- Musgrave, G.W. 1995. How Much of the Rain Enters the Soil? In USDA Water Yearbook of Agriculture, Washington, D.C. pp 151-159.
- NOAA. 1995. Tide Predictions Program (NTP4) Users Manual. Prepared by the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration.

- NRC. 2012. Sea-Level Rise for the Coasts of California, Oregon, and Washington: Past, Present, and Future. Prepared by the Committee on Sea Level Rise in California, Oregon, and Washington. National Research Council of the National Academies.
- NRCS. 1986. Urban Hydrology for Small Watersheds TR-55. Prepared by the United States Department of Agriculture Natural Resources Conservation Service, Conservation Engineering Division. June 1986.
- NRCS. 1997. National Engineering Handbook, Part 630-Hydrology, September 1997. Natural Resources Conservation Service. Available online at <<http://www.nrcs.usda.gov/wps/portal/nrcs/detailfull/national/water/?cid=stelprdb1043063>>.
- Parlange, J.-Y., and R. Haverkamp. 1989. Infiltration and Ponding Time. In: *Unsaturated Flow in Hydrologic Modeling, Theory and Practice*. H.J. Morel-Seytoux (ed.). Pp. 95-126. Kluwer Academic Publishers, Boston, MA.
- Philip, J.R. 1957a. The theory of infiltration. 1. The infiltration equation and its solution. *Soil Science* 83:345-357.
- Philip, J.R. 1957b. Numerical solutions of equations of the diffusivity type with diffusivity concentration dependent. II. *Australian J. Phys.* 10:29-42.
- Pilgrim, D.H., and I. Cordery. 1993. Flood Runoff. Chapter 9 in: *Handbook of Hydrology*. D.R. Maidment (ed.). McGraw-Hill, Inc.
- Rawls, Walter, et al. 1993. Infiltration and Soil Water Movement. Chapter 5 in: *Handbook of Hydrology*. D.R. Maidment (ed.). McGraw-Hill, Inc.
- Schaefer, M.G., and B.L. Barker. 2002. Extended Precipitation Time-Series for Continuous Hydrological Modeling in Western Washington. Prepared for Washington State Department of Transportation by MGS Engineering Consultants Inc. April 2002.
- Schaefer, M.G. 2004. Analyses of Precipitation-Frequency and Storm Characteristics for the City of Seattle. Prepared for Seattle Public Utilities by MGS Engineering Consultants Inc. March 2004.
- Schaefer M.G. and B.L. Barker. 2007. Development of 5-Minute Extended Precipitation Time-Series for the City of Seattle. Prepared for Seattle Public Utilities by MGS Engineering Consultants Inc. January 2007.
- USDA, Natural Resources Conservation Service, Urban Hydrology for Small Watersheds, TR-55, Technical Release 55, June 1986.
- US Environmental Protection Agency. 2001. Hydrological Simulation Program-Fortran. Release 12. EPA Contract No. 68-C-98-010. March 2001.
- Viessman, W., J.E. Knapp, G.L. Lewis, and T.E. Harbaugh. 1977. *Introduction to Hydrology*. Second Edition. Harper and Row.

Attachment 1

Design Storm Dimensionless Hyetograph Ordinates

ATTACHMENT 1 – DESIGN STORM DIMENSIONLESS HYETOGRAPH ORDINATES

Table 1. Dimensionless Ordinates of the Short-Duration Design Storm.

DIMENSIONLESS ORDINATES OF SHORT-DURATION DESIGN STORM		
ELAPSED TIME (min)	INCREMENTAL ORDINATES	CUMULATIVE ORDINATES
0	0.0000	0.0000
5	0.0045	0.0045
10	0.0055	0.0100
15	0.0075	0.0175
20	0.0086	0.0261
25	0.0102	0.0363
30	0.0134	0.0497
35	0.0173	0.0670
40	0.0219	0.0889
45	0.0272	0.1161
50	0.0331	0.1492
55	0.0364	0.1856
60	0.0434	0.2290
65	0.0553	0.2843
70	0.0659	0.3502
75	0.1200	0.4702
80	0.1900	0.6602
85	0.1000	0.7602
90	0.0512	0.8114
95	0.0472	0.8586
100	0.0398	0.8984
105	0.0301	0.9285
110	0.0244	0.9529
115	0.0195	0.9724
120	0.0153	0.9877
125	0.0125	1.0002
130	0.0096	1.0098
135	0.0077	1.0175
140	0.0068	1.0243
145	0.0062	1.0305
150	0.0056	1.0361
155	0.0050	1.0411
160	0.0044	1.0455
165	0.0038	1.0493
170	0.0032	1.0525
175	0.0026	1.0551
180	0.0020	1.0571

Table 2. Dimensionless Ordinates of the Intermediate-Duration Design Storm.

DIMENSIONLESS ORDINATES OF INTERMEDIATE-DURATION DESIGN STORM								
ELAPSED TIME (Hr)	INCRM ORDINATE	SUM ORDINATE	ELAPSED TIME (Hr)	INRM ORDINATE	SUM ORDINATE	ELAPSED TIME (Hr)	INCRM ORDINATE	SUM ORDINATE
0.00	0.0000	0.0000	6.17	0.0118	0.1972	12.17	0.0210	1.1731
0.17	0.0020	0.0020	6.33	0.0123	0.2095	12.33	0.0201	1.1932
0.33	0.0020	0.0040	6.50	0.0129	0.2224	12.50	0.0193	1.2125
0.50	0.0020	0.0060	6.67	0.0136	0.2360	12.67	0.0184	1.2309
0.67	0.0020	0.0080	6.83	0.0142	0.2502	12.83	0.0176	1.2485
0.83	0.0020	0.0100	7.00	0.0150	0.2652	13.00	0.0168	1.2653
1.00	0.0021	0.0121	7.17	0.0163	0.2815	13.17	0.0154	1.2807
1.17	0.0021	0.0142	7.33	0.0171	0.2986	13.33	0.0147	1.2954
1.33	0.0021	0.0163	7.50	0.0180	0.3166	13.50	0.0140	1.3094
1.50	0.0021	0.0184	7.67	0.0188	0.3354	13.67	0.0132	1.3226
1.67	0.0021	0.0205	7.83	0.0197	0.3551	13.83	0.0127	1.3353
1.83	0.0022	0.0227	8.00	0.0205	0.3756	14.00	0.0121	1.3474
2.00	0.0022	0.0249	8.17	0.0215	0.3971	14.17	0.0116	1.3590
2.17	0.0023	0.0272	8.33	0.0224	0.4195	14.33	0.0113	1.3703
2.33	0.0023	0.0295	8.50	0.0229	0.4424	14.50	0.0111	1.3814
2.50	0.0024	0.0319	8.67	0.0232	0.4656	14.67	0.0109	1.3923
2.67	0.0025	0.0344	8.83	0.0237	0.4893	14.83	0.0107	1.4030
2.83	0.0028	0.0372	9.00	0.0257	0.5150	15.00	0.0105	1.4135
3.00	0.0030	0.0402	9.17	0.0290	0.5440	15.17	0.0103	1.4238
3.17	0.0034	0.0436	9.33	0.0320	0.5760	15.33	0.0098	1.4336
3.33	0.0038	0.0474	9.50	0.0338	0.6098	15.50	0.0093	1.4429
3.50	0.0042	0.0516	9.67	0.0349	0.6447	15.67	0.0085	1.4514
3.67	0.0046	0.0562	9.83	0.0411	0.6858	15.83	0.0078	1.4592
3.83	0.0054	0.0616	10.00	0.0540	0.7398	16.00	0.0070	1.4662
4.00	0.0062	0.0678	10.17	0.0760	0.8158	16.17	0.0062	1.4724
4.17	0.0070	0.0748	10.33	0.0470	0.8628	16.33	0.0054	1.4778
4.33	0.0079	0.0827	10.50	0.0372	0.9000	16.50	0.0049	1.4827
4.50	0.0085	0.0912	10.67	0.0347	0.9347	16.67	0.0044	1.4871
4.67	0.0090	0.1002	10.83	0.0337	0.9684	16.83	0.0039	1.4910
4.83	0.0095	0.1097	11.00	0.0330	1.0014	17.00	0.0035	1.4945
5.00	0.0100	0.1197	11.17	0.0308	1.0322	17.17	0.0032	1.4977
5.17	0.0104	0.1301	11.33	0.0269	1.0591	17.33	0.0029	1.5006
5.33	0.0107	0.1408	11.50	0.0247	1.0838	17.50	0.0026	1.5032
5.50	0.0109	0.1517	11.67	0.0237	1.1075	17.67	0.0024	1.5056
5.67	0.0110	0.1627	11.83	0.0228	1.1303	17.83	0.0024	1.5080
5.83	0.0113	0.1740	12.00	0.0218	1.1521	18.00	0.0023	1.5103
6.00	0.0114	0.1854						

Table 3. Dimensionless Ordinates of Front-Loaded Long-Duration Design Storm.

DIMENSIONLESS ORDINATES OF INTERMEDIATE-DURATION DESIGN STORM								
ELAPSED TIME (Hr)	INCRM ORDINATE	SUM ORDINATE	ELAPSED TIME (Hr)	INRM ORDINATE	SUM ORDINATE	ELAPSED TIME (Hr)	INCRM ORDINATE	SUM ORDINATE
0.00	0.0000	0.0000	7.17	0.0018	0.0569	14.17	0.0072	0.2570
0.17	0.0001	0.0001	7.33	0.0019	0.0588	14.33	0.0073	0.2643
0.33	0.0003	0.0004	7.50	0.0019	0.0607	14.50	0.0074	0.2717
0.50	0.0005	0.0009	7.67	0.0020	0.0627	14.67	0.0075	0.2792
0.67	0.0007	0.0016	7.83	0.0022	0.0649	14.83	0.0076	0.2868
0.83	0.0009	0.0025	8.00	0.0024	0.0673	15.00	0.0077	0.2945
1.00	0.0010	0.0035	8.17	0.0026	0.0699	15.17	0.0078	0.3023
1.17	0.0011	0.0046	8.33	0.0028	0.0727	15.33	0.0078	0.3101
1.33	0.0012	0.0058	8.50	0.0030	0.0757	15.50	0.0078	0.3179
1.50	0.0013	0.0071	8.67	0.0032	0.0789	15.67	0.0079	0.3258
1.67	0.0013	0.0084	8.83	0.0034	0.0823	15.83	0.0079	0.3337
1.83	0.0013	0.0097	9.00	0.0036	0.0859	16.00	0.0079	0.3416
2.00	0.0013	0.0110	9.17	0.0038	0.0897	16.17	0.0081	0.3497
2.17	0.0013	0.0123	9.33	0.0040	0.0937	16.33	0.0082	0.3579
2.33	0.0013	0.0136	9.50	0.0042	0.0979	16.50	0.0082	0.3661
2.50	0.0014	0.0150	9.67	0.0045	0.1024	16.67	0.0093	0.3754
2.67	0.0014	0.0164	9.83	0.0047	0.1071	16.83	0.0099	0.3853
2.83	0.0014	0.0178	10.00	0.0048	0.1119	17.00	0.0102	0.3955
3.00	0.0014	0.0192	10.17	0.0049	0.1168	17.17	0.0104	0.4059
3.17	0.0014	0.0206	10.33	0.0049	0.1217	17.33	0.0107	0.4166
3.33	0.0014	0.0220	10.50	0.0049	0.1266	17.50	0.0114	0.4280
3.50	0.0014	0.0234	10.67	0.0050	0.1316	17.67	0.0118	0.4398
3.67	0.0014	0.0248	10.83	0.0051	0.1367	17.83	0.0142	0.4540
3.83	0.0014	0.0262	11.00	0.0051	0.1418	18.00	0.0220	0.4760
4.00	0.0014	0.0276	11.17	0.0053	0.1471	18.17	0.0290	0.5050
4.17	0.0014	0.0290	11.33	0.0053	0.1524	18.33	0.0160	0.5210
4.33	0.0015	0.0305	11.50	0.0054	0.1578	18.50	0.0127	0.5337
4.50	0.0015	0.0320	11.67	0.0054	0.1632	18.67	0.0116	0.5453
4.67	0.0015	0.0335	11.83	0.0054	0.1686	18.83	0.0110	0.5563
4.83	0.0015	0.0350	12.00	0.0055	0.1741	19.00	0.0106	0.5669
5.00	0.0015	0.0365	12.17	0.0055	0.1796	19.17	0.0102	0.5771
5.17	0.0015	0.0380	12.33	0.0056	0.1852	19.33	0.0096	0.5867
5.33	0.0015	0.0395	12.50	0.0057	0.1909	19.50	0.0082	0.5949
5.50	0.0015	0.0410	12.67	0.0058	0.1967	19.67	0.0082	0.6031
5.67	0.0015	0.0425	12.83	0.0060	0.2027	19.83	0.0082	0.6113
5.83	0.0015	0.0440	13.00	0.0062	0.2089	20.00	0.0081	0.6194
6.00	0.0015	0.0455	13.17	0.0064	0.2153	20.17	0.0080	0.6274
6.17	0.0015	0.0470	13.33	0.0066	0.2219	20.33	0.0079	0.6353
6.33	0.0015	0.0485	13.50	0.0068	0.2287	20.50	0.0079	0.6432

Table 3 (continued). Dimensionless Ordinates of Front-Loaded Long-Duration Design Storm.

DIMENSIONLESS ORDINATES OF INTERMEDIATE-DURATION DESIGN STORM								
ELAPSED TIME (Hr)	INCRM ORDINATE	SUM ORDINATE	ELAPSED TIME (Hr)	INRM ORDINATE	SUM ORDINATE	ELAPSED TIME (Hr)	INCRM ORDINATE	SUM ORDINATE
6.50	0.0016	0.0501	13.67	0.0069	0.2356	20.67	0.0078	0.6510
6.67	0.0016	0.0517	13.83	0.0070	0.2426	20.83	0.0078	0.6588
6.83	0.0017	0.0534	14.00	0.0072	0.2498	21.00	0.0077	0.6665
7.00	0.0017	0.0551						
21.17	0.0077	0.6742	30.17	0.0050	1.0069	39.17	0.0000	1.0984
21.33	0.0077	0.6819	30.33	0.0049	1.0118	39.33	0.0000	1.0984
21.50	0.0077	0.6896	30.50	0.0049	1.0167	39.50	0.0000	1.0984
21.67	0.0076	0.6972	30.67	0.0049	1.0216	39.67	0.0000	1.0984
21.83	0.0075	0.7047	30.83	0.0049	1.0265	39.83	0.0000	1.0984
22.00	0.0075	0.7122	31.00	0.0048	1.0313	40.00	0.0000	1.0984
22.17	0.0074	0.7196	31.17	0.0048	1.0361	40.17	0.0000	1.0984
22.33	0.0074	0.7270	31.33	0.0048	1.0409	40.33	0.0000	1.0984
22.50	0.0073	0.7343	31.50	0.0047	1.0456	40.50	0.0000	1.0984
22.67	0.0073	0.7416	31.67	0.0046	1.0502	40.67	0.0000	1.0984
22.83	0.0073	0.7489	31.83	0.0045	1.0547	40.83	0.0000	1.0984
23.00	0.0072	0.7561	32.00	0.0044	1.0591	41.00	0.0000	1.0984
23.17	0.0072	0.7633	32.17	0.0043	1.0634	41.17	0.0000	1.0984
23.33	0.0072	0.7705	32.33	0.0042	1.0676	41.33	0.0000	1.0984
23.50	0.0071	0.7776	32.50	0.0041	1.0717	41.50	0.0000	1.0984
23.67	0.0071	0.7847	32.67	0.0039	1.0756	41.67	0.0000	1.0984
23.83	0.0070	0.7917	32.83	0.0038	1.0794	41.83	0.0000	1.0984
24.00	0.0070	0.7987	33.00	0.0037	1.0831	42.00	0.0000	1.0984
24.17	0.0069	0.8056	33.17	0.0033	1.0864	42.17	0.0000	1.0984
24.33	0.0068	0.8124	33.33	0.0029	1.0893	42.33	0.0000	1.0984
24.50	0.0067	0.8191	33.50	0.0025	1.0918	42.50	0.0000	1.0984
24.67	0.0067	0.8258	33.67	0.0021	1.0939	42.67	0.0000	1.0984
24.83	0.0066	0.8324	33.83	0.0017	1.0956	42.83	0.0000	1.0984
25.00	0.0065	0.8389	34.00	0.0013	1.0969	43.00	0.0000	1.0984
25.17	0.0062	0.8451	34.17	0.0009	1.0978	43.17	0.0000	1.0984
25.33	0.0062	0.8513	34.33	0.0005	1.0983	43.33	0.0000	1.0984
25.50	0.0060	0.8573	34.50	0.0001	1.0984	43.50	0.0000	1.0984
25.67	0.0059	0.8632	34.67	0.0000	1.0984	43.67	0.0000	1.0984
25.83	0.0059	0.8691	34.83	0.0000	1.0984	43.83	0.0000	1.0984
26.00	0.0058	0.8749	35.00	0.0000	1.0984	44.00	0.0000	1.0984
26.17	0.0057	0.8806	35.17	0.0000	1.0984	44.17	0.0000	1.0984
26.33	0.0056	0.8862	35.33	0.0000	1.0984	44.33	0.0000	1.0984
26.50	0.0055	0.8917	35.50	0.0000	1.0984	44.50	0.0000	1.0984
26.67	0.0055	0.8972	35.67	0.0000	1.0984	44.67	0.0000	1.0984

Table 3 (continued). Dimensionless Ordinates of
Front-Loaded Long-Duration Design Storm.

DIMENSIONLESS ORDINATES OF INTERMEDIATE-DURATION DESIGN STORM								
ELAPSED TIME (Hr)	INCRM ORDINATE	SUM ORDINATE	ELAPSED TIME (Hr)	INRM ORDINATE	SUM ORDINATE	ELAPSED TIME (Hr)	INCRM ORDINATE	SUM ORDINATE
26.83	0.0055	0.9027	35.83	0.0000	1.0984	44.83	0.0000	1.0984
27.00	0.0055	0.9082	36.00	0.0000	1.0984	45.00	0.0000	1.0984
27.17	0.0054	0.9136	36.17	0.0000	1.0984	45.17	0.0000	1.0984
27.33	0.0054	0.9190	36.33	0.0000	1.0984	45.33	0.0000	1.0984
27.50	0.0054	0.9244	36.50	0.0000	1.0984	45.50	0.0000	1.0984
27.67	0.0053	0.9297	36.67	0.0000	1.0984	45.67	0.0000	1.0984
27.83	0.0053	0.9350	36.83	0.0000	1.0984	45.83	0.0000	1.0984
28.00	0.0053	0.9403	37.00	0.0000	1.0984	46.00	0.0000	1.0984
28.17	0.0053	0.9456	37.17	0.0000	1.0984	46.17	0.0000	1.0984
28.33	0.0052	0.9508	37.33	0.0000	1.0984	46.33	0.0000	1.0984
28.50	0.0052	0.9560	37.50	0.0000	1.0984	46.50	0.0000	1.0984
28.67	0.0052	0.9612	37.67	0.0000	1.0984	46.67	0.0000	1.0984
28.83	0.0052	0.9664	37.83	0.0000	1.0984	46.83	0.0000	1.0984
29.00	0.0052	0.9716	38.00	0.0000	1.0984	47.00	0.0000	1.0984
29.17	0.0051	0.9767	38.17	0.0000	1.0984	47.17	0.0000	1.0984
29.33	0.0051	0.9818	38.33	0.0000	1.0984	47.33	0.0000	1.0984
29.50	0.0051	0.9869	38.50	0.0000	1.0984	47.50	0.0000	1.0984
29.67	0.0050	0.9919	38.67	0.0000	1.0984	47.67	0.0001	1.0985
29.83	0.0050	0.9969	38.83	0.0000	1.0984	47.83	0.0002	1.0987
30.00	0.0050	1.0019	39.00	0.0000	1.0984	48.00	0.0003	1.0990
48.17	0.0004	1.0994	56.17	0.0026	1.2422			
48.33	0.0005	1.0999	56.33	0.0024	1.2446			
48.50	0.0006	1.1005	56.50	0.0023	1.2469			
48.67	0.0007	1.1012	56.67	0.0023	1.2492			
48.83	0.0007	1.1019	56.83	0.0022	1.2514			
49.00	0.0007	1.1026	57.00	0.0021	1.2535			
49.17	0.0007	1.1033	57.17	0.0019	1.2554			
49.33	0.0007	1.1040	57.33	0.0017	1.2571			
49.50	0.0007	1.1047	57.50	0.0016	1.2587			
49.67	0.0007	1.1054	57.67	0.0015	1.2602			
49.83	0.0007	1.1061	57.83	0.0015	1.2617			
50.00	0.0007	1.1068	58.00	0.0015	1.2632			
50.17	0.0007	1.1075	58.17	0.0015	1.2647			
50.33	0.0008	1.1083	58.33	0.0015	1.2662			
50.50	0.0009	1.1092	58.50	0.0015	1.2677			
50.67	0.0010	1.1102	58.67	0.0014	1.2691			
50.83	0.0011	1.1113	58.83	0.0014	1.2705			
51.00	0.0012	1.1125	59.00	0.0013	1.2718			

Table 3 (continued). Dimensionless Ordinates of
Front-Loaded Long-Duration Design Storm.

DIMENSIONLESS ORDINATES OF INTERMEDIATE-DURATION DESIGN STORM								
ELAPSED TIME (Hr)	INCRM ORDINATE	SUM ORDINATE	ELAPSED TIME (Hr)	INRM ORDINATE	SUM ORDINATE	ELAPSED TIME (Hr)	INCRM ORDINATE	SUM ORDINATE
51.17	0.0013	1.1138	59.17	0.0013	1.2731			
51.33	0.0014	1.1152	59.33	0.0012	1.2743			
51.50	0.0014	1.1166	59.50	0.0012	1.2755			
51.67	0.0014	1.1180	59.67	0.0011	1.2766			
51.83	0.0014	1.1194	59.83	0.0010	1.2776			
52.00	0.0015	1.1209	60.00	0.0009	1.2785			
52.17	0.0016	1.1225	60.17	0.0009	1.2794			
52.33	0.0018	1.1243	60.33	0.0008	1.2802			
52.50	0.0020	1.1263	60.50	0.0008	1.2810			
52.67	0.0021	1.1284	60.67	0.0007	1.2817			
52.83	0.0023	1.1307	60.83	0.0007	1.2824			
53.00	0.0023	1.1330	61.00	0.0007	1.2831			
53.17	0.0024	1.1354	61.17	0.0007	1.2838			
53.33	0.0026	1.1380	61.33	0.0007	1.2845			
53.50	0.0028	1.1408	61.50	0.0007	1.2852			
53.67	0.0032	1.1440	61.67	0.0007	1.2859			
53.83	0.0039	1.1479	61.83	0.0007	1.2866			
54.00	0.0048	1.1527	62.00	0.0007	1.2873			
54.17	0.0056	1.1583	62.17	0.0007	1.2880			
54.33	0.0076	1.1659	62.33	0.0007	1.2887			
54.50	0.0096	1.1755	62.50	0.0007	1.2894			
54.67	0.0133	1.1888	62.67	0.0006	1.2900			
54.83	0.0133	1.2021	62.83	0.0005	1.2905			
55.00	0.0096	1.2117	63.00	0.0004	1.2909			
55.17	0.0076	1.2193	63.17	0.0003	1.2912			
55.33	0.0056	1.2249	63.33	0.0002	1.2914			
55.50	0.0048	1.2297	63.50	0.0001	1.2915			
55.67	0.0039	1.2336	63.67	0.0000	1.2915			
55.83	0.0032	1.2368	63.83	0.0000	1.2915			
56.00	0.0028	1.2396	64.00	0.0000	1.2915			

Table 4. Dimensionless Ordinates of Back-Loaded Long-Duration Design Storm.

DIMENSIONLESS ORDINATES OF BACK-LOADED LONG-DURATION DESIGN STORM								
ELAPSED TIME (Hr)	INCRM ORDINATE	SUM ORDINATE	ELAPSED TIME (Hr)	INCRM ORDINATE	SUM ORDINATE	ELAPSED TIME (Hr)	INCRM ORDINATE	SUM ORDINATE
0.00	0.0000	0.0000	8.17	0.0039	0.1352	16.17	0.0000	0.1931
0.17	0.0001	0.0001	8.33	0.0032	0.1384	16.33	0.0000	0.1931
0.33	0.0002	0.0003	8.50	0.0028	0.1412	16.50	0.0000	0.1931
0.50	0.0003	0.0006	8.67	0.0026	0.1438	16.67	0.0000	0.1931
0.67	0.0004	0.0010	8.83	0.0024	0.1462	16.83	0.0000	0.1931
0.83	0.0005	0.0015	9.00	0.0023	0.1485	17.00	0.0000	0.1931
1.00	0.0006	0.0021	9.17	0.0023	0.1508	17.17	0.0000	0.1931
1.17	0.0007	0.0028	9.33	0.0022	0.1530	17.33	0.0000	0.1931
1.33	0.0007	0.0035	9.50	0.0021	0.1551	17.50	0.0000	0.1931
1.50	0.0007	0.0042	9.67	0.0019	0.1570	17.67	0.0000	0.1931
1.67	0.0007	0.0049	9.83	0.0017	0.1587	17.83	0.0000	0.1931
1.83	0.0007	0.0056	10.00	0.0016	0.1603	18.00	0.0000	0.1931
2.00	0.0007	0.0063	10.17	0.0015	0.1618	18.17	0.0000	0.1931
2.17	0.0007	0.0070	10.33	0.0015	0.1633	18.33	0.0000	0.1931
2.33	0.0007	0.0077	10.50	0.0015	0.1648	18.50	0.0000	0.1931
2.50	0.0007	0.0084	10.67	0.0015	0.1663	18.67	0.0000	0.1931
2.67	0.0007	0.0091	10.83	0.0015	0.1678	18.83	0.0000	0.1931
2.83	0.0008	0.0099	11.00	0.0015	0.1693	19.00	0.0000	0.1931
3.00	0.0009	0.0108	11.17	0.0014	0.1707	19.17	0.0000	0.1931
3.17	0.0010	0.0118	11.33	0.0014	0.1721	19.33	0.0000	0.1931
3.33	0.0011	0.0129	11.50	0.0013	0.1734	19.50	0.0000	0.1931
3.50	0.0012	0.0141	11.67	0.0013	0.1747	19.67	0.0000	0.1931
3.67	0.0013	0.0154	11.83	0.0012	0.1759	19.83	0.0000	0.1931
3.83	0.0014	0.0168	12.00	0.0012	0.1771	20.00	0.0000	0.1931
4.00	0.0014	0.0182	12.17	0.0011	0.1782	20.17	0.0000	0.1931
4.17	0.0014	0.0196	12.33	0.0010	0.1792	20.33	0.0000	0.1931
4.33	0.0014	0.0210	12.50	0.0009	0.1801	20.50	0.0000	0.1931
4.50	0.0015	0.0225	12.67	0.0009	0.1810	20.67	0.0000	0.1931
4.67	0.0016	0.0241	12.83	0.0008	0.1818	20.83	0.0000	0.1931
4.83	0.0018	0.0259	13.00	0.0008	0.1826	21.00	0.0000	0.1931
5.00	0.0020	0.0279	13.17	0.0007	0.1833	21.17	0.0000	0.1931
5.17	0.0021	0.0300	13.33	0.0007	0.1840	21.33	0.0000	0.1931
5.33	0.0023	0.0323	13.50	0.0007	0.1847	21.50	0.0000	0.1931
5.50	0.0023	0.0346	13.67	0.0007	0.1854	21.67	0.0000	0.1931
5.67	0.0024	0.0370	13.83	0.0007	0.1861	21.83	0.0000	0.1931
5.83	0.0026	0.0396	14.00	0.0007	0.1868	22.00	0.0000	0.1931
6.00	0.0028	0.0424	14.17	0.0007	0.1875	22.17	0.0000	0.1931
6.17	0.0032	0.0456	14.33	0.0007	0.1882	22.33	0.0000	0.1931
6.33	0.0039	0.0495	14.50	0.0007	0.1889	22.50	0.0000	0.1931
6.50	0.0048	0.0543	14.67	0.0007	0.1896	22.67	0.0000	0.1931

Table 4 (continued). Dimensionless Ordinates of Back-Loaded Long-Duration Design Storm.

DIMENSIONLESS ORDINATES OF BACK-LOADED LONG-DURATION DESIGN STORM								
ELAPSED TIME (Hr)	INCRM ORDINATE	SUM ORDINATE	ELAPSED TIME (Hr)	INCRM ORDINATE	SUM ORDINATE	ELAPSED TIME (Hr)	INCRM ORDINATE	SUM ORDINATE
6.67	0.0056	0.0599	14.83	0.0007	0.1903	22.83	0.0000	0.1931
6.83	0.0076	0.0675	15.00	0.0007	0.1910	23.00	0.0000	0.1931
7.00	0.0096	0.0771	15.17	0.0006	0.1916	23.17	0.0000	0.1931
7.17	0.0133	0.0904	15.33	0.0005	0.1921	23.33	0.0000	0.1931
7.33	0.0133	0.1037	15.50	0.0004	0.1925	23.50	0.0000	0.1931
7.50	0.0096	0.1133	15.67	0.0003	0.1928	23.67	0.0000	0.1931
7.67	0.0076	0.1209	15.83	0.0002	0.1930	23.83	0.0000	0.1931
7.83	0.0056	0.1265	16.00	0.0001	0.1931	24.00	0.0000	0.1931
8.00	0.0048	0.1313						
24.17	0.0000	0.1931	32.17	0.0014	0.2137	40.17	0.0053	0.3402
24.33	0.0000	0.1931	32.33	0.0014	0.2151	40.33	0.0053	0.3455
24.50	0.0000	0.1931	32.50	0.0014	0.2165	40.50	0.0054	0.3509
24.67	0.0000	0.1931	32.67	0.0014	0.2179	40.67	0.0054	0.3563
24.83	0.0000	0.1931	32.83	0.0014	0.2193	40.83	0.0054	0.3617
25.00	0.0000	0.1931	33.00	0.0014	0.2207	41.00	0.0055	0.3672
25.17	0.0000	0.1931	33.17	0.0014	0.2221	41.17	0.0055	0.3727
25.33	0.0000	0.1931	33.33	0.0015	0.2236	41.33	0.0056	0.3783
25.50	0.0000	0.1931	33.50	0.0015	0.2251	41.50	0.0057	0.3840
25.67	0.0000	0.1931	33.67	0.0015	0.2266	41.67	0.0058	0.3898
25.83	0.0000	0.1931	33.83	0.0015	0.2281	41.83	0.0060	0.3958
26.00	0.0000	0.1931	34.00	0.0015	0.2296	42.00	0.0062	0.4020
26.17	0.0000	0.1931	34.17	0.0015	0.2311	42.17	0.0064	0.4084
26.33	0.0000	0.1931	34.33	0.0015	0.2326	42.33	0.0066	0.4150
26.50	0.0000	0.1931	34.50	0.0015	0.2341	42.50	0.0068	0.4218
26.67	0.0000	0.1931	34.67	0.0015	0.2356	42.67	0.0069	0.4287
26.83	0.0000	0.1931	34.83	0.0015	0.2371	42.83	0.0070	0.4357
27.00	0.0000	0.1931	35.00	0.0015	0.2386	43.00	0.0072	0.4429
27.17	0.0000	0.1931	35.17	0.0015	0.2401	43.17	0.0072	0.4501
27.33	0.0000	0.1931	35.33	0.0015	0.2416	43.33	0.0073	0.4574
27.50	0.0000	0.1931	35.50	0.0016	0.2432	43.50	0.0074	0.4648
27.67	0.0000	0.1931	35.67	0.0016	0.2448	43.67	0.0075	0.4723
27.83	0.0000	0.1931	35.83	0.0017	0.2465	43.83	0.0076	0.4799
28.00	0.0000	0.1931	36.00	0.0017	0.2482	44.00	0.0077	0.4876
28.17	0.0000	0.1931	36.17	0.0018	0.2500	44.17	0.0078	0.4954
28.33	0.0000	0.1931	36.33	0.0019	0.2519	44.33	0.0078	0.5032
28.50	0.0000	0.1931	36.50	0.0019	0.2538	44.50	0.0078	0.5110
28.67	0.0000	0.1931	36.67	0.0020	0.2558	44.67	0.0079	0.5189
28.83	0.0000	0.1931	36.83	0.0022	0.2580	44.83	0.0079	0.5268
29.00	0.0000	0.1931	37.00	0.0024	0.2604	45.00	0.0079	0.5347

Table 4 (continued). Dimensionless Ordinates of Back-Loaded Long-Duration Design Storm.

DIMENSIONLESS ORDINATES OF BACK-LOADED LONG-DURATION DESIGN STORM								
ELAPSED TIME (Hr)	INCRM ORDINATE	SUM ORDINATE	ELAPSED TIME (Hr)	INCRM ORDINATE	SUM ORDINATE	ELAPSED TIME (Hr)	INCRM ORDINATE	SUM ORDINATE
29.17	0.0001	0.1932	37.17	0.0026	0.2630	45.17	0.0081	0.5428
29.33	0.0003	0.1935	37.33	0.0028	0.2658	45.33	0.0082	0.5510
29.50	0.0005	0.1940	37.50	0.0030	0.2688	45.50	0.0082	0.5592
29.67	0.0007	0.1947	37.67	0.0032	0.2720	45.67	0.0093	0.5685
29.83	0.0009	0.1956	37.83	0.0034	0.2754	45.83	0.0099	0.5784
30.00	0.0010	0.1966	38.00	0.0036	0.2790	46.00	0.0102	0.5886
30.17	0.0011	0.1977	38.17	0.0038	0.2828	46.17	0.0104	0.5990
30.33	0.0012	0.1989	38.33	0.0040	0.2868	46.33	0.0107	0.6097
30.50	0.0013	0.2002	38.50	0.0042	0.2910	46.50	0.0114	0.6211
30.67	0.0013	0.2015	38.67	0.0045	0.2955	46.67	0.0118	0.6329
30.83	0.0013	0.2028	38.83	0.0047	0.3002	46.83	0.0142	0.6471
31.00	0.0013	0.2041	39.00	0.0048	0.3050	47.00	0.0220	0.6691
31.17	0.0013	0.2054	39.17	0.0049	0.3099	47.17	0.0290	0.6981
31.33	0.0013	0.2067	39.33	0.0049	0.3148	47.33	0.0160	0.7141
31.50	0.0014	0.2081	39.50	0.0049	0.3197	47.50	0.0127	0.7268
31.67	0.0014	0.2095	39.67	0.0050	0.3247	47.67	0.0116	0.7384
31.83	0.0014	0.2109	39.83	0.0051	0.3298	47.83	0.0110	0.7494
32.00	0.0014	0.2123	40.00	0.0051	0.3349	48.00	0.0106	0.7600
48.17	0.0102	0.7702	56.17	0.0054	1.1067			
48.33	0.0096	0.7798	56.33	0.0054	1.1121			
48.50	0.0082	0.7880	56.50	0.0054	1.1175			
48.67	0.0082	0.7962	56.67	0.0053	1.1228			
48.83	0.0082	0.8044	56.83	0.0053	1.1281			
49.00	0.0081	0.8125	57.00	0.0053	1.1334			
49.17	0.0080	0.8205	57.17	0.0053	1.1387			
49.33	0.0079	0.8284	57.33	0.0052	1.1439			
49.50	0.0079	0.8363	57.50	0.0052	1.1491			
49.67	0.0078	0.8441	57.67	0.0052	1.1543			
49.83	0.0078	0.8519	57.83	0.0052	1.1595			
50.00	0.0077	0.8596	58.00	0.0052	1.1647			
50.17	0.0077	0.8673	58.17	0.0051	1.1698			
50.33	0.0077	0.8750	58.33	0.0051	1.1749			
50.50	0.0077	0.8827	58.50	0.0051	1.1800			
50.67	0.0076	0.8903	58.67	0.0050	1.1850			
50.83	0.0075	0.8978	58.83	0.0050	1.1900			
51.00	0.0075	0.9053	59.00	0.0050	1.1950			
51.17	0.0074	0.9127	59.17	0.0050	1.2000			
51.33	0.0074	0.9201	59.33	0.0049	1.2049			
51.50	0.0073	0.9274	59.50	0.0049	1.2098			

Table 4 (continued). Dimensionless Ordinates of Back-Loaded Long-Duration Design Storm.

DIMENSIONLESS ORDINATES OF BACK-LOADED LONG-DURATION DESIGN STORM								
ELAPSED TIME (Hr)	INCRM ORDINATE	SUM ORDINATE	ELAPSED TIME (Hr)	INCRM ORDINATE	SUM ORDINATE	ELAPSED TIME (Hr)	INCRM ORDINATE	SUM ORDINATE
51.67	0.0073	0.9347	59.67	0.0049	1.2147			
51.83	0.0073	0.9420	59.83	0.0049	1.2196			
52.00	0.0072	0.9492	60.00	0.0048	1.2244			
52.17	0.0072	0.9564	60.17	0.0048	1.2292			
52.33	0.0072	0.9636	60.33	0.0048	1.2340			
52.50	0.0071	0.9707	60.50	0.0047	1.2387			
52.67	0.0071	0.9778	60.67	0.0046	1.2433			
52.83	0.0070	0.9848	60.83	0.0045	1.2478			
53.00	0.0070	0.9918	61.00	0.0044	1.2522			
53.17	0.0069	0.9987	61.17	0.0043	1.2565			
53.33	0.0068	1.0055	61.33	0.0042	1.2607			
53.50	0.0067	1.0122	61.50	0.0041	1.2648			
53.67	0.0067	1.0189	61.67	0.0039	1.2687			
53.83	0.0066	1.0255	61.83	0.0038	1.2725			
54.00	0.0065	1.0320	62.00	0.0037	1.2762			
54.17	0.0062	1.0382	62.17	0.0033	1.2795			
54.33	0.0062	1.0444	62.33	0.0029	1.2824			
54.50	0.0060	1.0504	62.50	0.0025	1.2849			
54.67	0.0059	1.0563	62.67	0.0021	1.2870			
54.83	0.0059	1.0622	62.83	0.0017	1.2887			
55.00	0.0058	1.0680	63.00	0.0013	1.2900			
55.17	0.0057	1.0737	63.17	0.0009	1.2909			
55.33	0.0056	1.0793	63.33	0.0005	1.2914			
55.50	0.0055	1.0848	63.50	0.0001	1.2915			
55.67	0.0055	1.0903	63.67	0.0000	1.2915			
55.83	0.0055	1.0958	63.83	0.0000	1.2915			
56.00	0.0055	1.1013	64.00	0.0000	1.2915			

Table 5. Dimensionless Ordinates of 24-Hour Design Storm.

DIMENSIONLESS ORDINATES OF 24-HOUR DESIGN STORM								
ELAPSED TIME (Hr)	INCRM ORDINATE	SUM ORDINATE	ELAPSED TIME (Hr)	INCRM ORDINATE	SUM ORDINATE	ELAPSED TIME (Hr)	INCRM ORDINATE	SUM ORDINATE
0.00	0.0000	0.0000	7.17	0.0080	0.2596	14.17	0.0072	0.6769
0.17	0.0036	0.0036	7.33	0.0082	0.2678	14.33	0.0072	0.6841
0.33	0.0038	0.0074	7.50	0.0084	0.2762	14.50	0.0072	0.6913
0.50	0.0040	0.0114	7.67	0.0088	0.2850	14.67	0.0071	0.6984
0.67	0.0042	0.0156	7.83	0.0093	0.2943	14.83	0.0071	0.7055
0.83	0.0045	0.0201	8.00	0.0099	0.3042	15.00	0.0070	0.7125
1.00	0.0047	0.0248	8.17	0.0102	0.3144	15.17	0.0070	0.7195
1.17	0.0048	0.0296	8.33	0.0104	0.3248	15.33	0.0069	0.7264
1.33	0.0049	0.0345	8.50	0.0107	0.3355	15.50	0.0068	0.7332
1.50	0.0049	0.0394	8.67	0.0114	0.3469	15.67	0.0067	0.7399
1.67	0.0049	0.0443	8.83	0.0127	0.3596	15.83	0.0066	0.7465
1.83	0.0050	0.0493	9.00	0.0142	0.3738	16.00	0.0065	0.7530
2.00	0.0051	0.0544	9.17	0.0220	0.3958	16.17	0.0064	0.7594
2.17	0.0051	0.0595	9.33	0.0290	0.4248	16.33	0.0063	0.7657
2.33	0.0053	0.0648	9.50	0.0160	0.4408	16.50	0.0062	0.7719
2.50	0.0053	0.0701	9.67	0.0127	0.4535	16.67	0.0060	0.7779
2.67	0.0054	0.0755	9.83	0.0116	0.4651	16.83	0.0059	0.7838
2.83	0.0054	0.0809	10.00	0.0110	0.4761	17.00	0.0059	0.7897
3.00	0.0054	0.0863	10.17	0.0106	0.4867	17.17	0.0058	0.7955
3.17	0.0055	0.0918	10.33	0.0102	0.4969	17.33	0.0057	0.8012
3.33	0.0055	0.0973	10.50	0.0096	0.5065	17.50	0.0056	0.8068
3.50	0.0056	0.1029	10.67	0.0089	0.5154	17.67	0.0055	0.8123
3.67	0.0057	0.1086	10.83	0.0085	0.5239	17.83	0.0055	0.8178
3.83	0.0058	0.1144	11.00	0.0083	0.5322	18.00	0.0055	0.8233
4.00	0.0060	0.1204	11.17	0.0082	0.5404	18.17	0.0055	0.8288
4.17	0.0062	0.1266	11.33	0.0081	0.5485	18.33	0.0054	0.8342
4.33	0.0064	0.1330	11.50	0.0080	0.5565	18.50	0.0054	0.8396
4.50	0.0066	0.1396	11.67	0.0079	0.5644	18.67	0.0054	0.8450
4.67	0.0068	0.1464	11.83	0.0078	0.5722	18.83	0.0053	0.8503
4.83	0.0069	0.1533	12.00	0.0078	0.5800	19.00	0.0053	0.8556
5.00	0.0070	0.1603	12.17	0.0077	0.5877	19.17	0.0053	0.8609
5.17	0.0072	0.1675	12.33	0.0077	0.5954	19.33	0.0053	0.8662
5.33	0.0072	0.1747	12.50	0.0076	0.6030	19.50	0.0052	0.8714
5.50	0.0073	0.1820	12.67	0.0076	0.6106	19.67	0.0052	0.8766
5.67	0.0074	0.1894	12.83	0.0075	0.6181	19.83	0.0052	0.8818
5.83	0.0075	0.1969	13.00	0.0075	0.6256	20.00	0.0052	0.8870
6.00	0.0076	0.2045	13.17	0.0074	0.6330	20.17	0.0052	0.8922
6.17	0.0077	0.2122	13.33	0.0074	0.6404	20.33	0.0051	0.8973
6.33	0.0078	0.2200	13.50	0.0074	0.6478	20.50	0.0051	0.9024
6.50	0.0078	0.2278	13.67	0.0073	0.6551	20.67	0.0051	0.9075

Table 5 (continued). Dimensionless Ordinates of 24-Hour Design Storm.

DIMENSIONLESS ORDINATES OF 24-HOUR DESIGN STORM								
ELAPSED TIME (Hr)	INCRM ORDINATE	SUM ORDINATE	ELAPSED TIME (Hr)	INCRM ORDINATE	SUM ORDINATE	ELAPSED TIME (Hr)	INCRM ORDINATE	SUM ORDINATE
6.67	0.0079	0.2357	13.83	0.0073	0.6624	20.83	0.0050	0.9125
6.83	0.0079	0.2436	14.00	0.0073	0.6697	21.00	0.0050	0.9175
7.00	0.0080	0.2516						
21.17	0.0050	0.9225						
21.33	0.0050	0.9275						
21.50	0.0049	0.9324						
21.67	0.0049	0.9373						
21.83	0.0049	0.9422						
22.00	0.0049	0.9471						
22.17	0.0048	0.9519						
22.33	0.0048	0.9567						
22.50	0.0048	0.9615						
22.67	0.0047	0.9662						
22.83	0.0046	0.9708						
23.00	0.0045	0.9753						
23.17	0.0044	0.9797						
23.33	0.0043	0.9840						
23.50	0.0042	0.9882						
23.67	0.0041	0.9923						
23.83	0.0039	0.9962						
24.00	0.0038	1.0000						

Attachment 2

Precipitation Magnitude-Frequency Estimates for SPU Rain Gauge Locations (up to 2012 data only)

ATTACHMENT 2 – PRECIPITATION MAGNITUDE-FREQUENCY ESTIMATES FOR SPU RAIN GAUGE LOCATIONS ~~(UP TO 2012 DATA ONLY)~~

This appendix contains adapted text and excerpted tables and figures from *Analysis of Precipitation-Frequency and Storm Characteristics for the City of Seattle* (MGS Engineering Consultants, Inc. for Seattle Public Utilities, January 2013). [A majority of the analysis presented here is from rain gauge data ending in 2012. Tables 1, 3, and 4 were updated based on a study performed in 2020. Updated information may be obtained from the SPU Rain Gauge Network Data Steward as it becomes available.](#)

The results of homogeneity analyses indicate that at-site mean values for precipitation do not vary across the Seattle Metropolitan Area for durations of 3 hours and less. Accordingly, one set of intensity-duration-frequency (IDF) curves can be developed that are applicable to the Seattle Metropolitan Area. Table 1 and Figures 1 and 2 provide precipitation intensities and IDF curves representative of the Seattle Metropolitan Area for durations from 5 to 180 minutes.

Table 1. Intensity-Duration-Frequency Values for Durations from 5 Minutes Through 180 Minutes for Selected Recurrence Intervals for the Seattle Metropolitan Area.

<u>DURATION (minutes)</u>	<u>DURATION (hours minutes)</u>	PRECIPITATION INTENSITIES (in/hr)							
		RECURRENCE INTERVAL (years)							
		6-Month	2-Yr	5-Yr	10-Yr	20-Yr	25-Yr	50-Yr	100-Yr
<u>5</u>	<u>0.08335</u>	<u>1.024.04</u>	<u>1.314.60</u>	<u>1.622.08</u>	<u>2.062.45</u>	<u>2.392.92</u>	<u>2.793.08</u>	<u>2.923.64</u>	<u>3.354.20</u>
<u>6</u>	<u>0.10006</u>	<u>0.970.92</u>	<u>1.234.45</u>	<u>1.524.87</u>	<u>1.932.24</u>	<u>2.232.62</u>	<u>2.602.76</u>	<u>2.723.23</u>	<u>3.103.75</u>
<u>8</u>	<u>0.13338</u>	<u>0.860.80</u>	<u>1.084.24</u>	<u>1.334.59</u>	<u>1.674.87</u>	<u>1.942.24</u>	<u>2.252.32</u>	<u>2.352.74</u>	<u>2.683.13</u>
<u>10</u>	<u>0.16674</u>	<u>0.760.74</u>	<u>0.964.10</u>	<u>1.174.40</u>	<u>1.484.64</u>	<u>1.704.93</u>	<u>1.982.03</u>	<u>2.072.36</u>	<u>2.362.72</u>
<u>12</u>	<u>0.20004</u>	<u>0.690.65</u>	<u>0.864.00</u>	<u>1.054.27</u>	<u>1.324.48</u>	<u>1.534.74</u>	<u>1.774.82</u>	<u>1.852.14</u>	<u>2.112.43</u>
<u>15</u>	<u>0.25004</u>	<u>0.600.58</u>	<u>0.750.88</u>	<u>0.924.12</u>	<u>1.154.30</u>	<u>1.334.52</u>	<u>1.544.60</u>	<u>1.614.84</u>	<u>1.832.14</u>
<u>20</u>	<u>0.33332</u>	<u>0.510.50</u>	<u>0.630.75</u>	<u>0.770.95</u>	<u>0.964.10</u>	<u>1.114.28</u>	<u>1.284.34</u>	<u>1.344.54</u>	<u>1.534.76</u>
<u>25</u>	<u>0.41672</u>	<u>0.450.45</u>	<u>0.560.67</u>	<u>0.670.84</u>	<u>0.840.97</u>	<u>0.964.12</u>	<u>1.114.18</u>	<u>1.164.35</u>	<u>1.324.53</u>
<u>30</u>	<u>0.50003</u>	<u>0.410.44</u>	<u>0.500.64</u>	<u>0.600.76</u>	<u>0.750.87</u>	<u>0.864.04</u>	<u>1.004.05</u>	<u>1.044.24</u>	<u>1.184.37</u>
<u>35</u>	<u>0.58333</u>	<u>0.370.38</u>	<u>0.460.56</u>	<u>0.550.69</u>	<u>0.690.80</u>	<u>0.790.92</u>	<u>0.910.96</u>	<u>0.954.10</u>	<u>1.074.24</u>
<u>40</u>	<u>0.66674</u>	<u>0.350.35</u>	<u>0.430.52</u>	<u>0.510.64</u>	<u>0.640.74</u>	<u>0.730.85</u>	<u>0.840.89</u>	<u>0.874.04</u>	<u>0.994.14</u>
<u>45</u>	<u>0.75004</u>	<u>0.330.33</u>	<u>0.400.49</u>	<u>0.480.60</u>	<u>0.600.69</u>	<u>0.680.79</u>	<u>0.780.83</u>	<u>0.820.94</u>	<u>0.924.06</u>
<u>50</u>	<u>0.83335</u>	<u>0.310.32</u>	<u>0.380.46</u>	<u>0.460.57</u>	<u>0.560.65</u>	<u>0.640.74</u>	<u>0.740.78</u>	<u>0.770.88</u>	<u>0.870.99</u>
<u>55</u>	<u>0.91675</u>	<u>0.300.30</u>	<u>0.360.44</u>	<u>0.430.54</u>	<u>0.530.64</u>	<u>0.610.70</u>	<u>0.700.73</u>	<u>0.730.83</u>	<u>0.820.94</u>
<u>60</u>	<u>1.00006</u>	<u>0.290.29</u>	<u>0.350.42</u>	<u>0.420.54</u>	<u>0.510.58</u>	<u>0.580.67</u>	<u>0.660.70</u>	<u>0.690.79</u>	<u>0.780.89</u>
<u>65</u>	<u>1.08336</u>	<u>0.280.28</u>	<u>0.340.40</u>	<u>0.400.49</u>	<u>0.490.56</u>	<u>0.560.64</u>	<u>0.630.66</u>	<u>0.660.75</u>	<u>0.740.84</u>
<u>70</u>	<u>1.16677</u>	<u>0.270.27</u>	<u>0.320.38</u>	<u>0.380.47</u>	<u>0.470.53</u>	<u>0.530.64</u>	<u>0.610.64</u>	<u>0.630.72</u>	<u>0.710.80</u>
<u>80</u>	<u>1.33338</u>	<u>0.250.25</u>	<u>0.300.36</u>	<u>0.360.43</u>	<u>0.440.49</u>	<u>0.500.56</u>	<u>0.570.59</u>	<u>0.590.66</u>	<u>0.660.74</u>
<u>90</u>	<u>1.50009</u>	<u>0.240.24</u>	<u>0.290.33</u>	<u>0.340.41</u>	<u>0.410.46</u>	<u>0.470.52</u>	<u>0.530.55</u>	<u>0.550.62</u>	<u>0.620.69</u>
<u>100</u>	<u>1.66674</u>	<u>0.230.22</u>	<u>0.270.32</u>	<u>0.320.38</u>	<u>0.390.43</u>	<u>0.440.49</u>	<u>0.500.54</u>	<u>0.520.58</u>	<u>0.580.64</u>
<u>120</u>	<u>2.00004</u>	<u>0.210.20</u>	<u>0.250.29</u>	<u>0.300.35</u>	<u>0.360.39</u>	<u>0.400.44</u>	<u>0.460.46</u>	<u>0.470.52</u>	<u>0.530.57</u>
<u>140</u>	<u>2.33334</u>	<u>0.200.19</u>	<u>0.240.26</u>	<u>0.280.32</u>	<u>0.330.36</u>	<u>0.370.40</u>	<u>0.420.42</u>	<u>0.440.47</u>	<u>0.490.52</u>
<u>160</u>	<u>2.66674</u>	<u>0.190.18</u>	<u>0.220.24</u>	<u>0.260.29</u>	<u>0.310.33</u>	<u>0.350.37</u>	<u>0.390.39</u>	<u>0.410.43</u>	<u>0.450.48</u>
<u>180</u>	<u>3.00004</u>	<u>0.180.17</u>	<u>0.210.23</u>	<u>0.250.27</u>	<u>0.290.34</u>	<u>0.330.35</u>	<u>0.370.36</u>	<u>0.380.40</u>	<u>0.420.45</u>

Table 2. Two-Hour Precipitation Magnitude-Frequency Values for Selected Recurrence Intervals for the Seattle Metropolitan Area.

Recurrence Interval	2-Hour Total (inches)
6-month	0.40
2-yr	0.58
5-yr	0.70
10-yr	0.78
20-yr	0.88
25-yr	0.92
50-yr	1.04
100-yr	1.14

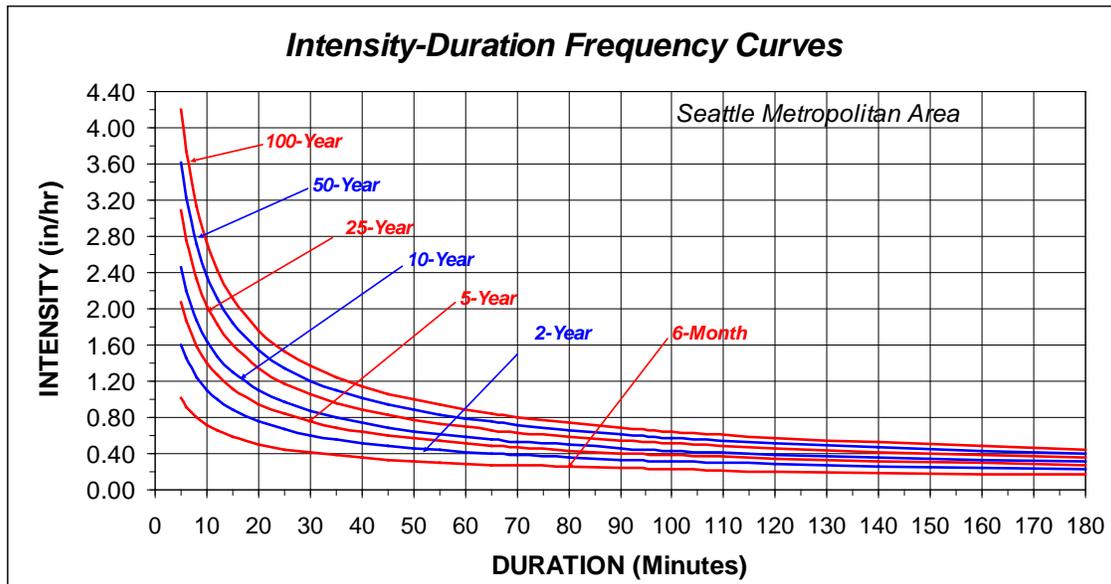


Figure 1. Intensity-Duration-Frequency Curves for the Seattle Metropolitan Area.

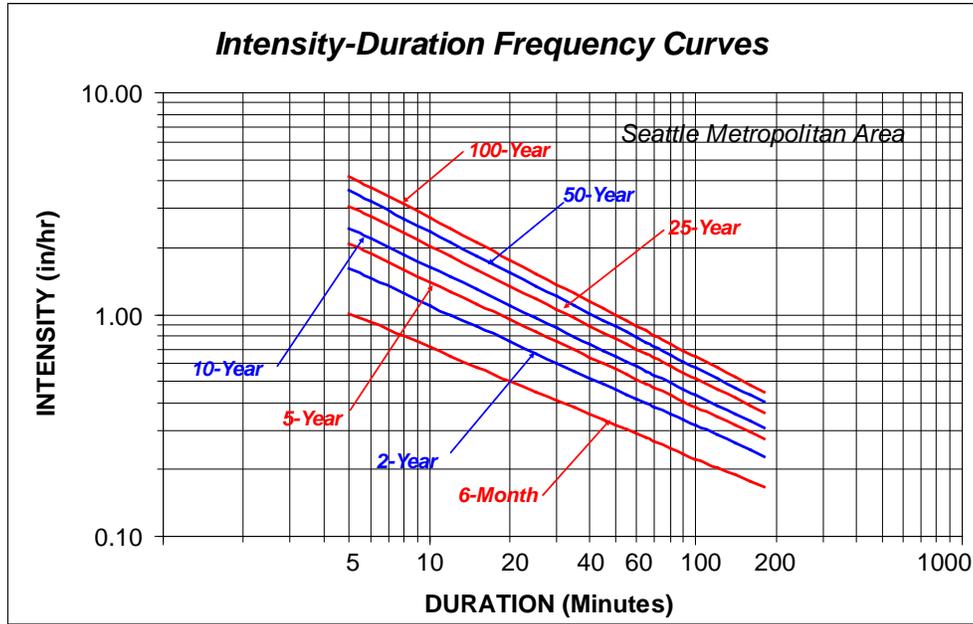


Figure 2. Intensity-Duration-Frequency Curves for the Seattle Metropolitan Area.

The following tables and figures contain estimates of precipitation-frequency values for durations of 6 hours, 12 hours, 24 hours, 48 hours, and 7 days for locations of SPU precipitation gauges (Table 2) in both tabular format and as magnitude-frequency curves. These precipitation values are based on estimates of the at-site mean values for the location of SPU gauges (Table 3) based on the spatial analysis of precipitation (gridded datasets) and the applicable regional growth curves obtained from the regional frequency analyses. Corrections have been applied to provide equivalent partial duration series estimates for frequently occurring events (5 times/year, 2 times/year, once/year, 2-year, and 5-year recurrence intervals).

Table 3. Listing of City of Seattle (SPU) Precipitation Gauges.

Station ID	Station Name	Latitude	Longitude	Year Start	Year End	Gauge Type
RG0145-S004	Haller Lake Shop	47.7211	122.3431	1965	20202003	TB
RG0245-S002	Magnuson Park/Mathews Beach Pump Stn	47.6950	122.2731	1969	20202003	TB
RG0345-S003	UW Hydraulics Lab	47.6481	122.3081	1965	20202003	TB
RG0445-S004	Maple Leaf Reservoir	47.6900	122.3119	1965	20202003	TB
RG0545-S005	Fauntleroy Ferry Dock	47.5231	122.3919	1968	20202003	TB
RG0745-S007	Whitman Middle School	47.6961	122.3769	1965	20202003	TB
RG0845-S008	Ballard Locks	47.6650	122.3969	1965	20202003	TB
RG0945-S009	Woodland Park Zoo	47.6681	122.3539	1965	20202003	TB
RG1045-S010	Rainier View-Ave Elementary	47.5000	122.2600	1968	20102003	TB
RG1145-S014	Metro-KC Denny Regulating	47.6169	122.3550	1970	20202003	TB
RG1245-S012	Catherine Blaine Elementary School Jr	47.6419	122.3969	1965	20202003	TB
RG1445-S014	Lafayette Elementary School/West Seattle High School	47.5781	122.3819	1965	20202003	TB
RG1545-S015	Puget Sound Clean Air Monitoring Station/Metro-KC Diagonal Pump	47.5619	122.3400	1965	20202003	TB
RG1645-S016	Metro-KC E Marginal Way	47.5350	122.3139	1970	20202003	TB
RG1745-S017	West Seattle Reservoir Treatment Engr Shop	47.5211	122.3450	1965	20202003	TB
RG1845-S018	Aki Kurose Middle School/Hillman Engr Shop	47.5481	122.2750	1965	20202003	TB
RG2045-S020	TT Minor Elementary	47.6119	122.3069	1975	20112003	TB
RG25	Garfield Community Center	47.6076	-122.3020	2010	2020	TB
RG30	Rainier Beach Public Library	47.5214	-122.2700	2011	2020	TB
RG32	Beacon Telemetry Shack	47.5698	-122.3080	2016	2020	TB
RG33	Fire Station #38	47.6688	-122.2840	2016	2020	TB
RG34	Fire Station #39	47.7213	-122.2970	2016	2020	TB
RG35	Capitol Hill Library	47.6229	-122.3220	2016	2020	TB
RG36	High Point Library	47.5480	-122.3760	2016	2020	TB
45-7473	Seattle Tacoma Airport	47.4500	122.3000	19401965	20202002	HR

TB – Tipping Bucket
HR – NOAA Hourly Gauge

Table 4. Listing of Best Estimate At-site Mean Values for City of Seattle (SPU) Precipitation Gauges.

Best Estimate At-Site Mean Values (inches)							
Station ID	Station Name	6 Hr	12 Hr	24 Hr	48 Hr	72 Hr	7 Day
RG01	Haller Lake Shop	1.020	1.495	2.000	2.465	2.985	4.290
RG02	Mathews Beach Pump Stn	1.030	1.525	2.105	2.595	3.085	4.470
RG03	UW Hydraulics Lab	1.055	1.535	2.075	2.570	3.060	4.330
RG04	Maple Leaf Reservoir	1.035	1.520	2.065	2.585	3.105	4.435
RG05	Fauntleroy Ferry Dock	1.070	1.560	2.115	2.675	3.105	4.260
RG07	Whitman Middle School	1.050	1.535	2.050	2.535	3.095	4.510
RG08	Ballard Locks	1.055	1.545	2.065	2.545	3.045	4.335
RG09	Woodland Park Zoo	1.020	1.480	1.980	2.465	2.935	4.190
RG10	Rainier Ave Elementary	1.100	1.595	2.250	2.825	3.345	4.630
RG11	Metro-KC Denny Regulating	1.025	1.500	2.020	2.520	2.955	4.100
RG12	Catherine Blaine Jr	1.045	1.530	2.045	2.550	3.080	4.435
RG14	West Seattle High School	1.065	1.570	2.110	2.665	3.205	4.495
RG15	Metro-KC Diagonal Pump	1.055	1.535	2.095	2.655	3.135	4.335
RG16	Metro-KC E Marginal Way	1.065	1.545	2.160	2.700	3.205	4.440
RG17	West Seattle Engr Shop	1.100	1.590	2.210	2.785	3.325	4.665
RG18	Hillman Engr Shop	1.080	1.560	2.165	2.735	3.235	4.510
RG20	TT Minor Elementary	1.080	1.595	2.150	2.720	3.170	4.440
RG25	Garfield Community Center	1.080	1.565	2.150	2.720	3.170	4.440
RG30	Rainier Beach Public Library	1.100	1.595	2.250	2.825	3.345	4.630
RG32	Beacon Telemetry Shack	1.070	1.555	2.150	2.700	3.195	4.465
RG33	Fire Station #38	1.045	1.525	2.090	2.600	3.100	4.430
RG34	Fire Station #39	1.025	1.510	2.045	2.525	3.030	4.390
RG35	Capitol Hill Library	1.055	1.540	2.100	2.625	3.125	4.415
RG36	High Point Library	1.070	1.560	2.120	2.670	3.165	4.400

At-Site Mean Values (in)							
Station ID	Station Name	6-Hr	12-Hr	24-Hr	48-Hr	72-Hr	7-Day
45-S001	Haller Lake Shop	1.02	1.45	1.97	2.40	2.88	4.05
45-S002	Magnusson Park	1.04	1.50	2.03	2.48	2.99	4.21
45-S003	UW Hydraulics Lab	1.04	1.50	2.04	2.50	3.00	4.23
45-S004	Maple Leaf Reservoir	1.04	1.50	2.03	2.48	2.99	4.21
45-S005	Fauntleroy Ferry Dock	1.07	1.56	2.12	2.61	3.14	4.45
45-S007	Whitman Middle School	1.04	1.50	2.03	2.48	2.99	4.21
45-S008	Ballard Locks	1.05	1.51	2.05	2.51	3.02	4.26
45-S009	Woodland Park Zoo	1.04	1.50	2.04	2.50	3.00	4.23
45-S010	Rainier View Elementary	1.10	1.60	2.18	2.69	3.25	4.60
45-S014	Metro-KC Denny Regulating	1.05	1.52	2.06	2.52	3.04	4.29
45-S012	Catherine Blaine Elementary School	1.05	1.51	2.05	2.51	3.02	4.26

45-S014	Lafayette Elementary School	1.07	1.55	2.10	2.58	3.11	4.39
45-S015	Puget Sound Clean Air Monitoring Station	1.05	1.52	2.07	2.54	3.06	4.34
45-S016	Metro KC E Marginal Way	1.06	1.54	2.09	2.57	3.09	4.37
45-S017	West Seattle Reservoir Treatment Shop	1.10	1.60	2.18	2.69	3.25	4.60
45-S018	Aki Kurose Middle School	1.06	1.53	2.08	2.55	3.07	4.34
45-S020	TT Minor Elementary	1.06	1.53	2.08	2.55	3.07	4.34
45-7473	Seattle Tacoma Airport	1.11	1.62	2.24	2.73	3.30	4.68

Table 5. Precipitation-Magnitude-Frequency Estimates for of SPU Gauge 01.

Duration (hr)	Precipitation (in)										
	Recurrence Interval (years)										
	0.5-Yr	1-Yr	2-Yr	5-Yr	10-Yr		25-Yr	50-Yr	100-Yr	500-Yr	
6		0.75	0.89	1.03	1.23	1.37		1.58	1.74	1.91	2.31
12		1.05	1.26	1.48	1.78	1.99		2.32	2.56	2.81	3.40
24		1.39	1.70	2.01	2.44	2.75		3.22	3.58	3.94	4.83
48		1.67	2.05	2.45	2.98	3.37		3.96	4.41	4.86	5.97
72		2.05	2.50	2.95	3.56	3.99		4.63	5.11	5.59	6.72
168		2.92	3.55	4.18	4.98	5.53		6.32	6.89	7.44	8.67

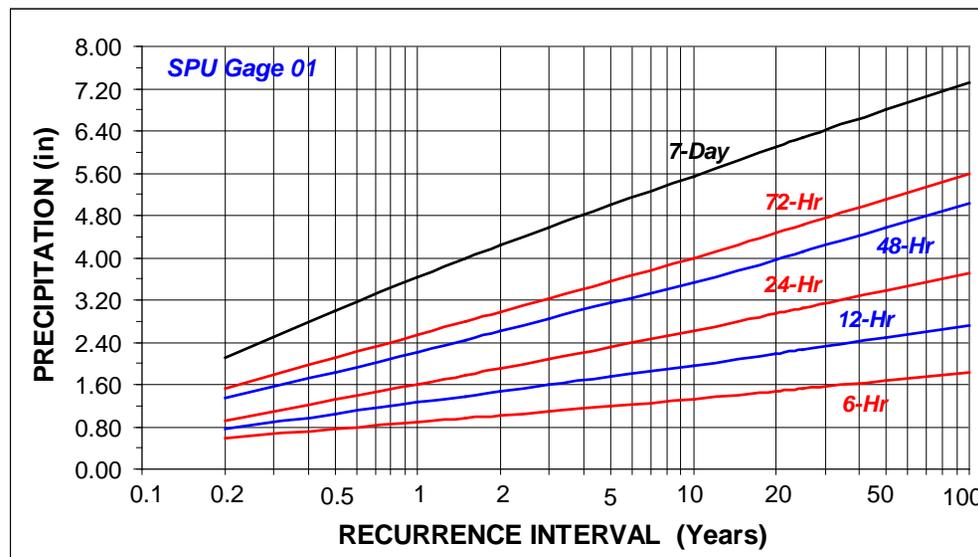


Figure 3. Precipitation-Magnitude-Frequency Estimates for of SPU Gauge 01.

Table 6. Precipitation-Magnitude-Frequency Estimates for SPU Gauge 02.

Duration (hr)	Precipitation (in)										
	Recurrence Interval (years)										
		0.5-Yr	1-Yr	2-Yr	5-Yr	10-Yr		25-Yr	50-Yr	100-Yr	500-Yr
6		0.77	0.91	1.06	1.26	1.40		1.62	1.78	1.95	2.36
12		1.08	1.30	1.53	1.83	2.05		2.38	2.64	2.89	3.50
24		1.44	1.75	2.07	2.51	2.83		3.31	3.68	4.06	4.97
48		1.73	2.12	2.53	3.08	3.49		4.09	4.56	5.03	6.18
72		2.13	2.59	3.06	3.69	4.13		4.80	5.30	5.79	6.97
168		3.03	3.69	4.34	5.17	5.75		6.57	7.16	7.74	9.01

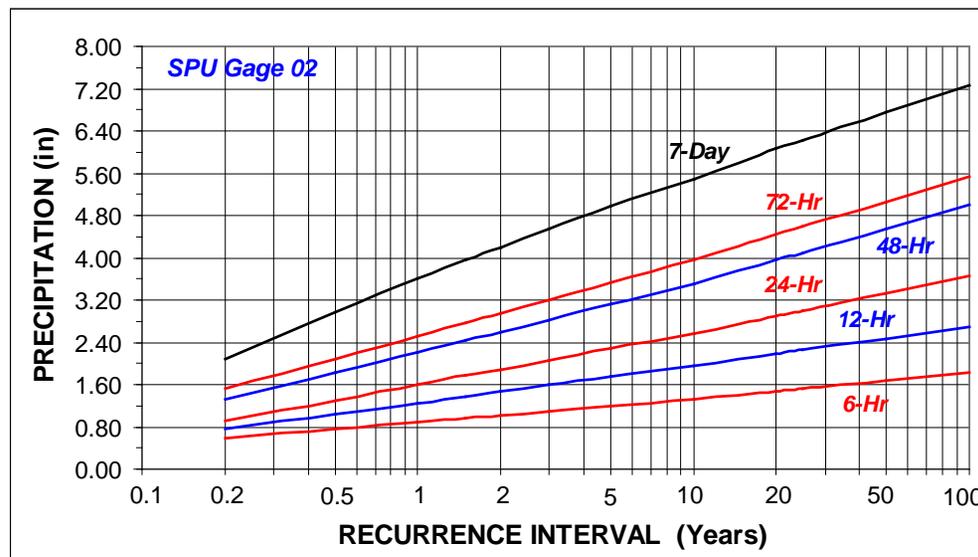


Figure 4. Precipitation-Magnitude-Frequency Estimates for SPU Gauge 02.

Table 7. Precipitation-Magnitude-Frequency Estimates for SPU Gauge 03.

Duration (hr)	Precipitation (in)										
	Recurrence Interval (years)										
		0.5-Yr	1-Yr	2-Yr	5-Yr	10-Yr		25-Yr	50-Yr	100-Yr	500-Yr
6		0.77	0.91	1.06	1.26	1.41		1.62	1.79	1.96	2.37
12		1.09	1.31	1.53	1.84	2.06		2.39	2.65	2.90	3.52
24		1.44	1.75	2.08	2.52	2.84		3.33	3.70	4.08	4.99
48		1.74	2.14	2.55	3.10	3.51		4.12	4.59	5.06	6.22
72		2.14	2.60	3.08	3.71	4.16		4.83	5.33	5.83	7.01
168		3.05	3.71	4.37	5.21	5.79		6.61	7.21	7.78	9.07

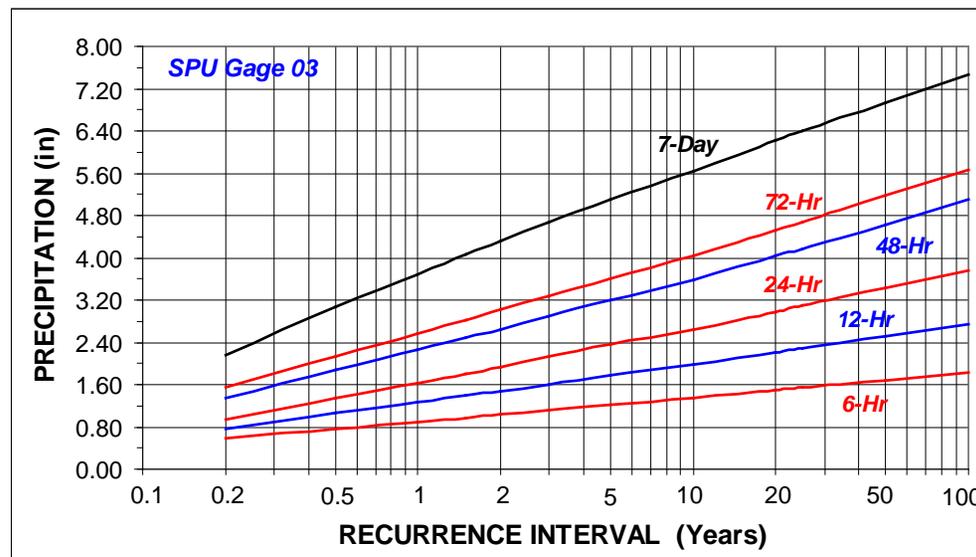


Figure 5. Precipitation-Magnitude-Frequency Estimates for SPU Gauge 03.

Table 8. Precipitation-Magnitude-Frequency Estimates for SPU Gauge 04.

Duration (hr)	Precipitation (in)										
	Recurrence Interval (years)										
		0.5-Yr	1-Yr	2-Yr	5-Yr	10-Yr		25-Yr	50-Yr	100-Yr	500-Yr
6		0.77	0.91	1.06	1.26	1.40		1.62	1.78	1.95	2.36
12		1.08	1.30	1.53	1.83	2.05		2.38	2.64	2.89	3.50
24		1.44	1.75	2.07	2.51	2.83		3.31	3.68	4.06	4.97
48		1.73	2.12	2.53	3.08	3.49		4.09	4.56	5.03	6.18
72		2.13	2.59	3.06	3.69	4.13		4.80	5.30	5.79	6.97
168		3.03	3.69	4.34	5.17	5.75		6.57	7.16	7.74	9.01

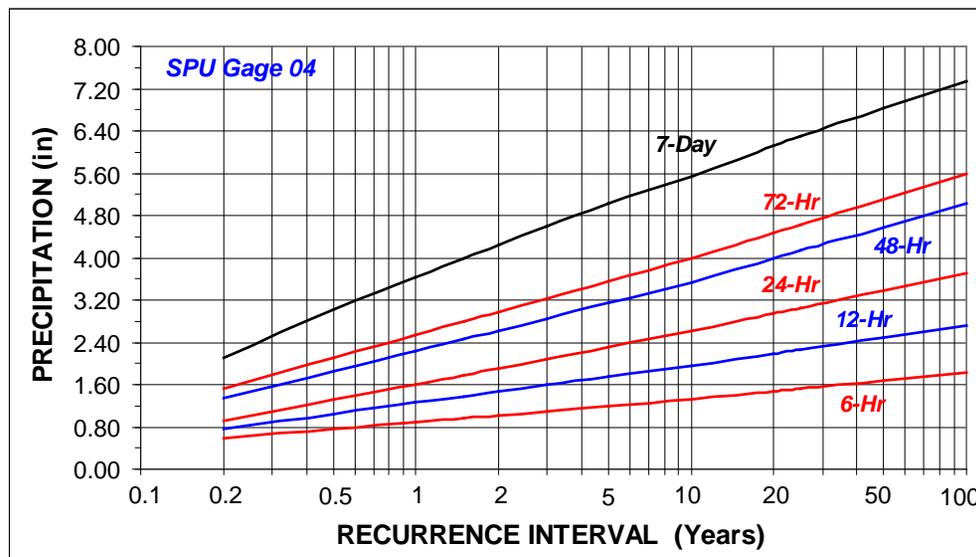


Figure 6. Precipitation-Magnitude-Frequency Estimates for SPU Gauge 04.

Table 9. Precipitation-Magnitude-Frequency Estimates for SPU Gauge 05.

Duration (hr)	Precipitation (in)										
	Recurrence Interval (years)										
	0.5-Yr	1-Yr	2-Yr	5-Yr	10-Yr		25-Yr	50-Yr	100-Yr	500-Yr	
6	0.80	0.94	1.09	1.30	1.45		1.67	1.85	2.02	2.44	
12	1.13	1.36	1.59	1.91	2.14		2.48	2.75	3.01	3.65	
24	1.50	1.82	2.16	2.62	2.95		3.45	3.84	4.23	5.18	
48	1.82	2.23	2.66	3.24	3.66		4.30	4.79	5.29	6.50	
72	2.24	2.72	3.22	3.88	4.35		5.05	5.58	6.10	7.33	
168	3.20	3.90	4.59	5.47	6.08		6.94	7.57	8.17	9.52	

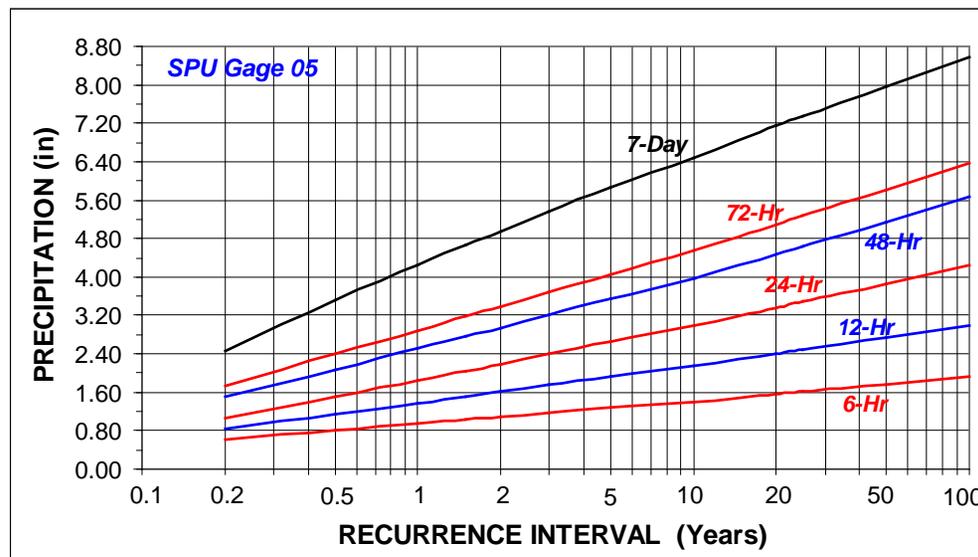


Figure 7. Precipitation-Magnitude-Frequency Estimates for SPU Gauge 05.

Table 10. Precipitation-Magnitude-Frequency Estimates for SPU Gauge 07.

Duration (hr)	Precipitation (in)										
	Recurrence Interval (years)										
		0.5-Yr	1-Yr	2-Yr	5-Yr	10-Yr		25-Yr	50-Yr	100-Yr	500-Yr
6		0.77	0.91	1.06	1.26	1.40		1.62	1.78	1.95	2.36
12		1.08	1.30	1.53	1.83	2.05		2.38	2.64	2.89	3.50
24		1.44	1.75	2.07	2.51	2.83		3.31	3.68	4.06	4.97
48		1.73	2.12	2.53	3.08	3.49		4.09	4.56	5.03	6.18
72		2.13	2.59	3.06	3.69	4.13		4.80	5.30	5.79	6.97
168		3.03	3.69	4.34	5.17	5.75		6.57	7.16	7.74	9.01

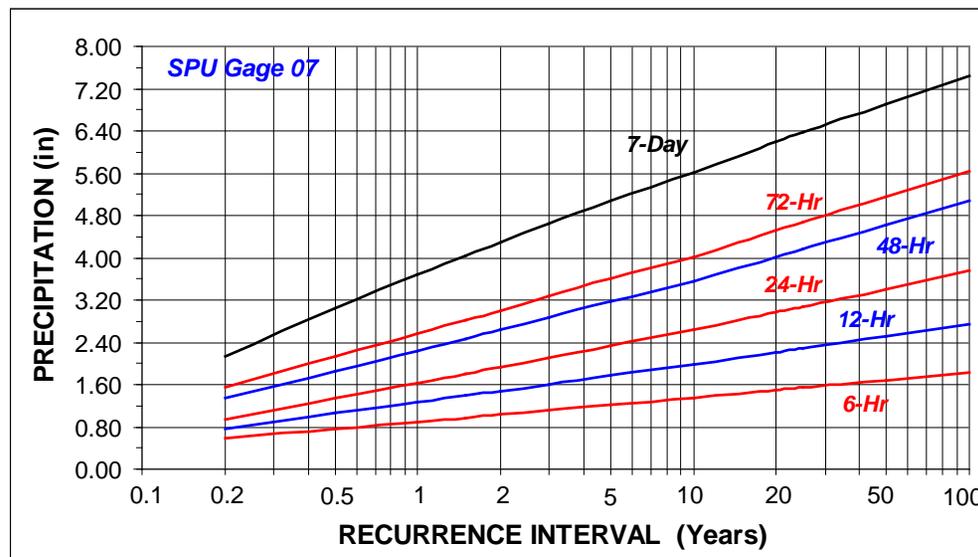


Figure 8. Precipitation-Magnitude-Frequency Estimates for SPU Gauge 07.

Table 11. Precipitation-Magnitude-Frequency Estimates for SPU Gauge 08.

Duration (hr)	Precipitation (in)										
	Recurrence Interval (years)										
	0.5-Yr	1-Yr	2-Yr	5-Yr	10-Yr	25-Yr	50-Yr	100-Yr	500-Yr		
6	0.78	0.92	1.07	1.27	1.41	1.63	1.80	1.97	2.38		
12	1.09	1.31	1.54	1.85	2.07	2.41	2.66	2.92	3.53		
24	1.45	1.76	2.09	2.53	2.86	3.34	3.72	4.10	5.01		
48	1.75	2.15	2.56	3.12	3.53	4.14	4.61	5.09	6.25		
72	2.15	2.62	3.09	3.73	4.18	4.85	5.36	5.86	7.05		
168	3.07	3.74	4.40	5.24	5.82	6.65	7.25	7.83	9.12		

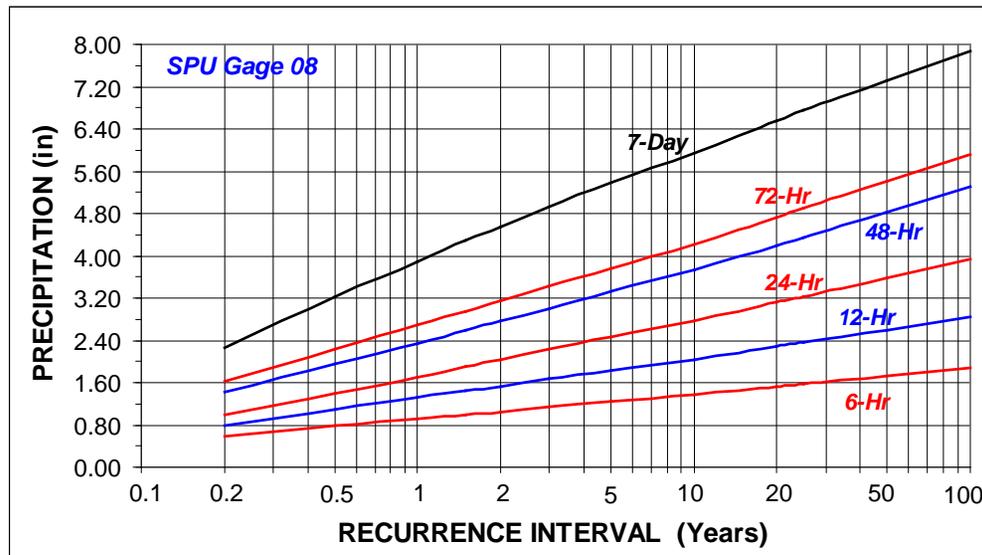


Figure 9. Precipitation-Magnitude-Frequency Estimates for SPU Gauge 08.

Table 12. Precipitation-Magnitude-Frequency Estimates for SPU Gauge 09.

Duration (hr)	Precipitation (in)										
	Recurrence Interval (years)										
		0.5-Yr	1-Yr	2-Yr	5-Yr	10-Yr		25-Yr	50-Yr	100-Yr	500-Yr
6		0.77	0.91	1.06	1.26	1.41		1.62	1.79	1.96	2.37
12		1.09	1.31	1.53	1.84	2.06		2.39	2.65	2.90	3.52
24		1.44	1.75	2.08	2.52	2.84		3.33	3.70	4.08	4.99
48		1.74	2.14	2.55	3.10	3.51		4.12	4.59	5.06	6.22
72		2.14	2.60	3.08	3.71	4.16		4.83	5.33	5.83	7.01
168		3.05	3.71	4.37	5.21	5.79		6.61	7.21	7.78	9.07

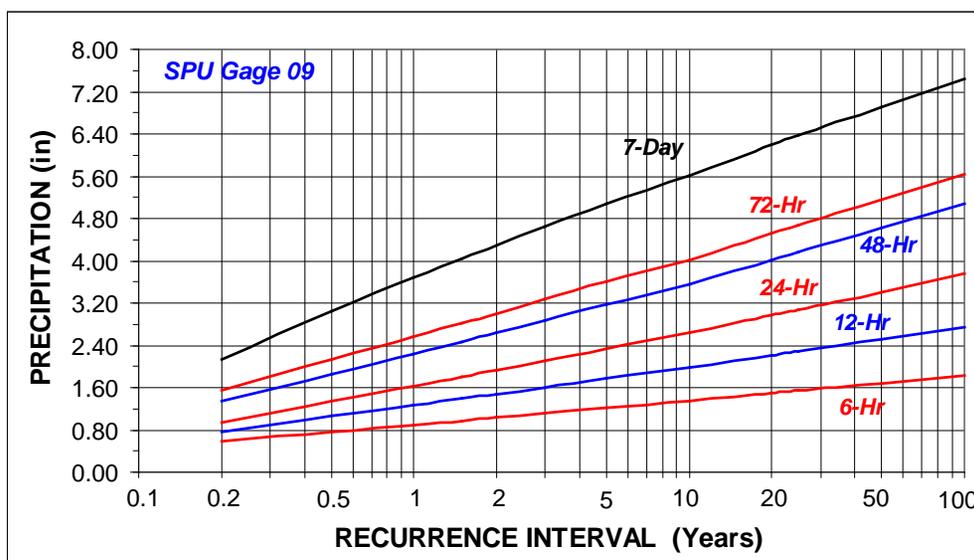


Figure 10. Precipitation-Magnitude-Frequency Estimates for SPU Gauge 09.

Table 13. Precipitation-Magnitude-Frequency Estimates for SPU Gauge 10.

Duration (hr)	Precipitation (in)										
	Recurrence Interval (years)										
		0.5-Yr	1-Yr	2-Yr	5-Yr	10-Yr		25-Yr	50-Yr	100-Yr	500-Yr
6		0.81	0.96	1.12	1.33	1.48		1.71	1.89	2.07	2.50
12		1.16	1.39	1.63	1.96	2.20		2.55	2.82	3.09	3.74
24		1.54	1.87	2.22	2.69	3.04		3.55	3.95	4.36	5.33
48		1.88	2.30	2.75	3.35	3.78		4.44	4.95	5.46	6.71
72		2.31	2.81	3.33	4.01	4.50		5.22	5.76	6.30	7.58
168		3.32	4.04	4.75	5.66	6.29		7.19	7.84	8.46	9.86

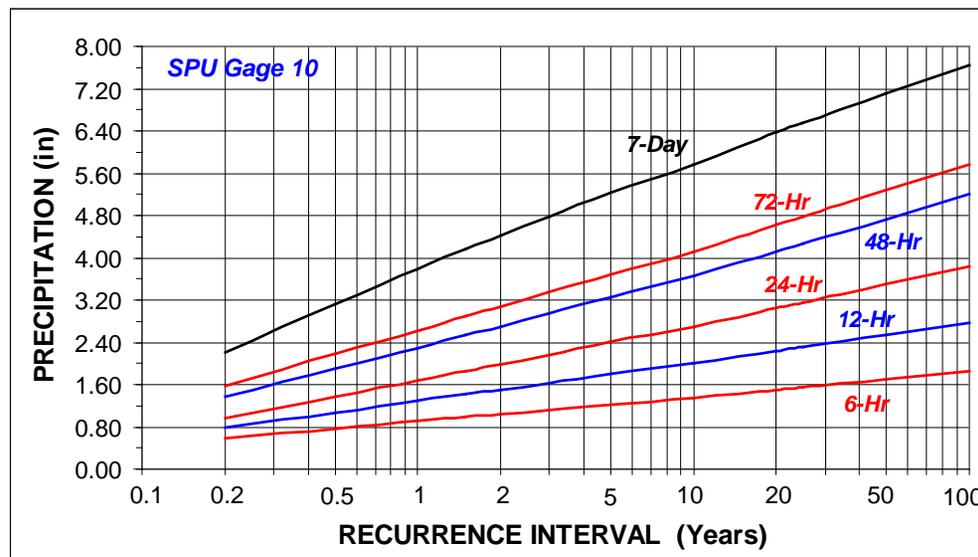


Figure 11. Precipitation-Magnitude-Frequency Estimates for SPU Gauge 10.

Table 14. Precipitation-Magnitude-Frequency Estimates for SPU Gauge 11.

Duration (hr)	Precipitation (in)										
	Recurrence Interval (years)										
		0.5-Yr	1-Yr	2-Yr	5-Yr	10-Yr		25-Yr	50-Yr	100-Yr	500-Yr
6		0.78	0.92	1.07	1.27	1.42		1.64	1.80	1.98	2.39
12		1.10	1.32	1.55	1.86	2.08		2.42	2.67	2.93	3.55
24		1.46	1.77	2.10	2.55	2.87		3.36	3.73	4.12	5.04
48		1.76	2.16	2.57	3.14	3.55		4.16	4.64	5.12	6.29
72		2.16	2.63	3.11	3.75	4.21		4.88	5.39	5.90	7.09
168		3.09	3.76	4.42	5.27	5.86		6.70	7.30	7.88	9.18

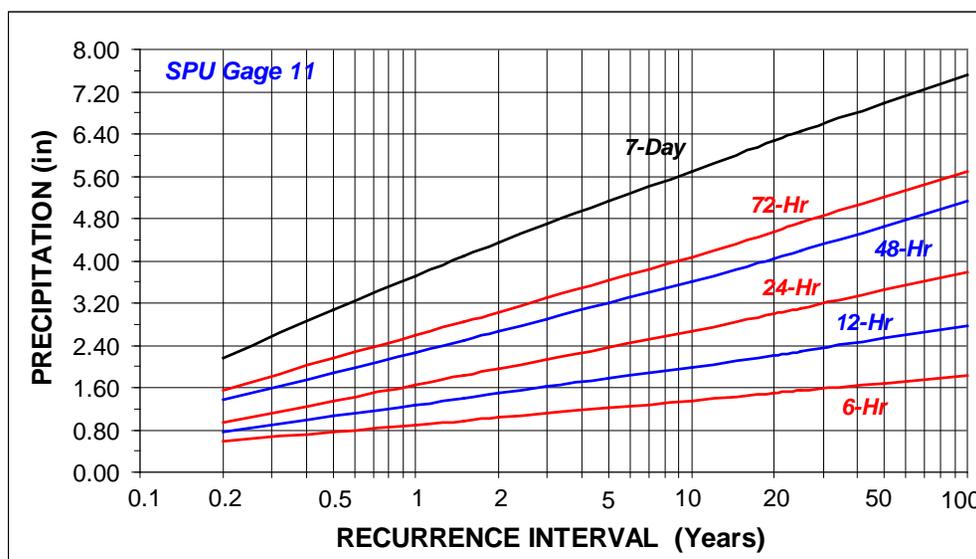


Figure 12. Precipitation-Magnitude-Frequency Estimates for SPU Gauge 11.

Table 15. Precipitation-Magnitude-Frequency Estimates for SPU Gauge 12.

Duration (hr)	Precipitation (in)										
	Recurrence Interval (years)										
	0.5-Yr	1-Yr	2-Yr	5-Yr	10-Yr	25-Yr	50-Yr	100-Yr	500-Yr		
6	0.78	0.92	1.07	1.27	1.41	1.63	1.80	1.97	2.38		
12	1.09	1.31	1.54	1.85	2.07	2.41	2.66	2.92	3.53		
24	1.45	1.76	2.09	2.53	2.86	3.34	3.72	4.10	5.01		
48	1.75	2.15	2.56	3.12	3.53	4.14	4.61	5.09	6.25		
72	2.15	2.62	3.09	3.73	4.18	4.85	5.36	5.86	7.05		
168	3.07	3.74	4.40	5.24	5.82	6.65	7.25	7.83	9.12		

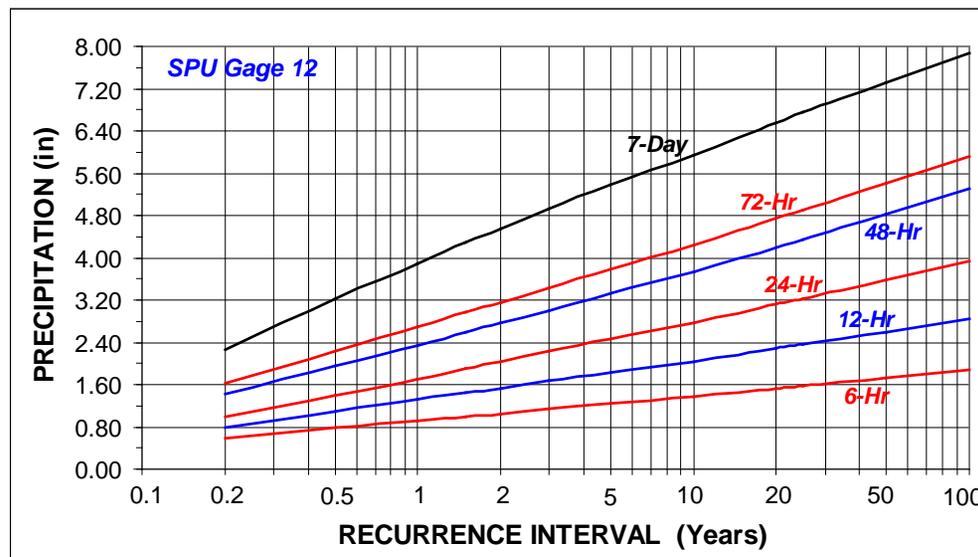


Figure 13. Precipitation-Magnitude-Frequency Estimates for SPU Gauge 12.

Table 16. Precipitation-Magnitude-Frequency Estimates for SPU Gauge 14.

Duration (hr)	Precipitation (in)										
	Recurrence Interval (years)										
		0.5-Yr	1-Yr	2-Yr	5-Yr	10-Yr		25-Yr	50-Yr	100-Yr	500-Yr
6		0.79	0.93	1.09	1.29	1.44		1.66	1.83	2.01	2.43
12		1.12	1.34	1.58	1.89	2.12		2.46	2.72	2.99	3.61
24		1.49	1.81	2.14	2.60	2.93		3.43	3.81	4.20	5.14
48		1.80	2.21	2.63	3.21	3.62		4.26	4.74	5.23	6.43
72		2.21	2.69	3.18	3.84	4.30		4.99	5.51	6.03	7.25
168		3.17	3.85	4.53	5.40	6.00		6.86	7.48	8.08	9.41

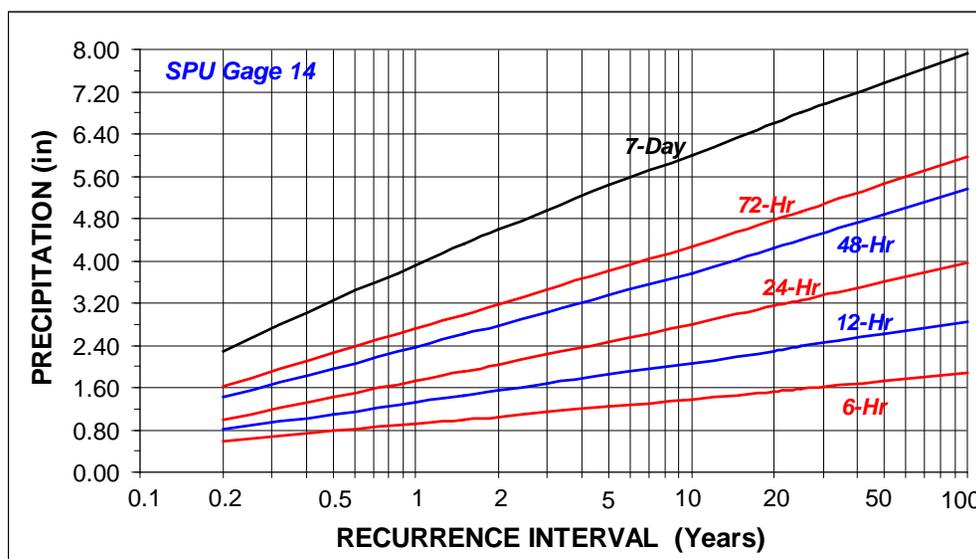


Figure 14. Precipitation-Magnitude-Frequency Estimates for SPU Gauge 14.

Table 17. Precipitation-Magnitude-Frequency Estimates for SPU Gauge 15.

Duration (hr)	Precipitation (in)										
	Recurrence Interval (years)										
	0.5-Yr	1-Yr	2-Yr	5-Yr	10-Yr	25-Yr	50-Yr	100-Yr	500-Yr		
6	0.78	0.92	1.07	1.28	1.42	1.64	1.81	1.98	2.40		
12	1.10	1.32	1.56	1.87	2.09	2.43	2.69	2.95	3.56		
24	1.46	1.78	2.11	2.56	2.88	3.38	3.75	4.14	5.06		
48	1.77	2.17	2.59	3.15	3.57	4.19	4.66	5.15	6.32		
72	2.18	2.65	3.13	3.77	4.23	4.91	5.42	5.93	7.13		
168	3.11	3.78	4.45	5.30	5.90	6.74	7.34	7.93	9.24		

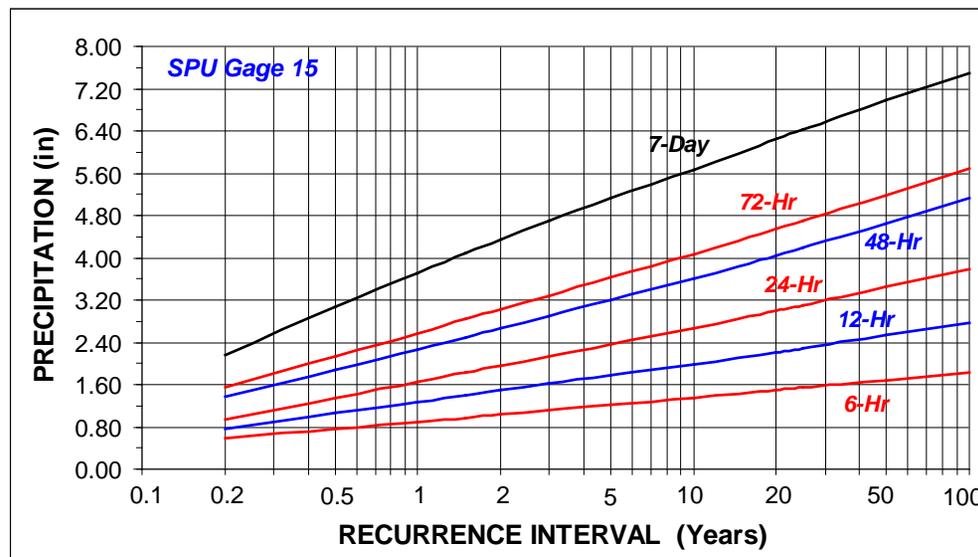


Figure 15. Precipitation-Magnitude-Frequency Estimates for SPU Gauge 15.

Table 18. Precipitation-Magnitude-Frequency Estimates for SPU Gauge 16.

Duration (hr)	Precipitation (in)										
	Recurrence Interval (years)										
		0.5-Yr	1-Yr	2-Yr	5-Yr	10-Yr		25-Yr	50-Yr	100-Yr	500-Yr
6		0.79	0.93	1.08	1.29	1.43		1.65	1.82	2.00	2.42
12		1.11	1.34	1.57	1.88	2.11		2.45	2.71	2.97	3.60
24		1.48	1.80	2.13	2.59	2.91		3.41	3.79	4.18	5.12
48		1.79	2.20	2.62	3.19	3.60		4.23	4.72	5.21	6.39
72		2.20	2.68	3.17	3.82	4.28		4.97	5.48	6.00	7.21
168		3.15	3.83	4.51	5.37	5.97		6.82	7.43	8.03	9.35

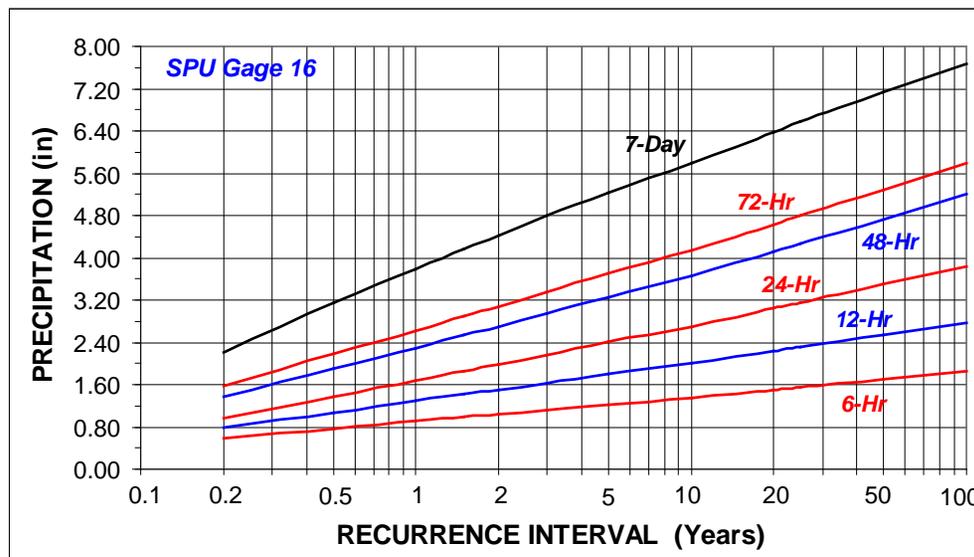


Figure 16. Precipitation-Magnitude-Frequency Estimates for SPU Gauge 16.

Table 19. Precipitation-Magnitude-Frequency Estimates for SPU Gauge 17.

Duration (hr)	Precipitation (in)										
	Recurrence Interval (years)										
		0.5-Yr	1-Yr	2-Yr	5-Yr	10-Yr		25-Yr	50-Yr	100-Yr	500-Yr
6		0.81	0.96	1.12	1.33	1.48		1.71	1.89	2.07	2.50
12		1.16	1.39	1.63	1.96	2.20		2.55	2.82	3.09	3.74
24		1.54	1.87	2.22	2.69	3.04		3.55	3.95	4.36	5.33
48		1.88	2.30	2.75	3.35	3.78		4.44	4.95	5.46	6.71
72		2.31	2.81	3.33	4.01	4.50		5.22	5.76	6.30	7.58
168		3.32	4.04	4.75	5.66	6.29		7.19	7.84	8.46	9.86

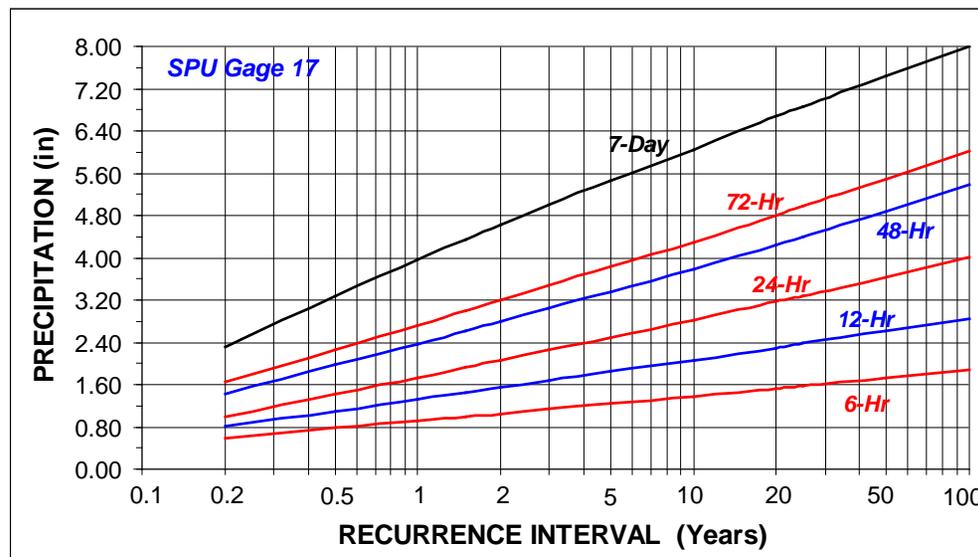


Figure 17. Precipitation-Magnitude-Frequency Estimates for SPU Gauge 17.

Table 20. Precipitation-Magnitude-Frequency Estimates for SPU Gauge 18.

Duration (hr)	Precipitation (in)										
	Recurrence Interval (years)										
		0.5-Yr	1-Yr	2-Yr	5-Yr	10-Yr		25-Yr	50-Yr	100-Yr	500-Yr
6		0.79	0.93	1.08	1.28	1.43		1.65	1.82	1.99	2.41
12		1.11	1.33	1.56	1.87	2.10		2.44	2.70	2.96	3.58
24		1.47	1.79	2.12	2.57	2.90		3.39	3.77	4.16	5.09
48		1.78	2.18	2.60	3.17	3.59		4.21	4.69	5.18	6.36
72		2.19	2.66	3.15	3.79	4.26		4.94	5.45	5.96	7.17
168		3.13	3.81	4.48	5.34	5.93		6.78	7.39	7.98	9.29

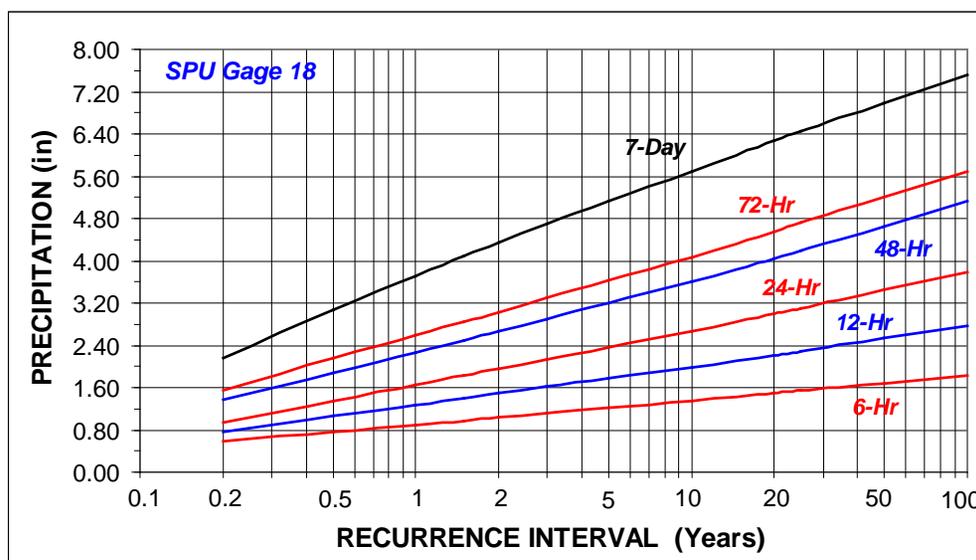


Figure 18. Precipitation-Magnitude-Frequency Estimates for SPU Gauge 18.

Table 21. Precipitation-Magnitude-Frequency Estimates for SPU Gauge 25.

Duration (hr)	Precipitation (in)										
	Recurrence Interval (years)										
		0.5-Yr	1-Yr	2-Yr	5-Yr	10-Yr		25-Yr	50-Yr	100-Yr	500-Yr
6		0.79	0.93	1.08	1.28	1.43		1.65	1.82	1.99	2.41
12		1.11	1.33	1.56	1.87	2.10		2.44	2.70	2.96	3.58
24		1.47	1.79	2.12	2.57	2.90		3.39	3.77	4.16	5.09
48		1.78	2.18	2.60	3.17	3.59		4.21	4.69	5.18	6.36
72		2.19	2.66	3.15	3.79	4.26		4.94	5.45	5.96	7.17
168		3.13	3.81	4.48	5.34	5.93		6.78	7.39	7.98	9.29

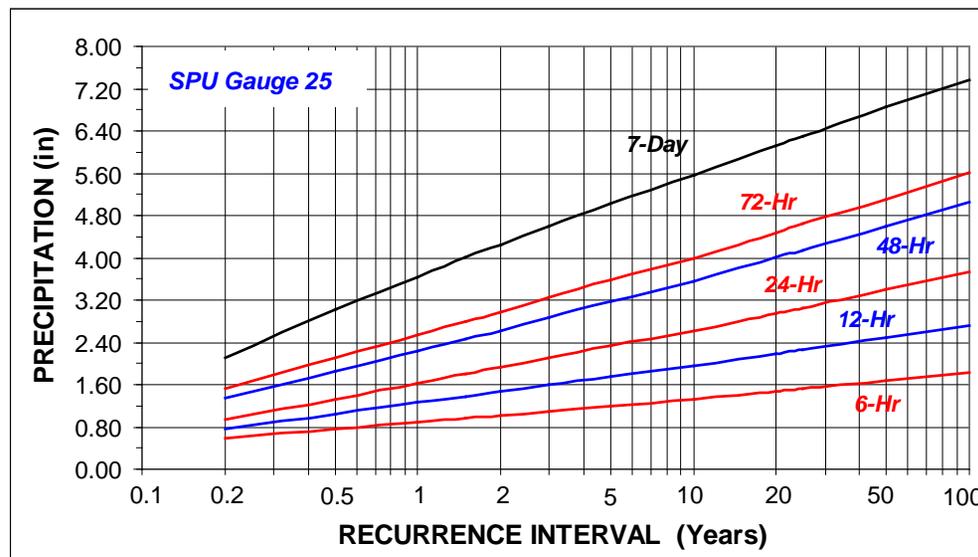


Figure 19. Precipitation-Magnitude-Frequency Estimates for SPU Gauge 25.

Table 22. Precipitation-Magnitude-Frequency Estimates for SeaTac.

Duration (hr)	Precipitation (in)										
	Recurrence Interval (years)										
		0.5-Yr	1-Yr	2-Yr	5-Yr	10-Yr		25-Yr	50-Yr	100-Yr	500-Yr
6		0.82	0.97	1.13	1.34	1.50		1.73	1.91	2.09	2.52
12		1.17	1.41	1.65	1.98	2.22		2.58	2.85	3.13	3.79
24		1.56	1.90	2.25	2.73	3.08		3.60	4.01	4.42	5.41
48		1.91	2.34	2.78	3.39	3.84		4.50	5.02	5.54	6.80
72		2.35	2.86	3.38	4.07	4.57		5.30	5.85	6.40	7.70
168		3.37	4.10	4.83	5.76	6.40		7.31	7.97	8.61	10.02

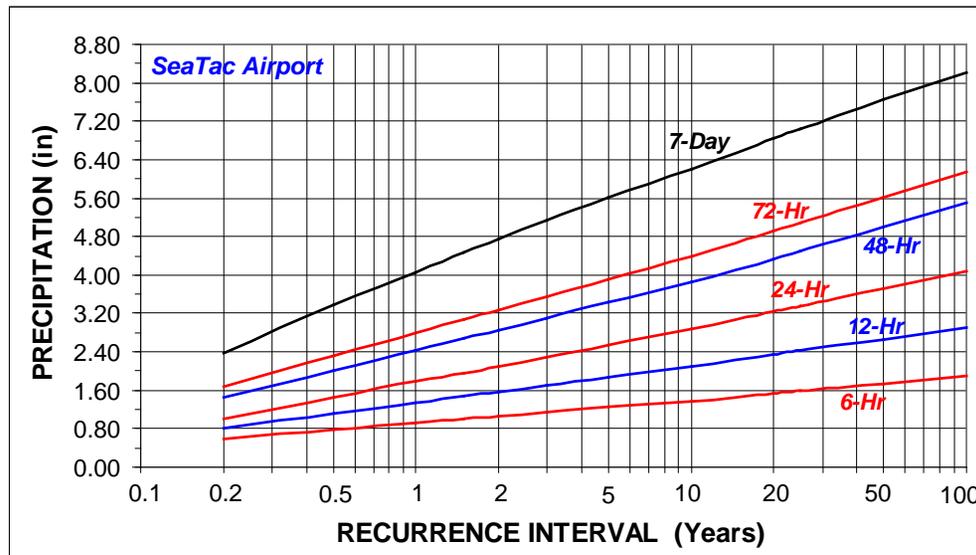


Figure 20. Precipitation-Magnitude-Frequency Estimates for SeaTac.

APPENDIX G

Stormwater Control Operations and Maintenance Requirements

Note:

Some pages in this document have been purposely skipped or blank pages inserted so that this document will print correctly when duplexed.

This appendix contains the maintenance requirements for the following typical stormwater [BMPs](#) and components:

No. 1 - Detention Ponds	2
No. 2 - Infiltration BMPs	5
No. 3 - Detention Pipes and Vaults	11
No. 4 - Flow Control Structure & Control Device.....	14
No. 5 - Catch Basins and Maintenance Holes.....	19
No. 6 - Reserved	23
No. 7 - Debris Barriers (e.g., Trash Racks)	24
No. 8 - Energy Dissipaters.....	25
No. 9 - Basic and Compost-Amended Biofiltration Swales	28
No. 10 - Wet and Continuous Inflow Biofiltration Swales	30
No. 11 - Filter Strips (Basic and CAVFS)	32
No. 12 - Wet Ponds	34
No. 13 - Wet Vaults	38
No. 14 - Stormwater Treatment Wetlands	41
No. 15 - Sand Filter Basins	45
No. 16 - Sand Filter Vaults	49
No. 17 - Proprietary Technology Filter Cartridge Systems (example: BayFilter, FloGard PerkFilter, StormFilter)	53
No. 18 - API Oil/Water Separators.....	57
No. 19 - Coalescing Plate Oil/Water Separators.....	60
No. 20 - Catch Basin Filter Socks	63
No. 21 - Proprietary Technology Filterra System.....	64
No. 22 - Proprietary Technology Modular Wetland System	66
No. 23 - Bioretention Facilities	69
No. 24 - Cisterns	76
No. 25 - Downspout, Sheet Flow, and Concentrated Dispersion Systems	77
No. 26 - Permeable Pavement ¹	81
No. 27 - Trees.....	84
No. 28 - Vegetated Roof Systems	85
No. 29 - Rain Gardens	89

Refer to the *Stormwater Management Manual for Western Washington* (SWMMWW) (Ecology [20192012](#)) for maintenance requirements for the following BMP:

- Media filter drain (MFD)

All stormwater facilities, bBest Management pPractices (BMPs), and drainage systems shall be kept in continuous working order consistent with their design and permitting.

Any evidence of contaminants or pollution such as oil, gasoline, concrete slurries, or paint shall be immediately corrected. This includes removing the source of the contamination as well as any contaminants that have been collected or deposited into the facility or conveyance system.

Training/written guidance is required for the proper operation and maintenance of many of the BMPs contained in this manual. Provide proper training and copies of the Operations and Maintenance Manuals to property owners, tenants and responsible individuals.

No. 1 - Detention Ponds				
Maintenance Component	Recommended Inspection Frequency¹	Defect or Problem	Conditions When Maintenance Is Needed	Results Expected When Maintenance Is Performed
Facility – General Requirements	A	Trash and debris	Any trash and debris which exceed 1 cubic foot per 1,000 square feet (this is about equal to the amount of trash it would take to fill up one standard size office garbage can)	Trash and debris cleared from site
	M (March – October)	Noxious weeds	Any noxious or nuisance vegetation which may constitute a hazard to City personnel or the public	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Noxious and nuisance vegetation removed according to applicable regulations • No danger of noxious vegetation where City personnel or the public might normally be
	A, E	Contaminants and pollution	Any evidence of contaminants or pollution such as oil, gasoline, concrete slurries, or paint	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Materials removed and disposed of according to applicable regulations • Source control BMPs implemented if appropriate • No contaminants present other than a surface oil film
Top or Side Slopes of Dam, Berm or Embankment	A	Rodent holes	Any evidence of rodent holes if facility is acting as a dam or berm, or any evidence of water piping through dam or berm via rodent holes	Rodents removed or destroyed and dam or berm repaired
	A	Beaver dams	Dam results in change or function of the facility	Facility is returned to design function (coordinate trapping of beavers and removal of dams with appropriate permitting agencies)

No. 1 - Detention Ponds				
Maintenance Component	Recommended Inspection Frequency ¹	Defect or Problem	Conditions When Maintenance Is Needed	Results Expected When Maintenance Is Performed
Top or Side Slopes of Dam, Berm or Embankment (continued)	A	Tree growth	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Tree growth threatens integrity of dams, berms, or slopes; does not allow maintenance access; or interferes with maintenance activity. • If trees are not a threat to dam, berm, or embankment integrity or not interfering with access or maintenance, they do not need to be removed. 	Trees do not hinder facility performance or maintenance activities
	A	Erosion	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Eroded damage over 2 inches deep where cause of damage is still present or where there is potential for continued erosion • Any erosion observed on a compacted slope 	Slopes stabilized using appropriate erosion control measures If erosion is occurring on compacted slope, a licensed engineer should be consulted to resolve source of erosion.
	A	Settlement	Any part of a dam, berm or embankment that has settled 4 inches lower than the design elevation	Top or side slope restored to design dimensions If settlement is significant, a licensed engineer should be consulted to determine the cause of the settlement.
Storage Area	A	Sediment accumulation	Accumulated sediment that exceeds 10 percent of the designed pond depth	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Sediment cleaned out to designed pond shape and depth • Pond reseeded if necessary to control erosion

No. 1 - Detention Ponds				
Maintenance Component	Recommended Inspection Frequency ¹	Defect or Problem	Conditions When Maintenance Is Needed	Results Expected When Maintenance Is Performed
Storage Area (continued)	A	Liner damaged (if applicable)	Liner is visible or pond does not hold water as designed	Liner repaired or replaced
Inlet/Outlet Pipe	A	Sediment accumulation	Sediment filling 1/3 or more of the pipe	Inlet/outlet pipes clear of sediment
	B, W, E	Trash and debris	Trash and debris accumulated in inlet/outlet pipes (includes floatables and non-floatables)	No trash or debris in pipes
	A	Damaged	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Cracks wider than ½ inch at the joint of the inlet/outlet pipes Any evidence of soil entering at the joints of the inlet/outlet pipes 	No cracks more than ¼-inch wide at the joint of the inlet/outlet pipe
Emergency Overflow/Spillway	A	Tree growth	Tree growth impedes flow or threatens stability of spillway	Trees removed
	A	Rock missing	Only one layer of rock exists above native soil in area 5 square feet or larger or any exposure of native soil on the spillway	Spillway restored to design standards

¹ [Inspection frequency:](#)

[A = Annually; B = Biannually; M = Monthly; E = Recommend that additional inspections be performed as appropriate after major events \(e.g., >1 inch of precipitation in 24 hours or environmental incident that causes contaminant release; Q = Quarterly \(four times per year\); W = Recommend that at least one inspection occur during the wet season, preferably after trees have lost their leaves](#)

No. 2 - Infiltration <u>BMPs</u>Facilities				
Maintenance Component	<u>Recommended Inspection Frequency</u>¹	Defect or Problem	Conditions When Maintenance Is Needed	Results Expected When Maintenance Is Performed
Facility – General Requirements	A, W	Trash and debris	Any trash and debris which exceed 1 cubic foot per 1,000 square feet (this is about equal to the amount of trash it would take to fill up one standard size office garbage can)	Trash and debris cleared from site
	M (March – October)	Noxious weeds	Any noxious or nuisance vegetation which may constitute a hazard to City personnel or the public	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Noxious and nuisance vegetation removed according to applicable regulations • No danger of noxious vegetation where City personnel or the public might normally be
	A, W, E	Contaminants and pollution	Any evidence of contaminants or pollution such as oil, gasoline, concrete slurries, or paint	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Materials removed and disposed of according to applicable regulations • Source control BMPs implemented if appropriate • No contaminants present other than a surface oil film
	A	Grass/groundcover	Grass or groundcover exceeds 18 inches in height	Grass or groundcover mowed to a height no greater than 6 inches
Infiltration Pond, Top or Side Slopes of Dam, Berm or Embankment	A	Rodent holes	Any evidence of rodent holes if facility is acting as a dam or berm, or any evidence of water piping through dam or berm via rodent holes	Rodents removed or destroyed and dam or berm repaired

No. 2 - Infiltration <u>BMPs</u> Facilities				
Maintenance Component	<u>Recommended Inspection Frequency</u>¹	Defect or Problem	Conditions When Maintenance Is Needed	Results Expected When Maintenance Is Performed
Infiltration Pond, Top or Side Slopes of Dam, Berm or Embankment (continued)	<u>A</u>	Tree growth	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Tree growth threatens integrity of dams, berms or slopes, does not allow maintenance access, or interferes with maintenance activity • If trees are not a threat to dam, berm, or embankment integrity or not interfering with access or maintenance, they do not need to be removed. 	Trees do not hinder facility performance or maintenance activities
	<u>A</u>	Erosion	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Eroded damage over 2 inches deep where cause of damage is still present or where there is potential for continued erosion • Any erosion observed on a compacted slope 	Slopes stabilized using appropriate erosion control measures If erosion is occurring on compacted slope, a licensed engineer should be consulted to resolve source of erosion.
	<u>A</u>	Settlement	Any part of a dam, berm or embankment that has settled 4 inches lower than the design elevation	Top or side slope restored to design dimensions If settlement is significant, a licensed engineer should be consulted to determine the cause of the settlement.
Infiltration Pond, Tank, Vault, Trench, or Small Basin Storage Area	<u>A</u>	Sediment accumulation	If 2 inches or more sediment is present or a percolation test indicates facility is working at or less than 90 percent of design	Facility infiltrates as designed

No. 2 - Infiltration <u>BMPs</u> Facilities				
Maintenance Component	<u>Recommended Inspection Frequency</u>¹	Defect or Problem	Conditions When Maintenance Is Needed	Results Expected When Maintenance Is Performed
Infiltration Pond, Tank, Vault, Trench, or Small Basin Storage Area (continued)	A	Liner damaged (If Applicable)	Liner is visible or pond does not hold water as designed	Liner repaired or replaced
Infiltration Tank Structure	A	Plugged air vent	Any blockage of the vent	Tank or vault freely vents
	A	Tank bent out of shape	Any part of tank/pipe is bent out of shape more than 10 percent of its design shape	Tank repaired or replaced to design
	A	Gaps between sections, damaged joints or cracks or tears in wall	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • A gap wider than ½ inch at the joint of any tank sections • Any evidence of soil particles entering the tank at a joint or through a wall 	No water or soil entering tank through joints or walls
Infiltration Vault Structure	A	Damage to wall, frame, bottom, and/or top slab	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Cracks wider than ½ inch • Any evidence of soil entering the structure through cracks • Qualified inspection personnel determines that the vault is not structurally sound 	Vault is sealed and structurally sound
Inlet/Outlet Pipes	A	Sediment accumulation	Sediment filling 1/3 or more of the pipe	Inlet/outlet pipes clear of sediment
	B, W, E	Trash and debris	Trash and debris accumulated in inlet/outlet pipes (includes floatables and non-floatables)	No trash or debris in pipes

No. 2 - Infiltration <u>BMPs</u> Facilities				
Maintenance Component	<u>Recommended Inspection Frequency</u> ¹	Defect or Problem	Conditions When Maintenance Is Needed	Results Expected When Maintenance Is Performed
<u>Inlet/Outlet Pipes</u> (continued)	A	Damaged	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Cracks wider than ½ inch at the joint of the inlet/outlet pipes Any evidence of soil entering at the joints of the inlet/outlet pipes 	No cracks more than ¼-inch wide at the joint of the inlet/outlet pipe
Access Maintenance Hole	A	Cover/lid not in place	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Cover/lid is missing or only partially in place Any open maintenance hole requires immediate maintenance 	Maintenance hole access cover/lid in place and secure
	A	Locking mechanism not working	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Mechanism cannot be opened by one maintenance person with proper tools Bolts cannot be seated Self-locking cover/lid does not work 	Mechanism opens with proper tools
	A	Cover/lid difficult to remove	One maintenance person cannot remove cover/lid after applying 80 lbs of lift	Cover/lid can be removed and reinstalled by one maintenance person
	A	Ladder rungs unsafe	Missing rungs, misalignment, rust, or cracks	Ladder meets design standards and allows maintenance person safe access
Large Access Doors/Plate	A	Damaged or difficult to open	Large access doors or plates cannot be opened/removed using normal equipment	Replace or repair access door so it can open as designed
	A	Gaps, does not cover completely	Large access doors not flat and/or access opening not completely covered	Doors close flat and covers access opening completely

No. 2 - Infiltration <u>BMPs</u> Facilities				
Maintenance Component	<u>Recommended Inspection Frequency</u> ¹	Defect or Problem	Conditions When Maintenance Is Needed	Results Expected When Maintenance Is Performed
Large Access Doors/Plate (continued)	<u>A</u>	Lifting rings missing, rusted	Lifting rings not capable of lifting weight of door or plate	Lifting rings sufficient to lift or remove door or plate
Infiltration Pond, Tank, Vault, Trench, or Small Basin Filter Bags	<u>A</u>	Plugged	Filter bag more than 1/2 full	Replace filter bag or redesign system
Infiltration Pond, Tank, Vault, Trench, or Small Basin Pre-Settling Ponds and Vaults	<u>A, W</u>	Sediment accumulation	6 inches or more of sediment has accumulated	Pre-settling occurs as designed
Infiltration Pond, Rock Filter	<u>A</u>	Plugged	High water level on upstream side of filter remains for extended period of time or little or no water flows through filter during heavy rain storms	Rock filter replaced; evaluate need for filter and remove if not necessary
Infiltration Pond Emergency Overflow Spillway	<u>A</u>	Rock missing	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Only one layer of rock exists above native soil in area 5 square feet or larger, or any exposure of native soil at the top of out flow path of spillway • Rip-rap on inside slopes need not be replaced 	Spillway restored to design standards
	<u>A</u>	Tree growth	Tree growth impedes flow or threatens stability of spillway	Trees removed

No. 2 - Infiltration BMPs Facilities				
Maintenance Component	Recommended Inspection Frequency ¹	Defect or Problem	Conditions When Maintenance Is Needed	Results Expected When Maintenance Is Performed
Drain Rock	A, W	Water ponding	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • If water enters the facility from the surface, inspect to see if water is ponding at the surface during storm events • If buried drain rock, observe drawdown through observation/maintenance port or cleanout 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Clear piping through facility when ponding occurs • Replace rock material/sand reservoirs as necessary • Tilling of subgrade below reservoir may be necessary (for trenches) prior to backfill

¹ [Inspection frequency:](#)

[A = Annually; B = Biannually; M = Monthly; E = Recommend that additional inspections be performed as appropriate after major events \(e.g., >1 inch of precipitation in 24 hours or environmental incident that causes contaminant release; Q = Quarterly \(four times per year\); W = Recommend that at least one inspection occur during the wet season, preferably after trees have lost their leaves](#)

No. 3 - Detention Pipes and Vaults				
Maintenance Component	<u>Recommended Inspection Frequency</u>¹	Defect or Problem	Conditions When Maintenance is Needed	Results Expected When Maintenance is Performed
Facility – General Requirements	A, E	Contaminants and pollution	Any evidence of contaminants or pollution such as oil, gasoline, concrete slurries, or paint	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Materials removed and disposed of according to applicable regulations • Source control BMPs implemented if appropriate • No contaminants present other than a surface oil film
Pipe or Vault Storage Area	A, B, W, E	Trash and debris	Any trash and debris accumulated in vault or pipe (includes floatables and non-floatables)	No trash or debris in vault or pipe
	A	Sediment accumulation	Accumulated sediment depth exceeds 10 percent of the diameter of the storage area for ½ length of storage vault or any point depth exceeds 15 percent of diameter	All sediment removed from storage area
Pipe or Vault Structure	A	Plugged air vent	Any blockage of the vent	Pipe or vault freely vents
	A	Pipe bent out of shape	Any part of vault/pipe is bent out of shape more than 10 percent of its design shape	Pipe or vault repaired or replaced to design
	A	Gaps between sections, damaged joints or cracks or tears in wall	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • A gap wider than ½ inch at the joint of any pipe or vault sections • Any evidence of soil particles entering the pipe or vault at a joint or through a wall 	No water or soil entering pipe or vault through joints or walls

No. 3 - Detention Pipes and Vaults				
Maintenance Component	Recommended Inspection Frequency ¹	Defect or Problem	Conditions When Maintenance is Needed	Results Expected When Maintenance is Performed
Vault Structure	A	Damage to wall, frame, bottom, and/or top slab	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Cracks wider than ½ inch Any evidence of soil entering the structure through cracks Qualified inspection personnel determines that the vault is not structurally sound 	Vault sealed and structurally sound
Inlet/Outlet Pipes	A	Sediment accumulation	Sediment filling 1/3 or more of the pipe	Inlet/outlet pipes clear of sediment
	B, W, E	Trash and debris	Trash and debris accumulated in inlet/outlet pipes (includes floatables and non-floatables)	No trash or debris in pipes
	A	Damaged	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Cracks wider than ½ inch at the joint of the inlet/outlet pipes Any evidence of soil entering at the joints of the inlet/outlet pipes 	No cracks more than ¼-inch wide at the joint of the inlet/outlet pipe
Access Maintenance Hole	A	Cover/lid not in place	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Cover/lid is missing or only partially in place Any open maintenance hole requires immediate maintenance 	Maintenance hole access cover/lid in place and secure
	A	Locking mechanism not working	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Mechanism cannot be opened by one maintenance person with proper tools Bolts cannot be seated Self-locking cover/lid does not work 	Mechanism opens with proper tools

No. 3 - Detention Pipes and Vaults				
Maintenance Component	Recommended Inspection Frequency ¹	Defect or Problem	Conditions When Maintenance is Needed	Results Expected When Maintenance is Performed
Access Maintenance Hole (continued)	A	Cover/lid difficult to remove	One maintenance person cannot remove cover/lid after applying 80 lbs of lift	Cover/lid can be removed and reinstalled by one maintenance person
	A	Ladder rungs unsafe	Missing rungs, misalignment, rust, or cracks	Ladder meets design standards and allows maintenance person safe access
Large Access Doors/Plate	A	Damaged or difficult to open	Large access doors or plates cannot be opened/removed using normal equipment	Replace or repair access door so it can open as designed
	A	Gaps, does not cover completely	Large access doors not flat and/or access opening not completely covered	Doors close flat and covers access opening completely
	A	Lifting rings missing, rusted	Lifting rings not capable of lifting weight of door or plate	Lifting rings sufficient to lift or remove door or plate

¹ [Inspection frequency:](#)

[A = Annually; B = Biannually; M = Monthly; E = Recommend that additional inspections be performed as appropriate after major events \(e.g., >1 inch of precipitation in 24 hours or environmental incident that causes contaminant release; Q = Quarterly \(four times per year\); W = Recommend that at least one inspection occur during the wet season, preferably after trees have lost their leaves](#)

No. 4 - Flow Control Structure & Control Device				
Maintenance Component	Recommended Inspection Frequency ¹	Defect or Problem	Condition When Maintenance is Needed	Results Expected When Maintenance is Performed
The Flow Control Structure and Control Device shall conform with design criteria shown upon the approved plans or the design standards in place at the time of construction. This includes but is not limited to, orifice diameter(s), orifice elevation(s) overflow elevation. Reference Standard Plans No. 270, 271, and 272.				
Structure	A	Trash and debris	Trash or debris of more than ½ cubic foot which is located immediately in front of the structure opening or is blocking capacity of the structure by more than 10 percent	No trash or debris blocking or potentially blocking entrance to structure
			Trash or debris in the structure that exceeds 1/3 the depth from the bottom of basin to invert the lowest pipe into or out of the basin.	No trash or debris in the structure
			Deposits of garbage exceeding 1 cubic foot in volume	No condition present which would attract or support the breeding of insects or rodents
	A	Sediment	Sediment exceeds 60 percent of the depth from the bottom of the structure to the invert of the lowest pipe into or out of the structure or the bottom of the control device section or is within 6 inches of the invert of the lowest pipe into or out of the structure or the bottom of the control device section	Sump of structure contains no sediment

No. 4 - Flow Control Structure & Control Device				
Maintenance Component	Recommended Inspection Frequency ¹	Defect or Problem	Condition When Maintenance is Needed	Results Expected When Maintenance is Performed
Structure (continued)	A	Damage to frame and/or top slab	Corner of frame extends more than ¾ inch past curb face into the street (If applicable)	Frame is even with curb
			Top slab has holes larger than 2 square inches or cracks wider than ¼ inch	Top slab is free of holes and cracks
			Frame not sitting flush on top slab, i.e., separation of more than ¾ inch of the frame from the top slab	Frame is sitting flush on top slab
	A	Cracks in walls or bottom	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Cracks wider than ½ inch and longer than 3 feet Any evidence of soil particles entering structure through cracks Maintenance person judges that structure is unsound 	Structure is sealed and structurally sound.
			<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Cracks wider than ½ inch and longer than 1 foot at the joint of any inlet/outlet pipe Any evidence of soil particles entering structure through cracks 	No cracks more than ¼-inch wide at the joint of inlet/outlet pipe
	A	Settlement/ misalignment	Structure has settled more than 1 inch or has rotated more than 2 inches out of alignment	Basin replaced or repaired to design standards

No. 4 - Flow Control Structure & Control Device				
Maintenance Component	Recommended Inspection Frequency ¹	Defect or Problem	Condition When Maintenance is Needed	Results Expected When Maintenance is Performed
Structure (continued)	A	Damaged pipe joints	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Cracks wider than ½ inch at the joint of the inlet/outlet pipes Any evidence of soil entering the structure at the joint of the inlet/outlet pipes 	No cracks more than ¼-inch wide at the joint of inlet/outlet pipes
	A, E	Contaminants and pollution	Any evidence of contaminants or pollution such as oil, gasoline, concrete slurries, or paint	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Materials removed and disposed of according to applicable regulations Source control BMPs implemented if appropriate No contaminants present other than a surface oil film
	A	Ladder rungs missing or unsafe	Ladder is unsafe due to missing rungs, misalignment, rust, cracks, or sharp edges	Ladder meets design standards and allows maintenance person safe access.
Control Device	A	Damaged or missing	Riser section is not securely attached to structure wall and outlet pipe structure should support at least 1,000 lbs of up or down pressure	T section securely attached to wall and outlet pipe
			Structure is not in upright position (allow up to 10 percent from plumb)	Structure in correct position
			Connections to outlet pipe are not watertight or show signs of deteriorated grout	Connections to outlet pipe are water tight; structure repaired or replaced and works as designed
			Any holes—other than designed holes—in the structure	Structure has no holes other than designed holes

No. 4 - Flow Control Structure & Control Device				
Maintenance Component	Recommended Inspection Frequency¹	Defect or Problem	Condition When Maintenance is Needed	Results Expected When Maintenance is Performed
Shear Gate (if applicable)	A	Damaged or missing	Cleanout gate is missing	Replace cleanout gate
			Cleanout gate is not watertight	Gate is watertight and works as designed.
			Gate cannot be moved up and down by one maintenance person	Gate moves up and down easily and is watertight.
			Chain/rod leading to gate is missing or damaged.	Chain is in place and works as designed.
Orifice Plate	A	Damaged or missing	Control device is not working properly due to missing, out of place, or bent orifice plate.	Plate is in place and works as designed.
	A	Obstructions	Any trash, debris, sediment, or vegetation blocking the plate	Plate is free of all obstructions and works as designed
Overflow Pipe	A	Obstructions	Any trash or debris blocking (or having the potential of blocking) the overflow pipe	Pipe is free of all obstructions and works as designed
	A	Deformed or damaged lip	Lip of overflow pipe is bent or deformed	Overflow pipe does not allow overflow at an elevation lower than design
Inlet/Outlet Pipe	A	Sediment accumulation	Sediment filling 1/3 or more of the pipe	Inlet/outlet pipes clear of sediment
	B, W, E	Trash and debris	Trash and debris accumulated in inlet/outlet pipes (includes floatables and non-floatables).	No trash or debris in pipes
	A	Damaged	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Cracks wider than ½ inch at the joint of the inlet/outlet pipes Any evidence of soil entering at the joints of the inlet/outlet pipes 	No cracks more than ¼-inch wide at the joint of the inlet/outlet pipe

No. 4 - Flow Control Structure & Control Device				
Maintenance Component	Recommended Inspection Frequency ¹	Defect or Problem	Condition When Maintenance is Needed	Results Expected When Maintenance is Performed
Metal Grates (If Applicable)	A	Unsafe grate opening	Grate with opening wider than 7/8 inch	Grate opening meets design standards
	B, W, E	Trash and debris	Trash and debris that is blocking more than 20 percent of grate surface	Grate free of trash and debris. footnote to guidelines for disposal
	A	Damaged or missing	Grate missing or broken member(s) of the grate	Grate is in place and meets design standards
Maintenance Hole Cover/Lid	A	Cover/lid not in place	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Cover/lid is missing or only partially in place Any open structure requires urgent maintenance 	Cover/lid protects opening to structure
	A	Locking mechanism Not Working	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Mechanism cannot be opened by one maintenance person with proper tools Bolts cannot be seated Self-locking cover/lid does not work 	Mechanism opens with proper tools
	A	Cover/lid difficult to Remove	One maintenance person cannot remove cover/lid after applying 80 lbs. of lift	Cover/lid can be removed and reinstalled by one maintenance person

¹ [Inspection frequency:](#)

[A = Annually; B = Biannually; M = Monthly; E = Recommend that additional inspections be performed as appropriate after major events \(e.g., >1 inch of precipitation in 24 hours or environmental incident that causes contaminant release; Q = Quarterly \(four times per year\); W = Recommend that at least one inspection occur during the wet season, preferably after trees have lost their leaves](#)

No. 5 - Catch Basins and Maintenance Holes				
Maintenance Component	Recommended Inspection Frequency ¹	Defect or Problem	Condition When Maintenance is Needed	Results Expected When Maintenance is Performed
Structure	A	Sediment	Sediment exceeds 60 percent of the depth from the bottom of the catch basin to the invert of the lowest pipe into or out of the catch basin or is within 6 inches of the invert of the lowest pipe into or out of the catch basin	Sump of catch basin contains no sediment
	B, W, E	Trash and debris	Trash or debris of more than ½ cubic foot which is located immediately in front of the catch basin opening or is blocking capacity of the catch basin by more than 10 percent	No trash or debris blocking or potentially blocking entrance to catch basin
	A		Trash or debris in the catch basin that exceeds 1/3 the depth from the bottom of basin to invert the lowest pipe into or out of the basin	No trash or debris in the catch basin
	A		Dead animals or vegetation that could generate odors that could cause complaints or dangerous gases (e.g., methane)	No dead animals or vegetation present within catch basin
	A		Deposits of garbage exceeding 1 cubic foot in volume	No condition present which would attract or support the breeding of insects or rodents

No. 5 - Catch Basins and Maintenance Holes				
Maintenance Component	Recommended Inspection Frequency ¹	Defect or Problem	Condition When Maintenance is Needed	Results Expected When Maintenance is Performed
Structure (continued)	A	Damage to frame and/or top slab	Corner of frame extends more than ¾ inch past curb face into the street (If applicable).	Frame is even with curb
			Top slab has holes larger than 2 square inches or cracks wider than ¼ inch.	Top slab is free of holes and cracks.
			Frame not sitting flush on top slab, i.e., separation of more than ¾ inch of the frame from the top slab	Frame is sitting flush on top slab.
	A	Cracks in walls or bottom	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Cracks wider than ½ inch and longer than 3 feet Any evidence of soil particles entering catch basin through cracks Maintenance person judges that catch basin is unsound 	Catch basin is sealed and structurally sound
			<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Cracks wider than ½ inch and longer than 1 foot at the joint of any inlet/outlet pipe Any evidence of soil particles entering catch basin through cracks 	No cracks more than ¼-inch wide at the joint of inlet/outlet pipe
	A	Settlement/ misalignment	Catch basin has settled more than 1 inch or has rotated more than 2 inches out of alignment	Basin replaced or repaired to design standards

No. 5 - Catch Basins and Maintenance Holes				
Maintenance Component	Recommended Inspection Frequency ¹	Defect or Problem	Condition When Maintenance is Needed	Results Expected When Maintenance is Performed
Structure (continued)	A	Damaged pipe joints	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Cracks wider than ½ inch at the joint of the inlet/outlet pipes Any evidence of soil entering the catch basin at the joint of the inlet/outlet pipes 	No cracks more than ¼-inch wide at the joint of inlet/outlet pipes
	A, E	Contaminants and pollution	Any evidence of contaminants or pollution such as oil, gasoline, concrete slurries, or paint	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Materials removed and disposed of according to applicable regulations Source control BMPs implemented if appropriate No contaminants present other than a surface oil film
Inlet/Outlet Pipe	A	Sediment accumulation	Sediment filling 1/3 or more of the pipe	Inlet/outlet pipes clear of sediment
	B, W, E	Trash and debris	Trash and debris accumulated in inlet/outlet pipes (includes floatables and non-floatables)	No trash or debris in pipes
	A	Damaged	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Cracks wider than ½ inch at the joint of the inlet/outlet pipes Any evidence of soil entering at the joints of the inlet/outlet pipes 	No cracks more than ¼-inch wide at the joint of the inlet/outlet pipe
Catch Basin Outlet Trap (Reference Standard Plan No. 267)	A	Missing	When the required outlet trap is not installed upon the outlet pipe	Outlet trap installed and prevents floatables from being discharged
	A	Permanently installed	When the trap is grouted to the outlet pipe and is not removable to allow for maintenance and inspection	Outlet trap removable for maintenance and inspection

No. 5 - Catch Basins and Maintenance Holes				
Maintenance Component	Recommended Inspection Frequency¹	Defect or Problem	Condition When Maintenance is Needed	Results Expected When Maintenance is Performed
Catch Basin Outlet Trap (Reference Standard Plan No. 267) (continued)	A	Damaged	Cracks, broken welds, seams or any other conditions that allows water to be discharged from other than the submerged portion of the trap	Water will be discharged from the submerged portion of the trap.
Metal Grates (Catch Basins)	A	Unsafe grate opening	Grate with opening wider than 7/8 inch	Grate opening meets design standards
	B, W, E	Trash and debris	Trash and debris that is blocking more than 20 percent of grate surface	Grate free of trash and debris. footnote to guidelines for disposal
	A	Damaged or missing	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Grate missing or broken member(s) of the grate Any open structure requires urgent maintenance 	Grate is in place and meets design standards
Maintenance Hole Cover/Lid	A	Cover/lid not in place	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Cover/lid is missing or only partially in place Any open structure requires urgent maintenance 	Cover/lid protects opening to structure
	A	Locking mechanism Not Working	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Mechanism cannot be opened by one maintenance person with proper tools Bolts cannot be seated Self-locking cover/lid does not work 	Mechanism opens with proper tools
	A	Cover/lid difficult to remove	One maintenance person cannot remove cover/lid after applying 80 lbs. of lift	Cover/lid can be removed and reinstalled by one maintenance person

¹ [Inspection frequency:](#)

[A = Annually; B = Biannually; M = Monthly; E = Recommend that additional inspections be performed as appropriate after major events \(e.g., >1 inch of precipitation in 24 hours or environmental incident that causes contaminant release; Q = Quarterly \(four times per year\); W = Recommend that at least one inspection occur during the wet season, preferably after trees have lost their leaves](#)

No. 7 - Debris Barriers (e.g., Trash Racks)				
Maintenance Component	Recommended Inspection Frequency¹	Defect or Problem	Condition When Maintenance is Needed	Results Expected When Maintenance is Performed
Facility – General Requirements	B, W, E	Trash and debris	Trash or debris plugging more than 20 percent of the area of the barrier	Barrier clear to receive capacity flow
	A	Sediment accumulation	Sediment accumulation of greater than 20 percent of the area of the barrier	Barrier clear to receive capacity flow
Structure	A	Cracked, broken, or loose	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Structure which bars attach to is damaged • Pipe is loose or cracked • Concrete structure is cracked, broken, or loose 	Sound structure barrier
Bars	A	Bar spacing	Bar spacing exceeds 6 inches	Bars have at most 6-inch spacing
	A	Damaged or missing bars	Bars bent out of shape more than 3 inches	Bars in place with no bends more than ¾ inch
			Bars missing or entire barrier missing	Bars in place according to design
			Bars loose and rust is causing 50 percent deterioration to any part of barrier	Repair or replace barrier to design standards

¹ [Inspection frequency:](#)

[A = Annually; B = Biannually; M = Monthly; E = Recommend that additional inspections be performed as appropriate after major events \(e.g., >1 inch of precipitation in 24 hours or environmental incident that causes contaminant release; Q = Quarterly \(four times per year\); W = Recommend that at least one inspection occur during the wet season, preferably after trees have lost their leaves](#)

No. 8 - Energy Dissipaters				
Maintenance Component	<u>Recommended Inspection Frequency</u>¹	Defect or Problem	Conditions When Maintenance is Needed	Results Expected When Maintenance is Performed
Facility – General Requirements	B, W, E	Trash and debris	Trash and/or debris accumulation	Dissipater clear of trash and/or debris
	A, E	Contaminants and pollution	Any evidence of contaminants or pollution such as oil, gasoline, concrete slurries, or paint	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Materials removed and disposed of according to applicable regulations • Source control BMPs implemented if appropriate • No contaminants present other than a surface oil film
Rock Pad	A	Missing or moved rock	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • One layer or less of rock exists above native soil area 5 square feet or more • Any exposed native soil 	Rock pad prevents erosion
Dispersion Trench	A	Pipe plugged with sediment	Accumulated sediment that exceeds 20 percent of the design depth	Pipe cleaned/flushed so that it matches design
	A	Not discharging water properly	Visual evidence of water discharging at concentrated points along trench (normal condition is a “sheet flow” of water along trench)	Water discharges from feature by sheet flow
	A	Perforations plugged	Over 1/4 of perforations in pipe are plugged with debris or sediment	Perforations freely discharge flow
	A	Water flows out top of “distributor” catch basin	Water flows out of distributor catch basin during any storm less than the design storm	No flow discharges from distributor catch basin
	A	Receiving area over-saturated	Water in receiving area is causing or has potential of causing landslide problems	No danger of landslides

No. 8 - Energy Dissipaters				
Maintenance Component	Recommended Inspection Frequency ¹	Defect or Problem	Conditions When Maintenance is Needed	Results Expected When Maintenance is Performed
Gabions	A	Damaged mesh	Mesh of gabion broken, twisted or deformed so structure is weakened or rock may fall out	Mesh is intact with no rock missing
	A	Corrosion	Gabion mesh shows corrosion through more than ¼ of its gage	All gabion mesh capable of containing rock and retaining designed form
	A	Collapsed or deformed baskets	Gabion basket shape deformed due to any cause	All gabion baskets intact, structure stands as designed
	A	Missing rock	Any rock missing that could cause gabion to loose structural integrity	No rock missing
Maintenance Hole/Chamber	A	Worn or damaged post, baffles, or side of chamber	Structure dissipating flow deteriorates to ½ or original size or any concentrated worn spot exceeding 1 square foot, which would make structure unsound	Structure in no danger of failing
	A	Damage to wall, frame, bottom, and/or top slab	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Cracks wider than ½ inch Any evidence of soil entering the structure through cracks Maintenance inspection personnel determines that the structure is not structurally sound 	Maintenance hole/chamber sealed and structurally sound
	A	Damaged pipe joints	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Cracks wider than ½ inch at the joint of the inlet/outlet pipes Any evidence of soil entering the structure at the joint of the inlet/outlet pipes 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> No soil or water enters No water discharges at the joint of inlet/outlet pipes

¹ [Inspection frequency:](#)

A = Annually; B = Biannually; M = Monthly; E = Recommend that additional inspections be performed as appropriate after major events (e.g., >1 inch of precipitation in 24 hours or environmental incident that causes contaminant release; Q = Quarterly (four times per year); W = Recommend that at least one inspection occur during the wet season, preferably after trees have lost their leaves

No. 9 - Basic and Compost-Amended Biofiltration Swales				
Maintenance Component	Recommended Inspection Frequency ¹	Defect or Problem	Condition When Maintenance is Needed	Results Expected When Maintenance is Performed
Facility – General Requirements	M	Trash and debris	Trash and/or debris accumulation	No trash or debris at the site
	B, E	Contaminants and pollution	Any evidence of contaminants or pollution such as oil, gasoline, concrete slurries, or paint	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Materials removed and disposed of according to applicable regulations Source control BMPs implemented if appropriate No contaminants present other than a surface oil film
Swale Section	B, E	Sediment accumulation	Sediment depth exceeds 2 inches in 10 percent of the swale treatment area	No sediment deposits in treatment area of the biofiltration swale
			Sediment inhibits grass growth over 10 percent of swale length	Grass growth not inhibited by sediment
			Sediment inhibits even spreading of flow	Flows are spread evenly over entire swale width
	B, E	Erosion/scouring	Eroded or scoured swale bottom due to channelization or high flows	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> No eroded or scoured areas in biofiltration swale Cause of erosion or scour addressed
	M	Poor vegetation coverage	Grass is sparse or bare or eroded patches occur in more than 10 percent of the swale bottom	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Swale has no bare spots Grass is thick and healthy
	B	Grass too tall	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Grass is excessively tall (greater than 10 inches) Grass is thin Nuisance weeds and other vegetation has taken over 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Grass between 3 and 4 inches tall, thick and healthy No clippings left in swale No nuisance vegetation present

No. 9 - Basic and Compost-Amended Biofiltration Swales				
Maintenance Component	Recommended Inspection Frequency ¹	Defect or Problem	Condition When Maintenance is Needed	Results Expected When Maintenance is Performed
Swale Section (continued)	B	Excessive shade	Grass growth is poor because sunlight does not reach swale	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Healthy grass growth or • Swale converted to a wet biofiltration swale
	B	Constant baseflow	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Continuous flow through the swale, even when it has been dry for weeks or an eroded • Muddy channel has formed in the swale bottom 	Baseflow removed from swale by a low-flow pea-gravel drain or bypassed around the swale
	B	Standing water	Water pools in the swale between storms or does not drain freely	Swale drains freely and no standing water in swale between storms
	B	Channelization	Flow concentrates and erodes channel through swale	No flow channels in swale
Flow Spreader	B	Concentrated flow	Flow from spreader not uniformly distributed across entire swale width	Flows are spread evenly over entire swale width
Inlet/Outlet Pipe	A	Sediment accumulation	Sediment filling 1/3 or more of the pipe	Inlet/outlet pipes clear of sediment
	B, W, E	Trash and debris	Trash and debris accumulated in inlet/outlet pipes (includes floatables and non-floatables)	No trash or debris in pipes
	A	Damaged	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Cracks wider than ½ inch at the joint of the inlet/outlet pipes • Any evidence of soil entering at the joints of the inlet/outlet pipes 	No cracks more than ¼-inch wide at the joint of the inlet/outlet pipe

¹ Inspection frequency:

A = Annually; B = Biannually; M = Monthly; E = Recommend that additional inspections be performed as appropriate after major events (e.g., >1 inch of precipitation in 24 hours or environmental incident that causes contaminant release; Q = Quarterly (four times per year); W = Recommend that at least one inspection occur during the wet season, preferably after trees have lost their leaves

No. 10 - Wet and Continuous Inflow Biofiltration Swales				
Maintenance Component	Recommended Inspection Frequency ¹	Defect or Problem	Condition When Maintenance is Needed	Results Expected When Maintenance Is Performed
Facility – General Requirements	M	Trash and debris	Any trash and/or debris accumulated at the site	No trash or debris at the site
	B, E	Contaminants and pollution	Any evidence of contaminants or pollution such as oil, gasoline, concrete slurries, or paint	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Materials removed and disposed of according to applicable regulations Source control BMPs implemented if appropriate No contaminants present other than a surface oil film
Swale Section	B, E	Sediment accumulation	Sediment depth exceeds 2 inches in 10 percent of the swale treatment area	No sediment deposits in treatment area
	B, E	Erosion/scouring	Eroded or scoured swale bottom due to channelization or high flows	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> No eroded or scoured areas in biofiltration swale Cause of erosion or scour addressed
	B	Water depth	Water not retained to a depth of about 4 inches during the wet season	Water depth of 4 inches throughout swale for most of wet season
	B	Vegetation ineffective	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Vegetation sparse; does not provide adequate filtration Vegetation crowded out by very dense clumps of cattail or nuisance vegetation 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Wetland vegetation fully covers bottom of swale No cattails or nuisance vegetation present
	B	Insufficient water	Wetland vegetation dies due to lack of water	Wetland vegetation remains healthy (may require converting to grass-lined biofiltration swale)
Flow Spreader	B	Concentrated flow	Flow from spreader not uniformly distributed across entire swale width	Flows are spread evenly over entire swale width

No. 10 - Wet and Continuous Inflow Biofiltration Swales				
Maintenance Component	Recommended Inspection Frequency ¹	Defect or Problem	Condition When Maintenance is Needed	Results Expected When Maintenance Is Performed
Inlet/Outlet Pipe	A	Sediment accumulation	Sediment filling 1/3 or more of the pipe	Inlet/outlet pipes clear of sediment
	B, W, E	Trash and debris	Trash and debris accumulated in inlet/outlet pipes (includes floatables and non-floatables)	No trash or debris in pipes
	A	Damaged	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Cracks wider than ½ inch at the joint of the inlet/outlet pipes Any evidence of soil entering at the joints of the inlet/outlet pipes 	No cracks more than ¼-inch wide at the joint of the inlet/outlet pipe

¹ [Inspection frequency:](#)

[A = Annually; B = Biannually; M = Monthly; E = Recommend that additional inspections be performed as appropriate after major events \(e.g., >1 inch of precipitation in 24 hours or environmental incident that causes contaminant release; Q = Quarterly \(four times per year\); W = Recommend that at least one inspection occur during the wet season, preferably after trees have lost their leaves](#)

No. 11 - Filter Strips (Basic and CAVFS)				
Maintenance Component	Recommended Inspection Frequency ¹	Defect or Problem	Condition When Maintenance is Needed	Results Expected When Maintenance Is Performed
Facility – General Requirements	M	Trash and debris	Any trash and/or debris accumulated at the site	No trash or debris at the site
	B, E	Contaminants and pollution	Any evidence of contaminants or pollution such as oil, gasoline, concrete slurries, or paint	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Materials removed and disposed of according to applicable regulations Source control BMPs implemented if appropriate No contaminants present other than a surface oil film
Grass Strip	B, E	Sediment accumulation	Sediment accumulation exceeds 2 inches depth	No sediment deposits in treatment area
	B, E	Erosion/scouring	Eroded or scoured areas due to channelization or high flows	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> No eroded or scoured areas Cause of erosion or scour addressed
	B	Vegetation ineffective	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Grass has died out Grass has become excessively tall (greater than 10 inches) Nuisance vegetation is taking over 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Grass is healthy; between 3 and 4 inches tall No nuisance vegetation present
Flow Spreader	B	Concentrated flow	Flow from spreader not uniformly distributed across entire filter width	Flows are spread evenly over entire filter width
Inlet/Outlet Pipe	A	Sediment accumulation	Sediment filling 1/3 or more of the pipe	Inlet/outlet pipes clear of sediment
	B, W, E	Trash and debris	Trash and debris accumulated in inlet/outlet pipes (includes floatables and non-floatables)	No trash or debris in pipes

No. 11 - Filter Strips (Basic and CAVFS)				
Maintenance Component	Recommended Inspection Frequency ¹	Defect or Problem	Condition When Maintenance is Needed	Results Expected When Maintenance Is Performed
Inlet/Outlet Pipe (continued)	A	Damaged	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Cracks wider than ½ inch at the joint of the inlet/outlet pipes Any evidence of soil entering at the joints of the inlet/outlet pipes 	No cracks more than ¼-inch wide at the joint of the inlet/outlet pipe

¹ [Inspection frequency:](#)

[A = Annually; B = Biannually; M = Monthly; E = Recommend that additional inspections be performed as appropriate after major events \(e.g., >1 inch of precipitation in 24 hours or environmental incident that causes contaminant release; Q = Quarterly \(four times per year\); W = Recommend that at least one inspection occur during the wet season, preferably after trees have lost their leaves](#)

No. 12 - Wet Ponds				
Maintenance Component	Recommended Inspection Frequency ¹	Defect or Problem	Condition When Maintenance is Needed	Results Expected When Maintenance Is Performed
Facility – General Requirements	A	Trash and debris	Any trash and/or debris accumulated at the site	No trash or debris at the site
	M (March – October)	Noxious weeds	Any noxious or nuisance vegetation which may constitute a hazard to City personnel or the public	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Noxious and nuisance vegetation removed according to applicable regulations No danger of noxious vegetation where City personnel or the public might normally be
	A, E	Contaminants and pollution	Any evidence of contaminants or pollution such as oil, gasoline, concrete slurries, or paint	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Materials removed and disposed of according to applicable regulations Source control BMPs implemented if appropriate No contaminants present other than a surface oil film
	2X: June – October	Grass/groundcover	Grass or groundcover exceeds 18 inches in height	Grass or groundcover mowed to a height no greater than 6 inches
Side Slopes of Dam, Berm, Internal Berm or Embankment	A	Rodent holes	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Any evidence of rodent holes if facility is acting as a dam or berm Any evidence of water piping through dam or berm via rodent holes 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Rodents removed or destroyed Dam or berm repaired

No. 12 - Wet Ponds				
Maintenance Component	Recommended Inspection Frequency ¹	Defect or Problem	Condition When Maintenance is Needed	Results Expected When Maintenance Is Performed
Side Slopes of Dam, Berm, Internal Berm or Embankment (continued)	A	Tree growth	Tree growth threatens integrity of dams, berms or slopes, does not allow maintenance access, or interferes with maintenance activity. If trees are not a threat to dam, berm or embankment integrity, are not interfering with access or maintenance, or leaves do not cause a plugging problem they do not need to be removed.	Trees do not hinder facility performance or maintenance activities
	A	Erosion	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Eroded damage over 2 inches deep where cause of damage is still present or where there is potential for continued erosion Any erosion observed on a compacted slope 	Slopes stabilized using appropriate erosion control measures If erosion is occurring on compacted slope, a licensed engineer should be consulted to resolve source of erosion.
Top or Side Slopes of Dam, Berm, Internal Berm or Embankment	A	Settlement	Any part of a dam, berm or embankment that has settled 4 inches lower than the design elevation	Top or side slope restored to design dimensions If settlement is significant, a licensed engineer should be consulted to determine the cause of the settlement.
	A	Irregular surface on internal berm	Top of berm not uniform and level	Top of berm graded to design elevation.
Pond Areas	A	Sediment accumulation (except first wet pool cell)	Accumulated sediment that exceeds 10 percent of the designed pond depth	Sediment cleaned out to designed pond shape and depth.

No. 12 - Wet Ponds				
Maintenance Component	Recommended Inspection Frequency ¹	Defect or Problem	Condition When Maintenance is Needed	Results Expected When Maintenance Is Performed
Pond Areas (continued)	A	Sediment accumulation (first wet pool cell)	Sediment accumulations in pond bottom that exceeds the depth of sediment storage (1 foot) plus 6 inches	Sediment storage contains no sediment
	A	Liner damaged (if applicable)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Liner is visible Pond does not hold water as designed 	Liner repaired or replaced.
	A, W	Water level (first wet pool cell)	First cell empty; does not hold water	Water retained in first cell for most of the year
	M (March – October)	Algae mats (first wet pool cell)	Algae mats develop over more than 10 percent of the water surface	Algae mats removed (usually in the late summer before fall rains)
Gravity Drain	A	Inoperable valve	Valve will not open and close	Valve opens and closes normally
	A	Valve will not seal	Valve does not seal completely	Valve completely seals closed
Emergency Overflow Spillway	A	Tree growth	Tree growth impedes flow or threatens stability of spillway	Trees removed
	A	Rock missing	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Only one layer of rock exists above native soil in area 5 square feet or larger Any exposure of native soil at the top of out flow path of spillway (Rip-rap on inside slopes need not be replaced.)	Spillway restored to design standards
Inlet/Outlet Pipe	A	Sediment accumulation	Sediment filling 1/3 or more of the pipe	Inlet/outlet pipes clear of sediment
	B, W, E	Trash and debris	Trash and debris accumulated in inlet/outlet pipes (includes floatables and non-floatables)	No trash or debris in pipes

No. 12 - Wet Ponds				
Maintenance Component	Recommended Inspection Frequency ¹	Defect or Problem	Condition When Maintenance is Needed	Results Expected When Maintenance Is Performed
Inlet/Outlet Pipe (continued)	A	Damaged	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Cracks wider than ½ inch at the joint of the inlet/outlet pipes Any evidence of soil entering at the joints of the inlet/outlet pipes 	No cracks more than ¼-inch wide at the joint of the inlet/outlet pipe

¹ [Inspection frequency:](#)

A = Annually; B = Biannually; M = Monthly; E = Recommend that additional inspections be performed as appropriate after major events (e.g., >1 inch of precipitation in 24 hours or environmental incident that causes contaminant release; Q = Quarterly (four times per year); W = Recommend that at least one inspection occur during the wet season, preferably after trees have lost their leaves

No. 13 - Wet Vaults				
Maintenance Component	<u>Recommended Inspection Frequency</u>¹	Defect or Problem	Condition When Maintenance is Needed	Results Expected When Maintenance is Performed
Facility – General Requirements	A	Trash and debris	Trash and debris accumulation	Trash and debris removed from facility
Treatment Area	A	Trash and debris	Any trash and debris accumulated in vault (includes floatables and non-floatables)	No trash or debris in vault
	A	Sediment accumulation	Sediment accumulation in vault bottom exceeds the depth of the sediment zone plus 6 inches	No sediment in vault
	A, E	Contaminants and pollution	Any evidence of contaminants or pollution such as oil, gasoline, concrete slurries, or paint	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Materials removed and disposed of according to applicable regulations • Source control BMPs implemented if appropriate • No contaminants present other than a surface oil film
Vault Structure	A	Damage to wall, frame, bottom, and/or top slab	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Cracks wider than ½ inch • Any evidence of soil entering the structure through cracks • Vault does not retain water • Qualified inspection personnel determines that the vault is not structurally sound 	Vault sealed and structurally sound
	A	Baffles damaged	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Baffles corroding, cracking, warping, and/or showing signs of failure • Baffle cannot be removed 	Repair or replace baffles or walls to specifications
	A	Ventilation	Ventilation area blocked or plugged	No reduction of ventilation area exists

No. 13 - Wet Vaults				
Maintenance Component	Recommended Inspection Frequency ¹	Defect or Problem	Condition When Maintenance is Needed	Results Expected When Maintenance is Performed
Inlet/Outlet Pipe	A	Sediment accumulation	Sediment filling 1/3 or more of the pipe	Inlet/outlet pipes clear of sediment
	B, W, E	Trash and debris	Trash and debris accumulated in inlet/outlet pipes (includes floatables and non-floatables)	No trash or debris in pipes
	A	Damaged	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Cracks wider than ½ inch at the joint of the inlet/outlet pipes Any evidence of soil entering at the joints of the inlet/outlet pipes 	No cracks more than ¼-inch wide at the joint of the inlet/outlet pipe
Gravity Drain	A	Inoperable valve	Valve will not open and close	Valve opens and closes normally
	A	Valve will not seal	Valve does not seal completely	Valve completely seals closed
Access Maintenance Hole	A	Access cover/lid damaged or difficult to open	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Access cover/lid cannot be easily opened by one person Corrosion/deformation of cover/lid 	Access cover/lid can be opened by one person
	A	Locking mechanism not working	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Mechanism cannot be opened by one maintenance person with proper tools Bolts cannot be seated Self-locking cover/lid does not work 	Mechanism opens with proper tools
	A	Cover/lid difficult to remove	One maintenance person cannot remove cover/lid after applying 80 lbs of lift	Cover/lid can be removed and reinstalled by one maintenance person
	A	Access doors/plate has gaps, does not cover completely	Large access doors not flat and/or access opening not completely covered	Doors close flat and covers access opening completely

No. 13 - Wet Vaults				
Maintenance Component	Recommended Inspection Frequency ¹	Defect or Problem	Condition When Maintenance is Needed	Results Expected When Maintenance is Performed
Access Maintenance Hole (continued)	A	Lifting rings missing, rusted	Lifting rings not capable of lifting weight of door or plate	Lifting rings sufficient to lift or remove door or plate
	A	Ladder rungs unsafe	Missing rungs, misalignment, rust, or cracks	Ladder meets design standards and allows maintenance person safe access

¹ [Inspection frequency:](#)

[A = Annually; B = Biannually; M = Monthly; E = Recommend that additional inspections be performed as appropriate after major events \(e.g., >1 inch of precipitation in 24 hours or environmental incident that causes contaminant release; Q = Quarterly \(four times per year\); W = Recommend that at least one inspection occur during the wet season, preferably after trees have lost their leaves](#)

No. 14 - Stormwater Treatment Wetlands				
Maintenance Component	Recommended Inspection Frequency¹	Defect or Problem	Condition When Maintenance is Needed	Results Expected When Maintenance Is Performed
Facility – General Requirements	A	Trash and debris	Trash and debris accumulation	Trash and debris removed from facility
	M (March – October)	Noxious weeds	Any noxious or nuisance vegetation which may constitute a hazard to City personnel or the public	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Noxious and nuisance vegetation removed according to applicable regulations • No danger of noxious vegetation where City personnel or the public might normally be
	A, E	Contaminants and pollution	Any evidence of contaminants or pollution such as oil, gasoline, concrete slurries, or paint	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Materials removed and disposed of according to applicable regulations • Source control BMPs implemented if appropriate • No contaminants present other than a surface oil film
	2X: June – October	Grass/groundcover	Grass or groundcover exceeds 18 inches in height	Grass or groundcover mowed to a height no greater than 6 inches
Side Slopes of Dam, Berm, Internal Berm, or Embankment	A	Rodent holes	<p>Any evidence of rodent holes if facility is acting as a dam or berm</p> <p>Any evidence of water piping through dam or berm via rodent holes</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Rodents removed or destroyed • Dam or berm repaired

No. 14 - Stormwater Treatment Wetlands				
Maintenance Component	<u>Recommended Inspection Frequency</u> ¹	Defect or Problem	Condition When Maintenance is Needed	Results Expected When Maintenance Is Performed
Side Slopes of Dam, Berm, Internal Berm, or Embankment (continued)	<u>A</u>	Tree growth	Tree growth threatens integrity of dams, berms or slopes, does not allow maintenance access, or interferes with maintenance activity. If trees are not a threat to dam, berm, or embankment integrity or not interfering with access or maintenance, they do not need to be removed.	Trees do not hinder facility performance or maintenance activities
	<u>A</u>	Erosion	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Eroded damage over 2 inches deep where cause of damage is still present or where there is potential for continued erosion Any erosion observed on a compacted slope 	Slopes stabilized using appropriate erosion control measures If erosion is occurring on compacted slope, a licensed engineer should be consulted to resolve source of erosion.
Top or Side Slopes of Dam, Berm, Internal Berm, or Embankment	<u>A</u>	Settlement	Any part of a dam, berm or embankment that has settled 4 inches lower than the design elevation	Top or side slope restored to design dimensions If settlement is significant, a licensed engineer should be consulted to determine the cause of the settlement.
	<u>A</u>	Irregular surface on internal berm	Top of berm not uniform and level	Top of berm graded flat to design elevation
Pond Areas	<u>B</u>	Sediment accumulation (first cell/forebay)	Sediment accumulations in pond bottom that exceeds the depth of sediment storage (1 foot) plus 6 inches	Sediment storage contains no sediment

No. 14 - Stormwater Treatment Wetlands				
Maintenance Component	Recommended Inspection Frequency¹	Defect or Problem	Condition When Maintenance is Needed	Results Expected When Maintenance Is Performed
Pond Areas (continued)	B	Sediment accumulation (wetland cell)	Accumulated sediment that exceeds 10 percent of the designed pond depth	Sediment cleaned out to designed pond shape and depth
	A	Liner damaged (If Applicable)	Liner is visible or pond does not hold water as designed	Liner repaired or replaced
	A, W	Water level (first cell/forebay)	Cell does not hold 3 feet of water year round	3 feet of water retained year round
	A, WB	Water level (wetland cell)	Cell does not retain water for at least 10 months of the year or wetland plants are not surviving.	Water retained at least 10 months of the year or wetland plants are surviving.
	M (March – October)	Algae mats (first cell/forebay)	Algae mats develop over more than 10 percent of the water	Algae mats removed (usually in the late summer before fall rains)
	B	Vegetation	Vegetation dead, dying, or overgrown (cattails) or not meeting original planting specifications	Plants in wetland cell surviving and not interfering with wetland function
Gravity Drain	A	Inoperable valve	Valve will not open and close	Valve opens and closes normally
	A	Valve will not seal	Valve does not seal completely	Valve completely seals closed
Emergency Overflow Spillway	A	Tree growth	Tree growth impedes flow or threatens stability of spillway	Trees removed
	A	Rock missing	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Only one layer of rock exists above native soil in area 5 square feet or larger • Any exposure of native soil at the top of out flow path of spillway (Rip-rap on inside slopes need not be replaced.)	Spillway restored to design standards
Inlet/Outlet Pipe	A	Sediment accumulation	Sediment filling 1/3 or more of the pipe	Inlet/outlet pipes clear of sediment

No. 14 - Stormwater Treatment Wetlands				
Maintenance Component	<u>Recommended Inspection Frequency</u> ¹	Defect or Problem	Condition When Maintenance is Needed	Results Expected When Maintenance Is Performed
Inlet/Outlet Pipe (continued)	<u>B, W, E</u>	Trash and debris	Trash and debris accumulated in inlet/outlet pipes (includes floatables and non-floatables)	No trash or debris in pipes
	<u>A</u>	Damaged	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Cracks wider than ½ inch at the joint of the inlet/outlet pipes Any evidence of soil entering at the joints of the inlet/outlet pipes 	No cracks more than ¼-inch wide at the joint of the inlet/outlet pipe

¹ Inspection frequency:

A = Annually; B = Biannually; M = Monthly; E = Recommend that additional inspections be performed as appropriate after major events (e.g., >1 inch of precipitation in 24 hours or environmental incident that causes contaminant release; Q = Quarterly (four times per year); W = Recommend that at least one inspection occur during the wet season, preferably after trees have lost their leaves

No. 15 - Sand Filter Basins				
Maintenance Component	<u>Recommended Inspection Frequency</u>¹	Defect or Problem	Condition When Maintenance is Needed	Results Expected When Maintenance Is Performed
Facility – General Requirements	A, E	Trash and debris	Trash and debris accumulation	Trash and debris removed from facility
	M (March – October)	Noxious weeds	Any noxious or nuisance vegetation which may constitute a hazard to City personnel or the public	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Noxious and nuisance vegetation removed according to applicable regulations • No danger of noxious vegetation where City personnel or the public might normally be
	A, E	Contaminants and pollution	Any evidence of contaminants or pollution such as oil, gasoline, concrete slurries, or paint	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Materials removed and disposed of according to applicable regulations • Source control BMPs implemented if appropriate • No contaminants present other than a surface oil film
	A	Grass/groundcover (not in the treatment area)	Grass or groundcover exceeds 18 inches in height	Grass or groundcover mowed to a height no greater than 6 inches
Pre-Treatment (if applicable)	A	Sediment accumulation	Sediment accumulations in pond bottom that exceeds the depth of sediment storage (1 foot) plus 6 inches	Sediment storage contains no sediment
	A	Liner damaged (If Applicable)	Liner is visible Pond does not hold water as designed	Liner repaired or replaced
	A, W	Water level	Cell empty; does not hold water.	Water retained in first cell for most of the year
	M (March – October)	Algae mats	Algae mats develop over more than 10 percent of the water surface	Algae mats removed

No. 15 - Sand Filter Basins				
Maintenance Component	Recommended Inspection Frequency ¹	Defect or Problem	Condition When Maintenance is Needed	Results Expected When Maintenance Is Performed
Pond Area	B	Sediment accumulation	Sediment or crust depth exceeds ½ inch over 10 percent of surface area of sand filter	No sediment or crust deposit on sand filter that would impede permeability of the filter section
	2X: June – October	Grass (if applicable)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Grass becomes excessively tall (greater than 6 inches) Nuisance weeds and other vegetation start to take over Thatch build up occurs 	Mow vegetation and/or remove nuisance vegetation
Side Slopes of Pond	A	Rodent holes	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Any evidence of rodent holes if facility is acting as a dam or berm Any evidence of water piping through dam or berm via rodent holes 	Rodents removed or destroyed Dam or berm repaired
	A	Tree growth	<p>Tree growth threatens integrity of dams, berms or slopes, does not allow maintenance access, or interferes with maintenance activity.</p> <p>If trees are not a threat to dam, berm, or embankment integrity or not interfering with access or maintenance, they do not need to be removed.</p>	Trees do not hinder facility performance or maintenance activities

No. 15 - Sand Filter Basins				
Maintenance Component	Recommended Inspection Frequency ¹	Defect or Problem	Condition When Maintenance is Needed	Results Expected When Maintenance Is Performed
Side Slopes of Pond (continued)	A	Erosion	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Eroded damage over 2 inches deep where cause of damage is still present Where there is potential for continued erosion Any erosion observed on a compacted slope 	<p>Slopes stabilized using appropriate erosion control measures</p> <p>If erosion is occurring on compacted slope, a licensed engineer should be consulted to resolve source of erosion.</p>
Sand Filter Media	A, E	Plugging	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Drawdown of water through the sand filter media, takes longer than 24 hours Flow through the overflow pipes occurs frequently 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Sand filter media surface is aerated Drawdown rate is normal
	A	Prolonged flows	Sand is saturated for prolonged periods of time (several weeks) and does not dry out between storms due to continuous base flow or prolonged flows from detention facilities	Excess flows bypassed or confined to small portion of filter media surface
	A	Short circuiting	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Flows become concentrated over one section of the sand filter rather than dispersed Drawdown rate of pool exceeds 12 inches per hour 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Flow and percolation of water through the sand filter is uniform and dispersed across the entire filter area Drawdown rate is normal
	A	Media thickness	Sand thickness is less than 6 inches	Rebuild sand thickness to a minimum of 6 inches and preferably to 18 inches

No. 15 - Sand Filter Basins				
Maintenance Component	Recommended Inspection Frequency ¹	Defect or Problem	Condition When Maintenance is Needed	Results Expected When Maintenance Is Performed
Underdrains and Clean-Outs	A	Sediment/debris	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Underdrains or clean-outs partially plugged or filled with sediment and/or debris Junction box/cleanout wyes not watertight 	Underdrains and clean-outs free of sediment and debris and are watertight
Inlet/Outlet Pipe	A	Sediment accumulation	Sediment filling 1/3 or more of the pipe	Inlet/outlet pipes clear of sediment
	B, W, E	Trash and debris	Trash and debris accumulated in inlet/outlet pipes (includes floatables and non-floatables)	No trash or debris in pipes
	A	Damaged	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Cracks wider than ½ inch at the joint of the inlet/outlet pipes Any evidence of soil entering at the joints of the inlet/outlet pipes 	No cracks more than ¼-inch wide at the joint of the inlet/outlet pipe
Rock Pad	A	Missing or out of place	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Only one layer of rock exists above native soil in area 5 square feet or larger Any exposure of native soil 	Rock pad restored to design standards
Flow Spreader	A	Concentrated flow	Flow from spreader not uniformly distributed across sand filter	Flows spread evenly over sand filter

¹ [Inspection frequency:](#)

[A = Annually; B = Biannually; M = Monthly; E = Recommend that additional inspections be performed as appropriate after major events \(e.g., >1 inch of precipitation in 24 hours or environmental incident that causes contaminant release; Q = Quarterly \(four times per year\); W = Recommend that at least one inspection occur during the wet season, preferably after trees have lost their leaves](#)

No. 16 - Sand Filter Vaults				
Maintenance Component	<u>Recommended Inspection Frequency</u>¹	Defect or Problem	Condition When Maintenance is Needed	Results Expected When Maintenance is Performed
Facility – General Requirements	A, E	Trash and debris	Trash and debris accumulation	Trash and debris removed from facility
	M (March – October)	Noxious weeds	Any noxious or nuisance vegetation which may constitute a hazard to City personnel or the public	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Noxious and nuisance vegetation removed according to applicable regulations • No danger of noxious vegetation where City personnel or the public might normally be
	A, E	Contaminants and pollution	Any evidence of contaminants or pollution such as oil, gasoline, concrete slurries, or paint	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Materials removed and disposed of according to applicable regulations • Source control BMPs implemented if appropriate • No contaminants present other than a surface oil film
	A	Grass/groundcover	Grass or groundcover exceeds 18 inches in height	Grass or groundcover mowed to a height no greater than 6 inches
Pre-Treatment Chamber	A	Sediment accumulation	Sediment accumulation exceeds the depth of the sediment zone plus 6 inches	Sediment storage contains no sediment
Sand Filter Media	A	Sediment accumulation	Sediment depth exceeds ½ inch on sand filter media	Sand filter freely drains at normal rate
	A	Trash and debris	Trash and debris accumulated in vault (floatables and non-floatables)	No trash or debris in vault

No. 16 - Sand Filter Vaults				
Maintenance Component	Recommended Inspection Frequency ¹	Defect or Problem	Condition When Maintenance is Needed	Results Expected When Maintenance is Performed
Sand Filter Media (continued)	A, E	Plugging	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Drawdown of water through the sand filter media, takes longer than 24 hours • Flow through the overflow pipes occurs frequently 	Sand filter media drawdown rate is normal
	A	Short circuiting	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Seepage or flow occurs along the vault walls and corners • Sand eroding near inflow area • Cleanout wyes are not watertight 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Sand filter media section re-laid and compacted along perimeter of vault to form a semi-seal • Erosion protection added to dissipate force of incoming flow and curtail erosion
Vault Structure	A	Damaged to walls, frame, bottom and/or top slab.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Cracks wider than ½ inch • Any evidence of soil entering the structure through cracks • Qualified inspection personnel determines that the vault is not structurally sound 	Vault replaced or repaired to provide complete sealing of the structure
	A	Ventilation	Ventilation area blocked or plugged	No reduction of ventilation area exists
Underdrains and Cleanouts	A	Sediment/debris	Underdrains or clean-outs partially plugged, filled with sediment and/or debris or not watertight	Underdrains and clean-outs free of sediment and debris and sealed
Inlet/Outlet Pipe	A	Sediment accumulation	Sediment filling 1/3 or more of the pipe	Inlet/outlet pipes clear of sediment
	B, W, E	Trash and debris	Trash and debris accumulated in inlet/outlet pipes (includes floatables and non-floatables)	No trash or debris in pipes

No. 16 - Sand Filter Vaults				
Maintenance Component	Recommended Inspection Frequency ¹	Defect or Problem	Condition When Maintenance is Needed	Results Expected When Maintenance is Performed
Inlet/Outlet Pipe (continued)	A	Damaged	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Cracks wider than ½ inch at the joint of the inlet/outlet pipes Any evidence of soil entering at the joints of the inlet/outlet pipes 	No cracks more than ¼-inch wide at the joint of the inlet/outlet pipe
Access Maintenance Hole	A	Cover/lid not in place	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Cover/lid is missing or only partially in place Any open maintenance hole requires immediate maintenance 	Maintenance hole access cover/lid in place and secure
	A	Locking mechanism not working	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Mechanism cannot be opened by one maintenance person with proper tools Bolts cannot be seated Self-locking cover/lid does not work 	Mechanism opens with proper tools
	A	Cover/lid difficult to remove	One maintenance person cannot remove cover/lid after applying 80 lbs of lift	Cover/lid can be removed and reinstalled by one maintenance person
	A	Ladder rungs unsafe	Missing rungs, misalignment, rust, or cracks	Ladder meets design standards and allows maintenance person safe access
Large Access Doors/Plate	A	Damaged or difficult to open	Large access doors or plates cannot be opened/removed using normal equipment	Replace or repair access door so it can open as designed
	A	Gaps, does not cover completely	Large access doors not flat and/or access opening not completely covered	Doors close flat and covers access opening completely

No. 16 - Sand Filter Vaults				
Maintenance Component	Recommended Inspection Frequency ¹	Defect or Problem	Condition When Maintenance is Needed	Results Expected When Maintenance is Performed
Large Access Doors/Plate (continued)	A	Lifting rings missing, rusted	Lifting rings not capable of lifting weight of door or plate	Lifting rings sufficient to lift or remove door or plate

¹ [Inspection frequency:](#)

[A = Annually; B = Biannually; M = Monthly; E = Recommend that additional inspections be performed as appropriate after major events \(e.g., >1 inch of precipitation in 24 hours or environmental incident that causes contaminant release; Q = Quarterly \(four times per year\); W = Recommend that at least one inspection occur during the wet season, preferably after trees have lost their leaves](#)

No. 17 - Proprietary Technology Filter Cartridge Type Filter Systems (example: BayFilter, FloGard PerkFilter, StormFilter)				
Maintenance Component	Recommended Inspection Frequency ^{1,2}	Defect or Problem	Condition When Maintenance is Needed	Results Expected When Maintenance is Performed
In addition to the specific maintenance criteria provided below, all manufacturers' requirements shall be followed.				
Facility – General Requirements	A, E	Trash and debris	Any trash or debris or organic material which impairs the function of the facility	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Trash and debris removed from facility • Flow receives treatment instead of bypassing
	A, E	Contaminants and pollution	Any evidence of contaminants or pollution such as oil, gasoline, concrete slurries, or paint	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Materials removed and disposed of according to applicable regulations • Source control BMPs implemented if appropriate • No contaminants present other than a surface oil film
	A	Life cycle	Once per year	Facility is re-inspected and any needed maintenance performed
Vault Treatment Area	Varies – Refer to Manufacturer's requirements.	Sediment on vault floor	Varies – Refer to Manufacturer's requirements.	Vault is free of sediment
	Varies – Refer to Manufacturer's requirements.	Sediment on top of cartridges	Varies – Refer to Manufacturer's requirements.	Vault is free of sediment
	Varies – Refer to Manufacturer's requirements.	Multiple scum lines above top of cartridges	Thick or multiple scum lines above top of cartridges	Cause of plugging corrected and canisters replaced if necessary

No. 17 - Proprietary Technology <u>Filter Cartridge Type Filter</u> Systems (example: BayFilter, FloGard PerkFilter, StormFilter)				
Maintenance Component	<u>Recommended Inspection Frequency</u> ^{1,2}	Defect or Problem	Condition When Maintenance is Needed	Results Expected When Maintenance is Performed
Vault Structure	<u>A</u>	Damage to wall, frame, bottom, and/or top slab	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Cracks wider than ½ inch Any evidence of soil particles entering the structure through the cracks Qualified inspection personnel determines the vault is not structurally sound 	Vault replaced or repaired to design specifications
	<u>A</u>	Baffles damaged	Baffles corroding, cracking warping, and/or showing signs of failure	Repair or replace baffles to specification
Filter Media	<u>A, E</u>	Standing water in vault	Varies – Refer to Manufacturer’s requirements.	No standing water in vault 24 hours after a rain event
	<u>A</u>	Short circuiting	Flows do not properly enter filter cartridges	Flows go through filter media
Underdrains and Clean-Outs	<u>A</u>	Sediment/debris	Underdrains or clean-outs partially plugged or filled with sediment and/or debris	Underdrains and clean-outs free of sediment and debris
Inlet/Outlet Pipe	<u>A</u>	Sediment accumulation	Sediment filling 1/3 or more of the pipe	Inlet/outlet pipes clear of sediment
	<u>B, W, E</u>	Trash and debris	Trash and debris accumulated in inlet/outlet pipes (includes floatables and non-floatables)	No trash or debris in pipes
	<u>A</u>	Damaged	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Cracks wider than ½ inch at the joint of the inlet/outlet pipes Any evidence of soil entering at the joints of the inlet/outlet pipes 	Cracks repaired, and no evidence of soil entering

No. 17 - Proprietary Technology Filter Cartridge Type Filter Systems (example: BayFilter, FloGard PerkFilter, StormFilter)				
Maintenance Component	Recommended Inspection Frequency ^{1,2}	Defect or Problem	Condition When Maintenance is Needed	Results Expected When Maintenance is Performed
Access Maintenance Hole	A	Cover/lid not in place	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Cover/lid is missing or only partially in place Any open maintenance hole requires immediate maintenance 	Maintenance hole access cover/lid in place and secure
	A	Locking mechanism not working	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Mechanism cannot be opened by one maintenance person with proper tools Bolts cannot be seated Self-locking cover/lid does not work 	Mechanism opens with proper tools
	A	Cover/lid difficult to remove	One maintenance person cannot remove cover/lid after applying 80 lbs of lift	Cover/lid can be removed and reinstalled by one maintenance person
	A	Cover/lid rocking or noisy	Lid rocking when driven over	Cover/lid not rocking
	A	Ladder rungs unsafe	Missing rungs, misalignment, rust, or cracks	Ladder meets design standards and allows maintenance person safe access
Large Access Doors/Plate	A	Difficult to open	Large access doors or plates cannot be opened/removed using normal equipment	Replace or repair access door so it can open as designed.
	A	Damaged	Hatch doors show major dents and stress	Replace to support surface loading and uses
	A	Gaps, does not cover completely	Large access doors not flat and/or access opening not completely covered.	Doors close flat and cover access opening completely.

No. 17 - Proprietary Technology Filter Cartridge Type Filter Systems (example: BayFilter, FloGard PerkFilter, StormFilter)				
Maintenance Component	Recommended Inspection Frequency ^{1,2}	Defect or Problem	Condition When Maintenance is Needed	Results Expected When Maintenance is Performed
Large Access Doors/Plate (continued)	A	Lifting rings missing, rusted	Lifting rings not capable of lifting weight of door or plate.	Lifting rings sufficient to lift or remove door or plate.

¹ [Inspection frequency:](#)

[A = Annually; B = Biannually; M = Monthly; E = Recommend that additional inspections be performed as appropriate after major events \(e.g., >1 inch of precipitation in 24 hours or environmental incident that causes contaminant release; Q = Quarterly \(four times per year\); W = Recommend that at least one inspection occur during the wet season, preferably after trees have lost their leaves](#)

² [Inspection frequencies provided are recommendations only. Proprietary technologies shall be inspected on a frequency as recommended by the manufacturer.](#)

No. 18 - API Oil/Water Separators				
Maintenance Component	Recommended Inspection Frequency ¹	Defect	Condition When Maintenance is Needed	Results Expected When Maintenance is Performed
Facility – General Requirements	A, E	Trash and debris	Any trash or debris which impairs the function of the facility	Trash and debris removed from facility
	A, E	Contaminants and pollution	Floating oil in excess of 1 inch in first chamber, any oil in other chambers or other contaminants of any type in any chamber	No contaminants present other than a surface oil film
Vault Treatment Area	A, E	Sediment accumulation	Sediment accumulates exceeds 6 inches in the vault	No sediment in the vault.
	A, E	Discharge water not clear	Inspection of discharge water shows obvious signs of poor water quality- effluent discharge from vault shows thick visible sheen	Effluent discharge is clear
	A, E	Trash or debris accumulation	Any trash and debris accumulation in vault (floatables and non-floatables)	Vault is clear of trash and debris
	A, E	Oil accumulation	Oil accumulations that exceed 1 inch, at the surface of the water in the oil/water separator chamber	No visible oil depth on water
Vault Structure	A	Damage to wall, frame, bottom, and/or top slab	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Cracks wider than ½ inch Any evidence of soil particles entering the structure through the cracks Maintenance/inspection personnel determines that the vault is not structurally sound 	Vault replaced or repaired to design specifications
	A	Baffles damaged	Baffles corroding, cracking, warping and/or showing signs of failure	Repair or replace baffles to specifications

No. 18 - API Oil/Water Separators				
Maintenance Component	Recommended Inspection Frequency¹	Defect	Condition When Maintenance is Needed	Results Expected When Maintenance is Performed
Gravity Drain	A	Inoperable valve	Valve will not open and close	Valve opens and closes normally
	A	Valve will not seal	Valve does not seal completely	Valve completely seals closed
Inlet/Outlet Pipe	A	Sediment accumulation	Sediment filling 1/3 or more of the pipe	Inlet/outlet pipes clear of sediment
	B, W, E	Trash and debris	Trash and debris accumulated in inlet/outlet pipes (includes floatables and non-floatables)	No trash or debris in pipes
	A	Damaged	Cracks, broken welds, seams or any other conditions that allows water to be discharged from other than the submerged portion of the tee	Water will be discharged from the submerged portion of the tee
	A	Missing	When the required inlet or outlet tee is not installed	Tees installed
	A	Permanently installed	When the tee is grouted to the inlet or outlet pipe and is not removable to allow for maintenance and inspection	Tee removable for maintenance and inspection
	Access Maintenance Hole	A	Cover/lid not in place	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Cover/lid is missing or only partially in place Any open maintenance hole requires immediate maintenance
A		Locking mechanism not working	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Mechanism cannot be opened by one maintenance person with proper tools Bolts cannot be seated Self-locking cover/lid does not work 	Mechanism opens with proper tools
A		Cover/lid difficult to remove	One maintenance person cannot remove cover/lid after applying 80 lbs of lift	Cover/lid can be removed and reinstalled by one maintenance person

No. 18 - API Oil/Water Separators				
Maintenance Component	Recommended Inspection Frequency ¹	Defect	Condition When Maintenance is Needed	Results Expected When Maintenance is Performed
Access Maintenance Hole (continued)	A	Ladder rungs unsafe	Missing rungs, misalignment, rust, or cracks	Ladder meets design standards and allows maintenance person safe access
Large Access Doors/Plate	A	Damaged or difficult to open	Large access doors or plates cannot be opened/removed using normal equipment	Replace or repair access door so it can open as designed
	A	Gaps, does not cover completely	Large access doors not flat and/or access opening not completely covered	Doors close flat and cover access opening completely
	A	Lifting rings missing, rusted	Lifting rings not capable of lifting weight of door or cover/lid	Lifting rings sufficient to lift or remove cover/lid

¹ [Inspection frequency:](#)

[A = Annually; B = Biannually; M = Monthly; E = Recommend that additional inspections be performed as appropriate after major events \(e.g., >1 inch of precipitation in 24 hours or environmental incident that causes contaminant release; Q = Quarterly \(four times per year\); W = Recommend that at least one inspection occur during the wet season, preferably after trees have lost their leaves](#)

No. 19 - Coalescing Plate Oil/Water Separators				
Maintenance Component	<u>Recommended Inspection Frequency</u> ¹	Defect	Condition When Maintenance is Needed	Results Expected When Maintenance is Performed
Facility – General Requirements	<u>A, E</u>	Trash and debris	Any trash or debris which impairs the function of the facility	Trash and debris removed from facility
	<u>A, E</u>	Contaminants and pollution	Floating oil in excess of 1 inch in first chamber, any oil in other chambers or other contaminants of any type in any chamber	No contaminants present other than a surface oil film
Vault Treatment Area	<u>A, E</u>	Sediment accumulation in the forebay	Sediment accumulation of 6 inches or greater in the forebay	No sediment in the forebay
	<u>A, E</u>	Discharge water not clear	Inspection of discharge water shows obvious signs of poor water quality – effluent discharge from vault shows thick visible sheen	Repair function of plates so effluent is clear
	<u>A, E</u>	Trash or debris accumulation	Trash and debris accumulation in vault (floatables and non-floatables)	Trash and debris removed from vault
	<u>A, E</u>	Oil accumulation	Oil accumulation that exceeds 1 inch at the water surface in the in the coalescing plate chamber	No visible oil depth on water and coalescing plates clear of oil
Coalescing Plates	<u>A</u>	Damaged	Plate media broken, deformed, cracked and/or showing signs of failure	Replace that portion of media pack or entire plate pack depending on severity of failure
	<u>A, E</u>	Sediment accumulation	Any sediment accumulation which interferes with the operation of the coalescing plates	No sediment accumulation interfering with the coalescing plates

No. 19 - Coalescing Plate Oil/Water Separators				
Maintenance Component	Recommended Inspection Frequency ¹	Defect	Condition When Maintenance is Needed	Results Expected When Maintenance is Performed
Vault Structure	A	Damage to wall, frame, bottom, and/or top slab	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Cracks wider than ½ inch Any evidence of soil particles entering the structure through the cracks Maintenance inspection personnel determines that the vault is not structurally sound 	Vault replaced or repaired to design specifications
	A	Baffles damaged	Baffles corroding, cracking, warping and/or showing signs of failure	Repair or replace baffles to specifications
Ventilation Pipes	A	Plugged	Any obstruction to the ventilation pipes	Ventilation pipes are clear
Shutoff Valve	A	Damaged or inoperable	Shutoff valve cannot be opened or closed	Shutoff valve operates normally
Inlet/Outlet Pipe	A	Sediment accumulation	Sediment filling 1/3 or more of the pipe	Inlet/outlet pipes clear of sediment
	B, W, E	Trash and debris	Trash and debris accumulated in inlet/outlet pipes (includes floatables and non-floatables)	No trash or debris in pipes
	A	Damaged	Cracks, broken welds, seams or any other conditions that allows water to be discharged from other than the submerged portion of the tee	Water will be discharged from the submerged portion of the tee
	A	Missing	When the required inlet or outlet tee is not installed	Tees installed
	A	Permanently installed	When the tee is grouted to the inlet or outlet pipe and is not removable to allow for maintenance and inspection	Tee removable for maintenance and inspection

No. 19 - Coalescing Plate Oil/Water Separators				
Maintenance Component	Recommended Inspection Frequency¹	Defect	Condition When Maintenance is Needed	Results Expected When Maintenance is Performed
Access Maintenance Hole	A	Cover/lid not in place	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Cover/lid is missing or only partially in place Any open maintenance hole requires immediate maintenance 	Maintenance hole access cover/lid in place and secure
	A	Locking mechanism not working	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Mechanism cannot be opened by one maintenance person with proper tools Bolts cannot be seated Self-locking cover/lid does not work 	Mechanism opens with proper tools
	A	Cover/lid difficult to remove	One maintenance person cannot remove cover/lid after applying 80 lbs of lift	Cover/lid can be removed and reinstalled by one maintenance person
	A	Ladder rungs unsafe	Missing rungs, misalignment, rust, or cracks	Ladder meets design standards and allows maintenance person safe access
Large Access Doors/Plate	A	Damaged or difficult to open	Large access doors or plates cannot be opened/removed using normal equipment.	Replace or repair access door so it can be opened as designed
	A	Gaps, does not cover completely	Large access doors not flat and/or access opening not completely covered	Doors close flat and cover access opening completely
	A	Lifting rings missing, rusted	Lifting rings not capable of lifting weight of door or plate	Lifting rings sufficient to lift or remove door or plate

¹ [Inspection frequency:](#)

[A = Annually; B = Biannually; M = Monthly; E = Recommend that additional inspections be performed as appropriate after major events \(e.g., >1 inch of precipitation in 24 hours or environmental incident that causes contaminant release; Q = Quarterly \(four times per year\); W = Recommend that at least one inspection occur during the wet season, preferably after trees have lost their leaves](#)

No. 20 - Catch Basin Filter Socks <u>Inserts</u>				
Maintenance Component	Recommended Inspection Frequency ^{1,2}	Defect or Problem	Conditions When Maintenance is Needed	Results Expected When Maintenance is Performed
Media Insert ²	<u>M</u>	Visible oil	Visible oil sheen passing through media	Media insert replaced
	<u>M</u>	Insert does not fit catch basin properly	Flow gets into catch basin without going through media	All flow goes through media
	<u>M</u>	Filter media plugged	Filter media plugged	Flow through filter media is normal
	<u>M</u>	Oil absorbent media saturated	Media oil saturated	Oil absorbent media replaced
	<u>M</u>	Water saturated	Catch basin insert is saturated with water, which no longer has the capacity to absorb	Insert replaced
	<u>M</u>	Service life exceeded	Regular interval replacement due to typical average life of product	Media replaced at manufacturer's recommended interval

¹ [Inspection frequency:](#)

[A = Annually; B = Biannually; M = Monthly; E = Recommend that additional inspections be performed as appropriate after major events \(e.g., >1 inch of precipitation in 24 hours or environmental incident that causes contaminant release; Q = Quarterly \(four times per year\); W = Recommend that at least one inspection occur during the wet season, preferably after trees have lost their leaves](#)

² [Inspection frequencies provided are recommendations only. Catch basin filter socks shall be inspected on a frequency as recommended by the manufacturer.](#)

No. 21 - Proprietary Technology Filterra System				
Maintenance Component	Recommended Inspection Frequency ^{1,2}	Defect or Problem	Condition When Maintenance is Needed	Results Expected When Maintenance is Performed
In addition to the specific maintenance criteria provided below, all manufacturers' requirements shall be followed.				
Facility – General Requirements	A	Life cycle	Once per year, except mulch and trash removal twice per year	Facility is re-inspected and any needed maintenance performed
	B, E	Contaminants and pollution	Any evidence of contaminants or pollution such as oil, gasoline, concrete slurries, or paint	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Materials removed and disposed of according to applicable regulations Source control BMPs implemented if appropriate No contaminants present other than a surface oil film
Inlet	B, E	Excessive sediment or trash accumulation	Accumulated sediments or trash impair free flow of water into system	Inlet should be free of obstructions allowing free distributed flow of water into system
Mulch Cover	B, E	Trash and floatable debris accumulation	Excessive trash and/or debris accumulation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Minimal trash or other debris on mulch cover Mulch cover raked level
	B, E	"Ponding" of water on mulch cover	"Ponding" in unit could be indicative of clogging due to excessive fine sediment accumulation or spill of petroleum oils	Stormwater should drain freely and evenly through mulch cover
Proprietary Filter Media/ Vegetation Substrate	B, E	"Ponding" of water on mulch cover after mulch cover has been maintained	Excessive fine sediment passes the mulch cover and clogs the filter media/vegetative substrate	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Stormwater should drain freely and evenly through mulch cover Replace substrate and vegetation when needed

No. 21 - Proprietary Technology Filterra System				
Maintenance Component	Recommended Inspection Frequency ^{1,2}	Defect or Problem	Condition When Maintenance is Needed	Results Expected When Maintenance is Performed
Vegetation	B, E	Plants not growing or in poor condition	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Soil/mulch too wet • Evidence of spill • Incorrect plant selection • Pest infestation • Vandalism to plants 	Plants should be healthy and pest free
			Media/mulch too dry	Irrigation is required
	B, E	Plants absent	Plants absent	Appropriate plants are present
	B, E	Excessive plant growth	Excessive plant growth inhibits facility function or becomes a hazard for pedestrian and vehicular circulation and safety	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Pruning and/or thinning vegetation maintains proper plant density • Appropriate plants are present
Structure, if used	B	Structure has visible cracks	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Cracks wider than ½ inch • Evidence of soil particles entering the structure through the cracks 	Structure is sealed and structurally sound

¹ [Inspection frequency:](#)

[A = Annually; B = Biannually; M = Monthly; E = Recommend that additional inspections be performed as appropriate after major events \(e.g., >1 inch of precipitation in 24 hours or environmental incident that causes contaminant release; Q = Quarterly \(four times per year\); W = Recommend that at least one inspection occur during the wet season, preferably after trees have lost their leaves](#)

² [Inspection frequencies provided are recommendations only. Proprietary technologies shall be inspected on a frequency as recommended by the manufacturer.](#)

No. 22 - Proprietary Technology Modular Wetland System				
Maintenance Component	Recommended Inspection Frequency^{1,2}	Defect or Problem	Condition When Maintenance is Needed	Results Expected When Maintenance is Performed
<u>In addition to the specific maintenance criteria provided below, all manufacturers' requirements shall be followed.</u>				
<u>Facility – General Requirements</u>	<u>B</u>	<u>Trash and debris</u>	<u>Any trash or debris which impairs the function of the facility</u>	<u>Trash and debris removed from facility</u>
	<u>B</u>	<u>Contaminants and pollution</u>	<u>Any evidence of contaminants or pollution such as oil, gasoline, concrete slurries, or paint</u>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <u>Materials removed and disposed of according to applicable regulations</u> • <u>Source control BMPs implemented if appropriate</u> • <u>No contaminants present other than a surface oil film</u>
	<u>B</u>	<u>Odor</u>	<u>Septic or foul odor coming from inside the system</u>	<u>Odors are eliminated</u>
	<u>B</u>	<u>Standing water</u>	<u>Standing water observed after a prolonged dry period</u>	<u>No standing water</u>
<u>Inlet/Outlet Pipe</u>	<u>B</u>	<u>Excessive sediment or trash accumulation</u>	<u>Accumulated sediments or trash impair free flow of water into system</u>	<u>Inlet should be free of obstructions allowing free distributed flow of water into system</u>
	<u>B</u>	<u>Pipe damage or blockage</u>	<u>Pipe damaged or otherwise not functioning properly</u>	<u>Pipe is repaired and allowing free flow of water into system</u>
<u>Pre-Treatment Chamber</u>	<u>B</u>	<u>Sediment accumulation</u>	<u>Sediment accumulation in the pre-treatment chamber</u>	<u>Sediment removed from the pre-treatment chamber</u>
	<u>B</u>	<u>Access cover damage or difficulty opening</u>	<u>Access cover (manhole cover/grate) is damaged or cannot be opened using normal lifting pressure</u>	<u>Access cover is repaired and can be opened using normal lifting pressure.</u>

No. 22 - Proprietary Technology Modular Wetland System				
Maintenance Component	Recommended Inspection Frequency^{1,2}	Defect or Problem	Condition When Maintenance is Needed	Results Expected When Maintenance is Performed
<u>Pre-Treatment Chamber (continued)</u>	<u>B</u>	<u>Obstruction or clogging of screening device</u>	<u>Contaminants and pollutants collected by screen are obstructing flow of water into the system</u>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <u>All pollutants removed and disposed of according to applicable regulations</u> • <u>Screen is free of obstructions and allows free flow of water into system</u>
	<u>B</u>	<u>Accumulated pollutants or debris in separation chamber</u>	<u>Accumulated pollutants or debris impedes function of unit</u>	<u>All pollutants removed and disposed of according to applicable regulations</u>
<u>Filter Media</u>	<u>A</u>	<u>Life cycle</u>	<u>Regular interval replacement due to typical average life of product or clogging</u>	<u>Old filter media is removed and new filter media is installed</u>
<u>Structure</u>	<u>A</u>	<u>Unit shows signs of structural deterioration</u>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <u>Visible cracks wider than ½ inch</u> • <u>Evidence of soil particles entering the structure through the cracks</u> • <u>Damage to frame</u> 	<u>Structure is sealed and structurally sound</u>
<u>Access Cover</u>	<u>A</u>	<u>Hard to open</u>	<u>Cannot be easily opened</u>	<u>Access lid is repaired or replaced</u>
	<u>A</u>	<u>Buried</u>	<u>Buried</u>	<u>Access lid functions as designed (refer to record drawings for design intent)</u>
	<u>A</u>	<u>Missing cover</u>	<u>Cover missing</u>	<u>Cover replaced</u>
<u>Vegetation</u>	<u>B</u>	<u>Plants not growing or in poor condition</u>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <u>Soil/mulch too wet</u> • <u>Evidence of spill</u> • <u>Incorrect plant selection</u> • <u>Pest infestation</u> • <u>Vandalism to plants</u> 	<u>Plants should be healthy and pest free.</u>

No. 22 - Proprietary Technology Modular Wetland System				
Maintenance Component	Recommended Inspection Frequency^{1,2}	Defect or Problem	Condition When Maintenance is Needed	Results Expected When Maintenance is Performed
<u>Vegetation (continued)</u>	<u>B</u>	<u>Excessive plant growth</u>	<u>Excessive plant growth inhibits facility function or becomes a hazard for pedestrian and vehicular circulation and safety</u>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <u>Pruning and/or thinning vegetation maintains proper plant density</u> • <u>Appropriate plants are present</u>

¹ Inspection frequency:

A = Annually; B = Biannually; M = Monthly; E = Recommend that additional inspections be performed as appropriate after major events (e.g., >1 inch of precipitation in 24 hours or environmental incident that causes contaminant release; Q = Quarterly (four times per year); W = Recommend that at least one inspection occur during the wet season, preferably after trees have lost their leaves

² Inspection frequencies provided are recommendations only. Proprietary technologies shall be inspected on a frequency as recommended by the manufacturer.

No. 2322 - Bioretention Facilities				
Maintenance Component	Recommended Inspection Frequency¹	Defect or Problem	Conditions When Maintenance is Needed	Results Expected When Maintenance is Performed
Facility – General Requirements	B, E	Pests: Insects/Rodents	Pest of concern is present and impacting facility function	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Pests removed or destroyed and facility returned to original functionality • Do not use pesticides or <i>Bacillus thuringiensis israelensis (Bti)</i>
	A, E	Trash	Trash and debris present	No trash and debris present
	B, E	Contaminants and pollution	Any evidence of contaminants or pollution such as oil, gasoline, concrete slurries, or paint	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Materials removed and disposed of according to applicable regulations • Source control BMPs implemented if appropriate • No contaminants present other than a surface oil film
Earthen Side Slopes and Berms	B, E	Erosion	Erosion (gullies/rills) greater than 2 inches deep around inlets, outlet, and alongside slopes	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Cause of erosion is eliminated • Damaged area is stabilized (regrade, rock, vegetation, erosion control blanket) <p>For deep channels or cuts (over 3 inches in ponding depth), temporary erosion control measures are in place until permanent repairs can be made.</p>
			Erosion of sides causes slope to become a hazard	The hazard is eliminated and slopes are stabilized
	A, E	Settlement	Settlement greater than 3 inches (relative to undisturbed sections of berm)	The design height is restored with additional mulch

No. 2322 - Bioretention Facilities				
Maintenance Component	Recommended Inspection Frequency ¹	Defect or Problem	Conditions When Maintenance is Needed	Results Expected When Maintenance is Performed
Earthen Side Slopes and Berms (continued)	A, E	Berm leakage	Downstream face of berm wet, seeps or leaks evident	Holes are plugged and berm is compacted (may require consultation with licensed engineer, particularly for larger berms)
			Any evidence of rodent holes or water piping in berm	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Rodents (refer to "Pests: Insects/Rodents") removed or destroyed • Berm repaired/compact ed
Concrete Sidewalls	A	Cracks	Rot, cracks, or failure of concrete sidewalls	Concrete is repaired or replaced
Rockery Sidewalls	A	Instable rockery	Rockery side walls are insecure	Rockery sidewalls are stable (may require consultation with licensed engineer, particularly for walls 4 feet or greater in height)
Facility Bottom Area	B	Sediment accumulation	Accumulated sediment to extent that infiltration rate is reduced (refer to "Bioretention Soil") or surface storage capacity significantly impacted	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Sediment cleaned out to restore facility shape and depth • Damaged vegetation is replaced and mulched • Source of sediment identified and controlled (if feasible)
	B	Leaf accumulation	Accumulated leaves in facility	No leaves clogging outlet structure or impeding water flow
Check Dams and Weirs	A, E	Sediment, vegetation, or debris accumulation	Sediment, vegetation, or debris accumulated at or blocking (or having the potential to block) check dam, flow control weir, or orifice	Blockage is cleared

No. <u>2322</u> - Bioretention Facilities				
Maintenance Component	<u>Recommended Inspection Frequency</u> ¹	Defect or Problem	Conditions When Maintenance is Needed	Results Expected When Maintenance is Performed
<u>Check Dams and Weirs (continued)</u>	<u>A, E</u>	Erosion	Erosion and/or undercutting present	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> No eroded or undercut areas in bioretention facility Cause of erosion or undercutting addressed Check dam or weir is repaired
	<u>A</u>	Unlevel top of weir	Grade board or top of weir damaged or not level	Weir restored to level position
Bioretention Soil	<u>As needed</u>	Ponded water	Water remains in the basin 48 hours or longer after the end of a storm	Cause of ponded water is identified and addressed: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Leaf litter/debris is removed Underdrain is clear Other water inputs (e.g., groundwater, illicit connections) investigated Contributing area verified and facility size is evaluated If items #1–4 do not solve the problem, imported bioretention soil is replaced and replanted.
	<u>As needed</u>	Protection of soil	Maintenance will occur requiring entrance into the facility footprint	Maintenance is performed without compacting bioretention soil media
Splash Block Inlet	<u>B</u>	Water not properly directed to facility	Water is not being directed properly to the facility and away from the inlet structure	Blocks are reconfigured to direct water to facility and away from structure
Curb Cut Inlet/Outlet	<u>A, E</u>	Accumulated debris	Accumulated leaves, sediment, debris or vegetation at curb cuts	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Blockage is cleared Source of the blockage is identified and action is taken to prevent future blockages

No. 2322 - Bioretention Facilities				
Maintenance Component	Recommended Inspection Frequency¹	Defect or Problem	Conditions When Maintenance is Needed	Results Expected When Maintenance is Performed
Inlet/Outlet Pipe	A	Damaged pipe	Pipe is damaged	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Pipe is repaired/replaced • No cracks more than ¼-inch wide at the joint of inlet/outlet pipes exist
	A	Clogged pipe	Pipe is clogged	Pipe is clear
	A, E	Accumulated debris	Accumulated leaves, sediment, debris or vegetation at inlet or outlet pipe	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Pipe is clear of debris • Source of the blockage is identified and action is taken to prevent future blockages
	A, E	Blocked access	Maintain access for inspections	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Vegetation is cleared within 1 foot of inlets and outlets • Access pathways are maintained
	B	Erosion	Water disrupts soil media	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • No eroded or scoured areas in bioretention facility • Cause of erosion or scour addressed. • Pipes or splash blocks are reconfigured or repaired • A cover of rock or cobbles or other erosion protection measure maintained (e.g., matting) to protect the ground where concentrated water enters or exits the facility (e.g., a pipe, curb cut or swale)
Overflow	A, E	Blocked overflow	Capacity reduced by sediment or debris	No sediment or debris in overflow

No. 2322 - Bioretention Facilities				
Maintenance Component	Recommended Inspection Frequency ¹	Defect or Problem	Conditions When Maintenance is Needed	Results Expected When Maintenance is Performed
Underdrain Pipe	A	Blocked underdrain	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Plant roots, sediment or debris reducing capacity of underdrain Prolonged surface ponding (refer to "Bioretention Soil") 	Underdrains and orifice are free of sediment and debris
Facility Bottom Area and Upland Slope Vegetation	M	Lack of vegetation	Vegetation survival rate falls below 75 percent within first 2 years of establishment (unless project O&M manual or record drawing stipulates more or less than 75 percent survival rate)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Plants are healthy and pest free Cause of poor vegetation growth addressed Bioretention facility is replanted as necessary to obtain 75 percent survival rate or greater Plant selection is appropriate for site growing conditions
Trees and Shrubs	A	Causing problems for operation of facility	Large trees and shrubs interfere with operation of the facility or access for maintenance	Trees and shrubs do not hinder facility performance or maintenance activities
	A	Dead trees or shrubs	Standing dead vegetation is present	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Trees and shrubs do not hinder facility performance or maintenance activities Dead vegetation is removed Cause of dead vegetation is addressed Specific plants with high mortality rate are replaced with more appropriate species

No. 2322 - Bioretention Facilities				
Maintenance Component	<u>Recommended Inspection Frequency</u> ¹	Defect or Problem	Conditions When Maintenance is Needed	Results Expected When Maintenance is Performed
Trees and Shrubs Adjacent to Vehicle Travel Areas (or areas where visibility needs to be maintained)	<u>A</u>	Safety issues	Vegetation causes some visibility (line of sight) or driver safety issues	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Appropriate height for sight clearance is maintained • Regular pruning maintains visual sight lines for safety or clearance along a walk or drive • Tree or shrub is removed or transplanted if presenting a continual safety hazard
Emergent Vegetation	<u>M</u>	Conveyance blocked	Vegetation compromises conveyance	Sedges and rushes are clear of dead foliage
Noxious Weeds	<u>M (March – October)</u>	Presence of noxious weeds	Any noxious or nuisance vegetation which may constitute a hazard to City personnel or the public	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Noxious and nuisance vegetation removed according to applicable regulations • No danger of noxious vegetation where City personnel or the public might normally be
Excessive Vegetation	<u>M</u>	Adjacent facilities compromised	Low-lying vegetation growing beyond facility edge onto sidewalks, paths, or street edge poses pedestrian safety hazard or may clog adjacent permeable pavement surfaces due to associated leaf litter, mulch, and soil	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Vegetation does not impede function of adjacent facilities or pose as safety hazard • Groundcovers and shrubs trimmed at facility edge • Excessive leaf litter is removed.

No. 2322 - Bioretention Facilities				
Maintenance Component	Recommended Inspection Frequency ¹	Defect or Problem	Conditions When Maintenance is Needed	Results Expected When Maintenance is Performed
Excessive Vegetation (continued)	M	Causes facility to not function properly	Excessive vegetation density inhibits stormwater flow beyond design ponding or becomes a hazard for pedestrian and vehicular circulation and safety	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Pruning and/or thinning vegetation maintains proper plant density and aesthetics Plants that are weak, broken, or not true to form are removed or replaced in-kind Appropriate plants are present
Mulch	A	Lack of mulch	Bare spots (without mulch cover) are present or mulch depth less than 2 inches	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Facility has a minimum 3-inch layer of an appropriate type of mulch Mulch is kept away from woody stems
Plant Watering	Weekly or as required (May – September)	Plant establishment	Plant establishment period (1–3 years)	Plants are watered as necessary during periods of no rain to ensure plant establishment
Summer Watering (after establishment)	Weekly or as required (May – September)	Drought period	Established vegetation (after 3 years)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Plants are watered as necessary during drought conditions Trees are watered up to 5 years after planting

¹ [Inspection frequency:](#)

[A = Annually; B = Biannually; M = Monthly; E = Recommend that additional inspections be performed as appropriate after major events \(e.g., >1 inch of precipitation in 24 hours or environmental incident that causes contaminant release; Q = Quarterly \(four times per year\); W = Recommend that at least one inspection occur during the wet season, preferably after trees have lost their leaves](#)

No. 2423 - Cisterns				
Maintenance Component	Recommended Inspection Frequency¹	Defect or Problem	Conditions When Maintenance Is Needed	Results Expected When Maintenance Is Performed
Roof	B	Debris accumulation in cistern	Debris has accumulated	No debris in cistern
Gutter	B	Debris accumulation in cistern	Debris has accumulated	No debris in cistern or gutter
Screens at the Top of Downspout and Cistern Inlet	A	Debris accumulation in cistern	Screen has deteriorated or is missing	Screen is in place and functions as designed
	Monthly (October – April), E		Preventative maintenance	No debris in cistern or accumulated on screen
Overflow Pipe	B	Damaged	Pipe is cracked, joints and fittings not sealed	Overflow pipe is watertight and does not leak.
	B	Discharge is sporadic, cistern overtops	Debris has accumulated blocking flow	Overflow pipe can convey overflow to point of discharge.
Cistern	A	Accumulated debris and/or sediment	More than 6 inches of accumulation in bottom of cistern	Accumulation of debris and/or sediment removed
Low Flow Orifice (detention cistern)	M (October – April), E	Cistern overflows are too frequent	Debris or other obstruction of orifice	Orifice is clear
Delivery and Distribution System (harvesting)	Varies	None – ongoing maintenance activity	Ongoing maintenance (e.g., replacing and/or cleaning filters, removing sediment and other pollutants from storage systems)	Manufacturer's, installer's, or designer's instructions for O&M are followed
Access and Safety	Ongoing	None – ongoing maintenance activity	Access to cistern required for maintenance or cleaning	Any cistern opening that could allow the entry of people is marked: "DANGER—CONFINED SPACE"
Pests	B	Mosquito infestation	Standing water remains for more than 3 days following storms	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> All inlets, overflows and other openings are protected with mosquito screens No mosquito infestation present

¹ [Inspection frequency:](#)
[A = Annually; B = Biannually; M = Monthly; E = Recommend that additional inspections be performed as appropriate after major events \(e.g., >1 inch of precipitation in 24 hours or environmental incident that causes contaminant release; Q = Quarterly \(four times per year\); W = Recommend that at least one inspection occur during the wet season, preferably after trees have lost their leaves](#)

No. 2524 - Downspout, Sheet Flow, and Concentrated Dispersion Systems				
Maintenance Component	Recommended Inspection Frequency ¹	Defect or Problem	Conditions When Maintenance Is Needed	Results Expected When Maintenance Is Performed
Splash Block	B	Water directed toward building	Water is being directed towards building structure	Blocks direct water away from building structure
	B	Water causing erosion	Water disrupts soil media	Blocks are reconfigured/repared and media is restored
Transition Zone	B, E	Erosion	Adjacent soil erosion; uneven surface creating concentrated flow discharge; or less than 2 foot of width	No eroded or scoured areas Cause of erosion or scour is addressed
Dispersion Trench	B	Concentrated flow	Visual evidence of water discharging at concentrated points along trench (normal condition is a "sheet flow" from edge of trench; intent is to prevent erosion damage)	No debris on trench surface Notched grade board or other distributor type is aligned to prevent erosion Trench is rebuilt to standards, if necessary
Surface of Trench	A, E	Accumulated debris	Accumulated trash, debris, or sediment on drain rock surface impedes sheet flow from facility	Trash or debris is removed/disposed in accordance with local solid waste requirements
	A, E	Vegetation impeding flow	Vegetation/moss present on drain rock surface impedes sheet flow from facility	Freely draining drain rock surface
Pipe(s) to Trench	A	Accumulated debris in drains	Accumulation of trash, debris, or sediment in roof drains, gutters, driveway drains, area drains, etc.	No trash or debris in roof drains, gutters, driveway drains, or area drains
	A	Accumulated debris in inlet pipe	Pipe from sump to trench or drywell has accumulated sediment or is plugged	No sediment or debris in inlet/outlet pipe screen or inlet/outlet pipe
	A	Damaged pipes	Cracked, collapsed, broken, or misaligned drain pipes	No cracks more than ¼-inch wide at the joint of the inlet/outlet pipe

No. <u>2524</u> - Downspout, Sheet Flow, and Concentrated Dispersion Systems				
Maintenance Component	<u>Recommended Inspection Frequency</u> ¹	Defect or Problem	Conditions When Maintenance Is Needed	Results Expected When Maintenance Is Performed
Sump		Accumulated sediment	Sediment in the sump	Sump contains no sediment
Access Lid		Hard to open	Cannot be easily opened	Access lid is repaired or replaced
		Buried	Buried	Access lid functions as designed (refer to record drawings for design intent)
		Missing cover	Cover missing	Cover replaced
Rock Pad (concentrated flow dispersion)	<u>A</u>	Inadequate rock cover	Only one layer of rock exists above native soil in area 6 square feet or larger, or any exposure of native soil	Rock pad is repaired/replaced to meet design standards
	<u>A</u>	Erosion	Soil erosion in or adjacent to rock pad	Rock pad is repaired/replaced to meet design standards
Dispersal Area (general)	<u>A</u>	Erosion	Erosion (gullies/rills) greater than 2 inches deep in dispersal area	No eroded or scoured areas Cause of erosion or scour is addressed
	<u>A</u>	Accumulated sediment	Accumulated sediment or debris to extent that blocks or channelizes flow path	No excess sediment or debris in dispersal area. Sediment source is addressed (if feasible)
Ponded Water	<u>As needed</u>	Ponded water	Standing surface water in dispersion area remains for more than 3 days after the end of a storm event	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • System freely drains • Standing water in dispersion area does not persist for more than 3 days after a storm event • Cause of the standing water (e.g., grade depressions, compacted soil) addressed

No. 2524 - Downspout, Sheet Flow, and Concentrated Dispersion Systems				
Maintenance Component	Recommended Inspection Frequency ¹	Defect or Problem	Conditions When Maintenance Is Needed	Results Expected When Maintenance Is Performed
Vegetation	M	Plant survival	Dispersal area vegetation in establishment period (1–2 years, or additional 3rd year) during extreme dry weather)	Vegetation healthy and watered weekly during periods of no rain to ensure plant establishment
	M	Lack of vegetation allowing erosion	Poor vegetation cover such that erosion is occurring	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Vegetation healthy and watered. • No eroded or scoured areas present • Cause of erosion or scour addressed • Plant species appropriate for the soil and moisture conditions
	M	Vegetation blocking flow	Vegetation inhibits dispersed flow along flow path	Vegetation is trimmed, weeded, or replanted to restore dispersed flow path
	M (March – October)	Presence of noxious weeds	Any noxious or nuisance vegetation which may constitute a hazard to City personnel or the public	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Noxious and nuisance vegetation removed according to applicable regulations • No danger of noxious vegetation where City personnel or the public might normally be
Sump	A	Accumulated sediment	Accumulated sediment in the sump exceeds 30 percent of storage volume	No sediment in sump or inlet/outlet pipes
Access Lid	A	Hard to open	Cannot be easily opened	Access lid is repaired or replaced
	A	Buried	Buried	Access lid functions as designed (refer to record drawings for design intent)
	A	Missing cover	Cover missing	Cover replaced

No. 2524 - Downspout, Sheet Flow, and Concentrated Dispersion Systems				
Maintenance Component	Recommended Inspection Frequency ¹	Defect or Problem	Conditions When Maintenance Is Needed	Results Expected When Maintenance Is Performed
Pest Control	B	Mosquito infestation	Standing surface water in dispersion area remains for more than 3 days after the end of a storm	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • System freely drains • Standing water in dispersion area does not persist for more than 3 days after a storm event • Cause of the standing water (e.g., grade depressions, compacted soil) addressed
Rodents	As required	Presence of rodents	Rodent holes or mounds disturb dispersion flow paths	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Rodents removed or destroyed • Holes filled • Flow path revegetated

¹ [Inspection frequency:](#)

[A = Annually; B = Biannually; M = Monthly; E = Recommend that additional inspections be performed as appropriate after major events \(e.g., >1 inch of precipitation in 24 hours or environmental incident that causes contaminant release; Q = Quarterly \(four times per year\); W = Recommend that at least one inspection occur during the wet season, preferably after trees have lost their leaves](#)

No. 2625 - Permeable Pavement ¹				
Maintenance Component	Recommended Inspection Frequency ²	Defect or Problem	Conditions When Maintenance Is Needed	Results Expected When Maintenance Is Performed
Facility – General Requirements	A	Unstable adjacent area	Runoff from adjacent pervious areas deposits soil, mulch or sediment on paving	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> No deposited soil or other materials on permeable pavement or other adjacent surfacing All exposed soils that may erode to pavement surface mulched and/or planted
	A	Wearing course covered by adjacent vegetation	Vegetation growing beyond facility edge onto sidewalks, paths, and street edge	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Vegetation does not impede function of adjacent facilities or pose as safety hazard Groundcovers and shrubs trimmed to avoid overreaching the sidewalks, paths and street edge
	A, E	Contaminants and pollution	Any evidence of contaminants or pollution such as oil, gasoline, concrete slurries, or paint	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Materials removed and disposed of according to applicable regulations Source control BMPs implemented if appropriate No contaminants present other than a surface oil film
Pavement Wearing Course (all types)	A	Accumulated sediment on surface	Sediment present at the surface of the pavement	Sediment at surface does not inhibit infiltration
	A	Surface clogged by moss	Moss growth inhibits infiltration or poses slip safety hazard	Moss growth on surface does not inhibit infiltration or present a slip safety hazard

No. 2625 - Permeable Pavement ¹				
Maintenance Component	Recommended Inspection Frequency ²	Defect or Problem	Conditions When Maintenance Is Needed	Results Expected When Maintenance Is Performed
Pavement Wearing Course (all types)	A	Surface is clogged	Ponding on surface or water flows off the permeable pavement surface during a rain event (does not infiltrate)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • System drains freely • No standing water on surface between storms
	A	Settlement	When deviation from original grade impedes function.	Original grade re-established
Permeable Asphalt or Cement Concrete	A	Cracks	Major cracks or trip hazards and concrete spalling and raveling	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Potholes or small cracks filled with patching mixes • Large cracks and settlement addressed by cutting and replacing the pavement section
Permeable Paver or Open-Celled Paving Grid	A	Paver block missing or damaged	Paver block missing or damaged	Individual damaged paver blocks removed and replaced or repaired per manufacturer's recommendations
	A	Loss of aggregate material between paver blocks	Loss of aggregate material between paver blocks	Aggregate replaced per manufacturer's recommendations
Open-Celled Paving Grid	A	Paving grid missing or damaged	Three or more adjacent rings in paving grid missing or damaged	Grid segment replaced or repaired per manufacturer's recommendations
	A	Loss of aggregate material in paving grid OR Lack of grass coverage	Loss of aggregate material in paving grid	Aggregate gravel level maintained at the same level as the plastic rings or no more than ¼ inch above the top of rings
	A	Lack of grass coverage	Poor grass coverage in paving grid	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Growing medium restored • Facility reseeded or planted • Aerated • Vegetated area amended as needed

No. 2625 - Permeable Pavement ¹				
Maintenance Component	Recommended Inspection Frequency ²	Defect or Problem	Conditions When Maintenance Is Needed	Results Expected When Maintenance Is Performed
Open-Celled Paving Grid (continued)	A	Weeds present	Weeds present	Weeds are removed if infiltration is hindered. Noxious weeds are removed.
Inlet/Outlet Pipe	A	Pipe is damaged	Pipe is damaged	Pipe is repaired/replaced
	A	Pipe is clogged	Pipe is clogged	Roots or debris is removed
	A, E	Erosion	Native soil exposed or other signs of erosion damage present	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • No eroded or scoured areas • Cause of erosion or scour is addressed
Underdrain Pipe	B	Blocked underdrain	Plant roots, sediment or debris reducing capacity of underdrain (may cause prolonged drawdown period)	Underdrains and orifice free of sediment and debris

¹ Fog seal, chip seal and other impervious overlays are not permitted on top of permeable pavement.

² [Inspection frequency:](#)

[A = Annually; B = Biannually; M = Monthly; E = Recommend that additional inspections be performed as appropriate after major events \(e.g., >1 inch of precipitation in 24 hours or environmental incident that causes contaminant release; Q = Quarterly \(four times per year\); W = Recommend that at least one inspection occur during the wet season, preferably after trees have lost their leaves](#)

No. 2726 - Trees				
Maintenance Component	<u>Recommended Inspection Frequency</u>	Defect or Problem	Conditions When Maintenance Is Needed	Results Expected When Maintenance Is Performed
Tree	<u>As needed</u>	Dead or declining	Dead, damaged, or declining	Tree replaced per planting plan or acceptable substitute

No. 2827 - Vegetated Roof Systems				
Maintenance Component	Recommended Inspection Frequency¹	Defect or Problem	Conditions When Maintenance Is Needed	Results Expected When Maintenance Is Performed
Facility – General Requirements	A	Improper access and safety for maintenance	Insufficient egress/ingress routes and fall protection	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Egress and ingress routes maintained to design standards and fire codes Fall protection is appropriate
	A	Border zone not defined	Vegetation is encroaching into border zone aggregate	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> No weeds and undesirable vegetation present Desirable vegetation transplanted
	A	Flashing, gravel stops, utilities, or other structures on roof	Flashing, utilities or other structures on roof are deteriorating (can serve as source of metal pollution in vegetated roof runoff)	Potential pollutant sources replaced or eliminated
	B	Mosquitoes	Standing water remains for more than 3 days after the end of a storm	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> System freely drains Standing water on roof does not persist for more than 3 days after a storm event
	As required	Nuisance animals	Nuisance animals causing erosion, damaging plants, or depositing large volumes of feces	Measures in place to deter nuisance species
Growth Medium	A	Water is not infiltrating properly	Water does not permeate growth media (runs off soil surface) or crusting is observed	Stormwater infiltrates freely through growth media
	A	Insufficient growth medium	Growth medium thickness is less than design thickness (due to erosion and plant uptake)	Growth medium is present at design thickness
	B, W	Fallen leaves/debris	Fallen leaves or debris are present	No leaves or debris present

No. 2827 - Vegetated Roof Systems				
Maintenance Component	Recommended Inspection Frequency ¹	Defect or Problem	Conditions When Maintenance Is Needed	Results Expected When Maintenance Is Performed
Growth Medium (continued)	A	Erosion	Growth media erosion/scour is visible (e.g., gullies)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> No eroded or scoured areas Cause of erosion or scour addressed
Roof Drain	B, E	Not draining	Sediment, vegetation, or debris reducing capacity of inlet structure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Inlet clear Cause of blockage addressed
	A	Pipe is clogged	Pipe is clogged	Debris, roots, or other obstruction removed and pipe is free draining
Vegetation	B	Plant coverage	Vegetative coverage falls below 80 percent (unless design specifications stipulate less than 80 percent coverage)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Bare areas planted with vegetation Erosion control measures installed until percent coverage goal attained
			Summer watering – extensive vegetated roof system	Vegetation watered weekly during periods of no rain during vegetation establishment period (1–2 years)
			Summer watering – intensive vegetated roof system	Vegetation watered during drought conditions or more often if necessary to maintain plant cover during post-establishment period (after 2 years)
			Summer watering – intensive vegetated roof system	Vegetation watered deeply, but infrequently, and the top 6 to 12 inches of the root zone is moist during vegetation establishment period (1–2 years)

No. 2827 - Vegetated Roof Systems				
Maintenance Component	Recommended Inspection Frequency ¹	Defect or Problem	Conditions When Maintenance Is Needed	Results Expected When Maintenance Is Performed
Vegetation (continued)	<u>B</u>	Plant coverage (continued)	Summer watering – intensive vegetated roof system (continued)	Vegetation watered during drought conditions or more often if necessary to maintain plant cover during post-establishment period (after 2 years)
			Extensive roof with low density sedum population	Sedums are mulch mowed
	<u>A</u>	Poor plant establishment and possible nutrient deficiency in growth medium	Fertilization– extensive vegetated roof system	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Organic debris replenished Annual soil test conducted to assess need for fertilizer Minimal amounts of slow-release fertilizer applied
			Fertilization– intensive vegetated roof system	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Annual soil test conducted to assess need for fertilizer Minimal amounts of slow-release fertilizer applied
			Dead vegetation is present	Dead plant material recycled on the roof or removed and replaced (see manufacturer’s recommendations)
	<u>Q</u>	Weeds	Weeds are present	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Weeds removed (manual methods preferred) IPM protocols followed

No. 2827 - Vegetated Roof Systems				
Maintenance Component	Recommended Inspection Frequency ¹	Defect or Problem	Conditions When Maintenance Is Needed	Results Expected When Maintenance Is Performed
Vegetation (continued)	M (March – October)	Noxious weeds	Any noxious or nuisance vegetation which may constitute a hazard to City personnel or the public	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Noxious and nuisance vegetation removed according to applicable regulations • No danger of noxious vegetation where City personnel or the public might normally be
Irrigation System (if any)	Based on manufacturer's instructions	Not applicable	Irrigation system is not working or routine maintenance needed	Manufacturer's/installer's instructions are followed for operation and maintenance

¹ [Inspection frequency:](#)

[A = Annually; B = Biannually; M = Monthly; E = Recommend that additional inspections be performed as appropriate after major events \(e.g., >1 inch of precipitation in 24 hours or environmental incident that causes contaminant release; Q = Quarterly \(four times per year\); W = Recommend that at least one inspection occur during the wet season, preferably after trees have lost their leaves](#)

No. 2928 - Rain Gardens				
Maintenance Component	Recommended Inspection Frequency¹	Defect or Problem	Conditions When Maintenance is Needed	Results Expected When Maintenance is Performed
Facility – General Requirements	B, E	Mosquitoes	Standing water remains for more than 3 days after the end of a storm	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Rain garden drains freely • Standing water in rain garden does not persist for more than 3 days after a storm event • Cause of the standing water addressed (see “Ponded water”)
	A, E	Trash	Trash and debris present	No trash or debris present
Earthen Side Slopes and Berms	B, E	Erosion	Persistent soil erosion on slopes	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • No eroded or scoured areas • Cause of erosion or scour addressed
Rockery Sidewalls	A	Unstable rockery	Rockery side walls are insecure	Stable rockery sidewalls (may require consultation with licensed engineer, particularly for walls 4 feet or greater in height)
Rain Garden Bottom Area	B	Sediment accumulation	Visible sediment deposition in the rain garden that reduces drawdown time of water in the rain garden	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • No sediment accumulation in rain garden • Source of sediment addressed
	B	Debris accumulation	Accumulated leaves in facility	No leaves clogging outlet structure or impeding water flow
Mulch	A	Lack of mulch	Bare spots (without mulch cover) are present or mulch depth less than 2 inches	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Facility has a minimum 2- to 3-inch layer of an appropriate type of mulch • Mulch kept away from woody stems
Splash Block Inlet	B	Water not properly directed to rain garden	Water is being directed towards building structure	Blocks are reconfigured to direct water to rain garden and away from structure

No. 2928 - Rain Gardens				
Maintenance Component	Recommended Inspection Frequency ¹	Defect or Problem	Conditions When Maintenance is Needed	Results Expected When Maintenance is Performed
Pipe Inlet/Outlet Pipe Inlet/Outlet (continued)	<u>B</u>	Erosion	Rock or cobble removed or missing and concentrated flows contacting soil	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> No eroded or scoured areas Cause of erosion or scour addressed Cover of rock or cobbles protects the ground where concentrated water flows into the rain garden
	<u>A</u>	Accumulated debris	Accumulated leaves, sediment, debris or vegetation at curb cuts, inlet or outlet pipe	Blockage cleared
	<u>A</u>	Damaged pipe	Pipe is damaged	Pipe repaired/replaced
	<u>A</u>	Clogged pipe	Pipe is clogged	Pipe clear of roots and debris
	<u>A</u>	Blocked access	Maintain access for inspections	Vegetation cleared or transplanted within 1 foot of inlets and outlets
Ponded Water	<u>As needed</u>	Ponded water	Excessive ponding water: Ponded water remains in the rain garden more than 48 hours after the end of a storm	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Rain garden drains freely Standing water in rain garden does not persist for more than 48 hours after a storm event Leaf litter/debris/sediment removed
Overflow	<u>A, E</u>	Blocked overflow	Capacity reduced by sediment or debris	No sediment or debris in overflow
Vegetation	<u>A</u>	Blocked site distances and sidewalks	Vegetation inhibits sight distances and sidewalks	Sidewalks and sight distances along roadways and sidewalks are kept clear
	<u>A</u>	Blocked pipes	Vegetation is crowding inlets and outlets	Inlets and outlets in rain garden clear of vegetation

No. 2928 - Rain Gardens				
Maintenance Component	Recommended Inspection Frequency ¹	Defect or Problem	Conditions When Maintenance is Needed	Results Expected When Maintenance is Performed
Vegetation (continued)	M	Unhealthy vegetation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Yellowing: possible Nitrogen (N) deficiency • Poor growth: possible Phosphorous (P) deficiency • Poor flowering, spotting or curled leaves, or weak roots or stems: possible Potassium (K) deficiency 	Plants are healthy and appropriate for site conditions
	M	Weeds	Presence of weeds	Weeds removed (manual methods preferred) and mulch applied
Summer Watering (years 1–3)	Weekly or as required (May – September)	Plant establishment	Tree, shrubs and groundcovers in first 3 years of establishment period	Plants are watered during plant establishment period (years 1–3)
Summer Watering (after establishment)	As needed	Drought conditions	Vegetation requires supplemental water	Plants are watered during drought conditions or more often if necessary during post-establishment period (after 2 years)

¹ [Inspection frequency:](#)

[A = Annually; B = Biannually; M = Monthly; E = Recommend that additional inspections be performed as appropriate after major events \(e.g., >1 inch of precipitation in 24 hours or environmental incident that causes contaminant release; Q = Quarterly \(four times per year\); W = Recommend that at least one inspection occur during the wet season, preferably after trees have lost their leaves](#)

APPENDIX H

Financial Feasibility Documentation for Vegetated Roofs and Rainwater Harvesting

Note:

Some pages in this document have been purposely skipped or blank pages inserted so that this document will print correctly when duplexed.

Vegetated roofs and rainwater harvesting may not be financially feasible in all project situations. If the applicant determines that including a vegetated roof or rainwater harvesting to meet the on-site stormwater management requirement is not economically feasible using reasonable consideration of financial costs, even when engineering design limitations and physical limitations of the site would allow greater use of these best management practices (BMPs), then the applicant shall provide the following additional submittal documentation:

1. A narrative description and rationale with substantial evidence sufficient to explain and justify the applicant's conclusion that installation of a vegetated roof or rainwater harvesting is economically infeasible.
2. A detailed cost estimate of constructing the project as proposed (i.e., including the level of on-site stormwater management that is considered cost feasible for the project). The detailed cost estimate must include the following:
 - o Breakdown of project costs into subtotals for demolition, site preparation, building construction, site paving, landscaping, and utilities, as applicable.
 - o Itemization of the proposed stormwater control measures.
 - o If a vegetated roof or rainwater harvesting would be feasible but for cost considerations, documentation of the difference in unit and total cost between the conventional surface and rainwater harvesting and/or alternative surface approach (e.g., the difference in cost between a standard roof and associated stormwater control BMPs compared to a vegetated roof and associated stormwater control BMPs).
3. A detailed cost estimate of constructing the project with additional stormwater control BMPs beyond what the applicant considers a feasible cost (i.e., beyond the proposed design itemized in item 2 above). That is, provide the additional cost the project would incur if the project were to use a vegetated roof or rainwater harvesting to meet the on-site stormwater management requirements.
4. Building/project valuation construction cost as determined by the Seattle Department of Construction and Inspection (SDCI).
5. If applicable, Street Improvement Plan or Utility Plan construction cost as determined by the Seattle Department of Transportation (SDOT) or capital improvement project cost as determined by applicable City department.
6. If the project does not achieve the on-site stormwater management requirements and the project application is not signed and stamped by a professional engineer, a signed statement by the applicant certifying that the project design implements the on-site stormwater management requirements is required.

Alternatively, the applicant may establish financial infeasibility of rainwater harvesting based on one of the following simplified criteria:

- The non-pollution generating roof area is less than 20,000 square feet
- The ratio of roof area to average daily rainwater demand is less than 10,000 square feet/[gallons per minute \(gpm\)](#) (refer to *Volume 3, Section 5.5.1.6* for rainwater demand calculations)

This page intentionally left blank.

APPENDIX I

Landscape Management Plans and Integrated Pest Management Plans

Note:

Some pages in this document have been purposely skipped or blank pages inserted so that this document will print correctly when duplexed.

I-1. [Landscape Management Plans](#)

[A landscape management plan \(LMP\) is a plan for defining the layout and long-term maintenance of landscaping features to minimize the use of pesticides \(including herbicides and fungicides\) and fertilizers and reduce the discharge of suspended solids and other pollutants. Use of an LMP that has been approved by the City of Seattle \(City\) is allowed as an alternative to the requirement to formally treat \(with a water quality treatment BMP\) the runoff from pollution-generating pervious surfaces \(PGPS\) that are subject to water quality treatment. LMPs have the potential to significantly reduce the pollutant load washing off managed green spaces. The requirements for obtaining City approval of an LMP are summarized in this section.](#)

[LMPs must address the basic principles provided in *Volume 1, Section 7.8*, tailoring them to fit the specific site. Every LMP will not necessarily be able to apply each of the listed recommendations related to the basic principles. In addition, landscapes are managed for different purposes, some more formal than others. Some recommendations may not be appropriate for very formal sites; therefore, they will not be adopted, in favor of other management practices that better fit the intended uses of the site. In the end, the extent to which an LMP is successful depends on the ability of the applied practices to retain soil, fertilizers, and pesticides on the site and away from receiving waters throughout the entire year.](#)

[If an LMP is proposed, it must be submitted with the engineering plans for the proposed project. The following documentation is required for the evaluation of an LMP submittal:](#)

- [Site vicinity map showing topography.](#)
- [Site plan including topography, areas with saturated soils \(if applicable\), and high water tables \(if applicable\).](#)
- [Narrative describing how the basic principles in *Volume 1, Section 7.8*, will be achieved.](#)
- [Plant list \(with both common and scientific names\) that includes the following:](#)
 - [Drought-tolerant plants, disease--resistant varieties, species for attracting beneficial insects \(if any\), and native plants.](#)
 - [Proposed spacing for shrubs and groundcovers.](#)
 - [Grass mix or mixes planned for turf areas including their sun/shade tolerance, disease susceptibility, drought tolerance, and tolerance of wet soil conditions.](#)
- [Landscape plan indicating placement of landscape features, lawn areas, trees, and planting groups \(e.g., forbs, herbs, and groundcovers\) on the site.](#)
- [Signage plan including proposed locations of signs and content of signs.](#)
 - [Signage must be located to identify which areas are included in the LMP.](#)
 - [Signage must indicate how a copy of the approved LMP can be obtained.](#)
 - [Inclusion of the following information in the signage is also encouraged: basic educational information about the LMP for maintenance workers and the public.](#)

- [Information on soil preparation and fertility requirements.](#)
- [Information on the design of the irrigation method \(e.g., installed sprinkler system, drip irrigation system, or manual watering\).](#)
- [Landscape maintenance plan, including the following:](#)
 - [Physical care methods, such as thatch removal or aeration, and mowing height and frequency.](#)
 - [Type of fertilizer \(including percentages of nitrogen, phosphorus, and potassium \[N-P-K\]\) and fertilization schedule or criteria.](#)
- [Integrated Pest Management \(IPM\) plan \(refer to *Section I-2*\), including the following:](#)
 - [Type of chemicals to be used for common pests such as crane fly larvae, and the criteria or schedule for application.](#)
 - [Any biocontrol methods to be used.](#)
- [Information about the storage of pesticides or other chemicals, and the measures that will be used to dispose of them, including the following:](#)
 - [How the chemicals will be stored on the site between applications to prevent contact with stormwater or spills into the drainage system \(if applicable\).](#)
 - [How excess quantities of fertilizers or chemicals will be handled for individual applications.](#)
- [Implementation plan, including the following:](#)
 - [The responsible party for ensuring that the LMP is implemented.](#)
 - [How the applicant will ensure that grounds crews have the training and/or resources required to implement the LMP and make adjustments based on advances in landscape care practices and products.](#)
 - [A fertilizer and pesticide application log, including rate of application, area treated, and disposal or storage of residue.](#)

I-2. Integrated Pest Management Plans

An ~~Integrated Pest Management (IPM)~~ plan is a natural, long-term, ecologically based systems approach to controlling pest populations. ~~This system~~IPM uses techniques either to reduce pest populations or maintain them at levels below those causing economic injury, or to so manipulate the populations that they are prevented from causing injury.

The goals of IPM are ~~the encouragement of~~~~to encourage~~ optimal selective pesticide use (away from prophylactic, broad-spectrum use), and ~~the to maximizemaximization of~~ natural controls to minimize ~~the~~ environmental side effects by creating and maintaining healthy landscapes:

- **Design for a healthy landscape.** A landscape should be designed to maximize ~~the~~ intended uses of the land and ~~to~~ minimize potential pest problems. Design considers such plant health factors as site usage, soils, topography, hydrology and drainage, proximity to sensitive or critical areas and existing vegetation as well as known pest sensitivity. Take drainage pathways into consideration when considering landscape management and the potential need for pest control.
- **Awareness of potential pest problems.** Certain plants have known pest problems. Likewise, certain cultural conditions or landscape situations can encourage the infestation of pests.
- **Maintenance for maximum landscape health.** A well-designed and maintained landscape dramatically reduces the need for pest control. Appropriate selection of plants, pruning, proper irrigation, applications of mulch and fertilizer, appropriate mowing techniques, and other practices all promote landscapes that resist pest pressures and support natural predators.
- **Minimize disturbance of naturally occurring biological controls.** Pests have natural predators and controls operating on them at all times. Disruption of these systems ~~due to~~~~through~~ poor maintenance practices can ~~result in the development~~~~cause more~~ of new pest problems ~~to develop~~.

The ~~following~~ step-by-step comprehensive ~~Integrated Pest Management (IPM) Pp~~lan process is provided ~~below~~ as a guide.

The Integrated Pest Management Plan Process

Step 1: Correctly Identify ~~the~~~~problem~~ Pests and Understand ~~Its~~~~their~~ Life Cycle

~~Identify the pest (e.g., weed, insect, or disease).~~ Learn more about the pest. Observe it and pay attention to any damage that may be occurring. Learn about the life cycle. Many pests are ~~only~~ a problem ~~only~~ during certain seasons, or can ~~only~~ be treated effectively ~~only~~ ~~iduring~~ during certain phases of the life cycle. ~~Repeat this step if more than one pest is identified.~~

Step 2: Establish Tolerance/Action Thresholds ~~for~~ pests

Every landscape has a population of some pest (insects, weeds, ~~and~~ diseases), ~~which~~~~This~~ is good because it supports a population of beneficial species that keep pest numbers in check. Beneficial organisms may compete with, eat, or parasitize disease or pest organisms. Decide on the level of infestation that must be exceeded before treatment needs to be considered. Pest populations under this threshold should be monitored but ~~do not~~~~don't~~ need treatment.

For instance, European crane flies usually do ~~not~~ ~~cause~~ serious damage to a lawn unless there are between 25 and 40 larvae per square foot feeding on the turf in February (in normal weather years). Also, most people consider a lawn healthy and well maintained even with up to 20 percent weed cover; ~~so~~ ~~therefore~~, treatment, other than continuing good maintenance practices, is generally unnecessary.

Step 3: Monitor [Regularly to Detect and prevent Pest Problems](#)

Regular monitoring is a key practice ~~to anticipate and prevent~~ [for anticipating and preventing](#) major pest outbreaks. It begins with a visual evaluation of the lawn or landscape's condition. Take a few minutes before mowing to walk around and look for problems. Keep a notebook, record when and where a problem occurs, then monitor for it at about the same time in future years. Specific monitoring techniques can be used in the appropriate season for some potential problem pests, such as [the](#) European crane fly.

Step 4: Modify ~~the~~ Maintenance Program to Promote [Plant Healthy plants](#) and Discourage Pests

A healthy landscape is resistant to most pest problems. Lawn aeration and overseeding along with proper mowing height, fertilization, and irrigation will help the grass out-compete weeds. Correcting drainage problems and letting soil dry out between watering in the summer may reduce the number of [surviving](#) crane-fly larvae ~~that survive~~. [Gradually replace pest-prone plants](#).

Step 5: If Pests Exceed the Tolerance Thresholds, [Use Cultural, Physical, Mechanical, or Biological Controls Prior to Implementing Chemical Controls](#)

~~Use cultural, physical, mechanical or biological controls first. If those prove insufficient, use the chemical controls described below that have the least non-target impact.~~ When a pest outbreak ~~occurs~~ ~~strikes~~ (or monitoring ~~indicates that~~ ~~shows~~ one is imminent), implement [cultural, physical, mechanical, or biological controls](#) ~~IPM~~. ~~If these types of controls prove insufficient,~~ then consider [chemical](#) control options that are the least toxic, or have the least non-target impact.

Here are two examples of an IPM approach [for damaged lawns](#):

- **Red thread disease** is most likely under low-nitrogen fertility conditions and most severe during slow growth conditions. Mow [the lawn](#) and bag the clippings to remove diseased blades. Fertilize lightly to help the grass recover, then begin grasscycling ([e.g., leaving grass clippings on a mowed lawn](#)) and change to fall fertilization with a slow release or natural organic fertilizer to provide an even supply of nutrients. Chemical fungicides are not recommended because red thread cannot kill the lawn.
- **Crane fly damage** is most prevalent on lawns that stay wet in the winter and are irrigated in the summer. Correct the winter drainage and/or allow the soil to dry between irrigation cycles; larvae are susceptible to drying out so these changes can reduce their numbers. It may also be possible to reduce [the number of](#) crane fly larvae ~~numbers~~ by using a power de-thatcher on a cool, cloudy day when ~~they are~~ ~~feeding~~ ~~is~~ ~~occurring~~ close to the surface. ~~Current~~ ~~studies~~ are [investigating the use of](#) ~~being~~

~~conducted using~~ beneficial nematodes that parasitize the crane fly larvae; this type of treatment may eventually be a reasonable alternative.

Only after trying suitable non-chemical control methods, or determining that the pest outbreak is causing too much serious damage, should chemical controls be considered. ~~Study to determine~~ ~~the available~~ ~~what~~ products ~~are available~~ and choose ~~the one~~ ~~product~~ that is the least toxic and has the least non-target impact.

Step 6: Evaluate and Record ~~the Effectiveness of the Control,~~ and Modify Maintenance ~~practices or Plant Choices~~ to Support ~~lawn or landscape~~ Recovery and Prevent Recurrence

Keep records. Note when, where, and what symptoms occurred, or when monitoring revealed a potential pest problem. Note what controls were applied and when, and the effectiveness of the control. Monitor ~~the following~~ ~~next~~ year for the same problems. Review your landscape maintenance and cultural practices to see if they can be modified to prevent or reduce ~~the severity of~~ the problem.

A comprehensive IPM program should also include the proper use of pesticides as a last resort, and vegetation/fertilizer management to eliminate or minimize the contamination of stormwater.

I-3. References

Refer to the Seattle Public Utilities IPM web page for additional resources for developing an LMP or IPM plan: www.seattle.gov/utilities/protecting-our-environment/sustainability-tips/landscaping/for-professionals/integrated-pest-management.



STATE OF WASHINGTON
DEPARTMENT OF ECOLOGY

PO Box 47600 • Olympia, WA 98504-7600 • 360-407-6000
711 for Washington Relay Service • Persons with a speech disability can call 877-833-6341

October 28, 2020

Mami Hara
General Manager & CEO
Seattle Public Utilities
Sent by email only: mami.hara@seattle.gov

WAR044503

RE: Preliminary Approval of City of Seattle Stormwater Manual and Municipal Code

Dear Mami Hara:

The Department of Ecology (Ecology) has completed our review of the changes to the *Seattle Municipal Code* and the *Seattle Stormwater Manual*, as effective January 1, 2016 for the purpose of determining equivalency to the required portions of Ecology's *2019 Stormwater Management Manual for Western Washington (SWMMWW)*, as outlined in Special Condition S5.C.5.b of the 2019-2024 Phase I Municipal Stormwater Permit (Permit). Ecology limited its review, based on the previous approval of your local program as functionally equivalent to the SWMMWW as amended in 2014, to changes submitted in the format outlined in Appendix 10 of the Permit, and communication that followed. This letter serves as our response as required by S5.C.5.b.iii. Our preliminary determination is that the items reviewed are equivalent, with the exception of the items specified below that will require further communication before they can be deemed equivalent to the *2019 SWMMWW*.

- SMC 22.805.070 – Minimum Requirements for On-site Stormwater Management
- SMC 22.805.090- Minimum Requirements for Treatment
- Volume 1 Section 2.1 – Defining Boundaries of a Project Site
- Volume 1 Section 5.4 – Water Quality Treatment
- Volume 3 – All tables relating to Pre-Sizing calculations for Best Management Practices denoting which tables have maintained the calculations from the previously approved 2016 Seattle Stormwater Manual and which have been modified.
- Volume 3 – Section 5.3.7 – Sidewalk/Trail Compost Amended Strip and associated modelling

Your revised program is required to be adopted by July 1, 2021. If changes are made to the items listed above during your legislative or administrative adoption processes, those changes will need further Ecology review. Ecology's determination will not become final until after Ecology conducts a public review process associated with a future modification of Appendix 10 of the Phase I Permit.

I appreciate the hard work and dedication of your team to develop revised stormwater management regulations and rules.

Please contact me at ccro461@ecy.wa.gov or 425-429-4571 if you have any questions.

Sincerely,

A handwritten signature in black ink that reads "Colleen Griffith". The signature is written in a cursive style and is set against a light gray rectangular background.

Colleen Griffith
Municipal Stormwater Permit Planner, NWRO
Water Quality Program

cc: Melissa Ivancevich, Seattle Public Utilities
Ingrid Wertz, Seattle Public Utilities
Sherell Ehlers, Seattle Public Utilities
Emma Trehitt, Washington Department of Ecology
Douglas Howie, Washington Department of Ecology



Draft Director's Rule

Title Public Drainage System Requirements		Number DWW 210	Rev. No. 0
Responsibility Drainage and Wastewater Line of Business / Project Delivery and Engineering Branch		Supersedes NA	Pages TBD
General Manager/CEO Approval		Approval Date	Effective Date July 1, 2021

Table of Contents

- I. Purpose 2
- II. Discretion 2
- III. Approved Point of Discharge..... 3
- IV. Ensure Sufficient Capacity 4
- V. Extensions – Projects Not Conducted in the Public Right-Of-Way..... 8
- VI. Extensions – Projects Conducted in the Public Right-Of-Way 11
- VII. Public Drainage System Requirements..... 13
- VIII. Definitions..... 27
- IX. Authority/References..... 27

1 **I. PURPOSE**

2 A. To support implementation of the Stormwater Code, the Director of Seattle Public
3 Utilities (SPU) promulgates rules that provided specific technical requirements, criteria,
4 guidelines, and additional information. This Director’s Rule consists of rules for the
5 purpose of implementing the Stormwater Code, specifically the following sections of the
6 Seattle Municipal Code (SMC):

7 1) Minimum Requirements for Discharge Point (SMC 22.805.020.B) (also known as
8 “Approved Point of Discharge”)

9 2) Ensure Sufficient Capacity (SMC 22.805.020.H)

10 3) Extension of Public Drainage System – Projects Not Conducted in Public Right-of-
11 Way (SMC 22.805.020.L)

12 B. (Typically applies to Single-family Residential and Parcel-based Projects)

13 1) Extension of Public Drainage System – Projects Conducted in Public Right-of-Way
14 (SMC 22.805.020.M)

15 C. (Typically applies to Roadway Projects)

16 1) Public Drainage System Requirements (SMC 22.805.020.N)

17 D. For terms used in this Director’s Rule, refer to SMC 22.801 (Stormwater Code -
18 Definitions), SMC 21.16.030 (Side Sewer Code - Definitions), and Section VIII
19 (Definitions) of this Director’s Rule.

20 **II. DISCRETION**

21 A. In limited or exceptional circumstances, and when it is in the best interests of the utility,
22 SPU’s General Manager/Chief Executive Officer (Director) or authorized designee,
23 may modify or waive the drainage requirements or public drainage improvements
24 under this rule.

25 B. Director in this rule means the Director of SPU per SMC 22.801.050, unless otherwise
26 noted.
27

1 **III. APPROVED POINT OF DISCHARGE**

Stormwater Code Language
<p>22.805.020 <i>Minimum Requirements for All Projects</i> B. <i>Minimum Requirements for Discharge Point. The discharge point for drainage water from each project shall be identified in the drainage control plan that shall include, but not be limited to, the location of the discharge point, the type of conveyance system, and whether the capacity of the drainage system is adequate for the flow rate and volume. For those projects meeting the requirements of this subtitle, the proposed discharge point shall be identified in the drainage control plan required by this subtitle, for review and approval or disapproval by the Director.</i></p> <p><i>Refer to proposed Stormwater Code during public review.</i> <i>Final code language to be added to final rule</i></p>

2 A. All projects shall convey stormwater flow to an approved point of discharge and include
3 overflows for all stormwater best management practices (BMPs).

4 B. The approved point of discharge as determined by the Director, in order of priority,
5 includes the following:

- 6 1) Receiving waters
- 7 2) Public storm drain pipes
- 8 3) Ditch and culvert system
- 9 4) Public combined sewer system
- 10 5) Infiltration on site

11 C. Stormwater and groundwater (including footing drains) shall not be conveyed to or
12 enter a sanitary sewer (SMC 21.16.220) even if a system was “formerly combined”
13 regardless of project size. Refer to SPU’s Water & Sewer Map for “Mainlines
14 Permitted Use” in determining whether a system is classified as a sanitary sewer:
15 https://gisrevprxy.seattle.gov/wab_ext/DSOResearch_Ext/

16 D. Extension of the piped public drainage system may be required even if a ditch and
17 culvert system or a public combined sewer abuts a project. Refer to Section V
18 (Extensions – Projects Not Conducted in Public Right-of-Way) and Section VI
19 (Extensions – Projects Conducted in Public Right-of-Way for requirements.

20 Note: The public combined sewer is not a public drainage system by definition.

21 E. Seattle has a complicated system due to historical annexations, major sewer and
22 drainage projects, and other complexities. Therefore, prior to proceeding with project
23 design, confirm your project discharge location with the City of Seattle (City) through
24 the City’s Preliminary Application Report (PAR) process to determine your project
25 requirements. To determine Stormwater Code project requirements for projects that
26 are not required to go through the PAR process, contact the Drainage Review Team at
27 SideSewerInfo@Seattle.gov for projects conducted on private property or
28 SPU_PlanReview@Seattle.gov for projects conducted in the right-of-way.

29 F. The types of conveyance systems to the approved point of discharge, in order of
30 priority, include the following:

- 31 1) Direct pipe connections
- 32 2) Ditch and culvert system
- 33 3) Gutter or street flow line
- 34 4) Surface dispersal

1 **IV. ENSURE SUFFICIENT CAPACITY**

<p>Stormwater Code Language</p> <p>22.805.020</p> <p>H. <i>Ensure Sufficient Capacity. All large projects, all projects with an excavation depth of 12 feet or more below the existing grade, and all projects with an excavation depth of less than 12 feet located in areas expected to have shallow groundwater depths, shall ensure that sufficient capacity exists in the public drainage system and public combined sewer to accommodate flow from the site, including any flows from dewatering activities. Capacity analysis shall extend to at least 1/4-mile from the discharge point. If insufficient capacity may be required to install a flow control facility to improve the drainage system or public combined sewer to accommodate flow from the site. Unless approved otherwise by the Director as necessary to meet the purposes of this subtitle:</i></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">a. <i>Capacity analysis for discharges to the public drainage system shall be based on peak flows with a 4 percent annual probability (25-year recurrence interval); and</i>b. <i>Capacity analysis for discharges to the public combined sewer shall be based on peak flows with a 20 percent annual probability (5-year recurrence interval).</i>

Refer to proposed Stormwater Code during public review. Final code language to be added to final rule

2 This Section IV generally applies to projects that discharge to a ditch and culvert system. For
3 projects that discharge to a piped public drainage system or a public combined sewer, refer to
4 SMC 22.805.020.H (Ensure Sufficient Capacity) and SPU's Design Standards and Guidelines for
5 requirements.

6 **A. Ensure Sufficient Capacity Requirements**

- 7 1) The minimum requirement to ensure sufficient capacity is in addition to other
8 Stormwater Code minimum requirements.
- 9 2) The Director may waive the requirements to perform a downstream analysis if the
10 system has been determined by the Director to have sufficient capacity or the
11 project has otherwise provided flow control (e.g., providing Peak Flow Control for
12 projects that discharge to the public combined sewer system).
- 13 3) For public drainage system or combined sewer improvements, the Director shall
14 determine the type of improvements in accordance with the City's Standard Plans
15 and Specifications, SPU's Design Standards and Guidelines, and as specified in
16 rules promulgated by the Director.
- 17 4) For projects that discharge to a ditch and culvert system where there is insufficient
18 capacity to accommodate flow from the site, provide the following:
 - 19 a) For projects not conducted in the public right-of-way (e.g., Parcel-based,
20 Single-family Residential), in any order, provide one of the following to
21 accommodate flows from the site:
 - 22 i) Meet Existing Condition Standard (SMC 22.805.080.B.4) on the project site.
 - 23 ii) Meet Peak Control Standard (SMC 22.805.080.B.5) on the project site and
24 mitigate identified downstream capacity issues (Sections D & E).
 - 25 iii) Mitigate identified downstream capacity (Sections D & E) and erosion
26 (Sections B & C) issues.

1 b) For projects conducted in the public right-of-way (e.g., **Sidewalk, Roadway**), in
2 the following order of priority and based on feasibility, provide one of the
3 following as determined by the Director to accommodate flows from the site:

4 i) Mitigate identified downstream capacity (Sections D & E) and erosion
5 (Sections B & C) issues.

6 ii) Mitigate identified downstream capacity issues (Sections D & E). and meet
7 the Peak Control Standard (SMC 22.805.080.B.5) on the project site.

8 iii) Meet the Existing Condition Standard (SMC 22.805.080.B.4) on the project
9 site.

10 5) Upon review of the downstream erosion and capacity analyses described below
11 (Section B and Section D), the Director may require a more detailed quantitative
12 downstream analysis. The quantitative analysis shall require one of the following:

13 a) A quantitative analysis using non-surveyed field data and a uniform flow
14 analysis.

15 b) A quantitative analysis using surveyed field data and a backwater analysis.

16 The analysis required will depend on the nature and significance of the identified
17 downstream issues.

18 B. Erosion Analysis Requirements

19 1) Conduct a downstream erosion analysis for at least one-quarter mile downstream
20 of each proposed project discharge point to identify existing or potential erosion
21 problems that may occur as a result of the project. Unless requested by the
22 Director, the downstream analysis will be a qualitative analysis based on available
23 information and site observations conducted by a qualified professional. A
24 downstream erosion analysis is typically required only for discharges to ditch and
25 culvert systems and direct discharges to receiving water bodies. The downstream
26 erosion analysis shall consist of the following tasks:

27 a) Define and map the study area. The study area shall extend one-quarter mile
28 downstream of each proposed project discharge point.

29 b) Review published data and reports. At a minimum, the following resources of
30 documented information relevant to the analysis shall be reviewed, at a
31 minimum: basin plans, Federal Emergency Management Agency (FEMA)
32 maps, drainage and design reports from nearby projects, drainage complaints,
33 geographic information system (GIS) mapping data, and critical areas reports.

34 c) Perform a field inspection. Inspect the downstream flow path(s) from each
35 proposed discharge point to identify existing and potential erosion issues. The
36 field inspection of the study area for the downstream analysis shall investigate
37 any issues noted during the resource review, verify the basin delineation and
38 characterization, verify the existing stormwater conveyance information, and
39 identify existing or potential scouring and incision, bank sloughing and erosion,
40 and sedimentation and siltation.

41 d) Document the drainage system(s) and the existing and potential erosion issues
42 (even if they do not meet the following definitions) in the Drainage Report.
43 Potential erosion problems that require mitigation include:

44 i) Severe Ditch Erosion: A condition where the lining of an existing
45 downstream ditch is insufficient to prevent erosion for the predicted post-
46 development 25-year recurrence interval flow velocity or where any existing
47 ditch erosion and/or incision is documented or observed.

- 1 ii) Severe Outfall Erosion: A condition where an existing downstream outfall or
2 outfall structure is insufficient to prevent erosion for the predicted post-
3 development 25-year recurrence interval flow velocity or where any outfall
4 erosion or scour is documented or observed.
- 5 iii) Severe Creek Erosion: A condition where an existing downstream creek or
6 stream has documented or observed erosion and/or incision.

7 C. Erosion Mitigation Requirements

- 8 1) Mitigate identified erosion problems. If no existing or potential erosion problems are
9 identified based on the above criteria, no mitigation is required. For existing and
10 potential erosion problems that are identified, the following mitigation shall be
11 provided:
- 12 a) Severe Ditch Erosion: Line a ditch segment to accommodate the post-
13 development 25-year recurrence interval velocity. Mitigation design shall not
14 decrease existing conveyance capacity.
- 15 b) Severe Outfall Erosion: Provide energy dissipation outfall protection or an
16 energy dissipation structure to accommodate the post-development 25-year
17 recurrence interval velocity or provide an energy dissipater must be provided.
18 Mitigation design shall not decrease existing conveyance capacity.
- 19 c) Severe Creek Erosion: Provide creek bank protection and/or restoration
20 measures to accommodate the post-development 25-year recurrence interval
21 velocity. Mitigation design shall not decrease existing conveyance capacity.

22 D. Capacity Analysis Requirements

- 23 1) Conduct a downstream capacity analysis for at least one quarter mile downstream
24 of each proposed project discharge point. Unless requested by the Director, the
25 downstream analysis will be a qualitative analysis based on available information
26 and site observations conducted by a qualified professional. The downstream
27 capacity analysis shall consist of the following tasks:
- 28 a) Define and map the study area. The study area shall extend one-quarter mile
29 downstream of each proposed project discharge point.
- 30 b) Review published data and reports. At a minimum, the following resources of
31 documented information relevant to the analysis shall be reviewed, at a
32 minimum: basin plans, FEMA maps, drainage and design reports from nearby
33 projects, drainage complaints, GIS mapping data, and critical areas reports.
- 34 c) Inspect the downstream flow path to identify existing and potential flooding
35 issues. The field inspection of the study area for the downstream analysis shall
36 investigate any issues noted as part of the resource review, verify the basin
37 delineation and characterization, verify the existing stormwater conveyance
38 information, and identify existing or potential overtopping and flooding.
- 39 d) Document the drainage system(s) and the existing and potential flooding issues
40 (even if they do not meet the following definitions) in the Drainage Report.
41 Existing and potential issues meeting the following definitions require
42 mitigation:
- 43 i) Conveyance Nuisance Flooding: Observed or documented flooding of
44 private property, roadway shoulder or lane, flow across driveways or
45 flooding of outbuildings or the predicted 10-year recurrent overflow of a
46 constructed conveyance system.

- 1 ii) Severe Building Flooding: Observed or documented building flooding or the
2 predicted 25-year recurrence interval flood elevation will impact a finished
3 floor of a habitable building or the electric/heating system of a habitable
4 building. The recurrence interval shall be reduced to 5-year for any building
5 deemed essential.
- 6 iii) Severe Roadway Flooding: Observed or documented roadway flooding that
7 covers more than a roadway shoulder plus half the width of a travel lane or
8 the predicted 10-year (arterial) or 25-year (residential) recurrent flood
9 elevation will cover more than a roadway shoulder plus half the width of a
10 travel lane.

11 E. Capacity Mitigation Requirements

- 12 1) Mitigate identified capacity issues. Measures must be implemented to prevent an
13 increase in flows downstream of the mitigation, or the Ensure Sufficient Capacity
14 analysis will need to continue for an additional one-quarter mile. Mitigation can be
15 provided by one of the following:
 - 16 a) Improving capacity in the downstream drainage system to ensure sufficient
17 capacity to accommodate the post-development 10-year (for conveyance
18 nuisance flooding) and/or 25-year (for severe building or roadway flooding)
19 recurrence interval flow rate, OR
 - 20 b) Constructing flood control measures to accommodate the post-development
21 10-year (for conveyance nuisance flooding) or 25-year recurrence (for severe
22 building or roadway flooding) interval flow rate.

1 **V. EXTENSIONS – PROJECTS NOT CONDUCTED IN THE PUBLIC RIGHT-OF-WAY**

2 This section describes the minimum requirements for extension of the Public Drainage System
3 related to projects not conducted in the public right-of-way. These requirements typically apply to
4 Single-family Residential (SMC 22.801.200) and Parcel-based Projects (SMC 22.801.170).

5 For projects conducted in the public right-of-way, refer to Section VI of this rule.
6

<p>Stormwater Code Language</p> <p><u>L. Extension of the Public Drainage System. For projects not constructed in the public right-of-way, extension of the piped public drainage system across the full extent of the parcel boundary in the abutting public place shall be required for any of the following:</u></p> <p><u>1. All projects where the Director has determined an extension is required considering, but not limited to, the following attributes of the project:</u></p> <p><u>a. Pose a hazard to public health, safety or welfare;</u> <u>b. Endangers any property;</u> <u>c. Adversely affects the safety and operation of public right-of-way, utilities, or other property owned or maintained by the City;</u> <u>d. Adversely affects the functions and values of an environmentally critical area or buffer;</u> <u>e. Adversely affects an area with known erosion or flooding problems;</u> <u>f. Adversely affects receiving waters, any properties, or right-of-way.</u></p> <p><u>2. All projects with 5,000 square feet or more of new plus replaced hard surface, unless:</u></p> <p><u>a. The piped public drainage system is already accessible within an abutting public place to each existing, proposed, or adjusted parcel;</u> <u>or</u> <u>b. The project is otherwise not required to extend by rules promulgated by the Director.</u></p>

Refer to proposed Stormwater Code during public review.

Final code language to be added to final rule

7

8 **PROJECT REQUIREMENTS**

- 9 A. General Requirements
- 10 2) Extension of the **piped** public drainage system (also known as a Pipe Storm Drain
11 (PSD)) is required unless otherwise noted.
- 12 3) Note: The public combined sewer is not a public drainage system by definition.
- 13 4) In combined sewer service areas where a public drainage system is determined to
14 be inaccessible for extension, the extension of a public combined sewer may be
15 allowed instead (refer to [SMC 21.16.040](#)).
- 16 5) A private easement across an adjacent parcel shall not preclude the requirement of
17 extension of the public drainage system, system modification, and/or side sewer

- 1 installation perpendicular to an abutting public drainage system if otherwise
2 required by this rule.
- 3 6) Any division, redivision, or lot boundary adjustment of land that has the effect of
4 avoiding public drainage system installation or other appurtenance requirements
5 shall not change the installation requirements under this rule that would apply
6 before the division, redivision, or lot boundary adjustment.
- 7 7) If one or more parcels of a project are landlocked, a side sewer between the public
8 drainage system and the structure served by the system may occupy a portion of
9 one or more parcels of the project that are not served by that side sewer. Refer to
10 21.16.250 (Easements and Agreements) for easement requirements.
- 11 8) The cost of an extension is borne by the applicant. Some cost may be recovered by
12 a Latecomer Agreement.
- 13 9) In some circumstances, including but not limited to state highways, divided
14 roadways, the presence of railroad or streetcar tracks, or other obstructions in the
15 right-of-way, installing a public drainage system to serve the near side of the road
16 shall be required.
- 17 10) In special circumstances, the system may be best served by the installation of a
18 pipe that is larger than required by this rule (i.e., 25-year storm event) or other
19 system improvements. In such cases, SPU shall pay the difference in cost of
20 materials for the required and the desired size.
- 21 11) If one or more parcels are landlocked, the Director may require that the applicant
22 provide an easement to the benefit of the Utility and install a public drainage
23 system on a private parcel.
- 24 12) Refer to SMC 22.805.020.N and Section VII of this rule for design requirements for
25 the public drainage system.
- 26 13) Refer to Director's Rule ENG-430 (Utility System Improvement Dispute Process)
27 for dispute procedures for system improvements.

28 F. Requirements for All Projects

- 29 1) Projects are required to extend the piped public drainage system if the Director
30 determines that a project meets the criteria in SMC 22.805.020.L.1.

31 G. Requirements for "Small Projects"

- 32 1) Unless SMC 22.805.020.L.1 applies, projects with less than 5,000 square feet of
33 new plus replaced hard surface are not required to extend the piped public
34 drainage system if any of the following applies:
- 35 a) The approved point of discharge is directly into a receiving water.
- 36 b) Curb or alley discharge is allowed and used per Directors' Rule SDCI 6-2021 /
37 SPU DWW-300, Section VII.I (Curb Discharge into the Public Place).
- 38 c) Onsite infiltration is allowed and used per Directors' Rule SDCI 10-2021 / SPU
39 DWW-200, Volume .3, Section 4.3.2.1 (Requirements for Projects with No Off-
40 site Point of Discharge).

41 H. Requirements for "Large Projects"

- 42 1) Unless SMC 22.805.020.L.1 applies, projects with 5,000 square feet or more new
43 plus replaced hard surface are not required to extend the piped public drainage
44 system, if any of the following applies:

- 1 a) The piped public drainage system is not accessible to be extended as
2 determined by the Director.
- 3 b) The approved point of discharge is directly to a receiving water.
- 4 c) The project has less than 5,000 square feet of **new** hard surface and a public
5 combined sewer or a ditch or culvert system is accessible within the abutting
6 public place to each existing, proposed, or adjusted parcel.
- 7 d) The project is greater than 600 LF from a piped public drainage system and a
8 public combined sewer or a ditch or culvert system is accessible within the
9 abutting public place to each existing, proposed, or adjusted parcel.
- 10 e) One parcel has a parcel boundary that contains a piped public drainage system
11 and a single service is required.
- 12 f) The project is a unit lot subdivision and the following conditions apply:
- 13 i) The unit lot subdivision shares a boundary with more than one street; and
14 ii) One boundary contains a piped public drainage system.
- 15 g) The Director makes the determination to waive or modify the requirements to
16 extend the piped public drainage system. In making the determination the
17 Director may consider, but is not limited to, the following conditions:
- 18 i) The location of an environmentally critical area or buffer or disruption of
19 existing drainage patterns makes extending, improving, or maintaining the
20 public drainage system impractical.
- 21 ii) An existing bridge, viaduct, or other structure such as a substantial retaining
22 wall makes extending the public drainage system impractical.
- 23 iii) Extension of the public drainage system cannot be built and operated under
24 gravity flow conditions while meeting applicable engineering standards.
- 25
26

1 **VI. EXTENSIONS – PROJECTS CONDUCTED IN THE PUBLIC RIGHT-OF-WAY**

2 This section describes the minimum requirements for extension of the Public Drainage System
3 related to projects conducted in the public right-of-way. These requirements typically apply to
4 **Sidewalk Projects** (SMC 22.801.200) and **Roadway Projects** (SMC 22.801.190) that are
5 conducted only within the public right-of-way.

6 For projects not conducted in the public right-of-way, typically Single-family residential or Parcel-
7 based projects, refer to Section V of this rule.

8

<p>Stormwater Code Language</p> <p><u>M. Extension of the Public Drainage System. For projects constructed in the public right-of-way, extension of the piped public drainage system across the full extent of the site shall be required for any of the following:</u></p> <p><u>1. All projects where the Director has determined an extension is required considering, but not limited to, the following attributes of the project:</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><u>a. Poses a hazard to public health, safety or welfare;</u><u>b. Endangers life or property;</u><u>c. Adversely affects the function of City right-of-way, utilities, or other property owned or maintained by the City;</u><u>d. Adversely affects the functions and values of an environmentally critical area or buffer;</u><u>e. Adversely affects an area with known erosion or flooding problems; or</u><u>f. Adversely affects receiving waters, any properties, or right-of-way.</u> <p><u>2. The project's total new plus replaced hard surfaces is 50 percent or more of the existing hard surfaces within the project limits. The project limits are defined by the length of the project and the width of the right-of-way. If a project encompasses more than one intersection, the project limits are further defined by one intersection to the other and blocks may vary in length, unless:</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><u>a. The piped public drainage system is already accessible within the site;</u> <u>or</u><u>b. The project is otherwise not required to extend by rules promulgated by the Director.</u>
--

*Refer to proposed
Stormwater Code
during public review.*

*Final code language
to be added to final
rule*

9

10 **A. General Requirements**

- 11 1) Extension of the **piped** public drainage system (also known as a Pipe Storm Drain
12 (PSD)) is required unless otherwise noted.
- 13 2) Note: The public combined sewer is not a public drainage system by definition.
- 14 3) In combined sewer service areas where a public drainage system is determined be
15 inaccessible for extension, the extension of a public combined sewer may be
16 allowed instead (refer to SMC 21.16.040).
- 17 4) The cost of an extension is borne by the applicant.

- 1 5) In some circumstances, including but not limited to state highways, divided
2 roadways, the presence of railroad or streetcar tracks, or other obstructions in the
3 right-of-way, installing a public drainage system to serve the near side of the road
4 shall be required.
- 5 6) In special circumstances, the system may be best served by the installation of a
6 pipe that is larger than required by this rule (i.e., 25-year storm event) or other
7 system improvements. In such cases, SPU shall pay the difference in cost of
8 materials for the required and the desired size.
- 9 7) Refer to SMC 22.805.020.N and Section VII of this rule for design requirements for
10 the public drainage system.

11 B. Requirements for All Projects:

- 12 1) All projects conducted in the public right-of-way (e.g., sidewalk projects, roadway
13 projects) are required to extend the piped public drainage system if the Director
14 determines that a project meets the criteria in SMC 22.805.020.M.1.

15 C. Extension Not Required

- 16 1) Projects are not required to extend the piped public drainage system, under the
17 following conditions:
 - 18 a) The piped public drainage system is not accessible to be extended as
19 determined by the Director.
 - 20 b) The Director makes the determination to waive or modify the requirements to
21 extend the piped public drainage system. The waiver or modification shall
22 provide the minimum relief necessary from the requirement to extend the public
23 drainage system. In making the determination the Director may consider, but is
24 not limited to, the following conditions:
 - 25 i) The location of an environmentally critical area or buffer or a disruption of
26 the existing drainage patterns makes extending, improving, or maintaining
27 the public drainage system impractical.
 - 28 ii) An existing bridge, viaduct, or other structure such as a substantial retaining
29 wall makes extending the public drainage system impractical.
 - 30 iii) Extension of the public drainage system cannot be built and operated under
31 gravity flow conditions while meeting applicable engineering standards.
32

1 **VII. PUBLIC DRAINAGE SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS**

<p>Stormwater Code Language</p> <p><i>Refer to proposed Stormwater Code during public review. Final code language to be added to final rule</i></p>
--

2 This rule explains standard criteria for civil engineers to use in designing the following:

- 3 ● Piped Storm Drain (PSD)
- 4 ● Detention pipes
- 5 ● Culverts
- 6 ● Catch basin (CB) and inlet facilities
- 7 ● Other public drainage systems

8 Because specific site conditions greatly affect the feasibility of many design elements outlined in
9 this rule, SPU, at its discretion, may approve design variations other than those specified by these
10 requirements. SPU and the Seattle Department of Transportation (SDOT) must approve all
11 drainage improvements in the right-of-way.

12 A. Point of Discharge

13 1) Per SMC 22.805.020.B (Minimum Requirements for Discharge Point), selection of
14 the point of discharge for any project shall consider whether the capacity of the
15 drainage system is adequate for the flow rate and volume from the project site. If a
16 project proposes to redirect flow from one public drainage system to another, the
17 project shall analyze potential impacts on the downstream system or receiving
18 water.

19 B. Grade Roadways and Alleys to Collect Drainage

20 1) Curb Returns

- 21 a) Grade curb returns at a minimum slope of 0.5% in the flow line so that no low
22 point is located in a crosswalk or in front of a curb ramp per Standard Plan
23 260a.
 - 24 ■ .
 - 25 i) Avoid locating open grates inside curb ramp wings. This allows
26 maintenance of the structure without closing the curb ramp. Open grates
27 within the curb ramp landing are not allowed.
 - 28 ii) Additionally, grade curb returns at a minimum slope of 0.5% in the flow line
29 so that any drainage collection structure is not:
 - 30 iii) From a curb ramp landing to any grate with a minimum clear distance of 1-
31 foot. When unavoidable, a variance that is Americans with Disabilities Act
32 (ADA) compliant will be considered.
 - 33 iv) In a vehicle parking zone. This is to avoid the need for temporary on street
34 parking restrictions when maintenance is required.
- 35 b) Avoid creating closed-contour low points and minimize new low points that trap
36 stormwater.

- 1 2) Right-of-Way Behind the Curb
- 2 a) Grade right-of-way behind the curb to the street. The standard cross section is
- 3 shown on Standard Plan 400.
- 4 b) When SPU agrees that the standard cross section is infeasible, especially at
- 5 curb bulbs and bus bulbs, typical drainage design considerations or exceptions
- 6 include the following:
- 7 i) Direct drainage away from building entrances.
- 8 ii) Direct any overflow towards the street.
- 9 iii) Evaluate alternative curb heights down to a minimum of 4 inches.
- 10 iv) Evaluate alternative slopes on the sidewalk down to a minimum of 0.5%.
- 11 v) Use the existing curb line along the sidewalk as a depression line to drain
- 12 off water to the street.
- 13 vi) Grade so that overflow from rain gardens in the planting strip overtops the
- 14 curb towards the street.
- 15 vii) Direct drainage to landscaping or infiltration facilities.
- 16 viii) Install curb cut outlets from bioretention features per Standard Plans 295c
- 17 and 295d.
- 18 3) New Curb Bulbs
- 19 a) To the extent practical, grade new curb bulbs to allow drainage to flow to a
- 20 standard location for a drainage collection structure.
- 21 b) When locating low points, consider access issues related to maintenance of
- 22 drainage collection structures, such as worker exposure to traffic, and vehicles
- 23 parked over the structure.
- 24 4) Concentrated Flow
- 25 a) Collect flow concentrated along a gutter or flow line in a drainage structure. Do
- 26 not allow the flow to fan out after it has concentrated.
- 27 5) Inlet and CB Staking Points
- 28 a) Set elevations for inlets and CB grates at the curb face. Include the drainage
- 29 transition zone as shown in Standard Plan 260a.
- 30 6) Alleys
- 31 a) Grade alley cross sections per Standard Plan 403, and grade longitudinal
- 32 sections to drain to the perpendicular street. Public storm drain extensions to
- 33 mid-alley low points will not be permitted, unless SPU agrees that there is no
- 34 feasible alternative.
- 35 7) Raised Crosswalks
- 36 a) After SDOT determines that a raised crosswalk is desired for transportation
- 37 purposes, SPU will review the drainage function and mitigation measures.
- 38 Detailed grading analysis is required. Grade to limit ponding when drainage
- 39 pickups are plugged. The overflow path must not be over the sidewalk or onto
- 40 private property. Refer to Section C.6 Gutter flow calculations.

1 C. Locating CBs and Inlets

2 1) Collection points

3 a) Collect drainage in the following locations:

- 4 i) At all closed contour low points and minor low points along the roadway
- 5 ii) Upstream of all intersections
- 6 iii) Upstream of all crosswalks and curb ramps
- 7 iv) Before transitions on super-elevated roads
- 8 v) At the downstream end of developed alleys upstream of the sidewalk

9 b) Design variations, accepted at the discretion of SPU, include:

- 10 i) No required drainage pickup if the drainage area is 3,000 square feet or
- 11 less leading to an intersection, crosswalk, or end of an alley.
- 12 ii) Additional drainage pickups to limit clogging due to tree leaves or other
- 13 debris.
- 14 iii) Additional drainage pickups at abrupt grade changes.

15 c) Additional drainage pickups (CBs) are required at closed-contour low points.

16 2) Maximum curb length of a residential street contributing to a CB

- 17 a) Water from less than 1,000 total lineal feet of curb on a residential street may
- 18 discharge into one CB. This includes the length of curb for inlets that discharge
- 19 into a CB as well as the CB itself.
- 20 b) Although grading streets to minimize closed-contour low points along the
- 21 roadway is preferred, some flat residential streets may require additional
- 22 drainage pickups.

23 3) Pedestrian and bicycle routes

- 24 a) Locate and relocate solid cover CBs to avoid pedestrian and bicycle access
- 25 routes. When possible, stay close to the curb to limit the need for lane closures
- 26 during maintenance and avoid the vehicle wheel path to limit noise and cover
- 27 wear.

28 4) Standard locations for drainage grates and exceptions

29 a) For standard locations of drainage grates, refer to Standard Plan 260a and

30 260b. Exceptions to the requirement of locating structures 1.5 feet from the

31 point of curvature (PC) or point of tangency (PT) include the following:

- 32 i) A wider crosswalk or curb ramp location that would direct pedestrians to
- 33 cross a grate
- 34 ii) Locating the drainage grate farther up gradient to avoid creating a low point
- 35 farther up gradient
- 36 iii) Moving the drainage grate up-gradient to avoid utility conflicts
- 37 iv) Locating the drainage grate farther up-gradient due to site conditions
- 38 requiring an abrupt grade change that flattens up-gradient of the
- 39 intersection, especially at curb bulbs

1 5) Trees

- 2 a) Maintenance of drainage structures can be hazardous to tree health. To the
3 extent feasible, locate structures outside the full-growth drip line of street trees.
4 The minimum distance from the edge of the trunk to the edge of the structure is
5 5 feet per Standard Plan 030.

6 6) Gutter flow and allowable spread width calculations

- 7 a) To support safety and mobility of vehicles, pedestrians, and bicycles, the
8 spread width of water on roadway edges shall be established as part of the
9 design. Calculations of gutter flow and spread width, including sag inlet
10 analyses, are required for projects that build new arterial streets or significantly
11 change the areas contributing flow to existing collection inlets and for projects
12 that build new sidewalk along roadways that previously had no curb and gutter
13 conveyance systems.

14 b) Allowable spread width of gutter flow:

- 15 i) On arterial streets, the allowable spread width on a continuous grade is 5.5
16 feet for the pavement adjacent to the street edge or curb, for the 10-year
17 rainfall intensity, 5-minute duration design storm. Scenarios where a lesser
18 design spread width is proposed requires further assessment as follows:

- 19 ♦ An assessment of the spread width should be made at locations where
20 a lesser design spread width is proposed, including:
21 ♦ Near bus stops
22 ♦ Where there is no planting strip to provide separation of pedestrians
23 from the roadway
24 ♦ Upstream of closed contours where allowing bypass flow to enter the
25 sag location will increase the risk of actual flooding
26 ♦ If lane adjacent to the shoulder or curb is intended to be used for bike
27 travel
28 ♦ This allowable spread is required regardless of the use of the pavement
29 adjacent to the street edge or curb (eg parking lane, bike lane, vehicle
30 travel lane, etc).

- 31 ii) In the case of a closed contour, a roadway sag inlet analysis is required.

- 32 ♦ Roadway sag inlet analysis shall be according to WSDOT's Hydraulic
33 Manual.
34 ♦ Roadway sag inlet analysis shall use the 50-year rainfall intensity, 5-
35 minute duration design storm.
36 ♦ If the closed contour is located in an intersection, the Engineer should
37 consider safety at the intersection, the effects of icing and hydroplaning
38 of vehicles at this location, and how quickly ponding from the rainfall
39 event will flow off the roadway.

- 40 iii) The Engineer shall analyze the spread width of flow at existing and new
41 inlet locations on a continuous run of curb until the curb ends or the curb
42 enters an inlet or other collection structure.

- 43 ♦ If the curb ends or no collection structure is located upstream of an
44 intersection, the Engineer should evaluate:
45 ♦ Impacts to private property

- 1 ♦ Anticipated ponding in the ROW
- 2 ♦ Impacts to traffic, pedestrian, and bicycle safety in an intersection
- 3 ♦ If the next downstream collection point has capacity for flows.
- 4 iv) Where use of the allowable spread width is infeasible, the Engineer should
- 5 evaluate the following drainage elements:
- 6 c) Longitudinal pavement slope (refer to Streets Illustrated for allowable range of
- 7 slopes)
- 8 d) Cross or transverse pavement slope (refer to Streets Illustrated for allowable
- 9 range of slopes)
- 10 e) The depth of flow at the edge of the travel lane (maximum of 0.12 feet)

11 On vehicle traffic lanes greater spread widths may be allowed where traffic
12 volumes and speeds are low. An assessment of the relative risks and cost of
13 various design spread widths may be helpful. SPU has an interest in minimizing
14 new CB infrastructure when street function is not compromised. Exceptions to the
15 allowable spread width must be approved by SPU and the City Traffic Engineer.

16 D. Type of CB or Inlet to Use Where

17 1) Preference for CBs

18 a) CBs provide more reliable drainage pickup and are preferred over inlets.
19 Examples of when installation of an inlet is allowed instead of a CB include:

- 20 i) The existing condition is an inlet and CB system. Refer to Detail 1 on the
- 21 drawings at the end of Section VII.
- 22 ii) Utility interferences prevent the installation of a CB along the curb
- 23 line. Refer to Detail 2 on the drawings at the end of Section VII.

24 2) Replacing existing inlets, CBs and connection pipe

25 a) Inlets along new curbs must conform with Standard Plan 250 or be replaced.
26 Whenever an inlet is replaced, the connection pipe to the CB must be replaced
27 with new pipe. If SPU determines that the existing CB or CB connection pipe is
28 defective by SPU, it must also be replaced.

29 3) Standard CB installation

30 a) Standard CB installation within the street shall be in accordance with Standard
31 Plan. 240D, which has a vaned grate and through curb opening.

32 b) Typical design variations and exceptions include the following:

33 i) Type 242B installation:

- 34 ♦ To accommodate locating other shallow utilities behind the curb
- 35 ♦ To avoid a top slab within the pavement

36 ii) Type 240A installation when inlets provide the open grated surface and the
37 CB has a solid lid

38 iii) Type 240C or type 242A installations that do not have a through curb
39 opening, when the structure is not at a curb or the curb height is less than 4
40 inches

- 1 4) Standard Inlet Installation
- 2 a) Install standard inlets within the street per Standard Plan 250B, which has a
- 3 vanned grate and through curb opening. Use type 250A when the structure is not
- 4 at a curb or the curb height is less than 4 inches.
- 5 5) At curb bulbs
- 6 a) For curb bulbs, refer to Detail 4 on the drawing at the end of Section VII. Locate
- 7 a Standard Plan 240 CB no farther up-gradient than 1.5 feet from the PC or PT
- 8 of the curb bulb.
- 9 b) Use a Standard Plan 250 inlet when the existing condition is an inlet and CB
- 10 system and:
- 11 i) The location is not a closed contour low point or a minor low point.
- 12 ii) The inlet connection pipe can be placed at a minimum slope of 5% with an
- 13 invert at the CB 2-inches minimum above the outlet pipe invert.
- 14 iii) Either an existing CB in good condition or a new type 240A CB is located in
- 15 the roadway.
- 16 6) Closed Contour Low Points
- 17 a) At closed contour low points, two independently connected CBs are required in
- 18 order to minimize the following:
- 19 i) Street flooding caused by plugging of the CB or inlet
- 20 ii) Drainage runoff overtopping the curb
- 21 iii) Private property damage
- 22 b) At most locations, the second CB is located on the opposite side of the street.
- 23 Refer to Detail 3 on the drawings at the end of Section VII.
- 24 7) Alleys
- 25 a) In alleys, use a Standard Plan 241 catch basin.
- 26 8) Elevated Structures
- 27 a) For all elevated structures, consult with SPU about the requirements early in
- 28 the design process. If drains are required on a bridge, install per Standard Plan
- 29 290 with a grate per Standard Plan 265. New bridge downspouts shall have a
- 30 minimum pipe diameter of 6 inches and a minimum bend radius of 4 feet.
- 31 9) Non-Standard Installations Within Shallow Ditch and Culvert System
- 32 a) For non-standard installations within the shallow ditch and culvert system,
- 33 consult with SPU about the requirements early in the design process. Design
- 34 variations, allowed at the discretion of SPU, include the following:
- 35 i) Replacing all existing sand boxes within the project area with either a CB or
- 36 a junction box, depending on the function
- 37 ii) Grading and defining depression lines to reduce the number of structures
- 38 needed
- 39 iii) CB to CB connections along the culvert. This avoids offset CBs that require
- 40 a junction box because a tee connection to the existing shallow culvert is
- 41 infeasible
- 42 iv) Eliminating the trap when connecting CB to CB
- 43 v) Installing a Standard Plan 241 CB with a vane grate within the roadway

- vi) Reducing or eliminating riser sections, if the street surface is flat enough to allow adjustment of the casting with a reduced riser
- vii) Inverted frames to reduce the height of the casting
- viii) Situation specific designs of shallow structures

10) Other Non-Standard Installations

- a) Other non-standard installations and modified structures may be approved if SPU agrees that grading to eliminate the need is infeasible. Structures will be individually reviewed, using the following criteria:
 - i) The non-standard structure has the following attributes:
 - ◆ Is accessible and maintainable
 - ◆ Does not result in an increased risk of flooding
 - ◆ Is ADA compliant
 - ii) Within the roadway, consider in the following order:
 - ◆ Use of one or two smaller standard structures to increase storage volume (e.g., Standard Plan 241 with vaned grate).
 - ◆ A modified shallower CB that has a standard grate, the maximum sump possible and a trap (detail required)
 - iii) Behind the curb installations will be evaluated in the following order:
 - ◆ Depression line to an inlet connected to existing CB.
 - ◆ Depression line to CB and connection to main.
 - ◆ Trench grates will be approved only if there is no infrastructure available for CB connection.

E. Inlet and CB Connection Pipes

1) Sizing

- a) Standard size for inlet connection and CB connection pipes standard size is 8-inch diameter. Design variations, allowed at the discretion of SPU, include the following:
 - i) When the CB is being connected to a 10-inch-diameter or smaller combined sewer, use a 6-inch-diameter pipe.
 - ii) Allowing a variance to reconnect to an existing 6-inch-diameter connection pipe in good condition, rather than replacing the pipe all the way to the mainline. Use a 6-inch-diameter pipe and a flexible gasketed coupling with stainless steel shielding. Connecting new 8-inch-diameter pipe to an existing 6-inch-diameter pipe is not allowed.
 - iii) Installing a 6-inch-diameter pipe when collecting sidewalk drainage only.

2) Inlet Connections

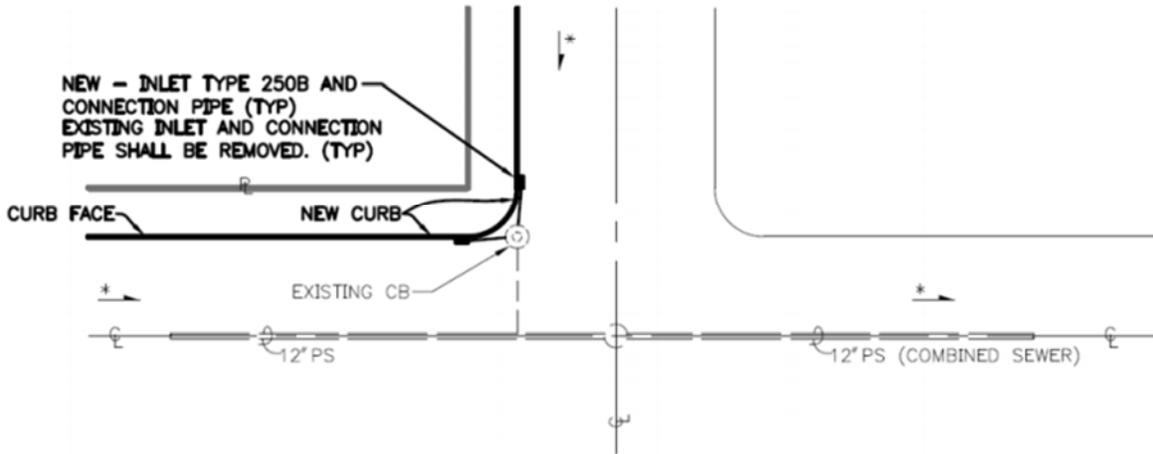
- a) Inlet connections must be straight and conform with the following specifications:
 - i) Placed at a minimum slope of 5%
 - ii) A maximum length of 50 feet
 - iii) An invert at the CB that is at least 2 inches above the invert for the outlet pipe invert

- 1 b) Inlets must connect to a CB. Direct connection to a mainline must be made
2 from a structure with a sump and outlet trap.
- 3 3) Outlet Location and Orientation
- 4 a) Refer to Standard Plans 240, 242, 250 and 261 for allowable location and
5 orientation of outlets from structures. Pipe must be oriented to allow tool access
6 utilizing the length of the casting opening, and traps must be below the casting,
7 so they can be reached.
- 8 4) CB Connections
- 9 a) CB connections must be placed at a minimum slope of 2% and a maximum
10 slope of 100% slope. Horizontal and vertical bends are expected, but shall not
11 exceed 22½ degrees in a single fitting. A straight pipe section of at least 1 foot
12 minimum is required between fittings.
- 13 5) Connection pipe material
- 14 a) Connections shall be ductile iron (DIP). Refer to standard construction
15 notes "Drainage CB and Inlet Notes" (docx) and Standard Specifications for
16 Municipal Construction . Design variations, allowed at the discretion of SPU,
17 include the following:
- 18 i) Use of a non-metallic pipe when site conditions include corrosive soils or
19 other corrosion source.
- 20 ii) Evaluating matching the existing pipe material when coupling to an existing
21 pipe to remain.
- 22 6) Connecting to the mainline pipe
- 23 a) Connections to a new mainline pipe must be by manufactured tee unless one of
24 the following attributes applies to the new mainline:
- 25 i) Diameter of a least 24 inches
- 26 ii) Reinforced concrete pipe (RCP)
- 27 b) For information on allowable connections and procedures for connections to
28 existing mainline pipe, refer to Core Tap Procedures for Storm and Sewer
29 Mains. Connections to maintenance holes are non-standard and will be
30 evaluated by SPU on a case-by-case basis.
- 31 7) Shallow street culvert connections
- 32 a) When it is infeasible to install a tee on the existing culvert above the springline,
33 connect to shallow street culverts with a junction box.
- 34 8) Ditch connections
- 35 a) Connections to a ditch must be tapered to match the ditch grading and may
36 require armoring to prevent erosion.
- 37 9) Plan submittal requirements
- 38 a) Provide station and offset to staking point at face of curb for CBs and inlets per
39 Standard Plan 260a.
- 40 b) Profiles are not required for inlet or CB connection pipes, except to show known
41 conflicts or non-standard laying conditions, or connections to mainlines. The
42 standards allow for some field adjustment.
- 43 c) Call out to provide polyethylene foam protection when clearances are less than
44 6 inches.

- 1 d) Call out measured lengths per Standard Plan 010.
- 2 F. Mainlines – Pipe Storm Drains (PSD)
- 3 1) Standard location
- 4 a) Locate storm drains in the standard location, 7 feet south or west of the right-of-
- 5 way centerline, as shown in Standard Plan 030. Alternative alignments require
- 6 approval by SPU and SDOT.
- 7 2) Sizing
- 8 a) Storm drains must be designed for full gravity peak flow with a 4% annual
- 9 probability (25-year recurrence) for existing and anticipated loads. The
- 10 hydraulic grade line (HGL) for that peak flow must stay a minimum of 4-feet
- 11 below the rim of all drainage structures and a minimum of 3-feet below the
- 12 lowest elevation served by gravity flow on adjacent private properties.
- 13 b) For more information on requirements for hydrologic analysis, including tidal
- 14 and lake backwater constraints, refer to Appendix F to the Stormwater Manual
- 15 Hydrologic Analysis and Design.
- 16 c) PSDs must be a minimum of 12 inches in diameter.
- 17 3) Pipe slope
- 18 a) Pipe slope shall generally follow the surface topography at a standard depth of
- 19 cover of 6-feet. Desired minimum pipe slope is 1%. Typical exceptions include
- 20 the following:
- 21 i) Downstream system is deeper or shallower than 6 feet.
- 22 ii) Surface topography is flat, and pipe slope is 0.5%.
- 23 iii) Connection cannot be made unless pipe slope is less than 0.5%
- 24 4) Minimum velocity
- 25 a) Required minimum velocity is 3 feet per second (fps). If velocity exceeds 20
- 26 fps, energy dissipation in the downstream maintenance hole (MH) is required to
- 27 minimize hydraulic jumps.
- 28 5) Pipe material
- 29 a) Pipe material will be as approved by SPU, most typically ductile iron pipe. Refer
- 30 to standard construction notes "SPU Mainline and Detention Pipe
- 31 Notes" (docx) and Standard Specifications for Municipal Construction.
- 32 6) Plan submittal requirements
- 33 a) On pipeline profiles, calculate and show the invert elevations at MHs by
- 34 projecting the pipe slopes to the center of the structure.
- 35 b) Call out measured lengths per Standard Plan 010.
- 36 c) Show the HGL on the profile, if the pipe is surcharged.
- 37 d) Provide notes documenting hydrologic and hydraulic design assumptions.
- 38 e) Provide a drainage report documenting all calculations.
- 39 G. Maintenance Holes
- 40 1) Where maintenance holes are required
- 41 a) Maintenance holes (MH) are required in the following locations:
- 42 i) Every 375-feet

- 1 ii) At intersecting streets for future extensions
2 iii) At pipe ends
3 iv) At pipe junctions
4 v) At grade breaks
5 vi) Where horizontal alignment changes
6 b) Design variations, allowed at the discretion of SPU, include the following:
7 i) Setting a MH on the smaller pipe within 30 feet of the connection when the
8 connection is to a very large diameter PSD.
9 ii) Not requiring a MH if any of the following apply:
10 ♦ At an end of pipe that is less than 100 feet in length, especially if a
11 future extension is anticipated
12 ♦ For a single vertical or single horizontal bend no greater than 22½
13 degrees between MHs.
14 ♦ If the MH spacing requirement results in difficult access to the MH.
15 2) Match pipe crowns
16 a) Pipe crowns must match at MHs. For details on MHs, refer to Standard Plans
17 204 through 212. For standard installations, use Type A, unless the pipeline is
18 too shallow.
19 3) Drop connections
20 a) Drop connections may be approved when SPU agrees that the slope or depth
21 makes matching the pipe crowns infeasible. For inside drop connections, refer
22 to Standard Plan 233b.
23 4) Sizing
24 a) For information on MH sizing, see [maintenance hole selection \(pdf\)](#).
25 H. Detention Pipe and Flow Control Structures
26 1) Detention pipe standards
27 a) Detention facilities shall conform to Standard Plan 270 Flow Control Structure
28 with Detention Pipe.
29 2) Locating detention and flow control structures
30 a) Locate detention facilities to minimize traffic impacts during maintenance,
31 including:
32 i) Locate off arterials, when feasible.
33 ii) Locate MHs to allow a single lane closure during inspection or maintenance
34 of the structure.
35 b) Connect the flow control structure to a MH on the mainline. When possible, use
36 and rechannel an existing MH.

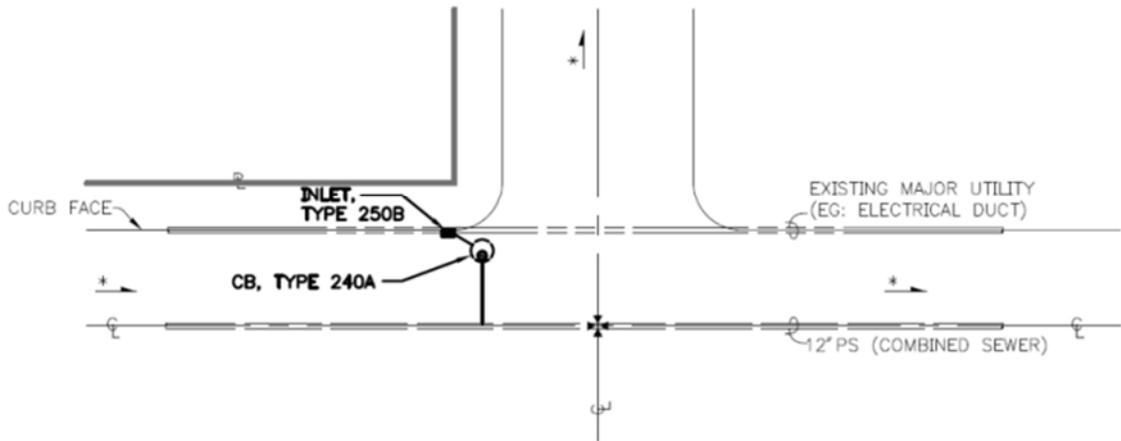
- 1 3) Detention pipe material
- 2 a) Detention pipe material will be as approved by SPU, typically DIP or RCP.
- 3 Polypropylene or steel reinforced polyethylene will be allowed if pavement
- 4 restoration can be delayed for 30 days after installation to allow for flexible pipe
- 5 testing. Refer to standard construction notes "SPU Mainline and Detention Pipe
- 6 Notes" (docx) and Standard Specifications for Municipal Construction.
- 7 4) Plan submittal requirements
- 8 a) Detention pipe profile
- 9 b) Detail of the flow control structure
- 10 c) Notes with the detail documenting the major hydrologic and hydraulic design
- 11 assumptions
- 12 d) Drainage report documenting all detention calculations
- 13 I. Culverts and Ditches
- 14 1) Within the informal ditch and culvert system, the City does not generally allow the
- 15 filling of a ditch in the street right-of-way. Refer to Policy DWW-205 Ditch
- 16 Replacement.
- 17 2) Any existing culvert pipe with less than 2 feet of cover under the hard surface of a
- 18 project's proposed roadway hard surface or concrete sidewalk (Standard Plan 420)
- 19 must be replaced, unless the existing culvert pipe has the following attributes:
- 20 a) Consists of Ductile Iron Pipe (DIP)
- 21 b) Has sufficient capacity. See SMC 22.805.020.H (Ensure Sufficient Capacity)
- 22 and Section IV of this rule for sufficient capacity determination.
- 23 3) Culverts on fish-bearing creeks or streams, even with intermittent flows, are not
- 24 addressed in this rule.
- 25 4) Sizing culverts
- 26 a) When replacing an existing roadside ditch with a culvert, size the new roadside
- 27 culvert to maintain the capacity of the existing ditch. Culverts must have a
- 28 minimum diameter of 12 inches, or if connecting to an existing culvert larger
- 29 than 12 inches in diameter the diameter of the new culvert must match that of
- 30 the existing larger culvert size.
- 31 b) When replacing an existing culvert, the new culvert must at a minimum match
- 32 the existing culvert size.
- 33 5) Culvert pipe material
- 34 a) For culverts, use ductile iron pipe with Class D bedding. Alternative materials
- 35 may be approved by SPU when pipe cover is greater than 2 feet.
- 36
- 37



DETAIL 1
INLET PLACEMENT ALONG NEW CURB

NTS
 NOTES: EXISTING CATCH BASIN IS NOT REQUIRED TO BE REPLACED IF IN GOOD WORKING CONDITION.
 * SLOPE (TYP)

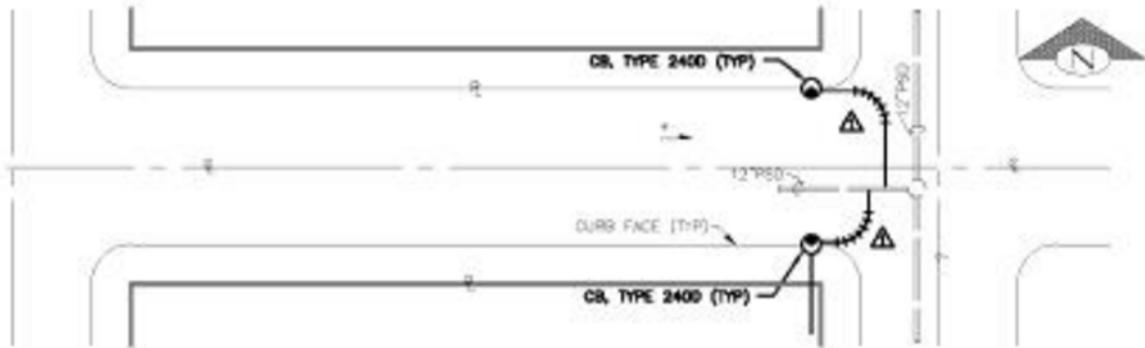
1
2



DETAIL 2
INLET PLACEMENT AT UTILITY CONFLICTS

NTS
 NOTES: TO BE USED ONLY WHEN MAJOR EXISTING UTILITIES CONFLICT STANDARD CB PLACEMENT.
 NOT APPROPRIATE AT CLOSED CONTOUR LOW POINTS WHERE PLUGGING OF THE INLET COULD RESULT IN DAMAGE.
 * SLOPE (TYP)

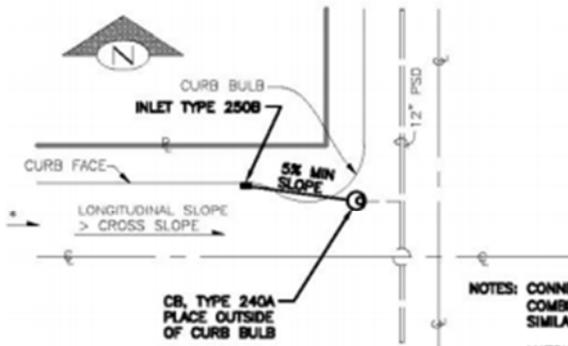
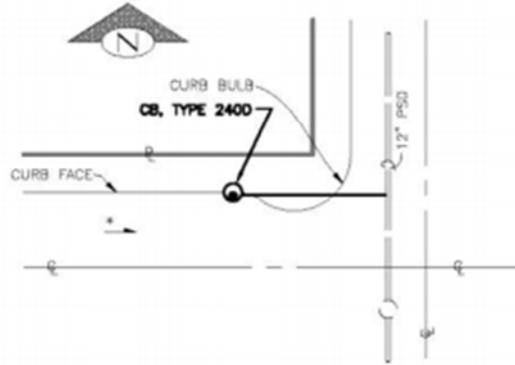
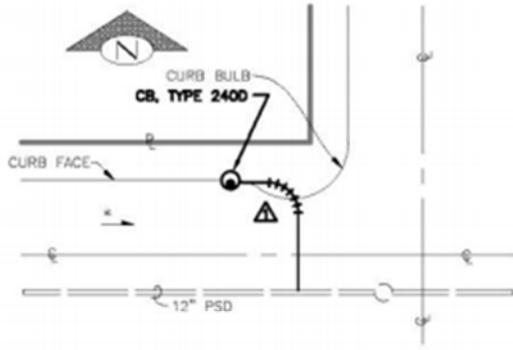
3



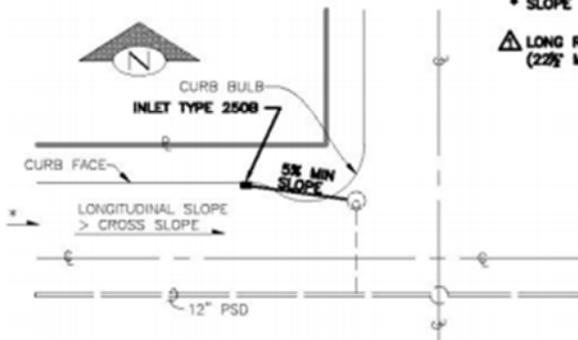
DETAIL 3
CATCH BASIN LAYOUTS

- NOTES: MEETS 2 CATCH BASINS AT CLOSED CONTOUR LOW POINT REQUIREMENT ON CROWNED STREETS.
- CONNECTION TO A PUBLIC COMBINED SEWER (P.C.S.) SIMILAR TO ABOVE.
- + SLOPE (TYP)
- △ LONG RADIUS SWEEP. (225' MAX BEND ONLY)

1



- NOTES: CONNECTION TO A PUBLIC COMBINED SEWER (PS) SIMILAR TO ABOVE.
- MATCH EXISTING PIPE SIZE.
- EXISTING CB IS NOT REQUIRED TO BE REPLACED IF IN GOOD CONDITION AND LOCATED IN THE ROADWAY.
- * SLOPE (TYP)
 - △ LONG RADIUS SWEEP. (22 $\frac{1}{2}$ " MAX BEND ONLY)



DETAIL
INLET/CATCH BASIN LAYOUT AT CURB BULBS

4
 -

NTS

1
 2

1 **VIII. DEFINITIONS**

2 *Landlocked.* A parcel that does not abut any street right-of-way and is separated from the
3 nearest street right-of-way by at least 10 feet of the parcel, which cannot serve as access
4 to the parcel from the street right-of-way.

5 *Latecomer Agreement.* A contract between SPU and an applicant, pursuant to Revised
6 Code of Washington (RCW), Chapter 35.91, and SMC 21.80, which allows an applicant to
7 recover a portion of the costs of installing new utility system improvements from other
8 benefiting parcels at the time they connect to the new system improvements.

9 *Parcel.* A tract or plot of land, including unit lot subdivisions under SMC Title 23, Land Use
10 Code. For the purposes of this rule, individual lots are considered separate parcels.

11 Refer to SMC 22.801 for Stormwater Code Definitions and SMC 21.16.030 for Side Sewer
12 Code Definitions

13 **IX. AUTHORITY/REFERENCES**

- 14 ● SMC 3.32.020, SPU Administration – Adoption of Rules
- 15 ● SMC 22.800, 22.808, Stormwater Code
- 16 ● SMC 21.16, Side Sewer Code
- 17 ● SPU Director’s Rule DWW-200, Stormwater Manual
- 18 ● SPU Director’s Rule, DR-2011-004 Requirements for Design and Construction of
19 Side Sewers
- 20 ● City Standard Plans and Specifications
- 21 ● City Streets Illustrated
- 22 ● SPU Design Standards and Guidelines
- 23 ● SPU Policy DWW-205, Ditch Replacement

April 30, 2021

MEMORANDUM

To: Transportation and Utilities Committee
From: Brian Goodnight, Analyst
Subject: CB 120044: 2021 Stormwater Code Update

On May 5, the Transportation and Utilities Committee will consider and possibly vote on [Council Bill \(CB\) 120044](#), a bill that would amend the City's Stormwater Code ([Chapters 22.800 – 22.808 of the Seattle Municipal Code](#)) to incorporate new state requirements, adjust certain policies, and improve the usability of the code. This memorandum provides background information, a brief summary of the proposed changes, and anticipated financial impacts of the proposed changes on City departments.

Background

The City uses its Stormwater Code to protect people, property, and the environment from the adverse impacts of urban stormwater runoff, such as flooding, landslides, erosion, and pollution. The Stormwater Code is also necessary to comply with state and federal regulations. In 2019, the Washington State Department of Ecology (Ecology) issued a new stormwater permit to the City, known as the 2019–2024 Phase I Municipal Stormwater Permit (MS4 Permit).

The MS4 Permit requires that the City's Stormwater Code and its associated technical manual create an effective local program to prevent and control the impacts of stormwater runoff from new development, redevelopment, and construction activity. The technical manual is known as the Seattle Stormwater Manual and is promulgated via a joint Directors' Rule by the Directors of Seattle Public Utilities (SPU) and the Seattle Department of Construction and Inspections (SDCI). A draft version of the updated Stormwater Manual is attached to CB 120044's Summary and Fiscal Note as [Exhibit C](#). SPU is also planning to issue a new Director's Rule addressing new Stormwater Code language relating to public mainline extensions and drainage requirements in the public right-of-way ([Exhibit E](#)).

The Council last amended the Stormwater Code in September 2015, via [Ordinance 124872](#), in response to Ecology modifications made in January 2015 to the City's previous, 2013–2018 MS4 Permit. SPU and SDCI began the process for the 2021 Stormwater Code Update, as proposed in CB 120044, in October 2019. In addition to internal work, the departments have informed stakeholders and solicited input on proposed updates through public meetings, email announcements, newsletter articles, and briefings at stakeholder meetings. A complete list of public engagement activities is included in the Summary and Fiscal Note.

Summary of Proposed Changes

The 2021 Stormwater Code Update proposes to make the following changes:

- Exemptions for certain land-disturbing activities and authority for alternative Stormwater Code compliance;
- Revisions to the effective date of the Stormwater Code relative to project application and construction dates;
- Additions and revisions to definitions and best management practice references;
- Changes to source control requirements for certain activities;
- Changes to the minimum requirements that apply to all development projects to meet the MS4 Permit obligations and account for Seattle's unique development patterns and infrastructure; and
- Additions and revisions to submittal and drainage review requirements.

The Directors' Report and Recommendation, attached to the Summary Fiscal Note as [Exhibit A](#), contains additional information on the regulatory context for the 2021 Stormwater Code Update and a more detailed summary of the proposed changes.

Ecology has reviewed the City's proposed revisions that require Ecology approval and has made a preliminary determination that the revisions meet the regulatory requirements of the MS4 Permit. Ecology requires that the City's updates have an effective date of July 1, 2021 and, after the updates are formally adopted, it is anticipated that Ecology will modify the City's MS4 Permit to include Ecology's determination that the City's updated local program meets the state's requirements.

Financial Impact for City Departments

The proposed changes would have a financial impact on several City departments. Although this legislation does not appropriate funds or make budgetary changes to departments, the following list summarizes expected impacts.

- SPU – Anticipates a small decrease in capital costs for some projects and a small net decrease for future operations and maintenance. In the longer-term, SPU may request an increase in staff to implement new Stormwater Code requirements. SPU may also request approximately \$179,000 in appropriation authority in the 2022 Proposed Budget to account for side sewer permitting work paid for by increased permit revenues.
- SDCI – Anticipates requesting approximately \$340,000 in new, ongoing appropriation authority in the 2022 Proposed Budget to support two new positions: 1.0 FTE Site Development Inspector and 1.0 FTE Civil Engineering Specialist, Sr.

- Seattle Department of Transportation – Estimates no significant financial impact to future long-term transportation levy packages assuming similar types of projects are pursued, but estimates that costs over the next four years may decrease slightly due to the proposed changes. Capital project construction costs are estimated to decrease by approximately \$367,000 over the next four years, and operations and maintenance costs are expected to increase by approximately \$90,000 per year, or \$360,000 over four years.
- Seattle Parks and Recreation – Estimates that capital project costs will increase by approximately \$500,000 and operations and maintenance costs will increase by approximately \$2.6 million over the next six years.
- Seattle City Light – Estimates a one-time cost of \$16,000 to label storm drain inlets.
- Finance and Administrative Services – Estimates a one-time cost of \$27,000 to label storm drain inlets.

cc: Dan Eder, Interim Director
Aly Pennucci, Policy and Budget Manager

2021 Stormwater Code Update

Seattle City Council Transportation & Utilities Committee

May 5, 2021

Seattle Public Utilities

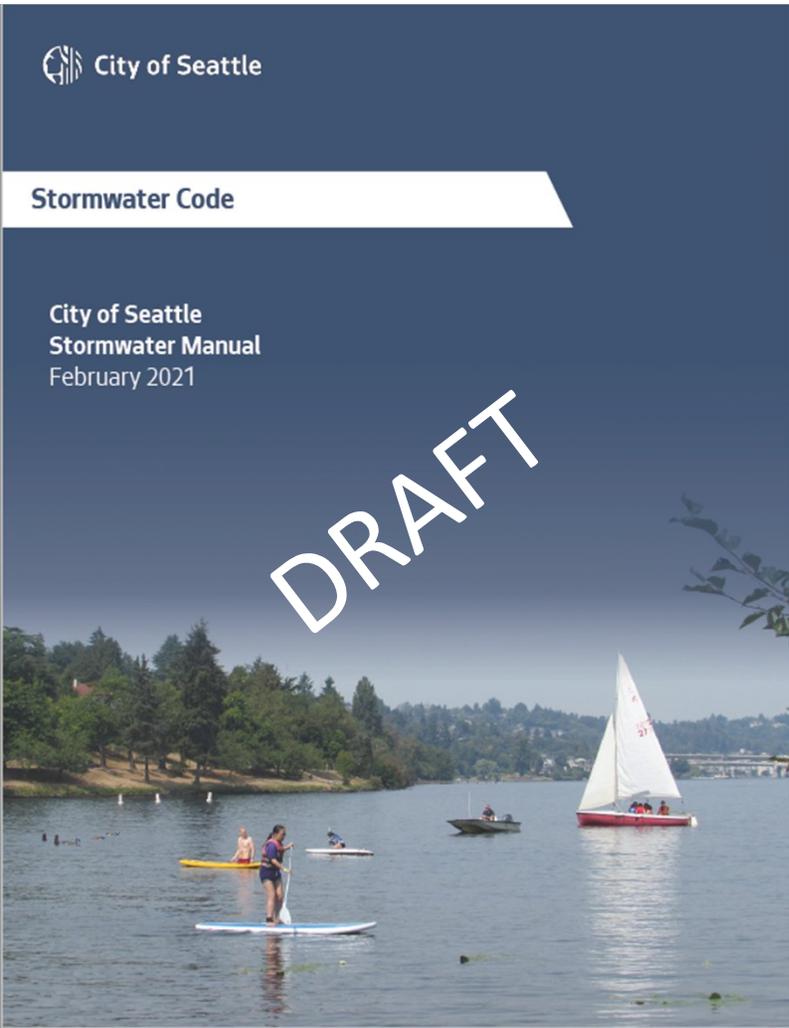


Agenda

- Background
 - Purpose of Stormwater Code
 - What does it cover?
 - Why are we updating now?
- Schedule
- Code Major Changes
- Outreach & Feedback



DRAFT



Background

Why do we have a Stormwater Code?

- Protects people, property, and the environment from damage caused by stormwater runoff.
- Meets the City's obligation to comply with Department of Ecology's Stormwater Permit.

What is in the Stormwater Code?

- Source control for ongoing practices.
- Construction site pollution prevention.
- Onsite stormwater management, flow control and water quality treatment requirements for development.

Background

Who does the Code apply to?

- Private development and City projects
- Businesses
- Residents

Who administers?

- SDCI (private property development)
- SPU (right-of-way development & other provisions)
- SDOT (construction erosion control enforcement for right-of-way)



Why Update the Code Now?



Regulatory Requirement
(Equivalency = Effective July 1, 2021)



Improve/Maintain
DWW System



Affordability



Clarify & Simplify

Right Solution,
Right Place



Growth Pays for Growth &
Intergenerational Equity



Schedule



Key Stormwater Code Updates

- Added exemptions for certain land disturbing activities.
- Clarifications related to alternative compliance.
- Changes to definitions.
- Updates to terminology and best management practices (BMP).
- Clarifications regarding:
 - Closely-related projects,
 - Construction timing of shared facilities, and
 - Preliminary drainage review.

Key Stormwater Code Updates (cont'd)

- Minimum requirements for mainline extensions and public drainage system.
- Updated on-site lists for all project types.
- Flow control requirements for Parcel-based Projects & Roadway Projects.
- Flow control standards – Existing Condition & Peak Control.
- Added landscape management plan as an alternative to water quality.
- Added requirements for Preliminary Drainage Review plan requirements associated with subdivisions and short plats

Outreach & Feedback

Extensive Public Notification (since October 2019)

- SDCI and SPU list serves.
- 3 public comment periods and 5 public meetings attended by development, environmental, and consulting communities.

Over 200 Public Comments Received

- Many incorporated, others no changes due to Ecology requirements or policy decisions.
- No significant outstanding concerns.

Questions?





Legislation Text

File #: Res 32000, **Version:** 1

CITY OF SEATTLE

RESOLUTION _____

A RESOLUTION relating to Seattle Public Utilities; adopting a 2021-2026 Strategic Business Plan for Seattle Public Utilities; and endorsing a three-year rate path and a subsequent, three-year rate forecast to support the Strategic Business Plan Update.

WHEREAS, Resolution 31534, approved by the City Council on August 11, 2014, adopted the Seattle Public Utilities (SPU) 2015-2020 Strategic Business Plan; and

WHEREAS, SPU's Strategic Business Plan establishes the utility's vision, mission, and strategic framework, and highlights utility initiatives and investments, essential service delivery levels, and rate paths for six years; and

WHEREAS, Resolution 31534 also directed SPU to review and update the Strategic Business Plan every three years, adding three years to the Strategic Business Plan and re-evaluating the subsequent six-year rate path; and

WHEREAS, Resolution 31760, approved by the City Council on November 13, 2017, adopted SPU's 2018-2023 Strategic Business Plan Update; and

WHEREAS, SPU completed a process to thoroughly review and revise its Strategic Business Plan covering the years 2021 through 2026; and

WHEREAS, the strategic planning update process included extensive collaboration with SPU's Customer Review Panel, employee engagement and community outreach and research, including comprehensive review of more than 28 public and customer opinion studies commissioned by SPU and others, stakeholder meetings, business community interviews, non-English-speaking outreach, online surveys, and social media; and

WHEREAS, the resulting, proposed 2021-2026 Strategic Business Plan contains an updated, three-year rate path and three-year rate forecast for water, drainage, wastewater, and solid waste rates developed by identifying, evaluating, and recommending reductions and priority additions to current utility expenditures and represents a lowering of SPU’s previously adopted six-year average rate path from 5.2 percent to 4.2 percent; and

WHEREAS, the City Council reviewed the proposed 2021-2026 Strategic Business Plan, the associated rate path and rate forecast, the recommendations of the Customer Review Panel, and the results of the community research and outreach; NOW, THEREFORE,

BE IT RESOLVED BY THE CITY COUNCIL OF THE CITY OF SEATTLE, THE MAYOR CONCURRING, THAT:

Section 1. The City Council adopts Seattle Public Utilities’ 2021-2026 Strategic Business Plan (“Plan”), a copy of which is included as Attachment 1 to this resolution and incorporated by reference.

Section 2. To achieve the goals of the Plan, an average annual system rate increase of 4.2 percent is anticipated over the period of 2021 to 2026 across all four utility lines of business.

Section 3. The City Council requests that the Executive submit budgets for 2021 through 2026 in support of and consistent with the Plan and that, absent justifiable circumstances, do not result in rates higher than the Plan’s rate path and rate forecast as adopted in this resolution.

Section 4. The City Council requests that the Executive submit rates for 2021 through 2026 that support and are consistent with the Plan and that, absent justifiable circumstances, are no higher than the Plan’s 4.2 percent combined 2021-2026 average annual rate path and rate forecast as adopted in this resolution and shown in the lower right corner of the table below.

Projected 6-Year Rate Path	Rate Path			Rate Forecast			2021-2026 Average
	2021	2022	2023	2024	2025	2026	
Water	0.0%	2.7%	4.7%	3.6%	4.2%	5.5%	3.4%

Sewer	7.3%	3.1%	5.9%	0.5%	7.8%	3.6%	4.7%
Drainage	7.4%	8.6%	7.2%	3.9%	6.5%	6.7%	6.7%
Solid Waste	2.9%	2.9%	2.2%	2.3%	2.1%	2.1%	2.4%
Combined	4.5%	3.9%	5.0%	2.2%	5.4%	4.2%	4.2%

Section 5. Actual rate changes for each of Seattle Public Utilities’ lines of business are subject to approval by the City Council via rate ordinances.

Section 6. Seattle Public Utilities will review and update the Plan every three years, adding three years to the Plan and re-evaluating the subsequent three-year rate path and three-year rate forecast. The next complete review and adjustment of the Plan will be completed in 2023 and encompass the years 2024 to 2029.

Section 7. Seattle Public Utilities will provide an update to the City Council, at least once annually, to track progress in achieving the goals of the Plan.

Adopted by the City Council the _____ day of _____, 2021, and signed by me in open session in authentication of its adoption this _____ day of _____, 2021.

President _____ of the City Council

The Mayor concurred the _____ day of _____, 2021.

Jenny A. Durkan, Mayor

Filed by me this _____ day of _____, 2021.

Monica Martinez Simmons, City Clerk

(Seal)

Attachments:

Attachment 1 - 2021-2026 Seattle Public Utilities Strategic Business Plan



2021-2026 Strategic Business Plan

February 2021 (DRAFT)

Contents

Your Invitation to Join Us	3
About Seattle Public Utilities.....	4
Guiding Principles	5
The Challenges Ahead.....	6
Strategic Business Plan Overview.....	7
Your Utility, Your Voice	8
Seattle Public Utilities Customer Review Panel.....	9
Our Mission and Vision	10
Focus On: Delivering Equitable Essential Services.....	12
Focus On: Stewarding Environment and Health.....	15
Focus On: Empowering Our Customers, Community, and Employees	19
Focus On: Strengthening Our Utility’s Business Practices	23
Keeping Rates Predictable and Affordable.....	27
Three-Year Rate Path and Additional Three-Year Projection	29
Supporting Documents and Appendices	32

Your Invitation to Join Us

Thank you for making a difference in our community. Your water stewardship, recycling, and waste reduction helps keep Seattle Public Utilities' (SPU) rates affordable and reflects your commitment to our region's environmental ethic.

This utility, with our community, is a national leader in protecting and sustaining community health and the environment. At SPU, we have long recognized that how we manage water and waste has the power to drive transformative change for people and the planet. Today, this is more important than ever, as new and continuing challenges test our resiliency and resolve.

The challenges of coronavirus have been difficult. There has been tremendous suffering, but also hope—people supporting others, opportunities for greater connection with the outdoors, and emerging innovations and adaptation. Together, we have the power to confront challenges such as climate change, water and waste pollution, affordability, racial and social justice, and the impacts of the coronavirus crisis. It is time to rethink how we live and manage our resources, including water and materials that become waste. Imagine a future where together we:

- Transform how we capture and use water and protect our waterways;
- Reconsider what we produce, consume, and waste;
- Reimagine and restore our connections with nature, with each other, and with the most vulnerable in our community;
- Refocus how we invest our resources to be strategic, equitable, and affordable; and
- Stimulate jobs and a green economy.

These imperatives shape our aspirational vision to be your Community Centered, One Water, Zero Waste utility.

We understand this vision can only be achieved through community-wide partnerships with residents, businesses, environmental leaders, and others. By advancing our part of Seattle's Green New Deal, we can collaboratively prevent waste; prioritize sustainable resource management; facilitate greener and more efficient building; invest in and maintain our aging utility infrastructure; and partner to create new, green jobs that will benefit traditionally underserved communities and restore our environment.

We will work tirelessly to deliver essential utility services that match your values and exceed your expectations. We are creating a strong community inside and outside our organization. We want to be a place where equity, affordability, and sustainability guide our daily actions. We encourage continuous learning and improvement. We aim to always understand and respect customer and employee rights and responsibilities.

We ask you to help us achieve this shared vision. Please lend your imagination, your voice, and your actions to conserve our water resources, reduce waste, restore our environment, and build a stronger Seattle.

Let's work together,
Mami Hara
GM and CEO, Seattle Public Utilities

About Seattle Public Utilities

We provide essential drinking water, drainage and wastewater, and solid waste services to more than 1.5 million people in the greater Seattle area. About 1,400 SPU employees work with our community to provide affordable and equitable stewardship of our water and waste resources for future generations.

Our staff and our community work together on essential resource management, including:

- Protecting our mountain drinking water sources;
- Keeping our tap water safe and enjoyable;
- Educating residents, businesses, and youth about our protected watersheds, urban forest, waterways, and resource management stewardship;
- Increasing waste prevention, recycling, and composting;
- Keeping neighborhoods clean, healthy, and beautiful;
- Turning kitchen waste into healthy soil;
- Maintaining our sewer and drainage systems and reducing urban flooding;
- Preventing water pollution and supporting raingardens;
- Safely removing pollutants from streets, sidewalks, and open spaces; and
- Ensuring that investments benefit our customer-owners.

Guiding Principles

Our shared values guide all we do. To be community-centered and act in service to our customer-owners, we collaborate to uphold SPU CARES principles:

Customers and Community	<i>We strive to understand and respond to customer and community needs—inside and outside our organization.</i>
Affordability and Accountability	<i>We do our best to ensure that utility services are available to everyone regardless of ability to pay and we responsibly manage and leverage every ratepayer dollar.</i>
Risk and Resilience	<i>We seek to minimize utility risks, reduce our environmental footprint, and improve our community’s capacity to adapt to change and persevere in the face of hardship.</i>
Equity and Empowerment	<i>We work to dismantle institutional racism by building trusting relationships, prioritizing equity and inclusion in decision-making, and creating opportunities for all. This includes listening to and investing in our people—the valued employees of Seattle Public Utilities.</i>
Service and Safety	<i>We focus on delivering high quality, reliable, and sustainable services and infrastructure that prioritize the health and safety of our employees and our community.</i>

The Challenges Ahead

The profound impact of the coronavirus pandemic revealed, in new ways, our local community's compassion, hardiness, and strength. Most of all, it has shown that working together is a requirement for success. We must apply this sense of partnership, resilience, and resourcefulness to address the challenges that lie ahead.

How will we:

- Ensure the resilience and robustness of our infrastructure through all types of threats?
- Contribute to affordability in the face of increasing wage inequity and the challenges of a post-coronavirus economic recovery?
- Address climate changes, such as extreme storms, rising sea levels, and dry periods?
- Dismantle systemic racism and achieve social justice?
- Change the way we work, behave, and incentivize opportunities so prosperity is enjoyed by all?
- Stop millions of gallons of stormwater pollution and sewer spills that threaten our streams and waterways?
- Save our oceans and earth from overwhelming volumes of plastic and other waste?
- Eliminate toxic substances from what we use and consume to lead healthier lives and to prevent land and water pollution and expensive post-remediation efforts?
- Maintain our aging water and sewer infrastructure in ways that support environmental and resiliency goals?
- Find creative ways to reduce food waste and increase food security?

Strategic Business Plan Overview

This plan builds on our strength and focuses and guides essential service delivery and comprehensive business strategy for SPU's drinking water, drainage and wastewater, and solid waste responsibilities. It reflects and responds to values consistently expressed by customers and community: service, sustainability, equity, and affordability.

In the pages that follow, we identify SPU's focus areas and describe our long-term goals, near-term strategies, and highlighted initiatives and investments.

This plan looks forward to the next six years (2021-2026) and provides our customers with a predictable three-year rate path to be adopted by City Council and projections for the subsequent three years. We will update our plan and adopted rate path on a three-year cycle to allow for future uncertainties and adjustments.

Our Comprehensive Strategic Approach

As a public utility, SPU affects the community in ways that go beyond our delivery of service, collection, and billing. We have a responsibility to maximize our investments and long-term outlook for our customers. Our long-term sustainability and well-being depend on our entire community collaborating to drive down costs and reduce risks. Every home, office, and organization between the mountain watersheds to Puget Sound is in the water and waste business together.

Our approach maximizes:

- **Environmental and public health benefits** to build long-term restoration and resilience, while ensuring environmental justice in water and waste resource management.
- **Community benefits** to create equity and empowerment for residents and employees, recognizing the impact SPU work can have on economic opportunities, social cohesion, and cultural identity.
- **Economic benefits** to ensure that accountability, affordability, efficiency, and risk management drive how we manage the public's investments and infrastructure.

Your Utility, Your Voice

We work in partnership with you, our customers, to keep your water safe, your garbage sorted, and waste disposed of in ways that are good for the environment and our community. Customer voices helped shape this plan and will be vital to our success.

We conducted broad research and public engagement:

Voice of the Customer Research Review: To better understand residential and business customer experiences, opinions, and preferences, as well as employee perspectives, we conducted a comprehensive review of 28 research studies commissioned by SPU and others from 2010-2019. These studies captured feedback on a wide range of topics and included input from different types of SPU customers.

Community Outreach: We engaged diverse communities (including low-income and other hard-to-reach populations) through interviews with community leaders and outreach by Seattle Department of Neighborhoods community liaisons. These conversations took place in multiple languages and within neighborhoods. A five-question (translated) survey was promoted through community events, social media, bill inserts, our website, and other communications.

Employee Engagement: SPU employees shared their ideas through an online survey and group discussions. A series of workshops, focus groups, and online engagement tools refined our mission, vision, and values.

Business Interviews: In-depth interviews were held with a diverse cross-section of large, medium, and small business customers.

Customer Review Panel and Community Advisory Committees: Advisory groups provided feedback on the Strategic Business Plan, community outreach questionnaire, and SPU's progress in implementing the current plan.

Outreach Highlights:

- 944 survey responses
- 52 in-depth interviews with community and business leaders
- 82,378 reached via Facebook

What we learned:

1. SPU services are essential and highly valued. We are known for providing safe, high-quality drinking water; reliable drainage and sewer service; and effective garbage disposal and waste prevention.
2. People appreciate SPU's thinking about the future. Issues associated with growth, affordability, and climate change are recognized challenges for the utility.
3. Many recognize that SPU is doing more to create authentic partnerships in communities that have long been underserved—and there is more to be done.

Seattle Public Utilities Customer Review Panel

SPU's Customer Review Panel¹ provides advice and recommendations to the Mayor and City Council on the utility's strategic plan and rates. The panel includes representatives from private, public, and nonprofit sectors, utility experts, business leaders, and community representatives. The panel regularly met with SPU leaders and provided valuable input that shaped this effort.

Panel:

Noel Miller, Chair

Suzanne M. Burke

Bobby Coleman

Dave Layton

Laura Lippman

Maria McDaniel

Thy Pham

Rodney Schauf

Puja Shaw

¹ The Seattle Public Utilities Customer Review Panel was created July 2018 through City Council Resolution 31825.

Our Mission and Vision

Our Mission:

Seattle Public Utilities fosters healthy people, environment, and economy by partnering with our community to equitably manage water and waste resources for today and for future generations.

Our Vision:

COMMUNITY Centered, ONE Water, ZERO Waste

Our bold vision reflects SPU’s goals for the next 50 years of service, infrastructure investment, and management of water and waste. We will lead with equity and work in partnership with communities and employees to create a just and sustainable future. We understand that the actions we take today have the power to transform our employees, community, environment, and economy for generations to come.

My wish is that one day my great, great grandchildren stand on the shoreline and tell their children about how their great, great grandfather and his colleagues had the vision to restore it more than 100 years ago.

—Jerry Waldron, SPU Employee

Our Mission and Vision

Community Centered

- We put people at the heart of our work and work with them to understand and address their priorities. We seek to better understand and address employee, customer, and community needs, and build the long-lasting, equitable, and inclusive relationships necessary to address these needs.
- Together, we will identify community needs and co-create solutions that protect water, reduce waste, restore our environment, and build a stronger Seattle.
- SPU strives to live by this inclusive principle and embed it in all we do.

One Water

- Water is essential for life. Our health, wealth, and livelihoods depend on it, and we must protect it for future generations.
- One Water means we value and carefully manage water in all its forms: through conservation, capture, restoration, and reuse. Whether it is fresh water or wastewater, all water is protected and managed in an integrated and sustainable way, and all people and species have access to healthy waters.
- *Examples of our evolving work include pipe system maintenance and investments, water conservation and RainWise programs, source control and spill response, combined sewer overflow control, and green infrastructure and watershed restoration.*

Zero Waste

- All resources have value, and we strive to waste nothing. We must look at the whole life cycle of materials so we can eliminate waste, prevent pollution, encourage product durability and reusability, conserve natural resources, and ultimately build a circular and inclusive economy.
- Zero Waste protects health and the environment through the conservation of all resources from production through consumption without burning or pollution to land, water, or air.
- *Examples of our evolving work include waste prevention, recycling and composting programs, food rescue, materials salvage, producer responsibility legislation, and sharps, litter, and household hazardous waste collection. This also reflects our commitment to finding efficiencies in our work and wisely using our resources.*

Focus On: Delivering Equitable Essential Services

Essential service delivery represents the day-to-day services our customers and community need to live healthy lives. Our staff work year-round to deliver reliable water, drainage and wastewater, solid waste services, and Clean City services to homes, businesses, schools, nonprofits, and other organizations and places across our entire community.

Our Essential Workforce Includes:

Drinking Water Workforce

Manages and delivers safe and pure drinking water to Seattle and the King County region.

The drinking water supply system includes:

- Two pristine watersheds, supporting reservoir and transmission infrastructure and operations staff that bring water from the mountains to the City of Seattle and SPU's wholesale contract customers;
- Two water quality treatment facilities treat water and a regional water quality lab continuously tests and monitors drinking water purity; and
- Water distribution reservoirs, distribution infrastructure, and metering system operations and maintenance within Seattle.

Drainage and Wastewater Workforce

Manages wastewater and stormwater systems, compliance monitoring, pollution source control, waterway restoration, and spill response within Seattle.

- The wastewater system collects and conveys sewage and a portion of the city's stormwater to King County's regional wastewater treatment system.
- The stormwater system is a network of storm drains, ditches, culverts, outfalls, green stormwater infrastructure, and structures that control how rainwater moves through our urban area. The system works to prevent flooding and clean the water that feeds into our creeks, our lakes, and Puget Sound.
- Systems operations, maintenance, and source and pollution control crews help keep the water clean and flowing to the right places.

Solid Waste and Clean City Program Workforce

Manages garbage, recycling, and organic waste for residents and businesses, helping to keep Seattle clean and welcoming for all.

- The solid waste system includes overseeing waste collection, processing, and landfill disposal contracts and inspections; operation of transfer stations; maintenance of former landfills; and, through regional collaboration, household hazardous waste management.
- Clean City services address litter, graffiti, and illegal dumping needs and assist with trash, needle collection, and hygiene services for Seattle's unsheltered population.

Focus On: Delivering Equitable Essential Services

Our Essential Workforce (Continued):

Customer Service Workforce

Builds strong customer relationships, listens to input from customers, helps customers navigate City services, and improves the customer experience.

- The Contact Center (which also supports Seattle City Light) and SPU billing teams resolves billing and service inquiries, reads customer water meters, and issues accurate and timely utility bills.
- The Operations Response Center dispatches staff to respond to infrastructure breaks, hazards, spills, and emergency conditions.
- The Development Services Office helps developers and homeowners obtain new water utility services and supports staff working within Seattle Department of Construction and Inspection on side sewer permitting.

Utility-Wide Workforce

Provides critical support to frontline staff and utility asset infrastructure.

- SPU project delivery, engineering, construction management, survey, materials lab, and asset and facilities maintenance staff who directly support the front line and lines of business, ensuring infrastructure safety and effectiveness.
- Shared services, facilities, fleets, warehouse, and logistics staff reduce SPU carbon emissions, keep assets painted, repaired and functioning, and equip SPU's frontline crews with the facilities, vehicles, supplies and support they need to do their work.
- Emergency management, safety, security, risk, quality assurance and environmental management staff who manage system risks, preparedness, and response and keep our staff safe and prepared.

Focus On: Delivering Equitable Essential Services

Goal

Provide high-quality services: We're here 24/7, providing safe tap water, reducing waste and litter, managing wastewater and stormwater, and responding to all our customers.

Strategies

1. Strive for best-in-class

Stay knowledgeable and operate at the top of our field; demonstrate leadership in cost-effective, equitable, and cutting-edge service, engagement and partnership.

2. Provide reliable and rewarding experiences

Focus on improved and equitable customer service interactions and satisfaction with each individual experience using customer involvement, input, data, and analysis to improve performance.

3. Meet or exceed expectations, requirements, and commitments

Deliver excellent service and response to our customers, regulators, and community through every contact and in all areas of responsibility, whether it is installing water taps, responding to flooding, complying with environmental and public health regulations, or reporting on SPU performance.

2018-2020 Accomplishments and Learnings

- Continued essential service delivery during COVID-19.
- Met all regulatory permit requirements and negotiated improved approaches.
- Improved billing practices to keep estimated meter reading to low levels, ensure billing accuracy, eliminate billing backlogs, and reduce call volumes.
- Reduced peak period call waiting times at the Customer Contact Center by over 17 minutes since 2017, and used data and lessons learned to anticipate and respond to spikes in call volume.
- Implemented Utilities Customer Self Service Portal Phase 1 in collaboration with Seattle City Light and Seattle Information Technology Department.

Performance Targets

We strive to achieve quarterly essential service delivery performance targets, meet all regulatory and financial commitments, and report our progress regularly. This information helps us track and improve our performance.

Learn More!

Accountability and performance metrics are included in the appendix.

Focus On: Stewarding Environment and Health

Community well-being depends on a healthy environment fostered by good stewardship of water and waste resources. Without new strategies, we will continue to experience increasing costs and degradation created by pollution, disease, climate-change, over-consumption, and waste. Stresses on our region’s natural systems also threaten the sustainability and affordability of our utility services and our local economy.

As the local utility responsible for managing most forms of pollution, waste, wastewater, litter, illegal dumping, spills, and graffiti, our work is directly tied to our community’s actions and stewardship. Together, we can build regenerative, healthy ecosystems and circular economies that improve our quality of life.

We will work with our partners and community to embrace a nature-based, science-informed, and whole systems approach to the management of water and waste resources. We will incentivize green technology and innovations that ensure equity in human and environmental health outcomes regardless of race or neighborhood. We will restore and maintain a healthy community with clean and safe water, greater contact with nature, and efforts towards zero carbon and waste pollution—and we will do this work in beneficial, fair, and low-cost ways.

Goals

Develop One Water resilience: We protect water sources by cultivating healthy, adaptable watersheds and ecosystems and by using integrated and equitable water management strategies.

Advance Zero Waste circular economy: We support and promote policies and practices that create a circular economy and reduce Seattle waste and carbon pollution as rapidly as possible.

Seattle’s Green New Deal

City departments, including SPU, are working collaboratively to eliminate climate pollution, prioritize climate justice, and invest in an equitable transition to a clean energy economy.

2018-2020 Accomplishments and Learnings

- Completed a 10-year SPU Water System Plan and collaborated with the Saving Water Partnership to set an ambitious new regional water conservation goal during a period of anticipated population growth.
- Recognized as the U.S. solid waste industry’s greenest fleet—200 fossil-fuel free vehicles by 2020.
- Reduced residential per capita waste generation rate to approximately half the national average.
- Completed a watershed vulnerability assessment evaluating climate change impacts and restoration approaches to protect Cedar River Watershed ecosystem functions.
- Became the first U.S. city to widely promote a ban on plastic straws and partnered with the Lonely Whale Foundation to inspire others to do the same.

Focus On: Stewarding Environment and Health

Strategy 1: Invest in key water, stormwater, and wastewater projects and plans

Using more flexible, collaborative, and integrated water management approaches (e.g., water conservation, capture, restoration, and reuse) on substantial projects and plans will help maximize resilience benefits at lower costs.

Highlighted Initiatives and Investments²:

Shape Our Water: A Drainage and Wastewater Plan for a Water Resilient Future

Given uncertainty related to climate change, growth, and increasingly stringent regulations, SPU is developing an integrated system plan called ‘Shape Our Water.’ The plan includes a long-term vision and a short-term implementation plan and will guide investments, policies, programs, and projects that will improve the performance and resilience of our drainage and wastewater systems while optimizing social and environmental benefits for the city.

Key Commitments:

- Complete the Shape Our Water Integrated System Plan.

Ship Canal Water Quality Project

The Ship Canal Water Quality Project (SCWQP) will improve regional water quality by keeping more than 75 million gallons of polluted stormwater and sewage from flowing into the Lake Washington Ship Canal, Salmon Bay, and Lake Union on average each year.

Key Commitments:

- Deliver SCWQP on-time and within budget.
- Complete final design of the pump station and Wallingford and Ballard conveyance projects.
- Complete tunneling of the 2.7-mile storage tunnel for polluted stormwater and sewage.
- Start operation in 2025.

² **Initiatives and investments** are representative examples of how SPU will advance the strategies described in the Strategic Business Plan. Initiatives represent policy, planning, and program work and generally require less significant expenditures (under \$5M). Investments result in tangible infrastructure, asset, asset repair, or service and require more significant expenditures (over \$5M).

Focus On: Stewarding Environment and Health

Strategy 2: Advance climate-resilient, nature-based, community-led solutions

When communities lead, we see improved innovation and sustainability around environment and health issues that matter most. Working together, we will use science and best practices to retool our water and waste practices. This will help build climate resiliency and restore connections between people and nature to improve the health of our waterways, watersheds, and neighborhoods.

Highlighted Initiatives and Investments:

Climate Justice, Adaptation, and Mitigation for Water and Waste

Climate resilience work includes investing in the leadership and ingenuity of communities to accelerate a just climate transition, adapting our natural and built systems and operations to a changing climate, and reducing the greenhouse gas emissions that contribute to climate change.

Key Commitments:

- Adaptively manage water supply and stormwater operations and make strategic system investments to adapt to a changing climate.
- Work with City departments and the Duwamish River Clean Up Coalition (DRCC) to build Resilience District partnerships to inform drainage and wastewater investments in South Park and prevent displacement of residents and local businesses from rising sea levels.
- Develop a de-carbonization strategy for existing and new SPU-owned buildings.
- Partner with King County to establish a carbon emissions footprint related to Seattle-area consumption and solid waste generation.
- Complete a wildfire risk assessment and management strategy to mitigate risks to the municipal water supply.

Green Stormwater Infrastructure

SPU is investing in Green Stormwater Infrastructure (GSI) to improve water quality, manage flooding, reduce regulatory costs, and build resilient infrastructure while maximizing community benefits and value for our customers. We are growing innovative cross-sector and community-led partnerships, tools, and approaches to leverage these nature-based investments and impacts throughout the city.

Key Commitment:

- Manage 510 million gallons of stormwater runoff annually with GSI investments.

Focus On: Stewarding Environment and Health

Strategy 3: Reduce materials and carbon pollution

Pursuing changes that reduce the effects of waste and toxins and help transition Seattle to a more circular economy is a top SPU objective.

Highlighted Initiatives and Investments:

Waste Diversion

Waste diversion relies on improving the quality of recycling and composting streams, food rescue, and extended producer responsibility to reduce landfill volume and costs. SPU supports the statewide goal of cutting food waste by 50 percent by 2030. Our extended producer responsibility efforts engage product developers to create environmentally sound and socially responsible solutions for the end-of-life management of a wide variety of products.

Key Commitments:

- Work with state and regional partners to finalize a statewide framework for extended producer responsibility.
- Increase food rescue innovation partnership work.

Waste Prevention

Waste prevention work targets product consumption and consumer behavior, addressing the root cause of waste and toxins to reduce their impact. Product consumption accounts for about 42 percent of U.S. greenhouse gas emissions, making waste prevention an important climate change mitigation strategy. SPU will leverage partnerships to prevent waste, respond to changing recycling markets, and reduce the volume of single-use plastics.

Key Commitments:

- Develop and adopt a Waste Prevention Strategic Plan and metrics.
- Fund waste prevention innovation through SPU waste-free community grants.

Learn More!

Additional details about the investments and initiatives that advance this focus area are provided in the appendix.

Focus On: Empowering Our Customers, Community, and Employees

We work with our customers, community, and staff to identify and refine our utility’s priorities and approaches. Collaboration, both inside and outside the utility, will help us build a more just, livable, and resilient Seattle.

At the heart of this work is SPU’s commitment to equity and empowerment—giving voice and power to all our customers, community, and employees. This work begins with addressing the insidious effects of racism and race and social justice disparity and acting to uplift disadvantaged populations through our work in whatever ways we can. This demands intentional and focused efforts and needs to be incorporated into all we do.

Over the long term, this means investing to address service, infrastructure, and assistance inequity; deepening inclusive engagement and partnership efforts; and enhancing opportunities for economic advancement and job opportunities related to utility work.

Each day, that commitment means ensuring our customers are heard, have service, and are empowered and educated to value water and reduce waste. It means we are working alongside community-based organizations, governments, schools, and businesses to maximize the collective benefits we can provide. And, at our workplace, it means that with each hire and at each meeting we are cultivating a diverse workforce and creating engaging and inclusive leadership opportunities and facilities so that we can attract and retain the next generation of essential workers.

Goals

Remove barriers: We support and uplift residents and businesses by ensuring equitable services, information, and educational materials to help everyone steward our shared, precious resources.

Partner with community to maximize the benefits of SPU investments: We are improving our investment strategies in ways that help SPU contribute to economic opportunity, enhance livability, and build sustainability.

Invest in our employees: We are cultivating a compassionate and dynamic work culture that prioritizes racial equity and attracts, inspires, and invests in existing and future employees—our most valuable resource.

2018-2020 Accomplishments and Learnings

- Applied learnings from customer assistance pilot work and customer feedback to improve notification and assistance to low-income households and small businesses.
- Filled all 20 SPU water pipe apprenticeship positions from a pool of over 680 applicants.
- Sponsored more than 60 youth over three years for City summer youth employment programs.
- Leveraged SPU South Park investments by helping to secure \$22 million in outside grants and partnerships.
- Used the experience of COVID-19 to honor and continue to improve support and connection to our frontline employees who have ensured uninterrupted delivery of our essential water and waste services.

Focus On: Empowering Our Customers, Community, and Employees

Strategy 1: Provide utility assistance that makes a difference

Better understanding and responding to customer and community needs is good for business and the right thing to do. We are committed to continually improving financial and basic service assistance including support for unsheltered persons and those with low or fixed incomes; coordinating home, business, and industrial sustainability assistance and education; and enhancing customer self-service and smart utility and information technologies.

Highlighted Initiatives and Investments:

Customer Affordability Programs

We can make a meaningful difference in people's lives when we improve the effectiveness of financial assistance to customers in need. Our work in this area focuses on shut-off prevention, leak assistance, Utility Discount Program, Emergency Assistance Program, and payment plans.

Key Commitments:

- Expand outreach and participation in assistance programs (Utility Discount Program, Emergency Assistance).
- Expand leak adjustment policy for residential and commercial customers.

Side Sewer Assistance

To enhance affordability, SPU will implement a pilot program that eases the financial burden of repairing side sewers.

Key Commitments:

- Make pilot program incentives available to low-income customers in the form of grants, loans, rebates, or repairs.
- Use pilot results to potentially expand the program to serve a wider range of customers.

SPU Support Services for the Unsheltered

Relying primarily on non-ratepayer funding from the City of Seattle's Clean City program, SPU will work to provide cost-effective sanitation and disposal service solutions for unsheltered populations including trash, sharps, and RV services to address health, hygiene, and environmental needs.

Key Commitments:

- Pilot and evaluate cost-effective RV pump out service.
- Achieve 90 percent voluntary compliance rate for RV vehicles encountered by RV remediation pilot program.
- Pilot and evaluate alternative approaches to effectively deliver garbage and sharps collection services for the unsheltered population.

Focus On: Empowering Our Customers, Community, and Employees

Strategy 2: Give voice and power through meaningful partnerships

Building more inclusive, equitable, trusted, and mutually beneficial relationships with community, businesses, and our most vulnerable populations will diversify our perspective and guide how decisions are made. Our efforts are aligned with the City's Race and Social Justice goals and prioritize outreach to traditionally hard-to-reach communities, improve connections with and between employees (especially those on the front lines of service delivery), and enhance regional partnerships and collaboration. We will also work to incentivize the creation of job opportunities that support responsible water and waste utility innovations in building, industry, and nature-based technologies.

Highlighted Initiatives and Investments:

Seeds of Resilience Impact Investment Proposal

SPU seeks to build water resiliency, encourage a circular economy, and grow blue-green job opportunities with an emphasis on supporting Black, Indigenous and People of Color (BIPOC) communities through an innovative investment program. This project will assess viable approaches for designing, funding, managing, and evaluating a pilot program that fosters Community Centered, One Water, and Zero Waste entrepreneurship.

Key Commitments:

- Develop a proposal and enabling ordinance for Mayor's Office and City Council approval.
- If approved, launch pilot investment program.

Race and Social Justice (RSJ) Strategic Plan

When we build trust and strengthen partnerships with community organizations, we improve equity and social outcomes for the City of Seattle. SPU will update its existing RSJ plan to reflect current needs, assess the extent to which RSJ policies are supported across the utility, and recommend opportunities to improve our policies and practices.

Key Commitments:

- Revise Environmental Justice and Service Equity (EJSE) Division Race and Social Justice Strategic Plan.

Focus On: Empowering Our Customers, Community, and Employees

Strategy 3: Foster a more equitable workplace, work culture, and better work opportunities

Investing in changes that strengthen the diversity and appeal of working for SPU will reap rewards today and tomorrow. Our goal isn't just to be better—it's to be the best place our employees have ever worked. We cannot fully deliver on our service or policy priorities without investments in our people and the places they work. This includes investments in workforce attraction and recruitment, learning and development, and retention. It also means improving facilities and workspaces.

Highlighted Initiatives and Investments:

SPU Workforce Development

Workforce planning is an interconnected set of solutions to meet employment needs. It can include changes to culture, changes to employee engagement, and improvements to employee skills and knowledge that will help to positively influence SPU's future success. This is important to rebuild, retain, and recruit our workforce. We can stay ahead of changes by building on internal programs and creating opportunities for employees to stay within SPU and the City of Seattle. An equity, race, and social justice lens will be applied to all our work.

Key Commitments:

- Implement SPU's Workforce Development Plan.
- Model shared and inclusive leadership and what it means to be a community-entered utility in structuring the work of SPU's people, culture, and community branch.

Workforce Facilities Investments

The workforce facilities program includes efforts to improve working conditions for frontline employees at South Operations Center (SOC), North Operations Complex (NOC), Cedar Falls Phase 2, as well as improved space utilization efficiencies at the Seattle Municipal Tower and in the SPU Facilities Master Plan. Work that improves operational efficiencies will be prioritized and facility improvements will address maintenance issues.

Key Commitments:

- Complete planning and begin design and construction for NOC, SOC, and Cedar Falls Phase 2 projects.
- Develop recommendations for Seattle Municipal Tower renovations that consider a reduction of rented space, expanded use of telecommuting, and more collaborative and temporary workspaces that leverage learnings from the coronavirus pandemic.
- Complete Facilities Master Plan Strategy update.

Learn More!

Additional details about the investments and initiatives that advance this focus area are provided in the appendix.

Focus On: Strengthening Our Utility’s Business Practices

How we manage utility business practices matters. Our customers expect their faucets to flow, toilets to flush, and garbage to be picked up. These services are delivered under increasingly complex and costly regulations and via aging infrastructure that must be resilient in the face of challenges such as earthquakes and climate change. At the same time, we must be attuned to what the community can afford. The utility will examine its business practices and assess ways to improve service, be more efficient, and provide value. We will also use the best available science, data, and analysis to inform utility decision making and performance.

We are committed to providing utility pricing and assistance to customers that ensures everyone receives the services they need. The cost of our services is often constrained by the need to maintain infrastructure, encourage conservation, safeguard the environment, and protect public health. However, we recognize the importance of addressing affordability and we are taking actions to reduce costs, increase productivity and efficiency, invest in assets that have multiple benefits, and remove barriers to service access.

SPU’s commitment to affordability is comprehensive and extends beyond rates to include capital project delivery and implementation of utility business processes and practices. Our infrastructure asset management approach is systematic and balances short- and long-term risk with cost and public benefit. We will continuously evaluate and adjust our work to ensure our assets are in good condition.

Goals

Enhance ratepayer affordability: We are focused on financial sustainability and careful use of our resources to help us manage costs for our ratepayers.

Manage assets and risk optimally: We are investing in operations, infrastructure, and technologies that carefully manage SPU risks, resilience, and effectiveness.

Be an adaptive, learning organization: We are continuously improving and deepening our culture of safety, excellence, and innovation.

2018-2020 Accomplishments and Learnings

- Reduced SPU’s adopted rate path by 20 percent and paved the way for greater reductions in future years through adoption of our Accountability and Affordability Strategy Plan.
- Saved \$66 million by securing a \$192.2 million low-interest EPA Water Infrastructure Finance and Innovation Act loan for the Ship Canal Water Quality Project and broke ground on its delivery.
- Negotiated new solid waste collection contracts, lowering costs.
- Launched a Drainage and Wastewater pipe lining crew to increase the lifespan of our assets.
- Completed a water system assessment of seismic vulnerabilities and priority investments.

Focus On: Strengthening Our Utility's Business Practices

Strategy 1: Deliver on accountability and affordability commitments

Affordability and accountability are top priorities for our customers and for SPU. We will make changes that reduce our rate increases and holistically improve transparency and performance reporting. We will align and adapt our environmental regulatory work, improve the speed and efficiency of capital planning and delivery, streamline budget and financial planning practices, and build collaborative partnerships that refine our priorities, help manage our costs, and increase our impact.

Highlighted Initiatives and Investments:

Accountability and Affordability Strategic Plan

As Seattle residents contend with a tumultuous economy, high costs of living, and inequitable access to opportunity, SPU must help customers who are struggling to afford essential utility services. This strategy proposes a holistic approach to deliver our essential services, keep rate increases lower, focus corporate culture on continuous improvement, and make investments that deliver multiple benefits to the community. The implementation plan targets improvements in several areas including capital planning and delivery, process efficiency improvements, financial management, alternative funding and partnerships, and improved reporting about SPU performance and investments.

Key Commitment:

- Implement three-year actions and recommendations of the Accountability and Affordability Strategic Plan.

Focus On: Strengthening Our Utility's Business Practices

Strategy 2: Improve how we manage risk and invest in system assets and infrastructure

Upgrading how we manage, maintain, and invest will help us reduce risk, improve resilience, and take better advantage of opportunities. We will focus on strengthening overall strategic asset management investment and performance, addressing high risk infrastructure, and prioritizing work that yields multiple benefits.

Highlighted Initiatives and Investments:

Risk and Resilience Strategic Plan

To improve SPU's ability to respond to risks and unexpected events, SPU will seek organization-wide opportunities to encourage and facilitate experimentation and investment that maximizes benefits and reduces negative impacts. Our work in this area focuses on collaborative planning, capacity development, and vulnerability reduction.

Key Commitment:

- Create and implement tools and guidance for SPU work units to identify risk, take action, and increase resilience.

Water Seismic Resilience

A recent SPU-commissioned study found that a catastrophic earthquake in the region would result in total water pressure loss within approximately 20 hours and take 10 to 25 days to restore 50 percent of water service, but that seismic upgrades could significantly cut down service restoration time. This effort aims to improve the seismic resiliency of the water system to mitigate the impact of earthquakes.

Key Commitment:

- Implement short-term recommendations of the SPU Seismic Study, with the focus on emergency preparedness and response planning, as well as system isolation and control strategies.

Focus On: Strengthening Our Utility’s Business Practices

Highlighted Initiatives and Investments (Continued):

Water Asset Management and Opportunity Work

This program focuses on asset management and enhanced investment in SPU's aging drinking water infrastructure and deferred maintenance to reduce long term system costs. Efforts include infrastructure opportunity work that supports transportation projects and other City capital investments and leverages cost savings from reduction of paving restoration costs.

Key Commitments:

- Complete planned water main and service line replacements and install new corrosion control (cathodic protection) on transmission pipes.
- Complete priority planning, replacement, and rehabilitation work.
- Reduce backlog of maintenance work orders for hydrants and critical valves.
- Report on budget and schedule deviations larger than 25 percent for externally driven transportation opportunity projects.

Drainage and Wastewater Asset Management Work

The average age of SPU’s wastewater infrastructure is over 80 years old. SPU will invest in the rehabilitation of our sewer pipes, pump stations, combined sewer overflow outfalls, and force mains to address infrastructure needs. A renewal program will also be developed for making future investments in the City’s drainage system assets.

Key Commitments:

- Complete rehabilitation schedule for sewers, pump stations, force mains, and drainage assets.
- Clean, replace, and rehabilitate key Combined Sewer Overflow (CSO) outfalls.

Strategy 3: Support a continuous improvement culture

When all employees practice continuous improvement, we can improve services, create efficiencies, and learn from each other. Our objectives are to train for and build upon a culture of constant improvement focused on experimenting and streamlining processes, employ a ‘plan-do-check-adjust’ approach, streamline processes, and reduce waste. SPU will reflect this commitment in all aspects of our work and across all initiatives and investments.

Learn More!

Additional details about the investments and initiatives that advance this focus area are provided in the appendix.

Keeping Rates Predictable and Affordable

A key element of a utility Strategic Business Plan is to balance forward-looking improvements with the thoughtful use of ratepayer revenue.

Previous sections of the plan describe SPU's vision and long-term goals and highlight key initiatives and investments. This section explains how SPU's rates are structured to collect only the amount of revenue needed to support its business operations and financial obligations, while responding to regulatory requirements and preparing for future challenges.

Ratepayers pay for essential services, infrastructure, and day-to-day operations through their utility bills. This ensures our services are there when needed. These utility rates assume that the current level of operations will continue, and that SPU is responding to the needs of the future.

To deliver value, enhance affordability, and demonstrate accountability, SPU develops rates by evaluating a complex mix of factors. The analysis includes operating costs, capital investment needs, long-term risks, debt repayment, service demands, financial policies, and anticipated revenue associated with delivering services across three lines of business—water, drainage and wastewater, and solid waste.

Factors Impacting Rates

SPU's rates are driven by the cost of services. SPU has been working to reduce costs and flatten rate increases over time. While a consistent growth in rates is expected due to inflationary factors, SPU's projected rate path for the 2021-2026 period is projected to be lower than what was anticipated in previous rate paths (2018-2023 and 2015-2020).³

Factors lowering the growth in the cost of services include:

- Improving capital investment planning to better reflect probable investments,
- Using cash balances to smooth rate changes,
- Negotiating lower solid waste contract rates, and
- Reducing the cost of borrowing money.

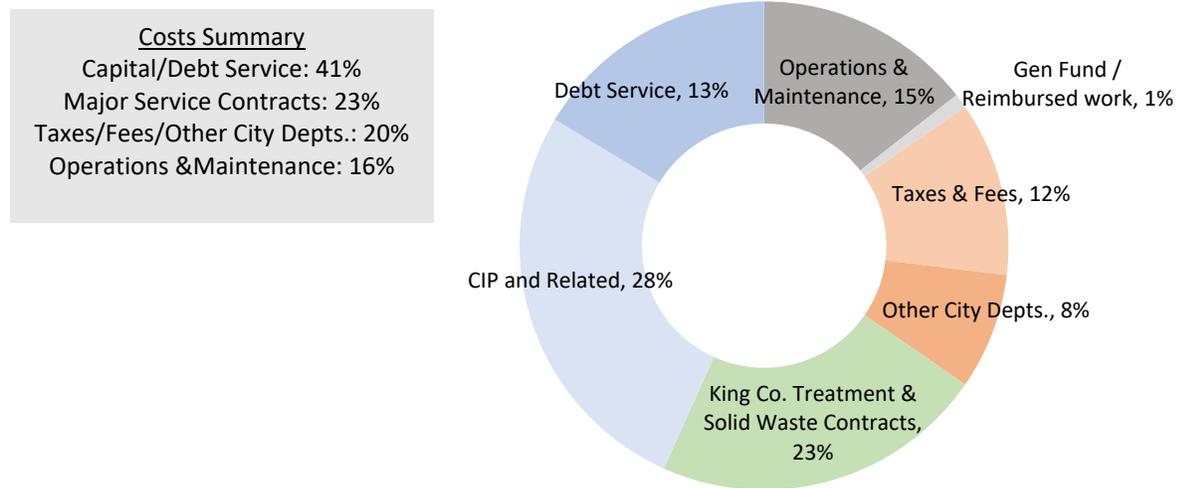
There are also factors that are increasing costs at a faster pace and offsetting cost savings. These include:

- Higher than expected increases in King County's wastewater treatment charges to Seattle,
- Funding for large capital projects required for state and federal regulatory compliance,
- Targeted funding increases to address deferred maintenance of aging capital assets, and
- Increased commitment and obligations to keep pollutants out of our water.

Chart 1 (see next page) further explains what drives the projected rate path by showing SPU's expenses by category.

³ The utility reviews and recommends 'rate paths' within its Strategic Business Plan, over six-year periods.

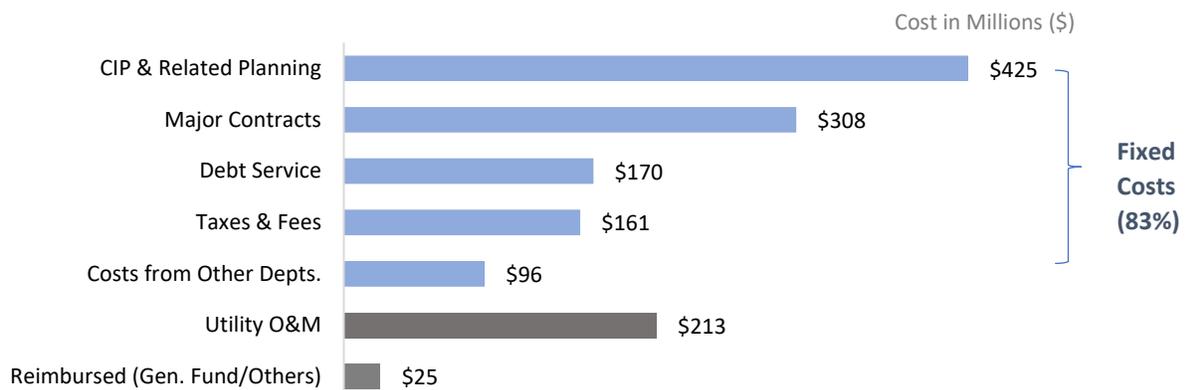
Chart 1: SPU Expenses by Category (2021-2026)



SPU’s largest cost area consists of capital costs and related debt service, accounting for 41 percent of the budget. Major service contracts, including King County wastewater treatment, account for 23 percent; and taxes, fees, and costs paid by SPU to other City departments make up 20 percent. Utility operations, which includes work required to deliver essential services and work on behalf of the City’s General Fund, and work that is reimbursed by other departments, makes up 16 percent.

Chart 2 further explains expenses by showing costs in dollars for 2021. The total 2021 annual budget is \$1.4 billion. Fixed (non-discretionary) costs and CIP costs make up 83 percent of the budget (or \$1.2 billion for 2021).

Chart 2: Expenses by Category (2021)



Three-Year Rate Path and Additional Three-Year Projection

SPU’s projected rate path is provided below. This six-year planning horizon is updated every three years.

The projected 2021-2026 average annual rate increase is projected to be lower than the adopted 2018-2023 rate increase. Chart 3 illustrates that updated growth rates are expected to average 4.2 percent (orange line) and 20 percent lower than the last adopted Strategic Business Plan, and nine percent lower than the 2015-2020 Strategic Business Plan.

Chart 3: Projected Rate Path

The Proposed 2021-2026 Plan Lowers the Average Rate Path by 20%

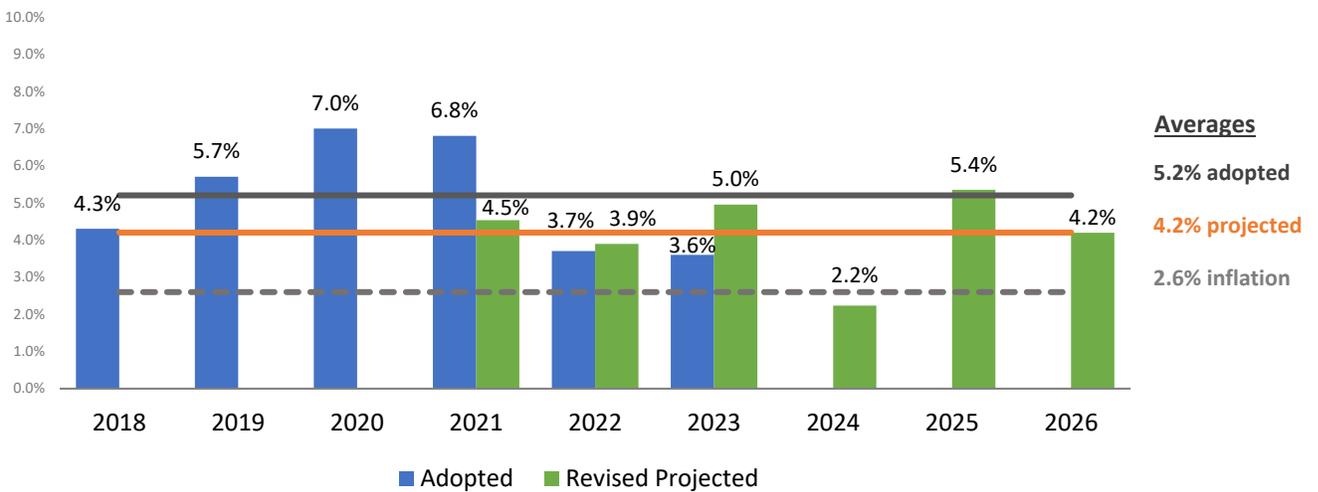


Table 1 describes the projected three-year rate path and projected three-year rate forecast for the six-year period, by line of business and combined.

Table 1: Projected 2021-2026 Average Rate Increases

	Rate Path			Rate Forecast			Average
	2021	2022	2023	2024	2025	2026	
Water	0.0%	2.7%	4.7%	3.6%	4.2%	5.5%	3.4%
Wastewater	7.3%	3.1%	5.9%	0.5%	7.8%	3.6%	4.7%
Drainage	7.4%	8.6%	7.2%	3.9%	6.5%	6.7%	6.7%
Solid Waste	2.9%	2.9%	2.2%	2.3%	2.1%	2.1%	2.4%
Combined	4.5%	3.9%	5.0%	2.2%	5.4%	4.2%	4.2%

■ Approved rate legislation currently in effect

Our Financial Position is Strong

SPU takes a fiscally balanced approach to its financial policies and reserves. By maintaining sufficient reserves, the utility is better able to weather fluctuations in revenues and expenses and navigate financial uncertainty. These prudent practices protect our asset investments and benefit customers through the avoidance of extraordinary rate increases and volatility.

Rate Impact to Customers

Table 2 below shows typical monthly bills for several different types of customers.

Customers who decrease their service consumption through conservation will experience smaller bill impacts. For instance, customers might reduce their cost by conserving water and switching to smaller garbage bins through recycling and composting more. We also offer incentives to divert and keep rainwater on private property through rain gardens and cisterns.

Table 2: Typical Monthly Bill Examples

Typical Monthly Bill for a Single-Family House						
	2021	2022	2023	2024	2025	2026
Water	\$46	\$47	\$49	\$51	\$53	\$56
Wastewater	\$72	\$75	\$79	\$79	\$85	\$89
Drainage	\$50	\$54	\$58	\$60	\$64	\$69
Solid Waste	\$55	\$56	\$58	\$59	\$60	\$61
Combined	\$223	\$232	\$244	\$250	\$263	\$275
Monthly Change	\$15	\$9	\$12	\$6	\$13	\$12

Typical Monthly Bill for a Multifamily Unit (Apartment Building)						
	2021	2022	2023	2024	2025	2026
Water	\$25	\$26	\$27	\$28	\$29	\$31
Wastewater	\$65	\$67	\$71	\$71	\$77	\$80
Drainage	\$9	\$10	\$11	\$11	\$12	\$13
Solid Waste	\$28	\$29	\$30	\$30	\$31	\$32
Combined	\$127	\$132	\$138	\$141	\$149	\$155
Monthly Change	\$4	\$4	\$7	\$2	\$8	\$6

Typical Monthly Bill for a Convenience Store						
	2021	2022	2023	2024	2025	2026
Water	\$107	\$110	\$115	\$120	\$125	\$131
Wastewater	\$325	\$335	\$355	\$357	\$385	\$399
Drainage	\$121	\$131	\$140	\$146	\$155	\$166
Solid Waste	\$556	\$573	\$585	\$599	\$611	\$623
Combined	\$1,109	\$1,149	\$1,196	\$1,221	\$1,275	\$1,319
Monthly Change	\$38	\$40	\$47	\$25	\$55	\$44

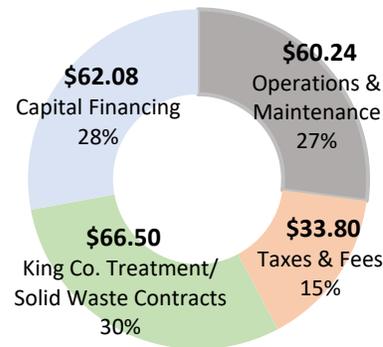
Information in this table is for illustrative purposes. SPU bills water, wastewater and solid waste charges to property owners who may pass these costs to renters or tenants. Drainage charges are billed to customers on their King County property tax statements. Totals may vary due to rounding.

Residential and commercial customers each account for approximately 45 percent of the rate revenue across all three utility funds. The remaining 10 percent comes from wholesale customers, including other cities and districts.

Chart 4 shows how a typical residential customer’s bill is spent across utility expense areas.

Chart 4: Where the Money Goes

Typical Customer Bill Breakout
Single Family Home Monthly Bill:
\$222.62



Customer Financial Assistance

SPU’s affordability and accountability work aims to keep rate increases to the lowest possible level, reducing potential hardship for our customers. But if customers need financial assistance, we can help them in a few ways:

- **Conservation and education programs** which help people understand their usage and bills and identify ways to potentially reduce them;
- The **Utility Discount Program** which provides ongoing bill assistance to the lowest income families and uses customer data to target marketing, signup, and assistance to those in need;
- The **Emergency Assistance Program** which provides credits toward one bill per year for lower-income households or two bills per year for households with children;
- **Payment plans** which provide customers with flexibility in payment arrangements that fit their needs; and
- The **Community Donation Fund** which allows for voluntary contributions to help those who are in need.

SPU has been actively promoting these programs to ensure people know help is available when they need it. We have also improved these programs to make rates more affordable for low-income customers, and we plan to continue this work in the years ahead. To date, we have:

- Worked proactively with low-income customers and small businesses,
- Increased Utility Discount Program enrollment through a self-certification pilot,
- Improved the Emergency Assistance Program and shut-off prevention and notification,
- Created more flexible payment arrangements,
- Eliminated interest charges on late bills, and
- Started to use customer data and predictive analytics to target our efforts.

We are pleased to present this plan for further consideration by the Seattle City Council. We look forward to additional engagement on this plan with the Council as we use it to guide our success in the years ahead.

Supporting Documents and Appendices

The 2021-2026 Strategic Business Plan and supporting materials are available at:

<https://www.seattle.gov/utilities/about/plans/strategic-business-plan>

Appendices:

- A. Customer Review Panel Letter
- B. Executive Summary
- C. Accountability and Performance Reporting
- D. Highlighted Initiative and Investment Detail
- E. Community Research and Outreach Summary
- F. Financial Forecast
- G. Seattle Public Utilities Accountability and Affordability Strategic Plan
- H. Seattle Public Utilities Risk and Resiliency Strategic Plan

Seattle Public Utilities Customer Review Panel

c/o Danielle.Purnell@seattle.gov
P.O. Box 34018, Seattle WA 98124-4018

February 18, 2021

Councilmember Alex Pedersen, Chair, Transportation and Utilities Committee
Members, Transportation and Utilities Committee
The City of Seattle
600 Fourth Avenue
P.O. Box 94749
Seattle, WA 98124-4749

**RE: Seattle Public Utilities Customer Review Panel Comments on the Proposed SPU
Strategic Business Plan for 2021-2026**

Dear Chair Pedersen and Members of the Transportation and Utilities Committee:

This letter presents our comments on the Proposed Seattle Public Utilities (SPU) Strategic Business Plan for 2021-2026 (Plan) in fulfillment of our duties as members of the Seattle Public Utilities Customer Review Panel (Panel) set forth in Resolution 31800.

We endorse the Plan and support its adoption as presented. This letter includes a number of detailed comments regarding the Plan. Our primary messages regarding the Plan are as follows:

Rates: We are pleased that the projected 6-year rate path is lower than that in the previous strategic plan: the 6-year weighted average annual rate increase across all SPU's lines of business in the 2021-2026 period is projected to be 4.2%, down from 5.2% in the 2018-2023 SPU Strategic Business Plan.

SPU's commitment to drive rates down is admirable and should continue to be a priority. SPU provides essential basic services – water, sewer, drainage, solid waste collection and disposal. Ensuring the affordability of these services, particularly for lower income customers and smaller businesses, is a priority for the Panel.

That said, the reduction in rates compared to the last plan has largely been accomplished by spending of cash reserves built up over the last three years because SPU's capital project accomplishment rate was far less than anticipated. These delays were due to a variety of causes, including but not limited to SDOT deferring work on several of the Move Seattle projects. This raises two concerns: first, a lower rate path derived from spending of cash reserves is not likely to be sustainable, and second, the under-accomplishment rate of some capital projects and deferral of others may be creating additional rate pressure as asset maintenance and rehabilitation needs are going to increase in future years, and several planned capital projects were not accomplished or delayed over the last three years.

In the long-term, SPU has growing needs for asset repair and replacement funding which will continue to put upward pressure on rates. Federal and state regulations will add to this pressure. SPU's ability to bring its capital projects in on time and on budget is an area for continued focus and emphasis. Overall,

SPU and the City face an important balancing act between the desires to keep rates low and, at the same time, maintain and replace aging infrastructure, increase water quality protections, adapt to the impacts of climate change and address the seismic risk to its infrastructure.

Seeking a Recommitment to Ongoing Dialogue with City Leaders: SPU's budget is over \$1.3 billion a year; the utility employs over 1430 people. In 2017, the Council determined that the Panel should not disband at the end of its initial planning task but instead be converted to a permanent standing body whose role is "to provide ongoing stakeholder oversight" as SPU develops and implements its strategic business plans. We are charged in part to "work closely with staff designated by the City Council and the Mayor to understand the issues and concerns of the City Council and the Mayor." If the development of SPU strategic business plans remains important to City leaders, the challenges ahead can be better met with active engagement between the Mayors' office, Council, SPU and the Panel. We would like to strengthen our communication with you and the Council moving forward, to have an ongoing dialogue on SPU's work and its path forward. We ask for your support of this goal.

The Strategic Planning Process and the Panel

Per Council directive, SPU is required to develop a 6-year strategic business plan, and to update that plan every three years. Particularly noteworthy in the process leading up to submittal of this current Plan has been the internal work SPU did to update its vision, mission and values, and the more detailed guidance for improving operations included in two new plans: *Affordability & Accountability* and *Risk & Resiliency*. We commend SPU's focus on these initiatives. Other important work, around equity and empowerment in the form of a Race & Social Justice (RSJ) plan for SPU, is also underway. We look forward to hearing more about the RSJ work in the future.

The Panel works to provide SPU, the Mayor and Council advice in the development and implementation of the Plan. As noted, the Panel was made a permanent body in 2017. The Panel met 21 times over the last three years leading up to the completion of the Plan. It has been an intensive and time-consuming effort on the part of customer volunteers. While we started with quarterly meetings, that pace had to accelerate in the last several months to two meetings per month each lasting two to three hours, in order to complete our review of the Plan and the various initiatives and investments included in it. Frankly, this is not a sustainable schedule for some of us with full-time jobs, and it has been very helpful in this work to have the knowledge base of several of our members who have been long involved with SPU. We will be working with SPU to develop a revised approach to accomplish our oversight responsibilities. Hopefully, that may include some in-person meetings again when the pandemic is behind us.

SPU took a new approach to public outreach process as part of this Plan. That approach included: compiling data from 28 other surveys and studies recently completed across the City; completing several dozen interviews of businesses and members of under-represented communities; deploying a concise five-question poll of internal and external partners. In light of the COVID-19 pandemic, this was a creative and cost-effective approach. We note that it continues to be a challenge to engage those in our community lacking adequate online access: this is a larger challenge for the City that is more urgent as COVID-19 has reduced the City's ability to interact in more traditional ways with ratepayers and

taxpayers. We also anticipate that in future years, SPU will need to gather new customer data, particularly in order to understand the post-COVID world in which we will be operating.

In terms of customer engagement, SPU has historically benefitted from the input of three Community Advisory Committees (“CACs”)—one focused on solid waste, one on water, and one on wastewater and drainage. While the Solid Waste Advisory Committee continues as part of Interlocal agreement commitments, SPU has chosen to disband the “Creek Drainage and Wastewater Advisory Committee” and the “Water System Advisory Committee” effective December 2020. The CACs have a unique diversity of membership (several of the Panel members have served on them) and have been able to provide the needed in-depth analysis of SPU’s many specific programs, services and initiatives that the CRP does not have the time to do. It is important for a new community engagement strategy to be in place soon; we encourage SPU to utilize members of the disbanded CACs during the transition to the new engagement strategy.

Progress by SPU since last Strategic Plan, and Assessment of Current Challenges

SPU has made important progress in several areas since the 2018-2023 Strategic Business Plan was adopted. The reduction in the rate path, noted above, is one of them. We are also seeing progress in SPU’s asset management programs; implementation of the Combined Sewer Overflow Consent Decree; and completion of the seismic vulnerability assessment of the water system. The critical Ship Canal CSO Control project has also made good progress in the last three years and all indications are that it is will be delivered within the Consent Decree timeframe and within the allotted budget. As noted above, we think the work and stated goals on *Affordability & Accountability*, and *Risk & Resiliency* are extremely important; we plan to carefully track the utility’s progress in implementing both these plans.

SPU also faces some daunting challenges. Federal and State Regulatory mandates continue to increase capital and operating costs; climate change adaptation response remains a critical and expensive long-term effort; about a quarter of the SPU workforce is currently eligible to retire. In the near-term, significant departure of long-serving staff could result in major loss of institutional knowledge if not managed correctly. Other important challenges we are identifying include:

- Aging water and sewer system infrastructure needs replacement at an ever-increasing rate, according to updated asset management plans. SPU continues to have a backlog of repair and replacement work on hydrants, pumps and valves. That backlog remains much as it was three years ago. The 50-year projections on what will be required *annually* to replace the utility’s infrastructure dwarfs current spending on assets: this is a long-term affordability challenge that must be grappled with sooner rather than later.
- Essential and sub-standard operational facilities identified for major rehabilitation three years ago remain uncompleted: the North Operations Center, South Operations Center, and Cedar Falls Maintenance facility and Seattle Municipal Tower office space renovations were all funded and programed in the last Strategic Business Plan (2018-2023). All of these projects were subsequently re-scoped and remain uncompleted. The Utility has wisely, in our view, reduced its budget assumptions around the completion rate on capital projects, but it will still take

tremendous focus and management effort to improve SPU's delivery of capital projects over time.

- King County released a proposal that would have increased its rates nearly 10% in each of the next three biennia. While the County's adopted 2021 wastewater pass-through rate was reduced to 4.5% after regional outcry, we may be facing steep increases here in future years. This situation highlights the need for better communication with the County and its partners, as well as stepped up rate controls in the County wastewater contract.
- COVID-19 has introduced new uncertainty into consumption patterns and set us backward on some of our environmental goals (e.g., plastic bags are again widely used in Seattle). This increased uncertainty may impact SPU's ability to deliver as promised in the Plan. That said, SPU services are without doubt essential. The Utility has demonstrated great resilience through the COVID pandemic, seamlessly maintaining services and developing new responses to address emergent needs in the community. The Panel commends SPU and staff for their excellent performance over the course of the pandemic.

Looking forward to opportunities on the horizon, SPU has a placeholder initiative in the Plan called "Seeds of Resilience;" this presents a creative approach to use SPU's market leverage to advance community economic development opportunities in BIPOC communities. It also seems to align with some goals of the City's Green New Deal. We believe that this initiative will be a challenge for SPU to implement given the workload on their plate. It is important to us that this initiative not increase rates. We will be interested to see how this concept develops into a specific set of recommended actions for the Mayor and Council's consideration.

The 2021-2026 Strategic Plan

The Panel endorses the Plan and supports its adoption in the form submitted to the Mayor. We have a number of observations about activities within each of SPU's three lines of business (Water, Drainage and Wastewater, and Solid Waste) we share below, after first identifying our **overall priority issues**, which align closely with the Accountability & Affordability and Risk & Resiliency plans:

➤ **Affordability and Accountability (A&A):**

- Asset management programs must continue to evolve and strengthen.
- A strategic assessment of *long-term* infrastructure funding needs is required.
- Improving capital project delivery process oversight must remain a major priority for SPU. A number of strategies to improve capital project delivery are outlined in the *Affordability and Accountability* plan. We will be tracking these with interest.
- We applaud SPU's work in developing metrics in the last two years. SPU is also preparing to launch a new capital projects overview report, which we think will be extremely helpful to management and the Panel.

- SPU must continue to focus on ways to be more efficient in its operations and capital programs delivery, in order to slow growth in rates in the face of other cost pressures.

➤ **Risk and Resiliency (R&R):**

- The Climate Change adaptation strategy is important and needs additional refinement.
- Completion of upgrades at the North and South Operations Centers which serve as essential facilities should be a priority for SPU to become more resilient.
- Seismic upgrade planning and implementation is underway for the regional water system. Further planning for SPU's other lines of business, with additional implementation details, is needed.

Turning now to each line of business, we offer the following additional comments:

➤ **Water**

- We applaud the Division's continued efforts on watershed protection, restoration, and sustainability in face of climate change.
- A key part of Risk and Resiliency planning is seismic retrofitting of the regional water transmission and local distribution systems. This is a critical investment that we are glad to see prioritized in the Plan.

➤ **Drainage and Wastewater**

- Progress on the Ship Canal CSO project is a major accomplishment thus far; this is the largest CIP project in the utility's history and remains largely on schedule and on budget. Close oversight of this project must continue.
- The "Shape Our Water" plan will inventory and integrate all drainage and wastewater system infrastructure needs. We anticipate very sizeable investment needs may be identified for stream culvert replacement. Making all of Seattle's streams passable by fish is a potentially enormous unfunded mandate. State and federal funding here should be aggressively pursued. The Panel believes strongly that all these costs should not fall entirely on SPU: road culvert replacements should be the financial responsibility of the City and State Departments of Transportation (SDOT and WSDOT).
- Seismic upgrades are planned for water; drainage and wastewater operations will need them as well, and these needs are not yet identified or prioritized. This work will take place in the context of the "Shape our Water" planning. Needed seismic upgrades will put continued pressure on drainage and wastewater rates.
- Rate pressure will also be continuing in the form of pass-through costs from King County's Wastewater Treatment Division, as mentioned above. It will be important for SPU and the City to

engage with King County to review how these additional revenues are being spent and to minimize future surprise rate increases.

- Another area where we see SDOT having important financial responsibility relates to the new system of bike lanes many of which have physical barriers of various types between the bike lanes and general-purpose lanes. Street sweeping has proven to be one of the lowest cost, most effective means of keeping pollutants out of local waters. Regular street sweepers cannot clean physically segregated bike lanes. SDOT must ensure that bike lanes are regularly cleaned of sediment. As SDOT has created the need for specialized response equipment, we believe SDOT should be financially responsible for those additional costs. Perhaps where it may be feasible, some of the bikeways could be modified so that they can be cleaned by the existing sweeper fleet.
- Green Stormwater Infrastructure (GSI) is a significant area for proposed additional investment in the Plan. We are pleased that SPU has developed more meaningful metrics around GSI, and the extent to which partnerships are a focus of future GSI plans. As a note of caution, there is incomplete data on the life-cycle cost of GSI. The specific concern from our layperson standpoint is how the accumulation of toxins in soils can be cost-effectively removed or mitigated over time. We look forward to future presentations on this topic.
- SPU is proposing to expand or launch two important pilot projects in the Plan, both of which we strongly endorse:
 - The RV wastewater collection project pilot has been ongoing for a couple of years now. This is a basic service, financed by the City's General Fund, which is otherwise not provided inside the City limits. Increasing access to this service is important to reduce illegal dumping and respond to homelessness. We encourage continued exploration of the most cost-effective options for providing this service.
 - A side sewer replacement financial assistance pilot is proposed in the Plan. As many houses in the City are over 80 years old and tree roots are becoming increasingly prevalent, the rates of side sewer failures can be expected to increase. The cost of these repairs can exceed the financial capacity of many households. The high cost of sidewalk and street restoration is a major cost driver in these projects. This is an important partnership opportunity for SPU, SDOT and its customers. We strongly support this pilot project and hope it can move beyond "pilot" status in the near future.
- The South Park Resilience District effort has evolved out of an initial focus on reducing the frequency of flooding identified in the first SPU Strategic Plan back in 2015. Most projects identified in 2015 are underway: the pump station is now under construction and the roadway and drainage system is in design. The planned stormwater treatment facility is still in a phase of siting and sizing analysis. We hope all projects identified will be completed within the timeframe specified in the Plan. We will monitor with interest the other projects now being discussed in the District.

- The Panel continues to be interested in hearing updates on the ongoing Consent Decree renegotiations; these could reduce the cost of complying with federal regulatory requirements while still protecting the natural waters throughout our City.

➤ **Solid Waste**

- SPU is pursuing creative and potentially very impactful work in the areas of reuse, packaging reduction and food waste. We commend SPU staff for these efforts.
- The South Recycling Center project (now called the “South Transfer Station 2” (STS2)) is an SPU capital investment that the CRP has asked to learn more about. As originally scoped, this is expected to be a \$50M investment in the Duwamish area. The project is complicated by the fact that it is being built over a closed landfill. The project is being postponed and re-scoped to prioritize landfill clean-up and consider options for design of the solid waste facility.

➤ **Corporate**

Comments in this section relate to Department-wide oversight and management items.

- Oversight of capital projects remains one of SPU’s largest challenges. As noted, the Ship Canal project is a notable success thus far. There are several critical capital projects moving ahead currently that require careful management oversight: the water seismic upgrade projects; South Park Resiliency District Investments, and operations facilities (North Operations Center, South Operations Center, Cedar Falls). COVID-19 has created new work patterns that warrant review of SPU’s Seattle Municipal Tower space renovation project.
- There has been extensive change in SPU’s leadership staffing in the last three years. This highlights the ongoing need to support workforce development. Focus on these issues was lost after publication of the 2015 SPU Strategic Business Plan, as the City shortly thereafter centralized human resources and several SPU initiatives had to be set aside. The COVID-19 pandemic increases the likelihood that retirements will increase, which makes succession planning and other workforce development initiatives ever more important. We will be seeking regular updates on progress in this area.
- Climate change raises the importance of planning long-term for critical facilities. As SPU considers new investments, acquiring rare large parcels for new in-city facilities, or redeveloping existing facilities, it is important to consider the long-term viability of those sites. We have some concern in this regard for ongoing facilities planning and construction in the Duwamish area.
- SPU has improved its performance metrics system in the last few years. There has been good progress especially in tracking, measuring and reporting on essential services. We commend SPU for its work here and will continue reviewing metrics reports and updates.
- We support the Utility’s restraint in deploying new software programs; we agree that investing in upgrades is generally a more cost-effective approach.

- We reiterate our concern that many SPU customers are ill-prepared to interface with complex software programs rather than more traditional means of customer engagement.
- We see good opportunities for the apprenticeship programs across SPU, as the workforce ages and the utility has had trouble attracting workers in several areas in recent years.
- Affordability remains a priority concern for the Panel. There has been work underway for several years now in a cross-departmental effort to explore ways to update the Utility Discount Program (UDP). We remain interested in potentially “tiering” of the subsidy levels based on household income.

➤ **The Rate Path**

As noted at the outset of this letter, we are pleased to see the overall annual average rate increase lower in this Plan than in the 2018-2023 Plan preceding it. We remain concerned that this may be largely the result of capital projects not being delivered or delayed, which will further increase rate pressure going forward as the need for those projects has not changed. It is important that SPU keep up the work to lower its cost curve where possible, particularly in light of ongoing significant cost pressures, including growing maintenance, repair and replacement backlogs in SPU’s infrastructure; similar challenges at King County leading to potential major pass-through cost increases in the next several years; unfunded mandates to make culverts passable by fish; and other ongoing regulatory requirements. It is important that the Mayor and Council carefully consider the need for any additional unfunded initiatives on the Utility which would further exacerbate this rate pressure. One such potential area is in the Green New Deal: we support the goals of this initiative but have seen little in the way of analysis as to what it means for utility rates.

Conclusion

Multi-year planning across multiple lines of business is a tremendous challenge, but one that SPU continues to navigate in a way that we think has made the utility stronger and has provided welcome rate transparency and stability for its customers. COVID-19 has increased uncertainty for all of us, and SPU is no exception, despite the Utility’s excellent performance in this past year of challenges. In particular, the rate of capital project completion may be further challenged.

Despite the complexity of the planning effort and the uncertainty ahead, the Plan before you for approval is a strong one. Its focus on *Affordability & Accountability*, and *Risk & Resiliency* is important. The initiatives and investments outlined in the Plan should strengthen utility operations and customer service moving forward.

In the longer-term, the affordability challenges facing SPU are very daunting. We urge the City to begin to grapple with these challenges sooner rather than later.

Our ability to offer these observations and recommendations would not be possible without the support of SPU’s dedicated management team and staff. We thank them for their diligent attention to our concerns, and for their continued excellence in delivery of essential services to our community.

Chair Pedersen and Members, Utilities and Transportation Committee
February 18, 2021

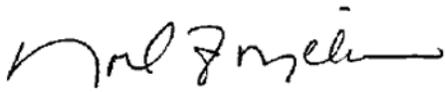
We hope our comments may assist your consideration of this Plan. We further hope that, despite the press of other essential City business and community concerns, you can find time to share your priorities

//
//
//

for SPU with us now, and in the future, so that we may best fulfill the role with which we have been charged.

Sincerely,

Members of the Seattle Public Utilities Customer Review Panel¹



Noel Miller, Chair
Retired Public Works Director



Laura C. Lippman, M.D.,
Vice-Chair
Family Physician



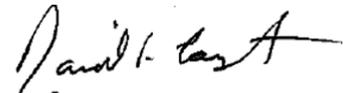
Rodney Schauf, Vice Chair
Director of Engineering
Seattle Sheraton Hotel



Suzie Burke
Business Owner, Fremont



Bobby Coleman
Administrator, Environmental
Stewardship & Sustainability
Seattle Housing Authority



David Layton
Professor & Associate Dean
Evans School of Public
Policy and Governance
University of Washington



Maria McDaniel
Community Advocate



Thy Pham
Senior Program Officer
Global Health Strategy
Planning & Management
Bill & Melinda Gates Foundation



Puja Shaw
Associate
KPF Consulting Engineering

cc: Seattle City Council Members
Mayor Jenny Durkan
Mami Hara, General Manager and CEO Seattle Public Utilities
Brian Goodnight, Council Central Staff

¹ Please note that we are signing this letter in our individual capacity and not as representatives of our employers.



2021-2026 Strategic Business Plan Executive Summary

February 19, 2021 DRAFT

Delivering the Essentials

Every day, Seattle Public Utilities delivers essential water and waste management services to 1.5 million people in the greater Seattle area. People, community, and the environment depend on us and we are honored to do this work.

The challenges we face—coronavirus, climate change, pollution, racial injustice, and economic disparity—remind us that as a community, we must care for each other and work together to shape our future.

While we deliver high-quality drinking water, drainage and wastewater, and solid waste services, we are also looking for opportunities to build on our legacy as a public utility. Maintaining our focus on innovation, leadership, and strong partnerships will help us shape our Community Centered, One Water, Zero Waste future.

The 2021-2026 Strategic Business Plan focuses our priorities, guides essential service delivery, and maximizes the benefit of every dollar. Our strategies around pollution and climate change are designed to contribute to a more just economy and sustainable future.

The plan reflects guiding principles that are at the center of our work ethic: understanding and responding to customers and community, ensuring affordability and accountability, addressing risk and resilience, enhancing equity and empowerment, and delivering service and safety.

Seattle Public Utilities employees are proud to serve our region.

Our Mission:
Seattle Public Utilities fosters healthy people, environment, and economy by partnering with our community to equitably manage water and waste resources for today and for future generations.

Our Vision:
COMMUNITY Centered, ONE Water, ZERO Waste

CARES Principles:
Customers and Community
Affordability and Accountability
Risk and Resilience
Equity and Empowerment
Service and Safety

Our Focus Areas and Goals

Delivering equitable essential services

- **Provide high-quality services:** We're here 24/7, providing safe tap water, reducing waste and litter, managing wastewater and stormwater, and responding to all our customers.

Stewarding environment and health

- **Develop One Water resilience:** We protect water sources by cultivating healthy, adaptable watersheds and ecosystems and by using integrated and equitable water management strategies.
- **Advance Zero Waste circular economy:** We support and promote policies and practices that create a circular economy and reduce Seattle waste and carbon pollution as rapidly as possible.

Highlighted Initiatives & Investments

- Shape Our Water Drainage and Wastewater Integrated System Plan
- Ship Canal Water Quality Project
- Climate Justice, Adaptation, and Mitigation for Water and Waste
- Green Stormwater Infrastructure
- Waste Diversion
- Waste Prevention

Empowering our customers, community, and employees

- **Remove barriers:** We support and uplift residents and businesses by ensuring equitable services, information, and educational materials to help everyone steward our shared, precious resources.
- **Partner with community to maximize the benefits of SPU investments:** We are improving our investment strategies to help SPU contribute to economic opportunity, enhance livability, and build sustainability.
- **Invest in our employees:** We are cultivating a compassionate and dynamic work culture that prioritizes racial equity and attracts, inspires, and invests in existing and future employees—our most valuable resource.

Highlighted Initiatives & Investments

- Customer Affordability Programs
- Side Sewer Assistance
- SPU Support Services for the Unsheltered
- Seeds of Resilience Impact Investment Proposal
- Race and Social Justice Strategic Plan
- SPU Workforce Development
- Workforce Facilities Investments

Strengthening our utility's business practices

- **Enhance ratepayer affordability:** We are focused on financial sustainability and careful use of our resources to help manage costs for our ratepayers.
- **Manage assets and risk optimally:** We are investing in operations, infrastructure, and technologies that carefully manage SPU risks, resilience, and effectiveness.
- **Be an adaptive, learning organization:** We are continuously improving and deepening our culture of safety, excellence, and innovation.

Highlighted Initiatives & Investments

- Accountability and Affordability Strategic Plan
- Risk and Resilience Strategic Plan
- Water Seismic Resilience
- Water Asset Management and Opportunity Work
- Drainage and Wastewater Asset Management Work

The plan will guide our actions and help prioritize our investments over the next six years within a predictable rate path that allows SPU to continue to provide residents with reliable, quality service and deepen commitments to community and the environment.

Rate Path Update

SPU has been working to reduce costs and flatten rate increases over time. The growth in the cost to provide services for the 2021-2026 period is projected to be lower than what was anticipated in previous rate paths. This is due in part to:

- Improving capital investment planning to better reflect probable investments,
- Using cash balances to smooth rate changes,
- Negotiating lower solid waste contract rates, and
- Reducing the cost of borrowing money.

At the same time, several factors are increasing costs and offsetting cost savings, including:

- Higher than expected increases in King County wastewater treatment charges,
- Funding for large capital projects required for state and federal regulatory compliance,
- Targeted funding increases to address deferred maintenance of aging capital assets, and
- Increased commitments to keep pollutants out of our water.

The following table describes the projected three-year rate path and projected three-year rate forecast for a six-year period, by line of business and combined:

Projected 2021-2026 Average Rate Increases

	Rate Path			Rate Forecast			Average
	2021	2022	2023	2024	2025	2026	
Water	0.0%	2.7%	4.7%	3.6%	4.2%	5.5%	3.4%
Wastewater	7.3%	3.1%	5.9%	0.5%	7.8%	3.6%	4.7%
Drainage	7.4%	8.6%	7.2%	3.9%	6.5%	6.7%	6.7%
Solid Waste	2.9%	2.9%	2.2%	2.3%	2.1%	2.1%	2.4%
Combined	4.5%	3.9%	5.0%	2.2%	5.4%	4.2%	4.2%

■ Approved rate legislation currently in effect

Customer Financial Assistance

There are several ways customers can find help with their SPU bill:

- Conservation and education programs which help people understand, and potentially reduce, their usage and bills;
- The Utility Discount Program which provides ongoing bill assistance to the lowest income families and uses customer data to target marketing, signup, and assistance to those in need;
- The Emergency Assistance Program which provides credits toward one bill per year for lower-income households or two bills per year for households with children;
- Payment plans which provide customers with flexibility in payment arrangements; and
- The Community Donation Fund which allows voluntary contributions to help those who are in need.

Rate Impact to Customers

The full 2021-2026 Strategic Business Plan provides tables to explain the projected rate path by showing typical monthly bills for several different types of customers. They will also be available on SPU’s website.

Learn more about the 2021-2026 Strategic Business Plan:
<https://www.seattle.gov/utilities/about/plans/strategic-business-plan>

Accountability and Performance Reporting

Overview

Seattle Public Utilities (SPU) is committed to principles of accountability and transparency through its Strategic Business Plan (SBP) performance reporting. This reporting is comprised of six key elements:

1. [Essential Service Metrics](#)
2. [Initiative and Investment Milestones](#)
3. [Focus Area Progress](#)
4. [Capital Investment Portfolio](#)
5. [Financial Performance and Affordability Metrics](#)
6. [Annual Utility Report Card](#)

Each reporting element is briefly described. The frequency and format of reporting for each of these key elements varies based on the nature of the information and audience. SPU will continue to fine-tune and adjust reporting over the coming years.

1. Essential Service Metrics

Description	SPU’s essential service metrics measure utility performance in meeting the SBP’s delivering equitable essential services goal to provide high-quality service through three strategies: 1) Strive for best-in-class; 2) Provide reliable and rewarding experiences; and 3) Meet or exceed expectations, requirements, and commitments.
Reporting Frequency	Quarterly
Audience	Utility managers, elected officials, Customer Review Panel

2021-2023 Reporting Detail

Strategy	Metric	Target
Strive for best-in-class	Limit distribution system leakage as a percent of total supply, as defined by WA Department of Health	<=10%
	Minimize residential garbage tonnage transported to landfill for disposal	<1 lb./person/day
	Increase number of households enrolled into Utility Discount Program	Not quantified
	Meet targets set for SPU Clean City sharps collection, illegal dumping, and graffiti abatement programs	>=95% of the time
	Limit sewer overflows to no more than four annually per 100 miles of pipe, on a two-year average	<=4 per 100 miles
Provide reliable and rewarding experiences	Priority drinking water, drainage, and wastewater problems responded to within sixty minutes	>=90%
	Less than one missed waste pick-up per 1K service stops	<=1 per 1K stops
	80% of customer calls responded to within three minutes	>=80%
	90% overall customer satisfaction score (based on SPU contact center post-call survey)	>=90%
Meet or exceed expectations, requirements, and commitments	Meet WA Department of Health drinking water quality regulations	Regulations met
	Meet National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System (NPDES) permit requirements for Seattle’s drainage and wastewater systems	Requirements met
	Limit combined sewer overflows to one per outfall per year over a 20-year moving average – annual reporting (target achieved by 2030)	<=1 by 2030
	Reduce garbage, recyclables, and organics generated per resident per day	<2.5 lbs./person/day
	Ensure 80% of customers strongly agree that SPU made it easy for them to handle their issue (based on SPU contact center post call survey)	>=80%
	Meet % of WMBE purchasing and consultant work (target is set annually by the Mayor’s Office)	Determined annually by Mayor’s Office

2. Initiative and Investment Milestones

Description	<p>Initiatives and investments are representative examples of how SPU will advance the strategies described in three SBP focus areas: stewarding environment and health; empowering our customers, community, and employees; and strengthening our utility’s business practices.</p> <p>SPU performance reporting of initiatives and investments will monitor utility progress towards commitment milestones and will provide visibility to SPU’s efforts on an annual basis for initiatives and quarterly basis for investments. Initiatives are defined as policy, planning, and program work and generally require less significant expenditures (under \$5M). Investments result in tangible infrastructure, asset, asset repair, or service and require more significant expenditures (over \$5M). See the table that follows for the SBP’s 18 highlighted initiatives and investments.</p> <p>SPU’s initiatives and investments represent a mix of continued base rate funding as well as new funding or increased investments as noted in the table. All initiatives and investments are funded through SPU rates with the exception of SPU’s support services for the unsheltered investment which is primarily funded by City of Seattle general fund dollars as part of the Clean City program. SPU’s workforce facilities improvements, drainage and wastewater asset management and opportunity work, and water asset management and opportunity work reflect multi-part investments that will be reported on individually within the context of a broader program. Greater detail on the SBP’s highlighted initiatives and investments, can be found in Appendix B.</p>
Reporting Frequency	Initiatives-annual; investments-quarterly
Audience	Utility managers, elected officials, Customer Review Panel

Seattle Public Utilities
2021-2026 SPU Strategic Business Plan
Appendix C

2021-2023 Reporting Detail

Focus Area and Goals	Name	Description	2021- 2023 Commitment Milestones	Initiative/ Investment (reporting)
Stewarding Environment and Health ➤ Develop One Water resilience ➤ Advance Zero Waste circular economy	Strategy: Invest in key water, stormwater, and wastewater projects and plans			
	1. Shape Our Water: A Drainage and Wastewater (DWW) Plan for a Water Resilient Future	Given uncertainty related to climate change, growth, and increasingly stringent regulations, SPU is developing an integrated system plan called 'Shape Our Water.' The plan includes a long-term vision and a short-term implementation plan and will guide investments, policies, programs, and projects that will improve the performance and resilience of our drainage and wastewater systems while optimizing social and environmental benefits for the City of Seattle.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Complete the Shape Our Water Integrated System Plan. 	Initiative (Annual)
	2. Ship Canal Water Quality Project (SCWQP)	The SCWQP will improve regional water quality by keeping more than 75 million gallons of polluted stormwater and sewage from flowing into the Lake Washington Ship Canal, Salmon Bay, and Lake Union on average each year.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Deliver SCWQP on-time and within budget. Complete final design of the pump station and Wallingford and Ballard conveyance projects. Complete tunneling of the 2.7-mile storage tunnel for polluted stormwater and sewage. Complete construction and start system operation in 2025. 	Investment (Quarterly)
	Strategy: Advance climate-resilient, nature-based, community-led solutions			
3. Climate Justice, Adaptation, Mitigation	Climate resilience work includes investing in the leadership and ingenuity of communities to accelerate a just climate transition, adapting our natural and built systems and operations to a changing climate, and reducing greenhouse gas emissions that contribute to climate change.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Adaptively manage water supply and stormwater operations and make strategic system investments to a changing climate. Work with City of Seattle Departments and the Duwamish River Clean Up Coalition to build Resilience District partnerships to inform drainage and wastewater investments in South Park and prevent displacement of residents and local businesses. Develop decarbonization strategy for existing and new SPU-owned buildings. Partner with King County to establish a carbon emissions footprint related to Seattle-area consumption and solid waste generation. Complete a wildfire risk assessment and management strategy to mitigate risks to municipal water supply. 	Initiative (Annual)	

Seattle Public Utilities
2021-2026 SPU Strategic Business Plan
Appendix C

Focus Area and Goals	Name	Description	2021- 2023 Commitment Milestones	Initiative/ Investment <i>(reporting)</i>	
	4. Green Stormwater Infrastructure	SPU is investing in Green Stormwater Infrastructure (GSI) to improve water quality, manage flooding, reduce regulatory costs, and build resilient infrastructure while maximizing community benefits and value for our customers. We are growing innovative cross-sector and GSI partnerships, leveraging our investments to support a broader set of community outcomes, expanding the GSI toolbox to mainstream new and innovative green approaches to stormwater management, and removing barriers to GSI implementation throughout the City of Seattle.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Manage 510 million gallons of stormwater runoff annually with GSI investments. 	Investment <i>(Quarterly)</i>	
	Strategy: Reduce materials and carbon pollution				
	5. Waste Diversion	Waste diversion relies on improving the quality of recycling and composting streams, food rescue, and extended producer responsibility to reduce landfill volumes and costs. SPU supports the statewide goal of cutting food waste by 50% by 2030. Our extended producer responsibility efforts engage product developers to create environmentally sound and socially responsible solutions for the end-of-life management of a wide variety of products.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Work with state and regional partners to finalize a statewide framework for extended producer responsibility. • Increase food rescue innovation partnership work. 	Initiative <i>(Annual)</i>	
	6. Waste Prevention	Waste prevention work targets product consumption and consumer behavior, addressing the root cause of waste and toxins to reduce their impact. Product consumption accounts for about 42% of U.S. greenhouse gas emissions, making waste prevention an important climate change mitigation strategy. SPU will leverage partnerships to prevent waste, respond to changing recycling markets, and reduce the volume of single-use plastics.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Develop and adopt a Waste Prevention Strategic Plan and metrics. • Fund waste prevention innovation through SPU waste-free community grants. 	Initiative <i>(Annual)</i>	

Seattle Public Utilities
2021-2026 SPU Strategic Business Plan
Appendix C

Focus Area and Goals	Name	Description	2021- 2023 Commitment Milestones	Initiative/ Investment (reporting)
Empowering Our Customers, Community, and Employees ➤ Remove barriers ➤ Partner with our community to maximize the benefits of SPU investments ➤ Invest in our employees	Strategy: Provide utility assistance that makes a difference			
	7. Customer Affordability Programs	SPU can make a meaningful difference in people’s lives when we improve effectiveness of financial assistance to customers in need. Our work in this area focuses on shut-off prevention, leak assistance, Utility Discount Program, Emergency Assistance Program, and payment plans.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Expand outreach and participation in assistance programs (Utility Discount Program, Emergency Assistance). Expand leak adjustment policies for residential and commercial customers. 	Initiative (Annual)
	8. Side Sewer Assistance	To enhance affordability, SPU will implement a pilot program that eases the financial burden of repairing side sewers.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Make pilot program incentives available to low-income customers in the form of grants, loans, rebates, or repairs. Use pilot results to potentially expand the program to serve a wide range of customers. 	Investment (Quarterly)
	9. SPU Support Services for the Unsheltered	Relying primarily on non-ratepayer funding, the City of Seattle’s Clean City program will provide cost-effective sanitation and disposal service solutions for unsheltered populations including trash, sharps, and RV services to address health, hygiene, and environmental needs.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Pilot and evaluate cost-effective RV pump out service. Achieve 90% voluntary compliance rate for RV vehicles encountered by RV remediation pilot program. Pilot and evaluate alternative approaches to effectively deliver garbage and sharps collection services for the unsheltered population. 	Investment (Quarterly)
	Strategy: Give voice and power through meaningful partnerships			
	10. Seeds of Resilience Impact Investment Proposal	SPU seeks to build water resiliency, encourage circular economy, and grow blue-green job opportunities through an innovative investment program. This project will assess viable approaches for designing, funding, managing, and evaluating a pilot program that fosters community-led One Water and Zero Waste entrepreneurship.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Develop a proposal and enabling ordinance for Mayor’s Office and City Council consideration. If approved, launch pilot investment program. 	Initiative (Annual) Possible future investment
	11. Race and Social Justice (RSJ) Strategic Plan	When SPU builds trust and strengthens partnerships with community organizations, we improve equity and social outcomes for Seattle. SPU will update its existing RSJ plan to reflect current needs, assess the extent to which RSJ policies are supported across the utility, and recommend opportunities to improve our policies and practices.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Revise SPU’s Environmental Justice and Service Equity (EJSE) Division Race and Social Justice Strategic Plan. 	Initiative (Annual)

Seattle Public Utilities
2021-2026 SPU Strategic Business Plan
Appendix C

Focus Area and Goals	Name	Description	2021- 2023 Commitment Milestones	Initiative/ Investment (reporting)
Strategy: Foster a more equitable workplace, work culture, and better work opportunities				
13. Workforce Facilities Investments	The workforce facilities program includes efforts to improve working conditions for frontline employees at South Operations Center (SOC), North Operations Complex (NOC), Cedar Falls Phase 2, as well as improved space utilization efficiencies at the Seattle Municipal Tower and in the SPU Facilities Master Plan. Work that improves operational efficiencies will be prioritized and facility improvements will address maintenance issues.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Complete options analysis and begin design and/or construction of NOC, SOC, and Cedar Falls Phase 2 projects. Develop a recommendations for Seattle Municipal Tower renovations that consider a reduction of rented space, expanded use of telecommuting, and more collaborative and temporary workspaces based on learnings from the coronavirus pandemic. Complete SPU’s Facilities Master Plan strategy update. 	Investment (Quarterly)	
Strategy: Deliver on accountability and affordability commitments				
Strengthening Our Utility's Business Practices <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ Enhance ratepayer affordability ➤ Manage assets and risks optimally ➤ Be an adaptive, learning organization 				
	14. Accountability and Affordability Strategic Plan	As Seattle residents contend with a tumultuous economy, high costs of living, and inequitable access to opportunity, SPU must help customers who are struggling to afford essential utility services. This strategy proposes a holistic approach to deliver our essential utility services, keep rate increases lower, focus corporate culture on continuous improvement, and make investments that deliver multiple benefits to the community. The implementation plan targets improvements in several areas including: capital planning and delivery, process efficiency improvements, financial management, alternative funding and partnerships, and improved reporting about SPU performance and investments.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Implement three-year actions and recommendations of the Accountability and Affordability Strategic Plan. 	Initiative (Annual)

Seattle Public Utilities
2021-2026 SPU Strategic Business Plan
Appendix C

Focus Area and Goals	Name	Description	2021- 2023 Commitment Milestones	Initiative/ Investment (reporting)
Strategy: Improve how we manage risk and invest in systems assets and infrastructure				
	15. Risk and Resilience Strategy Plan	To improve Seattle’s ability to respond to risks and uncertain events, SPU will seek organization-wide opportunities to encourage and facilitate experimentation and investment that maximizes benefits and reduces negative impact. Our work in this area focuses on collaborative planning, capacity development, and vulnerability reduction.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Create and implement tools and guidance for SPU work units to identify risk, take action, and increase resilience. 	Initiative (Annual)
	16. Water Seismic Resilience	A recent SPU-commissioned study found that a catastrophic earthquake in the region would result in total water pressure loss within approximately 20 hours and take 10 to 25 days to restore 50% of water service, but that seismic upgrades could significantly cut service restoration time. This effort aims to improve the seismic resiliency of the water system to mitigate the impact of earthquakes.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Implement short-term recommendations of the SPU Seismic Study, with the focus on emergency preparedness and response planning, as well as system isolation and control strategies. 	Investment (Quarterly)
	17. Water Asset Management and Opportunity Work	This program focuses on asset management and enhanced investment in SPU's aging infrastructure and deferred maintenance to reduce long term system costs. Efforts include infrastructure opportunity work that supports transportation projects and other City of Seattle capital investments and leverages cost savings from reduction of paving restoration costs.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Complete planned water main replacement, and service line replacements, and install new corrosion control (cathodic protection) on transmission pipes. • Complete priority planning, replacement, and rehabilitation work. • Reduce backlog of maintenance work orders for hydrants and critical valves. • Report on budget and schedule deviations larger than 25% for externally driven transportation opportunity projects. 	Investment (Quarterly)
	18. Drainage and Wastewater (DWW) Asset Management Work	The average age of our wastewater infrastructure is over 80 years old. SPU will invest in the rehabilitation of our sewer pipes, pump stations, combined sewer overflow outfalls, and force mains to address infrastructure needs. A renewal program will also be developed for making future investments in the City of Seattle’s drainage system.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Complete rehabilitation schedule for sewers, pump stations, force mains, and drainage assets. • Clean, replace, and rehabilitate key combined sewer overflows outfalls. 	Investment (Quarterly)

3. Focus Area Progress

Description	SPU plans to conduct quarterly, ‘Shaping the Future of SPU’ forums that provide an opportunity for employee leaders at all levels of SPU (formal and informal) to engage in conversation about key focus areas relevant to SPU’s business: essential service delivery, environment and public health, community and employee empowerment, and internal business practices. Each session will be designed to focus on one of these specific areas and provide a mix of inspiration, employee presentation, issue exploration, frank discussion, and dialogue about how SPU plans to collectively focus and prioritize its work, chart progress, and assess learnings at the end of a year. SPU will share quarterly forum report-outs to its Customer Review Panel and will experiment with annual reporting of composite progress indicators for SBP focus areas. These progress indicators will assess initiatives and investments that are on track with milestones and will explore the value of additional subjective reporting. An example is provided below.
Reporting Frequency	One focus area per quarter
Audience	All SPU, Customer Review Panel

2021-2023 Reporting Detail
Example

Progress will be demonstrated through a rolled up composite indicator:

<div style="background-color: #4CAF50; color: white; padding: 5px; border-radius: 10px; margin-bottom: 5px;">Delivering Essential Services</div> <p>90% of performance indicators meeting targets</p>	<div style="background-color: #2196F3; color: white; padding: 5px; border-radius: 10px; margin-bottom: 5px;">Stewarding Environment and Health</div> <p>95% of initiatives and investments on track</p>
<div style="background-color: #FF9800; color: white; padding: 5px; border-radius: 10px; margin-bottom: 5px;">Empowering Our Community and Employees</div> <p>92% of initiatives and investments on track</p>	<div style="background-color: #A1887F; color: white; padding: 5px; border-radius: 10px; margin-bottom: 5px;">Strengthening Business Excellence</div> <p>91% of initiatives and investment on track</p>

Additional visibility can be provided through quarterly presentations highlighting each focus area along with other work aligned with objectives and goals of SBP.

4. Capital Investment Portfolio

Description

Capital Investment Projects (CIP) comprise almost a fifth of SPU’s annual budget with projects in various phases of delivery: options analysis, design, construction, and closeout. SPU is working to improve reporting on both portfolio accomplishments and neighborhood construction project impact. Portfolio reporting will focus on quarterly reporting of CIP portfolio spending and schedules by delivery phase along with key updates including project RFPs, bids and status. Neighborhood construction reporting is available online and provides updates on current and recently completed projects, repairs, and outages and include linkages to a CIP research tool showing SPU project information throughout the City of Seattle and broader region.

Reporting Frequency

Portfolio–quarterly; Construction reporting–ongoing

Audience

Utility managers, Customer Review Panel, neighborhoods

2021-2023 Reporting Detail

Examples

a. Capital Investment Portfolio Reporting

YTD Q3 PDEB CIP Spending

Closed Expenses \$5,324K (5% Projects)
 Design Expenses \$17,630K (14% Projects)
 Construction Expenses \$65,628K (53% Projects)

Total Q3 Expenses \$88,582K (53% Projects)

Percent Achieved **33.9%**

Q3 YTD Expenses: \$91,798K
 Remaining Budget: \$117,400K

Upcoming Consultant RFPs:

- NDS (Natural Drainage Systems) Thornton
- Longfellow Floodplain Reconnect

Upcoming Construction Bids:

- LFP Floating Cover Replacement
- South Park Roadway and Drainage Conveyance
- 430 Pipeline Sewer Rehab Contract #3
- NDS (Natural Drainage Systems) Longfellow
- Sewer Rehab Contract #3
- Pump Station (17 & 118) Improvements

Key Updates

Lake Forest Park Reservoir Covering, SG4 and Request to Award (outlet for signature 10/23/20). Low Bidder Layfield @ \$8.3M. Award contract in Dec 2020.

North Transfer Station Rebuild. Project is complete. Waiting for State approval to close contract.

ST52 Solid Waste Facilities. Need to get new project approved by E-Team to meet the June 2021 deadline for reporting back to Ecology.

South Park Pump Station. Currently in construction. The Contractor mobilized to the site in September. Construction is expected to take one year.

Henderson North CSO Reduction. Closeout is complete. Awaiting LOB review and buyoff on SG5 so it can be circulated to close project.

Ballard Conveyance. Project working towards 90% design. SCWQP has decided to merge this project with the Tuned Effluent Pump Station for a single construction contract.

TEPS. Project working towards 90% design. 90% milestone in May 2021. Underspending in 2020 due to work stop for cost reduction process.

Program Mgt. ongoing program mgt for SCWQP, no milestones or phases associated with this project. Underspending 2020 largely due to ETC update exercise in 2020 and removal of reserves planned in 2020 (transferred to other projects).

Storage Tunnel. In construction, tracking on schedule. Underspending 2020 as SPN was created before we had contractor cash flow.

Taylor Creek Culvert Replacement. Team is currently working 30% design of distributed sediment management structures in Dead Horse Canyon. The 2020 year end performance is expected to be 98% of planned expenditures set in January of this year.

SPU Capital Investment Projects - PDEB Portfolio

PDEB Capital Project Schedules

	2020				2021			
	Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4	Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4
Water								
Taft Slide Improvements								
Broodstock Collection Facility Retrofit								
Spokane St Pump Station Improvement								
Beverly Park Tank Improvements								
WM Rehab Package #2								
WM Rehab Package #3								
WM Rehab Package #4								
WM Rehab Multiple Package #5								
S Park Flood Control Pump Sta								
Puget Way SW Culvert Replace								
Pearl Street DWW Imp								
12th Ave SSO & Drainage Imp								
Ship Canal WQ Project								
South Park Drainage Conveyance								
PS 22 Retrofit FM Replacement								
SCWQ Pump Station								
SCWQ Storage (Tunnel)								
SCWQ Ballard Conveyance								
SCWQ Wallingford Conveyance								
Storm								
NDS Longfellow								
PS 2, 72, 73, & 9 Improvements								
NDS Thornton								
2017 Spot Sewer Repair Contract 2								
Portage Bay 138 Gate Retrofit								
East Montlake PS and FM Upgrade								
2017 Spot Sewer 1								
40th Ave Fall Line Replacement								
Taylor Creek Culvert Replacement								
PS 62, 63, 71, 76 Improvements								
Letitia Ave S Emg Sewer Repair								
NE 80th St Emergency Sewer Repair								
Sewer								
AWW & Waterfront CSO Control								
SR 520 Corridor Project-WF								
Waterfront Seattle WM Work								
SDOT S Lander St Grade Sep-Wtr								
SDOT Delridge Multimodal-DWW								
SDOT E Marginal Way HHC - Wtr								
SDOT Delridge Way MMC-Wtr								
SWM SDOT SRTS Lowell-Meaney Wtr								
SW								
ST52 - Solid Waste Facilities								

Legend: Options Analysis (Green), Design (Blue), Construction (Dark Blue), Closeout (Grey)

b. Neighborhood Construction Project Reporting

Reporting is available here: <https://www.seattle.gov/utilities/neighborhood-projects>

Neighborhood Projects

Seattle Public Utilities is investing in our infrastructure to protect public health and the environment and to continue providing essential services to customers.



Current Projects

Learn about current projects in your neighborhood, across the city, and at our drinking water facilities in the region.

Completed Projects

Explore information about some of Seattle Public Utilities' completed construction projects.

Construction Impacts

We aim to minimize the impact of our construction on your neighborhood and take measures to inform and involve you.

Sewer Repair

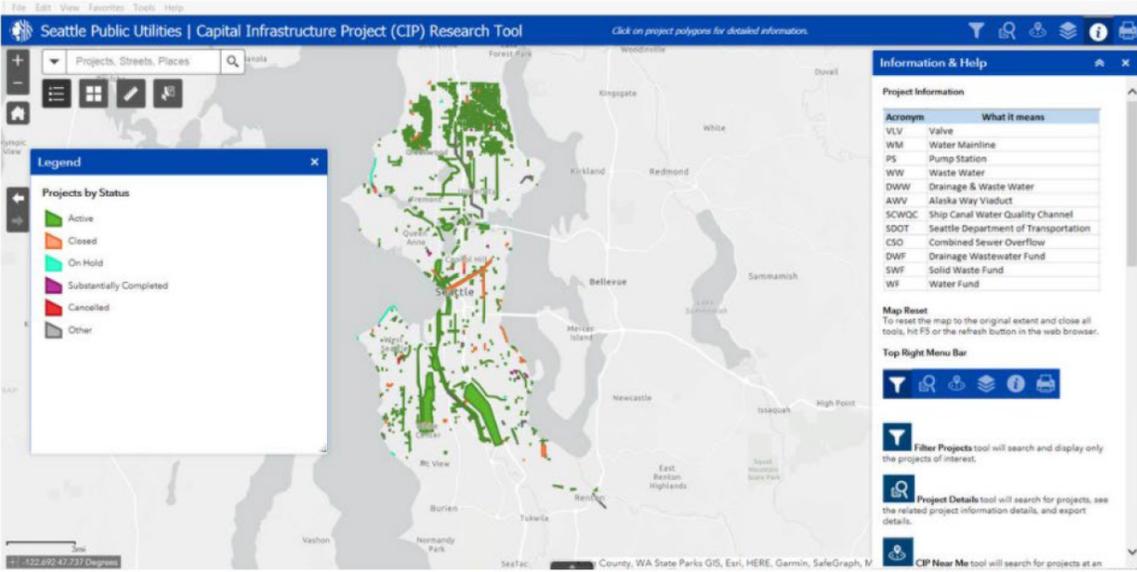
Learn about our ongoing maintenance of 1,200 miles of sewer pipes and how this work can impact your neighborhood.

Water Repair

We operate 1,800 miles of water pipes from the source to your tap. See how we maintain them.

Water Outages

View our current water outage map and read about how you can prepare for planned water outages.



Acronym	What it means
VLV	Valve
WM	Water Mainline
PS	Pump Station
WW	Waste Water
DWW	Drainage & Waste Water
AWV	Alaska Way Viaduct
SCWQC	Ship Canal Water Quality Channel
SDOT	Seattle Department of Transportation
CSO	Combined Sewer Overflow
DWF	Drainage Wastewater Fund
SWF	Solid Waste Fund
WF	Water Fund

5. Financial Performance and Affordability Metrics

Description Financial performance reporting tracks the utility’s planned budget and consumption and revenue forecasts alongside operating and capital program expenditures, accomplishments, and received revenue for each utility fund – water, drainage and wastewater, and solid waste.

Over the next few years, SPU will work to supplement its financial performance reporting with more robust affordability metric evaluation to guide policy work related to financial capability assessments for federal regulatory and consent decree requirements, federal funding advocacy initiatives, customer assistance programs, and utility rate setting. Current affordability metrics track customer delinquency, utility discount program enrollment, as well as emergency assistance program and payment plans usage. This is supplemented by Citywide statistics related to income, cost of living, income disparity, poverty indicators, and household self-sufficiency standards.

Reporting Frequency Financial performance and CIP spending accomplishment–quarterly; Affordability metrics/household burden–annually

Audience Utility managers, Customer Review Panel

2021-2023 Reporting Detail
Examples

1a. Financial performance reporting by line of business								
Water Fund 2020 Q2 Financial Results								
Water <i>(\$ in millions)</i>	2020 Annual				2020 Through June			
	Annual Plan to Spend	Annual Spent to Date	Annual Remaining to Spend	% Annual Remaining to Spend	YTD Planned to Spend	YTD Spent	YTD Variance	% YTD Under Spend
Expenditures								
Operating	\$274	\$118	\$156	57%	\$128	\$118	\$10	8%
Capital	\$116	\$25	\$91	78%	\$37	\$25	\$12	32%
Total Expenditures	\$390	\$143	\$247	63%	\$165	\$143	\$22	13%
	Annual Planned Revenue	Annual Received to Date	Annual Remaining to Receive	% Annual Remaining to Receive	YTD Planned Revenue	YTD Received	YTD Variance	% YTD Revenue Under Recovery
Operating Revenue								
Retail Customer Rev.	\$215	\$90	\$125	58%	\$95	\$90	\$5	5%
Wholesale Customer Rev.	\$59	\$22	\$37	63%	\$23	\$22	\$1	4%
Other Revenue	\$10	\$7	\$3	30%	\$5	\$7	(\$2)	(40%)
Total Operating Revenues	\$284	\$119	\$165	58%	\$123	\$119	\$4	3%

<p>1b. CIP spending accomplishment reporting</p> <p>The Q3 2020 CIP accomplishment for all funds was 62%—actual expenditures of \$147.4 million against the \$236.6 million Q3 budget. Accomplishment was mixed by fund—excluding shared projects and technology projects—which are split across all funds:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The Water Fund accomplished 72% of its Q3 budget with \$26.4 million in actual expenditures against \$36.8 million in Q3 budget. • The Drainage and Wastewater Fund accomplished 60% of its CIP with \$80.5 million in actual expenditures against \$133.5 million in Q3 budget. • The Solid Waste Fund accomplished 22% of its CIP with \$1.3 million in actual expenditures against \$5.9 million in Q3 budget. <p>Shared CIP accomplished 56% of its \$52.1 million Q3 budget. Technology CIP accomplished 113% of its \$8.6 million Q3 budget.</p>
--

<p>2. Affordability metric (work in progress)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; width: fit-content; margin: 10px auto;"> <p style="text-align: center;">HOUSEHOLD BURDEN 2020</p> <p style="text-align: center; font-size: 24pt;">6.4%</p> <p style="text-align: center;">↓ 7% ✓ ↑ 10% ✗</p> </div>	<p>This household burden snapshot depicts the combined water services bill (water, sewer, and drainage) which is equivalent to 6.4% of the income of a typical single-family household in the lower 20% income quartile (low-income). The remaining household burden indicators reflect that the costs should remain under 7% and should not exceed 10%.</p>
--	--

6. SPU Annual Report Card

Description

The annual report card will provide a high-level snapshot of SPU’s key performance highlights, community investment impacts, and accomplishments for each year. It will be available on-line, accompany SPU billing, and be accessible in different language formats.

Reporting Frequency
Audience

Annual
 Customers, community

2021-2023 Reporting Detail
Example



2019 HIGHLIGHTS

Making Services Affordable

In 2019 we took some major steps to make our services more affordable:

- We reduced our average annual rate increase from 5.2% to 5.0%.
- We completed an Affordability and Accountability plan and began work on more than half of the actions in the plan.
- We improved customer access to emergency bill assistance and increased enrollment in the Utility Discount Program.

The City of Seattle’s Utility Discount Program offers income-eligible customers 50% off their Seattle Public Utilities bill and 60% off their Seattle City Light bill.

Get help with your utility bills.

50-60% off for income-eligible customers.

seattle.gov/UDP

Customer Service Improvements

We’re always striving to improve your customer experience. In 2019:

- Our Contact Center exceeded most peak season performance targets with an average call wait time of just over 1 minute.
- We made bills easier to understand by eliminating “bill in advance” practices for solid waste collection.
- We made significant progress on a new and improved customer self-service web portal.

Your new utility services website is now live! This upgraded customer portal offers a suite of customer tools and benefits to enhance your customer experience.

Welcome to the City of Seattle Utility Services Website

myutilities.seattle.gov

Capital Project Delivery

Our 2019 capital improvement project highlights included:

- We partnered with community members and students from local community-based organizations and schools to develop artwork for capital projects in south Seattle.
- We replaced a 100-year-old water main in a utility tunnel under the Ship Canal between Fremont and Queen Anne.
- We began construction on the Ship Canal Water Quality Project.

The Ship Canal Water Quality Project is a 2.7-mile long, 18-foot 10-inch diameter tunnel that will capture and hold stormwater and sewage during heavy rains.

seattle.gov/utl/shipcanalproject

2019 BY THE NUMBERS
Here’s a sample of the work we did in 2019.

Provided safe, clean drinking water to 1.5 million people in and around Seattle.

Recruited and/or partnered with 4,659 Adopt-a-Street Volunteers to collect 55,907 pounds of garbage.

Responded to 24,156 illegal dumping service requests and disposed of 2,464,620 pounds of illegally dumped material.

Our 23 meter readers read an average of 229 meters per day, walking an average of 1,680 miles over the course of a year.

Trained 1,812 landscape professionals in sustainable landscaping.

Diversed 25 million gallons of roof runoff through the RainWise program.

Completed 2.23 miles of sewer rehabilitation repairs.

Brought water conservation, water quality, and stormwater education to 12,524 students.

Awarded \$100,000 in waste-free community grants to community-led waste prevention projects.

Tested 20,000+ drinking water samples.

2019 PERFORMANCE MEASUREMENTS

Services	Measure	2019 Performance
Effective customer service	Respond to 90% priority reports of drinking water, drainage, and wastewater problems within one hour.	Responded to 84% of priority reports within one hour.
Mountain-fresh drinking water	Maintain 100% compliance with Department of Health regulations; maintain regulatory compliance and provide sufficient supply to meet customers’ water needs.	Met goal. (100% compliance)
Safe sewage transport to King County treatment plants	No more than four sewer overflows per 100 miles of pipe in the current biennium.	Exceeded goal. (1.3 sewer backups per 100 miles of pipe.)
Dependable garbage, food and yard waste, and recycling pickup	Provide reliable solid waste pickup with only one missed pickup for each 1,000 stops.	1.1 missed pickups per 1,000 stops
Effective recycling and composting	Recycle 70% of all solid waste citywide by 2022.	In progress. (56.5% recycling rate.)
Drainage that reduces flooding and pollution	Remove 140 tons of pollutants from roads in 2019.	Exceeded goal. (Removed 173 tons of pollutants.)
Planning for the future	Manage 270 million gallons of stormwater runoff using Green Stormwater Infrastructure.	Managed 263 million gallons of stormwater.
Efficient illegal dumping pickup	Complete requests for illegal dumping cleanup within 10 business days at least 95% of the time.	Exceeded goal. (Cleanup within 10 business days 99.7% of the time.)
Efficient graffiti removal	Clean up graffiti on SPU property and SDOT structures within targeted times at least 90% of the time (10 business days for SDOT structures; six business days for SPU).	Exceeded goal. (Met target cleanup times 99% of the time.)

For interpretation services please call 206-684-3000.
 如需口譯服務請撥電話 206-684-3000。
 如需手語服務請撥電話 206-684-3000 或使用 206-684-3000 的傳真服務。
 Para servicios de traducción, por favor, llame al 206-684-3000.
 Para sa serbisyong ng lagapagalinganang, tumawag sa 206-684-3000.
 Mada-yu'cau dip'uy hing' dip' an gqi sa 206-684-3000.
 Wist adeqeqyatsa turjubaanka fadan was: 206-684-3000.



seattle.gov/utilities

Highlighted Initiatives and Investments Detail

Focus Area	Effort	Type	Line of Business				Rate Impact		
			Water	Drainage & Wastewater	Solid Waste	All	Continued Base Funding	Increased Funding	New Investment
Stewarding Environment and Public Health	1. Shape Our Water: A DWW Plan for A Water Resilient Future	Initiative		✓			◆		
	2. Ship Canal Water Quality Project	Investment		✓			◆		
	3. Climate Justice, Adaptation and Mitigation for Water and Waste	Initiative	✓	✓	✓	✓	◆		
	4. Green Stormwater Infrastructure	Investment		✓			◆		
	5. Waste Diversion	Initiative			✓		◆		
	6. Waste Prevention	Initiative			✓		◆	◆ after 2022	
Empowering Customers, Community, and Employees	7. Customer Affordability Programs	Initiative	✓	✓	✓	✓	◆		
	8. Side Sewer Assistance	Investment		✓					◆
	9. SPU Support Services for the Unsheltered	Investment		✓	✓		◆		◆
	10. Seeds of Resilience Impact Investment Proposal	Investment	✓	✓	✓	✓	◆		TBD
	11. Race and Social Justice Strategic Plan	Initiative	✓	✓	✓	✓	◆		
	12. SPU Workforce Development	Initiative	✓	✓	✓	✓	◆		
	13. Workforce Facilities Investments	Investment	✓	✓		✓	◆		
Strengthening Our Utility's Business Practices	14. Accountability and Affordability Strategy Plan	Initiative	✓	✓	✓	✓	◆		
	15. Risk and Resilience Strategic Plan	Initiative	✓	✓	✓	✓	◆		
	16. Water System Seismic Resilience	Investment	✓				◆	◆	
	17. Water Asset Management and Opportunity Work	Investment	✓				◆		
	18. DWW Asset Management Work	Investment		✓			◆	◆	◆

‘Highlighted Initiatives and Investments’ are representative examples of how SPU will advance the strategies described in the Strategic Business Plan. Initiatives represent policy, planning, and program work and generally require less significant expenditures (under \$5M). Investments result in tangible infrastructure, asset, asset repair, or service and require more significant investment (over \$5M).

Initiatives and investments represent a mix of continued base rate funding as well as new funding or increased investments. All initiatives and investments are funded through SPU rates except for SPU’s support services for the unsheltered investment which is primarily funded by City of Seattle general fund dollars as part of the Clean City program. SPU’s workforce facilities improvements, drainage and wastewater asset management and opportunity work, and water asset management and opportunity work reflect multi-part investments that will be reported on individually within the context of a broader program.

The following initiative and Investment templates will be reviewed and updated at least annually to reflect current conditions and adjust and fine-tune SPU’s approaches and commitments as appropriate.

1. Shape Our Water: A Drainage and Wastewater Plan for A Water Resilient Future

Focus Area	Stewarding Environment and Public Health
Goals	Develop One Water resilience
Strategy	Invest in key water, stormwater, and wastewater projects
Type	Initiative template
SPU Branch/Line of Business	Drainage and Wastewater
Executive Sponsor	Andrew Lee
Project Manager/Lead	Leslie Webster
Reporting	Annual
Funding	Currently funded with continued funding for 2021-2026
Last Update	January 2021

Part 1. Summary of the Initiative

Given uncertainty related to climate change, growth, and increasingly stringent regulations, SPU is developing an integrated system plan called ‘Shape Our Water.’ The plan includes a long-term vision and a short-term implementation plan and will guide investments, policies, programs, and projects that will improve the performance and resilience of our drainage and wastewater systems while optimizing social and environmental benefits for the city.

Part 2. 2021-2023 Commitment

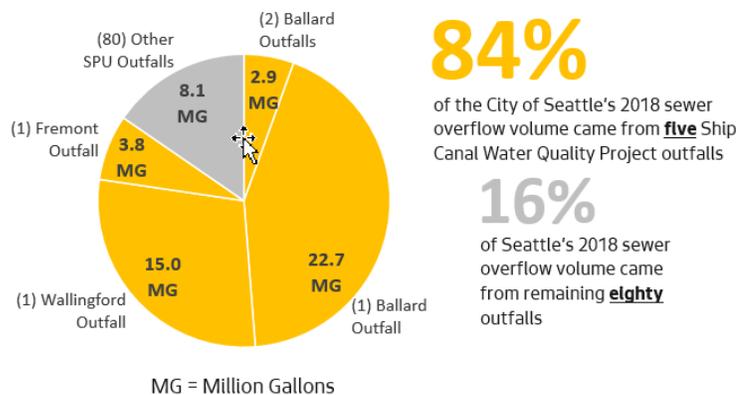
Major Milestones	Timing
Engage community, SPU staff, City departments, community-based organizations, and environmental organizations in the effort	Ongoing
Collaboratively develop a vision for Drainage and Wastewater (DWW) that will guide near and long-term investments	Q2 2021
Identify and prioritize drainage and wastewater challenges and opportunities	Q2 2021
Develop a toolbox of innovative solutions to drainage and wastewater challenges	Q4 2021
Develop and evaluate alternatives to address drainage and wastewater challenges and select preferred alternative	Q4 2022
Complete the Shape Our Water Integrated System Plan	2023

2. Ship Canal Water Quality Project (SCWQP)

Focus Area	Stewarding Environment and Public Health
Goals	Develop One Water resilience
Strategy	Invest in key water, stormwater, and wastewater projects and plans
Type	Investment template
SPU Branch/Line of Business	Drainage and Wastewater, Project Delivery and Engineering
Executive Sponsor	Keri Burchard-Juarez
Project Manager/Lead	Keith Ward
Reporting	Quarterly
Funding	Currently funded with continued funding for 2021-2026
Last Update	January 2021

Part 1. Summary of the Investment

SPU is on track to deliver the Ship Canal Water Quality Project (SCWQP), the largest capital project SPU has implemented, on time and within budget. The SCWQP will improve regional water quality by keeping more than 75 million gallons of polluted stormwater (from rain) and sewage from flowing into the Lake Washington Ship Canal, Salmon Bay, and Lake Union on average each year. Below is a graph showing total combined sewage overflows in 2018 where 84 percent of those volumes came from the five outfalls in the project. The project is under a Federal consent decree and must be operational by the end of 2025. It is also a joint project between SPU and King County’s Wastewater Treatment Division (WTD) with a cost share of approximately 65 percent for SPU and 35 percent for WTD.



Part 2. Targeted Commitments and Performance Measures

Major Milestones	Anticipated Outcomes	Timing
Complete final design of the pump station and Wallingford and Ballard conveyance projects	Designs ready for construction	2023
Complete tunneling of the 2.7-mile storage tunnel	Complete substantial construction element and remove project risk	2023
Complete construction and start system operation	Achieve regulatory milestone and utilize system to improve water quality	2025

Part 3. Financial Summary

Between 2021 and 2026, the four remaining subprojects will be constructed, and the project will be operational by the end of 2025. There will then be one year of operation to validate that the system is operating. The project has secured about \$283M in federal and state loans which will save ratepayers \$82M in financing for the project.

Program Title	Ship Canal Water Quality Project						
Project Name	Various						
(\$000's)							
	2021	2022	2023	2024	2025	2026	TOTAL
Baseline O&M	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Baseline Capital**	\$83,600	\$63,000	\$59,200	\$41,200	\$9,000	\$6,200	\$262,200
Total Baseline	\$83,600	\$63,000	\$59,200	\$41,200	\$9,000	\$6,200	\$262,200

**Total project budget from 2014 to 2027 is \$570 million. King County is contributing \$175 million to the project.

Part 4. Capacity Plan to Deliver (Existing/Capital Only)

There is a large consultant team to perform engineering, construction management, and program management support services and all these contracts are in place through 2026. The entire SPU team is in place and working on the project. There are seven sunset positions, and an extension of one to three years is in process due to changes in the project implementation. The cost for these positions is in the baseline budget.

Part 5. Alternatives Considered

Due to the location of existing infrastructure and the extent of the problem, the only other alternative than a shared storage tunnel were independent underground storage tanks along the ship canal. This alternative was not selected since it would have greater community impacts (i.e., property condemnation and construction impacts).

The SCWQP will achieve the same regulatory compliance standards as other combined sewer overflow projects in the city so there is no service inequity.

3. Climate Justice, Adaptation, and Mitigation for Water and Waste

Focus Area	Stewarding Environment and Public Health
Goals	Develop One Water resilience; advance Zero Waste circular economy
Strategy	Advance climate-resilient, nature-based, community-led solutions
Type	Initiative template
SPU Branch/Line of Business	Corporate Policy, All SPU
Executive Sponsor	Mami Hara
Project Manager/Lead	Ann Grodnik-Nagle, Francine Johnson, SPU Climate Community of Practice
Reporting	Annual
Funding	Currently funded with continued funding for 2021-2026
Last Update	January 2021

Part 1. Summary of the Initiative

SPU contributes to climate change (via greenhouse gas emissions from fleets, facilities, and buildings) and is affected by climate change (via additional risk and uncertainty associated with water supply and drainage and wastewater). Climate change will bring rising sea levels, more extreme precipitation, and more extreme heat to Seattle. These shifts will mean warmer, wetter winters with smaller snowpack and hotter, drier summers which will lead to changing forests, stressful and variable environmental conditions for salmon, and increased wildfire risks in the watersheds, plus stormwater management challenges, flood risk and heat island effects in the city. In addition to ecosystem and infrastructure pressure, climate impacts will put additional pressure on people, particularly within communities that have been most impacted by systemic racism and economic injustice. SPU’s climate work includes a holistic approach to action that includes reducing the greenhouse gas emissions that contribute to climate change, adapting our natural and built systems and operations to a changing climate, and investing in the leadership and ingenuity of frontline communities to accelerate a just climate transition for all Seattle residents.

Part 2. 2021-2023 Commitment

Major Milestones	Timing
Engage community, SPU staff, City departments, community-based organizations, and environmental organizations in the effort	Ongoing
Manage water supply reservoirs using dynamic reservoir rule curves and other system improvements to adapt to a changing climate	Ongoing
Adaptively manage stormwater operations and make strategic investments to adapt to a changing climate	Ongoing
Work with City departments and the Duwamish River Clean Up Coalition (DRCC) to build Resilience District partnerships to inform drainage and wastewater investments in South Park and prevent displacement of residents and local businesses from rising sea levels	Ongoing
Develop electrification strategy for new SPU-owned buildings	Q4 2020*
Develop electrification strategy for all existing SPU-owned buildings	Q2 2021*
Complete a consumption based GHG inventory baseline	Q2 2021
Complete GHG inventory analysis	TBD**
Complete wildfire risk assessment and management strategy to mitigate risks to water supply	Q4 2021

*Timing of electrification strategy is contingent upon Green New Deal Executive Order implementation timeline, which will be determined by OSE and the Mayor’s Office. **Timing of inventory analysis will be detailed in Solid Waste’s Waste Prevention Plan.

4. Green Stormwater Infrastructure

Focus Area	Stewarding Environment and Public Health
Goals	Develop One Water resilience
Strategy	Advance climate-resilient, nature-based, community-led solutions
Type	Investment template
SPU Branch/Line of Business	Drainage and Wastewater
Executive Sponsor	Andrew Lee
Project Manager/Lead	Tracy Tackett
Reporting	Quarterly
Funding	Currently funded with continued funding for 2021-2026
Last Update	January 2021

Part 1. Summary of the Investment

Polluted stormwater runoff from roads and other polluting surfaces are recognized as the leading source of pollution in Puget Sound. While SPU and other municipalities have made great progress toward reducing combined sewer overflows, much of Seattle’s stormwater runoff continues to flow, untreated, into receiving creeks, lakes, and Puget Sound. Seattle’s drainage and combined sewer system also have areas of known capacity problems, where system size does not allow all the flow downstream creating backups and/or flooding.

Green Stormwater Infrastructure (GSI) manages urban runoff by using nature-based processes. The goals of our green infrastructure work are to:

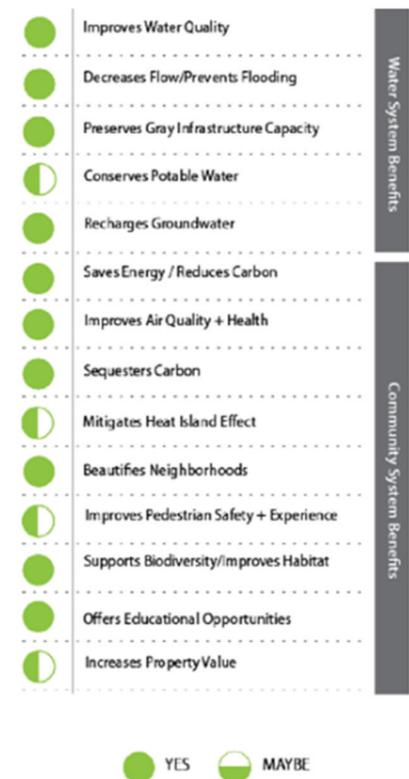
- Decrease impact of polluted runoff to water quality in our creeks, lakes, the Duwamish River, and Puget Sound;
- Reduce combined sewer overflows, flooding, and sanitary sewer overflows/back-up risk and incidence by preserving or improving system capacity; and
- Deliver a range of risk reduction plus community co-benefits with drainage and wastewater (DWW) system investments, optimizing overall value per cost, prioritizing community capacity building/co-creation, and inspiring innovation and creative partnerships.

See Figure 1: GSI Benefits Summary.

This work is aligned with the guiding principles of the SBP, with added emphasis on using current CIP projects and program development efforts to test innovations, grow staff skills, and inform approaches for informing our 50-year DWW integrated system plan, Shape Our Waters.

Over the past 20 years, SPU has established three discrete paths for GSI in Seattle: stormwater code promotes the use of GSI as part of new and redevelopment; incentive programs provide GSI encouragements for retrofitting existing buildings on private parcels; and SPU capital programs advance GSI to manage public runoff, often in collaboration with other City departments.

Figure 1: GSI Benefits Summary



Each year specific program priorities are established for delivery within the three paths above, based on current projects and partnership opportunities, to optimize outcomes delivered by the initiative. In the 2021-2026 timeframe, we will deepen our focus on expanding green infrastructure in Seattle in these four areas:

1. **Expanding the toolbox.** Mainstream new and innovative technologies and design approaches and delivery models.
2. **Growing partnerships.** Build innovative cross-sector GSI partnerships, including “beyond code” innovations with real estate developers, co-purchasing and developing land with the Seattle Parks Department, and/or growing regional knowledge and relationships to help drive private investment. In addition to allowing for more holistic approaches, partnerships can help lower installation costs as well as provide long-term operation and maintenance cost savings.
3. **Supporting community.** Explore leveraging our investments to support a broader set of community outcomes including public health and wellness, workforce development and green jobs, safe and walkable neighborhoods, internships and career pathways for youth, clean air and water, and access to healthy food.
4. **Removing barriers.** Resolve policy barriers and grow knowledge base to clear the way for cost-sharing partnerships, new delivery models, and an expanded compliance toolbox.

Through this work we will continue to improve for faster, broader implementation of GSI.

Additional web-based program information sources:

- www.700milliongallons.org
- www.seattle.gov/utilities/environment-and-conservation/projects/green-stormwater-infrastructure

Part 2. Targeted Commitments and Performance Measures

Targeted Commitments	Performance Metrics	Performance Measure
Lead Seattle in achieving community-wide goal to grow GSI implementation	Gallons of runoff managed annually with GSI	By 2023 manage 510 million gallons of runoff annually with GSI*

*Note: this target is based on SPU’s incremental step towards meeting the 700 million gallons goal set by the Mayor’s Office several years ago. The target is the same as SPU’s current target and no changes are proposed to this metric. The target is purposefully a combined metric that highlights how SPU leverages development requirements and other external partnerships to increase overall capital investment.

Part 3. Financial Summary

Funding for this program is anticipated to continue at previous levels.

Current CIP efforts implementing priorities within this investment area are summarized below.

- **Natural Drainage System (NDS) partnering program.** This capital program achieves the water quality goals in creek basins identified in the Strategic Business Plan to Protect Seattle’s Waterways (requirement within our consent decree). The program plans, designs and builds bioretention within the rights-of-way of the Thornton, Longfellow, and Piper’s Creek watersheds to manage flow and provide water quality treatment for urban runoff. The program will achieve goals through a portfolio of projects that includes SPU-led capital projects, and SPU funding contributions to partner-led projects.
- **Green Infrastructure in Urban Villages program.** This capital program was developed at City Council’s request and funded by a budget increase in the 2018-2023 SBP. The program will provide drainage and wastewater system improvements in urban villages and urban centers. These dense neighborhoods present greater challenges for building green infrastructure, but they also present greater opportunities for partnering and co-benefits. The program will achieve goals through a

portfolio of projects that includes SPU-led capital projects, SPU funding contributions to partner-led projects, and city-wide programmatic approaches.

- **Incentives programs.** These programs incentivize voluntary GSI retrofits on private property in high priority areas. They include the existing RainWise program, and a new, performance-based contract approach intended to launch in 2021. In addition to resource efficient delivery or stormwater management priorities, incentive programs strive to cultivate new sector-based partnerships, integrate racial equity outcomes, and leverage SPU investment to attract more complete project funding.
- **Future GSI partnering (primarily 2024-2026 CIP work).** Continue project implementation, in alignment with initiative goals and the Shape Our Water Plan through a portfolio of projects that includes SPU-led capital projects, SPU funding contributions to partner-led projects, and city-wide programmatic approaches. This work will focus on areas with partnership alignment.

Operating budget reflects the GSI asset management budget. GSI operations and maintenance is implemented to support career pathways for our at-risk communities into long term maintenance jobs. SPU’s approach includes contracting with Seattle Parks and Recreation’s Seattle Conservation Corps (SCC), a state-recognized pre-apprenticeship program. The SCC equips members of residents experiencing homelessness with paid apprenticeships in construction fields, from bricklaying to carpentry to plumbing.

Program Title	Green Stormwater Infrastructure						
(\$000's)							
	DRAINAGE & WASTEWATER						
	2021	2022	2023	2024	2025	2026	TOTAL
Baseline O&M	\$1,100	\$1,200	\$1,200	\$1,200	\$1,300	\$1,300	\$7,300
Baseline Capital**	\$18,100	\$30,700	\$27,700	\$21,300	\$17,100	\$18,600	\$133,500
Total Baseline	\$19,200	\$31,900	\$28,900	\$22,500	\$18,400	\$19,900	\$140,800
O&M Increase	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Capital Increase	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Total	\$19,200	\$31,900	\$28,900	\$22,500	\$18,400	\$19,900	\$140,800
FTEs Added/Changed	—	—	—	—	—	—	—

Part 4. Capacity Plan to Deliver (Existing/Capital Only)

SPU strives to implement a large portion of our GSI portfolio through partner-led projects, including community-initiated projects, private development, and park improvements. Partnership projects are desired because they achieve stormwater goals more cost effectively in the long term. When the GSI in Urban Villages Program was funded through the 2018 Strategic Business Plan, our geographic boundary for potential partnerships expanded, increasing our ability to partner in GSI implementation. However, it is often challenging to align opportunities with external partners. Program outreach and policy barriers to funding partnership projects resulted in slower than anticipated project partnerships through the GSI in Urban Villages Program.

Primary risks and risk reduction strategies for the next three to six years include:

- **Partner project identification.** For SPU to partner on projects led by others, the project must be in an SPU drainage/wastewater priority basin, have room to build GSI, and have a schedule that aligns with SPU. SPU will increase partnership projects through a new performance-based contract approach launching in 2021. This program will expand our partnerships to more community-based organizations and increase partnership on private property in many areas of the city.
- **Resources.** Exploration of partnership opportunities and development of policy guidance that removes barriers to partnership is staff intensive. Internal resource needs will be met through existing SPU staff, supplemented with external support. The GSI program is increasing internal staff capacity by growing the knowledge of existing staff who are new to the GSI concepts but who can allocate increased time to these efforts. External support has also been secured in 2020 via a GSI program support services contract.

Part 5. Alternatives Considered

All capital programs within this investment have undertaken their own Race and Social Justice Toolkit processes to inform their goals and objectives. Each has incorporated strategies to prioritize SPU investments in racial equity priority areas, and to promote partnerships and capacity with organizations that represent communities of color, support equitable job growth, and/or address environmental justice priorities.

The GSI initiative strives to embed the following environmental justice and service equity considerations into all the work we do by:

- Utilizing current population and place data to design programs for and with those most impacted;
- Maximizing community ownership of decision-making and center community leadership, narrative, perspective, and priorities;
- Taking steps to transform racially unjust economic structures at our unique points of leverage, such as: delivering our investments in ways communities of color can leverage additional outcomes or resources, addressing unequal community capacity/readiness to engage, elevating projects and programs that are responsive to Black, Indigenous, and People of Color (BIPOC) community priorities, and designing investment approaches that do not exacerbate displacement;
- Integrating program elements that explicitly prioritize youth development opportunities, job opportunities, contracting opportunities, and/or entrepreneur/business development opportunities in BIPOC communities; and
- Partnering with existing BIPOC-led decision-making body/bodies to ensure programs and projects remain relevant and responsive to community priorities.

5. Waste Diversion

Focus Area	Stewarding Environment and Public Health
Goals	Advance Zero Waste circular economy
Strategy	Reduce materials and carbon pollution
Type	Initiative template
SPU Branch/Line of Business	Solid Waste
Executive Sponsor	Jeff Fowler
Project Manager/Lead	Susan Fife-Ferris
Reporting	Annual
Funding	Currently funded with continued funding for 2021-2026 ** **Continued Base Funding thru 2022. For 2023 and beyond, SPU cannot fully predict staff and funding needs. Depending on extended producer responsibility (EPR) systems legislated and put in place over the next few years, ratepayers will have increased access to environmentally and socially improved options but minimal or no rate decrease, or, if EPR for printed paper and packaging is enacted, the rate payer costs of collecting and processing those materials will be significantly reduced, which may ultimately be able to be passed onto the rate payers. One main reason is that SPU would no longer be subject to market risk with commodity values fluctuation.
Last Update	January 2021

Part 1. Summary of the Initiative

SPU is an internationally recognized leader in recycling and composting, having worked for decades to build a strong diversion ethic for recyclables and organics in Seattle. It is critical to continue our focus on waste diversion to maintain and grow that ethic and associated behaviors. SPU waste diversion work aims to reduce the amount of food waste created and support statewide food waste reduction goal of cutting food waste by 50 percent by 2030. Our extended producer responsibility efforts engage producers in developing environmentally sound and socially responsible solutions for the end-of-life management of their products. In addition to these efforts, SPU will focus on targeting contamination, improving the quality of recyclables and the quality of composting waste diversion streams, and expanding opportunities for self-haul and construction waste salvage.

Part 2. 2021-2023 Commitment

Major Milestones	Timing
Work with state and regional partners to finalize a state-wide framework for extended producer responsibility	2022
Increase food rescue innovation partnership work	2021-2023

6. Waste Prevention

Focus Area	Stewarding Environment and Public Health
Goals	Advance Zero Waste circular economy
Strategy	Reduce materials and carbon pollution
Type	Initiative template
SPU Branch/Line of Business	Solid Waste
Executive Sponsor	Jeff Fowler
Project Manager/Lead	Susan Fife-Ferris
Reporting	Annual
Funding	Currently funded with continued funding for 2021-2026 ** <small>**Continued, base thru 2022. For 2023 and beyond, SPU cannot fully predict staff and funding needs until the Waste Prevention Strategic Plan is completed. SPU's intent is to use existing resources more efficiently based on strategic plan recommendations. SPU anticipates additional funding will be necessary to fully fund the recommendations; however, we anticipate we will be able to accomplish this without a rate impact given the overall solid waste budget.</small>
Last Update	January 2021

Part 1. Summary of the Initiative

As work continues to maintain and grow Seattle’s waste diversion ethic and associated behaviors, SPU is looking to a similar leadership role with significant benefits by building a comparable ethic of waste prevention in Seattle. Waste prevention addresses the root cause of waste to reduce its impact. Consumption accounts for a large proportion (~42 percent) of U.S. greenhouse gas emissions. Waste prevention works by directly targeting consumption and consumer behavior. SPU will lead waste prevention planning and programs that leverage partnerships, respond to changing recycling markets, and reduce the volume of single-use plastics. Examples of waste prevention actions residents and businesses can take include: buying and using less; designing products to last longer; reducing packaging; buying used; and repairing, reusing, sharing, donating, or re-selling items so others can use them.

Waste prevention is widely recognized as the cornerstone to addressing waste and its impacts, yet there have been relatively few resources invested in cohesive planning and programs by Seattle or other governments. Waste prevention as a key strategy for SPU is particularly important as we face challenges with changing recycling markets and issues around the proliferation of single-use plastics.

Waste prevention benefits SPU customers through:

- Reducing negative environmental impacts, such as marine debris, litter, water and air pollution, and exposure to toxic chemicals;
- Increasing health benefits;
- Conserving natural resources such as water, land, energy, and fuel;
- Combating climate change impacts;
- Reducing solid waste (i.e., garbage, recycling, and compost) transportation and end-of-life management costs;
- Helping SPU customers save money by buying less, buying used, repairing items, and sharing resources within the community; and
- Leveraging partnerships.

Part 2. 2021-2023 Commitment

Major Milestone	Timing
Develop and adopt a Waste Prevention Strategic Plan and metrics	2022
Fund waste prevention innovation through SPU waste-free community grants	2021-2023

7. Customer Affordability Programs

Focus Area	Empowering Our Customers, Community, and Employees
Goals	Remove barriers
Strategy	Provide utility assistance that makes a difference
Type	Initiative template
SPU Branch/Line of Business	Corporate Policy; People, Culture, and Community
Executive Sponsor	Mami Hara
Project Manager/Lead	Kahreen Tebeau, Debra Reed SPU Customer Affordability Community of Practice
Reporting	Annual
Funding	Currently funded with continued funding for 2021-2026
Last Update	January 2021

Part 1. Summary of the Initiative

Over the past three years and into the next three, SPU has and will continue to take concrete action to improve our suite of programs that help keep our services affordable for lower-income customers. Our customer assistance rests on three key pillars:

- Conservation programs which help customers reduce their water consumption and bills through more efficient water fixtures and appliances;
- The Utility Discount Program which provides ongoing bill assistance to the lowest income households; and
- The Emergency Assistance Program which provides a credit of up to \$448 dollars toward one bill per year for lower-income households (or two bills per year for households with children).

These core programs are supplemented by more targeted policy tools tailored to address specific customer needs such as payment arrangements, which help customers with high bills spread payment over a longer period, and a leak adjustment policy, which helps customers who experience an unforeseen leak. Our work to improve customer assistance has included increasing Utility Discount Program enrollment through a self-certification pilot, expansion of the Emergency Assistance Program, proactive outreach to prevent shut offs, and multi-family building notification improvements. We will continue to build on these improvements in 2021-23.

Part 2. 2021-2023 Commitment

Major Milestones	Timing
Increase enrollment in the Utility Discount Program by 6,000 net new enrollees (i.e., 2000/year)	End of 2023
Increase utilization of the Emergency Assistance Program by issuing 2,400 emergency assistance credits to eligible households (i.e., 800/year)	End of 2023
Expanded financial benefit of the new SPU leak adjustment policy to 1,500 customers	End of 2021

8. Side Sewer Assistance Pilot and Implementation

Focus Area	Empowering Our Customers, Community, and Employees
Goals	Remove barriers
Strategy	Provide utility assistance that makes a difference
Type	Investment template
SPU Branch/Line of Business	Drainage & Wastewater
Executive Sponsor	Andrew Lee
Project Manager/Lead	Kevin Burrell
Reporting	Quarterly
Funding	New Investment
Last Update	January 2021

Part 1. Summary of the Investment

Side sewers are an important component of Seattle’s collective sewerage system. SPU maintains approximately 1,400 miles of sewer mainlines whereas customers are responsible for roughly 4,100 miles of pipe. Poorly maintained side sewers can lead to problems for our customers and for SPU. Unfortunately, many side sewers in Seattle are coming to the end of their useful life and most customers are unaware that they own and need to maintain them.

Each year more than 3,000 side sewer permits (those not associated with development) are issued to customers to make repairs on private property and in the right-of-way. Costs can range from several thousand dollars to many tens of thousands of dollars, especially when street and sidewalk restoration is required. Our research suggests that customers will ignore their side sewer until they experience a backup, or it completely fails. In addition, they will likely only fix what is needed instead of repairing or replacing the entire pipe. We also know that some customers do not have the resources to pay up front or finance the costs to maintain, repair or replace their side sewers.

The status quo is neither a benefit to the customer in terms of total life-cycle costs nor is it a benefit to the long-term capacity and operation of SPU’s systems. SPU uses staff time and resources responding to hundreds of emergency calls from customers each year only to find that nearly nine out of 10 times the issue stems from the side sewer. Emergency repair situations also put SPU customers at a disadvantage. Our research indicates that most customers do not understand the permitting and repair process and they are left to make significant financial decisions under duress. They most likely will opt for the least expensive fix, as opposed to the solution that will cost less over the full life of the asset.

Part 2. Targeted Commitments and Performance Measures

SPU is developing a business case with several programmatic options that will help alleviate side sewer repair costs for customers. We will also use human-centered design to test and prototype program designs and collect feedback through outreach, focus groups, and customer interviews. Using the preferred alternative(s), we will develop an implementation plan with strategies and tactics to pilot the program starting in 2021. In 2022, program design adjustments will be made based on customer surveys or interviews. The initiative would be complete with a full-scale program moving forward by the end of 2023. The program would continue in 2024 and beyond.

Major Milestones	Anticipated Outcomes	Year
Draft implementation & outreach plan Outreach materials & customer engagement Pilot test & implementation	Pilot implementation plan Program awareness Program enrollment	2021
Feedback & evaluation Refine program design, continue enrollment	Survey or interview data Program participation	2022
Full-scale program implementation	Program incentives are available to customers in the form of grants, loans, rebates, or repairs	2023 - 2026

The short-term goal is to identify and test program approaches that are of value to customers that help reduce the costs of owning and maintaining side sewers. Early and ongoing program enrollment will indicate whether the design and outreach plan were effective. Customer surveys and interviews will describe if we are meeting customer expectations and overall program design and delivery methods. Geographic and demographic information we may be able to collect will also indicate if the program design is equitable, and if further adjustments need to be made.

The long-term goal (beyond the SBP planning horizon) is to reduce customers’ full life cycle costs of owning and maintaining side sewers while also reducing the level of effort required by SPU to respond to or mitigate customer-related side sewer issues. If successful, we would expect to see changes in customer behaviors and attitudes towards maintaining side sewers, and an orientation towards being more proactive, rather than reactive. We would also look for a reduction in side-sewer related emergency calls to SPU and a downward trend in annual side sewer repair permits (not associated with development) over time.

Part 3. Financial Summary

Pilot initiation, including customer outreach, is expected to use existing staff with supplementation of consultant resources. Pilot implementation and evaluation will be resourced with a combination of existing staff, consultant contracts, and new or redeployed positions. The configuration of staffing will depend on the alternative chosen. Most of the expenditures for this program are expected to be in the form of rebates, grants and loans, or direct assistance (see alternatives in Section 5).

The financial summary below illustrates the anticipated expenditures from 2021 through 2023 which includes an initial pilot and ramping up of the program. The current plan for the pilot program is to move to baseline in 2024 with \$1M annual expenditures.

Program Title	Side Sewer Assistance Pilot and Implementation						
(\$000's)	2021	2022	2023	2024	2025	2026	TOTAL
Baseline O&M	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
O&M Increase	\$200	\$600	\$1,200	\$1,200	\$1,300	\$1,400	\$5,800
FTEs Added/Changed*	—	—	—	—	—	—	—

*Anticipated to redeploy from existing positions/vacancies.

Part 4. Capacity Plan to Deliver (Existing/Expanding Capital Only)

N/A

Part 5. Alternatives Considered

There are several alternatives (table below) that have been analyzed. The alternatives range from small financial incentives (rebates, grants) to side sewer repair programs which would cover customer costs for repairs in the right-of-way.

Program Alternatives	Customers Served	Annual Costs
Customer Rebates	100's	\$100,000
SPU Grants & Loans	10's	\$1,000,000
Customer Utility Insurance	100's	\$10,000,000
SPU Direct Replacement of Side Sewers	1000's	\$100,000,000

Over time, we expect that each option will reduce SPU costs related to investigating customer side sewer emergencies. One alternative proposes to use crew or crew-led contractor work which would reduce crew capacity for planning and scheduling and field work for existing core work. One option houses the program outside of SPU, so little or no change in services levels is expected. Each program design will require some level of contracted outreach support for equitable service delivery.

This program prioritizes low- and fixed-income customers. Based on preliminary analysis, potential customers for this program are likely to be historically underserved communities including communities of color and non-English speaking populations. The program options that have been identified would support all customers. However, with limited resources available, the effort would prioritize low- or fixed-income customers.

The program will also rely on consultant support to engage customers and community-based organizations to eliminate unnecessary barriers to participate.

Part 4. Capacity Plan to Deliver (Existing/Expanding Capital Only)

N/A

Part 5. Alternatives Considered

There are several alternatives (table below) that are being analyzed. The alternatives range from small financial incentives (rebates, grants) to side sewer repair programs which would cover customer costs for repairs in the right-of-way.

Program Alternatives	Customers Served	Annual Costs
Customer Rebates	100's	\$100,000
SPU Grants & Loans	10's	\$1,000,000
Customer Utility Insurance	100's	\$10,000,000
SPU Direct Replacement of Side Sewers	1000's	\$100,000,000

Over time, we expect that each option will reduce SPU costs related to investigating customer side sewer emergencies. One alternative proposes to use crew or crew-led contractor work which would reduce crew capacity for planning and scheduling and field work for existing core work. One option houses the program outside of SPU, so little or no change in services levels is expected. Each program design will require some level of contracted outreach support for equitable service delivery.

This program prioritizes low- and fixed-income customers. Based on preliminary analysis, potential customers for this program are likely to be historically underserved communities including communities of color and non-English speaking populations. The program options that have been identified would support all customers. However, with limited resources available, the effort would prioritize low- or fixed-income customers.

The program will also rely on consultant support to engage customers and community-based organizations to eliminate unnecessary barriers to participate.

9. SPU Support Services for the Unsheltered

Focus Area	Empowering Our Customers, Community, and Employees
Goals	Remove barriers
Strategy	Provide utility assistance that makes a difference
Type	Investment template
SPU Branch/Line of Business	People, Culture, and Community; Drainage and Wastewater
Executive Sponsor	Idris Beauregard, Andrew Lee
Project Manager/Lead	Dave Hare, Chris Wilkerson
Reporting	Quarterly
Funding	Currently funded with continued funding for 2021-2026** **Primarily City General Fund, Clean City Program with exception of RV Pump Out which is Drainage and Wastewater Funded.
Last Update	January 2021

Description:

SPU is increasing its support services for the unsheltered through the provision of cost-effective sanitation and disposal service solutions for Seattle’s unsheltered populations including trash, sharps, (i.e., used needle collection) and recreational vehicle services. This investment includes two separate investment programs as follows:

- a. Clean City–Unsheltered Solid Waste Services
- b. Drainage and Wastewater Recreational Vehicle (RV) Mobile Pump Out Program

Separate templates for each investment area are provided below.

9a. Clean City – Unsheltered Solid Waste Services

Part 1. Summary of the Investment

SPU’s Solid Waste Division delivers two unsheltered services: The Encampment Trash Program and the Recreational Vehicle (RV) Remediation Pilot.

Encampment Trash Program

The program provides both scheduled and on-call trash pick-up services to unsanctioned homeless encampments identified in partnership with Finance and Administrative Services (FAS) and Human Services Department (HSD). Sites are selected based on: safe access for vendors, safe conditions for encampment residents, ability for outreach staff to engage encampment residents, trash clearly identified as garbage and separated from any personal possessions, trash for collection located away from the encampment and on a public right-of-way, and site not immediately scheduled for HSD to remove the encampment. For both scheduled and on-call pick-ups, a contracted outreach provider works directly with the site occupants on the logistics of the pick-up site.

Currently, 12-17 unsanctioned homeless encampments are being serviced weekly, and numerous sites are serviced as needed through on-call trash pick-up service. Bulky items (e.g., couches, etc.) are picked up as part of these services.

Solid Waste RV Remediation Pilot

Starting in 2018 and continuing into 2019 and 2020, SPU conducted a pilot program to address community concerns and associated public health and safety risk associated with RVs. The City initiated the RV Remediation Pilot to remove problematic RVs and associated vehicles from the City right-of-way (ROW) and allow for safe clean-up of litter and debris.

Implementation of these efforts is led by SPU and performed by an interdepartmental team composed of Seattle Police Department, Seattle Parks and Recreation, Seattle Department of Transportation, and Seattle Finance and Administrative Services.

A series of protocols were developed to clarify the roles and responsibilities of each participating City department and guide how field staff from each should engage, provide notice, and remove RVs and vehicles that have been identified in priority areas. This includes site ranking criteria to identify six monthly priority RV locations, defined as having five or more RVs and vehicles with the highest health and safety risks. A monthly RV engagement schedule is also created and shared with internal and external stakeholders to facilitate coordination among participating departments.

Part 2. Targeted Commitments and Performance Measures

Encampment Trash Program

Target: Service 30 different unsanctioned homeless encampments annually.

As of January 1, 2020, SPU has serviced 26 different unsanctioned homeless encampments and collected 1,053,966 pounds of litter, engaged with 7,565 people, distributed 72,330 trash bags, collected 30 percent of distributed bags, and disposed of 44,948 sharps since January 2017.

Note: The program actively services between 12-17 locations weekly. Many of the locations are in place for an extended amount of time. Once the encampment moves or is cleared a new encampment is identified for weekly services.

Solid Waste RV Remediation Pilot

Target: By December 2021, service 50 RV hotspot locations. Ninety percent voluntary compliance for vehicles, towing unnecessary.

Note: This target assumes the pilot receives continuing and increased funding.

As of January 1, 2020, the RV remediation team completed 131 RV remediations in 41 neighborhoods. During the cleans 717,786 pounds of garbage were collected and 113 contaminated catchment basins were cleaned of sewage, garbage, and oil along with 102 spills. Ninety-one percent of all RVs/vehicles encountered left voluntarily. Only nine percent of all RVs/vehicles did not move and were towed or junked.

Part 3. Financial Summary

Both programs are expected to continue beyond 2020 but may be revised or expanded by the Mayor and City Council during budget deliberations.

Program Title	Clean City – Unsheltered Services						
Project Name	Encampment Trash, RV Remediation Pilot						
(\$000's)							
	SOLID WASTE						
	2021	2022	2023	2024	2025	2026	TOTAL
Baseline O&M	\$1,800	\$1,900	\$2,000	\$2,100	\$2,200	\$2,300	\$14,000
O&M Increase	--	--	--	--	--	--	--
Total Baseline	\$1,800	\$1,900	\$2,000	\$2,100	\$2,200	\$2,300	\$14,000

Note: Programs are funded through General Fund and are not funded through utility rate.

Part 4. Capacity Plan to Deliver (Existing/Capital Only)

Current resources are sufficient to deliver the current program and pilot. No changes in capacity are anticipated.

Part 5. Alternatives Considered

These programs are exploring several options for improved delivery.

Encampment Trash Program

- Exploring paying homeless individuals to collect and dispose garbage.
- Expand existing consultant contracts with non-profit outreach providers.
- Expand garbage collection to service 10-20 sites at any given time.
- Continue exploring options for improved sharps collection.

Solid Waste RV Remediation Pilot

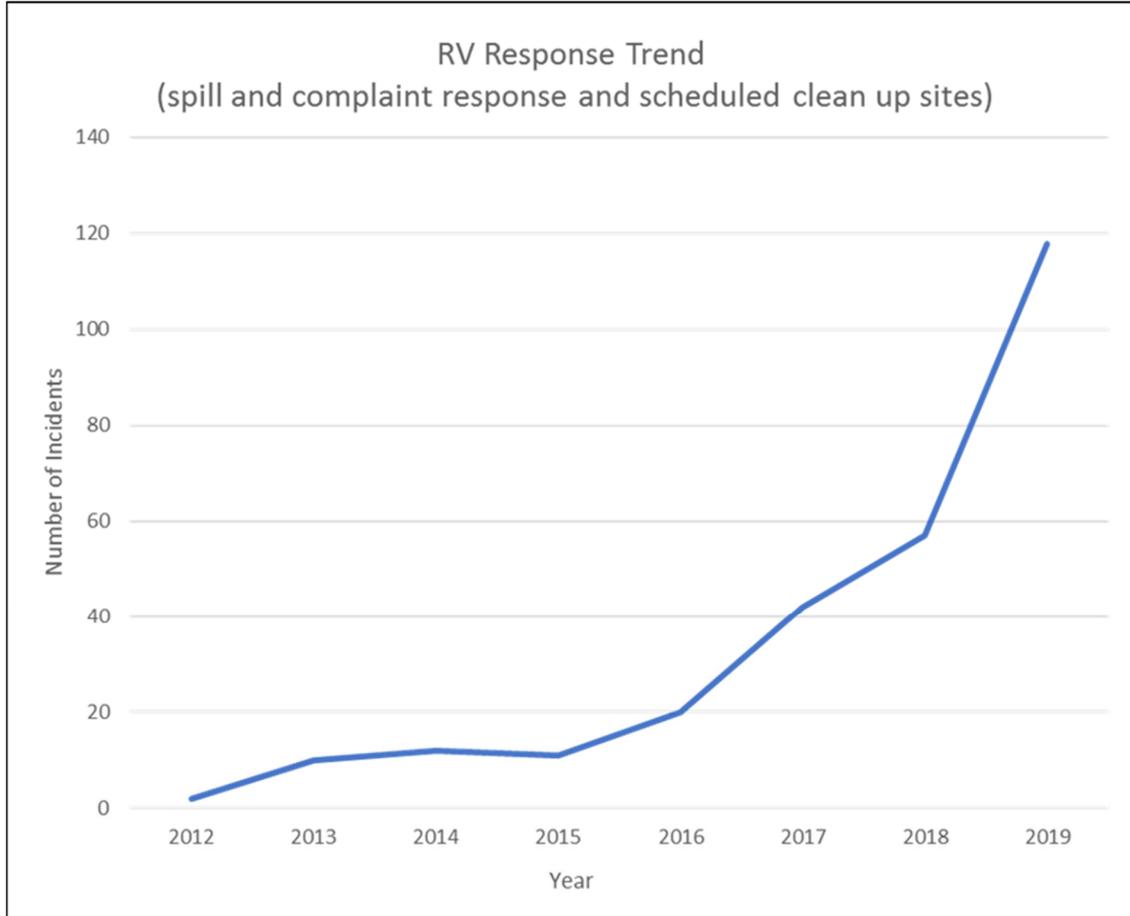
- Integrate non-profit outreach providers into the RV protocol.
- Expand (potentially) the number of pilot sites serviced.
- Explore pressure washing in clean-up activities.
- Continue collaboration with SPU’s RV pump out pilot.

These programs have several race and social justice considerations including geographic distribution and very-low-income populations served. Work in these programs is done in coordination with community organizations and partner City departments including the Human Services Department. Continuous application of SPU’s Race and Social Justice Initiative measures lead to refined selection criteria that help achieve service equity goals by identifying new neighborhoods in need of encampment trash and RV remediation abatement services.

9b. Drainage and Wastewater Recreational Vehicle (RV) Mobile Pump Out Program

Part 1. Summary of the Investment

Nearly half of Seattle’s unhoused population live in vehicles, many in RVs. These RVs are often concentrated in encampments with minimal access to sanitary sewer or pump out removal (the nearest pump out station is 25 miles outside of Seattle city limits). Many of these RVs have broken plumbing or are unable to be moved, compounding the challenge of removing wastewater with traditional methods. RVs occupying encampments often dump waste in drainage basins, streets, or adjacent properties. Over the past several years incidents and complaints associated with this type of dumping have increased substantially (see graph that follows).



In addition to cleaning up garbage and debris at encampments, SPU’s spill response team responds with the interdepartmental clean up team and assesses whether there is evidence of contamination from sewage or other materials. If there is, the team cleans out drainage catch basins to prevent materials from entering local waterways.

SPU is also operating a pilot RV pump out program to address dumping of sewage and other contaminants that can enter the drainage system and travel to local waterways. This pilot provides wastewater pump out services to RVs and will pilot an RV dump station. Mobile pumping is averaging \$150 per vehicle per pump out which includes attempted pump outs of RVs with clogged or broken plumbing (19 percent of service attempts).

Initial estimates for this pilot program assumed funding could provide eight pump-out events per month, with each event consisting of a four-hour period during which five to eight RVs could be serviced. In total, the pilot program services between 40 and 64 RVs per month. This estimate assumes that SPU can partner with the RV remediation interdepartmental team or separately with the Seattle Police Department to guarantee SPU employee safety and to help coordinate the response. In addition, SPU is assessing the viability of a temporary and potentially permanent RV dump station in Seattle.

Part 2. Targeted Commitments and Performance Measures

For this investment, SPU commits to pilot and evaluate cost-effective RV service approaches in 2021. Upon completion of the 2020 pilot and option analysis, targeted commitments will be established.

Part 3. Financial Summary

As a part of SPU’s proposed 2021-2022 budget, the RV mobile pump out pilot is budgeted until 2022, at which time the program would be fully evaluated for continuation, including position allocation and needed services. Funding for the proposed continuation of the pilot will come from rate revenue.

Program Title (\$000's)*	RV Mobile Pump Out						
	2021	2022	2023	2024	2025	2026	TOTAL
Baseline O&M	\$200	\$200	\$200	\$200	\$200	\$200	\$1,200
Baseline Capital	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Total Baseline	\$200	\$200	\$200	\$200	\$200	\$200	\$1,200
O&M Increase	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Capital Increase	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Total	\$200	\$200	\$200	\$200	\$200	\$200	\$1,200
FTEs Added/Changed	—	—	—	—	—	—	—

*Dollars are rounded to the nearest \$100,000.

Part 4. Capacity Plan to Deliver (Existing/Capital Only)

The pilot is being delivered with an ‘out of class’ temporary position and through contractual services. Services are delivered in conjunction with the Seattle Police Department, the City navigation team and partner non-profit organizations, including St. Vincent De Paul and REACH.

Part 5. Alternatives Considered

This pilot is exploring several options with varying ranges of cost and benefit including:

- Providing RV mobile pump out services, and
- Installing a temporary or permanent RV pump out station in Seattle.

This pilot focuses on the technical feasibility of providing alternatives to RV dumping in a limited geographic area. Individuals served by this program are very low income; however, the pilot analysis does not include collection of income, race, or household data.

10. Seeds of Resilience Impact Investment Proposal

Focus Area	Empowering Our Customers, Community, and Employees
Goals	Partner with community to maximize the benefits of SPU investments
Strategy	Give voice and power through meaningful partnerships
Type	Initiative template. If approved, Investment.
SPU Branch/Line of Business	Corporate Policy; All SPU
Executive Sponsor	Mami Hara, Paula Laschober
Project Manager/Lead	Dani Purnell, Karl Stickel SPU Seeds of Resilience Community of Practice
Reporting	Annual, until an investment proposal is approved.
Funding	TBD
Last Update	January 2021

Part 1. Summary of the Initiative

Assess viable approaches for designing, funding, managing, and evaluating a three-year pilot program that fosters community-centered, One Water and Zero Waste entrepreneurship. Investments will build water resiliency, encourage a circular economy, and grow jobs with an emphasis on supporting Black, Indigenous and People of Color (BIPOC) communities. As initially contemplated, SPU’s “seeds of resilience” impact investment program would propose to invest some of SPU’s annual operating revenue to incentivize and incubate locally led water and waste service entrepreneurship. SPU would seek to leverage and grow this investment through community partnerships eventually up to 100+ percent. To streamline program delivery, SPU would seek to administer its program through a community partner with skill in community granting and impact evaluation. The program’s investment portfolio and annual investment strategy would be established by SPU and funding partners in consultation with a stakeholder steering committee. Annual investments would be made via competitive grant processes. Applicants would also be offered coaching and support both during and after application (as appropriate). SPU impact investment would target three primary outcomes: advancement of local One Water and Zero Waste circular economy and climate adaptation, long-term water and waste service affordability, and provision of new, inclusive job opportunities for the BIPOC community.

Part 2. 2021-2023 Commitment

Major Milestones	Timing
Develop a proposal and enabling ordinance for Mayor’s Office and City Council approval.	2021
If approved, launch pilot investment program.	2022

11. Race and Social Justice (RSJ) Strategic Plan

Focus Area	Empowering Our Customers, Community, and Employees
Goals	Remove barriers; partner with community to maximize the benefits of SPU investments; invest in our employees
Strategy	Give voice and power through meaningful partnerships
Type	Initiative template
SPU Branch/Line of Business	People, Culture, and Community
Executive Sponsor	Mami Hara
Project Manager/Lead	Kathleen Baca
Reporting	Annual
Funding	Currently funded with continued funding for 2021-2026
Last Update	January 2021

Part 1. Summary of the Initiative

SPU’s RSJ Strategic Plan outlines a comprehensive approach to support the utility’s internal and external RSJ work. The plan is comprised of a series of actions that include updating the Race and Social Justice Toolkit, deepening staff engagement in RSJ work, increasing community engagement to advance RSJ policies and service equity, and strengthening relationships with underserved communities by building on current engagement strategies. Increased employee engagement in RSJ work will result in a more equitable work culture; increased community engagement will provide a deeper understanding of the needs of our customers and help inform policy.

The scope of the RSJ Strategic Plan also includes:

- Increase SPU’s community footprint through strategic community engagement;
- Design and facilitate SPU RSJ trainings, including train-the-trainer to build capacity of staff across the utility to facilitate discussions of race and social justice;
- Build partnerships with City departments to maximize resources for supporting and developing programs to advance racial equity across the utility;
- Support the change team, affinity groups and Seattle Silence Breakers to advance a unified vision and goals for achieving a truly equitable workforce;
- Develop a plan to increase membership in branch equity teams to increase staff engagement in RSJ and culture work; develop a companion program to engage staff not affiliated with any of SPU’s standing groups;
- Host learnings, guest speakers, and town halls to build understanding of SPU’s RSJ work among staff and community members; and
- Develop a communication plan to support the work.

Part 2. 2021-2023 Commitments

Major Milestones	Timing
Broader engagement of staff in RSJ work, increased community partnerships	End of 2023
Update and revisions of SPU’s RSJ strategic plan	Q2 2021

12. SPU Workforce Development

Focus Area	Empowering Our Customers, Community, and Employees
Goals	Invest in our employees
Strategy	Foster a more equitable workplace, work culture, and better work opportunities
Type	Initiative template
SPU Branch/Line of Business	People, Culture, and Community
Executive Sponsor	Mami Hara, Andrew Lee
Project Manager/Lead	Mary Cornelius
Reporting	Annual
Funding	Currently funded with continued funding for 2021-2026
Last Update	January 2021

Part 1. Summary of the Initiative

Workforce planning is an interconnected set of solutions to meet employment needs. It can include changes to culture, changes to employee engagement, and improvements to employee skills and knowledge that will help to positively influence SPU’s future success. This is important to “rebuild, retain, and recruit” the SPU workforce. Data shows that our workforce is changing and the way to stay ahead of this change is to proactively prepare, creating space for employees to stay within the SPU/ City of Seattle by growing and developing using internal programs. Equally important is using an equity and Race and Social Justice (RSJ) lens to ensure any development plan will align with the City of Seattle’s Race and Social Justice Initiative (RSJI) expectations and to provide an equity component to all aspects of the SPU development planning. The following are the areas of focus for the SPU workforce planning strategy between 2021-2023:

- Internal trainings
- Recruitment
- Mentorship
- Performance management
- Succession planning
- RSJI
- Tuition Assistance Program (TAP)

Part 2. 2021-2023 Commitments

Major Milestones	Timing
Internal trainings: develop resume building, mock interviews, and leadership excellence series	2021- 2022
Recruitment: create a diverse interview panel roster, identify, and develop community partners, conventional and non-conventional to locate top diverse applicants	2021 -2022
Mentorships: build upon existing program, establish mentor roster, and build a “shadowing” system	2021-2023
Performance management: enhance existing programming to include non-APEX/ SAM employees and incorporate an Individual Career Action Plan (ICAP) for interested employees	2021-2022
Succession planning: roll out for leaders as preparation for successors to E-Team level	2021
Tuition Assistance Program (TAP): expand program to include payments for employees with existing student loans	2021
RSJI: continued work with internal groups (Seattle Silence Breakers/ Change Team/ Environmental Justice and Service Equity) to update work products associated with maintaining equity in the workplace	2021-2022

13. Workforce Facilities Investments

Focus Area	Empowering Our Customers, Community, and Employees
Goals	Invest in our employees
Strategy	Foster a more equitable workplace, work culture, and better work opportunities
Type	Investment template
SPU Branch/Line of Business	Logistics, Drainage and Wastewater, Water
Executive Sponsor	Andrew Lee, Alex Chen, Keri Burchard-Juarez
Project Manager/Lead	Gina Galando, Leslie Webster, Alexander Mockos, Wylie Harper, Amy LaBarge, Frank Coulter
Reporting	Quarterly
Funding	Currently funded with continued funding for 2021-2026
Last Update	January 2021

Part 1. Summary of the Investment

This action plan update continues but revises the funding for improvements to SPU workforce facilities to improve working conditions for frontline employees at South Operations Complex, North Operations Complex, Cedar Falls Phase 2 as well as improved space utilization efficiencies at the Seattle Municipal Tower (SMT). These four facilities projects were previously funded as part of the 2018-2023 SBP.

Reevaluating SPU’s Facility Needs

The 2018 original project estimates were based on preliminary estimates. After further analysis, the scope, schedule, and budget of the facility projects have been revised with three refined objectives for this work:

1. Update the facility master plan to provide a revised delivery strategy for overall utility facility needs based on current conditions.
2. Study and reevaluate SMT space utilization, post coronavirus. Based on our recent experience with large portions of our workforce telecommuting, we will develop a business case for reducing SMT floor utilization and implementing space reconfiguration projects to reduce maintenance and operating costs.
3. Create a capital and funding phased plan that achieves the lowest possible rate impact while delivering necessary facility assets.

Project Summaries

North Operations Complex: Includes the planning, design and renovation of the current facility including seismic and functional improvements to support the water line of business operations. The project is currently in options analysis.

South Operations Complex: Includes facility improvements that address maintenance issues and support operational efficiencies. Specifically, the project will address steel beam corrosion and roof leaks as well as failing utilities in the building and provide sewer grit and stormwater wet spoils dewatering, dry spoils and materials storage, and equipment decontamination and maintenance areas at the facility.

Cedar Falls Phase 2: Includes planning, design, and construction to replace shop space, fleet maintenance bays, equipment storage, materials, and tool storage buildings to support water line of business operations. The project is currently in scoping and does not include upgrades to the 100-year-old power grid, which is being done in coordination with Seattle City Light.

SMT reconfigurations: This project will seek to consolidate several floors of SMT occupied by SPU with the goal of reducing SPU’s overall footprint and facility costs. The project will include the development of a business case that

considers expanded use of telecommuting and SMT renovations that facilitate more collaborative and temporary workspaces.

Facilities Master Plan. Update the current facility master plan to provide a revised delivery strategy for overall utility facility needs based on current conditions.

Part 2. Targeted Commitments and Performance Measures

Major Milestone	Targeted Commitment
Facility Master Plan Strategy Update	Complete by 2023
Planning and design <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • North Operations Complex • South Operations Complex • Cedar Falls Phase 2 • SMT Reconfiguration 	Complete by 2023 Complete by 2021
Construction <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • North Operations Complex • South Operations Complex • Cedar Falls Phase 2 • SMT Reconfiguration <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Phase 1 Floor Consolidation/Improvements ○ Phase 2 Floor Consolidation/Improvements 	Complete 2026 Complete 2024 Complete 2025 Complete by 2024 Complete by 2022 Complete by 2024

Part 3. Financial Summary

Continue program investments with revised funding. After master planning, options analysis, and business cases are developed, project budgets will be updated with refined estimates. The following financial plan provides the current revised estimate for facilities projects.

Program Title (\$000's)*	SPU Workforce Facility Investments						
	2021	2022	2023	2024	2025	2026	TOTAL
North Operations Complex	\$500	\$500	\$3,000	\$5,000	\$5,000	—	\$14,000
South Operations Complex	\$3,700	\$13,900	\$9,100	—	—	—	\$26,700
Cedar Falls Phase 2	\$200	\$500	\$1,800	\$15,000	\$8,000	\$4,000	\$29,500
SMT Reconfiguration	—	—	\$1,500	\$1,500	—	—	\$3,000
Facilities Master Plan*	\$200	\$300	—	—	—	—	\$500
Total Baseline Capital**	\$4,600	\$15,200	\$15,400	\$21,500	\$13,000	\$4,000	\$73,700

*The Facilities Master Plan is a new project with funding reallocated from existing facility projects.

**Total planned capital spending decreased compared to the prior plan.

Part 4. Capacity Plan to Deliver (Existing/Capital Only)

The delivery model for major above ground facility construction and associated SPU resource plan will be a primary outcome of the facility master plan. Current projects in flight are fully staffed and will be using a combination of SPU and contracted resources to complete each phase.

Part 5. Alternatives Considered

Several options were considered and vary by project:

- Continue to scope projects at higher levels of investment than the lower revised estimate; SPU has opted to pursue least cost options to reduce customer rate impact.
- Continue to use current facilities without major investment; this option does not support operations adequately and would like impact safety, productivity, site resilience, morale, and environmental impacts.

14. Accountability and Affordability Strategy Plan

Focus Area	Strengthening Our Utility’s Business Practices
Goals	Enhance ratepayer affordability
Strategy	Deliver on accountability and affordability commitments
Type	Initiative template
SPU Branch/Line of Business	Corporate Policy, Corporate Performance, Finance & Administration, Project Delivery and Engineering, All SPU
Executive Sponsor	Mami Hara, Paula Laschober, Keri Burchard-Juarez, Andrew Lee
Project Manager/Lead	Dani Purnell, Natasha Papsoueva, Karl Stickel, Tanya Treat, Ellen Stewart SPU Accountability and Affordability Community of Practice
Reporting	Annual
Funding	Currently funded with continued funding for 2021-2026
Last Update	January 2021

Part 1. Summary of the Initiative

Improving rate affordability and accountability to our customers is paramount. While SPU is making progress in managing rates, the affordability of drinking water, wastewater, and stormwater is a challenge in Seattle and for utilities nationwide. As we confront increasing costs of living in housing and other sectors and the increase in economic inequality among our residents, the affordability of SPU’s services becomes even more critical.

Our strategy outlines a holistic approach to deliver essential utility services, keep rate increases lower, focus corporate culture on continuous improvement, and make investments that deliver multiple benefits to the community. The initiative includes a series of actions that improve how SPU delivers service including the following:

- **Capital project planning and delivery.** Increase the speed and efficiency of planning and delivering of capital improvement projects while maximizing community value.
- **Process efficiency improvements.** Develop a culture of continuous improvement to enhance value to our customers and improve efficiency and performance.
- **Financial management.** Streamline and integrate budget and financial planning practices and align investments with the long-range strategic goals of SPU and the community.
- **Regulatory alignment.** Reduce the cost and risk of meeting regulatory demands while ensuring public health and safety, environmental protection, a vibrant local economy, and social equity outcomes.
- **Alternative funding and partnerships.** Improve SPU’s ability to partner with organizations, institutions, and companies to leverage broader benefits, reduce costs, share risks, and improve outcomes for the communities we serve.
- **Customer assistance.** See separate Customer Assistance Programs Initiative.

Part 2. 2021-2023 Commitments

Major Milestones	Timing
Implementation of actions across six practice areas	End of 2023
Update and revisions of actions by practice area	Q1 2021 Q1 2022 Q1 2023

15. Risk and Resilience Strategic Plan

Focus Area	Strengthening Our Utility’s Business Practices
Goals	Manage assets and risks optimally
Strategy	Improve how we manage risk and invest in system assets and infrastructure
Type	Initiative template
SPU Branch/Line of Business	Finance and Administration, All SPU
Executive Sponsor	Mami Hara, Paula Laschober
Project Manager/Lead	Ned Worcester, Dan Ward
Reporting	Annual
Funding	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Currently funded with continued funding for 2021-2026 <input type="checkbox"/> Currently funded with increased funding for 2021-2026 <input type="checkbox"/> New Investment
Last Update	January 2021

Part 1. Summary of the Initiative

SPU’s ability to provide customers with safe, reliable, and affordable services requires a forward-looking risk and resilience strategy to maximize opportunities, mitigate negative risk, and plan for both sudden and gradual impacts that affect our ability to serve our community. As we plan for future resource use, and affordability concerns shape daily discourse, a forward-looking risk and resilience strategy is essential to providing maximum benefit to our customers, the environment, and our region. Sound risk management allows SPU to handle uncertainty and identify associated opportunities, enabling us to realize operational efficiencies, maximize financial gain, and achieve maximum benefit for customers.

This strategy focuses on working with business units to assess risk and resilience; identify opportunities and reduce negative impacts; and develop tools to support maximum benefit to SPU in areas such as equity, finance, legal, security, and asset management. How to approach risk, how to make decisions involving uncertainty, and how to address, adapt to, and recover from factors that might disrupt our ability to provide critical utility services will be a key emphasis. The work will also center around building partnerships within and outside SPU, mapping interdependencies, and developing action items supporting increased resilience. Major utility outcomes include:

- **Maximize opportunities.** Encourage and facilitate measured risk-taking that encourages innovation, equity, and creativity.
- **Invest in resilience.** Reduce vulnerabilities, increase capabilities, and improve SPU’s ability to adapt to expected and unexpected disruptions, changes, and opportunities.
- **Provide legal and regulatory leadership.** Position SPU to stay ahead of changing regulatory requirements, identify future legal issues, and enhance our ability to respond to legal challenges.
- **Focus on community.** Emphasize collaborative planning and relationships across SPU, other City departments, and the public.
- **Foster risk & resilience culture.** Guide organization-wide risk and resilience decisions and culture, such as helping work groups identify and chart a course of action.

Part 2. 2021-2023 Commitments

Major Milestones	Timing
Create and support use of risk and resilience tools to help decision-making, maximize opportunities, and reduce negative risk.	Q4 2021
Work with each SPU line of business and branch to complete ongoing risk assessments, map interdependencies, and develop action plans to increase resilience to identified and future hazards.	Q4 2021, Ongoing
Develop and continuously update (at least quarterly) a risk register highlighting major cross-cutting risks across SPU.	N/A-Ongoing

16. Water System Seismic Resilience

Focus Area	Strengthening Our Utility’s Business Practices
Goals	Manage assets and risks optimally
Strategy	Improve how we manage risk and invest in system assets and infrastructure
Type	Investment template
SPU Branch/Line of Business	Water, Project Delivery and Engineering
Executive Sponsor	Alex Chen, Keri Burchard-Juarez
Project Manager/Lead	Bill Wells
Reporting	Quarterly
Funding	Currently funded with increased funding for 2021-2026
Last Update	January 2021

Part 1. Summary of the Investment

Earthquakes pose a risk to our water system and therefore seismic resilience planning is essential. SPU recently completed a water system seismic study aimed at increasing SPU’s resilience against earthquakes. The study estimated that during a catastrophic earthquake, SPU would completely lose water pressure within 16 to 24 hours and it would take between 10 to 25 days to restore 50 percent of service. The study also found it is likely to take more than two months to reach the 99 percent plus service restoration level. Seismic upgrades could significantly cut down the time needed for service restoration. By 2045, 10 to 30 percent of SPU’s customers would not even lose service after a catastrophic earthquake. By 2075, the percentage of customers that do not lose water service would rise to 40 to 50 percent. In a hundred years or more, only isolated pockets of water service outages would occur. SPU is beginning to implement the study recommendations.

The short-term strategy is to implement short-term measures, such as improving emergency preparedness and response planning, and adopting isolation and control strategies, that can be used to mitigate the effects of seismic damage until expensive long-term infrastructure improvements can be made. The cost of these short-term measures would be on the order of \$40 million over the next 15 to 20 years.

The long-term strategy is to use proven technologies and strategies that water utilities in the United States and Japan are implementing to mitigate and/or prevent water system damage. They include installing earthquake-resistant pipe, upgrading existing facilities to meet current seismic requirements, and ensuring there is adequate water storage to provide emergency water after a major earthquake. Implementing these technologies is expensive and could take decades. Long-term infrastructure improvements will cost over \$800 million over approximately the next 50 years, followed by further investment for decades.

Part 2. Targeted Commitments and Performance Measures

Milestones	Anticipated Outcomes	Year
Implement many of the short-term recommendations of the seismic study, such as procuring additional emergency repair materials for pipes that may fail after an earthquake and installing additional valving to reduce water outages after an earthquake.	Improved seismic resiliency	2021-2023

Part 3. Financial Summary

The current six-year combined Capital Improvement Plan (CIP) forecast includes short-term and long-term strategies.

Seismic upgrades were recommended over the course of 50 years, with the highest risk and consequence items coming first. The seismic study Executive Summary shows the 50-year projections in a table on the last page. The 50-year projections are intended to be a starting point for budgetary planning, understanding that there may be changes made over the years. Since seismic upgrades are considered part of the overall CIP / asset management planning process, ongoing and continuous analysis of upcoming projects and programs may result in shifts in project prioritization – consistent with all CIP planning for SPU’s water line of business.

Six-year CIP projections are shown below. The numbers shown represent planning-level estimates that will be refined heavily after a detailed options analysis is completed for each project, which is typical of our CIP process.

Higher risk and consequence upgrades will generally go through options analysis tending towards higher cost, lower risk solutions. Lower risk and consequence upgrades will generally go through options analysis tending towards lower cost, higher risk solutions. Balancing system reliability as well as rate affordability is a key consideration, as it is for all CIP projects and planning.

Program Title (\$000's)*	Water Seismic Resilience Capital Improvements						
	2021	2022	2023	2024	2025	2026	TOTAL
Baseline Capital	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Distribution System Seismic Improvements	\$1,500	\$2,250	\$4,000	\$2,000	\$4,500	\$4,500	\$18,750
Transmission System Seismic Improvements	\$1,600	\$2,400	\$3,800	\$14,700	\$13,000	\$18,500	\$54,000
Total Baseline Capital	\$3,100	\$4,650	\$7,800	\$16,700	\$17,500	\$23,000	\$72,750

Part 4. Capacity Plan to Deliver (Existing/Capital Only)

Delivery of these investments will be done through existing staff and contractual resources. Between these two resources, sufficient capacity exists to deliver this investment.

Part 5. Alternatives Considered

We considered alternatives that accelerated the seismic funding to less than 50 years. However, given the prioritization of various projects and the potential rate impacts, the recommended alternative was to spread the costs over a longer duration, with higher priority projects going first.

The projects are spread out throughout the city limits (and beyond), focused on areas of potential seismic hazard. Each upcoming capital project will complete a Race and Social Justice Toolkit to assess any potential race and social justice implications.

17. Water Asset Management and Opportunity Work

Focus Area	Strengthening Our Utility’s Business Practices
Goals	Manage assets and risks optimally
Strategy	Improve how we manage risk and invest in system assets and infrastructure
Type	Investment template
SPU Branch/Line of Business	Water, Project Delivery and Engineering
Executive Sponsor	Alex Chen, Keri Burchard-Juarez
Project Manager/Lead	Bill Wells
Reporting	Quarterly
Funding	Currently funded with continued funding for 2021-2026
Last Update	January 2021

Description: This program focuses on asset management and enhanced investment in SPU’s gaining drinking water infrastructure and deferred maintenance to reduce long term system costs. This investment includes the following separate investment programs:

- a. Water System Overall Asset Management
- b. Hydrant and Valve Maintenance
- c. Water Asset Transportation Opportunity Projects

Separate templates for each investment area are provided below.

17a. Water System Overall Asset Management

Part 1. Summary of the Investment

SPU owns and operates a regional water system comprised of a vast array of assets ranging from dams, treatment plants, pipes, storage tanks, pump stations, hydrants, and more. The original water system was put into service in 1901 and has been continually expanded and improved. Many assets are aging; the average age of distribution pipes is approximately 70 years old. Investment in the repair, rehabilitation, and replacement of Seattle’s aging water system is critical.

Asset management is a systematic framework for determining those repair, rehabilitation, and replacement investments. Asset management is performed from two perspectives. The first is to look at each asset class and to catalog all assets and their condition, establish what levels of service the assets are providing, rank assets by criticality, assess the optimal blend of O&M and CIP for the assets to result in lowest life-cycle cost, and plan for O&M and CIP funding to support the management of the assets. The second perspective is to take a high-level, strategic approach to managing all asset classes together, since together they comprise the entire drinking water system. SPU has completed asset management plans for all water system asset classes.

Part 2. Targeted Commitments and Performance Measures

Major Milestones	Anticipated Outcomes	Year
Complete 1 mile per year of planned water main replacement	Improved water distribution system	2021-2023
Complete 650 replacements per year of water service line replacements	Improved water distribution system	2021-2023
Complete planning and evaluation for rehabilitation for 2 water tanks	Improved water distribution system	2021-2023
Complete 2,500 feet per year of new cathodic protection on transmission pipes	Improved water transmission system	2021-2023
Complete the Tolt water supply valve 15 replacement project	Improved water supply system	2023

Part 3. Financial Summary

The six-year combined CIP forecast already includes a balanced prioritized program for which assets should be replaced in the next six years. In the next three years, SPU will continue to monitor asset condition and criticality, and will adjust the next six-year CIP.

Part 4. Capacity plan to Deliver (Existing/Capital Only)

Resource capacity planning and delivery for managing and maintaining water assets is performed at the program level and adjusted annually based on need.

Part 5. Alternatives Considered

The asset management approach considers many alternatives for each different type of asset and for the system. SPU typically uses the lowest life cycle cost approach that is also sustainable is the approach taken.

Future capital projects that are recommended from the asset management approach will complete a Race and Social Justice Toolkit to assess any potential race and social justice implications.

17b. Hydrant and Valve Maintenance

Part 1. Summary of the Investment

This investment dedicates two crews (four positions total) to perform essential maintenance of the water system and is a continuation of an existing program. Work includes hydrant and valve maintenance. Over time, SPU has had to scale back this work and reallocated staff to competing priorities, including meeting the needs of new development (new water service taps) and other capital programs leaving a backlog of system maintenance work.

Hydrant maintenance can be divided into minor work orders for hydrants that still function and major work orders for hydrants that are out of services. For minor work orders, there is a current backlog of approximately 7,000 which continues to grow. For major work orders, there are about 30 out-of-service hydrants in any given month, with new hydrants reported out of service approximately equaling the number of hydrants being put back in service.

Valves can be divided into less critical and critical valves. Less-critical valves include approximately 20,500 valves for large water service lines, 19,000 valves for fire hydrant branch lines, and 16,000 valves for distribution piping isolation. Critical valves, which number approximately 2,000, are typically larger diameter valves

and those most critical to performance of the water system. SPU is not performing any valve maintenance currently, except for reactive maintenance in response to failed valves. For critical valves, the goal for preventive maintenance is a five-year inspection interval.

Part 2. Targeted Commitments and Performance Measures

Major Milestones	Anticipated Outcomes	Year
Reduction in backlog of minor maintenance work orders for hydrants	Improved water distribution system	2021-2023
Reduction in backlog of major maintenance work orders for hydrants	Improved water distribution system	2021-2023
Reduction in backlog of maintenance work orders for critical valves	Improved water distribution system	2021-2023

Part 3. Financial Summary

This is a continuation of the existing program; funding is expected to continue at current levels, adjusted for inflation.

Program Title (\$000's)*	Maintenance of the Water Distribution System						
	2021	2022	2023	2024	2025	2026	TOTAL
Baseline O&M	\$550	\$560	\$580	\$590	\$600	\$610	\$3,490
O&M Increase	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Total O&M	\$550	\$560	\$580	\$590	\$600	\$610	\$3,490

Part 4. Capacity Plan to Deliver (Existing/Capital Only)

Delivering this work requires hiring for currently vacant positions. Over the past few years, hiring for these vacancies has been difficult and SPU has not been able to attract qualified water pipe workers in the last several hiring processes. To address this issue SPU plans to:

- Broaden the recruitment process to expand the number of applicants.
- Consider use of private contractors to help catch up on deferred maintenance, as a short-term fix.
- Our goal is to hire the four FTEs in 2020, with their major focus on reducing the maintenance backlog through 2020-2023. After hiring these FTEs, the plan is to have them reduce the maintenance backlog and track their efforts over time so that we can better understand the staffing needs over a longer term.
- Hire an apprentice class in 2020 to develop more qualified water pipe worker candidates.

Part 5. Alternatives Considered

SPU considered an alternative of hiring more FTEs to catch up with the backlog faster. However, given the hiring difficulties, this alternative was not seen as feasible.

The water distribution system is evenly distributed throughout the city. Therefore repairs, and any race and social justice impacts, are evenly distributed geographically.

17c. Water Asset Transportation Opportunity Projects

Part 1. Summary of the Investment

Transportation projects create impacts to SPU infrastructure through unavoidable conflicts, damage from construction, and impaired/more costly access. They also provide opportunities for SPU to improve service and replace failing infrastructure at reduced costs through shared pavement restoration, mobilization, and traffic control costs. SPU has identified three categories of transportation project investments: 1) asset protection and rehabilitation, 2) impact-based replacements, and 3) opportunity replacements. For each transportation project, SPU evaluates existing asset conditions, project impacts, and opportunities to determine the appropriate level of investment.

This item focuses on CIP funding for “opportunity projects,” which are projects for water system improvements that take advantage of the street being opened for roadway projects to save cost and impact of opening the street again later. SPU has planned for all opportunity projects with SDOT since 2017.

Part 2. Targeted Commitments and Performance Measures

SPU’s commitment for opportunity projects reflects that SPU is not in control of project schedules because they are effectively Seattle Department of Transportation (SDOT) projects. In recent years, several large opportunity projects were delayed by SDOT.

Major Milestones	Anticipated Outcomes	Year
Review every SDOT project for opportunities for water distribution system improvements and report on actual opportunities that arose, which will inform the anticipated projects and budget	Improved water distribution system	2021-2023
Report on significant budget and schedule deviations larger than 25 percent, which will help determine if we have sufficient resources to take advantage of potential future opportunities	Improved water distribution system	2021-2023

Part 3. Financial Summary

The table below summarizes future opportunity projects with SDOT over the next six years, including Madison Bus Rapid Transit and East Marginal Way Heavy Haul Corridor which were previously delayed. As noted above, SPU is not in control of the schedule of opportunity projects.

Program Title (\$000's)*	Water Asset Transportation Opportunity Projects						
	2021	2022	2023	2024	2025	2026	TOTAL
Baseline Capital	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Total Baseline Capital	\$9,200	\$16,400	\$9,400	\$2,700	\$2,600	\$2,600	\$42,900

Part 4. Capacity Plan to Deliver (Existing/Capital Only)

SPU plans to continue to plan projects in coordination with SDOT, and to follow the schedules established by SDOT.

Part 5. Alternatives Considered

We are still recommending the path forward from the last Strategic Business Plan. We did not consider the alternative of discontinuing potential opportunity projects, given the potential cost benefits, and reduced public disturbance of working on water main projects with SDOT when streets are already open for construction.

SPU relies on SDOT to evaluate the race and social justice considerations for their projects. In general, transportation projects occur throughout the city and therefore the impacts, both short-term construction impacts and long-term transportation benefits, occur throughout the city.

18. DWW Asset Management Work

Focus Area	Strengthening Our Utility’s Business Practices
Goals	Manage assets and risks optimally
Strategy	Improve how we manage risk and invest in system assets and infrastructure
Type	Investment template
SPU Branch/Line of Business	Drainage and Wastewater, Project Delivery and Engineering
Executive Sponsor	Andrew Lee, Keri Burchard-Juarez
Project Manager/Lead	Tara Wong-Esteban
Reporting	Quarterly
Funding	Currently funded with increased funding for 2021-2026 New Investment
Last Update	January 2021

Description: The average age of our drainage and wastewater infrastructure is over 80 years old. Under the current investment levels, we are likely to experience more asset and facility failures which lead to overflows, impacts to public health and safety, and risk SPU’s ability to meet regulatory requirements. Increased investment in the rehabilitation of our sewer pipe, pump stations, combined sewer overflow outfalls, and force mains is needed, as well as developing a renewal program for the City’s drainage system.

This investment includes three separate investment programs as follows:

- a. Expansion of Sewer Rehabilitation Work
- b. Expansion of Drainage Rehabilitation Work
- c. Wastewater Pump Stations, Force Mains, and CSO Outfall Rehabilitation

Separate templates for each investment area follow.

18a. Expansion of Sewer Rehabilitation Work

Part 1. Summary of the Investment

The average age of our wastewater infrastructure is over 80 years old. Increased investment in the repair, rehabilitation and replacement of Seattle’s aging sewer pipes is needed. This activity helps prevent sewer overflows, minimizes public health and safety risks, and meet regulatory requirements. The additional funding will be used to complete more contractor-constructed full-dig replacement, open-cut spot repair, and full-pipe lining projects. This funding will also be used to increase in-house crew capabilities to perform full-pipe lining and open-cut spot repair projects.

The recommendation for increased investment in sewer rehabilitation is based on the results of a capital investment analysis completed in 2019. The analysis modeled future system need given current pipe condition, pipe degradation, and rehabilitation funding and evaluated investment scenarios on their ability to mitigate the current backlog of pipes at high risk of failure and move towards more proactive renewal.

Part 2. Targeted Commitments and Performance Measures (Next Three Years)

From 2018-2019, SPU averaged rehabilitation on 6.7 miles of pipe annually. The goal to rehabilitate 23.5 miles of pipe from 2021-2023 equates to an average of 7.8 miles of rehab per year, which is an increase of about 16 percent over current achievement rates. It does not match the funding increase of 33 percent because some projects, like a full sewer pipe replacement, rehabilitate less pipe and are more expensive. Funding also covers the cost of additional resources to manage, assess and deliver additional work, and includes the addition of our lining crew.

Targeted Commitments	Performance Metrics	Definition of Success
Reduce and eliminate backlog of high-risk pipes	Miles of pipe rehabilitated, total	Complete 23.5 miles of sewer rehab by 2023

Part 3. Financial Summary

This investment gradually increases the program budget to \$32.1M by 2026 (and sustain funding of \$30-35M from 2027-2040). This adds \$45M to the 2021-2026 CIP budget, which represents a 33 percent increase over the baseline total of \$134.6M. The proposed funding will allow SPU to improve the system overall and decrease our backlog of high-risk pipe. The “high risk backlog” is defined as pipes that need to be rehabilitated in less than a five-year rehabilitation window. At this investment rate, we should be able to reduce the number of pipes that are past their rehabilitation window and start reducing the overall backlog of high-risk pipe over the next six years. However, we do not expect to have the backlog managed (the rate of pipe rehabilitation is equal to the number of pipes needing rehabilitation) until about 2050.

This recommendation is summarized in the following table:

Program Title (\$000's)*	Expansion of Sewer Rehabilitation Work						
	2021	2022	2023	2024	2025	2026	TOTAL
Baseline O&M	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Baseline Capital	\$20,700	\$20,100	\$20,100	\$24,100	\$24,800	\$24,900	\$134,700
O&M Increase	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Capital Increase	7,600	8,900	9,500	\$6,100	\$5,700	\$7,200	\$45,000
Total*	\$28,300	\$29,000	\$29,600	\$30,200	\$30,500	\$32,100	\$179,700
FTEs Added/Changed**	3		1				

*This is the proposed pipe rehabilitation capital budget, including the lining crew.

**Positions will be largely capital funded.

Part 4. Capacity Plan to Deliver (Existing/Expanding Capital Only)

This investment includes staffing resources to deliver the work. To address the increased workload DWW will:

- **Add three positions in 2021.** The 2021 positions are for pipe assessment and contracting. The assessor positions assess pipe condition, identify rehabilitation work, develop work scopes, create work orders, assess backlog, and identify/initiate new projects. This is the work that feeds the rehabilitation project conveyor belt and will need to increase soon to support the increased spending that is coming. This staffing need was identified in the capital investment analysis. A third position would be in the Project Delivery and Engineering Branch and support project contracting. An analysis of staff hours spent per

project, when forecasted for future work in the 2021-2026 timeframe, shows that this critical team will need one person to ensure rehabilitation work can move through the bid process efficiently.

- **Add one position in 2023 in project delivery.** Our staffing analysis shows that project design and construction management will need additional resources to keep pace with the investment level. While our analysis shows needing more than 1 person, we are expecting that the on-call consultant or construction management contracts to be executed in 2020 will be able to assist with the workload.

In the past, there has been some difficulty in delivering projects due to a shortage of project managers. Specifically, the project management group went through a staffing shortage in 2018-2019 that slowed down work. That has now been remedied and the project management staffing approach is working well.

Part 5. Alternatives Considered

Six scenarios were evaluated through the capital investment analysis of the pipe rehabilitation program. The scenarios changed the amount of funding available and the types of rehabilitation used and compared how soon the backlog of high-risk pipes (those needing renewal within five years) would be addressed and how soon proactive work could begin (pipes with more than five years until renewal is needed). Having a better balance of reactive and proactive work would allow SPU to reduce the risk of sewer overflows due to pipe failure and better leverage the work and needs of others (e.g., SDOT projects, capacity needs). The recommended scenario balanced the need for increased work with the ability to increase capital funding and in consideration of other capital portfolio needs.

There are no implications associated with this program to equity, race, and social justice. These improvements will be spread throughout the City of Seattle and are driven by asset deterioration and criticality. Race and Social Justice Toolkits will be implemented at the planning level of projects.

18b. Expansion of Drainage Rehabilitation Work

Part 1. Summary of the Investment

This work will increase the rate of rehabilitation of our aging drainage infrastructure assets helping to prevent flooding, improve water quality, and reduce impacts to our customers. This capital work will be guided by a drainage program review, asset management planning, and program strategy development that is part of SPU's baseline work for 2020-2021.

SPU owns and operates approximately 480 miles of storm drain pipelines, 295 storm drain outfalls, 23 large surface water facilities, 1 million gallons of underground stormwater detention, 11.6 miles of creek culverts, 129 miles of non-stream bearing culverts, 62 green stormwater facilities, over 20,000 catch basins, and 400 water quality structures in the city limits. The primary purposes of these assets are to convey, store, and/or treat stormwater.

In the last five years, SPU has completed asset management plans (AMPs) for all major drainage asset classes. The AMPs highlight the need to increase spending and resource allocation on the cleaning, maintenance, condition assessment, and rehabilitation of these assets. The drainage rehabilitation program's current spending levels for the rehabilitation of existing drainage infrastructure is less than \$3M per year. This increase in spending is to address system deficiencies and prevent the high-cost, reactive activities related to deferred capital rehabilitation work.

Part 2. Targeted Commitments and Performance Measures (Next Three Years)

For drainage assets, under this proposal, we expect to prioritize critical infrastructure improvements to drainage assets and continue to collect additional asset condition information, helping SPU’s drainage rehabilitation program mature.

SPU has identified an immediate need to address drainage system deficiencies and begin addressing aging infrastructure to maintain the function of our system. In 2020-2021, SPU will perform a drainage program review. This work will include an audit of the existing program, prioritization of asset management plan recommendations, prioritization of condition assessment needs, and prioritization of programs gaps and needs.

The drainage program will deliver projects based on risk and criticality; however, the program prioritization will evolve based on new condition data or other identified operational concerns. Specific projects will be identified as part of the planning process.

Targeted Commitments	Performance Metrics	Performance Measure
Increase investments in degraded drainage assets	Dollars spent Additional metrics TBD*	Meet spending shown in Part 3

**Note: SPU will perform a drainage program review in 2021-2022 that will determine the short- and long-term capital improvement plan for this asset class. Once the review is complete, SPU will commit to specific performance metrics.*

Part 3. Financial Summary

This investment will increase the rehabilitation budget by \$2M annually between 2024-2026 to increase rehabilitation of drainage assets. Roughly \$250K in baseline O&M funds have been re-allocated starting in 2020 to assist with the planning of this work. Funding includes increase in staffing of 1.5 FTEs.

Baseline activities for drainage rehabilitation include the following:

- Program planning 2020-2021 \$250K/year (\$ vary)
- Stream culvert replacement program - \$2-13M per year (\$ vary)
- Drainage rehabilitation - \$1M per year (\$ vary)

Program Title	Drainage Rehabilitation						
(\$000's)	2021	2022	2023	2024	2025	2026	TOTAL
Baseline O&M	\$300	—	—	—	—	—	\$300
Baseline Capital	\$3,100	\$3,900	\$12,100	\$10,000	\$13,200	\$12,100	\$54,100
Total Baseline	\$3,400	\$3,900	\$12,100	\$10,000	\$13,200	\$12,100	\$54,400
O&M Increase	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Capital Increase	—	\$500	\$1,000	\$2,000	\$2,000	\$2,000	\$7,500
Total	\$3,400	\$4,400	\$13,100	\$12,000	\$15,200	\$14,100	\$61,900
FTEs Added/Changed	1.5*						1.5*

*May be reallocated from internal open positions

Baseline includes existing drainage rehabilitation, creek culvert projects, sand boxes, and facility rehabilitation.

Part 4. Capacity Plan to Deliver (Existing/Expanding Capital Only)

Increasing drainage rehabilitation activity will require the addition of 1.5 positions to support the work. 1 FTE provides provide program management and implementation and an additional 0.5 FTE for an assessor. (These positions may be reallocated within existing open positions.)

Part 5. Alternatives Considered

Each project proposed as part of the drainage rehabilitation program will evaluate options and perform a collaborative scoping process in accordance with SPU policy to evaluate the appropriate project scope while ensuring that the improvement accommodates future capacity and operational needs. As we learn more about drainage assets, the program will adjust, and future Strategic Business Plan action plans will be changed accordingly. Generally, these projects are based on rehabilitating failing or substandard assets so that they will perform effectively. Drainage rehabilitation work will be prioritized based on risk and criticality. Lower priority work will not be funded until high priority work is completed.

There are no implications associated with this program to equity, race, and social justice. These improvements will be spread throughout the City of Seattle and are driven by asset deterioration and criticality. Race and Social Justice Toolkits will be implemented at the planning level of projects.

18c. Wastewater Pump Stations, Force Mains, and CSO Outfall Rehabilitation

Part 1. Summary of the investment

This investment update increases funding for the pump station, force main, and rehabilitation capital programs and maintains current funding for the combine sewer outfalls (CSO) rehabilitation program 2021-2026.

SPU's historically low investment in asset rehabilitation has resulted in a significant number of facilities and pipes that are at risk of failure and need to be addressed. Facility evaluations indicate that the current investment level is not enough to support the long-term health and sustainability of the pump station and force mains in service. Under the current plan, we are likely to experience more facility failures or force main failures which lead to overflows, impacts to public health and safety, and risk SPU's ability to meet regulatory requirements.

Sewer Pump Stations and Force Mains:

This program includes all spending to rehabilitate and replace assets at SPU's sewer pump stations and their associated force mains. Force mains are pipes that convey flow under pressure from the discharge side of a pump to the gravity system downstream. The current funding levels reflected in the 2018-2023 Strategic Business Plan have allowed SPU to make significant improvements to the pump station and force main assets. This funding level will allow for all non-airlift pump stations to be rehabilitated (replacing assets in kind) by 2040-2050. However, this funding level is not enough to replace airlifts on a desirable replacement rate. In addition, some larger more complex force main replacements will need additional funding in the later years (2023-2026). In addition to the six-year CIP discussed in the Strategic Business Plan, SPU has performed long term investment projections for this asset class which shows we are making sustainable levels of investment to prevent a bow wave of deferred maintenance activities in the future.

Outfall Program:

This program includes all capital spending to rehabilitate and replace SPU's CSO outfalls, which are the relief pipes where stormwater and sewage discharge to receiving waters during heavy rain. Funding levels will need to

increase for outfalls to replace or repair two outfalls a year, which is anticipated to address deficient outfalls moving forward.

Part 2. Targeted Commitments and Performance Measures (Next Three Years)

Sewer Pump Stations and Force Mains

Targeted Commitments	Performance Metrics	Definition of Success
Reduce and eliminate backlog of high-risk degraded assets by 2040	Number of pump stations retrofitted	6 pump stations by 2023
	Force mains replaced	3 force mains by 2023

Outfall Program

Targeted Commitments	Performance Metrics	Definition of Success
Reduce and eliminate increased risk of SSO's due to degraded outfalls	Number of CSO outfall cleaned or rehabilitated	Clean 4 outfalls and replace/rehab 1 outfall by 2023

Part 3. Financial Summary

Program Title	Expansion of rehabilitation of pump stations, CSO outfalls						
Project Name	Pump Station, Force Main and CSO Outfall Capital Programs						
(\$000's)	PUMP STATIONS AND FORCE MAINS						
	2021	2022	2023	2024	2025	2026	TOTAL
Baseline O&M	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Baseline Capital	\$3,000	\$3,000	\$3,000	\$3,000	\$3,000	\$3,000	\$18,000
Total Baseline	\$3,000	\$3,000	\$3,000	\$3,000	\$3,000	\$3,000	\$18,000
O&M Increase	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Capital Increase	\$4,200	\$7,200	\$4,400	\$4,200	\$4,400	\$5,600	\$30,000
Total	\$7,200	\$10,200	\$7,400	\$7,200	\$7,400	\$8,600	\$48,000
FTEs Added/Changed	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
	CSO OUTFALLS						
Baseline O&M	\$500	\$500	\$500	\$500	\$500	\$500	\$3,000
O&M Increase	\$1,000	\$1,000	\$1,000	\$1,000	\$1,000	\$1,000	\$6,000
Total	\$1,500	\$1,500	\$1,500	\$1,500	\$1,500	\$1,500	\$9,000
FTEs Added/Changed	—	—	—	—	—	—	—

Part 4. Capacity Plan to Deliver (Existing/Expanding Capital Only)

Use existing internal staff and supplement staff resource limitations through on-call consultant support.

Part 5. Alternatives Considered

Each project proposed as part of the sewer pump station and force main program goes through an option analysis and collaborative scoping process to evaluate the appropriate project scope while “future proofing” the facilities to accommodate future capacity and operational needs. Generally, these projects are based on bringing the facilities up to code and replacing failing or substandard assets so that the facilities will perform effectively throughout an industry standard asset management lifecycle.

- Pump station and force main rehabilitation program work is prioritized based on risk and criticality. Lower priority work is not funded until high priority work is completed.
- Prioritization of and impacts to other programs and projects were not considered in the development of this SBP initiative.

There are no implications associated with this program to equity, race, and social justice. These improvements will be spread throughout the City of Seattle and are driven by asset deterioration and criticality. Race and Social Justice Toolkits will be implemented at the planning level of projects.

Community Research and Outreach Summary

Purpose

Seattle Public Utilities (SPU) conducted research and community outreach to engage and learn from customers and community members as part of the 2021-2026 Strategic Business Plan (plan) process.

Insights gleaned will help the utility better understand customer and community perspectives and plan for the future. More specifically, this work will inform content and language in the plan, ongoing SPU service delivery, and engagement with customers and the community.

The research and outreach process had several important, defining characteristics:

- **Purposeful and respectful of people’s time and opinions:** Community members and customers are often asked to share their opinions, but rarely know how their feedback is used (if at all). To demonstrate respect for people’s time and input, research and outreach tools were kept brief and made accessible.
- **Inclusive:** Recognizing that typical research and public input tools often underrepresent segments of the population, SPU made a deliberate effort to be inclusive in its outreach. The Environmental Justice and Service Equity Division, with the help of Department of Neighborhoods community liaisons, took purposeful steps to better reach historically underserved and non-English speaking communities.
- **Multi-pronged:** Customers, community members, businesses, and SPU employees had multiple opportunities to provide input: through the careful ‘mining’ of existing research, business interviews, an online survey, hard copy/translated surveys, the SPU website, social media, meetings with community leaders, and interaction at events.
- **Efficient and adaptive:** The research and engagement teams were mindful of utility and community investments (time, resources, and focus) and made sure outreach was strategic, concise, convenient, and valuable. Due to the ongoing COVID-19 pandemic, outreach efforts had to adapt to changing circumstances.

About this Summary

This is a high-level summary of the research and outreach effort. Detailed reports are available describing each component in more detail.

Overview

Research and outreach included four distinct efforts: background research (Voice of the Customer research), interviews with businesses, an online survey, and community outreach¹.



Voice of the Customer Research

Voice of the Customer research (VOC) is a comprehensive review of 28 research studies commissioned by SPU and others to better understand residential and business customer experiences, opinions, and preferences as well as employee perspectives. Source material included Seattle and regional surveys, interviews, and focus groups. The VOC research ‘mined’ the voluminous body of existing research to extract strategic information that would benefit the strategic planning process. A priority was placed on understanding customer satisfaction and examining whether the utility’s goals and values align with that of SPU customers.

The VOC work was foundational and led to the utility identifying five key questions for further study:

1. How satisfied are you with SPU services (drinking water; garbage; recycling and composting; sewer; and drainage and flood prevention)?
2. How satisfied are you with the overall cost and value of SPU services?
3. What improvements would you like SPU to focus on in the next five years?
4. What are the biggest water and waste management challenges facing Seattle in the next 20 years?
5. How can we work together to address these challenges?

These key questions were explored through business interviews, an online survey of employees and the public, and community outreach.

¹ In addition to these components, extensive employee engagement also took place. While employee perspectives were captured through Voice of the Customer (VOC) and survey research efforts, additional details about engagement efforts (e.g., workshops) are reported separately.

Business Interviews

SPU commissioned a strategic communications and research firm (Cocker Fennessy) to conduct confidential interviews with business leaders representing a range of industries, and business sizes and sectors. Cocker Fennessy worked closely with SPU to develop the qualitative research approach and identify and refine the interviewee list and discussion guide. Cocker Fennessy's research staff conducted the confidential interviews from November 15 to December 12, 2019. The interviews revealed business perspectives and experiences, filled knowledge gaps, and identified potential areas for partnership and improvement. Interviews were 45 to 60 minutes long and were conducted over the phone or in-person, depending on respondents' preferences. A total of 34 businesses were invited to participate in the research and 19 interviews were completed.

Survey

SPU also partnered with Cocker Fennessy to develop, implement, and analyze a brief online survey to better understand customer and employee opinions regarding SPU services, areas of improvement, challenges, and partnership opportunities. The survey was programmed and hosted via SurveyMonkey and fielded December 3, 2019 to April 15, 2020. People were invited to answer the survey through a variety of channels (SPU website; emails; e-news; social media including Facebook and Next Door²; and through partnerships with community groups and Department of Neighborhoods liaisons). The primary mode of data collection was an online survey (in English). Translated copies of the survey were made available in Spanish, Chinese, Vietnamese, and Somali. In person and paper responses to the survey are captured in the 'community outreach' report. In total, 944 people responded to the online survey.

Community Outreach

SPU prioritizes and values hearing all community voices. Building lasting relationships and creating authentic, quality opportunities for communication with communities is critical to our shared success.

The community engagement conducted in support of the plan gathered public input and engaged historically underrepresented and often underserved populations. SPU's Environmental Justice and Service Equity Division (EJSE) led the community engagement work and partnered with Department of Neighborhoods liaisons for implementation. Community outreach was inclusive and conducted through the promotion of the online (and hard copy) survey; administration of surveys in Spanish, Chinese, Vietnamese, and Somali; connecting with people through trusted community liaisons; interviews with community leaders; and meeting people where they are by visiting community centers, events, markets, social media, etc.

Through this outreach, SPU achieved: 40 community interviews with diverse communities, 82,378 Facebook impressions, and more than 944 completed surveys.

² Promoted the survey in 213 neighborhoods on NextDoor with 206,722 verified residents.

Key Themes and Findings

Component	Description	Key Themes/Findings
Voice of the Customer Research	Comprehensive review of research studies commissioned by SPU and others to better understand residential and business customer experiences, opinions, and preferences as well as employee perspectives	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • High satisfaction with SPU services and desire for continued investment in services and infrastructure. • Affordability of rates, rate predictability, cutting costs, and finding efficiencies are concerns. • Finding technologies to improve service, costs, and safety are highly important. • Environmental leadership is a regional value and source of pride. • Addressing climate change is strongly supported but customers don't know SPU's role. • People need help understanding how to recycle and compost. Addressing the root causes of waste is also desired. • Economic opportunity and environmental health are not universal experiences. Reaching traditionally underserved communities will require intention, in-language communication, cultural relevancy, and authentic partnerships. • Residents and city employees believe ending racial inequity is a government responsibility that must be prioritized. • Businesses appreciate opportunities to save money and desire streamlined processes and communication. • Developers/businesses need to receive tangible benefits from green approaches and desire partnerships over enforcement. • There's an opportunity to reach people by focusing on how we can work together to sustain this special place.
Business Interviews	Conducted 19 confidential interviews with business leaders representing a range of industries, and business sizes and sectors to gather input on issues pertinent to the plan	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Interview recruitment was challenging—many lacked a relationship with SPU or belief that engagement would benefit them. • SPU is primarily seen as a service provider. Some also see the utility as a policy-setter and enforcer. • SPU is credited with providing safe, high quality, and reliable drinking water. Feelings about drainage and sewer were more mixed. • Feedback on garbage/waste was more critical. Issues with contractors were mentioned. • Illegal dumping and graffiti are problematic in some neighborhoods and mentioned frequently by Business Improvement Area interviewees. • Many feel SPU is easier to work with once you have a personal relationship with a staff person. • Business and community engagement could be improved through regular and early communication, particularly on policy issues. • Effective partnerships require understanding, relationship building, and flexibility.
Community Outreach	Gathered public input and engaged historically underrepresented and often underserved populations on SPU's 5 key questions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • High awareness/appreciation of water service. • Concerns about drainage and flooding and waste services. • Identified barriers to effective engagement (trust, language, awareness/knowledge). • Strong concerns about affordability. • Recognition of significant future challenges (growth, climate, infrastructure). • Need for improvements around community engagement and communications.
Online Survey	Fielded a broad-based online survey of customers and employees to inform the plan, ongoing service delivery, and customer engagement	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • SPU services (water, drainage and wastewater, and solid waste) are viewed as essential and are valued. • All SPU services are favorably rated; but water receives the highest ratings. • Significant 'neutral' responses to questions about the utility and its services are areas for additional exploration. • Respondents would most like to see SPU focus on aging infrastructure, affordability, service equity, and waste/plastics/toxics. • The top challenges for the utility are sustainable waste practices, aging infrastructure, climate change, and population growth. • Outreach could be improved through better/simple communications, education, equity, translations, and more community engagement.

Considerations and Opportunities

The insights gleaned from plan research and outreach raise some issues for further consideration and potential opportunity areas. Specifically:

1. How can we ensure that insights from outreach and research are shared effectively within the utility and used to inform service delivery and future outreach?
2. How can we close the feedback loop with the community, sharing results of this and other research and outreach?
3. Are there opportunities to receive more focused input (e.g., COVID-19 recovery opportunities) during the extended planning period?
4. How can research and outreach be coordinated across SPU's lines of business to minimize fatigue/lack of participation? Should we create community or consumer opt-in lists to regularly check in with our customer-owners? Are there internal SPU processes that could be developed to ensure better coordination?
5. What are SPU's goals for building relationships with different customer types? What is SPU willing/able to do to build truly effective relationships and partnerships?
6. What will future SPU research and outreach look like as we recover from the pandemic? Even with vaccinations, recurrences are likely and ongoing physical distancing practices may be required. How can we adapt to the new normal?

Additional Resources

The following detailed research and outreach summaries are available:

- Voice of the Customer Research Report (November 2019)
 - VOC Themes Presentation/Summary (November 2019)
- Business Interview Report (January 2020)
- Community Outreach Report (May 2020)
 - Facebook Ad Recap Review
- Online Survey Report (May 2020)
 - Survey Data File with Verbatim Responses
 - Facebook Ad Recap Review
- Employee/workshop material/summaries

Financial Forecast

Key Rate Drivers

The rate paths for each fund contain key assumptions regarding debt issuances, capital accomplishment, consumption, and the Utility Discount Program. Below is a summary matrix of the primary assumptions. Each fund has additional assumptions that are unique to its structure, which are explored in the following sections.

Overall, the utility is anticipating continued declines in all services - residential-, commercial-, and developer-related - into 2021 as the area and economy weather the impacts of COVID-19. Simultaneously, increases in the Utility Discount Program are anticipated and have already materialized in 2020. The following table highlights key assumptions over the six-year period.

Proposed Strategic Business Plan Rate Path

	Rate Path			Rate Forecast			Average
	2021	2022	2023	2024	2025	2026	
Water	0.0%	2.7%	4.7%	3.6%	4.2%	5.5%	3.4%
Wastewater	7.3%	3.1%	5.9%	0.5%	7.8%	3.6%	4.7%
Drainage	7.4%	8.6%	7.2%	3.9%	6.5%	6.7%	6.7%
Solid Waste	2.9%	2.9%	2.2%	2.3%	2.1%	2.1%	2.4%
Combined	4.5%	3.9%	5.0%	2.2%	5.4%	4.2%	4.2%

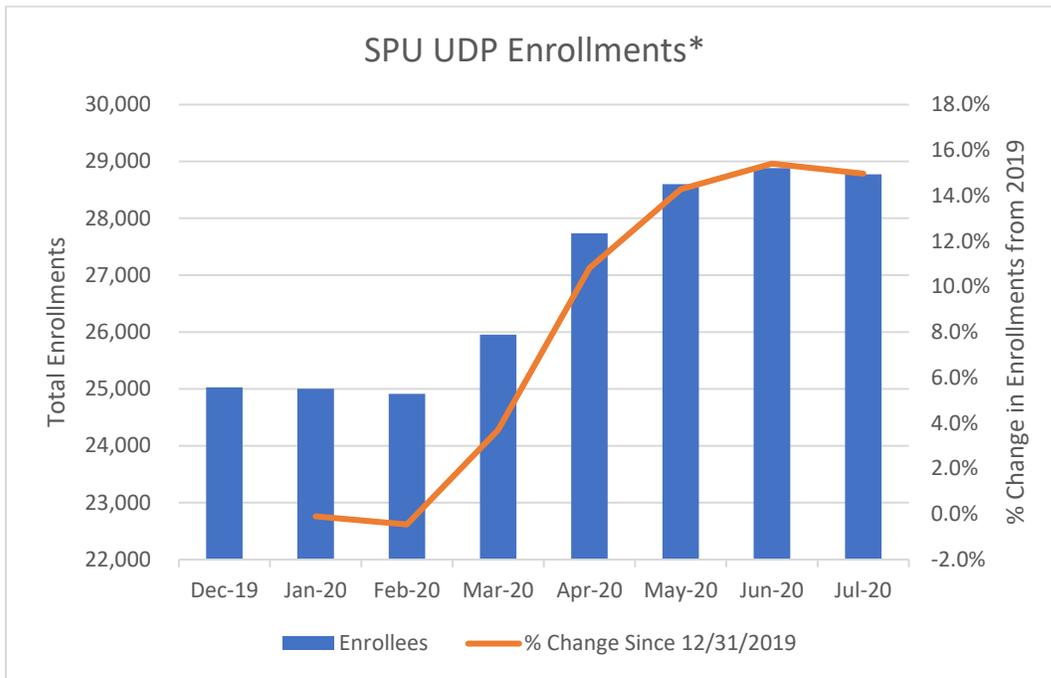
■ Approved rate legislation currently in effect

	Water	Drainage & Wastewater	Solid Waste
Average Interest Rate on Bonds	2021: 4.5% 2022: 5.0% 2023-2026: 5.0%	2021: 4.5% 2022: 5.0% 2023-2026: 5.0%	No planned debt issuances
Capital Accomplishment Rate	85%	85%*	90%
Consumption	Residential: -5.3% Commercial: -0.1%	Residential: -5% Commercial: -7%	Residential: -1% Commercial: -15% Transfer Stations: -5%
Utility Discount Program Accounts	2021: +3,000	2021: +3,000	2021: +3,000

*Drainage & Wastewater fund accomplishment rate is 85% for all projects except for the Ship Canal project, which is at a 95% accomplishment rate.

Utility Discount Program

The City of Seattle has one of the most robust Utility Discount Programs (UDP) in the country. SPU provides a 50 percent credit on all qualifying customer bills. Recent modifications have expanded outreach to include an auto-enroll program, which was extended to the end of 2020. The utility also supports an Emergency Assistance Program (EAP) that has been modified to provide relief for up to 50 percent of the bill two times per year instead of one, for qualifying individuals. For more information about the UDP and EAP programs, please visit our website. The chart that follows provides monthly enrollment year-to-date for 2020.



Seattle Public Utilities Funds

The following sections go into detail for each individual fund. All three funds entered 2020 in a healthy financial position, which is anticipated to allow them to weather the economic impacts over the course of the SBP period.

Water Fund

Water Fund rate projections are anticipated to increase an average of 3.4 percent per year during the period of 2021-2026. The projected average rate increase for the first three years of the SBP is 2.4 percent (including zero percent in 2021); the average increase over the second half of the SBP is 4.4 percent.

During the six-year plan, operational expenses are projected to increase between four and six percent per year. Non-rate revenues and cash reserves help offset the above-inflation cost increases. In addition, in 2023 the last payments related to the 1993 bond issue will be made. As a result, currently scheduled debt payments will be lower by \$9M in 2024.

Key Rate Drivers

The key rate driver for the Water Fund is increasing operational expense (O&M). Debt service coverage is the binding constraint, or the financial policy that is just met, for the rate period. Debt service coverage is a calculation that estimates the utility's ability to cover debt payments. The Water Fund's policy target is 1.7x debt service coverage. While debt service coverage is the binding constraint, debt service payments are projected to be relatively flat until 2026. Currently scheduled debt payments are scheduled to decline as debt originated in the early 1990s is fully retired. New debt payments are projected to be roughly equal to retired debt payments until 2026. As a result, rate increases are driven by increases in O&M, not debt service.

Seattle Public Utilities
2021-2026 SPU Strategic Business Plan
Appendix F

Revenue and Expenditure Assumptions

2021-2026 SBP	2021	2022	2023	2024	2025	2026
Total Retail Rate Revenue (\$M)	215.4	225.1	235.5	243.2	252.7	265.7
Annual Change	1.5%	4.5%	4.6%	3.3%	3.9%	5.2%
Retail Consumption (M CCF)	26.4	26.4	26.3	26.2	26.0	25.9
Annual Change	-0.3%	-0.2%	-0.3%	-0.5%	-0.5%	-0.5%
Annual Rate Increase	0.0%	2.7%	4.7%	3.6%	4.2%	5.5%
Retail Rate Revenue (\$M)	215.4	225.1	235.5	243.2	252.7	265.7
Debt Service (\$M)	85.7	88.5	92.3	88.2	93.8	99.3
O&M incl. Taxes (\$M)	185.8	195.1	202.9	212.3	224.4	235.5
Cash-to-CIP (\$M)	39.1	39.9	25.5	35.6	25.9	25.5
Less: Wholesale Revenue (\$M)	(52.2)	(52.4)	(54.3)	(63.1)	(61.4)	(62.7)
Other Net Expense / (Revenue)	(43.0)	(46.0)	(31.0)	(29.8)	(30.1)	(31.9)

*Other Net Expense/Revenue include taps and capital contributions, other non-operating income, miscellaneous charges, and changes in cash balance.

Risks and Watch Areas for Rate Path

For the Water Fund, the most likely risks are poor summer weather and a prolonged recession. Long-term risks include climate change and seismic events.

A new risk to utility rates is the continued shift towards working-at-home. Many workers in Seattle do not live in Seattle. As fewer people commute into the city each day, water use in the retail area will decline. The size of this risk is difficult to estimate as the work from home trend only recently began, and current economic conditions are also depressing consumption.

Financial Indicators

The Water Fund is expected to meet or exceed all financial policy targets during the SBP period.

(\$ in millions)	2021	2022	2023	2024	2025	2026
Debt Service Coverage	1.73	1.70	1.70	1.89	1.75	1.70
Net Income	33.5	33.1	35.4	40.4	32.9	34.1
Cash-to-CIP	38.1%	39.9%	24.6%	28.2%	24.3%	26.8%
Cash Balance	90.0	75.0	75.0	75.0	75.0	75.0
RSF Withdrawals/(Deposits)	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bond Issues	100.6	71.5	91.2	98.6	151.9	0
Debt Service	85.7	88.5	92.3	88.2	93.8	99.3
Consumption (ccf, millions)	26.4	26.4	26.3	26.2	26.0	25.9

Drainage & Wastewater Fund (DWF)

DWF receives revenue from two separate sets of rates. Wastewater rates are projected to increase an average of 4.7 percent per year during the period of 2021-2026. The projected average rate increase for the first 3 years of the SBP is 5.4 percent; the average increase over the second half of the SBP is 4.0 percent. Drainage rates are projected to increase an average of 6.7 percent per year during the period of 2021-2026. The projected average rate increase for the first 3 years of the SBP is 7.7 percent; the average increase over the second half of the SBP is 5.7 percent.

Cash is being used to reduce the rate path over the next few years. This cash is the product of unspent capital funds, lower than projected O&M expenditures, and surplus revenues generated by higher-than-expected demand. The specific use of this cash is to offset the consent-decree driven spike in the DWF capital program, keeping the fund's periodic debt issuance related rate increases closer to a steady, long-term baseline. Because the cash is being used to offset the investment spike, as opposed to offset baseline investment or to pay for current O&M expenses, there is no bow-wave effect on rates, which would be the case when, for example, expenses increase annually and steadily but rate increases are held flat.

Key Rate Drivers

The key rate driver for the DWF is increasing capital investment necessitated by consent decree programs. To offset the investment cost spike these programs are creating, the DWF will spend down operating cash to 80 days of operating cash on hand, a level that, through consultation with SPU's financial advisors, was deemed adequate to defend the fund's bond ratings and inexpensive access to capital. Through 2026, 80 days of operating cash is roughly \$100 million, and this becomes the binding constraint, or the financial policy that is just met, for the SBP period.

Revenue and Expenditure Assumptions

2021-2026 SBP	2021	2022	2023	2024	2025	2026
Wastewater Rate Revenue (\$M)	345.4	357.0	377.7	379.7	408.9	423.3
Annual Change	10.1%	3.4%	5.8%	0.6%	7.7%	3.5%
Consumption (M CCF)	21.2	21.2	21.2	21.2	21.2	21.2
Annual Change	2.6%	0.3%	-0.1%	0.1%	-0.1%	0.0%
Annual Rate Increase	7.3%	3.1%	5.9%	0.5%	7.8%	3.6%
Drainage Rate Revenue (\$M)	164.9	178.2	192.1	199.6	212.6	225.7
Annual Rate Increase	7.4%	8.6%	7.2%	3.9%	6.5%	6.7%
Retail Rate Revenue (\$M)	510.3	536.2	569.7	579.4	621.5	649.0
Debt Service (\$M)	70.7	73.9	77.9	84.8	92.4	104.0
O&M incl. Taxes (\$M)	217.5	227.2	239.7	250.2	270.4	281.4
Treatment (\$M)	178.6	188.2	208.4	209.7	232.2	233.7
Cash-to-CIP (\$M)	111.4	105.3	75.8	66.5	38.6	42.6
King County Treatment Rate ¹	4.5%	4.5%	10.3%	0%	10.3%	0%

¹ King County Treatment Rate: 2021 is adopted; 2022 – 2026 are based on County projections.

Risks and Watch Areas for Rate Path

For the DWF, the most likely risks are capital project cost overruns, increased interest rates, and increases in King County treatment rates. The DWF has entered a period of intense capital investment, requiring the Fund to access capital markets frequently over the SBP period. As the economy recovers, interest rates are expected to rise, placing pressure on rates. Both wastewater and drainage rates have a treatment and system component. Treatment expense is the Fund’s largest expenditure obligation. King County wastewater treatment rates are projected to have double digit rate increases during the SBP period as the County continues an intense capital program driven by asset management and regulatory requirements. Long-term risks include climate change and seismic events.

As discussed in the water section, a new risk to utility rates is the continued shift towards working-at-home. Sewer consumption is driven by metered water consumption and construction activity. Like the Water Fund, DWF is projecting reduced consumption and development in the city. The size of this risk is difficult to estimate as the work-from-home trend only recently began, and current economic conditions are also depressing consumption.

Financial Indicators

The DWF is expected to meet or exceed all financial policy targets during the SBP period.

(\$ in millions)	2021	2022	2023	2024	2025	2026
Debt Service Coverage	2.00	2.01	1.91	1.72	1.56	1.55
Net Income	48.0	57.4	60.8	57.7	48.6	40.6
Cash-to-CIP	53%	51%	43%	39%	25%	25%
Cash Balance	140.4	97.7	98.7	101.6	110.3	112.9
Bond Issues	87.1	54.5	74.5	96.4	116.2	128.1
Debt Service	70.7	73.9	77.9	84.8	92.4	104.0
Consumption (ccf, millions)	21.2	21.2	21.2	21.2	21.2	21.2

Solid Waste

Solid Waste Fund rates are projected to increase an average of 2.4 percent per year during the period of 2021-2026. The projected average rate increase for the first three years of the SBP is 3.0 percent and the average increase over the second half of the SBP is 2.2 percent. These rate increases are at or just slightly above inflation and are consistent with the annual increases in operational expense.

The SBP rate path considers the latest capital projects plan and the Solid Waste Fund has sufficient balances to cash fund all capital projects. This eliminates the need for bond issues and helps to reduce the rate path. The Solid Waste Fund does not anticipate a bow wave of rate increases in the future.

Key Rate Drivers

The key rate driver for the Solid Waste Fund is increasing operational expense (O&M). Debt service coverage is the binding constraint, or the financial policy that is just met, for the rate period. Debt service coverage is a calculation that estimates the utility’s ability to cover debt payments. The Solid Waste Fund’s policy target is 1.5x debt service coverage. While debt service coverage is the binding constraint, debt service payments are projected to be flat throughout the SBP period. There are no new debt issues projected, so rate increases are driven by increases in O&M expenditures.

Seattle Public Utilities
2021-2026 SPU Strategic Business Plan
Appendix F

Revenue and Expenditure Assumptions

2021-2026 SBP	2021	2022	2023	2024	2025	2026
Total Retail Rate Revenue (\$M)	214.0	221.5	230.8	237.3	249.6	259.0
Annual Change	3.5%	4.2%	2.8%	3.2%	1.9%	3.8%
Annual Rate Increase²	2.9%	2.9%	2.2%	2.3%	2.1%	2.1%
Retail Rate Revenue (\$M)	214.0	221.5	230.8	237.3	249.6	259.0
Debt Service (\$M)	15.4	15.4	15.4	15.4	15.4	15.4
O&M incl. Taxes (\$M)	202.7	214.1	219.9	224.9	233.0	243.8
Cash-to-CIP (\$M)	24.0	30.0	13.8	4.2	3.4	2.2
Other Net Expense / (Revenue)	(20.7)	(28.9)	(11.9)	0.2	(2.4)	(2.6)

*Other Net Expense/(Revenue) non-operating income, miscellaneous charges, and changes in cash balance.

Risks and Watch Areas for Rate Path

For the Solid Waste Fund, potential risks include recession, market forces, and contract risk. Solid waste collections, processing, and transfer rely on contractors. There is risk during contract renewals and negotiations, as well as risk if contractors run into any issues that could impede their ability to provide services.

Market forces could drive risk for the Solid Waste Fund. Recycling markets and commodity revenues are subject to external economic forces. Creation of new services could require new solid waste facilities or additional contracting cost.

A new risk to utility rates is the continued shift towards working-at-home. Current conditions in 2020 have shown this translates to a decrease in commercial tonnage and revenues. The size of this risk is difficult to estimate as the work-from-home trend only recently began and the duration of this trend continuing is unknown.

Financial Indicators

The Solid Waste Fund is expected to meet or exceed all financial policy targets during the SBP period.

(\$ in millions)	2021	2022	2023	2024	2025	2026
Debt Service Coverage	1.72	1.65	1.68	1.59	1.70	1.51
Net Income	3.4	1.6	1.2	0	1.7	0
Cash-to-CIP	100%	100%	100%	100%	100%	100%
Cash Balance	58.5	40.2	40.0	48.1	58.6	67.4
RSF Withdrawals/(Deposits)	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	1.1
Debt Service	15.4	15.4	15.4	15.4	15.4	15.4

² Weighted annual rate increase to account for Solid Waste rates updating on April 1 of every year compared with January 1.

Fund Financial Policies

Metric	WF	DWF	SWF
Debt service coverage			
- Adopted	1.7x	1.8x	1.7X; 1.5X (less taxes)
- Internal	NA	2.0X; 1.5X (less taxes)	na
Debt-to-Asset Ratio	NA	<=70 percent	NA
Cash-financed CIP	20 percent over rate period; 15 percent minimum in a given year	25 percent minimum 4-yr rolling average	Greater of \$3.7 million or 10 percent of CIP
Net Income	Generally positive	Generally positive	Generally positive
Year-end cash balance			
- Adopted	One-month current year operating expense (\$12M)	One-month treatment expense (\$15M)	20 days contract expense (\$6M)
- Internal	\$34M in 2021, increasing \$1M per year	80 days operating cash (\$100M)	45 days operating cash (\$23M)
Variable Rate Debt	<=15 percent	<=15 percent	<=15 percent

Bill Tables

The following tables project the typical monthly bill for the following average customers.

Typical Monthly Bill for a Single-Family House						
	2021	2022	2023	2024	2025	2026
Water	\$46	\$47	\$49	\$51	\$53	\$56
Wastewater	\$72	\$75	\$79	\$79	\$85	\$89
Drainage	\$50	\$54	\$58	\$60	\$64	\$69
Solid Waste	\$55	\$56	\$58	\$59	\$60	\$61
Combined	\$223	\$232	\$244	\$250	\$263	\$275
Monthly Change	\$15	\$9	\$12	\$6	\$13	\$12

Typical Monthly Bill for a Multifamily Unit (Apartment Building)						
	2021	2022	2023	2024	2025	2026
Water	\$25	\$26	\$27	\$28	\$29	\$31
Wastewater	\$65	\$67	\$71	\$71	\$77	\$80
Drainage	\$9	\$10	\$11	\$11	\$12	\$13
Solid Waste	\$28	\$29	\$30	\$30	\$31	\$32
Combined	\$127	\$132	\$138	\$141	\$149	\$155
Monthly Change	\$4	\$4	\$7	\$2	\$8	\$6

Typical Monthly Bill for a Convenience Store						
	2021	2022	2023	2024	2025	2026
Water	\$107	\$110	\$115	\$120	\$125	\$131
Wastewater	\$325	\$335	\$355	\$357	\$385	\$399
Drainage	\$121	\$131	\$140	\$146	\$155	\$166
Solid Waste	\$556	\$573	\$585	\$599	\$611	\$623
Combined	\$1,109	\$1,149	\$1,196	\$1,221	\$1,275	\$1,319
Monthly Change	\$38	\$40	\$47	\$25	\$55	\$44

Information in this table is for illustrative purposes. SPU bills water, wastewater and solid waste charges to property owners who may pass these costs to renters or tenants. Drainage charges are billed to customers on their King County property tax statements. Totals may vary due to rounding.

SPU's ACCOUNTABILITY AND AFFORDABILITY STRATEGIC PLAN

FINAL REPORT – June 2019



**Seattle
Public
Utilities**

Table of Contents

Page	Section
3	Introduction
5	At a Glance: Strategies and Actions
10	Capital Planning and Delivery
18	Efficiency and Improvement
22	Customer Assistance
28	Partnership Opportunities
32	Regulatory Alignment
38	Budgeting and Financial Management
42	Attachments

Introduction

Seattle residents and businesses depend on essential utility services. Safe drinking water, effective sewer and drainage systems and reliable solid waste collection are critical to the health of the city and its people. Seattle Public Utilities (SPU) is responsible for providing these life-sustaining services and must do so affordably by being accountable, efficient and community-centered. This Accountability and Affordability plan (Plan) focuses on achieving these goals. Doing so aligns with SPU’s adopted strategy of “Operational Excellence” by providing “reliable, affordable, efficient, and high-quality services to all customers.”

Seattle is becoming increasingly unaffordable for many residents and businesses. Higher costs of services affect SPU’s customers directly, particularly customers with the least ability to pay. In addition, the value that SPU provides to customers is not always clear which makes it important for SPU to demonstrate results for the dollars spent. Enhancing accountability and affordability is critical to SPU’s long-term success and this Plan includes specific strategies and actions for improving both.

Affordability focuses on “ability to pay.” For SPU, this means providing essential services and providing pricing and assistance to customers that ensure everyone has the service they need. This pricing is often constrained by the need to maintain infrastructure, encourage conservation, protect the environment, and protect public health. Ensuring affordability includes strategies for reducing costs, increasing productivity and efficiency, investing in assets that have multiple benefits, removing barriers to service access, and fully using systems and organizational capacity, both in the short and long-term.

SPU’s commitment to affordability extends beyond rates and includes planning and implementation of utility policies, services, projects and programs. SPU explicitly plans and responds to the ways in which lower income customers might access and be impacted by all SPU business. This requires dialogue and understanding of how utility practices are neutral, help or hinder affordability. Understanding and taking actionable steps is critical in realizing SPU’s goals to be affordable and community centered.

Accountability focuses on how SPU demonstrates results. For a utility with many stakeholders and customers, this means people and organizations understand how resources are being spent, the value for investments is clearly demonstrated and transparent, and the utility takes action and makes progress on the long-range goals of the community. Ensuring accountability includes strategies for measuring and demonstrating results, engaging customers and stakeholders in identifying and implementing investments, being fair and equitable, and being responsive to the day to day essential needs of the community.

How we work matters. This Plan focuses on how SPU delivers capital projects, ensures access to services, partners with organizations, and conducts other business practices. The utility must continuously take a hard look at how it operates and assess ways to improve service, provide better value, and focus in a sustained and disciplined way on accountability and affordability. This Plan builds on strong practices within SPU and emphasizes work to be done through six practice areas of strategies and actions:

1. **Capital Planning and Delivery.** Increase the speed and efficiency of planning and delivering of capital improvement projects while maximizing community value.

2. **Efficiency and Improvement.** Develop a culture of continuous improvement to enhance value to our customers and improve efficiency and performance.
3. **Customer Assistance.** Focus on the affordability of SPU’s services, with a special (but not sole) focus on the needs of low-income customers, and the portfolio of assistance programs and tools that can be strategically deployed to meet the needs of diverse customers.
4. **Partnership Opportunities.** Improve SPU’s ability to partner with organizations, institutions, and companies to leverage broader benefits, reduce costs, share risks, and improve outcomes for the communities that we serve.
5. **Regulatory Alignment.** Reduce the cost and risk of meeting regulatory demands while ensuring public health and safety, environmental protection, a vibrant local economy and social equity outcomes.
6. **Budgeting and Financial Management.** Streamline and integrate budget and financial planning practices and align investments with the long-range strategic goals of SPU and the community.

Responsive to Council’s Direction. City Council initiated this Plan in 2017. Resolution 31760, which approved SPU’s 2018-2023 Strategic Business Plan Update calls for SPU to prepare an accountability and affordability strategic plan focused on managing future rate increases and corporate performance for inclusion in the 2021-2026 Plan Update.

An Immediately Actionable Plan. The strategies and actions included in the Plan are based on the work of a cross functional SPU core team and more than 150 participants and subject matter experts. Work was conducted over an eight-month period through more than 20 work sessions and in concert with SPU Executive leadership. SPU’s customer review panel provided review and feedback on the recommendations of the report. Building the plan collaboratively with people doing the work helps ensure buy-in, understanding, and commitment to move forward on the recommendations which improves SPU’s chances of success.

The strategies and actions set forth are both ambitious and pragmatic. For example, SPU plans to substantially improve the speed and effectiveness of the capital planning and delivery program. This is a significant undertaking impacting a \$1.5 billion, six-year capital program and the work of hundreds of SPU team members. The gain for the community has greater significance – by engaging in this important work SPU will deliver more value more quickly and the impact will be tangible.

“Go First Actions” and moving forward. Each practice area and strategy identify one or more actions that will advance efforts over the next one to two years. Overall, the strategies and actions will be implemented over the next five years and the plan will be updated in conjunction with future Strategic Business Plan updates every three years.

The Plan includes 12 strategies and 47 tangible actions for moving forward. Work has already begun on eight of the actions and implementation of an additional 25 actions will occur in 2019 and 2020. In addition, SPU will report on the progress of the Plan every six months in conjunction with updates on the 2018-2023 Strategic Business Plan implementation progress.

AT A GLANCE: Accountability and Affordability Strategies and Actions

This “At a Glance” section provides all strategies and actions contained in the plan in this report. More detailed information on each strategy and action, along with background and purpose, can be found starting on page 9.



Go First Action: SPU identified these actions as the immediate next step that will be accomplished in the next 1-2 years.

Capital Planning and Delivery

Why is this practice area important? Capital projects and financial policies account for approximately 25% of the total 2018-2023 SPU utility rate. Improvement and changes to the planning, speed and delivery of this large capital program can have significant effects on the affordability of SPU’s rate to customers and the beneficial impact of SPU projects.

Strategy 1: Capital Planning. Coordinate capital planning across LOBs and across other City departments to maximize potential for community value.



Action 1A. Improve capital planning coordination by regularly convening SPU branches to identify planned capital improvements within common geographic locations.



Action 1B. Integrate planning across the Drainage and Wastewater LOB to identify future investments that provide the greatest community and environmental benefits.



Action 1C. Develop Drainage and Wastewater capital planning guidance to consistently value multiple community and environmental benefits in CIP options analysis.

Action 1D. Apply guidance and lessons learned from the drainage and wastewater LOB work in B and C to all lines of business.

Action 1E. Integrate standard portfolio project management practices into the development and monitoring of the CIP such as strategic prioritization across LOBs and portfolio performance and risk analysis.

Action 1F. Partner with SDOT to identify opportunities for improved coordination and delivery of capital projects.

Strategy 2: Capital Delivery. Improve capital project delivery by reducing project costs, accelerating project delivery, and providing multiple community benefits. Focus the stage gate process to provide customer value through streamlined and cost-effective decision making that requires the minimally optimal analysis to supports life cycle cost evaluation and strategic priorities.



Action 2A. Streamline the project approval process to reduce decision cycle times and better align delegation of approval authority (decisions made at the right level).



Action 2B. Incorporate reprioritization and elimination of stalled or lower priority projects into capital monitoring practices.



Action 2C. Improve the efficiency of capital project management by eliminating duplication of project management systems and activities.

-  Action 2D. Review and streamline capital project options analyses leading to stage gate 2 to reduce cycle times and project costs.
-  Action 2E. Revamp the Asset Management Committee (AMC) review process.
-  Action 2F. Transition to the use of portfolio reserves and/or pooled risk reserves to reduce the total dollar amount of management reserves.
-  Action 2G. Reduce total cycle time in the procurement full solicitation process.
- Action 2H. Better incorporate operational considerations into capital project development and review.

Strategy 3: Capital Reporting and Transparency. Improve the transparency and accountability of project delivery through improved financial data and reporting, and responsive customer service (LOBs as customers).

-  Action 3A. Make available and use actionable data on a quarterly basis to identify project risks and issues early on so that adjustments can be made in a timely fashion.
-  Action 3B. Improve PPM (SPU’s enterprise project management system) so that LOBs and management can easily find the information they need.

Efficiency & Improvement

Why is this practice area important? The strategies and actions of this practice area are intended to slow the growth in SPU’s rate path by identifying and taking action on hundreds of small and large opportunities for improving service to the customer and reducing non-value-added activities and cost in SPU’s work. Examples of non-value-added activities include “waste in process” such as having large inventories of parts, equipment downtime or being unavailable when teams are ready to work, and fixing the same problem twice. Focusing on work in this way not only improves efficiency and productivity; when done well, and in an engaged and respectful way with team members, it can improve employee engagement and job satisfaction.

Strategy 1: Improvement and Efficiencies. Develop a culture of continuous improvement to enhance value to our customers and improve efficiency and performance.

-  Action 1A. Practice and Learn Lean Problem Solving. Pilot lean problem solving within the Drainage and Wastewater (DWW) Branch.
-  Action 1B. Identify and resource stalled or incomplete improvements.
-  Action 1C. Plan for and sustain improvement across SPU. Integrate improvement planning and measurement into strategic and business planning.
- Action 1D. Systematically identify and take action on improvements across SPU.

Customer Assistance

Why is this practice area important? The Customer Assistance Practice Area is focused on the affordability of SPU’s services, with a special (but not sole) focus on the needs of low-income customers. This area targets

programs and tools SPU has or could develop to more effectively meet affordability needs of our diverse customers.

Strategy 1: Align Efforts to Community Need. Prioritize and align Customer Assistance efforts and resources towards meeting the needs of the community and improving impact.

-  Action 1A. Perform rigorous affordability analysis when affordability metrics are finalized.
-  Action 1B. Conduct Pilot Program to Prevent Service Shut-offs for UDP Customers.
-  Action 1C. Explore income eligibility alignment with other City of Seattle and King County assistance programs.
- Action 1D. Explore ways to support the affordability of side-sewer and other costly private infrastructure repair costs for homeowners.
-  Action 1E. Provide greater benefit to the customer in cases of unforeseen leaks.

Strategy 2: Increase access to and participation in existing affordability programs.

-  Action 2A. Identify legal and operational barriers and options for transferring SPU UDP credits at SCL to SPU to prevent a water shut-off action.
-  Action 2B. Launch Web-Based Application Form for UDP and EAP
-  Action 2C. Targeted enrollment and cross-enrollment efforts for UDP, including a self-certification pilot program.
-  Action 2D. Expand Access to Emergency Assistance

Partnership Opportunities

Why is this practice area important? Partnerships are a primary vehicle for centering SPU’s work on the needs of the communities the utility serves and for driving innovation, building capacity in the community and leveraging a broader set of benefits than what the Utility can provide on its own.

Strategy 1: Develop an SPU culture that nurtures innovation, extending existing and developing new partnerships across all branches to expand the value and reach of SPU investments for the communities we serve.

-  Action 1A. Create a community of practice to share and learn from each other and build capacity within SPU.
- Action 1B. Identify, prioritize, and remove organizational barriers to partnering.
- Action 1C. Focus partnerships on demonstrating qualitative and/or quantitative impacts and provide routine opportunity to capture and communicate their stories, value and outcomes.
-  Action 1D. Build partnership capacity in the communities SPU serves and identify and expand opportunities for partnerships with private and community organizations to improve health and environmental outcomes.

Regulatory Alignment

Why is this practice area important? SPU’s regulatory costs are significant and are ultimately paid for by customers. For example, SPU’s 2018-2023 Capital Improvement Program (CIP) is \$1.5 billion and \$0.7 billion (45%) is dedicated to regulatory compliance projects such as the Ship Canal Water Quality project.

Strategy 1: Regulatory Alignment. Align to Community Need and Impact. Prioritize and align SPU regulatory resources towards meeting the needs of the community, improving impact and “least cost” regulatory action.



Action 1A. Develop a unified federal and state legislative agenda that focuses efforts on proactively improving the environment, public health, social equity, and the local economy.

Action 1B. Develop a utility agenda for external engagement and influence that benefits the entire enterprise.

Action 1C. Develop risk and cost reduction measures for select areas of regulatory influence.

Strategy 2: Regulatory Alignment Move from Prescriptive to Performance. Move from prescriptive to performance-based regulations to reduce or avoid costs, share or reduce risk, and/or enhance community outcomes.



Action 2A. Seek to build performance based regulatory practices that adjust to meet the intended outcome into the combined sewer overflow (CSO) consent decree.

Action 2B. Take action on promising areas where SPU is regulated or the regulator that might be influenced to move from a prescriptive to a performance-based approach.



Action 2C. Collaborate with other city and local agencies to develop a list of regulations where there are potential efficiencies.

Budget and Financial Management

Why is this practice area important? Seattle Public Utilities is financially and operationally complex, spending over \$1 billion annually to deliver drinking water, sewage transport, stormwater conveyance and treatment and garbage and recycling services across Seattle and parts of the region. The size and complexity of the organization requires strong financial management to maintain the lowest cost of service while providing value to customers.

Strategy 1: Review SPU financial policies; provide options focused on risk, affordability, and investment.



Action 1A. Perform a comprehensive update of SPU’s financial policies.



Action 1B. Assess and make recommendations on reserves/emergency reserves.

Strategy 2: Revamp the SPU budget process to be driven by strategy, priority, and customer needs.



Action 2A. Advocate with the City Budget Office to pilot biennial budgeting with Seattle Public Utilities.



Action 2B. Pilot the development of a flexible rate model that integrates affordability criteria into rate development.

Action 2C. Develop a standard integrated enterprise approach to prioritization, improvements and efficiencies.

Strategy 3: Enhance financial and performance monitoring to better inform budgeting and financial planning.



Action 3A. Pilot quarterly enhanced financial monitoring to increase transparency, integrate risk, and improve financial planning.



Action 3B. Provide core/simple financial information on capital and operations and maintenance more frequently and broadly, making the data useful, accessible and actionable for managers.

Action 3C. Pilot the use of organizational capacity analysis and staffing forecast tools.

Practice Area: Capital Planning and Delivery

Increase the speed and efficiency of planning and delivering of capital improvement projects while maximizing community value.

What is this practice area about and why is it important?

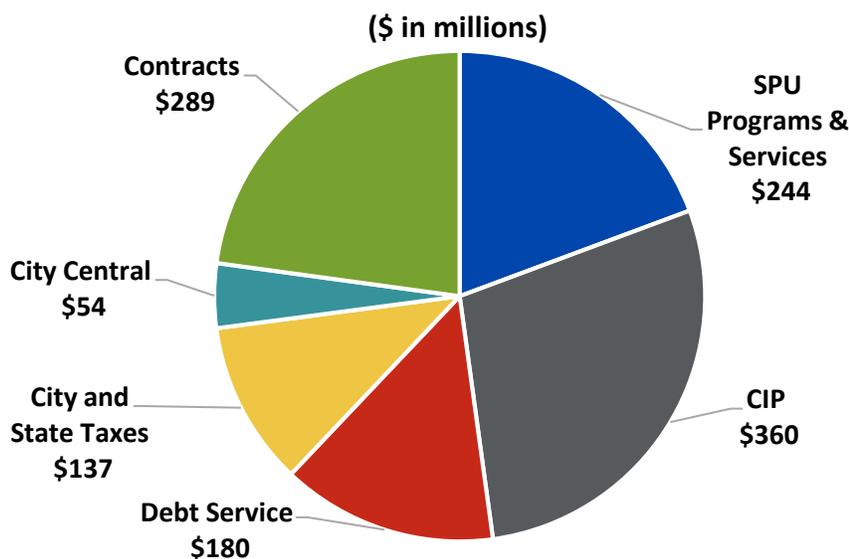
Seattle Public Utilities stewards a citywide and regional system of community capital assets which delivers essential drinking water, sewage transport, stormwater conveyance and treatment and garbage and recycling services. To support these services, SPU plans and delivers capital infrastructure projects to provide customers with reliable and enhanced delivery and protect human and environmental health.

Capital projects and financial policies account for approximately 25% of the total 2018-2023 SPU utility rate. Improvement and changes to the planning, speed and delivery of this large capital program can have significant effects on the affordability of SPU's rate to customers and the beneficial impact of SPU projects.

SPU engaged practitioners from across the utility to better understand how the utility might:

- improve the process of planning & delivering capital projects;
- better address capital project portfolio risk while minimizing costs;
- improve the transparency of capital project delivery for customers; and
- provide the most equitable benefits to communities and neighborhoods.

In 2019, 27% of annual spending for SPU was allocated to the CIP. Evaluating the area of capital delivery is an important part of finding ways to keep our services affordable to our ratepayers. Below is a chart showing SPU's adopted budget for 2019.



What is the current state of capital planning and delivery in SPU?

Improving upon a foundation of strong capital project management. SPU has a large capital portfolio and a structured system for planning, delivering, and managing capital assets. In general, each line of business (LOB) - Solid Waste, Drainage and Wastewater, and Water – manages its own capital assets and program. The Project Delivery and Engineering Branch (PDEB) is responsible for designing and constructing most new and replaced capital assets in collaboration with the LOBs. Each SPU LOB has a six-year capital improvement program informed by infrastructure assessment and analysis, regulatory requirements, and current and probable future needs, problems, risks and customer complaints.

Using strong management practices to deliver large capital projects. The Ship Canal Water Quality project will keep more than 75 million gallons of polluted stormwater and sewage out of the Lake Washington Ship Canal, Salmon Bay, and Lake Union on average each year. This \$570 million project is being completed in partnership with King County to decrease impacts on nearby communities and as part of a long-term comprehensive strategy to protect Seattle’s waterways and is responsive to the federal Clean Water Act and state regulations. The project is utilizing best management practices in program and project management including a schedule, cost, and risk management strategy that evaluates uncertainties and risks across the entire program. This results in a confidence-based schedule and cost estimate which is managed monthly. The management team emphasizes obtaining the best value in the project which has resulted in over \$77 million in scope and cost reductions by project staff.

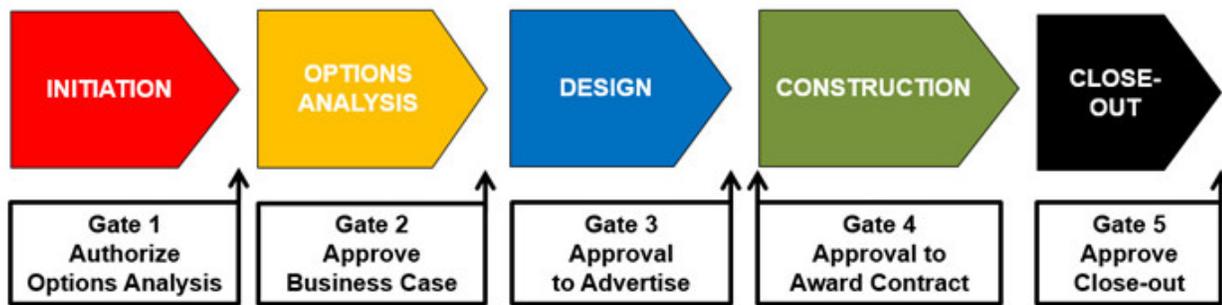
The approved 2018-2023 CIP for all LOBs totaled \$2 billion with the following breakout by year and LOB:

2018-2023 SBP CIP PROJECTIONS (\$ MILLIONS)

FUND	2018	2019	2020	2021	2022	2023	Grand Total
WATER	\$141.2	\$120.5	\$81.0	\$83.5	\$78.2	\$67.3	571.7
DWW	176.8	218.5	243.1	256.7	222.3	187.1	1,304.5
SW	9.0	20.2	24.7	7.7	4.0	3.8	69.4
TOTAL	\$327.0	\$359.2	\$348.8	\$347.9	\$304.5	\$258.2	\$1,945.6

Once the CIP is adopted, individual projects are then executed following the general workflow illustrated below, starting with the project Initiation Phase:

Stage Gate Process Flow for CIP Infrastructure Projects



The Stage Gate (SG) workflow shows a series of five distinct phases punctuated by five separate check points or gates. Each gate requires SPU executives to approve scope, schedule, and budget for capital projects with a life cycle cost over \$50,000. In 2009, SPU adopted the SG practice to ensure cost-effective, consistent, transparent, and customer orientation in executive decision-making through planning, selecting, and delivering capital projects.

During the initiation phase LOBs detail discrete problems to be solved and approximate schedule and budget. During the options analysis phase the LOBs develop and analyze options for solving those problems. The analysis includes triple bottom line economic analysis (social, environmental and financial considerations) as well as comparison of present value life cycle costs for each option. SPU began evaluating all projects using the triple bottom line in 2002. Selection and approval of the preferred project option is completed at Stage Gate 2.

After Stage Gate 2, projects are typically transitioned from the LOBs to PDEB. PDEB leads the design phase and develops formal plans and specifications necessary for public works contracting. PDEB also manages the construction and closeout phases of the project ending with final acceptance of the new or replaced asset by the LOB. PDEB is responsible for delivering between \$86 million to \$194 million in capital project spending annually or between what 40% to 54% of the overall capital budget (years 2016-2019).

There are several opportunities to enhance the efficiency of the capital planning and delivery process and focus on providing greater value to the customer. SPU's ultimate customer is always our rate payer. However, in the delivery of capital projects there are many intermediate customers. Adjusting our processes to provide value to these intermediate customers can help identify ways of eliminating waste (i.e. what those intermediate customers would not pay for) and streamline process.

As part of this initial assessment, the practice area work group identified a series of issues that create time delays in project delivery without adding significant value including:

- The consultant contracting and procurement process can be unnecessarily cumbersome. For example, signatures and contract review is required for small dollar limits.
- Decisions that should be made by the project team are often elevated to the highest levels of management, delaying project progress.
- Some projects proceed past initiation without appropriate definition or clarity in applicable policies often causing long pauses to obtain information and re-work based on new direction given.
- The project options analysis process that began in 2002 is time consuming, requires a lot of resources, and has not been re-evaluated since its inception.

Further, by reviewing current processes and identifying and better understanding what our internal customers value the work group also identified several overlapping opportunities for alignment and improvement including:

- Reducing the significant variation in the ways the LOBs plan for capital projects
- Spending and capital planning targets not being achieved which results in millions of dollars in idle capital each year
- Projects experiencing significant delays, sometimes for many years
- Substantive rework occurring in different phases and between stage gate checkpoints, resulting in delays and increased spending
- Data on project schedule and detailed cost performance not being readily available which limits the transparency and accountability of the capital planning and delivery process
- Uncertainty and risk aversion stalls movement or creates rework between gates
- Operation and maintenance needs are sometimes not well understood within capital planning and delivery which can create difficulty in managing assets once built
- Time and resources spent on options analysis is sometimes more than necessary to make the preferred option decision which is both costly and delays moving projects from planning to delivery.

STRATEGIES AND ACTIONS

Over the next five years, SPU plans to focus on improving the speed and efficiency of capital project planning and delivery while maximizing community value by:

- Improving and integrating capital planning across LOBs and other City departments.
- Reducing unnecessary project costs, accelerating project delivery, and providing multiple community benefits (such as improved water quality and passive recreation). Specifically, focus the stage gate process to provide customer value through streamlined and cost-effective decision making.
- Improving the transparency and accountability of project delivery through improved financial data and reporting, and responsive customer service.

Strategy 1: Capital Planning. Coordinate capital planning across LOBs and across other City departments to maximize potential for community value.

Strategy 1 Actions



Action 1A. Improve capital planning coordination by regularly convening SPU branches to identify planned capital improvements within common geographic locations.

Integrate project planning within those geographic areas to more efficiently meet multiple infrastructure and community needs. This action will allow the utility to be more strategic about finding opportunities to minimize construction disruption to the community, maximize the possibility of creating multiple community benefits (e.g.

improved drainage, stream quality, and passive recreation), and create efficiencies and cost savings by combining projects.



Action 1B. Integrate planning across the Drainage and Wastewater LOB to identify future investments that provide the greatest community and environmental benefits.

Finding the best investment solutions for Seattle’s drainage and wastewater systems begins by engaging with community. The Drainage and Wastewater integrated system plan will incorporate robust stakeholder engagement so that planning goals and objectives reflect community values and serve as a model and a guide to be incorporated into the capital planning of SPU’s other LOBs (see below).

Integrated planning for enhanced value. SPU is developing a 50-year plan for managing and improving Seattle’s drainage and wastewater systems while optimizing social and environmental benefits for the City. We are developing our plan through technical analysis, robust community engagement and an integrated approach to planning. By the end of 2022, SPU will have near- and long-term plans for drainage and wastewater programs, partnerships, and infrastructure investments that provide the greatest community value (e.g. improving environmental quality, public health, local economy, and social equity). This planning is part of building a better Seattle by providing drainage and wastewater services that are affordable, safe, green, and just in a climate uncertain future.



Action 1C. Develop Drainage and Wastewater capital planning guidance to consistently value multiple community and environmental benefits in CIP options analysis.

Once a set of problems have been identified in the integrated planning process, evaluation of solutions to solve that problem begins during the options analysis phase. This action will develop necessary guidance for how to maximize community benefits into the overall analysis of potential solutions. The Drainage and Wastewater LOB has begun this process and will lead the development of guidance to be used by the other SPU LOBs.

Action 1D. Apply guidance and lessons learned from the drainage and wastewater LOB work in B and C to all lines of business

Action 1E. Integrate standard portfolio project management practices into the development and monitoring of the CIP such as strategic prioritization across LOBs and portfolio performance and risk analysis.

While SPU has strong project management practices in place, the organization can further strengthen organizational alignment to business objectives, risk optimization, and resources allocation by treating the entire capital program as a series of capital project portfolios and adopting several industry-wide standards for portfolio management. This action will compare SPU practices at the utility against industry standards and recommend and implement changes to bring SPU into alignment with current best practices aimed at reducing overall portfolio risk, more efficient use of staffing capacity, and more timely delivery of capital projects.

Action 1F. Partner with SDOT to identify opportunities for improved coordination and delivery of capital projects.

SPU has the opportunity to better coordinate work with existing and upcoming SDOT capital projects. Currently, SPU does not consistently approach SDOT to plan for and integrate SDOT’s priorities and projects into SPU

projects that impact the right-of-way. This can provide efficiencies and minimize impacts to Seattle neighborhoods by finding joint opportunity projects.

Strategy 2: Capital Delivery. Improve capital project delivery by reducing project costs, accelerating project delivery, and providing multiple community benefits. Focus the stage gate process to provide customer value through streamlined and cost-effective decision making that requires the minimally optimal analysis to supports life cycle cost evaluation and strategic priorities.

Strategy 2 Actions



Action 2A. Streamline the project approval process to reduce decision cycle times and better align delegation of approval authority (decisions made at the right level).

Identifying the right level of approval authority will minimize time lost in moving projects forward. This action involves collaboratively working with executive management across SPU to evaluate current approval authority, eliminate and establish new rules, formalize new practices, and monitor and adjust for issues.



Action 2B. Incorporate reprioritization and elimination of stalled or lower priority projects into capital monitoring practices.

Projects can stall for many reasons, but these delays always result in higher costs and longer schedules. This action would set up check points and thresholds for projects to identify when stalls have occurred and a process for re-evaluating their place in the portfolio.



Action 2C. Improve the efficiency of capital project management by eliminating duplication of project management systems and activities.

SPU uses two formal enterprise project management software systems and a variety of informal solutions to meet project management needs. This results in process inefficiencies and the lack of consistent and readily available data for tracking and reporting on projects. This action is focused on consolidating existing information into one management system and expanding that system to add functionality currently being managed in an ad-hoc fashion.



Action 2D. Review and streamline capital project options analyses leading to stage gate 2 to reduce cycle times and project costs.

Reduce the number of projects using options analysis and focus analysis on the high risk, high complexity, politically/community sensitive, and high cost projects. The options analysis phase is used to identify and evaluate alternatives to solve the identified problem. SPU treats most projects the same during this process, which can lead to unnecessary cost and more time to complete analysis. This action will evaluate the current process to look for streamlining opportunities, recommend modifications to process and implement changes.



Action 2E. Revamp the Asset Management Committee (AMC) review process.

The AMC review process is intended to ensure that SPU has selected the right investment but often results in unnecessary delay, re-work, over-processing through redundant briefings, and over-analysis while not necessarily ensuring the right investment is being made. This action will evaluate the current process, look for streamlining opportunities, apply appropriate thresholds for which projects use this process, identify changes that will ensure that investment decisions are happening at the correct time and in an efficient manner and revisit dollar thresholds for what should constitute stage gate changes.



Action 2F. Transition to the use of portfolio reserves and/or pooled risk reserves to reduce the total dollar amount of management reserves.

Each capital project holds a percentage of the overall project budget in reserve to address contingencies for what is termed the “unknown-unknowns”. There is significant uncertainty in whether the money will be more than needed or not enough. Moving these reserve funds to a program portfolio level will lower the total dollars being held in reserve potentially resulting in lower budget needs. New processes to access the management reserve pool will provide greater oversight and accountability around reserve usage and align spending with the budget.



Action 2G. Reduce total cycle time in the procurement full solicitation process.

Consultant contracting is a significant and integrated part of the capital planning and delivery process and has multiple opportunities for reduction of cycle times which will help increase the speed of capital project delivery. Initial improvements will focus on development of scopes for solicitation and contract negotiations.

Action 2H. Better incorporate operational considerations into capital project development and review.

New and replaced infrastructure must meet the operational needs and maintainability requirements of our crews. Any additional funds and staffing resources associated with this infrastructure must also be identified and obtained. This action will identify gaps in the current practice and propose and implement solutions.

Strategy 3: Capital Reporting and Transparency. Improve the transparency and accountability of project delivery through improved financial data and reporting, and responsive customer service (LOBs as customers).

Strategy 3 Actions



Action 3A. Make available and use actionable data on a quarterly basis to identify project risks and issues early on so that adjustments can be made in a timely fashion.

Successful project management requires identification and active management of risks and mitigation strategies. This action will enhance SPU’s current enterprise portfolio project management system (PPM) to include modules that will house collected data and allow for proactive project management. The action also includes deployment of an earned value management system to improve project performance and forecasting and an integrated change control program to manage project scope changes.



Action 3B. Improve PPM (SPU's enterprise project management system) so that LOBs and management can easily find the information they need.

Currently, SPU holds project data in a variety of data management systems. There is no control process to gather and store this information in a single database nor is there a control process that compiles the data into reporting that leads to efficient and effective portfolio and project management. This action will enhance the current system of record (PPM) to allow for effective project management use, data storage, information control and project reporting.

Practice Area: Efficiency and Improvement

Develop a culture of continuous improvement to enhance value to our customers and improve efficiency and performance.

What is this practice area and why is it important?

The efficiency and improvement practice area focuses on how SPU, as an enterprise, identifies and sustains improvement to drive efficiency and provide increased value to rate payers. This practice area supports SPU's strategic business plan focus area of "Operational Excellence" by providing actionable steps for enhancing and building continuous improvement skills and practices across the utility.

Operational Excellence in SPU's 2018-2023 Strategic Business Plan. "We provide reliable, affordable, efficient, and high-quality services to all customers."

This practice area is essential to improving accountability and affordability. The strategies and actions of this practice area are intended to slow the growth in SPU's rate path by identifying and taking action on hundreds of small and large opportunities for improving service to the customer and reducing non-value-added activities and cost in SPU's work. Examples of non-value-added activities include "waste in process" such as having large inventories of parts, equipment downtime or being unavailable when teams are ready to work, and fixing the same problem twice. Focusing on work in this way not only improves efficiency and productivity; when done well, and in an engaged and respectful way with team members, it can improve employee engagement and job satisfaction.

What is meant by continuous improvement?

Continuous improvement and lean involve simple systematic methods for focusing on what the customer values and eliminating from process what the customer does not value (and would not pay for). The core of the method, a plan-do-check-adjust (PDCA) improvement cycle, is based on the scientific method of proposing a change in a process, implementing the change, measuring the results, and taking appropriate action (see plan-do-check-adjust illustration).

The PDCA cycle is the foundation for continuous improvement. Continuous improvement can be focused on many small, medium, and large improvements ranging from reducing the number of steps it takes to fill out a report to streamlining an organization's process for capital planning and delivery.

Continuous improvement includes:

- Involving employees and external stakeholders in problem identification and problem-solving activities;

Plan-Do-Check-Adjust as a model for learning



- Reducing the complexity of processes;
- Using performance metrics and simple visual controls to provide rapid feedback to improve real-time decision-making and problem-solving; and
- Approaching improvement activities using systems thinking.

What is the current state of continuous improvement in SPU?

SPU has engaged in a variety of continuous improvement efforts over the past decade. These process improvement efforts use varying methods including process mapping, special consultant studies, rapid improvement events, staffing analysis, and other techniques. The methods and skill in using these tools vary heavily by manager and line of business.

Workshop discussions and interviews on this topic revealed four themes:

1. process improvement is occurring in some lines of business;
2. while there is often initial improvement, improvement is sometimes not sustained due to turn over or conflicting priorities;

Reducing unnecessary inspections and costs through data analysis and lean methods. As part of the City’s Stormwater Permit, SPU’s Drainage and Wastewater (DWW) Branch was directed to perform inspections of privately-owned stormwater facilities every two years, which would have substantively increased program costs. Through process improvement and data review, DWW demonstrated that less frequent inspections would provide the intended environmental benefits and were able to avoid adding 2 FTE staff and reduced process time by 17%.

Improving service delivery through process improvement. SPU’s Water division received complaints from developers that the installation of water taps to new facilities was taking 3 months or more. By conducting a lean workshop and consistently checking and acting on process data, Water was able to reduce the time per inspection by 30%. While this shaved days and weeks off the process, additional work is needed to meet customer expectations.

3. data on process and costs is often difficult to gather or does not exist; and
4. there is a strong interest in process improvement, but the skills and support are not always available.

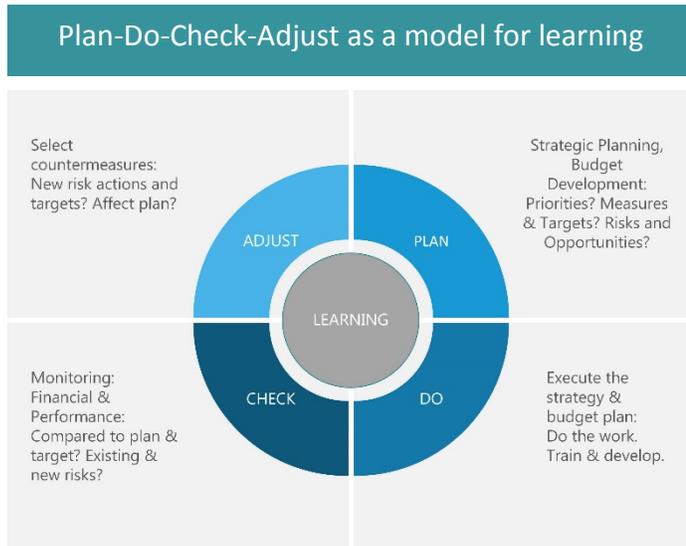
STRATEGIES AND ACTIONS

Strategy 1: Develop a culture of continuous improvement to enhance value to our customers and improve efficiency and performance.

Moving from “pockets of excellence” and improvement to “sustained operational excellence.”

SPU will build capability across the organization through applied problem solving and improvement, learn from that experience, and then, over time, apply the learning to more of the organization. At the same time, the utility will integrate the “plan-do-check-adjust” model into key management practices at SPU (see illustration). This

dual focus on both applied learning and integration with key management practices of the organization can provide a greater probability that progress and results from improvements are sustained over time through cycles of checking and adjusting and engaging greater numbers of employees in identifying and solving problems upstream at the source in more systemic ways. The essence of continuous improvement is to engage staff members responsible for the work in redesigning it, keeping in mind the need to provide the best possible product or service to the customer (external or internal).



Plan-do-check-adjust as a management system.
 SPU has several key organization processes (e.g. budget development and financial & performance monitoring) which can be better woven together into an integrated system for learning. For example, during the development of the strategic business plan and budget, opportunities for improvement might be identified (plan) and executed (do). During monitoring, progress might be checked on (check) to see if the action is in progress and having the intended impact and if not, an alternative method might be put in place (adjust). The cycle would then start again and the strategy (plan) is adjusted to reflect what was learned.

Continuous improvement strategies and actions are embedded into multiple Accountability and Affordability practice areas, strategies and actions.

For example, the capital planning and delivery practice area (page 9) includes several actions to improve capital planning. Actions include streamlining the process and improving data to reduce project costs and delays and to provide multiple community benefits. Similarly, the budget and financial management practice area includes several strategies and actions (page 37) which will help improve SPU’s budget management by better integrating budget development, business planning, and financial monitoring. Actions include streamlining the budget process and improving financial monitoring transparency.

Strategy 1 Actions



Action 1A. Practice and Learn Lean Problem Solving. Pilot lean problem solving within the Drainage and Wastewater (DWW) Branch.

SPU has experience using improvement methods such as lean problem solving to address single issues or programs. Many of these improvements are typically not sustained for several reasons: they rely on an individual manager’s effort without the reinforcing management support, checking, and necessary coaching; efforts face many competing priorities; improvements focus on one portion of a process versus focus on root cause;

improvements are overly ambitious or don't start small and gain momentum; or staff are not ready or energized to do improvement work.

During the next two years, DWW will pilot lean problem-solving methods across the LOB. Learning from this pilot will be applied to other areas.



Action 1B. Identify and resource stalled or incomplete improvements.

Several improvement efforts have begun but some are currently stalled or not sustained due to resource, data or other constraints. SPU will give priority and focus to diagnosing, resuming, completing and learning from efforts underway. This might include efforts with water taps, stormwater inspections, and other work.



Action 1C. Plan for and sustain improvement across SPU. Integrate improvement planning and measurement into strategic and business planning.

Improvement and efficiency identification are ad hoc exercises typically performed within the budget process and in response to reduction or cost cutting targets. These budget process reductions are often not strategic and sometimes focus on cutting service or deferring maintenance which may not be sustainable or are symptoms not causes of the issue needing improvement.

During the development of the strategic business plan, SPU will develop a portfolio of potential areas for improvement focus such as areas with customer dissatisfaction (internal and external), long wait times, higher than anticipated cost, or other opportunities.

Action 1D. Systematically identify and take action on improvements across SPU.

A number of issues have been identified by work groups in several areas of SPU (e.g. poor customer experience, high cost, time delays) that will be prioritized, resourced, and acted on. SPU expects this work to reveal valuable and essential process/practice fixes and some areas where anticipated results are not sufficient to warrant investment in overhaul or other changes. Two examples of potential areas for improvement include:

- Performing effective utility system maintenance and upgrade work in the downtown core. SPU would address how best to plan and align crew work so that it is as efficient and effective as possible in a critical system area to limit failures and service calls.
- Organizing and scheduling infrastructure inspections touched by multiple city departments. SPU would identify overlap and skill crossover in those departments that could reduce duplicate work. SPU could also evaluate whether the inspection process could be streamlined to save valuable field time.

Practice Area: Customer Assistance

Focus on the affordability of SPU’s services, with a special (but not sole) focus on the needs of low-income customers, and the portfolio of assistance programs and tools that can be strategically deployed to meet the needs of diverse customers.

What is this practice area about and why is it important?

The Customer Assistance Practice Area is focused on the affordability of SPU’s services, with a special (but not sole) focus on the needs of low-income customers. This area targets programs and tools SPU has or could develop to more effectively meet affordability needs of our diverse customers.

Given that SPU utility rates are a financial burden for many households and that Seattle is becoming increasingly unaffordable for other reasons, the key policy question that drives the work in this practice area is: *What can SPU do to help customers struggling with affordability, without placing undue burden on all rate-payers?*

Seattle is not alone in examining and facing the challenges of utility affordability. At a national level, industry organizations such as the American Water Works Association (AWWA), the National Association of Clean Water Agencies (NACWA), and the Federal Environmental Protection Agency are engaged with utilities and other stakeholders to revamp how utility affordability is measured. Previous Federal guidance looked only at utility bills as a percent of median household income comparisons and did not take into account the ability of the poorest households to pay, nor did it account for local costs of living and growing income disparities.

While SPU is engaged in the national effort to revamp utility affordability metrics, there is no agreement on a precise way to measure whether a utility service is affordable.

The Customer Assistance Practice Area work group members came together to identify all existing or potential programs, policies, and tools that intersect with customers and have affordability implications, displayed in the “Customer Assistance Tool Kit” in Table 1:

Customer Assistance Toolkit (Table 1)

Financial	Informational	Technical/Operational
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Bill adjustments • Bill credits • Bill discount programs (UDP) • Bill waivers • Billing cycles • Conservation programs • Customer help network • Customer support donations 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Access • Availability • Classes • Contact Centers • How To’s • Language Translations • Notifications • Response Programs 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Claims • Dispute Resolution • Forms • Installation Assistance • Program Enrollments • Service Portals • Service Signups • Service Turn On/Turn Off

- Emergency assistance (EAP)
- Infrastructure insurance programs
- Loans
- Payment arrearage programs
- Payment plans
- Percentage of income payment plans (PIPPs)
- Rate design/structures
- Rate size
- Rebates
- Service level choices
- Severance policy
- Shut off policy
- Tiered assistance

Although the Utility Discount Program (UDP) is SPU's largest customer assistance program, both in terms of cost (\$16 million cost to SPU in 2018) and in terms of customers served (24,000 SPU customers), it is one part of a much larger tool kit that provides different kinds of assistance for different customers with different needs.

For example, the UDP provides long-term assistance in the form of a 50% discount on all bills, while the Emergency Assistance Program (EAP) provides a one-time (or two-time, if there are children in the household) 50% discount to avoid a water shut-off action. The EAP served 884 customers last year, at a cost of \$225,500 to SPU. SPU policies and practices related to how water shut-offs are managed are also important tools in the larger affordability portfolio.

Select Affordability Tools: Impact and Cost for 2018 (Table 2)

Tool	Number of Customers Impacted	Cost to SPU
Utility Discount Program (UDP)	24,000	\$16 million
Emergency Assistance Program (EAP)	884	\$225,500
Leak adjustment policies	916	\$1,330,269
Water shut-off policies and practices for UDP customers	237 UDP customers experienced a water shut-off	N/A

Some of the other customer assistance related affordability efforts that SPU has completed in the last year or has underway include:

- Excluding Medicare Part B from the gross income eligibility requirements to help fixed-income seniors qualify for the UDP and EAP.
- Offered extended payment plans to customers experiencing financial hardship due to the partial federal government shut down that took place in late 2018.

- Improving the bill complaint/dispute process.
- Re-examining and updating customer account management and billing policies.

The Customer Assistance Practice Area work group also developed the following six principles to guide affordability efforts:

Six guiding principles:

1. Empower customers (and employees) by providing effective tools.
2. Proactively solve problems as early as possible.
3. Help particularly vulnerable households with long-term need.
4. Help people in short-term financial crisis.
5. Help customers avoid catastrophic bills.
6. Hold ourselves accountable through measurement and reporting.

SPU aims to look comprehensively across the different tools in its affordability toolbox, take a strategic approach, and make targeted improvements for better results.

STRATEGIES AND ACTIONS

Strategy 1: Align Efforts to Community Need. Prioritize and align Customer Assistance efforts and resources towards meeting the needs of the community and improving impact.

As Seattle and SPU's customer base evolve and change, so do the needs relating to affordability. Rather than guesswork or reactionary piece-meal responses, SPU proposes to develop an organization-wide approach that is data-driven, comprehensive, and strategic, to provide the best possible outcomes with the least burden on ratepayers.

Strategy 1 Actions



Action 1A. Perform rigorous affordability analysis when affordability metrics are finalized.

SPU has contracted with consultants to develop affordability measures that make sense for the utility and the local community. The federal Environmental Protection Agency is revising its measures soon as well. When these measures are ready in the next year, SPU will apply them to inform longer-term objectives to strengthen customer assistance efforts.



Action 1B. Conduct Pilot Program to Prevent Service Shut-offs for UDP Customers.

SPU proposes to conduct a water shut-off prevention pilot program to proactively identify and reach out to low income UDP customers experiencing financial distress, using new modes of communication, messaging, and assistance. The goal is to reduce the UDP shut-off rate from the approximately 1% shut-off rate today, and to gather data on who is struggling to pay their utility bill even with the UDP discount.

SPU will use this pilot data to inform longer-term programmatic changes targeting income level(s) at which an additional, more deeply discounted tier might make sense for UDP assistance, as well as how to proactively identify customers experiencing financial difficulty, do effective outreach, and provide improved assistance to all customers.



Action 1C. Explore income eligibility alignment with other City of Seattle and King County assistance programs.

To align as much as possible with other city and county benefit and assistance programs, SPU will work with Seattle City Light (SCL) to analyze alternative income eligibility requirements and what income metric and/or thresholds might make sense for alignment of the UDP.

Action 1D. Explore ways to support the affordability of side-sewer and other costly private infrastructure repair costs for homeowners.

Side-sewer and water service leak repair costs can range from \$5,000 - \$50,000 and financing can be difficult to obtain for some homeowners. An estimated 30,000 Seattle homeowners could at some point be faced with these repair costs and may not have resources to finance such an expense.

SPU will explore low or zero-interest financing options and subsidized insurance for homeowners in need, to address high-cost infrastructure repair needs, potentially through the Office of Housing's Home Repair Program.



Action 1E. Provide greater benefit to the customer in cases of unforeseen leaks.

SPU is amending internal policies with respect to billing adjustments in cases where a leak occurs, to provide greater benefit to the customer.

Strategy 2: Increase access to and participation in existing affordability programs.

While looking to comprehensively assess affordability and the effectiveness of SPU’s portfolio to address those needs (Strategy 1), there is a need in the near term to increase access to those in need to the programs and resources already in place (Strategy 2).

Strategy 1 Actions



Action 2A. Identify legal and operational barriers and options for transferring SPU UDP credits at SCL to SPU to prevent a water shut-off action.

For a small subset of customers enrolled in the UDP who are renters in single-family homes, their UDP credit for SPU goes onto their Seattle City Light account because they do not have customer accounts with SPU directly. The UDP credits that accrue on the Seattle City Light account are not available to the customer for their SPU payments, even in the case of imminent water shut-off action.

SPU will work with SCL to obtain conclusive analysis of the legal barriers and options available for addressing this issue and pursue a fix with Seattle City Light if legally possible.

Case Study: Access to UDP Credits

“Chris” is a disabled UDP customer renting a house near University Village. In September 2017, Chris owed SPU \$533.69 for his total SPU bill and faced the threat of water shut-off.

Although he had \$870 in UDP credit with Seattle City Light, he struggled to get this transferred to cover his SPU balance because: 1) as a tenant, the account was not in his name so he could not have the SCL credit transferred to an SPU account, and 2) he could not obtain a refund check from SCL before the scheduled shut-off.

He had already used EAP earlier in the year, and so wasn’t eligible for it now. His water was shut-off on October 25, 2017.



Action 2B. Launch Web-based Application Form for UDP and EAP.

Customers who wish to apply to the UDP or EAP (SPU and SCL made recent improvements to allow the same application to qualify a household for both programs), the customer can obtain an application online, but cannot complete or submit the application online. It is a PDF document that must be printed and either scanned or sent as an attachment via email.

To increase access to these affordability programs, SCL and SPU are launching an online self-service portal for utility customers, which will include a web-based UDP and emergency assistance application form. This is anticipated to go live in the third quarter of 2020.



Action 2C. Targeted enrollment and cross-enrollment efforts for UDP.

The steering committee that oversees UDP administration will pursue cross-enrollment opportunities with the following means-tested programs. This action may provide enrollment increases and administrative efficiencies similar to those gained through the successful Seattle Housing Authority (SHA) cross-enrollment partnership:

- National School Lunch Program
- Women, Infants and Children (WIC)
- Medicaid
- Tribal TANF
- Supplemental Security Income (SSI)
- Bureau of Indian Affairs General Assistance

The steering committee is also developing a multi-year, strategic outreach and marketing plan for the UDP to increase enrollment. The plan will be completed this summer.

In addition, SCL and SPU will conduct a UDP Self-Certification Pilot Program to boost enrollment in low-income areas of the city, as well as test the effectiveness of new marketing strategies, a new fast-track application form, and new auditing techniques.

Case Study: UDP Cross-Enrollment

In 2015, SPU worked with Seattle City Light to remove a longstanding barrier in the Seattle Municipal Code that prevented customers living in facilities operated by Seattle Housing Authority from participating in the UDP. By removing that barrier and establishing cross-enrollment with SHA, the UDP enrolled 7000 new households in 2016.



Action 2D. Expanding Access to Emergency Assistance.

SPU will expand access to emergency assistance in three important ways, by:

1. increasing the income eligibility ceiling from 70% to 80% of State Median Income to help households experiencing short-term financial crisis.
2. proactively reaching out to UDP customers facing a potential water-shut off with information about the Emergency Assistance Program;
3. pursuing changes to the Seattle Municipal Code to allow application of emergency assistance up to 100% of the customer's bill (up from the 50% limit in place today); and
4. exploring the creation of a donation-based emergency assistance fund, akin to Seattle City Light's "Project Share."

Practice Area: Partnership Opportunities

Improve SPU's ability to partner with organizations, institutions, and companies to leverage broader benefits, reduce costs, share risks, and improve outcomes for the communities that we serve.

What is this practice area about and why is it important?

Partnerships are the network of suppliers, vendors, firms, funders, collaborators, advocates, service providers, and peer organizations that make a business model work and provide value to the customer. SPU engages in three types of partnerships:

1. traditional buyer and supplier relationships;
2. strategic alliances where organizations bring different capabilities together to deliver a product or serve a customer; and
3. joint ventures where organizations enter a new business to provide a different service or asset for a new customer segment.

SPU engages in hundreds of partnerships worth hundreds of millions of dollars (see examples below).

Partnership Examples Across Lines of Business

- Water treatment plant contracts
 - Relationships with ethnically based community organizations to meet service goals
 - Solid waste contracts
 - Wholesale water sales to other utilities
 - Shared customer call center with City Light
 - Ship Canal project with King County
 - Agreements with sewer districts for sewage treatment
 - Recycling and conservation partnerships with our customers
 - Relationships with business coalitions and City departments to build WMBE capacity and usage
 - Co-implementation of water conservation projects at the Ballard Locks with U.S. Army Corps of Engineers
 - Foundation and philanthropy relationships to amplify, align and supplement health equity, environmental justice, and climate adaptation
 - Joint property purchase and land swaps with other agencies such as Seattle Parks and Recreation and the Army Corp of Engineers to conserve and protect parcels
-

The Utility enters into partnerships to reduce costs, share risks, and to gain a resource or the ability to engage in an activity that is outside of existing capabilities. Most SPU partnerships provide multiple benefits to SPU and to the partner organizations and communities. Often benefits are quantifiable in financial and performance output

terms such as reduced cost. Many benefits are also qualitative, such as better relationships with stakeholders or increased community organization capacity to engage.

Partnerships are a primary vehicle for centering SPU's work on the needs of the communities the utility serves and for driving innovation, building capacity in the community and leveraging a broader set of benefits than what the Utility can provide on its own.

Partnerships are also critical to delivering SPU's core services. SPU is not able to meet operational goals and regulatory requirements alone, especially in the face of growing environmental threats and affordability concerns. During the development of the "Building Partnership Opportunities" strategies and actions, SPU identified a set of principles to guide its continued work (see "Five Partnership Principles").

The following are specific highlights of SPU's partnership principles in action along with the value and variation of partnership efforts in SPU:

SPU's Five Partnership Principles:

1. To have a good partner, be a good partner and help create mutual purpose.
2. Get out of transactional mindset, move into a transformational mindset.
3. Balance risk with the potential for new or expanded opportunities.
4. Focus on long-term relationships and building trust.
5. Build capacity in the community and with the organization.

Leveraging supplier/provider partnerships to improve service and customer value. SPU's Solid Waste division negotiated new contracts worth approximately \$1 billion over 10 years for solid waste services. The new contracts were negotiated to cost the utility \$25 million less than what was assumed in adopted rates while continuing to deliver reliable services, positive environmental outcomes, and enhanced services. These lower than anticipated costs were carefully negotiated with the vendor to also ensure the long-term viability of the contractor and risk sharing. This example illustrates principle 1 and 5.

Engaging in a strategic alliance with a private developer for clean water. A private developer approached SPU with a proposal to voluntarily divert dirty stormwater runoff from WSDOT's Aurora bridge into a park like green space constructed by the developer in the City right-of-way to improve water quality in Lake Union. SPU entered into an agreement with the developer and the project will effectively divert and clean 160,000 gallons of stormwater per year. This agreement enabled improved water quality in the region beyond what can be done by Agencies and created a community green space asset for the future. Partnerships to add bioretention at the time of redevelopment is far less costly than if the entities did the work on their own. It also spurred SPU to develop a better internal system to establish similar partnerships in the future. This example illustrates all five principles.

Entering into a joint venture to bring more partners to the table. In 2018, SPU partnered with Mary's Place, a nonprofit organization serving families experiencing homelessness, to explore new opportunities around food rescue and improving community health. Approximately 95,000 tons of food are wasted each year locally at a cost to SPU customers to compost or landfill. At the same time, more than 250,000 King County residents are experiencing food insecurity. Working together, the Food Rescue Innovation Lab was convened, which brought together stakeholders from a range of agencies, departments, and sectors to better understand the issue, surface new opportunities for collaboration, and create buy-in for long term engagement and solutions. By engaging with a community connected and passionate partner, SPU is now partnering with many private, community, and philanthropic organizations to meet the dual objective of reducing the amount of high-quality food going into the waste stream and feeding residents in need. This example illustrates principles 1, 3, 4, and 5.

Creating strategic alliances and community trust with local non-profits. Community Connections is an SPU program which fosters long-term contracted partnerships with non-profit community-based agencies, with a goal to improve the quality of life for people of color, immigrant, and low-income communities through transformative

engagement and education on utility functions and services. The partnership explicitly focuses on overcoming a lack of trust through relationship building and is an example of using targeted approaches to reach the universal goal of engaging all SPU customers. This example illustrates all five principles.

STRATEGIES AND ACTIONS

Strategy 1: Develop an SPU culture that nurtures innovation, extending existing and developing new partnerships across all branches to expand the value and reach of SPU investments for the communities we serve.

This strategy builds on the collective experience of SPU to better leverage internal resources, grow a community of practice and organizational learning, and sustain and expand the number of partnerships. SPU's partnership efforts typically benefit individual programs or business areas, but staff expertise, data, and lessons learned from past efforts are not widely leveraged across the utility. As SPU's innovation culture continues to mature, the partnership strategy will evolve into an enterprise-wide, cross-functional approach where the Utility collaborates across the organization and with the community to improve affordable and accountable outcomes.

In addition, partnerships serve business purposes to reduce costs, spread risk, and improve service. Consistent with the accountability and affordability framework, partnerships should strive to develop and use evidence, and demonstrate results to ensure that both SPU and the communities served are benefiting from them.

SPU Employee Perspectives on the Culture of Partnership

"The opportunity to leverage what we do and what others do to create a greater collective whole is inspiring."

"We work together but we don't always view our relationships as partnerships. If you look at it as a partnership, it may create more value because you approach it differently."

Strategy 1 Actions



Action 1A. Create a community of practice to share and learn from each other and build capacity within SPU.

People come to work in the public sector with fresh ideas and energy to improve upon what's already been delivered. We are living through rapid technological advances and unprecedented connectivity, challenging us to take advantage of all there is to offer in a reasonable and affordable manner.

SPU can learn to better adapt to shifting demands and can provide innovative approaches. Creating a community of practice is one approach for strengthening and encouraging a culture of innovation within the utility by creating a sponsored forum for sharing knowledge and learning led by experts and practitioners in SPU.

Action 1B. Identify, prioritize, and remove organizational barriers to partnering.

Partnerships can create value but sometimes City and SPU processes are barriers to moving forward. For example, our contracting processes are not nimble and designed for transactional partnerships (supplier/provider) and less focused on strategic alliances or joint ventures which can provide broad benefits to the community. This can result in lost time and missed opportunities to build trust and better serve our

customers and community, and help meet utility goals while sharing the costs, risks, and rewards of sustaining a healthy environment.

Action 1C. Focus partnerships on demonstrating qualitative and/or quantitative impacts and provide routine opportunity to capture and communicate their stories, value and outcomes.

SPU's work requires an ability to engage and inform officials and the public about how rate payer dollars are spent, the benefits, and what was achieved. For SPU, there exists commonplace reporting on the performance of utility assets and achievement of broad utility goals. The stories of success reached through partnerships is often under-reported and may be lacking metrics in similar fashion to how performance is measured in other areas of the utility.



Action 1D. Build partnership capacity in the communities SPU serves and identify and expand opportunities for partnerships with private and community organizations to improve health and environmental outcomes.

SPU would like to build a reputation as “open for innovation” by the broader community, with clear private sector and community organization partnership opportunities. While SPU has organizational experience and capability in building partnerships, it does not have an enterprise-wide approach to marketing the potential for broader partnerships. SPU will build from successful experience through efforts such as WMBE, Green Stormwater Infrastructure and other the examples illustrated in this document to build an outreach and marketing plan based on strategic priorities and targeted outcomes.

For example, planning is currently underway to expand and build partnerships for Green Stormwater through co-location opportunities with other City Departments and potential community based organizations or developer partnerships to encourage greater private investment in water quality and other community goals.

Practice Area: Regulatory Alignment

Reduce the cost and risk of meeting regulatory demands while ensuring public health and safety, environmental protection, a vibrant local economy and social equity outcomes. Focusing on regulation in this way is expected to improve affordability for our customers by eliminating unnecessary process, selecting viable lower cost alternatives for the same or greater benefit, and moving from prescriptive requirements to performance-based approaches.

What is this practice area about and why is it important?

Seattle Public Utilities is both *regulated* by other governmental agencies and is a *regulator* of local governments, companies and individuals. Regulation of water, wastewater, drainage, and solid waste is essential to SPU's core mission of protecting public health and the natural environment. At the same time, regulatory activities must be done through an equity lens to protect the communities served while being careful to minimize negative economic impact that regulations might have.

SPU has a long record of regulatory compliance as well as innovative practices influencing regulation for more locally, sustainable health and environmental outcomes and reduced costs. Far from avoiding regulation, SPU has advocated for practices that move upstream to protect and restore ecosystem functions and proactively reduce regulatory response through voluntary compliance across many areas including increasing recycling rates, conserving water, and natural systems approaches to stormwater runoff in neighborhoods.

This regulatory alignment strategy builds on the experience and practices within SPU to better leverage resources, institutionalize enterprise learning, and improve the use of evidence to influence regulation and improve outcomes. By emphasizing a more adaptive approach, this strategy also better prepares SPU for the future impacts of climate change which will require greater regulatory flexibility to respond to a shifting and increasingly uncertain future. During the development of the Accountability and Affordability strategy, SPU identified a set of principles to guide continued work (see "Seven Regulatory Principles").

SPU's Seven Regulatory Principles:

1. Be Adaptive and shift from "regulate and forget" to a responsive, data driven, iterative approach.
2. Pilot and test new approaches on limited scale and learn from them
3. Move upstream and influence the issue early
4. Constantly reassess for the intended impact
5. Focus on outcomes over process
6. Engage allies to improve outcomes
7. Prioritize and focus on a few key areas

Laws and regulations impact SPU’s lines of business to different degrees. For example, the federal Clean Water Act primarily impacts the Drainage and Wastewater line of business (LOB) but to a lesser degree the Water LOB and Solid Waste LOB. Some laws and regulations impact only one LOB, such as the state Water Code regarding water rights. Others impact all SPU lines of business, such as the federal Fair Labor Standards Act. Attachment B provides examples of laws and regulations that impact SPU.

SPU’s regulatory costs are significant and are ultimately paid for by customers. For example, SPU’s 2018-2023 Capital Improvement Program (CIP) is \$1.5 billion and \$0.7 billion (45%) is dedicated to regulatory compliance projects such as the Ship Canal Water Quality project. SPU’s regulatory strategy seeks to improve outcomes in ways that also improve affordability and accountability for the customer.

STRATEGIES AND ACTIONS

Strategy 1: Align to Community Need and Impact. Prioritize and align SPU regulatory resources towards meeting the needs of the community, improving impact and “least cost” regulatory action.

As SPU continues to mature, its regulatory strategy will evolve into an enterprise wide, cross functional approach with collaboration across SPU, other City departments, jurisdictions, and regulators to improve outcomes for the community. Instead of just responding to emergent opportunities, SPU will work to develop an organization-wide approach that is coordinated and proactive, and intentional about providing the best possible outcomes with the least burden on ratepayers.

Strategy 1 Actions

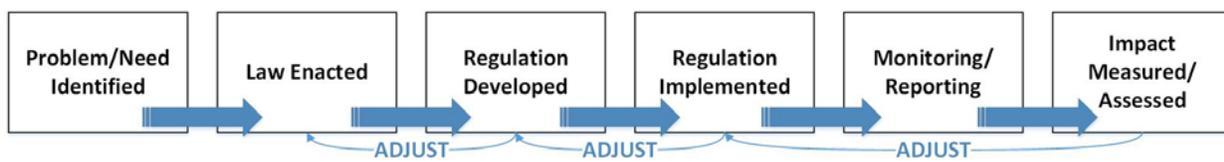


Action 1A. Develop a unified federal and state legislative agenda that focuses efforts on proactively improving the environment, public health, social equity, and the local economy.

Historically, SPU has used an ad hoc approach to state and federal legislative agendas, focusing on issues that arise out of LOB-identified legislative priorities or are responsive to external factors. This has sometimes resulted in focusing on issues that may not have the highest priority need for SPU, nor have they been fully grounded in improving the environment, public health, social equity and the local economy (“the four community outcomes”). Finally, it also means we miss proactive opportunities to make big operational improvements.

SPU will develop an agenda that focuses on legislation and existing regulation. It is essential to be proactive in supporting lawmakers and regulators in making decisions informed by good risk- and cost-data and a sound business case. This includes regulatory solutions that are more holistic and connected as opposed to siloed in approach.

The opportunity to improve regulation may arise anywhere in the regulatory lifecycle shown below, from the development of the original legislation to the measurement and assessment stage.



The objective for creating a common legislative agenda is seek out cross-LOB and enterprise-wide opportunities that have the greatest impact on SPU's costs and multiple benefits to the community. For example, laws and regulations that affect water quantity and quality have implications for all lines of business and can benefit the environment, public health and safety. Similarly, laws and regulations for public works contracting also impact the enterprise overall while helping the local economy and social equity. In some instances, the scope of proposed legislation can be expanded to create multiple benefits. By being strategic about its legislative priorities, SPU can focus its resources on proposals that would best serve the community.

Action 1B. Develop a utility agenda for external engagement and influence that benefits the entire enterprise.

SPU successfully responds to emergent opportunities to work with regulators, industries and the community to improve regulation. SPU is involved with national and local organizations that advocate for changes to regulations, such as the American Water Works Association, National Association of Clean Water Agencies, and the Solid Waste Association of North America.

However, these successes are often reactive rather than proactive, which limits the spread of ideas to individuals working on that problem. Other people in SPU, along with regulatory agencies and partner organizations, do not benefit from the improvement and learning. This can be a missed opportunity, because concerns in one LOB are often shared across other LOBs with potential multiple benefits for the community.

For example, PCB toxins are industrial chemicals which can show up in the solid waste stream, and then from there to wastewater and surface water. Although those are different LOBs, by coordinating people and resources systematically, SPU can jointly identify the problem and put resources where they will be most effective: eliminating PCBs from solid waste before they lead to harder and more costly work of removing them from streams and waterways.

Addressing waste and contamination at the source.

SPU's Solid Waste Division collaborates extensively with partners to extend manufacturer's responsibility for disposal of their products. This work has resulted in legislation and actions over the past 20 years that have diverted hundreds of thousands of tons of materials from the landfill. By working in partnership with the Northwest Product Stewardship Council, hazardous chemicals found in electronics, light bulbs, and pharmaceuticals have been repurposed for a second life or disposed of in ways that won't harm the environment.

Action 1C. Develop risk and cost reduction measures for select areas of regulatory influence.

While SPU works to affect and better manage regulation, we often do not have a baseline for measuring the effectiveness of those activities or for reducing or avoiding costs and impacting the intended outcome. Having credible baseline information as well as information demonstrating the impacts of emerging issues such as climate change increases the probability that we can advocate for more adaptive and effective interventions with regulators. In addition, targeted risk and cost reductions are not typically formally considered when assessing the potential benefits of changing or influencing regulations.

SPU has some success in influencing regulation when we provide regulators analysis of the efficacy of the regulation and, in some cases, modifications of process that can make the regulation more effective.

An example of this is SPU’s handling of the Stormwater NPDES Permit (see Case Study: Reducing the administrative burden of managing the stormwater permit).

Strategy 2: Move from Prescriptive to Performance. Move from prescriptive to performance-based regulations to reduce or avoid costs, share or reduce risk, and/or enhance community outcomes.

The landscape of regulation is large and complex, and because important community outcomes such as public health and safety, environmental protection, economic vitality, and social justice are at stake, it is important to be

Reducing the administrative burden of managing the stormwater permit.

SPU gives the National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System (NPDES) permit to people with private stormwater drains. As part of the permit, SPU does a manual inspection every year. Based on actual inspection and maintenance data, SPU has been able to demonstrate that the permit requirement of inspecting privately owned stormwater facilities every year is unnecessarily prescriptive and does not result in increased maintenance or environmental benefit, but instead uses inspector resources that could be used for greater benefit in other programs.

thoughtful and purposeful about this work. By changing both our mindset and our internal approaches, we can more easily identify and advocate for regulations that provide a better value with improved outcomes to residents.

Strategy 2 Actions



Action 2A. Seek to build performance based regulatory practices that adjust to meet the intended outcome into the combined sewer overflow (CSO) consent decree.

In July 2013, Seattle entered into a Consent Decree with the Environmental Protection Agency, Department of Justice, and the Washington State Department of Ecology to reduce sewer overflows (SSOs) and combined sewer overflows (CSOs). The cost of addressing the consent decree was estimated at \$600M in 2013. In the last five years, the capital costs of meeting Consent Decree requirements have increased significantly due to changing rainfall patterns, increasing costs of capital projects and overall growth in the City market conditions. However, the existing prescriptive requirements for CSOs limit how SPU can respond to these changes in an effective, cost-effective manner. Shifting to a more adaptive approach for CSOs through a Consent Decree modification would direct future capital investment towards the greatest public health and environmental outcomes, while providing the flexibility needed to partner with King County on more cost-effective projects and manage climate and affordability challenges.

Action 2B. Take action on promising areas where SPU is regulated or the regulator that might be influenced to move from a prescriptive to a performance-based approach.

Sometimes a prescriptive process or alternative is expensive and not as effective as enforcing performance standards. In other cases, the prescriptive measure might be more appropriate.

Prescriptive approaches to regulation describe how or what must be done such as “take water samples” or “report quarterly” but may not measure the intended impact or outcome or may have little evidence that they

impact the outcome they are trying to achieve such as no toxins in streams. Compliance has a cost but may not have an offsetting benefit. In contrast, a performance-based approach starts with the desired outcome and measures either the outcome (e.g. healthy salmon habitats) or conditions related to the outcomes (e.g. increasing salmon populations). Opportunities exist to shift more regulations to a performance-based approach.

The table below contrasts the difference between prescriptive approaches compared to regulation that uses a performance-based approach.

Cost effective ways to ensure “mountain fresh” drinking water.

SPU’s water division worked creatively with the Environmental Protection Agency, local environmental organizations, and local tribes to keep drinking water safe, avoid unnecessary costs, and protect the environment. By focusing on data and intended impact, SPU developed an acceptable alternative to the EPA’s prescribed approach to filter drinking water. This option helped avoid building a costly large capital facility and instead put resources into protecting natural areas.

Prescriptive vs. Performance-based Approaches to Regulation

Prescriptive	Performance
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Prescriptive-based regulation • Mandated technology, equipment, action/tasks • Specified behaviors or methods to comply • Demand specific solutions be implemented • Focus on inputs and activity 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Impact-based regulation • Set results-oriented goals • Establish objectives or standards • Encourage flexibility and innovation • Focus on outputs and outcomes

SPU will be looking at all regulation through this lens: both its own proposed regulation of otherss and those proposed that would apply to SPU. An important part of this process is ensuring there is good data to inform these choices.



Action 2C. Collaborate with other city and local agencies to develop a list of regulations where there are potential efficiencies.

SPU directly regulates in a variety of areas, sometimes in concert with other City departments. Some of these regulations and processes have never been reviewed for process or outcome effectiveness and efficiency. In addition, layering separate regulations creates unnecessary complexity for City departments and parties that need to comply.

In recent years, SPU and other City and partner agencies have worked for better coordination but these early efforts might benefit from clearer understanding of the outcome-based needs for each entity and then a more focused effort on improving affordability and outcome.

For example, when a developer is building a new building, a permit and installation is required to access utility services from utility mainlines to the building. Permitting activity is done in conjunction with Seattle Department of Construction and Inspection (SDCI) and Seattle Department of Transportation (SDOT) and consists of permitting and installation of utility service lines and SDOT permits to work in the right of way and patch the pavement. This process takes many months and involves multiple inspections. While some amount of time is necessary for

permitting, the total permitting time can be reduced which would benefit developers without impacting utility integrity and the street.

More coordination within SPU and with other partners, especially City departments, will help add value to projects, reduce duplication of effort or at cross purposes, while improving outcomes and avoiding unnecessary costs.

Modify Midway Landfill Consent Decree. This modification would allow waste removal for I-5 expansion and Sound Transit south Link and allow development of the site as a Sound Transit maintenance facility.

The freeway expansion is to meet obligations under a Franchise Permit and the development of the site for rail and potential maintenance facility is a great opportunity for the region and may save SPU, WSDOT and Sound Transit significant capital cost.

Develop policy updates for Stormwater Code. These modifications would allow for public private partnerships to treat stormwater from City Right of Way on private property and vice versa.

Current policy and code restrict this type of arrangement, leading to inefficiencies and lost opportunities to leverage multiple funding sources to meet regulatory requirements and provide facilities that meet a community centered approach.

Practice Area: Budgeting and Financial Management

Streamline and integrate budget and financial planning practices and align investments with the long-range strategic goals of SPU and the community.

What is this practice area about and why is it important?

Seattle Public Utilities is financially and operationally complex, spending over \$1 billion annually to deliver drinking water, sewage transport, stormwater conveyance and treatment and garbage and recycling services across Seattle and parts of the region. The size and complexity of the organization requires strong financial management to maintain the lowest cost of service while providing value to customers.

SPU's six-year rate path, adopted in the 2018-2023 Strategic Business Plan, forecasts continually increasing rates for our customers. The rate path is expected to grow higher than the rate of inflation during the Plan's six-year window, putting pressure on customers' ability to pay for critical services. This trend mimics a trend over the past 30 years where SPU rates have an average growth at double the rate of inflation. Increases in costs are driven by a variety of factors including aging infrastructure, growing complexity in the regulatory environment, and increases in service demand. The current rate path trajectory and affordability challenges in the local economy create an opportunity to examine financial practices throughout the organization to ensure SPU is maximizing opportunities to lower costs to customers.

Through this effort, SPU engaged practitioners from across the utility to better understand how the utility might better:

- balance short and long-term financial health,
- prioritize and make financial decisions,
- control costs and manage risks, and
- align the budget with strategic objectives.

What is the current state of financial management and budgeting in SPU?

SPU is financially healthy. SPU's current and projected financial health across the Water, Drainage and Wastewater and Solid Waste funds is evidenced by high bond ratings across all funds. SPU has a history of maintaining high bond ratings that allow SPU access to lower the cost of capital project financing which, in turn, lowers long-term costs for rate payers. Additionally, SPU is on the higher end of bond ratings compared to cities with similar systems. *Attachment A* includes a comparison of SPU's bond ratings with similar systems.

There are also several opportunities to enhance the efficiency and effectiveness of financial management within SPU including:

SPU's financial policies need revision to align with current risks and needs. SPU's financial policies, adopted by Council, guide rate setting, financial decision making, and are designed to ensure the long-term and short-term health of each utility fund. Financial policies are also metrics that bond rating agencies use to compare SPU to peer agencies and validate that the Utility is consistently achieving the required reserve levels. Over the past few

years, rating agency criteria and the financial needs of the organization have changed; however, all three funds' financial policies have not undergone a formal review since 2012.

Streamlining and realigning the budget process. SPU's budget development, rate setting, and long-term strategic planning has become much more complex and time consuming over the past five years and not always providing the intended value.

- SPU is spending a great deal of time and resources in the various expenditure updates needed to create an annual budget, rate studies and the Strategic Business Plan updates. The drivers of the various efforts are not well understood across and between levels of leadership.
- Short and long-term risks at the fund level are sometimes not well understood or transparent to managers.
- SPU's approach to prioritization and efficiencies is not consistently applied across the enterprise or only in response to external requests for budget reductions.

Financial monitoring is challenging and not well understood across the organization. SPU has struggled over the past year to conduct financial monitoring consistently, simply, and in a timely manner due, in part, to implementation of the new PeopleSoft system. In addition, spending is consistently under budget, sometimes significantly.

- Financial information has become more complex with the new PeopleSoft implementation.
- Monthly monitoring needs to be simplified for greater understanding as well as potentially enhanced by adding or removing information.
- The tools and process for financial monitoring are not consistently available across the utility.
- Quarterly fund reporting is currently at the Executive leadership level, but not broader leadership levels. In addition, the reporting and monitoring is missing important information on fund risks and emerging issues.

STRATEGIES AND ACTIONS

Over the next five years, SPU will streamline and integrate budget planning, monitoring, and financial policies by focusing on:

- Reassessing and modernizing SPU financial policies and reserves;
- Streamlining and aligning the budget process; and
- Improving accountability through enhanced financial monitoring.

Strategy 1: Review SPU financial policies; provide options focused on risk, affordability, and investment.

Strategy 1 Actions



Action 1A. Perform a comprehensive update of SPU's financial policies.

SPU's financial management policies were last reviewed in 2012. Over the past seven years a variety of issues have been identified that are not explicitly considered in these policies including managing rate and reserve levels for economic downturns or during significant natural disasters such as earthquakes. In addition, rating agencies have adjusted criteria that are explicitly considered in SPU's bond ratings, but the utility's adopted financial policies may not reflect the changes. These changes, coupled with an interest in managing risk at an enterprise level and a focus on creating long-term affordability, provide an opportunity for SPU to assess current financial policies with long-term planning, policy objectives, and rating agency criteria. This analysis will include a review of reserve classifications, categories, and cash balances compared to industry standards and best practices.



Action 1B. Assess and make recommendations on reserves/emergency reserves.

Based on Action A, SPU will conduct a financial and alternative analysis for implementing financial policy and reserve changes. This alternative analysis will assess the financial impact of implementing changes on rate payers in both the short and long-term.

Strategy 2: Revamp the SPU budget process to be driven by strategy, priority, and customer needs.

Strategy 2 Actions



Action 2A. Advocate with the City Budget Office to pilot biennial budgeting with Seattle Public Utilities.

The City's biennial budget process remains largely an annual exercise. The annual budget process is very resource intense and does not currently allow for enough time for strategic prioritization and planning. Moving to a biennial process can allow for improvements that enhance accountability, efficiency and create space for deeper long-term planning, analysis, and prioritization in the off years.

Whether SPU formally moves to a biennial budget process or not, there are actionable opportunities to reduce time spent on the technical aspects of budget production including reducing the frequency of spending plan updates or limiting updates to only large projects or areas of major change. SPU also has the flexibility to internally design the process of mid-biennial updates where changes to the budget are severely limited and done on an exception basis. Changes in process should be done in tandem with improvements to financial monitoring which are expected to increase accountability and accuracy of projections. As a part of this action, SPU will reassess the process and timing of the three-year cycle of providing rate study updates.



Action 2B. Pilot the development of a flexible rate model that integrates affordability criteria into rate development.

The Drainage and Wastewater division (DWW) is developing a flexible rate model incorporating new methods for assessing affordability for both the utility and customers. The tool and methods are expected to help SPU quickly

assess alternative long-term rate and investment scenarios. The model will provide a 30-year rate projection incorporating SPU financial policies, sensitivity analysis, and multiple program and capital funding scenarios. Organizational learning from the pilot will be incorporated into rate models for the Water and Solid Waste rate models.

Action 2C. Develop a standard integrated enterprise approach to prioritization, improvements and efficiencies. SPU will develop explicit guidance for efficiencies and improvements and incorporate that guidance into the strategic business planning and budget development process. This action is intended to move SPU away from a reactionary budget cutting approach to a more long-term systemic and measured approach aligned with recommendations on continuous improvement in the Efficiencies and Improvement practice area.

Strategy 3: Enhance financial and performance monitoring to better inform budgeting and financial planning.

Strategy 3 Actions



Action 3A. Pilot quarterly enhanced financial monitoring to increase transparency, integrate risk, and improve financial planning.

Opportunities exist to incorporate risk, alternative analysis around topical issues, more accessible financial data and deeper understanding of spending and projections across the enterprise. Conceptually, frequent, active monitoring, integrated with clear accountability for control and action can help narrow variance in financial performance and increase affordability. There are additional opportunities to improve both accountability and the efficiency of the process including potentially moving to a rolling 24-month projection standard.



Action 3B. Provide core/simple financial information on capital and operations and maintenance more frequently and broadly, making the data useful, accessible and actionable for managers.

Over the past year, the instability of the City's financial system has exacerbated reporting issues. Financial data is more complex, including several overheads, paid time off, allocated costs and interdepartmental billing. This complexity has become a challenge in providing useful and timely reporting to budget managers. There is a need to report complex calculations in a meaningful and timely manner and allow for more self-service reporting. Additional opportunities exist to include new report formats that work for both Budget and Department clients, including a set of expectations on timing, review, and actions.

Action 3C. Pilot the use of organizational capacity analysis and staffing forecast tools.

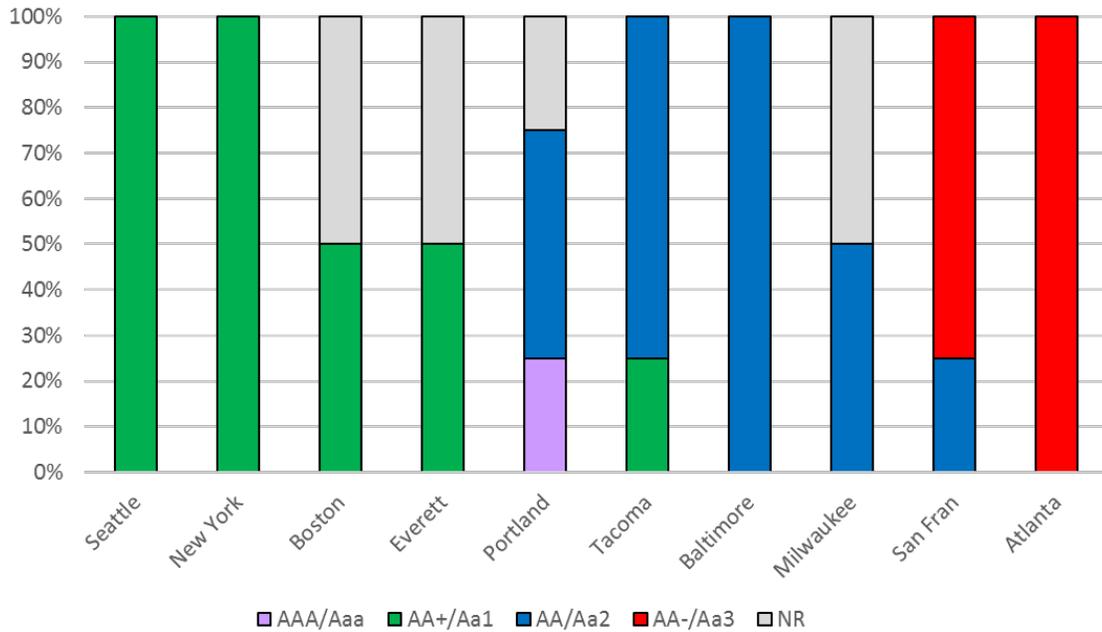
Capacity analysis, which includes forecasting demand and analyzing whether an organization has sufficient resources to meet the demand under different scenarios, is not widely used in SPU. This type of analysis can allow an organization to identify resource gaps or excesses, explore alternatives, and identify opportunities for either using excess capacity or filling projected gaps in capacity. SPU has some capability and tools for doing this work in some areas but the current work on capacity analysis and active use of staffing forecast tools focuses on the short-term monthly or annual planning. This pilot will focus on the development of both tools and skills to enhance long-term planning and manage operational risks.

Attachment A: SPU’s Bond Ratings and Comparisons

SPU Bond Ratings

Tool	Standard and Poor’s	Moody’s
Prime maximum safety	AAA	Aaa
High grade high quality	AA+ Water, Drainage & Wastewater and Solid Waste	Aa1 Water and Drainage & Wastewater
	AA	Aa2
	AA-	Aa3 Solid Waste
Upper medium grade	A+	A1
	A	A2
	A-	A3
Lower medium grade	BBB+	Bbb1
	BBB	Bbb2
	BBB-	Bbb3
Non-investment grade	BB+	Bb1

Water & Sewer/Stormwater Bond Ratings (% in each category by Jurisdiction)



Attachment B: Examples of Laws and Regulations Affecting SPU

Primary Goal of Law/Regulation

-Protect Human Health and Safety

-Protect or Enhance Environmental Quality

-Ensure Social Equity

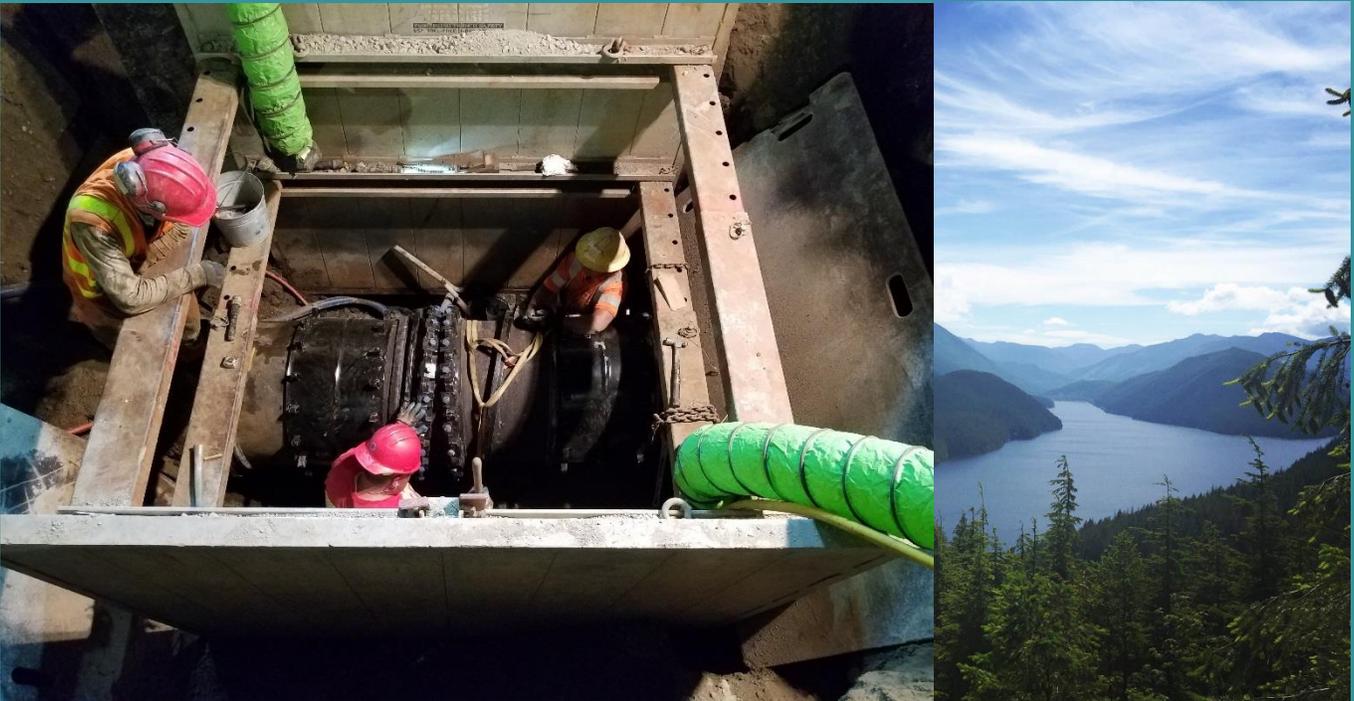
-Support Local Economy

Level	Law/Regulation	Water LOB	DWW LOB	Solid Waste LOB
Federal	Safe Drinking Water Act	●	○	○
	National Environmental Policy Act	●	●	●
	Clean Water Act	○	●	○
	Clean Air Act	○	○	●
	Endangered Species Act	●	●	
	Resource Conservation and Recovery Act	○	○	●
	Comprehensive Environmental Response, Compensation, and Liability Act (CERCLA/Superfund)		●	●
	Federal Water Power Act (FERC)	●		
	Homeland Security Act	●	●	●
	Flood Disaster Protection Act	●	●	
	Fair Labor Standards Act	●	●	●
	Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA)	●	●	●
	The Occupational Safety and Health Act (OSHA)	●	●	●
State	NPDES General Permits	○	●	○
	State Environmental Policy Act	●	●	●
	Water Code	●		
	State Accountancy Act	●	●	●
	Business and Occupation Tax	●	●	●
	Group A Public Water Supplies (WAC 246-290)	●		
	The Washington Industrial Safety and Health Act (WISHA)	●	●	●
Local (City/County)	Procurement of consultant services (SMC 20.50)	●	●	●
	Business Tax—Utilities (SMC 5.48)	●	●	●
	*Cross-connections (SMC 21.04.070)	●	○	
	*Solid Waste Handling (SMC 21.44)			●
	*Stormwater Code	○	●	○

*SPU is the regulator

SPU's RISK AND RESILIENCY STRATEGIC PLAN

2019 Final Report



**Seattle
Public
Utilities**

Table of Contents

Page	Section
3	Section 1: Introduction
7	Section 2: Climate Change
12	Section 3: Disasters
17	Section 4: Investment Priorities
21	Section 5: Economy
24	Section 6: Market Forces
26	Section 7: Technology
28	Section 8: Workforce
31	Section 9: Next Steps
32	Appendix A: Impact-Likelihood Matrix

Section 1: Introduction

Organizations today are faced with multiple risks and uncertainties as they work to fulfill their missions. Being resilient offers a powerful way of addressing risks comprehensively, managing uncertainty, and taking advantage of new opportunities. For Seattle Public Utilities (SPU), resiliency is the capacity to recover in the face of sudden or gradual stressors that impact utility services and the community.

SPU delivers essential water, drainage and wastewater, and solid waste services – all fundamental for public and environmental health. Seattle has been a leader in making utility investments that have multiple, long-term community benefits. After the Great Seattle Fire of 1889, the citizens of Seattle voted to create a public water system and develop the Cedar River water supply system. Seattle’s water, drainage, wastewater, and solid waste utilities have faced many challenges over the years and have evolved to improve services and reduce pollution impacts. As a community-centered utility, SPU seeks to proactively address community needs and risks to improve resiliency.

In 2017, Seattle City Council requested that SPU “prepare a risk and resiliency management assessment.” SPU delivered the status report to Council on August 1, 2018. This final report details risks to SPU and provides examples of ongoing efforts to be resilient, equitable, and affordable. Sections 2-8 provide descriptions of various risks and SPU’s progress in addressing those risks. Section 9 describes SPU’s next steps to advance this work throughout the utility to best serve the community.

SPU faces a variety of challenges: a changing climate, the threat of natural disaster, technological advances, inequity, economic variability, competition, and an aging workforce. In order to be resilient, SPU needs to look to the future and be positioned to adapt to risks and opportunities as they arise. SPU has developed a comprehensive risk and resiliency framework that includes the broad areas of operational and strategic risks. This framework helps SPU to assess vulnerabilities, identify new risks, and develop strategies and solutions that support utility and community resiliency. SPU’s goal is to optimize utility investments that address multiple risks at the same time.

In accordance with the City of Seattle’s Race and Social Justice Initiative, risk and resiliency strategies will strive to address systemic and institutional racism and will direct attention to disadvantaged communities. SPU recently conducted a series of Racial Equity Toolkit meetings with subject matter experts from across the utility. These meetings helped SPU to identify and develop responses to the disparate impacts these risks can have on vulnerable communities. The aim of this ongoing work is to embed the equity lens within the risk and resiliency framework and utility plans.

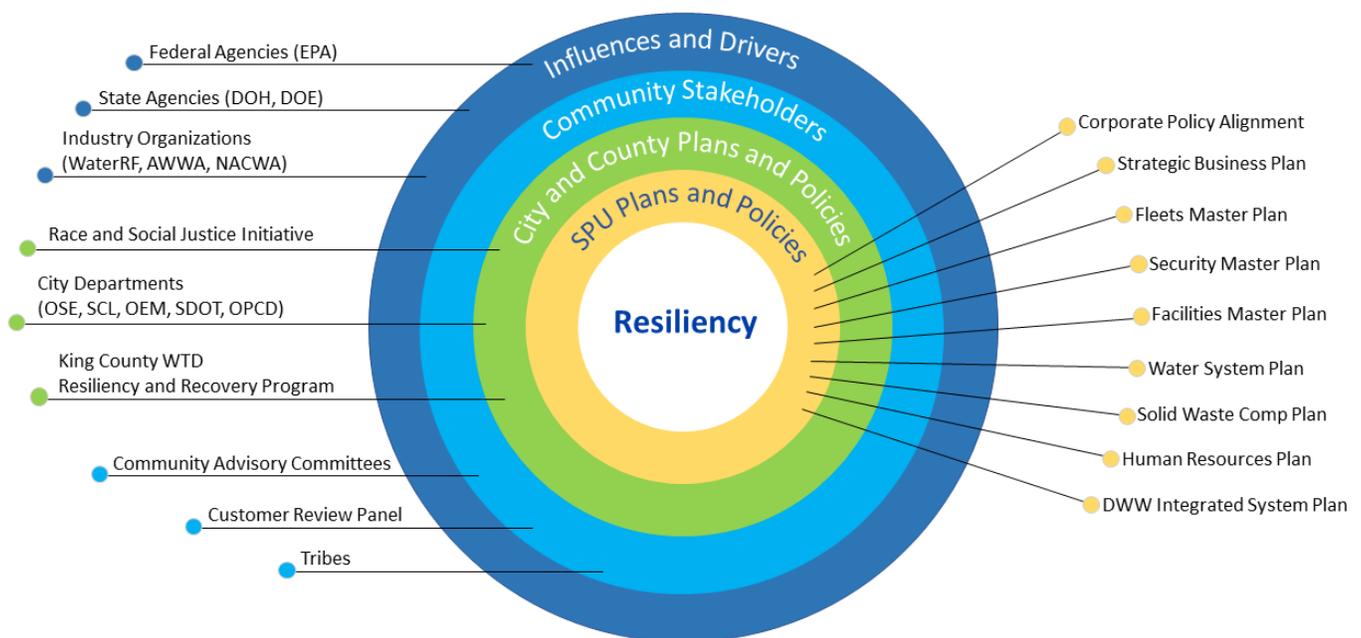


School visit to the watershed

Planning Integration

SPU is working directly with lines of business to connect this work to their policies, programs, projects, comprehensive and capital plans, and daily operations. The risk and resiliency framework is being incorporated into the Solid Waste Comprehensive Plan amendment and the Drainage & Wastewater Integrated System Plan. SPU’s Strategic Business Plan will also incorporate risk and resiliency as one of the main priorities for the utility.

SPU is working with a variety of federal and state agencies, community partners, and tribes, and has shared this work with the Community Advisory Committee and the Customer Review Panel. The risk and resiliency framework integrates with other efforts such as the City of Seattle’s Resilience Strategy and the All-Hazards Mitigation Plan as well as King County’s Wastewater Treatment Division’s Resiliency and Recovery Program. SPU is also working with the Environmental Protection Agency on the best way to develop resilient stormwater infrastructure in response to regulations. As the diagram below shows, partnerships are critical to fostering resilient utility services that support the whole community.



Goal Statement

The risk and resiliency goal statement serves to guide how SPU applies its risk and resiliency framework to policies, programs, plans, projects, and operations.

- *To make “no-regrets” investments in infrastructure, operations, and people that improve SPU’s ability to provide critical utility services in the face of future disruptions, changes, and opportunities.*

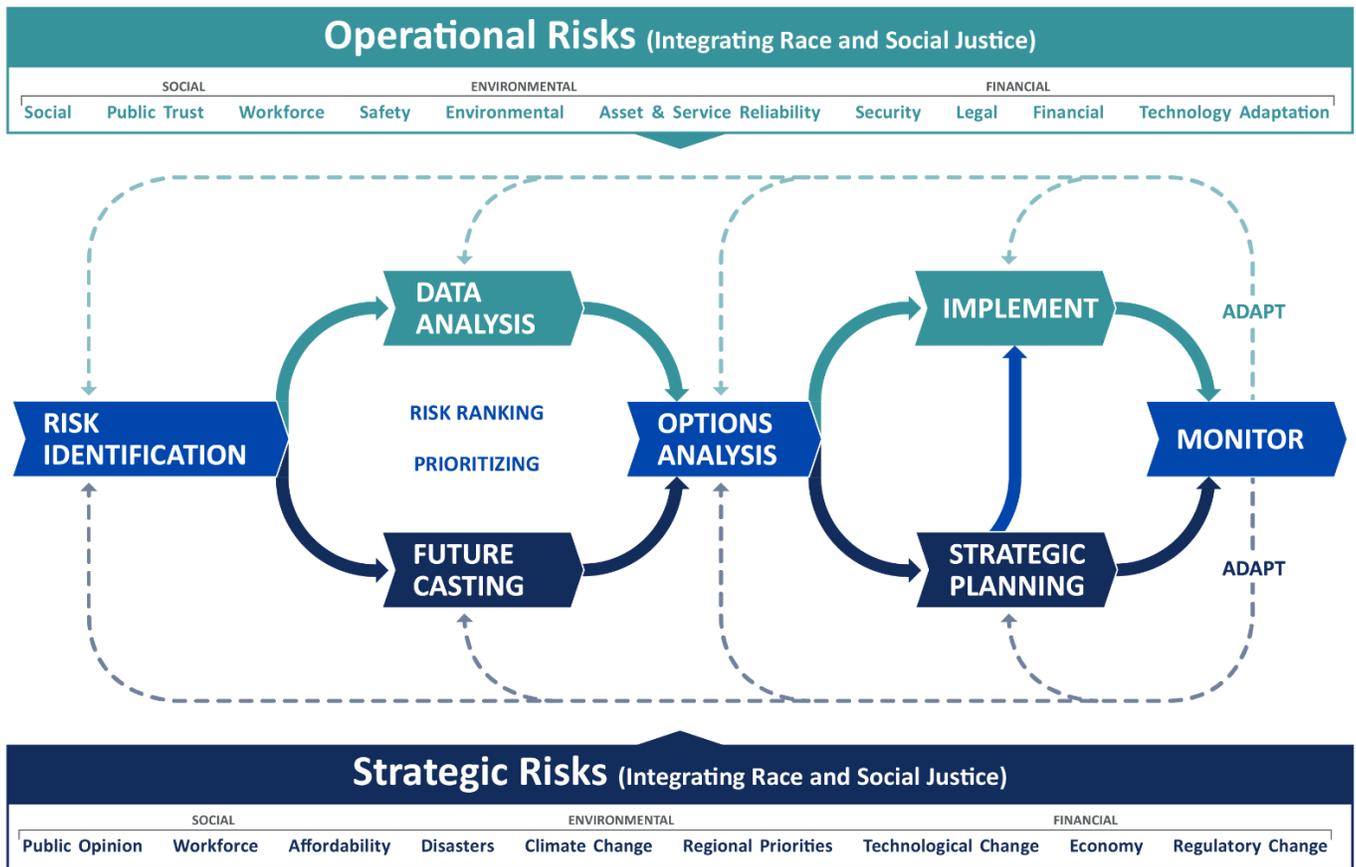
Risk Focus Areas

The table below shows the seven strategic risk areas SPU has identified. Sections 2-8 address these focus areas and provide a description of the risks as well as SPU's accomplishments in addressing these risks.

Climate Change	Disasters	Investment Priorities	Economy	Market Forces	Technology	Workforce
Drought	Earthquake	Regulatory-driven	Affordability	Ability to site facilities	Emerging and changing systems	Institutional knowledge loss
Extreme downpours	Terrorism	Projects and programs initiated by others	Population growth	Availability of raw materials	Independent systems	Skill availability and development
Sea level rise	Cyberattack	Aging, substandard infrastructure and facilities	Loss of customers and revenues	Recycling markets and revenues	New treatment techniques	Retention and turnover
Wildfires	Dam failure		Cost of debt			Marketplace competition
Air quality degradation	Volcanic eruption					
Temperature rise	Flooding					
	High winds					

Planning Process

SPU has developed a risk and resiliency planning process that brings together the assessment and management of both operational and strategic risks. SPU has had an operational risk framework since 2004. Programs, such as safety, security, and claims, are examples of ways that SPU manages operational risks. SPU also has been assessing and managing long-term, strategic risks, such as climate change and disasters. The following diagram shows SPU's planning process to comprehensively manage risk.

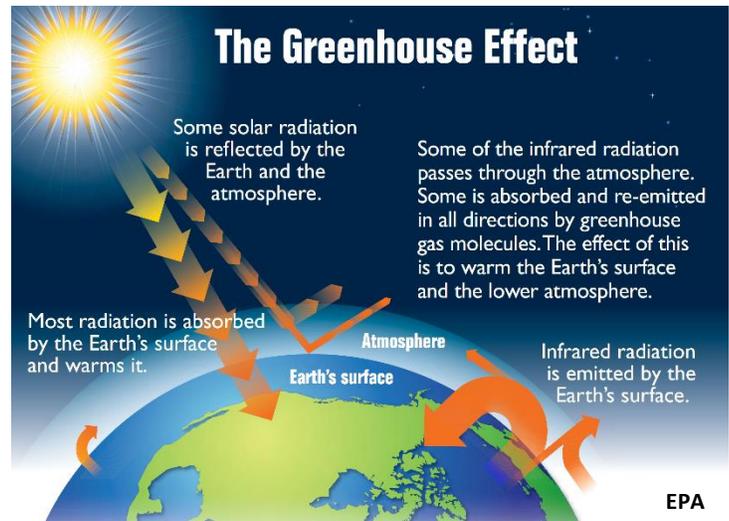


Brief Description for the Risk and Resiliency Planning Process:

1. *Risk Identification* – Identify risks within SPU and the industry.
2. *Future Casting and Data Analysis* – Develop and manage data, models, and scenarios that will assist in planning for a variety of possible futures.
3. *Risk Ranking and Prioritization* – Rank risks according to established measures and determine how this informs the prioritization of various bodies of work.
4. *Options Analysis* – Identify risk reduction options and assess cost-benefit, affordability, and impacts to vulnerable communities.
5. *Strategic Planning* – Determine how best to carry out and integrate selected options by exploring partnering, phasing, and additional planning.
6. *Implementation* – Plan how to initiate projects and programs, making sure they are incorporated into ongoing efforts.
7. *Monitoring* – Track the change in risk status and the effectiveness of strategies and controls.
8. *Adaptation* – Make changes as needed by returning to relevant steps in the planning process.

Section 2: Climate Change

Global warming puts more energy into the earth's atmosphere, which results in rising temperatures, changing weather patterns, more powerful storms, and melting ice caps and glaciers. The water cycle is particularly impacted. In the past, infrastructure engineers could assume, for the most part, that the future would conform to historical trends; now there is increasing uncertainty. Puget Sound climate patterns are changing and are expected to continue to do so in the coming decades. Climate change is impacting infrastructure systems, staff, and the communities SPU serves. SPU is a leader in assessing and working to adapt to a changing climate.



Drought

Description: SPU's water supply system historically relies on snowpack as a means of additional storage to meet demands during dry summer months. Snowmelt is more predictable than spring rains and releases water more slowly and over a longer period into the summer. Declining snowpack, rising temperatures, and more intense precipitation will result in an increase in the number and length of droughts.

Impacts: SPU's two water supply reservoirs, located in the mountains, are vulnerable to drought conditions. Drought years that produce little to no snow stress the system's capacity to provide sufficient water for people and fish.

Progress:

- *Climate Change Assessments:* SPU has completed three climate change assessments that focus on potential impacts to water supply availability, reliability, and streamflow. The 2002 assessment focused on reductions in snowpack and water supply. The 2007 assessment emphasized scenario planning and included some adaptation options. In 2015, the assessment shifted toward system vulnerabilities under multiple future scenarios. The assessments help SPU identify triggers for when to pursue more expensive adaptation options for water supply.
- *Water Demand Forecasting:* Uncertainty analysis is incorporated into SPU's long-term water demand forecast. This forecast is used to help make important long-term policy and investment decisions dependent on the future demand for water. Computer modeling factors in uncertainties around modal inputs and assumptions such as demographic growth, future water rates, conservation programs, and efficiency standards.

- *Morse Lake Pump Plant:* In 2015, SPU installed a new floating pump station and refurbished an existing pump plant for backup use on Chester Morse Lake, the largest of SPU's two water supply reservoirs. These pumps allow SPU to access high quality water when the lake level is low. This project improves SPU's resiliency during droughts while maintaining instream flows for aquatic habitat.
- *Water Shortage Contingency Plan:* This plan provides guidelines to manage water supply and demand in the event of water shortage, such as a drought or system failure. SPU has activated this plan six times in response to droughts over the last 20 years.
- *Climate Change Project Analysis:* SPU assesses potential climate change impacts for all proposed capital projects. An integral part of the economic analysis is considering how the project options might be affected by climate change in the form of altered precipitation patterns, warmer temperatures, reduced snowpack, and sea level rise. The analysis also considers the carbon footprint of these options.

Extreme downpours

Description: The city of Seattle is experiencing an increase in extreme rain events. Due to climate change, storms that were predicted to occur once a century now occur every 25 years.

Impacts: Extreme rain events pose capacity and water quality challenges for the drainage and wastewater system. With more inflow during peak rain events, the City's ability to remain in compliance with federal regulations for combined sewer overflows (CSOs) will grow more challenging. Extreme rain events can also increase sewer backups, localized urban flooding, and landslides, which have greater impacts on vulnerable communities (see 'Flooding' in the Disaster Section). In addition, extreme downpours can elevate turbidity in SPU's water supply systems, creating challenges for water treatment in the Cedar system.

Progress:

- *Drainage & Wastewater Integrated System Plan:* This plan provides an overall system analysis that includes climate change, growth impacts, flooding, water quality, and asset age and criticality, as well as equity and environmental assessments. The plan is being developed through engagement with the community, City departments, and partner agencies and organizations.
- *Drainage & Wastewater Models:* These models investigate anticipated climate change impacts on the stormwater system. There is an already-evident trend of more intense rain events and flooding. Results of this work will be considered in selecting and prioritizing projects and programs in the forthcoming Integrated System Plan. The possible long-term impacts of increased intensity and volume of rainfall on CSOs are an important part of this work given federal and state regulations.
- *CSO Sizing Approach Implementation Guidance 2017:* This guidance provides sizing parameters for CSO infrastructure based on anticipated climate change impacts. Recently planned CSO projects have been up-sized to deal with known changes in rainfall and additional projected changes in order to avoid overtaxing the system in future decades. This approach is based on comprehensive modeling and the best available science with the intent of balancing costs and system longevity.

- **Green Stormwater Infrastructure (GSI) Expansion Initiative:** GSI uses nature-based processes to lower the impact of polluted runoff on the environment and reduce flooding while maximizing community benefits. GSI increases the resiliency of the drainage and wastewater system in the face of climate change and urban growth by providing system capacity, redundancy, and emergency water supply. This initiative will accelerate the use of GSI through partnerships, innovation, and removal of barriers to implementation.
- **Duwamish Valley Infrastructure Investment:** SPU is making significant investments in South Park's Lower Industrial Area to address drainage, flooding, and stormwater quality. SPU is also partnering with the City of Seattle's Duwamish Valley Program and the South Park community to ensure these investments align with community priorities. The Center for Community Investment has given SPU a grant to work with City departments, outside partners, and the community to leverage these investments while building community capacity.

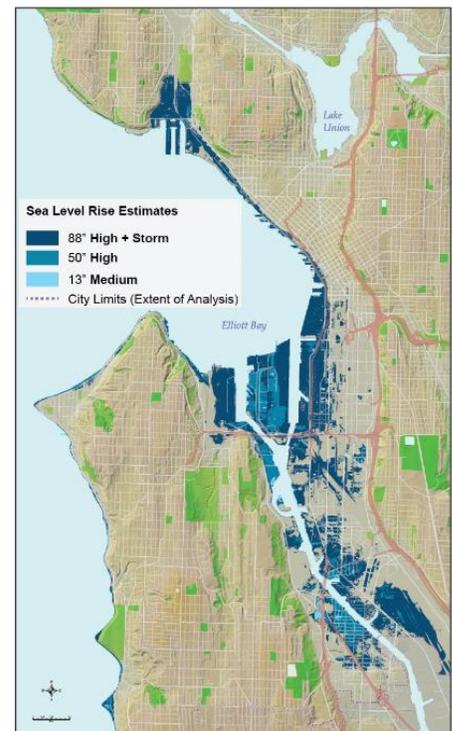
Sea level rise

Description: Seattle's Puget Sound shoreline has already risen more than six inches in the past century. By 2100, sea level rise (SLR) is projected to increase by another two to four feet. Water levels associated with storm surges and king tides that now occur annually will eventually become monthly, even daily events.

Impacts: SLR affects the extent and frequency of coastal flooding, particularly in areas such as the Duwamish, Interbay, and Alki. Impacts to these areas also include saltwater intrusion, corrosion, and loss of near-shore habitat and use. When high tides coincide with extreme rainfall, portions of the drainage system are briefly not able to discharge properly and back up, potentially flooding nearby areas.

Progress:

- **Sea Level Rise (SLR) Maps:** SPU has been mapping SLR for the last ten years to develop high resolution maps. SLR has been incorporated into the City's *Stormwater Manual*. The Drainage & Wastewater Line of Business developed and now applies their *Sea Level Rise Guidance* specifications to all new projects. All new infrastructure projects must be able to accommodate expected SLR within the project lifespan. As an example, the forthcoming South Park Pump Station will be raised by at least two feet to accommodate higher water levels.
- **Duwamish Valley Climate Change Adaptation Strategy:** SPU is partnering with the United States Army Corps of Engineers (USACE) on a sea level rise adaptation strategy in the Duwamish Valley. A 2017 USACE study found benefits to investing in infrastructure to protect the South Park industrial area. This study is the first step in joint work by the USACE and the City to fund and construct sea level rise infrastructure projects in this area. The next steps will include a detailed feasibility study and broader engagement with City departments and affected businesses.



Wildfire

Description: With a warming climate, the fire seasons are getting longer and there are more fires. Warmer temperatures and droughts increase the flammability of forest fuels and thereby increase fire intensity. Even the forests on the west side of the Cascade Mountains are now starting to be impacted. As a result, wildfire risk could be increasing in Seattle's two forested mountain watersheds. These watersheds provide Seattle's drinking water supply and serve as protected nature reserves.

Impacts: Wildfires in the watersheds could impact water quality and supply as well as habitat.

Progress:

- *Watershed Management:* SPU manages a closed watershed (no public access) and controls activities in the watershed during periods of high fire danger. SPU has a wildfire protection crew, equipment to respond to forest fires, and mutual-aid agreements with other agencies.
- *Watershed Wildfire Modeling:* SPU is working with partners including the City of Portland Water Bureau, Washington State University, University of Idaho, and the United States Forest Service to conduct wildfire modeling to assess potential impacts to municipal water quality and supply. This collaborative modeling effort will inform risk management strategies.
- *Cedar River Watershed Habitat Conservation Plan (HCP):* SPU has updated the watershed forest protection and restoration strategies in the HCP. These strategies resulted from a forest vulnerability assessment based on projected climate change, including the impacts of drought, snow loss, and forest insects and diseases. These strategies include forest thinning and planting different tree species that are better adapted to a changing climate. SPU is monitoring forest growth, disturbances, and mortality.



Air quality degradation

Description: Air quality is expected to worsen due to increased heat waves and wildfire smoke. For the past three summers, the city has been blanketed in smoke from wildfire events. Atmospheric warming is expected to intensify ground-level ozone and increase the prevalence of airborne allergens and air pollutants.

Impacts: Decreased air quality can negatively impact SPU employees, particularly operations and maintenance staff. Vulnerable populations, especially those with existing respiratory conditions, will be most impacted.

Progress:

- *Air Quality Safety Program:* SPU created a program to educate and train employees on safety measures during periods of degraded air quality. This program includes issuing protective respirator masks and monitoring air quality and the risks from smoke related to wildfire events. SPU is also partnering with other departments on a citywide effort to protect employees.

Temperature rise

Description: Seattle has averaged only a handful of extreme heat (90°+) days per year during the past few decades. By 2100, it is estimated that more than two weeks of extreme heat are projected each summer.

Impacts: Rising temperatures increase the likelihood of water quality incidents, including bacterial outbreaks and algal blooms. Warmer temperatures stress wildlife habitat and salmon recovery efforts. More frequent heat waves will also impact SPU staff and equipment, such as HVAC systems. Lower-income and minority communities will likely be most impacted by hotter summers.

Progress:

- *Heat Island Maps:* SPU is working with King County's Department of Natural Resources and Parks to better understand and quantify the ways in which land cover affects heat. The first ever complete urban heat island mapping project will take place during the summer of 2019 and is expected to inform community and infrastructure planning.
- *Heat Stress Training:* Providing crews with heat stress training and warnings when higher temperatures are expected. SPU's Safety Team provides cooling supplies and equipment to operations and maintenance staff when temperatures climb beyond 85°.
- *Fleet Reduction and Electrification:* SPU is working on fleet reduction and electrification to help mitigate climate change impacts and meet City goals. As the fleet is replaced, SPU is selecting cost-effective electric vehicle options. SPU is also installing electric vehicle charging stations, back-up generators, and exploring the use of solar powered charging stations so the fleet can function during an emergency when fuel and power is limited.

Section 3: Disasters

According to the City of Seattle Office of Emergency Management, Seattle faces the highest number of hazard types of any major American city. Disasters cause loss of life, public health issues, and property and environmental damage. Lower income and minority communities tend to suffer the most from disasters. For SPU, disasters damage infrastructure and facilities and disrupt the delivery of critical services. This can impact other downstream systems such as firefighting capability.

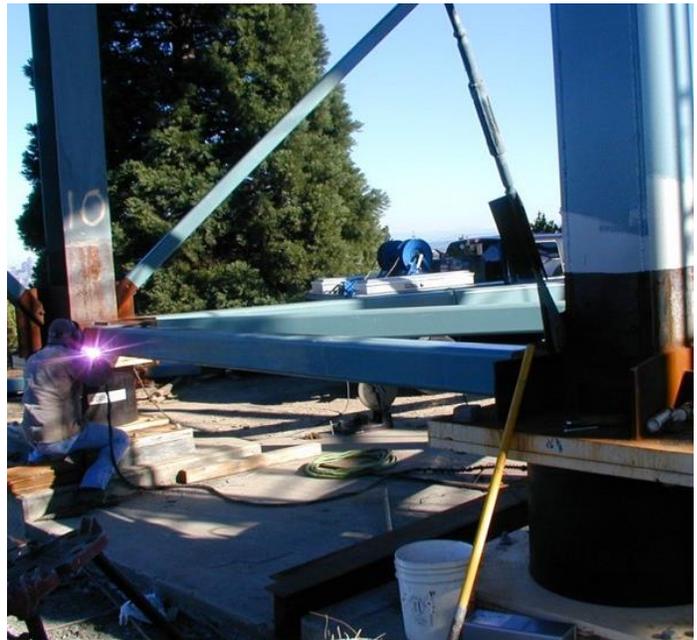
Earthquake

Description: Washington State has the second highest earthquake risk in the nation, following California. The Seattle area is prone to multiple earthquake types, ranging from Seattle Fault events to large scale Cascadia Subduction Zone events. In the last few decades, there has been new mapping of faults and cataloging of past seismic events. Impacts include ground movement, liquefaction, landslides, tsunamis, and seiches. Secondary impacts include fire, property damage, limited mobility, and loss of power.

Impacts: Damage to SPU's infrastructure will disrupt potable water provision, wastewater disposal, and solid waste collection and disposal. SPU will face more difficulty in responding to broken assets due to damaged roads, bridges, facilities, and other systems. Communities located in liquefaction zones, such as Georgetown and South Park, are even more vulnerable to earthquake impacts.

Progress:

- *Water System Seismic Study 2018:* This study modeled impacts of a magnitude 7.0 Seattle Fault Zone earthquake and a magnitude 9.0 Cascadia Subduction Zone earthquake. The study identifies over \$850 million of seismic investments over the next 50 years. Improvements include installing earthquake isolation valves on reservoirs and upgrading high-risk portions of the water system.
- *Seismic Investments:* Following the 1990 water system seismic study, SPU has spent more than \$100 million on seismic upgrades to transmission pipelines, pump stations, storage tanks, and other projects. Several reservoirs have been seismically upgraded with the goal of minimizing water losses after an earthquake.



- *Drainage and Wastewater System Seismic Study 2019:* A seismic study will be conducted to determine the impact of significant earthquake events on the drainage and wastewater system. The 2011 Tohoku earthquake, 2010 Christchurch earthquake, and the 1995 Kobe earthquake, all caused significant damage to drainage and wastewater systems, which prompted efforts to study impacts in Seattle.
- *Disaster Debris Management Plan:* This plan covers earthquakes, floods, and high winds. Only two jurisdictions in Washington State have Federal Emergency Management Agency-approved plans: SPU and Snohomish County. The plan designates staging areas within the City for debris and works in partnership with the Port of Seattle and the University of Washington.
- *Solid Waste Management Plan Amendment 2019-2020:* SPU is amending its 2011 Solid Waste Management Plan to integrate risk and resiliency objectives among other updates. The Plan details how SPU will manage the City's solid waste for the next twenty years and is required to be updated every five years. The Solid Waste Line of Business is also working to ensure the resiliency of their contractors that provide collection, hauling, processing, and landfill services.
- *All-Hazard Planning:* SPU plans for all hazards and the impacts those hazards have in common. The Continuity of Operations Plan (COOP) supports the continuation of SPU essential utility functions in an emergency. The Emergency Operations Plan (EOP) supports the restoration of core utility services in an emergency. The Comprehensive Emergency Management Plan (CEMP) and the SPU Hazard Identification and Vulnerability Assessment (HIVA) both serve as umbrella guiding documents.
- *Replacement Pipe/Materials Stockpiles:* Water system replacement pipe and other materials are being stockpiled at remote sites. An earthquake or other disruption could result in widely dispersed damage and impact transportation networks. Locating replacement parts near where they are needed will support repair work. Staff is also addressing the impact of power outages by providing back-up generators at all critical facilities.
- *Back-up Power:* SPU is developing a plan for back-up power units and extending the life of back-up power for security systems. The Security Team performs an annual assessment of facilities and tracks crime trends to better understand the measures needed to counteract vandalism, terrorism, and power outages.
- *Emergency Management Training and Exercise Program:* This program includes Incident Command System training and a quarterly exercise series. SPU also implements an After-Action Review process that identifies corrective actions and engages business units to make improvements. Additionally, SPU carried out a campaign to encourage staff to prepare their families for emergencies. To return to work after a disaster, staff must feel confident that their families are taken care of.
- *Water Supply Forum:* SPU is one of the co-founders of the Water Supply Forum that is comprised of water systems in King, Pierce, and Snohomish Counties. Staff have been involved in the development of the *Regional Water Supply Resiliency Project* to assess regional water systems for earthquake, climate change, drought, and water quality risks. The forum identified actions to be taken by water utilities including installing earthquake resistant piping and providing emergency potable water.

- *Mutual Aid Systems*: SPU is a member of a variety of mutual aid systems which provide equipment and personnel in the event of a disaster. SPU is part of the Washington Water/Wastewater Agency Response Network, the regional Pacific Northwest Emergency Management Arrangement, and the National Emergency Management Assistance Compact. These networks help SPU to be more resilient to disasters.

Terrorism

Description: SPU infrastructure and services, due to their critical and life-sustaining nature, are potential targets for terrorist attack.

Impacts: Terrorism can target SPU infrastructure and facilities such as pipelines, pump stations, treatment plants, and reservoirs. Contamination of the water supply is of particular concern. Impacts to the drainage and wastewater system could result in releases of untreated sewage into surface waters.

Progress:

- *EPA Water Infrastructure Act of 2018*: SPU is working on an Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) required risk assessment that will examine physical vulnerabilities in infrastructure, sites and facilities. This is a continuation of work that SPU has been performing for years to ensure the safety of the water system.
- *All-Hazards Planning*** (see progress item under Earthquake)
- *Emergency Management Training and Exercise Program*** (see progress item under Earthquake)
- *Mutual Aid Systems*** (see progress item under Earthquake)

Cyberattack

Description: A cyberattack involves a malicious, deliberate act that compromises data or critical infrastructure systems through disruption, theft of private information, fraud, or extortion.

Impacts: SPU can be impacted by cyberattacks on its operating systems for water, drainage and wastewater, and billing. Unauthorized access of personally identifiable or sensitive information could impact public trust and result in legal costs.

Progress:

- *Computer Systems Protection*: SPU is working with the Department of Homeland Security and other organizations testing and ensuring systems are protected by following industry best practices.
- *All-Hazards Planning*** (see progress item under Earthquake)
- *Emergency Management Training and Exercise Program*** (see progress item under Earthquake)

Dam Failure

Description: SPU operates fourteen dams of various sizes located mostly upstream of densely populated communities. All SPU dams are regulated by either the State Department of Ecology or the Federal Energy Regulatory Commission. Most of the dams are rated as High Hazard by the State or Federal regulators.

Impacts: A dam failure would impact people and property in downstream communities and SPU's water supply and storm detention systems.

Progress:

- *Tolt Dam Failure Exercise:* In May 2019, SPU partnered with Seattle City Light to lead a full-scale exercise that included regional response agencies. The Tolt Dam provides both power generation and roughly one third of SPU's drinking water supply. While the risk of dam failure is very small, the exercise allowed responders to practice, build relationships, test plans and procedures, and review lessons learned together.
- *Emergency Action Plans (EAP):* SPU developed EAPs for all high-hazard dams that could impact communities in the event of a dam failure. The EAPs clarify roles and notification responsibilities and are periodically exercised to test readiness of responders and stakeholders. EAPs were developed in collaboration with other City departments, affected communities, and emergency management agencies.
- *Dam Safety Program and Programmatic Plan:* SPU's utilizes this program and plan to actively monitor dam performance and to ensure safe operations.

Volcanic eruption

Description: Washington State is home to five active volcanoes located in the Cascade Range east of Seattle. Potential eruption impacts include blast, lahar, and ashfall.

Impacts: Ashfall can impact water quality, pipes and drains, vehicles, energy, and transportation systems.

Progress:

- *All-Hazards Planning*** (see progress item under Earthquake)
- *Emergency Management Training and Exercise Program*** (see progress item under Earthquake)
- *Mutual Aid Systems*** (see progress item under Earthquake)



Flooding

Description: SPU grapples with three flood types: major river flooding, coastal flooding, and urban and small stream flooding.

Impacts: In addition to safety impacts, floods can damage SPU infrastructure and private property. The increased frequency and severity of flooding due to climate change will lead to greater costs for claims, repair, and up-grading infrastructure.

Progress:

- *Wet Weather Readiness and Response Plan:* This plan identifies resources within SPU to prevent, prepare for, respond to, and recover from flood events to minimize adverse flooding impacts.
- *Sewer Backup Protection:* SPU developed a policy to provide guidance to SPU projects and programs to fund installation of backwater valves on customer property when the public sewer system can cause sewer backup on the property. In recent years, SPU has installed backwater valves in Broadview, South Park, and downtown.
- *Claims Process:* SPU developed a process to help customers impacted by events, including flooding, to quickly activate the claims process. SPU also helps place customers in emergency housing when these types of events are caused by SPU asset failure and when a customer's home is uninhabitable. SPU does this through direct placement into temporary housing or by partnering with non-profits and other City Departments.
- *All-Hazards Planning*** (see process item under Earthquake)

High winds

Description: SPU's systems can be impacted by winds over 60 mph and gusts over 90 mph. Winds of these intensities have become more frequent in the Puget Sound region.

Impacts: Power outages caused by high winds impact operations and systems. High wind events also frequently block roads with debris and make it more difficult to respond to emergencies. Impacts to SPU watershed operations include loss of power, communications, and road access.

Progress:

- *Disaster Debris Management Plan*** (see progress item under Earthquake)
- *All-Hazards Planning*** (see progress item under Earthquake)
- *Back-up Power*** (see progress item under Earthquake)

Section 4: Investment Priorities

SPU is one of many City of Seattle departments guided by the Mayor and City Council and is affected by citizen initiatives and other governmental agencies like King County, Washington State, Sound Transit, the Port of Seattle, and the Federal Government. Projects, programs, regulations, and citizen initiatives can result in new requirements for SPU and create added costs for regulatory compliance and maintaining public trust. In addition, up-grading and replacing aging infrastructure, adding new infrastructure, and adjusting for climate change and disaster impacts are costly but essential improvements to utility systems. All these initiatives can cause SPU to reprioritize projects and redirect programs, ultimately putting pressure on rates and impacting affordability.

Regulatory-Driven

Description: Regulations can result in new requirements with associated costs for compliance while also addressing important concerns and needs.

Impacts: SPU invests in new projects and programs to meet new and evolving regulations. This can lead to a reprioritizing of work and higher utility rates.

Progress:

- Ship Canal Water Quality Project:* SPU entered a consent decree with the Environmental Protection Agency, the Department of Justice, and Washington State Department of Ecology in 2013 to reduce sewer and combined sewer overflows into Seattle's local water bodies. The Ship Canal Water Quality Project, which will reduce these overflows, was built to maintain compliance with this decree. This is a joint project with King County that will cost \$570 million. Seattle's share is \$390 million.



- *Regulatory Review and Collaboration:* SPU is tracking, reviewing, and commenting on federal and state rules, policies, and permits that impose new requirements. The goal is to mitigate risks around regulatory compliance while maximizing the value of investments. SPU routinely provides written comments and in-person meetings to describe potential impacts to utility business. When possible, SPU provides alternative approaches that meet regulatory goals by reducing the impact to ratepayers.
- *Joint Operations and System Optimization Plan:* SPU is collaborating with King County Wastewater Treatment Division on the Joint Operations and System Optimization Plan approved in 2017. The goal is to improve drainage and wastewater system performance through collaboration and information sharing. The plan works to ensure compliance, maximize the capture and treatment of flows, and reduce operating costs.
- *Long Term Control Plan:* SPU is working on a financial capability assessment that informs the update to the Long Term Control Plan for combined sewer overflows. This analysis will incorporate new methods of evaluating the affordability of the plan that go beyond the Environmental Protection Agency guidelines. The outcome will also be used to negotiate with regulators about how best to maintain affordability, protect public and environmental health, and meet regulations.
- *Water Treatment Requirements:* SPU manages 100,000 acres of forested land that comprise the Cedar River and the South Tolt Watersheds. City ownership of watershed lands allows SPU to control access which safeguards water quality. Due to the high degree of protection of the Cedar River watershed, SPU is not subject to more costly federal and state treatment requirements from this source.

Projects and programs initiated by others

Description: Many agencies, including the City of Seattle, can adopt projects or programs that affect SPU's finances and operations and force a reprioritization of current work plans. Voters also can propose or repeal legislation through ballot measures.

Impacts: Future initiatives can force SPU to relocate or replace assets sooner than anticipated, resulting in new unplanned for, and unfunded costs. This work may also provide strategic opportunities to address infrastructure improvements and build partnerships.

Progress:

- *Right of Way Cooperation and Shared Cost Program:* SPU is working with a variety of transportation agencies on the Right of Way Cooperation and Shared Cost Program. Major initiatives, such as Move Seattle, have significant impacts on SPU infrastructure project selection and prioritization. SPU strives to improve right of way coordination to reduce impacts on the public during construction activity and to otherwise prioritized projects.

Aging, substandard infrastructure and facilities

Description: SPU manages extensive infrastructure systems that include reservoirs, treatment plants, piping networks, pump stations, transfer stations, landfills, and more. Growth generates the need for greater system capacity, adding more wear and tear to the system, and making it more complicated to work in the right-of-way.

Impacts: Portions of the system, particularly in the piping network, are approaching a century or more in age. The piping systems are below ground and costly to access, repair, and replace. The need to address seismic and climate change risks will require expensive system upgrades.

Progress:

- Asset Management Program:** SPU is managing infrastructure assets to achieve optimal value. SPU’s Asset Management Program develops plans for asset classes to guide their management through operational, maintenance, and investment recommendations. Each plan integrates risk criteria such as impacts to public and environmental health, regulatory compliance, and service interruptions. As an example, the Drainage & Wastewater Pipe Rehabilitation Program completed 12 miles of work in 2018, the highest annual amount in SPU history.
- Water Main Rehabilitation and Replacement Program:** SPU’s water system includes over 1,630 miles of water main pipes. The average age of these pipes is more than 70 years. SPU proactively rehabilitates and replaces water pipes based on a risk profile that includes the history of leaks and breaks. Rehabilitation includes lining the interior of the pipe and/or adding cathodic protection.
- Cathodic Protection Program:** Cathodic protection is a method used to minimize the rate of corrosion by shifting the corrosion process away from metal pipes and onto more easily corroded “sacrificial” pieces of metal. Cathodic protection systems have been shown to extend the life of pipes and reduce the risk of failures as the pipes age. SPU installs and maintains these systems on sections of water mains and transmission pipes where feasible and cost-effective.
- Solid Waste Transfer Stations:** SPU has completed two new Solid Waste transfer stations - the South Transfer Station in 2013, and the North Transfer Station in 2016. These facilities are built to withstand seismic events, process material more quickly, and hold more material during shipping delays.



- *Watershed Headquarters Building:* SPU completed the new Watershed Headquarters building in 2018. This facility supports field and office staff and can function as an incident management center outside of city limits, but will primarily serve watershed-related emergencies such as wildfire. This LEED Gold building uses on-site geothermal energy for HVAC and can support future solar power generation. In 2019, SPU will erect a radio tower to improve adverse weather communications.
- *Flood Control Projects:* SPU is being awarded over \$17 million dollars from the King County Flood Control District for projects that address significant flooding problems in three priority areas of the city. The projects are drainage improvements in South Park neighborhood, culvert replacement in West Duwamish, and addressing flooding in Broadview neighborhood.
- *In-City Facilities Master Plan 2016/2018*** (see progress item in Market Forces/Ability to site facilities)

Section 5: Economy

Changes in the economy affect the growth and vibrancy of the City and customers' ability to pay for their utilities. Economic conditions impact revenue streams, rates, labor costs, construction costs, debt costs, and SPU's ability to provide affordable services. SPU strives to balance the costs of maintaining utility systems and making needed upgrades while keeping rates affordable.



Affordability

Description: Seattle is becoming increasingly unaffordable and this puts pressure on SPU customers' ability to afford utility services.

Impacts: Increased costs make it more difficult to find the balance between maintaining and upgrading infrastructure systems and services while achieving affordability.

Progress:

- *Affordability and Accountability Initiative:* A central purpose of this initiative is to improve service, provide better value, and increase the utility's focus on accountability and affordability. A plan has been developed with the following focus areas: Capital Planning and Delivery, Efficiency and Improvement, Customer Assistance, Partnership Opportunities, Regulatory Alignment, Budgeting and Financial Management.
- *Utility Assistance Programs:* SPU's Utility Discount Program (UDP) provides eligible customers with a 50% discount on their SPU bills, and the Emergency Assistance Program (EAP) provides a 50% discount for customers at risk of shutoff. In 2018, approximately 32,000 households were enrolled in UDP and 884 households were provided emergency assistance.
- *Low-income Water Conservation Program:* Since 2001, this program has provided free fixtures and installation for qualified single-family and multi-family customers. By the end of 2016, the program had served over 6,000 single family households and nearly 20,000 multi-family households.
- *Water Supply Demand Management*** (see this progress item under Loss of customers and revenues)

Population growth

Description: The City of Seattle’s population continues to grow rapidly. Growth creates more demand for services, puts pressure on resources, drives up construction and land costs, and creates a burden on infrastructure. Future population growth could also result from people moving to Seattle to escape more pronounced climate change impacts elsewhere.

Impacts: Despite the growth in the customer base, overall consumption has continued to decline due to conservation practices and the shift toward multi-family housing. Growth has also significantly increased the cost of housing and worsened traffic congestion. Recent surveys found that 75% of SPU field staff and 60% of office staff now live outside the city. Increased traffic congestion makes it more difficult for staff to commute, get to job sites, and respond to emergencies.

Progress:

- *Budgeting and Forecasting:* SPU is tracking economic trends and factoring them into budgeting and forecasting. Seattle’s recent economic and population growth has increased the costs of construction, property, and labor. In the past, population growth would increase revenues through higher demand for water and wastewater services. As anticipated by SPU forecasters, water demand has been flat over the last decade as increased water use efficiency has offset the growth in the customer base.
- *Affordability and Accountability Initiative*** (see progress item under Affordability)

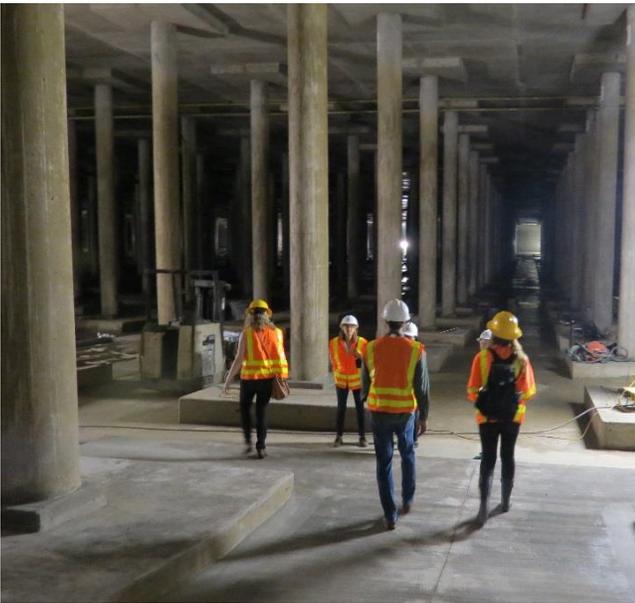
Loss of customers and revenues

Description: Relatively high costs for utility services and/or other factors can drive customers to seek other providers. An economic downturn can lead to a decrease in consumption/revenues of SPU services with little decrease in the cost of providing those services.

Impacts: Loss of major retail or wholesale customers can reduce associated revenues, which can result in increased rates for remaining customers. Loss of revenues due to an economic downturn can result in rate increases, staff reductions, or reduced services.

Progress:

- *Water Supply Demand Management:* Effective demand management has led to a large decrease in total water demand despite large population growth. Since 1990, water use per person has shrunk from 152 to fewer than 90 gallons per day. This has allowed SPU to avoid developing expensive new supply sources. This was achieved through conservation programs, rate structure changes, and efficiencies. Demand management supports resiliency and affordability while providing more water for in-stream flows.
- *Affordability and Accountability Initiative*** (see progress item under Affordability)
- *Budgeting and Forecasting*** (see progress item under Population boom)
- *Financial Policies*** (see progress item under Cost of debt)



Cost of debt

Description: When local governments and utilities pay high interest on debt, less money is available for providing services and this can impact rates and affordability. High levels of debt can impact bond ratings and the cost of borrowing. SPU and the City of Seattle have good financial health. This allows SPU to borrow at low interest rates, thereby reducing overall project costs.

Impacts: New regulatory requirements, City and County initiatives, and other factors can result in the need to take on higher levels of debt. SPU will likely incur significant expenditures to undertake seismic, climate change, and other system-wide improvements to be resilient. SPU will have to balance how to fund needed system upgrades while keeping rates affordable.

Progress:

- *Financial Policies:* SPU has adopted financial policies that provide for long-term financial health and contingency funding for disruptions. The City and Utility's strong financial health allows SPU to achieve low cost financing. SPU works to support a predictable rate path with gradual changes as households with limited means are hit hardest by rate spikes.
- *Affordability and Accountability Initiative*** (see progress item under Affordability)
- *Water Supply Demand Management*** (see progress item under Loss of customers and revenues)
- *Budgeting and Forecasting*** (see progress item under Population boom)

Section 6: Market Forces

SPU is impacted by market-based actions taken by other businesses, organizations, states, and countries. SPU's market connections include the ability to site facilities, obtain raw materials, and sell commodities like recyclables. Market forces can increase SPU's cost of doing business but also provide opportunities for bringing in more revenue to offset costs.

Ability to site facilities

Description: As the City becomes denser through infill and up-zoning, land acquisition costs increase. Siting industrial-type facilities in areas with a growing mix of residential development also becomes more challenging. In addition, site selection is restricted by flooding, climate change, and seismic considerations.

Impacts: SPU is faced with higher costs for siting and building facilities.

Progress:

- *In-City Facilities Master Plan 2016/2018:* SPU completed an In-City Facilities Master Plan in 2016 that was updated in 2018. This plan provides a facility condition and needs assessment with an investment plan for the next 30 years. Investing in resilient facilities will be essential to supporting emergency response and service restoration in a variety of disasters, particularly earthquakes.

Availability of raw materials

Description: The availability of raw materials changes with market conditions, foreign relations, government agreements, and wars.

Impacts: SPU's construction and maintenance projects are impacted by sudden changes in raw material prices such as the price of steel.

Progress:

- *Ship Canal Water Quality Project Analysis:* SPU is evaluating the impact of construction market conditions on the design and construction of the Ship Canal Water Quality Project. This analysis broke down costs between raw materials, property, and skilled labor for purposes of improved budget planning and transparency with customers, elected officials, and the public.

Recycling markets and revenue

Description: Revenue from recyclable materials is subject to market fluctuations and foreign government decisions. Many commodity markets exist offshore and are subject to trade agreements.

Impacts: These markets can change, having a negative or positive impact on SPU contractors' ability to sell recyclables. Revenues received from the sale of sorted recyclable commodities support on-going programs and keep customer rates down.

Progress:

- *Recyclable Processing Contract:* SPU developed a recyclable processing contract that provides protection against upward and downward market swings. The contractor is paid a set fee to process recyclables and the revenue from selling the recyclables is reimbursed to the City. This helps the contractor stay in business during periods of low prices and ensures that SPU recycling services are not disrupted. The benefits of recycling are further augmented by the avoided costs of landfill disposal.
- *Responsible Recycling Task Force:* SPU is working with regional partners to address changes in international recycling markets as part of the Responsible Recycling Task Force. This was prompted by China's Blue Skies Policy that significantly tightened the standards and costs for the import of specific materials, including mixed plastics and mixed waste paper. These restrictions have impacted costs to sort and process materials and caused a significant price drop in recyclable commodities. The Task Force explored how to improve and expand domestic markets for recyclables and published recommendations in January 2019.



Section 7: Technology

New and rapidly evolving technologies present opportunities and challenges for SPU. Advancements can eliminate jobs while creating new jobs that require training. The rate of change can create a burden on SPU's ability to stay current. New platforms usually require costly integration and employee training. New technologies can also increase efficiency and help to recruit and retain employees. Emerging technologies are often heralded with benefits that need to be tested before potential adoption. The internet provides new ways for customers to connect with SPU services, but economic, racial, and language barriers to access these services need to be considered.



Emerging and changing systems

Description: The increasing pace of technological change could require SPU to make system upgrades that drive up costs due to software licenses, training, and resourcing technology projects and initiatives. Emerging technologies can also alter the way work is done, rendering certain tasks or systems obsolete. Technology can also help to optimize existing systems. For example, an array of sensors throughout the piping network could assist in monitoring flows and detecting backups, leaks, and other issues.

Impacts: Technological changes have the potential of improving overall system efficiency, helping to focus investments, and improving safety. In addition, the increased speed and complexity of change can drive demand for tech-related equipment replacement and employees with new skills. All these changes have associated costs, which can impact efficiency, service quality, and rates.

Progress:

- *Data Management:* SPU staff in collaboration with Seattle IT are developing a data governance program and providing data management resources. SPU staff have been identified as Business Owners for over 150 technology applications that support SPU work. SPU will also create a guide to data access to give staff the information they need to leverage data resources.
- *Privacy Program:* SPU created a privacy team to embed the City's privacy policies into SPU computer applications, projects, and contracts. This effort to responsibly manage personal information helps maintain employee and customer privacy as SPU navigates technological change.

- *Robotics:* SPU is researching new ways to use robotics to investigate the condition of SPU infrastructure. Any use of robotics will include a partnership with the City and strict compliance with the City's Privacy Policy.

Independent systems

Description: There are ongoing advancements in decentralized systems for treating and collecting storm and wastewater and disposing of solid waste. Decentralized systems may also support resiliency after disasters and other disruptions.

Impacts: Loss of customer-base to decentralized water systems may reduce revenues. However, decentralized systems could assist SPU in delaying the need to develop costly new water supplies and help manage drainage flows.

Progress:

- *Decentralized Systems:* SPU is exploring the role of decentralized systems in providing a more distributed and resilient utility system. SPU is an active member on the National Blue-Ribbon Commission for Non-Potable Water Systems which is developing water quality criteria and operational guidelines, assisted in the City's two Living Building Pilot programs, and is working with agencies and non-profits to develop clear statewide rulemaking for design, permitting, and operation.

New treatment techniques

Description: Discovery of new contaminants, stricter water quality standards and regulations, and new treatment techniques may require new or enhanced treatment systems.

Impacts: SPU could be required to install costly new treatment equipment or even build new treatment facilities for its water, wastewater, and stormwater systems.

Progress:

- *Water Treatment:* SPU's water treatment plants use ultraviolet radiation and ozonation for treating micro-organisms like Giardia and Cryptosporidium. SPU's burying of in-city treated water reservoirs prevents contamination while allowing open space and park usage on the surface.



Section 8: Workforce

SPU employees are the organization's most important asset. Hiring and retaining employees with the right skills and protecting institutional knowledge is critical for executing SPU's Mission. Reduced skill availability in certain job categories, loss of institutional knowledge from retirement or departure, speed of turnover, and market competition all impact SPU's ability to deliver high quality services. Workforce challenges also provide opportunities to create a diverse and equitable utility that reflects the community SPU serves.

Institutional knowledge loss

Description: As workers retire or depart, SPU loses the knowledge and history they have. As the 'boomer' generation continues to retire, an increased institutional knowledge loss is expected.

Impacts: Recent estimates indicate 46 percent of SPU employees are eligible for retirement within five years. Without sufficient transfer programs or succession planning, this loss of knowledge has the potential to reduce the efficiency of operations and affect service quality.

Progress:

- Skills and Knowledge Transfer:** SPU is managing a series of programs that address workforce risks led by the Skills and Knowledge Transfer Team. There are two mentoring programs that pair new and longer-term employees. One is a traditional six-month program, and the other is a collaboration to identify solutions to workplace challenges. The Pathways to Leadership, Utility 101 lunch-time presentation series, and guided tours of the water and solid waste systems also facilitate knowledge transfer and training.
- Procedures and Manuals:** SPU is updating procedures and manuals and maintaining those documents on SPU's SharePoint site for easy reference. The Fleets and Warehouse Division is a leader in this effort. They pair newer employees with those nearing retirement to ensure knowledge transfer and use special projects as an opportunity to cross-train employees and further employee development.
- Apprenticeship Program**** (see progress item under Skills availability and development)



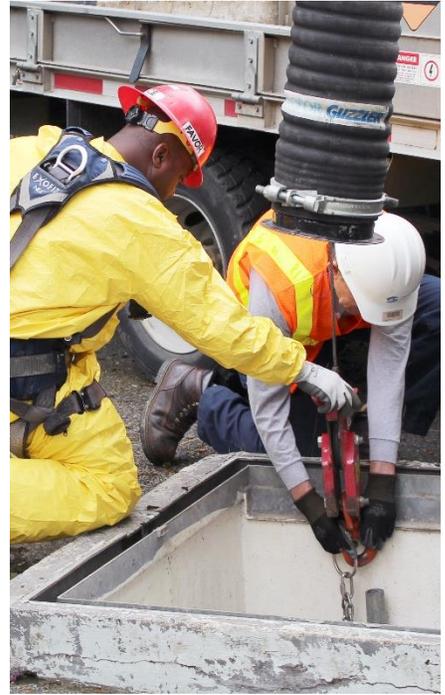
Skill availability and development

Description: SPU's positions are diverse, and many require highly technical skills or multiple years of experience. Skill gaps exist where there are not enough candidates in certain categories, both internally and externally.

Impacts: These issues can result in longer vacancies, a less skilled workforce, and decreased production. Competition can reduce the pool of eligible candidates, push wages up, and result in longer vacancy times.

Progress:

- *Apprenticeship Program:* SPU is restarting the registered apprenticeship programs for pipe workers in the Water and Drainage & Wastewater Lines of Business. Filling key operations and maintenance staff positions is becoming more challenging with retirements and competition from other employers. These programs address institutional knowledge loss by involving long-term operations and maintenance staff in curriculum design and teaching. Apprenticeship opportunities also serve the goal of supporting a more diverse workforce.
- *Skills and Knowledge Transfer*** (see progress item under Institutional knowledge loss)
- *Procedures and Manuals*** (see progress item under Institutional knowledge loss)



Retention and turnover

Description: High turnover increases the need for training and leads to decreased knowledge and experience. Employee retention is impacted by professional development opportunities, training and mentoring, workload, performance management, and market competition. As the economy booms, the turnover speed increases.

Impacts: SPU's service delivery and costs are impacted by rates of retention and turnover.

Progress:

- *New Employee Orientation Program:* This program includes three levels of orientation. On the first day, new employees receive a two-hour session that includes SPU and City of Seattle basic information. Within the first month of employment, employees will receive a four-hour session to increase their knowledge about working for SPU. Within the first quarter of employment, new supervisors will receive a four-hour session to prepare them for their roles of managing staff.
- *Apprenticeship Program*** (see progress item under Skills availability and development)
- *Skills and Knowledge Transfer*** (see progress item under Institutional knowledge loss)

Marketplace competition

Description: Private and non-profit sectors as well as other public organizations compete with SPU for skilled candidates. Governments face stiff competition from the private sector's higher wages. Competition may also drive up wages for positions requiring specialized and in-demand skills. While government jobs have certain advantages over other sectors, there are also tradeoffs.

Impacts: Seattle's rising cost of living and long commutes negatively impact employees' quality of life, creating competition with employers closer to workers' homes. Interest in the public sector fluctuates and impacts SPU's ability to hire a diverse and skilled workforce.

Progress:

- *Recruitment Strategy:* SPU is enhancing its recruitment strategy to increase the candidate pool for open positions. As the recruitment market shifts and demographics change, SPU is implementing more creative ways to attract talent. With the addition of a new Recruitment Manager and an additional recruitment staff position, SPU will move toward a community-centered outreach approach for filling vacancies.

Section 9: Next Steps



SPU recognizes that managing risk and resiliency is key to sustaining vital public services. This has been a central feature of how the Water, Drainage & Wastewater, and Solid Waste services have evolved to meet new challenges and opportunities. In recent decades, the diversity and magnitude of recognized risks has grown. As a community-centered utility, SPU has undertaken this recent effort to be more systematic and integrated about risk management.

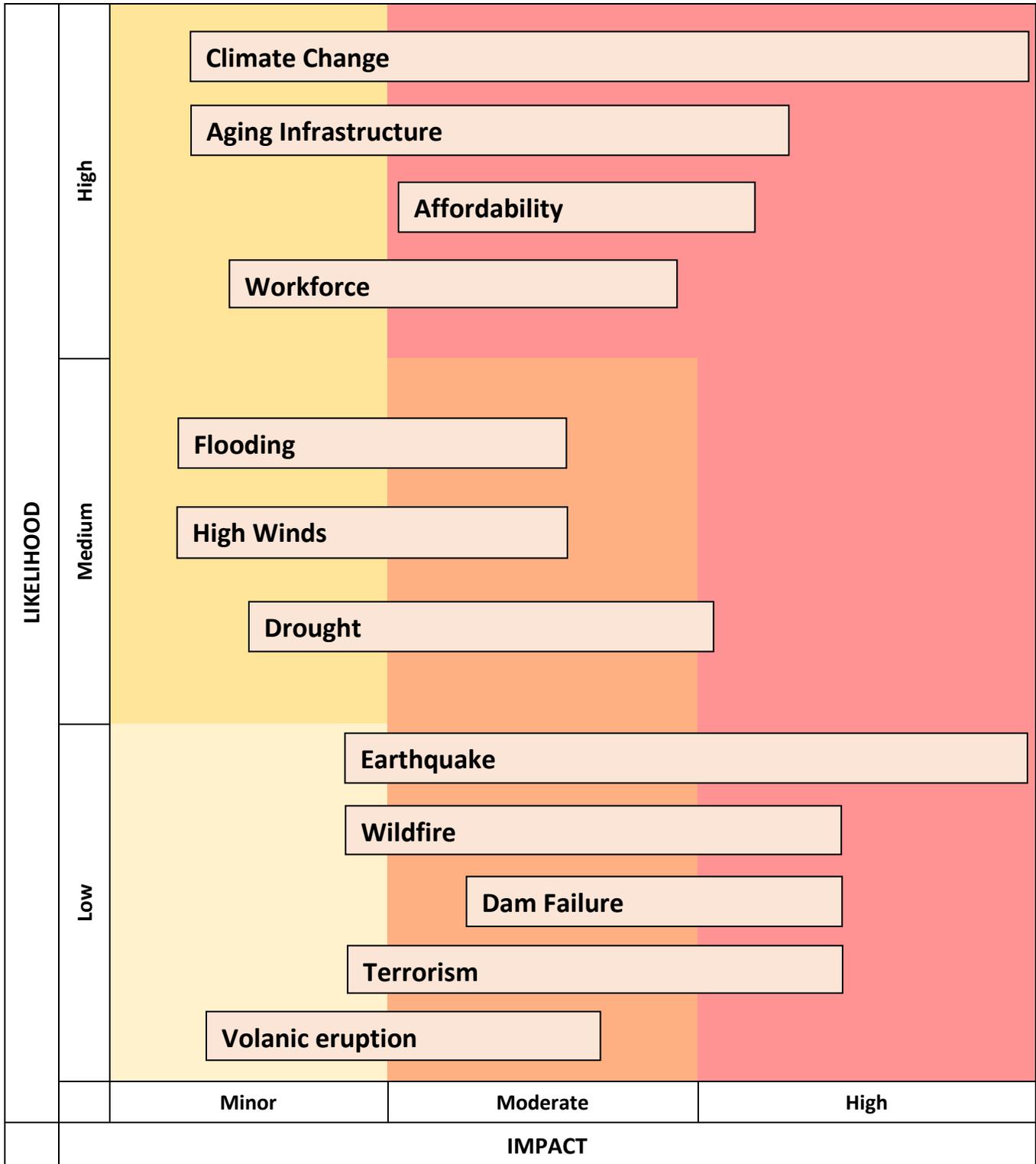
This report has described each of the strategic risk categories along with progress assessments. Some risk areas, such as climate change and disasters, have been on the radar for several decades and are being addressed by a variety of programs and projects. Other categories, such as technology, are developing rapidly and require increased focus. The framework assists SPU's business units to optimize investments that comprehensively address risk and improve resiliency.

Next steps include:

- A vulnerability matrix detailing the most significant risks for SPU
- A complete inventory and assessment of existing work for high priority risk areas
- Identification of critical interdependencies with other agencies and organizations
- Identification of disparate community impacts and opportunities to take equitable and corrective actions
- A prioritization of work that addresses high priority risk areas
- Cost benefit analyses of projects and programs that support risk reduction
- Efforts that address multiple risk areas while optimizing public benefits
- Further development of data sets, models, and scenarios
- A workshop to explore potential future impacts of technology on service delivery
- Communication and outreach with agency and community partners

SPU's risk and resiliency framework will continue to evolve. As this work develops, SPU will share progress and seek feedback from a variety of partners and stakeholders. SPU does not have a crystal ball to see the future, but risk and resiliency efforts improve the utility's ability to adapt to disruptions, changes, and opportunities. This all aligns with SPU's mission to provide vital services to the community that are affordable, equitable, and resilient.

Appendix A: Impact-Likelihood Matrix



❖ This chart is very high level and is provided for illustrative purposes only.

SUMMARY and FISCAL NOTE*

Department:	Dept. Contact/Phone:	CBO Contact/Phone:
Seattle Public Utilities	Paula Laschober/402-7785 (cell)	Akshay Iyengar/684-0716

** Note that the Summary and Fiscal Note describes the version of the bill or resolution as introduced; final legislation including amendments may not be fully described.*

1. BILL SUMMARY

Legislation Title: A RESOLUTION relating to Seattle Public Utilities; adopting a 2021-2026 Strategic Business Plan for Seattle Public Utilities; and endorsing a three-year rate path and a subsequent, three-year rate forecast to support the Strategic Business Plan Update.

Summary and background of the Legislation:

This legislation adopts a six-year Strategic Business Plan (the Plan) for Seattle Public Utilities (SPU) for the years 2021-2026. It also endorses an average annual rate increase of 4.2 percent, across all lines of business, to support the Plan.

In 2012, the Council passed a Statement of Legislative Intent directing Seattle Public Utilities to develop a six-year Strategic Business Plan.

Resolution 31429 subsequently clarified the primary goal of the Plan, which is to set a transparent and integrated direction for all of SPU’s business lines that reflects customer values, provides rate predictability for utility customers, and results in best value for customer dollars. This resolution also established a nine-member Customer Review Panel to provide input to the Plan during its development and provide the Mayor and City Council comments on the Plan concurrent with delivery of the final proposed Plan to Council.

The Strategic Business Plan process provides a forum for discussion between the Utility, elected officials, and customer stakeholders and increases transparency and accountability for decision-making within the Utility. This plan incorporates community and utility feedback as part of the programming and direction for the future of SPU.

The 2021-2026 rate path for water, drainage, wastewater and solid waste rates is shown below.

	<u>Rate Path</u>			<u>Rate Forecast</u>			<u>Average</u>
	2021	2022	2023	2024	2025	2026	
Water	0.0%	2.7%	4.7%	3.6%	4.2%	5.5%	3.4%
Sewer	7.3%	3.1%	5.9%	0.5%	7.8%	3.6%	4.7%
Drainage	7.4%	8.6%	7.2%	3.9%	6.5%	6.7%	6.7%
Solid Waste	2.9%	2.9%	2.2%	2.3%	2.1%	2.1%	2.4%
Combined	4.5%	3.9%	5.0%	2.2%	5.4%	4.2%	4.2%

*Note: The combined totals are weighted averages by line of business.

There are no revenues or reimbursements as a direct result of this legislation, nor does it directly impact spending or cash flow. Revenues, spending, and cash flow related to the Plan were adopted with the 2021 Budget legislation and expected rate study legislation.

2. CAPITAL IMPROVEMENT PROGRAM

Does this legislation create, fund, or amend a CIP Project? Yes No

3. SUMMARY OF FINANCIAL IMPLICATIONS

Does this legislation amend the Adopted Budget? Yes No

Does the legislation have other financial impacts to The City of Seattle that are not reflected in the above, including direct or indirect, short-term or long-term costs?

Is there financial cost or other impacts of *not* implementing the legislation?

No.

4. OTHER IMPLICATIONS

a. Does this legislation affect any departments besides the originating department?

This legislation does not directly affect any other department. Certain projects contained in the Plan are completed in conjunction with other departments including SDOT and SCL, but coordination is already established and ongoing.

b. Is a public hearing required for this legislation?

No.

c. Is publication of notice with *The Daily Journal of Commerce* and/or *The Seattle Times* required for this legislation?

No.

d. Does this legislation affect a piece of property?

No.

- e. Please describe any perceived implication for the principles of the Race and Social Justice Initiative. Does this legislation impact vulnerable or historically disadvantaged communities? What is the Language Access plan for any communications to the public?**

In developing the Plan, SPU used an equity lens with regard to its programming and capital projects planning. Based on feedback, SPU took an extensive look at affordability within the Plan, and what that means within the various communities of color in the service area.

f. Climate Change Implications

- 1. Emissions: Is this legislation likely to increase or decrease carbon emissions in a material way?**

Please see the Plan document for a complete list of goals, strategies and highlighted investments and initiatives. During the 6-year period, SPU is continuing to electrify its fleets and facilities as part of the City's green fleets and buildings initiatives, both of which help to reduce carbon emissions. SPU is also working to assess carbon emissions associated with solid waste consumption and reduce consumption through waste prevention and diversion programs.

- 2. Resiliency: Will the action(s) proposed by this legislation increase or decrease Seattle's resiliency (or ability to adapt) to climate change in a material way? If so, explain. If it is likely to decrease resiliency in a material way, describe what will or could be done to mitigate the effects.**

Please see the Plan document for a complete list of goals, strategies and highlighted investments and initiatives. This legislation will increase Seattle's resiliency through investments in One Water resiliency such as green infrastructure and sea level rise adaptation and increased seismic retrofits on various assets, such as such as water pipes that deliver water from the Utility's watersheds to its customers.

- g. If this legislation includes a new initiative or a major programmatic expansion: What are the specific long-term and measurable goal(s) of the program? How will this legislation help achieve the program's desired goal(s)?**

Please see the Plan document for a complete list of programming and goals.

List attachments/exhibits below:

Summary Exhibit A - Seattle Public Utilities' Fiscal Health Memo to CBO, January 11, 2021



MEMORANDUM

Date: January 11, 2021
To: Ben Noble, Director, City Budget Office
From: Mami Hara, General Manager & CEO, Seattle Public Utilities
Subject: Proposed 2021-2026 Strategic Business Plan Rate Path and current SPU Financial Status

Executive Summary

This memo highlights the proposed rate path as part of the Seattle Public Utilities' (SPU) proposed 2021-2026 Strategic Business Plan and describes the utility's current financial status as we look to implement the plan. The proposed rate path averages 4.2% over the six-year term and is a 20% decrease from the prior adopted rate path. In addition to operations and maintenance, these rates fund capital projects - many of which are required under federal and state regulations - taxes, and other obligations. Overall, there are no substantial changes to the Utility's operations and capital program.

SPU is in sound financial shape and all of SPU's funds are financially strong, despite COVID-19 related financial stressors, allowing for SPU to support current and emerging needs. The proposed rates path includes significant reductions in SPU's annual costs. These cost containment and savings efforts help the Utility meet financial policy goals while preserving rate revenues that can be used to prevent rate volatility and smooth future rates. At the same time, SPU strives to enhance affordability and has developed several customer programs that offer significant support.

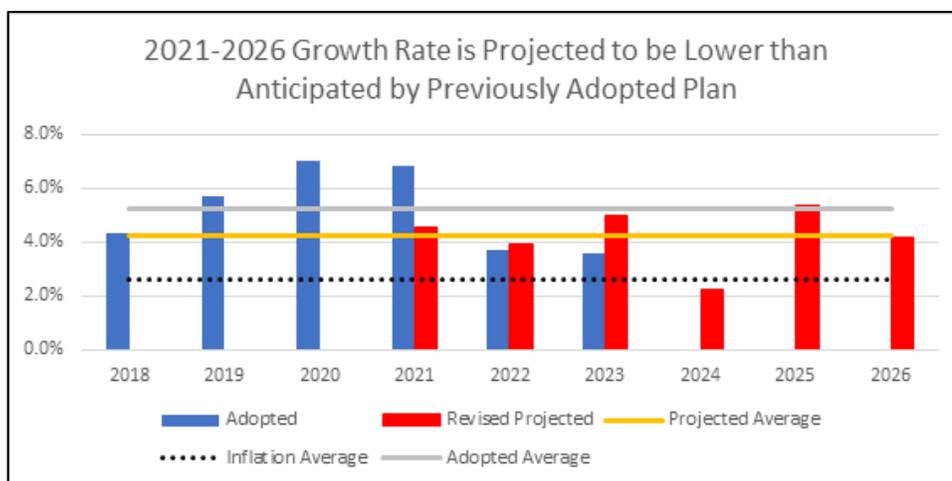
Strategic Business Plan Rate Path

Seattle Public Utilities is proposing the new 2021-2026 Strategic Business Plan (SBP) to guide essential service delivery and a comprehensive business strategy for our three lines of business: drinking water, drainage and wastewater, and solid waste. The plan looks forward to the next six years (2021-2026) and provides a predictable three-year rate path to be adopted by City Council and projections for the subsequent three years.

	Rate Path			Rate Forecast			Average
	2021	2022	2023	2024	2025	2026	
Water	0.0%	2.7%	4.7%	3.6%	4.2%	5.5%	3.4%
Sewer	7.3%	3.1%	5.9%	0.5%	7.8%	3.6%	4.7%
Drainage	7.4%	8.6%	7.2%	3.9%	6.5%	6.7%	6.7%
Solid Waste	2.9%	2.9%	2.2%	2.3%	2.1%	2.1%	2.4%
Combined	4.5%	3.9%	5.0%	2.2%	5.4%	4.2%	4.2%

SPU deferred introducing the 2021-2026 SBP from 2020 until 2021 because of COVID and the pandemic impacts to the local and regional economies. SPU anticipates formally introducing the SBP in early 2021. For more information, please see the Timing Information in Appendix A.

The Proposed SBP calls for a substantially lower six-year rate path compared with projections from the last adopted 2018-2023 Strategic Business Plan. The proposed 2021-2026 rate path is a 20% decrease from the prior path -- specifically, from 5.2% to an overall annual rate increase of 4.2%, for the average six-year projection, as reflected in the below chart:



Seattle Public Utilities’ Fiscal Health

Currently, SPU is in a good financial position and all of SPU’s funds are financially strong, in spite of the COVID-19 situation, which means that SPU is in an ideal position to support current and emerging needs. The tables below illustrate SPU’s forecast of 2020 year-end financial results, given current operations, revenues, and expenses through October. They indicate that SPU will meet or exceed its financial policies at year-end, and also show how SPU will meet its financial policies through 2026. Note especially SPU’s strong cash position.

Financial Policies for All Funds

Water Fund

(\$ in millions)	Target	2020	2021	2022	2023	2024	2025	2026
Debt Service Coverage	1.70x	1.90	1.73	1.70	1.70	1.89	1.75	1.70
Net Income	>\$0	\$39.7	\$33.5	\$33.1	\$35.4	\$40.4	\$32.9	\$34.1
Cash-to-CIP	>20%	53%	38%	40%	25%	28%	24%	27%
Cash Balance	\$34M in 2021, +\$1M/year	\$127.8	\$90.0	\$75.0	\$75.0	\$75.0	\$75.0	\$75.0
RSF Withdrawals*		\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0
Bond Issues		\$0	\$100.6	\$71.5	\$91.2	\$98.6	\$151.9	\$0
Debt Service		\$84.1	\$85.7	\$88.5	\$92.3	\$88.2	\$93.8	\$99.3
Consumption (ccf, mil)		26.5	26.4	26.4	26.3	26.2	26.0	25.9

* Note: RSF is the Rate Stabilization Fund.

Drainage and Wastewater Fund

(\$ in millions)	Target	2020	2021	2022	2023	2024	2025	2026
Debt Service Coverage	1.50x	2.89	2.00	2.01	1.91	1.72	1.56	1.55
Net Income	>\$0	\$42.0	\$48.0	\$57.4	\$60.8	\$57.7	\$48.6	\$40.6
Cash-to-CIP	25%	38%	53%	51%	43%	39%	25%	25%
Cash Balance	\$100M	\$186.8	\$140.4	\$97.7	\$98.7	\$101.6	\$110.3	\$112.9
Bond Issues		\$0	\$87.1	\$54.5	\$74.5	\$96.4	\$116.2	\$128.1
Debt Service		\$66.5	\$70.7	\$73.9	\$77.9	\$84.8	\$92.4	\$104.0
Consumption (ccf, mil)		20.7	21.2	21.2	21.2	21.2	21.2	21.2

Solid Waste Fund

(\$ in millions)	Target	2020	2021	2022	2023	2024	2025	2026
Debt Service Coverage	1.50x	4.40	1.72	1.65	1.68	1.59	1.70	1.51
Net Income	>\$0	\$15.2	\$3.4	\$1.6	\$1.2	\$0	\$1.7	\$0
Cash-to-CIP	Greater of \$3.7M or 10% CIP	100%	100%	100%	100%	100%	100%	100%
Cash Balance	\$23M	\$84.2	\$58.5	\$40.2	\$40.0	\$48.1	\$58.6	\$67.4
RSF Withdrawals*		\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$1.1
Debt Service		\$15.4	\$15.4	\$15.4	\$15.4	\$15.4	\$15.4	\$15.4

* Note: RSF is the Rate Stabilization Fund.

Both Water and Drainage and Wastewater will be issuing debt multiple times over the course of the SBP period. The rating agencies (Standard & Poors and Moodys) actively monitor each fund’s financial performance and have expressed concern over the levels of liquidity. In an effort to prevent a downgrade that would result in higher interest rates and upon the advice of our financial advisor, the funds have internally adopted higher cash balances.

SPU takes a fiscally balanced approach to its financial policies and reserves. By maintaining sufficient reserves, SPU is better able to weather fluctuations in revenues and expenses and navigate financial uncertainty. These prudent practices protect our asset investments and benefit customers through the avoidance of extraordinary rate increases and volatility.

Delinquencies Due to COVID-19 and Customer Assistance

The COVID-19 pandemic has impacted economies around the world, including Seattle. As a result, utilities are facing increasing ratepayer delinquencies and having to put forth additional financial support to help people weather this period, typically through the use of utility discount programs. To plan for and mitigate these occurrences, SPU monitors customer payment status on a monthly basis. For 2020, SPU has seen increases in its delinquencies (those accounts 90 days or more past due) as compared to its 2019 accounts receivable. It is important to compare these delinquencies to their associated revenues to show the nominal financial impact they are actually having on SPU cash flow.

A/R Delinquencies (90+ days past due)

(\$ in Actuals)	October 2019	October 2020	Percent Change	As a % 2020 Revenue
Water Fund	\$1,629,961	\$3,522,149	118%	1.2%
Drainage/Wastewater	\$762,015	\$2,529,354	232%	0.6%
Solid Waste	\$238,854	\$614,058	157%	0.3%

Enhancing ratepayer affordability is a primary goal for SPU, and we have several programs available to ratepayers that offer significant support during this difficult time. SPU provides a 50% credit on all qualifying customer bills as part of its Utility Discount Program (UDP). Recent modifications have expanded outreach to include an auto-enroll program, which was extended through the end of 2020. SPU also supports an Emergency Assistance Program that has been modified to provide relief for up to 50% of the bill two times per year instead of one, for qualifying individuals. The success of these programs can be measured through increased enrollment of 5,402 customers in 2020. Appendix B includes a comprehensive list of all of SPU’s affordability programs, including additional statistics on the UDP. Strong cash balances in the three Funds enable SPU to withstand this delayed cash flow through the end of the year.

Cost Containment Efforts and Savings

The 2018-2023 Strategic Business Plan adopted a six-year rate path of 5.2%. Since that time, SPU has reduced annual costs in meaningful ways that have reduced costs in the short-term and long-term. Cost containment and savings efforts help the Utility meet financial policy goals and help preserve rate revenues that can be used to smooth future rates. Examples of our recent cost containment efforts and savings include:

- **Water Infrastructure Finance and Innovation Act Funding (WIFIA):** The Utility applied and was awarded a grant from the Federal government under the WIFIA program that offered low-interest rate financing for the Ship Canal Water Quality Project. This effort saved approximately \$66 million.
- **Washington State Revolving Fund (SRF).** The Drainage and Wastewater Fund secured a \$25M state revolving fund loan at a reduced interest rate, leading to estimated savings of \$6.4M over the life of the loan. SPU is in the process of securing additional low interest loans from the state.
- **Solid Waste Contracting:** The Utility worked to negotiate new Solid Waste contracts that provide garbage, yard waste, and recycling services. As a result, this effort saved the Utility \$5 million annually.
- **Planned underspending on operations and capital projects:** Since 2018, the Utility has been underspending on operations and CIP. For example, the Utility held more positions vacant than initially planned, a 4% projection compared to an annual average of 10%, providing vacancy savings. No new positions were added for 2021. Additionally, the CIP has been spending at slower rates than initially planned. After examining assumed capital spending in forecasts compared to actuals for the last several years, SPU reduced its financial accomplishment assumption for rate forecasts from 97.5% to 85%, which is a common industry benchmark, for most projects. SPU also coordinates with other City departments to achieve efficiencies where possible; for example, reducing costs of digging up and replacing streets to install pipes by collaborating with SDOT for timing (such as the Seattle and Waterfront projects). The underspending is the result of these and other drivers but has generated savings that affect both the short- and long-term. As a result, the Utility has been able to build up healthy cash balances that could be used to maintain a lower rate growth in the new Strategic Business Plan.
- **Implementing the Affordability and Accountability framework:** As part of the Utility effort to better partner operating and financial performance, the Utility developed and is implementing the Affordability and Accountability framework – a series of projects in each division to seek better efficiencies for the work we conduct as well as being accountable to the results.

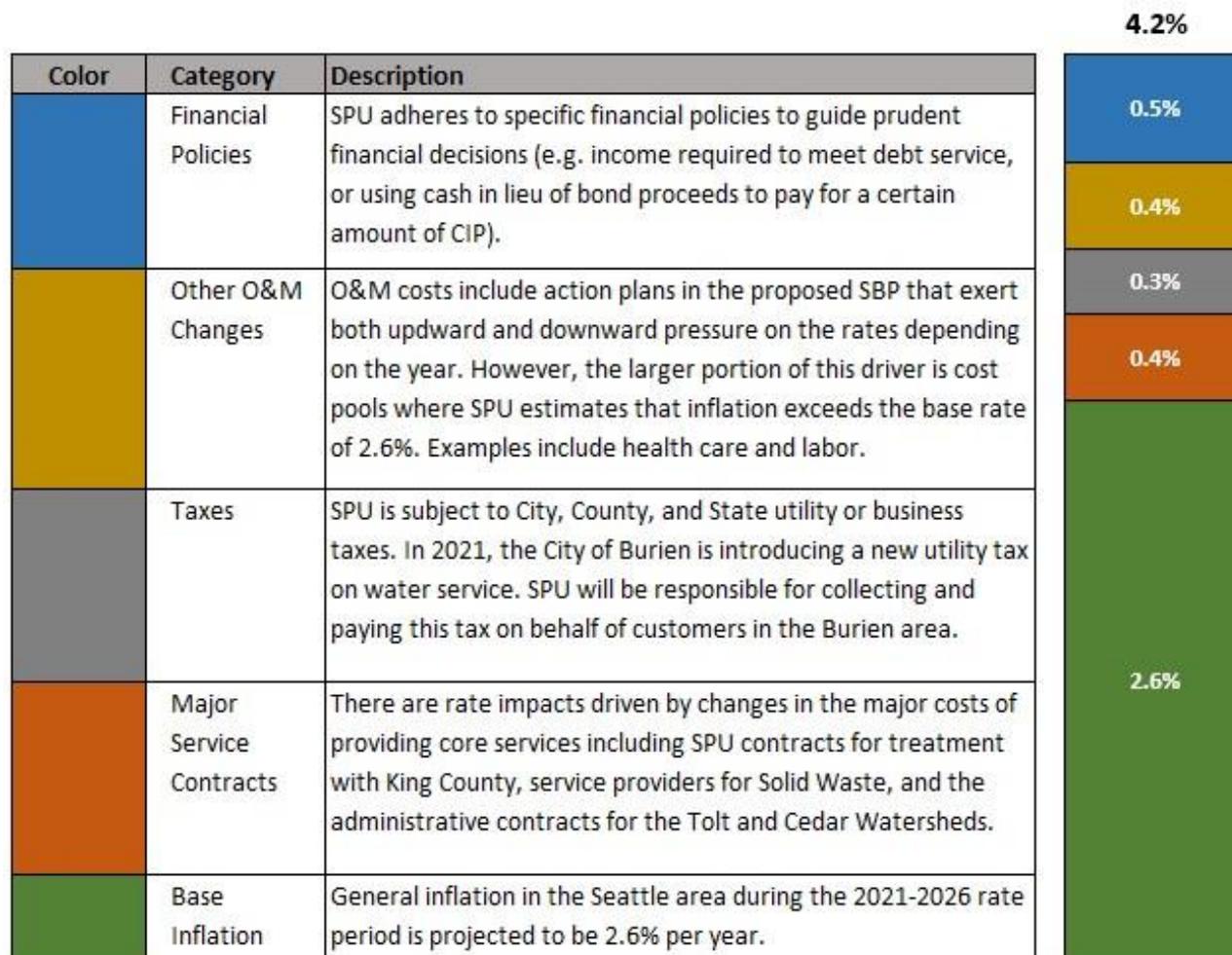
Proposed SBP Rate Path Summary

SPU uses a combination of direct rates revenues (bills charged to customers) and revenues from other funding sources to meet SPU’s total revenue requirement, which is the revenue required to cover Operations and Maintenance (O&M) and Capital Improvement Program (CIP) expenses together with any additional revenues required to meet SPU’s financial policy requirements.

Generally, rate increases are the result of covering base inflation and increases in CIP costs (usually due to debt service costs) and may be smaller or greater than the actual change in the rates revenue requirement. This SBP assumes increases in costs due to capital project planning (and associated debt service costs) as well as costs associated with increases in the Utility Discount Program participation.

As discussed in the previous section, the 2021-2026 SBP includes an average annual combined rate growth of 4.2% per year. This is significantly lower than the 5.2% rate that was included in the 2018-2023 SBP. The table below summarizes the components of the proposed rate.

The 4.2% Rate Path is Mostly Driven by Inflation and Factors Outside of SPU Control



Factors Impacting Rates

SPU has been working to flatten rate increases over time. While a consistent growth in rates is expected due to inflationary factors, SPU’s growth in costs to provide services for the 2021-2026 period is projected to be lower than in the 2018-2023 period. Factors lowering the growth in the cost of services include:

- Using cash balances to smooth rate changes
- Negotiating lower solid waste contract rates
- Reducing the cost of borrowing money
- Improving capital investment planning to better reflect experience

At the same time, there are also factors that are increasing costs at a faster pace and offsetting cost savings. These include:

- Higher than expected increases in King County wastewater treatment charges to cities
- Funding for large capital projects required for state and federal regulatory compliance
- Targeted funding increases to address deferred maintenance of aging capital assets
- Increased commitment to keep pollutants out of our natural waters
- Rise of delinquencies and the enhancement of affordability assistance programs

Major CIP Projects for Regulatory Compliance

Each fund is subject to regulatory requirements from the City, State, and/or Federal government including consent decrees. These regulations require the Utility to invest in significant capital improvements to mitigate potentially hazardous contamination to the State's natural resources. Major CIP projects for compliance include:

- The Ship Canal Water Quality Project (Drainage and Wastewater Fund 2021-2026, Costs: \$375M):
This is a joint project between SPU and King County to design and construct a storage tunnel to capture Combined Sewer Overflows for 5 SPU outfalls and two King County outfalls.
- Green Stormwater Infrastructure (Drainage and Wastewater Fund 2021-2026, Costs: \$131M):
This program includes several projects and will achieve the water quality goals identified in Seattle's Plan to Protect Seattle's Waterways.
- South Park Water Quality Facility (Drainage and Wastewater Fund 2021-2026, Costs: \$93M):
Utility work in the South Park neighborhood includes a pump station, a Water Quality Facility, and developing drainage conveyance improvements.
- Historic Landfill Remediation: (Solid Waste Fund 2021-2026, Costs: \$12M):
This program funds compliance activities related to the Midway landfill closure project as required under the Consent Decree with the State Department of Ecology.

Please see Appendix C for additional information on major CIP projects by fund. Also, worth noting, the Water Fund is currently transitioning from a period of regulatory capital improvement to a new phase of asset rehabilitation and seismic improvements. The Water Fund continues to have regulatory capital programs for fish passage and improvements to dam safety.

Potential Issues Under Consideration

At this point, SPU anticipates the following issues that could affect either the timeline for the SBP or the SBP directly:

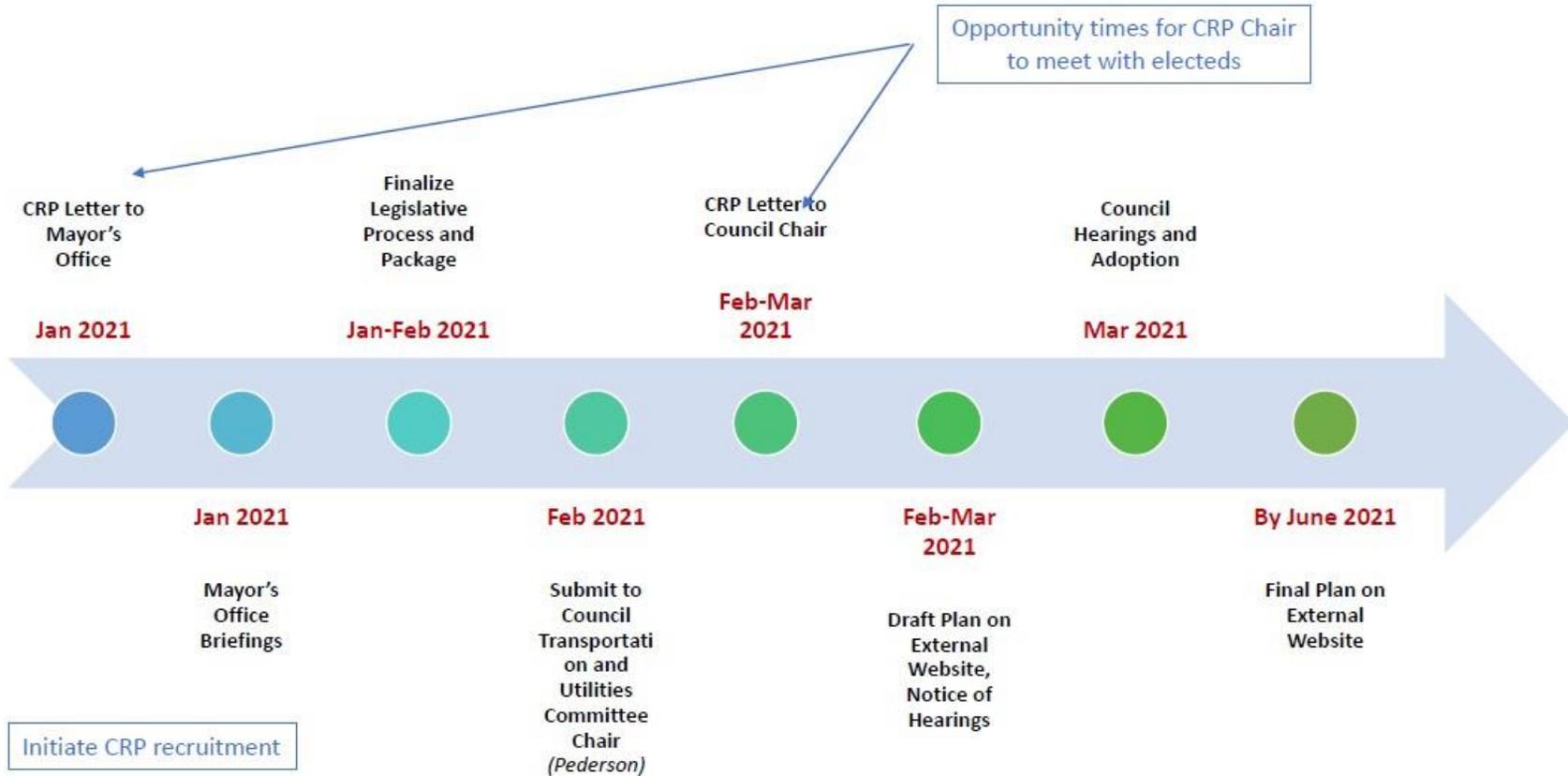
- The Rate Path: The pandemic continues to affect the local and regional economy for both residential and commercial customers. The SBP includes lower than anticipated rate growth, but growth, nonetheless. As noted in this memorandum, the rate path is one percentage point (or 20%) lower than the previously projected rate path. SPU will continue to look for efficiencies to support affordable rates in 2021 and beyond.

- Impacts to the General Fund: In addition to deferring introduction of the SBP, SPU deferred the development of the Water Rate Study from 2020 to 2021. Consequently, SPU will need to update the projections for how much the General Fund would have to pay SPU for water hydrant maintenance. When the Water Rate Study is proposed in 2021, it may result in an increase in the General Fund obligation to maintain water hydrants.
- Possible Fiscal Strain on SPU: As the pandemic continues to affect the local and State economy, this pressure may grow in 2021 and beyond. If the fiscal pressure increases, the City may consider raising tax rates to cover shortfalls and SPU would have to absorb those increases.



Appendix A: Strategic Business Plan Timeline

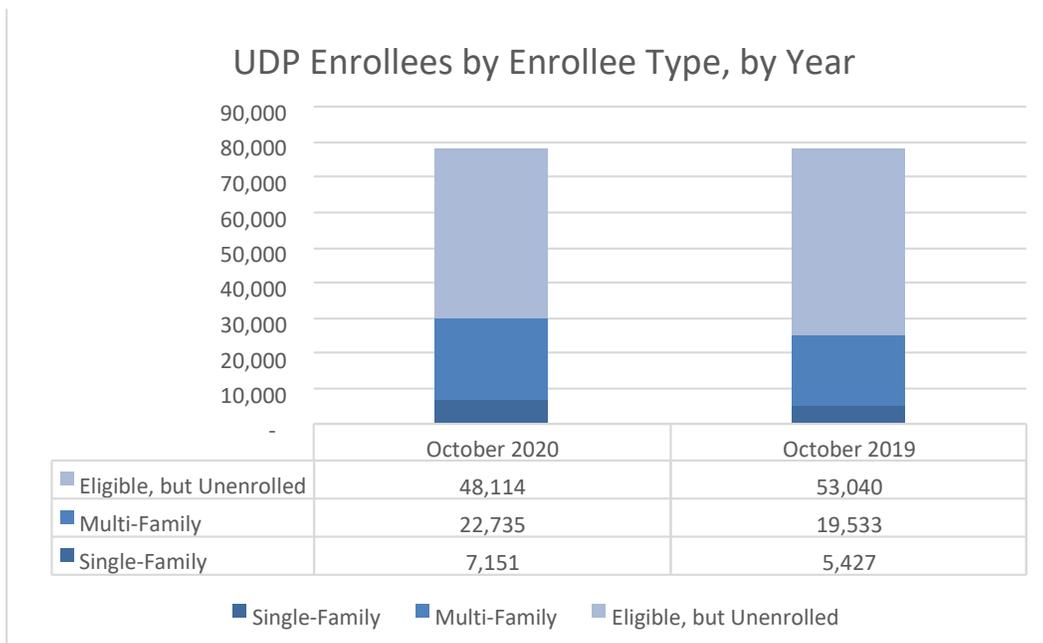
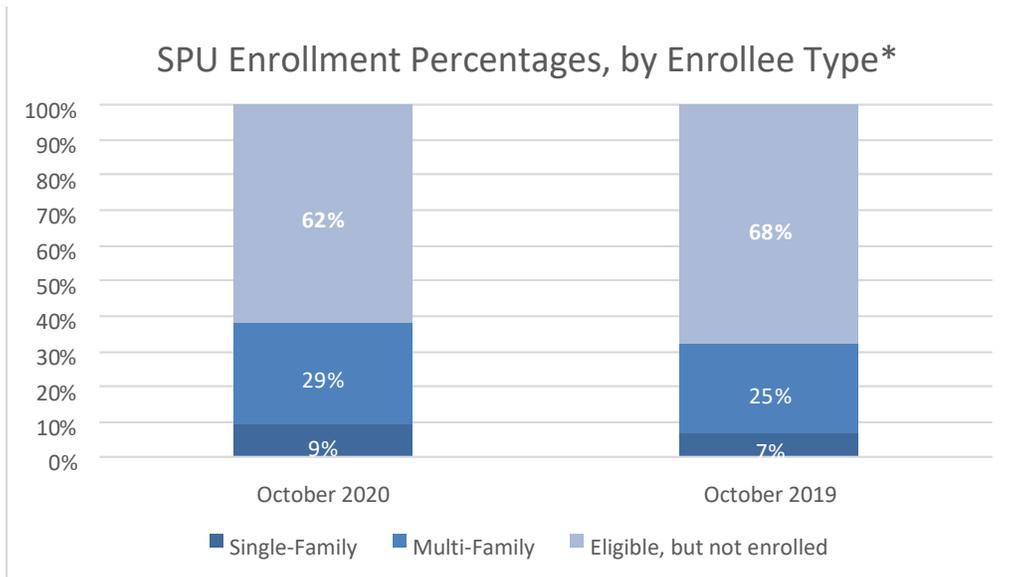
Includes Key Dates for Input from the Utility’s Customer Review Panel (CRP)





Appendix B: SPU Utility Discount Program Facts and Figures

Through the Utility Discount Program (UDP), SPU provides assistance to nearly 30,000 customers, which is equivalent to 38% of the 78,000 estimated eligible customers.



- In 2020, the average Single-Family utility discount averages \$102.75 per month, while the Multi-Family discount averages \$57.
- In 2019, the UDP provided a total of \$16.6 million in credits to customers. In 2020, the program is anticipated to provide over \$19.0 million in credits.

The following table catalogues all of SPU's forms of customer assistance.

SPU Customer Assistance Catalogue

Program	Benefit	Frequency	Eligibility
Emergency Assistance Program (EAP)	Credit of 100% of the bill balance, up to \$448 in 2020. <i>Pending Change: SPU has received Council authority to receive customer donations to provide additional assistance (up to \$200) to eligible customers. Program is estimated to begin in November 2020.</i>	Once per year (twice per year if household has minor children).	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Income at 80% of State Median Household Income. Single Family Household only. If renting, must have a SPU or SCL bill in tenant's name.
Utility Discount Program (UDP)	50% discount (off actual consumption for Single Family Households, and off typical consumption for Multi-Family Households.) Single family household receive the credit directly on their bill, and Multi-Family Households see the discount reflected on their SCL account.	Every bill while enrolled in the program.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Income at 70% of State Median Household Income.
Fast Track Enrollment Pilot	Allows customers to enroll in UDP program with significantly less paperwork, by asking enrollees to self-attest their income eligibility.	Pilot going through December 31, 2020.	Customers must receive a fast track form as part of the pilot project. Not available to all customers at this time.
UDP Shut-off Pilot	Gives customers enrolled in the UDP program an extra week to reach out about emergency assistance before a shut-off. Increased communication from SPU for these groups.	Ongoing.	Customer must be enrolled in UDP program and be facing a shut-off.
Leak Adjustment Policy (Effective May 25, 2020)	Water and sewer bill adjusted at 100% above normal consumption for all customers, except 50% sewer above normal consumption for commercial customers for indoor leaks.	One adjustment per calendar year.	Outdoor and indoor leaks.
Payment Plans – SEE COVID POLICY FOR CURRENT BENEFIT	Allows payment plan for current or outstanding debt. Requires a down payment of 25% for current balance, and 50% for past-due. The term is up to 60 days.	As needed.	All bills.

Payment Arrangements	Allows payment plan of up to three years. No down payment required.	As needed.	Only available upon receipt of an unexpected, higher than normal bill (e.g. back-billing.)
----------------------	---	------------	--

COVID-Specific Policies

Program	Benefit	Frequency	Eligibility
Suspension of Shut-Offs	Will not shut-off customers (residential or commercial) through the end of the year.	Through 2020	All customers (with special review for Top Customers.)
Waiver of interest on delinquent accounts	Customers with delinquent accounts will not be charged interest on past due balances, per the emergency legislation from the Mayor’s Office.	Through 2020	All customers.
Flexible Payment Plans – Residential	Do not require down payment for payment plan, even with past-due balance. Term is up to 120 days. Payment plans can be renewed, and (soon) completed online.	Through 2020	Residential customers.
Flexible Payment Plans – Small Business	Reach out proactively to set up payment plans. Do not require down payment.	Through 2020	Small businesses.

Fund	Program Area	Description	Major CIP Projects	2021-2026 Projection
Drainage and Wastewater	Combined Sewer Overflows	This program consists of projects that are mandated by State and Federal regulations to control combined sewer overflows into the City's receiving waters.	Ship Canal Water Quality Project	\$375M
			Future CSO Projects	\$65M
	Flooding, Sewer Backup, and Landslides	This program prevents and reduces flooding and sewer backups in order to protect public health, safety, and property.	South Park Pump Station, Water Quality Facility, and conveyance improvements	\$93M
			Sanitary Sewer Overflow Capacity	\$52M
	Protection of Beneficial Uses	This program improves the drainage system to reduce the harmful effects of stormwater runoff on creeks and receiving water bodies and preserve the storm water conveyance function of our creeks through stream culvert repair and rehabilitation.	Green Stormwater Infrastructure	\$131M
			Creek Culvert Replacement Project	\$46M
	Rehabilitation	This program repairs, rehabilitates, or replaces existing drainage and wastewater assets to maintain or improve the current functionality level of the system.	Pipe Renewal Program	\$193M
			Pump Station and Force Main Improvements	\$48M
	Sediments	The Sediments program provides funding for studies and analysis for cleanup of contaminated sediment sites in which the City is a participant, for engineering design and construction of actual cleanup of contaminated sites, and for liability allocation negotiations.	Sediment Remediation	\$50M
Shared Projects	This program includes individual capital projects that benefit multiple Lines of Business (LOB) (e.g. the Water LOB and the Drainage and Wastewater LOB) and which costs are "shared," or paid for by more than one utility fund.	Transportation-Related Projects	\$80M	
Technology	The Technology CIP provides departmentwide technology investments to address SPU's strategic, business, and City-wide priorities. Project costs are shared by more than one utility fund.	Technology	\$27M	

Appendix C: 2021 – 2026 Major CIP Investments

Fund	Program Area	Description	Major CIP Projects	2021-2026 Projection
Water Fund	Distribution	This program rehabilitates and improves water mains and appurtenances, water storage tanks, pump stations, and other facilities that are part of the system that distributes treated water.	Watermain Rehabilitation	\$113M
	Transmission	This program rehabilitates and improves large transmission pipelines that bring untreated water to - and convey treated water from - the treatment facilities.	Seismic System Improvements	\$48M
	Water Quality and Treatment	This program constructs, rehabilitates, or improves water treatment facilities, and covers the remaining open water reservoirs.	Bitter Lake Reservoir Covering	\$45M
			Lake Forest Reservoir Covering	\$10M
	Shared Projects	This program includes individual capital projects that benefit multiple Lines of Business (LOB) (e.g. the Water LOB and the Drainage and Wastewater LOB) and which costs are "shared," or paid for by more than one utility fund.	Transportation-Related Projects	\$119M
Technology	The Technology CIP provides departmentwide technology investments to address SPU's strategic, business, and City-wide priorities. Project costs are shared by more than one utility fund.	Technology	\$25M	
Solid Waste Fund	New Facilities	This program includes the planning, design, and construction of new facilities to enhance solid waste operations.	South Transfer Station Phase II	\$36M
			South Park Development	\$17M

2021-2026 Strategic Business Plan Seattle Public Utilities

Seattle City Council
Transportation and Utilities Committee

April 7, 2021



Centering On Our Community's Values

Service | **Sustainability** | **Equity** | **Affordability**

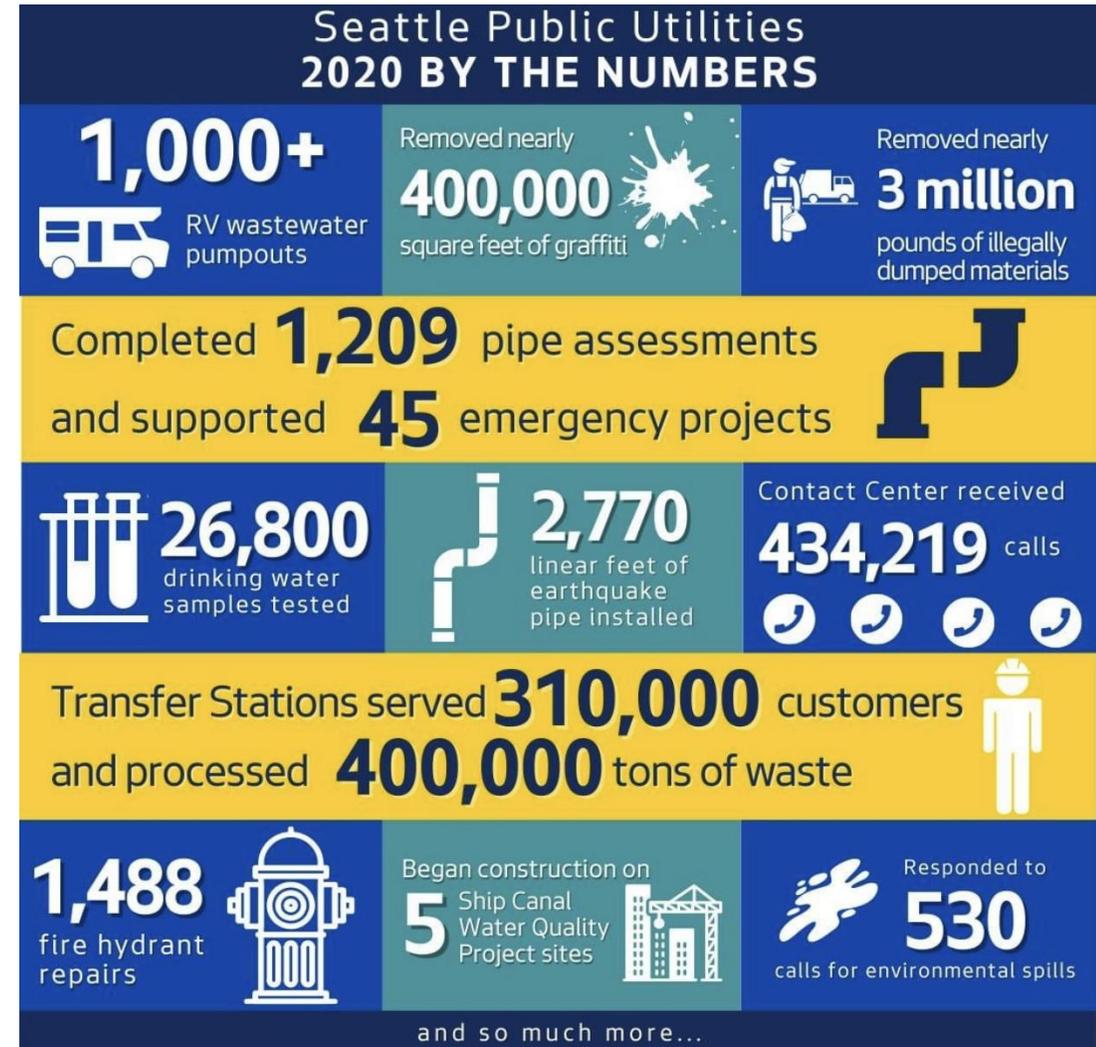
Building upon our city's legacy of water and waste leadership + informed by:

- 21 meetings of the Customer Review Panel over 2 ¼ years
- Shaping the Future employee leadership forums
- Voice of the Community research – 28 relevant surveys
- Community and employee outreach
- Business interviews

SPU's PLAN: DELIVERS ESSENTIAL SERVICE

Highlights:

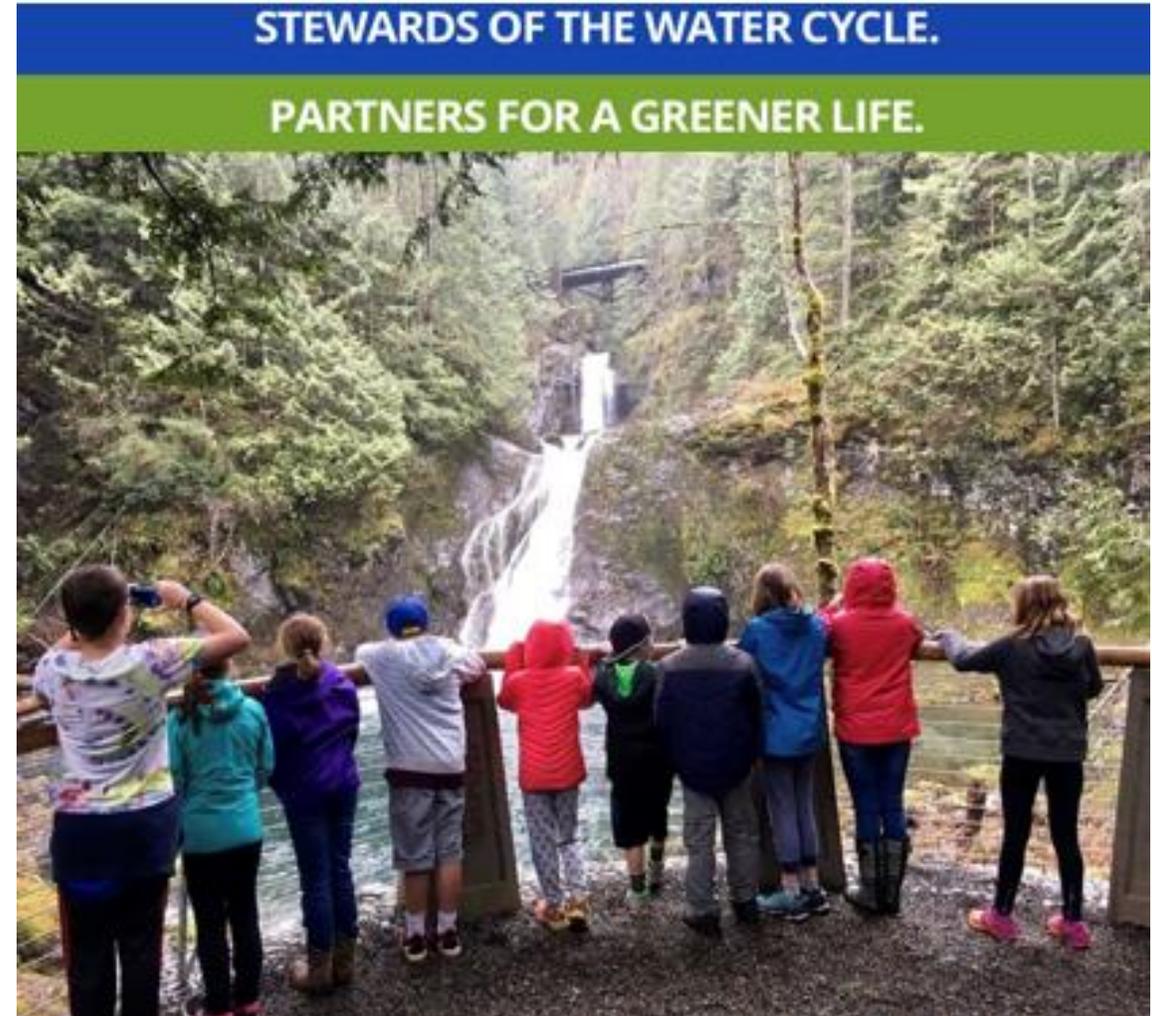
1. Best in-class customer assistance programs
2. Reliable utility service experience
3. Meet regulatory requirements



SPU's PLAN: GROWS SUSTAINABILITY

Highlights:

1. Blue-green infrastructure + restoration
2. Water climate adaptation + environmental justice
3. Waste prevention + carbon mitigation



SPU's PLAN: PRIORITIZES EQUITY

Highlights:

1. Side sewer assistance pilot
2. SPU support services for the unsheltered
3. Apprenticeship + workforce development



EARN WHILE YOU LEARN

**DRAINAGE & WASTEWATER
COLLECTION WORKER
APPRENTICESHIP**

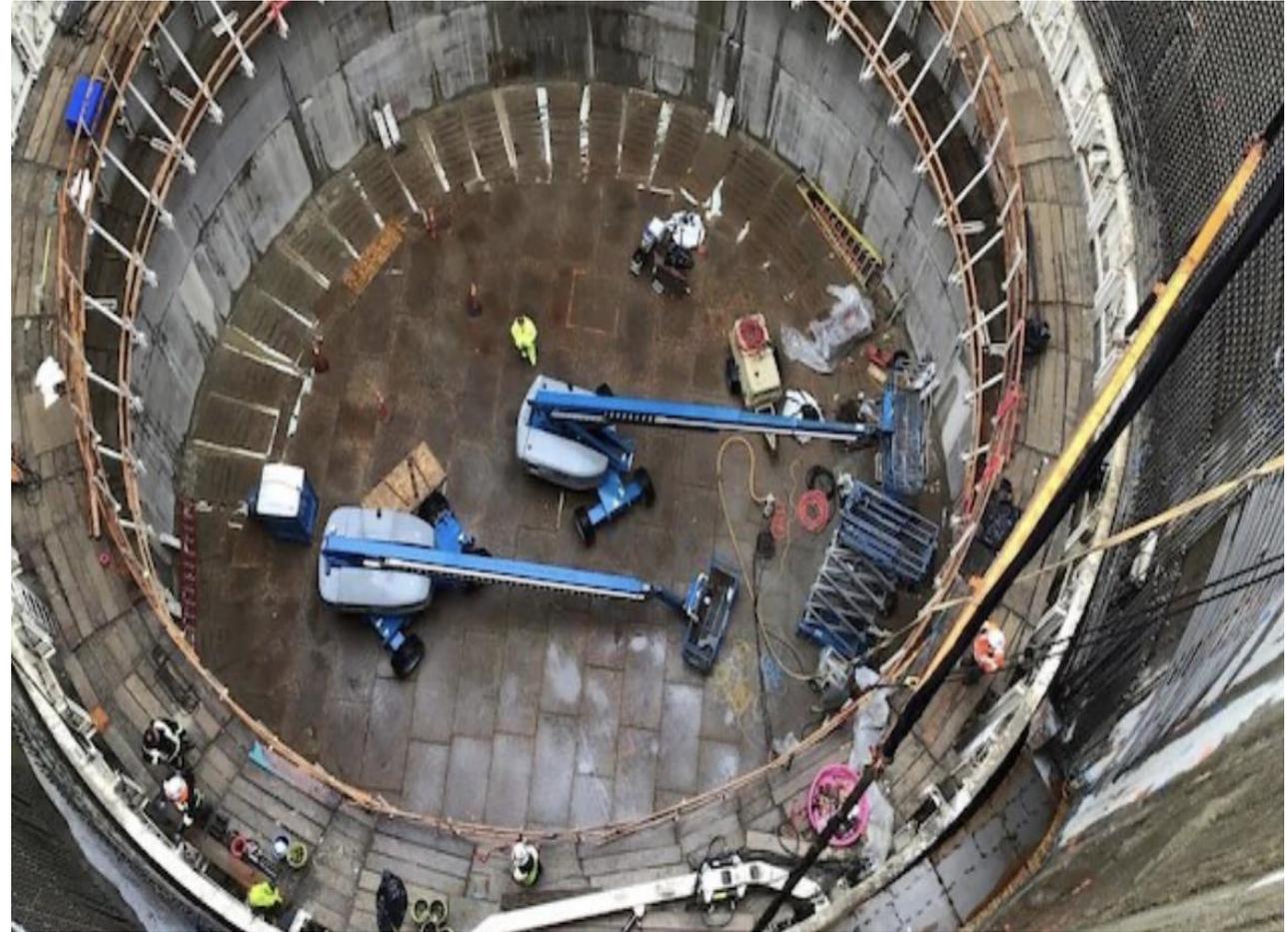
APPLY BY MARCH 31, 2021

 Seattle
Public
Utilities

SPU's PLAN: MANAGES AFFORDABILITY

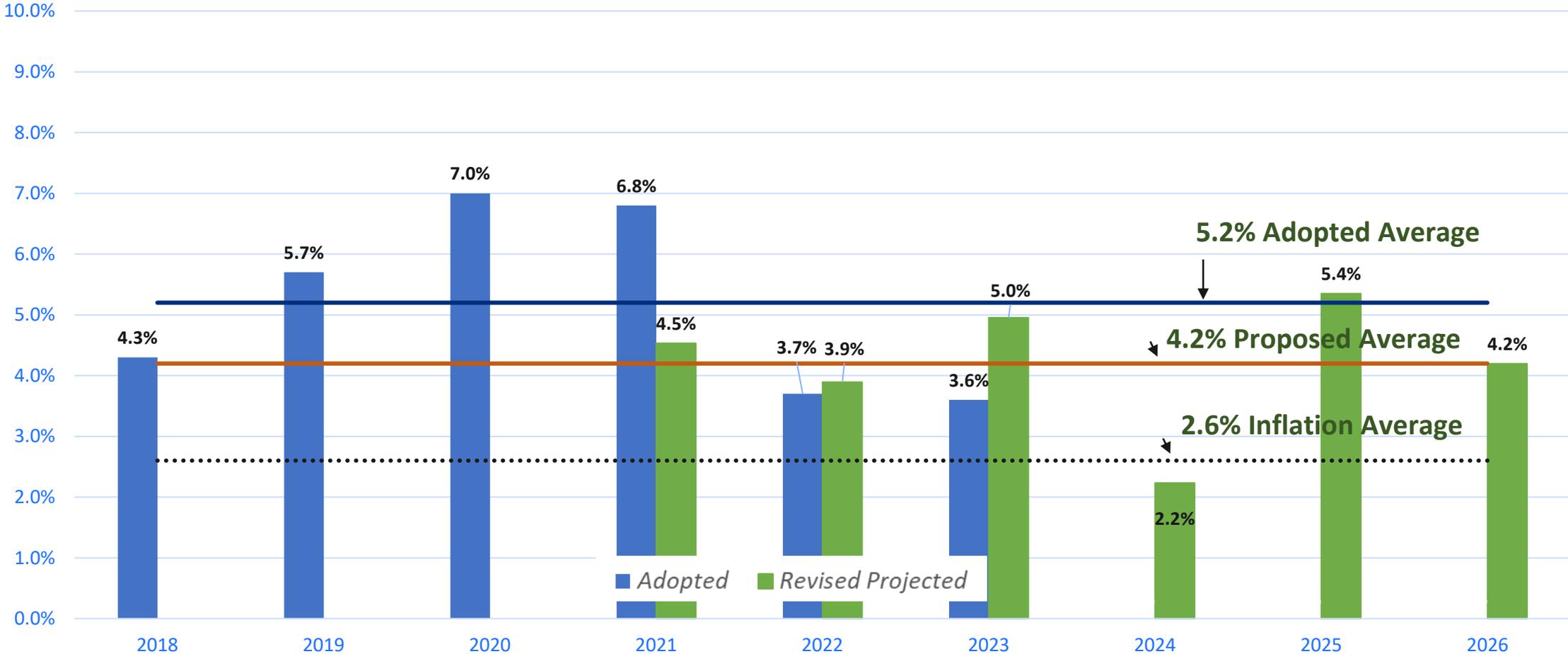
Highlights:

1. Project budgeting and delivery improvements
2. Seismic and infrastructure risk management
3. Building community partnership



Lowering Our Overall Rate Path by 20%

2021-2026 Growth rate is projected at 4.2% - 20% lower than the previously planned growth rate of 5.2%



3-Year Rate Path and Additional 3-Year Forecast

	Rate Path			Rate Forecast			Average
	2021	2022	2023	2024	2025	2026	
Water	0.0%	2.7%	4.7%	3.6%	4.2%	5.5%	3.4%
Wastewater	7.3%	3.1%	5.9%	0.5%	7.8%	3.6%	4.7%
Drainage	7.4%	8.6%	7.2%	3.9%	6.5%	6.7%	6.7%
Solid Waste	2.9%	2.9%	2.2%	2.3%	2.1%	2.1%	2.4%
Combined	4.5%	3.9%	5.0%	2.2%	5.4%	4.2%	4.2%

- Key Factors Impacting Rates**
- Inflation
 - Taxes
 - Regulation
 - Contracts - KC
 - Aging Infrastructure

 Approved rate legislation that is currently in effect

Note: Sewer rate increases include King County Treatment Rate Increases in 2021, 2022, 2023, 2025. Drainage and Wastewater rate volatility is driven by timing related to a combination of capital spending, sewer treatment rate increases, and financial policy constraints. Rates assume average inflation of 2.6% over the Plan period.

Rate Drivers

Increasing operational expenses

- Some cost pools have higher inflation than the benchmark 2.6%. Examples include labor and healthcare costs.

Increasing capital expense

- State and Federal regulatory compliance projects
- Maintenance of aging capital infrastructure

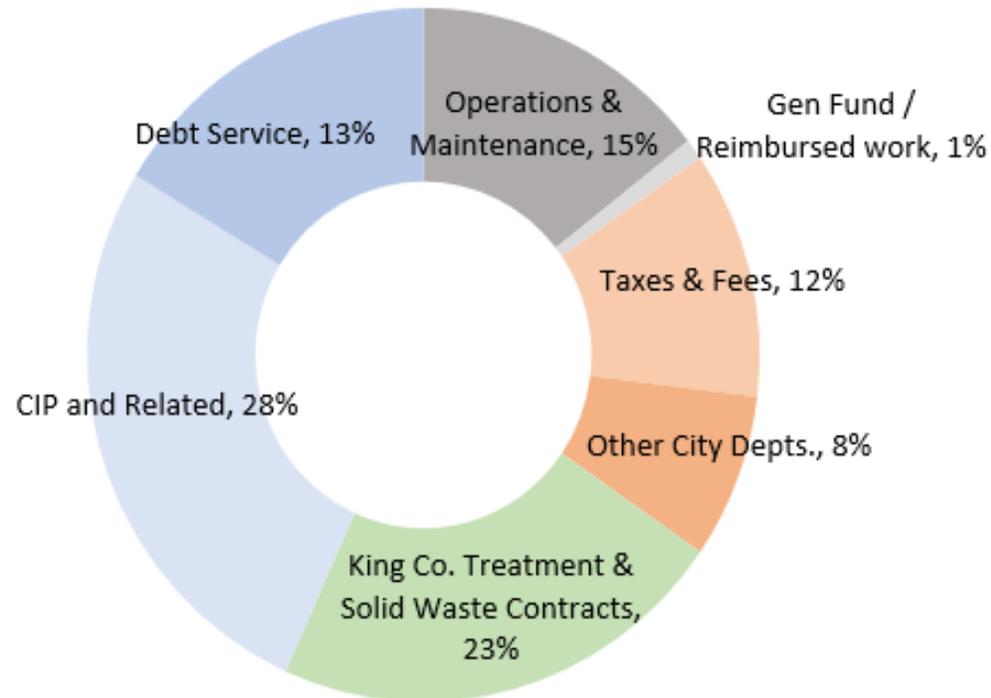
Increasing contractual obligations

- King County sewer treatment expense

2021-2023 Expenses by Category

Costs Summary

Capital/Debt Service: 41%
Major Service Contracts: 23%
Taxes/Fees/Other City Depts.: 20%
Operations & Maintenance: 16%



SPU costs are still largely fixed or with little discretionary control. Factors that are increasing costs include:

- Higher than expected increases in King County wastewater treatment charges to cities
- Funding for large capital projects required for state and federal regulatory compliance
- Targeted funding increases to address deferred maintenance of aging capital assets
- Increased commitment to keep pollutants out of our natural waters

State and Local Taxes Included in Rates

Entity	Type	Water	Wastewater	Drainage	Solid Waste
City	Utility Tax	15.54%	11.50%	12.00%	14.20%
	B&O Tax	0.22%	--	--	--
	Tonnage Tax	--	--	--	\$13.27/ton
State	Utility Tax	5.03%	3.85%	--	--
	B&O Tax	1.50%	1.50%	1.50%	1.50%
	Solid Waste Tax	--	--	--	3.60%
Combined Tax Impact		20.57%	13.20%	13%	15.30%
Typical SF Monthly Bill Impact*		\$9.40	\$9.54	\$6.49	\$8.38

*Current tax rates are not projected to change through the SBP period. In 2021, SPU is projected to pay \$123M in City taxes.

Customer Bill - Combined Impact

Typical monthly bill for several types of customers in 2021:

- single family home – change of \$15
- multi-family unit – change of \$4
- convenience store property – change of \$38

Typical Monthly Bill for a Single-Family House

	2021	2022	2023	2024	2025	2026
Water	\$46	\$47	\$49	\$51	\$53	\$56
Wastewater	\$72	\$75	\$79	\$79	\$85	\$89
Drainage	\$50	\$54	\$58	\$60	\$64	\$69
Solid Waste	\$55	\$56	\$58	\$59	\$60	\$61
Combined	\$223	\$232	\$244	\$250	\$263	\$275
Monthly Change	\$15	\$9	\$12	\$6	\$13	\$12

Typical Monthly Bill for a Multifamily Unit (Apartment Building)

	2021	2022	2023	2024	2025	2026
Water	\$25	\$26	\$27	\$28	\$29	\$31
Wastewater	\$65	\$67	\$71	\$71	\$77	\$80
Drainage	\$9	\$10	\$11	\$11	\$12	\$13
Solid Waste	\$28	\$29	\$30	\$30	\$31	\$32
Combined	\$127	\$132	\$138	\$141	\$149	\$155
Monthly Change	\$4	\$4	\$7	\$2	\$8	\$6

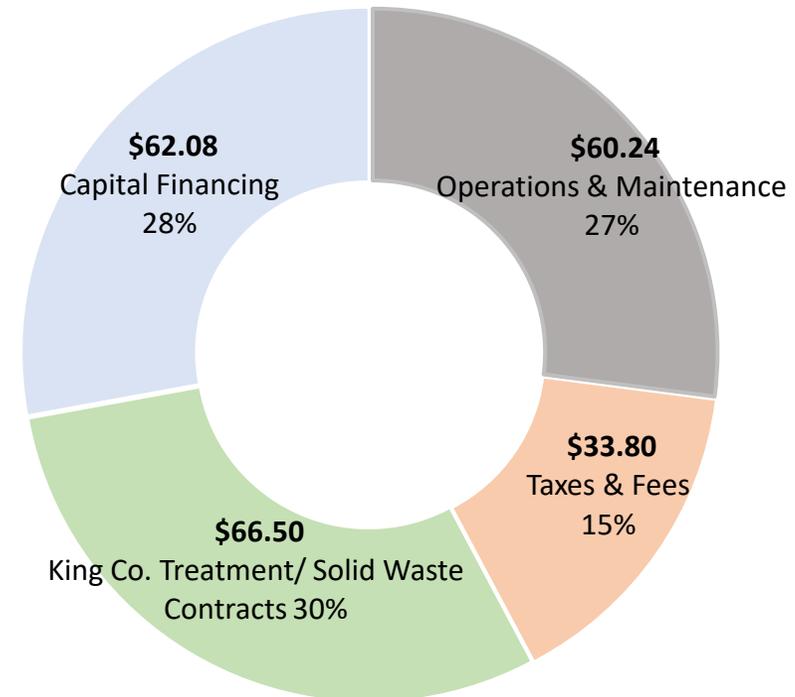
Typical Monthly Bill for a Convenience Store

	2021	2022	2023	2024	2025	2026
Water	\$107	\$110	\$115	\$120	\$125	\$131
Wastewater	\$325	\$335	\$355	\$357	\$385	\$399
Drainage	\$121	\$131	\$140	\$146	\$155	\$166
Solid Waste	\$556	\$573	\$585	\$599	\$611	\$623
Combined	\$1,109	\$1,149	\$1,196	\$1,221	\$1,275	\$1,319
Monthly Change	\$38	\$40	\$47	\$25	\$55	\$44

Where the Money Goes

Typical Customer Bill Breakout

Single Family home
monthly Bill: \$222.62



Lower CIP Accomplishment Rates

- The accomplishment rate reflects assumed CIP underspending and is applied to the rate assumptions so that the Utility does not over collect from ratepayers.
- The 2018-2023 SBP included a 97.5% accomplishment rate assumption.
- Over the next six years, the Utility would assume approximately \$222M less for its rate studies and bonding capacity, a savings to ratepayers.

Fund	2018-2023 CIP Accomp. Rate	2021-2026 CIP Accomp. Rate	Rates Reduction Impact
Water Fund	97.5%	85%	\$93M
Drainage and Wastewater Fund	97.5%	85% 95% for Ship Canal	\$120M
Solid Waste Fund	97.5%	90%	\$9M

Promoting Affordability Assistance

- Utility Discount Program enrollment – self certification/audit
- Emergency Assistance Program
- Conservation assistance
- Community donation program
- Leak adjustment policy changes
- COVID – payment plan flexibility, shut-off moratorium

Questions?

SPU Customer Review Panel 2021-2026 Strategic Business Plan Panel Comment Letter Overview

Presenter: Noel Miller, Chair, Customer Review Panel

Presentation to Seattle City Council Transportation and Utilities Committee

April 21, 2021

Presentation Summary

- SPU Customer Review Panel – quick recap of role, history
- Key points in Panel Letter commenting on 2021-2026 SPU Strategic Business Plan
- Comments / Questions

SPU Customer Review Panel

- Panel created in 2013; made a permanent standing body in 2017
- 11 seats, 3 vacancies.
- Role is to independently advise the Mayor and Council in collaboration with SPU Director Mami Hara and staff.
- Panel met 21 times over the last 3 years with SPU E-team members. Three-hour meetings, open to public; agendas and materials posted online.

Panel Members

<p>Suzie Burke Business Owner, Fremont</p>	<p>Bobby Coleman Administrator, Environmental Stewardship & Sustainability Seattle Housing Authority</p>	<p>David Layton Professor & Associate Dean Evans School of Public Policy and Governance University of Washington</p>
<p>Laura C. Lippman, M.D, Vice Chair, Family Physician</p>	<p>Maria McDaniel Community Advocate</p>	<p>Noel Miller, Chair Retired Public Works Director</p>
<p>Thy Pham Senior Program Officer Global Health Strategy Planning & Management Bill & Melinda Gates Foundation</p>	<p>Rodney Schauf, Vice Chair, Director of Engineering, Seattle Sheraton Hotel</p>	<p>Puja Shaw Associate KPF Consulting Engineering</p>

2021-2026 Strategic Business Plan

- Plan is the second fully-revised 6-year plan since 2013.
- Plan includes new SPU vision, mission and value statements
- Overall, the Panel is very supportive the Plan, including **all** of the **18 initiatives and investments**, and the resulting **6-year average annual rate path of 4.2%**
- Important for rates to be stable and predictable
- **Key lenses in the Plan:** Affordability and Accountability, Risk and Resiliency, Equity and Empowerment

Affordability & Accountability Highlights

- Major focus for the Panel: **asset management of aging infrastructure**
 - Much of water and wastewater/drainage pipe systems are 80 years old +/-.
- Continuous improvement in capital project delivery and operations will help slow the annual growth in rates
- Metrics are important for accountability to ratepayers and city leaders
- We support efforts by SPU to collaborate with Federal, State and local partners to develop cost effective approaches to meet health and environmental regulations

Risk & Resiliency Highlights

- Panel supports R & R initiatives as a focus for how SPU thinks about the future and approaches its work today.
- Key items:
 - Climate change adaptation strategy
 - Completion of operations facilities upgrades
 - South Park flooding response
 - Workforce development

Other Observations:

- **New and existing programs we strongly support:**
 - Proposed: Financial assistance program for individual property owners to renovate or replace their private side sewers.
 - New: RV wastewater collection pilot program
 - Existing: Clean Cities work supported by general fund, performed by SPU.
- **Cost sharing between SPU and SDOT is appropriate on maintenance/cleaning of City's right of ways**
 - Street sweeping program for bicycle lanes
 - Stream culvert replacements

Other Observations:

- **Long-term affordability is an overarching concern for the Panel**
 - Many growing pressures on SPU rates:
 - renovation and replacement of water, wastewater and drainage infrastructure
 - response to climate change
 - seismic resiliency
 - water quality obligations
 - Work should begin now to map out how we can address long term aging-infrastructure replacement challenge.

Thank you for your time!

- We appreciate the excellent work of SPU staff!
- We would welcome enhanced engagement between the Panel and the Council and Mayor's offices.

Questions? Comments?

April 16, 2021

MEMORANDUM

To: Transportation and Utilities Committee
From: Brian Goodnight, Analyst
Subject: Resolution 32000: Seattle Public Utilities' 2021–2026 Strategic Business Plan

On April 21, 2021, the Transportation and Utilities Committee will continue its consideration of [Resolution 32000](#), proposed legislation that would adopt Seattle Public Utilities' (SPU's) 2021–2026 Strategic Business Plan (Proposed SBP) and endorse a three-year rate path and three-year rate forecast that results in an average annual utility rate increase of 4.2 percent over the six-year period. SPU provided a presentation on the Proposed SBP at the committee's April 7, 2021 meeting, and the committee will continue discussion and possibly vote on Resolution 32000 at its May 5, 2021 meeting.

This memorandum summarizes the Proposed SBP and its related rate path and forecast, provides background information on prior Council action and direction, compares the Proposed SBP to the previous 2018–2023 Strategic Business Plan (2018 SBP) and rates that have been adopted, and identifies issues for Council consideration.

Summary

Per Council direction¹, every three years SPU engages in a planning process that results in a proposed update to its Strategic Business Plan.² That process is an opportunity for SPU to re-evaluate its priorities and project its operating and capital program requirements over the next six years for all three of the utilities that it operates: Drainage and Wastewater, Solid Waste, and Water. Since the updates occur every three years but cover a six-year timeframe, the Proposed SBP has a three-year overlap with the 2018 SBP. The updates also offer the Council an opportunity to determine whether it agrees with SPU's proposed direction and rate path or wants to make adjustments.

The Proposed SBP contains SPU's new mission³ and vision⁴, identifies SPU's focus areas, describes its long-term goals and short-term strategies, and highlights representative initiatives and investments.

¹ [Resolution 31534](#)

² Consideration of the 2021–2026 Strategic Business Plan was scheduled to occur during 2020, but the Executive decided to delay completion of the plan due to the onset of the COVID-19 pandemic.

³ SPU Mission: "Seattle Public Utilities fosters healthy people, environment, and economy by partnering with our community to equitably manage water and waste resources for today and for future generations."

⁴ SPU Vision: "Community Centered, One Water, Zero Waste"

The Proposed SBP's four focus areas are:

- Delivering Equitable Essential Services
- Stewarding Environment and Health
- Empowering Our Customers, Community, and Employees
- Strengthening Our Utility's Business Practices

To inform the Proposed SBP, SPU conducted a review of previous research studies performed over the past ten years, surveyed community members and SPU employees, and interviewed business and community leaders about their experiences with, and thoughts on, SPU. Some key takeaways from the outreach and engagement process, as identified by SPU, are: SPU's services are essential and highly valued, people appreciate SPU's orientation toward thinking about the future, and there is a recognition that SPU is trying to create authentic partnerships in underserved communities. Participants also noted that issues associated with growth, affordability, and climate change are challenges for SPU. Additional information on SPU's outreach and engagement process can be found in Appendix E to the Proposed SBP.⁵

In addition, SPU worked extensively with its Customer Review Panel for over two years during the development of the Proposed SBP. Additional information on the Customer Review Panel and its recommendations can be found below.

Rate Path and Forecast

Although SPU operates three distinct utilities, the Drainage and Wastewater utility has two separate rate structures: one for the Drainage line of business and one for the Wastewater line of business. The Proposed SBP, therefore, includes rate projections for each of SPU's four lines of business: Water, Wastewater, Drainage, and Solid Waste.

Table 1 shows the proposed annual rate increases and six-year averages for each line of business during the 2021 to 2026 time period covered by the Proposed SBP. The bottom row of the table shows the combined annual rate increases for each year, which is a weighted average based on the relative size of each line of business. The Proposed SBP includes a recommended rate path for the first three years (2021 to 2023) and a rate forecast for the last three years (2024 to 2026). SPU has a lower level of confidence in the rate forecast for the last three years of the Proposed SBP due to future uncertainties and unforeseen events or policy choices that could impact rates for those years.

⁵ Appendix E begins on Page 104 of the Proposed SBP, which is [Attachment 1 to Resolution 32000](#).

Table 1. Proposed Rate Path (2021–2023) and Rate Forecast (2024–2026)

Line of Business	2021	2022	2023	2024	2025	2026	6-Year Average
Water	0.0%	2.7%	4.7%	3.6%	4.2%	5.5%	3.4%
Wastewater	7.3%	3.1%	5.9%	0.5%	7.8%	3.6%	4.7%
Drainage	7.4%	8.6%	7.2%	3.9%	6.5%	6.7%	6.7%
Solid Waste	2.9%	2.9%	2.2%	2.3%	2.1%	2.1%	2.4%
Combined:	4.5%	3.9%	5.0%	2.2%	5.4%	4.2%	4.2%

Note: The cells shaded in blue show rate increases that the Council has already adopted legislatively⁶, with the exception of the 0.0% Water rate for 2021. Due to the COVID-19 pandemic and its economic impacts, the Executive did not propose an increase to Water rates in 2021 according to the regular schedule. Therefore, the 2020 adopted rates continued unchanged into 2021.

As can be seen in the table, the combined average annual rate increase in the Proposed SBP is 4.2 percent. SPU derived the rate path and forecast by determining the resources necessary to continue providing the current level of service, to provide sufficient funding for required capital programs and maintenance, and to initiate new programs or increase spending in targeted priority areas.

Three primary factors are contributing to the proposed rate increases:

- a. increased operational expenses due to inflation;
- b. increased capital expenses due to regulatory compliance costs and increased investment in aging infrastructure; and
- c. increased contractual expenses from large contracts, such as the King County wastewater treatment contract.

SPU has also taken steps to control costs and reduce the growth in rates when possible through activities such as: improving capital investment assumptions, using available cash balances, negotiating lower solid waste contract rates, and taking advantage of lower-cost financing options.

Following are some rules of thumb for how SPU could change the Proposed SBP’s combined annual average rate increase by a tenth of a percentage point. For context, SPU’s 2021 Adopted Budget is approximately \$1.4 billion. Decreasing the combined annual average rate from 4.2 percent to 4.1 percent would require a reduction of about \$7 million per year, or \$43 million in capital spending during the six-year planning period. Achieving the same overall rate reduction

⁶ The Council typically considers rate-setting legislation for one of SPU’s distinct utilities (Drainage and Wastewater, Solid Waste, or Water) each year, with rates being set for a three-year period. For example, in Fall 2019, the Council passed [Ordinance 125985](#) setting Solid Waste rates for 2020–2022. In 2020, the Council would typically have considered legislation setting Water rates for 2021–2023. Instead, the Council expects to consider legislation in 2021 to set Water rates for 2022–2023; and the Council also expects to consider legislation in 2021 to set Drainage and Wastewater rates for 2022–2024. This will allow the SPU rate-setting cycle to resume a more typical schedule.

through operations and maintenance spending (rather than through a decrease in capital spending) would require a cut of \$6 million per year, or \$36 million during the six-year period.⁷ Similar spending increases would be possible if the combined annual average rate were increased from 4.2 percent to 4.3 percent.

In terms of the Proposed SBP's cost to customers, the typical bill for a single-family house would increase from \$223 per month in 2021 to \$275 per month by the sixth year of the Proposed SBP, an increase of \$52 per month. For a multifamily unit customer, the typical bill is estimated to increase from \$127 per month in 2021 to \$155 per month by 2026, an increase of \$28 per month over the 2021 cost.⁸

Equity and Customer Assistance

In an attempt to address the disproportionate impact that utility bills may have on low-income customers, SPU has a variety of customer assistance programs⁹, including the Utility Discount Program (UDP) and the Emergency Assistance Program (EAP). The UDP provides a 50 percent discount on SPU bills for customers that are income qualified¹⁰, and the EAP provides credits to qualifying customers to assist with current or overdue balances.¹¹

The COVID-19 pandemic also appears to have negatively impacted many customers. Since the beginning of the pandemic, the number of delinquent customer accounts has increased dramatically. In March 2020, SPU had approximately 4,500 delinquent residential customer accounts with a total of about \$2.1 million in overdue bills. By March 2021, the number of delinquent customer accounts had risen over 80 percent up to approximately 8,200 accounts with overdue amounts totaling just under \$7 million.¹² In response, SPU has suspended customer shut-offs, created flexible payment plans for residential and small business customers, and with Council approval¹³ has suspended interest charges on delinquent utility account balances.

SPU is continuing to evaluate its programs and improve the assistance that can be provided to eligible customers. Between late-2019 and late-2020, SPU customer enrollment in the UDP increased by approximately 5,000 customers, largely resulting from a self-certification process

⁷ The spending amount changes provided as examples are illustrative of magnitude, but rate impacts would vary depending on the line of business and year of the changes.

⁸ Typical monthly bill examples by SPU line of business for a single-family house, a multifamily unit, and a convenience store are provided on Page 30 of the Proposed SBP.

⁹ A Customer Assistance Catalogue is available in [Exhibit A to Resolution 32000's Summary and Fiscal Note](#).

¹⁰ To qualify for the UDP, customers must be at or below 70 percent of the state median income, which for a household of four in 2021 is approximately \$72,000.

¹¹ To qualify for the EAP, customers must be at or below 80 percent of the state median income, which for a household of four in 2021 is approximately \$82,000.

¹² Council recently passed [Council Bill 120018](#) providing federal funds to SPU for it to provide utility assistance to renters with arrearages.

¹³ Approval was most recently granted via [Ordinance 126182](#), which passed in September 2020.

that allows customers to enroll with significantly less paperwork than is typically required. Consistent with the trend over the last few years, the number of multifamily customers enrolling in the UDP during this period has exceeded the number of single-family customers.

The Proposed SBP also includes a new area of investment to assist customers with maintaining and repairing their side sewers, likely in the form of rebates, grants, or loans. SPU intends for this program to prioritize low- and fixed-income customers, and SPU's preliminary analysis indicates that those customers are likely to be underserved communities including communities of color and non-English speaking populations.

SPU has also explicitly acknowledged equity and empowerment as guiding principles in the Proposed SBP. SPU commits to giving voice and power to all of its customers and prioritizing "outreach to traditionally hard-to-reach communities, improv[ing] connections with and between employees (especially those on the front lines of service delivery), and enhanc[ing] regional partnerships and collaboration."¹⁴ The Proposed SBP includes two initiatives that directly support those commitments: updating SPU's Race and Social Justice (RSJ) Strategic Plan and developing a new proposal that SPU has titled the Seeds of Resilience Impact Investment. SPU's goals for the RSJ Strategic Plan update are to revise the plan to reflect current needs, assess the extent to which RSJ policies are supported across the utility, and recommend opportunities for improved policies and practices. The Seeds of Resilience proposal aims to design a three-year pilot program that will foster community-centered entrepreneurship through grants supporting projects that build water resiliency or reduce waste, with an emphasis on growing jobs and supporting Black, Indigenous, and People of Color communities.

Customer Review Panel Comments

SPU's Customer Review Panel (CRP), established by the Council as an ongoing entity in 2018 via [Resolution 31800](#), is tasked with providing stakeholder oversight of the SBP's implementation and providing input into SBP updates. The establishing resolution provides that CRP members should be selected to represent a variety of SPU customer viewpoints, including residential, commercial, low-income housing, non-profits, and the development community.

Appendix A to the Proposed SBP materials¹⁵ is a comment letter from the CRP. In brief, the CRP endorses the Proposed SBP and supports its adoption by the Council. The CRP comment letter states that ensuring the affordability of SPU's services, particularly for low-income customers and small businesses, is a priority for the CRP, and the members are pleased that the proposed rate path is lower than the rate path included in the 2018 SBP. They are concerned, however, that the rate path reduction is largely being accomplished by spending cash reserves built up during the last three years due to underspending on capital projects, which may not be sustainable and may create rate pressure in the future as asset maintenance and rehabilitation

¹⁴ Page 21 of the Proposed SBP.

¹⁵ Appendix A begins on Page 33 of the Proposed SBP.

needs increase. The CRP would also like to strengthen its communication and engagement with the Mayor's Office and Council in the future.

The Chair of the CRP is scheduled to make a presentation to the Transportation and Utilities Committee at its April 21, 2021 meeting.

Background

In Fall 2012, the Council passed a Statement of Legislative Intent¹⁶ requesting SPU to develop a strategic plan covering all of its lines of business as the basis for establishing a rate growth policy. Subsequently, in March 2013, the Council adopted [Resolution 31429](#) stating that the primary goal for SPU's new SBP process is "to set a transparent and integrated direction for all of SPU's business lines that reflects customer values, provides rate predictability for utility customers, and results in best value for customer dollars."

[Resolution 31534](#), adopted in August 2014, adopted SPU's first SBP covering 2015–2020. This resolution also directed SPU to complete a review and update of the SBP every three years, adding three years to the timeframe and re-evaluating the six-year rate path. The most recent SBP, the 2018 SBP covering the 2018–2023 time period, was adopted by the Council in November 2017, via [Resolution 31760](#).

In addition to adopting the 2018 SBP, Resolution 31760 also requested SPU to prepare two additional reports for inclusion and incorporation into the next SBP update. The first of these reports, the Accountability and Affordability Strategic Plan (A&A Plan), was intended to focus on managing future rate increases and on the corporate performance of SPU. The A&A Plan, which was completed and submitted to Council in June 2019, "focuses on how SPU delivers capital projects, ensures access to services, partners with organizations, and conducts other business practices."¹⁷ The A&A Plan describes 12 strategies and 47 action items across six practice areas to improve affordability and accountability. The A&A Plan can be found in Appendix G to the Proposed SBP.¹⁸

The second of the reports requested by Resolution 31760 is the Risk and Resiliency Strategic Plan (R&R Plan). The intent of the request was for SPU to identify and evaluate potential impacts and disruptions to SPU's business and investment strategies. The R&R Plan, also submitted to Council in June 2019, identifies and describes seven strategic risk areas (climate change, disasters, investment priorities, economy, market forces, technology, and workforce), details SPU's accomplishments in addressing the risks, and provides the next steps to advance resiliency work throughout SPU. The R&R Plan can be found in Appendix H of the Proposed SBP.¹⁹

¹⁶ [2013–2014 Statement of Legislative Intent 27-1-A-1](#)

¹⁷ Accountability and Affordability Strategic Plan, Page 3.

¹⁸ Appendix G begins on Page 117 of the Proposed SBP.

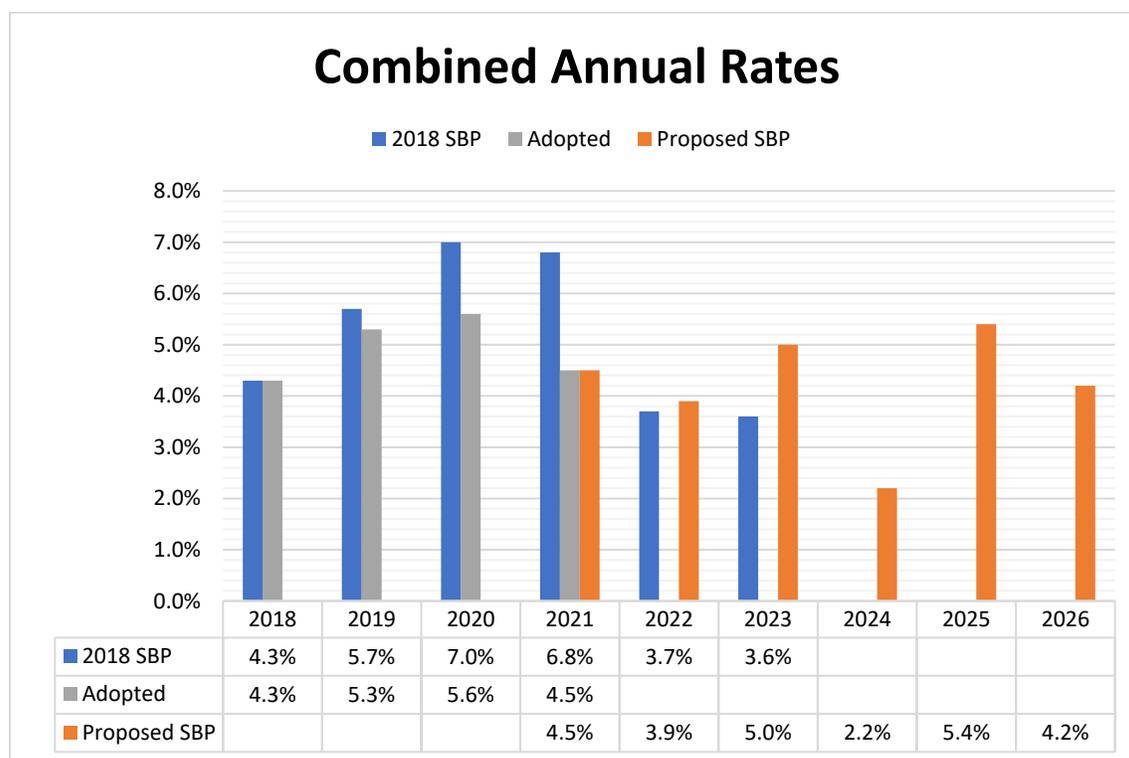
¹⁹ Appendix H begins on Page 160 of the Proposed SBP.

Comparison of Proposed SBP to 2018 SBP and Adopted Rates

As described above, the combined average annual rate increase in the Proposed SBP is 4.2 percent. This is the weighted average for all four of SPU’s lines of business. In comparison, the 2018 SBP had a combined average annual rate increase of 5.2 percent. Therefore, the Proposed SBP’s combined average annual rate is about 19 percent lower than the comparable rate in the 2018 SBP.

Chart 1 shows a comparison of the combined annual rate increases for the rate path included in the 2018 SBP, the rates that have been adopted by Council since 2018, and the rate path included in the Proposed SBP.

Chart 1. Comparison of 2018 SBP Rates vs Adopted Rates vs Proposed SBP Rates



The adopted rates for 2019–2021 have been lower than what was anticipated in the 2018 SBP. For example, rather than a combined rate increase of 7.0 percent in 2020, the adopted rate increases equaled 5.6 percent. Similarly, in 2021, the 2018 SBP projected a 6.8 percent combined annual increase, whereas the adopted rates equal 4.5 percent. Similar comparisons for each line of business are included in Attachment 1 to this memorandum.

Another way to evaluate rate paths is to compare what a typical ratepayer would be paying in 2023 (the end of the 2018 SBP time period) if the 2018 SBP rate path had been implemented as projected, versus what the ratepayer is now estimated to pay in 2023 using the combination of

adopted rates (for 2018–2021) and proposed rates (for 2022–2023). Under the rate path included in the 2018 SBP, the typical bill for a single-family house in 2023 was estimated to be approximately \$248 per month. Comparatively, under the combination of adopted and proposed rates, the typical bill for a single-family house in 2023 is approximately \$244 per month. Thus, even though the adopted and proposed rates vary in almost every year relative to the 2018 SBP rates, the result is a monthly bill that is \$4 lower (about two percent) for the single-family house over the six-year time period compared to the 2018 SBP.

The same situation applies to the typical monthly bill for SPU customers that live in an apartment building. Under the rate path included in the 2018 SBP, the typical bill for an apartment unit in 2023 was estimated to be approximately \$142 per month. Under the combination of adopted and proposed rates, the typical bill in 2023 is estimated to be approximately \$138 per month, a reduction of \$4 per month (about three percent) compared to the 2018 SBP.

Issues for Council Consideration (pg. 9 – 13)

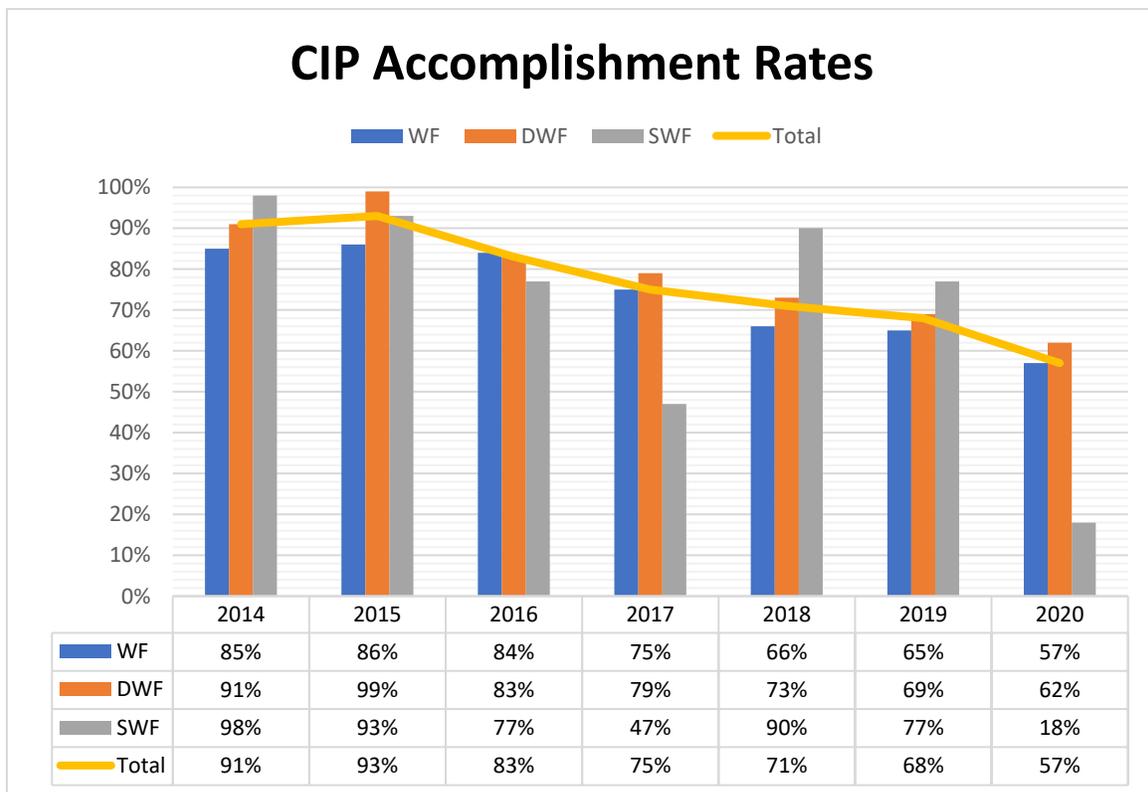
1. Capital Improvement Program (CIP) Accomplishment Rate (pg. 9)
2. Rate Volatility (pg. 11)
3. Utility Taxes (pg. 12)
4. Department Staffing (pg. 13)

1. Capital Improvement Program (CIP) Accomplishment Rate

The CIP accomplishment rate describes the percentage of budgeted capital resources that are expended in the year in which they are planned to be spent. SPU uses projected accomplishment rates to reflect delays in the timeline of capital projects and to avoid over-collecting revenues before they are needed. For example, a project that is planning to spend a certain amount in year one may actually spend some of those funds in year two due to unforeseen circumstances or delayed billing. This type of financial forecasting helps SPU to determine when to issue bonds and in what amounts in order to have sufficient funds to cover project costs when necessary.

Historically, SPU assumed a 100 percent accomplishment rate for its capital program. During consideration of the 2018 SBP, Council requested that SPU adjust its accomplishment rate from 100 percent to 97.5 percent and reduce its projected revenue requirements accordingly. Since 2014, however, SPU's overall accomplishment rate averages approximately 77 percent and, as shown in Chart 2, has been decreasing over the past few years.²⁰

Chart 2. SPU 2014–2020 CIP Accomplishment Rates²¹



²⁰ The COVID-19 pandemic delayed several capital projects in 2020 and, therefore, its accomplishment rate of 57 percent may not be a useful indicator of future accomplishment rates.

²¹ WF = Water Fund; DWF = Drainage and Wastewater Fund; SWF = Solid Waste Fund

SPU has recognized this past performance in the Proposed SBP and has adjusted the accomplishment rate for all three of its funds, as follows:

- Water Fund – 85 percent
- Drainage and Wastewater Fund – 85 percent
 - Exception: Ship Canal Water Quality Project – 95 percent
- Solid Waste Fund – 90 percent

SPU estimates that these lower accomplishment rates reduce the projection of revenues required for the six-year Proposed SBP period by approximately \$222 million. Reducing the revenue requirement creates savings in the relatively near-term for ratepayers by reducing the amount of revenue that needs to be collected through rates.

Additional reductions to the accomplishment rate would further lower the rate path included in the Proposed SBP. For example, reducing the accomplishment rate down to 80 percent for the Water Fund and the Drainage and Wastewater Fund (except for the Ship Canal Water Quality Project) and down to 85 percent for the Solid Waste Fund would lower the combined average annual rate increase from 4.2 percent to 4.0 percent. The risk of lowering the accomplishment rate even further, however, is that the SBP may no longer provide an accurate projection of what future rate increases will need to be to support SPU's activities. If actual spending on capital projects outperforms the assumed accomplishment rate, then future rate proposals may need to exceed the rates included in the SBP.

Options:

- a. Do nothing – leave the CIP accomplishment rates at the levels in the Proposed SBP.
- b. Adjust the CIP accomplishment rates contained in the Proposed SBP and adjust the included rate path accordingly.

2. Rate Volatility

As shown in Chart 1, the Proposed SBP's rate path varies during each year of the six-year period, from a low combined annual rate increase of 2.2 percent in 2024 to a high of 5.4 percent in 2025, and the rates are especially volatile between 2023 and 2025. The two lines of business that contribute the most to this volatility are Drainage and Wastewater, with the Wastewater line of business having the largest impact on the overall rates and being the most volatile. The rates for these lines of business are impacted by capital investments necessitated by regulatory requirements and by the timing and size of increases to King County's wastewater treatment rates.

King County treatment rates currently account for approximately 8 percent of SPU's Drainage rate and nearly 60 percent of its Wastewater rate. King County typically increases its rate every other year, with the most recent increase being approved in May 2020²² to institute a 4.5 percent increase to 2021 rates. Based on prior projections from King County's Wastewater Treatment Division, the Proposed SBP assumes a treatment rate increase of 4.5 percent in 2022, increases of 10.3 percent in 2023 and 2025, and no increases in 2024 and 2026. King County is currently in the process of briefing stakeholders, including the Regional Water Quality Committee (RWQC) and the Metropolitan Water Pollution Abatement Advisory Committee (MWPAAC), and determining its proposal for 2022. MWPAAC members recently requested that the County shift to annual rate proposals rather than biennial proposals to assist agencies, such as SPU, in avoiding rate spikes. If King County does modify its approach and switches to annual wastewater treatment rate increases, that should reduce the volatility of SPU's rates. The County is expected to make its recommendation in mid-April.

Another approach for reducing rate volatility is to pursue rate smoothing, which works by increasing rates early in the rate cycle and decreasing them in the later years, thereby balancing the trajectory of any increases. In November 2017, the Council approved [Ordinance 125443](#) increasing Drainage and Wastewater rates in 2018 in order to reduce the size of the projected increases for 2019 and 2020. In the Proposed SBP, 2022 and 2024 are the years with the lowest rates and may provide opportunities to lower rates in later years.

Options:

- a. Do nothing – leave the rate path as proposed. This option could also include continuing to work with King County with regard to the wastewater treatment rate increases and their impact on SPU's rate path.
- b. Amend the rate path in the Proposed SBP to reflect rate smoothing. This option would require additional modeling by SPU to ensure that any proposed changes will still allow SPU to meet its financial policies.

²² [King County Council Ordinance 19106](#)

3. Utility Taxes

Currently, the City's taxes on SPU's lines of business range from 11.5 percent for Drainage to 15.5 percent for Water. The City tax on Seattle City Light's electric utility, however, is limited to six percent by state law ([RCW 35.21.870](#)), unless a higher rate is approved by a majority of voters of the city. No comparable limit exists for taxes imposed on the types of utilities operated by SPU.

With the current taxes in effect, SPU estimates that it will pay approximately \$123 million in City utility taxes in 2021, all of which flows to the City's General Fund. This amount is projected to increase during each year of the Proposed SBP along with increases in the amount of revenue that SPU projects it will collect. If the utility tax rates for SPU were all reduced to six percent, however, consistent with the tax on electricity, SPU estimates that it would pay approximately \$413 million less in City utility taxes between 2022 and 2026. In 2022, for example, SPU's utility tax payment would decrease from an estimated \$131 million to approximately \$57 million, a reduction of about \$74 million. The City's General Fund would experience a reduction in revenue equal to the same amount. A reduction in utility taxes would also lower SPU's rate path from a combined average annual rate increase of 4.2 percent to 3.0 percent.

It is important to note that although SPU's rates are impacted by utility taxes, utility tax rates are not set by the Proposed SBP legislation and the Proposed SBP does not assume a change in utility taxes.

Options:

- a. Do nothing – maintain the status quo.
- b. Amend the rate path included in the Proposed SBP to reflect a Council-directed change in utility tax policy. Council would need to draft additional legislation, in the form of an ordinance, to implement the change in utility tax policy.

4. Department Staffing

One of the factors that SPU has identified as contributing to cost containment efforts for the department, and therefore a lower proposed rate path, is holding more positions vacant than planned. SPU's average vacancy rate over the past three years, according to information provided along with each year's proposed budget, has ranged between 8 percent and 10.7 percent. According to [Exhibit A of Resolution 32000's Summary and Fiscal Note](#), SPU "held more positions vacant than initially planned, a 4% projection compared to an annual average of 10%, providing vacancy savings." In the 2021 Adopted Budget, SPU has approximately 1,440 FTEs, meaning that a ten percent vacancy rate would equal approximately 144 FTEs. Although these vacancy savings may be advantageous for holding down rates in the short-term, they may not be an appropriate long-term strategy because a high number of vacancies might hinder SPU's ability to deliver capital projects and meet its service delivery objectives.

In addition, there are at least three investment programs that SPU has identified in the Proposed SBP that are potentially lacking adequate staffing resources. For two of the programs, Sewer Rehabilitation and Drainage Rehabilitation, the Proposed SBP states that positions would be required in 2021 to deliver the proposed work program, but SPU did not propose adding position authority to support such work in the annual budget process. SPU has indicated that it is currently evaluating its resources and may request positions in the next budget cycle. Another investment program, Hydrant and Valve Maintenance, has four vacant positions; but SPU has not been able to attract qualified water pipe workers in the last several hiring processes. SPU is continuing to advertise these positions and is working with Human Resources to identify strategies that may help in recruitment.

The Customer Review Panel letter also notes that "there has been extensive change in SPU's leadership staffing in the last three years" and that "about a quarter of the SPU workforce is currently eligible to retire." The Proposed SBP does include an initiative related to workforce development that identifies the following areas of focus for SPU between 2021 and 2023: internal trainings, recruitment, mentorship, performance management, succession planning, race and social justice, and a tuition assistance program.

Options:

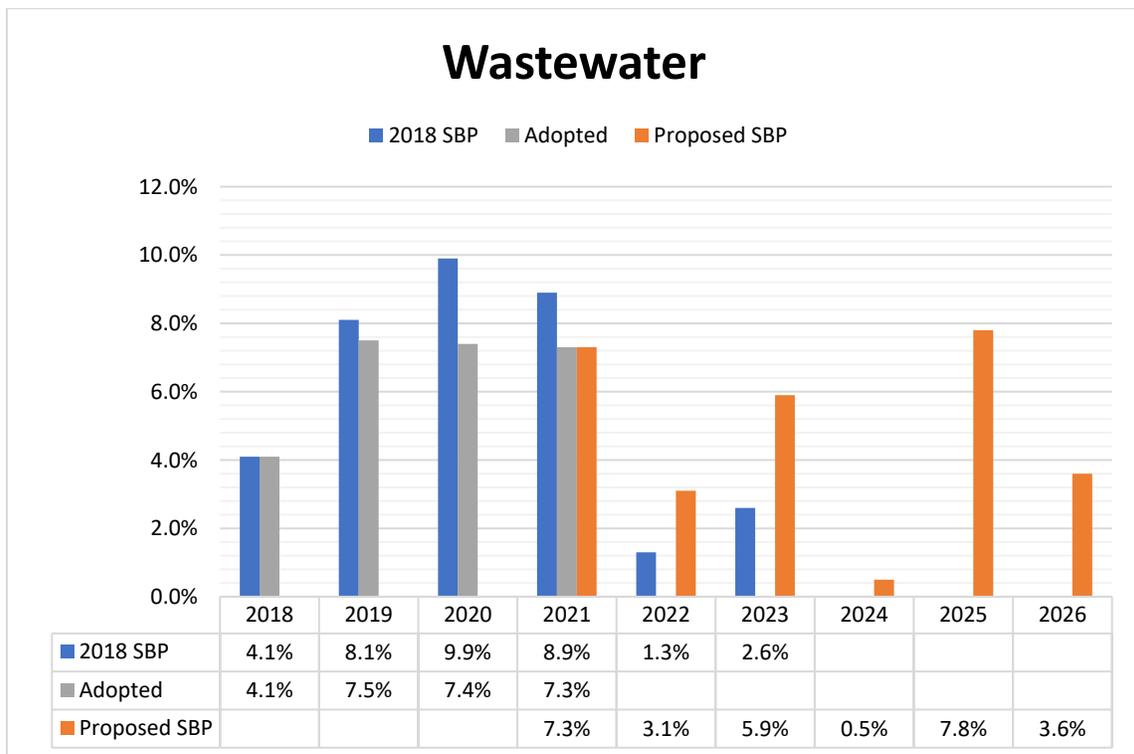
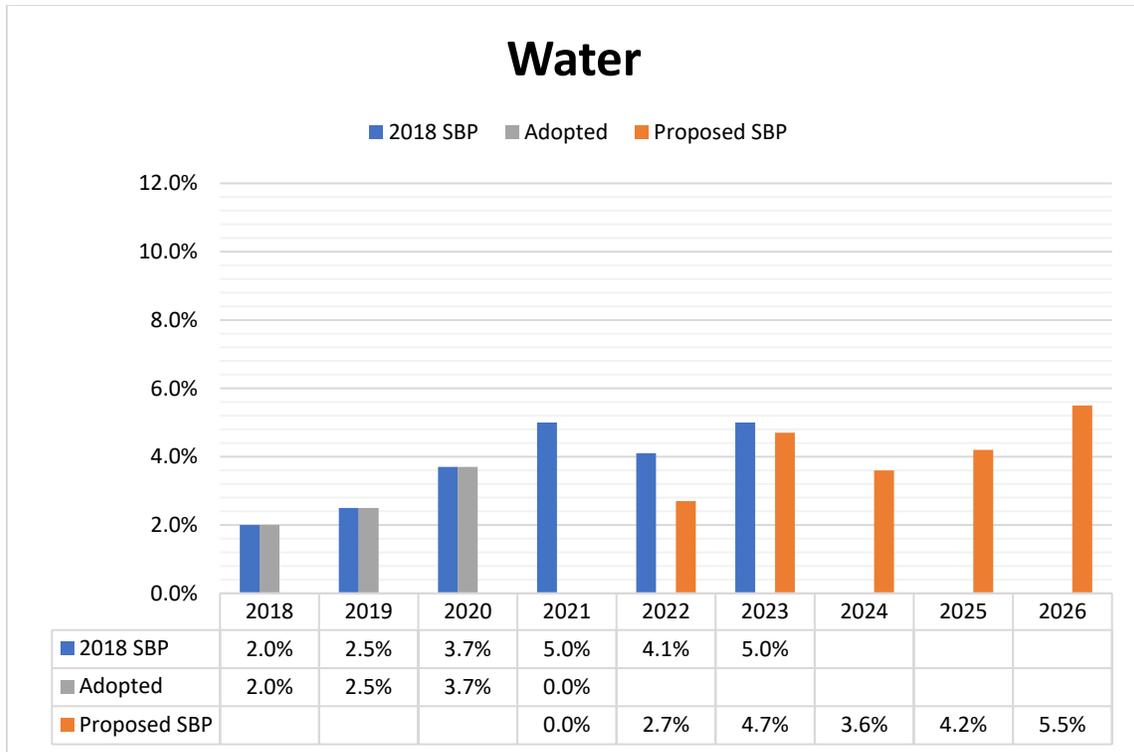
- a. Do nothing – let SPU evaluate its resources and pursue its identified workforce development initiative, as described in the Proposed SBP.
- b. Amend the resolution to request that SPU regularly report to the Council on its workforce development initiative and its efforts to fill vacant positions needed to perform priority work.

Attachments:

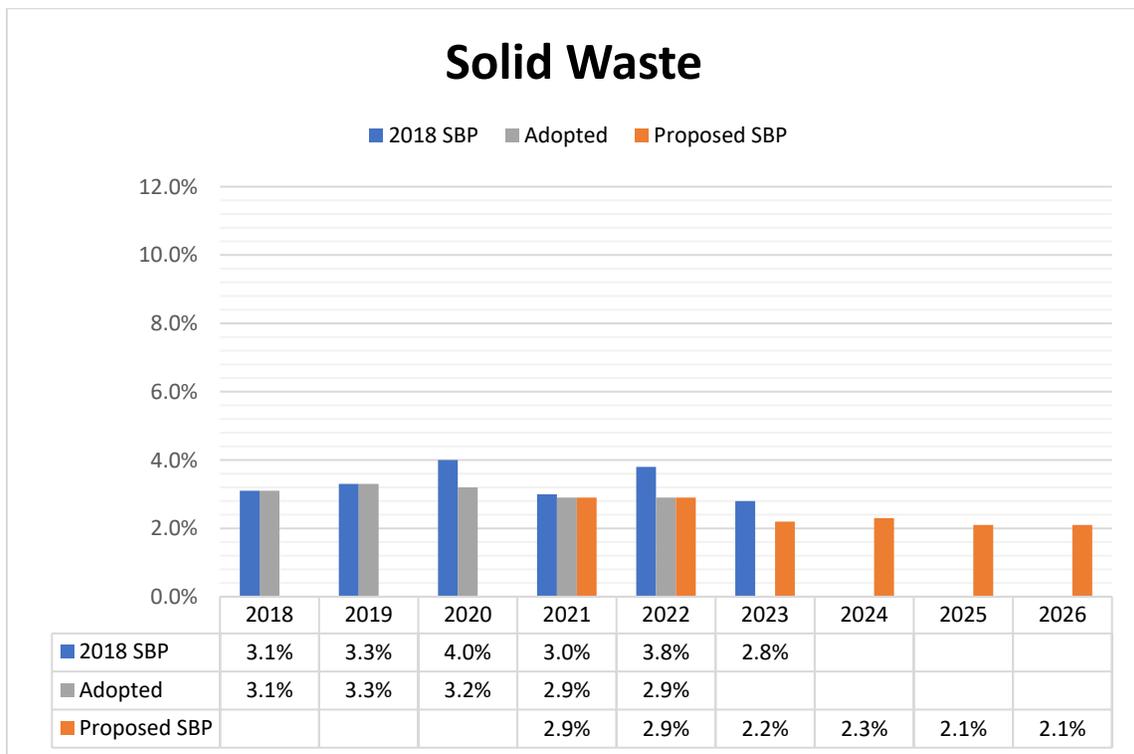
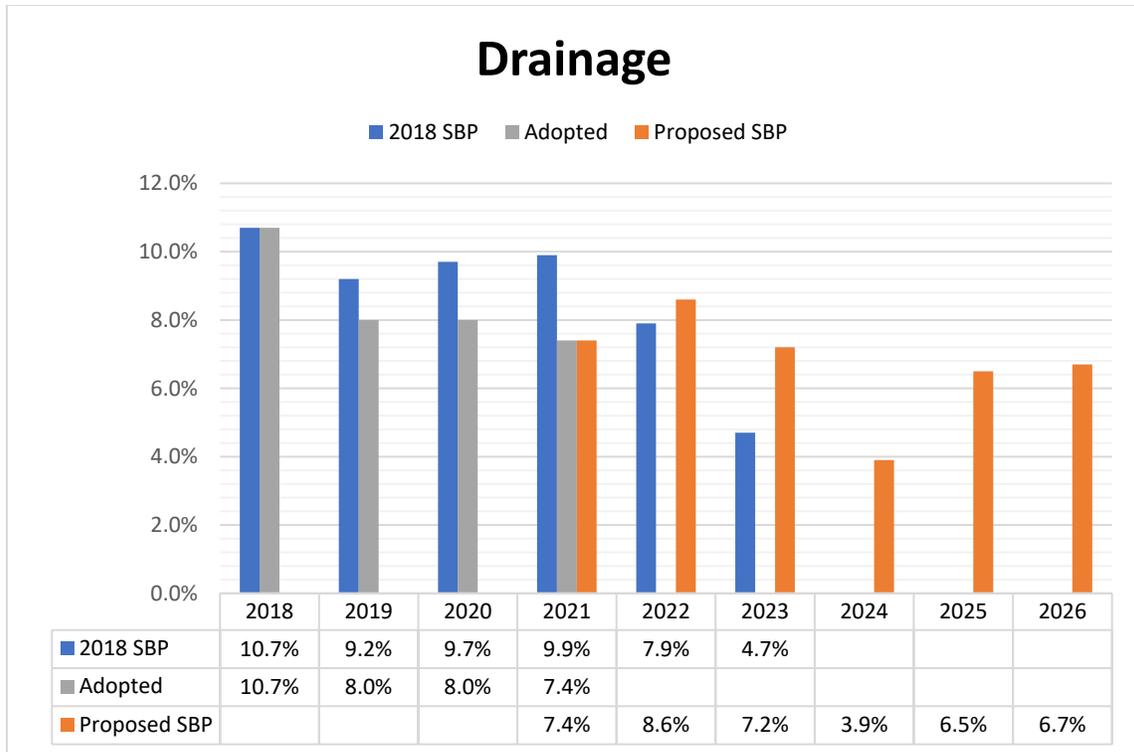
1. Comparison of Rates – 2018 SBP vs Adopted vs Proposed SBP

cc: Dan Eder, Interim Director
Aly Pennucci, Policy and Budget Manager

Attachment 1: Comparison of Rates – 2018 SBP vs Adopted vs Proposed SBP



Attachment 1: Comparison of Rates – 2018 SBP vs Adopted vs Proposed SBP





SEATTLE CITY COUNCIL
CENTRAL STAFF

Seattle Public Utilities (SPU) 2021–2026 Strategic Business Plan

BRIAN GOODNIGHT, ANALYST

TRANSPORTATION AND UTILITIES COMMITTEE

APRIL 21, 2021

Summary (1/2)

- **SPU engages in a planning process every 3 years**
- **Business plans cover a 6-year timeframe**
- **Opportunity for SPU to re-evaluate its priorities and project its operating and capital program requirements**
- **Chance for Council to determine whether it agrees with SPU's proposed direction**

Summary (2/2)

- **Proposed Strategic Business Plan (Proposed SBP) contains SPU's:**
 - New mission and vision
 - Focus areas
 - Long-term goals
 - Short-term strategies
 - Initiatives and investments
- **SPU conducted a review of previous studies, surveyed community members, and interviewed business and community leaders**
- **SPU also worked extensively with its Customer Review Panel**

Proposed Rate Path & Forecast (1/2)

Line of Business	2021	2022	2023	2024	2025	2026	6-Year Average
Water	0.0%	2.7%	4.7%	3.6%	4.2%	5.5%	3.4%
Wastewater	7.3%	3.1%	5.9%	0.5%	7.8%	3.6%	4.7%
Drainage	7.4%	8.6%	7.2%	3.9%	6.5%	6.7%	6.7%
Solid Waste	2.9%	2.9%	2.2%	2.3%	2.1%	2.1%	2.4%
Combined:	4.5%	3.9%	5.0%	2.2%	5.4%	4.2%	4.2%

Note: The cells shaded in blue show rate increases that the Council has already adopted legislatively.

Proposed Rate Path & Forecast (2/2)

- **Proposed SBP's cost to customers:**
 - Typical single-family house – 2021: \$223/month; 2026: \$275/month
 - Typical multifamily unit – 2021: \$127/month; 2026: \$155/month
- **To decrease the combined average annual rate from 4.2% to 4.1% would take:**
 - \$43 million reduction in capital spending, or
 - \$36 million reduction in operations and maintenance spending
- **Similar spending increases would be possible if the rate were increased from 4.2% to 4.3%**

Note: These amounts are illustrative of magnitude, but rate impacts vary depending on the line of business and year of spending changes.

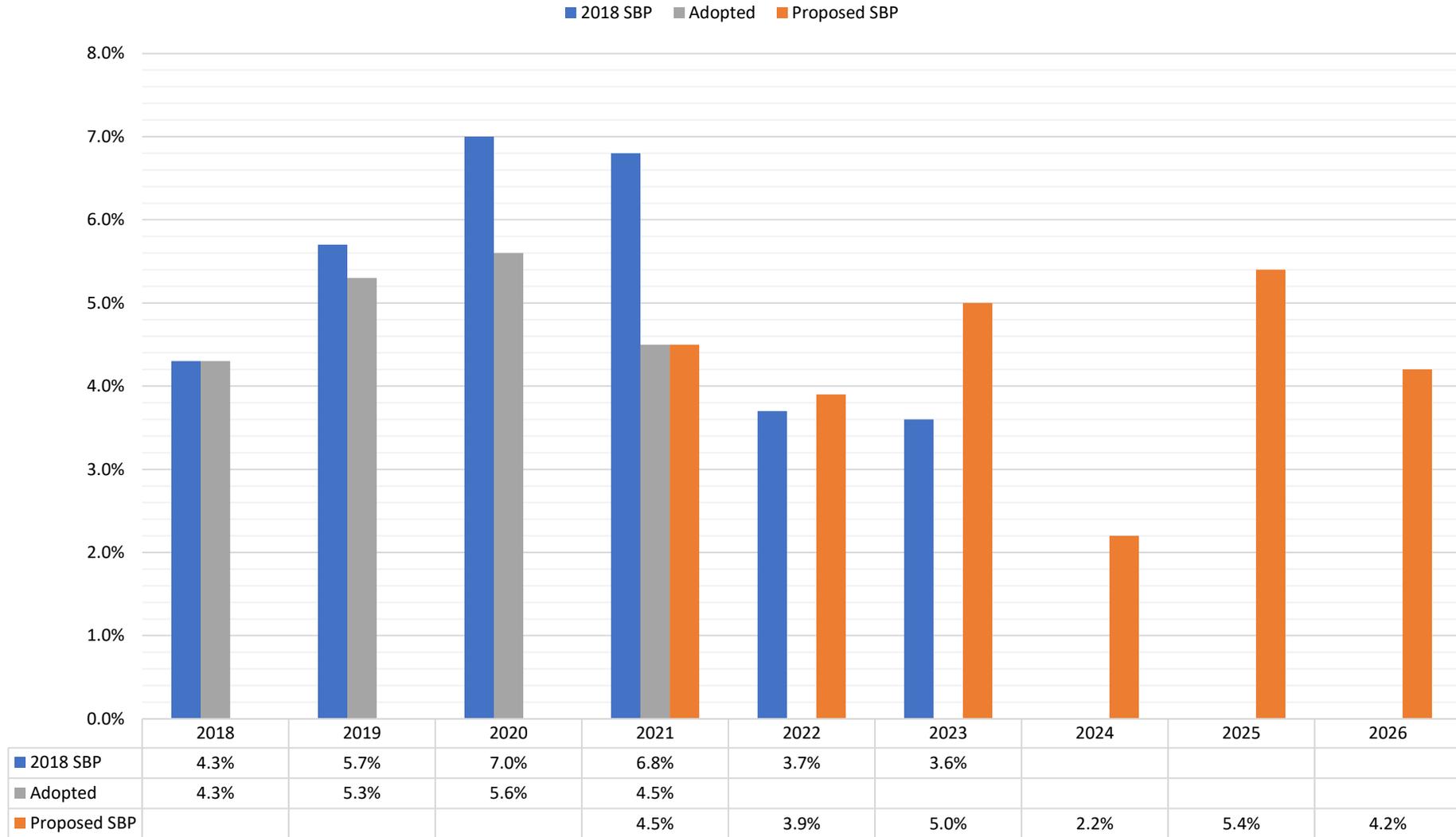
Equity & Customer Assistance (1/2)

- **SPU has a variety of customer assistance programs to help address the disproportionate impact that utility bills may have on low-income customers**
- **COVID-19 pandemic appears to have negatively impacted many customers:**
 - In March 2020, SPU had approximately 4,500 delinquent accounts totaling about \$2.1 million in overdue bills
 - In March 2021, the number of delinquent accounts had risen to 8,200, totaling approximately \$7 million
- **In response, SPU has suspended shut-offs, created flexible payment plans, and with Council approval has suspended interest charges on delinquent balances**

Equity & Customer Assistance (2/2)

- **Side Sewer Assistance Program**
 - Rebates, grants, or loans; would prioritize low- and fixed-income customers
- **Race and Social Justice (RSJ) Strategic Plan**
 - Revise to reflect current needs, assess the extent to which RSJ policies are supported across the utility, and recommend opportunities for improved policies and practices
- **Seeds of Resilience Impact Investment**
 - Three-year pilot to foster community-centered entrepreneurship through grants supporting projects that build water resilience or reduce waste

Combined Annual Rates



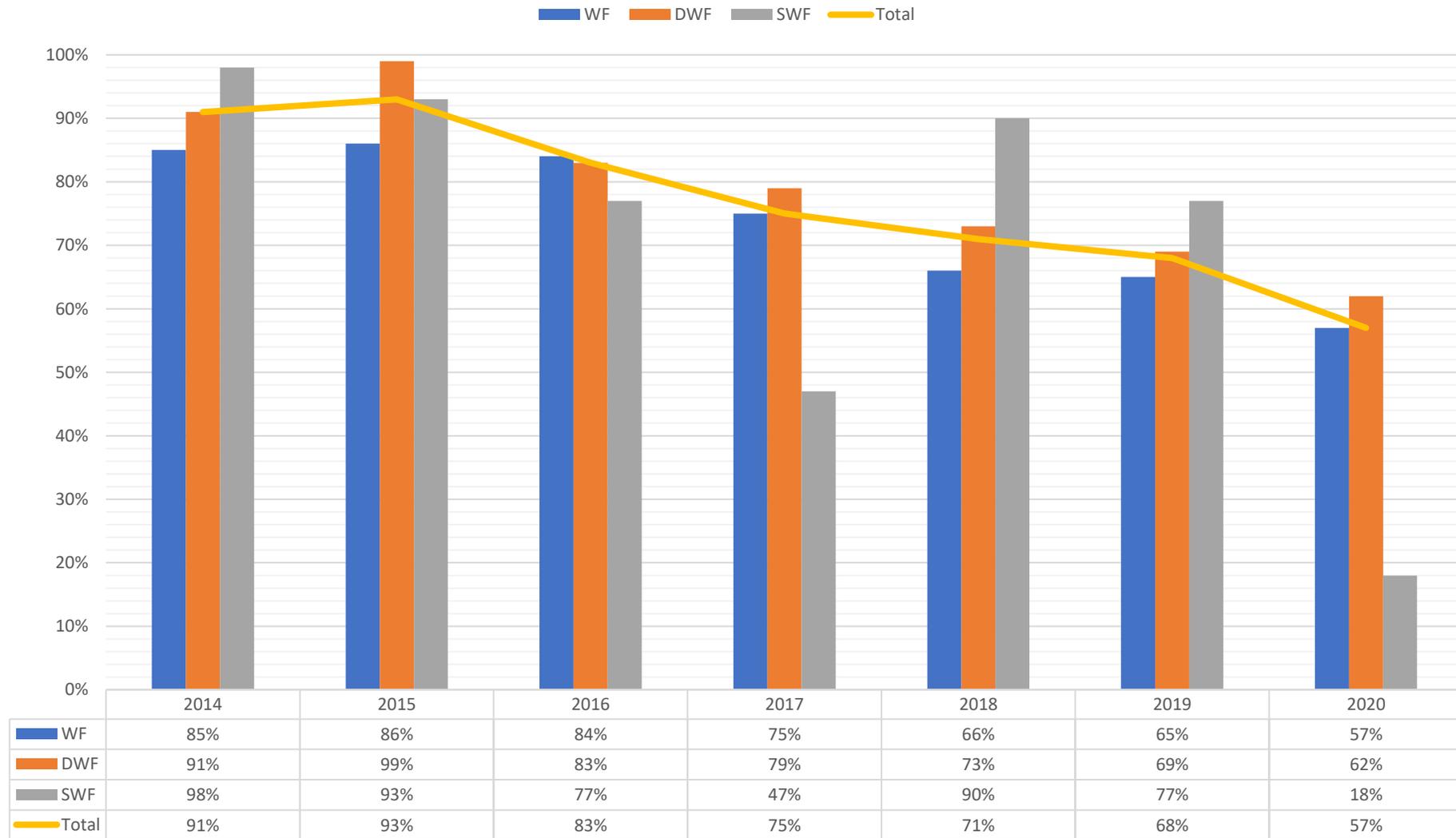
Comparison of Rates

- **Typical single-family house, in 2023:**
 - Under 2018 SBP rates: \$248/month
 - Under Adopted + Proposed SBP rates: \$244/month
- **Typical multifamily unit, in 2023:**
 - Under 2018 SBP rates: \$142/month
 - Under Adopted + Proposed SBP rates: \$138/month

Issue #1: CIP Accomplishment Rate (1/4)

- **Capital Improvement Program (CIP) accomplishment rate describes the percentage of budgeted capital resources that are expended in the year in which they are planned to be spent**
- **Historically, SPU assumed a 100% accomplishment rate**
- **In 2018 SBP, at the request of Council, the rate was lowered to 97.5%**

CIP Accomplishment Rates (2/4)



Issue #1: CIP Accomplishment Rate (3/4)

- **Proposed SBP includes the following accomplishment rates:**
 - Water Fund: 85%
 - Drainage and Wastewater Fund: 85% (except Ship Canal Project: 95%)
 - Solid Waste Fund: 90%
- **SPU estimates that these lower rates reduce the amount of required revenues for the six-year period by approximately \$222 million**
- **Additional reductions in the accomplishment rate would further lower the rate path, but the risk is that the SBP may no longer provide an accurate projection of what future rate increases will need to be to support SPU's activities**

Issue #1: CIP Accomplishment Rate (4/4)

Options:

- a. Do nothing – leave the CIP accomplishment rates at the levels in the Proposed SBP.
- b. Adjust the CIP accomplishment rates contained in the Proposed SBP and adjust the included rate path accordingly.

Issue #2: Rate Volatility (1/3)

- **Proposed SBP rate path varies each year, from a low of 2.2% in 2024 to a high of 5.4% in 2025**
- **Drainage and Wastewater lines of business are the largest contributors to this volatility**
- **King County wastewater treatment rates account for approximately 8% of the Drainage rate, and nearly 60% of the Wastewater rate**

Issue #2: Rate Volatility (2/3)

- **Proposed SBP assumes King County increases of 4.5% in 2022, 10.3% in 2023 and 2025, and 0% in 2024 and 2026**
- **Could pursue rate smoothing – increasing rates early in the rate cycle and decreasing them in the later years**

Issue #2: Rate Volatility (3/3)

Options:

- a. Do nothing – leave the rate path as proposed. This option could also include continuing to work with King County with regard to the wastewater treatment rate increases and their impact on SPU’s rate path.
- b. Amend the rate path in the Proposed SBP to reflect rate smoothing. This option would require additional modeling by SPU to ensure that any proposed changes will still allow SPU to meet its financial policies.

Issue #3: Utility Taxes (1/3)

- **City taxes on SPU's lines of business range from 11.5% for Drainage to 15.5% for Water**
- **City tax on the electric utility is limited by state law to 6%**
- **SPU estimates that it will pay approximately \$123 million in City utility taxes in 2021, all of which flows to the General Fund**

Issue #3: Utility Taxes (2/3)

- **If the City tax rates for SPU were all reduced to 6%, SPU estimates it would pay approximately \$413 million less between 2022 and 2026**
- **Would reduce the Proposed SBP's rate path from 4.2% to 3.0%**

Note: City utility tax rates are not set by the Proposed SBP legislation and the Proposed SBP does not assume a change in utility taxes.

Issue #3: Utility Taxes (3/3)

Options:

- a. Do nothing – maintain the status quo.
- b. Amend the rate path included in the Proposed SBP to reflect a Council-directed change in utility tax policy. Council would need to draft additional legislation, in the form of an ordinance, to implement the change in utility tax policy.

Issue #4: Department Staffing (1/3)

- **SPU has identified vacancy savings as a contributor to containing costs and holding down rates**
- **Average vacancy rate over the past three years has ranged between 8% and 10.7%**
- **Three investment programs in the Proposed SBP potentially lack adequate staffing resources**

Issue #4: Department Staffing (2/3)

- **Customer Review Panel letter notes extensive change in SPU leadership staffing in the last three years, and that about a quarter of the SPU workforce is eligible to retire**
- **Proposed SBP includes a workforce development initiative**

Issue #4: Department Staffing (3/3)

Options:

- a. Do nothing – let SPU evaluate its resources and pursue its identified workforce development initiative, as described in the Proposed SBP.
- b. Amend the resolution to request that SPU regularly report to the Council on its workforce development initiative and its efforts to fill vacant positions needed to perform priority work.

Questions?



Legislation Text

File #: CB 120045, Version: 1

CITY OF SEATTLE

ORDINANCE _____

COUNCIL BILL _____

AN ORDINANCE relating to the City Light Department; declaring certain real property rights to be surplus to the needs of City Light; and authorizing the General Manager and Chief Executive Officer of City Light to execute an easement agreement with King County, allowing the temporary use of a portion of City Light property to resolve the encroachment of an existing structure located on the west side of Boeing Field within the Northeast Quarter of Section 29 Township 24 Range 4 and the Southeast Quarter of Section 29 Township 24 Range 4.

WHEREAS, City Light owns certain property between S. Myrtle St. and East Marginal Way S. in the

Georgetown neighborhood of Seattle, on which City Light previously operated a flume for drainage of spent cooling water from the Georgetown Steam Plant to Slip 4 on the Duwamish Waterway until the flume was decommissioned in 2009 by City Light; and

WHEREAS, City Light is planning to request City Council approval of the transfer of jurisdiction of a portion of this property to the Seattle Department of Parks and Recreation (SPR) and to the Seattle Department of Transportation (SDOT) as part of the required public benefit portion of City Light's petition to vacate a portion of Diagonal Ave. South; and

WHEREAS, a recent survey performed by City Light has indicated that a fence, part of a storage yard, a floodlight, and part of a storage building on adjacent King County (KC) property encroach onto a small portion of this City Light property and likely have existed in their current location for many years; and

WHEREAS, City Light and SPR have determined that it is in the interest of the City to resolve these encroachments prior to the jurisdiction for the property being transferred to SPR; and

WHEREAS, KC has agreed to remove the fence and floodlight from City Light property at KC's expense in

consideration for City Light providing KC a temporary easement for the 158 square foot encroachment by the corner of the storage building; and

WHEREAS, City Light has determined it has no further utility use for the 158 square feet of the surface of this property and desires to grant KC a temporary easement for the building encroachment; and

WHEREAS, the subsequent transfer of jurisdiction of the underlying property from City Light to SPR would then be subject to the terms of this temporary easement; and

WHEREAS, the City Council has held a public hearing in accordance with the requirements of RCW 35.94.040; NOW, THEREFORE,

BE IT ORDAINED BY THE CITY OF SEATTLE AS FOLLOWS:

Section 1. After a public hearing and pursuant to RCW 35.94.040, those real property rights described and depicted in the temporary easement agreement attached to this ordinance as Attachment 1 are declared to be no longer required for electric utility service and are surplus to the City's needs.

Section 2. The General Manager and Chief Executive Officer of City Light, or designee, is authorized to execute and grant to King County, for and behalf of The City of Seattle, a temporary easement agreement, substantially in the form of Attachment 1 to this ordinance.

Section 3. This ordinance shall take effect and be in force 30 days after its approval by the Mayor, but if not approved and returned by the Mayor within ten days after presentation, it shall take effect as provided by Seattle Municipal Code Section 1.04.020.

Passed by the City Council the _____ day of _____, 2021, and signed by me in open session in authentication of its passage this _____ day of _____, 2021.

President _____ of the City Council

Approved / returned unsigned / vetoed this _____ day of _____, 2021.

Jenny A. Durkan, Mayor

Filed by me this _____ day of _____, 2021.

Monica Martinez Simmons, City Clerk

(Seal)

Attachments:

Attachment 1 - Temporary Easement Agreement

Attachment 1- Temporary Easement Agreement

When recorded, return to:
SEATTLE CITY LIGHT
Real Estate Services
700 Fifth Avenue, SMT 3338
P.O. Box 34023
Seattle, WA 98124-4023

TEMPORARY EASEMENT FOR BUILDING ENCROACHMENT

Reference #:
Grantor: City of Seattle
Grantee: King County
Short Legal:
Additional Legal Description: See Exhibit A
Tax Parcel #: 7006700570, 2824049007

For good and valuable consideration, the receipt and sufficiency of which is hereby acknowledged, THE CITY OF SEATTLE, a Washington municipal corporation, acting by and through its CITY LIGHT DEPARTMENT (“Grantor”), hereby grants to King County, a political subdivision of the State of Washington, (Grantee), a temporary easement for an existing building encroachment for the purposes described below (“Easement”) on the Grantor’s real property described in Exhibit A (the “Property”). This Easement is appurtenant to and shall run with the land that makes up Grantee’s property described in Exhibit B.

Except as otherwise set forth herein, Grantee’s rights shall be exercised upon that portion of the Grantor’s Property occupied by a portion of the Grantee’s existing storage building as of the effective date of this Easement, (“the Building”) as depicted in Exhibit C attached hereto, and no other portion of the Grantor’s Property.

1. Purpose. Grantee and their current lessee, the Boeing Company (“Boeing”), shall have the right and privilege to use the Easement Area to accommodate that portion of the Building which encroaches onto the Property (the “Encroachment”) as of the Effective Date of this Easement, and to perform maintenance and repair of the Building, but not for replacement, enlargement, extension, or expansion of the Building. Grantee’s use of the Easement Area shall be limited to the term of the life of the Encroachment as a storage building within the existing footprint of the Building as of the effective date of the Easement, and such use shall be subject to and in accordance with the terms, conditions, and limitations set forth in this Easement. Grantee shall be responsible for ensuring that Boeing’s, its successors’ or assigns’ use and occupancy of the Easement Area at

all times is limited by and complies in all respects with the terms and conditions of this Easement. **The Grantor’s intent is to permit the existence and use of the Encroachment for its life as a storage building within its existing footprint as of the effective date of this Easement, but to ultimately and permanently clear the Property of the Encroachment and Easement.**

2 Additional Terms and Conditions. Grantee and their successors, agents, and assigns, hereby agree to the following additional terms and conditions:

2.1 This Easement is for the life of the Building only, and if: 1) the Building is damaged beyond fifty percent (50%) of its then-fair market value, 2) if the Building is wholly destroyed or demolished, or 3) if the Encroachment is otherwise partly or wholly removed from the Easement Area, then this Easement shall automatically terminate along with all rights of the Grantee or Boeing to use the Easement Area, and no further building or structure or portion thereof shall be permitted, constructed or erected within the Easement Area.

2.2 The Encroachment shall not be modified or increased in footprint, area or height.

2.3 Grantor shall not be liable for any injury or damage to persons or property arising by reason of the Encroachment being permitted to remain within the Easement Area or by Grantee’s or Boeing’s use and occupancy of the Building, including but not limited to the Encroachment, or by Grantee’s or Boeing’s use of the Easement Area.

2.4 There shall be no storage, dumping, burying or transferring any hazardous substances, inoperable vehicles, chemicals, oils, fuels, flammable materials (“Hazardous Substances”) or containers for said substances, within the Easement Area; provided that nothing herein shall prohibit the passage of vehicles containing or transporting Hazardous Substances across the Easement Area coincident to the ordinary and safe operation of said vehicles on Grantee’s Property. Grantee, its successors, agents, lessees, and assigns shall comply with all environmental laws of the State of Washington or any other governmental subdivision or agency having regulatory authority over Grantor’s Property with respect to Grantee’s use of the Easement Area.

2.5 Grantee and its successors and assigns assume all risk of loss, damage or injury which may result from its use of the Easement Area, or the use of the Easement Area by its agents, employees, invitees, contractors, subcontractors, lessees, permittees or licensees (each, a “Grantee Party” and collectively, the “Grantee Parties”). Grantee and its successors, and assigns shall indemnify and hold harmless Grantor from all claims, actions, or damages of every kind and description, which may accrue from or be suffered by reason of any Grantee Party’s, use of or presence in the Easement Area, the performance of any Grantee Party work in connection with the allowed use, or any Grantee Party’s exercise of any rights granted in this Easement; and in case of any such suit or action being brought against Grantor, or damages arising out of or by reason of any of the above causes, Grantee shall, upon notice of commencement of such action, defend Grantor at Grantee’s sole cost and expense and will

fully satisfy any judgment after the said suit shall have been finally determined, if adversely, to Grantor, except to the extent of the sole negligence of the Grantor, its agents, or representatives.

2.6 Without limiting Grantee's obligations pursuant to Paragraph 2.5 of this Easement, Grantee shall indemnify and defend Grantor from any claims, damages, or liabilities arising directly or indirectly from Hazardous Substances that are released or discharged by Grantee or any Grantee Party related to their operations, use of or presence in the Easement Area, the performance of any Grantee Party work in connection with use of the Easement Area, or the exercise by any Grantee Party of any right granted by this Easement. The term "Hazardous Substances" includes all substances that are regulated under the federal Comprehensive Environmental Response, Compensation, and Liability Act (CERCLA), the Solid Waste Disposal Act (SWDA) as amended by the Resource Conservation and Recovery Act (RCRA), The Toxic Substances Control Act (TSCA), and the Washington State Model Toxics Control Act (MTCA). The term "claims" related to released or discharged Hazardous Substances includes any claim that may be brought and any order that may be issued pursuant to one of the statutes listed above and associated regulations, and claims based upon common law causes of action for trespass, negligence, nuisance or other common law theories, claims for lost property value, claims for business losses, and claims for personal injuries arising from or related to Hazardous Substances.

2.7 Grantee shall at all times exercise its rights under this Easement in accordance with the requirements of all applicable statutes, orders, rules and regulations of any public authority having jurisdiction.

2.8 The Parties acknowledge that maintenance or repair of the exterior of the Building may be needed. In that event, Grantee may request Grantor's permission to enter Grantor's property immediately adjacent to the Easement Area to perform such necessary maintenance or repair to the exterior of the Encroachment portion of the Building. Grantor shall not unreasonably withhold such permission but may place reasonable restrictions on the timing, length, manner, and extent of Grantee's access. Such permission may be in form of a temporary permit or license, to be chosen by Grantor in its sole discretion.

2.9 Subject to the right of either party to use the dispute resolution process in Section 2.10, this Easement and all rights granted herein to Grantee shall automatically terminate in the event that: A) the Encroachment is in any way damaged, wholly destroyed, or removed from the Easement Area consistent with Section 2.1 of this Easement; or B) Grantee defaults on the obligations or violates any term or condition set forth in this Easement, and such default is not fully cured following thirty (30) days written notice from the Grantor to Grantee.

2.10 Grantor and Grantee agree to use their best efforts to resolve any disputes arising under this Easement using good-faith negotiations. Grantor and Grantee further agree to communicate regularly to discuss matters arising under this Easement and to prevent disputes

from arising. If a dispute cannot be resolved informally, then the Parties shall use the following dispute escalation process.

A. **STEP ONE.** Grantor and Grantee shall each identify a representative and shall confer and attempt to resolve the dispute within ten (10) business days of written notification by either Party.

B. **STEP TWO.** In the event that Grantor and Grantee are unable to resolve the dispute within ten (10) business days as provided in Step One, either Party may refer the dispute to the King County Airport Director and the Director of the City of Seattle Department having jurisdiction of the Property at the time or their designees. They shall confer and attempt to resolve the dispute within five (5) business days of receiving the referral.

C. **STEP THREE.** In the event the King County Airport Director and the Director of the City of Seattle Department having jurisdiction of the Property at the time or their designees are unable to resolve the dispute within five (5) business days as provided in Step Two, either party may refer the dispute to the King County Executive and the Mayor of Seattle or their designees. They shall confer and attempt to resolve the dispute within five (5) business days after receiving the referral.

If the Parties are unable to resolve the dispute utilizing the process set forth in Steps One through Three above, the Parties may, by mutual agreement, choose to submit the matter to a non-binding mediator. The Parties shall share equally in the cost of the mediator. Neither Party shall have the right to seek relief in a court of law until and unless Steps 1-3 above are exhausted. Grantor may not issue a notice of default to Grantee until and unless Steps 1-3 above are exhausted.

2.11 At all times during the course of the conflict or dispute resolution efforts, the Parties shall diligently continue to perform their respective responsibilities under this Easement.

2.12 This Easement and all amendments thereof shall be governed by and construed in accordance with the laws of the State of Washington applicable to contracts made and to be performed therein, without giving effect to its conflicts of law provisions or choice of law rules. In the event of any litigation arising out of or relating to this Easement, the Superior Court of King County, Washington shall have the exclusive jurisdiction and venue. If the Parties litigate any controversy, claim, or dispute arising out of or relating to this Easement, then each Party shall be solely responsible for the payment of its own legal expenses, including but not limited to, attorney's fees and costs.

2.13 This writing (including the Exhibits attached hereto) constitute the entire agreement of the Parties with respect to the subject matter hereof and may not be modified or amended except by a written agreement specifically referring to this Easement and signed by all Parties

hereto. All other agreements between the Parties regarding the subject matter of this Easement are hereby terminated and no longer applicable.

2.14 This Easement and each of its terms and provisions are deemed to have been explicitly negotiated between the Parties, and the language in all parts of this Easement will, in all cases, be construed according to its fair meaning and not strictly for or against either Party. Both Parties acknowledge and represent, as an express term of this Easement, that they have had the opportunity to obtain and utilize legal review of the terms and conditions outlined in this Easement.

3. Effective Date. This Easement shall become effective and binding upon execution by both Parties hereto and recording of this Easement.

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, this instrument has been executed the day and year first above written.

Dated this _____ day of _____, 20____

GRANTOR:

CITY OF SEATTLE, a Washington municipal corporation
CITY LIGHT DEPARTMENT

By: _____

Printed Name: _____

Title: _____

GRANTEE:

By:

Acknowledged and accepted as to all conditions herein

By: _____

By: _____

Printed Name: _____

Printed Name: _____

Title: _____

Title: _____

Date: _____

Date: _____

Exhibit “A”
Grantor’s Property

That portion of land within the Northeast Quarter of Section 29 Township 24 Range 4 and the Southeast Quarter of Section 29 Township 24 Range 4, lying easterly of the following described line:

Beginning at the point of intersection of the Government Meander Line and the southern line of South Myrtle Street; thence, southerly $S9^{\circ}49'16''W$ a distance of 108.333 feet; thence southerly $S1^{\circ}45'40''E$ a distance of 201.015 feet; and, thence $S9^{\circ}38'02''E$ a distance of 122.173 feet to a point that is coincident with the northerly boundary of East Marginal Way South; thence southeasterly $S49^{\circ}00'00''E$ a distance of 130.00 feet; thence northerly $N6^{\circ}57'48''W$ a distance of 309.801 feet; and, thence $N3^{\circ}34'03''E$ a distance of 218.131 feet; and, thence northeasterly $N12^{\circ}14'45''E$ to the southern line of South Myrtle Street; thence westerly to the point of beginning.

Exhibit “B”
Grantee’s Property

POR OF SECS 20-24-04 & 28-24-04 & 29-24-04 & 33-24-04 & 34-24-04 & 03-23-04 & 04-23-04 TGW PORS OF DAVIS MEADOW TRACTS & ELIZABETH ADD & VAC FAIRGROUNDS ADD & HORTONS 1ST SUBD OF GEORGETOWN & THE MEADOWS TRACTS & QUEEN ADD & QUEEN ADD SUPL - TGW PORS OF FOLG DONATION LAND CLAIMS - JOHN BUCKELY #42 & LUTHER M COLLINS #46 & TIMOTHY GROW #44 & #48 & SAMUEL A MAPLE #49 & FRANCIS MCNATT #38 & HENRY VAN ASSELT #50 TGW POR OF FILLED BED OF DUWAMISH RIVER OF -- BAAP OF NXN BTWN WLY MGN OF AIRPORT WAY SOUTH & SELY LN OF SD QUEEN ADD SUPL TH IN A GENERALLY SWLY DIRECTION ALG SD SELY LN TO SW COR TRACT A SD QUEEN ADD SUPL & SLY EXTN OF E LN OF W 1/2 SD LUTHER M COLLINS D L C TH S ALG SD SLY EXTN TO SLY LN OF NLY 1/2 OF SD FILLED BED OF DUWAMISH RIVER TH SWLY ALG SD SLY LN TO ELY MGN OF EAST MARGINAL WAY SOUTH TH CONT SELY ALG SD ELY MGN TO NXN WITH A LN PLT AND 825.00 FT S OF N LN OF JOHN BUCKLEY D L C #42 TH S 54-14-57 E TO ELY MGN OF FILLED BED OF DUWAMISH RIVER TH S 35-49-39 E 104.93 FT TO NLY EXTN OF WLY LN OF DAVIS MEADOW TRATS TH SLY ALG SD WLY LN TO N LN OF TRACT 8 OF THE MEADOWS TRACTS TH WLY ALG SD N LN N 89-16-16 W 197.97 FT TH S 29-52-38 E 520.79 FT TH N 89-58-17 W 230.59 FT TH N 29-52-38 W 524.20 FT TH N 89-16-16 W 179.98 FT TO ELY MGN OF EAST MARGINAL WAY SOUTH TH SLY ALG SD ELY MGN TO SLY LN OF TRACT 7 OF SD MEADOWS TRACTS TH ELY ALG SD S LN A DIST OF 474.62 FT TH S 29-52-38 E A DIST OF 2695.00 FT MORE OR LESS TH S 21-20-38 E TO N LN OF NORFOLK ST (CITY OF SEATTLE R/W) TH ELY ALG N MGN OF SD R/W TO EAST LN OF SECTION 04-23-04 TH CONT ELY & NELY ALG SD N MGN TO WLY MGN OF AIRPORT WAY SOUTH EXTN TH NWLY ALG SD WLY MGN TO P O B -- LESS POR OF SECTIONS 28-24-04 & 29-24-04 DAF - BEG AT 1/4 COR COMMON TO SD SECTIONS TH S ALG SEC LN 575.27 FT TO TPOB TH S 28-42-05 E 199.26 FT TH S 61-17-55 W 464.00 FT TH S 40-59-48 W TO NELY MGN OF EAST MARGINAL WAY SOUTH TH NWLY ALG SD MGN 492.927 FT TH N 40-59-48 E 569.836 FT TH N 28-42-05 W 483.276 FT TH N 61-17-55 E 187.06 FT TO NXN WITH E & W C/L OF SD SEC 29 TH CONT N 61-17-55 E 276.94 FT TH S 28-42-05 E 151.09 FT TO NXN WITH SD C/L TH CONT S 28-42-05 E 654.90 FT TO TPOB LESS TRIANGLE STRIP IN TRACT 4 OF DAVIS MEADOWS TRS-BEG AT SW COR TH N 19-03-01 W 4.00 FT TH SELY TAP ON N BDY OF MCNATT D L C 50.00 FT E OF BEG TH W 50.00 FT TO BEG --- SUBJ TO FORMER TRANS LN R/W - TGW POR BLKS 1 & 2 & 5 & 6 & 9 & 12 OF QUEEN ADD LY SELY OF SOUTH ALBRO PLACE & VAC STS & ALLEYS ADJ LESS STS - TGW POR LOT 5 BLK 6 SD QUEEN ADD LY NWLY OF S ALBRO PL - TGW ENTIRE REPLAT OF QUEEN ADD SUPL & VAC STS ADJ LESS C/M RGTS OVER POR LOT 1 BLK 5 SD QUEEN ADD LY NELY OF A LN FR PT 16.47 FT WEST OF NE COR TO PT 24.32 FT

S OF NE COR LESS C/M RGTS OVER LOTS 5-13 BLK 6 OF SD QUEEN ADD - LESS C/M RGTS OVER POR LOT 36 BLK 9 OF SD QUEEN ADD LY SWLY OF LN RNG FR PT 10.12 FT N OF SW COR SD LOT 36 TAP 6.85 FT E OF SD SW COR - LESS C/M RGTS OVER LOTS 1-13 & OVER LOTS 26-29 & OVER POR OF LOT 25 BLK 10 OF SD QUEEN ADD SUPL LY N OF LN - BEG ON EAST LN OF SD LOT 25 A DIST OF 1.56 FT N OF SE COR TH NWLY TAP ON N LN OF S 10.00 FT OF SD LOT 108.28 FT E OF W LN TH W PLW S LN 108.28 FT TO W LN OF SD LOT 25 - LESS POR TRACTS A B C & D SD QUEEN ADD SUPL & VAC ST ADJ & NLY 1/2 SD FILLED BED OF DUWAMISH RIVER DAF - BAAP ON NWLY LN SD TR B 100.00 FT SWLY FR MOST NLY COR TH S 33-36-10 E TO SLY LN SD NLY 1/2 TH SWLY ALG SD SLY LN TO E LN W 1/2 SD COLLINS D L C TH N ALG SD E LN TO NXN WITH C/L OF VAC SOUTH GREELY STREET TH NELY ALG SD C/L TAP N 33-36-10 W OF BEG TH S 33-36-10 E 30.00 FT TO BEG TGW POR W 1/2 SD COLLINS D L C LY ELY OF ELLIS AVENUE SOUTH (MABLE STREET) SLY OF ELIZABETH ADD & LY NLY OF TRACT DEEDED TO CITY OF SEATTLE BY ORD NO 38426 TGW POR SEC 29-24-04 LY ELY OF SD D L C & LY WLY OF WLY & NLY SHORELINE OF SD FILLED RIVER BED TGW POR SD HORTONS 1ST SOUTH ALBRO PLACE & VAC ST ADJ TGW BLK 1 & LOTS 1-6 & LOTS 11-15 BLK 2 OF SD ELIZABETH ADD & VAC POR SOUTH ELIZABETH ST ADJ

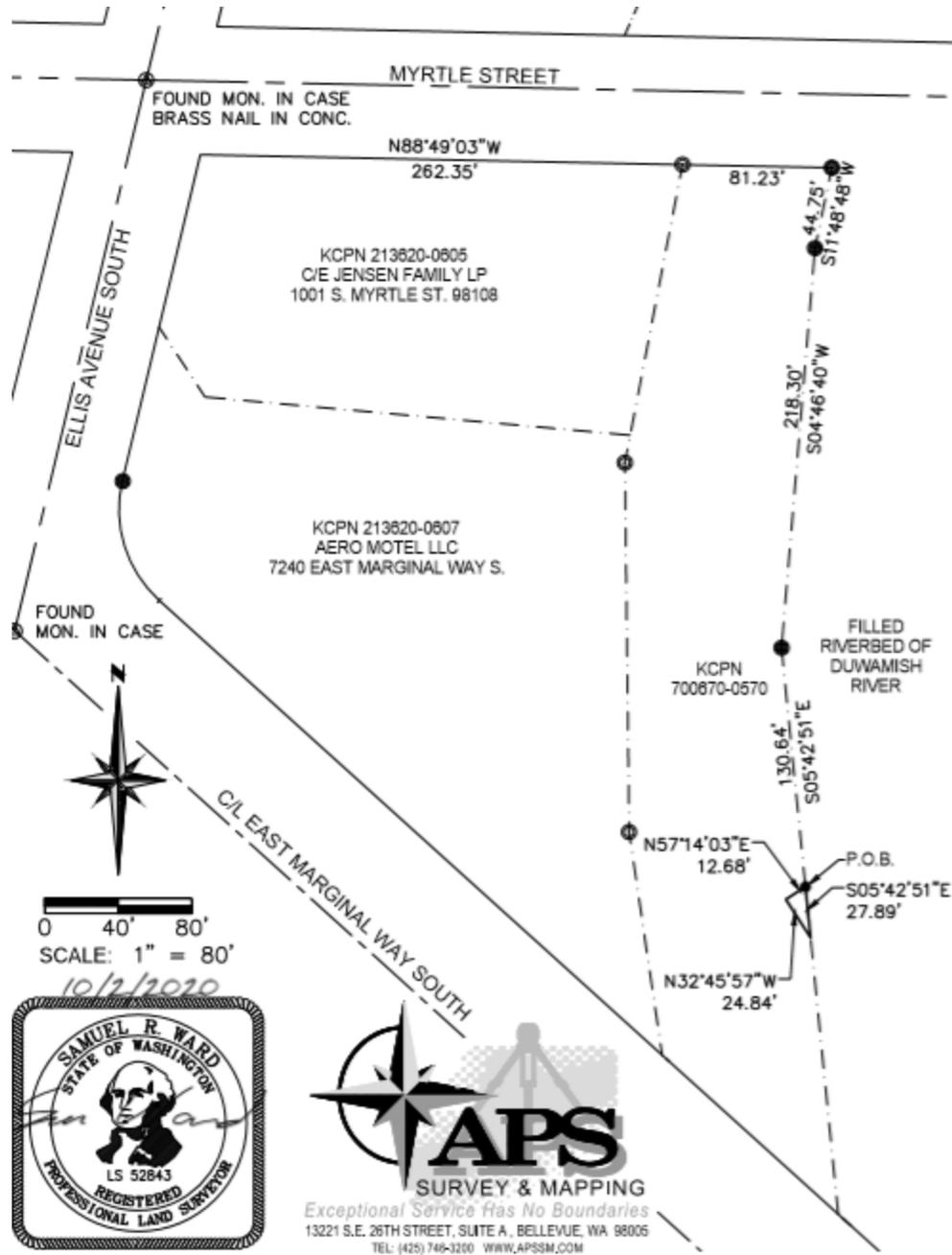
**Exhibit “C”
Temporary Easement Area**

The as built location of Grantee’s storage building, as now constructed and generally described and depicted below, within Grantor’s property described in Exhibit “A”

A TRACT OF LAND LOCATED IN THE SOUTHEAST QUARTER OF SECTION 29, TOWNSHIP 24 NORTH, RANGE 4 EAST, W.M., MORE PARTICULARLY DESCRIBED AS FOLLOWS:

COMMENCING AT THE POINT OF INTERSECTION OF THE GOVERNMENT MEANDER LINE AND THE SOUTHERN LINE OF SOUTH MYRTLE STREET AS SHOWN ON THAT CERTAIN SURVEY AS RECORDED IN BOOK 409 OF SURVEYS, PAGES 44 AND 45, RECORDS OF KING COUNTY;
THENCE S88°49'03"E ALONG SAID SOUTHERN LINE FOR 81.23 FEET;
THENCE S11°48'48"W FOR 44.75 FEET;
THENCE S04°46'40"W FOR 218.30 FEET;
THENCE S05°42'51"E FOR 130.64 FEET TO THE TRUE POINT OF BEGINNING;
THENCE CONTINUING S05°42'51"E FOR 27.89 FEET;
THENCE N32°45'57"W FOR 24.84 FEET;
THENCE N57°14'03"E FOR 12.68 FEET TO THE TRUE POINT OF BEGINNING.

SAID TRACT CONTAINS 158 SQUARE FEET, MORE OR LESS.



SUMMARY and FISCAL NOTE*

Department:	Dept. Contact/Phone:	CBO Contact/Phone:
City Light	Timothy Croll/206-963-5074	Greg Shiring/206-386-4085

** Note that the Summary and Fiscal Note describes the version of the bill or resolution as introduced; final legislation including amendments may not be fully described.*

1. BILL SUMMARY

Legislation Title: AN ORDINANCE relating to the City Light Department; declaring certain real property rights to be surplus to the needs of City Light; and authorizing the General Manager and Chief Executive Officer of City Light to execute an easement agreement with King County, allowing the temporary use of a portion of City Light property to resolve the encroachment of an existing structure located on the west side of Boeing Field within the Northeast Quarter of Section 29 Township 24 Range 4 and the Southeast Quarter of Section 29 Township 24 Range 4.

Summary and background of the Legislation: City Light owns a property between S. Myrtle St. and East Marginal Way S. in the Georgetown neighborhood, on which property was previously sited a flume for spent cooling water from City Light’s Georgetown Steam Plant. City Light is planning to request City Council approval of the transfer of jurisdiction of a portion of the Georgetown Steam Plant flume property to the Seattle Department of Parks and Recreation (“SPR”) and to Seattle Department of Transportation as part of the required public benefit portion of City Light’s petition to vacate a portion of Diagonal Ave South.

A recent survey of the property has indicated that a fence, part of a storage yard, a floodlight, and part of a storage building on King County (“KC”) property are encroaching on this City Light property and likely have been doing so for several decades. City Light and SPR have determined that it is in the City’s interest to resolve the encroachment prior to the jurisdiction for the property being transferred to SPR. KC has agreed to remove the fence and floodlight from City Light property at KC’s expense in consideration for City Light providing KC a temporary easement for the remaining 158 square foot encroachment by the corner of the storage building for the life of that building. The subsequent transfer of the underlying property from City Light to SPR would then be subject to the terms of this temporary easement.

2. CAPITAL IMPROVEMENT PROGRAM

Does this legislation create, fund, or amend a CIP Project? ___ Yes X No

3. SUMMARY OF FINANCIAL IMPLICATIONS

Does this legislation amend the Adopted Budget? ___ Yes X No

Does the legislation have other financial impacts to the City of Seattle that are not reflected in the above, including direct or indirect, short-term or long-term costs?

No.

Is there financial cost or other impacts of *not* implementing the legislation?

Transferring the property from SCL to SPR in the future without first resolving this encroachment could create confusion about the future rights of SPR.

4. OTHER IMPLICATIONS

a. Does this legislation affect any departments besides the originating department?

By resolving a longstanding property encroachment, the legislation will facilitate the future transfer of property from SCL to SPR to allow the development of an off-leash area.

b. Is a public hearing required for this legislation?

RCW 35.94.040 requires a public hearing before the sale of any property originally acquired for public utility purposes. City Light will request that the City Council schedule the public hearing during the same Transportation and Utilities Committee meeting that this legislation will be considered.

c. Is publication of notice with *The Daily Journal of Commerce* and/or *The Seattle Times* required for this legislation?

No.

d. Does this legislation affect a piece of property?

Yes.

e. Please describe any perceived implication for the principles of the Race and Social Justice Initiative. Does this legislation impact vulnerable or historically disadvantaged communities? What is the Language Access plan for any communications to the public?

No expected impacts on vulnerable or historically disadvantaged communities. No planned outreach or communication to the public for this legislation.

f. Climate Change Implications

1. Emissions: Is this legislation likely to increase or decrease carbon emissions in a material way?

The legislation will not directly affect carbon emissions, though it will facilitate the development of the off-leash area and trail segment in Georgetown which would help decrease carbon emissions by creating local recreation opportunities.

2. Resiliency: Will the action(s) proposed by this legislation increase or decrease Seattle's resiliency (or ability to adapt) to climate change in a material way? If so, explain. If it is likely to decrease resiliency in a material way, describe what will or could be done to mitigate the effects.

No.

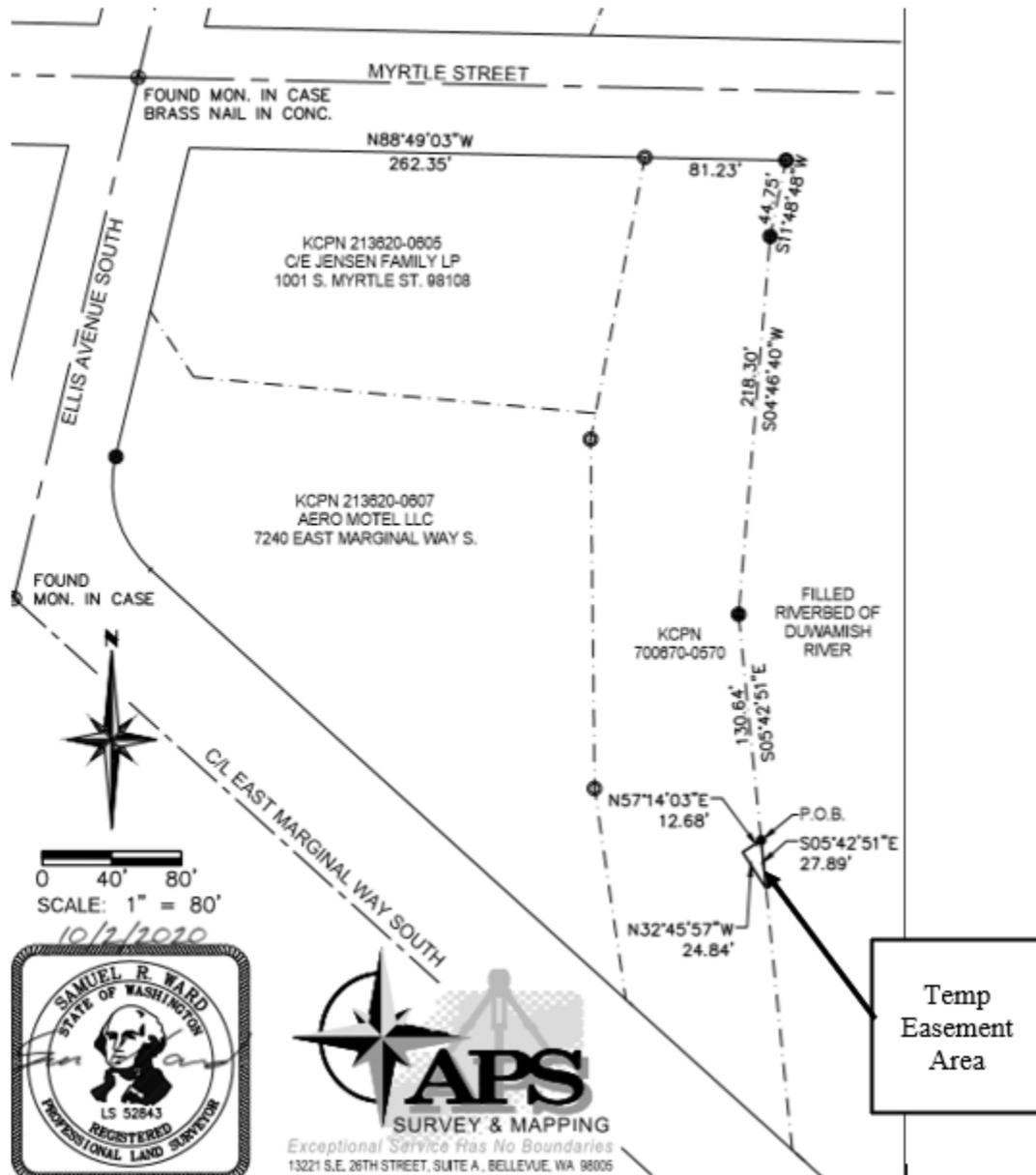
- g. If this legislation includes a new initiative or a major programmatic expansion: What are the specific long-term and measurable goal(s) of the program? How will this legislation help achieve the program's desired goal(s).**

Not applicable.

List attachments/exhibits below:

Summary Attachment 1 – King County Easement Area

King County Temporary Easement Area



This map is intended for illustrative or informational purposes only and is not intended to modify anything in the legislation.

Temporary Easement Ordinance

Presentation to City Council

Transportation and Utilities Committee

May 5, 2021

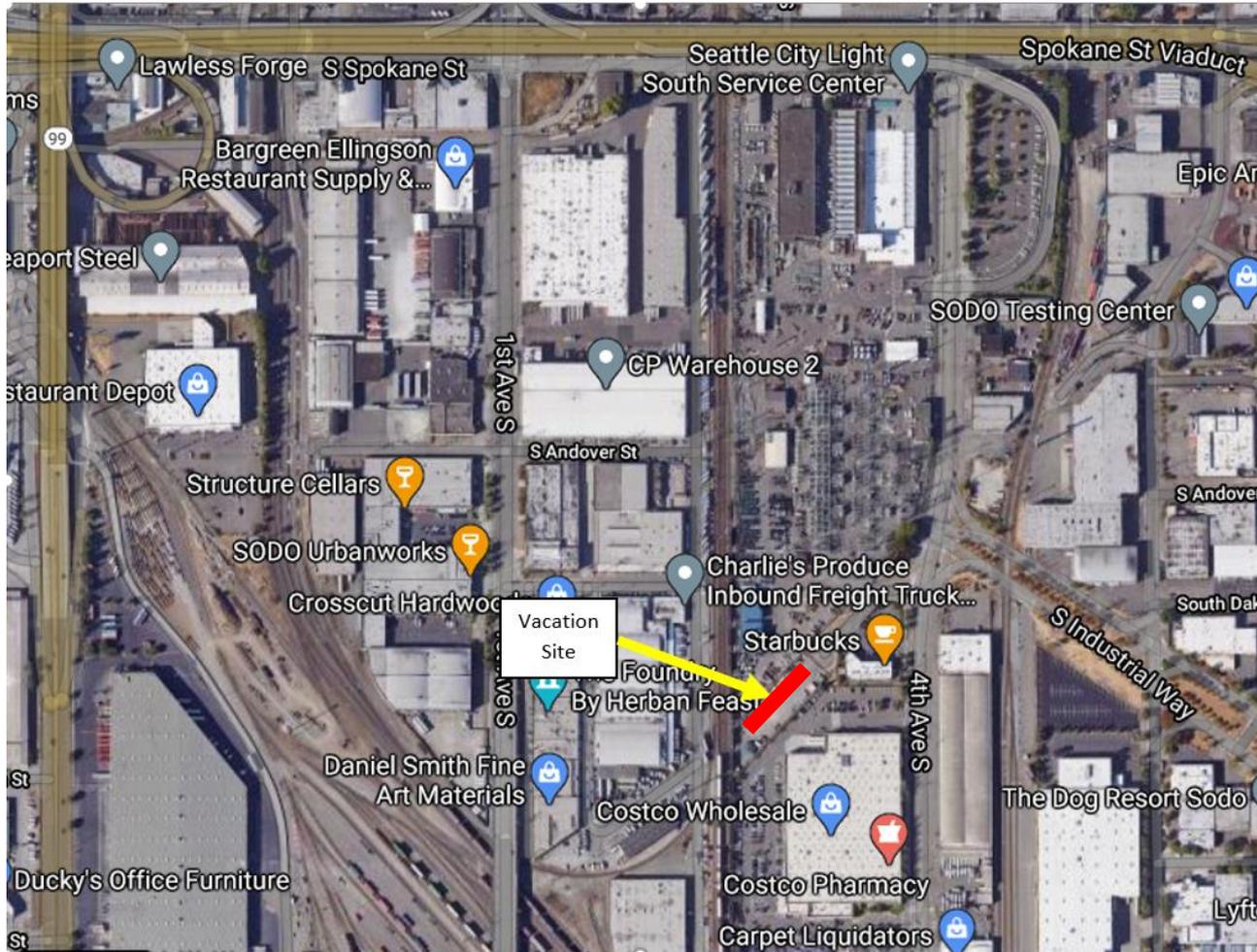
TEMPORARY EASEMENT ORDINANCE: SUMMARY

Purpose: Facilitate development of a community amenity (off-leash dog park and trail) in Georgetown as part of the street vacation requested by City Light at the South Service Center.

Action: Resolve encumbrance on the property prior to transfer to Parks & Recreation Department by issuing temporary easement to King County where a building encroaches on property.



REQUESTED CITY LIGHT STREET VACATION



THE PUBLIC BENEFIT – THE PROPERTY TO BE TRANSFERRED FOR OFF-LEASE AREA AND SEGMENT OF GEORGETOWN-SOUTH PARK CONNECTION (+ SCL \$ SUPPORT)



SEGMENT OF GEORGETOWN-SOUTH PARK CONNECTION



Property to be transferred

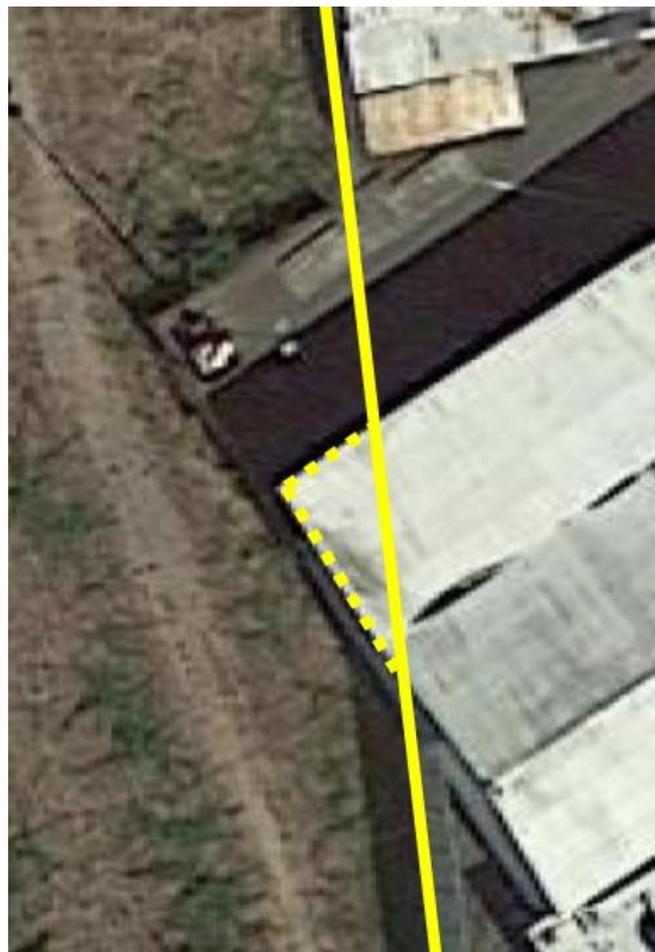
EXISTING ENCUMBRANCE ON PROPERTY

- Building encroachment for many decades (158 sq ft.)



EXISTING ENCUMBRANCE ON PROPERTY, CON'T

- Proposing temporary easement for life of building
- KC to take on costs of moving fence and floodlight, as in-kind contribution in lieu of additional payment for easement



TIMELINE FOR ACTION

- CAO recommends this ordinance be legislated prior to consideration of the street vacation and transfer of the property to Parks.
- The future property transfer would be subject to the terms of the temporary easement.
- Public hearing was 4/21 and there were no commenters.
- City Council consideration of the street vacation and property transfer ordinance would be in Summer '21.



seattle.gov/light    



Legislation Text

File #: CB 120042, **Version:** 1

CITY OF SEATTLE

ORDINANCE _____

COUNCIL BILL _____

AN ORDINANCE amending Ordinance 126237, which adopted the 2021 Budget, including the 2021-2026 Capital Improvement Program (CIP); changing appropriations within the Transportation Benefit District Fund; revising project allocations for certain projects in the 2021-2026 CIP; and lifting a proviso.

WHEREAS, the Seattle City Council formed a Transportation Benefit District in 2010 and imposed a \$20

annual vehicle license fee that went into effect in 2011 for transportation purposes; and

WHEREAS, the annual vehicle license fee was increased to a total of \$80 per year after Seattle voters approved

a six-year measure called Proposition 1 in 2014 that expired at the end of 2020; and

WHEREAS, Seattle voters approved a new Proposition 1 in November 2020 that relies solely on sales tax,

thereby leaving only a \$20 annual vehicle license fee in effect; and

WHEREAS, after the State Supreme Court struck down statewide Initiative 976's prohibition on Transportation

Benefit District authority to collect vehicle license fees, the Council passed Ordinance 126234,

increasing Seattle's annual Vehicle License Fee from the \$20 established in 2010 to \$40 in 2021 as

pursuant to RCW 36.73.065 and 82.80.140; and

WHEREAS, in Ordinance 126234, the Council expressed its intent that by April 1, the Seattle Department of

Transportation (SDOT) develop a spending plan for the additional \$20 Vehicle License Fee through a

“transparent, inclusive, and public stakeholder engagement process that includes input from the Move

Seattle Levy Oversight Committee, the city's transportation boards and commissions, transit equity

organizations, and community organizations, particularly those organizations representing communities

that are disproportionately reliant on transit, and labor unions whose members are impacted by

transportation investments, including Ironworkers, Building Trades, and Laborers”; and

WHEREAS, the proviso in Council Budget Action BLG-042-B-001 specifies that, “Of the appropriation in the 2021 budget for the General Purpose BSL in Finance General, \$3.6 million is appropriated solely for transportation purposes and may be spent for no other purpose. Furthermore, none of the money so appropriated may be spent until authorized by future ordinance. Council anticipates that such authority will not be granted until the Seattle Department of Transportation has presented a spending plan for the additional vehicle license fee revenue after conducting a transparent, inclusive, and public stakeholder engagement process”; and

WHEREAS, SDOT convened two meetings with representatives of the above-mentioned stakeholder groups, as well as members of the Transportation Equity Workgroup, hearing a desire for new VLF-funded infrastructure improvements that prioritize safety and accessibility for pedestrians in the most marginalized communities while also supporting training and employment opportunities in the trades; and

WHEREAS, the Department of Transportation submitted the described spending plan to the City Council in conjunction with this ordinance, in accordance with BLG-042-B-001; NOW, THEREFORE,

BE IT ORDAINED BY THE CITY OF SEATTLE AS FOLLOWS:

Section 1. The restrictions imposed by the following budget proviso, which limits spending on the following item, are removed because the conditions set forth in the proviso have been satisfied and they are no longer restrictions for any purpose:

Item	Department	2021 CBA	Proviso	Budget Summary Level
------	------------	----------	---------	----------------------

1.1	Finance General	BLG-042-B-001	<p>“Of the appropriation in the 2021 budget for the General Purpose BSL in Finance General, \$3.6 million is appropriated solely for transportation purposes and may be spent for no other purpose. Furthermore, none of the money so appropriated may be spent until authorized by future ordinance. Council anticipates that such authority will not be granted until the Seattle Department of Transportation has presented a spending plan for the additional vehicle license fee revenue after conducting a transparent, inclusive, and public stakeholder engagement process.”</p>	BO-FG-2QD00 - General Purpose
-----	-----------------	---------------	--	-------------------------------

Section 2. Appropriations for the following items in the 2021 Budget are modified as follows:

Item	Department	Fund	Budget Summary Level/BCL Code	Amount
2.1	Finance General	Transportation Benefit District Fund (19900)	General Purpose (19900-BO-FG-2QD00)	(\$3,600,000)
2.2	Seattle Department of Transportation	Transportation Benefit District Fund (19900)	Maintenance Operations (19900-BO-TR-17005)	\$250,000
2.3	Seattle Department of Transportation	Transportation Benefit District Fund (19900)	Mobility Operations (19900-BO-TR-17003)	\$725,000
2.4	Seattle Department of Transportation	Transportation Benefit District Fund (19900)	Major Maintenance/Replacement (19900-BC-TR-19001)	\$1,350,000
2.5	Seattle Department of Transportation	Transportation Benefit District Fund (19900)	Mobility Capital (19900-BC-TR-19003)	\$1,275,000
Total				\$0

Section 3. Project allocations in the 2021-2026 Adopted Capital Improvement Program, which are backed by revenues, are modified as follows:

Item	Department	Fund	Budget Summary Level/BCL Code	CIP Project Name	2021 CIP Allocations (All Funds)
3.1	Seattle Department of Transportation	Transportation Benefit District (19900)	Major Maintenance/ Replacement (19900-BC-TR-19001)	Sidewalk Safety Repair (MC-TR-C025)	(\$3,757,917) \$4,257,917
3.2	Seattle Department of Transportation	Transportation Benefit District (19900)	Mobility Capital (19900-BC-TR-19003)	Vision Zero (MC-TR-C064)	(\$3,531,320) \$4,656,320
3.3	Seattle Department of Transportation	Transportation Benefit District (19900)	Mobility Capital (19900-BC-TR-19003)	SDOT ADA Program (MC-TR-C057)	(\$16,936,621) \$17,086,621
3.4	Seattle Department of Transportation	Transportation Benefit District (19900)	Major Maintenance/ Replacement (19900-BC-TR-19001)	Structures Major Maintenance (MC-TR-C112)	(\$1,560,000) \$2,410,000

These modifications shall operate for the purposes of decreasing or increasing the basis for the limit imposed by subsection 4(c) of Ordinance 126237.

Section 4. This ordinance shall take effect and be in force 30 days after its approval by the Mayor, but if not approved and returned by the Mayor within ten days after presentation, it shall take effect as provided by Seattle Municipal Code Section 1.04.020.

Passed by the City Council the _____ day of _____, 2021, and signed by

me in open session in authentication of its passage this _____ day of _____, 2021.

President _____ of the City Council

Approved / returned unsigned / vetoed this _____ day of _____, 2021.

Jenny A. Durkan, Mayor

Filed by me this _____ day of _____, 2021.

Monica Martinez Simmons, City Clerk

(Seal)

SUMMARY and FISCAL NOTE*

Department:	Dept. Contact/Phone:	CBO Contact/Phone:
SDOT	Bill LaBorde/206.484.8662	Christie Parker/206.684.5211

* Note that the Summary and Fiscal Note describes the version of the bill or resolution as introduced; final legislation including amendments may not be fully described.

1. BILL SUMMARY

Legislation Title: AN ORDINANCE amending Ordinance 126237, which adopted the 2021 Budget, including the 2021-2026 Capital Improvement Program (CIP); changing appropriations within the Transportation Benefit District Fund; revising project allocations for certain projects in the 2021-2026 CIP; and lifting a proviso.

Summary and background of the Legislation: This legislation amends appropriations in the 2021 Adopted Budget for several programs and projects funded by a \$20 annual increase in Seattle Transportation Benefit District (STBD) Vehicle License Fees (VLF) due to the passage of Ordinance 126234 in November 2020. The Department of Licensing will commence increased revenue collections beginning July 1, 2021, producing approximately \$3.6 million in added transportation revenues for the remainder of 2021 and \$7.4 million in 2022. The 2021 Adopted Budget placed the 2021 appropriation for these funds in Finance General and specified that the funds cannot be spent until authorized by future ordinance; Council anticipated that such authority would not be granted until SDOT presents a spending plan after conducting a “transparent, inclusive, and public stakeholder engagement process.” Per Council’s intent, SDOT engaged with stakeholders and received guidance on the attached spending plan.

2. CAPITAL IMPROVEMENT PROGRAM

Does this legislation create, fund, or amend a CIP Project? Yes No

Project Name	Project I.D.	Project Location	Start Date	End Date	Total Project Cost Through 2026
Sidewalk Safety Repair	MC-TR-C025	Citywide	Ongoing	Ongoing	\$38,426,000
Vision Zero	MC-TR-C064	Citywide	Ongoing	Ongoing	\$36,183,000
SDOT ADA Program	MC-TR-C057	Citywide	Ongoing	Ongoing	\$85,550,000
Structures Major Maintenance	MC-TR-C112	Various	Ongoing	Ongoing	\$7,694,000

Notes: The total project costs above do not include costs associated with unsecured funding as identified in the CIP. Please also note that the attached CIP pages show this spending only through the year 2024, when the Levy to Move Seattle expires. These programs will receive

consideration for funding from this source beyond 2024 in a future CIP proposal process. As discussed with community-based stakeholders, while the new \$20 VLF will continue to be collected beyond 2024, the City has an interest in continuing the investments specified in this spending plan while also retaining flexibility to reallocate funding sources for high priority SDOT CIP programs in a future levy to maximize financial and leveraging opportunities.

3. SUMMARY OF FINANCIAL IMPLICATIONS

Does this legislation amend the Adopted Budget? Yes No

Appropriation change (\$):	General Fund \$		Other \$	
	2021	2022	2021	2022
	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0
Estimated revenue change (\$):	Revenue to General Fund		Revenue to Other Funds	
	2021	2022	2021	2022
	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0
Positions affected:	No. of Positions		Total FTE Change	
	2021	2022	2021	2022
	0	0	0	0

Does the legislation have other financial impacts to the City of Seattle that are not reflected in the above, including direct or indirect, short-term or long-term costs?

Yes; the legislation moves the appropriation authority from Finance General to SDOT and lifts a proviso.

Is there financial cost or other impacts of *not* implementing the legislation?

Several transportation safety and asset maintenance needs would go unmet without these additional appropriations and, in some cases, would result in increased long-term costs associated with deferred maintenance. Some of these funds may also increase leveraging opportunities for certain programs.

3.a. Appropriations

This legislation adds, changes, or deletes appropriations.

Fund Name and number	Dept	Budget Control Level Name/##*	2021 Appropriation Change	2022 Estimated Appropriation Change
Transportation Benefit District Fund/19900	Finance General	General Purpose (BO-FG-2QD00)	(\$3,600,000)	\$0
Transportation Benefit District Fund/19900	SDOT	Mobility-Capital (BC-TR-19003)	\$1,275,000	\$2,350,000

Transportation Benefit District Fund/19900	SDOT	Major Maintenance /Replacement (BC-TR-19001)	\$1,350,000	\$2,759,000
Transportation Benefit District Fund/19900	SDOT	Maintenance Operations (BO-TR-17005)	\$250,000	\$511,000
Transportation Benefit District Fund/19900	SDOT	Mobility – Operations (BO-TR-17003)	\$725,000	\$1,482,000
TOTAL			\$0	\$7,102,000

*See budget book to obtain the appropriate Budget Control Level for your department.

Is this change one-time or ongoing?

This action is a one-time appropriation of ongoing revenues. Appropriations for 2022 are anticipated to be included in the 2022 Adopted Budget.

Appropriations Notes: In addition to the above items, the spending plan for the new \$20 vehicle license fees also includes \$255,451 in 2022 for a strategic reserve. These reserves are not appropriated; however, they will be reflected in the spending plan for the STBD Fund (19900).

3.b. Revenues/Reimbursements

_____ This legislation adds, changes, or deletes revenues or reimbursements.

3.c. Positions

_____ This legislation adds, changes, or deletes positions.

4. OTHER IMPLICATIONS

a. Does this legislation affect any departments besides the originating department?

No

b. Is a public hearing required for this legislation?

No

c. Is publication of notice with *The Daily Journal of Commerce* and/or *The Seattle Times* required for this legislation?

No

d. Does this legislation affect a piece of property?

No

e. Please describe any perceived implication for the principles of the Race and Social Justice Initiative. Does this legislation impact vulnerable or historically disadvantaged

communities? What is the Language Access plan for any communications to the public?

Transportation and community-based stakeholders, including members of SDOT's Transportation Equity Workgroup, advised that a majority of new VLF revenue be dedicated to investments and projects in neighborhoods facing a higher risk of displacement and lower access to opportunities (according to OPCD methodology) for at least the first four years of new revenue collections. This goal is reflected in the attached recommended spend plan.

f. Climate Change Implications

1. Emissions: Is this legislation likely to increase or decrease carbon emissions in a material way?

Consistent with stakeholder input, the recommended spend plan directs much of this new VLF revenue to projects that make it safer and easier to travel by biking, walking, and by transit, facilitating a shift away from fossil-fueled modes.

2. Resiliency: Will the action(s) proposed by this legislation increase or decrease Seattle's resiliency (or ability to adapt) to climate change in a material way? If so, explain. If it is likely to decrease resiliency in a material way, describe what will or could be done to mitigate the effects.

A significant share of this funding will be directed toward maintaining existing assets, such as bridges and roadway pavement, that may be increasingly impacted by higher temperatures and flooding associated with climate change.

g. If this legislation includes a new initiative or a major programmatic expansion: What are the specific long-term and measurable goal(s) of the program? How will this legislation help achieve the program's desired goal(s).

All of this funding will be allocated to existing programs, nearly all of which are measured by previously established goals. Many receive funding through the Levy to Move Seattle and are therefore measured through regular Levy reporting and reporting to the Levy Oversight Committee.

List attachments/exhibits below:

- Summary Exhibit A – Spend Plan for \$20 VLF Effective in 2021
- Summary Exhibit B – Sidewalk Safety Repair CIP Page
- Summary Exhibit C – Vision Zero CIP Page
- Summary Exhibit D – SDOT ADA Program CIP Page
- Summary Exhibit E – Structures Major Maintenance CIP Page

Spend Plan for \$20 VLF Effective in 2021

Focus Area	Objective	2021 Amount	Projected Ongoing Amount	Evaluation Category Focus Informed by Community Engagement			Project Examples
				Equity Potential	Increase Safety and Reduce Risk	Proactive Asset Mgmt./Maintenance	
Safe Streets	Make investments and improvements to the streets and communities experiencing the bulk of Seattle’s serious crashes.	\$1,125,000	\$2,000,000 (28%)	Our approach to Vision Zero infrastructure investments is grounded in equity. We use data to determine our focus areas – streets and intersections with the most fatal and serious injury crashes. These locations often overlap with communities of color and vulnerable populations. Data show that Black people represent 12% of traffic fatalities but make up only 7% of the population.	While 2020 brought significant changes in the frequency and ways people traveled Seattle streets, people were still injured and killed, and our fatality trend is not on the right path. These funds will support action for safe streets.	Vision Zero’s comprehensive approach to safety has contributed to crash reductions, and this approach includes investments in maintaining our aging infrastructure and the transportation network.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Vision Zero: working to end traffic deaths and serious injuries, focused on high-crash corridors
Safe Sidewalks	Make investments and improvements to help Seattle become the most walkable and accessible city in the nation.	\$1,025,000	\$2,050,000 (28%)	The sidewalk repair prioritization framework uses many factors, including race and social justice objectives, to help determine the best value to the community. The Move Seattle Levy targets remarking crosswalks every four years.	Improving accessibility for all pedestrians, including older adults and people with disabilities, is a key strategy. We want Seattle to be more walkable and accessible for people of all ages and abilities.	The 2017 citywide sidewalk condition assessment informed a proactive approach to our existing repair and maintenance program. With this data and beacon replacement locations we can	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Sidewalk repairs around SDOT Street trees • Maintenance of solar-powered rapid flashing beacons and conversion of old, overhead crossing beacons to

						<p>assess which repairs would provide the highest value improvements in safety and mobility at the lowest cost. With a goal to proactively remark crosswalks every four years, SDOT maintains these critical features to increase pedestrian safety and visibility.</p>	<p>rapid flashing beacons.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Re-striping marked crosswalks • New ADA curb ramps
Strong Bridges & Structures	<p>Make proactive investments and reduce the maintenance backlog, extending the service life of bridges, and maintaining safe travel for all modes.</p>	\$850,000	\$1,700,000 (24%)	<p>All SDOT capital projects undergo a Racial Equity Analysis early in the planning phase. This includes recommendations on how projects can address existing RSJI issues and identify opportunities to improve RSJI implementation. We analyze project and infrastructure investments across the City to evaluate gaps in community needs. This process ensures that underserved communities are receiving capital investments fairly and equitably.</p>	<p>Making capital improvements to transportation infrastructure ensures these assets remain safe and available to the traveling public.</p>	<p>The City of Seattle owns, inspects, maintains, and/or operates 317 bridges. The average age of bridges in Seattle is 63 years old, which indicates that most of Seattle’s bridges are approaching or have already exceeded their design life.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Major maintenance and rehab program for bridges, areaways and retaining walls

Active Transportation Maintenance	Make investments and improvements to maintain on-street and off-street bicycle facilities to promote safe, active transportation and reduced carbon emissions from vehicles.	\$350,000	\$700,000 (10%)	16% of Seattle households do not have a motor vehicle. Maintaining all ages and abilities bicycle infrastructure in parts of the city with lower car ownership will provide additional transportation choices for people. Additionally, using a bike instead of a motor vehicle for short trips will reduce travel emissions, reducing pollution for communities who already experience greater health, public safety, and economic disparities.	Policies that increase the number of people walking and biking appear to be an effective route to improving the safety of all roadway users. Greater safety for all road users may result from reaching a threshold of bicyclist volumes that compels motorists to drive more carefully.	SDOT's maintenance and operations program does not currently provide sufficient funding to prevent the decline of asset condition across all asset classes - including pavement, sidewalks and bike facilities. This fund source could address the addition of bike facilities that have continued to put additional pressure on SDOT's existing budget and level of service delivery.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Re-painting bicycle lanes • Installing and replacing protective barriers between vehicles and cyclists • Bicycle signal improvements • Bicycle facility street sweeping
Planning Ahead	Plan for a future transportation system that addresses our values and goals for equity, safety, and sustainability.	\$250,000	\$500,000 (7%)	Work with the Transportation Equity Workgroup (TEW) in our planning efforts to ensure alignment between the Transportation Equity Framework and SDOT's capital and programmatic investment needs and priorities.	Planning efforts will identify opportunities to redesign streets and make other investments that improve the safety of our transportation system.	Long-range transportation plans will address asset management/ maintenance investment needs and identify future capital asset needs to address system mobility for people who walk, bike, roll, ride transit, and drive vehicles.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Develop a citywide integrated transportation plan that nests updated modal plan elements under the umbrella of a single document

Reserve	Set aside a small amount of revenues to ensure fund availability for commitments if revenues decline.	\$ -	\$250,000 (3%)	-	-	-	-	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Dedicate a small amount of remaining funds for a strategic reserve – a standard best practice in the industry. • Will serve as a Revenue Stabilization reserve, building up to a target of 15% of annual revenue over 5 years to ensure program funding in the event of a future revenue decline.
		\$3,600,000	\$7,200,000					

The annual revenue is an estimate and is likely to fluctuate. Allocations will follow the percentages listed.

Sidewalk Safety Repair

Project No:	MC-TR-C025	BSL Code:	BC-TR-19001
Project Type:	Ongoing	BSL Name:	Major Maintenance/Replacement
Project Category:	Rehabilitation or Restoration	Location:	Citywide
Current Project Stage:	N/A	Council District:	Multiple
Start/End Date:	N/A	Neighborhood District:	Multiple
Total Project Cost:	N/A	Urban Village:	Multiple

This ongoing project rehabilitates sidewalks damaged by street trees or where there are serious safety concerns as evidenced by claims, service requests, and potential City liability. The project includes opportunities for public/private partnerships with citizens, property owners, and businesses. Asset management principles are used to guide repair needs and establish priorities for maintaining the sidewalk (or walkway), curbs, curb ramps, and in some cases, a filler strip between the sidewalk and curb.

Resources	LTD thru 2020	2020 Cfwd	2021 Adptd	2021 Adj ²	2021 Rev ³	2022	2023	2024	2025	2026	Total
Real Estate Excise Tax I	-	-	-	-	-	-	2,100	2,100	2,100	-	6,300
Real Estate Excise Tax II	6,790	303	-	-	303	-	644	1,100	-	-	8,836
School Camera Ticket Revenues	1,993	8	-	-	8	-	-	-	-	-	2,000
State Gas Taxes - City Street Fund	(57)	124	-	-	124	-	-	-	-	-	68
Transportation Funding Package - Lid Lift	990	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	990
Transportation Move Seattle Levy - Lid Lift	8,088	259	3,064	-	3,323	3,851	1,121	199	42	-	16,624
Vehicle License Fees (2021)	-	-	-	500	500	1,022	1,036	1,051	-	-	3,608
Total:	17,804	694	3,064	500	4,258	4,872	4,901	4,450	2,142	0	38,426
Fund Appropriations / Allocations ¹	LTD thru 2020	2020 Cfwd	2021 Adptd	2021 Adj ²	2021 Rev ³	2022	2023	2024	2025	2026	Total
Bridging The Gap Levy Fund	990	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	990
Move Seattle Levy Fund	8,088	259	3,064	-	3,323	3,851	1,121	199	42	-	16,624
REET I Capital Fund	-	-	-	-	-	-	2,100	2,100	2,100	-	6,300
REET II Capital Fund	6,790	303	-	-	303	-	644	1,100	-	-	8,836
School Safety Traffic and Pedestrian Improvement Fund	1,993	8	-	-	8	-	-	-	-	-	2,000
Transportation Benefit District Fund	-	-	-	500	500	1,022	1,036	1,051	-	-	3,608
Transportation Fund	(57)	124	-	-	124	-	-	-	-	-	68
Total:	17,804	694	3,064	500	4,258	4,872	4,901	4,450	2,142	0	38,426
Unsecured Funding	LTD thru 2020	2020 Cfwd	2021 Adptd	2021 Adj ²	2021 Rev ³	2022	2023	2024	2025	2026	Total
To Be Determined	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	1,800	-	1,800
Total:									1,800		1,800

Unsecured Funding Strategy: Funding for this program beyond 2024 is dependent upon a future voter approved levy.

O&M Impacts: This is a capital maintenance project that reduces the need for O&M by improving asset condition.

¹Funds are appropriated through the Adopted Budget at the Budget Summary Level. All Amounts shown above are in thousands of dollars

²2021 adjustment shows the sum of all changes to date

³2021 Revised is the sum of prior year carryforward, current year adopted and any current year adjustments

Vision Zero

Project No:	MC-TR-C064	BSL Code:	BC-TR-19003
Project Type:	Ongoing	BSL Name:	Mobility-Capital
Project Category:	Improved Facility	Location:	Citywide
Current Project Stage:	N/A	Council District:	Multiple
Start/End Date:	N/A	Neighborhood District:	Multiple
Total Project Cost:	N/A	Urban Village:	Multiple

Vision Zero is an approach to traffic safety, with the goal of ending traffic deaths and serious injuries. At the core of Vision Zero is the belief that death and injury on city streets is preventable. Collisions are often the result of poor behaviors and unforgiving roadway designs. This project approaches the problem from the angle of creating street designs that emphasize safety, predictability, and the potential for human error, and will complete 12-15 corridor safety projects over 9 years to improve safety for all travelers on our highest-crash streets. Corridors identified as part of the Move Seattle Levy include: 65th St., Rainier Ave S, 35th Ave SW, SW Roxbury St, Greenwood/Phinney, 1st Ave/1st Ave S, 12th Ave/12th Ave E, Aurora Ave N, Lake City Way, Sand Point Way, E Marginal Way, Airport Way, 35th Ave NE, 15th Ave NE, MLK Jr. Way S, and 5th Ave NE.

Resources	LTD thru 2020	2020 Cfwd	2021 Adptd	2021 Adj ²	2021 Rev ³	2022	2023	2024	2025	2026	Total
Commercial Parking Tax	1,336	6	-	-	6	-	-	-	-	-	1,341
Federal Grant Funds	1,240	1,261	-	-	1,261	-	-	-	-	-	2,500
General Fund	538	10	-	-	10	-	-	-	-	-	548
Real Estate Excise Tax I	977	23	-	-	23	-	-	-	-	-	1,000
Real Estate Excise Tax II	252	10	-	-	10	-	-	-	-	500	762
State Gas Taxes - City Street Fund	29	-	-	-	0	-	-	-	-	-	29
To Be Determined	2	(2)	-	-	(2)	-	-	-	-	-	0
Transportation Funding Package - Lid Lift	62	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	62
Transportation Move Seattle Levy - Lid Lift	14,046	(4)	2,029	-	2,025	2,532	1,695	1,980	122	-	22,399
Transportation Network Company Revenue	-	-	200	-	200	-	-	-	-	-	200
Vehicle License Fees (2021)	-	-	-	1,125	1,125	2,044	2,072	2,101	-	-	7,342
Total:	18,481	1,303	2,229	1,125	4,656	4,576	3,767	4,081	2,252	2,660	36,183
Fund Appropriations / Allocations ¹	LTD thru 2020	2020 Cfwd	2021 Adptd	2021 Adj ²	2021 Rev ³	2022	2023	2024	2025	2026	Total
Bridging The Gap Levy Fund	62	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	62
General Fund	538	10	200	-	210	-	-	-	-	-	748
Move Seattle Levy Fund	14,046	(4)	2,029	-	2,025	2,532	1,695	1,980	122	-	22,399
REET I Capital Fund	977	23	-	-	23	-	-	-	-	-	1,000
REET II Capital Fund	252	10	-	-	10	-	-	-	-	500	762
Transportation Benefit District Fund	-	-	-	1,125	1,125	2,044	2,072	2,101	-	-	7,342
Transportation Fund	2,606	1,266	-	-	1,264	-	-	-	-	-	3,870
Total:	18,481	1,303	2,229	1,125	4,656	4,576	3,767	4,081	2,252	2,660	36,183
Unsecured Funding	LTD thru 2020	2020 Cfwd	2021 Adptd	2021 Adj ²	2021 Rev ³	2022	2023	2024	2025	2026	Total
To Be Determined	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	2,572	2,572
Total:									0	2,572	2,572

Unsecured Funding Strategy: SDOT will evaluate deliverables, prioritize and scale projects to the extent feasible, and continue to pursue grant and partnership opportunities to resolve potential funding deficits. Funding for this program beyond 2024 is dependent upon a future voter approved levy.

O&M Impacts: SDOT has individual project budgets for the maintenance of painted markings, signage, signals, bridges and roadway structures, urban forestry, and sidewalks and pavement; these budgets are constrained by the availability of transportation specific and general funds. The SDOT Asset Management website (<https://www.seattle.gov/transportation/about-sdot/asset-management>) provides unconstrained operational cost forecasting by asset type, typical lifecycle and average maintenance cost ranges.

¹Funds are appropriated through the Adopted Budget at the Budget Summary Level. All Amounts shown above are in thousands of dollars

²2021 adjustment shows the sum of all changes to date

³2021 Revised is the sum of prior year carryforward, current year adopted and any current year adjustments

¹Funds are appropriated through the Adopted Budget at the Budget Summary Level. All Amounts shown above are in thousands of dollars

²2021 adjustment shows the sum of all changes to date

³2021 Revised is the sum of prior year carryforward, current year adopted and any current year adjustments

2021 - 2026 Adopted Capital Improvement Program

SDOT ADA Program

Project No:	MC-TR-C057	BSL Code:	BC-TR-19003
Project Type:	Ongoing	BSL Name:	Mobility-Capital
Project Category:	Improved Facility	Location:	Citywide
Current Project Stage:	N/A	Council District:	Multiple
Start/End Date:	N/A	Neighborhood District:	Multiple
Total Project Cost:	N/A	Urban Village:	Multiple

This program is responsible for prioritizing and constructing curb ramps and accessible pedestrian signals (APS) and improving access to city facilities for those living with disabilities.

Resources	LTD thru 2020	2020 Cfwd	2021 Adptd	2021 Adj ²	2021 Rev ³	2022	2023	2024	2025	2026	Total
Commercial Parking Tax	73				-						73
Multimodal Funds	123	227	-	-	227	-	-	-	-	-	350
Real Estate Excise Tax II	6,819	3,662	-	-	3,662	-	-	-	3,805	-	14,285
School Camera Ticket Revenues	1,493	2,375	2,000	-	4,375	2,249	2,500	2,750	-	-	13,367
State Gas Taxes - City Street Fund	995	19	-	-	19	-	-	-	341	-	1,355
Transportation Move Seattle Levy - Lid Lift	14,673	1,982	5,072	-	7,054	9,169	9,195	8,563	-	-	48,654
User Fees	268	232	-	-	232	-	-	-	-	-	500
Vehicle License Fees (2021)	-	-	-	150	150	307	311	315	-	-	1,083
Vehicle Licensing Fees	1,478	708	660	-	1,368	731	753	765	788	-	5,883
Total:	25,922	9,205	7,732	150	17,087	12,456	12,759	12,393	4,934	0	85,550
Fund Appropriations / Allocations ¹	LTD thru 2020	2020 Cfwd	2021 Adptd	2021 Adj ²	2021 Rev ³	2022	2023	2024	2025	2026	Total
Move Seattle Levy Fund	14,673	1,982	5,072	-	7,054	9,169	9,195	8,563	-	-	48,654
REET II Capital Fund	6,819	3,662	-	-	3,662	-	-	-	3,805	-	14,285
School Safety Traffic and Pedestrian Improvement Fund	1,493	2,375	2,000	-	4,375	2,249	2,500	2,750	-	-	13,367
Transportation Benefit District Fund	1,478	708	660	150	1,518	1,038	1,064	1,080	788	-	6,966
Transportation Fund	1,459	478	-	-	478	-	-	-	341	-	2,278
Total:	25,922	9,205	7,732	150	17,087	12,456	12,759	12,393	4,934	0	85,550
Unsecured Funding	LTD thru 2020	2020 Cfwd	2021 Adptd	2021 Adj ²	2021 Rev ³	2022	2023	2024	2025	2026	Total
To Be Determined	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	3,321	10,713	14,034
Total:	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	3,321	10,713	14,034

Unsecured Funding Strategy: Funding for this program beyond 2024 is dependent upon a future voter approved levy.

O&M Impacts: SDOT has individual project budgets for the maintenance of painted markings, signage, signals, bridges and roadway structures, urban forestry, and sidewalks and pavement; these budgets are constrained by the availability of transportation specific and general funds. The SDOT Asset Management website (<https://www.seattle.gov/transportation/about-sdot/asset-management>) provides unconstrained operational cost forecasting by asset type, typical lifecycle and average maintenance cost ranges.

¹Funds are appropriated through the Adopted Budget at the Budget Summary Level. All Amounts shown above are in thousands of dollars

²2021 adjustment shows the sum of all changes to date

³2021 Revised is the sum of prior year carryforward, current year adopted and any current year adjustments

Structures Major Maintenance

Project No:	MC-TR-C112	BSL Code:	BC-TR-19001
Project Type:	Ongoing	BSL Name:	Major Maintenance/Replacement
Project Category:	Rehabilitation or Restoration	Location:	Citywide
Current Project Stage:	N/A	Council District:	
Start/End Date:	N/A	Neighborhood District:	Multiple
Total Project Cost:	N/A	Urban Village:	Multiple

This program provides for major maintenance and rehabilitation of the City's bridges and structural assets that are maintained by the Roadway Structures Division. Examples of improvements that could be funded by this project include: electrical and mechanical upgrades of moveable bridge operating and control systems, repair of cracks and maintenance of concrete and steel structures, and site protection of bridge facilities.

Resources	LTD thru 2020	2020 Cfwd	2021 Adptd	2021 Adj ²	2021 Rev ³	2022	2023	2024	2025	2026	Total
Real Estate Excise Tax II	-	-	1,560	-	1,560	-	-	-	-	-	1,560
Vehicle License Fees (2021)	-	-	-	850	850	1,737	1,761	1,786	-	-	6,134
Total:	-	-	1,560	850	2,410	1,737	1,761	1,786	-	-	7,694
Fund Appropriations / Allocations ¹	LTD thru 2020	2020 Cfwd	2021 Adptd	2021 Adj ²	2021 Rev ³	2022	2023	2024	2025	2026	Total
REET II Capital Fund	-	-	1,560	-	1,560	-	-	-	-	-	1,560
Transportation Benefit District Fund	-	-	-	850	850	1,737	1,761	1,786	-	-	6,134
Total:	-	-	1,560	850	2,410	1,737	1,761	1,786	-	-	7,694

O&M Impacts: Not applicable - does not create new assets.

¹Funds are appropriated through the Adopted Budget at the Budget Summary Level. All Amounts shown above are in thousands of dollars

²2021 adjustment shows the sum of all changes to date

³2021 Revised is the sum of prior year carryforward, current year adopted and any current year adjustments

April 13, 2021

MEMORANDUM

To: Transportation and Utilities Committee
From: Calvin Chow, Analyst
Subject: Legislation to approve 2021 appropriations for \$20 Vehicle License Fee

On April 21, 2021, the Transportation and Utilities Committee will consider and possibly vote on Council Bill (CB) 120042, which transfers \$3.6 million of appropriations from Finance General to various Seattle Department of Transportation (SDOT) Budget Summary Levels (BSLs) in support of a spending plan for the revenue generated by the additional \$20 Vehicle License Fee (VLF) previously authorized by [Ordinance 126234](#). CB 120042 would also remove a proviso in the 2021 Adopted Budget that restricted the use of the \$3.6 million of Finance General appropriations; the proviso would no longer be needed once the Council has transferred the appropriations to SDOT.

Background

As part of the 2021 Budget process, Council passed Ordinance 126234, which increased the councilmanic VLF from \$20 to \$40. This additional \$20 VLF is anticipated to raise \$3.6 million in 2021 (for a half-year of collections beginning in July 2021), and \$7.2 million annually beginning in 2022. The 2021 Adopted Budget included \$3.6 million of appropriations in Finance General as a placeholder for future legislative action pending a spending plan. By State law, the VLF revenues may only be used for transportation purposes.

In Budget Action BLG-042-B-001 and in Ordinance 126234, Council requested that SDOT to develop a spending plan for the new revenue after conducting a stakeholder process “that includes input from the Move Seattle Levy Oversight Committee, the city’s transportation boards and commissions, transit equity organizations, and community organizations, particularly those organizations representing communities that are disproportionately reliant on transit, and labor unions whose members are impacted by transportation investments, including Ironworkers, Building Trades, and Laborers.”

SDOT convened meetings with stakeholder groups in February and March 2021 to develop the proposed spending plan, and SDOT transmitted its proposed spending plan to Council by email on April 1, 2020. CB 120042 would make the corresponding appropriation adjustments necessary to implement the proposed spending plan.

Proposed Spending Plan

For 2021, CB 120042 would authorize the following expenditures (\$3.6 million total):

- \$1,125,000 for Safe Streets (e.g., Vision Zero safety improvements);
- \$1,025,000 for Safe Sidewalks (e.g., sidewalk repairs and maintenance of crosswalks and crossing signals);
- \$850,000 for Strong Bridges and Structures (e.g., maintenance of bridges, structures, and areaways);
- \$350,000 for Active Transportation Maintenance (e.g., maintenance and upkeep of bicycle lanes and bicycle signal improvements); and
- \$250,000 for Planning Ahead (e.g., integration of modal plans, assessment of transportation revenue, and planning for the expiry of the Move Seattle Levy).

For 2022 and beyond, the proposed spending plan anticipates that the additional VLF revenues (approximately \$7.2 million annually) would be allocated in future budget proposals as follows:

- 28 percent for Safe Streets;
- 28 percent for Safe Sidewalks;
- 24 percent for Strong Bridges and Structures;
- 10 percent for Active Transportation Maintenance;
- 7 percent for Planning Ahead; and
- 3 percent for Reserves/Revenue Stabilization.

Please contact me if you have any questions or concerns regarding this legislation.

cc: Dan Eder, Interim Director
Aly Pennucci, Policy and Budget Manager

Amendment 1

to

CB 120042 - \$20 Vehicle License Fee Spending Plan

Sponsor: CM Pedersen and CM Herbold; CM Juarez (co-sponsored in open session, April 21, 2021 Transportation and Utilities Committee)

Co-authored: CM Lewis and CM Mosqueda

Direct SDOT to prepare a list of eligible projects in consideration of \$100 million of potential bond financing in the 2022 Budget, including a minimum of \$75 million of bridge repair, maintenance, and replacement projects.

Add eight Whereas clauses at the end of the current recitals, as follows:

...WHEREAS, the Department of Transportation submitted the described spending plan to the Council in conjunction with this ordinance, in accordance with BLG-042-B-001; ~~NOW, THEREFORE,~~ and

WHEREAS, the Council wishes to implement the described spending plan for 2021; and

WHEREAS, following the unexpected closure of the West Seattle High Bridge in March 2020, the Council requested that the City Auditor review the Department of Transportation's spending and practices for maintaining the City's vehicle bridges; and

WHEREAS, the City Auditor's report on bridges identified maintenance needs for bridges ranked as "poor" and "fair" condition under the Federal Highway Administration ranking criteria, to maintain facilities such as the 2nd Avenue South Extension Bridge, University Bridge, Ballard Bridge and Magnolia Bridge in working condition; and

WHEREAS, the Department of Transportation highlighted the need for replacing aging components on moveable bridges and seismic upgrades to the Council and in media reports; and

WHEREAS, transportation corridors of regional significance, such as the Ballard Interbay Regional Transportation corridor, rely on Seattle bridge infrastructure to transport goods and people; and

WHEREAS, the Council intends to direct 75 percent of the additional \$20 Vehicle License Fee in 2022 and beyond towards maintenance and repair of bridges; and

WHEREAS, the additional \$20 Vehicle License Fee revenue in 2022 and beyond would be sufficient to finance a \$100 million, 20-year bond that could provide local funding to leverage State and federal transportation funding that may become available; and

WHEREAS, financing \$100 million of bond revenues in 2022 for multimodal infrastructure projects would spur Seattle's economic recovery, including a near-term expansion of training and employment opportunities in the delivery of large capital projects; NOW, THEREFORE,

###

Add new Section 4 as follows:

Section 4. The Seattle Department of Transportation Director is directed to provide to Council a list of transportation projects that could be funded by \$100 million of bond financing in 2022. At a minimum, the list shall include a title, short description, and cost estimate for each project. The project list shall identify a minimum of \$75 million of bridge maintenance, bridge repair, and bridge

replacement projects. The project list shall be delivered to Council in writing by
September 30, 2021.

###

Reorder remaining sections accordingly.

Effect:

In response to Council's direction in Ordinance 126234 and Budget Action BLG-042-B-001, CB 120042 presents a proposed spending plan for the additional \$20 VLF, and transfers \$3.6 million of 2021 appropriations from Finance General to the corresponding SDOT budget summary levels. For 2022 and beyond, the proposed spending plan described in CB 120042 includes:

- 28% for Safe Streets;
- 28% for Safe Sidewalks;
- 24% for Strong Bridges and Structures;
- 10% for Active Transportation Maintenance;
- 7% for Planning Ahead; and
- 3% for Reserves.

This proposed amendment would not affect the 2021 appropriations included in CB 120042, but would signal the Council's desire to reprioritize this funding in 2022. The amendment adds recitals stating the Council's intention to direct 75% of the Vehicle License Fee revenues in 2022 and beyond to bridge maintenance and repair projects, and to consider \$100 million of bond financing as a means to leverage potential state and federal funds and promote economic recovery. Such direction would depart from the spending plan in CB 120042, which anticipates that 24% of the VLF revenue stream would be utilized for Strong Bridges and Structures and does not contemplate bond financing.

This amendment adds a new Section 4, directing SDOT to provide Council with a list of transportation projects that would be eligible for \$100 million of bond financing in 2022, with a minimum of \$75 million of these projects to be for bridge maintenance, repair, or replacement. The project list would be due to Council on September 30, 2021, which would coincide with the delivery of the Mayor's 2022 Proposed Budget.

The anticipated \$20 VLF revenues would be sufficient to cover debt service on a 20-year, \$100 million bond; however, no funding would remain for other programmatic spending until the bond was fully repaid. Any implementation actions for 2022 spending or bond issuance would need to be considered as part of the 2022 Budget.



Legislation Text

File #: CB 120062, Version: 1

CITY OF SEATTLE

ORDINANCE _____

COUNCIL BILL _____

AN ORDINANCE relating to the Madison Bus Rapid Transit (BRT) - RapidRide G Line project; authorizing the Director of the Seattle Department of Transportation (SDOT) to acquire, accept, and record, on behalf of The City of Seattle, a signal pole and trolley wire easement from Seattle University, a Washington non-profit corporation, situated in a portion of Lots 1 through 6, Mile's Addition to the City of Seattle, together with a portion of vacated East Spring Street, vacated 11th Avenue, and vacated Madison Court, and an easement for public sidewalk from Casita Grande LLC, a Washington limited liability company, situated in a portion of Block 6, Addition to the City of Seattle, as laid off by D.T. Denny, Guardian of the Estate of J.H. Nagle (Commonly known as Nagle's Addition to the City of Seattle); designating the easements for transportation purposes, placing the easements under the jurisdiction of SDOT; and ratifying and confirming certain prior acts.

WHEREAS, the Madison Bus Rapid Transit (BRT) - RapidRide G Line project (the "Project") is identified as a priority project in The City of Seattle's (the "City") 2012 Transit Master Plan and the Seattle

Department of Transportation's 2015 Move Seattle 10-Year Strategic Vision for Transportation; and

WHEREAS, to that end, the Project is one of seven multimodal projects created and implemented in partnership between the City and King County Metro to re-channelize lanes, improve signal operations, and add transit stations to create a bus rapid transit service along the Madison Street corridor; and

WHEREAS, once the Project is completed, King County Metro will operate bus service along the Madison Street corridor from 1st Avenue in downtown Seattle's Central Business District to Martin Luther King Jr. Way in Madison Valley as the Madison BRT - RapidRide G Line route (the "G Line"); and

WHEREAS, the G Line will serve densely developed neighborhoods in downtown Seattle, the Waterfront, First Hill, Capitol Hill, the Central Area, and Madison Valley by providing a vital link in the region's high-capacity transit network and connecting dozens of King County Metro bus routes such as Route 48

along 23rd Avenue, including numerous regional transit opportunities, the 3rd Avenue Transit Spine, the University Street Link Light Rail Station, the Seattle Streetcar system, and ferry service at the Colman Dock Ferry Terminal via the Marion Street Pedestrian Bridge; and

WHEREAS, the Project consists of high-capacity transit and multimodal improvements along the G Line and on Spring Street between 1st Avenue and 9th Avenue; and

WHEREAS, the Project will deliver pedestrian and bike improvements for access and safety, including new and/or improved Americans with Disabilities Act-compliant ramps, signal and infrastructure upgrades, re-pavement, new public art, and landscaping; and

WHEREAS, the Seattle Department of Transportation is coordinating the Project design with Seattle Public Utilities (SPU) and Seattle City Light (SCL) to enhance streetlights; fiber communications; power, water, and sewer infrastructure; and drainage improvements; and

WHEREAS, more specifically, SCL will fund the streetlight improvements in the First Hill neighborhood and SPU will replace a water main and repair/replace drainage and wastewater structures and pipes; and

WHEREAS, the Project will improve transit capacity, frequency, travel time, reliability, connectivity, and comfort, and provide safe public transportation for historically underserved neighborhoods between the Central District and the Seattle Waterfront; and

WHEREAS, the easements granted to the City are necessary to complete and maintain the Project; NOW,

THEREFORE,

BE IT ORDAINED BY THE CITY OF SEATTLE AS FOLLOWS:

Section 1. The Signal Pole and Trolley Wire Easement, dated July 7, 2020, granted by Seattle University, a Washington non-profit corporation, recorded under King County Recording Number 20200722001585 and attached as Attachment 1 to this ordinance, granting to The City of Seattle (the “City”) an easement for constructing, repairing, replacing, and maintaining two traffic signal poles and related equipment, and for attaching and maintaining support wires for the trolley bus wires attached to said traffic signal poles,

over, under, upon, and across property legally described and depicted in Exhibits A and B of Attachment 1 to this ordinance, is accepted.

Section 2. The Easement for Public Sidewalk, dated November 3, 2020, granted by Casita Grande LLC, a Washington limited liability company, recorded under King County Recording Number 20201117003206 and attached as Attachment 2 to this ordinance, granting to the City an easement for public sidewalk, over, under, upon, and across property legally described and depicted in Exhibits A and B of Attachment 2 to this ordinance, is accepted.

Section 3. The easements accepted in Sections 1 and 2 of this ordinance are designated for transportation purposes and placed under the jurisdiction of the Seattle Department of Transportation.

Section 4. Any act consistent with the authority of this ordinance taken prior to its effective date is ratified and confirmed.

Section 5. This ordinance shall take effect and be in force 30 days after its approval by the Mayor, but if not approved and returned by the Mayor within ten days after presentation, it shall take effect as provided by Seattle Municipal Code Section 1.04.020.

Passed by the City Council the _____ day of _____, 2021, and signed by me in open session in authentication of its passage this ____ day of _____, 2021.

President _____ of the City Council

Approved / returned unsigned / vetoed this _____ day of _____, 2021.

Jenny A. Durkan, Mayor

Filed by me this _____ day of _____, 2021.

Monica Martinez Simmons, City Clerk

(Seal)

Attachments:

Attachment 1 - Recorded Signal Pole and Trolley Wire Easement granted by Seattle University

Attachment 2 - Recorded Easement for Public Sidewalk granted by Casita Grande LLC

After recording return document to:

City of Seattle
Department of Transportation
700 5th Avenue – Suite 3800
P.O. Box 34996
Seattle, WA 98124-4996
Attn: Michelle Talbot

Document Title: Signal Pole and Trolley Wire Easement

Reference Number of Related Document: N/A

Grantor(s): Seattle University

Grantee: City of Seattle

Abbreviated Legal Description: Ptn of Lots 1 thru 6, Miles Addition, Vol. 2, PP 6, in the SW ¼ of NE ¼ of Sec. 32, T25N, R4E, W.M., King County, Washington

Additional Legal Description on Exhibit A Pages 5 and 6 of Document.

Assessor's Tax Parcel Number(s): 552560-0010

SIGNAL POLE AND TROLLEY WIRE EASEMENT

Project: Madison Street Bus Rapid Transit

The Grantor, **SEATTLE UNIVERSITY**, a Washington non-profit corporation ("Grantor"), for and in consideration of the sum of TEN AND NO/100 DOLLARS (\$10.00), and other valuable consideration, conveys and warrants to the **CITY OF SEATTLE**, a municipal corporation of the State of Washington ("Grantee"), an Easement for constructing, repairing, replacing, and maintaining two (2) traffic signal poles and related equipment, and for attaching and maintaining support wires for the trolley bus wires attached to said traffic signal poles (the "Equipment"), over, under, upon and across the lands described in Exhibit A, situated in King County, State of Washington (collectively, the "Easement" and the lands described and depicted on Exhibit A attached hereto, the "Easement Area"), to the same extent and purpose as if the rights granted had been acquired under Eminent Domain statutes of the State of Washington, subject to the following terms and conditions:

(a) The Equipment shall be installed in substantially the same location as depicted on Exhibit B attached hereto. Grantee may not relocate the Equipment (or any portion thereof) to another location within the Easement Area without Grantor's prior written consent, which consent will not be unreasonably withheld, conditioned or delayed so long as the Equipment does not impede or otherwise obstruct access to and from Grantor's property in Grantor's commercially reasonable discretion.

SIGNAL POLE AND TROLLEY WIRE EASEMENT

(b) Grantee, at its sole cost and expense, shall maintain and repair the Equipment from time to time (i) as Grantee deems reasonably necessary or appropriate, or (ii) as Grantor deems reasonably necessary, with Grantee commencing such maintenance or repairs promptly after receipt of written notice from Grantor that such repairs are needed. Grantee shall notify Grantor prior to the commencement of any maintenance or repair work that will impair the flow of pedestrian traffic through the Easement Area.

(c) Grantee shall at all times in connection with the operation, repair and maintenance of the Equipment, keep the Easement Area in an orderly, clean and safe condition and promptly repair or restore, at Grantee's sole cost and expense, any damage (including without limitation damage to landscaping, paving or other improvements) caused to the Easement Area by Grantee or Grantee's contractors, agents or licensees. In no event shall Grantee install or otherwise operate any Equipment within the Easement Area that would impede or otherwise obstruct ingress and egress to and from Grantor's property. All maintenance and repair work conducted hereunder shall be performed by licensed contractors in a workmanlike manner in compliance with all applicable laws, rules, regulations and ordinances, and shall be completed with diligence and in a manner that minimizes disruption to Grantor's property.

(d) To the extent permitted by law, Grantee, its successors and assigns, agrees to indemnify and hold Grantor harmless from any and all injury, loss, damage or liability (or any claims with respect to the foregoing), costs or expenses (including without limitation reasonable attorneys' fees) related to Grantee's use of the Easement Area, except to the extent such injury, loss, damage or liability is caused by the negligence or willful misconduct of the Grantor.

(e) Grantor hereby reserves for itself, its successors and assigns, and its agents, representatives, employees, contractors, licensees, tenants and invitees, the right to use the Easement Area for any purpose not inconsistent with the rights herein granted.

[signature pages and notary acknowledgments follow]

SIGNAL POLE AND TROLLEY WIRE EASEMENT

**EXHIBIT A
SIGNAL POLE AND TROLLEY WIRE EASEMENT
FROM PARCEL NO. 5525600010**

An easement for signal pole and trolley wire purposes across a portion of the below described PARCEL A, situate in the South Half of the Northeast Quarter of Section 32, Township 25 North, Range 4 East, W.M., more particularly described as follows:

Beginning at the northwest corner of said PARCEL A, said point also being on the southerly margin of East Madison St; thence along said southerly margin and the northerly line of said PARCEL A North 59°26'50" East, 62.87 feet to the TRUE POINT OF BEGINNING; thence leaving said northerly line South 30°33'10" East, 10.00 feet; thence North 59°32'44" East, 84.35 feet; thence North 0°56'48" East, 11.77 feet to a point on the northerly line of PARCEL A; thence along said northerly line South 59°26'42" West, 19.86 feet; thence continuing along said northerly line South 59°32'44" West, 64.66 feet; thence continuing along said northerly line South 59°26'50" West, 5.97 feet to the TRUE POINT OF BEGINNING, containing 875 square feet, more or less.

PARCEL A

Lots 1 through 6, Miles Addition, according to the plat recorded in Volume 2 of Plats, Page 6, in King County, Washington;

Together with vacated portion of E. Spring Street in City of Seattle Ordinance No. 85398; also

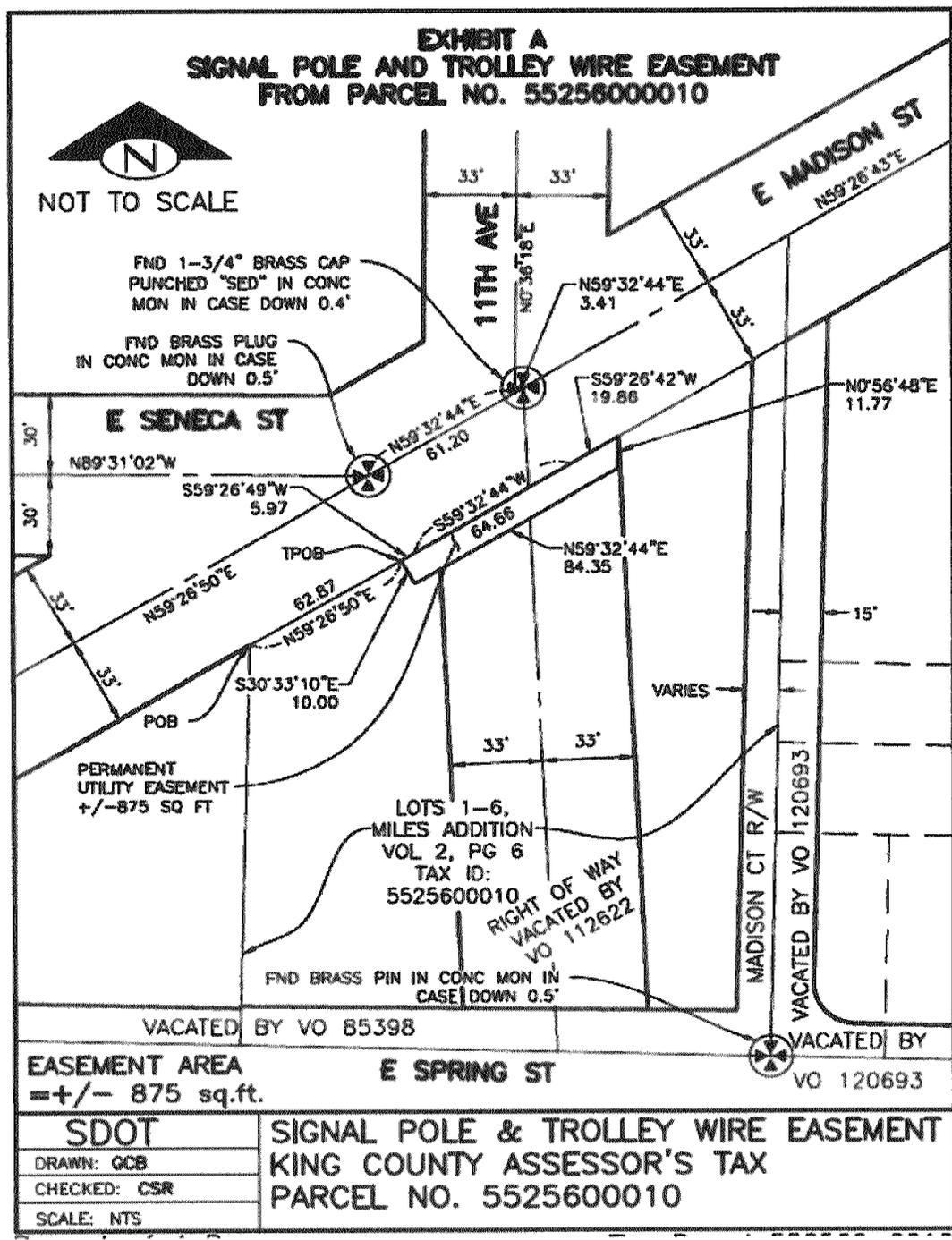
Together with vacated portion of E. Spring Street and 11th Avenue in City of Seattle Ordinance No. 112622; also

Together with vacated portion of E. Spring Street and Madison Court in City of Seattle Ordinance No. 120693.

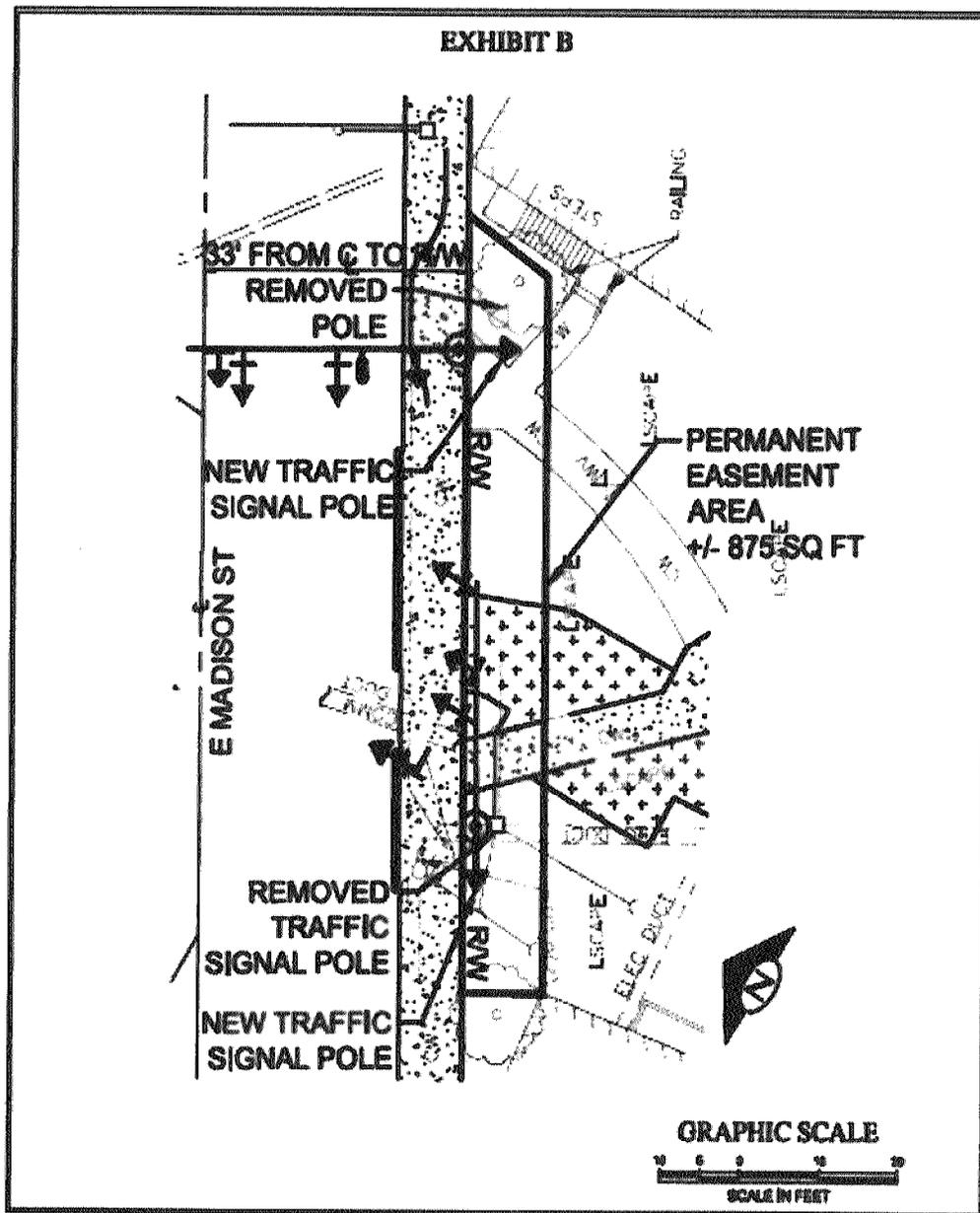
Basis of Bearing: Washington State Plane Coordinate System, North Zone, NAD83-2011, EPOCH 2010.00, Derived from the WSRN and NGS-CORS.



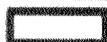
SIGNAL POLE AND TROLLEY WIRE EASEMENT
EXHIBIT A (Continued)



SIGNAL POLE AND TROLLEY WIRE EASEMENT



LEGEND:

 Easement Perimeter

After recording return document to:

City of Seattle
Department of Transportation
700 5th Avenue – Suite 3800
P.O. Box 34996
Seattle, WA 98124-4996
Attn: Michelle Talbot

Document Title: Easement for Public Sidewalk

Reference Number of Related Document: N/A

Grantor(s): Casita Grande LLC

Grantee: City of Seattle

Abbreviated Legal Description: Ptn of Lot 12, Blk 6, Nagels Add Less St., Vol 1, PP 153, King County, Washington

Additional Legal Description on Exhibits A and B Page 6 and 7 of Document

Assessor's Tax Parcel Number(s): 600300-0095

EASEMENT FOR PUBLIC SIDEWALK

Project: Madison Street Bus Rapid Transit

The Grantor, **CASITA GRANDE LLC**, a Washington limited liability company, for and in consideration of the sum of TEN AND NO/100 DOLLARS (\$10.00), and other valuable consideration, hereby conveys and warrants to the **CITY OF SEATTLE**, a municipal corporation of the State of Washington, an Easement for public sidewalk over, under, upon and across the hereinafter described lands, situated in King County, State of Washington, to the same extent and purpose as if the rights herein granted had been acquired under Eminent Domain statutes of the State of Washington.

EASEMENT

The conveyance of this Easement for public sidewalk shall be for surface rights of public access only and shall not constitute conveyance of any rights other than those specified in this document. The Grantee shall be responsible for maintenance of the surface. The Grantor shall be responsible for the supporting structure of the area of said easement.

This Agreement and each of the terms, provisions, conditions and covenants herein contained are binding upon and inure to the benefit of the parties hereto and their respective successors and assigns and shall run with the land.

See Exhibits A and B attached hereto and made a part hereof.

EASEMENT

EXHIBIT A

LEGAL DESCRIPTION - SIDEWALK EASEMENT

AN EASEMENT FOR SIDEWALK PURPOSES OVER THE NORTHWESTERLY 6.00 FEET OF THAT PORTION OF LOT 12, BLOCK 6, ADDITION TO THE CITY OF SEATTLE, AS LAID OFF BY D. T. DENNY, GUARDIAN OF THE ESTATE OF J. H. NAGLE (COMMONLY KNOWN AS NAGLE'S ADDITION TO THE CITY OF SEATTLE), ACCORDING TO THE PLAT THEREOF RECORDED IN VOLUME 1 OF PLATS, PAGE(S) 153, IN KING COUNTY, WASHINGTON;

BEING A TRIANGULAR PORTION OF LAND, BOUNDED ON THE NORTHWEST BY EAST MADISON STREET, ACCORDING TO CITY OF SEATTLE ORDINANCE NO. 276, ON THE EAST BY THIRTEENTH AVENUE, AND ON THE SOUTH BY EAST UNION STREET.

SAID EASEMENT SHALL LIE BETWEEN TWO PLANES WITH ELEVATIONS DESCRIBED AS FOLLOWS:

315.7 AND 327.7 AT THE WESTERLY CORNER THEREOF;
316.5 AND 328.5 AT THE SOUTHWESTERLY CORNER THEREOF;
321.9 AND 333.9 AT THE NORTHERLY CORNER THEREOF; AND
322.0 AND 334.0 AT THE SOUTHEASTERLY CORNER THEREOF;

SAID ELEVATIONS ARE EXPRESSED IN TERMS OF THE NORTH AMERICAN VERTICAL DATUM OF 1988 (NAVD88) AND THE PLANES ARE INTENDED TO BE 1.00 FOOT BELOW AND 11.00 FEET ABOVE THE FINISH GRADE OF THE SIDEWALK, AND ARE BASED UPON CITY OF SEATTLE BENCHMARK NO. SNV-2501, BEING A BRASS DISK, 1 FOOT NORTH AND 1 FOOT WEST OF THE INTERSECTION OF BACK OF CONCRETE WALK AT THE SOUTHEAST CORNER OF THE INTERSECTION OF EAST MADISON STREET WITH TWELFTH AVENUE AND HAVING AN ELEVATION OF 306.915 FEET;

SITUATE IN THE CITY OF SEATTLE, COUNTY OF KING, STATE OF WASHINGTON

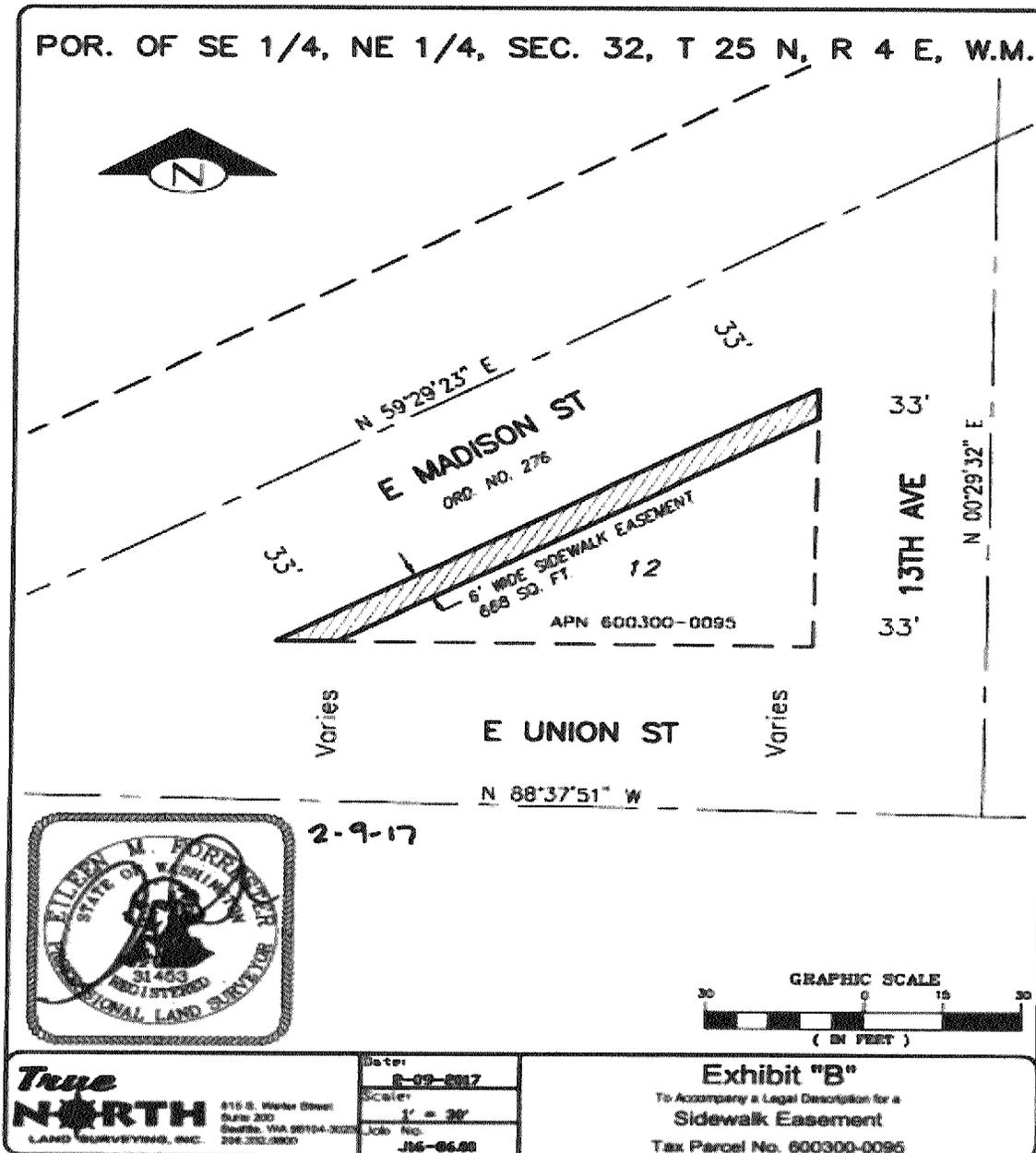
CONTAINING: 668 SQUARE FEET, MORE OR LESS

EXHIBIT "B" ATTACHED AND BY THIS REFERENCE MADE A PART HEREOF.



EASEMENT

EXHIBIT B



SUMMARY and FISCAL NOTE*

Department:	Dept. Contact/Phone:	CBO Contact/Phone:
Department of Transportation	Gretchen Haydel/206 233-5140	Christie Parker/206 684-5211

** Note that the Summary and Fiscal Note describes the version of the bill or resolution as introduced; final legislation including amendments may not be fully described.*

1. BILL SUMMARY

Legislation Title:

AN ORDINANCE relating to the Madison Bus Rapid Transit (BRT) - RapidRide G Line project; authorizing the Director of the Seattle Department of Transportation (SDOT) to acquire, accept, and record, on behalf of The City of Seattle, a signal pole and trolley wire easement from Seattle University, a Washington non-profit corporation, situated in a portion of Lots 1 through 6, Mile’s Addition to the City of Seattle, together with a portion of vacated East Spring Street, vacated 11th Avenue, and vacated Madison Court, and an easement for public sidewalk from Casita Grande LLC, a Washington limited liability company, situated in a portion of Block 6, Addition to the City of Seattle, as laid off by D.T. Denny, Guardian of the Estate of J.H. Nagle (Commonly known as Nagle’s Addition to the City of Seattle); designating the easements for transportation purposes, placing the easements under the jurisdiction of SDOT; and ratifying and confirming certain prior acts.

Summary and background of the Legislation:

This legislation authorizes the acquisition, acceptance, and recording of a signal pole and trolley wire easement granted by Seattle University and an easement for public sidewalk granted by Casita Grande LLC in connection with the Madison BRT – RapidRide G Line project (the “Project”), designates the easements for street purposes, places them under the Seattle Department of Transportation’s (“SDOT”) jurisdiction, and ratifies and confirms prior acts.

The Madison Street corridor is busy, dense, and still growing. The Project provides for street improvements to and along the Madison Street corridor that will allow King County Metro to operate bus rapid transit (BRT) from Downtown Seattle to Madison Valley. The goal is to provide frequent, reliable, and safe bus service to historically underserved neighborhoods.

The Project provides a vital link in the region’s high capacity transit network, with transfers to the Seattle Ferry Terminal at Coleman Dock via the Marion Street Pedestrian Bridge; the 3rd Avenue Transit Spine, including numerous regional transit opportunities; King County Metro routes such as Route 48 along 23rd Avenue; the University Street Link Light Rail Station; and the Seattle Streetcar system. The primary public transit providers in this service area are: King County, providing local bus service and passenger-only ferry service; Sound Transit, offering ST Express regional bus service and Link Light Rail service; Sounder Commuter Rail, providing regional rail service; Community Transit, providing commuter bus service; Kitsap Transit, providing passenger-only ferry service; The City of Seattle (the “City”), owner of the Seattle Streetcars; and the Washington State Department of Transportation, operating ferry service to and from the Seattle Ferry Terminal at Coleman

Dock as part of the Marine Highway System. The completed Project will help to facilitate ongoing collaboration among the various agencies to benefit the City's transportation network in the heart of the city.

A recent federal report has determined that SDOT is qualified to complete the Project. This step is an important milestone toward qualifying for Federal Small Starts Grant funding from the Federal Transit Administration (the "FTA") to cover approximately 45% of the Project cost. SDOT is continuing its efforts to work with the FTA to finalize a funding agreement. The current Project cost is projected to be approximately \$134.7 Million. The Project is funded through Federal grants (Small Starts and CMAQ), the 2015 voter-approved Levy to Move Seattle, and the regionally voter-approved Sound Transit 3 (ST3) program. Construction is scheduled to begin in 2021.

2. CAPITAL IMPROVEMENT PROGRAM

Does this legislation create, fund, or amend a CIP Project? Yes No

3. SUMMARY OF FINANCIAL IMPLICATIONS

Does this legislation amend the Adopted Budget? Yes No

Does the legislation have other financial impacts to The City of Seattle that are not reflected in the above, including direct or indirect, short-term or long-term costs?

Yes. The aggregate cost of the permanent easements is \$473,400 and will be paid from the Madison BRT-RapidRide G Line CIP.

Is there financial cost or other impacts of *not* implementing the legislation?

Yes. Operations and maintenance costs for SDOT signals and King County Metro Transit would increase along the Project area if this legislation is not passed and the permanent easements are not available for the Project. Additionally, sidewalks would have to be narrowed or eliminated on one side of the street to preserve other elements of the Project design.

4. OTHER IMPLICATIONS

a. Does this legislation affect any departments besides the originating department?

Yes. Seattle Public Utilities ("SPU") and Seattle City Light ("SCL") are involved in the Project design to enhance streetlights; fiber communications; power, water, and sewer infrastructure; and drainage improvements. SCL will fund the streetlight improvements in the First Hill neighborhood and SPU will replace a water main and repair/replace drainage and wastewater structures and pipes. Although the easements are not directly needed for this utility work, not accepting the easements for the Project would impact the Project's design and therefore, could impact the utilities' plans for the Project.

b. Is a public hearing required for this legislation?

No.

c. Is publication of notice with *The Daily Journal of Commerce* and/or *The Seattle Times* required for this legislation?

No.

d. Does this legislation affect a piece of property?

Yes, Seattle University is granting an easement to the City to construct and service two (2) traffic signal poles and related equipment, and to attach and maintain support wires for the trolley bus wires attached to the traffic signal poles. Casita Grande LLC is also granting an easement for public sidewalk purposes.

e. Please describe any perceived implication for the principles of the Race and Social Justice Initiative. Does this legislation impact vulnerable or historically disadvantaged communities? What is the Language Access plan for any communications to the public?

This Project serves historically underserved neighborhoods with an affordable and reliable transportation option. With connections to light rail and regional bus routes, the Project will better connect communities of color to jobs, such as in health care, on First Hill, and educational institutions like Seattle University and Seattle Central College on Capitol Hill.

There are multiple languages spoken within the Project area. We translated our Project materials into Vietnamese, Chinese (Traditional), and Korean. When we need to communicate with an individual business owner or resident in a different language, including American Sign Language, we work with certified language interpreters.

f. Climate Change Implications

1. Emissions: Is this legislation likely to increase or decrease carbon emissions in a material way?

The Project will increase transit ridership, shifting some trips from single occupancy vehicles and accommodating projected growth in housing and employment in the neighborhoods served by the Madison BRT – RapidRide G Line. If the permanent easements are not accepted, design changes that would reduce the transit benefits would be required, potentially impacting the magnitude of transit ridership shifting to RapidRide.

Additionally, as stated on page 47 of the NEPA Documented Categorical Exclusion, prepared for SDOT and the FTA, and published in December 2017:

“The FTA has recently drafted a programmatic assessment of [greenhouse gas] GHG emissions from transit projects (FTA, 2016). Preliminary results indicate that BRT projects generate relatively low levels of GHG emissions. This is mainly due to the minimal amount of infrastructure needed to implement these projects, as well as low annual transit vehicle miles traveled (VMT) as compared to single occupant vehicles.”

- 2. Resiliency: Will the action(s) proposed by this legislation increase or decrease Seattle’s resiliency (or ability to adapt) to climate change in a material way? If so, explain. If it is likely to decrease resiliency in a material way, describe what will or could be done to mitigate the effects.**

Passage of this legislation allows the Project to be constructed as planned. The planned Project design anticipates a reduction in single occupancy vehicles that should contribute to a reduction in carbon emissions.

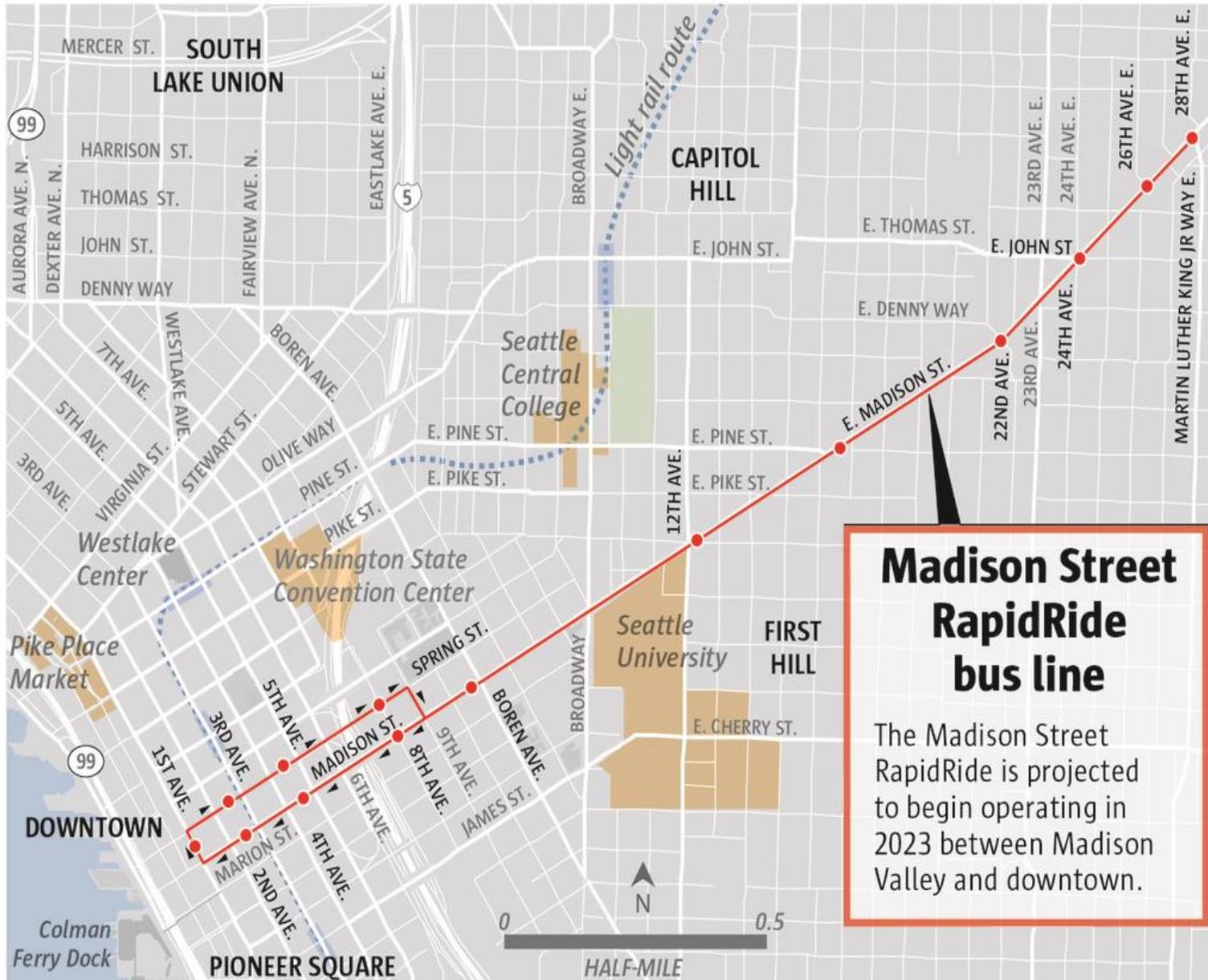
- g. If this legislation includes a new initiative or a major programmatic expansion: What are the specific long-term and measurable goal(s) of the program? How will this legislation help achieve the program’s desired goal(s)?**

This legislation does not include a new initiative or a major programmatic expansion.

List attachments/exhibits below:

Summary Exhibit A - Vicinity Map

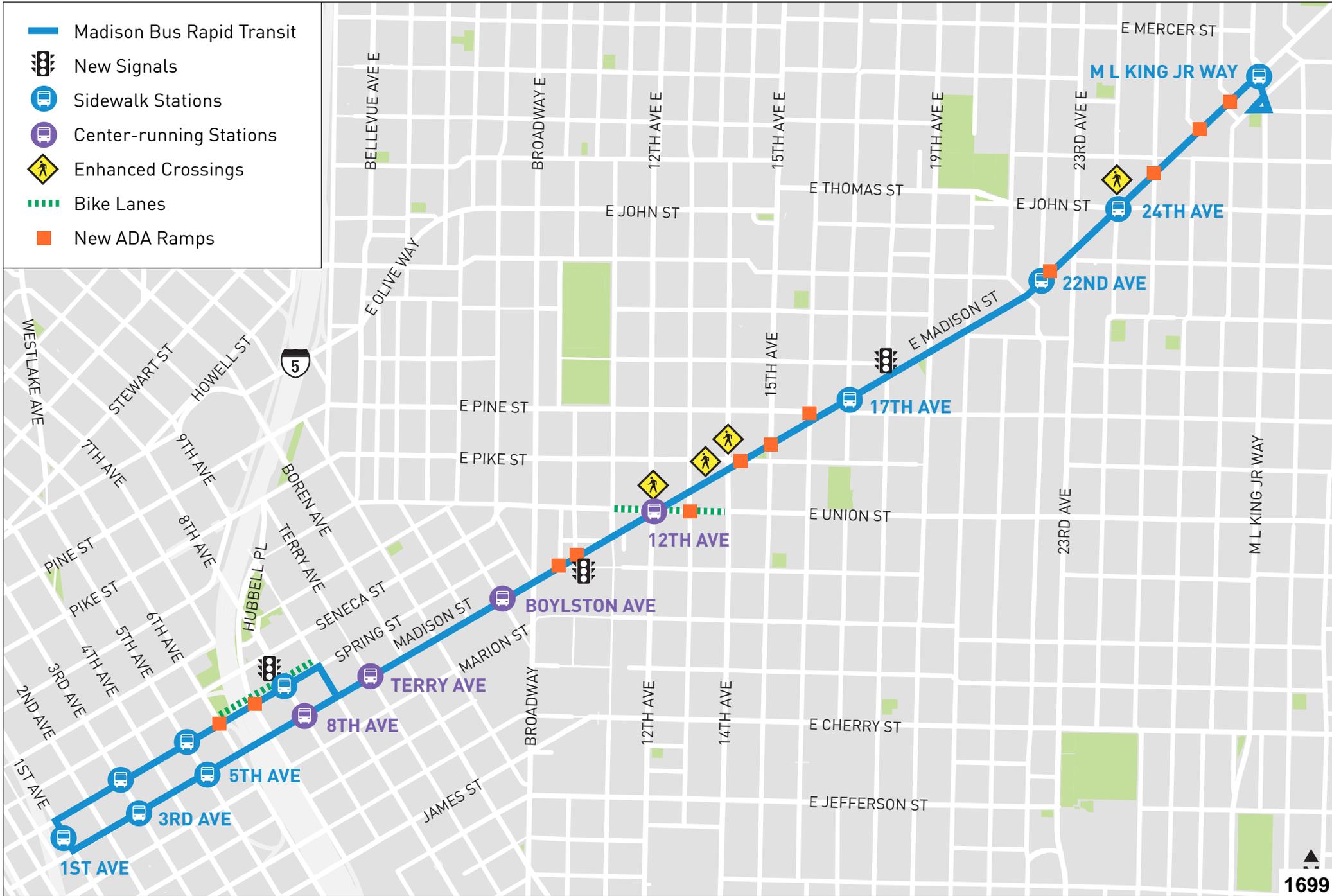
Summary Exhibit B - Project Area



Source: Seattle Department of Transportation

MARK NOWLIN / THE SEATTLE TIMES

- Madison Bus Rapid Transit
- 🚦 New Signals
- 🚌 Sidewalk Stations
- 🚊 Center-running Stations
- 🚶 Enhanced Crossings
- 🚲 Bike Lanes
- 🟠 New ADA Ramps



April 29, 2021

MEMORANDUM

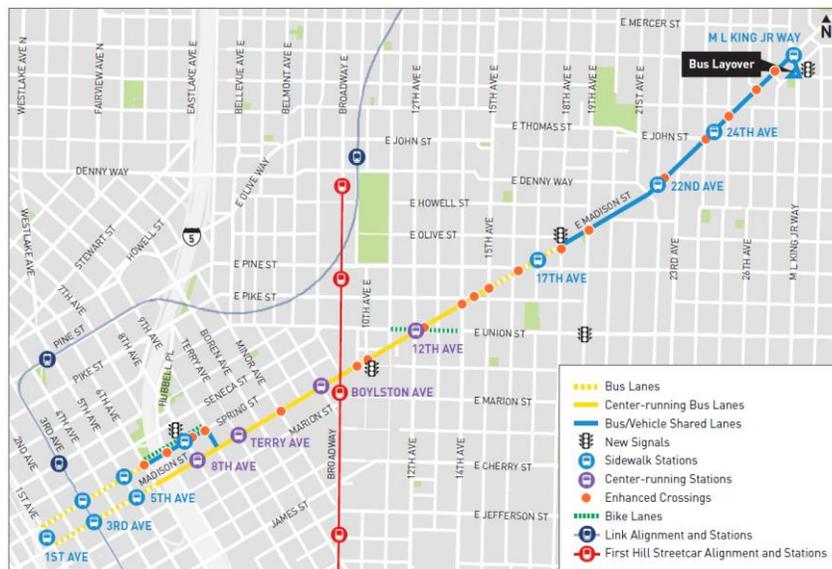
To: Transportation and Utilities Committee
From: Calvin Chow, Analyst
Subject: Madison BRT Grant Acceptance and Property Acquisition Legislation

On May 5, 2021, the Transportation and Utilities Committee will consider and possibly vote on two Council Bills related to the Madison Bus Rapid Transit (Madison BRT) [project](#). The first Council Bill (CB) would accept \$65 million in federal grants for the project, and the second would accept two property easements necessary for project implementation. Both CBs are anticipated to be on the May 3, 2021 Introduction and Referrals Calendar.¹

Background

Planning for improving transit in the Madison corridor was first authorized in the 2013 Adopted Budget, and the Madison BRT project was later established in the 2014-2019 Adopted Capital Improvement Program. In 2016, Council approved a locally preferred alternative for the Madison BRT corridor and endorsed efforts to seek external grant and partnership funding to implement the project ([Resolution 31647](#)).

The Madison BRT project will be implemented as the RapidRide G Line in partnership with King County Metro and Sound Transit, and runs from Downtown Seattle to Madison Valley, connecting through First Hill, Capitol Hill, and the Central District. The route primarily runs along Madison Street, with a one-way couplet extending along Spring Street from 1st Avenue to 9th Avenue in Downtown Seattle.



¹ Council Bill numbers for the proposed legislation are not available at the time of this writing.

The project includes transit priority lanes (including center-running bus lanes and stations in the most congested portion of the route), bus stop improvements, and new hybrid diesel-electric bus vehicles (allowing for left and right-side boarding). The project will require extensive repaving along the 2.3 mile route to incorporate new lane channelization, sidewalk and crossing improvements, curb bulbs, relocation of poles and wires, and repair of existing utilities in the right-of-way.

In 2020, the Federal Transit Administration (FTA) completed a project readiness review which identified the need for additional risk contingency and cost escalation to match the current project schedule. In September 2020, Council authorized budget changes to account for an additional \$4.9 million of City funding and \$7.3 million of external partnership funding to fully fund the project ([Ordinance 126175](#)). On April 5, 2021, the FTA announced the [award](#) of a \$59.9 million Small Starts grant for the Madison BRT project.

Federal Grant Acceptance Legislation

The first piece of Madison BRT legislation would authorize SDOT to accept the \$59.9 million FTA Small Starts grant as well as a \$4.8 million Federal Highway Administration (FHWA) Congestion Mitigation Air Quality (CMAQ) grant for the project. The necessary appropriations to support acceptance of both grants were anticipated and authorized in the 2021 Adopted Budget.

Property Easement Legislation

The second piece of Madison BRT legislation would accept two property easements necessary for construction of the project. These include:

- an easement for signal poles and trolley wire on Seattle University property in the vicinity of E Madison Street and 11th Avenue, and
- an easement for a public sidewalk on adjoining property in the vicinity of E Madison Street and 13th Avenue.

With approval of this legislation, SDOT anticipates that the Madison BRT project would begin construction in Fall 2021, with service commencing in 2024. Please contact me if you have any questions or concerns.

cc: Dan Eder, Interim Director
Aly Pennucci, Policy and Budget Manager



Madison Line



Madison BRT-RapidRide G Line

Seattle City Council Transportation and Utilities Committee

May 5, 2021

Easement Acceptance Ordinance

Grant Acceptance Ordinance





Our vision, mission, and core values

Vision: Seattle is a thriving equitable community powered by dependable transportation

Mission: to deliver a transportation system that provides safe and affordable access to places and opportunities

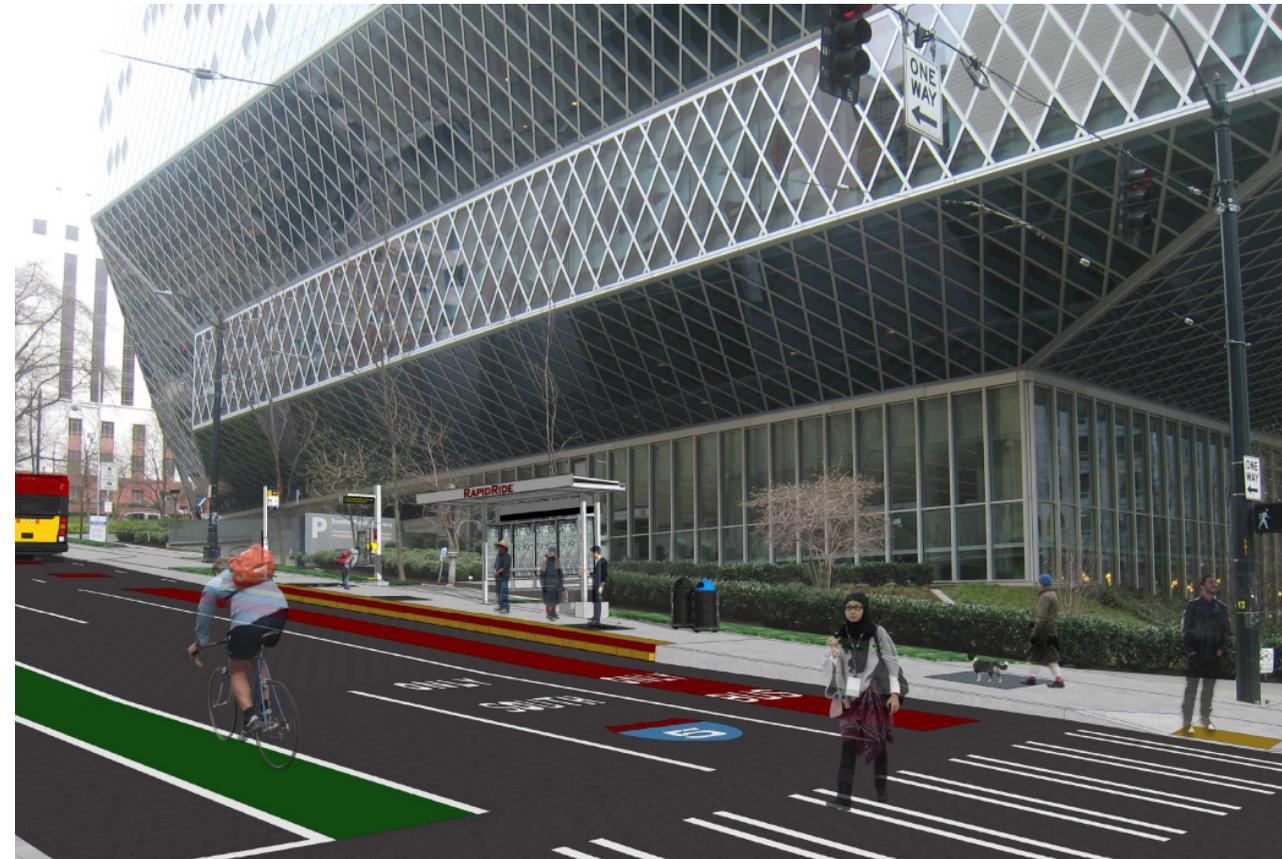
Committed to **6 core values:**

- Equity
- Safety
- Mobility
- Sustainability
- Livability
- Excellence



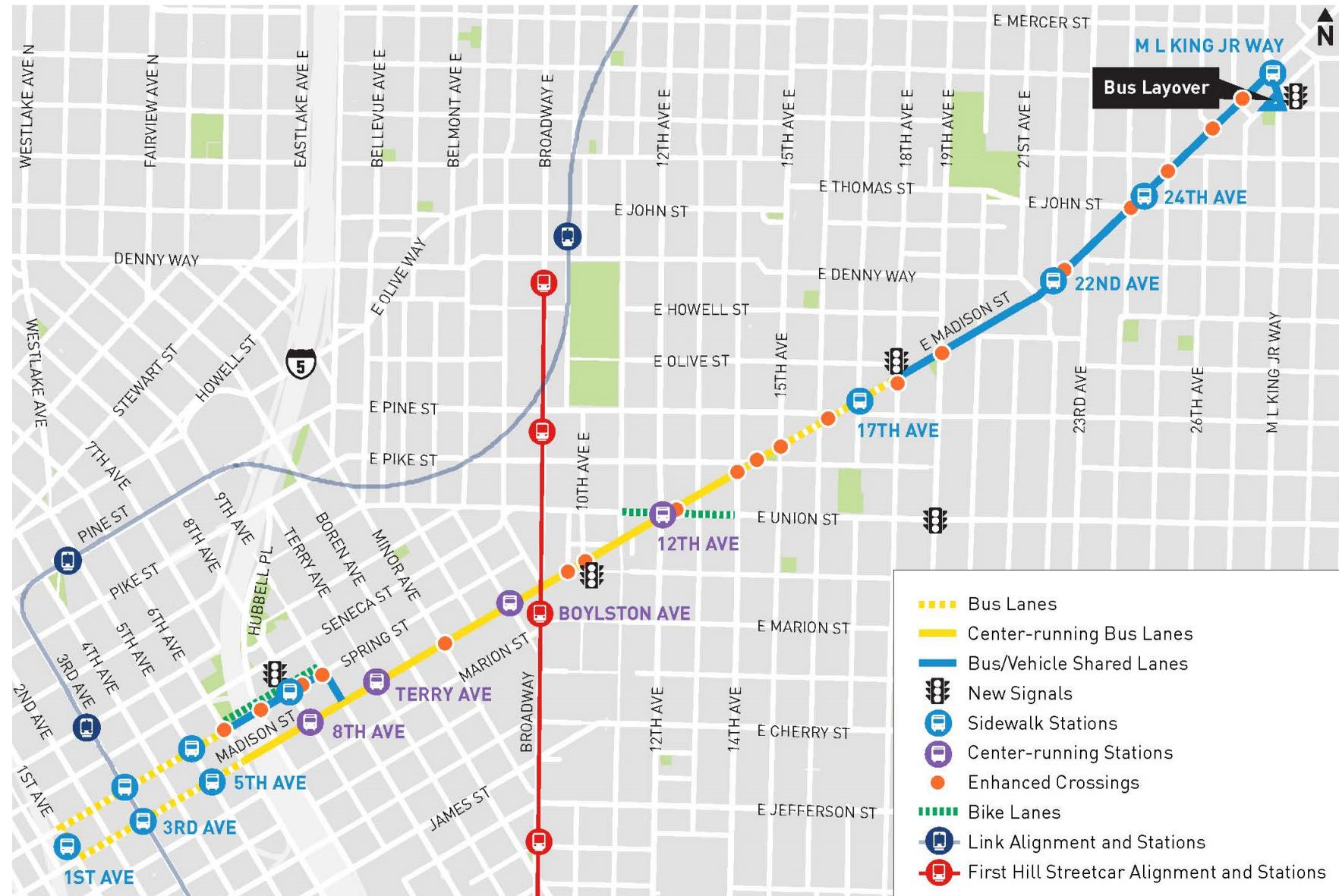
Presentation overview

- Project Description
- Ordinance to Accept Permanent Easements
- Ordinance to Accept Small Starts Grant and Congestion Mitigation and Air Quality (CMAQ) Grant
- Next Steps



Project Components

- Madison Bus Rapid Transit included in voter approved Levy to Move Seattle and Sound Transit 3 packages
- Transit improvements from First Ave to Martin Luther King Jr Way
- Pedestrian access and safety upgrades
- Bicycle connections
- New pavement
- Water main upgrades
- Sewer main upgrades
- City Light network and streetlight improvements





Bus Rapid Transit features

Part of King County Metro's RapidRide Program

Convenient and easy to use

- All day: 5 a.m. – 1 a.m. Mon-Sat, 6 a.m. - 11 p.m. Sun
- Frequent: 6 minutes Mon-Sat, 15 minutes evenings and Sun
- Off-board fare payment for faster, all-door boarding
- Raised platforms for accessible, easy boarding
- 60' buses with doors on both sides for loading at center island stations



Bus Rapid Transit features

Part of King County Metro's RapidRide Program



Safe and Smart

- Real time arrival signs
- Well-lit shelters and security cameras on buses

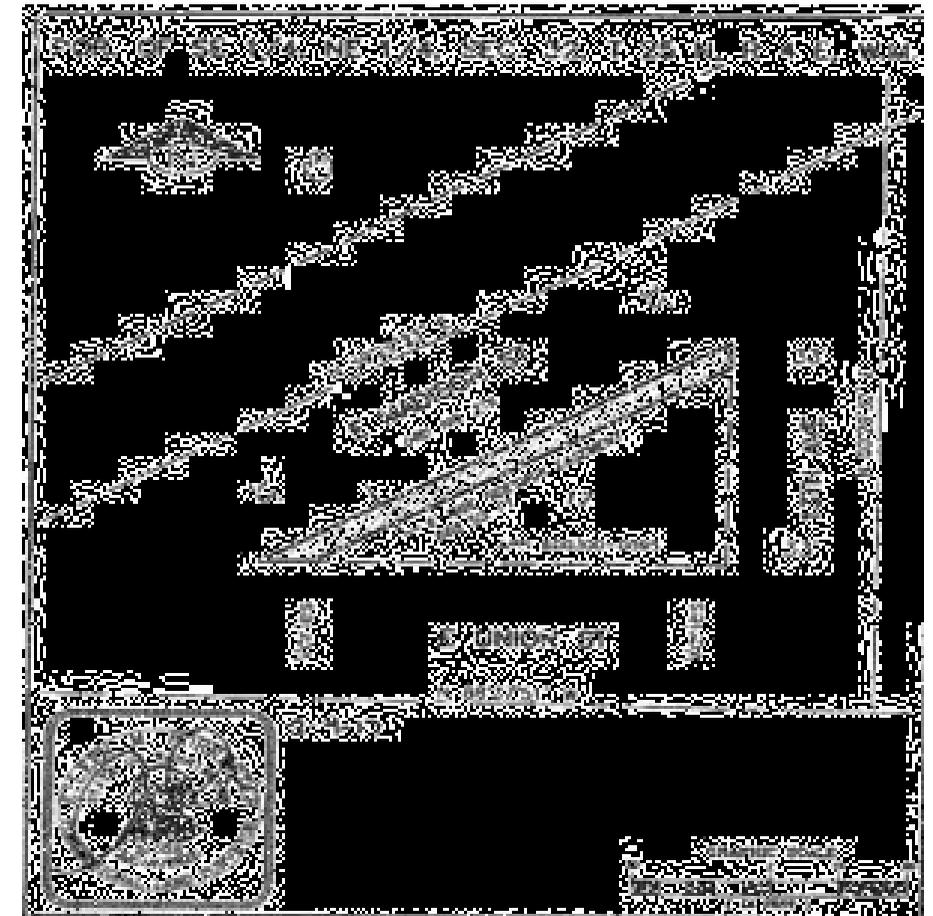
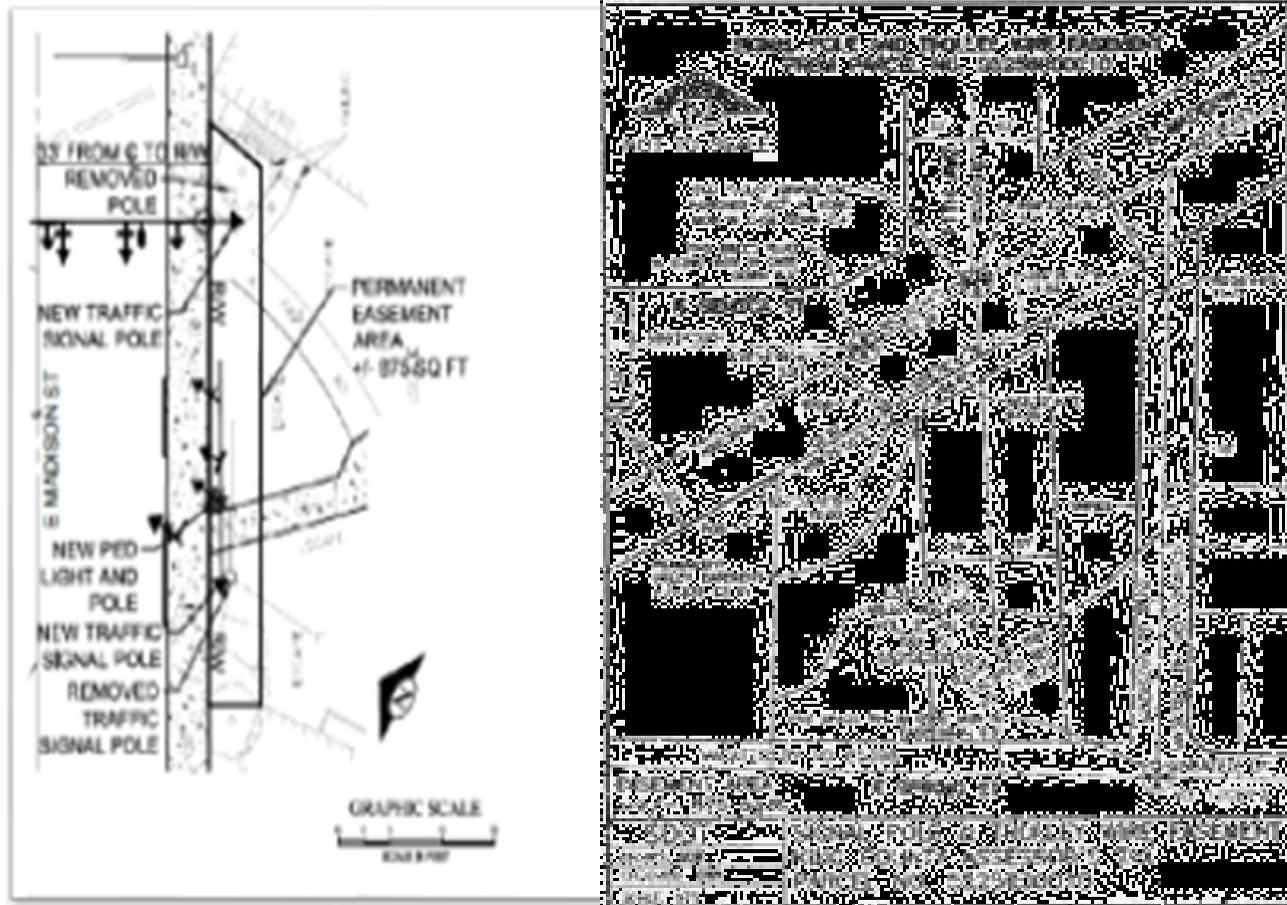
Move more, stop less

- Transit signal priority and adaptive signal control
- Transit-only lanes through most-congested area
- Pedestrian and bike improvements

Permanent Easement Acceptance Ordinance

Seattle University
 at 11th Avenue

Casita Grande LLC
 1221 East Madison Street



Seattle University easement area

Permanent signal pole and trolley wire easement of about 875 square feet required to:

- Construct, repair, replace, and maintain 2 traffic signal poles, and related equipment
- Attach and maintain trolley bus wires to the 2 traffic signal poles



Permanent easement for new signal poles at 11th Avenue in approximately same location as existing poles

Casita Grande LLC easement area

Sidewalk easement of about 668 square feet required to:

- Widen street for center island RapidRide station
- Maintain an 8-foot sidewalk



Deck at Pony has been modified to clear the easement area for Madison BRT construction





We're ready for Small Starts Grant

Schedule	Action
✓ June 2020	Federal Transit Agency's (FTA) project management oversight consultant issued Final Readiness Review to FTA
✓ September 2020	Non-federal funding commitments finalized <ul style="list-style-type: none">•Seattle City Council adopted CIP amendment•Sound Transit Board approved funding agreement
✓ April 2021	FTA Section 5309 Funding Allocation of \$59.9 million to Madison Bus Rapid Project
June 2021 (projected)	Execute Small Starts Grant Agreement



Grant Acceptance Ordinance

- 1. \$59.9 million Small Starts Grant
- 2. \$4.76 million CMAQ Construction Grant

Federal Grant Funds	Status	\$69,555
Small Starts Grant	This ordinance	\$59,900
CMAQ Construction	This ordinance	\$4,760
CMAQ Design	Previously appropriated	\$4,900

Funding Source	CIP Total	FTA Project	Non-FTA
City Light Fund Revenues	475		475
Drainage and Wastewater Rates	818		818
Federal Grants	69,555	69,555	-
Interdepartmental Transfer	9	9	-
King County Funds	3,613	3,463	150
Partnership Funds (Sound Transit)	7,282	7,282	-
Real Estate Excise Tax II	150	150	-
Sound Transit Funds	28,500	28,500	-
State Grant Funds	2,545	2,545	-
Transportation Funding Package - Lid Lift	1,710	1,710	-
Tranportation Levy to Move	22,417	19,170	3,247
Vehicle Licencing Fees	1,000	1,000	-
Total	138,074	133,384	4,690



Next Steps

Date	Activity/Action
May 2021	Advertise for construction
June 2021	Execute Small Starts Grant Agreement
July 2021	Award contract
Sept 2021	Notice to proceed
Q2 2024	Substantial completion
Q3 2024	Revenue Service
Ongoing community engagement to prepare for and manage through construction, while building excitement for new fast, frequent bus service	



QUESTIONS?

Eric.tweit@seattle.gov | (206) 255-8295

MadisonBRT@seattle.gov | (206) 484-2780

www.seattle.gov/transportation





Legislation Text

File #: CB 120063, **Version:** 1

CITY OF SEATTLE

ORDINANCE _____

COUNCIL BILL _____

AN ORDINANCE relating to grant funds from the United States Department of Transportation for the construction of the Madison BRT-RapidRide G Line project; authorizing the Director of the Seattle Department of Transportation to accept specified grants and execute related agreements for and on behalf of the City; and ratifying and confirming certain prior acts.

WHEREAS, the Madison BRT-RapidRide G Line project was first identified in the City of Seattle’s Transit Master Plan in 2012, entered project development in 2014, was partially funded through voter approval of the Levy to Move Seattle in November 2015, and completed environmental review in early 2018; and

WHEREAS, the United States Department of Transportation (USDOT) has determined that the Madison BRT-RapidRide G Line project has met Capital Investment Grants, Small Starts grant program (“Small Starts”) project readiness requirements (technical capacity, firm and final cost estimate, all funding committed, completed critical 3rd party agreements) and, after a thorough evaluation, granted the project an overall “high” rating; and

WHEREAS, based on this determination of project readiness and the high rating, USDOT’s Federal Transit Administration (FTA) has allocated \$59.9 million in Capital Investments Grants funds to the City of Seattle for the Madison BRT-RapidRide G Line project; and

WHEREAS, Puget Sound Regional Council awarded the City \$4.760 million in USDOT Congestion Mitigation and Air Quality (CMAQ) funds for the Madison BRT-RapidRide G Line project; and

WHEREAS, the Small Starts grant requires execution of a Small Starts Construction Grant Agreement with USDOT and both grants must be accepted by the City; and

WHEREAS, these funds were previously appropriated in the adopted 2021 Budget (Ordinance 126237) and shown in the 2021-2026 Capital Improvement Program (Project Number MC-TR-C051) spending of these grant funds are expected to begin in the second quarter of 2021, requiring immediate authorization to complete a grant agreement with FTA; NOW, THEREFORE,

BE IT ORDAINED BY THE CITY OF SEATTLE AS FOLLOWS:

Section 1. The Director of the Seattle Department of Transportation is authorized to accept the following non-City funding from the grantor listed below, and to execute, deliver, and perform agreements for the purposes described below.

Item	Fund	Grantor	Purpose	Amount
1.1	Transportation Fund (13000)	USDOT - Capital Investment Grants, Small Starts	Madison BRT-RapidRide G Line construction	\$59,900,000
1.2	Transportation Fund (13000)	USDOT - CMAQ	Madison BRT-RapidRide G Line construction	\$4,760,000
	Total			\$64,660,000

Section 2. Any act consistent with the authority of this ordinance taken after its passage and prior to its effective date is ratified and confirmed.

Section 3. This ordinance shall take effect and be in force 30 days after its approval by the Mayor, but if not approved and returned by the Mayor within ten days after presentation, it shall take effect as provided by Seattle Municipal Code Section 1.04.020.

Passed by the City Council the _____ day of _____, 2021, and signed by me in open session in authentication of its passage this _____ day of _____, 2021.

President _____ of the City Council

Approved / returned unsigned / vetoed this _____ day of _____, 2021.

Jenny A. Durkan, Mayor

Filed by me this _____ day of _____, 2021.

Monica Martinez Simmons, City Clerk

(Seal)

SUMMARY and FISCAL NOTE*

Department:	Dept. Contact/Phone:	CBO Contact/Phone:
SDOT	Bill LaBorde/206.484.8662	Aaron Blumenthal/206.233.2656

* Note that the Summary and Fiscal Note describes the version of the bill or resolution as introduced; final legislation including amendments may not be fully described.

1. BILL SUMMARY

Legislation Title: AN ORDINANCE relating to grant funds from the United States Department of Transportation for the construction of the Madison BRT-RapidRide G Line project; authorizing the Director of the Seattle Department of Transportation to accept specified grants and execute related agreements for and on behalf of the City; and ratifying and confirming certain prior acts.

Summary and background of the Legislation: This legislation would allow SDOT to execute agreements for, and accept, two key federal grant funds for construction of the Madison BRT-RapidRide G Line project CIP (MC-TR-C051): a USDOT Capital Investment Grants, Small Starts (“Small Starts”) grant totaling \$59.9 million plus a \$4.76 million Congestion Mitigation Air Quality (CMAQ) grant. These two grants are the final pieces in the project funding plan as presented in the 2021-2026 CIP. SDOT expects to obligate these funds beginning 2nd quarter 2021, with construction commencing late 2nd or early 3rd quarter, and RapidRide G Line entering service starting with the September 2024 Metro service change. These funds were previously appropriated in the adopted 2021 Budget and are shown in the 2021-2026 CIP project page.

2. CAPITAL IMPROVEMENT PROGRAM

Does this legislation create, fund, or amend a CIP Project? ___ Yes x No

3. SUMMARY OF FINANCIAL IMPLICATIONS

Does this legislation amend the Adopted Budget? ___ Yes X No

Does the legislation have other financial impacts to the City of Seattle that are not reflected in the above, including direct or indirect, short-term or long-term costs?

These grants are accounted for in the 2021-2026 CIP and 2021 appropriations are included in the adopted 2021 Budget.

Is there financial cost or other impacts of *not* implementing the legislation?

Yes. These grants together account for approximately 48% of the entire project budget and are critical to construct what is probably the most prominent capital project promised under the Levy to Move Seattle. If these grants are not accepted, SDOT will not be able to proceed

with the project for which PSRC and the Federal Transit Administration awarded these grants.

3.a. Appropriations

_____ **This legislation adds, changes, or deletes appropriations.**

3.b. Revenues/Reimbursements

_____ **This legislation adds, changes, or deletes revenues or reimbursements.**

4. OTHER IMPLICATIONS

a. Does this legislation affect any departments besides the originating department?

Not directly, although the project itself involves associated City Light and SPU improvements.

b. Is a public hearing required for this legislation?

No

c. Is publication of notice with *The Daily Journal of Commerce* and/or *The Seattle Times* required for this legislation?

No

d. Does this legislation affect a piece of property?

The project has acquired two permanent easements for sidewalk and signal poles that are the subject of a separate Council Bill expected to be presented to Council at the same time as this legislation.

e. Please describe any perceived implication for the principles of the Race and Social Justice Initiative. Does this legislation impact vulnerable or historically disadvantaged communities? What is the Language Access plan for any communications to the public?

This project will provide improved access to educational and work opportunities by better tying in the Madison corridor east to Madison Valley into the regional high-capacity transit network. Beneficiaries of this improved access include both historic communities of color in Madison Valley and other parts of the Central District, as well as communities that have been displaced to other parts of the City and region by forces of gentrification. The project itself also provides important construction trades jobs and apprenticeship opportunities at a time when the economy will be trying to recover from the Covid-19 emergency.

f. Climate Change Implications

1. Emissions: Is this legislation likely to increase or decrease carbon emissions in a material way?

According to several recent studies, denser land uses best served by high-capacity transit, as well as transit itself as an alternative to driving, are among the most effective means for more rapidly reducing GHG emissions.

2. **Resiliency: Will the action(s) proposed by this legislation increase or decrease Seattle's resiliency (or ability to adapt) to climate change in a material way? If so, explain. If it is likely to decrease resiliency in a material way, describe what will or could be done to mitigate the effects.**

This project is less likely to measurably impact climate resiliency.

- g. **If this legislation includes a new initiative or a major programmatic expansion: What are the specific long-term and measurable goal(s) of the program? How will this legislation help achieve the program's desired goal(s).**

N/A

List attachments/exhibits below:

April 29, 2021

MEMORANDUM

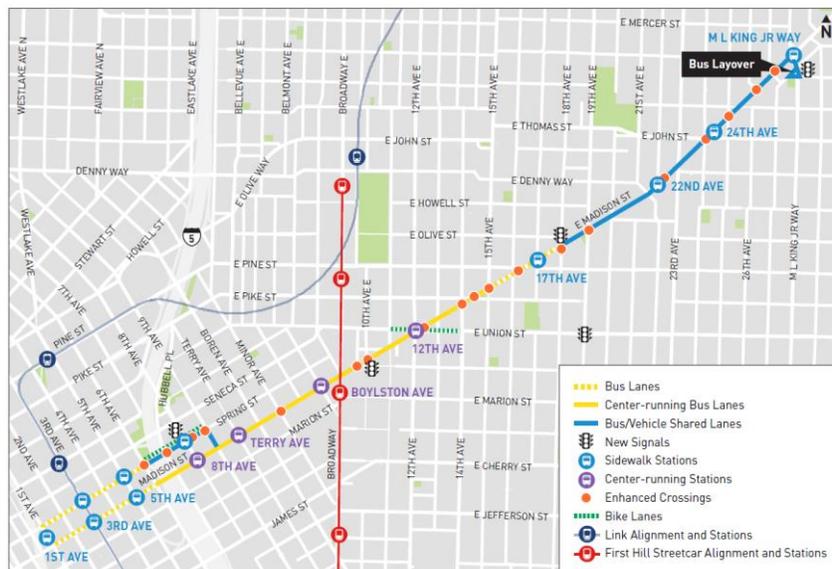
To: Transportation and Utilities Committee
From: Calvin Chow, Analyst
Subject: Madison BRT Grant Acceptance and Property Acquisition Legislation

On May 5, 2021, the Transportation and Utilities Committee will consider and possibly vote on two Council Bills related to the Madison Bus Rapid Transit (Madison BRT) [project](#). The first Council Bill (CB) would accept \$65 million in federal grants for the project, and the second would accept two property easements necessary for project implementation. Both CBs are anticipated to be on the May 3, 2021 Introduction and Referrals Calendar.¹

Background

Planning for improving transit in the Madison corridor was first authorized in the 2013 Adopted Budget, and the Madison BRT project was later established in the 2014-2019 Adopted Capital Improvement Program. In 2016, Council approved a locally preferred alternative for the Madison BRT corridor and endorsed efforts to seek external grant and partnership funding to implement the project ([Resolution 31647](#)).

The Madison BRT project will be implemented as the RapidRide G Line in partnership with King County Metro and Sound Transit, and runs from Downtown Seattle to Madison Valley, connecting through First Hill, Capitol Hill, and the Central District. The route primarily runs along Madison Street, with a one-way couplet extending along Spring Street from 1st Avenue to 9th Avenue in Downtown Seattle.



¹ Council Bill numbers for the proposed legislation are not available at the time of this writing.

The project includes transit priority lanes (including center-running bus lanes and stations in the most congested portion of the route), bus stop improvements, and new hybrid diesel-electric bus vehicles (allowing for left and right-side boarding). The project will require extensive repaving along the 2.3 mile route to incorporate new lane channelization, sidewalk and crossing improvements, curb bulbs, relocation of poles and wires, and repair of existing utilities in the right-of-way.

In 2020, the Federal Transit Administration (FTA) completed a project readiness review which identified the need for additional risk contingency and cost escalation to match the current project schedule. In September 2020, Council authorized budget changes to account for an additional \$4.9 million of City funding and \$7.3 million of external partnership funding to fully fund the project ([Ordinance 126175](#)). On April 5, 2021, the FTA announced the [award](#) of a \$59.9 million Small Starts grant for the Madison BRT project.

Federal Grant Acceptance Legislation

The first piece of Madison BRT legislation would authorize SDOT to accept the \$59.9 million FTA Small Starts grant as well as a \$4.8 million Federal Highway Administration (FHWA) Congestion Mitigation Air Quality (CMAQ) grant for the project. The necessary appropriations to support acceptance of both grants were anticipated and authorized in the 2021 Adopted Budget.

Property Easement Legislation

The second piece of Madison BRT legislation would accept two property easements necessary for construction of the project. These include:

- an easement for signal poles and trolley wire on Seattle University property in the vicinity of E Madison Street and 11th Avenue, and
- an easement for a public sidewalk on adjoining property in the vicinity of E Madison Street and 13th Avenue.

With approval of this legislation, SDOT anticipates that the Madison BRT project would begin construction in Fall 2021, with service commencing in 2024. Please contact me if you have any questions or concerns.

cc: Dan Eder, Interim Director
Aly Pennucci, Policy and Budget Manager



Madison Line



Madison BRT-RapidRide G Line

Seattle City Council Transportation and Utilities Committee

May 5, 2021

Easement Acceptance Ordinance
Grant Acceptance Ordinance





Our vision, mission, and core values

Vision: Seattle is a thriving equitable community powered by dependable transportation

Mission: to deliver a transportation system that provides safe and affordable access to places and opportunities

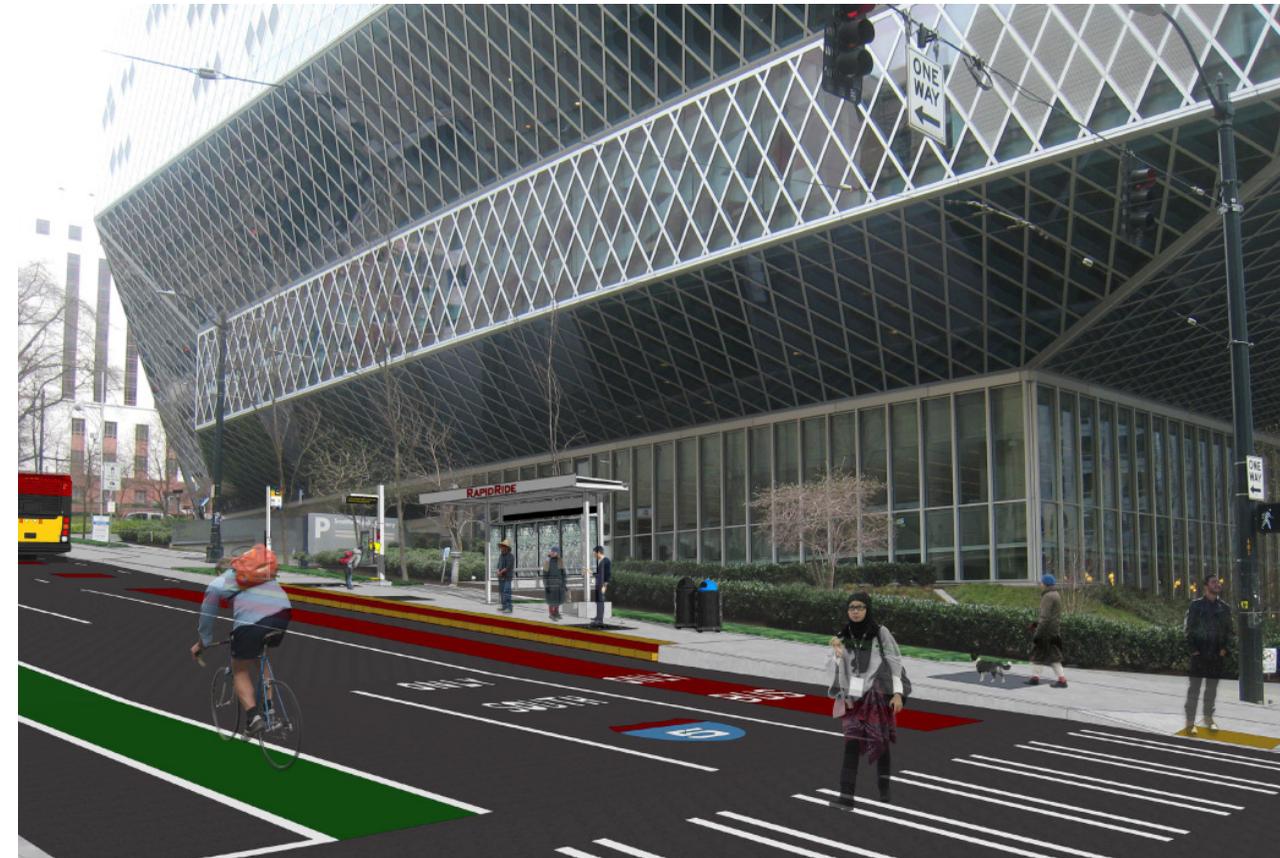
Committed to **6 core values:**

- Equity
- Safety
- Mobility
- Sustainability
- Livability
- Excellence



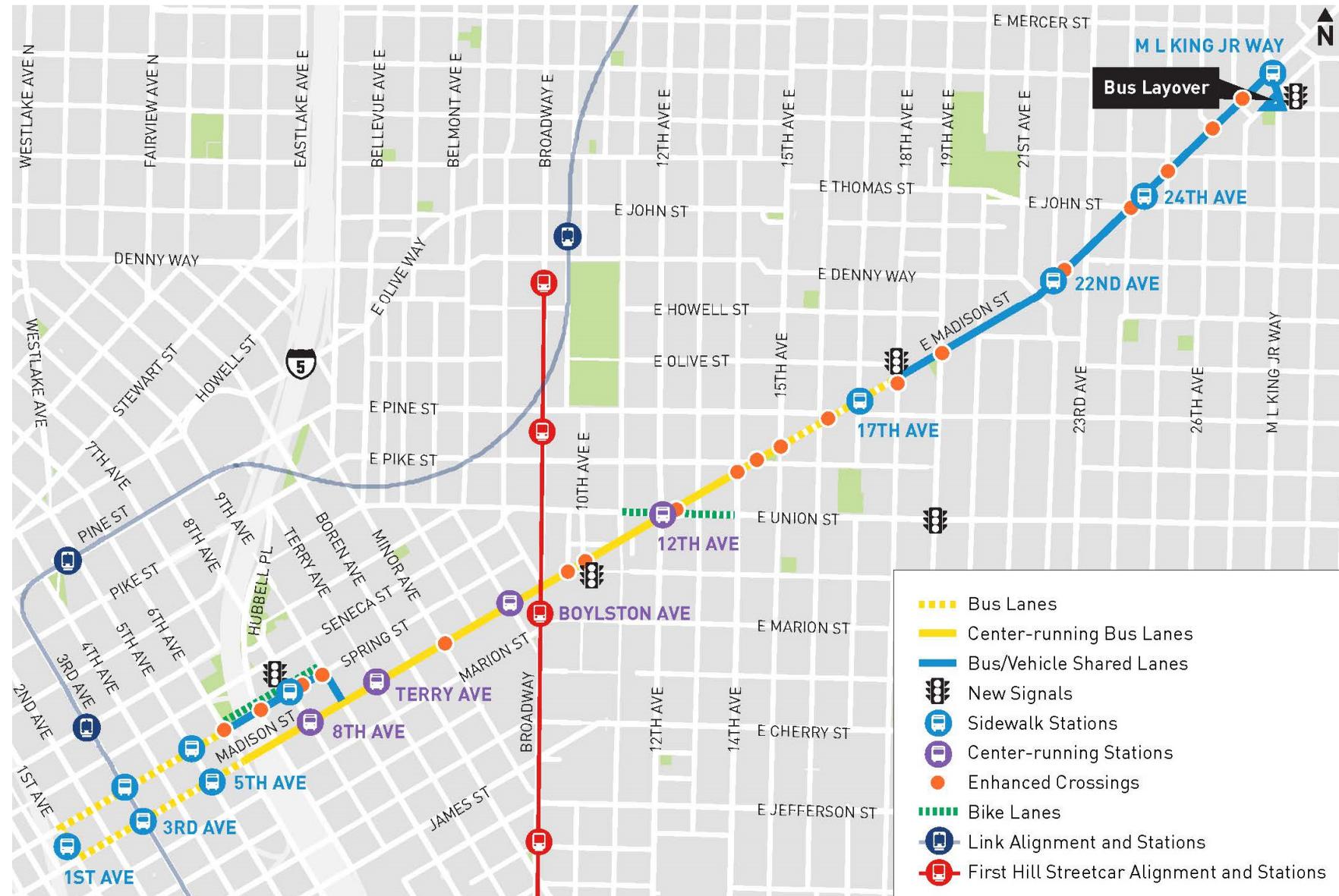
Presentation overview

- Project Description
- Ordinance to Accept Permanent Easements
- Ordinance to Accept Small Starts Grant and Congestion Mitigation and Air Quality (CMAQ) Grant
- Next Steps



Project Components

- Madison Bus Rapid Transit included in voter approved Levy to Move Seattle and Sound Transit 3 packages
- Transit improvements from First Ave to Martin Luther King Jr Way
- Pedestrian access and safety upgrades
- Bicycle connections
- New pavement
- Water main upgrades
- Sewer main upgrades
- City Light network and streetlight improvements



Bus Rapid Transit features

Part of King County Metro's RapidRide Program

Convenient and easy to use

- All day: 5 a.m. – 1 a.m. Mon-Sat, 6 a.m. - 11 p.m. Sun
- Frequent: 6 minutes Mon-Sat, 15 minutes evenings and Sun
- Off-board fare payment for faster, all-door boarding
- Raised platforms for accessible, easy boarding
- 60' buses with doors on both sides for loading at center island stations



Bus Rapid Transit features

Part of King County Metro's RapidRide Program



Safe and Smart

- Real time arrival signs
- Well-lit shelters and security cameras on buses

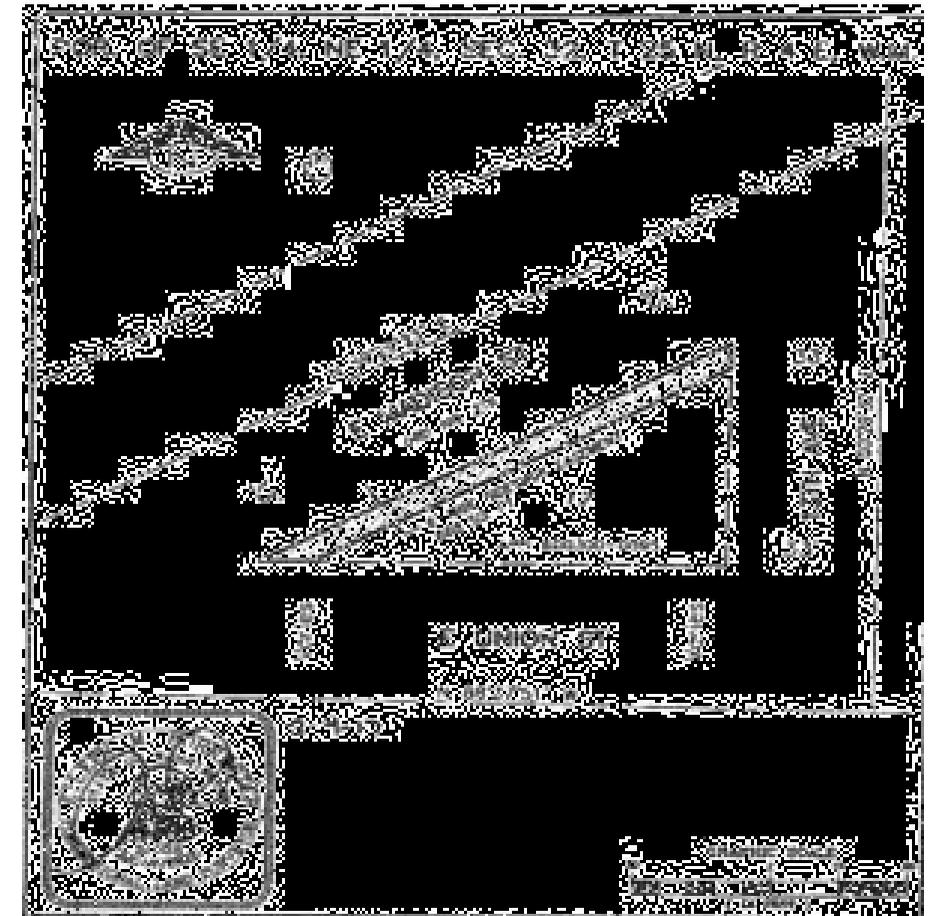
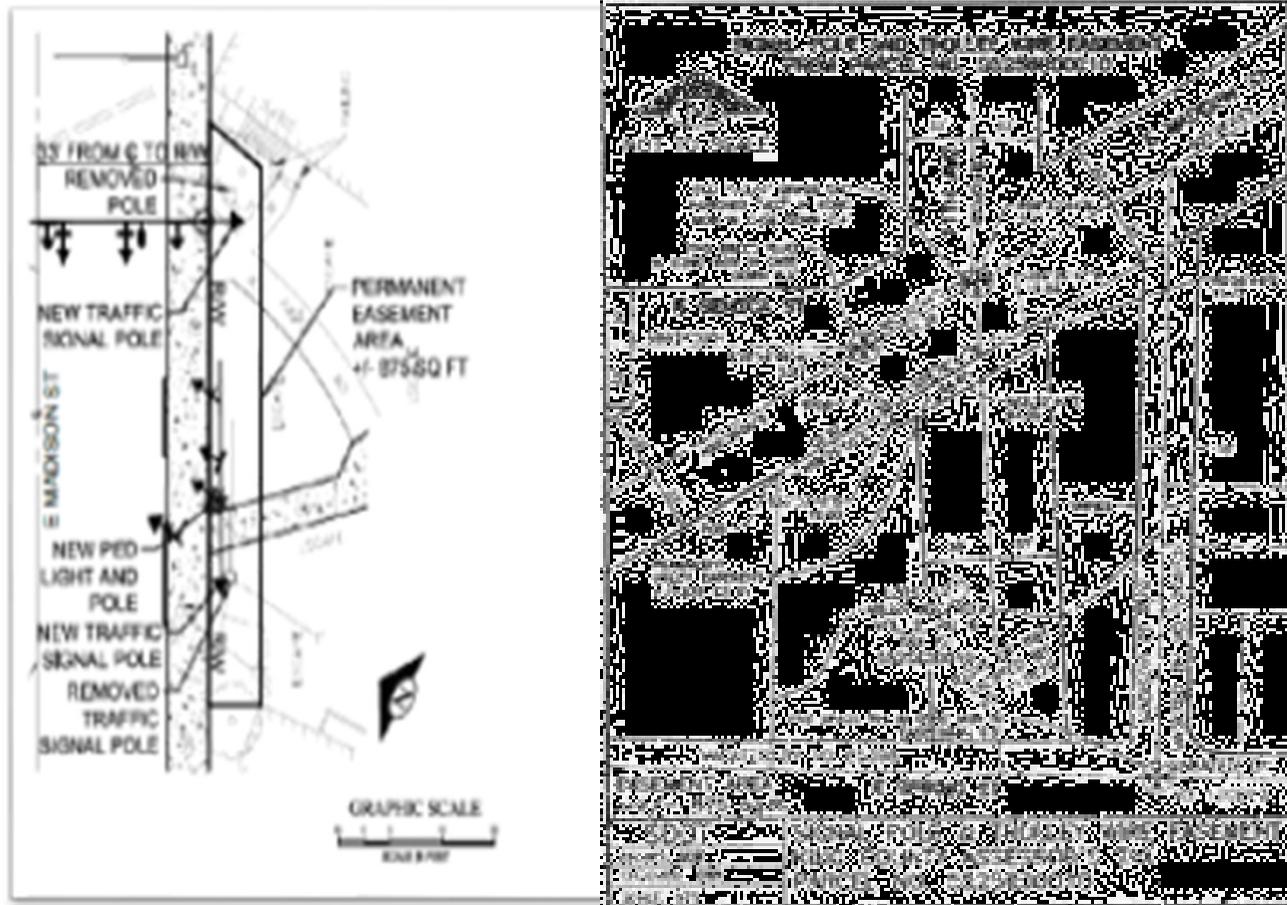
Move more, stop less

- Transit signal priority and adaptive signal control
- Transit-only lanes through most-congested area
- Pedestrian and bike improvements

Permanent Easement Acceptance Ordinance

Seattle University
 at 11th Avenue

Casita Grande LLC
 1221 East Madison Street



Seattle University easement area

Permanent signal pole and trolley wire easement of about 875 square feet required to:

- Construct, repair, replace, and maintain 2 traffic signal poles, and related equipment
- Attach and maintain trolley bus wires to the 2 traffic signal poles



Permanent easement for new signal poles at 11th Avenue in approximately same location as existing poles

Casita Grande LLC easement area

Sidewalk easement of about 668 square feet required to:

- Widen street for center island RapidRide station
- Maintain an 8-foot sidewalk



Deck at Pony has been modified to clear the easement area for Madison BRT construction





We're ready for Small Starts Grant

Schedule	Action
June 2020	Federal Transit Agency's (FTA) project management oversight consultant issued Final Readiness Review to FTA
September 2020	Non-federal funding commitments finalized <ul style="list-style-type: none">•Seattle City Council adopted CIP amendment•Sound Transit Board approved funding agreement
April 2021	FTA Section 5309 Funding Allocation of \$59.9 million to Madison Bus Rapid Project
June 2021 (projected)	Execute Small Starts Grant Agreement





Grant Acceptance Ordinance

- 1. \$59.9 million Small Starts Grant
- 2. \$4.76 million CMAQ Construction Grant

Federal Grant Funds	Status	\$69,555
Small Starts Grant	This ordinance	\$59,900
CMAQ Construction	This ordinance	\$4,760
CMAQ Design	Previously appropriated	\$4,900

Funding Source	CIP Total	FTA Project	Non-FTA
City Light Fund Revenues	475		475
Drainage and Wastewater Rates	818		818
Federal Grants	69,555	69,555	-
Interdepartmental Transfer	9	9	-
King County Funds	3,613	3,463	150
Partnership Funds (Sound Transit)	7,282	7,282	-
Real Estate Excise Tax II	150	150	-
Sound Transit Funds	28,500	28,500	-
State Grant Funds	2,545	2,545	-
Transportation Funding Package - Lid Lift	1,710	1,710	-
Tranportation Levy to Move	22,417	19,170	3,247
Vehicle Licencing Fees	1,000	1,000	-
Total	138,074	133,384	4,690



Next Steps

Date	Activity/Action
May 2021	Advertise for construction
June 2021	Execute Small Starts Grant Agreement
July 2021	Award contract
Sept 2021	Notice to proceed
Q2 2024	Substantial completion
Q3 2024	Revenue Service
Ongoing community engagement to prepare for and manage through construction, while building excitement for new fast, frequent bus service	



QUESTIONS?

Eric.tweit@seattle.gov | (206) 255-8295

MadisonBRT@seattle.gov | (206) 484-2780

www.seattle.gov/transportation





Legislation Text

File #: CB 120053, **Version:** 1

CITY OF SEATTLE

ORDINANCE _____

COUNCIL BILL _____

AN ORDINANCE relating to surveillance technology implementation; authorizing approval of uses and accepting the 2020 surveillance impact report and 2020 executive overview for the Seattle Police Department's use of Forward Looking Infrared Real-Time Video.

WHEREAS, Section 14.18.020 of the Seattle Municipal Code (SMC), enacted by Ordinance 125376, requires City Council approval of a surveillance impact report (SIR) related to uses of surveillance technology, with existing/retroactive technology to be placed on a Master Technology List; and

WHEREAS, SMC 14.18.020 applies to the Forward Looking Infrared Real-Time Video (FLIR) in use through the Seattle Police Department's use of King County Sheriff's Office helicopters; and

WHEREAS, the Seattle Police Department conducted policy rule review and community review as part of the development of the SIR; and

WHEREAS, SMC 14.18.080, enacted by Ordinance 125679, provides for the Community Surveillance Working Group, composed of relevant stakeholders, to complete a privacy and civil liberties impact assessment for each SIR, and SMC 14.18.020 allows for a statement from the Chief Technology Officer in response to the Working Group's privacy and civil liberties impact assessment; and

WHEREAS, development of the SIR, review by the Working Group and the Chief Technology Officer's response has been completed; NOW, THEREFORE,

BE IT ORDAINED BY THE CITY OF SEATTLE AS FOLLOWS:

Section 1. Pursuant to Ordinances 125376 and 125679, the City Council approves use of the Seattle Police Department's use of Forward Looking Infrared Real-Time Video (FLIR) through the use of King County

Sheriff's Office helicopters and accepts the 2020 Surveillance Impact Report (SIR) for this technology, attached to this ordinance as Attachment 1, and the 2020 Executive Overview for the same technology, attached to this ordinance as Attachment 2.

Section 2. This ordinance shall take effect and be in force 30 days after its approval by the Mayor, but if not approved and returned by the Mayor within ten days after presentation, it shall take effect as provided by Seattle Municipal Code Section 1.04.020.

Passed by the City Council the _____ day of _____, 2021, and signed by me in open session in authentication of its passage this _____ day of _____, 2021.

President _____ of the City Council

Approved / returned unsigned / vetoed this _____ day of _____, 2021.

Jenny A. Durkan, Mayor

Filed by me this _____ day of _____, 2021.

Monica Martinez Simmons, City Clerk

(Seal)

Attachments:

Attachment 1 - 2020 Surveillance Impact Report: Forward Looking Infrared Real-Time Video (FLIR)

Attachment 2 - 2020 Surveillance Impact Report Executive Overview: Forward Looking Infrared Real-Time Video (FLIR)

2020 Surveillance Impact Report

Forward Looking Infrared Real-Time Video (FLIR) (KCSO Helicopters)

Seattle Police Department

April 13th, 2021

Version 1

Surveillance Impact Report (“SIR”) overview3

Privacy Impact Assessment4

Financial Information..... 18

Expertise and References..... 19

Racial Equity Toolkit (“RET”) and Engagement for Public Comment Worksheet 21

Privacy and Civil Liberties Assessment 28

CTO Response 31

Appendix A: Glossary 38

Appendix B: Meeting Notice(s) 40

Appendix C: All Comments Received from Members of the Public..... 41

Appendix D: Letters from Organizations or Commissions..... 61

Appendix E: CTO Notification of Surveillance Technology 70

Surveillance Impact Report (“SIR”) overview

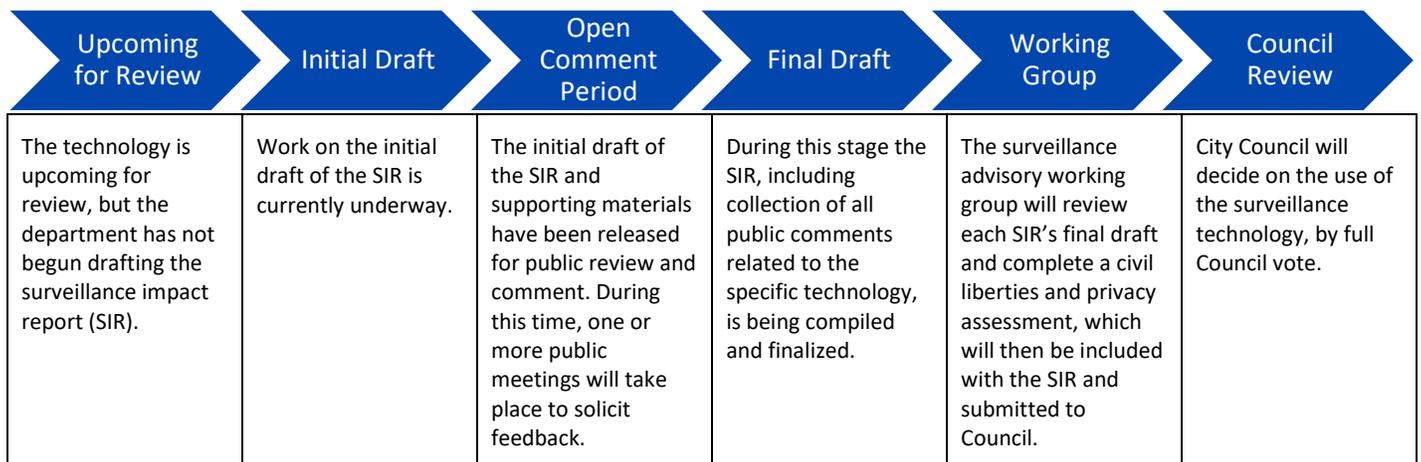
About the Surveillance Ordinance

The Seattle City Council passed ordinance [125376](#), also referred to as the “Surveillance Ordinance”, on September 1, 2017. This ordinance has implications for the acquisition of new technologies by the City, and technologies that are already in use that may fall under the new, broader definition of surveillance.

SMC 14.18.020.B.1 charges the City’s executive with developing a process to identify surveillance technologies subject to the ordinance. Seattle IT, on behalf of the executive, developed and implemented a process through which a privacy and surveillance review is completed prior to the acquisition of new technologies. This requirement, and the criteria used in the review process, are documented in Seattle IT Policy PR-02, the “Surveillance Policy”.

Surveillance Ordinance Review Process

The following is a high-level outline of the complete SIR review process.



Privacy Impact Assessment

Purpose

A Privacy Impact Assessment (“PIA”) is a method for collecting and documenting detailed information collected in order to conduct an in-depth privacy review of a program or project. A PIA asks questions about the collection, use, sharing, security and access controls for data that is gathered using a technology or program. It also requests information about policies, training and documentation that govern use of the technology. The PIA responses are used to determine privacy risks associated with a project and mitigations that may reduce some or all of those risks. In the interests of transparency about data collection and management, the City of Seattle has committed to publishing all PIAs on an outward facing website for public access.

When is a Privacy Impact Assessment Required?

A PIA may be required in two circumstances.

- 1) When a project, technology, or other review has been flagged as having a high privacy risk.
- 2) When a technology is required to complete the surveillance impact report process. This is one deliverable that comprises the report.

1.0 Abstract

1.1 Please provide a brief description (one paragraph) of the purpose and proposed use of the project/technology.

The King County Sheriff’s Office (KCSO) Air Support Unit is the only full-time rotary-wing law enforcement aviation unit in Washington State. Three separate helicopters, one Bell 206B3 helicopter, one UH-1H “Huey,” and one Bell 407, operate as Guardian One and Guardian Two. The Air Support Unit operates throughout King County and is available to assist the Seattle Police Department at no charge through the Puget Sound Regional Aviation Project, a consortium made up of members from sheriff’s offices in King, Snohomish, Pierce and Kitsap counties as well as Seattle Police and Fire departments, Pierce County Fire Districts, Washington State Patrol, the Department of Emergency Management in Pierce County, the Washington State Department of Ecology, Coast Guard, Navy, and the National Park Service. Guardian One offers air support for patrol and specialized police missions. Guardian Two offers support predominately for search and rescue. These helicopters are equipped with color and forward looking infrared (FLIR) cameras and 30 million-candle power spotlights that enable the location of suspects or disaster victims in darkness or environmental cover.

The Air Support Unit (KCSO) monitors several SPD communication frequencies and if available to assist, advises SPD communications that Guardian One is available to support. In life safety or other serious crime incidents where air support would be beneficial SPD sergeants and or higher ranked personnel may request the assistance of the Air Support Unit. Guardian Two is available as a call-out resource in the event of a significant incident.

1.2 Explain the reason the project/technology is being created or updated and why the PIA is required.

The aerial vantage point created by the use of helicopters helps trained law enforcement personnel provide enhanced vision to locate and track the movement of crime suspects and disaster victims. The forward looking infrared (FLIR) camera technology housed within the Guardian One and Guardian Two helicopters provides a further enhanced picture of incident scenes by layering heat signatures of individuals and objects on top of the aerial video. The FLIR technology allows for subjects to be detected even when obscured by clouds, haze, or darkness.

Aerial video and infrared technology are tools that may be perceived as invasive to an individual's privacy, as they may be recorded without their knowledge or consent. SPD policy mitigates against the potential for inappropriate use. [SPD Policy 6.060 - Collection of Information for Law Enforcement Purposes](#) defines the way information will be gathered and recorded in a manner that does not unreasonably infringe upon: individual rights, liberties, and freedoms guaranteed by the Constitution of the United States and the State of Washington, including freedom of speech, press, association, and assembly; liberty of conscience; the exercise of religion.

2.0 Project / Technology Overview

Provide an overview of the project or technology. The overview gives the context and background necessary to understand the purpose, mission and justification for the project / technology proposed

2.1 Describe the benefits of the project/technology.

The Guardian One and Guardian Two helicopters provide critical assistance to SPD units on the ground during incidents. The benefits include rapid response to crime or disaster scenes and give law enforcement personnel an enhanced bird's eye view of the situation. "At normal patrol speeds and altitudes, a helicopter can keep an object in view on the ground ten times longer than a ground officer moving at normal street patrol speeds."¹ While conventional night vision technology does augment the user's ability to locate subjects by enhancing visible light, FLIR systems are more effective because they provide images using the heat emitted by subjects and objects.

2.2 Provide any data or research demonstrating anticipated benefits.

¹ <https://kingcounty.gov/depts/sheriff/about-us/enforcement/specialized/helicopter.aspx>

https://www.fema.gov/media-library-data/1464299940004-16fc65457742f7d9a9fd62ae52ec9985/NorthWestRegionalAviation_FINAL_508.pdf

Provides information about Northwest Regional Avion consortium, the challenges faced in the geographical area, and the response to the 2014 SR530 mudslide near Oso, WA. This document also describes the ways in which the Seattle Urban Area Security Initiative, which includes Guardian One and Two operations, provide search and rescue operations, assists with criminal manhunts, and enhances port security, and is an important asset in the response to a variety of threats and hazards.

Alpert, G. and MacDonald, J. (1997). Helicopters and Their Use in Police Pursuit: A Final Report to the National Institute of Justice, Department of Justice.

<https://www.ncjrs.gov/pdffiles1/Digitization/171376NCJRS.pdf>

An analysis of the use of helicopters in police pursuit operations used data from observations and empirical analyses of the aviation units in the Baltimore and Metro-Dade (Fla.) Police Departments and a survey of citizen attitudes; the study concluded that helicopters provide a useful and important service to police and to the pursuit function. The best advantage a helicopter can provide to police is the information aerial vantage points can deliver. Additionally, the speed and relatively unobstructed mobility of helicopter support is a major benefit in pursuit of a fleeing suspect or during a search and rescue operation.

2.3 Describe the technology involved.

The King County Sheriff's Air Support Unit is the only full-time rotary-wing law enforcement aviation unit in Washington State. Three separate helicopters, one Bell 206B3 helicopter, one UH-1H "Huey," and one Bell 407, operate as Guardian One and Guardian Two. The capabilities of these aircraft include: forward looking infrared cameras (FLIR), 30-million candlepower "Night Sun" searchlights, Pro Net and LoJack radio tracking receivers, still and video cameras, and communications equipment for communicating with local, state, and federal law and firefighting agencies on their frequencies.

Below are examples from the FLIR camera system mounted on Guardian One:

Example 1: This image shows 2 vehicles and 2 people crouching between 2 residential structures. The exact location has been redacted.



Example 2: A closer view of a residential structure illustrating Guardian One FLIR camera system capabilities.



2.4 Describe how the project or use of technology relates to the department’s mission.

The mission of the Seattle Police Department is to prevent crime, enforce the law, and support quality public safety by delivering respectful, professional, and dependable police services. King County Sheriff’s Air Support Unit supports this mission by providing air support for patrol, specialized police missions, and search and rescue operations when aerial operations would benefit the SPD resources on the ground.

2.5 Who will be involved with the deployment and use of the project / technology?

King County Sheriff’s Air Support Unit is operated by the King County Sheriff’s Office and is available to assist the Seattle Police Department at no charge through the Puget Sound Regional Aviation Project and the Seattle Urban Area Security Initiative (UASI). Per [SPD Policy 16.060 - King County Sheriff’s Office Air Support Unit](#), when Guardian One is operational, the unit monitors SPD radio and advises SPD Communications when they are available to assist during active calls for service.

SPD officers may also request air support assistance directly to Guardian One or through SPD Communications. Per [SPD Policy 16.060](#), “If Guardian One is off-duty, but their assistance is required for a police operation, a[n SPD] sergeant will screen the request and coordinate with Communications.”

3.0 Use Governance

Provide an outline of any rules that will govern the use of the project / technology. Please note: non-City entities contracting with the City are bound by restrictions specified in the surveillance ordinance and

privacy principles and must provide written procedures for how the entity will comply with any restrictions identified.

3.1 Describe the processes that are required prior to each use, or access to/ of the project / technology, such as a notification, or check-in, check-out of equipment.

Per [SPD Policy 16.060 - King County Sheriff's Office Air Support Unit](#), when Guardian One is operational, the unit monitors SPD radio and advises SPD Communications when they are available to assist during active calls for service.

SPD officers may also request air support assistance directly to Guardian One or through SPD Communications. "If Guardian One is off-duty, but their assistance is required for a police operation, a sergeant will screen the request and coordinate with Communications." If they respond to an SPD call, Guardian One and Guardian Two are documented as responding resources in the CAD event by SPD Communications.

3.2 List the legal standards or conditions, if any, that must be met before the project / technology is used.

While no legal standards must be met prior to use of the technology, there are conditions and policy governing standard operating procedure for SPD.

The King County Sheriff's Office Air Support Unit monitors SPD radio frequencies and offers assistance to SPD based on availability and appropriateness of response. [SPD Policy 16.060 - King County Sheriff's Office Air Support Unit](#) states that patrol officers may request support from the Air Support Unit during an incident where it is determined air support would be beneficial, such as when there is a safety concern. When the Air Support Unit is off duty the request must be screened by sergeant or higher ranked personnel.

During 2018, Guardian One responded 45 times to SPD events. Guardian Two did not responded to any SPD calls during 2018.

3.3 Describe the policies and training required of all personnel operating the project / technology, and who has access to ensure compliance with use and management policies.

The helicopter and FLIR technology are not directly operated by SPD personnel.

SPD Supervisors and commanding officers are responsible for ensuring compliance with all applicable policies.

All SPD employees must adhere to laws, City policy, and Department Policy ([SPD Policy 5.001](#)), and any employees suspected of being in violation of laws or policy or other misconduct are subject to discipline, as outlined in [SPD Policy 5.002](#).

4.0 Data Collection and Use

Provide information about the policies and practices around the collection and use of the data collected.

4.1 Provide details about what information is being collected from sources other than an individual, including other IT systems, systems of record, commercial data aggregators, publicly available data and/or other City departments.

No additional information is collected or transmitted by SPD related to this technology.

4.2 What measures are in place to minimize inadvertent or improper collection of data?

The KCSO Helicopters and onboard FLIR technology respond only to SPD emergency events in which air support is beneficial. SPD only receives and accesses information from the KCSO helicopters that is relevant to the incidents to which Guardian One or Guardian Two have responded. The video is requested as evidence from King County and stored using existing video evidence storage policies including [SPD Policy 7.090 – Photographic Evidence](#).

4.3 How and when will the project / technology be deployed or used? By whom? Who will determine when the project / technology is deployed and used?

Per [SPD Policy 16.060 - King County Sheriff's Office Air Support Unit](#), when Guardian One is operational, the unit monitors SPD radio and advises SPD Communications when they are available to assist during active calls for service. SPD officers may also request air support assistance directly to Guardian One or through SPD Communications. The SPD policy states, "If Guardian One is off-duty, but their assistance is required for a police operation, a sergeant will screen the request and coordinate with Communications." If they respond to an SPD call, Guardian One and Guardian Two are documented as responding resources in the CAD event by SPD Communications.

The most common type of event in which Guardian One participated with SPD in 2018 was Robbery (8 events), followed by Automotive- including theft and recovery (7 events), Assault (6 events), and Burglary (6 events). Other event types include Domestic Violence, Kidnapping/Abduction, Prowler, Traffic Violations, Warrant Services, Weapons, Person-including missing, found, and runaway, Suspicious Person/Object, and Theft².

4.4 How often will the technology be in operation?

The Air Support Unit operates six days per week and averages 1200 hours of flight time annually. In 2018, Guardian One responded to 45 SPD events. Guardian Two did not dispatch to any SPD calls for service.

4.5 What is the permanence of the installation? Is it installed permanently, or temporarily?

² Call type is based on the Case Final Type led in SPD's CAD system for the 45 events in which Guardian One responded.

Established in 2001, the King County Sheriff's Air Unit has been a model for regionalized aviation support for law enforcement and emergency services.

4.6 Is a physical object collecting data or images visible to the public? What are the markings to indicate that it is in use? What signage is used to determine department ownership and contact information?

The King County Sheriff's Air Unit helicopters are marked and easily identifiable as law enforcement aircraft to the untrained eye. The FLIR camera system is permanently affixed to the helicopter, however it is not identifiable to the public. The Guardian helicopters and FLIR cameras do not belong to SPD, but rather are county resources available to assist when available.

4.7 How will data that is collected be accessed and by whom?

The only information relayed to SPD during the Unit operation is radio transmission from the Air Support Unit. Though the KCSO helicopters have a real-time microwave video downlink capable of transmitting video of ongoing events to units on the ground, SPD does not utilize this function. Recordings made by Guardian helicopters associated with SPD calls for service are regularly requested as video evidence from the King County Sheriff's Office, including FLIR video is needed for evidentiary or investigative purposes. These recordings are provided by the KCSO on high quality evidence-grade DVD. [SPD Policy 7.010](#) governs the submission of evidence and requires that all collected evidence be documented in a GO Report. Per [SPD Policy 7.090 – Photographic Evidence](#), all video evidence not produced by SPD employees is submitted to the SPD Evidence Unit. The SPD Evidence Unit stores the video in the Digital Evidence Management System (DEMS). The King County Sheriff's Office Air Support Unit does record audio and video of their operations and occasionally does release these recordings to the public, including video posted on their [YouTube channel](#).

4.8 If operated or used by another entity on behalf of the City, provide details about access, and applicable protocols.

The Guardian One and Guardian Two helicopters and onboard FLIR cameras are operated by the King County Sheriff's Air Unit. When Guardian One is operational, the unit monitors SPD radio and advises SPD Communications when they are available to assist during active calls for service. SPD officers may also request air support assistance directly to Guardian One or through SPD Communications.

4.9 What are acceptable reasons for access to the equipment and/or data collected?

The use of helicopter air support and onboard FLIR cameras are an indispensable resource for law enforcement and search and rescue operations. Per [SPD Policy 16.060 - King County Sheriff's Office Air Support Unit](#) Per [SPD Policy 16.060 - King County Sheriff's Office Air Support Unit](#), "Guardian One offers air support for patrol and specialized missions. Per [SPD Policy 16.060 - King County Sheriff's Office Air Support Unit](#), "Guardian One offers air support for patrol and specialized missions. Guardian Two offers air support for special operations such as search and rescue (SAR) and tactical missions." SPD requests air support to assist with locating missing children and vulnerable adults as well as to support patrol operations such as locating a suspects in dark or obscured terrain. When necessary and pertinent to a specific investigation, SPD investigators may request video from KCSO's Air Unit. This is only done when the video will be entered as case evidence in the investigation of a crime or missing person.

4.10 What safeguards are in place, for protecting data from unauthorized access (encryption, access control mechanisms, etc.) And to provide an audit trail (viewer logging, modification logging, etc.)?

SPD are consumers of the information provided by the KCSO Air Unit and do not maintain the systems used to access this information.

5.0 Data storage, retention and deletion

5.1 How will data be securely stored?

Recordings made by Guardian helicopters associated with SPD calls for service are requested as video evidence from the King County Sheriff's Office, including FLIR video is needed for evidentiary or investigative purposes related to the investigation of a crime or missing person. These recordings are provided by the KCSO on high quality evidence-grade DVD. [SPD Policy 7.010](#) governs the submission of evidence and requires that all collected evidence be documented in a GO Report. Per [SPD Policy 7.090 – Photographic Evidence](#), all video evidence not produced by SPD employees is submitted to the SPD Evidence Unit. The SPD Evidence Unit stores the video in the Digital Evidence Management System (DEMS).

SPD policy contains multiple provisions to avoid improperly collecting data. [SPD Policy 7.010](#) governs the submission of evidence and requires that all collected evidence be documented in a GO Report. Per [SPD Policy 7.090 – Photographic Evidence](#), all video evidence not produced by SPD employees is submitted to the SPD Evidence Unit. The SPD Evidence Unit stores the video in the CJIS certified Digital Evidence Management System (DEMS).

5.2 How will the owner allow for departmental and other entities, to audit for compliance with legal deletion requirements?

SPD's Audit, Policy and Research Section (APRS) can conduct an audit of any system, including DEMS, at any time. In addition, the Office of Inspector General and the federal monitor can access all data and audit for compliance at any time.

5.3 What measures will be used to destroy improperly collected data?

SPD policy contains multiple provisions to avoid improperly collecting data. [SPD Policy 7.010](#) governs the submission of evidence and requires that all collected evidence be documented in a GO Report. [SPD Policy 7.090](#) specifically governs the collection and submission of photographic evidence. Evidence is submitted to the Evidence Unit and associated with a specific GO Number and investigation.

Additionally, [SPD Policy 5.140](#) forbids bias-based policing and outlines processes for reporting and documenting any suspected bias-based behavior, as well as accountability measures.

All SPD employees must adhere to laws, City policy, and Department Policy ([SPD Policy 5.001](#)), and any employees suspected of being in violation of laws or policy or other misconduct are subject to discipline, as outlined in [SPD Policy 5.002](#).

Per the CJIS Security Policy:

“5.8.3 Digital Media Sanitization and Disposal The agency shall sanitize, that is, overwrite at least three times or degauss digital media prior to disposal or release for reuse by unauthorized individuals. Inoperable digital media shall be destroyed (cut up, shredded, etc.). The agency shall maintain written documentation of the steps taken to sanitize or destroy electronic media. Agencies shall ensure the sanitization or destruction is witnessed or carried out by authorized personnel.

5.8.4 Disposal of Physical Media Physical media shall be securely disposed of when no longer required, using formal procedures. Formal procedures for the secure disposal or destruction of physical media shall minimize the risk of sensitive information compromise by unauthorized individuals. Physical media shall be destroyed by shredding or incineration. Agencies shall ensure the disposal or destruction is witnessed or carried out by authorized personnel.”

5.4 Which specific departmental unit or individual is responsible for ensuring compliance with data retention requirements?

Unit supervisors are responsible for ensuring compliance with data retention requirements within SPD. Audit, Policy & Research Section personnel can also conduct audits of all data collection software and systems. Additionally, any appropriate auditor, including the Office of Inspector General and the federal monitor can audit for compliance at any time.

6.0 Data Sharing and Accuracy

6.1 Which entity or entities inside and external to the City will be data sharing partners?

No person, outside of SPD has direct access to the video information provided to SPD by the King County Air Unit once it has been received by SPD.

Video may be shared with outside entities in connection with criminal prosecutions:

- Seattle City Attorney's Office
- King County Prosecuting Attorney's Office
- King County Department of Public Defense
- Private Defense Attorneys
- Seattle Municipal Court
- King County Superior Court
- Similar entities where prosecution is in Federal or other State jurisdictions

Video may be made available to requesters pursuant to the Washington Public Records Act, [Chapter 42.56 RCW](#) ("PRA"). SPD will apply applicable exemptions to the data before disclosing to a requester. Individuals have the right to inspect criminal history record information maintained by the department ([RCW 10.97.030](#), [SPD Policy 12.050](#)). Individuals can access their own information by submitting a public disclosure request.

6.2 Why is data sharing necessary?

Sharing of video information may be necessary for prosecution or to comply with requests pursuant to public records requests.

6.3 Are there any restrictions on non-City data use?

Yes No

6.3.1 if you answered yes, provide a copy of the department's procedures and policies for ensuring compliance with these restrictions.

Law enforcement agencies receiving criminal history information are subject to the requirements of 28 CFR Part 20, regulating criminal justice information systems. In addition, Washington State law enforcement agencies are subject to the provisions of [WAC 446-20-260](#) (auditing and dissemination of criminal history record information systems), and [RCW Chapter 10.97](#) (Washington State Criminal Records Privacy Act).

Once disclosed in response to PRA request, there are no restrictions on non-City data use; however, applicable exemptions will be applied prior to disclosure to any requestor who is not authorized to receive exempt content.

6.4 how does the project/technology review and approve information sharing agreements, memorandums of understanding, new uses of the information, new access to the system by organizations within City of Seattle and outside agencies?

Research agreements must meet the standards reflected in [SPD Policy 12.055](#). Law enforcement agencies receiving criminal history information are subject to the requirements of [28 CFR Part 20](#) whose purpose it is “to assure that criminal history record information wherever it appears is collected, stored, and disseminated in a manner to ensure the accuracy, completeness, currency, integrity, and security of such information and to protect individual privacy”. In addition, Washington State law enforcement agencies are subject to the provisions of [WAC 446-20-260](#), and [RCW Chapter 10.97](#).

6.5 Explain how the project/technology checks the accuracy of the information collected. If accuracy is not checked, please explain why.

The video recorded by Guardian One and Guardian Two, including the video recorded by the FLIR camera system, is real-time video recorded during the helicopter’s response to a law enforcement or search and rescue event.

6.6 describe any procedures that allow individuals to access their information and correct inaccurate or erroneous information.

Individuals may request records pursuant to the PRA, and individuals have the right to inspect criminal history record information maintained by the department ([RCW 10.97.030](#), [SPD Policy 12.050](#)). Individuals can access their own information by submitting a public disclosure request.

7.0 Legal obligations, risks and compliance

7.1 What specific legal authorities and/or agreements permit and define the collection of information by the project/technology?

[RCW 9.73.090](#) allows sound and video images to be recorded by cameras mounted in law enforcement vehicles.

7.2 Describe what privacy training is provided to users either generally or specifically relevant to the project/technology.

[SPD Policy 12.050](#) mandates that all employees receive Security Awareness Training (Level 2), and all employees also receive City Privacy Training. All SPD employees must adhere to laws, City policy, and Department Policy ([SPD Policy 5.001](#)), many of which contain specific privacy requirements. Any employees suspected of being in violation of laws or policy or other misconduct are subject to discipline, as outlined in [SPD Policy 5.002](#).

7.3 Given the specific data elements collected, describe the privacy risks identified and for each risk, explain how it was mitigated. Specific risks may be inherent in the sources or methods of collection, or the quality or quantity of information included.

The nature of the Department’s mission will inevitably lead it to collect and maintain information many may believe to be private and potentially embarrassing. Inherent in video obtained from an aerial platform such as Guardian One and Guardian Two with FLIR camera systems is the risk that private information may be obtained about members of the public. Minimizing privacy risks revolve around disclosure of personally identifiable information by such activities as redacting released video and information and by keeping detailed records of all information released. Images and video obtained by SPD from the KCSO’s Air Unit are considered evidence and the same precautions used to protect other case evidence applies.

[SMC 14.12](#) and [SPD Policy 6.060](#) direct all SPD personnel that “any documentation of information concerning a person’s sexual preferences or practices, or their political or religious activities must be for a relevant reason and serve a legitimate law enforcement purpose.” Additionally, officers must take care “when photographing demonstrations or other lawful political activities. If demonstrators are not acting unlawfully, police can’t photograph them.”

Further, [SPD Policy 5.140](#) forbids bias-based policing and outlines processes for reporting and documenting any suspected bias-based behavior, as well as accountability measures.

7.4 Is there any aspect of the project/technology that might cause concern by giving the appearance to the public of privacy intrusion or misuse of personal information?

Inherent in video obtained from an aerial platform such as Guardian One and Guardian Two with FLIR camera systems is the risk that private information may be obtained about members of the public. The FLIR camera system can pose additional concern to the public about potential for privacy intrusion based on the misconception that the camera can record people and objects inside homes and other structures. As seen in the provided screen captures of FLIR recordings above, heat from homes and other structures can be seen in the image but the FLIR camera on the Guardian helicopters can not see through obstructions like walls and roofs.

8.0 Monitoring and enforcement

8.1 Describe how the project/technology maintains a record of any disclosures outside of the department.

Per [SPD Policy 12.080](#), the Crime Records Unit is responsible to receive and record all requests “for General Offense Reports from other City departments and from other law enforcement agencies, as well as from insurance companies.” Any subpoenas and requests for public disclosure are logged by SPD’s Legal Unit. Any action taken, and data released subsequently in response to subpoenas is then tracked through a log maintained by the Legal Unit. Public disclosure requests are tracked through the City’s GovQA Public Records Response System, and responses to Public Disclosure Requests, including responsive records provided to a requestor, are retained by SPD for two years after the request is completed

8.2 What auditing measures are in place to safeguard the information, and policies that pertain to them, as well as who has access to the audit data? Explain whether the project/technology conducts self-audits, third party audits or reviews.

SPD’s Audit, Policy and Research Section is authorized to conduct audits of all investigative data collection software and systems, including DEMS. In addition, the Office of Inspector General and the federal monitor can conduct audits of the software, and its use, at any time. Audit data is available to the public via Public Records Request.

Financial Information

Purpose

This section provides a description of the fiscal impact of the surveillance technology, as required by the surveillance ordinance.

1.0 Fiscal Impact

Provide a description of the fiscal impact of the project/technology by answering the questions below.

1.1 Current or potential sources of funding: initial acquisition costs.

Current potential

Date of initial acquisition	Date of go live	Direct initial acquisition cost	Professional services for acquisition	Other acquisition costs	Initial acquisition funding source
NA					

Notes:

The Air Support Unit operates throughout King County and is available to assist the Seattle Police Department at no charge through the Puget Sound Regional Aviation Project, a consortium made up of members from sheriff’s offices in King, Snohomish, Pierce and Kitsap counties as well as Seattle Police and Fire departments, Pierce County Fire Districts, Washington State Patrol, the Pierce County Department of Emergency Management, state Department of Ecology, Coast Guard, Navy, and the National Park Service.

1.2 Current or potential sources of funding: on-going operating costs, including maintenance, licensing, personnel, legal/compliance use auditing, data retention and security costs.

Current potential

Annual maintenance and licensing	Legal/compliance, audit, data retention and other security costs	Department overhead	IT overhead	Annual funding source

Notes:

N/A

1.3 Cost savings potential through use of the technology

Helicopter air support units can potentially cost \$200,000 per year, per the Snohomish County Sheriff’s Office Air Support Unit Budget. SPD’s agreement allowing cost-free support from the King County Sheriff’s Office Air Support Unit negates the need for SPD to host its own air unit.

1.4 Current or potential sources of funding including subsidies or free products offered by vendors or governmental entities

SPD’s participation in the Puget Sound Regional Aviation Project consortium allows cost-free support from the King County Sheriff’s Office Air Support Unit.

Expertise and References

Purpose

The following information is provided to ensure that Council has a group of experts to reference while reviewing the completed surveillance impact report (“SIR”). Any individuals or agencies referenced must be made aware ahead of publication that their information has been included. All materials must be available for Council to access or review, without requiring additional purchase or contract.

1.0 Other Government References

1.1 Please list any other government bodies that have implemented this technology and can speak to the implementation of this technology.

Agency, municipality, etc.	Primary contact	Description of current use
Auburn, WA Police Dept		
Bellevue, WA Police Dept		
Kent, WA Police Dept		

2.0 Academics, Consultants, and Other Experts

2.1 Please list any experts in the technology under consideration, or in the technical completion of the service or function the technology is responsible for.

Agency, municipality, etc.	Primary contact	Description of current use

3.0 White Papers or Other Documents

3.1 Please list any authoritative publication, report or guide that is relevant to the use of this technology or this type of technology.

Title	Publication	Link
"Today's Thermal Imaging Systems: Background and Applications for Civilian Law Enforcement and Military Force Protection."	<i>Proceedings IEEE 31st Annual 1997 International Carnahan Conference on Security Technology (1997)</i>	https://ieeexplore-ieee-org.offcampus.lib.washington.edu/document/626270

Racial Equity Toolkit (“RET”) and Engagement for Public Comment Worksheet

Purpose

Departments submitting a SIR are required to complete an adapted version of the Racial Equity Toolkit (“RET”) in order to:

- Provide a framework for the mindful completion of the SIR in a way that is sensitive to the historic exclusion of vulnerable and historically underrepresented communities. Particularly, to inform the public engagement efforts departments will complete as part of the surveillance impact report.
- Highlight and mitigate any impacts on racial equity from the adoption and the use of the technology.
- Highlight and mitigate any disparate impacts on individuals or vulnerable communities.
- Fulfill the public engagement requirements of the surveillance impact report.

Adaption of the RET for Surveillance Impact Reports

The RET was adapted for the specific use by the Seattle Information Technology Departments’ (“Seattle IT”) privacy team, the Office of Civil Rights (“OCR”), and change team members from Seattle IT, Seattle City Light, Seattle Fire Department, Seattle Police Department, and Seattle Department of Transportation.

Racial Equity Toolkit Overview

The vision of the Seattle Race and Social Justice Initiative is to eliminate racial inequity in the community. To do this requires ending individual racism, institutional racism and structural racism. The racial equity toolkit lays out a process and a set of questions to guide the development, implementation and evaluation of policies, initiatives, programs, and budget issues to address the impacts on racial equity.

1.0 Set Outcomes

1.1. Seattle City Council has defined the following inclusion criteria in the surveillance ordinance, and they serve as important touchstones for the risks departments are being asked to resolve and/or mitigate. Which of the following inclusion criteria apply to this technology?

- The technology disparately impacts disadvantaged groups.
- There is a high likelihood that personally identifiable information will be shared with non-City entities that will use the data for a purpose other than providing the City with a contractually agreed-upon service.
- The technology collects data that is personally identifiable even if obscured, de-identified, or anonymized after collection.

☒ The technology raises reasonable concerns about impacts to civil liberty, freedom of speech or association, racial equity, or social justice.

1.2 What are the potential impacts on civil liberties through the implementation of this technology? How is the department mitigating these risks?

Inherent in video obtained from an aerial platform such as Guardian One and Guardian Two with FLIR camera systems is the risk that private information may be obtained about 3rd parties. While the FLIR camera system can detect and record heat sources inside some structures, it is not able to peer inside homes or other buildings. Though the high definition color cameras mounted on the KCSO helicopters is able to discern individual characteristics, the FLIR camera system video does not capture even the most generic of identifiable individual characteristics such as race, age, or gender. The below image is an example of how individuals are seen by the FLIR system and the color cameras.

This FLIR image shows 5 officers and one police K9 approaching a suspect who is crouched down under a tree. The light color of the officers does not show skin tone but rather the amount of heat they are giving off.



1.3 What are the risks for racial or ethnicity-based bias through each use or deployment of this technology? How is the department mitigating these risks?

The mission of the Seattle Police Department is to prevent crime, enforce the law, and support quality public safety by delivering respectful, professional and dependable police services. A potential civil liberties concern is that the SPD would over-surveil vulnerable or historically targeted communities, deploying Guardian One to diverse neighborhoods more often than to other areas of the City. [SPD Policy 5.140](#) forbids bias-based policing and outlines processes for reporting and documenting any suspected bias-based behavior, as well as accountability measures. Determining events in which aerial support would be beneficial is based on the particular event situation and the availability of the King County Air Support Unit.

1.4 Where in the City is the technology used or deployed?

all Seattle neighborhoods

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| <input type="checkbox"/> Ballard | <input type="checkbox"/> Southeast |
| <input type="checkbox"/> North | <input type="checkbox"/> Delridge |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Northeast | <input type="checkbox"/> Greater Duwamish |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Central | <input type="checkbox"/> East district |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Lake union | <input type="checkbox"/> King county (outside Seattle) |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Southwest | <input type="checkbox"/> Outside King County. |

If possible, please include any maps or visualizations of historical deployments / use.

N/A

1.4.1 What are the racial demographics of those living in this area or impacted by these issues?

City of Seattle demographics: White - 69.5%; Black or African American - 7.9%; Amer. Indian & Alaska Native - 0.8%; Asian - 13.8%; Native Hawaiian & Pacific Islander - 0.4%; Other race - 2.4%; Two or more races - 5.1%; Hispanic or Latino ethnicity (of any race): 6.6%; Persons of color: 33.7%.

King County demographics: White – 70.1%; Black or African American – 6.7%; American Indian & Alaskan Native – 1.1%; Asian, Native Hawaiian, Pacific Islander – 17.2%; Hispanic or Latino (of any race) – 9.4%

1.4.2 How are decisions made where the technology is used or deployed? How does the Department work to ensure diverse neighborhoods are not specifically targeted?

Determining events in which aerial support would be beneficial is based on the particular event situation and the availability of the King County Air Support Unit. [SPD Policy 16.060 - King County Sheriff's Office Air Support Unit](#) defines SPD's policy on the use of this technology.

1.5 How do decisions around data sharing have the potential for disparate impact on historically targeted communities? What is the department doing to mitigate those risks?

The Aspen Institute on Community Change defines structural racism as "...public policies, institutional practices, cultural representations and other norms [which] work in various, often reinforcing ways to perpetuate racial group inequity." Data sharing has the potential to be a contributing factor to structural racism and thus creating a disparate impact on historically targeted communities. In an effort to mitigate this possibility, SPD has established policies regarding the dissemination of data in connection with criminal prosecutions, Washington Public Records Act ([Chapter 42.56 RCW](#)), and other authorized researchers.

Further, [SPD Policy 5.140](#) forbids bias-based policing and outlines processes for reporting and documenting any suspected bias-based behavior, as well as accountability measures.

Information collected by Guardian One and Guardian Two cameras, including the FLIR camera system, is shared only with outside entities in connection with criminal prosecutions or in compliance with public records requests pursuant to the Washington Public Records Act, [Chapter 42.56 RCW](#) ("PRA"). SPD will apply applicable exemptions to the data before disclosing to a requester.

1.6 How do decisions around data storage and retention have the potential for disparate impact on historically targeted communities? What is the department doing to mitigate those risks?

Like decisions around data sharing, data storage and retention have similar potential for disparate impact on historically targeted communities. [SPD Policy 5.140](#) forbids bias-based policing and outlines processes for reporting and documenting any suspected bias-based behavior, as well as accountability measures.

1.7 What are potential unintended consequences (both negative and positive potential impact)? What proactive steps can you can / have you taken to ensure these consequences do not occur.

The most important unintended possible consequence related to the continued utilization of the King County Sheriff's Office Air Support Unit helicopters and FLIR camera system by SPD is the out of policy misuse of the technology to improperly surveil the public. SPD policies, including [SPD Policy 16.060 - King County Sheriff's Office Air Support Unit](#) outlines the way in which SPD may utilize air support for patrol and specialized missions. [SPD Policy 6.060 - Collection of Information for Law Enforcement Purposes](#) also defines the way information will be gathered by SPD and states, "information will be gathered and recorded in a manner that does not unreasonably infringe upon: individual rights, liberties, and freedoms guaranteed

by the Constitution of the United States and the State of Washington, including freedom of speech, press, association, and assembly; liberty of conscience; the exercise of religion...”

2.0 Public Outreach

2.1 Scheduled public meeting(s).

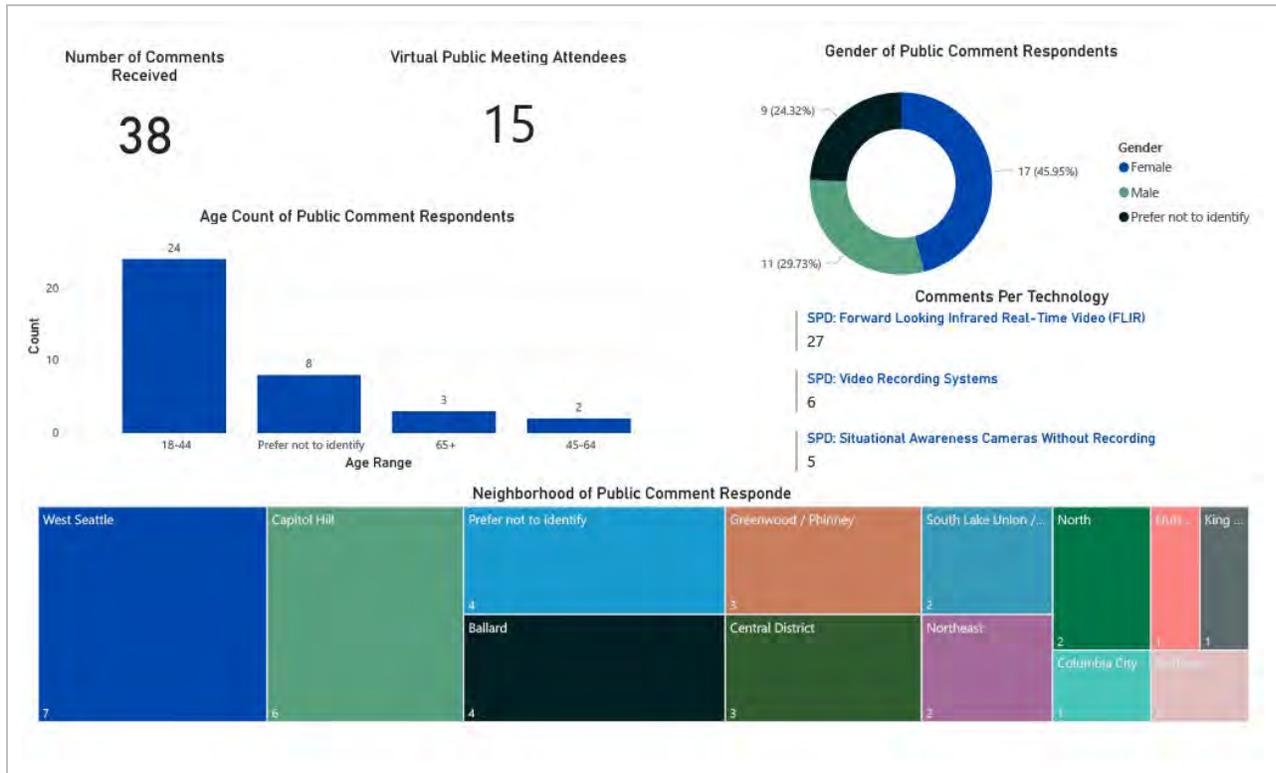
Meeting notes, sign-in sheets, all comments received, and questions from the public will be included in Appendix A-C. Comment analysis will be summarized in section 3.0 Public Comment Analysis.

Meeting 1

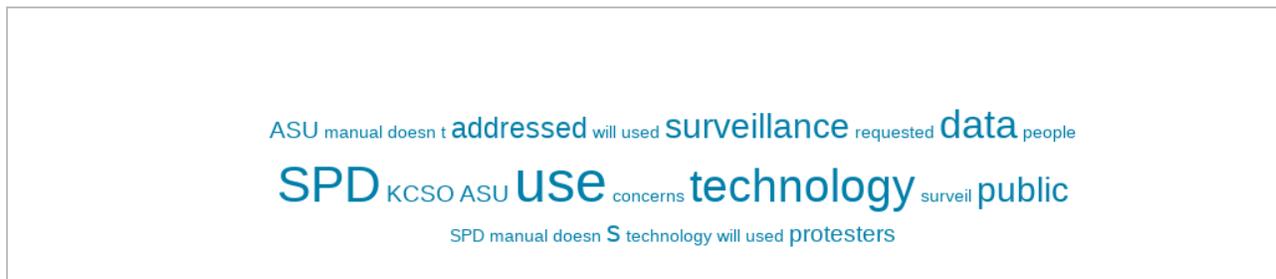
Location	Webex Online Event
Date	October 28 th , 2020
Time	12 pm – 1 pm

3.0 Public Comment Analysis

3.1 Demographics of the public who submitted comments.



3.2 What concerns, if any, do you have about the use of this technology?



3.3 What value, if any, do you see in the use of this technology?



3.4 What do you want City leadership to consider about the use of this technology?



3.5 Do you have any other comments?



4.0 Response to Public Comments

4.1 How will you address the concerns that have been identified by the public?

The OIG has audit responsibilities for determining legality of the system and deployment.

5.0 Equity Annual Reporting

5.1 What metrics for this technology be reported to the CTO for the annual equity assessments? Departments will be responsible for sharing their own evaluations with department leadership, change team leads, and community leaders identified in the public outreach plan.

Respond here.

Privacy and Civil Liberties Assessment

Purpose

This section shall be completed after public engagement has concluded and the department has completed the racial equity toolkit section above. The privacy and civil liberties assessment is completed by the community surveillance working group (“working group”), per the surveillance ordinance which states that the working group shall:

“Provide to the executive and the City Council a privacy and civil liberties impact assessment for each SIR that must be included with any departmental request for surveillance technology acquisition or in-use approval. The impact assessment shall include a description of the potential impact of the surveillance technology on civil rights and liberties and potential disparate impacts on communities of color and other marginalized communities. The CTO shall share with the working group a copy of the SIR that shall also be posted during the period of public engagement. At the conclusion of the public engagement period, the CTO shall share the final proposed SIR with the working group at least six weeks prior to submittal of the SIR to Council for approval. The working group shall provide its impact assessment in writing to the executive and the City Council for inclusion in the SIR within six weeks of receiving the final proposed SIR. If the working group does not provide the impact assessment before such time, the working group must ask for a two-week extension of time to City Council in writing. If the working group fails to submit an impact statement within eight weeks of receiving the SIR, the department and City Council may proceed with ordinance approval without the impact statement.”

Working Group Privacy and Civil Liberties Assessment

From: Seattle Community Surveillance Working Group (CSWG)

To: Seattle City Council

Date: Dec 15, 2020

Re: Privacy and Civil Liberties Impact Assessment for Forward Looking Infrared – King County Sheriff’s Office Helicopters

Executive Summary

The CSWG has completed its review of the Surveillance Impact Reports (SIRs) for the three surveillance technologies included in Group 3 of the Seattle Surveillance Ordinance technology review process. These technologies are Forward Looking Infrared, Video Recording Systems, and Situational Awareness Cameras Without Recording. This document is the CSWG’s Privacy and Civil Liberties Impact Assessment for Forward Looking Infrared (FLIR) technology used with King County Sheriff’s Office (KCSO) helicopters as set forth in SMC 14.18.080(B)(1), which we provide for inclusion in the final SIRs submitted to the City Councils.

This document first provides our recommendations to Council, then provides background information, key concerns, and outstanding questions regarding FLIR technology as used with KCSO helicopters.

Our assessment of FLIR technology and KCSO Helicopters as used by Seattle Police Department (SPD) focuses on three major issues:

1. Additional policy language is necessary to define valid purposes of use.
2. There are inadequate policies regarding data collection and unclear policies regarding data storage and protection.
3. There are inadequate policies and processes to ensure that communities of color and other historically over-policed communities are not targeted.

Recommendations

The Council should adopt clear and enforceable rules that ensure, at the minimum, the following:

1. The purpose and allowable uses of FLIR technology and KCSO's helicopters must be clearly defined, and any SPD use of KCSO's helicopters and FLIR technology and data collected with these technologies must be restricted to that specific purpose and those allowable uses.
2. SPD must be prohibited from using FLIR technology and KCSO's helicopters to disproportionately surveil communities of color and other historically over-policed communities, and must adopt policies and processes to ensure it is not targeting such communities.
3. SPD must be required to redact or delete information collected that may compromise the privacy of individuals not related to a specific investigation of search that is restricted by the purpose of use.
4. SPD must be required to produce a publicly available annual report detailing its use of FLIR technology and KCSO helicopters. This report must include at a minimum, details on how SPD used the data collected, the amount and types of data collected, for how long data were retained and in what form, where the data are stored, and the neighborhoods over which KCSO helicopters and/or FLIR technology were deployed.

Key Concerns

1. **There are inadequate policies defining purpose of use.** The policies cited in the SIR do not impose meaningful restrictions on the purpose for which SPD may request that KCSO helicopters and FLIR technology be used. Policy 16.060 – King County Sheriff's Office Air Support Unit³ simply states that "Guardian One offers air support for patrol and specialized missions" and that "Guardian Two offers air support for special operations such as search and rescue (SAR) and tactical missions." This policy only describes the process by which SPD may request support from KCSO's air support unit but does not state the specific purposes for which SPD may or may not do so. Section 4.9 of the SIR⁴ states that SPD may request video from KCSO's Air Unit "[w]hen necessary and pertinent to a

³ <http://www.seattle.gov/police-manual/title-16---patrol-operations/16060---king-county-sheriffs-office-air-support-unit>

⁴ http://www.seattle.gov/Documents/Departments/Tech/Privacy/FLIR%20-%20KCSO%20Helicopters%20Public_Engagement%20SIR.pdf - page 12

specific investigation” but does not specify the types of investigations for which SPD may request data from KCSO or how it is determined if such data is necessary and pertinent.

2. **There are inadequate policies restricting data collection.** The policies cited in the SIR do not place any restrictions on the amount or types of data SPD may request from KCSO.
3. **It is unclear if and how SPD protects the privacy of individuals unrelated to an investigation.** The SIR does not include any policies regarding how it redacts or deletes information. At the October 28 public engagement meeting, SPD officers did not provide an answer to the question of whether and how it redacts or deletes information collected that may compromise the privacy of individuals unrelated to an investigation.
4. **It is unclear how data collected are stored and protected.** SPD stated at the October 28 public engagement meeting that it is unaware of how long KCSO retains still images and recordings obtained when assisting SPD. While SPD officers stated that SPD stores video requested from KCSO in its Digital Evidence Management System (DEMS)—not Evidence.com, this is not made clear within the SIR. Additionally, SPD officers did not answer whether SPD’s DEMS is on on-premise or Software-as-a-Service (SaaS) deployment.
5. **The SIR does not provide the dates and neighborhoods over which KCSO helicopters and FLIR technology have been deployed.** Though the SIR states that there have been 45 deployments of Guardian One to support SPD in 2018, the SIR does not include an analysis of the locations of those deployments.⁵ Additionally, SPD declined to state the neighborhoods over which the helicopters had been deployed during the October 28 public engagement meeting. It is important that SPD include this information in the Racial Equity Toolkit section of the final SIR in order to address the following questions in Section 1.4.2: “How are decisions made where the technology is used or deployed? How does the Department work to ensure diverse neighborhoods are not specifically targeted?”⁶

Outstanding Questions

- What are the registration and/or tail numbers for each helicopter?
- In 2019 and 2020, did the KCSO Air Support Unit have any additional helicopters aside from the three listed in the SIR?
- How long does KCSO retain still images and recordings attained when assisting SPD?
- Is SPD’s Digital Evidence Management System (DEMS) an on-premise deployment or is it Software-as-a-Service?
- Has SPD ever requested KCSO ASU services or obtained data from KCSO’s helicopters and/or FLIR technology to surveil protesters?
- What are the neighborhoods over which KCSO’s helicopters have been deployed?

The answers to these questions can further inform the content of any binding policy the Council chooses to include in an ordinance on this technology, as recommended above.

⁵ http://www.seattle.gov/Documents/Departments/Tech/Privacy/FLIR%20-%20KCSO%20Helicopters%20Public_Engagement%20SIR.pdf - page 9

⁶ http://www.seattle.gov/Documents/Departments/Tech/Privacy/FLIR%20-%20KCSO%20Helicopters%20Public_Engagement%20SIR.pdf - page 23

CTO Response

Memo

To: Seattle City Council
From: Saad Bashir
Subject: CTO Response to the Surveillance Working Group Forward Looking Infrared Real-Time Video (FLIR) SIR Review

Purpose

As provided in the Surveillance Ordinance, [SMC 14.18.080](#), this memo outlines the Chief Technology Officer's (CTO's) response to the Surveillance Working Group assessment on the Surveillance Impact Report for Seattle Police Department's Forward Looking Infrared Real-Time Video (FLIR).

Background

The Information Technology Department (ITD) is dedicated to the Privacy Principles and Surveillance Ordinance objectives to provide oversight and transparency about the use and acquisition of specialized technologies with potential privacy and civil liberties impacts. All City departments have a shared mission to protect lives and property while balancing technology use and data collection with negative impacts to individuals. This requires ensuring the appropriate use of privacy invasive technologies through technology limitations, policy, training and departmental oversight.

The CTO's role in the SIR process has been to ensure that all City departments are compliant with the Surveillance Ordinance requirements. As part of the review work for surveillance technologies, ITD's Privacy Office has facilitated the creation of the Surveillance Impact Report documentation, including collecting comments and suggestions from the Working Group and members of the public about these technologies. IT and City departments have also worked collaboratively with the Working Group to answer additional questions that came up during their review process. We believe that policy, training and technology limitations enacted by SPD and Council oversight through the surveillance technology review process provide adequate mitigation for the potential privacy and civil liberties concerns raised by the Working Group about the use of this important operational technology.

Technology Purpose

The King County Sheriff's Office (KCSO) Air Support Unit is the only full-time rotary-wing law enforcement aviation unit in Washington State. Three separate helicopters, one Bell 206B3 helicopter, one UH-1H "Huey," and one Bell 407, operate as Guardian One and Guardian Two. The Air Support Unit operates throughout King County and is available to assist the Seattle Police Department at no charge through the Puget Sound Regional Aviation Project, a consortium made up of members from sheriff's offices in King, Snohomish, Pierce and Kitsap counties as well as Seattle Police and Fire departments, Pierce County Fire Districts, Washington State Patrol, the Department of Emergency Management in Pierce County, the Washington State Department of Ecology, Coast Guard, Navy, and the National Park Service. Guardian One offers air support for patrol and specialized police missions. Guardian Two offers support predominately for search and rescue. These helicopters are equipped with color and forward

looking infrared (FLIR) cameras and 30 million-candle power spotlights that enable the location of suspects or disaster victims in darkness or environmental cover.

Working Group Concerns

In their review, the Working Group has raised concerns about these devices being used in a privacy impacting way. Their review focused on concerns about use specification and restriction, data collection, storage and protection, and potential privacy impacts.

Recommended Next Steps

I look forward to working together with Council and City departments to ensure continued transparency about the use of these technologies and finding a mutually agreeable means to use technology to improve City services while protecting the privacy and civil rights of the residents we serve. Specific concerns in the Working Group comments about cameras are addressed in the attached document.

Response to Specific Concerns: Forward Looking Infrared Real-Time Video (FLIR)

Concern: Policies defining valid purpose of use

CTO Assessment: [SPD Policy 16.060 -King County Sheriff's Office Air Support Unit](#) governs and outlines the use cases and approval process for officers to request air support at the discretion of the King County Sheriff's Office. It is our assessment that while SPD cannot change the King County Sheriff's office use policies, SPD has outlined their own policies about use of the images and video obtained from the Air Support Unit operation of the aircraft. The associated SIR responses are clear and provide adequate transparency and policy guidance about technology use. Details are provided below:

SIR Response:

Section 2.4 Describe how the project or use of technology relates to the department's mission.

The mission of the Seattle Police Department is to prevent crime, enforce the law, and support quality public safety by delivering respectful, professional, and dependable police services. King County Sheriff's Air Support Unit supports this mission by providing air support for patrol, specialized police missions, and search and rescue operations when aerial operations would benefit the SPD resources on the ground.

Section 3.1 Describe the processes that are required prior to each use, or access to/ of the project / technology, such as a notification, or check-in, check-out of equipment.

Per SPD Policy 16.060 -King County Sheriff's Office Air Support Unit, when Guardian One is operational, the unit monitors SPD radio and advises SPD Communications when they are available to assist during active calls for service. SPD officers may also request air support assistance directly to Guardian One or through SPD Communications. "If Guardian One is off-duty, but their assistance is required for a police operation, a sergeant will screen the request and coordinate with Communications." If they respond to an SPD call, Guardian One and Guardian Two are documented as responding resources in the CAD event by SPD Communications.

Section 3.2 List the legal standards or conditions, if any, that must be met before the project / technology is used.

While no legal standards must be met prior to use of the technology, there are conditions and policy governing standard operating procedure for SPD. The King County Sheriff's Office Air Support Unit monitors SPD radio frequencies and offers assistance to SPD based on availability and appropriateness of response. SPD Policy 16.060 -King County Sheriff's Office Air Support Unit states that patrol officers may request support from the Air Support Unit during an incident where it is determined air support would be beneficial, such as when there is a safety concern. When the Air Support Unit is off duty the request must be screened by sergeant or higher ranked personnel. During 2018, Guardian One responded 45 times to SPD events. Guardian Two did not responded to any SPD calls during 2018.

Concern: Inadequate policies restricting data collection

CTO Assessment: Information or video provided by the KCSO Air Support Unit comes after a request from SPD regarding a specific event or timestamp that may be necessary for an investigation. Once any relevant footage is provided, the video is treated as evidence in an investigation and is subject to SPD's policy on video evidence storage, including SPD Policy 7.090 and Policy 7.010. It is our assessment that SPD has adequate controls and policies in place to limit use and collection of data to appropriate emergency situations and access by authorized individuals. Details regarding this are provided in the SIR responses referenced below:

SIR Response:

Section 4.2 What measures are in place to minimize inadvertent or improper collection of data?

The KCSO Helicopters and onboard FLIR technology respond only to SPD emergency events in which air support is beneficial. SPD only receives and accesses information from the KCSO helicopters that is relevant to the incidents to which Guardian One or Guardian Two have responded. The video is requested as evidence from King County and stored using existing video evidence storage policies including SPD Policy 7.090 –Photographic Evidence.

Section 4.7 How will data that is collected be accessed and by whom?

The only information relayed to SPD during the Unit operation is radio transmission from the Air Support Unit. Though the KCSO helicopters have a real-time microwave video downlink capable of transmitting video of ongoing events to units on the ground, SPD does not utilize this function. Recordings made by Guardian helicopters associated with SPD calls for service are regularly requested as video evidence from the King County Sheriff's Office, including FLIR video is needed for evidentiary or investigative purposes. These recordings are provided by the KCSO on high quality evidence-grade DVD. SPD Policy 7.010 governs the submission of evidence and requires that all collected evidence be documented in a GO Report. Per SPD Policy 7.090 –Photographic Evidence, all video evidence not produced by SPD employees is submitted to the SPD Evidence Unit. The SPD Evidence Unit stores the video in the Digital Evidence Management System (DEMS). The King County Sheriff's Office Air Support Unit does record audio and video of their operations and occasionally does release these recordings to the public, including video posted on their YouTube channel.

Concern: Unclear how data collected is stored and protected

CTO Assessment: Once the relevant data has been acquired from KCSO, the information is treated according to SPD Policy 7.010 on documenting and storing collected evidence in relation to an investigation. Additionally, SPD Policy 7.090 governs photographic evidence and its submission into the CJIS certified Digital Evidence Management System. It is our assessment that SPD has appropriate policy in place, follows appropriate data storage security measure, and have clearly stated data sharing partners and practices. Details are provided in the SIR responses listed below:

SIR Response:

Section 5.1 How will data be securely stored?

Recordings made by Guardian helicopters associated with SPD calls for service are requested as video evidence from the King County Sheriff's Office, including FLIR video is needed for evidentiary or investigative purposes related to the investigation of a crime or missing person. These recordings are provided by the KCSO on high quality evidence-grade DVD. SPD Policy 7.010 governs the submission of evidence and requires that all collected evidence be documented in a GO Report. Per SPD Policy 7.090 –Photographic Evidence, all video evidence not produced by SPD employees is submitted to the SPD Evidence Unit. The SPD Evidence Unit stores the video in the Digital Evidence Management System (DEMS). SPD policy contains multiple provisions to avoid improperly collecting data. SPD Policy 7.010 governs the submission of evidence and requires that all collected evidence be documented in a GO Report. Per SPD Policy 7.090 –Photographic Evidence, all video evidence not produced by SPD employees is submitted to the SPD Evidence Unit. The SPD Evidence Unit stores the video in the CJIS certified Digital Evidence Management System (DEMS).

Section 6.1 Which entity or entities inside and external to the City will be data sharing partners?

No person, outside of SPD has direct access to the video information provided to SPD by the King County Air Unit once it has been received by SPD. Video may be shared with outside entities in connection with criminal prosecutions:

- Seattle City Attorney's Office
- King County Prosecuting Attorney's Office
- King County Department of Public Defense
- Private Defense Attorneys
- Seattle Municipal Court
- King County Superior Court
- Similar entities where prosecution is in Federal or other State jurisdictions

Video may be made available to requesters pursuant to the Washington Public Records Act, Chapter 42.56 RCW("PRA"). SPD will apply applicable exemptions to the data before disclosing to a requester. Individuals have the right to inspect criminal history record information maintained by the department (RCW 10.97.030, SPD Policy 12.050). Individuals can access their own information by submitting a public disclosure request.

Concern: Unclear how SPD protects privacy of individuals unrelated to an investigation

CTO Assessment: SPD only retrieves video or evidence from the KCSO helicopters that is related to an ongoing investigation. Once the relevant data has been acquired from KCSO, the information is treated according to SPD Policy 7.010 on documenting and storing collected evidence in relation to an investigation. Additionally, SPD Policy 7.090 governs photographic evidence and its submission into the CJIS certified Digital Evidence Management System.

SIR Response:

Section 4.2 What measures are in place to minimize inadvertent or improper collection of data?

The KCSO Helicopters and onboard FLIR technology respond only to SPD emergency events in which air support is beneficial. SPD only receives and accesses information from the KCSO helicopters that is relevant to the incidents to which Guardian One or Guardian Two have responded. The video is requested as evidence from King County and stored using existing video evidence storage policies including SPD Policy 7.090 –Photographic Evidence.

Section 5.3 What measures will be used to destroy improperly collected data?

SPD policy contains multiple provisions to avoid improperly collecting data. SPD Policy 7.010 governs the submission of evidence and requires that all collected evidence be documented in a GO Report. SPD Policy 7.090 specifically governs the collection and submission of photographic evidence. Evidence is submitted to the Evidence Unit and associated with a specific GO Number and investigation.

Additionally, SPD Policy 5.140 forbids bias-based policing and outlines processes for reporting and documenting any suspected bias-based behavior, as well as accountability measures.

All SPD employees must adhere to laws, City policy, and Department Policy (SPD Policy 5.001), and any employees suspected of being in violation of laws or policy or other misconduct are subject to discipline, as outlined in SPD Policy 5.002.

Per the CJIS Security Policy:

“5.8.3 Digital Media Sanitization and Disposal The agency shall sanitize, that is, overwrite at least three times or degauss digital media prior to disposal or release for reuse by unauthorized individuals. Inoperable digital media shall be destroyed (cut up, shredded, etc.). The agency shall maintain written documentation of the steps taken to sanitize or destroy electronic media. Agencies shall ensure the sanitization or destruction is witnessed or carried out by authorized personnel.

5.8.4 Disposal of Physical Media Physical media shall be securely disposed of when no longer required, using formal procedures. Formal procedures for the secure disposal or destruction of physical media shall minimize the risk of sensitive information compromise by unauthorized individuals. Physical media shall be destroyed by shredding or incineration. Agencies shall ensure the disposal or destruction is witnessed or carried out by authorized personnel.”

Concern: No dates or locations of deployments of technology

CTO Assessment: The SIR identifies the number and most common deployment types of the KCSO helicopters and the table below outlines additional data available for Guardian One dispatches in 2018. [SPD Policy 16.060 -King County Sheriff's Office Air Support Unit](#) governs and outlines the use cases and approval process for officers to request air support at the discretion of the King County Sheriff's Office. It is our assessment that while SPD cannot change the King County Sheriff's office use policies, SPD has outlined their own policies about use of the images and video obtained from the Air Support Unit operation of the aircraft.

Guardian One Dispatches by Month and Precinct

	2018											
	January	February	March	April	June	July	August	Septem..	October	Novem..	Decemb..	
EAST		1									1	
NORTH	2	3		2		1					2	
SOUTH	3	3	2	4	1	4	1	2				
SOUTHWEST	1			1		1	1		1			3
WEST	1			1		1	1					
OUTSIDE SEATTLE				1								

SIR Response:

Section 4.3 How and when will the project / technology be deployed or used? By whom? Who will determine when the project / technology is deployed and used?

Per [SPD Policy 16.060 - King County Sheriff's Office Air Support Unit](#), when Guardian One is operational, the unit monitors SPD radio and advises SPD Communications when they are available to assist during active calls for service. SPD officers may also request air support assistance directly to Guardian One or through SPD Communications. The SPD policy states, "If Guardian One is off-duty, but their assistance is required for a police operation, a sergeant will screen the request and coordinate with Communications." If they respond to an SPD call, Guardian One and Guardian Two are documented as responding resources in the CAD event by SPD Communications.

The most common type of event in which Guardian One participated with SPD in 2018 was Robbery (8 events), followed by Automotive- including theft and recovery (7 events), Assault (6 events), and Burglary (6 events). Other event types include Domestic Violence, Kidnapping/Abduction, Prowler, Traffic Violations, Warrant Services, Weapons, Person-including missing, found, and runaway, Suspicious Person/Object, and Theft.

Section 4.4 How often will the technology be in operation?

The Air Support Unit operates six days per week and averages 1200 hours of flight time annually. In 2018, Guardian One responded to 45 SPD events. Guardian Two did not dispatch to any SPD calls for service.

Appendix A: Glossary

Accountable: (taken from the racial equity toolkit.) Responsive to the needs and concerns of those most impacted by the issues you are working on, particularly to communities of color and those historically underrepresented in the civic process.

Community outcomes: (taken from the racial equity toolkit.) The specific result you are seeking to achieve that advances racial equity.

Contracting equity: (taken from the racial equity toolkit.) Efforts to achieve equitable racial outcomes in the way the City spends resources, including goods and services, consultants and contracting.

DON: “department of neighborhoods.”

Immigrant and refugee access to services: (taken from the racial equity toolkit.) Government services and resources are easily available and understandable to all Seattle residents, including non-native English speakers. Full and active participation of immigrant and refugee communities exists in Seattle’s civic, economic and cultural life.

Inclusive outreach and public engagement: (taken from the racial equity toolkit.) Processes inclusive of people of diverse races, cultures, gender identities, sexual orientations and socio-economic status. Access to information, resources and civic processes so community members can effectively engage in the design and delivery of public services.

Individual racism: (taken from the racial equity toolkit.) Pre-judgment, bias, stereotypes about an individual or group based on race. The impacts of racism on individuals including white people internalizing privilege, and people of color internalizing oppression.

Institutional racism: (taken from the racial equity toolkit.) Organizational programs, policies or procedures that work to the benefit of white people and to the detriment of people of color, usually unintentionally or inadvertently.

OCR: “Office of Civil Rights.”

Opportunity areas: (taken from the racial equity toolkit.) One of seven issue areas the City of Seattle is working on in partnership with the community to eliminate racial disparities and create racial equity. They include: education, health, community development, criminal justice, jobs, housing, and the environment.

Racial equity: (taken from the racial equity toolkit.) When social, economic and political opportunities are not predicted based upon a person’s race.

Racial inequity: (taken from the racial equity toolkit.)
When a person’s race can predict their social, economic, and political opportunities and outcomes.

RET: “racial equity toolkit”

Seattle neighborhoods: (taken from the racial equity toolkit neighborhood.) Boundaries defined for the purpose of understanding geographic areas in Seattle.

Stakeholders: (taken from the racial equity toolkit.)
Those impacted by proposed policy, program, or budget issue who have potential concerns or issue expertise. Examples might include: specific racial/ethnic groups, other institutions like Seattle housing authority, schools, community-based organizations, change teams, City employees, unions, etc.

Structural racism: (taken from the racial equity toolkit.)
The interplay of policies, practices and programs of multiple institutions which leads to adverse outcomes and conditions for communities of color compared to white communities that occurs within the context of racialized historical and cultural conditions.

Surveillance Ordinance: Seattle City Council passed ordinance, also referred to as the “surveillance ordinance.”

SIR: “surveillance impact report”, a document which captures the fulfillment of the Council-defined surveillance technology review process, as required by ordinance [125376](#).

Workforce equity: (taken from the racial equity toolkit.) Ensure the City's workforce diversity reflects the diversity of Seattle.



Appendix B: Meeting Notice(s)



City Surveillance Technology Event

October 28th, 2020
12:00 p.m. – 1:00 p.m.
[Webex Online Event](#)

**Join us for a public meeting to comment on a few
of the City's surveillance technologies:**

Seattle Police Department

- Forward Looking Infrared Real-time Video (FLIR)
- Situational Awareness Cameras Without Recording
- Video Recording Systems

[WebEx Online Event](#)

Dial-in Info:
+1-408-418-9388
Access code: 146 533 4053

Can't join us online?

Visit <http://www.seattle.gov/surveillance> to leave an online comment or send your comment to **Surveillance and Privacy Program, Seattle IT, PO Box 94709, Seattle, WA 98124.**

The Open Comment period is from **October 7th – November 7th, 2020.**

Please let us know at Surveillance@seattle.gov if you need any accommodations. For more information, visit Seattle.gov/privacy.

Information provided to the City of Seattle is considered a public record and may be subject to public disclosure. For more information see the Public Records Act, RCW Chapter 42.56 or visit Seattle.gov/privacy. All comments submitted will be included in the Surveillance Impact Report.

Appendix C: All Comments Received from Members of the Public

ID: 12168954138

Submitted Through: Online Comment

Date: 11/13/2020 11:44:26 PM

Which surveillance technology that is currently open for public comment, do you wish to comment on?

SPD: Forward Looking Infrared Real-Time Video (FLIR)

What concerns, if any, do you have about the use of this technology?

The possible drift in usage in ambiguous situations, and how it might get triangulated with other technology like video recording. Apparent lack of clarity on data storage practices.

What value, if any, do you see in the use of this technology?

Finding people who are lost

What do you want City leadership to consider about the use of this technology?

Data governance. Setting clear, specific, easy to understand guidelines about use and storage of this information, and how that will get shared between SPD and KC Sheriff.

Do you have any other comments?

Please make sure that at public discussions where personnel are there to answer questions, that there's a subject matter expert present who can answer most general technical questions. That is more important than having an SPD officer present.

ID: 12167775924

Submitted Through: Online Comment

Date: 11/13/2020 11:05:58 AM

Which surveillance technology that is currently open for public comment, do you wish to comment on?

SPD: Forward Looking Infrared Real-Time Video (FLIR)

What concerns, if any, do you have about the use of this technology?

That this will be used to target Black people and protesters. It's expensive and that money is better used to feed, house, and clothe people in our city.

What value, if any, do you see in the use of this technology?

None at all.

What do you want City leadership to consider about the use of this technology?

Reject it.

Do you have any other comments?

Black Lives Matter.

ID: 12167464903

Submitted Through: Online Comment

Date: 11/13/2020 9:19:25 AM

Which surveillance technology that is currently open for public comment, do you wish to comment on?

SPD: Forward Looking Infrared Real-Time Video (FLIR)

What concerns, if any, do you have about the use of this technology?

Test

What value, if any, do you see in the use of this technology?

Test

What do you want City leadership to consider about the use of this technology?

Test

Do you have any other comments?

Test

ID: 12165148732

Submitted Through: Online Comment

Date: 11/12/2020 4:01:40 PM

Which surveillance technology that is currently open for public comment, do you wish to comment on?

SPD: Forward Looking Infrared Real-Time Video (FLIR)

What concerns, if any, do you have about the use of this technology?

I do not feel like SPD needs this technology nor do I think they will use it in a transparent way. There are considerable privacy concerns with the use of this technology.

What value, if any, do you see in the use of this technology?

I do not see any value in SPD having this technology.

What do you want City leadership to consider about the use of this technology?

I do not want this technology used in our city.

Do you have any other comments?

ID: 12164993335

Submitted Through: Online Comment

Date: 11/12/2020 3:03:42 PM

Which surveillance technology that is currently open for public comment, do you wish to comment on?

SPD: Forward Looking Infrared Real-Time Video (FLIR)

What concerns, if any, do you have about the use of this technology?

test

What value, if any, do you see in the use of this technology?

test

What do you want City leadership to consider about the use of this technology?

test

Do you have any other comments?

test

ID: 12164789404

Submitted Through: Online Comment

Date: 11/12/2020 1:56:19 PM

Which surveillance technology that is currently open for public comment, do you wish to comment on?

SPD: Forward Looking Infrared Real-Time Video (FLIR)

What concerns, if any, do you have about the use of this technology?

As of Nov. 12th, numerous questions from the public have not been answered by SPD and thus greatly hinder the ability for informed public comment. These questions include: (1) What are the registration/tail numbers for each helicopter? (2) In 2019 or 2020 did KCSO ASU have any additional helicopters? (3) Does only the Huey form Guardian Two and the other two Bell's form Guardian One? (4) How long does KCSO retain still images and recordings when assisting SPD? (5) Is SPD's Digital Evidence Management System (DEMS) a on-premise or Software-as-a-Service deployment? (6) Has SPD ever requested KCSO ASU services or obtained data from KCSO's helicopters and/or FLIR technology to surveil protesters? (7) What are the neighborhoods over which KCSO's helicopters have been deployed? (8) What other data gets combined by SPD with the ASU data (such as cellphone geolocations, social media monitoring/intel, other surveillance technologies on the City's Master List, etc.)? Additionally, SPD dodging some of these questions by directing the public to submit PRA requests (which have a 6-12 month turnaround time) and IT not stepping in point out that answers must be provided to the public before the public comment period closes, shows how little interest both SPD and IT truly have in an honest dialog with the public about surveillance technologies. Also, there are multiple gaps in the SPD manual that should be addressed either by modifications to SPD's manual and/or via ordinance. These gaps include: (1) SPD manual doesn't define a specific & restricted purpose of use of ASU (so largely the whim of an SPD officer and ASU availability). (2) SPD manual doesn't address ASU being used to surveil protesters and/or targeting historically over-policed communities/neighborhoods. (3) SPD manual doesn't address the privacy of unrelated members of the public, unsuspected of a crime, that may be surveilled with this technology or be in the recordings. (4) Lack of public oversight and accountability regarding SPD leveraging KCSO ASU. Not only should all of the above be addressed by also it's recommended that the City produce a publicly available annual report detailing use of KCSO ASU (how SPD used collected data, amount of data, data retention lengths & in what form, where it's stored, & neighborhoods deployed over). It should not take a PRA request for the public to have insight into SPD's use of surveillance tech/data.

What value, if any, do you see in the use of this technology?

Because this technology lacks any guardrails on its use and SPD/IT are withholding information from the public, one can only safely assume predominantly negative circumstances under which this technology has been used (otherwise SPD should desire to make public how great and upstanding their work has been); therefore the cons outweigh the pros and this technology does not provide any noticeable value to the public.

What do you want City leadership to consider about the use of this technology?

City leadership should be made aware of the information SPD/IT has withheld from the public. This information missing from the public includes: (1) What are the registration/tail numbers for each helicopter? (2) In 2019 or 2020 did KCSO ASU have any additional helicopters? (3) Does only the Huey form Guardian Two and the other two Bell's form Guardian One? (4) How long does KCSO retain still images and recordings when assisting SPD? (5) Is SPD's Digital Evidence Management System (DEMS) a on-premise or Software-as-aService deployment? (6) Has SPD ever requested KCSO ASU services or obtained data from KCSO's helicopters and/or FLIR technology to surveil protesters? (7) What are the neighborhoods over which KCSO's helicopters have been deployed? (8) What other data gets combined by SPD with the ASU data (such as cellphone geolocations, social media monitoring/intel, other surveillance technologies on the City's Master List, etc.)? City leadership should also be informed that SPD dodged some of these questions by directing the public to submit PRA requests (which have a 6-12 month turnaround time) and IT didn't step in to point out that answers must be provided to the public before the public comment period closes. City leadership should be encouraged to mandate (via SPD manual changes and/or ordinance) to address multiple gaps and add appropriate guardrails to the use of this technology. The current gaps include: (1) SPD manual doesn't define a specific & restricted purpose of use of ASU (so largely the whim of an SPD officer and ASU availability). (2) SPD manual doesn't address ASU being used to surveil protesters and/or targeting historically over-policed communities/neighborhoods. (3) SPD manual doesn't address the privacy of unrelated members of the public, unsuspected of a crime, that may be surveilled with this technology or be in the recordings. (4) Lack of public oversight and accountability regarding SPD leveraging KCSO ASU. City leadership should also be advised to mandate the City produce a publicly available annual report detailing use of KCSO ASU (how SPD used collected data, amount of data, data retention lengths & in what form, where it's stored, & neighborhoods deployed over). It should not take a PRA request for the public to have insight into SPD's use of surveillance tech/data. Without all of these guardrails being added, the technology should be permitted to be used. The risk to the public of over-surveillance is too great.

Do you have any other comments?

There are many areas of improvement by IT/Privacy-dept. regarding their public engagement process on surveillance technologies. Some of the more recent issues include: (1) Public

comment via SurveyMonkey was configured by IT such that a single user (browser session) could only submit public comment on 1 technology. The only way to submit public comment on all the technologies would be use a different browser or clear you browser's cookies/session data, which many less technical people wouldn't know to do. This actively impedes public comment. It is ensuring there is the least public comment possible. (2) The Privacy dept. calendar event for the Group 3 public engagement meeting didn't include the access code for phone-only users to dial-in (one had to know of and go to the TechTalk blog to get the access code). (3) Directions at public engagement meeting for providing verbal public comment were to raise hand in webex which clearly is not possible for phone-only users. (4) Public engagement truncated. CTO told City Council it would be 45 days. Instead IT used 30 days with a 1 week extension agreed to be added (so 37 days). (5) The Group 3 public engagement meeting recording (as of Nov. 12th) has not been posted publicly, so people unable to attend don't have access to the discussion/Q&A before the public comment period closes. (6) SPD has not provided answers before the public comment period closes. (7) SPD further dodged valid questions from the public by requiring PRA requests, which have zero hope of being addressed within the public comment period. (8) IT has repeatedly requested & attained (and in 1 case, just self-granted) time extensions for the Surveillance Ordinance process. When the public needs time for SPD to provide answers so as to provide informed public comment, now suddenly IT is on a tight time schedule and can't extend the public comment period. Additionally, IT/Privacy-dept. has repeatedly lamented the lack of public engagement, but have also taken no additional steps to rectify this for Group 3; and did not heed prior feedback from the CSWG regarding the engagement process. There are numerous steps IT/Privacy-dept. should take to improve public engagement. The recommendations to the CTO & CPO for Group 4 include: (1) Breaking the group into smaller groups. Group 4 on deck with 13 technologies: 2 re-visits of SFD tech, 3 types of undercover technologies, & 8 other technologies. (2) Allocating more time for open public comment: minimum of 2 weeks per each in scope tech (so Group 3 would be 42 days, and Group 4 would be 154 - 182 days). (3) Hold more public engagement meetings per Group - specifically the number of public engagement meetings should at a minimum match the number of technologies being considered for public comment (otherwise the meeting will run out of time before all the questions from the public can even be asked, which did happen with Group 3). (4) Require at the public engagement meetings both a Subject Matter Expert on the use of the technology AND a Subject Matter Expert on the technical management of the technology. There should be no excuse for most of the public's questions being unanswered by the City at these meetings. (5) Hold public engagement meetings that are accessible to marginalized communities most likely to have this technology used against them (such as, holding meetings at various times of day & weekends, having translators, etc). (6) Post online the recordings of all online public engagement meetings at least 1 week before the public comment period closes. (7) Require departments to provide answers to the public's questions at least 1 week before the public comment period closes. (8) Post public announcements for focus groups held by the City (9) Public engagement meetings and focus groups should have at least 1 outside civil liberties representative to present. (10) Publish to

the Privacy website in a more timely manner the CSWG meeting announcements and minutes. (11) Work with more City departments (not just Dept. of Neighborhoods) to foster engagement. (12) Work with more City boards and committees to foster engagement. (13) Provide at least 2 week lead time between announcing a public engagement meeting and the timing of that meeting occurring. (14) Provide early versions of drafts SIRs to the CSWG (as they requested more than once).

ID: 12161313635

Submitted Through: Online Comment

Date: 11/13/2020 11:03:49 AM

Which surveillance technology that is currently open for public comment, do you wish to comment on?

SPD: Forward Looking Infrared Real-Time Video (FLIR)

What concerns, if any, do you have about the use of this technology?

1

What value, if any, do you see in the use of this technology?

2

What do you want City leadership to consider about the use of this technology?

3

Do you have any other comments?

4

ID: 12128589537

Submitted Through: Online Comment

Date: 11/1/2020 6:58:29 AM

Which surveillance technology that is currently open for public comment, do you wish to comment on?

SPD: Forward Looking Infrared Real-Time Video (FLIR)

What concerns, if any, do you have about the use of this technology?

It is military weapons platform equipment and technology. They don't share with HLS Fusion? If not today, there is tomorrow.

What value, if any, do you see in the use of this technology?

Only for the further advancement of "Big Brother and to continue supporting paramilitariesing SPD and KCSD.

What do you want City leadership to consider about the use of this technology?

It is used for advanced and long range targeting.

Do you have any other comments?

Read the Voyuer RCW. Naked eye.

ID: 12125455624

Submitted Through: Online Comment

Date: 10/30/2020 12:34:17 PM

Which surveillance technology that is currently open for public comment, do you wish to comment on?

SPD: Forward Looking Infrared Real-Time Video (FLIR)

What concerns, if any, do you have about the use of this technology?

In section 4.2 of the full report, "The video is requested as evidence from King County and stored using existing video evidence storage policies including SPDPolicy 7.090." The scope of the data collected is broader than that associated with a request fo

What value, if any, do you see in the use of this technology?

What do you want City leadership to consider about the use of this technology?

City leadership should consider under what conditions this technology is in use and whether a warrant is needed to approve this. The City leadership should consider whether or not this constitutes "evidence." City leadership should consider all of the

Do you have any other comments?

ID: 12118975621

Submitted Through: Online Comment

Date: 10/28/2020 5:09:38 PM

Which surveillance technology that is currently open for public comment, do you wish to comment on?

SPD: Forward Looking Infrared Real-Time Video (FLIR)

What concerns, if any, do you have about the use of this technology?

This is a creepy tool to put in the hands of people who have already proven they can't be trusted with the tools they use. This shouldn't be a surveillance state. Our police shouldn't be able to monitor us from the air with technology that can see us when

What value, if any, do you see in the use of this technology?

None that isn't outweighed by putting dangerous surveillance tech in the hands of SPD.

What do you want City leadership to consider about the use of this technology?

Not using it.

Do you have any other comments?

Seattle City Council isn't the Communist Party of China. Don't act like it.

ID: 12118928781

Submitted Through: Online Comment

Date: 10/28/2020 4:50:49 PM

Which surveillance technology that is currently open for public comment, do you wish to comment on?

SPD: Forward Looking Infrared Real-Time Video (FLIR)

What concerns, if any, do you have about the use of this technology?

I have no concerns regarding its use.

What value, if any, do you see in the use of this technology?

What do you want City leadership to consider about the use of this technology?

Do you have any other comments?

ID: 12117873188

Submitted Through: Online Comment

Date: 10/28/2020 10:58:58 AM

Which surveillance technology that is currently open for public comment, do you wish to comment on?

SPD: Forward Looking Infrared Real-Time Video (FLIR)

What concerns, if any, do you have about the use of this technology?

I am concerned innocent bystanders privacy is violated with use of this surveillance.

What value, if any, do you see in the use of this technology?

None. This is major privacy violation.

What do you want City leadership to consider about the use of this technology?

Refuse.

Do you have any other comments?

The links to comment on proposed surveillance methods are difficult to find and if I didn't know any better, I'd say they're "hidden" purposefully.

ID: 12111684041

Submitted Through: Online Comment

Date: 10/26/2020 6:20:22 PM

Which surveillance technology that is currently open for public comment, do you wish to comment on?

SPD: Forward Looking Infrared Real-Time Video (FLIR)

What concerns, if any, do you have about the use of this technology?

I am concerned that a) this technology is or will be used against protesters exercising their first amendment rights to freedom of speech and assembly, that it will have a chilling effect on those rights, and create safety issues for protesters if informa

What value, if any, do you see in the use of this technology?

What do you want City leadership to consider about the use of this technology?

Do you have any other comments?

ID: 12111484053

Submitted Through: Online Comment

Date: 10/26/2020 4:52:50 PM

Which surveillance technology that is currently open for public comment, do you wish to comment on?

SPD: Forward Looking Infrared Real-Time Video (FLIR)

What concerns, if any, do you have about the use of this technology?

Every time I turn around, I see another article about how technology is deepening inequities. Increased surveillance is not the answer to our social ills--it will only deepen them.

What value, if any, do you see in the use of this technology?

None. We do not need more surveillance. There is enough already!

What do you want City leadership to consider about the use of this technology?

The social costs are potentially very deep, and far outweigh any savings in terms of police time or private property.

Do you have any other comments?

ID: 12103746854

Submitted Through: Online Comment

Date: 10/23/2020 9:02:47 AM

Which surveillance technology that is currently open for public comment, do you wish to comment on?

SPD: Forward Looking Infrared Real-Time Video (FLIR)

What concerns, if any, do you have about the use of this technology?

None

What value, if any, do you see in the use of this technology?

Assist in locating/tracking for a variety of reasons more efficiently in most any environment or condition

What do you want City leadership to consider about the use of this technology?

There should be oversight, rules and regulations regarding the use of this tool and subsequent data with accountability

Do you have any other comments?

Not at this time

ID: 12102858883

Submitted Through: Online Comment

Date: 10/23/2020 4:31:30 AM

Which surveillance technology that is currently open for public comment, do you wish to comment on?

SPD: Forward Looking Infrared Real-Time Video (FLIR)

What concerns, if any, do you have about the use of this technology?

Thermal Imaging will be abused to surveil, track, direct, and disrupt legal protest movements.

What value, if any, do you see in the use of this technology?

Thermal Imaging enables easier searching of victims in Search and Rescue.

What do you want City leadership to consider about the use of this technology?

Limit usage to casualty events or search and rescue. That's where it's totally positive.

Do you have any other comments?

ID: 12102022133

Submitted Through: Online Comment

Date: 10/22/2020 8:19:02 PM

Which surveillance technology that is currently open for public comment, do you wish to comment on?

SPD: Forward Looking Infrared Real-Time Video (FLIR)

What concerns, if any, do you have about the use of this technology?

This technology will not be used to keep anyone safe. Rather it will be used to surveil members of the public, specifically protestors, in order to arrest, attack, and harm them. SPD has already used tools at their disposable to brutalize protestors and B

What value, if any, do you see in the use of this technology?

There is no value to this technology.

What do you want City leadership to consider about the use of this technology?

There is no reason that residents of Seattle should be surveilled in this manner. This will only cause more harm. Do not authorize the use of this technology.

Do you have any other comments?

Do not authorize the use of this technology. If you do, more members of the public will be attested, injured, or killed by the police.

ID: 12101809731

Submitted Through: Online Comment

Date: 10/22/2020 6:10:30 PM

Which surveillance technology that is currently open for public comment, do you wish to comment on?

SPD: Forward Looking Infrared Real-Time Video (FLIR)

What concerns, if any, do you have about the use of this technology?

I don't think we can trust SPD to use this responsibly. They've proven that they will track down, harass, and persecute those who disagree with their tactics. It's a department full of white supremacists. We don't need to put this kind of technology into

What value, if any, do you see in the use of this technology?

While I want to think it would be helpful, I see none at this point, given that the SPD will use the technology. It really renders even considering value useless. Its value is negative to Seattle Citizens.

What do you want City leadership to consider about the use of this technology?

If there is any technology that the SPD can use to track people down, they will use it for hunting down black, brown, indigenous, and transgender people, as well as any other minority and marginalized groups that they can. There are obvious cases, on came

Do you have any other comments?

DEFUND THE SPD

ID: 12101790683

Submitted Through: Online Comment

Date: 10/22/2020 5:59:10 PM

Which surveillance technology that is currently open for public comment, do you wish to comment on?

SPD: Forward Looking Infrared Real-Time Video (FLIR)

What concerns, if any, do you have about the use of this technology?

This comment applies to all listed technologies. SPD is a deeply untrustworthy agency that has not proven their use of technology responsible. This technology will be used to repress citizens by an organization that has repeatedly proven their disdain for

What value, if any, do you see in the use of this technology?

None. This will purely be used to harm citizens and further the reach of out of control agency.

What do you want City leadership to consider about the use of this technology?

I want city leadership to know that this technology will only further erode the trust of the people in their city. SPD will use this technology irresponsibly as they have with SDOTs traffic cameras.

Do you have any other comments?

ID: 12101680822

Submitted Through: Online Comment

Date: 10/22/2020 5:06:33 PM

Which surveillance technology that is currently open for public comment, do you wish to comment on?

SPD: Forward Looking Infrared Real-Time Video (FLIR)

What concerns, if any, do you have about the use of this technology?

Please apply my comments to all surveillance tech listed here. SPD needs to be dismantled to all but officers needed for violent crime and to purge it of a culture of white supremacy. Their poor handling/escalation of force with recent protests means they

What value, if any, do you see in the use of this technology?

None. This equipment has no place in our community, especially with a police force as untrustworthy with equipment and citizen's safety as ours.

What do you want City leadership to consider about the use of this technology?

It will only be abused. Until SPD is torn down and non-violent crime services moved elsewhere we cannot continue to arm them with ever more advanced equipment.

Do you have any other comments?

I don't consider myself an activist but can't ignore the heinous and brazen behavior of SPD in recent months and don't want to see investment made in technology they'll surely use to further abuse citizens.

ID: 12101591052

Submitted Through: Online Comment

Date: 10/22/2020 4:28:31 PM

Which surveillance technology that is currently open for public comment, do you wish to comment on?

SPD: Forward Looking Infrared Real-Time Video (FLIR)

What concerns, if any, do you have about the use of this technology?

Are flashlights not good enough for SPD? I don't see a use case for the police to use FLIR where a regular light would not serve the same purpose. Seattle is not a war zone.

What value, if any, do you see in the use of this technology?

It's a great way to waste our money.

What do you want City leadership to consider about the use of this technology?

I don't want to live in a city where the police can surveil you and identify you anywhere at any time. I should be able to attend a protest or political meeting and not worry about extrajudicial police harassment. SPD has recently and repeatedly shown its

Do you have any other comments?

All of these are an incredible waste of money, especially when the rest of the city is looking at austerity.

ID: 12101428379

Submitted Through: Online Comment

Date: 10/22/2020 3:18:06 PM

Which surveillance technology that is currently open for public comment, do you wish to comment on?

SPD: Forward Looking Infrared Real-Time Video (FLIR)

What concerns, if any, do you have about the use of this technology?

Law enforcement has demonstrated a lack of regard for the fourth amendment and I do not think that expanding their power to record residents without a warrant is wise in any form.

What value, if any, do you see in the use of this technology?

None

What do you want City leadership to consider about the use of this technology?

Don't use it

Do you have any other comments?

ID: 12101367556

Submitted Through: Online Comment

Date: 10/22/2020 2:54:00 PM

Which surveillance technology that is currently open for public comment, do you wish to comment on?

SPD: Forward Looking Infrared Real-Time Video (FLIR)

What concerns, if any, do you have about the use of this technology?

None.

What value, if any, do you see in the use of this technology?

This will save officers lives and the lives of the public

What do you want City leadership to consider about the use of this technology?

Aloe the use of this technology. It will save lives.

Do you have any other comments?

Aloe the use of this technology. It will save lives.

ID: 12101215876

Submitted Through: Online Comment

Date: 10/22/2020 1:55:56 PM

Which surveillance technology that is currently open for public comment, do you wish to comment on?

SPD: Forward Looking Infrared Real-Time Video (FLIR)

What concerns, if any, do you have about the use of this technology?

Isn't this technology going to be used for the further suppression of protests against police brutality?

What value, if any, do you see in the use of this technology?

The SPD budget is already bloated and over funded

What do you want City leadership to consider about the use of this technology?

The money that would be used on these surveillance technologies should be going to housing and social services. Our city is in a homelessness crisis.

Do you have any other comments?

I'm disgusted to see the SPD doing the opposite of what the protest movement has demanded of them. We dont need more gadgets to increase policing we need more social services- what studies have proven ACTUALLY decrease crime and mortality

ID: 12101204854

Submitted Through: Online Comment

Date: 10/22/2020 1:51:35 PM

Which surveillance technology that is currently open for public comment, do you wish to comment on?

SPD: Forward Looking Infrared Real-Time Video (FLIR)

What concerns, if any, do you have about the use of this technology?

Why does the Seattle Police Department feel the need to use military surveillance equipment on its domestic population?

What value, if any, do you see in the use of this technology?

None, disgusting

What do you want City leadership to consider about the use of this technology?

I would like City leadership to consider why they feel it is appropriate to arm our police force to the teeth like its own small paramilitary group

Do you have any other comments?

Abolish the Seattle Police Department, remove Jenny Durkan from office

ID: 12101046061

Submitted Through: Online Comment

Date: 10/22/2020 12:58:06 PM

Which surveillance technology that is currently open for public comment, do you wish to comment on?

SPD: Forward Looking Infrared Real-Time Video (FLIR)

What concerns, if any, do you have about the use of this technology?

No matter what you say in response to public comment, we know you're just using this to help oppress citizens and protesters. Come on.

What value, if any, do you see in the use of this technology?

None

What do you want City leadership to consider about the use of this technology?

Abandon it.

Do you have any other comments?

You are the villains you grew up hoping to never be.

ID: 12101028005

Submitted Through: Online Comment

Date: 10/22/2020 12:52:28 PM

Which surveillance technology that is currently open for public comment, do you wish to comment on?

SPD: Forward Looking Infrared Real-Time Video (FLIR)

What concerns, if any, do you have about the use of this technology?

Citizens under the 4th amendment have a right to privacy. You're surveiling citizens with a presumption that they are guilty and don't deserve that right. It's not okay.

What value, if any, do you see in the use of this technology?

None. Literally none.

What do you want City leadership to consider about the use of this technology?

I want them to not implement it and not allow our police to use any type of technology that infringes on our inalienable rights as Americans.

Do you have any other comments?

Defund SPD should also include their technologies used for spying on citizens.

Appendix D: Letters from Organizations or Commissions

November 6, 2020

Seattle Information Technology
700 5th Ave, Suite 2700
Seattle, WA 98104

RE: ACLU of Washington Comments on Group 3 Surveillance Technologies

On behalf of the ACLU of Washington, I write to offer our comments on the surveillance technologies included in Group 3 of the Seattle Surveillance Ordinance implementation process.

The three Seattle Police Department (SPD) technologies in Group 3 are covered in the following order:

1. Forward Looking Infrared – King County Sheriff's Office Helicopters
2. Video Recording Systems
3. Situational Awareness Cameras Without Recording

These comments should be considered preliminary, given that the Surveillance Impact Reports (SIR) for each technology leave a number of important questions unanswered. Specific unanswered questions for each technology are noted in the comments relating to that technology. Answers to these questions should be included in the updated SIRs provided to the Community Surveillance Working Group and to the City Council prior to their review of the technologies.

Forward Looking Infrared - KCSO Helicopters

Background

Forward Looking Infrared (FLIR) is a powerful thermal imaging surveillance technology that raises a number of privacy and civil liberties concerns because of its ability to enable dragnet surveillance of individuals in public as well as in private spaces.

FLIR cameras sense infrared radiation to create images assembled for real-time video output. This technology detects small differences in heat, or emitted thermal energy, and displays them as shades of gray or with different colors. Because all objects emit different amounts of thermal energy, FLIR cameras are able to detect temperature differences and translate them into images.¹

Advanced thermal imaging systems like FLIR allow governments to increase their surveillance capabilities. Like any device used for surveillance, government agents may use it inappropriately to gather information on people based on their race, religion, or political views. While thermal imaging devices cannot “see” through

¹ ACLU of Washington, *Thermal Imaging Surveillance*, [THEYAREWATCHING.ORG](https://theyarewatching.org/technology/thermal-imaging-surveillance), <https://theyarewatching.org/technology/thermal-imaging-surveillance> (last visited Nov. 5, 2020).



P. O. Box 2728
Seattle, WA 98111-2728
(206) 624-2184
aclu-wa.org

Tana Lin
Board President

Michele Stormo
Executive Director

walls, pointing a thermal camera at a building can still reveal sensitive information about what is happening inside. Drug detectives often use these devices to identify possible marijuana growers by looking for heat consistent with grow lights.² Furthermore, privacy and civil liberties concerns with FLIR are magnified when FLIR is used in conjunction with other powerful surveillance tools such as facial recognition and drones.

The Seattle Police Department (SPD) uses three King County Sheriff's Office helicopters that are equipped with FLIR technology as well as 30-million candlepower "Night Sun" searchlights, Pro Net and LoJack radio tracking receivers, still and video cameras, and communications equipment for communicating with local, state, and federal law and firefighting agencies on their frequencies. SPD can use FLIR technology and these helicopters to monitor human beings (whose body temperatures are fairly consistent) through clouds, haze, and darkness.

There are serious concerns with SPD's use of KCSO's helicopters as described in the SIR. The policies attached in the SIR do not include purpose limitations, adequate privacy and security protections, or restrictions on use. The SIR also does not specify how long KCSO retains still images and recordings attained when assisting SPD, or whether SPD's Digital Evidence Management System (DEMS) is an on-premise or a Software-as-a-Service (SaaS) deployment.

At the public engagement meeting held on October 28, 2020,³ SPD officers were asked if SPD had ever used KCSO helicopters or FLIR technology for the purpose of surveilling protesters and if SPD had any policies prohibiting use of these technologies for protester surveillance. The officers were also asked over which neighborhoods the helicopters had been deployed, given that the SIR states that in 2018, Guardian One was deployed 45 times to SPD events. For both questions, SPD officers declined to answer and told the public to submit public records requests. However, because SPD's Public Records Act request portal states that the minimum response timeline is in excess of 6-12 months, members of the public would not be able to receive answers to these questions in time to submit public comments on these technologies.

Given the lack of adequate policies in the SIR and the number of unanswered questions that remain, we have concerns that SPD's use of KCSO's helicopters and FLIR technology may infringe upon people's civil rights and civil liberties. KCSO's FLIR-equipped helicopters may be used to disproportionately surveil historically targeted communities, individuals exercising their constitutionally protected right to protest, or people just going about their lives.

Specific Concerns

² In the 2001 case *Kyllo v. United States*, the U.S. Supreme Court ruled that federal agents violated the Fourth Amendment when they used a thermal imaging device to detect marijuana plants growing inside a home.

³ Seattle Police Department, *Surveillance Technology Public Comment Meeting*, CITY OF SEATTLE (Oct. 28, 2020), <https://www.seattle.gov/Documents/Departments/Tech/Privacy/Group%203%20Presentation.pdf>.

- **There are inadequate policies defining purpose of use.** The policies cited in the SIR do not impose meaningful restrictions on the purpose for which SPD may request that KCSO helicopters and FLIR technology be used. Policy 16.060 – King County Sheriff’s Office Air Support Unit⁴ simply states that “Guardian One offers air support for patrol and specialized missions” and that “Guardian Two offers air support for special operations such as search and rescue (SAR) and tactical missions.” This policy only describes the process by which SPD may request support from KCSO’s air support unit but does not state the specific purposes for which SPD may or may not request support. Section 4.9 of the SIR⁵ states that SPD may request video from KCSO’s Air Unit “[w]hen necessary and pertinent to a specific investigation” but does not specify the types of investigations for which SPD may request data from KCSO or how it is determined if such data is necessary and pertinent. Policy 6.060 – Collection of Information for Law Enforcement Purposes⁶ states that “Information will be gathered and recorded in a manner that does not unreasonably infringe upon: individual rights, liberties, and freedoms guaranteed by the Constitution of the United States and the State of Washington” and Policy 5.140 – Bias-Free Policing states that “officers will not engage in bias-based policing.”⁷ However, SPD’s answers at the October 28 public engagement meeting do not make clear whether and how SPD prohibits use of KCSO helicopters to engage in surveillance of protesters or biased policing. Section 1.4.2 of the Racial Equity Toolkit (RET) section of the SIR specifically asks: “How are decisions made where the technology is used or deployed? How does the Department work to ensure diverse neighborhoods are not specifically targeted?”⁸ The response from SPD directs attention to SPD Policy 16.060, which does not provide adequate purpose limitations.
- **There are inadequate policies restricting data collection.** The policies cited in the SIR do not place any restrictions on the amount or types of data SPD may request from KCSO. At the October 28 public engagement meeting, SPD officers did not answer whether or how SPD places time or geographic limitations on the data it may request from KCSO.

⁴ Seattle Police Department, *Seattle Police Department Manual: 16.060 - King County Sheriff’s Office Air Support Unit*, CITY OF SEATTLE (Mar. 1, 2016), <http://www.seattle.gov/police-manual/title-16---patrol-operations/16060---king-county-sheriffs-office-air-support-unit>.

⁵ Seattle Police Department, *2020 Surveillance Impact Report: Forward Looking Infrared Real-Time Video (FLIR) (KCSO Helicopters)*, CITY OF SEATTLE, at 12, http://www.seattle.gov/Documents/Departments/Tech/Privacy/FLIR%20-%20KCSO%20Helicopters%20Public_Engagement%20SIR.pdf (last visited Nov. 5, 2020).

⁶ Seattle Police Department, *Seattle Police Department Manual: 6.060 - Collection of Information for Law Enforcement Purposes*, CITY OF SEATTLE (May 19, 2004), <http://www.seattle.gov/police-manual/title-6---arrests-search-and-seizure/6060---collection-of-information-for-law-enforcement-purposes>.

⁷ Seattle Police Department, *Seattle Police Department Manual: 5.140 - Bias-Free Policing*, CITY OF SEATTLE (Aug. 1, 2019), <http://www.seattle.gov/police-manual/title-5---employee-conduct/5140---bias-free-policing>.

⁸ *2020 Impact Report: Infrared Video*, supra note 5, at 23.

- **It is unclear if and how SPD protects the privacy of individuals unrelated to an investigation.** The SIR does not include any policies regarding how it redacts or deletes information. At the October 28 public engagement meeting, SPD officers did not provide an answer to the question of whether and how it redacts or deletes information collected that may compromise the privacy of individuals unrelated to an investigation.
- **It is unclear how data collected are stored and protected.** SPD stated at the October 28 public engagement meeting that it is unaware of how long KCSO retains still images and recordings obtained when assisting SPD. While SPD officers stated that SPD stores video requested from KCSO in its Digital Evidence Management System (DEMS)—not Evidence.com, this is not made clear within the SIR. Additionally, SPD officers did not answer whether SPD’s DEMS is on on-premise or Software-as-a-Service (SaaS) deployment.
- **The SIR does not provide the dates and neighborhoods over which KCSO helicopters and FLIR technology have been deployed.** Though the SIR states that there have been 45 deployments of Guardian One to support SPD in 2018, the SIR does not include an analysis of the locations of those deployments.⁹ Additionally, during the October 28 public engagement meeting, SPD declined to state the neighborhoods over which the helicopters had been deployed. It is important that SPD include this information in the Racial Equity Toolkit section of the final SIR in order to address the following questions in Section 1.4.2: “How are decisions made where the technology is used or deployed? How does the Department work to ensure diverse neighborhoods are not specifically targeted?”¹⁰

Outstanding Questions

- What are the registration and/or tail numbers for each helicopter?
- In 2019 and 2020, did the KCSO Air Support Unit have any additional helicopters aside from the three listed in the SIR?
- How long does KCSO retain still images and recordings attained when assisting SPD?
- Is SPD’s Digital Evidence Management System (DEMS) an on-premise deployment or is it Software-as-a-Service?
- Has SPD ever requested KCSO ASU services or obtained data from KCSO’s helicopters and/or FLIR technology to surveil protesters?
- What are the neighborhoods over which KCSO’s helicopters have been deployed?

Recommendations for Regulation

At this stage, pending answers to the questions above, we can make only preliminary recommendations for the regulation of SPD’s use of KCSO’s helicopters and FLIR technology. We recommend that the Council adopt, via ordinance, at a minimum, clear and enforceable rules that ensure the following:

⁹ *Id.* at 9.

¹⁰ *Id.* at 23.

- **SPD must abide by a specific and restricted purpose of use:** The ordinance should define a specific purpose of use for KCSO's helicopters and FLIR technology, and any SPD use of KCSO's helicopters and FLIR technology and data collected with these technologies must be restricted to that specific purpose.
- **SPD must adopt processes to ensure it is not targeting diverse neighborhoods.** The ordinance should prohibit SPD from using KCSO's helicopters and FLIR technology to disproportionately surveil communities of color and other historically over-policed communities.
- **SPD must protect the privacy of individuals unrelated to a specific search or investigation.** The ordinance should require SPD to redact or delete information collected that may compromise the privacy of individuals not related to a specific search or investigation, restricted by the purpose of use.
- **SPD must produce a publicly available annual report detailing its use of KCSO helicopters and FLIR technology.** The ordinance should require that SPD produce an annual report including details on how SPD used the data collected, the amount of data collected, for how long data were retained and in what form, where the data are stored, and the neighborhoods over which KCSO helicopters and/or FLIR technology were deployed.

Video Recording Systems

Background

SPD uses two cameras systems to record and/or monitor members of the public within SPD interview rooms, Blood Alcohol Collection (BAC) rooms, and precinct holding cells: Genetec Video Management System and Milestone Systems XProtect Video Management Software and Products.

Genetec Video Management System is a permanently installed system primarily used to record in-person interactions and interviews with crime victims, witnesses, and suspects in seven designated interview rooms located at the SPD headquarters in the Seattle Justice Center. This system is used to create a video record of interviews for the purposes of use in criminal justice proceedings. Milestone Systems XProtect Video Management Software and Products is a permanently installed system in SPD's Blood Alcohol Collection (BAC) rooms and precinct holding cells. They record continuously all activity in those locations.¹¹

SPD's use of these video recording systems can pose threats to people's privacy and civil liberties if used without adequate safeguards. The SIR does not provide adequate purpose limitations regarding SPD's use of these technologies, does not include full details of the capabilities of these systems, and does not adequately specify technical and procedural safeguards to prevent improper viewing.

¹¹ Seattle Police Department, *2020 Surveillance Impact Report: Video Recording Systems (Interview, Blood-Alcohol Collection Room, and Precinct Holding Cell Audio)*, CITY OF SEATTLE, at 4, https://www.seattle.gov/Documents/Departments/Tech/Privacy/Video%20Recording%20Systems%20Public_Engagement%20SIR.pdf (last visited Nov. 5, 2020).

collection, or storage of the images or video footage.

Specific Concerns

- **There are inadequate policies defining purpose of use.** Section 4.9 of the SIR asks, “What are acceptable reasons for access to the equipment and/or data collected?”¹² The response does not specifically detail how and for what purpose the equipment and/or data collected from the equipment may be used.
- **The capabilities of the Genetec and Milestone systems are unclear.** SPD does not provide links or attachments providing specific details about either of the systems they use. Both Genetec¹³ and Milestone¹⁴ advertise facial recognition systems that may be integrated with its video management systems.
- **It is unclear how data are collected, stored, and protected.** The SIR does not make clear whether SPD stores the data they receive in the Digital Evidence Management System or Evidence.com, a cloud-based digital evidence platform owned by Axon. The SIR simply references SPD policy 7.110 – Recorded Statements, which states that data may be uploaded to the Digital Evidence Management System (DEMS) or Evidence.com.¹⁵ Additionally, the SIR does not include information about the security practices SPD follows to protect the privacy of members of the public who are recorded by the Genetec and Milestone video management systems. Finally, the SIR does not specify who has permission to modify the pan, tilt, and/or zoom of the cameras.

Outstanding Questions

- Does SPD use a Genetec or Milestone partner add-on that enables facial recognition or other biometric data collection/identification?
- How are firmware/software updates applied to the Genetec systems?
- What security practices does SPD follow?
- Where does the SPD Evidence Section store the Genetec-generated recordings and Milestone recordings they receive?
- For both the Genetec and Milestone systems, who has permission to modify the pan, tilt, and/or zoom of the cameras?

¹² *Id.* at 12.

¹³ *Security Center Omnicast IP video surveillance*, GENETEC, <https://resources.genetec.com/video-modules-and-add-ons/omnicast-ip-video-surveillance> (last visited Nov. 5, 2020).

¹⁴ *Dahua Face Recognition Plugin for Milestone VMS*, MILESTONE, <https://www.milestonesys.com/marketplace/zhejiang-dahua-technology-co.-ltd/dahua-face-recognition-plugin-for-milestone-vms/> (last visited Nov. 5, 2020); *Id-Guard Face Recognition Plugin*, MILESTONE, <https://www.milestonesys.com/marketplace/ll-recfaces/id-guard-face-recognition-plugin/> (Nov. 5, 2020).

¹⁵ Seattle Police Department, *Seattle Police Department Manual: 7.110 - Recorded Statements*, CITY OF SEATTLE (Oct. 1, 2020), <https://www.seattle.gov/police-manual/title-7---evidence-and-property/7110---recorded-statements>.

Recommendations for Regulation

At this stage, pending answers to the questions above, we can make only preliminary recommendations for the regulation of SPD's use of video recording systems. We recommend that the Council adopt, via ordinance, at a minimum, clear and enforceable rules that ensure the following:

- **SPD must abide by a specific and restricted purpose of use:** The ordinance should define a specific purpose of use for any video recording systems used by SPD, and any use must be restricted to that specific purpose.
- **SPD must not use any video recording systems that have capabilities beyond what is strictly necessary to fulfill the purpose of use (e.g., recording custodial interrogations).** The ordinance should prohibit incorporating additional services such as facial recognition systems with the video recording systems.

Situational Awareness Cameras Without Recording

Background

SPD uses four types of portable cameras to observe both public and private areas during tactical operations. The four types of cameras and their vendors are:

- Robot-mounted cameras – RoboteX
- Pole-mounted cameras – Tactical Electronics & Smith and Wesson
- Placeable cameras – Remington & Tactical Electronics
- Throwable cameras – Remington & Tactical Electronics¹⁶

SPD's use of these situational awareness cameras can pose threats to people's privacy and civil liberties if used without adequate safeguards. The SIR does not provide adequate purpose limitations regarding SPD's use of these technologies, does not include full details of the capabilities of the cameras, and does not adequately specify technical and procedural safeguards to prevent improper viewing, collection, or storage of the images or video footage.

Specific Concerns

- **There are inadequate policies defining purpose of use.** Section 4.9 of the SIR asks, "What are acceptable reasons for access to the equipment and/or data collected?" The response states: "The decision to use situational awareness cameras is made on a case-by-case basis. These devices allow officers to monitor a subject or watch situation from a position of safety and distance. Absent exigent circumstances, a signed warrant is obtained prior to the use of this technology in any protected area."¹⁷ This response does not

¹⁶ Seattle Police Department, *2020 Surveillance Impact Report: Situational Awareness Cameras Without Recording*, CITY OF SEATTLE, at 5, https://www.seattle.gov/Documents/Departments/Tech/Privacy/Situational%20Awareness%20Cameras%20Public_Engagement%20SIR.pdf (last visited Nov. 5, 2020).

¹⁷ *Id.* at 8.

provide a clear and limited purpose for which this technology may or may not be used. While SPD's response states that a warrant is obtained prior to use of the cameras in protected areas, such as inside a home, it does not state the specific purposes for which SPD may or may not use the cameras without a warrant.

- **The capabilities of the situational awareness cameras are unclear.** The SIR does not provide manuals or the complete model names and/or numbers of each of the camera technologies. During the October 28 public engagement meeting, SPD stated that their situational awareness cameras do not support recording. However, the vendor websites advertise situational awareness cameras that do support recording. For example, the Tactical Electronics Core Monitor,¹⁸ Pole Camera,¹⁹ and Under Door Camera²⁰ can either take photos, record video, and/or record audio.
- **It is unclear what technical and procedural safeguards are in place to prevent the improper viewing, collection, and storage of images.** During the October 28 public engagement meeting, SPD stated that there is no way that images, video, or audio footage could be collected and stored. In order to verify that information, SPD must provide detailed information about the technologies it uses as stated above. Additionally, even if the cameras themselves cannot record footage, it is unclear if there are policies and procedures in place to prevent live-streamed situational camera footage from being recorded via a different device.

Outstanding Questions

- What are the complete model names/numbers for each of the equipment in scope for the Situational Awareness Cameras?
- What technical safeguards are in place to prevent the storage/retention of images?
- 7.3 of Situational Awareness Cameras SIR states "[the SWAT Unit] have mitigated the risk of improper viewing of the protected areas." How specifically have they mitigated the risk?
- What (if any) sections of the SPD Manual specifically cover the use of these technologies by SWAT?

Recommendations for Regulation

At this stage, pending answers to the questions above, we can only make preliminary recommendations for the regulation of SPD's use of situational awareness cameras. We recommend that the Council adopt, via ordinance, at a minimum, clear and enforceable rules that ensure the following:

¹⁸ *Core Monitor*, TACTICAL ELEC., <https://www.tacticalelectronics.com/product/core-monitor/> (last visited Nov. 5, 2020).

¹⁹ *Core Pole Camera*, TACTICAL ELEC., <https://www.tacticalelectronics.com/product/core-pole-camera/> (last visited Nov. 5, 2020).

²⁰ *Core Under Door Camera*, TACTICAL ELEC., <https://www.tacticalelectronics.com/product/core-under-door-camera/> (last visited Nov. 5, 2020).

- **SPD must abide by a specific and restricted purpose of use:** The ordinance should define a specific purpose of use for situational awareness cameras used by SPD, and any use must be restricted to that specific purpose.
- **SPD must not use any situational awareness cameras that have capabilities beyond what is strictly necessary to fulfill the purpose of use defined by the ordinance.** The ordinance should prohibit SPD from using cameras that have facial recognition or recording capabilities.
- **SPD must adopt technical and procedural safeguards to prevent misuse of the situational awareness cameras.** The ordinance should require SPD adopt safeguards that prevent use of the cameras or the footage streamed from the cameras for purposes beyond what is defined in the ordinance.

Thank you for your consideration of our comments and for facilitating this public review process.

Sincerely,

Jennifer Lee
Technology and Liberty Project Manager

Appendix E: CTO Notification of Surveillance Technology

Thank you for your department's efforts to comply with the new Surveillance Ordinance, including a review of your existing technologies to determine which may be subject to the Ordinance. I recognize this was a significant investment of time by your staff; their efforts are helping to build Council and public trust in how the City collects and uses data.

As required by the Ordinance (SMC 14.18.020.D), this is formal notice that the technologies listed below will require review and approval by City Council to remain in use. This list was determined through a process outlined in the Ordinance and was submitted at the end of last year for review to the Mayor's Office and City Council.

The first technology on the list below must be submitted for review by March 31, 2018, with one additional technology submitted for review at the end of each month after that. The City's Privacy Team has been tasked with assisting you and your staff with the completion of this process and has already begun working with your designated department team members to provide direction about the Surveillance Impact Report completion process.

Please let me know if you have any questions.

Thank you,

Michael Mattmiller

Chief Technology Officer

Technology	Description	Proposed Review Order
Automated License Plate Recognition (ALPR)	ALPRs are computer-controlled, high-speed camera systems mounted on parking enforcement or police vehicles that automatically capture an image of license plates that come into view and converts the image of the license plate into alphanumeric data that can be used to locate vehicles reported stolen or otherwise sought for public safety purposes and to enforce parking restrictions.	1
Booking Photo Comparison Software (BPCS)	BCPS is used in situations where a picture of a suspected criminal, such as a burglar or convenience store robber, is taken by a camera. The still screenshot is entered into BPCS, which runs an algorithm to compare it to King County Jail booking photos to identify the person in the picture to further investigate his or her involvement in the crime. Use of BPCS is governed by SPD Manual §12.045 .	2
Forward Looking Infrared Real-time video (FLIR)	Two King County Sheriff’s Office helicopters with Forward Looking Infrared (FLIR) send a real-time microwave video downlink of ongoing events to commanders and other decision-makers on the ground, facilitating specialized radio tracking equipment to locate bank robbery suspects and provides a platform for aerial photography and digital video of large outdoor locations (e.g., crime scenes and disaster damage, etc.).	3

Technology	Description	Proposed Review Order
<p>Undercover/ Technologies</p>	<p>The following groups of technologies are used to conduct sensitive investigations and should be reviewed together.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Audio recording devices: A hidden microphone to audio record individuals without their knowledge. The microphone is either not visible to the subject being recorded or is disguised as another object. Used with search warrant or signed Authorization to Intercept (RCW 9A.73.200). • Camera systems: A hidden camera used to record people without their knowledge. The camera is either not visible to the subject being filmed or is disguised as another object. Used with consent, a search warrant (when the area captured by the camera is not in plain view of the public), or with specific and articulable facts that a person has or is about to be engaged in a criminal activity and the camera captures only areas in plain view of the public. • Tracking devices: A hidden tracking device carried by a moving vehicle or person that uses the Global Positioning System to determine and track the precise location. U.S. Supreme Court v. Jones mandated that these must have consent or a search warrant to be used. 	<p>4</p>
<p>Computer-Aided Dispatch (CAD)</p>	<p>CAD is used to initiate public safety calls for service, dispatch, and to maintain the status of responding resources in the field. It is used by 911 dispatchers as well as by officers using mobile data terminals (MDTs) in the field.</p>	<p>5</p>

Technology	Description	Proposed Review Order
CopLogic	System allowing individuals to submit police reports on-line for certain low-level crimes in non-emergency situations where there are no known suspects or information about the crime that can be followed up on. Use is opt-in, but individuals may enter personally-identifying information about third-parties without providing notice to those individuals.	6
Hostage Negotiation Throw Phone	A set of recording and tracking technologies contained in a phone that is used in hostage negotiation situations to facilitate communications.	7
Remotely Operated Vehicles (ROVs)	These are SPD non-recording ROVs/robots used by Arson/Bomb Unit to safely approach suspected explosives, by Harbor Unit to detect drowning victims, vehicles, or other submerged items, and by SWAT in tactical situations to assess dangerous situations from a safe, remote location.	8
911 Logging Recorder	System providing networked access to the logged telephony and radio voice recordings of the 911 center.	9
Computer, cellphone and mobile device extraction tools	Forensics tool used with consent of phone/device owner or pursuant to a warrant to acquire, decode, and analyze data from smartphones, tablets, portable GPS device, desktop and laptop computers.	10
Video Recording Systems	These systems are to record events that take place in a Blood Alcohol Concentration (BAC) Room, holding cells, interview, lineup, and polygraph rooms recording systems.	11
Washington State Patrol (WSP) Aircraft	Provides statewide aerial enforcement, rapid response, airborne assessments of incidents, and transportation services in support of the Patrol's public safety mission. WSP Aviation currently manages seven aircraft equipped with FLIR cameras. SPD requests support as needed from WSP aircraft.	12

Technology	Description	Proposed Review Order
Washington State Patrol (WSP) Drones	WSP has begun using drones for surveying traffic collision sites to expedite incident investigation and facilitate a return to normal traffic flow. SPD may then request assistance documenting crash sites from WSP.	13
Callyo	This software may be installed on an officer’s cell phone to allow them to record the audio from phone communications between law enforcement and suspects. Callyo may be used with consent or search warrant.	14
I2 iBase	The I2 iBase crime analysis tool allows for configuring, capturing, controlling, analyzing and displaying complex information and relationships in link and entity data. iBase is both a database application, as well as a modeling and analysis tool. It uses data pulled from SPD’s existing systems for modeling and analysis.	15
Parking Enforcement Systems	Several applications are linked together to comprise the enforcement system and used with ALPR for issuing parking citations. This is in support of enforcing the Scofflaw Ordinance SMC 11.35 .	16
Situational Awareness Cameras Without Recording	Non-recording cameras that allow officers to observe around corners or other areas during tactical operations where officers need to see the situation before entering a building, floor or room. These may be rolled, tossed, lowered or throw into an area, attached to a hand-held pole and extended around a corner or into an area. Smaller cameras may be rolled under a doorway. The cameras contain wireless transmitters that convey images to officers.	17
Crash Data Retrieval	Tool that allows a Collision Reconstructionist investigating vehicle crashes the opportunity to image data stored in the vehicle’s airbag control module. This is done for a vehicle that has been in a crash and is used with consent or search warrant.	18

Technology	Description	Proposed Review Order
Maltego	An interactive data mining tool that renders graphs for link analysis. The tool is used in online investigations for finding relationships between pieces of information from various sources located on the internet.	19

Please let me know if you have any questions.

Thank you,

Michael

Forward Looking Infrared Real-Time Video (FLIR)

(KCSO Helicopters)

Seattle Police Department

Overview

The Operational Policy statements in this document represent the only allowable uses of the equipment and data collected by this technology.

This Executive Overview documents information about the collection, use, sharing, security and access controls for data that is gathered through Seattle Police Department's use of King County Sheriff's Office Helicopters featuring Forward Looking Infrared Real-Time Video (FLIR) technology. All information provided here is contained in the body of the full Surveillance Impact Review (SIR) document but is provided in a condensed format for easier access and consideration.

1.0 Technology Description

The King County Sheriff's Air Support Unit is the only full-time rotary-wing law enforcement aviation unit in Washington State. Three separate helicopters, one Bell 206B3 helicopter, one UH-1H "Huey," and one Bell 407, operate as Guardian One and Guardian Two. The capabilities of these aircraft include: forward looking infrared cameras (FLIR), 30-million candlepower "Night Sun" searchlights, Pro Net and LoJack radio tracking receivers, still and video cameras, and communications equipment for communicating with local, state, and federal law and firefighting agencies on their frequencies.

The aerial vantage point created by the use of helicopters helps trained law enforcement personnel provide enhanced vision to locate and track the movement of crime suspects and disaster victims. The forward looking infrared (FLIR) camera technology housed within the Guardian One and Guardian Two helicopters provides a further enhanced picture of incident scenes by layering heat signatures of individuals and objects on top of the aerial video. The FLIR technology allows for subjects to be detected even when obscured by clouds, haze, or darkness.

Aerial video and infrared technology are tools that may be perceived as invasive to an individual's privacy, as they may be recorded without their knowledge or consent. SPD policy mitigates against the potential for inappropriate use. [SPD Policy 6.060 - Collection of Information for Law Enforcement Purposes](#) defines the way information will be gathered and recorded in a manner that does not unreasonably infringe upon: individual rights, liberties, and freedoms guaranteed by the Constitution of the United States and the State of Washington, including freedom of speech, press, association, and assembly; liberty of conscience; the exercise of religion.

2.0 Purpose

Operational Policy: The KCSO Helicopters and onboard FLIR technology respond only to SPD emergency events in which the KCSA Air Unit deems air support is beneficial. SPD only receives and accesses information from the KCSO helicopters that is relevant to the incidents to which Guardian One or Guardian Two have responded. The video is requested as evidence from King County and stored using existing video evidence storage policies including [SPD Policy 7.090 – Photographic Evidence](#).

[SPD Policy 16.060 - King County Sheriff's Office Air Support Unit](#) governs the procedures and protocols associated with assistance of the KCSO ASU

The Guardian One and Guardian Two helicopters provide critical assistance to SPD units on the ground during incidents. The benefits include rapid response to crime or disaster scenes and give law enforcement personnel an enhanced bird's eye view of the situation. "At normal patrol speeds and altitudes, a helicopter can keep an object in view on the ground ten times longer than a ground officer moving at normal street patrol speeds."¹ While conventional night vision technology does augment the user's ability to locate subjects by enhancing visible light, FLIR systems are more effective because they provide images using the heat emitted by subjects and objects.

3.0 Data Collection and Use

Operational Policy: Recordings made by Guardian helicopters associated with SPD calls for service are regularly requested as video evidence from the King County Sheriff's Office, including FLIR video is needed for evidentiary or investigative purposes. These recordings are provided by the KCSO on high quality evidence-grade DVD. [SPD Policy 7.010](#) governs the submission of evidence and requires that all collected evidence be documented in a GO Report. Per [SPD Policy 7.090 – Photographic Evidence](#), all video evidence not produced by SPD employees is submitted to the SPD Evidence Unit.

The only information relayed to SPD during the Unit operation is radio transmission from the Air Support Unit. Though the KCSO helicopters have a real-time microwave video downlink capable of transmitting video of ongoing events to units on the ground, SPD does not utilize this function. Recordings made by Guardian helicopters associated with SPD calls for service are regularly requested as video evidence from the King County Sheriff's Office, including FLIR video is needed for evidentiary or investigative purposes. These recordings are provided by the KCSO on high quality evidence-grade DVD. [SPD Policy 7.010](#) governs the submission of evidence and requires that all collected evidence be documented in a GO Report. Per [SPD Policy 7.090 – Photographic Evidence](#), all video evidence not produced by SPD employees is submitted to the SPD Evidence Unit. The SPD Evidence Unit stores the video in the Digital Evidence Management System (DEMS). The King County Sheriff's Office Air Support Unit does record audio and video of their operations and occasionally does release these recordings to the public, including video posted on their [YouTube channel](#).

4.0 Data Minimization & Retention

Operational Policy: SPD only receives and accesses information from the KCSO helicopters that is relevant to the incidents to which Guardian One or Guardian Two have responded. The video is requested as evidence from King County and stored using existing video evidence storage policies including [SPD Policy 7.090 – Photographic Evidence](#).

The KCSO Helicopters and onboard FLIR technology respond only to SPD emergency events in which air support is beneficial. SPD only receives and accesses information from the KCSO helicopters that is relevant to the incidents to which Guardian One or Guardian Two have responded. The video is requested as evidence from King County and stored using existing video evidence storage policies including [SPD Policy 7.090 – Photographic Evidence](#).

5.0 Access & Security

Operational Policy: SPD are consumers of the information provided by the KCSO Air Unit and do not maintain the systems used to access this information.

The Guardian One and Guardian Two helicopters and onboard FLIR cameras are operated by the King County Sheriff’s Air Unit. When Guardian One is operational, the unit monitors SPD radio and advises SPD Communications when they are available to assist during active calls for service. SPD officers may also request air support assistance directly to Guardian One or through SPD Communications.

Recordings are provided by the KCSO on high quality evidence-grade DVD. [SPD Policy 7.010](#) governs the submission of evidence and requires that all collected evidence be documented in a GO Report. Per [SPD Policy 7.090 – Photographic Evidence](#), all video evidence not produced by SPD employees is submitted to the SPD Evidence Unit. The SPD Evidence Unit stores the video in the Digital Evidence Management System (DEMS).

Access

The helicopter and FLIR technology are not directly operated by SPD personnel.

SPD are consumers of the information provided by the KCSO Air Unit and do not maintain the systems used to access this information.

Per [SPD Policy 16.060 - King County Sheriff's Office Air Support Unit](#), when Guardian One is operational, the unit monitors SPD radio and advises SPD Communications when they are available to assist during active calls for service.

SPD officers may also request air support assistance directly to Guardian One or through SPD Communications. “If Guardian One is off-duty, but their assistance is required for a police operation, a sergeant will screen the request and coordinate with Communications.” If they respond to an SPD call, Guardian One and Guardian Two are documented as responding resources in the CAD event by SPD Communications.

Security

Recordings made by Guardian helicopters associated with SPD calls for service are requested as video evidence from the King County Sheriff's Office, including FLIR video is needed for evidentiary or investigative purposes related to the investigation of a crime or missing person. These recordings are provided by the KCSO on high quality evidence-grade DVD. [SPD Policy 7.010](#) governs the submission of evidence and requires that all collected evidence be documented in a GO Report. Per [SPD Policy 7.090 – Photographic Evidence](#), all video evidence not produced by SPD employees is submitted to the SPD Evidence Unit. The SPD Evidence Unit stores the video in the Digital Evidence Management System (DEMS).

SPD policy contains multiple provisions to avoid improperly collecting data. [SPD Policy 7.010](#) governs the submission of evidence and requires that all collected evidence be documented in a GO Report. Per [SPD Policy 7.090 – Photographic Evidence](#), all video evidence not produced by SPD employees is submitted to the SPD Evidence Unit. The SPD Evidence Unit stores the video in the CJIS certified Digital Evidence Management System (DEMS).

6.0 Data Sharing and Accuracy

Operational Policy: No person, outside of SPD has direct access to the video information provided to SPD by the King County Air Unit once it has been received by SPD.

Video may be shared with outside entities in connection with criminal prosecutions:

- Seattle City Attorney's Office
- King County Prosecuting Attorney's Office
- King County Department of Public Defense
- Private Defense Attorneys
- Seattle Municipal Court
- King County Superior Court
- Similar entities where prosecution is in Federal or other State jurisdictions

Video may be made available to requesters pursuant to the Washington Public Records Act, [Chapter 42.56 RCW](#) ("PRA"). SPD will apply applicable exemptions to the data before disclosing to a requester. Individuals have the right to inspect criminal history record information maintained by the department ([RCW 10.97.030](#), [SPD Policy 12.050](#)). Individuals can access their own information by submitting a public disclosure request.

Sharing of video information may be necessary for prosecution or to comply with requests pursuant to public records requests.

7.0 Equity Concerns

Operational Policy: [SPD Policy 5.140](#) forbids bias-based policing and outlines processes for reporting and documenting any suspected bias-based behavior, as well as accountability measures.

Per [SPD Policy 16.060 - King County Sheriff's Office Air Support Unit](#), determining events in which aerial support would be beneficial is based on the particular event situation and the availability of the King County Air Support Unit.

Inherent in video obtained from an aerial platform such as Guardian One and Guardian Two with FLIR camera systems is the risk that private information may be obtained about 3rd parties. While the FLIR camera system can detect and record heat sources inside some structures, it is not able to peer inside homes or other buildings. Though the high definition color cameras mounted on the KCSO helicopters is able to discern individual characteristics, the FLIR camera system video does not capture even the most generic of identifiable individual characteristics such as race, age, or gender.

The mission of the Seattle Police Department is to prevent crime, enforce the law, and support quality public safety by delivering respectful, professional and dependable police services. A potential civil liberties concern is that the SPD would over-surveil vulnerable or historically targeted communities, deploying Guardian One to diverse neighborhoods more often than to other areas of the City. [SPD Policy 5.140](#) forbids bias-based policing and outlines processes for reporting and documenting any suspected bias-based behavior, as well as accountability measures. Determining events in which aerial support would be beneficial is based on the particular event situation and the availability of the King County Air Support Unit.

The Aspen Institute on Community Change defines structural racism as “...public policies, institutional practices, cultural representations and other norms [which] work in various, often reinforcing ways to perpetuate racial group inequity.” Data sharing has the potential to be a contributing factor to structural racism and thus creating a disparate impact on historically targeted communities. In an effort to mitigate this possibility, SPD has established policies regarding the dissemination of data in connection with criminal prosecutions, Washington Public Records Act ([Chapter 42.56 RCW](#)), and other authorized researchers.

Further, [SPD Policy 5.140](#) forbids bias-based policing and outlines processes for reporting and documenting any suspected bias-based behavior, as well as accountability measures.

Information collected by Guardian One and Guardian Two cameras, including the FLIR camera system, is shared only with outside entities in connection with criminal prosecutions or in compliance with public records requests pursuant to the Washington Public Records Act, [Chapter 42.56 RCW](#) (“PRA”). SPD will apply applicable exemptions to the data before disclosing to a requester.

Like decisions around data sharing, data storage and retention have similar potential for disparate impact on historically targeted communities. [SPD Policy 5.140](#) forbids bias-based policing and outlines processes for reporting and documenting any suspected bias-based behavior, as well as accountability measures.

SUMMARY and FISCAL NOTE*

Department:	Dept. Contact/Phone:	CBO Contact/Phone:
SPD / ITD	Rebecca Boatwright / Vinh Tang	Neal Capapas/206-684-5292

** Note that the Summary and Fiscal Note describes the version of the bill or resolution as introduced; final legislation including amendments may not be fully described.*

1. BILL SUMMARY

Legislation Title: AN ORDINANCE relating to surveillance technology implementation; authorizing approval of uses and accepting the 2020 surveillance impact report and 2020 executive overview for the Seattle Police Department’s use of Forward Looking Infrared Real-Time Video.

Summary and background of the Legislation: Per SMC Chapter 14.18 (also known as the Surveillance Ordinance), authorizing the approval of the surveillance impact reports for Seattle Police Department’s continued use of Forward Looking Infrared Real-Time Video (FLIR) as deployed by King County Sheriff’s Office helicopters.

2. CAPITAL IMPROVEMENT PROGRAM

Does this legislation create, fund, or amend a CIP Project? Yes No

3. SUMMARY OF FINANCIAL IMPLICATIONS

Does this legislation amend the Adopted Budget? Yes No

Does the legislation have other financial impacts to The City of Seattle that are not reflected in the above, including direct or indirect, short-term or long-term costs?

This technology is currently in use by the Seattle Police Department through King County Sheriff’s Office helicopters at no charge.

Is there financial cost or other impacts of *not* implementing the legislation?

Per the Surveillance Ordinance, the City department may continue use of the technology until legislation is implemented. As such, there are no financial costs or other impacts that would result from not implementing the legislation.

4. OTHER IMPLICATIONS

a. Does this legislation affect any departments besides the originating department?

This legislation does not affect other departments.

b. Is a public hearing required for this legislation?

A public hearing is not required for this legislation.

c. Is publication of notice with *The Daily Journal of Commerce* and/or *The Seattle Times* required for this legislation?

No publication of notice is required for this legislation.

d. Does this legislation affect a piece of property?

This legislation does not affect a piece of property.

e. Please describe any perceived implication for the principles of the Race and Social Justice Initiative. Does this legislation impact vulnerable or historically disadvantaged communities? What is the Language Access plan for any communications to the public?

The Surveillance Ordinance in general is designed to address civil liberties and disparate community impacts of surveillance technologies. The Surveillance Impact Review included in the attachments, as required by the Surveillance Ordinance, includes a Racial Equity Toolkit review adapted for this purpose.

f. Climate Change Implications

1. Emissions: Is this legislation likely to increase or decrease carbon emissions in a material way?

No.

2. Resiliency: Will the action(s) proposed by this legislation increase or decrease Seattle's resiliency (or ability to adapt) to climate change in a material way? If so, explain. If it is likely to decrease resiliency in a material way, describe what will or could be done to mitigate the effects.

No.

g. If this legislation includes a new initiative or a major programmatic expansion: What are the specific long-term and measurable goal(s) of the program? How will this legislation help achieve the program's desired goal(s)?

There is no new initiative or programmatic expansion associated with this legislation. It approves the continuation of use for the specific technology under review.

April 29, 2021

MEMORANDUM

To: Transportation and Utilities Committee
From: Lise Kaye, Analyst
Subject: Council Bill 120053 - Authorizing approval of uses and accepting the surveillance impact report for the Seattle Police Department's use of Forward Looking Infrared Real-Time Video

On Wednesday, April 7, 2021 the Transportation and Utilities Committee will discuss [Council Bill \(CB\) 120053](#). The bill is intended to meet the requirements of [Seattle Municipal Code Chapter 14.18](#), Acquisition and Use of Surveillance Technologies.¹ CB 120053 would approve the Seattle Police Department's (SPD's) continued use of existing Forward Looking Infrared Real-Time Video technology (FLIR Video) as deployed by King County Sheriff's Office (KCSO) helicopters and accept the Surveillance Impact Report (SIR) and an Executive Overview for this technology.² The Executive Overview summarizes the operational policy statements which represent SPD's allowable uses of the FLIR Video equipment and data.

This memo describes the FLIR Video technology and summarizes potential civil liberties impacts, potential disparate impacts on historically targeted communities and vulnerable populations, and the public engagement process, as reported in the SIR. It also summarizes key concerns and recommendations from the Community Surveillance Working Group's Impact Assessment and the Chief Technology Officer's response ("CTO's Response) to the Impact Assessment. Finally, the memo identifies policy issues for Council consideration.

Forward Looking Infrared Real-Time Video (FLIR Video)

SPD officers may currently request helicopter support from the KCSO Air Unit to track the movement of crime suspects and to gain situational awareness of disaster scenes.³ The FLIR Video technology installed on the helicopters provides heat signature-type images, which represent the exterior temperature of an object or person. [SPD Policy 16.060 - King County Sheriff's Office Air Support Unit](#) allows officers to directly request air support assistance when a helicopter is on-duty and operating; if the helicopter is "off-duty," a sergeant will screen a request from an officer and coordinate with Communications personnel. KCSO helicopters are available at SPD's request, if not otherwise engaged, at no charge to SPD.⁴

¹ (Ord. [125679](#), § 1, 2018; Ord. [125376](#), § 2, 2017.) Attachment 1 to this memo summarizes these requirements and process by which the Executive develops the required Surveillance Impact Reports (SIRs))

² FLIR Systems, an Oregon-based company, supplies the FLIR Video technology installed on KCSO helicopters. (It also supplies Acyclica technology used by the Seattle Department of Transportation to calculate vehicle travel times.) As reported by the [Seattle Times on March 7, 2021](#), FLIR Systems has a history of violations associated with international technology sales.

³ The KCSO Air Unit operates three helicopters as "Guardian One" and "Guardian Two," with the latter primarily supporting Search and Rescue

⁴ [SPD Policy 16.060](#)-POL (1)

When SPD obtains FLIR Video recordings for evidentiary or investigative purposes, the Department currently retains the recordings consistent with State requirements for retention of criminal justice data.⁵ The SPD Evidence Unit stores the video in its Digital Evidence Management System (DEMS). The system automatically logs attempts to access and view photographic evidence in DEMS and Evidence.com. SPD may share FLIR Video with outside entities in connection with criminal prosecutions and in response to public disclosure requests made through the Washington Public Records Act. The KCSO Air Support Unit also records audio and video of their operations and occasionally releases these recordings to the public, including video posted on their YouTube channel.

The SIR reports that, in 2018, Guardian One responded to 45 SPD events, and Guardian Two was not dispatched to any SPD calls for service. That year, Guardian One most commonly participated with SPD in the following types of events: robbery (eight events), followed by automotive theft and/or recovery (seven events), assault (six events), and burglary (six events). Other less-frequent event types included domestic violence; kidnapping/abduction; prowler; traffic violations; warrant services; weapons; and missing, found or runaway person; suspicious person/object; and theft. The CTO’s Response to the Working Group’s Impact Assessment provided a table showing Guardian One Dispatches by month and [precinct](#) in 2018, reproduced as Table 1, with added totals by month, year and precinct:

Table 1. SPD’s 2018 use of FLIR Video technology as deployed by KCSO helicopters

2018 Guardian One Dispatches for Seattle Police Department													
Precinct	Jan	Feb	Mar	Apr	May	June	July	Aug	Sept	Oct	Nov	Dec	Total
East		1									1		2
North	2	3		2			1				2		10
South	3	3	2	4		1	4	1	2				20
South-west	1			1			1	1		1		3	8
West	1			1			1	1					4
Outside Seattle				1									1
Total	7	7	2	9	0	1	7	3	2	2	3	3	45

Source: FLIR Video SIR, CTO’s Response to Privacy and Civil Liberties Impact Assessment p. 37.

Note: Table as printed in the SIR did not include a column for the month of May, which had no deployments, or totals.

⁵ Washington State’s [law enforcement agency retention requirements](#) vary by type of record (e.g. case status and type of investigation)

Civil Liberties and Potential Disparate Impacts on Historically Marginalized Communities

Departments submitting a SIR identify potential civil liberties impacts and complete an adapted version of the Racial Equity Toolkit (RET) to highlight and mitigate impacts on racial equity from the use of the technology. The RET for the SPD's use of FLIR Video technology identifies the risk that private information may be obtained about third parties as a potential civil liberties impact. The RET notes that the FLIR Video does not capture "even the most generic of identifiable individual characteristics such as race, age, or gender."

The RET identifies the risk of disproportionate surveillance of vulnerable or historically targeted communities as a second potential civil liberties concern. The RET notes that [SPD Policy 5.140](#) forbids bias-based policing and provides for accountability measures and identifies alternative practices that would result in less disproportionate impact. The SIR also identifies data sharing, storage and retention as having the potential to contribute to structural racism, thereby creating a disparate impact on historically targeted communities.⁶ SPD mitigates this risk through policies regarding the dissemination of data in connection with criminal prosecutions, the [Washington Public Records Act](#), and other authorized researchers. No metrics were provided in the RET for use as part of the CTO's annual equity assessments.⁷

Public Engagement

The Executive accepted public comments on this technology from October 7 – November 7, 2020 and conducted one public meeting for this and the two other "Group 3" SIRs on October 28, 2020. The FLIR Video SIR includes all comments pertaining to this technology received from members of the public (Appendix C) and letters from organizations or commissions (Appendix D). Multiple comments about this technology expressed concern about use of this technology against protesters and disproportionate use in neighborhoods and against people of color. Other comments expressed concern about the use of this technology in conjunction with other surveillance technology, such as video recording; guidelines for use and sharing of data; invasion of privacy; and the use of military technology. Several responses noted no concerns. One response also detailed concerns about the duration and structure of the public engagement process for the Group 3 Technologies.

Privacy and Civil Liberties Impact Assessment

The Impact Assessment prepared by the Community Surveillance Working Group ("Working Group") identified five "key concerns" about the use of this technology, including inadequate policies defining the specific purposes for which SPD may request support from KCSO's air support unit; inadequate policies restricting data collection; the privacy of individuals unrelated to an investigation; how data are stored and protected; and the locations of the 45 deployments of "Guardian One" to support SPD in 2018. Tables 2 and 3 summarize the CTO's Response to the

⁶ Historical community or department practices could produce data that would portray certain communities as higher in crime than in other neighborhoods or elevate the involvement in potential criminal events by certain demographic groups. An approach to storage, retention, and integration of these data that was not cognizant of these possibilities might allow for the continuation of these perceptions, with potential disparate enforcement responses.

⁷ [SMC 14.18.050B](#) requires that the CTO produce and submit to the City Council a Surveillance Technology Community Equity Impact Assessment and Policy Guidance Report that addresses whether Chapter 14.18 of the SMC is effectively meeting the goals of the Race and Social Justice Initiative.

“key concerns” and describe whether and how the SIR as drafted would address the Working Group’s recommendations.

Key Concerns and the CTO’s Response. Table 2 summarizes the CTO’s Response to each of the Working Group’s “key concerns.” The CTO’s Response finds that the SIR addresses each concern, but it also provides KCSO helicopter deployment data from 2018 reproduced in Table 1 that was not provided in body of the SIR. The CTO’s Response notes that “while SPD cannot change the KCSO use policies, SPD has outlined their own policies about use of the images and video obtained from the Air Support Unit operation of the aircraft.”

Table 2. CTO Response to Privacy and Civil Liberties Impact Assessment of SPD’s use of FLIR Video technology as deployed by KCSO helicopters

Working Group Key Concern	CTO Response
1. Specific purposes for which SPD may request support from KCSO’s air support unit	While SPD cannot change the KCSO use policies, SPD has outlined their own policies about use of the images and video obtained from the Air Support Unit operation of the aircraft. The SIR responses are clear and provide adequate transparency and policy guidance about technology use.
2. Inadequate policies regarding data collection	SPD has adequate controls and policies in place to limit use and collection of data to appropriate emergency situations and access by authorized individuals.
3. If and how SPD protects the privacy of individuals unrelated to an investigation	SPD only retrieves video or evidence from KCSO helicopters that is related to an ongoing investigation. SPD Policies 7.010 and 7.090 govern documenting and storing collected evidence and photographic evidence.
4. How data are stored and protected	SPD has appropriate policy in place, follows appropriate data storage security measure, and has clearly stated data sharing partners and practices.
5. SIR does not provide dates and neighborhoods over which KCSO and FLIR Video technology has been deployed	SPD Policy 16.060 -KCSO Air Support Unit governs and outlines the use and approval process for officers to request air support at the discretion of the KCSO. ⁸

Recommendations. The Impact Assessment recommends that Council ensure that SPD adopt “clear and enforceable rules that ensure, at a minimum, the following:

1. The purpose and allowable uses of FLIR technology and KCSO’s helicopters must be clearly defined, and any SPD use of KCSO’s helicopters and FLIR technology and data collected with these technologies must be restricted to that specific purpose and those allowable uses.
2. SPD must be prohibited from using FLIR technology and KCSO’s helicopters to disproportionately surveil communities of color and other historically over-policed communities, and must adopt policies and processes to ensure it is not targeting such communities.

⁸ See Table 1 which reproduces the information provided in the CTO’s Response showing Guardian One dispatches in 2018.

3. SPD must be required to redact or delete information collected that may compromise the privacy of individuals not related to a specific investigation of [sic]search that is restricted by the purpose of use.
4. SPD must be required to produce a publicly available annual report detailing its use of FLIR technology and KCSO helicopters. This report must include at a minimum, details on how SPD used the data collected, the amount and types of data collected, for how long data were retained and in what form, where the data are stored, and the neighborhoods over which KCSO helicopters and/or FLIR technology were deployed.”

Table 3 describes how the SIR as drafted would address these four recommendations. Areas not fully addressed are included in the “Policy Considerations” section.

Table 3. Working Group Recommendations Addressed in the SIR

Working Group Recommendation	Whether/How Addressed in SIR
1. Define the purpose and allowable uses of FLIR technology and KCSO’s helicopters and restrict SPD’s use to that purposes and those allowable uses.	Executive Overview. Operational Policies represent the only allowable uses of the equipment and data collected by this technology. <i>See Policy Consideration #2.</i>
2. Prohibit use of FLIR technology and KCSO’s helicopters to disproportionately surveil communities of color and other historically over-policed communities and adopt policies and processes to ensure it is not targeting such communities.	RET 1.3 SPD Policy 5.140 forbids bias-based policing and outlines processes for reporting and documenting any suspected bias-based behavior, as well as accountability measures.
3. Require SPD to redact or delete information that may compromise the privacy of individuals not related to a specific investigation.	7.3 SPD addresses risks of disclosure of personally identifiable information by activities such as redacting released video and information.
4. Require SPD to produce a publicly available annual report detailing its use of FLIR technology and KCSO helicopters. Include use of data, amounts and types of data; retention and storage of data; and locations where the technologies were deployed.	Seattle’s Office of Inspector General would be required to produce an annual surveillance technology usage review, which would include FLIR Video technology, in the event that Council approves CB 120053.

Policy Considerations

Central Staff has identified the following potential policy considerations.

1. Annual equity assessment metrics. SPD has not yet finalized metrics to be used in evaluating use of FLIR Video technology as part of the CTO's annual equity assessments. These assessments are intended to play a key role in determining whether the City's surveillance legislation is meeting the goals of the Race and Social Justice Initiative.

Options:

- A. Council may wish to request a report on the proposed metrics by a date certain.
 - B. Council may wish to defer approval of this SIR, pending completion of these metrics.
 - C. Take no action.
2. Circumstances when SPD may/must request assistance from KCSO's Air Support Unit. As noted by the Working Group, SPD's policies as cited in the SIR do not make explicit the specific purposes for which SPD may request support from KCSO's air support unit. Nor does the SIR identify any SPD policies or criteria defining the circumstances in which SPD officers may or must request assistance from KCSO's Air Support Unit. In the absence of such policies or criteria, it is unclear why the data in Table 1 provided in the CTO's Response shows a much higher incidence of 2018 Guardian One Dispatches in the South Precinct than the other four SPD precincts.

Options:

- A. Council may wish to request a report from SPD by a date certain as to the circumstances that warrant a request for FLIR assistance from KCSO's Air Support Unit.
- B. Council may wish to defer approval of this SIR, pending completion of SPD policies that establish specific policies or criteria that allow or require a request for FLIR assistance from KCSO's Air Support Unit.
- C. Take no action.

Committee Action

Options for Council action are as follows:

1. Pass CB 120053 as transmitted;
2. Request Central Staff to prepare amendments to the Council Bill to address additional concerns or issues; or
3. Take no action.

Attachment:

1. Background Summary and Surveillance Impact Report Process

cc: Dan Eder, Interim Director
Aly Pennucci, Budget and Policy Manager

Attachment 1 - Background Summary and Surveillance Impact Report Process

Recent Legislative History

[Ordinance 125376](#), passed by Council on July 31, 2017, required City of Seattle departments intending to acquire surveillance technology to obtain advance Council approval, by ordinance, of the acquisition and of a surveillance impact report (SIR).¹ Departments must also submit a SIR for surveillance technology in use when Ordinance 125376 was adopted (referred to in the ordinance as “retroactive technologies”). The Executive originally included 28 “retroactive technologies,” on its [November 30, 2017 Master List](#) but revised that list to 26 in [December 2019](#). The Council has approved two SIRs and twice extended the initial March 3, 2020 deadline for completion of SIRs for all 26 technologies: first by six months to accommodate extended deliberation of the first two SIRs; and then by a second six months due to COVID-related delays. Either the Chief Technology Officer or the Council may determine whether a specific technology is “surveillance technology” and thus subject to the requirements of SMC 14.18. Each SIR must describe protocols for a “use and data management policy” as follows:

- How and when the surveillance technology will be deployed or used and by whom, including specific rules of use
- How surveillance data will be securely stored
- How surveillance data will be retained and deleted
- How surveillance data will be accessed
- Whether a department intends to share access to the technology or data with any other entity
- How the department will ensure that personnel who operate the technology and/or access its data can ensure compliance with the use and data management policy
- Any community engagement events and plans
- How the potential impact of the surveillance on civil rights and liberties and potential disparate impacts on communities of color and other marginalized communities have been taken into account; and a mitigation plan
- The fiscal impact of the surveillance technology

Community Surveillance Working Group

On October 5, 2018, Council passed [Ordinance 125679](#), amending SMC 14.18, creating a “community surveillance working group” charged with creating a Privacy and Civil Liberties Impact Assessment for each SIR.² At least five of the seven members of the Working Group

¹ As codified in SMC 14.18.030, Ordinance 125376 identified a number of exemptions and exceptions to the required Council approval, including information voluntarily provided, body-worn cameras and cameras installed in or on a police vehicle, cameras that record traffic violations, security cameras and technology that monitors City employees at work.

² Ordinance 125679 also established a March 31, 2020 deadline for submitting SIRs on technologies already in use (referred to as “retroactive technologies”) when Ordinance 125376 was passed, with provision to request a six-month extension.

Attachment 1 - Background Summary and Surveillance Impact Report Process

must represent groups that have historically been subject to disproportionate surveillance, including Seattle’s diverse communities of color, immigrant communities, religious minorities, and groups concerned with privacy and protest.³ Each Privacy and Civil Liberties Impact Assessment must describe the potential impact of the surveillance technology on civil rights and liberties and potential disparate impacts on communities of color and other marginalized communities and will be included in the SIR. Prior to submittal of a SIR to Council, the Chief Technology Officer may provide a written statement that addresses privacy rights, civil liberty or other concerns in the Working Group’s impact assessment.

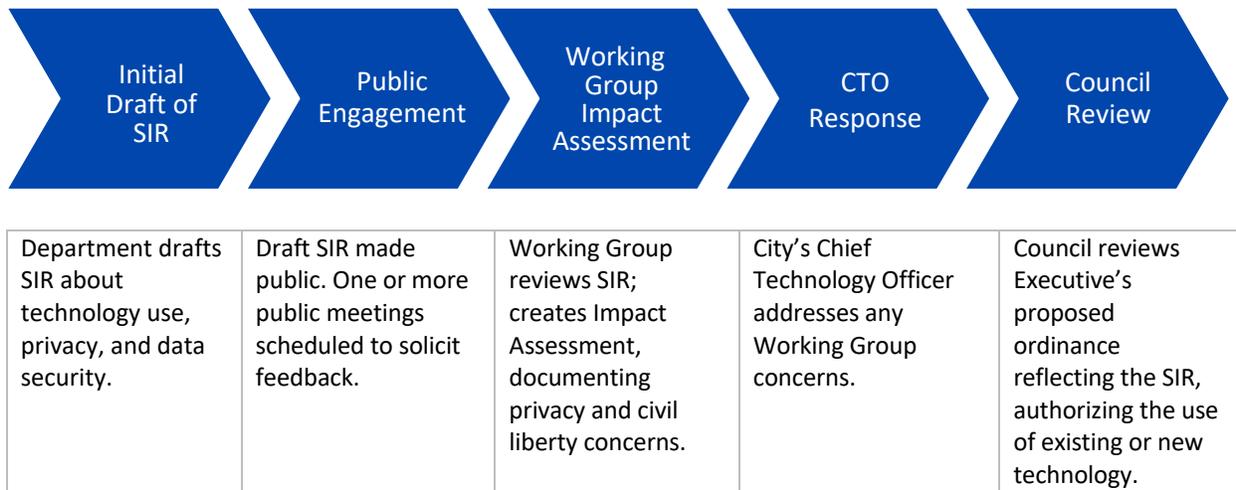
Executive Overviews

In May 2019, members of the Governance, Equity, and Technology Committee requested that IT staff prepare a summary section for each of the two lengthy SIR documents under review at that time. The Committee then accepted the resultant “Condensed Surveillance Impact Reports (CSIRs) together with the complete SIRs. The Executive has continued this practice with subsequent SIRs but has renamed the documents “Executive Overviews.” The Operational Policy Statements in the Executive Overview represent the only allowable uses of the subject technology.

SIR Process

Chart 1 is a visual of the SIR process from inception to Council Review:

Chart 1. Surveillance Impact Report (SIR) Process



³ The Mayor appoints four members and Council appoints three members.

Group 3 Surveillance Impact Reports (SIRs) CB 120053, CB 120054, & CB 120055

Transportation & Utilities Committee

May 5, 2021

Surveillance Impact Report (SIR) Overview

- 2017: [Ordinance 125376](#) took effect Sept 4th, revising the law to address the intended use of technologies with potential to impact civil liberties
- 2018: [Ordinance 125679](#) amended Ordinance 125376 and Chapter 14.18 of the Seattle Municipal Code and added external Community Surveillance Working Group
- 9/23/19: Group 1 SDOT SIR legislation passed ([Ordinance 125936](#))
- 1/20/21: Presented Overview of Surveillance Ordinance at the Transportation and Utilities Committee
- 1/26/21: Group 2 SIR legislation transmitted to City Clerk
- 2/22/21: Group 3 SIR legislation transmitted to City Clerk
- 3/03/21, 3/17/21, 4/07/21: Group 2 SIR briefing/discussion/vote at Transportation and Utilities Committee
- **3/22/21: Group 2 SCL & SFD SIR legislation passed ([Ordinance 126294](#) & [Ordinance 126295](#))**
- 4/12/21: Clerk filing of Group 4 SIR Extension Memo & Revised Master List of Surveillance Technologies
- **4/19/21: Group 2 SPD SIR legislation passed ([Ordinance 126311](#), [126312](#), [126313](#), [126314](#), [126315](#))**

28 total
technologies

Group	Depts.	28 Technologies		Council Bill	Status
Group 1 (2)	SDOT	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> License Plate Readers Closed Circuit Television Equipment "Traffic Cameras" 		CB 119519 CB 119519	Completed
Group 2 (9)	SCL SFD SPD	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Binoculars/Spotting Scope Check Meter Device SensorLink Amp Fork Computer-Aided Dispatch 911 Logging Recorder Automated License Plate Reader Parking Enforcement Systems including Automated License Plate Reader Computer-Aided Dispatch CopLogic 		CB 120002 CB 120002 CB 120002 CB 120003 CB 120004 CB 120005 CB 120006 CB 120007 CB 120008	Completed
Group 3 (3)	SPD	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Forward Looking Infrared Real-time video (FLIR) Situational Awareness Cameras Without Recording Video Recording Systems 		CB 120053 CB 120054 CB 120055	In Committee
Group 4A (7)	SFD SDOT SPD	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Emergency Scene Cameras, Hazmat Camera Acyclica Audio Recording Systems, Callyo, I2 iBase, Maltego 			Est. August Est. August Est. December
Group 4B (7)	SPD	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Camera systems; Tracking Devices; Remotely Operated Vehicles (ROVs); Hostage Negotiation Throw Phone; Crash Data Retrieval; GeoTime; Computer, cellphone and mobile device extraction tools 			Est. December

Group 3 SIR Public Engagement

- Group 3 Surveillance Technologies Public Meeting on 10/28/2020
- One Page Flyers
- Online Public Comment Meeting
 - Recorded and posted online

Engagement Method	(Approximate) Number of Individuals Participating	Number of Comments Received	Number of Questions Received
Public Meeting	15	-	15
Online Comments	38	38	-
Letters	1	1	-
Total	54	39	15

Group 3 SIR Technologies

Seattle Police Department

Seattle Police Department Mission

- Prevent crime;
- Enforce the law, and
- Support quality public safety by delivering respectful, professional and dependable police services.

Group 3 SIR Technologies

Group 3 Surveillance Impact Reports

- 1**

[CB 120053](#)
Forward Looking Infrared Real-time video (FLIR)

This technology provides a platform for aerial photography and digital video of large outdoor locations (e.g., crime scenes and disaster damage, etc.) through King County Sheriff's Air Support Unit helicopters.
- 2**

[CB 120054](#)
Situational Awareness Cameras Without Recording

Portable cameras that allow officers to observe around corners or other areas during operations where officers need to see the situation before entering an area of concern.
- 3**

[CB 120055](#)
Video Recording Systems at SPD Facilities

These systems record events that take place in a Blood Alcohol Collection (BAC) Room, precinct holding cells, interview, and lineup rooms.

Forward Looking Infrared Real-Time Video (FLIR)

What is the technology?

- Two King County Sheriff's Office helicopters with Forward Looking Infrared (FLIR) send a real-time video feed of ongoing events to commanders on the ground.
- This technology provides a platform for aerial photography and digital video of large outdoor locations (e.g., crime scenes and disaster damage, etc.).

Why do we use the technology?

- Rapid response to crime or disaster scenes.
- Provides a bird's eye view of events happening on the ground.
- FLIR technology allows for subjects to be detected even when obscured by haze or darkness.



FLIR – How It Works

- King County Sheriff's Air Support Unit is operated by the King County Sheriff's Office and is available to assist the Seattle Police Department at no charge through the Puget Sound Regional Aviation Project and the Seattle Urban Area Security Initiative (UASI).
- FLIR systems use heat emitted by subjects and objects to provide enhancement to images of active scenes.
- The FLIR systems cannot see into homes or other structures.



FLIR – Policies Governing Use

- King County Sheriff's Office Air Support Unit (SPD Policy 16.060)
- Evidence (SPD Policy 7.090)
- Access to criminal justice information and records (SPD policies 12.050 and 12.080)
- Use of department email and internet (SPD Policy 12.110)
- Use of cloud storage services (SPD policy 12.111)
- <http://www.seattle.gov/police-manual>

Situational Awareness Cameras Without Recording

What is the technology?

- Portable cameras that allow officers to observe around corners or other areas during tactical operations where officers need to see the situation before entering an area of concern. These may be lowered or thrown into position, attached to a hand-held pole and extended around a corner or into an area. The cameras contain wireless transmitters that send images to officers.

Why do we use the technology?

- SPD's tactical units use situational awareness cameras to assess potentially dangerous situations from a safe location.
- These cameras allows SPD to view surroundings and gain additional information prior to entering a location, providing additional safety and security to SPD personnel, the subjects of the observation, and other members of the community.



Situational Awareness Cameras Without Recording – How They Work

- Only members of SWAT are authorized to use this equipment and are specifically trained in their use.
- These cameras may be lowered or thrown into position, attached to a hand-held pole and extended around a corner or into an area. The cameras contain wireless transmitters that send images to nearby officers.
- No recordings are made using these cameras.



Situational Awareness Cameras Without Recording – Policies Governing Use

- Bias-Free Policing (SPD Policy 5.140)
- Standards and Duties (SPD Policy 5.001)
- Specialty Vehicles & Equipment (SPD policies 13.060)
- <http://www.seattle.gov/police-manual>

Video Recording Systems at SPD Facilities

What is the technology?

- SPD has two camera systems used to record and/or monitor members of the public within specific, secure locations in SPD facilities.
- These systems record events that take place in a Blood Alcohol Collection (BAC) Room, precinct holding cells, interview, and lineup rooms.

Why do we use the technology?

- Create visual record of activities in the interview rooms, BAC rooms, and precinct holding cells.
- Prevents disputes about how interviews are conducted or how suspects, victims, and witnesses are treated.
- Enhances SPD accountability in the community and enhances confidence in SPD practices.



Video Recording Systems at SPD Facilities – How It Works

- The **Genetec Video Management System** includes camera and microphone equipment that is permanently installed in the interview rooms on the 6th and 7th floors of SPD Headquarters.
- The **Milestone Video Management** Software and Products consist of cameras located in BAC rooms and precinct holding cells throughout SPD's facilities.
- Signage informs employees and members of the public that camera and recording devices are present.



Video Recording Systems at SPD Facilities – Recording Data Storage

Genetec (Interview Rooms)

- After an interview is conducted the recording of the interview is copied to a high-quality evidence grade DVD+R disc. This evidence-grade disc is then submitted into the SPD Evidence Section as a standard item of evidence. Standard evidence retention rules are then followed

Milestone (BAC Rooms and Precinct Holding Cells)

- The recordings are made by the Milestone system. A request by an authorized party (Homicide, OPA, OIG, etc.) for specific footage is made for criminal or internal investigations. The recordings are held for a minimum of 120 and a maximum of 217 days unless used as evidence in a particular case.

Video Recording Systems at SPD Facilities – Policies Governing Use

- Recorded Statements (SPD Policy 7.110)
- Evidence (SPD Policy 7.090)
- Use of department-owned devices/software (SPD Policy 12.040)
- Access to criminal justice information and records (SPD policies 12.050 and 12.080)
- Use of department email and internet (SPD Policy 12.110)
- Use of cloud storage services (SPD policy 12.111)
- <http://www.seattle.gov/police-manual>

Questions

Appendix

Surveillance Criteria

Definition: *Technology whose primary purpose is to observe or analyze the movements, behavior, or actions of identifiable individuals in a manner that is reasonably likely to raise concerns about civil liberties, freedom of speech or association, racial equity or social justice. Identifiable individuals also include individuals whose identity can be revealed by license plate data when combined with any other record.*

Exclusions

- Consents to provide the data
- Opt-out notice
- Body-worn cameras
- Police vehicle cameras
- Cameras installed pursuant to state law...or to record traffic violations
- Security cameras
- City infrastructure protection cameras
- Technology that monitors only City employees

Inclusions

- Disparately impacts disadvantaged groups
- PII shared with non-City entities that will use the data for a purpose other than providing the City with a contractually agreed-upon service
- Collects data that is personally identifiable even if obscured, de-identified, or anonymized after collection
- Raises reasonable concerns about impacts to civil liberty, freedom of speech or association, racial equity, or social justice

Surveillance Impact Report (SIR) Process

- Submitted for all retroactive and newly proposed technologies that meet the definition and have no exclusion criteria
- Created by the Departments with project management from IT

1

Privacy Impact Assessment

2

Financial Information

3

Racial Equity Toolkit

4

Public Engagement Comments and Analysis

5

Privacy and Civil Liberties Impact Assessment

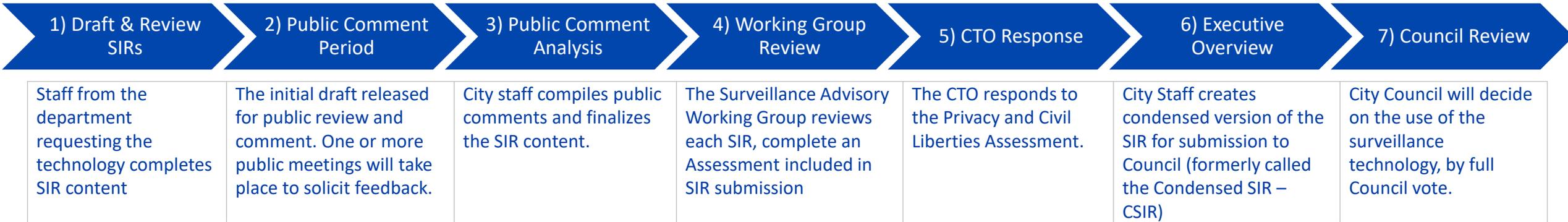
6

CTO Response

7

Appendices & Supporting Documentation

General SIR Creation Timeline





SEATTLE CITY COUNCIL
CENTRAL STAFF

Group 3 Surveillance Impact Reports

LISE KAYE, COUNCIL CENTRAL STAFF

TRANSPORTATION AND UTILITIES COMMITTEE | MAY 5, 2021

Proposed Council Bills – Today's Agenda

- **CB 120053: Forward Looking Infrared Real-Time Video**
(with King County Sheriff's Office helicopters)
- **CB 120054: Situational Awareness Cameras**
(without recording)
- **CB 120055: Video Recording Systems**

Elements to Consider

- Purpose and Use of Each Technology
- Civil Liberties and Potential Disparate Impacts on Historically Marginalized Communities - Racial Equity Toolkit
- Public Engagement
- Surveillance Working Group's Privacy and Civil Liberties Impact Assessment
- Chief Technology Officer's Response

Elements to Consider

- Policy Considerations
 - Surveillance Working Group's key concerns and recommendations
 - Incomplete information in a SIR
 - Legal and logistical parameters

CB 120053: Forward Looking Infrared Real-Time Video

- SPD may request helicopter support from the King County Sheriff's Office for:
 - Tracking movement of crime suspects
 - Situational awareness of disaster scenes

Forward Looking Infrared Real-Time Video

- Civil Liberties and Potential Disparate Impacts
 - Risk of acquisition of private information about third parties
 - Risk of disproportionate surveillance of vulnerable or historically targeted communities
 - Data sharing, storage and retention could contribute to structural racism
- Public comments: concern about use against protesters and people of color; disproportionate use in neighborhoods

Forward Looking Infrared Real-Time Video

- Impact Assessment issues:
 - Allowable uses
 - Data collection, storage and protection
 - Privacy of individuals unrelated to an investigation
 - Lack of historical deployment data
- CTO's Response: SIR generally addresses each concern; CTO provided 2018 KCSO helicopter deployment data from 2018

Forward Looking Infrared Real-Time Video

- Policy Considerations
 - Annual equity assessment metrics
 - Policies and/or criteria for requesting assistance from KCSO Air Support Unit

CB 120054: Situational Awareness Cameras

- Used by SWAT to covertly assess potentially dangerous situations from a safe location:
 - Robot mounted cameras
 - Pole cameras
 - Placeable cameras
 - Throwable cameras

Situational Awareness Cameras

- Civil Liberties and Potential Disparate Impacts
 - Potential surveillance of innocent members of the community
 - Data sharing, storage and retention could contribute to structural racism
- Public comments: need for transparent and fair use, lack of technical and procedural safeguards, the need to record all video and sound feeds for police accountability, and potentially poor resolution of images

Situational Awareness Cameras

- Impact Assessment issues:
 - Allowable uses
 - Capabilities beyond allowed use
 - Safeguards to protect improper viewing, collection, and storage of images
- CTO's Response: SFD's policy and training and limitations of the technology provide adequate mitigation for Working Group concerns

Situational Awareness Cameras

- Policy Considerations
 - Annual equity assessment metrics
 - Use and appropriate application
 - Acquisition of cameras with prohibited capabilities
 - Technical and procedural safeguards – downloading or streaming

CB 120055 – Video Recording Systems

- Genetec Video Management System
 - Audio and video recording of interactions with and interviews of crime victims, witnesses and suspects in interview rooms
 - Video-only monitoring of individuals in interview rooms when no SPD detective is present
- Milestone Systems
 - Continuous recording of activity in blood alcohol collection rooms and precinct holding cells

Video Recording Systems

- Civil Liberties and Potential Disparate Impacts
 - Personally identifiable and potentially sensitive personal information on video or audio recordings
 - Could over-surveil vulnerable or historically targeted communities
 - Data sharing, storage and retention could contribute to structural racism
- Public comments: need for transparent and fair use, system security , potential system add-ons, camera operations

Video Recording Systems

- Impact Assessment issues:
 - System capabilities
 - Data collection, storage and protection
 - Allowable uses

Video Recording Systems

- CTO's Response:
 - System capabilities: Outlined in the SIR. Facial recognition features are not in use by any system in SPD. As of July 2021, Chapter 43.386 RCW will regulate use of a facial recognition service
 - Data collection, storage and protection: outlined in the SIR
 - Allowable uses: Outlined in the SIR. Governed by SPD Policy 7.110 –Recorded Statements.

Video Recording Systems

- Policy Considerations
 - Annual equity assessment metrics



Legislation Text

File #: CB 120054, **Version:** 1

CITY OF SEATTLE

ORDINANCE _____

COUNCIL BILL _____

AN ORDINANCE relating to surveillance technology implementation; authorizing approval of uses and accepting the 2020 surveillance impact report and 2020 executive overview for the Seattle Police Department's use of Situational Awareness Cameras Without Recording.

WHEREAS, Section 14.18.020 of the Seattle Municipal Code (SMC), enacted by Ordinance 125376, requires

City Council approval of a surveillance impact report (SIR) related to uses of surveillance technology, with existing/retroactive technology to be placed on a Master Technology List; and

WHEREAS, SMC 14.18.020 applies to the Situational Awareness Cameras Without Recording in use by the Seattle Police Department; and

WHEREAS, the Seattle Police Department conducted policy rule review and community review as part of the development of the SIR; and

WHEREAS, SMC 14.18.080, enacted by Ordinance 125679, provides for the Community Surveillance Working Group, composed of relevant stakeholders, to complete a privacy and civil liberties impact assessment for each SIR, and SMC 14.18.020 allows for a statement from the Chief Technology Officer in response to the Working Group's privacy and civil liberties impact assessment; and

WHEREAS, development of the SIR, review by the Working Group and the Chief Technology Officer's response has been completed; NOW, THEREFORE,

BE IT ORDAINED BY THE CITY OF SEATTLE AS FOLLOWS:

Section 1. Pursuant to Ordinances 125376 and 125679, the City Council approves use of the Seattle Police Department's Situational Awareness Cameras Without Recording and accepts the 2020 Surveillance

Impact Report (SIR) for this technology, attached to this ordinance as Attachment 1, and the 2020 Executive Overview for the same technology, attached to this ordinance as Attachment 2.

Section 2. This ordinance shall take effect and be in force 30 days after its approval by the Mayor, but if not approved and returned by the Mayor within ten days after presentation, it shall take effect as provided by Seattle Municipal Code Section 1.04.020.

Passed by the City Council the _____ day of _____, 2021, and signed by me in open session in authentication of its passage this _____ day of _____, 2021.

President _____ of the City Council

Approved / returned unsigned / vetoed this _____ day of _____, 2021.

Jenny A. Durkan, Mayor

Filed by me this _____ day of _____, 2021.

Monica Martinez Simmons, City Clerk

(Seal)

Attachments:

Attachment 1 - 2020 Surveillance Impact Report: Situational Awareness Cameras without Recording

Attachment 2 - 2020 Surveillance Impact Report Executive Overview: Situational Awareness Cameras without Recording



2020 Surveillance Impact Report

Situational Awareness Cameras Without Recording

Seattle Police Department

April 13th, 2021

Version 1

Surveillance Impact Report (“SIR”) Overview	3
Privacy Impact Assessment	4
Financial Information	11
Expertise and References	12
Racial Equity Toolkit (“RET”) and Engagement for Public Comment Worksheet	14
Privacy and Civil Liberties Assessment	20
CTO Response	22
Appendix A: Glossary	26
Appendix B: Meeting Notice(s)	28
Appendix C: All Comments Received from Members of the Public	29
Appendix D: Letters from Organizations or Commissions	39
Appendix E: CTO Notification of Surveillance Technology	48

Surveillance Impact Report (“SIR”) Overview

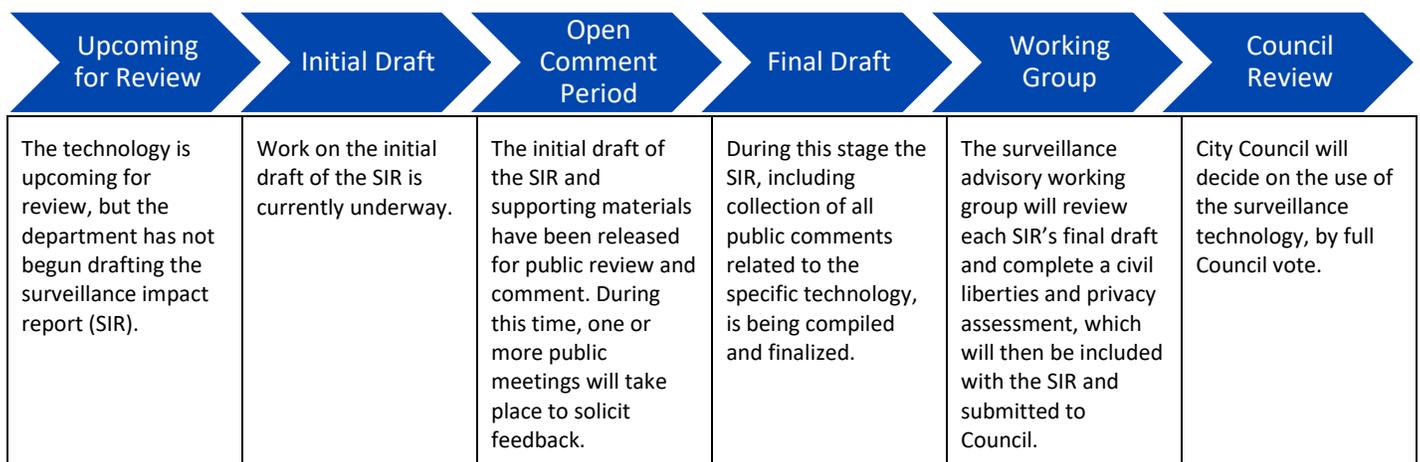
About the Surveillance Ordinance

The Seattle City Council passed ordinance [125376](#), also referred to as the “Surveillance Ordinance”, on September 1, 2017. This ordinance has implications for the acquisition of new technologies by the City, and technologies that are already in use that may fall under the new, broader definition of surveillance.

SMC 14.18.020.B.1 charges the City’s executive with developing a process to identify surveillance technologies subject to the ordinance. Seattle IT, on behalf of the executive, developed and implemented a process through which a privacy and surveillance review is completed prior to the acquisition of new technologies. This requirement, and the criteria used in the review process, are documented in Seattle IT Policy PR-02, the “Surveillance Policy”.

Surveillance Ordinance Review Process

The following is a high-level outline of the complete SIR review process.



Privacy Impact Assessment

Purpose

A Privacy Impact Assessment (“PIA”) is a method for collecting and documenting detailed information collected in order to conduct an in-depth privacy review of a program or project. A PIA asks questions about the collection, use, sharing, security and access controls for data that is gathered using a technology or program. It also requests information about policies, training and documentation that govern use of the technology. The PIA responses are used to determine privacy risks associated with a project and mitigations that may reduce some or all of those risks. In the interests of transparency about data collection and management, the City of Seattle has committed to publishing all PIAs on an outward facing website for public access.

When is a Privacy Impact Assessment Required?

A PIA may be required in two circumstances.

- 1) When a project, technology, or other review has been flagged as having a high privacy risk.
- 2) When a technology is required to complete the surveillance impact report process. This is one deliverable that comprises the report.

1.0 Abstract

1.1 Please provide a brief description (one paragraph) of the purpose and proposed use of the project/technology.

The Seattle Police Department utilizes four types of situational awareness cameras to monitor an identified subject or watch an area of concern while positioned from a safe distance away. SPD operates these cameras in a variety of different ways to serve specific purposes depending on the situational need. The cameras fall broadly into four categories:

- mounted on remote controlled robots,
- mounted to poles or extenders,
- strategically placed, and
- cameras that are thrown.

The images transmitted from these cameras are secured and viewed on proprietary monitors. SPD does not record, store, or retain any of the images captured by these camera technologies.

1.2 Explain the reason the project/technology is being created or updated and why the PIA is required.

This technology is specifically used to covertly observe subjects, in real time, from a safe position. If used out of policy or improperly, this technology could potentially be used to inappropriately infringe on public privacy.

2.0 Project / Technology Overview

Provide an overview of the project or technology. The overview gives the context and background necessary to understand the purpose, mission and justification for the project / technology proposed

2.1 Describe the benefits of the project/technology.

SPD's tactical units use situational awareness cameras to assess potentially dangerous situations from a safe location. The use of these cameras allows SPD to view surroundings and gain additional information prior to entering a location, which provides additional safety and security to SPD personnel, the subjects of the observation, and other members of the community.

2.2 Provide any data or research demonstrating anticipated benefits.

The National Institute of Justice asserts that situational awareness in a potentially threatening situation is an essential key variable in determining when the use of force is necessary¹. Situational awareness may also be to as "tactical awareness;" safety for both the officer and the subject is increased when the responding officers have visual information about the event and its surroundings.

2.3 Describe the technology involved.

There are 4 types of situational awareness cameras used by SPD's SWAT Unit:

Robot Mounted Cameras – The Avatar Robot by RoboteX incorporates a 360-degree optical camera and is remote controlled by officers from a safe position on scene. The remote range of the Avatar Robot is approximately 200 meters.

Pole Cameras – Pole camera models are made by Tactical Electronics and Smith and Wesson. These are small, portable cameras that can be extended in height (to approximately 20'). They are typically handheld during their use and send secure images to the user's handheld remote monitor.

Placeable Cameras – Camera models are made by Remington and Tactical Electronics. They are small portable cameras designed to be placed in specific strategic locations and situations. These models also send secure images to the user's handheld remote monitor.

Throwable Cameras – Camera models are made by Remington and Tactical Electronics. These small, rugged cameras are designed to be thrown into situations where access by SPD personnel is not possible. Like the pole and placeable cameras, the secure images are transmitted to the user's handheld remote monitor.

None of the images transmitted by these cameras are stored or recorded by the camera equipment or the handheld monitor.

2.4 Describe how the project or use of technology relates to the department's mission.

The mission of the Seattle Police Department is to prevent crime, enforce the law, and support quality public safety by delivering respectful, professional, and dependable police services. SPD's SWAT unit utilizes this technology to assess potentially dangerous situations and obtain as much information about the situation as possible. By doing so, SPD personnel and the subjects involved are safer.

2.5 Who will be involved with the deployment and use of the project / technology?

Only members of the SPD SWAT Unit are authorized to use this equipment.

3.0 Use Governance

Provide an outline of any rules that will govern the use of the project / technology. Please note: non-City entities contracting with the City are bound by restrictions specified in the surveillance ordinance and privacy principles and must provide written procedures for how the entity will comply with any restrictions identified.

3.1 Describe the processes that are required prior to each use, or access to/ of the project / technology, such as a notification, or check-in, check-out of equipment.

All members of SWAT are given training in the use and appropriate application of these cameras. Any SWAT personnel may elect to use one of the cameras if the situation calls for its use.

3.2 List the legal standards or conditions, if any, that must be met before the project / technology is used.

There is no legal standard or condition for the use of these cameras in non-protected public areas, such as a hotel hallway. However, if SPD plans to use the camera inside a protected area, such as in a person's home or property, SPD will obtain a signed search warrant from a judge, absent exigent circumstances.

3.3 Describe the policies and training required of all personnel operating the project / technology, and who has access to ensure compliance with use and management policies.

Only members of SWAT are authorized to use this equipment and are specifically trained in their use. The SWAT commanders are responsible to ensure usage of the technology falls within appropriate usage.

¹ <https://www.nij.gov/topics/law-enforcement/officer-safety/use-of-force/pages/welcome.aspx>

4.0 Data Collection and Use

Provide information about the policies and practices around the collection and use of the data collected.

4.1 Provide details about what information is being collected from sources other than an individual, including other IT systems, systems of record, commercial data aggregators, publicly available data and/or other City departments.

No images or data are collected, stored, or retained by any situational awareness camera used by SPD.

4.2 What measures are in place to minimize inadvertent or improper collection of data?

Risk of inadvertent or improper collection is low, as no images or data are collected, stored, or retained by any situational awareness camera used by SPD.

4.3 How and when will the project / technology be deployed or used? By whom? Who will determine when the project / technology is deployed and used?

This technology is used only by the SPD SWAT Unit to assess potentially dangerous situations.

4.4 How often will the technology be in operation?

The different types of cameras are used with varying frequency depending on the circumstances. Pole-mounted cameras are used frequently to assess situations around corners and above or below officer positions.

4.5 What is the permanence of the installation? Is it installed permanently, or temporarily?

These cameras are portable and do not remain in fixed locations.

4.6 Is a physical object collecting data or images visible to the public? What are the markings to indicate that it is in use? What signage is used to determine department ownership and contact information?

These cameras are covert by design. They are used to assess potentially dangerous situations from a safe distance.

4.7 How will data that is collected be accessed and by whom?

No images or data are collected, stored, or retained by any situational awareness camera used by SPD.

4.8 If operated or used by another entity on behalf of the City, provide details about access, and applicable protocols.

This technology is used only by the SPD SWAT Unit and no images or data are collected, stored, or retained by any situational awareness camera used by SPD.

4.9 What are acceptable reasons for access to the equipment and/or data collected?

These cameras are covert by design. They are used to assess potentially dangerous situations from a safe distance. No images or data are collected, stored, or retained by any situational awareness camera used by SPD.

The decision to use situational awareness cameras is made on a case-by-case basis. These devices allow officers to monitor a subject or watch situation from a position of safety and distance. Absent exigent circumstances, a signed warrant is obtained prior to the use of this technology in any protected area.

4.10 What safeguards are in place, for protecting data from unauthorized access (encryption, access control mechanisms, etc.) And to provide an audit trail (viewer logging, modification logging, etc.)?

This equipment is securely stored and accessible only to the SWAT Unit for use in their operations. No images or data are collected, stored, or retained by any situational awareness camera used by SPD.

5.0 Data Storage, Retention and Deletion

5.1 How will data be securely stored?

The following questions on data storage are not applicable to these technologies, as no images or data are collected, stored, or retained by any situational awareness camera used by SPD.

5.2 How will the owner allow for departmental and other entities, to audit for compliance with legal deletion requirements?

n/a

5.3 What measures will be used to destroy improperly collected data?

n/a

5.4 which specific departmental unit or individual is responsible for ensuring compliance with data retention requirements?

n/a

6.0 Data Sharing and Accuracy

6.1 Which entity or entities inside and external to the City will be data sharing partners?

The following questions on data sharing are not applicable to these technologies, as no images or data are collected, stored, or retained by any situational awareness camera used by SPD.

6.2 Why is data sharing necessary?

n/a

6.3 Are there any restrictions on non-City data use?

Yes No

6.3.1 if you answered yes, provide a copy of the department's procedures and policies for ensuring compliance with these restrictions.

This technology is used only by the SPD SWAT Unit and no images or data are collected, stored, or retained by any situational awareness camera used by SPD.

6.4 how does the project/technology review and approve information sharing agreements, memorandums of understanding, new uses of the information, new access to the system by organizations within City of Seattle and outside agencies?

n/a

6.5 explain how the project/technology checks the accuracy of the information collected. If accuracy is not checked, please explain why.

n/a

6.6 describe any procedures that allow individuals to access their information and correct inaccurate or erroneous information.

n/a

7.0 Legal Obligations, Risks and Compliance

7.1 What specific legal authorities and/or agreements permit and define the collection of information by the project/technology?

No images or data are collected, stored, or retained by any situational awareness camera used by SPD. When situational awareness camera equipment will be utilized in protected areas, such as inside a home, the SWAT Unit obtains a signed warrant.

7.2 Describe what privacy training is provided to users either generally or specifically relevant to the project/technology.

The SWAT Unit is trained on the appropriate usage of situational awareness cameras.

7.3 Given the specific data elements collected, describe the privacy risks identified and for each risk, explain how it was mitigated. Specific risks may be inherent in the sources or methods of collection, or the quality or quantity of information included.

Because the SWAT Unit requires a signed warrant before utilizing this technology in protected areas, they have mitigated the risk of improper viewing of the protected areas.

7.4 Is there any aspect of the project/technology that might cause concern by giving the appearance to the public of privacy intrusion or misuse of personal information?

The nature of this type of technology may cause concern by giving the appearance of privacy intrusion or misuse. These cameras are specifically designed to be covert and they allow officers to view viewing into sensitive areas. While these cameras have the capability to observe the public, they are not utilized by SPD in this manner. No information, images, or audio are recorded by any of these situational awareness cameras.

8.0 Monitoring and Enforcement

8.1 describe how the project/technology maintains a record of any disclosures outside of the department.

No images or data are collected, stored, or retained by any situational awareness camera used by SPD. When situational awareness camera equipment will be utilized in protected areas, such as inside a home, the SWAT Unit obtains a signed warrant.

8.2 what auditing measures are in place to safeguard the information, and policies that pertain to them, as well as who has access to the audit data? Explain whether the project/technology conducts self-audits, third party audits or reviews.

No images or data are collected, stored, or retained by any situational awareness camera used by SPD. When situational awareness camera equipment will be utilized in protected areas, such as inside a home, the SWAT Unit obtains a signed warrant.

Financial Information

Purpose

This section provides a description of the fiscal impact of the surveillance technology, as required by the surveillance ordinance.

1.0 Fiscal Impact

Provide a description of the fiscal impact of the project/technology by answering the questions below.

1.1 Current or potential sources of funding: initial acquisition costs.

Current potential

Date of initial acquisition	Date of go live	Direct initial acquisition cost	Professional services for acquisition	Other acquisition costs	Initial acquisition funding source
	6/30/2016	\$67,704.86		Pole Camera w/Wrist Mounted Monitor	UASI Grant Funded
02/04/2013		\$5,000		Avatar 1 Base package, Pre-owned	Org Charged: P1941

Notes:

Respond here.

1.2 Current or potential sources of funding: on-going operating costs, including maintenance, licensing, personnel, legal/compliance use auditing, data retention and security costs.

Current potential

Annual maintenance and licensing	Legal/compliance, audit, data retention and other security costs	Department overhead	IT overhead	Annual funding source
10/07/2019 Order of replacement placeable cameras and telescoping poles for use with cameras.				SPD Budget: \$42,256.40
3/19/2020 Replacement: One replacement Pole Camera Purchased w/ Wrist mounted monitor.				This is a 100% grant funded purchase using SHSP FY18 fund: \$37,051.99

Notes:

1.3 Cost savings potential through use of the technology

Respond to question 1.3 here

1.4 Current or potential sources of funding including subsidies or free products offered by vendors or governmental entities

N/A

Expertise and References

Purpose

The following information is provided to ensure that Council has a group of experts to reference while reviewing the completed surveillance impact report (“SIR”). Any individuals or agencies referenced must be made aware ahead of publication that their information has been included. All materials must be available for Council to access or review, without requiring additional purchase or contract.

1.0 Other Government References

1.1 Please list any other government bodies that have implemented this technology and can speak to the implementation of this technology.

Agency, municipality, etc.	Primary contact	Description of current use

2.0 Academics, Consultants, and Other Experts

2.1 Please list any experts in the technology under consideration, or in the technical completion of the service or function the technology is responsible for.

Agency, municipality, etc.	Primary contact	Description of current use

3.0 White Papers or Other Documents

3.1 Please list any authoritative publication, report or guide that is relevant to the use of this technology or this type of technology.

Title	Publication	Link
“Video for SWAT Operations”	Law and Order, The Magazine for Police Management	Article Detail Hendon Media Group (hendonpub.com)

Racial Equity Toolkit (“RET”) and Engagement for Public Comment Worksheet

Purpose

Departments submitting a SIR are required to complete an adapted version of the Racial Equity Toolkit (“RET”) in order to:

- Provide a framework for the mindful completion of the SIR in a way that is sensitive to the historic exclusion of vulnerable and historically underrepresented communities. Particularly, to inform the public engagement efforts departments will complete as part of the surveillance impact report.
- Highlight and mitigate any impacts on racial equity from the adoption and the use of the technology.
- Highlight and mitigate any disparate impacts on individuals or vulnerable communities.
- Fulfill the public engagement requirements of the surveillance impact report.

Adaption of the RET for Surveillance Impact Reports

The RET was adapted for the specific use by the Seattle Information Technology Departments’ (“Seattle IT”) privacy team, the Office of Civil Rights (“OCR”), and change team members from Seattle IT, Seattle City Light, Seattle Fire Department, Seattle Police Department, and Seattle Department of Transportation.

Racial Equity Toolkit Overview

The vision of the Seattle Race and Social Justice Initiative is to eliminate racial inequity in the community. To do this requires ending individual racism, institutional racism and structural racism. The racial equity toolkit lays out a process and a set of questions to guide the development, implementation and evaluation of policies, initiatives, programs, and budget issues to address the impacts on racial equity.

1.0 Set Outcomes

1.1. Seattle City Council has defined the following inclusion criteria in the surveillance ordinance, and they serve as important touchstones for the risks departments are being asked to resolve and/or mitigate. Which of the following inclusion criteria apply to this technology?

- The technology disparately impacts disadvantaged groups.
- There is a high likelihood that personally identifiable information will be shared with non-City entities that will use the data for a purpose other than providing the City with a contractually agreed-upon service.
- The technology collects data that is personally identifiable even if obscured, de-identified, or anonymized after collection.

The technology raises reasonable concerns about impacts to civil liberty, freedom of speech or association, racial equity, or social justice.

1.2 What are the potential impacts on civil liberties through the implementation of this technology? How is the department mitigating these risks?

The potential that innocent members of the community would fall under surveillance by covert use of situational awareness cameras by the SPD SWAT Unit is mitigated in two ways. First, the usage of this equipment is situational, and the cameras are used during events in which the SWAT Unit responds to calls for police service. Where the cameras are utilized in non-public areas a signed warrant is obtained prior to their use. Second, no images, data, or audio is recorded by the situational awareness cameras.

1.3 What are the risks for racial or ethnicity-based bias through each use or deployment of this technology? How is the department mitigating these risks?

The mission of the Seattle Police Department is to prevent crime, enforce the law, and support quality public safety by delivering respectful, professional and dependable police services. [SPD Policy 5.140](#) forbids bias-based policing and outlines processes for reporting and documenting any suspected bias-based behavior, as well as accountability measures. The use of this technology does not enhance the risks of racial or ethnicity-based bias.

1.4 Where in the City is the technology used or deployed?

all Seattle neighborhoods

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| <input type="checkbox"/> Ballard | <input type="checkbox"/> Southeast |
| <input type="checkbox"/> North | <input type="checkbox"/> Delridge |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Northeast | <input type="checkbox"/> Greater Duwamish |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Central | <input type="checkbox"/> East district |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Lake union | <input type="checkbox"/> King county (outside Seattle) |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Southwest | <input type="checkbox"/> Outside King County. |

If possible, please include any maps or visualizations of historical deployments / use.

N/A

1.4.1 What are the racial demographics of those living in this area or impacted by these issues?

City of Seattle demographics: White - 69.5%; Black or African American - 7.9%; Amer. Indian & Alaska Native - 0.8%; Asian - 13.8%; Native Hawaiian & Pacific Islander - 0.4%; Other race - 2.4%; Two or more races - 5.1%; Hispanic or Latino ethnicity (of any race): 6.6%; Persons of color: 33.7%.

King County demographics: White – 70.1%; Black or African American – 6.7%; American Indian & Alaskan Native – 1.1%; Asian, Native Hawaiian, Pacific Islander – 17.2%; Hispanic or Latino (of any race) – 9.4%

1.4.2 How are decisions made where the technology is used or deployed? How does the Department work to ensure diverse neighborhoods are not specifically targeted?

The decision to use situational awareness cameras is made on a case-by-case basis. These devices allow officers to monitor a subject or watch situation from a position of safety and distance. Absent exigent circumstances, a signed warrant is obtained prior to the use of this technology in any protected area.

1.5 How do decisions around data sharing have the potential for disparate impact on historically targeted communities? What is the department doing to mitigate those risks?

The Aspen Institute on Community Change defines structural racism as “...public policies, institutional practices, cultural representations and other norms [which] work in various, often reinforcing ways to perpetuate racial group inequity.” Data sharing has the potential to be a contributing factor to structural racism and thus creating a disparate impact on historically targeted communities. In an effort to mitigate this possibility, SPD has established policies regarding the dissemination of data in connection with criminal prosecutions, Washington Public Records Act ([Chapter 42.56 RCW](#)), and other authorized researchers.

Further, [SPD Policy 5.140](#) forbids bias-based policing and outlines processes for reporting and documenting any suspected bias-based behavior, as well as accountability measures.

The situational awareness cameras utilized by the SPD SWAT Unit do not record any information and therefore no information from this technology is stores or shared.

1.6 How do decisions around data storage and retention have the potential for disparate impact on historically targeted communities? What is the department doing to mitigate those risks?

Like decisions around data sharing, data storage and retention have similar potential for disparate impact on historically targeted communities. [SPD Policy 5.140](#) forbids bias-based policing and outlines processes for reporting and documenting any suspected bias-based behavior, as well as accountability measures.

1.7 What are potential unintended consequences (both negative and positive potential impact)? What proactive steps can you can / have you taken to ensure these consequences do not occur.

The unintended consequences related to the continued utilization of situational awareness cameras by SPD is the out of policy misuse of the technology to improperly surveil the public. SPD policies, including [SPD Policy 6.060 - Collection of Information for Law Enforcement Purposes](#) also define the way information will be gathered by SPD in a manner that does not unreasonably infringe upon: individual rights, liberties, and freedoms guaranteed by the Constitution of the United States and the State of Washington, including freedom of speech, press, association, and assembly; liberty of conscience; the exercise of religion.

2.0 Public Outreach

2.1 Scheduled public meeting(s).

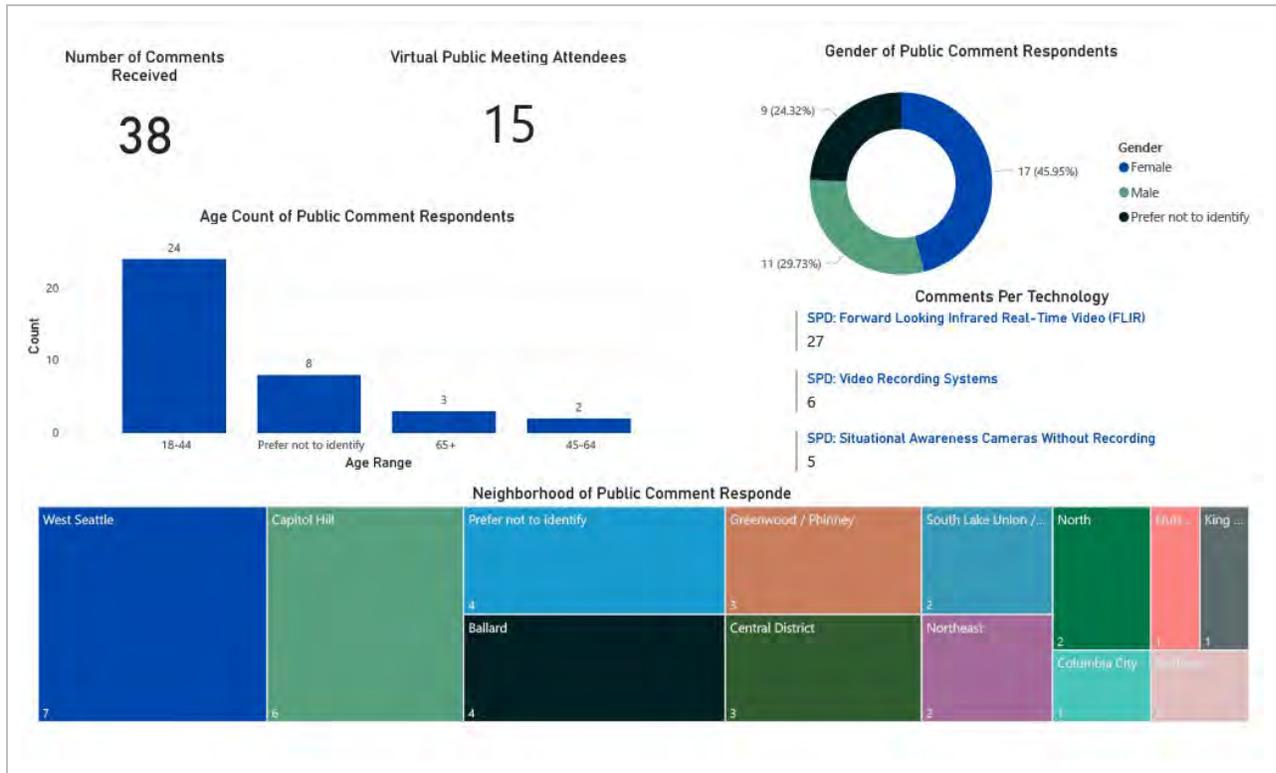
Meeting notes, sign-in sheets, all comments received, and questions from the public will be included in Appendix A-C. Comment analysis will be summarized in section 3.0 Public Comment Analysis.

Meeting 1

Location	Webex Online Event
Date	October 28 th , 2020
Time	12 pm – 1 pm

3.0 Public Comment Analysis

3.1 Demographics of the public who submitted comments.



3.2 What concerns, if any, do you have about the use of this technology?

micro SD card ^{SIR} seems ^{robot} supports recording likely
 SPD audio video cameras SPD manual specifically use
 ordinance recording ^{pdf} public ^{Avatar} Tactical Electronics Core

3.3 What value, if any, do you see in the use of this technology?

N/A

3.4 What do you want City leadership to consider about the use of this technology?

public followed VMS ^{Milestone} security use SPD ^{hacked}
 Genetec security best practices recordings information

3.5 Do you have any other comments?

N/A

4.0 Response to Public Comments

4.1 How will you address the concerns that have been identified by the public?

The OIG has audit responsibilities for determining legality of the system and deployment. SPD follows case law and city ordinance and requires a legal foundation to deploy the cameras.

5.0 Equity Annual Reporting

5.1 What metrics for this technology be reported to the CTO for the annual equity assessments? Departments will be responsible for sharing their own evaluations with department leadership, change team leads, and community leaders identified in the public outreach plan.

Respond here.

Privacy and Civil Liberties Assessment

Purpose

This section shall be completed after public engagement has concluded and the department has completed the racial equity toolkit section above. The privacy and civil liberties assessment is completed by the community surveillance working group (“working group”), per the surveillance ordinance which states that the working group shall:

“Provide to the executive and the City Council a privacy and civil liberties impact assessment for each SIR that must be included with any departmental request for surveillance technology acquisition or in-use approval. The impact assessment shall include a description of the potential impact of the surveillance technology on civil rights and liberties and potential disparate impacts on communities of color and other marginalized communities. The CTO shall share with the working group a copy of the SIR that shall also be posted during the period of public engagement. At the conclusion of the public engagement period, the CTO shall share the final proposed SIR with the working group at least six weeks prior to submittal of the SIR to Council for approval. The working group shall provide its impact assessment in writing to the executive and the City Council for inclusion in the SIR within six weeks of receiving the final proposed SIR. If the working group does not provide the impact assessment before such time, the working group must ask for a two-week extension of time to City Council in writing. If the working group fails to submit an impact statement within eight weeks of receiving the SIR, the department and City Council may proceed with ordinance approval without the impact statement.”

Working Group Privacy and Civil Liberties Assessment

From: Seattle Community Surveillance Working Group (CSWG)

To: Seattle City Council

Date: Dec 15, 2020

Re: Privacy and Civil Liberties Impact Assessment for Video Recording Systems

Executive Summary

The CSWG has completed its review of the Surveillance Impact Reports (SIRs) for the three surveillance technologies included in Group 3 of the Seattle Surveillance Ordinance technology review process. These technologies are Forward Looking Infrared, Video Recording Systems, and Situational Awareness Cameras Without Recording. This document is the CSWG’s Privacy and Civil Liberties Impact Assessment for Situational Awareness Cameras Without Recording as set forth in SMC 14.18.080(B)(1), which we provide for inclusion in the final SIRs submitted to the City Councils.

This document first provides our recommendations to Council, then provides background information, key concerns, and outstanding questions regarding Situational Awareness Cameras Without Recording.

Our assessment of Situational Awareness Cameras as used by Seattle Police Department (SPD) focuses on three major issues:

1. Additional policy language is necessary to define valid purposes of use.
2. The capabilities of the situational awareness cameras are unclear.
3. It is unclear what technical and procedural safeguards are in place to prevent the improper viewing, collection, and storage of images.

Recommendations:

We recommend that the Council adopt, via ordinance, at a minimum, clear and enforceable rules that ensure the following:

1. **SPD must abide by a specific and restricted purpose of use:** The ordinance should define a specific purpose of use for situational awareness cameras used by SPD, and any use must be restricted to that specific purpose.
2. **SPD must not use any situational awareness cameras that have capabilities beyond what is strictly necessary to fulfill the purpose of use defined by the ordinance.** The ordinance should prohibit SPD from using cameras that have facial recognition or recording capabilities.
3. **SPD must adopt technical and procedural safeguards to prevent misuse of the situational awareness cameras.** The ordinance should require SPD adopt safeguards that prevent use of the cameras or the footage streamed from the cameras for purposes beyond what is defined in the ordinance.

Outstanding Questions

1. What are the complete model names/numbers for each of the equipment in scope for the Situational Awareness Cameras?
2. What technical safeguards are in place to prevent the storage/retention of images?
3. 7.3 of Situational Awareness Cameras SIR states “[the SWAT Unit] have mitigated the risk of improper viewing of the protected areas.” How specifically have they mitigated the risk?
4. What (if any) sections of the SPD Manual specifically cover the use of these technologies by SWAT?

CTO Response

Memo

To: Seattle City Council
From: Saad Bashir, Chief Technology Officer
Subject: CTO Response to the Surveillance Working Group Situational Awareness Cameras Without Recording SIR Review

Purpose

As provided in the Surveillance Ordinance, [SMC 14.18.080](#), this memo outlines the Chief Technology Officer's (CTO's) response to the Surveillance Working Group assessment on the Surveillance Impact Report for Seattle Police Department's Situational Awareness Cameras Without Recording.

Background

The Information Technology Department (ITD) is dedicated to the Privacy Principles and Surveillance Ordinance objectives to provide oversight and transparency about the use and acquisition of specialized technologies with potential privacy and civil liberties impacts. All City departments have a shared mission to protect lives and property while balancing technology use and data collection with negative impacts to individuals. This requires ensuring the appropriate use of privacy invasive technologies through technology limitations, policy, training and departmental oversight.

The CTO's role in the SIR process has been to ensure that all City departments are compliant with the Surveillance Ordinance requirements. As part of the review work for surveillance technologies, ITD's Privacy Office has facilitated the creation of the Surveillance Impact Report documentation, including collecting comments and suggestions from the Working Group and members of the public about these technologies. IT and City departments have also worked collaboratively with the Working Group to answer additional questions that came up during their review process. We believe that policy, training and technology limitations enacted by SPD and Council oversight through the surveillance technology review process provide adequate mitigation for the potential privacy and civil liberties concerns raised by the Working Group about the use of this important operational technology.

Technology Purpose

The Seattle Police Department utilizes four types of situational awareness cameras to monitor an identified subject or watch an area of concern while positioned from a safe distance away. SPD operates these cameras in a variety of different ways to serve specific purposes depending on the situational need. The cameras fall broadly into four categories:

- mounted on remote controlled robots,
- mounted to poles or extenders,
- strategically placed, and
- cameras that are thrown.

The images transmitted from these cameras are secured and viewed on proprietary monitors. SPD does not record, store, or retain any of the images captured by these camera technologies.

Working Group Concerns

In their review, the Working Group has raised concerns about these devices being used in a privacy impacting way. They focused on wanting additional information confirming specified purpose of use, documenting capabilities of the cameras, and outlining and increasing technical or procedural safeguards around the use or collection of data. We believe that policy, training and technology limitations enacted by SPD provide adequate mitigation for the potential privacy and civil liberties concerns raised by the Working Group about the use of this important operational technology.

Recommended Next Steps

I look forward to working together with Council and City departments to ensure continued transparency about the use of these technologies and finding a mutually agreeable means to use technology to improve City services while protecting the privacy and civil rights of the residents we serve. Specific concerns in the Working Group comments about cameras are addressed in the attached document.

Response to Specific Concerns: Situational Awareness Cameras Without Recording

Concern: Inadequate policies defining specific and restricted purpose of use

CTO Assessment: In addition to the policy and procedure outlined in the SIR and process established by SMC 14.18, the use of situational cameras and the restrictions on recording is also governed by the [Intelligence Ordinance, SMC 14.12](#). The requirements of the Intelligence Ordinance is also incorporated to the relevant [SPD Policy in Manual Section 6.060](#).

SIR Response:

Section 2.4 Describe how the project or use of technology relates to the department's mission.

The mission of the Seattle Police Department is to prevent crime, enforce the law, and support quality public safety by delivering respectful, professional, and dependable police services. SPD's SWAT unit utilizes this technology to assess potentially dangerous situations and obtain as much information about the situation as possible. By doing so, SPD personnel and the subjects involved are safer.

Section 3.1 Describe the processes that are required prior to each use, or access to/ of the project / technology, such as a notification, or check-in, check-out of equipment.

All members of SWAT are given training in the use and appropriate application of these cameras. Any SWAT personnel may elect to use one of the cameras if the situation calls for its use.

Section 3.2 List the legal standards or conditions, if any, that must be met before the project / technology is used.

There is no legal standard or condition for the use of these cameras in non-protected public areas, such as a hotel hallway. However, if SPD plans to use the camera inside a protected area, such as in a person's home or property, SPD will obtain a signed search warrant from a judge, absent exigent circumstances.

Section 4.3 How and when will the project / technology be deployed or used? By whom? Who will determine when the project / technology is deployed and used?

This technology is used only by the SPD SWAT Unit to assess potentially dangerous situations.

Section 4.9 What are acceptable reasons for access to the equipment and/or data collected?

These cameras are covert by design. They are used to assess potentially dangerous situations from a safe distance. No images or data are collected, stored, or retained by any situational awareness camera used by SPD. The decision to use situational awareness cameras is made on a case-by-case basis. These devices allow officers to monitor a subject or watch situation from a position of safety and distance. Absent exigent circumstances, a signed warrant is obtained prior to the use of this technology in any protected area.

Concern: Capabilities of the situational awareness cameras beyond specified purpose of use

CTO Assessment: The SIR outlines the acceptable and specified use of the situational awareness cameras. No images or data are collected, stored, or retained by any situational awareness camera used by SPD.

SIR Response:

Section 4.1 Provide details about what information is being collected from sources other than an individual, including other IT systems, systems of record, commercial data aggregators, publicly available data and/or other City departments.

No images or data are collected, stored, or retained by any situational awareness camera used by SPD.

Concern: Unclear what technical and procedural safeguards are in place to prevent the improper viewing, collection, and storage of images.

CTO Assessment: No images or data are collected, stored, or retained by any situational awareness camera used by SPD. the use of situational cameras and the restrictions on recording is also governed by the Intelligence Ordinance, SMC 14.12. The requirements of the Intelligence Ordinance are also incorporated to the relevant SPD Policy in Manual Section 6.060.

SIR Response:

Section 4.1 Provide details about what information is being collected from sources other than an individual, including other IT systems, systems of record, commercial data aggregators, publicly available data and/or other City departments.

No images or data are collected, stored, or retained by any situational awareness camera used by SPD.

Appendix A: Glossary

Accountable: (taken from the racial equity toolkit.) Responsive to the needs and concerns of those most impacted by the issues you are working on, particularly to communities of color and those historically underrepresented in the civic process.

Community outcomes: (taken from the racial equity toolkit.) The specific result you are seeking to achieve that advances racial equity.

Contracting equity: (taken from the racial equity toolkit.) Efforts to achieve equitable racial outcomes in the way the City spends resources, including goods and services, consultants and contracting.

DON: “Department of Neighborhoods.”

Immigrant and refugee access to services: (taken from the racial equity toolkit.) Government services and resources are easily available and understandable to all Seattle residents, including non-native English speakers. Full and active participation of immigrant and refugee communities exists in Seattle’s civic, economic and cultural life.

Inclusive outreach and public engagement: (taken from the racial equity toolkit.) Processes inclusive of people of diverse races, cultures, gender identities, sexual orientations and socio-economic status. Access to information, resources and civic processes so community members can effectively engage in the design and delivery of public services.

Individual racism: (taken from the racial equity toolkit.) Pre-judgment, bias, stereotypes about an individual or group based on race. The impacts of racism on individuals including white people internalizing privilege, and people of color internalizing oppression.

Institutional racism: (taken from the racial equity toolkit.) Organizational programs, policies or procedures that work to the benefit of white people and to the detriment of people of color, usually unintentionally or inadvertently.

OCR: “Office of Civil Rights.”

Opportunity areas: (taken from the racial equity toolkit.) One of seven issue areas the City of Seattle is working on in partnership with the community to eliminate racial disparities and create racial equity. They include: education, health, community development, criminal justice, jobs, housing, and the environment.

Racial equity: (taken from the racial equity toolkit.) When social, economic and political opportunities are not predicted based upon a person’s race.

Racial inequity: (taken from the racial equity toolkit.)
When a person’s race can predict their social, economic, and political opportunities and outcomes.

RET: “Racial Equity Toolkit”

Seattle neighborhoods: (taken from the racial equity toolkit neighborhood.) Boundaries defined for the purpose of understanding geographic areas in Seattle.

Stakeholders: (taken from the racial equity toolkit.)
Those impacted by proposed policy, program, or budget issue who have potential concerns or issue expertise. Examples might include: specific racial/ethnic groups, other institutions like Seattle housing authority, schools, community-based organizations, change teams, City employees, unions, etc.

Structural racism: (taken from the racial equity toolkit.)
The interplay of policies, practices and programs of multiple institutions which leads to adverse outcomes and conditions for communities of color compared to white communities that occurs within the context of racialized historical and cultural conditions.

Surveillance Ordinance: Seattle City Council passed ordinance [125376](#), also referred to as the “Surveillance Ordinance.”

SIR: “Surveillance Impact Report”, a document which captures the fulfillment of the Council-defined surveillance technology review process, as required by ordinance [125376](#).

Workforce equity: (taken from the racial equity toolkit.) Ensure the City's workforce diversity reflects the diversity of Seattle.



Appendix B: Meeting Notice(s)



City Surveillance Technology Event

October 28th, 2020
12:00 p.m. – 1:00 p.m.
[Webex Online Event](#)

**Join us for a public meeting to comment on a few
of the City's surveillance technologies:**

Seattle Police Department

- Forward Looking Infrared Real-time Video (FLIR)
- Situational Awareness Cameras Without Recording
- Video Recording Systems

[WebEx Online Event](#)

Dial-in Info:
+1-408-418-9388
Access code: 146 533 4053

Can't join us online?

Visit <http://www.seattle.gov/surveillance> to leave an online comment or send your comment to **Surveillance and Privacy Program, Seattle IT, PO Box 94709, Seattle, WA 98124.**

The Open Comment period is from **October 7th – November 7th, 2020.**

Please let us know at Surveillance@seattle.gov if you need any accommodations. For more information, visit Seattle.gov/privacy.

Information provided to the City of Seattle is considered a public record and may be subject to public disclosure. For more information see the Public Records Act, RCW Chapter 42.56 or visit Seattle.gov/privacy. All comments submitted will be included in the Surveillance Impact Report.

Appendix C: All Comments Received from Members of the Public

ID: 12165161116

Submitted Through: Online Comment

Date: 11/12/2020 4:06:10 PM

Which surveillance technology that is currently open for public comment, do you wish to comment on?

SPD: Situational Awareness Cameras Without Recording

What concerns, if any, do you have about the use of this technology?

I am concerned about SPD using this technology in a transparent and fair way.

What value, if any, do you see in the use of this technology?

What do you want City leadership to consider about the use of this technology?

I do not want SPD to have access to this technology.

Do you have any other comments?

ID: 12165002568

Submitted Through: Online Comment

Date: 11/12/2020 3:06:58 PM

Which surveillance technology that is currently open for public comment, do you wish to comment on?

SPD: Situational Awareness Cameras Without Recording

What concerns, if any, do you have about the use of this technology?

test

What value, if any, do you see in the use of this technology?

test

What do you want City leadership to consider about the use of this technology?

test

Do you have any other comments?

test

ID: 12164756754

Submitted Through: Online Comment

Date: 11/12/2020 1:46:26 PM

Which surveillance technology that is currently open for public comment, do you wish to comment on?

SPD: Situational Awareness Cameras Without Recording

What concerns, if any, do you have about the use of this technology?

As of Nov. 12th, numerous questions from the public have not been answered by SPD and thus greatly hinder the ability for informed public comment. These questions include: (1) What are the complete model names/numbers for each of the equipment in scope for the Situational Awareness Cameras? (2) What technical safeguards are in place to prevent the storage/retention of images? (3) How specifically has SPD mitigated the risk of improper viewing of protected areas? (4) What (if any) sections of the SPD Manual specifically cover the use of these technologies by SWAT? SPD did not provide the manuals for this equipment in their SIR, so the public is left guessing. While it seems that SPD has an Avatar 1 Robot by RoboteX, the Avatar II robot does support audio/video recording from the remote controller and from the Audio/Video Receiver: <https://robotex.com/wp-content/uploads/2019/04/RoboteX-Avatar-II-User-Manual.pdf> & <https://robotex.com/wp-content/uploads/2019/04/Avatar-II-AV-Receiver-User-Manual.pdf>. I could not locate online the manual for the Avatar 1, but it seems likely that it would too would support recording, as it already is performing video livestreaming and recording would likely be consider valuable basic functionality for the robot to have (especially for Explosive Ordinance Disposal use cases). Additionally, the Tactical Electronics Core Monitor supports taking still images of live video (https://www.tacticalelectronics.com/wp-content/uploads/2019/03/CORE-Monitor_spec.pdf). The Tactical Electronics Core Pole Camera supports recording audio and video onto a 32GB micro SD card (<https://www.tacticalelectronics.com/product/core-pole-camera/>). The Tactical Electronics Core Under Door Camera supports recording video onto a 32GB micro SD card (https://www.tacticalelectronics.com/wp-content/uploads/2019/03/CORE-Under-Door-Camera_spec.pdf). Remington filed bankruptcy and had their divisions sold off to different entities. I don't know who currently owns the rights to their cameras, nor could I locate their manuals/specsheets. Smith and Wesson seems no longer make any cameras. However, third-party stores with old listings for Smith and Wesson cameras list models likely to be used by law enforcement as coming with a 4GB Micro SD card: <https://www.amazon.com/Wesson-SWW-LC-PD99-Camera-4-Gigabyte-Memory/dp/B0047ERNZK> & <https://www.amazon.com/Smith-Wesson-SWW-LC-PD80-Enforcement-Camera/dp/B009KQYYBQ>. With this mind, the public needs stronger reassurances and supporting evidence from SPD that none of these devices in scope for the SIR actually supports recording. The evidence seems to point to most (if not all) of them actually supporting recording. Also, there are some gaps in the SPD manual that should be addressed either by modifications to SPD's manual and/or via ordinance. These gaps include: (1) No part of the SPD manual specifically governs the use of these SWAT cameras, such as for what purposes are they allowed to be deployed or requiring a warrant signed by a judge before use in a non-public area. (2) SPD should be restricted by ordinance from using any situational awareness cameras with capabilities beyond what is defined in the SIR. (3) Even if none of the hardware supports recording, nothing in the SPD manual specifically governs police using SPD-provided or personal cell phones to record the livestream on the displays.

What value, if any, do you see in the use of this technology?

As it currently stands, this technology lacks sufficient guardrails to prevent abuse/misuse of the system. Additionally, SPD hasn't provided the manuals for any of this equipment and the publicly available evidence points to this equipment likely supporting recording. SPD hasn't provide sufficient evidence to the contrary. Hence the public can only assume that this SIR is incomplete and inaccurate. SPD/IT are withholding information from the public, which further impedes the ability for an informed consent by the public in seeing sufficient value in this technology.

What do you want City leadership to consider about the use of this technology?

City leadership should be made aware of the information SPD/IT has withheld from the public. This information missing from the public includes: (1) What are the complete model names/numbers for each of the equipment in scope for the Situational Awareness Cameras? (2) What technical safeguards are in place to prevent the storage/retention of images? (3) How specifically has SPD mitigated the risk of improper viewing of protected areas? (4) What (if any) sections of the SPD Manual specifically cover the use of these technologies by SWAT? SPD did not provide the manuals for this equipment in their SIR, so the public is left guessing. While it seems that SPD has an Avatar 1 Robot by RoboteX, the Avatar II robot does support audio/video recording from the remote controller and from the Audio/Video Receiver: <https://robotex.com/wp-content/uploads/2019/04/RoboteX-Avatar-II-User-Manual.pdf> & <https://robotex.com/wp-content/uploads/2019/04/Avatar-II-AV-Receiver-User-Manual.pdf> . I could not locate online the manual for the Avatar 1, but it seems likely that it would too would support recording, as it already is performing video livestreaming and recording would likely be consider valuable basic functionality for the robot to have (especially for Explosive Ordinance Disposal use cases). Additionally, the Tactical Electronics Core Monitor supports taking still images of live video (https://www.tacticalelectronics.com/wp-content/uploads/2019/03/CORE-Monitor_spec.pdf). The Tactical Electronics Core Pole Camera supports recording audio and video onto a 32GB micro SD card (<https://www.tacticalelectronics.com/product/core-pole-camera/>). The Tactical Electronics Core Under Door Camera supports recording video onto a 32GB micro SD card (https://www.tacticalelectronics.com/wp-content/uploads/2019/03/CORE-Under-Door-Camera_spec.pdf). Remington filed bankruptcy and had their divisions sold off to different entities. I don't know who currently owns the rights to their cameras, nor could I locate their manuals/specsheets. Smith and Wesson seems no longer make any cameras. However, third-party stores with old listings for Smith and Wesson cameras list models likely to be used by law enforcement as coming with a 4GB Micro SD card: <https://www.amazon.com/Wesson-SWW-LC-PD99-Camera-4-Gigabyte-Memory/dp/B0047ERNZK> & <https://www.amazon.com/Smith-Wesson-SWW-LC-PD80-Enforcement-Camera/dp/B009KQYYBQ> . With this mind, the public needs stronger reassurances and supporting evidence from SPD that none of these devices in scope for the SIR actually supports recording. The evidence seems to point to most (if not all) of them actually supporting recording. City leadership should be encouraged to mandate (via SPD manual changes and/or ordinance) to address some gaps and add appropriate guardrails to the use of this technology. The current gaps include: (1) No part of the SPD manual specifically governs the use of these SWAT cameras, such as for what purposes are they allowed to be deployed or requiring a warrant signed by a judge before use in a non-public area. (2) SPD should be restricted by ordinance from using any situational awareness cameras with capabilities beyond what is defined in the SIR. (3) Even if none of the hardware supports recording, nothing in the SPD manual specifically governs police using SPD-provided or personal cell phones to record the livestream on the displays.

Do you have any other comments?

There are many areas of improvement by IT/Privacy-dept. regarding their public engagement process on surveillance technologies. Some of the more recent issues include: (1) The Privacy dept. calendar event for the Group 3 public engagement meeting didn't include the access code for phone-only users to dial-in (one had to know of and go to the TechTalk blog to get the access code). (2) Directions at public engagement meeting for providing verbal public comment were to raise hand in webex which clearly is not possible for phone-only users. (3) Public engagement truncated. CTO told City Council it would be 45 days. Instead IT used 30 days with a 1 week extension agreed to be added (so 37 days). (4) The Group 3 public engagement meeting recording (as of Nov. 12th) has not been posted publicly, so people unable to attend don't have access to the discussion/Q&A before the public comment period closes. (5) SPD has not provided answers before the public comment period closes. (6) SPD further dodged valid questions from the public by requiring PRA requests, which have zero hope of being addressed within the public comment period. (7) IT has repeatedly requested & attained (and in 1 case, just self-granted) time extensions for the Surveillance Ordinance process. When the public needs time for SPD to provide answers so as to provide informed public comment, now suddenly IT is on a tight time schedule and can't extend the public comment period. Additionally, IT/Privacy-dept. has repeatedly lamented the lack of public engagement, but have also taken no additional steps to rectify this for Group 3; and did not heed prior feedback from the CSWG regarding the engagement process. There are numerous steps IT/Privacy-dept. should take to improve public engagement. The recommendations to the CTO & CPO for Group 4 include: (1) Breaking the group into smaller groups. Group 4 on deck with 13 technologies: 2 re-visits of SFD tech, 3 types of undercover technologies, & 8 other technologies. (2) Allocating more time for open public comment: minimum of 2 weeks per each in scope tech (so Group 3 would be 42 days, and Group 4 would be 154 - 182 days). (3) Hold more public engagement meetings per Group - specifically the number of public engagement meetings should at a minimum match the number of technologies being considered for public comment (otherwise the meeting will run out of time before all the questions from the public can even be asked, which did happen with Group 3). (4) Require at the public engagement meetings both a Subject Matter Expert on the use of the technology AND a Subject Matter Expert on the technical management of the technology. There should be no excuse for most of the public's questions being unanswered by the City at these meetings. (5) Hold public engagement meetings that are accessible to marginalized communities most likely to have this technology used against them (such as, holding meetings at various times of day & weekends, having translators, etc). (6) Post online the recordings of all online public engagement meetings at least 1 week before the public comment period closes. (7) Require departments to provide answers to the public's questions at least 1 week before the public comment period closes. (8) Post public announcements for focus groups held by the City (9) Public engagement meetings and focus groups should have at least 1 outside civil liberties representative to present. (10) Publish to the Privacy website in a more timely manner the CSWG meeting announcements and minutes. (11) Work with more City departments (not just Dept. of Neighborhoods) to foster engagement. (12) Work with more City boards and committees to foster engagement. (13) Provide at least 2 week lead time between announcing a public engagement meeting and the timing of that meeting occurring. (14) Provide early versions of drafts SIRs to the CSWG (as they requested more than once).

ID: 12105115839

Submitted Through: Online Comment

Date: 10/23/2020 6:48:07 PM

Which surveillance technology that is currently open for public comment, do you wish to comment on?

SPD: Situational Awareness Cameras Without Recording

What concerns, if any, do you have about the use of this technology?

All video and sound feeds MUST be recorded for police accountability. Freedom of Information Act should be in place.

What value, if any, do you see in the use of this technology?

Could save lives and give SWAT a much needed new technology for public safety.

What do you want City leadership to consider about the use of this technology?

Record all video and sound files and archive properly. A transparent policy is a must.

Do you have any other comments?

ID: 12101261360

Submitted Through: Online Comment

Date: 10/22/2020 2:12:59 PM

Which surveillance technology that is currently open for public comment, do you wish to comment on?

SPD: Situational Awareness Cameras Without Recording

What concerns, if any, do you have about the use of this technology?

Typically these cameras don't have a great resolution and aren't great at identifying someone. Relying on this tech to identify someone is where most of my concerns are

What value, if any, do you see in the use of this technology?

These cameras are great for seeing around corners and trying to spot folks that need pulled out of things and combined with FLIR can be real game changers when trying to locate someone in a room.

What do you want City leadership to consider about the use of this technology?

Consider using additional technology when identifying a person, but use this to help find folks.

Do you have any other comments?

Appendix D: Letters from Organizations or Commissions

November 6, 2020

Seattle Information Technology
700 5th Ave, Suite 2700
Seattle, WA 98104

RE: ACLU of Washington Comments on Group 3 Surveillance Technologies

On behalf of the ACLU of Washington, I write to offer our comments on the surveillance technologies included in Group 3 of the Seattle Surveillance Ordinance implementation process.

The three Seattle Police Department (SPD) technologies in Group 3 are covered in the following order:

1. Forward Looking Infrared – King County Sheriff's Office Helicopters
2. Video Recording Systems
3. Situational Awareness Cameras Without Recording

These comments should be considered preliminary, given that the Surveillance Impact Reports (SIR) for each technology leave a number of important questions unanswered. Specific unanswered questions for each technology are noted in the comments relating to that technology. Answers to these questions should be included in the updated SIRs provided to the Community Surveillance Working Group and to the City Council prior to their review of the technologies.

Forward Looking Infrared - KCSO Helicopters

Background

Forward Looking Infrared (FLIR) is a powerful thermal imaging surveillance technology that raises a number of privacy and civil liberties concerns because of its ability to enable dragnet surveillance of individuals in public as well as in private spaces.

FLIR cameras sense infrared radiation to create images assembled for real-time video output. This technology detects small differences in heat, or emitted thermal energy, and displays them as shades of gray or with different colors. Because all objects emit different amounts of thermal energy, FLIR cameras are able to detect temperature differences and translate them into images.¹

Advanced thermal imaging systems like FLIR allow governments to increase their surveillance capabilities. Like any device used for surveillance, government agents may use it inappropriately to gather information on people based on their race, religion, or political views. While thermal imaging devices cannot “see” through

¹ ACLU of Washington, *Thermal Imaging Surveillance*, THEYAREWATCHING.ORG, <https://theyarewatching.org/technology/thermal-imaging-surveillance> (last visited Nov. 5, 2020).



P. O. Box 2728
Seattle, WA 98111-2728
(206) 624-2184
aclu-wa.org

Tana Lin
Board President

Michele Stormo
Executive Director

walls, pointing a thermal camera at a building can still reveal sensitive information about what is happening inside. Drug detectives often use these devices to identify possible marijuana growers by looking for heat consistent with grow lights.² Furthermore, privacy and civil liberties concerns with FLIR are magnified when FLIR is used in conjunction with other powerful surveillance tools such as facial recognition and drones.

The Seattle Police Department (SPD) uses three King County Sheriff's Office helicopters that are equipped with FLIR technology as well as 30-million candlepower "Night Sun" searchlights, Pro Net and LoJack radio tracking receivers, still and video cameras, and communications equipment for communicating with local, state, and federal law and firefighting agencies on their frequencies. SPD can use FLIR technology and these helicopters to monitor human beings (whose body temperatures are fairly consistent) through clouds, haze, and darkness.

There are serious concerns with SPD's use of KCSO's helicopters as described in the SIR. The policies attached in the SIR do not include purpose limitations, adequate privacy and security protections, or restrictions on use. The SIR also does not specify how long KCSO retains still images and recordings attained when assisting SPD, or whether SPD's Digital Evidence Management System (DEMS) is an on-premise or a Software-as-a-Service (SaaS) deployment.

At the public engagement meeting held on October 28, 2020,³ SPD officers were asked if SPD had ever used KCSO helicopters or FLIR technology for the purpose of surveilling protesters and if SPD had any policies prohibiting use of these technologies for protester surveillance. The officers were also asked over which neighborhoods the helicopters had been deployed, given that the SIR states that in 2018, Guardian One was deployed 45 times to SPD events. For both questions, SPD officers declined to answer and told the public to submit public records requests. However, because SPD's Public Records Act request portal states that the minimum response timeline is in excess of 6-12 months, members of the public would not be able to receive answers to these questions in time to submit public comments on these technologies.

Given the lack of adequate policies in the SIR and the number of unanswered questions that remain, we have concerns that SPD's use of KCSO's helicopters and FLIR technology may infringe upon people's civil rights and civil liberties. KCSO's FLIR-equipped helicopters may be used to disproportionately surveil historically targeted communities, individuals exercising their constitutionally protected right to protest, or people just going about their lives.

Specific Concerns

² In the 2001 case *Kyllo v. United States*, the U.S. Supreme Court ruled that federal agents violated the Fourth Amendment when they used a thermal imaging device to detect marijuana plants growing inside a home.

³ Seattle Police Department, *Surveillance Technology Public Comment Meeting*, CITY OF SEATTLE (Oct. 28, 2020), <https://www.seattle.gov/Documents/Departments/Tech/Privacy/Group%203%20Presentation.pdf>.

- **There are inadequate policies defining purpose of use.** The policies cited in the SIR do not impose meaningful restrictions on the purpose for which SPD may request that KCSO helicopters and FLIR technology be used. Policy 16.060 – King County Sheriff’s Office Air Support Unit⁴ simply states that “Guardian One offers air support for patrol and specialized missions” and that “Guardian Two offers air support for special operations such as search and rescue (SAR) and tactical missions.” This policy only describes the process by which SPD may request support from KCSO’s air support unit but does not state the specific purposes for which SPD may or may not request support. Section 4.9 of the SIR⁵ states that SPD may request video from KCSO’s Air Unit “[w]hen necessary and pertinent to a specific investigation” but does not specify the types of investigations for which SPD may request data from KCSO or how it is determined if such data is necessary and pertinent. Policy 6.060 – Collection of Information for Law Enforcement Purposes⁶ states that “Information will be gathered and recorded in a manner that does not unreasonably infringe upon: individual rights, liberties, and freedoms guaranteed by the Constitution of the United States and the State of Washington” and Policy 5.140 – Bias-Free Policing states that “officers will not engage in bias-based policing.”⁷ However, SPD’s answers at the October 28 public engagement meeting do not make clear whether and how SPD prohibits use of KCSO helicopters to engage in surveillance of protesters or biased policing. Section 1.4.2 of the Racial Equity Toolkit (RET) section of the SIR specifically asks: “How are decisions made where the technology is used or deployed? How does the Department work to ensure diverse neighborhoods are not specifically targeted?”⁸ The response from SPD directs attention to SPD Policy 16.060, which does not provide adequate purpose limitations.
- **There are inadequate policies restricting data collection.** The policies cited in the SIR do not place any restrictions on the amount or types of data SPD may request from KCSO. At the October 28 public engagement meeting, SPD officers did not answer whether or how SPD places time or geographic limitations on the data it may request from KCSO.

⁴ Seattle Police Department, *Seattle Police Department Manual: 16.060 - King County Sheriff’s Office Air Support Unit*, CITY OF SEATTLE (Mar. 1, 2016), <http://www.seattle.gov/police-manual/title-16---patrol-operations/16060---king-county-sheriffs-office-air-support-unit>.

⁵ Seattle Police Department, *2020 Surveillance Impact Report: Forward Looking Infrared Real-Time Video (FLIR) (KCSO Helicopters)*, CITY OF SEATTLE, at 12, http://www.seattle.gov/Documents/Departments/Tech/Privacy/FLIR%20-%20KCSO%20Helicopters%20Public_Engagement%20SIR.pdf (last visited Nov. 5, 2020).

⁶ Seattle Police Department, *Seattle Police Department Manual: 6.060 - Collection of Information for Law Enforcement Purposes*, CITY OF SEATTLE (May 19, 2004), <http://www.seattle.gov/police-manual/title-6---arrests-search-and-seizure/6060---collection-of-information-for-law-enforcement-purposes>.

⁷ Seattle Police Department, *Seattle Police Department Manual: 5.140 - Bias-Free Policing*, CITY OF SEATTLE (Aug. 1, 2019), <http://www.seattle.gov/police-manual/title-5---employee-conduct/5140---bias-free-policing>.

⁸ *2020 Impact Report: Infrared Video*, supra note 5, at 23.

- **It is unclear if and how SPD protects the privacy of individuals unrelated to an investigation.** The SIR does not include any policies regarding how it redacts or deletes information. At the October 28 public engagement meeting, SPD officers did not provide an answer to the question of whether and how it redacts or deletes information collected that may compromise the privacy of individuals unrelated to an investigation.
- **It is unclear how data collected are stored and protected.** SPD stated at the October 28 public engagement meeting that it is unaware of how long KCSO retains still images and recordings obtained when assisting SPD. While SPD officers stated that SPD stores video requested from KCSO in its Digital Evidence Management System (DEMS)—not Evidence.com, this is not made clear within the SIR. Additionally, SPD officers did not answer whether SPD’s DEMS is on on-premise or Software-as-a-Service (SaaS) deployment.
- **The SIR does not provide the dates and neighborhoods over which KCSO helicopters and FLIR technology have been deployed.** Though the SIR states that there have been 45 deployments of Guardian One to support SPD in 2018, the SIR does not include an analysis of the locations of those deployments.⁹ Additionally, during the October 28 public engagement meeting, SPD declined to state the neighborhoods over which the helicopters had been deployed. It is important that SPD include this information in the Racial Equity Toolkit section of the final SIR in order to address the following questions in Section 1.4.2: “How are decisions made where the technology is used or deployed? How does the Department work to ensure diverse neighborhoods are not specifically targeted?”¹⁰

Outstanding Questions

- What are the registration and/or tail numbers for each helicopter?
- In 2019 and 2020, did the KCSO Air Support Unit have any additional helicopters aside from the three listed in the SIR?
- How long does KCSO retain still images and recordings attained when assisting SPD?
- Is SPD’s Digital Evidence Management System (DEMS) an on-premise deployment or is it Software-as-a-Service?
- Has SPD ever requested KCSO ASU services or obtained data from KCSO’s helicopters and/or FLIR technology to surveil protesters?
- What are the neighborhoods over which KCSO’s helicopters have been deployed?

Recommendations for Regulation

At this stage, pending answers to the questions above, we can make only preliminary recommendations for the regulation of SPD’s use of KCSO’s helicopters and FLIR technology. We recommend that the Council adopt, via ordinance, at a minimum, clear and enforceable rules that ensure the following:

⁹ *Id.* at 9.

¹⁰ *Id.* at 23.

- **SPD must abide by a specific and restricted purpose of use:** The ordinance should define a specific purpose of use for KCSO's helicopters and FLIR technology, and any SPD use of KCSO's helicopters and FLIR technology and data collected with these technologies must be restricted to that specific purpose.
- **SPD must adopt processes to ensure it is not targeting diverse neighborhoods.** The ordinance should prohibit SPD from using KCSO's helicopters and FLIR technology to disproportionately surveil communities of color and other historically over-policed communities.
- **SPD must protect the privacy of individuals unrelated to a specific search or investigation.** The ordinance should require SPD to redact or delete information collected that may compromise the privacy of individuals not related to a specific search or investigation, restricted by the purpose of use.
- **SPD must produce a publicly available annual report detailing its use of KCSO helicopters and FLIR technology.** The ordinance should require that SPD produce an annual report including details on how SPD used the data collected, the amount of data collected, for how long data were retained and in what form, where the data are stored, and the neighborhoods over which KCSO helicopters and/or FLIR technology were deployed.

Video Recording Systems

Background

SPD uses two cameras systems to record and/or monitor members of the public within SPD interview rooms, Blood Alcohol Collection (BAC) rooms, and precinct holding cells: Genetec Video Management System and Milestone Systems XProtect Video Management Software and Products.

Genetec Video Management System is a permanently installed system primarily used to record in-person interactions and interviews with crime victims, witnesses, and suspects in seven designated interview rooms located at the SPD headquarters in the Seattle Justice Center. This system is used to create a video record of interviews for the purposes of use in criminal justice proceedings. Milestone Systems XProtect Video Management Software and Products is a permanently installed system in SPD's Blood Alcohol Collection (BAC) rooms and precinct holding cells. They record continuously all activity in those locations.¹¹

SPD's use of these video recording systems can pose threats to people's privacy and civil liberties if used without adequate safeguards. The SIR does not provide adequate purpose limitations regarding SPD's use of these technologies, does not include full details of the capabilities of these systems, and does not adequately specify technical and procedural safeguards to prevent improper viewing.

¹¹ Seattle Police Department, *2020 Surveillance Impact Report: Video Recording Systems (Interview, Blood-Alcohol Collection Room, and Precinct Holding Cell Audio)*, CITY OF SEATTLE, at 4, https://www.seattle.gov/Documents/Departments/Tech/Privacy/Video%20Recording%20Systems%20Public_Engagement%20SIR.pdf (last visited Nov. 5, 2020).

collection, or storage of the images or video footage.

Specific Concerns

- **There are inadequate policies defining purpose of use.** Section 4.9 of the SIR asks, “What are acceptable reasons for access to the equipment and/or data collected?”¹² The response does not specifically detail how and for what purpose the equipment and/or data collected from the equipment may be used.
- **The capabilities of the Genetec and Milestone systems are unclear.** SPD does not provide links or attachments providing specific details about either of the systems they use. Both Genetec¹³ and Milestone¹⁴ advertise facial recognition systems that may be integrated with its video management systems.
- **It is unclear how data are collected, stored, and protected.** The SIR does not make clear whether SPD stores the data they receive in the Digital Evidence Management System or Evidence.com, a cloud-based digital evidence platform owned by Axon. The SIR simply references SPD policy 7.110 – Recorded Statements, which states that data may be uploaded to the Digital Evidence Management System (DEMS) or Evidence.com.¹⁵ Additionally, the SIR does not include information about the security practices SPD follows to protect the privacy of members of the public who are recorded by the Genetec and Milestone video management systems. Finally, the SIR does not specify who has permission to modify the pan, tilt, and/or zoom of the cameras.

Outstanding Questions

- Does SPD use a Genetec or Milestone partner add-on that enables facial recognition or other biometric data collection/identification?
- How are firmware/software updates applied to the Genetec systems?
- What security practices does SPD follow?
- Where does the SPD Evidence Section store the Genetec-generated recordings and Milestone recordings they receive?
- For both the Genetec and Milestone systems, who has permission to modify the pan, tilt, and/or zoom of the cameras?

¹² *Id.* at 12.

¹³ *Security Center Omnicast IP video surveillance*, GENETEC, <https://resources.genetec.com/video-modules-and-add-ons/omnicast-ip-video-surveillance> (last visited Nov. 5, 2020).

¹⁴ *Dahua Face Recognition Plugin for Milestone VMS*, MILESTONE, <https://www.milestonesys.com/marketplace/zhejiang-dahua-technology-co.-ltd/dahua-face-recognition-plugin-for-milestone-vms/> (last visited Nov. 5, 2020); *Id-Guard Face Recognition Plugin*, MILESTONE, <https://www.milestonesys.com/marketplace/llc-recfaces/id-guard-face-recognition-plugin/> (Nov. 5, 2020).

¹⁵ Seattle Police Department, *Seattle Police Department Manual: 7.110 - Recorded Statements*, CITY OF SEATTLE (Oct. 1, 2020), <https://www.seattle.gov/police-manual/title-7---evidence-and-property/7110---recorded-statements>.

Recommendations for Regulation

At this stage, pending answers to the questions above, we can make only preliminary recommendations for the regulation of SPD's use of video recording systems. We recommend that the Council adopt, via ordinance, at a minimum, clear and enforceable rules that ensure the following:

- **SPD must abide by a specific and restricted purpose of use:** The ordinance should define a specific purpose of use for any video recording systems used by SPD, and any use must be restricted to that specific purpose.
- **SPD must not use any video recording systems that have capabilities beyond what is strictly necessary to fulfill the purpose of use (e.g., recording custodial interrogations).** The ordinance should prohibit incorporating additional services such as facial recognition systems with the video recording systems.

Situational Awareness Cameras Without Recording

Background

SPD uses four types of portable cameras to observe both public and private areas during tactical operations. The four types of cameras and their vendors are:

- Robot-mounted cameras – RoboteX
- Pole-mounted cameras – Tactical Electronics & Smith and Wesson
- Placeable cameras – Remington & Tactical Electronics
- Throwable cameras – Remington & Tactical Electronics¹⁶

SPD's use of these situational awareness cameras can pose threats to people's privacy and civil liberties if used without adequate safeguards. The SIR does not provide adequate purpose limitations regarding SPD's use of these technologies, does not include full details of the capabilities of the cameras, and does not adequately specify technical and procedural safeguards to prevent improper viewing, collection, or storage of the images or video footage.

Specific Concerns

- **There are inadequate policies defining purpose of use.** Section 4.9 of the SIR asks, "What are acceptable reasons for access to the equipment and/or data collected?" The response states: "The decision to use situational awareness cameras is made on a case-by-case basis. These devices allow officers to monitor a subject or watch situation from a position of safety and distance. Absent exigent circumstances, a signed warrant is obtained prior to the use of this technology in any protected area."¹⁷ This response does not

¹⁶ Seattle Police Department, *2020 Surveillance Impact Report: Situational Awareness Cameras Without Recording*, CITY OF SEATTLE, at 5, https://www.seattle.gov/Documents/Departments/Tech/Privacy/Situational%20Awareness%20Cameras%20Public_Engagement%20SIR.pdf (last visited Nov. 5, 2020).

¹⁷ *Id.* at 8.

provide a clear and limited purpose for which this technology may or may not be used. While SPD's response states that a warrant is obtained prior to use of the cameras in protected areas, such as inside a home, it does not state the specific purposes for which SPD may or may not use the cameras without a warrant.

- **The capabilities of the situational awareness cameras are unclear.** The SIR does not provide manuals or the complete model names and/or numbers of each of the camera technologies. During the October 28 public engagement meeting, SPD stated that their situational awareness cameras do not support recording. However, the vendor websites advertise situational awareness cameras that do support recording. For example, the Tactical Electronics Core Monitor,¹⁸ Pole Camera,¹⁹ and Under Door Camera²⁰ can either take photos, record video, and/or record audio.
- **It is unclear what technical and procedural safeguards are in place to prevent the improper viewing, collection, and storage of images.** During the October 28 public engagement meeting, SPD stated that there is no way that images, video, or audio footage could be collected and stored. In order to verify that information, SPD must provide detailed information about the technologies it uses as stated above. Additionally, even if the cameras themselves cannot record footage, it is unclear if there are policies and procedures in place to prevent live-streamed situational camera footage from being recorded via a different device.

Outstanding Questions

- What are the complete model names/numbers for each of the equipment in scope for the Situational Awareness Cameras?
- What technical safeguards are in place to prevent the storage/retention of images?
- 7.3 of Situational Awareness Cameras SIR states "[the SWAT Unit] have mitigated the risk of improper viewing of the protected areas." How specifically have they mitigated the risk?
- What (if any) sections of the SPD Manual specifically cover the use of these technologies by SWAT?

Recommendations for Regulation

At this stage, pending answers to the questions above, we can only make preliminary recommendations for the regulation of SPD's use of situational awareness cameras. We recommend that the Council adopt, via ordinance, at a minimum, clear and enforceable rules that ensure the following:

¹⁸ *Core Monitor*, TACTICAL ELEC., <https://www.tacticalectronics.com/product/core-monitor/> (last visited Nov. 5, 2020).

¹⁹ *Core Pole Camera*, TACTICAL ELEC., <https://www.tacticalectronics.com/product/core-pole-camera/> (last visited Nov. 5, 2020).

²⁰ *Core Under Door Camera*, TACTICAL ELEC., <https://www.tacticalectronics.com/product/core-under-door-camera/> (last visited Nov. 5, 2020).

- **SPD must abide by a specific and restricted purpose of use:** The ordinance should define a specific purpose of use for situational awareness cameras used by SPD, and any use must be restricted to that specific purpose.
- **SPD must not use any situational awareness cameras that have capabilities beyond what is strictly necessary to fulfill the purpose of use defined by the ordinance.** The ordinance should prohibit SPD from using cameras that have facial recognition or recording capabilities.
- **SPD must adopt technical and procedural safeguards to prevent misuse of the situational awareness cameras.** The ordinance should require SPD adopt safeguards that prevent use of the cameras or the footage streamed from the cameras for purposes beyond what is defined in the ordinance.

Thank you for your consideration of our comments and for facilitating this public review process.

Sincerely,

Jennifer Lee
Technology and Liberty Project Manager

Appendix E: CTO Notification of Surveillance Technology

Thank you for your department's efforts to comply with the new Surveillance Ordinance, including a review of your existing technologies to determine which may be subject to the Ordinance. I recognize this was a significant investment of time by your staff; their efforts are helping to build Council and public trust in how the City collects and uses data.

As required by the Ordinance (SMC 14.18.020.D), this is formal notice that the technologies listed below will require review and approval by City Council to remain in use. This list was determined through a process outlined in the Ordinance and was submitted at the end of last year for review to the Mayor's Office and City Council.

The first technology on the list below must be submitted for review by March 31, 2018, with one additional technology submitted for review at the end of each month after that. The City's Privacy Team has been tasked with assisting you and your staff with the completion of this process and has already begun working with your designated department team members to provide direction about the Surveillance Impact Report completion process.

Please let me know if you have any questions.

Thank you,

Michael Mattmiller

Chief Technology Officer

Technology	Description	Proposed Review Order
Automated License Plate Recognition (ALPR)	ALPRs are computer-controlled, high-speed camera systems mounted on parking enforcement or police vehicles that automatically capture an image of license plates that come into view and converts the image of the license plate into alphanumeric data that can be used to locate vehicles reported stolen or otherwise sought for public safety purposes and to enforce parking restrictions.	1
Booking Photo Comparison Software (BPCS)	BCPS is used in situations where a picture of a suspected criminal, such as a burglar or convenience store robber, is taken by a camera. The still screenshot is entered into BPCS, which runs an algorithm to compare it to King County Jail booking photos to identify the person in the picture to further investigate his or her involvement in the crime. Use of BPCS is governed by SPD Manual §12.045 .	2
Forward Looking Infrared Real-time video (FLIR)	Two King County Sheriff’s Office helicopters with Forward Looking Infrared (FLIR) send a real-time microwave video downlink of ongoing events to commanders and other decision-makers on the ground, facilitating specialized radio tracking equipment to locate bank robbery suspects and provides a platform for aerial photography and digital video of large outdoor locations (e.g., crime scenes and disaster damage, etc.).	3

Technology	Description	Proposed Review Order
Undercover/ Technologies	<p>The following groups of technologies are used to conduct sensitive investigations and should be reviewed together.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Audio recording devices: A hidden microphone to audio record individuals without their knowledge. The microphone is either not visible to the subject being recorded or is disguised as another object. Used with search warrant or signed Authorization to Intercept (RCW 9A.73.200). • Camera systems: A hidden camera used to record people without their knowledge. The camera is either not visible to the subject being filmed or is disguised as another object. Used with consent, a search warrant (when the area captured by the camera is not in plain view of the public), or with specific and articulable facts that a person has or is about to be engaged in a criminal activity and the camera captures only areas in plain view of the public. • Tracking devices: A hidden tracking device carried by a moving vehicle or person that uses the Global Positioning System to determine and track the precise location. U.S. Supreme Court v. Jones mandated that these must have consent or a search warrant to be used. 	<p>4</p>
Computer-Aided Dispatch (CAD)	<p>CAD is used to initiate public safety calls for service, dispatch, and to maintain the status of responding resources in the field. It is used by 911 dispatchers as well as by officers using mobile data terminals (MDTs) in the field.</p>	<p>5</p>

Technology	Description	Proposed Review Order
CopLogic	System allowing individuals to submit police reports on-line for certain low-level crimes in non-emergency situations where there are no known suspects or information about the crime that can be followed up on. Use is opt-in, but individuals may enter personally-identifying information about third-parties without providing notice to those individuals.	6
Hostage Negotiation Throw Phone	A set of recording and tracking technologies contained in a phone that is used in hostage negotiation situations to facilitate communications.	7
Remotely Operated Vehicles (ROVs)	These are SPD non-recording ROVs/robots used by Arson/Bomb Unit to safely approach suspected explosives, by Harbor Unit to detect drowning victims, vehicles, or other submerged items, and by SWAT in tactical situations to assess dangerous situations from a safe, remote location.	8
911 Logging Recorder	System providing networked access to the logged telephony and radio voice recordings of the 911 center.	9
Computer, cellphone and mobile device extraction tools	Forensics tool used with consent of phone/device owner or pursuant to a warrant to acquire, decode, and analyze data from smartphones, tablets, portable GPS device, desktop and laptop computers.	10
Video Recording Systems	These systems are to record events that take place in a Blood Alcohol Concentration (BAC) Room, holding cells, interview, lineup, and polygraph rooms recording systems.	11
Washington State Patrol (WSP) Aircraft	Provides statewide aerial enforcement, rapid response, airborne assessments of incidents, and transportation services in support of the Patrol's public safety mission. WSP Aviation currently manages seven aircraft equipped with FLIR cameras. SPD requests support as needed from WSP aircraft.	12

Technology	Description	Proposed Review Order
Washington State Patrol (WSP) Drones	WSP has begun using drones for surveying traffic collision sites to expedite incident investigation and facilitate a return to normal traffic flow. SPD may then request assistance documenting crash sites from WSP.	13
Callyo	This software may be installed on an officer's cell phone to allow them to record the audio from phone communications between law enforcement and suspects. Callyo may be used with consent or search warrant.	14
I2 iBase	The I2 iBase crime analysis tool allows for configuring, capturing, controlling, analyzing and displaying complex information and relationships in link and entity data. iBase is both a database application, as well as a modeling and analysis tool. It uses data pulled from SPD's existing systems for modeling and analysis.	15
Parking Enforcement Systems	Several applications are linked together to comprise the enforcement system and used with ALPR for issuing parking citations. This is in support of enforcing the Scofflaw Ordinance SMC 11.35 .	16
Situational Awareness Cameras Without Recording	Non-recording cameras that allow officers to observe around corners or other areas during tactical operations where officers need to see the situation before entering a building, floor or room. These may be rolled, tossed, lowered or throw into an area, attached to a hand-held pole and extended around a corner or into an area. Smaller cameras may be rolled under a doorway. The cameras contain wireless transmitters that convey images to officers.	17
Crash Data Retrieval	Tool that allows a Collision Reconstructionist investigating vehicle crashes the opportunity to image data stored in the vehicle's airbag control module. This is done for a vehicle that has been in a crash and is used with consent or search warrant.	18

Technology	Description	Proposed Review Order
Maltego	An interactive data mining tool that renders graphs for link analysis. The tool is used in online investigations for finding relationships between pieces of information from various sources located on the internet.	19

Please let me know if you have any questions.

Thank you,

Michael

2020 Surveillance Impact Report Executive Overview

Situational Awareness Cameras Without Recording

Seattle Police Department

April 13th, 2021

Version 1

Overview

The Operational Policy statements in this document represent the only allowable uses of the equipment and data collected by this technology.

This Executive Overview documents information about the collection, use, sharing, security and access controls for data that is gathered through Seattle Police Department's use of Situational Awareness Cameras Without Recording. All information provided here is contained in the body of the full Surveillance Impact Review (SIR) document but is provided in a condensed format for easier access and consideration.

1.0 Technology Description

The Seattle Police Department utilizes four types of situational awareness cameras to monitor an identified subject or watch an area of concern while positioned from a safe distance away. SPD operates these cameras in a variety of different ways to serve specific purposes depending on the situational need. The cameras fall broadly into four categories:

- mounted on remote controlled robots,
- mounted to poles or extenders,
- strategically placed, and
- cameras that are thrown.

There are four types of situational awareness cameras used by SPD's SWAT Unit:

Robot Mounted Cameras – The Avatar Robot by RoboteX incorporates a 360-degree optical camera and is remote controlled by officers from a safe position on scene. The remote range of the Avatar Robot is approximately 200 meters.

Pole Cameras – Pole camera models are made by Tactical Electronics and Smith and Wesson. These are small, portable cameras that can be extended in height (to approximately 20'). They are typically handheld during their use and send secure images to the user's handheld remote monitor.

Placeable Cameras – Camera models are made by Remington and Tactical Electronics. They are small portable cameras designed to be placed in specific strategic locations and situations. These models also send secure images to the user's handheld remote monitor.

Throwable Cameras – Camera models are made by Remington and Tactical Electronics. These small, rugged cameras are designed to be thrown into situations where access by SPD personnel is not possible. Like the pole and placeable cameras, the secure images are transmitted to the user's handheld remote monitor.

The images transmitted from these cameras are secured and viewed on proprietary monitors. SPD does not record, store, or retain any of the images captured by these camera technologies.

April 13, 2021

Version 1

2.0 Purpose

Operational Policy: Describe limits to the function of the technology according to the stated purpose.

SPD's tactical units use situational awareness cameras to assess potentially dangerous situations from a safe location. The use of these cameras allows SPD to view surroundings and gain additional information prior to entering a location, which provides additional safety and security to SPD personnel, the subjects of the observation, and other members of the community.

3.0 Data Collection and Use

Operational Policy: No images or data are collected, stored, or retained by any situational awareness camera used by SPD.

No images or data are collected, stored, or retained by any situational awareness camera used by SPD. This equipment is securely stored and accessible only to the SWAT Unit for use in their operations.

4.0 Data Minimization & Retention

Operational Policy: No images or data are collected, stored, or retained by any situational awareness camera used by SPD.

This question is not applicable to these technologies, as no images or data are collected, stored, or retained by any situational awareness camera used by SPD.

5.0 Access & Security

Operational Policy: All members of SWAT are given training in the use and appropriate application of these cameras. Any SWAT personnel may elect to use one of the cameras if the situation calls for its use.

This equipment is securely stored and accessible only to the SWAT Unit for use in their operations. No images or data are collected, stored, or retained by any situational awareness camera used by SPD.

When situational awareness camera equipment will be utilized in protected areas, such as inside a home, the SWAT Unit obtains a signed warrant.

April 13, 2021

Version 1

Access

No images or data are collected, stored, or retained by any situational awareness camera used by SPD. When situational awareness camera equipment will be utilized in protected areas, such as inside a home, the SWAT Unit obtains a signed warrant.

Security

Only members of SWAT are authorized to use this equipment and are specifically trained in their use. The SWAT commanders are responsible to ensure usage of the technology falls within appropriate usage.

6.0 Data Sharing and Accuracy

Operational Policy: No data is collected, stored, or retained by any situational awareness camera and cannot be shared.

This question on data sharing is not applicable to these technologies, as no images or data are collected, stored, or retained by any situational awareness camera used by SPD.

7.0 Equity Concerns

Operational Policy: Where the cameras are utilized in non-public areas a signed warrant is obtained prior to their use.

SPD Policy 5.140 forbids bias-based policing and outlines processes for reporting and documenting any suspected bias-based behavior, as well as accountability measures. The use of this technology does not enhance the risks of racial or ethnicity-based bias.

The potential that innocent members of the community would fall under surveillance by covert use of situational awareness cameras by the SPD SWAT Unit is mitigated in two ways. First, the usage of this equipment is situational, and the cameras are used during events in which the SWAT Unit responds to calls for police service. Where the cameras are utilized in non-public areas a signed warrant is obtained prior to their use. Second, no images, data, or audio is recorded by the situational awareness cameras.

The mission of the Seattle Police Department is to prevent crime, enforce the law, and support quality public safety by delivering respectful, professional and dependable police services. [SPD Policy 5.140](#) forbids bias-based policing and outlines processes for reporting and documenting any suspected bias-based behavior, as well as accountability measures. The use of this technology does not enhance the risks of racial or ethnicity-based bias.

April 13, 2021

Version 1

SUMMARY and FISCAL NOTE*

Department:	Dept. Contact/Phone:	CBO Contact/Phone:
SPD / ITD	Rebecca Boatwright / Vinh Tang	Neal Capapas/206-684-5292

** Note that the Summary and Fiscal Note describes the version of the bill or resolution as introduced; final legislation including amendments may not be fully described.*

1. BILL SUMMARY

Legislation Title: AN ORDINANCE relating to surveillance technology implementation; authorizing approval of uses and accepting the 2020 surveillance impact report and 2020 executive overview for the Seattle Police Department’s use of Situational Awareness Cameras Without Recording.

Summary and background of the Legislation: Per SMC Chapter 14.18 (also known as the Surveillance Ordinance), authorizing the approval of the surveillance impact reports for Seattle Police Department’s continued use of Situational Awareness Cameras Without Recording.

2. CAPITAL IMPROVEMENT PROGRAM

Does this legislation create, fund, or amend a CIP Project? ___ Yes X No

3. SUMMARY OF FINANCIAL IMPLICATIONS

Does this legislation amend the Adopted Budget? ___ Yes X No

Does the legislation have other financial impacts to The City of Seattle that are not reflected in the above, including direct or indirect, short-term or long-term costs?

This technology is currently in use by the Seattle Police Department and no additional costs, either direct or indirect, will be incurred based on the continued use of the technology. However, should it be determined that SPD should cease use of the technology, there would be costs associated with decommissioning the technology. Additionally, there may be potential financial penalties related to breach of contract with the technology vendor(s).

Is there financial cost or other impacts of *not* implementing the legislation?

Per the Surveillance Ordinance, the City department may continue use of the technology until legislation is implemented. As such, there are no financial costs or other impacts that would result from not implementing the legislation.

4. OTHER IMPLICATIONS

a. Does this legislation affect any departments besides the originating department?

This legislation does not affect other departments.

b. Is a public hearing required for this legislation?

A public hearing is not required for this legislation.

c. Is publication of notice with *The Daily Journal of Commerce* and/or *The Seattle Times* required for this legislation?

No publication of notice is required for this legislation.

d. Does this legislation affect a piece of property?

This legislation does not affect a piece of property.

e. Please describe any perceived implication for the principles of the Race and Social Justice Initiative. Does this legislation impact vulnerable or historically disadvantaged communities? What is the Language Access plan for any communications to the public?

The Surveillance Ordinance in general is designed to address civil liberties and disparate community impacts of surveillance technologies. The Surveillance Impact Review included in the attachments, as required by the Surveillance Ordinance, includes a Racial Equity Toolkit review adapted for this purpose.

f. Climate Change Implications

1. Emissions: Is this legislation likely to increase or decrease carbon emissions in a material way?

No.

2. Resiliency: Will the action(s) proposed by this legislation increase or decrease Seattle's resiliency (or ability to adapt) to climate change in a material way? If so, explain. If it is likely to decrease resiliency in a material way, describe what will or could be done to mitigate the effects.

No.

g. If this legislation includes a new initiative or a major programmatic expansion: What are the specific long-term and measurable goal(s) of the program? How will this legislation help achieve the program's desired goal(s)?

There is no new initiative or programmatic expansion associated with this legislation. It approves the continuation of use for the specific technology under review.

April 29, 2021

MEMORANDUM

To: Transportation and Utilities Committee
From: Lise Kaye, Analyst
Subject: Council Bill 120054 - Authorizing approval of uses and accepting the surveillance impact report for the Seattle Police Department's use of Situational Awareness Cameras

On Wednesday, May 5, 2021 the Transportation and Utilities Committee will discuss [Council Bill \(CB\) 120054](#). The bill is intended to meet the requirements of [Seattle Municipal Code Chapter 14.18](#), Acquisition and Use of Surveillance Technologies.¹ (Attachment 1 to this memo summarizes these requirements and process by which the Executive develops the required Surveillance Impact Reports.) CB 120054 would approve the Seattle Police Department's (SPD's) continued use of existing Situational Awareness Cameras and accept the Surveillance Impact Report (SIR) and an Executive Overview for this technology. The Executive Overview summarizes the operational policy statements which represent SPD's allowable uses of the Situational Awareness Cameras.

This memo describes the Situational Awareness Cameras and summarizes potential civil liberties impacts, potential disparate impacts on historically targeted communities and vulnerable populations, and the public engagement process, as reported in the SIR. It also summarizes key concerns and recommendations from the Community Surveillance Working Group's Impact Assessment and the Chief Technology Officer's response ("CTO's Response) to the Impact Assessment. Finally, the memo identifies several policy issues for Council consideration.

Situational Awareness Cameras

SPD's SWAT (special weapons and tactics) team uses Situational Awareness Cameras to covertly assess potentially dangerous situations from a safe location. SPD uses four types of Situational Awareness Cameras to monitor an identified subject or watch an area of concern while positioned from a safe distance away:

- Robot Mounted Cameras: remote controlled, 360-degree optical cameras with a range of approximately 200 meters;
- Pole Cameras: mounted to poles or extenders, may be extended to approximately 20-feet. Send images to user's handheld remote monitor;
- Placeable Cameras: small, portable cameras that send images to the user's handheld remote monitor; and
- Throwable Cameras: rugged cameras that send images to the user's handheld remote monitor.

¹ (Ord. [125679](#), § 1, 2018; Ord. [125376](#), § 2, 2017.)

None of the images transmitted by these cameras are stored or recorded by the camera equipment or the handheld monitor. SWAT officers decide to use these cameras on a case-by-case basis. However, if SPD plans to use the camera inside a protected area, such as in a person's home or property, SPD will obtain a signed search warrant from a judge, absent exigent circumstances.²

Civil Liberties and Potential Disparate Impacts on Historically Marginalized Communities

Departments submitting a SIR are required to complete an adapted version of the Racial Equity Toolkit (RET) to highlight and mitigate impacts on racial equity from the use of the technology. The RET for the SPD's use of Situational Awareness Cameras identifies a civil liberties risk that innocent members of the community could fall under surveillance by covert use of the cameras. SPD mitigates this risk by obtaining a warrant for the cameras' use in non-public areas and the risk is further mitigated by the fact that cameras are used during events in which the SWAT Unit has responded to a call for police service.

The SIR also identifies data sharing, storage and retention as having the potential to contribute to structural racism, thereby creating a disparate impact on historically targeted communities.³ SPD mitigates this risk through policies regarding the dissemination of data in connection with criminal prosecutions, the [Washington Public Records Act](#), and other authorized researchers. In addition, [SPD Policy 5.140](#) forbids bias-based policing and outlines processes for reporting and documenting any suspected bias-based behavior, as well as accountability measures. The RET does not identify metrics to be used as part of the CTO's annual equity assessments.⁴

Public Engagement

The Executive accepted public comments on this technology from October 7 – November 7, 2020 and conducted one public meeting for this and the other two "Group 3" SIRs on October 28, 2020. The SIR includes all comments pertaining to this technology received from members of the public (Appendix C), and letters from organizations or commissions (Appendix D). The SIR includes comments submitted in four online responses and one letter. They express concern about SPD's use of the technology in a transparent and fair way, the lack of technical and procedural safeguards around the use of the technology, the need to record all video and sound feeds for police accountability, and potentially poor resolution of images. One response identified value in the technology from enhanced viewing capabilities. One response also detailed concerns about the duration and structure of the public engagement process for the Group 3 Technologies.

² While not defined in SPD's Operations Manual, Cornell Law School's [Legal Information Institute](#) states that "Exigent circumstances are exceptions to the general requirement of a warrant under the Fourth Amendment searches and seizures," and provides the following definition: "circumstances that would cause a reasonable person to believe that entry (or other relevant prompt action) was necessary to prevent physical harm to the officers or other persons, the destruction of relevant evidence, the escape of the suspect, or some other consequence improperly frustrating legitimate law enforcement efforts."

³ Historical community or department practices could produce data that would portray certain communities as higher in crime than in other neighborhoods or elevate the involvement in potential criminal events by certain demographic groups. An approach to storage, retention, and integration of these data that was not cognizant of these possibilities might allow for the continuation of these perceptions, with potential disparate enforcement responses.

⁴ [SMC 14.18.050B](#) requires that the CTO produce and submit to the City Council a Surveillance Technology Community Equity Impact Assessment and Policy Guidance Report that addresses whether Chapter 14.18 of the SMC is effectively meeting the goals of the Race and Social Justice Initiative.

Privacy and Civil Liberties Impact Assessment

The Impact Assessment prepared by the Community Surveillance Working Group (“Working Group) identified three major issues, including the need for additional policy language to define valid “purposes of use,” unclear capabilities of the Situational Awareness Cameras, and unclear technical and procedural safeguards to prevent improper viewing, collection, and storage of images.

Key Concerns and the CTO’s Response. Table 1 summarizes the CTO’s Response to each of the Working Group’s major issues. The Response finds that “policy, training and technology limitations enacted by SPD provide adequate mitigation for the potential privacy and civil liberties concerns raised by the Working Group about the use of this important operational technology.”

Table 1. CTO Response to Privacy and Civil Liberties Impact Assessment of SPD’s use of Situational Awareness Cameras

Working Group Key Concern	CTO Response
1. Inadequate policies defining purpose of use	Use of situational cameras and restrictions on recording are governed by the policy and procedure outlined in the SIR and the process established by SMC 14.18 , as well as SMC 14.12 , the Intelligence Ordinance, which is incorporated into SPD Policy 6.060 .
2. Camera capabilities beyond specified purpose of use	No images or data are collected, stored, or retained by any situational awareness camera used by SPD. Note: the CTO’s Response to the Working Group’s Impact Assessment of Video Recording Systems states that “features such as facial recognition are not in use by any system in SPD.”
3. Safeguards to prevent improper viewing, collection, and storage of images	No images or data are collected, stored, or retained by any situational awareness camera used by SPD. Use of situational cameras and restrictions on recording is also governed by SMC 14.12 , the Intelligence Ordinance, which is incorporated into SPD Policy 6.060 .

Recommendations. The Impact Assessment recommends that Council at via ordinance “clear and enforceable rules that ensure, the following:

- 1. SPD must abide by a specific and restricted purpose of use:** The ordinance should define a specific purpose of use for Situational Awareness Cameras used by SPD, and any use must be restricted to that specific purpose.
- 2. SPD must not use any Situational Awareness Cameras that have capabilities beyond what is strictly necessary to fulfill the purpose of use defined by the ordinance.** The ordinance should prohibit SPD from using cameras that have facial recognition or recording capabilities.
- 3. SPD must adopt technical and procedural safeguards to prevent misuse of the Situational Awareness Cameras.** The ordinance should require SPD adopt safeguards that prevent use of the cameras or the footage streamed from the cameras for purposes beyond what is defined in the ordinance.”

Table 2 describes how the SIR as drafted would address these three recommendations. Areas not fully addressed are included in the “Policy Considerations” section on page five.

Table 2. Working Group Recommendations Addressed in the SIR

Working Group Recommendation	Whether/How Addressed in SIR
<p>1. Define the specific purpose of use for Situational Awareness Cameras, and restrict use to that specific purpose</p>	<p>Executive Overview. Operational Policies represent the only allowable uses of the equipment and data collected by this technology. However, the SIR does not identify any policies that specify the appropriate application of these cameras, other than to reference in 5.0 that all members of SWAT are trained in their use and appropriate application. <i>See Policy Consideration #2.</i></p>
<p>2. Prohibit use of situational cameras that have capabilities beyond what is strictly necessary to fulfill the purpose of use as defined by the ordinance. Prohibit SPD from using cameras that have facial recognition or recording capabilities.</p>	<p>SIR restricts certain uses of cameras but does not restrict acquisition of cameras to certain specifications. <i>See Policy Consideration #3.</i></p>
<p>3. Adopt technical and procedural safeguards to prevent misuse of the Situational Awareness Cameras. Prevent use of cameras or use of footage streamed from the cameras for purposes beyond what is defined in the ordinance.</p>	<p>1.1. SPD does not record, store, or retain any of the images captured by these camera technologies. Note: subsequent references (2.3 and ff) throughout the SIR state that “No images or data are collected, stored, or retained by any situational awareness camera used by SPD,” but this does not specifically preclude downloading or streaming images to a different device. <i>See Policy Consideration #4.</i></p> <p>3.2 and ff. SPD must obtain a signed warrant prior to using these cameras in protected areas. Use of situational cameras and restrictions on recording is also governed by SMC 14.12, the Intelligence Ordinance, which is incorporated into SPD Policy 6.060.</p>

Policy Considerations

Central Staff has identified the following potential policy considerations. All but the first one, which addresses missing equity assessment metrics, pertain to the Working Group's key concerns and recommendations:

1. Annual equity assessment metrics. SFD has not yet finalized metrics to be used in evaluating the Situational Awareness Cameras as part of the CTO's annual equity assessments. These assessments are intended to play a key role in determining whether the City's surveillance legislation is meeting the goals of the Race and Social Justice Initiative.

Options:

- A. Council may wish to request a report on the proposed equity assessment metrics by a date certain.
 - B. Council may wish to defer approval of this SIR, pending completion of these metrics.
 - C. Take no action.
2. Use and appropriate application. The SIR does not define the appropriate application of Situational Awareness Cameras, other than that all members of SWAT are trained in their use and appropriate application.

Options:

- A. Council may wish to request a report on parameters governing SPD's use of Situational Awareness Cameras by a date certain.
 - B. Council may wish to defer approval of this SIR, pending completion of SPD policies governing SPD's use of Situational Awareness Cameras
 - C. Take no action.
3. Acquisition of cameras with prohibited capabilities. SPD does not have policies that limit acquisition of situational cameras to those that do not have facial recognition or recording capabilities.

Options:

- A. Council may wish to request SPD to report back by a date certain on the availability of cameras with more limited functionality.
 - B. Take no action.
4. Technical and procedural safeguards. The SIR does not specifically prohibit downloading or streaming images to a different device.

Options:

- A. Council may wish to ask SPD to report back by a date certain on the feasibility of enhanced technical and procedural safeguards that would further prevent downloading and/or sharing of digital imagery or audio.
- B. Take no action.

Committee Action

Options for Council action are as follows:

1. Pass CB 120054 as transmitted;
2. Request Central Staff to prepare amendments to the Council Bill and/or to the SIR to address additional concerns or issues; or
3. Take no action.

Attachment:

1. Background Summary and Surveillance Impact Report Process

cc: Dan Eder, Interim Director
Aly Pennucci, Budget and Policy Manager

Attachment 1 - Background Summary and Surveillance Impact Report Process

Recent Legislative History

[Ordinance 125376](#), passed by Council on July 31, 2017, required City of Seattle departments intending to acquire surveillance technology to obtain advance Council approval, by ordinance, of the acquisition and of a surveillance impact report (SIR).¹ Departments must also submit a SIR for surveillance technology in use when Ordinance 125376 was adopted (referred to in the ordinance as “retroactive technologies”). The Executive originally included 28 “retroactive technologies,” on its [November 30, 2017 Master List](#) but revised that list to 26 in [December 2019](#). The Council has approved two SIRs and twice extended the initial March 3, 2020 deadline for completion of SIRs for all 26 technologies: first by six months to accommodate extended deliberation of the first two SIRs; and then by a second six months due to COVID-related delays. Either the Chief Technology Officer or the Council may determine whether a specific technology is “surveillance technology” and thus subject to the requirements of SMC 14.18. Each SIR must describe protocols for a “use and data management policy” as follows:

- How and when the surveillance technology will be deployed or used and by whom, including specific rules of use
- How surveillance data will be securely stored
- How surveillance data will be retained and deleted
- How surveillance data will be accessed
- Whether a department intends to share access to the technology or data with any other entity
- How the department will ensure that personnel who operate the technology and/or access its data can ensure compliance with the use and data management policy
- Any community engagement events and plans
- How the potential impact of the surveillance on civil rights and liberties and potential disparate impacts on communities of color and other marginalized communities have been taken into account; and a mitigation plan
- The fiscal impact of the surveillance technology

Community Surveillance Working Group

On October 5, 2018, Council passed [Ordinance 125679](#), amending SMC 14.18, creating a “community surveillance working group” charged with creating a Privacy and Civil Liberties Impact Assessment for each SIR.² At least five of the seven members of the Working Group

¹ As codified in SMC 14.18.030, Ordinance 125376 identified a number of exemptions and exceptions to the required Council approval, including information voluntarily provided, body-worn cameras and cameras installed in or on a police vehicle, cameras that record traffic violations, security cameras and technology that monitors City employees at work.

² Ordinance 125679 also established a March 31, 2020 deadline for submitting SIRs on technologies already in use (referred to as “retroactive technologies”) when Ordinance 125376 was passed, with provision to request a six-month extension.

Attachment 1 - Background Summary and Surveillance Impact Report Process

must represent groups that have historically been subject to disproportionate surveillance, including Seattle’s diverse communities of color, immigrant communities, religious minorities, and groups concerned with privacy and protest.³ Each Privacy and Civil Liberties Impact Assessment must describe the potential impact of the surveillance technology on civil rights and liberties and potential disparate impacts on communities of color and other marginalized communities and will be included in the SIR. Prior to submittal of a SIR to Council, the Chief Technology Officer may provide a written statement that addresses privacy rights, civil liberty or other concerns in the Working Group’s impact assessment.

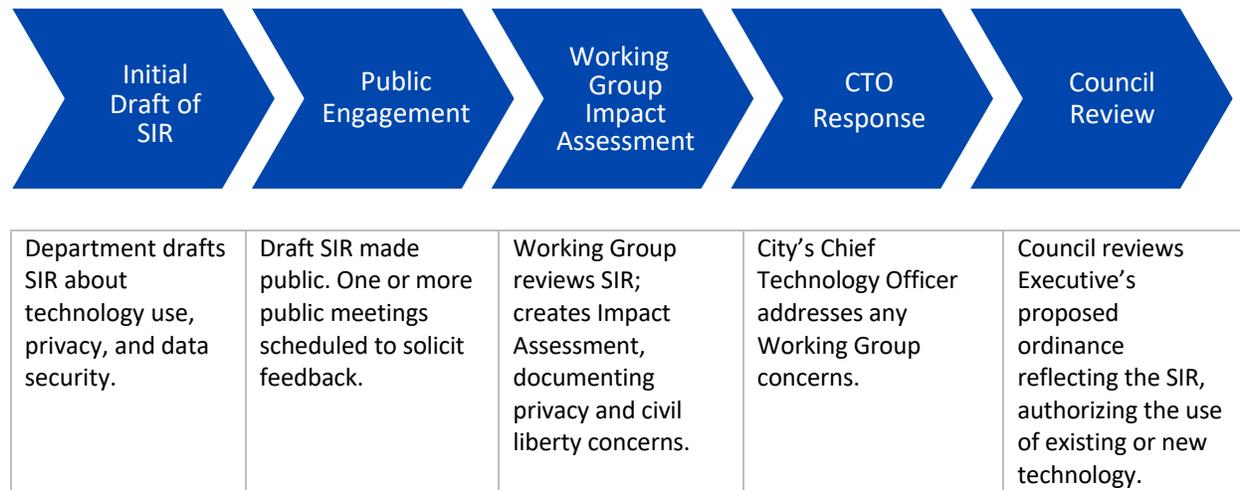
Executive Overviews

In May 2019, members of the Governance, Equity, and Technology Committee requested that IT staff prepare a summary section for each of the two lengthy SIR documents under review at that time. The Committee then accepted the resultant “Condensed Surveillance Impact Reports (CSIRs) together with the complete SIRs. The Executive has continued this practice with subsequent SIRs but has renamed the documents “Executive Overviews.” The Operational Policy Statements in the Executive Overview represent the only allowable uses of the subject technology.

SIR Process

Chart 1 is a visual of the SIR process from inception to Council Review:

Chart 1. Surveillance Impact Report (SIR) Process



³ The Mayor appoints four members and Council appoints three members.

Group 3 Surveillance Impact Reports (SIRs) CB 120053, CB 120054, & CB 120055

Transportation & Utilities Committee

May 5, 2021

Surveillance Impact Report (SIR) Overview

- 2017: [Ordinance 125376](#) took effect Sept 4th, revising the law to address the intended use of technologies with potential to impact civil liberties
- 2018: [Ordinance 125679](#) amended Ordinance 125376 and Chapter 14.18 of the Seattle Municipal Code and added external Community Surveillance Working Group
- 9/23/19: Group 1 SDOT SIR legislation passed ([Ordinance 125936](#))
- 1/20/21: Presented Overview of Surveillance Ordinance at the Transportation and Utilities Committee
- 1/26/21: Group 2 SIR legislation transmitted to City Clerk
- 2/22/21: Group 3 SIR legislation transmitted to City Clerk
- 3/03/21, 3/17/21, 4/07/21: Group 2 SIR briefing/discussion/vote at Transportation and Utilities Committee
- **3/22/21: Group 2 SCL & SFD SIR legislation passed ([Ordinance 126294](#) & [Ordinance 126295](#))**
- 4/12/21: Clerk filing of Group 4 SIR Extension Memo & Revised Master List of Surveillance Technologies
- **4/19/21: Group 2 SPD SIR legislation passed ([Ordinance 126311](#), [126312](#), [126313](#), [126314](#), [126315](#))**

28 total
technologies

Group	Depts.	28 Technologies		Council Bill	Status
Group 1 (2)	SDOT	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> License Plate Readers Closed Circuit Television Equipment "Traffic Cameras" 		CB 119519 CB 119519	Completed
Group 2 (9)	SCL SFD SPD	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Binoculars/Spotting Scope Check Meter Device SensorLink Amp Fork Computer-Aided Dispatch 911 Logging Recorder Automated License Plate Reader Parking Enforcement Systems including Automated License Plate Reader Computer-Aided Dispatch CopLogic 		CB 120002 CB 120002 CB 120002 CB 120003 CB 120004 CB 120005 CB 120006 CB 120007 CB 120008	Completed
Group 3 (3)	SPD	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Forward Looking Infrared Real-time video (FLIR) Situational Awareness Cameras Without Recording Video Recording Systems 		CB 120053 CB 120054 CB 120055	In Committee
Group 4A (7)	SFD SDOT SPD	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Emergency Scene Cameras, Hazmat Camera Acyclica Audio Recording Systems, Callyo, I2 iBase, Maltego 			Est. August Est. August Est. December
Group 4B (7)	SPD	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Camera systems; Tracking Devices; Remotely Operated Vehicles (ROVs); Hostage Negotiation Throw Phone; Crash Data Retrieval; GeoTime; Computer, cellphone and mobile device extraction tools 			Est. December

Group 3 SIR Public Engagement

- Group 3 Surveillance Technologies Public Meeting on 10/28/2020
- One Page Flyers
- Online Public Comment Meeting
 - Recorded and posted online

Engagement Method	(Approximate) Number of Individuals Participating	Number of Comments Received	Number of Questions Received
Public Meeting	15	-	15
Online Comments	38	38	-
Letters	1	1	-
Total	54	39	15

Group 3 SIR Technologies

Seattle Police Department

SEATTLE
CITY HALL

Seattle Police Department Mission

- Prevent crime;
- Enforce the law, and
- Support quality public safety by delivering respectful, professional and dependable police services.

Group 3 SIR Technologies

Group 3 Surveillance Impact Reports

- 1**

[CB 120053](#)
Forward Looking Infrared Real-time video (FLIR)

This technology provides a platform for aerial photography and digital video of large outdoor locations (e.g., crime scenes and disaster damage, etc.) through King County Sheriff's Air Support Unit helicopters.
- 2**

[CB 120054](#)
Situational Awareness Cameras Without Recording

Portable cameras that allow officers to observe around corners or other areas during operations where officers need to see the situation before entering an area of concern.
- 3**

[CB 120055](#)
Video Recording Systems at SPD Facilities

These systems record events that take place in a Blood Alcohol Collection (BAC) Room, precinct holding cells, interview, and lineup rooms.

Forward Looking Infrared Real-Time Video (FLIR)

What is the technology?

- Two King County Sheriff's Office helicopters with Forward Looking Infrared (FLIR) send a real-time video feed of ongoing events to commanders on the ground.
- This technology provides a platform for aerial photography and digital video of large outdoor locations (e.g., crime scenes and disaster damage, etc.).

Why do we use the technology?

- Rapid response to crime or disaster scenes.
- Provides a bird's eye view of events happening on the ground.
- FLIR technology allows for subjects to be detected even when obscured by haze or darkness.



FLIR – How It Works

- King County Sheriff's Air Support Unit is operated by the King County Sheriff's Office and is available to assist the Seattle Police Department at no charge through the Puget Sound Regional Aviation Project and the Seattle Urban Area Security Initiative (UASI).
- FLIR systems use heat emitted by subjects and objects to provide enhancement to images of active scenes.
- The FLIR systems cannot see into homes or other structures.



FLIR – Policies Governing Use

- King County Sheriff's Office Air Support Unit (SPD Policy 16.060)
- Evidence (SPD Policy 7.090)
- Access to criminal justice information and records (SPD policies 12.050 and 12.080)
- Use of department email and internet (SPD Policy 12.110)
- Use of cloud storage services (SPD policy 12.111)
- <http://www.seattle.gov/police-manual>

Situational Awareness Cameras Without Recording

What is the technology?

- Portable cameras that allow officers to observe around corners or other areas during tactical operations where officers need to see the situation before entering an area of concern. These may be lowered or thrown into position, attached to a hand-held pole and extended around a corner or into an area. The cameras contain wireless transmitters that send images to officers.

Why do we use the technology?

- SPD's tactical units use situational awareness cameras to assess potentially dangerous situations from a safe location.
- These cameras allows SPD to view surroundings and gain additional information prior to entering a location, providing additional safety and security to SPD personnel, the subjects of the observation, and other members of the community.



Situational Awareness Cameras Without Recording – How They Work

- Only members of SWAT are authorized to use this equipment and are specifically trained in their use.
- These cameras may be lowered or thrown into position, attached to a hand-held pole and extended around a corner or into an area. The cameras contain wireless transmitters that send images to nearby officers.
- No recordings are made using these cameras.



Situational Awareness Cameras Without Recording – Policies Governing Use

- Bias-Free Policing (SPD Policy 5.140)
- Standards and Duties (SPD Policy 5.001)
- Specialty Vehicles & Equipment (SPD policies 13.060)
- <http://www.seattle.gov/police-manual>

Video Recording Systems at SPD Facilities

What is the technology?

- SPD has two camera systems used to record and/or monitor members of the public within specific, secure locations in SPD facilities.
- These systems record events that take place in a Blood Alcohol Collection (BAC) Room, precinct holding cells, interview, and lineup rooms.

Why do we use the technology?

- Create visual record of activities in the interview rooms, BAC rooms, and precinct holding cells.
- Prevents disputes about how interviews are conducted or how suspects, victims, and witnesses are treated.
- Enhances SPD accountability in the community and enhances confidence in SPD practices.



Video Recording Systems at SPD Facilities – How It Works

- The **Genetec Video Management System** includes camera and microphone equipment that is permanently installed in the interview rooms on the 6th and 7th floors of SPD Headquarters.
- The **Milestone Video Management Software and Products** consist of cameras located in BAC rooms and precinct holding cells throughout SPD's facilities.
- Signage informs employees and members of the public that camera and recording devices are present.



Video Recording Systems at SPD Facilities – Recording Data Storage

Genetec (Interview Rooms)

- After an interview is conducted the recording of the interview is copied to a high-quality evidence grade DVD+R disc. This evidence-grade disc is then submitted into the SPD Evidence Section as a standard item of evidence. Standard evidence retention rules are then followed

Milestone (BAC Rooms and Precinct Holding Cells)

- The recordings are made by the Milestone system. A request by an authorized party (Homicide, OPA, OIG, etc.) for specific footage is made for criminal or internal investigations. The recordings are held for a minimum of 120 and a maximum of 217 days unless used as evidence in a particular case.

Video Recording Systems at SPD Facilities – Policies Governing Use

- Recorded Statements (SPD Policy 7.110)
- Evidence (SPD Policy 7.090)
- Use of department-owned devices/software (SPD Policy 12.040)
- Access to criminal justice information and records (SPD policies 12.050 and 12.080)
- Use of department email and internet (SPD Policy 12.110)
- Use of cloud storage services (SPD policy 12.111)
- <http://www.seattle.gov/police-manual>

Questions

Appendix

Surveillance Criteria

Definition: *Technology whose primary purpose is to observe or analyze the movements, behavior, or actions of identifiable individuals in a manner that is reasonably likely to raise concerns about civil liberties, freedom of speech or association, racial equity or social justice. Identifiable individuals also include individuals whose identity can be revealed by license plate data when combined with any other record.*

Exclusions

- Consents to provide the data
- Opt-out notice
- Body-worn cameras
- Police vehicle cameras
- Cameras installed pursuant to state law...or to record traffic violations
- Security cameras
- City infrastructure protection cameras
- Technology that monitors only City employees

Inclusions

- Disparately impacts disadvantaged groups
- PII shared with non-City entities that will use the data for a purpose other than providing the City with a contractually agreed-upon service
- Collects data that is personally identifiable even if obscured, de-identified, or anonymized after collection
- Raises reasonable concerns about impacts to civil liberty, freedom of speech or association, racial equity, or social justice

Surveillance Impact Report (SIR) Process

- Submitted for all retroactive and newly proposed technologies that meet the definition and have no exclusion criteria
- Created by the Departments with project management from IT

1

Privacy Impact Assessment

2

Financial Information

3

Racial Equity Toolkit

4

Public Engagement Comments and Analysis

5

Privacy and Civil Liberties Impact Assessment

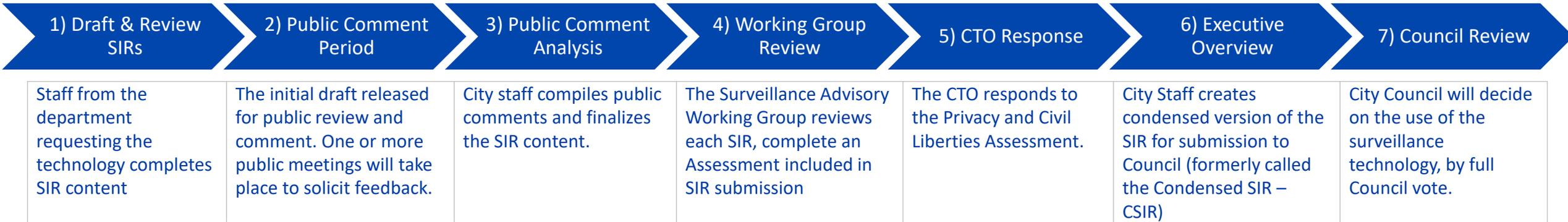
6

CTO Response

7

Appendices & Supporting Documentation

General SIR Creation Timeline





SEATTLE CITY COUNCIL
CENTRAL STAFF

Group 3 Surveillance Impact Reports

LISE KAYE, COUNCIL CENTRAL STAFF

TRANSPORTATION AND UTILITIES COMMITTEE | MAY 5, 2021

Proposed Council Bills – Today's Agenda

- **CB 120053: Forward Looking Infrared Real-Time Video**
(with King County Sheriff's Office helicopters)
- **CB 120054: Situational Awareness Cameras**
(without recording)
- **CB 120055: Video Recording Systems**

Elements to Consider

- Purpose and Use of Each Technology
- Civil Liberties and Potential Disparate Impacts on Historically Marginalized Communities - Racial Equity Toolkit
- Public Engagement
- Surveillance Working Group's Privacy and Civil Liberties Impact Assessment
- Chief Technology Officer's Response

Elements to Consider

- Policy Considerations
 - Surveillance Working Group's key concerns and recommendations
 - Incomplete information in a SIR
 - Legal and logistical parameters

CB 120053: Forward Looking Infrared Real-Time Video

- SPD may request helicopter support from the King County Sheriff's Office for:
 - Tracking movement of crime suspects
 - Situational awareness of disaster scenes

Forward Looking Infrared Real-Time Video

- Civil Liberties and Potential Disparate Impacts
 - Risk of acquisition of private information about third parties
 - Risk of disproportionate surveillance of vulnerable or historically targeted communities
 - Data sharing, storage and retention could contribute to structural racism
- Public comments: concern about use against protesters and people of color; disproportionate use in neighborhoods

Forward Looking Infrared Real-Time Video

- Impact Assessment issues:
 - Allowable uses
 - Data collection, storage and protection
 - Privacy of individuals unrelated to an investigation
 - Lack of historical deployment data
- CTO's Response: SIR generally addresses each concern; CTO provided 2018 KCSO helicopter deployment data from 2018

Forward Looking Infrared Real-Time Video

- Policy Considerations
 - Annual equity assessment metrics
 - Policies and/or criteria for requesting assistance from KCSO Air Support Unit

CB 120054: Situational Awareness Cameras

- Used by SWAT to covertly assess potentially dangerous situations from a safe location:
 - Robot mounted cameras
 - Pole cameras
 - Placeable cameras
 - Throwable cameras

Situational Awareness Cameras

- Civil Liberties and Potential Disparate Impacts
 - Potential surveillance of innocent members of the community
 - Data sharing, storage and retention could contribute to structural racism
- Public comments: need for transparent and fair use, lack of technical and procedural safeguards, the need to record all video and sound feeds for police accountability, and potentially poor resolution of images

Situational Awareness Cameras

- Impact Assessment issues:
 - Allowable uses
 - Capabilities beyond allowed use
 - Safeguards to protect improper viewing, collection, and storage of images
- CTO's Response: SFD's policy and training and limitations of the technology provide adequate mitigation for Working Group concerns

Situational Awareness Cameras

- Policy Considerations
 - Annual equity assessment metrics
 - Use and appropriate application
 - Acquisition of cameras with prohibited capabilities
 - Technical and procedural safeguards – downloading or streaming

CB 120055 – Video Recording Systems

- Genetec Video Management System
 - Audio and video recording of interactions with and interviews of crime victims, witnesses and suspects in interview rooms
 - Video-only monitoring of individuals in interview rooms when no SPD detective is present
- Milestone Systems
 - Continuous recording of activity in blood alcohol collection rooms and precinct holding cells

Video Recording Systems

- Civil Liberties and Potential Disparate Impacts
 - Personally identifiable and potentially sensitive personal information on video or audio recordings
 - Could over-surveil vulnerable or historically targeted communities
 - Data sharing, storage and retention could contribute to structural racism
- Public comments: need for transparent and fair use, system security , potential system add-ons, camera operations

Video Recording Systems

- Impact Assessment issues:
 - System capabilities
 - Data collection, storage and protection
 - Allowable uses

Video Recording Systems

- CTO's Response:
 - System capabilities: Outlined in the SIR. Facial recognition features are not in use by any system in SPD. As of July 2021, Chapter 43.386 RCW will regulate use of a facial recognition service
 - Data collection, storage and protection: outlined in the SIR
 - Allowable uses: Outlined in the SIR. Governed by SPD Policy 7.110 –Recorded Statements.

Video Recording Systems

- Policy Considerations
 - Annual equity assessment metrics



Legislation Text

File #: CB 120055, **Version:** 1

CITY OF SEATTLE

ORDINANCE _____

COUNCIL BILL _____

AN ORDINANCE relating to surveillance technology implementation; authorizing approval of uses and accepting the 2020 surveillance impact report and 2020 executive overview for the Seattle Police Department's use of Video Recording Systems.

WHEREAS, Section 14.18.020 of the Seattle Municipal Code (SMC), enacted by Ordinance 125376, requires City Council approval of a surveillance impact report (SIR) related to uses of surveillance technology, with existing/retroactive technology to be placed on a Master Technology List; and

WHEREAS, SMC 14.18.020 applies to the Video Recording Systems in use by the Seattle Police Department; and

WHEREAS, the Seattle Police Department conducted policy rule review and community review as part of the development of the SIR; and

WHEREAS, SMC 14.18.080, enacted by Ordinance 125679, provides for the Community Surveillance Working Group, composed of relevant stakeholders, to complete a privacy and civil liberties impact assessment for each SIR, and SMC 14.18.020 allows for a statement from the Chief Technology Officer in response to the Working Group's privacy and civil liberties impact assessment; and

WHEREAS, development of the SIR, review by the Working Group and the Chief Technology Officer's response has been completed; NOW, THEREFORE,

BE IT ORDAINED BY THE CITY OF SEATTLE AS FOLLOWS:

Section 1. Pursuant to Ordinances 125376 and 125679, the City Council approves use of the Seattle Police Department's Video Recording Systems and accepts the 2020 Surveillance Impact Report (SIR) for this

technology, attached to this ordinance as Attachment 1, and the 2020 Executive Overview for the same technology, attached to this ordinance as Attachment 2.

Section 2. This ordinance shall take effect and be in force 30 days after its approval by the Mayor, but if not approved and returned by the Mayor within ten days after presentation, it shall take effect as provided by Seattle Municipal Code Section 1.04.020.

Passed by the City Council the _____ day of _____, 2021, and signed by me in open session in authentication of its passage this _____ day of _____, 2021.

President _____ of the City Council

Approved / returned unsigned / vetoed this _____ day of _____, 2021.

Jenny A. Durkan, Mayor

Filed by me this _____ day of _____, 2021.

Monica Martinez Simmons, City Clerk

(Seal)

Attachments:

Attachment 1 - 2020 Surveillance Impact Report: Video Recording Systems

Attachment 2 - 2020 Surveillance Impact Report Executive Overview: Video Recording Systems



2020 Surveillance Impact Report

Video Recording Systems

**(Interview, Blood-Alcohol Collection Room,
and Precinct Holding Cell Audio)**

Seattle Police Department

April 13th, 2021

Version 1

Surveillance Impact Report (“SIR”) Overview	3
Privacy Impact Assessment	4
Financial Information	20
Expertise and References	22
Racial Equity Toolkit (“RET”) and Engagement for Public Comment Worksheet	24
Privacy and Civil Liberties Assessment	30
CTO Response	32
Appendix A: Glossary	37
Appendix B: Meeting Notice(s)	39
Appendix C: All Comments Received from Members of the Public	40
Appendix D: Letters from Organizations or Commissions	49
Appendix E: CTO Notification of Surveillance Technology	58

Surveillance Impact Report (“SIR”) Overview

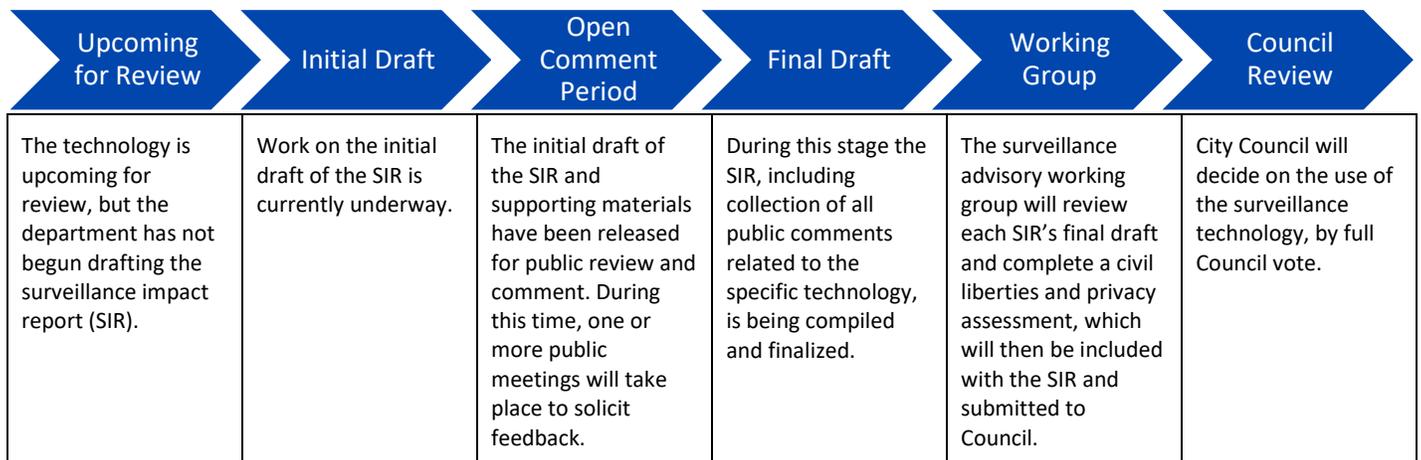
About the Surveillance Ordinance

The Seattle City Council passed ordinance [125376](#), also referred to as the “Surveillance Ordinance”, on September 1, 2017. This ordinance has implications for the acquisition of new technologies by the City, and technologies that are already in use that may fall under the new, broader definition of surveillance.

SMC 14.18.020.B.1 charges the City’s executive with developing a process to identify surveillance technologies subject to the ordinance. Seattle IT, on behalf of the executive, developed and implemented a process through which a privacy and surveillance review is completed prior to the acquisition of new technologies. This requirement, and the criteria used in the review process, are documented in Seattle IT Policy PR-02, the “Surveillance Policy”.

Surveillance Ordinance Review Process

The following is a high-level outline of the complete SIR review process.



Privacy Impact Assessment

Purpose

A Privacy Impact Assessment (“PIA”) is a method for collecting and documenting detailed information collected in order to conduct an in-depth privacy review of a program or project. A PIA asks questions about the collection, use, sharing, security and access controls for data that is gathered using a technology or program. It also requests information about policies, training and documentation that govern use of the technology. The PIA responses are used to determine privacy risks associated with a project and mitigations that may reduce some or all of those risks. In the interests of transparency about data collection and management, the City of Seattle has committed to publishing all PIAs on an outward facing website for public access.

When is a Privacy Impact Assessment Required?

A PIA may be required in two circumstances.

- 1) When a project, technology, or other review has been flagged as having a high privacy risk.
- 2) When a technology is required to complete the surveillance impact report process. This is one deliverable that comprises the report.

1.0 Abstract

1.1 Please provide a brief description (one paragraph) of the purpose and proposed use of the project/technology.

SPD has two camera systems used to record and/or monitor members of the public within specific, secure locations in SPD facilities.

The first is the Genetec Video Management System. It is a permanently installed, non-mobile unconcealed audio and video recording system primarily used to record in-person interactions with and interviews of crime victims, witnesses, and suspects in 7 designated interview rooms located at the SPD headquarters in the Seattle Justice Center. The system also provides a live video-only view of these interview rooms. The video-only live view is used to monitor, short term, members of the community who are in the interview rooms when no SPD detective is present. This system is used to create a video record of interviews for the purposes of use in criminal justice proceedings.

The second is Milestone Systems XProtect Video Management Software and Products. These are permanently installed in SPD’s Blood Alcohol Collection (BAC) rooms and precinct holding cells. They record continuously all activity in those locations.

1.2 Explain the reason the project/technology is being created or updated and why the PIA is required.

These technologies are used to record members of the public who are being interviewed or having their blood alcohol levels tested or are placed in precinct holding cells. If used out of policy, improperly, or without proper notification, this technology could potentially be used to make recordings that infringe on public privacy.

2.0 Project / Technology Overview

Provide an overview of the project or technology. The overview gives the context and background necessary to understand the purpose, mission and justification for the project / technology proposed

2.1 Describe the benefits of the project/technology.

Though the state of Washington is not one of the 26 states that requires the recording of custodial interrogations, many law enforcement agencies and criminal justice system watchdogs, such as the Innocence Project, highly recommend the practice. Benefits include: preventing disputes about how an officer conducted the interview or treated a suspect or victim; creating a record of statements made by a suspect that may capture subtle details missed in real-time; reducing false confessions; and enhancing public confidence in the practices of SPD. Creating a visual record of activities that occur within the BAC rooms and precinct holding cells also provides a measure of accountability for both SPD and involved community members.

2.2 Provide any data or research demonstrating anticipated benefits.

According to The Justice Project, “the virtue of electronic recording of custodial interrogations... lies not only in its ability to help guard against false confessions, but also in its ability to develop the strongest evidence possible to help convict the guilty.”
[https://web.williams.edu/Psychology/Faculty/Kassin/files/Justice%20Project\(07\).pdf](https://web.williams.edu/Psychology/Faculty/Kassin/files/Justice%20Project(07).pdf)

2.3 Describe the technology involved.

The Genetec Video Management System includes camera and microphone equipment that is permanently installed in the interview rooms on the 6th and 7th floors of SPD Headquarters, a physical server located at SPD HQ, two dedicated computer workstations located in the detectives’ work area at SPD HQ, and video-only monitors located throughout the detectives’ work area and detective supervisors’ offices at SPD HQ.

The Milestone Video Management Software and Products consist of cameras located in BAC rooms and precinct holding cells throughout SPD’s facilities. A dedicated server is located at each of these secure locations which stores the video and audio information from the Milestone cameras.

2.4 Describe how the project or use of technology relates to the department's mission.

The mission of the Seattle Police Department is to prevent crime, enforce the law, and support quality public safety by delivering respectful, professional, and dependable police services. The video and audio recording of victim, witness, and suspect interviews aids investigations and prosecutions of crimes as well as enhances public confidence in the practices of SPD.

2.5 Who will be involved with the deployment and use of the project / technology?

All SPD investigative units which include: Homicide, Robbery, Gang Unit, Intelligence, Special Assault Unit, Domestic Violence Unit, Arson-Bomb Squad, Major Crimes, Auto Theft, Vice & Human Trafficking. All SPD precinct employees tasked with the collection of blood alcohol levels and holding of subjects in precinct holding cells.

Additionally, SPD Video Unit staff, and certain backgrounded and qualified Seattle IT personnel are also involved in the support of the Video Management Systems.

3.0 Use Governance

Provide an outline of any rules that will govern the use of the project / technology. Please note: non-City entities contracting with the City are bound by restrictions specified in the surveillance ordinance and privacy principles and must provide written procedures for how the entity will comply with any restrictions identified.

3.1 Describe the processes that are required prior to each use, or access to/ of the project / technology, such as a notification, or check-in, check-out of equipment.

Genetec (Interview rooms): The detective(s) conducting the interview activates the recording system for the appropriate room with a manual switch. The detective then advises the interview subject of the audio recording acquiring implied consent, or explicitly asks for permission to record per [SPD Policy 7.110 – Recorded Statements](#). At the conclusion of the interview or blood draw, or when the subject leaves the room, the recording is terminated by the detective or officer. The detective then exports the recording from the server on one of the two designated computer work stations and creates a copy of the recording for permanent storage on a special high-quality evidence grade DVD+R disc. This evidence grade disc is then submitted into the SPD Evidence Section as a standard item of evidence.

Milestone (BAC rooms and precinct holding cells): The Milestone systems is continuously recording in the BAC rooms and precinct holding cells. In the event that an investigator (including SPD internal investigations) needs to view the video, a request must be made to the SPD Video Unit who will locate the specific time and location video requested and provide the investigator with a DVD containing the file.

3.2 List the legal standards or conditions, if any, that must be met before the project / technology is used.

Signage is clearly posted in all SPD precincts indicating that audio and video surveillance is in progress. These signs are posted both at the entrances to holding cells and inside holding cells and blood alcohol collection areas.





Consent is required before these technologies may be used. **RCW 9.73.030 Intercepting, recording or divulging private communication – Consent required – Exceptions.** Also known as “All party consent”. Standard procedure dictates that interview subjects are always advised of the presence of the recording or asked for their permission to record. Any recording made of an interview subject without consent would be inadmissible and could possibly subject the SPD personnel to an internal conduct assessment and possibly criminal charges.

Per [SPD Policy 7.110 – Recorded Statements](#):

When taking an audio recorded statement, the officer/detective:

1. **States** at the beginning of the recording:

Officer's name and includes, "of the Seattle Police Department"

Report Number

Date and time of the recording

The name of the interviewee

All persons present during the interview

2. **Asks** the person to respond to the question, "Are you aware you are being recorded?"

3. **If** the person is in custody, **gives** Miranda warning.

4. **Asks** the person to state their full name.

5. **Conducts** the interview.

6. After the interview, **if** the person is a victim, witness or complainant, **asks** the person:

Do you declare under penalty of perjury under the laws of Washington what you have stated in this statement is true and correct?

Do you wish to have your personal information Disclosed or Not Disclosed?

7. **Announces** the end of the recording with the date and time.

8. **Uploads** the audio statement to the Digital Evidence Management System (DEMS).

9. **Documents** the recorded statement in the appropriate report.

3.3 Describe the policies and training required of all personnel operating the project / technology, and who has access to ensure compliance with use and management policies.

Operators of both the Genetec and Milestone video systems are sworn SPD personnel. Training on the use of these systems is provided in-house to all SPD users of this technology. All SPD employees are required to abide by all SPD policies, including [SPD Policy 7.110 – Recorded Statements](#) which is directly related to the use of video recording equipment.

4.0 Data Collection and Use

Provide information about the policies and practices around the collection and use of the data collected.

4.1 Provide details about what information is being collected from sources other than an individual, including other IT systems, systems of record, commercial data aggregators, publicly available data and/or other City departments.

These technologies record only the images and sounds that occur during an SPD interview of a witness, victim, or suspect, and activity in BAC rooms and precinct holding cells.

4.2 What measures are in place to minimize inadvertent or improper collection of data?

These technologies record only the images and sounds that occur during an SPD interview of a witness, victim, or suspect, and activity in BAC rooms and precinct holding cells. These technologies are permanently mounted and do not record any information outside of these parameters.

4.3 How and when will the project / technology be deployed or used? By whom? Who will determine when the project / technology is deployed and used?

Genetec (Interview rooms): The detective(s) conducting the interview activates the recording system for the appropriate room with a manual switch. The detective then advises the interview subject of the audio recording acquiring implied consent, or explicitly asks for permission to record per [SPD Policy 7.110 – Recorded Statements](#). At the conclusion of the interview or blood draw, or when the subject leaves the room, the recording is terminated by the detective or officer. The detective then exports the recording from the server on one of the two designated computer workstations and creates a copy of the recording for permanent storage on a special high-quality evidence grade DVD+R disc. This evidence grade disc is then submitted into the SPD Evidence Section as a standard item of evidence.

Milestone (BAC rooms and precinct holding cells): The Milestone systems is continuously recording in the BAC rooms and precinct holding cells. In the event that an investigation (including SPD internal investigations) needs to view the video, a request must be made to the SPD Video Unit who will locate the specific time and location video requested and provide the investigator with a DVD containing the file.

4.4 How often will the technology be in operation?

The Genetec (interview rooms) system is used on a daily basis in the course of law enforcement activities. The Milestone system (BAC rooms and precinct holding cells) records these locations continuously.

4.5 What is the permanence of the installation? Is it installed permanently, or temporarily?

Both the Genetec and Milestone systems are permanently installed.

4.6 Is a physical object collecting data or images visible to the public? What are the markings to indicate that it is in use? What signage is used to determine department ownership and contact information?

The cameras for both the Genetec and Milestone systems are overtly mounted in the interview rooms at SPD Headquarters and inside BAC rooms and precinct holding cells.

4.7 How will data that is collected be accessed and by whom?

Genetec (interview rooms): After an interview is conducted, the detective accesses the recorded audio-video file that is stored on the Genetec server using proprietary Genetec software on one of two dedicated workstations located in the secured Detectives' Working Area and creates a copy of this file on a high-quality evidence grade DVD+R disc. This evidence-grade disc is then submitted into the SPD Evidence Section as a standard item of evidence. Standard evidence retention/disposition rules are then followed.

Milestone (BAC rooms and precinct holding cells): The recordings made by the Milestone system of BAC room use is not accessed routinely, but rather only when a specific request for that footage is needed for a criminal or internal investigation. Requests for that footage is requested by an authorized party (detective, Office of Police Accountability investigator, etc.) to the SPD Video Unit within the 90-day data retention period for those files. The Video Unit creates a copy of this file on a high-quality evidence grade DVD+R disc. This evidence grade disc is then submitted into the SPD Evidence Section as a standard item of evidence. Standard evidence retention/disposition rules are then followed.

4.8 If operated or used by another entity on behalf of the City, provide details about access, and applicable protocols.

This technology is not operated or used by another entity on behalf of the City.

4.9 What are acceptable reasons for access to the equipment and/or data collected?

The primary reason for access to the data collected by both the Genetec and Milestone systems is to investigate crimes, aid in the prosecution of criminals, and monitor subjects inside SPD facilities. Additionally, these systems are used to monitor internal SPD operations and document police activities.

4.10 What safeguards are in place, for protecting data from unauthorized access (encryption, access control mechanisms, etc.) And to provide an audit trail (viewer logging, modification logging, etc.)?

Only authorized SPD users can access the system, technology, or the data. Access to the application is limited to SPD personnel via password-protected login credentials. Logs of system activity are kept for both automatic system functions and user actions which provide an audit trail to safeguard against potential unauthorized access to stored information.

The entire system is located on the SPD network which is protected by industry standard firewalls. The Seattle IT Department performs routine monitoring of the SPD network.

All SPD employees are backgrounded and access is controlled by SPD Manual Title 12 provisions governing Department Information Systems including [SPD Policy 12.040 - Department-Owned Computers, Devices & Software](#), [SPD Policy 12.050 - Criminal Justice Information Systems](#), [SPD Policy 12.080 – Department Records Access, Inspection & Dissemination](#), [SPD Policy 12.110 – Use of Department E-mail & Internet Systems](#), and [SPD Policy 12.111 – Use of Cloud Storage Services](#).

SPD’s Audit, Policy and Research Section (APRS) can conduct an audit of the any and all systems at any time. The Office of Inspector General and the federal monitor can also access all data and audit for compliance at any time.

ITD client services interaction with SPD systems is governed according to the terms of the 2018 Management Control Agreement between ITD and SPD, which states that:

“Pursuant to Seattle Municipal Code (SMC) 3.23, ITD provides information technology systems, services and support to SPD and is therefore required to support, enable, enforce and comply with SPD policy requirements, including the FBI’s Criminal Justice Information Services, (CJIS) Security Policy.”

5.0 Data Storage, Retention and Deletion

5.1 How will data be securely stored?

Genetec (interview rooms): The original recordings are stored on a proprietary Genetec server that is located in a secure server room located in SPD HQ. The long-term storage copy produced by the detective is retained at the SPD Evidence Section following standard evidence retention rules.

Milestone (BAC rooms and precinct holding cells): Individual local servers are securely located all SPD precincts.

Per the [CJIS Security Policy](#), each agency is responsible for appropriate security measures as applicable to physical security of terminals and telecommunication lines; personnel security to include background screening requirements; technical security to protect against unauthorized use; data security to include III use, dissemination, and logging; and security of criminal history 08/16/2018 CJISD-ITS-DOC-08140-5.7 D-3 records. Additionally, each CSO (CJIS Systems Officer, or department command personnel) must ensure that all agencies establish an information security structure that provides for an ISO and complies with the CJIS Security Policy.

Both the Genetec and Milestone systems retain recordings for 90 days before they are automatically and systematically deleted from the server.

5.2 How will the owner allow for departmental and other entities, to audit for compliance with legal deletion requirements?

SPD's Audit, Policy and Research Section (APRS) can conduct an audit of the any and all systems at any time. In addition, the Office of Inspector General and the federal monitor can access all data and audit for compliance at any time.

5.3 What measures will be used to destroy improperly collected data?

Both the Genetec and Milestone systems retain recordings for 90 days before they are automatically and systematically deleted from the server.

SPD policy contains multiple provisions to avoid improperly collecting data. [SPD Policy 7.010](#) governs the submission of evidence and requires that all collected evidence be documented in an incident report. [SPD Policy 7.090](#) specifically governs the collection and submission of photographic evidence. Evidence is submitted to the Evidence Unit and associated with a specific GO Number and investigation. And, [SPD Policy 7.110](#) governs the collection and submission of audio recorded statements. It requires that officers state their name, the Department name, the General Offense number, date and time of recording, the name of the interviewee, and all persons present at the beginning of the recording. Additionally, [SPD Policy 5.140](#) forbids bias-based policing and outlines processes for reporting and documenting any suspected bias-based behavior, as well as accountability measures.

All SPD employees must adhere to laws, City policy, and Department Policy ([SPD Policy 5.001](#)), and any employees suspected of being in violation of laws or policy or other misconduct are subject to discipline, as outlined in [SPD Policy 5.002](#). [SPD Policy 5.001](#) also ensures that communication on the systems subject to collection on this system is official in nature.

Per the [CJIS Security Policy](#):

5.8.3 Digital Media Sanitization and Disposal The agency shall sanitize, that is, overwrite at least three times or degauss digital media prior to disposal or release for reuse by unauthorized individuals. Inoperable digital media shall be destroyed (cut up, shredded, etc.). The agency shall maintain written documentation of the steps taken to sanitize or destroy electronic media. Agencies shall ensure the sanitization or destruction is witnessed or carried out by authorized personnel.

5.8.4 Disposal of Physical Media Physical media shall be securely disposed of when no longer required, using formal procedures. Formal procedures for the secure disposal or destruction of physical media shall minimize the risk of sensitive information compromise by unauthorized individuals. Physical media shall be destroyed by shredding or incineration. Agencies shall ensure the disposal or destruction is witnessed or carried out by authorized personnel.

5.4 which specific departmental unit or individual is responsible for ensuring compliance with data retention requirements?

Unit managers are responsible for ensuring compliance with data retention requirements within SPD. Audit, Policy & Research Section personnel can also conduct audits of all data collection software and systems. Additionally, any appropriate auditor, including the Office of Inspector General and the federal monitor can audit for compliance at any time.

6.0 Data Sharing and Accuracy

6.1 Which entity or entities inside and external to the City will be data sharing partners?

No person, outside of SPD and Seattle IT, has direct access to the application or the data.

Data obtained from the system may be shared outside SPD with the other agencies, entities, or individuals within legal guidelines or as required by law.

Data may be shared with outside entities in connection with criminal prosecutions:

- Seattle City Attorney's Office
- King County Prosecuting Attorney's Office
- King County Department of Public Defense
- Private Defense Attorneys
- Seattle Municipal Court
- King County Superior Court
- Similar entities where prosecution is in Federal or other State jurisdictions

Data may be made available to requesters pursuant to the [Washington Public Records Act, Chapter 42.56 RCW](#) ("PRA"). SPD will apply applicable exemptions to the data before disclosing to a requester. Individuals have the right to inspect criminal history record information maintained by the department ([RCW 10.97.030](#), [SPD Policy 12.050](#)). Individuals can access their own information by submitting a public disclosure request.

SPD shares data with authorized researchers pursuant to properly execute research and confidentiality agreements as provide by [SPD Policy 12.055](#). This sharing may include discrete pieces of data related to specific investigative files collected by the system.

6.2 Why is data sharing necessary?

The sharing of recorded audio-video of police interviews of victims, witnesses, and crime suspects is often needed to aid in the prosecution of cases. Recordings may be shared only within the context of the situations outlined in 6.1.

6.3 Are there any restrictions on non-City data use?

Yes No

6.3.1 if you answered yes, provide a copy of the department’s procedures and policies for ensuring compliance with these restrictions.

Law enforcement agencies receiving criminal history information are subject to the requirements of 28 CFR Part 20, regulating criminal justice information systems. In addition, Washington State law enforcement agencies are subject to the provisions of WAC 446-20-260 (auditing and dissemination of criminal history record information systems), and [RCW Chapter 10.97](#) (Washington State Criminal Records Privacy Act).

Once disclosed in response to PRA request, there are no restrictions on non-City data use; however, applicable exemptions will be applied prior to disclosure to any requestor who is not authorized to receive exempt content.

6.4 how does the project/technology review and approve information sharing agreements, memorandums of understanding, new uses of the information, new access to the system by organizations within City of Seattle and outside agencies?

Research agreements must meet the standards reflected in [SPD Policy 12.055](#). Law enforcement agencies receiving criminal history information are subject to the requirements of 28 CFR Part 20. In addition, Washington State law enforcement agencies are subject to the provisions of WAC 446-20-260, and [RCW Chapter 10.97](#).

6.5 explain how the project/technology checks the accuracy of the information collected. If accuracy is not checked, please explain why.

The audio and video captured by these systems are real-time recordings of the interviews and activities that take place in view of the cameras permanently mounted in the interview and BAC rooms and within precinct holding cells.

6.6 describe any procedures that allow individuals to access their information and correct inaccurate or erroneous information.

Individuals may request records pursuant to the PRA, and individuals have the right to inspect criminal history record information maintained by the department ([RCW 10.97.030](#), [SPD Policy 12.050](#)). Individuals can access their own information by submitting a public disclosure request.

7.0 Legal Obligations, Risks and Compliance

7.1 What specific legal authorities and/or agreements permit and define the collection of information by the project/technology?

Though the state of Washington is not one of the 26 states that requires the recording of custodial interrogations, many law enforcement agencies and criminal justice system watchdogs, such as the Innocence Project, highly recommend the practice.

Consent is required before these technologies may be used. [RCW 9.73.030 Intercepting, recording or divulging private communication – Consent required – Exceptions](#). Also known as “All party consent”. Standard procedure dictates that interview subjects are always advised of the presence of the recording or asked for their permission to record.

Additionally, [RCW 9.73.090 Certain emergency response personnel exempted from RCW 9.73.030 through 9.73.080—Standards—Court authorizations—Admissibility](#) states:

(b) Video and/or sound recordings may be made of arrested persons by police officers responsible for making arrests or holding persons in custody before their first appearance in court. Such video and/or sound recordings shall conform strictly to the following:

(i) The arrested person shall be informed that such recording is being made and the statement so informing him or her shall be included in the recording;

(ii) The recording shall commence with an indication of the time of the beginning thereof and terminate with an indication of the time thereof;

(iii) At the commencement of the recording the arrested person shall be fully informed of his or her constitutional rights, and such statements informing him or her shall be included in the recording;

(iv) The recordings shall only be used for valid police or court activities;

7.2 Describe what privacy training is provided to users either generally or specifically relevant to the project/technology.

[SPD Policy 12.050](#) mandates that all employees receive Security Awareness Training (Level 2), and all employees also receive City Privacy Training. All SPD employees must adhere to laws, City policy, and Department Policy ([SPD Policy 5.001](#)), many of which contain specific privacy requirements. Any employees suspected of being in violation of laws or policy or other misconduct are subject to discipline, as outlined in [SPD Policy 5.002](#).

7.3 Given the specific data elements collected, describe the privacy risks identified and for each risk, explain how it was mitigated. Specific risks may be inherent in the sources or methods of collection, or the quality or quantity of information included.

The nature of the Department’s mission will inevitably lead it to collect and maintain information many may believe to be private and potentially embarrassing. Minimizing privacy risks revolve around disclosure of personally identifiable information.

[SMC 14.12](#) and [SPD Policy 6.060](#) direct all SPD personnel that “any documentation of information concerning a person’s sexual preferences or practices, or their political or religious activities must be for a relevant reason and serve a legitimate law enforcement purpose.”

Further, [SPD Policy 5.140](#) forbids bias-based policing and outlines processes for reporting and documenting any suspected bias-based behavior, as well as accountability measures.

7.4 Is there any aspect of the project/technology that might cause concern by giving the appearance to the public of privacy intrusion or misuse of personal information?

The privacy risks outlined in 7.3 above are mitigated by legal requirements and auditing processes (i.e., maintenance of all requests, copies of consent forms/statements and warrants) that allow for any auditor, including the Office of Inspector General and the federal monitor, to inspect the collection of recorded interactions between SPD and the public.

The greatest privacy risk is the unauthorized release of interview, BAC room, and holding cell video and audio recording that may contain information deemed private or offensive. To mitigate this risk, the technologies fall under the current SPD policies around dissemination of Department data and information reflected in 6.1.

8.0 Monitoring and Enforcement

8.1 describe how the project/technology maintains a record of any disclosures outside of the department.

Per [SPD Policy 12.080](#), the Crime Records Unit is responsible to receive and record all requests “for General Offense Reports from other City departments and from other law enforcement agencies, as well as from insurance companies.” Any subpoenas and requests for public disclosure are logged by SPD’s Legal Unit. Any action taken, and data released subsequently in response to subpoenas is then tracked through a log maintained by the Legal Unit. Public disclosure requests are tracked through the City’s GovQA Public Records Response System, and responses to Public Disclosure Requests, including responsive records provided to a requestor, are retained by SPD for two years after the request is completed.

8.2 what auditing measures are in place to safeguard the information, and policies that pertain to them, as well as who has access to the audit data? Explain whether the project/technology conducts self-audits, third party audits or reviews.

SPD’s Audit, Policy and Research Section is authorized to conduct audits of all investigative data collection software and systems, including DEMS. In addition, the Office of Inspector General and the federal monitor can conduct audits of the software, and its use, at any time. Audit data is available to the public via Public Records Request.

Financial Information

Purpose

This section provides a description of the fiscal impact of the surveillance technology, as required by the surveillance ordinance.

1.0 Fiscal Impact

Provide a description of the fiscal impact of the project/technology by answering the questions below.

1.1 Current or potential sources of funding: initial acquisition costs.

Current potential

Date of initial acquisition	Date of go live	Direct initial acquisition cost	Professional services for acquisition	Other acquisition costs	Initial acquisition funding source
(Genetec)6/28/2016	Aug 2016	\$60,603.16			P7710
(Milestone) 6/14/2016	Aug 2016	\$19,520.79			P8830

Notes:

1.2 Current or potential sources of funding: on-going operating costs, including maintenance, licensing, personnel, legal/compliance use auditing, data retention and security costs.

Current potential

Annual maintenance and licensing	Legal/compliance, audit, data retention and other security costs	Department overhead	IT overhead	Annual funding source
(Genetec) \$660.06				P7715
(Milestone) \$3,698.91				P3348

Notes:

1.3 Cost savings potential through use of the technology

These are not quantified; however, potential cost savings may result from better evidence for crime prosecution and mitigating liability for complaints of misconduct of SPD personnel in BAC rooms and precinct holding cells.

1.4 Current or potential sources of funding including subsidies or free products offered by vendors or governmental entities

N/A

Expertise and References

Purpose

The following information is provided to ensure that Council has a group of experts to reference while reviewing the completed surveillance impact report (“SIR”). Any individuals or agencies referenced must be made aware ahead of publication that their information has been included. All materials must be available for Council to access or review, without requiring additional purchase or contract.

1.0 Other Government References

1.1 Please list any other government bodies that have implemented this technology and can speak to the implementation of this technology.

Agency, municipality, etc.	Primary contact	Description of current use

2.0 Academics, Consultants, and Other Experts

2.1 Please list any experts in the technology under consideration, or in the technical completion of the service or function the technology is responsible for.

Agency, municipality, etc.	Primary contact	Description of current use

3.0 White Papers or Other Documents

3.1 Please list any authoritative publication, report or guide that is relevant to the use of this technology or this type of technology.

Title	Publication	Link
<p>“Preventing police torture and other forms of ill-treatment – reflections on good practices and emerging approaches”</p>	<p>28th General Report of the European Committee for the Prevention of Torture and Inhuman or Degrading Treatment or Punishment (CPT), published in 2019</p>	<p>https://rm.coe.int/1680942329</p>
<p>“Electronic Recording of Custodial Interrogations”</p>	<p>TheJusticeProject.org</p>	<p>https://web.williams.edu/Psychology/Faculty/Kassin/files/Justice%20Project(07).pdf</p>

Racial Equity Toolkit (“RET”) and Engagement for Public Comment Worksheet

Purpose

Departments submitting a SIR are required to complete an adapted version of the Racial Equity Toolkit (“RET”) in order to:

- Provide a framework for the mindful completion of the SIR in a way that is sensitive to the historic exclusion of vulnerable and historically underrepresented communities. Particularly, to inform the public engagement efforts departments will complete as part of the surveillance impact report.
- Highlight and mitigate any impacts on racial equity from the adoption and the use of the technology.
- Highlight and mitigate any disparate impacts on individuals or vulnerable communities.
- Fulfill the public engagement requirements of the surveillance impact report.

Adaption of the RET for Surveillance Impact Reports

The RET was adapted for the specific use by the Seattle Information Technology departments’ (“Seattle IT”) privacy team, the Office of Civil Rights (“OCR”), and change team members from Seattle IT, Seattle City Light, Seattle Fire Department, Seattle Police Department, and Seattle Department of Transportation.

Racial Equity Toolkit Overview

The vision of the Seattle Race and Social Justice Initiative is to eliminate racial inequity in the community. To do this requires ending individual racism, institutional racism and structural racism. The racial equity toolkit lays out a process and a set of questions to guide the development, implementation and evaluation of policies, initiatives, programs, and budget issues to address the impacts on racial equity.

1.0 Set Outcomes

1.1. Seattle City Council has defined the following inclusion criteria in the surveillance ordinance, and they serve as important touchstones for the risks departments are being asked to resolve and/or mitigate. Which of the following inclusion criteria apply to this technology?

- The technology disparately impacts disadvantaged groups.
- There is a high likelihood that personally identifiable information will be shared with non-City entities that will use the data for a purpose other than providing the City with a contractually agreed-upon service.
- The technology collects data that is personally identifiable even if obscured, de-identified, or anonymized after collection.

The technology raises reasonable concerns about impacts to civil liberty, freedom of speech or association, racial equity, or social justice.

1.2 What are the potential impacts on civil liberties through the implementation of this technology? How is the department mitigating these risks?

Inherent with any video or audio recording obtained and stored by SPD, personally identifiable and potentially sensitive personal information is collected about community members, including information about 3rd parties not present during the recordings.

1.3 What are the risks for racial or ethnicity-based bias through each use or deployment of this technology? How is the department mitigating these risks?

The mission of the Seattle Police Department is to prevent crime, enforce the law, and support quality public safety by delivering respectful, professional and dependable police services. A potential civil liberties concern is that the SPD would over-surveil vulnerable or historically targeted communities. [SPD Policy 5.140](#) forbids bias-based policing and outlines processes for reporting and documenting any suspected bias-based behavior, as well as accountability measures. The video systems described in this report are permanently installed inside SPD facilities and record individuals who are interacting with SPD personnel or are being held in precinct holding cells.

1.4 Where in the City is the technology used or deployed?

all Seattle neighborhoods

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| <input type="checkbox"/> Ballard | <input type="checkbox"/> Southeast |
| <input type="checkbox"/> North | <input type="checkbox"/> Delridge |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Northeast | <input type="checkbox"/> Greater Duwamish |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Central | <input type="checkbox"/> East district |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Lake union | <input type="checkbox"/> King county (outside Seattle) |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Southwest | <input type="checkbox"/> Outside King County. |

If possible, please include any maps or visualizations of historical deployments / use.

1.4.1 What are the racial demographics of those living in this area or impacted by these issues?

City of Seattle demographics: White - 69.5%; Black or African American - 7.9%; Amer. Indian & Alaska Native - 0.8%; Asian - 13.8%; Native Hawaiian & Pacific Islander - 0.4%; Other race - 2.4%; Two or more races - 5.1%; Hispanic or Latino ethnicity (of any race): 6.6%; Persons of color: 33.7%.

King County demographics: White – 70.1%; Black or African American – 6.7%; American Indian & Alaskan Native – 1.1%; Asian, Native Hawaiian, Pacific Islander – 17.2%; Hispanic or Latino (of any race) – 9.4%

1.4.2 How are decisions made where the technology is used or deployed? How does the Department work to ensure diverse neighborhoods are not specifically targeted?

The Genetec system (Interview rooms) is located at SPD Headquarters. The Milestone system (BAC rooms and precinct holding cells) is located at all SPD precincts throughout the City of Seattle.

1.5 How do decisions around data sharing have the potential for disparate impact on historically targeted communities? What is the department doing to mitigate those risks?

The Aspen Institute on Community Change defines structural racism as “...public policies, institutional practices, cultural representations and other norms [which] work in various, often reinforcing ways to perpetuate racial group inequity.” Data sharing has the potential to be a contributing factor to structural racism and thus creating a disparate impact on historically targeted communities. In an effort to mitigate this possibility, SPD has established policies regarding the dissemination of data in connection with criminal prosecutions, Washington Public Records Act ([Chapter 42.56 RCW](#)), and other authorized researchers.

Further, [SPD Policy 5.140](#) forbids bias-based policing and outlines processes for reporting and documenting any suspected bias-based behavior, as well as accountability measures.

Video and audio collected by the Genetec and Milestone systems, is shared only with outside entities in connection with criminal prosecutions or in compliance with public records requests pursuant to the Washington Public Records Act, [Chapter 42.56 RCW](#) (“PRA”). SPD will apply applicable exemptions to the data before disclosing to a requester.

1.6 How do decisions around data storage and retention have the potential for disparate impact on historically targeted communities? What is the department doing to mitigate those risks?

Like decisions around data sharing, data storage and retention have similar potential for disparate impact on historically targeted communities. [SPD Policy 5.140](#) forbids bias-based policing and outlines processes for reporting and documenting any suspected bias-based behavior, as well as accountability measures.

1.7 What are potential unintended consequences (both negative and positive potential impact)? What proactive steps can you can / have you taken to ensure these consequences do not occur.

The most important unintended possible consequence related to the continued utilization of the Genetec and Milestone camera systems by SPD is the potential that members of the public will be recorded without their consent. [SPD Policy 7.110 – Recorded Statements](#) forbids SPD personnel from making such recordings without consent, except in specific exigent circumstances without proper warrant. Additionally, SPD policies, including [SPD Policy 6.060 - Collection of Information for Law Enforcement Purposes](#) also define the way information will be gathered by SPD in a manner that does not unreasonably infringe upon: individual rights, liberties, and freedoms guaranteed by the Constitution of the United States and the State of Washington, including freedom of speech, press, association, and assembly; liberty of conscience; the exercise of religion.

2.0 Public Outreach

2.1 Scheduled public meeting(s).

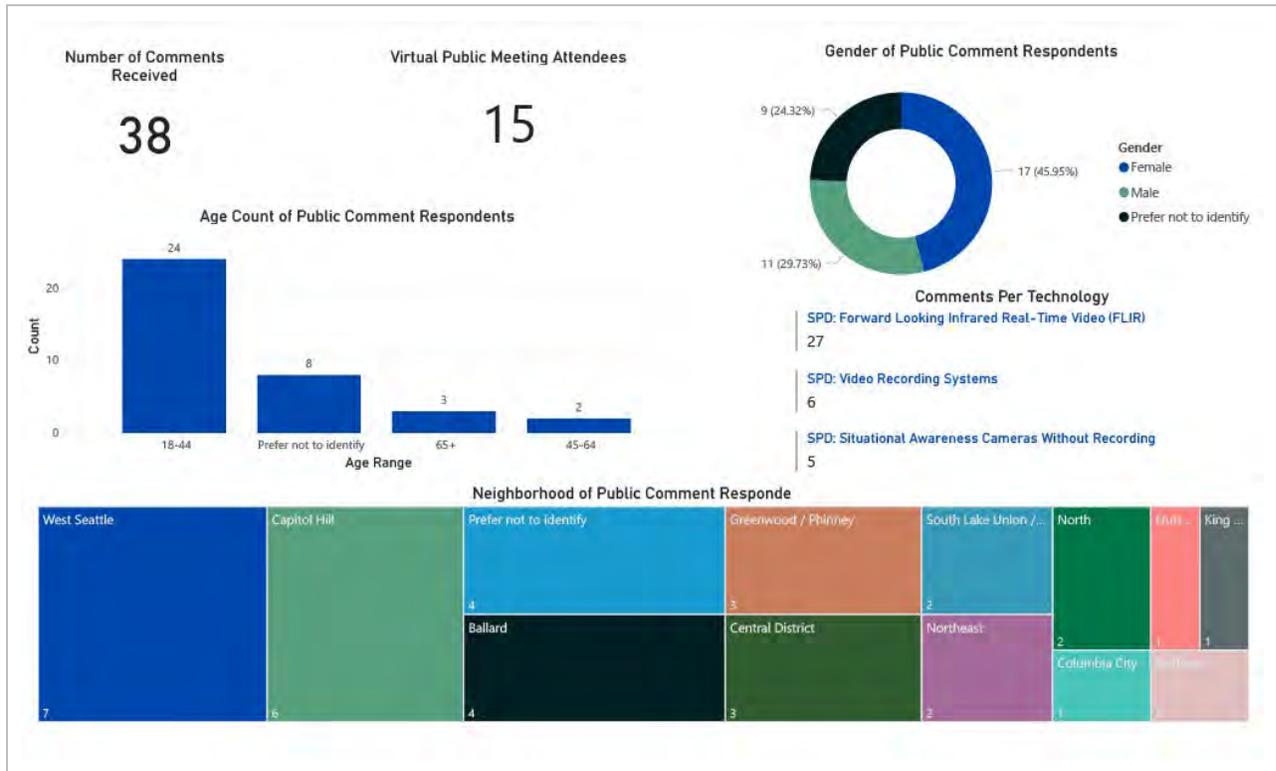
Meeting notes, sign-in sheets, all comments received, and questions from the public will be included in Appendix A-C. Comment analysis will be summarized in section 3.0 Public Comment Analysis.

Meeting 1

Location	Webex Online Event
Date	October 28 th , 2020
Time	12 pm – 1 pm

3.0 Public Comment Analysis

3.1 Demographics of the public who submitted comments.



3.2 What concerns, if any, do you have about the use of this technology?

Milestone security best practices recordings ordinance security questions
 use time SPD following systems technology public hacked
 Genetec SPD manual VMS

3.3 What value, if any, do you see in the use of this technology?

None

3.4 What do you want City leadership to consider about the use of this technology?

Q4 What do you want City leadership to consider about the use of this technology?

public followed VMS Milestone security use SPD hacked
Genetec security best practices recordings information

3.5 Do you have any other comments?

N/A

4.0 Response to Public Comments

4.1 How will you address the concerns that have been identified by the public?

The OIG has audit responsibilities for determining legality of the system and deployment. SPD follows case law and city ordinance and requires a legal foundation to deploy the cameras.

5.0 Equity Annual Reporting

5.1 What metrics for this technology be reported to the CTO for the annual equity assessments? Departments will be responsible for sharing their own evaluations with department leadership, change team leads, and community leaders identified in the public outreach plan.

Respond here.

Privacy and Civil Liberties Assessment

Purpose

This section shall be completed after public engagement has concluded and the department has completed the racial equity toolkit section above. The privacy and civil liberties assessment is completed by the community surveillance working group (“working group”), per the surveillance ordinance which states that the working group shall:

“Provide to the executive and the City Council a privacy and civil liberties impact assessment for each SIR that must be included with any departmental request for surveillance technology acquisition or in-use approval. The impact assessment shall include a description of the potential impact of the surveillance technology on civil rights and liberties and potential disparate impacts on communities of color and other marginalized communities. The CTO shall share with the working group a copy of the SIR that shall also be posted during the period of public engagement. At the conclusion of the public engagement period, the CTO shall share the final proposed SIR with the working group at least six weeks prior to submittal of the SIR to Council for approval. The working group shall provide its impact assessment in writing to the executive and the City Council for inclusion in the SIR within six weeks of receiving the final proposed SIR. If the working group does not provide the impact assessment before such time, the working group must ask for a two-week extension of time to City Council in writing. If the working group fails to submit an impact statement within eight weeks of receiving the SIR, the department and City Council may proceed with ordinance approval without the impact statement.”

Working Group Privacy and Civil Liberties Assessment

From: Seattle Community Surveillance Working Group (CSWG)

To: Seattle City Council

Date: Dec 15, 2020

Re: Privacy and Civil Liberties Impact Assessment for Video Recording Systems

Executive Summary

The CSWG has completed its review of the Surveillance Impact Reports (SIRs) for the three surveillance technologies included in Group 3 of the Seattle Surveillance Ordinance technology review process. These technologies are Forward Looking Infrared, Video Recording Systems, and Situational Awareness Cameras Without Recording. This document is the CSWG’s Privacy and Civil Liberties Impact Assessment for Video Recording Systems as set forth in SMC 14.18.080(B)(1), which we provide for inclusion in the final SIRs submitted to the City Councils.

This document first provides our recommendations to Council, then provides background information, key concerns, and outstanding questions regarding Video Recording Systems.

Our assessment of Video Recording Systems as used by Seattle Police Department (SPD) focuses on three major issues:

1. The capabilities of the Genetec and Milestone systems are unclear.
2. It is unclear how data are collected, stored, and protected; additional policy language is necessary to define valid purposes of use

Recommendations:

We recommend that the Council adopt, at a minimum, clear and enforceable rules that ensure the following:

1. **SPD must abide by a specific and restricted purpose of use:** The ordinance should define a specific purpose of use for any video recording systems used by SPD, and any use must be restricted to that specific purpose.
2. **SPD must not use any video recording systems that have capabilities beyond what is strictly necessary to fulfill the purpose of use (e.g., recording custodial interrogations).** The ordinance should prohibit incorporating additional services such as facial recognition systems with the video recording systems.

Outstanding Questions

1. Does SPD use a Genetec or Milestone partner add-on that enables facial recognition or other biometric data collection/identification?
2. How are firmware/software updates applied to the Genetec systems?
3. What security practices does SPD follow?
4. Where does the SPD Evidence Section store the Genetec-generated recordings and Milestone recordings they receive?
5. For both the Genetec and Milestone systems, who has permission to modify the pan, tilt, and/or zoom of the cameras?

CTO Response

Memo

To: Seattle City Council
From: Saad Bashir, Chief Technology Officer
Subject: CTO Response to the Surveillance Working Group Video Recording Systems SIR Review

Purpose

As provided in the Surveillance Ordinance, [SMC 14.18.080](#), this memo outlines the Chief Technology Officer's (CTO's) response to the Surveillance Working Group assessment on the Surveillance Impact Report for Seattle Police Department's Video Recording Systems.

Background

The Information Technology Department (ITD) is dedicated to the Privacy Principles and Surveillance Ordinance objectives to provide oversight and transparency about the use and acquisition of specialized technologies with potential privacy and civil liberties impacts. All City departments have a shared mission to protect lives and property while balancing technology use and data collection with negative impacts to individuals. This requires ensuring the appropriate use of privacy invasive technologies through technology limitations, policy, training and departmental oversight.

The CTO's role in the SIR process has been to ensure that all City departments are compliant with the Surveillance Ordinance requirements. As part of the review work for surveillance technologies, ITD's Privacy Office has facilitated the creation of the Surveillance Impact Report documentation, including collecting comments and suggestions from the Working Group and members of the public about these technologies. IT and City departments have also worked collaboratively with the Working Group to answer additional questions that came up during their review process. We believe that policy, training and technology limitations enacted by SPD and Council oversight through the surveillance technology review process provide adequate mitigation for the potential privacy and civil liberties concerns raised by the Working Group about the use of this important operational technology.

Technology Purpose

SPD has two camera systems used to record and/or monitor members of the public within specific, secure locations in SPD facilities. The first is the Genetec Video Management System. It is a permanently installed, non-mobile unconcealed audio and video recording system primarily used to record in-person interactions with and interviews of crime victims, witnesses, and suspects in 7 designated interview rooms located at the SPD headquarters in the Seattle Justice Center. The system also provides a live video-only view of these interview rooms. The video-only live view is used to monitor, short term, members of the community who are in the interview rooms when no SPD detective is present. This system is used to create a video record of interviews for the purposes of use in criminal justice proceedings. The second is Milestone Systems XProtect Video Management Software and Products. These are permanently installed in SPD's Blood Alcohol Collection (BAC) rooms and precinct holding cells. They record continuously all activity in those locations.

Working Group Concerns

In their review, the Working Group has raised concerns about these devices being used in a privacy impacting way. Their focus was on providing details about specification and restriction of use, and concerns about additional capabilities of the systems reviewed.

Recommended Next Steps

I look forward to working together with Council and City departments to ensure continued transparency about the use of these technologies and finding a mutually agreeable means to use technology to improve City services while protecting the privacy and civil rights of the residents we serve. Specific concerns in the Working Group comments about cameras are addressed in the attached document.

Response to Specific Concerns: Video Recording Systems

Concern: Inadequate policies defining specific and restricted purpose of use

CTO Assessment: The specific and intended use of the technologies under review is governed by [SPD Policy 7.110 –Recorded Statements](#). The process for how the technology is used and the treatment of the collected video is also outlined in the SIR. While this SIR covers two technologies with similar purpose, the capabilities and clear purpose for each system is outlined and distinguished in the review process.

SIR Response:

Section 2.4 Describe how the project or use of technology relates to the department’s mission.

The mission of the Seattle Police Department is to prevent crime, enforce the law, and support quality public safety by delivering respectful, professional, and dependable police services. The video and audio recording of victim, witness, and suspect interviews aids investigations and prosecutions of crimes as well as enhances public confidence in the practices of SPD.

Section 3.1 Describe the processes that are required prior to each use, or access to/ of the project / technology, such as a notification, or check-in, check-out of equipment.

Genetec (Interview rooms): The detective(s) conducting the interview activates the recording system for the appropriate room with a manual switch. The detective then advises the interview subject of the audio recording acquiring implied consent, or explicitly asks for permission to record per [SPD Policy 7.110 –Recorded Statements](#). At the conclusion of the interview or blood draw, or when the subject leaves the room, the recording is terminated by the detective or officer. The detective then exports the recording from the server on one of the two designated computer workstations and creates a copy of the recording for permanent storage on a special high-quality evidence grade DVD+R disc. This evidence grade disc is then submitted into the SPD Evidence Section as a standard item of evidence.

Milestone (BAC rooms and precinct holding cells): The Milestone systems is continuously recording in the BAC rooms and precinct holding cells. In the event that an investigator (including SPD internal investigations) needs to view the video, a request must be made to the SPD Video Unit who will locate the specific time and location video requested and provide the investigator with a DVD containing the file.

Section 3.2 List the legal standards or conditions, if any, that must be met before the project / technology is used.

Signage is clearly posted in all SPD precincts indicating that audio and video surveillance is in progress. These signs are posted both at the entrances to holding cells and inside holding cells and blood alcohol collection areas.

Consent is required before these technologies may be used. RCW 9.73.030 Intercepting, recording or divulging private communication—Consent required—Exceptions. Also known as “All party consent”. Standard procedure dictates that interview subjects are always advised of the presence of the recording or asked for their permission to record. Any recording made of an interview subject without consent

would be inadmissible and could possibly subject the SPD personnel to an internal conduct assessment and possibly criminal charges. Per [SPD Policy 7.110 –Recorded Statements](#):

When taking an audio recorded statement, the officer/detective:

1. States at the beginning of the recording:

- Officer's name and includes, "of the Seattle Police Department"
- Incident or Report Number
- Date and time of the recording
- The name of the interviewee
- All persons present during the interview

2. Asks the person to respond to the question, "Are you aware you are being recorded?"

3. If the person is in custody, gives Miranda warning.

4. Asks the person to state their full name.

5. Conducts the interview.

6. After the interview, if the person is a victim, witness or complainant, asks the person:

- Do you declare under penalty of perjury under the laws of Washington what you have stated in this statement is true and correct?
- Do you wish to have your personal information Disclosed or Not Disclosed?

7. Announces the end of the recording with the date and time.

8. Uploads the audio statement to the Digital Evidence Management System (DEMS).

9. Documents the recorded statement in the appropriate report

Section 4.3 How and when will the project / technology be deployed or used? By whom? Who will determine when the project / technology is deployed and used?

Genetec (Interview rooms): The detective(s) conducting the interview activates the recording system for the appropriate room with a manual switch. The detective then advises the interview subject of the audio recording acquiring implied consent, or explicitly asks for permission to record per [SPD Policy 7.110 –Recorded Statements](#). At the conclusion of the interview or blood draw, or when the subject leaves the room, the recording is terminated by the detective or officer. The detective then exports the recording from the server on one of the two designated computer workstations and creates a copy of the recording for permanent storage on a special high-quality evidence grade DVD+R disc. This evidence grade disc is then submitted into the SPD Evidence Section as a standard item of evidence.

Milestone (BAC rooms and precinct holding cells): The Milestone systems is continuously recording in the BAC rooms and precinct holding cells. In the event that an investigator (including SPD internal investigations) needs to view the video, a request must be made to the SPD Video Unit who will locate the specific time and location video requested and provide the investigator with a DVD containing the file.

Section 4.9 What are acceptable reasons for access to the equipment and/or data collected?

The primary reason for access to the data collected by both the Genetec and Milestone systems is to investigate crimes, aid in the prosecution of criminals, and monitor subjects inside SPD facilities. Additionally, these systems are used to monitor internal SPD operations and document police activities.

Concern: Capabilities of the Genetec and Milestone systems beyond specified purpose (facial recognition)

CTO Assessment: The capabilities of both the Genetec and Milestone systems are outlined in the SIR as well as the circumstances under which they are used. There are concerns regarding additional functionality that could be added to these systems or other systems with similar advanced functionality but features such as facial recognition are not in use by any system in SPD. Any material change to the functionality of these technologies would be covered under the scope of the SIR review process. Additionally, going into effect July of 2021, Washington has passed the first state law that provides regulation and oversight over facial recognition technologies ([RCW 43.386](#)). This law regulates the development, procurement, and use of a facial recognition service, and provides a similar level of transparency and review to the Seattle Surveillance Ordinance.

SIR Response:

Section 2.3 Describe the technology involved.

The Genetec Video Management System includes camera and microphone equipment that is permanently installed in the interview rooms on the 6th and 7th floors of SPD Headquarters, a physical server located at SPD HQ, two dedicated computer workstations located in the detectives' work area at SPD HQ, and video-only monitors located throughout the detectives' work area and detective supervisors' offices at SPD HQ. The Milestone Video Management Software and Products consist of cameras located in BAC rooms and precinct holding cells throughout SPD's facilities. A dedicated server is located at each of these secure locations which stores the video and audio information from the Milestone cameras.

Section 4.1 Provide details about what information is being collected from sources other than an individual, including other IT systems, systems of record, commercial data aggregators, publicly available data and/or other City departments.

These technologies record only the images and sounds that occur during an SPD interview of a witness, victim, or suspect, and activity in BAC rooms and precinct holding cells.

Appendix A: Glossary

Accountable: (taken from the racial equity toolkit.) Responsive to the needs and concerns of those most impacted by the issues you are working on, particularly to communities of color and those historically underrepresented in the civic process.

Community outcomes: (taken from the racial equity toolkit.) The specific result you are seeking to achieve that advances racial equity.

Contracting equity: (taken from the racial equity toolkit.) Efforts to achieve equitable racial outcomes in the way the City spends resources, including goods and services, consultants and contracting.

DON: “department of neighborhoods.”

Immigrant and refugee access to services: (taken from the racial equity toolkit.) Government services and resources are easily available and understandable to all Seattle residents, including non-native English speakers. Full and active participation of immigrant and refugee communities exists in Seattle’s civic, economic and cultural life.

Inclusive outreach and public engagement: (taken from the racial equity toolkit.) Processes inclusive of people of diverse races, cultures, gender identities, sexual orientations and socio-economic status. Access to information, resources and civic processes so community members can effectively engage in the design and delivery of public services.

Individual racism: (taken from the racial equity toolkit.) Pre-judgment, bias, stereotypes about an individual or group based on race. The impacts of racism on individuals including white people internalizing privilege, and people of color internalizing oppression.

Institutional racism: (taken from the racial equity toolkit.) Organizational programs, policies or procedures that work to the benefit of white people and to the detriment of people of color, usually unintentionally or inadvertently.

OCR: “Office of Civil Rights.”

Opportunity areas: (taken from the racial equity toolkit.) One of seven issue areas the City of Seattle is working on in partnership with the community to eliminate racial disparities and create racial equity. They include: education, health, community development, criminal justice, jobs, housing, and the environment.

Racial equity: (taken from the racial equity toolkit.) When social, economic and political opportunities are not predicted based upon a person’s race.

Racial inequity: (taken from the racial equity toolkit.)
When a person’s race can predict their social, economic, and political opportunities and outcomes.

RET: “racial equity toolkit”

Seattle neighborhoods: (taken from the racial equity toolkit neighborhood.) Boundaries defined for the purpose of understanding geographic areas in Seattle.

Stakeholders: (taken from the racial equity toolkit.)
Those impacted by proposed policy, program, or budget issue who have potential concerns or issue expertise. Examples might include: specific racial/ethnic groups, other institutions like Seattle housing authority, schools, community-based organizations, change teams, City employees, unions, etc.

Structural racism: (taken from the racial equity toolkit.)
The interplay of policies, practices and programs of multiple institutions which leads to adverse outcomes and conditions for communities of color compared to white communities that occurs within the context of racialized historical and cultural conditions.

Surveillance ordinance: Seattle City Council passed ordinance [125376](#), also referred to as the “surveillance ordinance.”

SIR: “surveillance impact report”, a document which captures the fulfillment of the Council-defined surveillance technology review process, as required by ordinance [125376](#).

Workforce equity: (taken from the racial equity toolkit.) Ensure the City's workforce diversity reflects the diversity of Seattle.



Appendix B: Meeting Notice(s)



City Surveillance Technology Event

October 28th, 2020
12:00 p.m. – 1:00 p.m.
[Webex Online Event](#)

**Join us for a public meeting to comment on a few
of the City's surveillance technologies:**

Seattle Police Department

- Forward Looking Infrared Real-time Video (FLIR)
- Situational Awareness Cameras Without Recording
- Video Recording Systems

[WebEx Online Event](#)

Dial-in Info:
+1-408-418-9388
Access code: 146 533 4053

Can't join us online?

Visit <http://www.seattle.gov/surveillance> to leave an online comment or send your comment to **Surveillance and Privacy Program, Seattle IT, PO Box 94709, Seattle, WA 98124.**

The Open Comment period is from **October 7th – November 7th, 2020.**

Please let us know at Surveillance@seattle.gov if you need any accommodations. For more information, visit Seattle.gov/privacy.

Information provided to the City of Seattle is considered a public record and may be subject to public disclosure. For more information see the Public Records Act, RCW Chapter 42.56 or visit Seattle.gov/privacy. All comments submitted will be included in the Surveillance Impact Report.

Appendix C: All Comments Received from Members of the Public

ID: 12165158184

Submitted Through: Online Comment

Date: 11/12/2020 4:05:03 PM

Which surveillance technology that is currently open for public comment, do you wish to comment on?

SPD: Video Recording Systems

What concerns, if any, do you have about the use of this technology?

I have concerns that SPD will not be transparent in the use of this technology. I worry in particular about its use in low income and minority neighborhoods.

What value, if any, do you see in the use of this technology?

I do not believe any value of this technology outweighs my major concerns.

What do you want City leadership to consider about the use of this technology?

I do not think the City should allow this technology.

Do you have any other comments?

ID: 12164796504

Submitted Through: Online Comment

Date: 11/12/2020 1:58:34 PM

Which surveillance technology that is currently open for public comment, do you wish to comment on?

SPD: Video Recording Systems

What concerns, if any, do you have about the use of this technology?

As of Nov. 12th, numerous questions from the public have not been answered by SPD and thus greatly hinder the ability for informed public comment. These questions include: (1) Does SPD use a Genetec or Milestone partner add-on that enables facial recognition or other biometric data collection/identification? (2) How are firmware/software updates applied to the Genetec systems? (3) Genetec Omnicast was the VMS used by Washington D.C. MPD CCTVs that had nearly 70% of them hacked with ransomware in 2017. It is generally understood that not following the security best practices provided by Genetec is what led to them being hacked (<https://ipvm.com/reports/genetec-mpd>). Keep in mind that if SPD's Genetec VMS was hacked and had the recordings leaked, then that could jeopardize publicly-anonymous witnesses (though the security of the Milestone system is also important). At the public engagement meeting, SPD's stated their understanding of the security of their VMS was based on an assumption of the contracted installer. Security should never be based on assumption; and moreover, security best practices and available security features in VMS change over time, so relying on a (possible) one-time installation as the only time security has been done on these devices would not be considered sufficient and would not meet the current industry standards for security best practices. SPD should definitively validate what security measures have been applied their VMS and communicate that to the public. Specifically: (3a) Has SPD followed all the security configuration recommendations provided by Genetec in their Best Practices document ? (3b) Similarly, has SPD followed Milestone's XProtect Hardening Checklist? (4a) Where does the SPD Evidence Section store the Genetec-generated recordings they receive via DVD+R (in DEMS, and/or Evidence.com, or something else)? (4b) Same question for the Milestone recordings (where do they go after snippets are exported on DVD)? (5) For both the Genetec and Milestone systems, who has permission to modify the pan, tilt, and/or zoom of the cameras? Also, there are some gaps in the SPD manual that should be addressed either by modifications to SPD's manual and/or via ordinance. These gaps include: (1) The SPD manual doesn't limit the purpose of these recordings. (2) The ordinance that approves this tech should specifically prohibit installing/incorporating additional services that collect/assess/identify biometric information.

What value, if any, do you see in the use of this technology?

As it currently stands, this technology lacks sufficient guardrails to prevent abuse/misuse of the system. Moreover, the weak security posture puts witnesses and others at risk of having their interview leaked (and/or having the weak VMS security simply lead to the VMS being hacked as stepping stone to further attack other parts of SPD digital infrastructure). SPD/IT are withholding information from the public, which further impedes the ability for an informed consent by the public in seeing sufficient value in this technology.

What do you want City leadership to consider about the use of this technology?

City leadership should be made aware of the information SPD/IT has withheld from the public. This information missing from the public includes: (1) Does SPD use a Genetec or Milestone partner add-on that enables facial recognition or other biometric data collection/identification? (2) How are firmware/software updates applied to the Genetec systems? (3) Genetec Omnicast was the VMS used by Washington D.C. MPD CCTVs that had nearly 70% of them hacked with ransomware in 2017. It is generally understood that not following the security best practices provided by Genetec is what led to them being hacked (<https://ipvm.com/reports/genetec-mpd>). Keep in mind that if SPD's Genetec VMS was hacked and had the recordings leaked, then that could jeopardize publicly-anonymous witnesses (though the security of the Milestone system is also important). At the public engagement meeting, SPD's stated their understanding of the security of their VMS was based on an assumption of the contracted installer. Security should never be based on assumption; and moreover, security best practices and available security features in VMS change over time, so relying on a (possible) one-time installation as the only time security has been done on these devices would not be considered sufficient and would not meet the current industry standards for security best practices. SPD should definitively validate what security measures have been applied their VMS and communicate that to the public. Specifically: (3a) Has SPD followed all the security configuration recommendations provided by Genetec in their Best Practices document ? (3b) Similarly, has SPD followed Milestone's XProtect Hardening Checklist? (4a) Where does the SPD Evidence Section store the Genetec-generated recordings they receive via DVD+R (in DEMS, and/or Evidence.com, or something else)? (4b) Same question for the Milestone recordings (where do they go after snippets are exported on DVD)? (5) For both the Genetec and Milestone systems, who has permission to modify the pan, tilt, and/or zoom of the cameras? City leadership should be encouraged to mandate (via SPD manual changes and/or ordinance) to address some gaps and add appropriate guardrails to the use of this technology. The current gaps include: (1) The SPD manual doesn't limit the purpose of these recordings. (2) The ordinance that approves this tech should specifically prohibit installing/incorporating additional services that collect/assess/identify biometric information.

Do you have any other comments?

There are many areas of improvement by IT/Privacy-dept. regarding their public engagement process on surveillance technologies. Some of the more recent issues include: (1) Public comment via SurveyMonkey was configured by IT such that a single user (browser session) could only submit public comment on 1 technology. The only way to submit public comment on all the technologies would be use a different browser or clear you browser's cookies/session data, which many less technical people wouldn't know to do. This actively impedes public comment. It is ensuring there is the least public comment possible. (2) The Privacy dept. calendar event for the Group 3 public engagement meeting didn't include the access code for phone-only users to dial-in (one had to know of and go to the TechTalk blog to get the access code). (3) Directions at public engagement meeting for providing verbal public comment were to raise hand in webex which clearly is not possible for phone-only users. (4) Public engagement truncated. CTO told City Council it would be 45 days. Instead IT used 30 days with a 1 week extension agreed to be added (so 37 days). (5) The Group 3 public engagement meeting recording (as of Nov. 12th) has not been posted publicly, so people unable to attend don't have access to the discussion/Q&A before the public comment period closes. (6) SPD has not provided answers before the public comment period closes. (7) SPD further dodged valid questions from the public by requiring PRA requests, which have zero hope of being addressed within the public comment period. (8) IT has repeatedly requested & attained (and in 1 case, just self-granted) time extensions for the Surveillance Ordinance process. When the public needs time for SPD to provide answers so as to provide informed public comment, now suddenly IT is on a tight time schedule and can't extend the public comment period. Additionally, IT/Privacy-dept. has repeatedly lamented the lack of public engagement, but have also taken no additional steps to rectify this for Group 3; and did not heed prior feedback from the CSWG regarding the engagement process. There are numerous steps IT/Privacy-dept. should take to improve public engagement. The recommendations to the CTO & CPO for Group 4 include: (1) Breaking the group into smaller groups. Group 4 on deck with 13 technologies: 2 re-visits of SFD tech, 3 types of undercover technologies, & 8 other technologies. (2) Allocating more time for open public comment: minimum of 2 weeks per each in scope tech (so Group 3 would be 42 days, and Group 4 would be 154 - 182 days). (3) Hold more public engagement meetings per Group - specifically the number of public engagement meetings should at a minimum match the number of technologies being considered for public comment (otherwise the meeting will run out of time before all the questions from the public can even be asked, which did happen with Group 3). (4) Require at the public engagement meetings both a Subject Matter Expert on the use of the technology AND a Subject Matter Expert on the technical management of the technology. There should be no excuse for most of the public's questions being unanswered by the City at these meetings. (5) Hold public engagement meetings that are accessible to marginalized communities most likely to have this technology used against them (such as, holding meetings at various times of day & weekends, having translators, etc). (6) Post online the recordings of all online public engagement meetings at least 1 week before the public comment period closes. (7) Require departments to provide answers to the public's questions at least 1 week before the public comment period closes. (8) Post public announcements for focus groups held by the City (9) Public engagement meetings and focus groups should have at least 1 outside civil liberties representative to present. (10) Publish to the Privacy website in a more timely manner the CSWG meeting announcements and minutes.

(11) Work with more City departments (not just Dept. of Neighborhoods) to foster engagement. (12) Work with more City boards and committees to foster engagement. (13) Provide at least 2 week lead time between announcing a public engagement meeting and the timing of that meeting occurring. (14) Provide early versions of drafts SIRs to the CSWG (as they requested more than once).

ID: 12111900892

Submitted Through: Online Comment

Date: 10/26/2020 8:27:30 PM

Which surveillance technology that is currently open for public comment, do you wish to comment on?

SPD: Video Recording Systems

What concerns, if any, do you have about the use of this technology?

Increased surveillance is the action of a police state, and should not be tolerated by a free society.

What value, if any, do you see in the use of this technology?

None.

What do you want City leadership to consider about the use of this technology?

It is antithetical to freedom.

Do you have any other comments?

This comment applies to all three systems under review.

ID: 12101381803

Submitted Through: Online Comment

Date: 10/22/2020 2:59:30 PM

Which surveillance technology that is currently open for public comment, do you wish to comment on?

SPD: Video Recording Systems

What concerns, if any, do you have about the use of this technology?

SPD has already weaponized video recording systems to limit the first amendment rights of people who politically oppose them. SPD is incredibly reckless with their use of body worn video and has demonstrated that they are not capable of following a standa

What value, if any, do you see in the use of this technology?

None

What do you want City leadership to consider about the use of this technology?

SPD is reckless, SPD is irresponsible, SPD is unreformable. You must take any and all surveillance tools from their control and transfer to civilian oversight boards.

Do you have any other comments?

ID: 12101189956

Submitted Through: Online Comment

Date: 10/22/2020 1:49:35 PM

Which surveillance technology that is currently open for public comment, do you wish to comment on?

SPD: Video Recording Systems

What concerns, if any, do you have about the use of this technology?

I do not trust the Seattle Police Department to handle this technology properly or within the framework of constitutional rights. The Seattle Police consistently abuse existing camera technology, such as SDOT cameras, despite existing city ordinances.

What value, if any, do you see in the use of this technology?

None. The police should not have it.

What do you want City leadership to consider about the use of this technology?

The astonishingly long record of human rights abuses the Seattle Police continue to mete out without the right to trial.

Do you have any other comments?

Defund SPD.

ID: 12100938026

Submitted Through: Online Comment

Date: 10/22/2020 12:24:25 PM

Which surveillance technology that is currently open for public comment, do you wish to comment on?

SPD: Video Recording Systems

What concerns, if any, do you have about the use of this technology?

None

What value, if any, do you see in the use of this technology?

Catching illegal activity and being able to quickly assess and respond to crime is a benefit to society.

What do you want City leadership to consider about the use of this technology?

Increase usage in problematic areas.

Do you have any other comments?

None

Appendix D: Letters from Organizations or Commissions

November 6, 2020

Seattle Information Technology
700 5th Ave, Suite 2700
Seattle, WA 98104

RE: ACLU of Washington Comments on Group 3 Surveillance Technologies

On behalf of the ACLU of Washington, I write to offer our comments on the surveillance technologies included in Group 3 of the Seattle Surveillance Ordinance implementation process.

The three Seattle Police Department (SPD) technologies in Group 3 are covered in the following order:

1. Forward Looking Infrared – King County Sheriff's Office Helicopters
2. Video Recording Systems
3. Situational Awareness Cameras Without Recording

These comments should be considered preliminary, given that the Surveillance Impact Reports (SIR) for each technology leave a number of important questions unanswered. Specific unanswered questions for each technology are noted in the comments relating to that technology. Answers to these questions should be included in the updated SIRs provided to the Community Surveillance Working Group and to the City Council prior to their review of the technologies.

Forward Looking Infrared - KCSO Helicopters

Background

Forward Looking Infrared (FLIR) is a powerful thermal imaging surveillance technology that raises a number of privacy and civil liberties concerns because of its ability to enable dragnet surveillance of individuals in public as well as in private spaces.

FLIR cameras sense infrared radiation to create images assembled for real-time video output. This technology detects small differences in heat, or emitted thermal energy, and displays them as shades of gray or with different colors. Because all objects emit different amounts of thermal energy, FLIR cameras are able to detect temperature differences and translate them into images.¹

Advanced thermal imaging systems like FLIR allow governments to increase their surveillance capabilities. Like any device used for surveillance, government agents may use it inappropriately to gather information on people based on their race, religion, or political views. While thermal imaging devices cannot “see” through

¹ ACLU of Washington, *Thermal Imaging Surveillance*, [THEYAREWATCHING.ORG](https://theyarewatching.org/technology/thermal-imaging-surveillance), <https://theyarewatching.org/technology/thermal-imaging-surveillance> (last visited Nov. 5, 2020).



P. O. Box 2728
Seattle, WA 98111-2728
(206) 624-2184
aclu-wa.org

Tana Lin
Board President

Michele Stormo
Executive Director

walls, pointing a thermal camera at a building can still reveal sensitive information about what is happening inside. Drug detectives often use these devices to identify possible marijuana growers by looking for heat consistent with grow lights.² Furthermore, privacy and civil liberties concerns with FLIR are magnified when FLIR is used in conjunction with other powerful surveillance tools such as facial recognition and drones.

The Seattle Police Department (SPD) uses three King County Sheriff's Office helicopters that are equipped with FLIR technology as well as 30-million candlepower "Night Sun" searchlights, Pro Net and LoJack radio tracking receivers, still and video cameras, and communications equipment for communicating with local, state, and federal law and firefighting agencies on their frequencies. SPD can use FLIR technology and these helicopters to monitor human beings (whose body temperatures are fairly consistent) through clouds, haze, and darkness.

There are serious concerns with SPD's use of KCSO's helicopters as described in the SIR. The policies attached in the SIR do not include purpose limitations, adequate privacy and security protections, or restrictions on use. The SIR also does not specify how long KCSO retains still images and recordings attained when assisting SPD, or whether SPD's Digital Evidence Management System (DEMS) is an on-premise or a Software-as-a-Service (SaaS) deployment.

At the public engagement meeting held on October 28, 2020,³ SPD officers were asked if SPD had ever used KCSO helicopters or FLIR technology for the purpose of surveilling protesters and if SPD had any policies prohibiting use of these technologies for protester surveillance. The officers were also asked over which neighborhoods the helicopters had been deployed, given that the SIR states that in 2018, Guardian One was deployed 45 times to SPD events. For both questions, SPD officers declined to answer and told the public to submit public records requests. However, because SPD's Public Records Act request portal states that the minimum response timeline is in excess of 6-12 months, members of the public would not be able to receive answers to these questions in time to submit public comments on these technologies.

Given the lack of adequate policies in the SIR and the number of unanswered questions that remain, we have concerns that SPD's use of KCSO's helicopters and FLIR technology may infringe upon people's civil rights and civil liberties. KCSO's FLIR-equipped helicopters may be used to disproportionately surveil historically targeted communities, individuals exercising their constitutionally protected right to protest, or people just going about their lives.

Specific Concerns

² In the 2001 case *Kyllo v. United States*, the U.S. Supreme Court ruled that federal agents violated the Fourth Amendment when they used a thermal imaging device to detect marijuana plants growing inside a home.

³ Seattle Police Department, *Surveillance Technology Public Comment Meeting*, CITY OF SEATTLE (Oct. 28, 2020), <https://www.seattle.gov/Documents/Departments/Tech/Privacy/Group%203%20Presentation.pdf>.

- **There are inadequate policies defining purpose of use.** The policies cited in the SIR do not impose meaningful restrictions on the purpose for which SPD may request that KCSO helicopters and FLIR technology be used. Policy 16.060 – King County Sheriff’s Office Air Support Unit⁴ simply states that “Guardian One offers air support for patrol and specialized missions” and that “Guardian Two offers air support for special operations such as search and rescue (SAR) and tactical missions.” This policy only describes the process by which SPD may request support from KCSO’s air support unit but does not state the specific purposes for which SPD may or may not request support. Section 4.9 of the SIR⁵ states that SPD may request video from KCSO’s Air Unit “[w]hen necessary and pertinent to a specific investigation” but does not specify the types of investigations for which SPD may request data from KCSO or how it is determined if such data is necessary and pertinent. Policy 6.060 – Collection of Information for Law Enforcement Purposes⁶ states that “Information will be gathered and recorded in a manner that does not unreasonably infringe upon: individual rights, liberties, and freedoms guaranteed by the Constitution of the United States and the State of Washington” and Policy 5.140 – Bias-Free Policing states that “officers will not engage in bias-based policing.”⁷ However, SPD’s answers at the October 28 public engagement meeting do not make clear whether and how SPD prohibits use of KCSO helicopters to engage in surveillance of protesters or biased policing. Section 1.4.2 of the Racial Equity Toolkit (RET) section of the SIR specifically asks: “How are decisions made where the technology is used or deployed? How does the Department work to ensure diverse neighborhoods are not specifically targeted?”⁸ The response from SPD directs attention to SPD Policy 16.060, which does not provide adequate purpose limitations.
- **There are inadequate policies restricting data collection.** The policies cited in the SIR do not place any restrictions on the amount or types of data SPD may request from KCSO. At the October 28 public engagement meeting, SPD officers did not answer whether or how SPD places time or geographic limitations on the data it may request from KCSO.

⁴ Seattle Police Department, *Seattle Police Department Manual: 16.060 - King County Sheriff’s Office Air Support Unit*, CITY OF SEATTLE (Mar. 1, 2016), <http://www.seattle.gov/police-manual/title-16---patrol-operations/16060---king-county-sheriffs-office-air-support-unit>.

⁵ Seattle Police Department, *2020 Surveillance Impact Report: Forward Looking Infrared Real-Time Video (FLIR) (KCSO Helicopters)*, CITY OF SEATTLE, at 12, http://www.seattle.gov/Documents/Departments/Tech/Privacy/FLIR%20-%20KCSO%20Helicopters%20Public_Engagement%20SIR.pdf (last visited Nov. 5, 2020).

⁶ Seattle Police Department, *Seattle Police Department Manual: 6.060 - Collection of Information for Law Enforcement Purposes*, CITY OF SEATTLE (May 19, 2004), <http://www.seattle.gov/police-manual/title-6---arrests-search-and-seizure/6060---collection-of-information-for-law-enforcement-purposes>.

⁷ Seattle Police Department, *Seattle Police Department Manual: 5.140 - Bias-Free Policing*, CITY OF SEATTLE (Aug. 1, 2019), <http://www.seattle.gov/police-manual/title-5---employee-conduct/5140---bias-free-policing>.

⁸ *2020 Impact Report: Infrared Video*, supra note 5, at 23.

- **It is unclear if and how SPD protects the privacy of individuals unrelated to an investigation.** The SIR does not include any policies regarding how it redacts or deletes information. At the October 28 public engagement meeting, SPD officers did not provide an answer to the question of whether and how it redacts or deletes information collected that may compromise the privacy of individuals unrelated to an investigation.
- **It is unclear how data collected are stored and protected.** SPD stated at the October 28 public engagement meeting that it is unaware of how long KCSO retains still images and recordings obtained when assisting SPD. While SPD officers stated that SPD stores video requested from KCSO in its Digital Evidence Management System (DEMS)—not Evidence.com, this is not made clear within the SIR. Additionally, SPD officers did not answer whether SPD’s DEMS is on on-premise or Software-as-a-Service (SaaS) deployment.
- **The SIR does not provide the dates and neighborhoods over which KCSO helicopters and FLIR technology have been deployed.** Though the SIR states that there have been 45 deployments of Guardian One to support SPD in 2018, the SIR does not include an analysis of the locations of those deployments.⁹ Additionally, during the October 28 public engagement meeting, SPD declined to state the neighborhoods over which the helicopters had been deployed. It is important that SPD include this information in the Racial Equity Toolkit section of the final SIR in order to address the following questions in Section 1.4.2: “How are decisions made where the technology is used or deployed? How does the Department work to ensure diverse neighborhoods are not specifically targeted?”¹⁰

Outstanding Questions

- What are the registration and/or tail numbers for each helicopter?
- In 2019 and 2020, did the KCSO Air Support Unit have any additional helicopters aside from the three listed in the SIR?
- How long does KCSO retain still images and recordings attained when assisting SPD?
- Is SPD’s Digital Evidence Management System (DEMS) an on-premise deployment or is it Software-as-a-Service?
- Has SPD ever requested KCSO ASU services or obtained data from KCSO’s helicopters and/or FLIR technology to surveil protesters?
- What are the neighborhoods over which KCSO’s helicopters have been deployed?

Recommendations for Regulation

At this stage, pending answers to the questions above, we can make only preliminary recommendations for the regulation of SPD’s use of KCSO’s helicopters and FLIR technology. We recommend that the Council adopt, via ordinance, at a minimum, clear and enforceable rules that ensure the following:

⁹ *Id.* at 9.

¹⁰ *Id.* at 23.

- **SPD must abide by a specific and restricted purpose of use:** The ordinance should define a specific purpose of use for KCSO's helicopters and FLIR technology, and any SPD use of KCSO's helicopters and FLIR technology and data collected with these technologies must be restricted to that specific purpose.
- **SPD must adopt processes to ensure it is not targeting diverse neighborhoods.** The ordinance should prohibit SPD from using KCSO's helicopters and FLIR technology to disproportionately surveil communities of color and other historically over-policed communities.
- **SPD must protect the privacy of individuals unrelated to a specific search or investigation.** The ordinance should require SPD to redact or delete information collected that may compromise the privacy of individuals not related to a specific search or investigation, restricted by the purpose of use.
- **SPD must produce a publicly available annual report detailing its use of KCSO helicopters and FLIR technology.** The ordinance should require that SPD produce an annual report including details on how SPD used the data collected, the amount of data collected, for how long data were retained and in what form, where the data are stored, and the neighborhoods over which KCSO helicopters and/or FLIR technology were deployed.

Video Recording Systems

Background

SPD uses two cameras systems to record and/or monitor members of the public within SPD interview rooms, Blood Alcohol Collection (BAC) rooms, and precinct holding cells: Genetec Video Management System and Milestone Systems XProtect Video Management Software and Products.

Genetec Video Management System is a permanently installed system primarily used to record in-person interactions and interviews with crime victims, witnesses, and suspects in seven designated interview rooms located at the SPD headquarters in the Seattle Justice Center. This system is used to create a video record of interviews for the purposes of use in criminal justice proceedings. Milestone Systems XProtect Video Management Software and Products is a permanently installed system in SPD's Blood Alcohol Collection (BAC) rooms and precinct holding cells. They record continuously all activity in those locations.¹¹

SPD's use of these video recording systems can pose threats to people's privacy and civil liberties if used without adequate safeguards. The SIR does not provide adequate purpose limitations regarding SPD's use of these technologies, does not include full details of the capabilities of these systems, and does not adequately specify technical and procedural safeguards to prevent improper viewing.

¹¹ Seattle Police Department, *2020 Surveillance Impact Report: Video Recording Systems (Interview, Blood-Alcohol Collection Room, and Precinct Holding Cell Audio)*, CITY OF SEATTLE, at 4, https://www.seattle.gov/Documents/Departments/Tech/Privacy/Video%20Recording%20Systems%20Public_Engagement%20SIR.pdf (last visited Nov. 5, 2020).

collection, or storage of the images or video footage.

Specific Concerns

- **There are inadequate policies defining purpose of use.** Section 4.9 of the SIR asks, “What are acceptable reasons for access to the equipment and/or data collected?”¹² The response does not specifically detail how and for what purpose the equipment and/or data collected from the equipment may be used.
- **The capabilities of the Genetec and Milestone systems are unclear.** SPD does not provide links or attachments providing specific details about either of the systems they use. Both Genetec¹³ and Milestone¹⁴ advertise facial recognition systems that may be integrated with its video management systems.
- **It is unclear how data are collected, stored, and protected.** The SIR does not make clear whether SPD stores the data they receive in the Digital Evidence Management System or Evidence.com, a cloud-based digital evidence platform owned by Axon. The SIR simply references SPD policy 7.110 – Recorded Statements, which states that data may be uploaded to the Digital Evidence Management System (DEMS) or Evidence.com.¹⁵ Additionally, the SIR does not include information about the security practices SPD follows to protect the privacy of members of the public who are recorded by the Genetec and Milestone video management systems. Finally, the SIR does not specify who has permission to modify the pan, tilt, and/or zoom of the cameras.

Outstanding Questions

- Does SPD use a Genetec or Milestone partner add-on that enables facial recognition or other biometric data collection/identification?
- How are firmware/software updates applied to the Genetec systems?
- What security practices does SPD follow?
- Where does the SPD Evidence Section store the Genetec-generated recordings and Milestone recordings they receive?
- For both the Genetec and Milestone systems, who has permission to modify the pan, tilt, and/or zoom of the cameras?

¹² *Id.* at 12.

¹³ *Security Center Omnicast IP video surveillance*, GENETEC, <https://resources.genetec.com/video-modules-and-add-ons/omnicast-ip-video-surveillance> (last visited Nov. 5, 2020).

¹⁴ *Dahua Face Recognition Plugin for Milestone VMS*, MILESTONE, <https://www.milestonesys.com/marketplace/zhejiang-dahua-technology-co.-ltd/dahua-face-recognition-plugin-for-milestone-vms/> (last visited Nov. 5, 2020); *Id-Guard Face Recognition Plugin*, MILESTONE, <https://www.milestonesys.com/marketplace/ll-recfaces/id-guard-face-recognition-plugin/> (Nov. 5, 2020).

¹⁵ Seattle Police Department, *Seattle Police Department Manual: 7.110 - Recorded Statements*, CITY OF SEATTLE (Oct. 1, 2020), <https://www.seattle.gov/police-manual/title-7---evidence-and-property/7110---recorded-statements>.

Recommendations for Regulation

At this stage, pending answers to the questions above, we can make only preliminary recommendations for the regulation of SPD's use of video recording systems. We recommend that the Council adopt, via ordinance, at a minimum, clear and enforceable rules that ensure the following:

- **SPD must abide by a specific and restricted purpose of use:** The ordinance should define a specific purpose of use for any video recording systems used by SPD, and any use must be restricted to that specific purpose.
- **SPD must not use any video recording systems that have capabilities beyond what is strictly necessary to fulfill the purpose of use (e.g., recording custodial interrogations).** The ordinance should prohibit incorporating additional services such as facial recognition systems with the video recording systems.

Situational Awareness Cameras Without Recording

Background

SPD uses four types of portable cameras to observe both public and private areas during tactical operations. The four types of cameras and their vendors are:

- Robot-mounted cameras – RoboteX
- Pole-mounted cameras – Tactical Electronics & Smith and Wesson
- Placeable cameras – Remington & Tactical Electronics
- Throwable cameras – Remington & Tactical Electronics¹⁶

SPD's use of these situational awareness cameras can pose threats to people's privacy and civil liberties if used without adequate safeguards. The SIR does not provide adequate purpose limitations regarding SPD's use of these technologies, does not include full details of the capabilities of the cameras, and does not adequately specify technical and procedural safeguards to prevent improper viewing, collection, or storage of the images or video footage.

Specific Concerns

- **There are inadequate policies defining purpose of use.** Section 4.9 of the SIR asks, "What are acceptable reasons for access to the equipment and/or data collected?" The response states: "The decision to use situational awareness cameras is made on a case-by-case basis. These devices allow officers to monitor a subject or watch situation from a position of safety and distance. Absent exigent circumstances, a signed warrant is obtained prior to the use of this technology in any protected area."¹⁷ This response does not

¹⁶ Seattle Police Department, *2020 Surveillance Impact Report: Situational Awareness Cameras Without Recording*, CITY OF SEATTLE, at 5, https://www.seattle.gov/Documents/Departments/Tech/Privacy/Situational%20Awareness%20Cameras%20Public_Engagement%20SIR.pdf (last visited Nov. 5, 2020).

¹⁷ *Id.* at 8.

provide a clear and limited purpose for which this technology may or may not be used. While SPD's response states that a warrant is obtained prior to use of the cameras in protected areas, such as inside a home, it does not state the specific purposes for which SPD may or may not use the cameras without a warrant.

- **The capabilities of the situational awareness cameras are unclear.** The SIR does not provide manuals or the complete model names and/or numbers of each of the camera technologies. During the October 28 public engagement meeting, SPD stated that their situational awareness cameras do not support recording. However, the vendor websites advertise situational awareness cameras that do support recording. For example, the Tactical Electronics Core Monitor,¹⁸ Pole Camera,¹⁹ and Under Door Camera²⁰ can either take photos, record video, and/or record audio.
- **It is unclear what technical and procedural safeguards are in place to prevent the improper viewing, collection, and storage of images.** During the October 28 public engagement meeting, SPD stated that there is no way that images, video, or audio footage could be collected and stored. In order to verify that information, SPD must provide detailed information about the technologies it uses as stated above. Additionally, even if the cameras themselves cannot record footage, it is unclear if there are policies and procedures in place to prevent live-streamed situational camera footage from being recorded via a different device.

Outstanding Questions

- What are the complete model names/numbers for each of the equipment in scope for the Situational Awareness Cameras?
- What technical safeguards are in place to prevent the storage/retention of images?
- 7.3 of Situational Awareness Cameras SIR states "[the SWAT Unit] have mitigated the risk of improper viewing of the protected areas." How specifically have they mitigated the risk?
- What (if any) sections of the SPD Manual specifically cover the use of these technologies by SWAT?

Recommendations for Regulation

At this stage, pending answers to the questions above, we can only make preliminary recommendations for the regulation of SPD's use of situational awareness cameras. We recommend that the Council adopt, via ordinance, at a minimum, clear and enforceable rules that ensure the following:

¹⁸ *Core Monitor*, TACTICAL ELEC., <https://www.tacticalectronics.com/product/core-monitor/> (last visited Nov. 5, 2020).

¹⁹ *Core Pole Camera*, TACTICAL ELEC., <https://www.tacticalectronics.com/product/core-pole-camera/> (last visited Nov. 5, 2020).

²⁰ *Core Under Door Camera*, TACTICAL ELEC., <https://www.tacticalectronics.com/product/core-under-door-camera/> (last visited Nov. 5, 2020).

- **SPD must abide by a specific and restricted purpose of use:** The ordinance should define a specific purpose of use for situational awareness cameras used by SPD, and any use must be restricted to that specific purpose.
- **SPD must not use any situational awareness cameras that have capabilities beyond what is strictly necessary to fulfill the purpose of use defined by the ordinance.** The ordinance should prohibit SPD from using cameras that have facial recognition or recording capabilities.
- **SPD must adopt technical and procedural safeguards to prevent misuse of the situational awareness cameras.** The ordinance should require SPD adopt safeguards that prevent use of the cameras or the footage streamed from the cameras for purposes beyond what is defined in the ordinance.

Thank you for your consideration of our comments and for facilitating this public review process.

Sincerely,

Jennifer Lee
Technology and Liberty Project Manager

Appendix E: CTO Notification of Surveillance Technology

Thank you for your department's efforts to comply with the new Surveillance Ordinance, including a review of your existing technologies to determine which may be subject to the Ordinance. I recognize this was a significant investment of time by your staff; their efforts are helping to build Council and public trust in how the City collects and uses data.

As required by the Ordinance (SMC 14.18.020.D), this is formal notice that the technologies listed below will require review and approval by City Council to remain in use. This list was determined through a process outlined in the Ordinance and was submitted at the end of last year for review to the Mayor's Office and City Council.

The first technology on the list below must be submitted for review by March 31, 2018, with one additional technology submitted for review at the end of each month after that. The City's Privacy Team has been tasked with assisting you and your staff with the completion of this process and has already begun working with your designated department team members to provide direction about the Surveillance Impact Report completion process.

Please let me know if you have any questions.

Thank you,

Michael Mattmiller

Chief Technology Officer

Technology	Description	Proposed Review Order
Automated License Plate Recognition (ALPR)	ALPRs are computer-controlled, high-speed camera systems mounted on parking enforcement or police vehicles that automatically capture an image of license plates that come into view and converts the image of the license plate into alphanumeric data that can be used to locate vehicles reported stolen or otherwise sought for public safety purposes and to enforce parking restrictions.	1
Booking Photo Comparison Software (BPCS)	BCPS is used in situations where a picture of a suspected criminal, such as a burglar or convenience store robber, is taken by a camera. The still screenshot is entered into BPCS, which runs an algorithm to compare it to King County Jail booking photos to identify the person in the picture to further investigate his or her involvement in the crime. Use of BPCS is governed by SPD Manual §12.045 .	2
Forward Looking Infrared Real-time video (FLIR)	Two King County Sheriff’s Office helicopters with Forward Looking Infrared (FLIR) send a real-time microwave video downlink of ongoing events to commanders and other decision-makers on the ground, facilitating specialized radio tracking equipment to locate bank robbery suspects and provides a platform for aerial photography and digital video of large outdoor locations (e.g., crime scenes and disaster damage, etc.).	3

Technology	Description	Proposed Review Order
Undercover/ Technologies	<p>The following groups of technologies are used to conduct sensitive investigations and should be reviewed together.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Audio recording devices: A hidden microphone to audio record individuals without their knowledge. The microphone is either not visible to the subject being recorded or is disguised as another object. Used with search warrant or signed Authorization to Intercept (RCW 9A.73.200). Camera systems: A hidden camera used to record people without their knowledge. The camera is either not visible to the subject being filmed or is disguised as another object. Used with consent, a search warrant (when the area captured by the camera is not in plain view of the public), or with specific and articulable facts that a person has or is about to be engaged in a criminal activity and the camera captures only areas in plain view of the public. Tracking devices: A hidden tracking device carried by a moving vehicle or person that uses the Global Positioning System to determine and track the precise location. U.S. Supreme Court v. Jones mandated that these must have consent or a search warrant to be used. 	<p>4</p>
Computer-Aided Dispatch (CAD)	<p>CAD is used to initiate public safety calls for service, dispatch, and to maintain the status of responding resources in the field. It is used by 911 dispatchers as well as by officers using mobile data terminals (MDTs) in the field.</p>	<p>5</p>

Technology	Description	Proposed Review Order
CopLogic	System allowing individuals to submit police reports on-line for certain low-level crimes in non-emergency situations where there are no known suspects or information about the crime that can be followed up on. Use is opt-in, but individuals may enter personally-identifying information about third-parties without providing notice to those individuals.	6
Hostage Negotiation Throw Phone	A set of recording and tracking technologies contained in a phone that is used in hostage negotiation situations to facilitate communications.	7
Remotely Operated Vehicles (ROVs)	These are SPD non-recording ROVs/robots used by Arson/Bomb Unit to safely approach suspected explosives, by Harbor Unit to detect drowning victims, vehicles, or other submerged items, and by SWAT in tactical situations to assess dangerous situations from a safe, remote location.	8
911 Logging Recorder	System providing networked access to the logged telephony and radio voice recordings of the 911 center.	9
Computer, cellphone and mobile device extraction tools	Forensics tool used with consent of phone/device owner or pursuant to a warrant to acquire, decode, and analyze data from smartphones, tablets, portable GPS device, desktop and laptop computers.	10
Video Recording Systems	These systems are to record events that take place in a Blood Alcohol Concentration (BAC) Room, holding cells, interview, lineup, and polygraph rooms recording systems.	11
Washington State Patrol (WSP) Aircraft	Provides statewide aerial enforcement, rapid response, airborne assessments of incidents, and transportation services in support of the Patrol's public safety mission. WSP Aviation currently manages seven aircraft equipped with FLIR cameras. SPD requests support as needed from WSP aircraft.	12

Technology	Description	Proposed Review Order
Washington State Patrol (WSP) Drones	WSP has begun using drones for surveying traffic collision sites to expedite incident investigation and facilitate a return to normal traffic flow. SPD may then request assistance documenting crash sites from WSP.	13
Callyo	This software may be installed on an officer’s cell phone to allow them to record the audio from phone communications between law enforcement and suspects. Callyo may be used with consent or search warrant.	14
I2 iBase	The I2 iBase crime analysis tool allows for configuring, capturing, controlling, analyzing and displaying complex information and relationships in link and entity data. iBase is both a database application, as well as a modeling and analysis tool. It uses data pulled from SPD’s existing systems for modeling and analysis.	15
Parking Enforcement Systems	Several applications are linked together to comprise the enforcement system and used with ALPR for issuing parking citations. This is in support of enforcing the Scofflaw Ordinance SMC 11.35 .	16
Situational Awareness Cameras Without Recording	Non-recording cameras that allow officers to observe around corners or other areas during tactical operations where officers need to see the situation before entering a building, floor or room. These may be rolled, tossed, lowered or throw into an area, attached to a hand-held pole and extended around a corner or into an area. Smaller cameras may be rolled under a doorway. The cameras contain wireless transmitters that convey images to officers.	17
Crash Data Retrieval	Tool that allows a Collision Reconstructionist investigating vehicle crashes the opportunity to image data stored in the vehicle’s airbag control module. This is done for a vehicle that has been in a crash and is used with consent or search warrant.	18

Technology	Description	Proposed Review Order
Maltego	An interactive data mining tool that renders graphs for link analysis. The tool is used in online investigations for finding relationships between pieces of information from various sources located on the internet.	19

Please let me know if you have any questions.

Thank you,

Michael

2020 Surveillance Impact Report Executive Overview

Video Recording Systems

Seattle Police Department

April 13th, 2021

Version 1

Overview

The Operational Policy statements in this document represent the only allowable uses of the equipment and data collected by this technology.

This Executive Overview documents information about the collection, use, sharing, security and access controls for data that is gathered through Seattle Police Department's use of Video Recording Systems (including Interview, Blood-Alcohol Collection Room, and Precinct Holding Cell Audio). All information provided here is contained in the body of the full Surveillance Impact Review (SIR) document but is provided in a condensed format for easier access and consideration.

1.0 Technology Description

SPD has two camera systems used to record and/or monitor members of the public within specific, secure locations in SPD facilities.

The first is the Genetec Video Management System. It is a permanently installed, non-mobile unconcealed audio and video recording system primarily used to record in-person interactions with and interviews of crime victims, witnesses, and suspects in seven designated interview rooms located at the SPD headquarters in the Seattle Justice Center. The system also provides a live video-only view of these interview rooms. The video-only live view is used to monitor, short term, members of the community who are in the interview rooms when no SPD detective is present. This system is used to create a video record of interviews for the purposes of use in criminal justice proceedings.

The second is Milestone Systems XProtect Video Management Software and Products. These are permanently installed in SPD's Blood Alcohol Collection (BAC) rooms and precinct holding cells. They record continuously all activity in those locations.

2.0 Purpose

Operational Policy: This technology is used in adherence with [SPD Policy 7.110](#) which governs recorded statements.

The Genetec Video Management System is used to create a video record of interviews for the purposes of use in criminal justice proceedings. The live video-only view of interview rooms is used to monitor, short term, members of the community who are in the interview rooms when no SPD detective is present.

The Milestone Systems XProtect Video Management System is permanently installed in SPD's Blood Alcohol Collection (BAC) rooms and precinct holding cells. They record continuously all activity in those locations.

These technologies are used to record members of the public who are being interviewed or having their blood alcohol levels tested or are placed in precinct holding cells. If used out of policy, improperly, or without proper notification, this technology could potentially be used to make recordings that infringe on public privacy.

Though the State of Washington is not one of the 26 states that requires the recording of custodial interrogations, many law enforcement agencies and criminal justice system watchdogs, such as the Innocence Project, highly recommend the practice. Benefits include: preventing disputes about how an officer conducted the interview or treated a suspect or victim; creating a record of statements made by a suspect that may capture subtle details missed in real-time; reducing false confessions; and enhancing public confidence in the practices of SPD. Creating a visual record of activities that occur within the BAC rooms and precinct holding cells also provides a measure of accountability for both SPD and involved community members.

3.0 Data Collection and Use

Operational Policy: This technology is used in adherence with [SPD Policy 7.110](#) which governs recorded statements.

These technologies record only the images and sounds that occur during an SPD interview of a witness, victim, or suspect, and activity in BAC rooms and precinct holding cells.

When used as evidence, the file is stored on a high-quality evidence grade DVD+R disc. This evidence grade disc is then submitted into the SPD Evidence Section as a standard item of evidence. Standard evidence retention/disposition rules are then followed.

These technologies record only the images and sounds that occur during an SPD interview of a witness, victim, or suspect, and activity in BAC rooms and precinct holding cells.

Genetec (Interview rooms): The detective(s) conducting the interview activates the recording system for the appropriate room with a manual switch. The detective then advises the interview subject of the audio recording acquiring implied consent, or explicitly asks for permission to record per [SPD Policy 7.110 – Recorded Statements](#). At the conclusion of the interview or blood draw, or when the subject leaves the room, the recording is terminated by the detective or officer. The detective then exports the recording from the server on one of the two designated computer workstations and creates a copy of the recording for permanent storage on a special high-quality evidence grade DVD+R disc. This evidence grade disc is then submitted into the SPD Evidence Section as a standard item of evidence.

Milestone (BAC rooms and precinct holding cells): The Milestone systems is continuously recording in the BAC rooms and precinct holding cells. In the event that an investigation (including SPD internal investigations) needs to view the video, a request must be made to the SPD Video Unit who will locate the specific time and location video requested and provide the investigator with a DVD containing the file.

Signage is clearly posted in all SPD precincts indicating that audio and video surveillance is in progress. These signs are posted both at the entrances to holding cells and inside holding cells and blood alcohol collection areas.

Consent is required before these technologies may be used. [RCW 9.73.030](#) Intercepting, recording or divulging private communication – Consent required – Exceptions. Also known as “All party consent”. Standard procedure dictates that interview subjects are always advised of the presence of the recording or asked for their permission to record. Any recording made of an interview subject without consent would be inadmissible and could possibly subject the SPD personnel to an internal conduct assessment and possibly criminal charges.

4.0 Data Minimization & Retention

Operational Policy: These technologies record only the images and sounds that occur during an SPD interview of a witness, victim, or suspect, and activity in BAC rooms and precinct holding cells. These technologies are permanently mounted and do not record any information outside of these parameters.

Both the Genetec and Milestone systems retain recordings for 90 days before they are automatically and systematically deleted from the server.

Genetec (interview rooms): The original recordings are stored on a proprietary Genetec server that is located in a secure server room located in SPD HQ. The long-term storage copy produced by the detective is retained at the SPD Evidence Section following standard evidence retention rules.

Milestone (BAC rooms and precinct holding cells): Individual local servers are securely located all SPD precincts.

5.0 Access & Security

Operational Policy: Only authorized SPD users can access the system, technology, or the data. Access to the application is limited to SPD personnel via password-protected login credentials.

SPD complies with [CJIS Security Policy](#) guidelines for the secure storage of the data.

Access

The primary reason for access to the data collected by both the Genetec and Milestone systems is to investigate crimes, aid in the prosecution of criminals, and monitor subjects inside SPD facilities. Additionally, these systems are used to monitor internal SPD operations and document police activities.

Only authorized SPD users can access the system, technology, or the data. Access to the application is limited to SPD personnel via password-protected login credentials. Logs of system activity are kept for both automatic system functions and user actions which provide an audit trail to safeguard against potential unauthorized access to stored information.

The entire system is located on the SPD network which is protected by industry standard firewalls. The Seattle IT Department performs routine monitoring of the SPD network.

All SPD employees are backgrounded and access is controlled by SPD Manual Title 12 provisions governing Department Information Systems including:

- [SPD Policy 12.040 - Department-Owned Computers, Devices & Software](#)
- [SPD Policy 12.050 - Criminal Justice Information Systems](#)
- [SPD Policy 12.080 – Department Records Access, Inspection & Dissemination](#)
- [SPD Policy 12.110 – Use of Department E-mail & Internet Systems](#)
- [SPD Policy 12.111 – Use of Cloud Storage Services.](#)

Security

SPD’s Audit, Policy and Research Section (APRS) can conduct an audit of the any and all systems at any time. The Office of Inspector General and the federal monitor can also access all data and audit for compliance at any time.

ITD client services interaction with SPD systems is governed according to the terms of the 2018 Management Control Agreement between ITD and SPD, which states that:

“Pursuant to Seattle Municipal Code (SMC) 3.23, ITD provides information technology systems, services and support to SPD and is therefore required to support, enable, enforce and comply with SPD policy requirements, including the FBI’s Criminal Justice Information Services, (CJIS) Security Policy.”

Per the [CJIS Security Policy](#):

5.8.3 Digital Media Sanitization and Disposal The agency shall sanitize, that is, overwrite at least three times or degauss digital media prior to disposal or release for reuse by unauthorized individuals. Inoperable digital media shall be destroyed (cut up, shredded, etc.). The agency shall maintain written documentation of the steps taken to sanitize or destroy electronic media. Agencies shall ensure the sanitization or destruction is witnessed or carried out by authorized personnel.

5.8.4 Disposal of Physical Media Physical media shall be securely disposed of when no longer required, using formal procedures. Formal procedures for the secure disposal or destruction of physical media shall minimize the risk of sensitive information compromise by unauthorized individuals. Physical media shall be destroyed by shredding or incineration. Agencies shall ensure the disposal or destruction is witnessed or carried out by authorized personnel.

6.0 Data Sharing and Accuracy

Operational Policy: No person, outside of SPD and Seattle IT, has direct access to the application or the data.

Data obtained from the system may be shared outside SPD with the other agencies, entities, or individuals within legal guidelines or as required by law.

Data may be shared with outside entities in connection with criminal prosecutions:

- Seattle City Attorney's Office
- King County Prosecuting Attorney's Office
- King County Department of Public Defense
- Private Defense Attorneys
- Seattle Municipal Court
- King County Superior Court
- Similar entities where prosecution is in Federal or other State jurisdictions

Data may be made available to requesters pursuant to the [Washington Public Records Act, Chapter 42.56 RCW](#) ("PRA"). SPD will apply applicable exemptions to the data before disclosing to a requester. Individuals have the right to inspect criminal history record information maintained by the department ([RCW 10.97.030](#), [SPD Policy 12.050](#)). Individuals can access their own information by submitting a public disclosure request.

SPD shares data with authorized researchers pursuant to properly execute research and confidentiality agreements as provide by [SPD Policy 12.055](#). This sharing may include discrete pieces of data related to specific investigative files collected by the system.

7.0 Equity Concerns

Operational Policy: [SPD Policy 7.110 – Recorded Statements](#) forbids SPD personnel from making such recordings without consent, except in specific exigent circumstances without proper warrant. Additionally, SPD policies, including [SPD Policy 6.060 - Collection of Information for Law Enforcement Purposes](#) also defines the way information will be gathered and recorded in a manner that does not unreasonably infringe upon: individual rights, liberties, and freedoms guaranteed by the Constitution of the United States and the State of Washington, including freedom of speech, press, association, and assembly; liberty of conscience; the exercise of religion.

The Genetec system (Interview rooms) is located at SPD Headquarters. The Milestone system (BAC rooms and precinct holding cells) is located at all SPD precincts throughout the City of Seattle.

The mission of the Seattle Police Department is to prevent crime, enforce the law, and support quality public safety by delivering respectful, professional and dependable police services. A potential civil liberties concern is that the SPD would over-surveil vulnerable or historically targeted communities. [SPD Policy 5.140](#) forbids bias-based policing and outlines processes for reporting and documenting any suspected bias-based behavior, as well as accountability measures. The video systems described in this report are permanently installed inside SPD facilities and record individuals who are interacting with SPD personnel or are being held in precinct holding cells.

The most important unintended possible consequence related to the continued utilization of the Genetec and Milestone camera systems by SPD is the potential that members of the public will be recorded without their consent. [SPD Policy 7.110 – Recorded Statements](#) forbids SPD personnel from making such recordings without consent, except in specific exigent circumstances without proper warrant. Additionally, SPD policies, including [SPD Policy 6.060 - Collection of Information for Law Enforcement Purposes](#) also defines the way information will be gathered and recorded in a manner that does not unreasonably infringe upon: individual rights, liberties, and freedoms guaranteed by the Constitution of the United States and the State of Washington, including freedom of speech, press, association, and assembly; liberty of conscience; the exercise of religion.

SUMMARY and FISCAL NOTE*

Department:	Dept. Contact/Phone:	CBO Contact/Phone:
SPD / ITD	Rebecca Boatwright / Vinh Tang	Neal Capapas/206-684-5292

** Note that the Summary and Fiscal Note describes the version of the bill or resolution as introduced; final legislation including amendments may not be fully described.*

1. BILL SUMMARY

Legislation Title: AN ORDINANCE relating to surveillance technology implementation; authorizing approval of uses and accepting the 2020 surveillance impact report and 2020 executive overview for the Seattle Police Department’s use of Video Recording Systems.

Summary and background of the Legislation: Per SMC Chapter 14.18 (also known as the Surveillance Ordinance), authorizing the approval of the surveillance impact reports for Seattle Police Department’s continued use of Video Recording Systems.

2. CAPITAL IMPROVEMENT PROGRAM

Does this legislation create, fund, or amend a CIP Project? ___ Yes X No

3. SUMMARY OF FINANCIAL IMPLICATIONS

Does this legislation amend the Adopted Budget? ___ Yes X No

Does the legislation have other financial impacts to The City of Seattle that are not reflected in the above, including direct or indirect, short-term or long-term costs?

This technology is currently in use by the Seattle Police Department and no additional costs, either direct or indirect, will be incurred based on the continued use of the technology. However, should it be determined that SPD should cease use of the technology, there would be costs associated with decommissioning the technology. Additionally, there may be potential financial penalties related to breach of contract with the technology vendor(s).

Is there financial cost or other impacts of *not* implementing the legislation?

Per the Surveillance Ordinance, the City department may continue use of the technology until legislation is implemented. As such, there are no financial costs or other impacts that would result from not implementing the legislation.

4. OTHER IMPLICATIONS

a. Does this legislation affect any departments besides the originating department?

This legislation does not affect other departments.

b. Is a public hearing required for this legislation?

A public hearing is not required for this legislation.

c. Is publication of notice with *The Daily Journal of Commerce* and/or *The Seattle Times* required for this legislation?

No publication of notice is required for this legislation.

d. Does this legislation affect a piece of property?

This legislation does not affect a piece of property.

e. Please describe any perceived implication for the principles of the Race and Social Justice Initiative. Does this legislation impact vulnerable or historically disadvantaged communities? What is the Language Access plan for any communications to the public?

The Surveillance Ordinance in general is designed to address civil liberties and disparate community impacts of surveillance technologies. The Surveillance Impact Review included in the attachments, as required by the Surveillance Ordinance, includes a Racial Equity Toolkit review adapted for this purpose.

f. Climate Change Implications

1. Emissions: Is this legislation likely to increase or decrease carbon emissions in a material way?

No.

2. Resiliency: Will the action(s) proposed by this legislation increase or decrease Seattle's resiliency (or ability to adapt) to climate change in a material way? If so, explain. If it is likely to decrease resiliency in a material way, describe what will or could be done to mitigate the effects.

No.

g. If this legislation includes a new initiative or a major programmatic expansion: What are the specific long-term and measurable goal(s) of the program? How will this legislation help achieve the program's desired goal(s)?

There is no new initiative or programmatic expansion associated with this legislation. It approves the continuation of use for the specific technology under review.

April 29, 2021

MEMORANDUM

To: Transportation and Utilities Committee
From: Lise Kaye, Analyst
Subject: Council Bill 120055 - Authorizing approval of uses and accepting the surveillance impact report for the Seattle Police Department's use of Video Recording Systems

On Wednesday, April 7, 2021 the Transportation and Utilities Committee will discuss [Council Bill \(CB\) 120055](#). The bill is intended to meet the requirements of [Seattle Municipal Code Chapter 14.18](#), Acquisition and Use of Surveillance Technologies.¹ (Attachment 1 to this memo summarizes these requirements and process by which the Executive develops the required Surveillance Impact Reports.) CB 120055 would approve the Seattle Police Department's (SPD's) continued use of existing Video Recording Systems and accept the Surveillance Impact Report (SIR) and an Executive Overview for this technology. The Executive Overview summarizes the operational policy statements which represent SPD's allowable uses of the Video Recording Systems.

This memo describes the Video Recording Systems and summarizes the potential civil liberties impacts, potential disparate impacts on historically targeted communities and vulnerable populations, and the public engagement process, as reported in the SIR. It also summarizes key concerns and recommendations from the Community Surveillance Working Group's Impact Assessment and the Chief Technology Officer's response ("CTO's Response) to the Impact Assessment. Finally, the memo identifies policy issues for Council consideration.

Video Recording Systems

SPD's SWAT (Special Weapons and Tactics) unit uses two camera systems to record and/or monitor individuals within SPD interview rooms, blood-alcohol collection rooms and precinct holding cells:

- Genetec Video Management System – unconcealed audio and video recording system used to record in-person interactions with and interviews of crime victims, witnesses, and suspects in seven interview rooms located at the SPD headquarters; and video-only view to monitor individuals in interview rooms when no SPD detective is present.
- Milestone Systems XProtect Video Management Software and Products – permanently installed and continuously recording all activity in SPD's blood alcohol collection rooms and precinct holding cells.

As described in the SIR, prior to conducting an interview, a detective will either advise the interview subject of the audio recording or the detective will explicitly ask for permission to record the interview.² SPD also posts signs advising of active video and audio surveillance at the

¹ (Ord. [125679](#), § 1, 2018; Ord. [125376](#), § 2, 2017.)

² Chapter 9.73.030(3) RCW: Where consent by all parties is needed pursuant to this chapter, consent shall be considered obtained whenever one party has announced to all other parties engaged in the communication or

entrances to and inside holding cells and blood alcohol collection areas at each precinct. Example signs shown in the SIR are in English, but SPD is working to ensure that all locations use the same multi-lingual or pictographic signage. SPD shares data from the video recording systems with attorneys and courts, if associated with criminal prosecutions; in response to a public records request; or with authorized researchers. Although not specifically cited in the SIR, [SPD Policy 10.060 – Holding Cell and Security Video](#), also describes access, signage and maintenance protocols for SPD’s video systems, including holding cells and blood alcohol collection rooms.

Both the Genetec and the Milestone systems delete recordings from the server after 90 days, but recordings from interview rooms are preserved storage in SPD’s evidence section, following “standard evidence retention rules.”³ Per SPD [Policy 7.110\(3\)](#), SPD employees may also temporarily store the recordings on a department computer “to meet an operational need” after they have been uploaded to SPD’s digital evidence site, but the employee must remove the statement from the Department computer when it is no longer needed.

Civil Liberties and Potential Disparate Impacts on Historically Marginalized Communities

Departments submitting a SIR identify potential civil liberties impacts and complete an adapted version of the Racial Equity Toolkit (RET) to highlight and mitigate impacts on racial equity from the use of the technology. The RET identifies a potential civil liberties impact arising from the presence of personally identifiable and potentially sensitive personal information about community members on video or audio recordings, including information about third parties who are not present during the recordings. It also identifies over-surveillance of vulnerable or historically targeted communities as a potential civil liberties concern. SPD seeks to minimize privacy risks through [SPD Policy 6.060](#), which directs all SPD personnel that “any documentation of information concerning a person’s sexual preferences or practices, or their political or religious activities must be for a relevant reason and serve a legitimate law enforcement purpose” and through [SPD Policy 5.140](#), which forbids bias-based policing and outlines processes for reporting and documenting any suspected bias-based behavior, as well as accountability measures.

The SIR also identifies data sharing, storage and retention as having the potential to contribute to structural racism, thereby creating a disparate impact on historically targeted communities.⁴ The SIR states that SPD mitigates this risk through [SPD Policy 5.140](#), which forbids bias-based policing, and through policies regarding the dissemination of data in connection with criminal

conversation, in any reasonably effective manner, that such communication or conversation is about to be recorded or transmitted: PROVIDED, That if the conversation is to be recorded that said announcement shall also be recorded.

³ Section 8 of [Washington State’s Law Enforcement Records Retention Schedule](#) establishes minimum retention periods for records pertaining to investigation of criminal activity, agency operations and procedures, and employee conduct.

⁴ Historical community or department practices could produce data in a CAD system that would portray certain communities as higher in crime than in other neighborhoods or elevate the involvement in potential criminal events by certain demographic groups. An approach to storage, retention, and integration of these data that was not cognizant of these possibilities might allow for the continuation of these perceptions, with potential disparate enforcement responses.

prosecutions, the [Washington Public Records Act](#), and other authorized researchers. The RET does not identify metrics to be used as part of the CTO’s annual equity assessments.⁵

Public Engagement

The Executive accepted public comments on this technology from October 7 – November 7, 2020 and conducted one public meeting for this and two other “Group 3” SIRs on October 28, 2020. The SIR includes all comments pertaining to this technology received from members of the public (Appendix C), and letters from organizations or commissions (Appendix D). Comments in the six online responses and the one submitted letter expressed concern as to whether SPD uses the technology in a transparent and fair way, system security, potential system add-ons to enable biometric data collection or identification, camera operations, and distrust of the police department. One response also detailed concerns about the duration and structure of the public engagement process for the Group 3 Technologies.

Privacy and Civil Liberties Impact Assessment

The Impact Assessment prepared by the Community Surveillance Working Group (“Working Group) identified three “major issues” in its Impact Assessment, including unclear capabilities of the Video Recording Systems, lack of clarity about how data are collected, stored and protected, and the need for additional policy language “to define valid purposes of use.”

Key Concerns and the CTO’s Response. Table 1 summarizes CTO’s Response to each of the Working Group’s major issues.

Table 1. CTO Response to Privacy and Civil Liberties Impact Assessment of SPD’s use of Video Recording Systems

Working Group Key Concern	CTO Response
<p>1. The capabilities of the Genetec and Milestone systems are unclear</p>	<p>The capabilities of both the Genetec and Milestone systems are outlined in the SIR as well as the circumstances under which they are used. There are concerns regarding additional functionality that could be added to these systems or other systems with similar advanced functionality but features such as facial recognition are not in use by any system in SPD. Any material change to the functionality of these technologies would be covered under the scope of the SIR review process. Additionally, going into effect July of 2021, Washington has passed the first state law that provides regulation and oversight over facial recognition technologies (RCW 43.386). This law regulates the development, procurement, and use of a facial recognition service, and provides a similar level of transparency and review to the Seattle Surveillance Ordinance.</p>

⁵ [SMC 14.18.050B](#) requires that the CTO produce and submit to the City Council a Surveillance Technology Community Equity Impact Assessment and Policy Guidance Report that addresses whether Chapter 14.18 of the SMC is effectively meeting the goals of the Race and Social Justice Initiative, any recommended adjustments to laws and policies to achieve a more equitable outcome, and any new approaches and considerations for the SIRs.

Working Group Key Concern	CTO Response
2. Unclear how data are collected, stored, and protected	The process for how the technology is used and the treatment of the collected video is outlined in the SIR.
3. Additional policy language is necessary to define purposes of use	The specific and intended use of the technologies under review is governed by SPD Policy 7.110 –Recorded Statements . The process for how the technology is used and the treatment of the collected video is also outlined in the SIR. The capabilities and clear purpose for each system is outlined and distinguished in the review process.

Recommendations. The Impact Assessment recommends that Council adopt, “at a minimum, clear and enforceable rules that ensure, the following:

- 1. SPD must abide by a specific and restricted purpose of use:** The ordinance should define a specific purpose of use for Video Recording Systems used by SPD, and any use must be restricted to that specific purpose.
- 2. SPD must not use any Video Recording Systems that have capabilities beyond what is strictly necessary to fulfill the purpose of use (e.g. recording custodial interrogations).** The ordinance should prohibit incorporating additional services such as facial recognition systems with the video recording systems.

Table 2 describes how the SIR as drafted would address these two recommendations.

Table 2. Working Group Recommendations Addressed in the SIR

Working Group Recommendation	Whether/How Addressed in SIR
1. Define the specific purpose of use for Video Recording Systems, and restrict use to that specific purpose	Executive Overview. Operational Policies represent the only allowable uses of the equipment and data collected by this technology.
2. Prohibit use of video recording systems that have capabilities beyond what is strictly necessary to fulfill the purpose of use (e.g., recording custodial interrogations). Prohibit SPD from incorporating additional services such as facial recognition systems with the video recording systems.	The SIR does not describe whether the video recording systems have capabilities to do more than audio and/or video recording. However, use of the systems for purposes other than audio or video recording would require an update to the SIR.

Policy Considerations

Central Staff has identified the following potential policy consideration.

1. Annual equity assessment metrics. SFD has not yet finalized metrics to be used in evaluating the Video Recording Systems as part of the CTO's annual equity assessments. These assessments are intended to play a key role in determining whether the City's surveillance legislation is meeting the goals of the Race and Social Justice Initiative.

Options:

- A. Council may wish to request a report on the proposed equity assessment metrics by a date certain.
- B. Council may wish to defer approval of this SIR, pending completion of these metrics.
- C. Take no action.

Committee Action

Options for Council action are as follows:

1. Pass CB 120055 as transmitted;
2. Request Central Staff to prepare amendments to the Council Bill and/or to the SIR to address additional concerns or issues; or
3. Take no action.

Attachment:

1. Background Summary and Surveillance Impact Report Process

cc: Dan Eder, Interim Director
Aly Pennucci, Budget and Policy Manager

Attachment 1 - Background Summary and Surveillance Impact Report Process

Recent Legislative History

[Ordinance 125376](#), passed by Council on July 31, 2017, required City of Seattle departments intending to acquire surveillance technology to obtain advance Council approval, by ordinance, of the acquisition and of a surveillance impact report (SIR).¹ Departments must also submit a SIR for surveillance technology in use when Ordinance 125376 was adopted (referred to in the ordinance as “retroactive technologies”). The Executive originally included 28 “retroactive technologies,” on its [November 30, 2017 Master List](#) but revised that list to 26 in [December 2019](#). The Council has approved two SIRs and twice extended the initial March 3, 2020 deadline for completion of SIRs for all 26 technologies: first by six months to accommodate extended deliberation of the first two SIRs; and then by a second six months due to COVID-related delays. Either the Chief Technology Officer or the Council may determine whether a specific technology is “surveillance technology” and thus subject to the requirements of SMC 14.18. Each SIR must describe protocols for a “use and data management policy” as follows:

- How and when the surveillance technology will be deployed or used and by whom, including specific rules of use
- How surveillance data will be securely stored
- How surveillance data will be retained and deleted
- How surveillance data will be accessed
- Whether a department intends to share access to the technology or data with any other entity
- How the department will ensure that personnel who operate the technology and/or access its data can ensure compliance with the use and data management policy
- Any community engagement events and plans
- How the potential impact of the surveillance on civil rights and liberties and potential disparate impacts on communities of color and other marginalized communities have been taken into account; and a mitigation plan
- The fiscal impact of the surveillance technology

Community Surveillance Working Group

On October 5, 2018, Council passed [Ordinance 125679](#), amending SMC 14.18, creating a “community surveillance working group” charged with creating a Privacy and Civil Liberties Impact Assessment for each SIR.² At least five of the seven members of the Working Group

¹ As codified in SMC 14.18.030, Ordinance 125376 identified a number of exemptions and exceptions to the required Council approval, including information voluntarily provided, body-worn cameras and cameras installed in or on a police vehicle, cameras that record traffic violations, security cameras and technology that monitors City employees at work.

² Ordinance 125679 also established a March 31, 2020 deadline for submitting SIRs on technologies already in use (referred to as “retroactive technologies”) when Ordinance 125376 was passed, with provision to request a six-month extension.

Attachment 1 - Background Summary and Surveillance Impact Report Process

must represent groups that have historically been subject to disproportionate surveillance, including Seattle’s diverse communities of color, immigrant communities, religious minorities, and groups concerned with privacy and protest.³ Each Privacy and Civil Liberties Impact Assessment must describe the potential impact of the surveillance technology on civil rights and liberties and potential disparate impacts on communities of color and other marginalized communities and will be included in the SIR. Prior to submittal of a SIR to Council, the Chief Technology Officer may provide a written statement that addresses privacy rights, civil liberty or other concerns in the Working Group’s impact assessment.

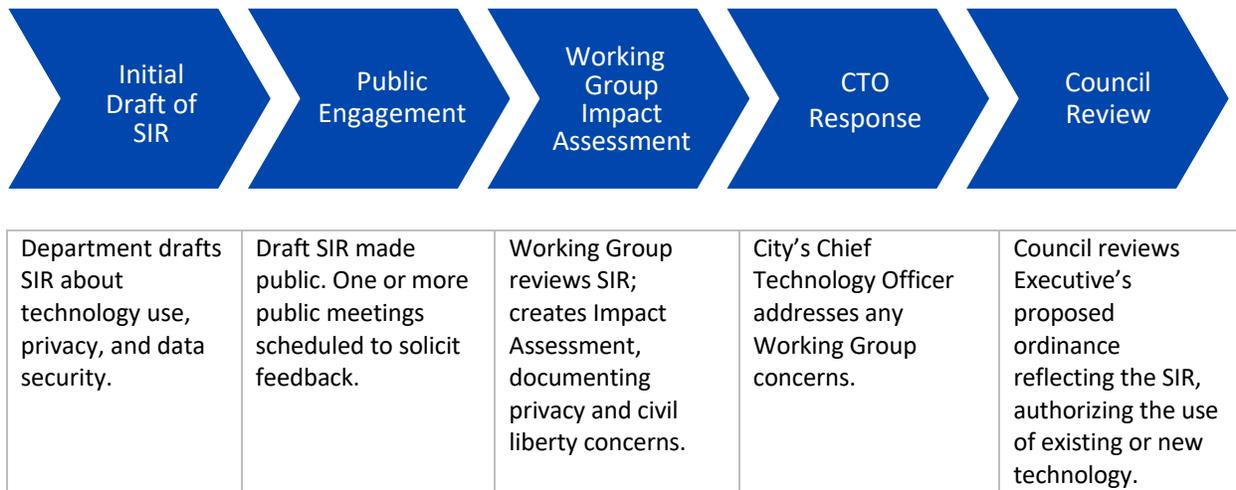
Executive Overviews

In May 2019, members of the Governance, Equity, and Technology Committee requested that IT staff prepare a summary section for each of the two lengthy SIR documents under review at that time. The Committee then accepted the resultant “Condensed Surveillance Impact Reports (CSIRs) together with the complete SIRs. The Executive has continued this practice with subsequent SIRs but has renamed the documents “Executive Overviews.” The Operational Policy Statements in the Executive Overview represent the only allowable uses of the subject technology.

SIR Process

Chart 1 is a visual of the SIR process from inception to Council Review:

Chart 1. Surveillance Impact Report (SIR) Process



³ The Mayor appoints four members and Council appoints three members.

Group 3 Surveillance Impact Reports (SIRs) CB 120053, CB 120054, & CB 120055

Transportation & Utilities Committee

May 5, 2021

Surveillance Impact Report (SIR) Overview

- 2017: [Ordinance 125376](#) took effect Sept 4th, revising the law to address the intended use of technologies with potential to impact civil liberties
- 2018: [Ordinance 125679](#) amended Ordinance 125376 and Chapter 14.18 of the Seattle Municipal Code and added external Community Surveillance Working Group
- 9/23/19: Group 1 SDOT SIR legislation passed ([Ordinance 125936](#))
- 1/20/21: Presented Overview of Surveillance Ordinance at the Transportation and Utilities Committee
- 1/26/21: Group 2 SIR legislation transmitted to City Clerk
- 2/22/21: Group 3 SIR legislation transmitted to City Clerk
- 3/03/21, 3/17/21, 4/07/21: Group 2 SIR briefing/discussion/vote at Transportation and Utilities Committee
- **3/22/21: Group 2 SCL & SFD SIR legislation passed ([Ordinance 126294](#) & [Ordinance 126295](#))**
- 4/12/21: Clerk filing of Group 4 SIR Extension Memo & Revised Master List of Surveillance Technologies
- **4/19/21: Group 2 SPD SIR legislation passed ([Ordinance 126311](#), [126312](#), [126313](#), [126314](#), [126315](#))**

28 total
technologies

Group	Depts.	28 Technologies		Council Bill	Status
Group 1 (2)	SDOT	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> License Plate Readers Closed Circuit Television Equipment "Traffic Cameras" 		CB 119519 CB 119519	Completed
Group 2 (9)	SCL SFD SPD	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Binoculars/Spotting Scope Check Meter Device SensorLink Amp Fork Computer-Aided Dispatch 911 Logging Recorder Automated License Plate Reader Parking Enforcement Systems including Automated License Plate Reader Computer-Aided Dispatch CopLogic 		CB 120002 CB 120002 CB 120002 CB 120003 CB 120004 CB 120005 CB 120006 CB 120007 CB 120008	Completed
Group 3 (3)	SPD	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Forward Looking Infrared Real-time video (FLIR) Situational Awareness Cameras Without Recording Video Recording Systems 		CB 120053 CB 120054 CB 120055	In Committee
Group 4A (7)	SFD SDOT SPD	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Emergency Scene Cameras, Hazmat Camera Acyclica Audio Recording Systems, Callyo, I2 iBase, Maltego 			Est. August Est. August Est. December
Group 4B (7)	SPD	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Camera systems; Tracking Devices; Remotely Operated Vehicles (ROVs); Hostage Negotiation Throw Phone; Crash Data Retrieval; GeoTime; Computer, cellphone and mobile device extraction tools 			Est. December

Group 3 SIR Public Engagement

- Group 3 Surveillance Technologies Public Meeting on 10/28/2020
- One Page Flyers
- Online Public Comment Meeting
 - Recorded and posted online

Engagement Method	(Approximate) Number of Individuals Participating	Number of Comments Received	Number of Questions Received
Public Meeting	15	-	15
Online Comments	38	38	-
Letters	1	1	-
Total	54	39	15

Group 3 SIR Technologies

Seattle Police Department

Seattle Police Department Mission

- Prevent crime;
- Enforce the law, and
- Support quality public safety by delivering respectful, professional and dependable police services.

Group 3 SIR Technologies

Group 3 Surveillance Impact Reports

- 1**

[CB 120053](#)
Forward Looking Infrared Real-time video (FLIR)

This technology provides a platform for aerial photography and digital video of large outdoor locations (e.g., crime scenes and disaster damage, etc.) through King County Sheriff's Air Support Unit helicopters.
- 2**

[CB 120054](#)
Situational Awareness Cameras Without Recording

Portable cameras that allow officers to observe around corners or other areas during operations where officers need to see the situation before entering an area of concern.
- 3**

[CB 120055](#)
Video Recording Systems at SPD Facilities

These systems record events that take place in a Blood Alcohol Collection (BAC) Room, precinct holding cells, interview, and lineup rooms.

Forward Looking Infrared Real-Time Video (FLIR)

What is the technology?

- Two King County Sheriff's Office helicopters with Forward Looking Infrared (FLIR) send a real-time video feed of ongoing events to commanders on the ground.
- This technology provides a platform for aerial photography and digital video of large outdoor locations (e.g., crime scenes and disaster damage, etc.).

Why do we use the technology?

- Rapid response to crime or disaster scenes.
- Provides a bird's eye view of events happening on the ground.
- FLIR technology allows for subjects to be detected even when obscured by haze or darkness.



FLIR – How It Works

- King County Sheriff's Air Support Unit is operated by the King County Sheriff's Office and is available to assist the Seattle Police Department at no charge through the Puget Sound Regional Aviation Project and the Seattle Urban Area Security Initiative (UASI).
- FLIR systems use heat emitted by subjects and objects to provide enhancement to images of active scenes.
- The FLIR systems cannot see into homes or other structures.



FLIR – Policies Governing Use

- King County Sheriff's Office Air Support Unit (SPD Policy 16.060)
- Evidence (SPD Policy 7.090)
- Access to criminal justice information and records (SPD policies 12.050 and 12.080)
- Use of department email and internet (SPD Policy 12.110)
- Use of cloud storage services (SPD policy 12.111)
- <http://www.seattle.gov/police-manual>

Situational Awareness Cameras Without Recording

What is the technology?

- Portable cameras that allow officers to observe around corners or other areas during tactical operations where officers need to see the situation before entering an area of concern. These may be lowered or thrown into position, attached to a hand-held pole and extended around a corner or into an area. The cameras contain wireless transmitters that send images to officers.

Why do we use the technology?

- SPD's tactical units use situational awareness cameras to assess potentially dangerous situations from a safe location.
- These cameras allows SPD to view surroundings and gain additional information prior to entering a location, providing additional safety and security to SPD personnel, the subjects of the observation, and other members of the community.



Situational Awareness Cameras Without Recording – How They Work

- Only members of SWAT are authorized to use this equipment and are specifically trained in their use.
- These cameras may be lowered or thrown into position, attached to a hand-held pole and extended around a corner or into an area. The cameras contain wireless transmitters that send images to nearby officers.
- No recordings are made using these cameras.



Situational Awareness Cameras Without Recording – Policies Governing Use

- Bias-Free Policing (SPD Policy 5.140)
- Standards and Duties (SPD Policy 5.001)
- Specialty Vehicles & Equipment (SPD policies 13.060)
- <http://www.seattle.gov/police-manual>

Video Recording Systems at SPD Facilities

What is the technology?

- SPD has two camera systems used to record and/or monitor members of the public within specific, secure locations in SPD facilities.
- These systems record events that take place in a Blood Alcohol Collection (BAC) Room, precinct holding cells, interview, and lineup rooms.

Why do we use the technology?

- Create visual record of activities in the interview rooms, BAC rooms, and precinct holding cells.
- Prevents disputes about how interviews are conducted or how suspects, victims, and witnesses are treated.
- Enhances SPD accountability in the community and enhances confidence in SPD practices.



Video Recording Systems at SPD Facilities – How It Works

- The **Genetec Video Management System** includes camera and microphone equipment that is permanently installed in the interview rooms on the 6th and 7th floors of SPD Headquarters.
- The **Milestone Video Management Software and Products** consist of cameras located in BAC rooms and precinct holding cells throughout SPD's facilities.
- Signage informs employees and members of the public that camera and recording devices are present.



Video Recording Systems at SPD Facilities – Recording Data Storage

Genetec (Interview Rooms)

- After an interview is conducted the recording of the interview is copied to a high-quality evidence grade DVD+R disc. This evidence-grade disc is then submitted into the SPD Evidence Section as a standard item of evidence. Standard evidence retention rules are then followed

Milestone (BAC Rooms and Precinct Holding Cells)

- The recordings are made by the Milestone system. A request by an authorized party (Homicide, OPA, OIG, etc.) for specific footage is made for criminal or internal investigations. The recordings are held for a minimum of 120 and a maximum of 217 days unless used as evidence in a particular case.

Video Recording Systems at SPD Facilities – Policies Governing Use

- Recorded Statements (SPD Policy 7.110)
- Evidence (SPD Policy 7.090)
- Use of department-owned devices/software (SPD Policy 12.040)
- Access to criminal justice information and records (SPD policies 12.050 and 12.080)
- Use of department email and internet (SPD Policy 12.110)
- Use of cloud storage services (SPD policy 12.111)
- <http://www.seattle.gov/police-manual>

Questions

Appendix

Surveillance Criteria

Definition: *Technology whose primary purpose is to observe or analyze the movements, behavior, or actions of identifiable individuals in a manner that is reasonably likely to raise concerns about civil liberties, freedom of speech or association, racial equity or social justice. Identifiable individuals also include individuals whose identity can be revealed by license plate data when combined with any other record.*

Exclusions

- Consents to provide the data
- Opt-out notice
- Body-worn cameras
- Police vehicle cameras
- Cameras installed pursuant to state law...or to record traffic violations
- Security cameras
- City infrastructure protection cameras
- Technology that monitors only City employees

Inclusions

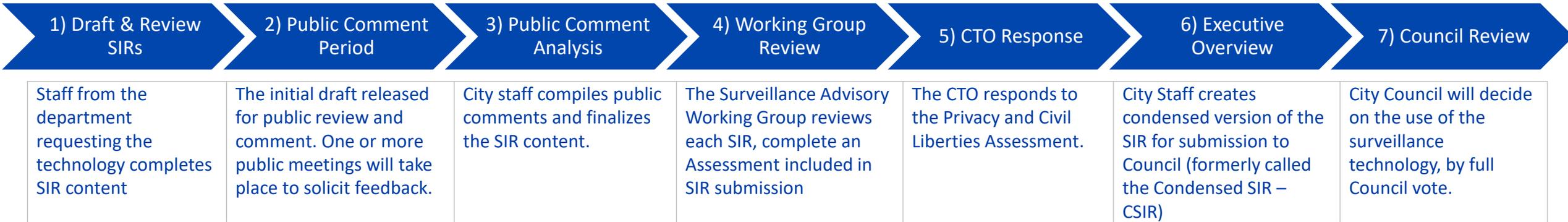
- Disparately impacts disadvantaged groups
- PII shared with non-City entities that will use the data for a purpose other than providing the City with a contractually agreed-upon service
- Collects data that is personally identifiable even if obscured, de-identified, or anonymized after collection
- Raises reasonable concerns about impacts to civil liberty, freedom of speech or association, racial equity, or social justice

Surveillance Impact Report (SIR) Process

- Submitted for all retroactive and newly proposed technologies that meet the definition and have no exclusion criteria
- Created by the Departments with project management from IT

1	Privacy Impact Assessment
2	Financial Information
3	Racial Equity Toolkit
4	Public Engagement Comments and Analysis
5	Privacy and Civil Liberties Impact Assessment
6	CTO Response
7	Appendices & Supporting Documentation

General SIR Creation Timeline





SEATTLE CITY COUNCIL
CENTRAL STAFF

Group 3 Surveillance Impact Reports

LISE KAYE, COUNCIL CENTRAL STAFF

TRANSPORTATION AND UTILITIES COMMITTEE | MAY 5, 2021

Proposed Council Bills – Today's Agenda

- **CB 120053: Forward Looking Infrared Real-Time Video**
(with King County Sheriff's Office helicopters)
- **CB 120054: Situational Awareness Cameras**
(without recording)
- **CB 120055: Video Recording Systems**

Elements to Consider

- Purpose and Use of Each Technology
- Civil Liberties and Potential Disparate Impacts on Historically Marginalized Communities - Racial Equity Toolkit
- Public Engagement
- Surveillance Working Group's Privacy and Civil Liberties Impact Assessment
- Chief Technology Officer's Response

Elements to Consider

- Policy Considerations
 - Surveillance Working Group's key concerns and recommendations
 - Incomplete information in a SIR
 - Legal and logistical parameters

CB 120053: Forward Looking Infrared Real-Time Video

- SPD may request helicopter support from the King County Sheriff's Office for:
 - Tracking movement of crime suspects
 - Situational awareness of disaster scenes

Forward Looking Infrared Real-Time Video

- Civil Liberties and Potential Disparate Impacts
 - Risk of acquisition of private information about third parties
 - Risk of disproportionate surveillance of vulnerable or historically targeted communities
 - Data sharing, storage and retention could contribute to structural racism
- Public comments: concern about use against protesters and people of color; disproportionate use in neighborhoods

Forward Looking Infrared Real-Time Video

- Impact Assessment issues:
 - Allowable uses
 - Data collection, storage and protection
 - Privacy of individuals unrelated to an investigation
 - Lack of historical deployment data
- CTO's Response: SIR generally addresses each concern; CTO provided 2018 KCSO helicopter deployment data from 2018

Forward Looking Infrared Real-Time Video

- Policy Considerations
 - Annual equity assessment metrics
 - Policies and/or criteria for requesting assistance from KCSO Air Support Unit

CB 120054: Situational Awareness Cameras

- Used by SWAT to covertly assess potentially dangerous situations from a safe location:
 - Robot mounted cameras
 - Pole cameras
 - Placeable cameras
 - Throwable cameras

Situational Awareness Cameras

- Civil Liberties and Potential Disparate Impacts
 - Potential surveillance of innocent members of the community
 - Data sharing, storage and retention could contribute to structural racism
- Public comments: need for transparent and fair use, lack of technical and procedural safeguards, the need to record all video and sound feeds for police accountability, and potentially poor resolution of images

Situational Awareness Cameras

- Impact Assessment issues:
 - Allowable uses
 - Capabilities beyond allowed use
 - Safeguards to protect improper viewing, collection, and storage of images
- CTO's Response: SFD's policy and training and limitations of the technology provide adequate mitigation for Working Group concerns

Situational Awareness Cameras

- Policy Considerations
 - Annual equity assessment metrics
 - Use and appropriate application
 - Acquisition of cameras with prohibited capabilities
 - Technical and procedural safeguards – downloading or streaming

CB 120055 – Video Recording Systems

- Genetec Video Management System
 - Audio and video recording of interactions with and interviews of crime victims, witnesses and suspects in interview rooms
 - Video-only monitoring of individuals in interview rooms when no SPD detective is present
- Milestone Systems
 - Continuous recording of activity in blood alcohol collection rooms and precinct holding cells

Video Recording Systems

- Civil Liberties and Potential Disparate Impacts
 - Personally identifiable and potentially sensitive personal information on video or audio recordings
 - Could over-surveil vulnerable or historically targeted communities
 - Data sharing, storage and retention could contribute to structural racism
- Public comments: need for transparent and fair use, system security , potential system add-ons, camera operations

Video Recording Systems

- Impact Assessment issues:
 - System capabilities
 - Data collection, storage and protection
 - Allowable uses

Video Recording Systems

- CTO's Response:
 - System capabilities: Outlined in the SIR. Facial recognition features are not in use by any system in SPD. As of July 2021, Chapter 43.386 RCW will regulate use of a facial recognition service
 - Data collection, storage and protection: outlined in the SIR
 - Allowable uses: Outlined in the SIR. Governed by SPD Policy 7.110 –Recorded Statements.

Video Recording Systems

- Policy Considerations
 - Annual equity assessment metrics